Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2013

http://archive.org/details/generaltechnical2224sout

PUBLIC DOCUMENTS
DEPOSITORY ITEM

JAN 17 1984

CLEMSON
LIBRARY

United States
Department of
Agriculture

Southeastern Forest
Experiment Station

FOREST SERVICE

General Technical Report
SE-22

GOVERNMENT PUBLICATIONS
MAY 11 1983
CLEMSON LIBRARY

BIRD-HABITAT RELATIONSHIPS ON SOUTHEASTERN FOREST LANDS

Prothonotary Warbler in bottom-land hardwoods
along the Savannah River, S.C.

Photo by Ted Borg, courtesy of South Carolina Wildlife

September 1982
Southeastern Forest Experiment Station
Asheville, North Carolina

SB482

Bird-Habitat Relationships
on
Southeastern Forest Lands

by

Paul B. Hamel,[1] Harry E. LeGrand, Jr.,[1]
Michael R. Lennartz,[2] and Sidney A. Gauthreaux, Jr.,[1]

1982

[1] Department of Zoology, Clemson University, Clemson, S.C. 29631
[2] Southeastern Forest Experiment Station, Department of Forestry,
Clemson University, Clemson, S.C. 29631

CLEMSON UNIVERSITY LIBRARY
DOCUMENTS DEPT.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Chapter Page

I INTRODUCTION.......... 1

A. Legal-historical Background.......... 1
B. Purpose.......... 1
C. Ecological Perspective.......... 1
D. Management Overview of Vegetation Types and Successional Stages.......... 1
E. Expected Uses of the Work.......... 1
F. Limitations.......... 2

II INSTRUCTIONS FOR USE OF THE MANUAL.......... 3

A. Basic Organization of the Work.......... 3
B. Basic Use of the Work.......... 4
C. Sources of Error in Predicting Bird Lists and Assessing the Effects of Alternative Silvicultural Prescriptions.......... 6

III RELATIONSHIPS OF BIRDS TO VEGETATION TYPES.......... 7

A. Introduction to the Treatments.......... 7
B. Accounts of the Vegetation Types.......... 8
    1. Everglades.......... 8
    2. Tropical hardwoods.......... 15
    3. Mangroves.......... 28
    4. Pine savanna.......... 37
    5. Southern scrub oak.......... 47
    6. Sand pine-southern scrub oak.......... 57
    7. Longleaf pine-scrub oak.......... 66
    8. Sandhills longleaf pine.......... 76
    9. Southern mixed mesic hardwoods.......... 84
    10. Bay swamp-pocosin.......... 97
    11. Pond pine pocosin.......... 110
    12. Longleaf pine-slash pine.......... 121
    13. Oak-gum-cypress.......... 132
    14. Live oak maritime.......... 147
    15. Elm-ash-cottonwood.......... 161
    16. Loblolly pine-shortleaf pine.......... 177
    17. Virginia pine-pitch pine.......... 189
    18. Mixed pine-hardwood.......... 199
    19. Oak-hickory.......... 214
    20. White pine-hemlock.......... 229
    21. Cove hardwoods.......... 237
    22. Maple-beech-birch.......... 247
    23. Spruce-fir.......... 256

IV NARRATIVE SPECIES ACCOUNTS.......... 262

V CHARACTERISTIC, RESTRICTED, AND SENSITIVE SPECIES.......... 381

Chapter Page

GLOSSARY.......... 383

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS.......... 386

LITERATURE CITED.......... 387

APPENDICES.......... 391

A. Summary of Published Bird Censuses by Vegetation Type and Successional Stage.......... 391
B. Summary of Species Occurrence by Vegetation Type and Season.......... 392
C. Summary of Published Density Information by Bird Species.......... 405
D. Species Associations by Nest Sites, by Foraging Substrates and Behavior, and by Diets.......... 407
E. Species Requiring Snags or Cavities.......... 412
F. Species Requiring Large Sawtimber Trees.......... 413
G. Species Requiring Forest Interior Conditions or Extensive Forested Areas.......... 413
H. Species Using Slash Piles, Windrows, and Downed Logs.......... 414
I. Species Using Rock Outcrops, Caves, Crevices, and Earthen Banks.......... 414
J. Species Utilizing Aquatic Habitats.......... 415
K. SAF Forest Types Equivalent to Our Vegetation Types.......... 416
L. USFS Forest Types Equivalent to Our Vegetation Types.......... 417

CHAPTER I.

INTRODUCTION

A. Legal-Historical Background

Forests cover approximately 70% of the landscape in the Southeast. In addition to providing valuable supplies of wood, fiber, and fuel, they provide invaluable or indispensible habitats for several hundred species of native vertebrates. Foresters and wildlife biologists have long accepted as a truism the statement that "forest management is wildlife management". Any management activity that alters the structure and composition of forest vegetation vitally alters wildlife habitats and associated wildlife communities and populations. Whether these habitat alterations result in good or bad wildlife management, however, depends on the forest manager's foresight and ability to consider (and plan for) wildlife requirements when scheduling habitat manipulations. In the not too distant past wildlife management was synonymous with game management and the forest manager's job was relatively simple. Scheduling forest management treatments required consideration of the needs of only a handful of game birds and mammals. Legislative action over the past decade, however, has significantly increased the public forest manager's responsibilities toward wildlife, especially on Federal lands. The National Environmental Policy Act of 1969 requires that the environmental impacts of any federally funded land management program be examined and evaluated. The Endangered Species Act of 1973 mandates protection and management of endangered and threatened species on Federal lands, and prohibits any adverse impacts on critical habitats. And the National Forest Management Act of 1976 directs National Forest managers to protect faunal diversity and maintain viable populations of all native vertebrates. The result of these statutory regulations is that all animals, not just game animals, have been recognized as renewable forest resources. Consequently, managers of National Forests have been directed to incorporate the habitat requirements of all native, forest-dwelling animals into their land management plans. Planning for the entire forest wildlife community is a formidable task. One need only consider that vertebrates alone on the National Forests in a single state may number several hundred species; the Southern Region of the USDA Forest Service encompasses 13 states stretching from Texas to Virginia and Kentucky.

Effective planning for such a vast array of wildlife habitats and species is a presumptive illusion unless managers are equipped with a comprehensive, accessible data base outlining the life histories and habitat requirements of all species. No such data base currently exists for southern forest habitats. Adequate information exists, however, in the literature, and in the notes, files, and experience of knowledgeable biologists to make such a data base a reality. The need is to revise all available sources of information, extract and compile the relevant facts on life histories and habitat requirements, and synthesize the diverse data into a form usable by the forest wildlife manager.

This book represents a first step toward such a synthesis. It is a comprehensive summary of the life histories and habitat associations of all bird species that breed, winter, or both in forest habitats in the Southeast. It is limited in scope, taxonomically to the birds, and geographically to the five Southeastern States of Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, and Florida. We hope that this first step will provide the impetus and direction for a truly complete atlas of wildlife habitat relationships for all wildlife taxa across all southern forest habitats.

B. Purpose

The purpose of the present work is to provide forest land managers with a comprehensive data base on the life histories and habitat associations of southeastern forest birds. Specifically, we have attempted to:

1. Provide specific, detailed information on habitats and their suitability for individual bird species. This informastion will help forest managers to assess effects of potential land management decisions on birds.

2. Provide a regional avifaunal work summarizing biological information about the states of Florida, Georgia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Virginia.

C. Ecological Perspective

The basic assumptions of this work are that (a) each avian species is adapted to certain successional conditions of certain forest vegetational types, and that (b) where those conditions are present within the species' range the birds will be too. A corollary assumption is that habitat conditions required by species can be produced by purposeful management actions. These assumptions seem reasonable, but require further elaboration and verification.

Forest habitats are continuously distributed across the southeastern landscape. Numerous studies, of which Whittaker (1967) is a classic illustration, have documented that tree species are distributed independently of each other across environmental gradients. However, naturalists have proposed forest or vegetation type classifications (e.g. Braun 1964) in order to discuss, to research, or to manage these continuous communities. The discrete categories of vegetation classifications are, at best, only approximations of the variability of the ecosystems they characterize. At the same time, communication about wildlife-habitat relationships and integration of wildlife and timber management are facilitated substantially by such classifications.

Our success in relating birds to vegetation types and successional stages depends upon the accuracy of our assumptions. Our model, that bird distribution is determined primarily by habitat selection based upon certain key habitat elements, is reasonable but unproven. If such a model is reasonably accurate, and if the requisite habitat elements can be associated with vegetation types, then the habitat-relationships approach presented here will be adequate (Shugart et al. 1978).

Experience in game management demonstrates that specific habitat elements can be produced by purposeful manipulations. Our knowledge of habitat requirements is the major limiting factor in such management. If our model of habitat associations is accurate then habitat management will work. Where knowledge of habitat requirements is weak or lacking, however, the anticipated effects of management are less certain.

Present knowledge of habitat requirements for most bird species is based upon field observations rather than controlled studies of requisite habitat elements. Numerous species occupy many forest types, indicating that species habitat requirements may have little direct association with vegetation type categories. While uncertainties inherent in linking requirements to discrete habitat categories must be acknowledged, they need not be feared. Where appropriate, habitat relationships described in terms of vegetation types must be abandoned in favor of approaches more precisely tuned to the biology of particular species.

D. Management Overview of Vegetation Types and Successional Stages

Vegetation types and their successional stages form the organizational basis of this work. We have designated type categories that are meaningful to understanding the distribution of avian communities in the Southeast. Our vegetation types do not coincide precisely with any standard forest classification scheme. We have provided introductory remarks to each vegetation type in which we define the equivalency relationships between our vegetation types and those recognized by the National Forest Systems (NFS; USDA 1979), the Society of American Foresters (SAF; Eyre 1980), and the Forest Service Renewable Resources Inventory and Evaluation (RRE; McClure 1979, Cost 1979).

We recognize four successional stages based upon vegetation physiognomy. These four physiognomic stages can be related to specific stand ages only imprecisely. Numerous factors peculiar to individual sites and their surroundings inject enormous variation into attempts to define successional stages by age alone. In our opinion, the most important features for habitat selection by birds are physiognomic ones, not ages; we have defined our stages in that fashion.

E. Expected Uses of This Work

We have designed this work as an information retrieval source for two primary applications. First, and primarily, this book is designed for forest land managers involved with planning silvicultural manipulations of forest stands. It is intended to aid the manager both in prescribing treatments aimed at improving avian habitats and in assessing and ameliorating the impacts of other management activities on bird communities. Second, given the acknowledged imprecision of much of the available data on avian habitat associations, we hope it will serve as a working hypothesis for ornithologists and stimulate more and better research on avian habitat requirements.

1. Land Management Applications

At the local or Ranger District level, the work can be used to prescribe habitat improvements for birds and to infer consequences to bird populations of alternative management practices. This use is applicable to project planning during preparation of compartment prescriptions. The matrices can be used to determine anticipated consequences to the avifauna whenever the effects of a silvicultural treatment can be expressed as changes in forest stands, such as alterations in species composition, canopy cover, or understory density. On a larger scale, such as forest planning, the work can be used to estimate the effects on bird communities of alternative management prescriptions in larger management units defined by vegetation composition and structure. Projections made with the matrices can be extended over the time frame involved in the planning process. At the state or regional level, the work forms the basis for evaluating the efficacy of established or proposed wildlife management policies. (Indeed, the species list in Appendix B is our best estimate of the breeding and wintering avifauna of forest habitats of the five states of the Southeast).

2. Ornithological and Ecological Applications

We envision two specific applications to present ornithological and ecological study. First, our habitat matrices constitute hypotheses of bird community structure in the Southeast. Second, our review of the published census literature identifies areas in which new quantitative data are needed.

Ornithologists and ecologists recognize that vegetation structure and composition are powerful predictors of the composition and richness of bird communities (e.g. MacArthur 1972, Cyr and Cyr 1979, Beedy 1981, Holmes and Robinson 1981). We have extended that recognition into the assumption that structure and composition of vegetative habitats are a sufficient set of factors to predict accurately the bird communities of homogeneous patches of forest such as stands of 8-20 ha (20-50 acres). The vegetation type matrices are constructed on that basis. In so doing we have given only passing consideration to interspecific interactions as determinants of observed communities in spite of an extensive literature dealing with them (Cody 1974, Cody and Diamond 1975, but see also Wiens 1977). Our species-habitat matrices are thus hypotheses of bird communities; hypotheses constructed from an initial assumption that adaptation to the vegetative environment influences community structure more than competitive processes. Careful empirical tests of these hypotheses will reveal the extent to which the assumption is reasonable.

Whether our assumption is reasonable or unreasonable, comparisons of extant breeding and winter bird communities with predicted communities will be valuable. Results of such studies can be used to improve our information [illegible] the composition of avian communities. Similarly, this [illegible] for avian communities in the Southeast. Failures of the predictions [illegible] raw material for the development of more successful models of avian community structure. Extensive gaps exist in our knowledge of avian communities in the Southeast and of the species that compose those communities. By identifying gaps we provide an outline of valuable future research in avian ecology and nongame management in the Southeast.

F. Limitations

This work is one in a series, produced independently by different workers, to supply management information on nongame species in different areas of the United States (Thomas 1979, Verner and Boss 1980, DeGraaf et al. 1980, U. S. Forest Service Rocky Mountain Region 1981, Evans and Kirkman 1981). Like the others, this is a review of relevant information about the life histories and habitat requirements of the included species. Our information relating bird species to forested habitats constitutes a summary of literature and of professional judgments. As such, these lists are hypotheses subject to empirical verification. All the limitations addressed in the symposium on avian censusing (Ralph and Scott 1981) apply to the published censuses utilized in this work. These include observer variability (Eagles and Tobias 1978); peculiarities of specific plots; nonstandard reporting of vegetative characteristics; single year samples; uneven coverage of different habitat types; uncertainties of field techniques, data analyses, and data summarization (Robbins 1978); as well as other factors. Biological attributes of certain species render them difficult to interpret. Problem species include those whose home ranges are larger than usual forest stands (many raptors, turkeys, crows, some woodpeckers, and all wading birds); nocturnal species (such as owls and nightjars); aerial feeders (including swifts and swallows); all winter species, especially erratically occurring "winter finches" and flocking frugivores (such as American Robins and Cedar Waxwings); and all species that occur at low densities, such as below 1 bird or pair per 40 ha (100 acres).

We cannot overemphasize the need for testing these data by monitoring and censusing avian communities in forest stands. The ultimate value of hypothesized, estimated, or predicted community composition lies in the ability to attach a measure of error to the prediction. Confident estimation of error rates for our hypothesized densities awaits considerably more study.

Chapter II.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR USE OF THIS MANUAL

In this work we treat the bird species that regularly breed, winter, or both in forest habitats in Florida, Georgia, South Carolina, North Carolina, and Virginia (Figure 1). Species that migrate through the region but neither breed nor winter here are excluded. However, we do not treat every breeding and wintering species of the Southeast. Species that do not utilize forests or forest successional habitats have been omitted, with the exception of species occurring in the Everglades marsh. Thus, a number of waterbirds, especially waterfowl, shorebirds, and gulls and terns, are omitted from this survey. These birds are, for the most part, associated with ponds, marshes, mudflats, and other aquatic habitats. On the other hand, most members of the orders Pelecaniformes and Ciconiiformes are discussed, because they usually nest in shrubs or trees, even though they forage in aquatic, often nonforested, habitats. A few species with urban habitats, such as Rock Dove, European Starling, and House Sparrow, are included, because they frequently perch in trees, and they forage in early successional stages of forest habitats. European Starlings frequently nest in trees and roost in forests or thickets in the winter. In summary, we discuss all land birds that breed or winter regularly in forest habitats of the Southeast; we exclude only a small number of recently introduced species that are poorly established. Most of these latter species occur only in subtropical Florida.

A. Organization of the Data

Data on these bird species are presented in an integrated fashion that involves three separate, cross-referenced methods: species-habitat matrices, narrative species accounts, and special appendices. Additional, specific instructions for using the information provided are given in introductory remarks to the separate sections. The present chapter outlines each of the sections and presents general strategies for using the work to predict bird communities, to plan management activities for birds, and to evaluate management alternatives.

1. Qualitative Bird-Habitat Association Matrices

For each of 23 vegetation types, we present a habitat association matrix for bird species that commonly use stands of that type. The bird-habitat matrices are similar to those designed by Verner and Boss (1980) for the presentation of data on bird-habitat associations of the Sierra Nevada in California. Vegetation type designations are based on those presented by several sources (e.g., Braun 1964, Shelford 1963), but they do not correspond to any single scheme. We have chosen a vegetation type classification for our purposes rather than a forest type classification, because forest type classifications are typically based on commercially important tree species, whereas we have utilized major plant associations, topography, and geography in defining our vegetation type categories. In general, birds seem to select habitats primarily on the basis of the physical structure of the vegetation as well as topography, rather than on the presence of single tree species.

The vegetation types chosen for this study include essentially all of the major types found in the five-state southeastern region. Everglades is included because it covers a large portion of southern Florida and is considered a distinct vegetation type by all authorities. In several cases it became necessary to designate types not generally recognized by most authorities in order to include "mixed" forests, especially forests with a combination of pine and hardwood overstory trees. Many bird species utilize such forests to a greater extent than either pure coniferous or pure deciduous forests. However, it must be borne in mind that both forest type and vegetation type designations are arbitrary concepts rather than discrete entities. Consequently, any use of forest type or vegetation type masks some important natural variation. We persist in using these conceptual categories to facilitate practical handling of an enormous mass of data and to integrate the information on bird habitats into the same conceptual framework used by forest managers in their forest resource inventories and planning.

The matrices do not contain all habitats present in the Southeast. (A **habitat** is a single successional stage column in a matrix, representing a range of age classes of similar physiognomy within a single vegetation type.) The habitats in a matrix consist only of seral stages of the major forest vegetation types. Habitats associated with urban, suburban, and agricultural land uses, as well as wetlands such as marshes, reservoirs, and oceanic habitats, are not treated. Inclusion of these additional types would have increased greatly the number of matrices and the excluded habitats would be of little concern to the forest manager, for whom the work is primarily intended.

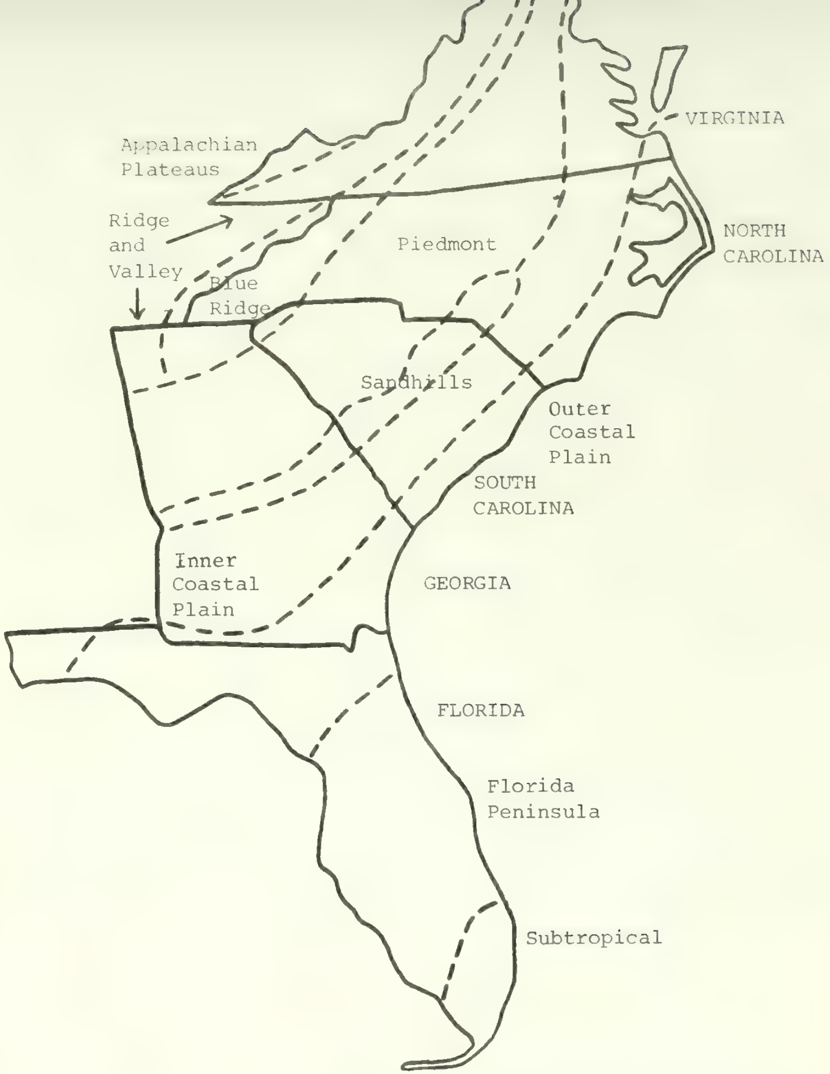


Figure 1. The five-state southeastern region, showing physiographic regions utilized in this account.

The seral stages of the vegetation types are similar to those used by Verner and Boss (1980) and DeGraaf et al. (1980). The four classes are grass/forb, shrub/seedling, sapling/poletimber, and sawtimber. Too few data exist to permit treatment of distinct canopy coverage classes in the older age classes or distinct understory volume classes, or to recognize separate classes of other important habitat variables. Not all of the vegetation types exhibit all four seral stages. For example, the Everglades type exists only in the grass/forb stage.

those vegetation types used by individuals of that species. [illegible] mainly those of urban habitats and agricultural areas, utilize none of the habitats extensively. For many of the species, optimal habitats are not present in any of these vegetation types, and only suitable or marginal habitats are indicated. Data presented in the matrices were derived from examination of all relevant literature plus our accumulated field experience where literature sources were inadequate or lacking. In some cases, especially for birds found primarily in Florida where we have limited field experience, decisions on habitat use were based almost solely on the literature. Frequently used references were Sprunt (1954), Ogden (1969), Robertson and Kushlan (1974), and Kale (1978).

Treatment of each type involves: (a) definition of the type; (b) equivalence relations between our vegetation type and U. S. Forest Service National Forest Systems (NFS; USDA 1979), Society of American Foresters (SAF; Eyre 1980), and USFS Renewable Resource Evaluation (RRE; McClure 1979, Cost 1979) types; (c) pertinent physiographic and other considerations about the type; (d) important bird-habitat interactions in the type; (e) a summary of the published censuses and other literature on birds in the type; (f) lists of characteristic and restricted species in the type; and (g) the matrix of seasonal bird-habitat associations for the type. Each matrix includes a list of breeding and wintering birds associated with the type, and suitability ratings of each successional stage habitat (grass-forb, shrub-seedling, sapling-poletimber, and sawtimber) of the type for each bird species. Discussion of each of these elements of a treatment is presented in the introductory remarks to Chapter III.

We present, for each bird species in each matrix, columns of information on geographic and physiographic range, on utilization of various habitat elements, and on specific habitat requirements. These additional columns of information will be useful to the worker in evaluating the potential of specific stands in the type as habitats for individual bird species.

Qualitative data presented in the matrices reflect general faunal accounts of the species, and, wherever possible, published census information from the Southeast. Since few published data are available for much of the region, we have relied on our accumulated field experience where published information is lacking.

Quantitative estimates of the breeding and winter densities of bird species of the Southeast were obtained primarily from two programs of the National Audubon Society, the Breeding Bird Census (BBC; Hall 1964), begun in 1936, and the Winter Bird Populations Study (WBPS; Kolb 1965), initiated in 1948. In concept, both programs are plot studies. The BBC utilizes a spot-mapping approach to density estimation (Intl. Bird Census Comm. 1970), while the WBPS uses mean numbers of individuals/trip as its data. Studies are published in American Birds and its predecessor, Audubon Field Notes, and include an account of the habitat as well as a list of bird species with abundance estimates standardized to birds/40 ha (100 acres). All studies made in the Southeast appearing in either publication since the establishment of Audubon Field Notes in 1947 until 1979 were included in the sample. We referred to selected studies from among the 28 published in 1981, but were unable to include these in our analyses. Several studies made in aquatic or marine habitats were also excluded from analysis.

From each account the following data were extracted:

(a) State,
(b) Latitude and longitude coordinates,
(c) Plot size,
(d) Elevation,
(e) Vegetation type as defined for the matrix herein,
(f) Successional stage as defined for the matrix herein,
(g) Bird species, and
(h) Bird abundance standardized to birds/40 ha (100 acres).

Rare species are recorded in the BBC and WBPS as "+" to signify an abundance of less than 1 territory or individual on the plot and as "V" for species that visited the plot but did not breed or winter there. We adopted two conventions to express these low abundances quantitatively for our presentation. First, visiting species ("V") were uniformly accorded an abundance of 0.1 individuals or pairs/40 ha. Second, species recorded as "+" were assigned abundances of 1 individual or pair/40 ha for plots <20 ha in size, and 0.5 individuals or pairs/40 ha for larger plots. Furthermore, we usually rounded larger abundance figures to the nearest integer.

This quantitative census literature is the most comprehensive source of abundance data on birds in the Southeast. It is, nevertheless, subject to a variety of errors, some of which restrict the usefulness of the data for present purposes. The recent symposium on bird censusing (Ralph and Scott 1981) presents detailed criticism of the spot-mapping technique. All sources of error identified there may affect the results reported in this censuses. Published [illegible] uncertainty affects the utility of the of these programs, were qualitative narratives lacking specific numerical data. Hence, our assignments of plots to vegetation types and particularly to successional stages is subject to an unknown amount of error. We have chosen to ignore this source of error for the most part. However, where published results differed widely from other literature and our experience (as the 51 pairs/40 ha of Field Sparrows reported from a sawtimber plot in oak-hickory vegetation in Virginia), we have used the other literature and our experience in preference to the published censuses.

2. Organization of Narrative Species Accounts

The narrative species accounts closely follow the formats of Verner and Boss (1980) and of DeGraaf et al. (1980), so that the treatments will be comparable. The purpose of the narratives is to provide both quantitative and qualitative information on the biology and habitat requirements of the species. Where a species has been given legal protection in addition to that provided by the Migratory Bird Treaty Act, a section on legal status lists the federal and/or state designation for species and subspecies. The section also mentions those cases in which the bird was listed by Tate (1981) on the National Audubon Society's Blue List of species whose populations are thought to be declining. The abundance status of each species is also listed, with information on arrival and departure dates and elevation of occurrence. Comments on habitats, habitat requirements, sample densities, reproduction, food habits, and foraging-nesting guild are intended to provide insight into the biology of each species. This information is presented in order to assist the manager in prescribing treatments of forest habitats to benefit birds. A range map, showing both breeding and wintering ranges, is provided for each species. The maps will assist in interpretation of lists of occurrence by state and physiographic province as these relate to actual range boundaries. The references listed provide access to accounts of the species in generally available faunal works.

The majority of the data entered in the narratives is a composite of information taken from several sources. Breeding and food habits data are taken primarily from Bent (1926-1958; Bent and Austin 1968a, 1968b, 1968c). The following also were helpful in providing breeding data: Palmer (1962), Reilly (1968), Robbins and Bystrak (1977), and Larner (1979). Data for preparing the range maps and status sections were obtained from Sprunt (1954), Burleigh (1958), Pearson et al. (1959), Ogden (1969), Sprunt and Chamberlain (1970), Robertson and Kushlan (1974), Denton (1977), and Larner (1979), as well as Christmas Bird Count and other data found in American Birds.

In summary, these accounts are designed to give the reader some general information on the status and biology of each species, with the habitat descriptions supplementing the habitat data provided in the matrices. Further explanation of the categories is provided in introductory remarks to Chapter IV.

3. Organization of Appendices

We have reorganized some of the information presented in the vegetation type and narrative species accounts into a set of 12 appendices. These are intended as cross-referenced summaries of information frequently sought by managers, which they would otherwise have to extract repeatedly from the data dispersed in the vegetation type treatments and narrative species accounts. Pertinent comments about each appendix, including questions each is designed to answer, are provided in introductory remarks to the appendices.

B. Basic Use of This Work.

1. Preparing a Bird List.

The most basic use of this work is for preparing a bird list for a plot or forest stand in a particular location. All uses of the work for inventory or management will require at least one such bird list. In order to accomplish this, the following steps are required:

a. Specifying the characteristics of the stand or forest property in terms of:

i. Geographic location
(a) state
(b) physiographic province, see Figure 1.

ii. Vegetation type, in NFS, SAF, or our scheme. NFS and SAF types can be translated into ours by use of Appendices K and L.

stage, as grass-forb, shrub-seedling, sapling-poletimber, or sawtimber.

iv. Particular features of the site, such as closed vs. open canopy, presence and size of snags, rock outcrops, earth banks, permanent or temporary water, and other features.

v. Size of the plot. Appendix I lists species with potential area sensitivity that may require forested areas of certain minimal sizes.

b. Refering to the appropriate vegetation type matrix to identify the pool of species most likely associated with the site:

i. locate the appropriate vegetation type in the manual;

ii. identify the appropriate successional stage column in the table for that vegetation type;

iii. list the species with entries for the appropriate season in that column;

iv. screen the list
(a) omit those species not occurring in the state and physiographic province of the plot;
(b) further eliminate those species whose substrate utilization or specific requirements include features not present on the site.

c. At this point a probable bird list has been developed for the plot. It may be used without further modification as an estimate of the species that are likely to be using the plot.

Successful management depends upon the precision with which the effects of management activities on bird populations can be assessed. Bird communities in forest stands can be predicted and monitored at three levels of precision. Presence-absence information is the simplest and least informative level of precision. If a land manager wants to know whether or not his management program is providing habitat for a bird species, or whether or not his property has potential to harbor certain species, presence-absence information is satisfactory.

More specific prediction can also be done, on two levels, (a) a semi-quantitative and (b) a quantitative one.

a. The semiquantitative level involves the suitability ratings we present for different successional stage habitats of each vegetation type for each bird species. If a land manager wants to know whether or not his management program is providing better quality habitats for a bird species, then he must be able to rate the relative suitabilities of different habitat conditions available before and after his treatments are conducted. Semiquantitative predictions can be made as follows: entries in the successional stage columns of each matrix are listed on an ordinal scale of relative suitability, as marginal ("M"), suitable ("S"), or optimal ("O") habitat for the species. In general, birds for whom a habitat is optimal are more likely to be present than those for whom it is suitable. Birds for whom the habitat is marginal may or may not be present. Birds with large body sizes or large home ranges are less likely to occur in a habitat of a given suitability than are species whose body sizes or home ranges are small.

b. Quantitative predictions can be derived from suitability ratings in any of several ways, depending upon the assumptions the user wishes to make about the relationship of suitability rating to actual density. If a land manager has developed specific production goals in terms of populations of a species, then he requires quantitative information on the density of the species before and after management activities are performed. We suggest two alternative methods for converting suitability ratings to estimated densities, involving (i) the average recorded density on plots in the Southeast or (ii) the maximum average density recorded on plots in a single habitat in the Southeast. Estimated density figures can be calculated from these average density figures and the habitat suitability ratings in a number of ways. Our preliminary attempts to predict density on the basis of habitat suitability ratings and validate those predictions against published censuses have been encouraging (LeGrand and Hamel 1980); however, until extensive field testing is conducted, the results are nothing more than educated guesses. In any case, the methods work best with those territorial species whose home ranges are small relative to the size of a forest stand (ca. 8-20 ha); they work poorly or not at all with non-territorial species and those with large home ranges. Thus, densities of most passerines and woodpeckers can be predicted more accurately than can herons and egrets, hawks, Pileated Woodpeckers, crows, and nocturnal species such as owls and caprimulgids. Many conversion functions are possible. It is the user's responsibility to choose an appropriate one. Because each of the methods we suggest depends upon an average of several or many censuses, predictions made with these techniques will not generate suggested densities in optimal habitats that are as large as the largest published from the Southeast. They can thus be considered conservative techniques in this sense. Contrariwise, as averages overestimate low values, these techniques may overestimate the lowest densities recorded. We provide these suggestions to encourage users to test our data rationally, but not to apply them blindly.

2. Predicting the Effects of a Management Treatment

Often the manager's purpose in predicting bird lists will be to allow assessment of the effects that proposed management activities are likely to have on the associated avifauna. The ability to anticipate impacts on birds provides the manager with the foresight to impose restrictions or mitigating actions to ameliorate any probable adverse impacts. Evaluating the effects of alternative management treatments on the avifauna involves the following steps.

a. The possible treatment and its effects on the vegetation of a stand must be specified in terms compatible with the vegetation data presented in the matrices. Anticipated treatment effects might include type conversions, shifts in successional stages, or other alterations to vegetation structure or to specific habitat components.

b. A pretreatment list must be developed, as above, to reflect the expected bird community of the stand before treatment.

c. A second, posttreatment list must be developed, as above, to reflect the expected bird community of the stand after treatment.

d. A comparison of the two lists will reveal those birds likely to benefit and those likely to be adversely impacted by the treatment.

e. These effects can potentially be quantified in terms not only of individual species but also in terms of population densities.

f. The final results of the analysis constitute a crude community level assessment of the potential effects of the treatment.

Assessing the effects of alternative management treatments primarily involves relating the effects of the proposed treatments to habitat elements listed in the matrices. Once the effects are specified in this way, preparing a bird list that reflects the anticipated treatment is a straightforward process of referring to the matrices. For example, a manager may wish to examine and compare the effects of controlled burning, of clearcutting, or of type conversion on the avifauna of a stand. Each of these treatments constitutes a change in one or more vegetative habitat elements in that stand. Controlled burning involves selective removal of leaf litter, herbaceous groundcover, and woody understory vegetation, without impacting the overstory. Thus, species dependent upon the understory and midstory will be negatively impacted and those dependent upon the overstory will be unaffected. In the matrix, the pre- and posttreatment lists will both come from the same successional stage column; the posttreatment list will not include species dependent upon the removed understory, leaf litter, and herbaceous cover. Clearcutting involves a change in successional stage from sawtimber to grass-forb, and the bird lists are prepared from the different columns in the same matrix. Modifications to the posttreatment list can be made depending upon how specific habitat elements, such as slash piles and windrows, are treated during site preparation after the cut. Finally, type conversion involves a change from one vegetation type to another, and the effects of such a management alternative can be found by comparing the relevant list from the initial vegetation type with that from the final vegetation type. Many other alternative treatments can be evaluated by describing their effects upon specific habitat elements and using combinations of matrix columns to determine which birds will be affected by the proposed management activities.

3. Prescribing Habitat Management for Selected or Featured Species

Developing management programs to benefit selected species or selected groups of species is a process similar to that of assessing the effects of alternative management activities. In this situation, however, instead of determining which birds will be affected by which management practices, the emphasis is placed upon finding specific management practices that will benefit the selected species.

Species may be selected for management for many reasons, such as their sensitivity to specific disturbances, legal status, glamour, aesthetics, recreational or economic value, desirability to birdwatchers, or other reasons. Once a species is selected, development of a management program for it begins with the narrative species account and associated reference specific requirements of the species. [illegible] which data are presented on the information, choose specific management practices that enhance the development of those habitat elements required by the birds. For example, management programs designed to increase populations of cavity nesters, such as Pileated Woodpeckers, require the provision of sufficient quantities of snags of the proper size. Given this information, the manager can choose an appropriate method to provide the requisite snags.

C. Sources of Error in Predicting Bird Lists and Assessing the Effects of Alternative Silvicultural Prescriptions

Sources of error exist at every step in using this manual to predict the composition of bird communities. First, because of gaps in the published literature, our initial suitability ratings may not be entirely accurate; changes in these will result in potentially large changes in densities computed from them. The ratings are likely to vary most where species use similar habitats to differing degrees in different locations. Likewise, the history of a particular stand can have a strong bearing on the avifauna found there. Stands on poor, eroded sites cannot be expected to support plant or animal communities as rich as stands that have not been subject to such past abuse. Presence or absence of species in an otherwise suitable habitat may also be affected by the size of the patch of forest in which the habitat is located (cf. Robbins 1979). Second, the mean densities derived from published censuses may not adequately reflect the densities achieved by the birds in nature. For example, the high average breeding density for Northern Parula Warblers (44 prs/40 ha) is only 30% of the highest density recorded in the Southeast, and less than 50% of that routinely recorded in censuses in old-growth bottomland hardwood stands in Congaree Swamp National Monument in South Carolina (Hamel, pers. obs.; Cely and Sorrow 1981). The reasons for this discrepancy are inherent in the variability and unevenness of coverage in published censuses. Third, possible conversion functions relating suitability ratings to predicted densities are not thoroughly tested, and thus they can be expected to add further uncertainties. Finally, combining predicted densities for pre- and posttreatment conditions magnifies any existing errors.

Because of the various sources of error in the data presented in this manual, the manager must use caution and sound professional judgment in developing predictions and interpretations from them. In spite of the problems noted above, these data are the most comprehensive available for the Southeast. The wildlife resource is certainly best served when the manager applies the best information available rather than decrying the lack of or imprecision of data and doing nothing at all. Only by applying and testing the principles and data at hand will we be able to continually improve our efforts and our precision in the future.

Chapter III.

RELATIONSHIPS OF BIRDS TO VEGETATION TYPES

A. Introduction to the Treatments

This chapter presents matrices showing associations of birds to habitat for the 23 vegetation types recognized in this manual. Each matrix is preceded by a short narrative account. Each account presents our definition of the type, includes pertinent remarks on the physiographic or other features associated with the type that are important to birds, and identifies the type with corresponding SAF and NFS forest types. Each account further lists relevant BBC or WBPS data from the type published in 1947-1979; presents lists of species that are characteristic of or restricted to the type; and, where available, lists useful references to birds in the type. We have not attempted to present exhaustive lists of literature bearing only vaguely on bird-habitat associations in the types. Instead, we include important reviews dealing specifically with bird-habitat associations and management of birds in the type. Such pertinent literature is scarce or nonexistent, pointing out areas in which research, often extensive research, is necessary. Much of the available information resulted from several recent workshops conducted to compile existing material and outline future research needs (Smith 1975; DeGraaf 1978a, 1978b; DeGraaf and Evans 1979; DeGraaf and Tilghman 1980).

We have arranged the vegetation types in a sequence that generally reflects a geographic and physiographic gradient from Everglades marsh in the lowlands of southern Florida to spruce-fir forest in the highlands of North Carolina and Virginia. The vegetation types are:

1. Everglades,
2. Tropical hardwoods,
3. Mangroves,
4. Pine savanna,
5. Southern scrub oak,
6. Sand pine-southern scrub oak,
7. Longleaf pine-scrub oak,
8. Sandhills longleaf pine,
9. Southern mixed mesic hardwoods,
10. Bay swamp-pocosin,
11. Pond pine pocosin,
12. Longleaf pine-slash pine,
13. Oak-gum-cypress,
14. Live oak maritime,
15. Elm-ash-cottonwood,
16. Loblolly pine-shortleaf pine,
17. Virginia pine-pitch pine,
18. Mixed pine-hardwood,
19. Oak-hickory,
20. White pine-hemlock,
21. Cove hardwoods,
22. Maple-beech-birch, and
23. Spruce-fir.

Each account is followed by a matrix in which are listed the birds that occur in the type together with information about their geographic and physiographic range, suitability of successional stages of the type for them, their substrate utilization patterns, and specific habitat requirements. Each species that occurs in a particular vegetation type has a row in the matrix for that vegetation type for each season (breeding, or wintering, or both) in which it occurs in that type. Entries in the rows of the matrices are grouped into four categories, reading left to right across a matrix: (a) geographic, physiographic, and seasonal occurrence; (b) suitability of successional stages of that vegetation type; (c) utilization of various canopy layer substrates of a forest; and (d) specific habitat requirements. Three of these categories (a), (c), and (d) pertain specifically to the bird species, independently of the vegetation type. The fourth category, (b), indicates our opinion of the suitability of each of four successional stages of the vegetation type for each species. The distinction between the bird species dependent categories (a, c, and d), and the bird-habitat association category, (b), is important, because the information presented in categories (a), (c), or (d) may not apply in the same way in all vegetation types. For example, all entries for Common Ground Dove include the notation that the birds occur in Florida, Georgia, and both Carolinas; and that they occur in the Inner and Outer Coastal Plain, along the Coastline, and in Subtropical Florida. Blind application of these data would lead the user to include this species on any list of birds in appropriate habitat in the Inner Coastal Plain of North Carolina. A brief examination of the range map for the species shows that Common Ground Doves occur in the Inner Coastal Plain only in southern Georgia, and only barely so there. Furthermore, their occurrence in both Carolinas is limited to the immediate Coastline. It is vitally important, in this instance, that the user mark species in each matrix that are known to occur in his or her own area, rather than blindly combine information on occurrence by states and physiographic provinces. We have provided a blank column in each matrix, local area, in which the users can indicate those species known to occur in that vegetation type in their local area. Similarly, other combinations of columns may provide contradictory or innaccurate information; it is the user's responsibility to recognize this possibility and guard against it. At the present time, insufficient data exist to permit us to indicate differential use of substrates, key habitat requirements, and successional stages of habitats in different parts of the Southeast. The narrative species accounts provide general information on relative abundance of the species in different physiographic regions.

(a) Geographic, physiographic, and seasonal occurrence.--The first four columns of each matrix list the season (Breeding-B, or Winter-W), and states and physiographic provinces in which a species occurs in the Southeast. State and physiographic entries are independent. Thus, all possible combinations of a state and a physiographic province may not be within the range of a species. Because high elevations occur in only a small portion of the Southeast, we have combined several physiographic provinces listed in Figure 1 into a single designation, "Mountains". The provinces that have been combined are Appalachian Plateaus, Ridge and Valley, and Blue Ridge. All information in this section on occurrence reflects that from which the range maps were compiled. A final column in this section, "Local area", is provided for the user to mark species known to occur in his or her local area.

(b) Successional stages.--For each of four successional stage habitats of each vegetation type we present a suitability rating for each species in each season of occurrence in that vegetation type. The stages are grass-forb, shrub-seedling, sapling-poletimber, and sawtimber. We list four levels of suitability of the different successional stages of a vegetation type for each species in each season of occurrence. The levels are "O" - optimal habitat, "S" - suitable habitat, and "M" - marginal habitat; blank columns indicate unsuitable habitats in which the species is unlikely to occur. We consider optimal habitats to be those in which the species occurs in highest frequency, greatest numbers, or both. Similarly, suboptimal and marginal habitats are those in which the species occurs in successively lower numbers and frequency.

(c) Substrate utilization.--Here we list, in simplified form, those portions of the forest environment utilized by each species for various life activities. Our main objective in this presentation has been to associate the species with the various canopy levels they use, rather than to identify all recognizable behavioral categories. Thus, the reader will understand that we have combined such disparate activities as singing, roosting, sleeping, and preening under the general rubric of "perching". The data presented in these columns of the matrices were derived from the species accounts from which the narratives were prepared. Appendix D groups the species by this information, and that in the guild accounts, into nesting, foraging, and dietary guilds.

(d) Specific requirements.--Here we present those habitat elements in southeastern forests requiring particular attention from managers along with species likely to be affected by manipulation of those elements. Because we believe these elements to be of particular importance, we further group the species associated with most of these elements into separate appendices devoted specifically to single elements. Some of the information presented here is common knowledge, such as the species requiring earth banks, rock outcrops, and slash piles or windrows. Other information we present is reasonably well supported by a combination of literature and our field experience, such as the species utilizing aquatic habitats or snags (Evans and Conner 1979, Scott et al. 1977). Requirements for differing canopy densities, grassy forest openings, and particularly for large sawtimber trees, are more conjectural, because too few data exist for the Southeast. Research into old-growth associations in the Southeast is desperately needed, for known virgin stands are scarce and not all types are represented. We have taken a conservative course, and included only those species in the list of species of large sawtimber trees where a majority of the authors agreed that a species achieved greater density and frequency of occurrence in stands of such trees.

B. Accounts of the Vegetation Types

1. Everglades

This nonforested vegetation type has no SAF or NFS counterpart. We have included it because it is an extensive, nonmarine environment that occupies a substantial part of southern Florida. Everglades are biologically important as the primary habitat for numerous aquatic and marsh inhabiting birds.

Only the grass-forb stage habitat is included in the matrix. We assume, in our characterizations, that some scattered trees and shrubs are present as perching sites, but that these are not aggregated into hammocks of forest stand proportions (ca. 20-50 acres, 8-20 ha).

One BBC and one WBPS have been published for this type from the Southeast 1947-1979.

Characteristic of this vegetation type are Least Bitterns, American Bitterns (W), Northern Harriers (W), King Rails, Common Yellowthroats, and Red-winged Blackbirds.

Restricted primarily to this type are Everglade (Snail) Kites.

Many common species of the type are treated in Sprunt et al. (1978). Wade et al. (1980) discuss this and other south Florida vegetation types. Sykes and Hunter (1978) present some information on habitat use by birds in modified Everglades habitats.

Everglades		Seasonal and geographic distribution				Successional stage[d]				Substrate utilization[e]							Specific requirements[e]													
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb				Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Pied-billed Grebe		B	*	PSIOCT		M						N																	F	
PBGR	264	W	*	*		M																							FB	
American Anhinga		B																												
AMAN	265	W	FG SN	IOCT		M							P	P	P														FB	
Great Blue Heron		B																												
GBHE	266	W	*	*		O				F		F			P	P													A	F
Green Heron		B																												
GRHE	267	W	FG S	OCT		O				F		F	*	P	P											F			A	F
Little Blue Heron		B																												
LBHE	267	W	*	OCT		O				F		F	*		P														A	F
Cattle Egret		B																												
CAEG	268	W	FG SN	OCT		M				F		F	P		P														F	
Reddish Egret		B																												
REEG	268	W	F	C		M						F	P		P														SB	
Great Egret		B																												
GREG	269	W	*	IOCT		O				F		F	P	P	P														A	F
Snowy Egret		B																												
SNEG	269	W	*	OCT		O				F		F	P		P														A	F
Louisiana Heron		B																												
LOHE	270	W	*	OCT		O				F		F	P		P														A	

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
G — Georgia
N — North Carolina
F — Florida
S — South Carolina
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Everglades Species Code	Page	Seasonal and geographic distribution				Successional stage[d]																		[e]					
																				Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb				Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Black-cr. Night Heron		B																												
BCNH	270	W	*	IOCT		O						F	P		P														A	F
Yellow-cr. Night Heron		B																												
YCNH	271	W	FG S	OCT		S				F				P	P														A	F
Least Bittern		B	*	PSIOC		S						*																	FB	
LEBI	271	W	F	CT		S						*																	FB	
American Bittern		B	FN V	OCT		M						*																	A	
AMBI	272	W	*	SIOCT		O						*																	A	
Wood Stork		B																												
WOST	272	W	FG	OCT		O									P														A	
Glossy Ibis		B																												
GLIB	273	W	*	OCT		O				F		F		P	P														A	
White Ibis		B																												
WHIB	273	W	FG SN	OCT		O				F		F		P	P														A	
Roseate Spoonbill		B																												
ROSP	274	W	F	C		M									P														SB	
Snail Kite		B	F	T		O						*																	F	
SNKI	278	W	F	T		O						*																	F	
Red-shouldered Hawk		B																												
RSHA	280	W	*	*		M				F		F	F		*														F	F

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Everglades		Seasonal and geographic distribution				Successional stage[d]				Substrate utilization[e]							Specific requirements[e]													
																					Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Code / Species	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb				Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Bald Eagle		B	*	IOCT		M									NP		NP							NP					A	F
BAEA	283	W	*	SIOCT		M									P		P							P					A	F
Northern Harrier		B																												
NOHA	283	W	*	*		O				F		*																		
Osprey		B	*	OCT		S									NP	NP	NP							NP					A	F
OSPR	284	W	FG S	OCT		S									P	P	P							P					A	F
Peregrine Falcon		B																												
PEFA	285	W	*	OCT		M				F		F			F	P											P			
Merlin		B																												
MERL	285	W	*	*		M				F		F																		
American Kestrel		B																												
AMKE	286	W	*	*		M				F		F			*	F					F									
Sandhill Crane		B	FG	OT		M						*																	F	
SACR	288	W	FG	OT		M						*																	F	
Limpkin		B	FG	OT		S				F		*	N																F	F
LIMP	289	W	FG	OT		S				F		*																	F	F
King Rail		B	*	PSIOCT		O				F		*																	FB	
KIRA	289	W	*	OCT		O				F		*																	FB	
Virginia Rail		B																												
VIRA	290	W	*	PSIOCT		M				F		*																	FB	

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Everglades

Species Code	Page	Seasonal and geographic distribution				Successional stage[d]				[illegible][e]																				
																					Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb				Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Sora		B																												
SORA	291	W	*	PSIOCT		O				F		*																	F	
Yellow Rail		B																												
YERA	291	W	FG SN	C		S				F		*																	A	
Black Rail		B																												
BLRA	292	W	FG SN	C		M				F		*																	A	
Purple Gallinule		B	FG SN	SIOCT		M						*																	F	
PUGA	292	W	F	OCT		M						*																	F	
Common Gallinule		B	*	SIOCT		M						*																	F	
COGA	293	W	*	SIOCT		M						*																	F	
American Coot		B																												
AMCO	293	W	*	*		M						*																	FB	
Common Snipe		B																												
COSN	295	W	*	*		S				F		F																	FB	F
Barn Owl		B	*	*		M				F		F	P		P									N	N		N			
BAOW	300	W	*	*		S				F		F	P		P									P	P		P			
Short-eared Owl		B																												
SEOW	303	W	*	PSIOC		M				F		*																		
Belted Kingfisher		B	*	*		M							P	P		P					F					F		N	A	F
BEKI	306	W	*	*		M							P	P		P					F					F			A	F

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Everglades		Seasonal and geographic distribution				Successional stage[d]				Substrate utilization[e]							Specific requirements[e]													
																					Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb				Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Tree Swallow		B																												
TRSW	317	W	*	OCT		O							*																FB	F
Rough-winged Swallow		B																												
RWSW	318	W	F	CT		S																							FB	F
Purple Martin		B	*	*		M										N						N			N					
PUMA	320	W																												
Fish Crow		B	*	*		S				F		F	*		*														A	F
FICR	322	W	*	*		S				F		F			*														A	F
Marsh Wren		B																												
MAWR	328	W	*	IOCT		M						*																	A	
Sedge Wren		B																												
SEWR	329	W	*	IOCT		S				F		*	*																	
White-eyed Vireo		B	*	*		S						F	*	P																
WEVI	337	W	FG SN	IOCT		S						F	*																	
Palm Warbler		B																												
PAWA	351	W	*	PSIOCT		M				*		*	*																	
Common Yellowthroat		B	*	*		O						*	*																	
COYE	354	W	*	PSIOCT		O						*	*																	
Eastern Meadowlark		B	*	*		S						*																		
EAME	358	W	*	*		S						*																		

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Everglades Species Code	Page	Seasonal and geographic distribution				Successional stage[d]				Substrate utilization[e]							Specific requirements													
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb				Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Red-winged Blackbird		B	*	*		O						*	*	P	P															
RWBL	358	W	*	*		O						*	P	P	P															
Boat-tailed Grackle		B	*	OCT		O				F		*	N	N	N														A	
BTGR	361	W	*	OCT		O				F		*	P	P	P														A	
Savannah Sparrow		B																												
SASP	371	W	*	*		M						*																		
Grasshopper Sparrow		B																												
GRSP	371	W	FG SN	PSIOCT		M						*																		
Sharp-tailed Sparrow		B																												
STSP	373	W	*	C		M				*		*																	SB	
Seaside Sparrow		B	*	C		M				*		*																	SB	
SESP	373	W	*	C		M				*		*																	SB	
Swamp Sparrow		B																												
SWSP	379	W	*	*		S						*																	FB	
Song Sparrow		B																												
SOSP	379	W	*	*		M						*	*																	
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

2. Tropical hardwoods

This vegetation type includes forests of central and southern Florida in which various species of mostly tropical broadleaf evergreen trees, singly or in combination, constitute a plurality of the stocking. These forests are rarely, if ever, flooded. No NFS equivalent exists. The type is the same as SAF type 105, tropical hardwoods; and RRE type 95, other tropical.

No BBC or WBPS was reported from this type in 1947-1979.

Characteristic bird species of this vegetation type are White-crowned Pigeons (B), Yellow-billed Cuckoos (B), Great Crested Flycatchers (W), Gray Catbirds (W), White-eyed Vireos, Black-whiskered Vireos (B), Prairie Warblers (W), Palm Warblers (W), and Northern Cardinals.

Black-whiskered Vireos are restricted to this type.

Wade et al. (1980) discuss this and other south Florida vegetation types.

Tropical Hardwoods

Species / Code	Page	Seasonal and geographic distribution				stage[d]				[e]							Specific requirements[e]				Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Brown Pelican		B	FG SN	C			M	M		N		N	N																S	
BRPE	264	W																												
Double-cr. Cormorant		B	*	OCT				M	M						N	N			N										A	F
DCCO	265	W																												
American Anhinga		B	FG SN	IOCT			M	M	M				NP	NP	NP														FB	
AMAN	265	W																												
Great Blue Heron		B	*	IOCT			M	M	S	F		F			NP	NP													A	F
GBHE	266	W																												
Green Heron		B	*	*			S	S	S	F		F	*	NP	NP											F			A	F
GRHE	267	W																												
Little Blue Heron		B	*	IOCT			S	S	M	F		F	*		NP														A	F
LBHE	267	W																												
Cattle Egret		B	*	SIOCT			S	S	M	F		F	NP		NP														F	
CAEG	268	W																												
Reddish Egret		B	F	C			M	S	M			F	NP		NP														SB	
REEG	268	W																												
Great Egret		B	*	IOCT			S	S	S	F		F	NP	NP	NP														A	F
GREG	269	W																												
Snowy Egret		B	*	OCT			S	S	S	F		F	NP		NP														A	F
SNEG	269	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Tropical Hardwoods

Species		Seasonal and geographic distribution				Successional stage[d]				Substrate utilization[e]							Specific requirements[e]													
Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic[c] provinces	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Louisiana Heron		B	*	OCT			S	S	M	F		F	NP		NP														A	
LOHE	270	W																												
Black-cr. Night Heron		B	*	IOCT			S	S	M			F	NP		NP														A	F
BCNH	270	W																												
Yellow-cr. Night Heron		B	*	PSIOCT			M	M	M	F				NP	NP														A	F
YCNH	271	W																												
Wood Stork		B	FG S	OCT			M	S	S				NP	NP	NP														A	
WOST	272	W																												
Glossy Ibis		B	*	OCT			S	S	M	F		F	NP	NP	NP														A	
GLIB	273	W																												
White Ibis		B	FG SN	SIOCT			S	S	M	F		F	NP	NP	NP														A	
WHIB	273	W																												
Roseate Spoonbill		B	F	C			S	S	M				N	N	NP														SB	
ROSP	274	W																												
Turkey Vulture		B	*	*			S	O	O	F	F	F	F		*															
TUVU	275	W	*	*		M	S	S	O	F	F	F	F		*															
Black Vulture		B	*	*			M	S	S	F	F	F	F		*															
BLVU	276	W	*	*		M	M	S	S	F	F	F	F		*															
Swallow-tailed Kite		B	FG S	OT					M	F		F	F	F	NP		NP												F	F
STKI	277	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Tropical Hardwoods		Seasonal and geographic distribution				stage [d]																			[e]					
Species Code	Page	Season of use [a]	States [b]	Physiographic provinces [c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water [f]	Flowing water [f]
Sharp-shinned Hawk		B																												
SSHA	278	W	*	*				S	S	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Cooper's Hawk		B																												
COHA	279	W	*	*				S	S	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Red-tailed Hawk		B	*	*					M	F		F			*	P														
RTHA	279	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F			*	P														
Red-shouldered Hawk		B	*	*				M	S	F		F	F		*														F	F
RSHA	280	W	*	*		S	M	S	S	F		F	F		*														F	F
Broad-winged Hawk		B																												
BWHA	280	W	F	CT				S	O	F	F	F	F		*															
Swainson's Hawk		B																												
SWHA	281	W	F	T		M				F		F																		
Short-tailed Hawk		B	F	CT				S	S	F		F	F		*															
STHA	281	W	F	CT				O	O	F		F	F		*															
Bald Eagle		B	*	IOCT					M						NP		NP							NP					A	F
BAEA	283	W	*	SIOCT				M	S						P		P							P					A	F
Northern Harrier		B																												
NOHA	283	W	*	*		M				F		*																		
Osprey		B	*	OCT				M	S						NP	NP	NP							NP					A	F
OSPR	284	W	FGS	OCT				M	S						P	P	P							P					A	F

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Tropical Hardwoods Species Code	Page	Seasonal and geographic distribution				Successional stage[d]				Substrate utilization[e]							Specific requirements[e]													
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Peregrine Falcon		B																												
PEFA	285	W	*	OCT		S	M	M	M	F		F			F	P											P			
Merlin		B																												
MERL	285	W	*	*		S	M	M	M	F		F																		
American Kestrel		B																												
AMKE	286	W	*	*		O	S	M	M	F		F			*	F					F									
Common Bobwhite		B	*	*		M	M			F		*								F										
COBO	287	W	*	*		M	M			F		*								F										
Wild Turkey		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M	F	*	*		P	P					F										
WITU	288	W	*	*			M	M	M	F	*	*		P	P					F										
Sandhill Crane		B	FG	OT		M						*																	F	
SACR	288	W	FG	OT		M						*																	F	
American Woodcock		B																												
AMWO	294	W	*	*				M	M	F	*	F																	F	
White-crowned Pigeon		B	F	C			S	O	M				N	*	*															
WCPI	296	W	F	C			S	O	M					*	*															
Mourning Dove		B	*	*			S	S	M	F		F		NP	NP															
MODO	297	W	*	*		S	S	S	M	F		F		P	P															
Common Ground Dove		B	FG SN	IOCT			S	S	M	F		*	N																	
CGDO	297	W	FG SN	IOCT		S	S	S	M	F		*	*																	

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Tropical Hardwoods

		Seasonal and geographic distribution				Successional stage[d]				[e]											Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species / Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Mangrove Cuckoo		B	F	C			M	O	S				*	*	*															
MACU	298	W	F	C			M	O	S				*	*	*															
Yellow-billed Cuckoo		B	*	*				O	O				N	*	*															
YBCU	298	W																												
Smooth-billed Ani		B	F	OT			M	M	M	F		F	*																	
SBAN	299	W	F	OT		M	M	M	M	F		F	*																	
Barn Owl		B	*	*		M	M			F		F	P		P									N	N		N			
BAOW	300	W	*	*		O	S			F		F	P		P									P	P		P			
Common Screech Owl		B	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*	N							N		N					
CSOW	300	W	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*	P							P		P					
Great Horned Owl		B	*	*					M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
GHOW	301	W	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Barred Owl		B	*	*					S	F	F	F	F	F	*		N								N				F	F
BDOW	302	W	*	*					S	F	F	F	F	F	*		P								P				F	F
Chuck-will's-widow		B	*	PSIOCT				M	M		N																			
CWWI	304	W	F	OCT				S	O		P																			
Whip-poor-will		B																												
WPWI	304	W	FG SN	OCT				S	S		P																			
Common Nighthawk		B	*	*		M	M	M	M	N																	N			
CONI	305	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Tropical Hardwoods Species Code	Page	Seasonal and geographic distribution				Successional stage[d]				Substrate utilization[e]							Specific requirements[e]													
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	Snags minimum d.b.h. 10" (25 cm)	Snags minimum d.b.h. 14" (35 cm)	Snags minimum d.b.h. 18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Ruby-throated Hummingbird		B																												
RTHU	306	W	F	OCT			S	O	O				*	*	*															
Belted Kingfisher		B	*	*				M	M				P	P		P					F					F		N	A	F
BEKI	306	W	*	*				M	M				P	P		P					F					F			A	F
Common Flicker		B	*	*				M	M	F		F			*	*			*				N		N					
COFL	307	W	*	*				S	S	F		F			*	*														
Pileated Woodpecker		B	*	*					S					F	*	*	*	*						*	N	F logs				
PIWO	307	W	*	*					S					F	*	*	*	*						*	P	F logs				
Red-bellied Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	S						*	*							N		N					
RBWO	308	W	*	*				M	S						*	*							P		P					
Yellow-bellied Sapsucker		B																												
YBSA	309	W	*	*				M	M				F	F	*							*			*					
Hairy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	M					*	*	*						*			*					
HAWO	309	W	*	*				M	M					*	*	*														
Downy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	M				*	*	*	*					*				*					
DOWO	310	W	*	*				M	M				*	*	*	*					*				*					
Gray Kingbird		B	FG S	C			S	O	M				*	*	*	F					F									
GRKI	311	W																												
Western Kingbird		B																												
WEKI	312	W	F	OCT		S						*	*			F					F									

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Tropical Hardwoods Species Code	Page	Seasonal and geographic distribution				stage[d]											Specific requirements[e]													
																					Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Scissor-tailed Flycatcher		B																												
STFL	312	W	F	OCT		S	M	M	M			*	*																	
Great Crested Flycatcher		B	*	*				M	S					F	*	N						N			N					
GCFL	313	W	F	CT				M	O					F	*	P														
Eastern Phoebe		B																												
EAPH	313	W	*	*		S	S	S	M	F		F	*						*											
Least Flycatcher		B																												
LEFL	315	W	F	T			O	S	M					*	*				*											
Tree Swallow		B																												
TRSW	317	W	*	OCT		O	O	S	M				*																FB	F
Rough-winged Swallow		B																												
RWSW	318	W	F	CT		M	M	M	M																				FB	F
Purple Martin		B	*	*		M										N						N			N					
PUMA	320	W																												
Blue Jay		B	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*															
BLJA	320	W	*	*			M	M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*															
American Crow		B	*	*				M	S	F		F			*			N												
AMCR	322	W	*	*		S	M	M	S	F		F			*			P												
Fish Crow		B	*	*			M	M	M	F		F	*		*														A	F
FICR	322	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F			*														A	F

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Tropical Hardwoods

Species / Code	Page	Seasonal and geographic distribution				Successional stage[d]				Substrate utilization[e]							Specific requirements[e]													
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	Snags minimum d.b.h. 10" (25 cm)	Snags minimum d.b.h. 14" (35 cm)	Snags minimum d.b.h. 18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Tufted Titmouse		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M				F	*	*	N					N									
TUTI	324	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M				F	*	*															
House Wren		B																												
HOWR	326	W	*	PSIOCT		M	O	M	M			F	*													*				
Carolina Wren		B	*	*			S	O	O	*	*	*	*	*							N				N	*	N			
CAWR	328	W	*	*			S	O	O	*	*	*	*	*												*				
Northern Mockingbird		B	*	*		M	M					F	*						*											
NOMO	329	W	*	*		M	M					F	*						*											
Gray Catbird		B																												
GRCA	330	W	*	PSIOCT			O	O	S				*																	
American Robin		B																												
AMRO	331	W	*	*			M	M	S	F		F	*	*	*															
Hermit Thrush		B																												
HETH	332	W	*	*				S	S		*	F	*					*												
Blue-gray Gnatcatcher		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M				*	*	*															
BGGN	334	W	FG SN	SIOCT			M	O	O				*	*	*															
Ruby-crowned Kinglet		B																												
RCKI	335	W	*	*			M	S	S				*	*	*															
Cedar Waxwing		B																												
CEWA	336	W	*	*			M	M	M				*	*	*				*											

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Tropical Hardwoods		Seasonal and geographic distribution				stage[d]											Specific requirements[e]													
																					Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
European Starling		B																												
EUST	337	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F																		
White-eyed Vireo		B	*	*			O	S	M			F	*	P																
WEVI	337	W	FG SN	IOCT			O	S	M			F	*																	
Yellow-throated Vireo		B																												
YTVI	338	W	F	CT				M	O					F	*															
Solitary Vireo		B																												
SOVI	338	W	*	PSIOCT				M	S					*	*															
Black-whiskered Vireo		B	F	C				O	O				N	*	*															
BWVI	339	W																												
Black-and-white Warbler		B																												
BAWW	340	W	FG SN	SIOCT				S	O					F	*															
Worm-eating Warbler		B																												
WEWA	342	W	F	CT				O	O		*	F	*																	
Orange-crowned Warbler		B																												
OCWA	344	W	*	PSIOCT		M	O	S	M			*	*	*																
Northern Parula Warbler		B																												
NPWA	345	W	F	OCT				M	O					*	*															
Yellow Warbler		B	*	*			M						*																	
YEWA	345	W	F	CT			S	S					*																	

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Tropical Hardwoods		Seasonal and geographic distribution				Successional stage[d]				Substrate utilization[e]							Specific requirements[e]													
																					Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Magnolia Warbler		B																												
MAWA	346	W	F	CT				S	O				*	*	*															
Cape May Warbler		B																												
CMWA	346	W	F	CT				S	O			*	*	*	*															
Black-thr. Blue Warbler		B																												
BTBW	347	W	F	CT				S	O				*	*	*															
Yellow-rumped Warbler		B																												
YRWA	347	W	*	*			M	M	M	*		*	*	*	*															
Black-thr. Green Warbler		B																												
BTGW	348	W	F	CT				S	O					F	*															
Yellow-throated Warbler		B																												
YTWA	349	W	FG SN	IOCT				M	S						*	F	*													
Prairie Warbler		B																												
PRWA	351	W	FG S	OCT			O	O	S			*	*																	
Palm Warbler		B																												
PAWA	351	W	*	PSIOCT		S	O	M		*		*	*																	
Ovenbird		B																												
OVEN	352	W	FG S	OCT				O	O	*	*																			
Northern Waterthrush		B																												
NOWA	352	W	F	OCT			S	S	M	*																			F	F

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Tropical Hardwoods		Seasonal and geographic distribution				stage[d]				[e]							Specific requirements													
																					Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Common Yellowthroat		B	*	*		M	S					*	*																	
COYE	354	W	*	PSIOCT		S	O					*	*																	
Yellow-breasted Chat		B																												
YBCH	355	W	*	OCT			O	M					*																	
American Redstart		B																												
AMRE	356	W	F	CT				O	S				*	*	*															
Eastern Meadowlark		B	*	*		M						*																		
EAME	358	W	*	*		M						*																		
Red-winged Blackbird		B	*	*		S	S					*	*	P	P															
RWBL	358	W	*	*		S	O	S	S			*	P	P	P															
Northern Oriole		B																												
NOOR	360	W	*	PSIOCT				M	S				*	F	*				*											
Brown-headed Cowbird		B																												
BHCO	362	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M	F		*	P	P	P															
Summer Tanager		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M					F	*															
SUTA	363	W																												
Northern Cardinal		B	*	*			S	O	O		*	*	*	F	F															
NOCA	364	W	*	*			O	O	O		*	*	*																	
Indigo Bunting		B																												
INBU	365	W	F	OCT		S	O	S	M			*	*																	

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Tropical Hardwoods

Species Code	Page	Seasonal and geographic distribution				Successional stage[d]				Substrate utilization							Specific requirements[e]													
																					Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Painted Bunting		B																												
PABU	366	W	F	OCT			O	O				*	*																	
Dickcissel		B																												
DICK	366	W	*	OCT		M	M					*	*																	
American Goldfinch		B																												
AMGO	369	W	*	*		S	S	S	S	*		*	*	*	*															
Rufous-sided Towhee		B	*	*			S	S	M		F	*	*	P	P															
RSTO	370	W	*	*			S	S	M		F	*	*																	
Savannah Sparrow		B																												
SASP	371	W	*	*		S						*																		
Grasshopper Sparrow		B																												
GRSP	371	W	FG SN	PSIOCT		S						*																		
Chipping Sparrow		B																												
CHSP	376	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		*	*	*	*				*											
Field Sparrow		B																												
FISP	376	W	*	*		M	M					*	*																	
Lincoln's Sparrow		B																												
LISP	378	W	*	PSIOC		M	M					*	*																F	
		B																												
		W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

This vegetation type includes forests, primarily in southern [illegible], which red mangrove (*Rhizophora mangle*), black mangrove (*Avicennia nitida*), or white mangrove (*Laguncularia racemosa*), singly or in combination, constitute a plurality of the stocking. There is no NFS equivalent. It is equivalent to SAF type 106, mangrove; and to RRE type 93, mangrove. The type is most closely associated with brackish and saltwater environments. As such it provides important nesting substrates for numerous aquatic species such as Magnificent Frigatebirds and many waders.

No BBC or WBPS was done in this type in the Southeast 1947-1979.

Characteristic of this vegetation type are Louisiana Herons (B), White Ibises (B), Gray Kingbirds (B), Fish Crows, Black-whiskered Vireos (B), Prairie Warblers (W), and Red-winged Blackbirds.

Restricted to this type are Magnificent Frigatebirds (B), Reddish Egrets (B), Roseate Spoonbills (B), Mangrove Cuckoos, and Black-whiskered Vireos (B).

Wade et al. (1980) discuss this and other south Florida vegetation types.

Mangroves

			geographic distribution				stage[d]										Specific requirements													
																					Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area		Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber		Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Brown Pelican		B	FG SN	C			O	S		N		N	N																S	
BRPE	264	W																												
Double-cr. Cormorant		B	*	OCT				S							N	N			N										A	F
DCCO	265	W																												
American Anhinga		B	FG SN	IOCT			M	S					NP	NP	NP														FB	
AMAN	265	W																												
Magnificent Frigatebird		B	F	C			S	O					NP																S	
MAFR	266	W																												
Great Blue Heron		B	*	IOCT			M	O		F		F			NP	NP													A	F
GBHE	266	W																												
Green Heron		B	*	*			O	O		F		F	*	NP	NP											F			A	F
GRHE	267	W																												
Little Blue Heron		B	*	IOCT			S	S		F		F	*		NP														A	F
LBHE	267	W																												
Cattle Egret		B	*	SIOCT			M	O		F		F	NP		NP														F	
CAEG	268	W																												
Reddish Egret		B	F	C			S	O				F	NP		NP														SB	
REEG	268	W																												
Great Egret		B	*	IOCT			S	O		F		F	NP	NP	NP														A	F
GREG	269	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Mangroves

Species Code	Page	geographic distribution				Successional				Substrate utilization							Specific requirements													
		Season of use [a]	States [b]	Physiographic provinces [c]	Local area		Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	.	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water [f]	Flowing water [f]
Snowy Egret		B	*	OCT			S	O		F		F	NP		NP														A	F
SNEG	269	W																												
Louisiana Heron		B	*	OCT			S	O		F		F	NP		NP														A	
LOHE	270	W																												
Black-cr. Night Heron		B	*	IOCT			S	O				F	NP		NP														A	F
BCNH	270	W																												
Yellow-cr. Night Heron		B	*	PSIOCT			S	S		F				NP	NP														A	F
YCNH	271	W																												
Wood Stork		B	FG S	OCT			M	S					NP	NP	NP														A	
WOST	272	W																												
Glossy Ibis		B	*	OCT			S	O		F		F	NP	NP	NP														A	
GLIB	273	W																												
White Ibis		B	FG SN	SIOCT			S	O		F		F	NP	NP	NP														A	
WHIB	273	W																												
Roseate Spoonbill		B	F	C			M	O					N	N	NP														SB	
ROSP	274	W																												
Sharp-shinned Hawk		B																												
SSHA	278	W	*	*				M		F	F	F	F	F	*															
Cooper's Hawk		B																												
COHA	279	W	*	*				M		F	F	F	F	F	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Mangroves

Species Code	Page	Seasonal and geographic distribution				Successional stage[d]				Substrate utilization[e]							Specific requirements[e]													
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area		Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber		Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Red-shouldered Hawk		B	*	*				M		F		F	F		*														F	F
RSHA	280	W	*	*			M	M		F		F	F		*														F	F
Broad-winged Hawk		B																												
BWHA	280	W	F	CT				M		F	F	F	F		*															
Short-tailed Hawk		B	F	CT				O		F		F	F		*															
STHA	281	W	F	CT				O		F		F	F		*															
Bald Eagle		B	*	IOCT				M							NP		NP							NP					A	F
BAEA	283	W	*	SIOCT				M							P		P							P					A	F
Osprey		B	*	OCT				S							NP	NP	NP							NP					A	F
OSPR	284	W	FG S	OCT				S							P	P	P							P					A	F
Peregrine Falcon		B																												
PEFA	285	W	*	OCT			M	M		F		F			F	P											P			
Merlin		B																												
MERL	285	W	*	*			M	M		F		F																		
White-crowned Pigeon		B	F	C			S	O					N	*	*															
WCPI	296	W	F	C			S	O						*	*															
Mangrove Cuckoo		B	F	C			M	O					*	*	*															
MACU	298	W	F	C			M	O					*	*	*															
Yellow-billed Cuckoo		B	*	*				S					N	*	*															
YBCU	298	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Mangroves

Species			geographic distribution			stage[d]				e							Specific requirements[e]				Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area		Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber		Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Smooth-billed Ani		B	F	OT			M	S		F		F	*																	
SBAN	299	W	F	OT			M	S		F		F	*																	
Ruby-throated Hummingbird		B																												
RTHU	306	W	F	OCT			M	M					*	*	*															
Belted Kingfisher		B	*	*				M					P	P		P					F					F		N	A	F
BEKI	306	W	*	*				M					P	P		P					F					F			A	F
Pileated Woodpecker		B	*	*				M						F	*	*	*	*						*	N	F logs				
PIWO	307	W	*	*				M						F	*	*	*	*						*	P	F logs				
Red-bellied Woodpecker		B	*	*				S							*	*							N		N					
RBWO	308	W	*	*				S							*	*							P		P					
Yellow-bellied Sapsucker		B																												
YBSA	309	W	*	*				M					F	F	*							*			*					
Gray Kingbird		B	FG S	C			S	O					*	*	*	F					F									
GRKI	311	W																												
Great Crested Flycatcher		B	*	*				M						F	*	N						N			N					
GCFL	313	W	F	CT				M						F	*	P														
Eastern Phoebe		B																												
EAPH	313	W	*	*			M	M		F		F	*						*											
Tree Swallow		B																												
TRSW	317	W	*	OCT			O	S					*																FB	F

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Mangroves

Species / Code	Page	Seasonal and geographic distribution				Successional stage[d]				Substrate utilization							Specific requirements[e]													
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area		Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber		Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Rough-winged Swallow		B																												
RWSW	318	W	F	CT			M	M																					FB	F
Purple Martin		B	*	*			M									N						N			N					
PUMA	320	W																												
Fish Crow		B	*	*			S	O		F		F	*		*														A	F
FICR	322	W	*	*			S	O		F		F			*														A	F
House Wren		B																												
HOWR	326	W	*	PSIOCT			M					F	*													*				
Carolina Wren		B	*	*			M	M		*	*	*	*	*							N				N	*	N			
CAWR	328	W	*	*			M	M		*	*	*	*	*												*				
Gray Catbird		B																												
GRCA	330	W	*	PSIOCT			S	S					*																	
American Robin		B																												
AMRO	331	W	*	*			M	M		F		F	*	*	*															
Blue-gray Gnatcatcher		B																												
BGGN	334	W	FG SN	SIOCT			M	M					*	*	*															
Ruby-crowned Kinglet		B																												
RCKI	335	W	*	*			M	S					*	*	*															
Cedar Waxwing		B																												
CEWA	336	W	*	*			M	M					*	*	*				*											

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Mangroves		geographic distribution				stage[c]				tilization[e]							Specific requirements[e]													
																					Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area		Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber		Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
White-eyed Vireo		B	*	*			S	M				F	*	P																
WEVI	337	W	FG SN	IOCT			O	S				F	*																	
Solitary Vireo		B																												
SOVI	338	W	*	PSIOCT				M						*	*															
Black-whiskered Vireo		B	F	C				O					N	*	*															
BWVI	339	W																												
Black-and-white Warbler		B																												
BAWW	340	W	FG SN	SIOCT				M						F	*															
Orange-crowned Warbler		B																												
OCWA	344	W	*	PSIOCT			M	M				*	*	*																
Northern Parula Warbler		B																												
NPWA	345	W	F	OCT				M						*	*															
Yellow Warbler		B	*	*			O	O					*																	
YEWA	345	W	F	CT			O	S					*																	
Magnolia Warbler		B																												
MAWA	346	W	F	CT				M					*	*	*															
Cape May Warbler		B																												
CMWA	346	W	F	CT				M				*	*	*	*															
Black-thr. Blue Warbler		B																												
BTBW	347	W	F	CT				M					*	*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Mangroves

Species		geographic distribution				Successional stage[d]				Substrate utilization							Specific requirements[e]													
																					Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area		Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber		Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Yellow-rumped Warbler		B																												
YRWA	347	W	*	*			O	O		*		*	*	*	*															
Black-thr. Green Warbler		B																												
BTGW	348	W	F	CT				M						F	*															
Yellow-throated Warbler		B																												
YTWA	349	W	FG SN	IOCT				M							*	F	*													
Prairie Warbler		B	*	*			S					F	*																	
PRWA	351	W	FG S	OCT			S	S				*	*																	
Palm Warbler		B																												
PAWA	351	W	*	PSIOCT			S	M		*		*	*																	
Northern Waterthrush		B																												
NOWA	352	W	F	OCT			O	O		*																			F	F
Common Yellowthroat		B	*	*			S					*	*																	
COYE	354	W	*	PSIOCT			S					*	*																	
Yellow-breasted Chat		B																												
YBCH	355	W	*	OCT			S	M					*																	
American Redstart		B																												
AMRE	356	W	F	CT				O					*	*	*															
Red-winged Blackbird		B	*	*			O	S				*	*	P	P															
RWBL	358	W	*	*			O	S				*	P	P	P															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

CLEMSON UNIVERSITY LIBRARY
DOCUMENTS DEPT.

Mangroves		geographic distribution				stage[d]				utilization[e]							Specific requirements[e]													
																					Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area		Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber		Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Common Grackle		B																												
COGR	362	W	*	*			M	M		F		*	P	P	P															
Northern Cardinal		B	*	*				M			*	*	*	F	F															
NOCA	364	W	*	*				M			*	*	*																	
Indigo Bunting		B																												
INBU	365	W	F	OCT			M	M				*	*																	
Painted Bunting		B	FG SN	IOC			M	M				*	*	P																
PABU	366	W	F	OCT			M	M				*	*																	
American Goldfinch		B																												
AMGO	369	W	*	*			M	M		*		*	*	*	*															
Rufous-sided Towhee		B	*	*			M	M			F	*	*	P	P															
RSTO	370	W	*	*			M	M			F	*	*																	
Swamp Sparrow		B																												
SWSP	379	W	*	*			M					*																	FB	
Song Sparrow		B																												
SOSP	379	W	*	*			M					*	*																	
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

A pine savanna is a "forest" of widely scattered trees in which longleaf pine, slash pine, or south Florida slash pine, singly or in combination, compose a plurality of the stocking. The type is most prominent in central and southern Florida, in a physiographic situation such as marl flats and forest prairies (RRE Physiogr. Class 37). Basal areas are low, about 10-20 sq. ft./acre (0.2-5 sq. m/ha). The savanna physiognomy, combining trees with grassland, is primarily responsible for the birds associated with the type.

The type has no specific SAF or RRE type designation. NFS type 98, undrained flatwoods, is an approximation. The NFS Compartment Prescription Fieldbook (USDA 1979) indicates that such areas may be designated as nonstocked within one of the management types.

No BBC was conducted in this type in the Southeast 1947-1979. A single plot was censused during nine WBPS.

Characteristic of this vegetation type are Crested Caracaras, American Kestrels (W), Common Bobwhites, Sandhill Cranes, Burrowing Owls, Eastern Bluebirds, Pine Warblers, Eastern Meadowlarks, Rufous-sided Towhees, and Bachman's Sparrows.

Restricted to this type are White-tailed Kites, Crested Caracaras, and Sandhill Cranes.

Pine Savanna			geographic distribution			stage[d]				utilization[e]							Specific requirements[e]				Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Great Blue Heron		B																												
GBHE	266	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F			P	P													A	F
Little Blue Heron		B																												
LBHE	267	W	*	OCT		M				F		F	*		P														A	F
Cattle Egret		B																												
CAEG	268	W	FG SN	OCT		S	M	M	M	F		F	P		P														F	
Great Egret		B																												
GREG	269	W	*	IOCT		M				F		F	P	P	P														A	F
Snowy Egret		B																												
SNEG	269	W	*	OCT		M				F		F	P		P														A	F
Louisiana Heron		B																												
LOHE	270	W	*	OCT		M				F		F	P		P														A	
Black-cr. Night Heron		B																												
BCNH	270	W	*	IOCT		M						F	P		P														A	F
Least Bittern		B	*	PSIOC		M						*																	FB	
LEBI	271	W	F	CT		M						*																	FB	
American Bittern		B	FN V	OCT		M						*																	A	
AMBI	272	W	*	SIOCT		S						*																	A	
Wood Stork		B																												
WOST	272	W	FG	OCT		M									P														A	

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Pine Savanna

Code	Species	Page	Seasonal and geographic distribution				Successional stage[d]				Substrate utilization[e]							Specific requirements[e]												
			Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	Snags minimum d.b.h. 10" (25 cm)	Snags minimum d.b.h. 14" (35 cm)	Snags minimum d.b.h. 18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
	Glossy Ibis		B																												
GLIB		273	W	*	OCT		M				F		F		P	P														A	
	White Ibis		B																												
WHIB		273	W	FG SN	OCT		M				F		F		P	P														A	
	Turkey Vulture		B	*	*			S	O	O	F	F	F	F		*															
TUVU		275	W	*	*		M	S	O	O	F	F	F	F		*															
	Black Vulture		B	*	*			S	O	O	F	F	F	F		*															
BLVU		276	W	*	*		M	S	O	O	F	F	F	F		*															
	White-tailed Kite		B	F	T		O	S	S	M	F		F	N		N															
WTKI		276	W	F	T		O	S	S	M	F		F																		
	Swallow-tailed Kite		B	FG S	OT					S	F		F	F	F	NP		NP												F	F
STKI		277	W																												
	Snail Kite		B	F	T		S	S	M	M			*																	F	
SNKI		278	W	F	T		S	S	M	M			*																	F	
	Red-tailed Hawk		B	*	*				M	M	F		F			*	P														
RTHA		279	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F			*	P														
	Red-shouldered Hawk		B	*	*				M	M	F		F	F		*														F	F
RSHA		280	W	*	*		S	M	S	S	F		F	F		*														F	F
	Short-tailed Hawk		B	F	CT				M	M	F		F	F		*															
STHA		281	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Pine Savanna		Seasonal and geographic distribution				stage [d]															Snags minimum d.b.h.				[e]					
Species Code	Page	Season of use [a]	States [b]	Physiographic provinces [c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water [f]	Flowing water [f]
Bald Eagle		B	*	IOCT					S						NP		NP							NP					A	F
BAEA	283	W	*	SIOCT				M	S						P		P							P					A	F
Northern Harrier		B																												
NOHA	283	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		*																		
Osprey		B	*	OCT				M	S						NP	NP	NP							NP					A	F
OSPR	284	W	FG S	OCT				M	S						P	P	P							P					A	F
Crested Caracara		B	F	OT		O	S	S	M	F		F	N						*											
CRCA	284	W	F	OT		O	S	S	M	F		F							*											
Peregrine Falcon		B																												
PEFA	285	W	*	OCT		M	M	M	M	F		F			F	P											P			
Merlin		B																												
MERL	285	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F																		
American Kestrel		B	*	MPSIO		S	S	S	S	F		F			*	*					F		*		N					
AMKE	286	W	*	*		O	O	O	O	F		F			*	F					F									
Common Bobwhite		B	*	*		M	O	O	O	F		*								F										
COBO	287	W	*	*		M	O	O	O	F		*								F										
Wild Turkey		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M	F	*	*		P	P					F										
WITU	288	W	*	*			M	M	M	F	*	*		P	P					F										
Sandhill Crane		B	FG	OT		O	S	M	M			*																	F	
SACR	288	W	FG	OT		S	S	M	M			*																	F	

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Pine Savanna Species Code	Page	Seasonal and geographic distribution: Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Successional stage[d]: Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Substrate utilization: Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Specific requirements[e]: Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h.: 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Limpkin		B	FG	OT		M	M	M	M	F		*	N																F	F
LIMP	289	W	FG	OT		M	M	M	M	F		*																	F	F
King Rail		B	*	PSIOCT		M				F		*																	FB	
KIRA	289	W	*	OCT		M				F		*																	FB	
Killdeer		B	*	*		M	M	M	M	*		*																		
KILL	294	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	*		*																		
Rock Dove		B	*	*		M				F		F															N			
RODO	296	W	*	*		M				F		F															P			
Mourning Dove		B	*	*			S	S	M	F		F		NP	NP															
MODO	297	W	*	*		S	S	S	M	F		F		P	P															
Common Ground Dove		B	FG SN	IOCT			M	M	M	F		*	N																	
CGDO	297	W	FG SN	IOCT		M	M	M	M	F		*	*																	
Barn Owl		B	*	*		S	M	M	M	F		F	P		P									N	N		N			
BAOW	300	W	*	*		S	M	M	M	F		F	P		P									P	P		P			
Common Screech Owl		B	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*	N							N		N					
CSOW	300	W	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*	P							P		P					
Great Horned Owl		B	*	*					S	F	F	F	F	F	*															
GHOW	301	W	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Burrowing Owl		B	F	OCT		O				*		*																		
BUOW	301	W	F	OCT		O				*		*																		

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Pine Savanna

Species / Code	Page	Season of use[a]	geographic distribution: States[b]	geographic distribution: Physiographic provinces[c]	geographic distribution: Local area	stage[d]: Grass-forb	stage[d]: Shrub-seedling	stage[d]: Sapling-poletimber	stage[d]: Sawtimber	[e] Bare soil	[e] Thick deciduous leaf litter	[e] Herbaceous groundcover	[e] Shrubs	[e] Midstory canopy	[e] Overstory canopy	[e] Dead trees or limbs	Specific requirements[e]: Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Specific requirements[e]: Closed canopy	Specific requirements[e]: Open canopy	Specific requirements[e]: Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h.: 6" (15 cm)	Snags minimum d.b.h.: 10" (25 cm)	Snags minimum d.b.h.: 14" (35 cm)	Snags minimum d.b.h.: 18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Short-eared Owl		B																												
SEOW	303	W	*	PSIOC		M	M			F		*																		
Common Nighthawk		B	*	*		M	M	M	M	N																	N			
CONI	305	W																												
Common Flicker		B	*	*				M	S	F		F			*	*			*				N		N					
COFL	307	W	*	*				S	S	F		F			*	*														
Red-bellied Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	M						*	*							N		N					
RBWO	308	W	*	*				M	M						*	*							P		P					
Red-headed Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	S			F				*			*				N							
RHWO	308	W	*	*				M	S			F	F	F	*	*														
Yellow-bellied Sapsucker		B																												
YBSA	309	W	*	*				M	M				F	F	*							*			*					
Downy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	M				*	*	*	*					*				*					
DOWO	310	W	*	*				M	M				*	*	*	*					*				*					
Red-cockaded Woodpecker		B	*	PSIOC				M	S					F	F		N								*					
RCWO	310	W	*	PSIOC				M	S					F	F		P								*					
Eastern Kingbird		B	*	*		M	M	M	M			F			*	F			*		F									
EAKI	311	W																												
Great Crested Flycatcher		B	*	*				M	M					F	*	N						N			N					
GCFL	313	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Pine Savanna			Seasonal and geographic distribution			Successional stage[d]				Substrate utilization[e]							Specific requirements[e]												
																					Snags minimum d.b.h.								
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seeding	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Eastern Phoebe		B																												
EAPH	313	W	*	*		M	S	M	M	F		F	*						*											
Eastern Pewee		B	*	*				M	M					F	*	F					F									
EAPE	316	W																												
Tree Swallow		B																												
TRSW	317	W	*	OCT		M	M	M	M				*																FB	F
Purple Martin		B	*	*		M										N						N			N					
PUMA	320	W																												
Brown-headed Nuthatch		B	*	PSIOC				M	S					*	*	N					N				N					
BHNU	325	W	*	PSIOC			M	M	S					*	*															
Brown Creeper		B																												
BRCR	326	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M					*	*															
House Wren		B																												
HOWR	326	W	*	PSIOCT		M	S	S	S			F	*													*				
Marsh Wren		B																												
MAWR	328	W	*	IOCT		M	M					*																	A	
Sedge Wren		B																												
SEWR	329	W	*	IOCT		M	M	M	M	F		*	*																	
Northern Mockingbird		B	*	*		M	M	M	M			F	*						*											
NOMO	329	W	*	*		M	M	M	M			F	*						*											

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Pine Savanna

Species Code	Page		geographic distribution			stage											Specific requirements[e]				Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Brown Thrasher		B	*	*			M	M	M	F	F	F	*	P	P															
BRTH	330	W	*	*			S	M	M	*	*	*	*																	
Eastern Bluebird		B	*	MPSIOC		O	S	O	O	F		F			*	NP			*		NP									
EABL	333	W	*	*		O	S	O	O	F		F			*	P			*		P									
Ruby-crowned Kinglet		B																												
RCKI	335	W	*	*			M	M	M				*	*	*															
Loggerhead Shrike		B	*	*		S	M	S	S	F		F	N																	
LOSH	336	W	*	*		S	M	S	S	F		F	F																	
Yellow-rumped Warbler		B																												
YRWA	347	W	*	*			M	M	M	*		*	*	*	*															
Pine Warbler		B	*	*				M	S					F	*															
PIWA	350	W	*	*				S	S			F		F	*															
Prairie Warbler		B																												
PRWA	351	W	FG S	OCT			S	S	M			*	*																	
Palm Warbler		B																												
PAWA	351	W	*	PSIOCT		M	S	M		*		*	*																	
Common Yellowthroat		B	*	*		M	M					*	*																	
COYE	354	W	*	PSIOCT		S	S					*	*																	
House Sparrow		B	*	*		M				F		F																		
HOSP	357	W	*	*		M				F		F																		

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Pine Savanna

Code / Species	Page	Seasonal and geographic distribution				Successional stage[d]				Substrate utilization[e]							Specific requirements[e]													
																					Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Eastern Meadowlark		B	*	*		O	M	M	M			*																		
EAME	358	W	*	*		O	M	M	M			*																		
Red-winged Blackbird		B	*	*		S	S	S	S			*	*	P	P															
RWBL	358	W	*	*		M	M	M	M			*	P	P	P															
Spotted Oriole		B	F	CT					M					F	*				*											
SPOR	359	W	F	CT					M					F	*				*											
Common Grackle		B	*	*				S	S	F		F	N	N	N															
COGR	362	W																												
Summer Tanager		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M					F	*															
SUTA	363	W																												
Northern Cardinal		B	*	*			M	M	M		*	*	*	F	F															
NOCA	364	W	*	*			M	M	M		*	*	*																	
American Goldfinch		B																												
AMGO	369	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	*		*	*	*	*															
Rufous-sided Towhee		B	*	*			M	M	M		F	*	*	P	P															
RSTO	370	W	*	*			M	M	M		F	*	*																	
Savannah Sparrow		B																												
SASP	371	W	*	*		S	M	M	M			*																		
Grasshopper Sparrow		B	*	MPSIOC		S	M	M	M			*																		
GRSP	371	W	FG SN	PSIOCT		O	S	S	S			*																		

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Pine Savanna

Species Code	Page	geographic distribution Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	stage[d] Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Henslow's Sparrow		B																												
HESP	372	W	FG SN	PSIOC		O	M	S	O			*																		
Le Conte's Sparrow		B																												
LCSP	372	W	FG S	PSIOC		M	M	M	M			*																		
Vesper Sparrow		B																												
VESP	374	W	*	PSIOC		M	M	M	M	*		*																		
Bachman's Sparrow		B	*	PSIOC			O	O	O			*	*	P	P				*											
BASP	374	W	*	SIOC		O	O	O	O			*																		
Chipping Sparrow		B																												
CHSP	376	W	*	*		S	S	S	S	F		*	*	*	*				*											
Field Sparrow		B																												
FISP	376	W	*	*		M	M					*	*																	
White-crowned Sparrow		B																												
WCSP	377	W	*	*		M	M			F		*	*																	
Lincoln's Sparrow		B																												
LISP	378	W	*	PSIOC		M	M	M	M			*	*																F	
Swamp Sparrow		B																												
SWSP	379	W	*	*		M	M	M	M			*																	FB	
Song Sparrow		B																												
SOSP	379	W	*	*		M	M	M	M			*	*																	

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

This type comprises forests of sandy, upland topography in which various species of scrub oaks (Quercus spp.) make up at least 75 percent of the stocking. This type is the same as NFS types 57, scrub oak; and 49, bear oak-southern scrub oaks-yellow pine (in part). It corresponds to SAF type 72, southern scrub oak; and to RRE type 57, southern scrub oak.

Four censuses have been published from this type, all from Florida; two BBC and two WBPS were conducted on shrub-seedling plots.

Characteristic of this vegetation type are Common Bobwhites, Common Ground Doves, Scrub Jays, Carolina Wrens, and Rufous-sided Towhees.

Scrub Jays are restricted to the type.

Southern Scrub Oak

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	geographic distribution States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	stage Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber		Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Specific requirements[e] Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Turkey Vulture		B	*	*			S	O		F	F	F	F		*															
TUVU	275	W	*	*		M	S	O		F	F	F	F		*															
Black Vulture		B	*	*			S	O		F	F	F	F		*															
BLVU	276	W	*	*		M	S	O		F	F	F	F		*															
White-tailed Kite		B	F	T		S	M	M		F		F	N		N															
WTKI	276	W	F	T		S	M	M		F		F																		
Sharp-shinned Hawk		B																												
SSHA	278	W	*	*				S		F	F	F	F	F	*															
Cooper's Hawk		B	*	MPSIOC				M		F	F	F	F	F	*			N												
COHA	279	W	*	*				S		F	F	F	F	F	*															
Red-tailed Hawk		B																												
RTHA	279	W	*	*		M	M	M		F		F			*	P														
Northern Harrier		B																												
NOHA	283	W	*	*		M				F		*																		
Crested Caracara		B	F	OT		M				F		F	N						*											
CRCA	284	W	F	OT		M				F		F							*											
American Kestrel		B	*	MPSIO		M				F		F			*	*					F		*		N					
AMKE	286	W	*	*		S	M			F		F			*	F					F									
Common Bobwhite		B	*	*		M	S			F		*								F										
COBO	287	W	*	*		M	S			F		*								F										

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Southern Scrub Oak Species Code	Page		geographic distribution			stage[d]															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber		Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
White-crowned Pigeon		B	F	C			M	M					N	*	*															
WCPI	296	W	F	C			M	M						*	*															
Rock Dove		B	*	*		M				F		F															N			
RODO	296	W	*	*		M				F		F															P			
Mourning Dove		B	*	*			O	O		F		F		NP	NP															
MODO	297	W	*	*		S	S	S		F		F		P	P															
Common Ground Dove		B	FG SN	IOCT			O	S		F		*	N																	
CGDO	297	W	FG SN	IOCT		O	O	S		F		*	*																	
Yellow-billed Cuckoo		B	*	*				M					N	*	*															
YBCU	298	W																												
Smooth-billed Ani		B	F	OT			M	M		F		F	*																	
SBAN	299	W	F	OT		M	M	M		F		F	*																	
Barn Owl		B	*	*		S	M			F		F	P		P									N	N		N			
BAOW	300	W	*	*		S	M			F		F	P		P									P	P		P			
Common Screech Owl		B	*	*				M		F	F	F	F	*	*	N							N		N					
CSOW	300	W	*	*				M		F	F	F	F	*	*	P							P		P					
Burrowing Owl		B	F	OCT		S				*		*																		
BUOW	301	W	F	OCT		S				*		*																		
Chuck-will's-widow		B	*	PSIOCT				M			N																			
CWWI	304	W	F	OCT				S			P																			

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
G — Georgia
N — North Carolina
F — Florida
S — South Carolina
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Southern Scrub Oak

Species / Code	Page	Season of use[a]	geographic distribution: States[b]	geographic distribution: Physiographic provinces[c]	geographic distribution: Local area	Successional stage[d]: Grass-forb	Successional stage[d]: Shrub-seedling	Successional stage[d]: Sapling-poletimber	Successional stage[d]	Substrate utilization[e]: Bare soil	Substrate utilization[e]: Thick deciduous leaf litter	Substrate utilization[e]: Herbaceous groundcover	Substrate utilization[e]: Shrubs	Substrate utilization[e]: Midstory canopy	Substrate utilization[e]: Overstory canopy	Substrate utilization[e]: Dead trees or limbs	Specific requirements[e]: Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Specific requirements[e]: Closed canopy	Specific requirements[e]: Open canopy	Specific requirements[e]: Grassy forest openings	Specific requirements[e]: minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	Specific requirements[e]: minimum d.b.h. 10" (25 cm)	Specific requirements[e]: minimum d.b.h. 14" (35 cm)	Specific requirements[e]: minimum d.b.h. 18" (46 cm)	Specific requirements[e]: Living cavity trees	Specific requirements[e]: Slash piles & windows	Specific requirements[e]: Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Specific requirements[e]: Earth banks	Specific requirements[e]: Standing water[f]	Specific requirements[e]: Flowing water[f]
Whip-poor-will		B																												
WPWI	304	W	FG SN	OCT				M			P																			
Common Nighthawk		B	*	*		S	O	S		N																	N			
CONI	305	W																												
Ruby-throated Hummingbird		B	*	*			M	M					*	*	*															
RTHU	306	W	F	OCT			S	S					*	*	*															
Common Flicker		B	*	*				M		F		F			*	*			*				N		N					
COFL	307	W	*	*				M		F		F			*	*														
Red-bellied Woodpecker		B	*	*				M							*	*							N		N					
RBWO	308	W	*	*				M							*	*							P		P					
Red-headed Woodpecker		B	*	*				M				F				*			*				N							
RHWO	308	W	*	*				M				F	F	F	*	*														
Yellow-bellied Sapsucker		B																												
YBSA	309	W	*	*				S					F	F	*							*			*					
Hairy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M						*	*	*						*			*					
HAWO	309	W	*	*				M						*	*	*														
Downy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M					*	*	*	*					*				*					
DOWO	310	W	*	*				M					*	*	*	*					*				*					
Great Crested Flycatcher		B	*	*				M						F	*	N						N			N					
GCFL	313	W	F	CT				M						F	*	P														

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Southern Scrub Oak			geographic distribution			stage[d]															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber		Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Eastern Phoebe		B																												
EAPH	313	W	*	*		M	M	M		F		F	*						*											
Least Flycatcher		B																												
LEFL	315	W	F	T			M	M						*	*				*											
Eastern Pewee		B	*	*				M						F	*	F					F									
EAPE	316	W																												
Purple Martin		B	*	*		M										N						N			N					
PUMA	320	W																												
Blue Jay		B	*	*				S		F	F	F	F	*	*															
BLJA	320	W	*	*			M	S		F	F	F	F	*	*															
Scrub Jay		B	F	OC			S	O					*																	
SCJA	321	W	F	OC			S	O					*																	
American Crow		B	*	*				M		F		F			*			N												
AMCR	322	W	*	*		S	M	M		F		F			*			P												
Fish Crow		B	*	*			M	S		F		F	*		*														A	F
FICR	322	W	*	*		M	M	S		F		F			*														A	F
Carolina Chickadee		B	*	MPSIOC				M					F	*	*	N					NP				NP					
CACH	323	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M					F	*	*	P					P				P					
Tufted Titmouse		B	*	MPSIOC				S					F	*	*	N					N									
TUTI	324	W	*	MPSIOC			M	S					F	*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Southern Scrub Oak

		geographic distribution				Successional stage[d]				Substrate utilization[e]							Specific requirements													
																					minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber		Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Brown Creeper		B																												
BRCR	326	W	*	MPSIOC				M						*	*															
House Wren		B																												
HOWR	326	W	*	PSIOCT		M	O	S				F	*													*				
Bewick's Wren		B																												
BEWR	327	W	FG	PSIOC			M					*	*													*				
Carolina Wren		B	*	*			S	O		*	*	*	*	*							N				N	*	N			
CAWR	328	W	*	*			S	O		*	*	*	*	*												*				
Northern Mockingbird		B	*	*		M	M	M				F	*						*											
NOMO	329	W	*	*		M	M	M				F	*						*											
Gray Catbird		B																												
GRCA	330	W	*	PSIOCT			S	S					*																	
Brown Thrasher		B	*	*			O	M		F	F	F	*	P	P															
BRTH	330	W	*	*			O	S		*	*	*	*																	
American Robin		B																												
AMRO	331	W	*	*			M	M		F		F	*	*	*															
Hermit Thrush		B																												
HETH	332	W	*	*				M			*	F	*					*												
Eastern Bluebird		B	*	MPSIOC		S	M	S		F		F			*	NP			*		NP									
EABL	333	W	*	*		S	M	S		F		F			*	P			*		P									

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Southern Scrub Oak		geographic distribution				stage [d]															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use [a]	States [b]	Physiographic provinces [c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber		Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water [f]	Flowing water [f]
Blue-gray Gnatcatcher		B	*	MPSIOC				M					*	*	*															
BGGN	334	W	FG SN	SIOCT			M	S					*	*	*															
Ruby-crowned Kinglet		B																												
RCKI	335	W	*	*			M	S					*	*	*															
Cedar Waxwing		B																												
CEWA	336	W	*	*			M	M					*	*	*				*											
White-eyed Vireo		B	*	*			S	M				F	*	P																
WEVI	337	W	FG SN	IOCT			O	S				F	*																	
Solitary Vireo		B																												
SOVI	338	W	*	PSIOCT				S						*	*															
Black-and-white Warbler		B																												
BAWW	340	W	FG SN	SIOCT				M						F	*															
Orange-crowned Warbler		B																												
OCWA	344	W	*	PSIOCT		M	S	M				*	*	*																
Northern Parula Warbler		B																												
NPWA	345	W	F	OCT				M						*	*															
Yellow Warbler		B																												
YEWA	345	W	F	CT			M						*																	
Yellow-rumped Warbler		B																												
YRWA	347	W	*	*			S	S		*		*	*	*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Southern Scrub Oak

Species Code	Page	distribution				Successional[d]				Substrate utilization[e]											minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic[c] provinces	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber		Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Yellow-throated Warbler		B																												
YTWA	349	W	FG SN	IOCT				M							*	F	*													
Prairie Warbler		B																												
PRWA	351	W	FG S	OCT			O	O				*	*																	
Palm Warbler		B																												
PAWA	351	W	*	PSIOCT		S	O	M		*		*	*																	
Ovenbird		B																												
OVEN	352	W	FG S	OCT				S		*	*																			
Common Yellowthroat		B	*	*			M					*	*																	
COYE	354	W	*	PSIOCT		M	S					*	*																	
Yellow-breasted Chat		B																												
YBCH	355	W	*	OCT			O	M					*																	
House Sparrow		B	*	*		M				F		F																		
HOSP	357	W	*	*		M				F		F																		
Eastern Meadowlark		B	*	*		M						*																		
EAME	358	W	*	*		M						*																		
Red-winged Blackbird		B	*	*		M						*	*	P	P															
RWBL	358	W	*	*		M						*	P	P	P															
Orchard Oriole		B	*	MPSIOC		M		M					*	*	*				*											
OROR	359	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Southern Scrub Oak

			geographic distribution			stage															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber		Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Common Grackle		B																												
COGR	362	W	*	*			M	M		F		*	P	P	P															
Brown-headed Cowbird		B	*	*		M	M	M		F		F				N			*		N									
BHCO	362	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M		F		*	P	P	P															
Summer Tanager		B	*	MPSIOC				M						F	*															
SUTA	363	W																												
Northern Cardinal		B	*	*			S	S			*	*	*	F	F															
NOCA	364	W	*	*			S	S			*	*	*																	
Blue Grosbeak		B	*	MPSIOC			S					*	*																	
BLGR	365	W																												
Indigo Bunting		B	*	MPSIOC			M	M				*	*	P	P				*											
INBU	365	W	F	OCT		S	O	S				*	*																	
Painted Bunting		B	FG SN	IOC			M	S				*	*	P																
PABU	366	W	F	OCT			O	O				*	*																	
Dickcissel		B																												
DICK	366	W	*	OCT		M	M					*	*																	
American Goldfinch		B																												
AMGO	369	W	*	*		M	M	M		*		*	*	*	*															
Rufous-sided Towhee		B	*	*			O	O			F	*	*	P	P															
RSTO	370	W	*	*			O	O			F	*	*																	

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Southern Scrub Oak

Species Code	Page	geographic distribution				stage				Substrate utilization[e]							Specific requirements				minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber		Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Savannah Sparrow		B																												
SASP	371	W	*	*		M						*																		
Grasshopper Sparrow		B																												
GRSP	371	W	FG SN	PSIOCT		M						*																		
Vesper Sparrow		B																												
VESP	374	W	*	PSIOC		M				*		*																		
Bachman's Sparrow		B																												
BASP	374	W	*	SIOC		M						*																		
Chipping Sparrow		B																												
CHSP	376	W	*	*		S	M	M		F		*	*	*	*				*											
Field Sparrow		B																												
FISP	376	W	*	*		S	M					*	*																	
White-crowned Sparrow		B																												
WCSP	377	W	*	*		M	M			F		*	*																	
White-throated Sparrow		B																												
WTSP	377	W	*	*		M	M	M			F	F	*	*	*															
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

This vegetation type consists of forests of sandy, upland topography in which sand pine (Pinus clausa) and scrub oaks (any of several Quercus spp.) each constitute at least 25 percent of the stocking. The type corresponds to NFS types 34, sand pine; 19, sand pine-hardwood; and 49, bear oak-southern scrub oaks-yellow pine (where the yellow pine is sand pine). It is equivalent to SAF type 69, sand pine; and to RRE type 34, sand pine.

Published censuses consist of one BBC and one WBPS, both made in poletimber stands in Florida.

Characteristic of this vegetation type are Common Ground Doves, Scrub Jays, and Rufous-sided Towhees.

Scrub Jays are restricted to this type.

Sand Pine- Southern Scrub Oak Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	geographic distribution			Successional stage[d]				Substrate utilization[e]							Specific requirements													
			States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber		Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Turkey Vulture		B	*	*			M	S		F	F	F	F		*															
TUVU	275	W	*	*		M	M	S		F	F	F	F		*															
Black Vulture		B	*	*			M	S		F	F	F	F		*															
BLVU	276	W	*	*		M	M	S		F	F	F	F		*															
White-tailed Kite		B	F	T		M	M	M		F		F	N		N															
WTKI	276	W	F	T		M	M	M		F		F																		
Sharp-shinned Hawk		B																												
SSHA	278	W	*	*				M		F	F	F	F	F	*															
Cooper's Hawk		B																												
COHA	279	W	*	*				M		F	F	F	F	F	*															
Red-tailed Hawk		B																												
RTHA	279	W	*	*		M	M	M		F		F			*	P														
Northern Harrier		B																												
NOHA	283	W	*	*		M				F		*																		
American Kestrel		B	*	MPSIO		M				F		F			*	*					F		*		N					
AMKE	286	W	*	*		S	M			F		F			*	F					F									
Common Bobwhite		B	*	*		M	S	M		F		*								F										
COBO	287	W	*	*		M	S	M		F		*								F										
Wild Turkey		B	*	MPSIOC				M		F	*	*		P	P					F										
WITU	288	W	*	*			M	M		F	*	*		P	P					F										

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Sand Pine-
Southern Scrub Oak

Species			geographic distribution			stage															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber		Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Rock Dove		B	*	*		M				F		F															N			
RODO	296	W	*	*		M				F		F															P			
Mourning Dove		B	*	*			S	S		F		F		NP	NP															
MODO	297	W	*	*		S	S	S		F		F		P	P															
Common Ground Dove		B	FG SN	IOCT			O	S		F		*	N																	
CGDO	297	W	FG SN	IOCT		O	O	S		F		*	*																	
Barn Owl		B	*	*		M	M			F		F	P		P									N	N		N			
BAOW	300	W	*	*		M	M			F		F	P		P									P	P		P			
Common Screech Owl		B	*	*				M		F	F	F	F	*	*	N							N		N					
CSOW	300	W	*	*				M		F	F	F	F	*	*	P							P		P					
Burrowing Owl		B	F	OCT		M				*		*																		
BUOW	301	W	F	OCT		M				*		*																		
Chuck-will's-widow		B	*	PSIOCT				S			N																			
CWWI	304	W	F	OCT				S			P																			
Whip-poor-will		B																												
WPWI	304	W	FG SN	OCT				M			P																			
Common Nighthawk		B	*	*		S	O	S		N																	N			
CONI	305	W																												
Ruby-throated Hummingbird		B	*	*			M	M					*	*	*															
RTHU	306	W	F	OCT			M	M					*	*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Sand Pine- Southern Scrub Oak		geographic distribution				Successional stage[d]				Substrate utilization[e]							Specific requirements[f]													
																					minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic[c] provinces	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber		Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Common Flicker		B	*	*				M		F		F			*	*			*				N		N					
COFL	307	W	*	*				M		F		F			*	*														
Red-bellied Woodpecker		B	*	*				M							*	*							N		N					
RBWO	308	W	*	*				M							*	*							P		P					
Red-headed Woodpecker		B	*	*				M				F				*			*				N							
RHWO	308	W	*	*				M				F	F	F	*	*														
Yellow-bellied Sapsucker		B																												
YBSA	309	W	*	*				M					F	F	*							*			*					
Hairy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M						*	*	*						*			*					
HAWO	309	W	*	*				M						*	*	*														
Downy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M					*	*	*	*					*				*					
DOWO	310	W	*	*				M					*	*	*	*					*				*					
Red-cockaded Woodpecker		B	*	PSIOC				M						F	F		N								*					
RCWO	310	W	*	PSIOC				M						F	F		P								*					
Great Crested Flycatcher		B	*	*				M						F	*	N						N			N					
GCFL	313	W																												
Eastern Phoebe		B																												
EAPH	313	W	*	*		M	M	M		F		F	*						*											
Least Flycatcher		B																												
LEFL	315	W	F	T			M	M						*	*				*											

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Sand Pine-
Southern Scrub Oak

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	geographic distribution States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	stage Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Eastern Pewee		B	*	*				M					F	*	F					F									
EAPE	316	W																											
Purple Martin		B	*	*		M									N						N			N					
PUMA	320	W																											
Blue Jay		B	*	*				S	F	F	F	F	*	*															
BLJA	320	W	*	*			M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*															
Scrub Jay		B	F	OC			M	S				*																	
SCJA	321	W	F	OC			M	S				*																	
American Crow		B	*	*				M	F		F			*			N												
AMCR	322	W	*	*		S	M	M	F		F			*			P												
Fish Crow		B	*	*			M	M	F		F	*		*														A	F
FICR	322	W	*	*		M	M	M	F		F			*														A	F
Carolina Chickadee		B	*	MPSIOC				M				F	*	*	N					NP				NP					
CACH	323	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M				F	*	*	P					P				P					
Tufted Titmouse		B	*	MPSIOC				M				F	*	*	N					N									
TUTI	324	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M				F	*	*															
Brown-headed Nuthatch		B	*	PSIOC				S					*	*	N					N				N					
BHNU	325	W	*	PSIOC			M	S					*	*															
Brown Creeper		B																											
BRCR	326	W	*	MPSIOC				M					*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Sand Pine-
Southern Scrub Oak

Species Code	Page	Seasonal and distribution Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic[c] provinces	Local area	Successional Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber		Substrate utilization[e] Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Specific requirements Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
House Wren		B																												
HOWR	326	W	*	PSIOCT		M	S	M				F	*													*				
Carolina Wren		B	*	*			M	S		*	*	*	*	*							N				N	*	N			
CAWR	328	W	*	*			M	S		*	*	*	*	*												*				
Northern Mockingbird		B	*	*		M	M	M				F	*						*											
NOMO	329	W	*	*		M	M	M				F	*						*											
Gray Catbird		B																												
GRCA	330	W	*	PSIOCT			M	M					*																	
Brown Thrasher		B	*	*			S	M		F	F	F	*	P	P															
BRTH	330	W	*	*			O	S		*	*	*	*																	
Hermit Thrush		B																												
HETH	332	W	*	*				M			*	F	*					*												
Eastern Bluebird		B	*	MPSIOC		S	M	S		F		F			*	NP			*		NP									
EABL	333	W	*	*		S	M	S		F		F			*	P			*		P									
Blue-gray Gnatcatcher		B																												
BGGN	334	W	FG SN	SIOCT			M	S					*	*	*															
Ruby-crowned Kinglet		B																												
RCKI	335	W	*	*			M	S					*	*	*															
White-eyed Vireo		B	*	*			M	M				F	*	P																
WEVI	337	W	FG SN	IOCT			M	M				F	*																	

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Sand Pine-
Southern Scrub Oak

Species Code	Page	geographic distribution				stage[d]											Specific requirements				Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber		Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Solitary Vireo		B																												
SOVI	338	W	*	PSIOCT				S						*	*															
Black-and-white Warbler		B																												
BAWW	340	W	FG SN	SIOCT				M						F	*															
Orange-crowned Warbler		B																												
OCWA	344	W	*	PSIOCT		M	M	M				*	*	*																
Yellow-rumped Warbler		B																												
YRWA	347	W	*	*			S	S		*		*	*	*	*															
Yellow-throated Warbler		B																												
YTWA	349	W	FG SN	IOCT				M							*	F	*													
Pine Warbler		B	*	*				S						F	*															
PIWA	350	W	*	*				S				F		F	*															
Prairie Warbler		B																												
PRWA	351	W	FG S	OCT			S	S				*	*																	
Palm Warbler		B																												
PAWA	351	W	*	PSIOCT		S	O	M		*		*	*																	
Common Yellowthroat		B	*	*			M					*	*																	
COYE	354	W	*	PSIOCT		M	M					*	*																	
Yellow-breasted Chat		B																												
YBCH	355	W	*	OCT			S	M					*																	

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Sand Pine–
Southern Scrub Oak

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	geographic distribution States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	stage Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber		Substrate utilization[e] Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Specific requirements Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
House Sparrow		B	*	*		M				F		F																		
HOSP	357	W	*	*		M				F		F																		
Eastern Meadowlark		B	*	*		M						*																		
EAME	358	W	*	*		M						*																		
Red-winged Blackbird		B	*	*		M						*	*	P	P															
RWBL	358	W	*	*		M						*	P	P	P															
Orchard Oriole		B	*	MPSIOC		M		M					*	*	*				*											
OROR	359	W																												
Common Grackle		B	*	*				M		F		F	N	N	N															
COGR	362	W																												
Brown-headed Cowbird		B	*	*		M	M	M		F		F				N			*		N									
BHCO	362	W																												
Summer Tanager		B	*	MPSIOC				M						F	*															
SUTA	363	W																												
Northern Cardinal		B	*	*			M	M			*	*	*	F	F															
NOCA	364	W	*	*			M	M			*	*	*																	
Blue Grosbeak		B	*	MPSIOC			M					*	*																	
BLGR	365	W																												
Indigo Bunting		B																												
INBU	365	W	F	OCT		M	M	M				*	*																	

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Sand Pine- Southern Scrub Oak Species Code	Page	geographic distribution				stage[d]															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber		Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Painted Bunting		B																												
PABU	366	W	F	OCT			M	M				*	*																	
American Goldfinch		B																												
AMGO	369	W	*	*		M	M	M		*		*	*	*	*															
Rufous-sided Towhee		B	*	*			O	O			F	*	*	P	P															
RSTO	370	W	*	*			O	O			F	*	*																	
Savannah Sparrow		B																												
SASP	371	W	*	*		M						*																		
Grasshopper Sparrow		B																												
GRSP	371	W	FG SN	PSIOCT		M						*																		
Vesper Sparrow		B																												
VESP	374	W	*	PSIOC		M				*		*																		
Bachman's Sparrow		B	*	PSIOC			M	M				*	*	P	P				*											
BASP	374	W	*	SIOC		M	M	M				*																		
Chipping Sparrow		B																												
CHSP	376	W	*	*		S	M	M		F		*	*	*	*				*											
Field Sparrow		B																												
FISP	376	W	*	*		S	M					*	*																	
White-throated Sparrow		B																												
WTSP	377	W	*	*		M	M	M			F	F	*	*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

These are forests of sandy, upland topography
(Pinus palustris) and scrub oaks (any of several Quercus spp.) each make up at least 25 percent of the stocking. The type corresponds to NFS type 21, longleaf pine, with extensive scrub oak understory; and to NFS type 49, bear oak-southern scrub oaks-yellow pine (where yellow pine is longleaf pine). It is equivalent to SAF type 71, longleaf pine-scrub oak; and to RRE type 21, Longleaf pine, with extensive scrub oak understory,

Nine censuses have been published from this type. Six BBC were conducted on two sapling-poletimber plots in Florida, and a single sapling-poletimber plot in that state was censused during one winter. A sawtimber plot in North Carolina was censused during two winters.

Characteristic of this vegetation type are Pine Warblers and Rufous-sided Towhees.

No species are restricted to this type.

Longleaf Pine-Scrub Oak

Species / Code	Page	Season of use[a]	geographic distribution			stage[d]															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
			States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Turkey Vulture		B	*	*			M	S	S	F	F	F	F		*															
TUVU	275	W	*	*		M	M	S	S	F	F	F	F		*															
Black Vulture		B	*	*			M	S	S	F	F	F	F		*															
BLVU	276	W	*	*		M	M	S	S	F	F	F	F		*															
Sharp-shinned Hawk		B																												
SSHA	278	W	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Cooper's Hawk		B																												
COHA	279	W	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Red-tailed Hawk		B																												
RTHA	279	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F			*	P														
Northern Harrier		B																												
NOHA	283	W	*	*		M				F		*																		
American Kestrel		B																												
AMKE	286	W	*	*		S	M			F		F			*	F					F									
Common Bobwhite		B	*	*		S	S	S	S	F		*								F										
COBO	287	W	*	*		S	S	S	S	F		*								F										
Wild Turkey		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M	F	*	*		P	P					F										
WITU	288	W	*	*			S	S	S	F	*	*		P	P					F										
Rock Dove		B	*	*		M				F		F															N			
RODO	296	W	*	*		M				F		F															P			

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Longleaf Pine-Scrub Oak

Species Code	Page	geographic distribution Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	stage Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Specific requirements Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Mourning Dove		B	*	*		M	S	S	M	F		F		NP	NP															
MODO	297	W	*	*		M	S	S	M	F		F		P	P															
Common Ground Dove		B	FG SN	IOCT			S	S	M	F		*	N																	
CGDO	297	W	FG SN	IOCT		S	S	S	M	F		*	*																	
Barn Owl		B	*	*		M	M			F		F	P		P									N	N		N			
BAOW	300	W	*	*		M	M			F		F	P		P									P	P		P			
Common Screech Owl		B	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*	N							N		N					
CSOW	300	W	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*	P							P		P					
Great Horned Owl		B	*	*					M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
GHOW	301	W	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Burrowing Owl		B	F	OCT		M				*		*																		
BUOW	301	W	F	OCT		M				*		*																		
Chuck-will's-widow		B	*	PSIOCT				M	S		N																			
CWWI	304	W	F	OCT				M	M		P																			
Whip-poor-will		B																												
WPWI	304	W	FG SN	OCT				M	M		P																			
Common Nighthawk		B	*	*		S	S	M	M	N																	N			
CONI	305	W																												
Ruby-throated Hummingbird		B	*	*			M	M	M				*	*	*															
RTHU	306	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Longleaf Pine-Scrub Oak			geographic distribution				Successional stage[d]				Substrate utilization							Specific requirements[e]													
																					Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Common Flicker		B	*	*				M	M	F		F			*	*			*				N		N					
COFL	307	W	*	*				M	M	F		F			*	*														
Red-bellied Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	S						*	*							N		N					
RBWO	308	W	*	*				M	S						*	*							P		P					
Red-headed Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	S			F				*			*				N							
RHWO	308	W	*	*				M	M			F	F	F	*	*														
Yellow-bellied Sapsucker		B																												
YBSA	309	W	*	*				M	M				F	F	*							*			*					
Hairy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	M					*	*	*						*			*					
HAWO	309	W	*	*				M	M					*	*	*														
Downy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	M				*	*	*	*					*				*					
DOWO	310	W	*	*				M	M				*	*	*	*					*				*					
Red-cockaded Woodpecker		B	*	PSIOC				M	S					F	F		N								*					
RCWO	310	W	*	PSIOC				M	S					F	F		P								*					
Great Crested Flycatcher		B	*	*				M	S					F	*	N						N			N					
GCFL	313	W																												
Eastern Phoebe		B																												
EAPH	313	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F	*						*											
Eastern Pewee		B	*	*				M	S					F	*	F					F									
EAPE	316	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Longleaf Pine-Scrub Oak		geographic distribution				stage				Substrate utilizing[e]							Specific requirements[e]													
																					Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic[c] provinces	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Barn Swallow		B	*	*		M																					N			
BASW	319	W																												
Purple Martin		B	*	*		M										N						N			N					
PUMA	320	W																												
Blue Jay		B	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*															
BLJA	320	W	*	*			M	M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*															
Scrub Jay		B	F	OC			M	S					*																	
SCJA	321	W	F	OC			M	S					*																	
American Crow		B	*	*				M	M	F		F			*			N												
AMCR	322	W	*	*		S	M	M	M	F		F			*			P												
Carolina Chickadee		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S				F	*	*	N					NP				NP					
CACH	323	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	S				F	*	*	P					P				P					
Tufted Titmouse		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M				F	*	*	N					N									
TUTI	324	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M				F	*	*															
Red-breasted Nuthatch		B																												
RBNU	325	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M					*	*															
Brown-headed Nuthatch		B	*	PSIOC				S	O					*	*	N					N				N					
BHNU	325	W	*	PSIOC			M	S	O					*	*															
Brown Creeper		B																												
BRCR	326	W	*	MPSIOC				S	S					*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Longleaf Pine-Scrub Oak			geographic distribution			stage[d]															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
House Wren		B																												
HOWR	326	W	*	PSIOCT		M	S	M	M			F	*													*				
Carolina Wren		B	*	*			M	S	S	*	*	*	*	*							N				N	*	N			
CAWR	328	W	*	*			M	S	S	*	*	*	*	*												*				
Northern Mockingbird		B	*	*		M	M	M	M			F	*						*											
NOMO	329	W	*	*		M	M	M	M			F	*						*											
Gray Catbird		B																												
GRCA	330	W	*	PSIOCT			M	M	M				*																	
Brown Thrasher		B	*	*			S	M	M	F	F	F	*	P	P															
BRTH	330	W	*	*			S	M	M	*	*	*	*																	
Hermit Thrush		B																												
HETH	332	W	*	*				M	M		*	F	*					*												
Eastern Bluebird		B	*	MPSIOC		S	M	S	S	F		F			*	NP			*		NP									
EABL	333	W	*	*		S	M	S	S	F		F			*	P			*		P									
Blue-gray Gnatcatcher		B																												
BGGN	334	W	FG SN	SIOCT			M	M	M				*	*	*															
Golden-crowned Kinglet		B																												
GCKI	334	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M				F	F	*															
Ruby-crowned Kinglet		B																												
RCKI	335	W	*	*			M	S	S				*	*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Longleaf Pine-Scrub Oak			geographic distribution			stage [d]															Snags minimum d.b.h.				[e]					
Species Code	Page	Season of use [a]	States [b]	Physiographic provinces [c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water [f]	Flowing water [f]
White-eyed Vireo		B	*	*			M	M	M			F	*	P																
WEVI	337	W	FG SN	IOCT			M	M	M			F	*																	
Yellow-throated Vireo		B	*	*					M					F	*															
YTVI	338	W																												
Solitary Vireo		B	GS NV	MPS				M	M				N	*	*															
SOVI	338	W	*	PSIOCT				M	S					*	*															
Red-eyed Vireo		B	*	MPSIOC					M					*	*															
REVI	339	W																												
Black-and-white Warbler		B																												
BAWW	340	W	FG SN	SIOCT				M	M					F	*															
Orange-crowned Warbler		B																												
OCWA	344	W	*	PSIOCT		M	M	M	M			*	*	*																
Yellow-rumped Warbler		B																												
YRWA	347	W	*	*			S	S	S	*		*	*	*	*															
Yellow-throated Warbler		B																												
YTWA	349	W	FG SN	IOCT				M	S						*	F	*													
Pine Warbler		B	*	*				M	O					F	*															
PIWA	350	W	*	*				S	O			F		F	*															
Prairie Warbler		B	*	*			S					F	*																	
PRWA	351	W	FG S	OCT			M	M	M			*	*																	

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Longleaf Pine-Scrub Oak Species Code	Page		geographic distribution			stage[d]																Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Palm Warbler		B																												
PAWA	351	W	*	PSIOCT		M	S	M		*		*	*																	
Common Yellowthroat		B	*	*			M					*	*																	
COYE	354	W	*	PSIOCT		M	M					*	*																	
Yellow-breasted Chat		B	*	*			M						*			P														
YBCH	355	W	*	OCT			M	M					*																	
House Sparrow		B	*	*		M				F		F																		
HOSP	357	W	*	*		M				F		F																		
Eastern Meadowlark		B	*	*		M						*																		
EAME	358	W	*	*		M						*																		
Red-winged Blackbird		B	*	*		M						*	*	P	P															
RWBL	358	W	*	*		M						*	P	P	P															
Orchard Oriole		B	*	MPSIOC		M		M	M				*	*	*				*											
OROR	359	W																												
Common Grackle		B	*	*				M	M	F		F	N	N	N															
COGR	362	W																												
Brown-headed Cowbird		B	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F				N			*		N									
BHCO	362	W																												
Summer Tanager		B	*	MPSIOC				M	O					F	*															
SUTA	363	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Longleaf Pine-Scrub Oak		geographic distribution				Successional stage[d]				Substrate utilization[e]							Specific requirements													
																					minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Northern Cardinal		B	*	*			M	S	S		*	*	*	F	F															
NOCA	364	W	*	*			S	S	S		*	*	*																	
Indigo Bunting		B	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M			*	*	P	P				*											
INBU	365	W																												
Evening Grosbeak		B																												
EVGR	367	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M	F			*	*	*															
Purple Finch		B																												
PUFI	367	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M				*	*	*															
Pine Siskin		B																												
PISI	368	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M	F		*	*	*	*															
American Goldfinch		B																												
AMGO	369	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	*		*	*	*	*															
Red Crossbill		B																												
RECR	369	W	GS NV	MPSIOC				M	M					*	*															
Rufous-sided Towhee		B	*	*			O	O	S		F	*	*	P	P															
RSTO	370	W	*	*			O	O	S		F	*	*																	
Savannah Sparrow		B																												
SASP	371	W	*	*		M						*																		
Grasshopper Sparrow		B																												
GRSP	371	W	FG SN	PSIOCT		M						*																		

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Longleaf Pine-Scrub Oak Species Code	Page	Seasonal and geographic distribution				Successional stage[d]				Substrate utilization[e]							Specific requirements													
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Le Conte's Sparrow		B																												
LCSP	372	W	FG S	PSIOC		M						*																		
Vesper Sparrow		B																												
VESP	374	W	*	PSIOC		S				*		*																		
Bachman's Sparrow		B	*	PSIOC			M	S	S			*	*	P	P				*											
BASP	374	W	*	SIOC		M	M	M	M			*																		
Northern Junco		B																												
NOJU	375	W	*	MPSIOC		M	M	S	S	F	F	*	*	*																
Chipping Sparrow		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M	F		*	*	*	*				*											
CHSP	376	W	*	*		S	M	M	S	F		*	*	*	*				*											
Field Sparrow		B	GS NV	*			M					*	*																	
FISP	376	W	*	*		S	M					*	*																	
White-throated Sparrow		B																												
WTSP	377	W	*	*		M	M	M	M		F	F	*	*	*															
Fox Sparrow		B																												
FOSP	378	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M		F		*	*																
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

These are forests of sandy, [illegible] composes a majority of the stocking, and where hardwoods make up less than 25 percent of the stocking. The type corresponds to NFS type 21, longleaf pine (in part). It is equivalent to SAF type 70, longleaf pine (in part); and to RRE type 21, longleaf pine (in part). In each case the combination of the longleaf pine and the physiographic condition, such as sandhills (RRE Physiographic Class 14) or sand dunes and sand ridges (RRE Physiographic Class 12) characterizes the type.

No BBC or WBPS was conducted in this type in the Southeast in 1947-1979.

Characteristic of this vegetation type are Red-cockaded Woodpeckers, Brown-headed Nuthatches, and Pine Warblers.

Red-cockaded Woodpeckers are restricted to this type.

Sandhills Longleaf Pine

			geographic distribution			stage^d				Specific requirements											Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use^a	States^b	Physiographic provinces^c	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seeding	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water^f	Flowing water^f
Turkey Vulture		B	*	*			M	M	M	F	F	F	F		*															
TUVU	275	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F	F	F	F		*															
Black Vulture		B	*	*			M	M	M	F	F	F	F		*															
BLVU	276	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F	F	F	F		*															
Sharp-shinned Hawk		B																												
SSHA	278	W	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Cooper's Hawk		B																												
COHA	279	W	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Red-tailed Hawk		B																												
RTHA	279	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F			*	P														
Northern Harrier		B																												
NOHA	283	W	*	*		M				F		*																		
American Kestrel		B																												
AMKE	286	W	*	*		S	M			F		F			*	F					F									
Common Bobwhite		B	*	*		S	S	S	S	F		*								F										
COBO	287	W	*	*		S	S	S	S	F		*								F										
Wild Turkey		B	*	MPSIOC				S	S	F	*	*		P	P					F										
WITU	288	W	*	*				S	S	F	*	*		P	P					F										
Rock Dove		B	*	*		M				F		F															N			
RODO	296	W	*	*		M				F		F															P			

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Sandhills Longleaf Pine

Species Code	Page	geographic distribution				stage[d]				Specific requirements[e]											Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Mourning Dove		B	*	*		M	S	S	S	F		F		NP	NP															
MODO	297	W	*	*		S	S	S	S	F		F		P	P															
Common Ground Dove		B	FG SN	IOCT			M	M	M	F		*	N																	
CGDO	297	W	FG SN	IOCT		M	M	M	M	F		*	*																	
Barn Owl		B	*	*		M	M			F		F	P		P									N	N		N			
BAOW	300	W	*	*		M	M			F		F	P		P									P	P		P			
Common Screech Owl		B	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*	N							N		N					
CSOW	300	W	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*	P							P		P					
Great Horned Owl		B	*	*					S	F	F	F	F	F	*															
GHOW	301	W	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Chuck-will's-widow		B	*	PSIOCT				M	M		N																			
CWWI	304	W																												
Common Nighthawk		B	*	*		S	S	M	M	N																	N			
CONI	305	W																												
Common Flicker		B	*	*				M	M	F		F			*	*			*				N		N					
COFL	307	W	*	*				M	M	F		F			*	*														
Red-bellied Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	S						*	*							N		N					
RBWO	308	W	*	*				M	S						*	*							P		P					
Red-headed Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	O			F				*			*				N							
RHWO	308	W	*	*				M	S			F	F	F	*	*														

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Sandhills Longleaf Pine

Species			geographic distribution			stage																Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Yellow-bellied Sapsucker		B																												
YBSA	309	W	*	*				M	M				F	F	*							*			*					
Hairy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	M					*	*	*						*			*					
HAWO	309	W	*	*				M	M					*	*	*														
Downy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	M				*	*	*	*					*				*					
DOWO	310	W	*	*				M	M				*	*	*	*					*				*					
Red-cockaded Woodpecker		B	*	PSIOC				M	O					F	F		N								*					
RCWO	310	W	*	PSIOC				M	O					F	F		P								*					
Great Crested Flycatcher		B	*	*				M	S					F	*	N						N			N					
GCFL	313	W																												
Eastern Phoebe		B																												
EAPH	313	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F	*						*											
Eastern Pewee		B	*	*				M	O					F	*	F					F									
EAPE	316	W																												
Barn Swallow		B	*	*		M																					N			
BASW	319	W																												
Purple Martin		B	*	*		M										N						N			N					
PUMA	320	W																												
Blue Jay		B	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*															
BLJA	320	W	*	*			M	M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Sandhills Longleaf Pine Species Code	Page	geographic distribution				stage				Specific requirements[e]											Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
American Crow		B	*	*				M	M	F		F			*			N												
AMCR	322	W	*	*		S	M	M	M	F		F			*			P												
Carolina Chickadee		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S				F	*	*	N					NP				NP					
CACH	323	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	S				F	*	*	P					P				P					
Tufted Titmouse		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M				F	*	*	N					N									
TUTI	324	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M				F	*	*															
Red-breasted Nuthatch		B																												
RBNU	325	W	*	MPSIOC			M	S	S					*	*															
Brown-headed Nuthatch		B	*	PSIOC				S	O					*	*	N					N				N					
BHNU	325	W	*	PSIOC			M	S	O					*	*															
Brown Creeper		B																												
BRCR	326	W	*	MPSIOC				S	S					*	*															
House Wren		B																												
HOWR	326	W	*	PSIOCT		M	M	M	M			F	*													*				
Carolina Wren		B	*	*			M	M	M	*	*	*	*	*							N				N	*	N			
CAWR	328	W	*	*			M	M	M	*	*	*	*	*												*				
Eastern Bluebird		B	*	MPSIOC		S	M	S	S	F		F			*	NP			*		NP									
EABL	333	W	*	*		S	M	S	S	F		F			*	P			*		P									
Golden-crowned Kinglet		B																												
GCKI	334	W	*	MPSIOC			M	S	S				F	F	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Sandhills Longleaf Pine

Species		geographic distribution				stage[d]																Snags minimum d.b.h.								
Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Ruby-crowned Kinglet		B																												
RCKI	335	W	*	*			M	S	S				*	*	*															
Solitary Vireo		B																												
SOVI	338	W	*	PSIOCT				M	M					*	*															
Yellow-rumped Warbler		B																												
YRWA	347	W	*	*			M	M	M	*		*	*	*	*															
Yellow-throated Warbler		B																												
YTWA	349	W	FG SN	IOCT				M	M						*	F	*													
Pine Warbler		B	*	*				M	O					F	*															
PIWA	350	W	*	*				S	O			F		F	*															
Prairie Warbler		B	*	*			M					F	*																	
PRWA	351	W	FG S	OCT			M	M	M			*	*																	
Palm Warbler		B																												
PAWA	351	W	*	PSIOCT		M	M	M		*		*	*																	
House Sparrow		B	*	*		M				F		F																		
HOSP	357	W	*	*		M				F		F																		
Red-winged Blackbird		B	*	*		M						*	*	P	P															
RWBL	358	W	*	*		M						*	P	P	P															
Common Grackle		B	*	*				M	M	F		F	N	N	N															
COGR	362	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Sandhills Longleaf Pine		Seasonal and distribution				Successional				Substrate utilization							Specific requirements													
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Brown-headed Cowbird		B	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F				N			*		N									
BHCO	362	W																												
Summer Tanager		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S					F	*															
SUTA	363	W																												
Northern Cardinal		B	*	*			M	M	M		*	*	*	F	F															
NOCA	364	W	*	*			M	M	M		*	*	*																	
Evening Grosbeak		B																												
EVGR	367	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M	F			*	*	*															
Purple Finch		B																												
PUFI	367	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M				*	*	*															
Pine Siskin		B																												
PISI	368	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M	F		*	*	*	*															
American Goldfinch		B																												
AMGO	369	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	*		*	*	*	*															
Red Crossbill		B																												
RECR	369	W	GS NV	MPSIOC				M	M					*	*															
Rufous-sided Towhee		B	*	*			S	S	M		F	*	*	P	P															
RSTO	370	W	*	*			O	O	S		F	*	*																	
Savannah Sparrow		B																												
SASP	371	W	*	*		M						*																		

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Sandhills Longleaf Pine

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
		geographic distribution				stage[d]															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Grasshopper Sparrow		B																												
GRSP	371	W	FG SN	PSIOCT		M						*																		
Le Conte's Sparrow		B																												
LCSP	372	W	FG S	PSIOC		M						*																		
Vesper Sparrow		B																												
VESP	374	W	*	PSIOC		S				*		*																		
Bachman's Sparrow		B	*	PSIOC			M	S	S			*	*	P	P				*											
BASP	374	W	*	SIOC		M	M	M	M			*																		
Northern Junco		B																												
NOJU	375	W	*	MPSIOC		M	M	S	S	F	F	*	*	*																
Chipping Sparrow		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M	F		*	*	*	*				*											
CHSP	376	W	*	*		S	M	M	S	F		*	*	*	*				*											
Field Sparrow		B	GS NV	*			M					*	*																	
FISP	376	W	*	*		S	M					*	*																	
White-throated Sparrow		B																												
WTSP	377	W	*	*		M	M	M	M		F	F	*	*	*															
Fox Sparrow		B																												
FOSP	378	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M		F		*	*																
		B																												
		W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

northern Florida where beech (*Fagus grandifolia*),
(*Magnolia grandiflora*), singly or in combination, constitute a plurality of the stocking. It is equivalent to NFS type 69, beech-magnolia. The type has no strict analog among 1980 SAF types, although the 1954 SAF type 90, beech-magnolia, is comparable (Soc. Amer. Foresters 1954). No RRE type corresponds to it, although it may be classed as RRE type 50, Oak-hickory, on bluffs (RRE Physiographic Class 23) or rolling uplands (RRE Physiographic Class 22).

No BBC or WBPS was conducted in this type in the Southeast in 1947-1979. Engstrom (1981) conducted a Breeding Bird Census in an undisturbed sawtimber stand in Florida in 1980.

Characteristic of this vegetation type are Pileated Woodpeckers, Red-bellied Woodpeckers, Great Crested Flycatchers (B), Blue Jays, Tufted Titmice, Carolina Wrens, Hermit Thrushes (W), and Northern Cardinals.

No species are *restricted* to the type.

Southern Mixed Mesic Hardwoods

Species / Code	Page	Season of use[a]	distribution States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Green Heron		B	*	*			M	M	M	F		F	*	NP	NP											F			A	F
GRHE	267	W																												
Little Blue Heron		B	*	IOCT			M	M	M	F		F	*		NP														A	F
LBHE	267	W																												
Cattle Egret		B	*	SIOCT			M	M	M	F		F	NP		NP														F	
CAEG	268	W																												
Great Egret		B	*	IOCT			M	M	M	F		F	NP	NP	NP														A	F
GREG	269	W																												
Black-cr. Night Heron		B	*	IOCT			M	M	M			F	NP		NP														A	F
BCNH	270	W																												
Yellow-cr. Night Heron		B	*	PSIOCT			M	M	M	F				NP	NP														A	F
YCNH	271	W																												
White Ibis		B	FG SN	SIOCT			M	M	M	F		F	NP	NP	NP														A	
WHIB	273	W																												
Turkey Vulture		B	*	*			M	S	S	F	F	F	F		*															
TUVU	275	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F	F	F	F		*															
Black Vulture		B	*	*			M	S	S	F	F	F	F		*															
BLVU	276	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F	F	F	F		*															
Swallow-tailed Kite		B	FG S	OT					M	F		F	F	F	NP		NP												F	F
STKI	277	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
i — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Sothern Mixed Mesic Hardwoods

Species Code	Page	distribution				Successional				Substrate utilization							Specific requirements				minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Mississippi Kite		B	FG SN	SIO					S						NP														F	F
MIKI	277	W																												
Sharp-shinned Hawk		B																												
SSHA	278	W	*	*				S	S	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Cooper's Hawk		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*			N												
COHA	279	W	*	*				S	S	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Red-tailed Hawk		B	*	*					S	F		F			*	P														
RTHA	279	W	*	*		S	M	M	S	F		F			*	P														
Red-shouldered Hawk		B	*	*				M	S	F		F	F		*														F	F
RSHA	280	W	*	*		S	M	S	S	F		F	F		*														F	F
Broad-winged Hawk		B	*	MPSIO					S	F	F	F	F		*															
BWHA	280	W																												
Short-tailed Hawk		B	F	CT				M	M	F		F	F		*															
STHA	281	W																												
Northern Harrier		B																												
NOHA	283	W	*	*		M				F		*																		
American Kestrel		B																												
AMKE	286	W	*	*		M	M			F		F			*	F					F									
Common Bobwhite		B	*	*		M	M			F		*								F										
COBO	287	W	*	*		M	M			F		*								F										

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Southern Mixed Mesic Hardwoods Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Wild Turkey		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S	F	*	*		P	P					F										
WITU	288	W	*	*			M	S	O	F	*	*		P	P					F										
American Woodcock		B	*	*				M	M	F	*	F																	F	
AMWO	294	W	*	*		M	M	S	S	F	*	F																	F	
Rock Dove		B	*	*		M				F		F															N			
RODO	296	W	*	*		M				F		F															P			
Mourning Dove		B	*	*			S	S	M	F		F		NP	NP															
MODO	297	W	*	*		S	S	S	M	F		F		P	P															
Yellow-billed Cuckoo		B	*	*				S	S				N	*	*															
YBCU	298	W																												
Barn Owl		B	*	*		M	M			F		F	P		P									N	N		N			
BAOW	300	W	*	*		M	M			F		F	P		P									P	P		P			
Common Screech Owl		B	*	*				M	O	F	F	F	F	*	*	N							N		N					
CSOW	300	W	*	*				M	O	F	F	F	F	*	*	P							P		P					
Great Horned Owl		B	*	*					S	F	F	F	F	F	*															
GHOW	301	W	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Barred Owl		B	*	*				M	O	F	F	F	F	F	*		N								N				F	F
BDOW	302	W	*	*				M	O	F	F	F	F	F	*		P								P				F	F
Chuck-will's-widow		B	*	PSIOCT			M	M	S		N																			
CWWI	304	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Southern Mixed Mesic Hardwoods

Species Code	Page	distribution Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Whip-poor-will		B																												
WPWI	304	W	FG SN	OCT				M	M		P																			
Chimney Swift		B	*	*					M														N		N					
CHSW	305	W																												
Ruby-throated Hummingbird		B	*	*			S	S	S				*	*	*															
RTHU	306	W																												
Belted Kingfisher		B	*	*				M	M				P	P		P					F					F		N	A	F
BEKI	306	W	*	*				M	M				P	P		P					F					F			A	F
Common Flicker		B	*	*				M	S	F		F			*	*			*				N		N					
COFL	307	W	*	*				M	S	F		F			*	*														
Pileated Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	O					F	*	*	*	*						*	N	F logs				
PIWO	307	W	*	*				M	O					F	*	*	*	*						*	P	F logs				
Red-bellied Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	O						*	*							N		N					
RBWO	308	W	*	*				M	O						*	*							P		P					
Red-headed Woodpecker		B																												
RHWO	308	W	*	*				M	M			F	F	F	*	*														
Yellow-bellied Sapsucker		B																												
YBSA	309	W	*	*				S	O				F	F	*							*			*					
Hairy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	O					*	*	*						*			*					
HAWO	309	W	*	*				M	O					*	*	*														

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Southern Mixed Mesic Hardwoods

Species / Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
			distribution																		Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Downy Woodpecker		B	*	*				S	O				*	*	*	*					*				*					
DOWO	310	W	*	*				S	O				*	*	*	*					*				*					
Great Crested Flycatcher		B	*	*				M	O					F	*	N						N			N					
GCFL	313	W																												
Eastern Phoebe		B																												
EAPH	313	W	*	*		S	O	S	M	F		F	*						*											
Acadian Flycatcher		B	*	*				M	O					*	*	F		*			F								F	F
ACFL	314	W																												
Eastern Pewee		B	*	*				M	O					F	*	F					F									
EAPE	316	W																												
Purple Martin		B	*	*		M										N						N			N					
PUMA	320	W																												
Blue Jay		B	*	*				M	O	F	F	F	F	*	*															
BLJA	320	W	*	*			M	S	O	F	F	F	F	*	*															
American Crow		B	*	*				M	S	F		F			*			N												
AMCR	322	W	*	*		S	M	M	S	F		F			*			P												
Fish Crow		B	*	*			M	M	M	F		F	*		*														A	F
FICR	322	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F			*														A	F
Carolina Chickadee		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S				F	*	*	N					NP				NP					
CACH	323	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	S				F	*	*	P					P				P					

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Southern Mixed Mesic Hardwoods

Species Code	Page	geographic distribution								Substrate utilization[e]							Specific requirements				minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Tufted Titmouse		B	*	MPSIOC				S	O				F	*	*	N					N									
TUTI	324	W	*	MPSIOC			M	S	O				F	*	*															
White-breasted Nuthatch		B	GS NV	MPSIOC				M	S						*	*	*								N					
WBNU	324	W	*	MPSIOC				M	S						*	*														
Brown Creeper		B																												
BRCR	326	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M					*	*															
House Wren		B																												
HOWR	326	W	*	PSIOCT		M	M					F	*													*				
Winter Wren		B																												
WIWR	327	W	*	*				S	S	*	*	F	F													*				
Carolina Wren		B	*	*			S	O	O	*	*	*	*	*							N				N	*	N			
CAWR	328	W	*	*			S	O	O	*	*	*	*	*												*				
Northern Mockingbird		B	*	*		M	M					F	*						*											
NOMO	329	W	*	*		M	M					F	*						*											
Gray Catbird		B	*	MPSIOC			S	S	M				*	P																
GRCA	330	W	*	PSIOCT			S	S	M				*																	
Brown Thrasher		B	*	*			O	M	M	F	F	F	*	P	P															
BRTH	330	W	*	*			O	M	M	*	*	*	*																	
American Robin		B																												
AMRO	331	W	*	*			M	M	S	F		F	*	*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Southern Mixed Mesic Hardwoods

			distribution																		Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Wood Thrush		B	*	MPSIOC				S	O		F	F	*	P				*												
WOTH	331	W																												
Hermit Thrush		B																												
HETH	332	W	*	*				O	O		*	F	*					*												
Blue-gray Gnatcatcher		B	*	MPSIOC				M	O				*	*	*															
BGGN	334	W	FG SN	SIOCT			M	S	S				*	*	*															
Golden-crowned Kinglet		B																												
GCKI	334	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M				F	F	*															
Ruby-crowned Kinglet		B																												
RCKI	335	W	*	*			S	S	S				*	*	*															
Cedar Waxwing		B																												
CEWA	336	W	*	*			M	S	S				*	*	*				*											
European Starling		B																												
EUST	337	W	*	*			M	M	M	F		F																		
White-eyed Vireo		B	*	*			S	M	M			F	*	P																
WEVI	337	W	FG SN	IOCT			M	M	M			F	*																	
Yellow-throated Vireo		B	*	*					S					F	*															
YTVI	338	W																												
Solitary Vireo		B																												
SOVI	338	W	*	PSIOCT				M	S					*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Southern Mixed Mesic Hardwoods

Species Code	Page	distribution Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Successional Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Substrate utilization Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Specific requirements Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Red-eyed Vireo		B	*	MPSIOC				S	O					*	*															
REVI	339	W																												
Black-and-white Warbler		B	GS NV	MPSIO				M	M		N	N		F	F			*												
BAWW	340	W	FG SN	SIOCT				M	S					F	*															
Prothonotary Warbler		B	*	PSIOC				M	M				*	*		*					N								F	F
POWA	341	W																												
Swainson's Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S	F	F	F	*	P																
SWWA	341	W																												
Worm-eating Warbler		B	*	MPIO				M	M		*	F	*	P				*												
WEWA	342	W																												
Orange-crowned Warbler		B																												
OCWA	344	W	*	PSIOCT		M	M	M	M			*	*	*																
Northern Parula Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S					*	*															
NPWA	345	W																												
Yellow-rumped Warbler		B																												
YRWA	347	W	*	*			S	S	S	*		*	*	*	*															
Yellow-throated Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S						*	F	*													
YTWA	349	W	FG SN	IOCT				M	M						*	F	*													
Prairie Warbler		B	*	*			S					F	*																	
PRWA	351	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Southern Mixed Mesic Hardwoods			distribution																		Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Palm Warbler		B																												
PAWA	351	W	*	PSIOCT		M	M	M		*		*	*																	
Ovenbird		B																												
OVEN	352	W	FG S	OCT				M	S	*	*																			
Louisiana Waterthrush		B	*	MPSIO					S	*			P	P													*			F
LOWA	353	W																												
Kentucky Warbler		B	*	*					M	F	F	*	*	P																
KEWA	353	W																												
Common Yellowthroat		B	*	*			M					*	*																	
COYE	354	W	*	PSIOCT		M	M					*	*																	
Yellow-breasted Chat		B	*	*			M						*			P														
YBCH	355	W																												
Hooded Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S				*	FP																
HOWA	355	W																												
American Redstart		B	*	MPSIO				S	S				*	*	FP															
AMRE	356	W																												
House Sparrow		B	*	*		M				F		F																		
HOSP	357	W	*	*		M				F		F																		
Eastern Meadowlark		B	*	*		M						*																		
EAME	358	W	*	*		M						*																		

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Southern Mixed Mesic Hardwoods

Species Code	Page	distribution																			minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use [a]	States [b]	Physiographic provinces [c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water [f]	Flowing water [f]
Red-winged Blackbird		B	*	*		M						*	*	P	P															
RWBL	358	W	*	*		M	M	M	M			*	P	P	P															
Rusty Blackbird		B																												
RUBL	360	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F	P	P	P															
Common Grackle		B																												
COGR	362	W	*	*			M	S	S	F		*	P	P	P															
Brown-headed Cowbird		B	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F				N			*		N									
BHCO	362	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M	F		*	P	P	P															
Summer Tanager		B	*	MPSIOC				M	O					F	*															
SUTA	363	W																												
Northern Cardinal		B	*	*			S	O	O		*	*	*	F	F															
NOCA	364	W	*	*			S	S	S		*	*	*																	
Blue Grosbeak		B	*	MPSIOC			S					*	*																	
BLGR	365	W																												
Indigo Bunting		B	*	MPSIOC			S	M	M			*	*	P	P				*											
INBU	365	W																												
Painted Bunting		B	FG SN	IOC			M	M				*	*	P																
PABU	366	W																												
Purple Finch		B																												
PUFI	367	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M				*	*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
G — Georgia
N — North Carolina
F — Florida
S — South Carolina
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Southern Mixed Mesic Hardwoods

Species / Code	Page	Seasonal and geographic distribution				Successional stage[d]															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seeding	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Pine Siskin		B																												
PISI	368	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M	F		*	*	*	*															
American Goldfinch		B																												
AMGO	369	W	*	*		S	S	S	S	*		*	*	*	*															
Rufous-sided Towhee		B	*	*			O	O	S		F	*	*	P	P															
RSTO	370	W	*	*			O	M	M		F	*	*																	
Savannah Sparrow		B																												
SASP	371	W	*	*		M						*																		
Grasshopper Sparrow		B																												
GRSP	371	W	FG SN	PSIOCT		M						*																		
Henslow's Sparrow		B																												
HESP	372	W	FG SN	PSIOC		M						*																		
Vesper Sparrow		B																												
VESP	374	W	*	PSIOC		M				*		*																		
Northern Junco		B																												
NOJU	375	W	*	MPSIOC		M	M	M	M	F	F	*	*	*																
Chipping Sparrow		B																												
CHSP	376	W	*	*		M	M			F		*	*	*	*				*											
Field Sparrow		B																												
FISP	376	W	*	*		S	M					*	*																	

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Southern Mixed Mesic Hardwoods

Species Code	Page	geographic distribution								Substrate utilization[e]							Specific requirements				minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
White-throated Sparrow		B																												
WTSP	377	W	*	*		M	M	S	S		F	F	*	*	*															
Fox Sparrow		B																												
FOSP	378	W	*	MPSIOC			M	S	S		F		*	*																
Lincoln's Sparrow		B																												
LISP	378	W	*	PSIOC		M	M					*	*																F	
Song Sparrow		B																												
SOSP	379	W	*	*		S	M					*	*																	
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

species of broadleaf evergreen "bay" trees, singly or in combination, compose a plurality of the stocking. The primary species are blackgum (*Nyssa sylvatica* var. *biflora*), red bay (*Persea borbonia*), sweet bay (*Magnolia virginiana*), loblolly bay (*Gordonia lasianthus*), fetterbush (*Lyonia lucida*), gallberry (*Ilex* spp.), and the semi-evergreen titi (*Cyrilla racemiflora*). The type is equivalent to NFS type 68, sweet bay-swamp tupelo-red maple. It is the source of the hardwood component of NFS types 14, slash pine-hardwood (in part); and 18, pond pine-hardwood. This type corresponds to SAF types 85, slash pine-hardwood (in part); 104, sweet bay-swamp tupelo-red bay; and 74, cabbage palmetto (in part). The analogous RRE designation is type 60, oak-gum-cypress in physiographic conditions such as bays and wet pocosins (RRE Physiographic Class 36), small drains (RRE Physiographic Class 33), and possibly cypress strands (RRE Physiographic Class 32) and cypress ponds (RRE Physiographic Class 34).

Four censuses have been conducted in the type in the Southeast 1947-1979, a single WBPS in a poletimber stand in Georgia, and BBC on three grass-forb plots in South Carolina.

Characteristic of this vegetation type are Red-bellied Woodpeckers, Winter Wrens (W), Carolina Wrens, American Robins (W), Hermit Thrushes (W), Yellow-rumped Warblers (W), White-throated Sparrows (W), and Fox Sparrows (W).

No species are *restricted* to this type.

Richardson (1981) presents information on pocosin habitats.

Bay Swamp-Pocosin

Species / Code	Page	Season of use [a]	States [b]	Physiographic provinces [c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water [f]	Flowing water [f]
			geographic distribution			stage				Specific requirements [e]											Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Great Blue Heron		B	*	IOCT			M	M	S	F		F			NP	NP													A	F
GBHE	266	W																												
Green Heron		B	*	*			S	S	M	F		F	*	NP	NP											F			A	F
GRHE	267	W																												
Little Blue Heron		B	*	IOCT			M	S	M	F		F	*		NP														A	F
LBHE	267	W	*	OCT		M				F		F	*		P														A	F
Cattle Egret		B	*	SIOCT			M	S	M	F		F	NP		NP														F	
CAEG	268	W																												
Great Egret		B	*	IOCT			M	S	S	F		F	NP	NP	NP														A	F
GREG	269	W	*	IOCT		M				F		F	P	P	P														A	F
Snowy Egret		B	*	OCT			M	S	M	F		F	NP		NP														A	F
SNEG	269	W	*	OCT		M				F		F	P		P														A	F
Louisiana Heron		B	*	OCT			M	S	M	F		F	NP		NP														A	
LOHE	270	W	*	OCT		M				F		F	P		P														A	
Black-cr. Night Heron		B	*	IOCT			M	S	M			F	NP		NP														A	F
BCNH	270	W	*	IOCT		M						F	P		P														A	F
Yellow-cr. Night Heron		B	*	PSIOCT			M	S	S	F				NP	NP														A	F
YCNH	271	W	FG S	OCT		M				F				P	P														A	F
Wood Stork		B	FG S	OCT			M	M	M				NP	NP	NP														A	
WOST	272	W	FG	OCT		M									P														A	

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Bay Swamp-Pocosin

Species / Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
			distribution																											
Glossy Ibis		B	*	OCT			M	M	M	F		F	NP	NP	NP														A	
GLIB	273	W	*	OCT		M				F		F		P	P														A	
White Ibis		B	FG SN	SIOCT			M	S	S	F		F	NP	NP	NP														A	
WHIB	273	W	FG SN	OCT		M				F		F		P	P														A	
Turkey Vulture		B	*	*			M	S	S	F	F	F	F		*															
TUVU	275	W	*	*		M	M	S	S	F	F	F	F		*															
Black Vulture		B	*	*			S	O	O	F	F	F	F		*															
BLVU	276	W	*	*		M	S	O	O	F	F	F	F		*															
Swallow-tailed Kite		B	FG S	OT					M	F		F	F	F	NP		NP												F	F
STKI	277	W																												
Mississippi Kite		B	FG SN	SIO					M						NP														F	F
MIKI	277	W																												
Sharp-shinned Hawk		B																												
SSHA	278	W	*	*				S	S	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Cooper's Hawk		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*			N												
COHA	279	W	*	*				S	S	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Red-tailed Hawk		B	*	*					M	F		F			*	P														
RTHA	279	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F			*	P														
Red-shouldered Hawk		B	*	*				M	O	F		F	F		*														F	F
RSHA	280	W	*	*		S	M	S	O	F		F	F		*														F	F

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Bay Swamp-Pocosin

Species / Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
		distribution								Substrate utilization							Specific requirements				minimum d.b.h.									
Broad-winged Hawk		B	*	MPSIO					M	F	F	F	F		*															
BWHA	280	W																												
Short-tailed Hawk		B	F	CT				M	M	F		F	F		*															
STHA	281	W																												
Northern Harrier		B																												
NOHA	283	W	*	*		M				F		*																		
Osprey		B	*	OCT				M	S						NP	NP	NP							NP					A	F
OSPR	284	W	FG S	OCT				M	S						P	P	P							P					A	F
American Kestrel		B																												
AMKE	286	W	*	*		M	M			F		F			*	F					F									
Wild Turkey		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M	F	*	*		P	P					F										
WITU	288	W	*	*			M	M	M	F	*	*		P	P					F										
Limpkin		B	FG	OT		S	S	S	S	F		*	N																F	F
LIMP	289	W	FG	OT		S	S	S	S	F		*																	F	F
American Woodcock		B	*	*				M	M	F	*	F																	F	
AMWO	294	W	*	*			M	O	O	F	*	F																	F	
Mourning Dove		B	*	*			M	M	M	F		F		NP	NP															
MODO	297	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F		P	P															
Yellow-billed Cuckoo		B	*	*				O	O				N	*	*															
YBCU	298	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Bay Swamp-Pocosin

Species / Code	Page	Season of use [a]	States [b]	Physiographic provinces [c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water [f]	Flowing water [f]
		geographic distribution				stage [d]															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Barn Owl		B	*	*		S	M			F		F	P		P									N	N		N			
BAOW	300	W	*	*		S	M			F		F	P		P									P	P		P			
Common Screech Owl		B	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*	N							N		N					
CSOW	300	W	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*	P							P		P					
Great Horned Owl		B	*	*					M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
GHOW	301	W	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Barred Owl		B	*	*					S	F	F	F	F	F	*		N								N				F	F
BDOW	302	W	*	*					S	F	F	F	F	F	*		P								P				F	F
Short-eared Owl		B																												
SEOW	303	W	*	PSIOC		M	M			F		*																		
Chuck-will's-widow		B	*	PSIOCT				M	S		N																			
CWWI	304	W	F	OCT				S	S		P																			
Whip-poor-will		B	GS NV	MPSIO				M	M		N																			
WPWI	304	W	FG SN	OCT				S	S		P																			
Ruby-throated Hummingbird		B	*	*			S	S	S				*	*	*															
RTHU	306	W	F	OCT			M	M	M				*	*	*															
Common Flicker		B	*	*				M	M	F		F			*	*			*				N		N					
COFL	307	W	*	*				S	S	F		F			*	*														
Pileated Woodpecker		B	*	*					S					F	*	*	*	*						*	N	F logs				
PIWO	307	W	*	*					S					F	*	*	*	*						*	P	F logs				

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Bay Swamp-Pocosin

Species / Code	Page	geographic distribution				stage				Specific requirements[e]											Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Red-bellied Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	O						*	*							N		N					
RBWO	308	W	*	*				M	O						*	*							P		P					
Red-headed Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	M			F				*			*				N							
RHWO	308	W	*	*				M	S			F	F	F	*	*														
Yellow-bellied Sapsucker		B																												
YBSA	309	W	*	*				M	M				F	F	*							*			*					
Hairy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	S					*	*	*						*			*					
HAWO	309	W	*	*				M	S					*	*	*														
Downy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	S				*	*	*	*					*				*					
DOWO	310	W	*	*				M	S				*	*	*	*					*				*					
Great Crested Flycatcher		B	*	*				M	S					F	*	N						N			N					
GCFL	313	W	F	CT				M	S					F	*	P														
Eastern Phoebe		B																												
EAPH	313	W	*	*		S	S	S	M	F		F	*						*											
Acadian Flycatcher		B	*	*				M	S					*	*	F		*			F								F	F
ACFL	314	W																												
Eastern Pewee		B	*	*				M	S					F	*	F					F									
EAPE	316	W																												
Tree Swallow		B																												
TRSW	317	W	*	OCT		S	S	M	M				*																FB	F

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Bay Swamp-Pocosin

Species / Code	Page	Seasonal and geographic distribution: Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Successional stage[d]: Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Substrate utilization[e]: Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h.: 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Barn Swallow		B	*	*		M																					N			
BASW	319	W																												
Purple Martin		B	*	*		M										N						N			N					
PUMA	320	W																												
Blue Jay		B	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*															
BLJA	320	W	*	*			M	M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*															
American Crow		B	*	*				M	M	F		F			*			N												
AMCR	322	W	*	*		S	M	M	M	F		F			*			P												
Fish Crow		B	*	*			M	S	S	F		F	*		*														A	F
FICR	322	W	*	*		S	M	S	S	F		F			*														A	F
Carolina Chickadee		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S				F	*	*	N					NP				NP					
CACH	323	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	S				F	*	*	P					P				P					
Tufted Titmouse		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S				F	*	*	N					N									
TUTI	324	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	S				F	*	*															
White-breasted Nuthatch		B	GS NV	MPSIOC				M	M						*	*	*								N					
WBNU	324	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M						*	*														
Brown Creeper		B																												
BRCR	326	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M					*	*															
House Wren		B																												
HOWR	326	W	*	PSIOCT		M	S					F	*													*				

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Bay Swamp-Pocosin

Species / Code	Page	Season of use[a]	geographic distribution: States[b]	geographic distribution: Physiographic provinces[c]	geographic distribution: Local area	stage: Grass-forb	stage: Shrub-seedling	stage: Sapling-poletimber	stage: Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h.: 6" (15 cm)	Snags minimum d.b.h.: 10" (25 cm)	Snags minimum d.b.h.: 14" (35 cm)	Snags minimum d.b.h.: 18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Winter Wren		B																												
WIWR	327	W	*	*				O	O	*	*	F	F													*				
Carolina Wren		B	*	*			S	O	O	*	*	*	*	*							N				N	*	N			
CAWR	328	W	*	*			S	O	O	*	*	*	*	*												*				
Sedge Wren		B																												
SEWR	329	W	*	IOCT		M				F		*	*																	
Gray Catbird		B	*	MPSIOC			S	S	M				*	P																
GRCA	330	W	*	PSIOCT			O	O	S				*																	
Brown Thrasher		B	*	*			M	M	M	F	F	F	*	P	P															
BRTH	330	W	*	*			M	M	M	*	*	*	*																	
American Robin		B																												
AMRO	331	W	*	*			S	O	O	F		F	*	*	*															
Wood Thrush		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M		F	F	*	P				*												
WOTH	331	W																												
Hermit Thrush		B																												
HETH	332	W	*	*				O	O		*	F	*					*												
Blue-gray Gnatcatcher		B	*	MPSIOC				M	O				*	*	*															
BGGN	334	W	FG SN	SIOCT			M	O	O				*	*	*															
Ruby-crowned Kinglet		B																												
RCKI	335	W	*	*			S	S	S				*	*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Bay Swamp-Pocosin

Species / Code	Page	Seasonal and geographic distribution				Successional stage				Substrate utilization											Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use [a]	States [b]	Physiographic provinces [c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water [f]	Flowing water [f]
Cedar Waxwing		B																												
CEWA	336	W	*	*			M	O	O				*	*	*				*											
European Starling		B																												
EUST	337	W	*	*			M	S	S	F		F																		
White-eyed Vireo		B	*	*			O	S	M			F	*	P																
WEVI	337	W	FG SN	IOCT			O	S	M			F	*																	
Yellow-throated Vireo		B	*	*					M					F	*															
YTVI	338	W																												
Solitary Vireo		B																												
SOVI	338	W	*	PSIOCT				S	O					*	*															
Red-eyed Vireo		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S					*	*															
REVI	339	W																												
Black-and-white Warbler		B	GS NV	MPSIO				M	M		N	N		F	F			*												
BAWW	340	W	FG SN	SIOCT				S	O					F	*															
Prothonotary Warbler		B	*	PSIOC				M	S				*	*		*					N								F	F
POWA	341	W																												
Swainson's Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				S	O	F	F	F	*	P																
SWWA	341	W																												
Worm-eating Warbler		B	*	MPIO				M	M		*	F	*	P				*												
WEWA	342	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Bay Swamp-Pocosin

Species			distribution								Substrate utilization							Specific requirements													
																						minimum d.b.h.									
Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Bachman's Warbler		B	S	OC			M	M	S			F	*	P	P				*											
BAWA	343	W																												
Orange-crowned Warbler		B																												
OCWA	344	W	*	PSIOCT		M	O	S	M			*	*	*																
Northern Parula Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC					S					*	*															
NPWA	345	W																												
Yellow-rumped Warbler		B																												
YRWA	347	W	*	*			O	O	O	*		*	*	*	*															
Black-thr. Green Warbler		B	GS NV	MPOC				M	M					F	*			*												
BTGW	348	W																												
Yellow-throated Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S						*	F	*													
YTWA	349	W	FG SN	IOCT				M	S						*	F	*													
Prairie Warbler		B	*	*			O					F	*																	
PRWA	351	W	FG S	OCT			S	S	S			*	*																	
Palm Warbler		B																												
PAWA	351	W	*	PSIOCT		M	S	M		*		*	*																	
Ovenbird		B	GS NV	MPSIOC				M	M	*	*		P	P																
OVEN	352	W	FG S	OCT				O	O	*	*																			
Northern Waterthrush		B																												
NOWA	352	W	F	OCT			M	M	M	*																			F	F

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
G — Georgia
N — North Carolina
F — Florida
S — South Carolina
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Bay Swamp-Pocosin

Species / Code	Page		geographic distribution			stage[d]															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Kentucky Warbler		B	*	*					M	F	F	*	*	P																
KEWA	353	W																												
Common Yellowthroat		B	*	*		M	O					*	*																	
COYE	354	W	*	PSIOCT		S	O					*	*																	
Yellow-breasted Chat		B																												
YBCH	355	W	*	OCT			M						*																	
Hooded Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S				*	FP																
HOWA	355	W																												
Red-winged Blackbird		B	*	*		O	O	M				*	*	P	P															
RWBL	358	W	*	*		O	O	S	M			*	P	P	P															
Rusty Blackbird		B																												
RUBL	360	W	*	*		M	M	S	O	F		F	P	P	P															
Boat-tailed Grackle		B	*	OCT		M	M	M	M	F		*	N	N	N														A	
BTGR	361	W	*	OCT		M	M	M	M	F		*	P	P	P														A	
Common Grackle		B																												
COGR	362	W	*	*			M	S	S	F		*	P	P	P															
Brown-headed Cowbird		B	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F				N			*		N									
BHCO	362	W	*	MPSIOC			M	S	S	F		*	P	P	P															
Summer Tanager		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M					F	*															
SUTA	363	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Bay Swamp-Pocosin

Species Code	Page	geographic distribution				stage[d]															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic[c] provinces	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Northern Cardinal		B	*	*			M	S	S		*	*	*	F	F															
NOCA	364	W	*	*			S	S	S		*	*	*																	
Blue Grosbeak		B	*	MPSIOC			S					*	*																	
BLGR	365	W																												
Indigo Bunting		B	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M			*	*	P	P				*											
INBU	365	W	F	OCT			M	M	M			*	*																	
Painted Bunting		B	FG SN	IOC			M	M				*	*	P																
PABU	366	W	F	OCT			M	M				*	*																	
Evening Grosbeak		B																												
EVGR	367	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M	F			*	*	*															
Purple Finch		B																												
PUFI	367	W	*	MPSIOC				M	S				*	*	*															
Pine Siskin		B																												
PISI	368	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M	F		*	*	*	*															
American Goldfinch		B																												
AMGO	369	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	*		*	*	*	*															
Rufous-sided Towhee		B	*	*			S	S	M		F	*	*	P	P															
RSTO	370	W	*	*			S	S	M		F	*	*																	
Savannah Sparrow		B																												
SASP	371	W	*	*		M						*																		

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Bay Swamp-Pocosin

		geographic distribution				stage[d]				[e]											Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Grasshopper Sparrow		B																												
GRSP	371	W	FG SN	PSIOCT		M						*																		
Henslow's Sparrow		B																												
HESP	372	W	FG SN	PSIOC		M						*																		
Le Conte's Sparrow		B																												
LCSP	372	W	FG S	PSIOC		M						*																		
Northern Junco		B																												
NOJU	375	W	*	MPSIOC		M	M	M	M	F	F	*	*	*																
White-throated Sparrow		B																												
WTSP	377	W	*	*		M	S	S	O		F	F	*	*	*															
Fox Sparrow		B																												
FOSP	378	W	*	MPSIOC			M	S	O		F		*	*																
Lincoln's Sparrow		B																												
LISP	378	W	*	PSIOC		M	M					*	*																F	
Swamp Sparrow		B																												
SWSP	379	W	*	*		M	M					*																	FB	
Song Sparrow		B																												
SOSP	379	W	*	*		S	M					*	*																	
		B																												
		W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

These are forests of boggy, poorly drained soils in which [illegible] (Pinus serotina) makes up a majority of the stocking. The type corresponds to NFS types 36, pond pine; 18, pond pine-hardwood (in part); 40, hardwood-pond pine (in part); and probably 66, Atlantic white-cedar. It is equivalent to SAF type 98, pond pine; and probably includes sites supporting type 97, Atlantic white-cedar. It is equivalent to RRE type 36, pond pine. We have little experience with the birds of Atlantic white-cedar stands. Our inclusion of the type here reflects Braun's (1964:290) treatment of it as a bog forest successional to bay swamp-pocosin vegetation.

No BBC or WBPS was conducted in this type in the Southeast in 1947-1979. Terwilliger (1981a, 1981b) conducted two BBC in sawtimber Atlantic white-cedar stands in the Dismal Swamp in 1980, one in North Carolina and the other in Virginia. Prairie Warblers were the most numerous birds on both plots.

Characteristic of this vegetation type are Carolina Chickadees and Carolina Wrens.

No species are restricted to the type.

Richardson (1981) presents information on pocosin habitats.

Pond Pine Pocosin

Species Code	Page		distribution																		Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Little Blue Heron		B																												
LBHE	267	W	*	OCT		M				F		F	*		P														A	F
Great Egret		B																												
GREG	269	W	*	IOCT		M				F		F	P	P	P														A	F
Snowy Egret		B																												
SNEG	269	W	*	OCT		M				F		F	P		P														A	F
Louisiana Heron		B																												
LOHE	270	W	*	OCT		M				F		F	P		P														A	
Black-cr. Night Heron		B																												
BCNH	270	W	*	IOCT		M						F	P		P														A	F
Yellow-cr. Night Heron		B																												
YCNH	271	W	FG S	OCT		M				F				P	P														A	F
Glossy Ibis		B																												
GLIB	273	W	*	OCT		M				F		F		P	P														A	
White Ibis		B																												
WHIB	273	W	FG SN	OCT		M				F		F		P	P														A	
Turkey Vulture		B	*	*			M	M	M	F	F	F	F		*															
TUVU	275	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F	F	F	F		*															
Black Vulture		B	*	*			M	M	M	F	F	F	F		*															
BLVU	276	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F	F	F	F		*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Pond Pine Pocosin

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Sharp-shinned Hawk		B																												
SSHA	278	W	*	*				S	S	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Cooper's Hawk		B																												
COHA	279	W	*	*				S	S	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Red-tailed Hawk		B																												
RTHA	279	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F			*	P														
Red-shouldered Hawk		B																												
RSHA	280	W	*	*		M	M			F		F	F		*														F	F
Northern Harrier		B																												
NOHA	283	W	*	*		M				F		*																		
Osprey		B	*	OCT				M	M						NP	NP	NP							NP					A	F
OSPR	284	W																												
American Kestrel		B																												
AMKE	286	W	*	*		M	M			F		F			*	F					F									
Common Bobwhite		B	*	*		M				F		*								F										
COBO	287	W	*	*		M				F		*								F										
American Woodcock		B																												
AMWO	294	W	*	*			M	M	M	F	*	F																	F	
Mourning Dove		B	*	*			M	M	M	F		F		NP	NP															
MODO	297	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F		P	P															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Pond Pine Pocosin

Species Code	Page	distribution Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Barn Owl		B	*	*		S	M			F		F	P		P									N	N		N			
BAOW	300	W	*	*		S	M			F		F	P		P									P	P		P			
Common Screech Owl		B	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	*	*	N							N		N					
CSOW	300	W	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	*	*	P							P		P					
Great Horned Owl		B	*	*					M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
GHOW	301	W	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Short-eared Owl		B																												
SEOW	303	W	*	PSIOC		M	M			F		*																		
Chuck-will's-widow		B	*	PSIOCT				M	M		N																			
CWWI	304	W																												
Whip-poor-will		B	GS NV	MPSIO				M	M		N																			
WPWI	304	W																												
Ruby-throated Hummingbird		B	*	*			M	M	M				*	*	*															
RTHU	306	W																												
Common Flicker		B	*	*				M	M	F		F			*	*			*				N		N					
COFL	307	W	*	*				S	S	F		F			*	*														
Pileated Woodpecker		B	*	*					M					F	*	*	*	*						*	N	F logs				
PIWO	307	W	*	*					M					F	*	*	*	*						*	P	F logs				
Red-bellied Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	M						*	*							N		N					
RBWO	308	W	*	*				M	M						*	*							P		P					

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Pond Pine Pocosin

Species / Code	Page	Season of use [a]	States [b]	Physiographic [c] provinces	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water [f]	Flowing water [f]
			distribution																		minimum d.b.h.									
Red-headed Woodpecker		B	*	*				S	S			F				*			*				N							
RHWO	308	W																												
Yellow-bellied Sapsucker		B																												
YBSA	309	W	*	*				M	M				F	F	*							*			*					
Hairy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	M					*	*	*						*			*					
HAWO	309	W	*	*				M	M					*	*	*														
Downy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	M				*	*	*	*					*				*					
DOWO	310	W	*	*				M	M				*	*	*	*					*				*					
Red-cockaded Woodpecker		B	*	PSIOC				M	M					F	F		N								*					
RCWO	310	W	*	PSIOC				M	M					F	F		P								*					
Great Crested Flycatcher		B	*	*				M	S					F	*	N						N			N					
GCFL	313	W																												
Eastern Phoebe		B																												
EAPH	313	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F	*						*											
Eastern Pewee		B	*	*				M	M					F	*	F					F									
EAPE	316	W																												
Tree Swallow		B																												
TRSW	317	W	*	OCT		M	M	M	M				*																FB	F
Barn Swallow		B	*	*		M																					N			
BASW	319	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Pond Pine Pocosin

Species / Code	Page	distribution																			Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Purple Martin		B	*	*		M										N						N			N					
PUMA	320	W																												
Blue Jay		B	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*															
BLJA	320	W	*	*			M	M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*															
American Crow		B	*	*				M	M	F		F			*			N												
AMCR	322	W	*	*		S	M	M	M	F		F			*			P												
Fish Crow		B	*	*			M	S	S	F		F	*		*														A	F
FICR	322	W	*	*		S	M	S	S	F		F			*														A	F
Carolina Chickadee		B	*	MPSIOC				S	O				F	*	*	N					NP				NP					
CACH	323	W	*	MPSIOC			M	S	O				F	*	*	P					P				P					
Tufted Titmouse		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M				F	*	*	N					N									
TUTI	324	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M				F	*	*															
Red-breasted Nuthatch		B																												
RBNU	325	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M					*	*															
Brown-headed Nuthatch		B	*	PSIOC				M	S					*	*	N					N				N					
BHNU	325	W	*	PSIOC			M	M	S					*	*															
Brown Creeper		B																												
BRCR	326	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M					*	*															
House Wren		B																												
HOWR	326	W	*	PSIOCT		S	O	S	S			F	*													*				

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Pond Pine Pocosin

Species / Code	Page	distribution																				minimum d.b.h.								
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Winter Wren		B																												
WIWR	327	W	*	*				S	S	*	*	F	F													*				
Carolina Wren		B	*	*			S	O	O	*	*	*	*	*							N				N	*	N			
CAWR	328	W	*	*			S	O	O	*	*	*	*	*												*				
Sedge Wren		B																												
SEWR	329	W	*	IOCT		M				F		*	*																	
Gray Catbird		B	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M				*	P																
GRCA	330	W	*	PSIOCT			O	O	S				*																	
Brown Thrasher		B	*	*			M	M	M	F	F	F	*	P	P															
BRTH	330	W	*	*			M	M	M	*	*	*	*																	
American Robin		B																												
AMRO	331	W	*	*			M	M	S	F		F	*	*	*															
Hermit Thrush		B																												
HETH	332	W	*	*				S	S		*	F	*					*												
Blue-gray Gnatcatcher		B																												
BGGN	334	W	FG SN	SIOCT			M	M	M				*	*	*															
Golden-crowned Kinglet		B																												
GCKI	334	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M				F	F	*															
Ruby-crowned Kinglet		B																												
RCKI	335	W	*	*			S	S	S				*	*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Pond Pine Pocosin

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	Geographic distribution States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seeding	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
European Starling		B																												
EUST	337	W	*	*			M	M	M	F		F																		
White-eyed Vireo		B	*	*			S	M	M			F	*	P																
WEVI	337	W	FG SN	IOCT			M	M	M			F	*																	
Solitary Vireo		B																												
SOVI	338	W	*	PSIOCT				M	M					*	*															
Black-and-white Warbler		B																												
BAWW	340	W	FG SN	SIOCT				M	M					F	*															
Prothonotary Warbler		B	*	PSIOC				M	M				*	*		*					N								F	F
POWA	341	W																												
Swainson's Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M	F	F	F	*	P																
SWWA	341	W																												
Bachman's Warbler		B	S	OC				M	M			F	*	P	P				*											
BAWA	343	W																												
Orange-crowned Warbler		B																												
OCWA	344	W	*	PSIOCT		M	M	M	M			*	*	*																
Yellow-rumped Warbler		B																												
YRWA	347	W	*	*			S	S	S	*		*	*	*	*															
Black-thr. Green Warbler		B	GS NV	MPOC				S	S					F	*			*												
BTGW	348	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Pond Pine Pocosin

		distribution																			minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Yellow-throated Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M						*	F	*													
YTWA	349	W	FG SN	IOCT				M	M						*	F	*													
Pine Warbler		B	*	*				M	M					F	*															
PIWA	350	W	*	*				M	M			F		F	*															
Prairie Warbler		B	*	*			S					F	*																	
PRWA	351	W	FG S	OCT			M	M	M			*	*																	
Palm Warbler		B																												
PAWA	351	W	*	PSIOCT		M	M	M		*		*	*																	
Ovenbird		B																												
OVEN	352	W	FG S	OCT				M	M	*	*																			
Common Yellowthroat		B	*	*		S	S	M	M			*	*																	
COYE	354	W	*	PSIOCT		M	S	M	M			*	*																	
Yellow-breasted Chat		B	*	*			M	O					*			P														
YBCH	355	W																												
Red-winged Blackbird		B	*	*		S	S	M				*	*	P	P															
RWBL	358	W	*	*		S	S	M	M			*	P	P	P															
Rusty Blackbird		B																												
RUBL	360	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F	P	P	P															
Common Grackle		B	*	*				M	M	F		F	N	N	N															
COGR	362	W	*	*			M	S	S	F		*	P	P	P															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Pond Pine Pocosin

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Brown-headed Cowbird		B	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F				N			*		N									
BHCO	362	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M	F		*	P	P	P															
Northern Cardinal		B	*	*			M	M	M		*	*	*	F	F															
NOCA	364	W	*	*			M	M	M		*	*	*																	
Evening Grosbeak		B																												
EVGR	367	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M	F			*	*	*															
Purple Finch		B																												
PUFI	367	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M				*	*	*															
Pine Siskin		B																												
PISI	368	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M	F		*	*	*	*															
American Goldfinch		B																												
AMGO	369	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	*		*	*	*	*															
Rufous-sided Towhee		B	*	*			S	S	M		F	*	*	P	P															
RSTO	370	W	*	*			S	S	M		F	*	*																	
Savannah Sparrow		B																												
SASP	371	W	*	*		M						*																		
Grasshopper Sparrow		B																												
GRSP	371	W	FG SN	PSIOCT		M						*																		
Henslow's Sparrow		B																												
HESP	372	W	FG SN	PSIOC		M						*																		

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Pond Pine Pocosin

Species Code	Page	distribution																			minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Le Conte's Sparrow		B																												
LCSP	372	W	FG S	PSIOC		M						*																		
Northern Junco		B																												
NOJU	375	W	*	MPSIOC		M	M	M	M	F	F	*	*	*																
White-throated Sparrow		B																												
WTSP	377	W	*	*		M	M	M	M		F	F	*	*	*															
Fox Sparrow		B																												
FOSP	378	W	*	MPSIOC			M	S	S		F		*	*																
Lincoln's Sparrow		B																												
LISP	378	W	*	PSIOC		M	M					*	*																F	
Swamp Sparrow		B																												
SWSP	379	W	*	*		M	M					*																	FB	
Song Sparrow		B																												
SOSP	379	W	*	*		S	M					*	*																	
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

These are forests of [illegible] pine (Pinus elliottii), singly or in combination, compose a plurality of the stocking. This type, growing on flatwoods and dry pocosins, corresponds to NFS types 21, longleaf pine; 22, slash pine; and 14, slash pine-hardwood (in part). It is equivalent to SAF types 70, longleaf pine; 83, longleaf pine-slash pine; 84, slash pine; 111, south Florida slash pine; and 85, slash pine-hardwood (in part). It is equivalent to RRE types 21, longleaf pine; and 22: slash pine.

Sixteen censuses from this type have been published (Table 1).

Characteristic of this vegetation type are Red-headed Woodpeckers (B), Red-cockaded Woodpeckers, Brown-headed Nuthatches, Eastern Bluebirds, Pine Warblers, and Bachman's Sparrows.

Restricted to this type are Red-cockaded Woodpeckers and Henslow's Sparrows (W).

Wood and Niles (1978) present introductory information on management of nongame wildlife in this type. Dickson et al. (1980) summarize information from three censuses in this type.

Table 1. Published Breeding Bird Censuses and Winter Bird Population Studies from longleaf pine-slash pine in the Southeast in 1947-1979.

State	Season	Successional stage[a]		
		Grass-forb	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber
Florida	Breeding	0	0	1(1)
	Winter	1(2)	0	1(4)
Georgia	Breeding	0	2(2)	4(7)
	Winter	0	1(1)	0

[a] Entries are listed as "Plots (Years censused)".

Longleaf Pine-Slash Pine

Species Code	Page	distribution Season of use [a]	States [b]	Physiographic provinces [c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water [f]	Flowing water [f]
Turkey Vulture		B	*	*			M	S	S	F	F	F	F		*															
TUVU	275	W	*	*		M	M	S	S	F	F	F	F		*															
Black Vulture		B	*	*			M	M	M	F	F	F	F		*															
BLVU	276	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F	F	F	F		*															
White-tailed Kite		B	F	T		M	M	M	M	F		F	N		N															
WTKI	276	W	F	T		M	M	M	M	F		F																		
Swallow-tailed Kite		B	FG S	OT					M	F		F	F	F	NP		NP												F	F
STKI	277	W																												
Sharp-shinned Hawk		B																												
SSHA	278	W	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Cooper's Hawk		B																												
COHA	279	W	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Red-tailed Hawk		B																												
RTHA	279	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F			*	P														
Red-shouldered Hawk		B	*	*				M	M	F		F	F		*														F	F
RSHA	280	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F	F		*														F	F
Bald Eagle		B	*	IOCT					M						NP		NP							NP					A	F
BAEA	283	W																												
Northern Harrier		B																												
NOHA	283	W	*	*		M				F		*																		

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Longleaf Pine-Slash Pine

			geographic distribution			stage															minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Osprey		B	*	OCT					M						NP	NP	NP							NP					A	F
OSPR	284	W																												
American Kestrel		B	*	MPSIO		M				F		F			*	*					F		*		N					
AMKE	286	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F			*	F					F									
Common Bobwhite		B	*	*		S	S	M	S	F		*								F										
COBO	287	W	*	*		S	S	M	S	F		*								F										
Wild Turkey		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S	F	*	*		P	P					F										
WITU	288	W	*	*			M	M	S	F	*	*		P	P					F										
Sandhill Crane		B	FG	OT		M						*																	F	
SACR	288	W	FG	OT		M						*																	F	
American Woodcock		B																												
AMWO	294	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F	*	F																	F	
Rock Dove		B	*	*		M				F		F															N			
RODO	296	W	*	*		M				F		F															P			
Mourning Dove		B	*	*		M	S	S	S	F		F		NP	NP															
MODO	297	W	*	*		S	M	S	S	F		F		P	P															
Barn Owl		B	*	*		S	M			F		F	P		P									N	N		N			
BAOW	300	W	*	*		S	M			F		F	P		P									P	P		P			
Common Screech Owl		B	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*	N							N		N					
CSOW	300	W	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*	P							P		P					

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Longleaf Pine-Slash Pine

Species / Code	Page	distribution																			minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Great Horned Owl		B	*	*					S	F	F	F	F	F	*															
GHOW	301	W	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Short-eared Owl		B																												
SEOW	303	W	*	PSIOC		M				F		*																		
Chuck-will's-widow		B	*	PSIOCT				M	M		N																			
CWWI	304	W																												
Common Nighthawk		B	*	*		M	M	M	M	N																	N			
CONI	305	W																												
Ruby-throated Hummingbird		B	*	*			M						*	*	*															
RTHU	306	W																												
Common Flicker		B	*	*				M	S	F		F			*	*			*				N		N					
COFL	307	W	*	*				M	S	F		F			*	*														
Pileated Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	M					F	*	*	*	*						*	N	F logs				
PIWO	307	W	*	*				M	M					F	*	*	*	*						*	P	F logs				
Red-bellied Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	S						*	*							N		N					
RBWO	308	W	*	*				M	S						*	*							P		P					
Red-headed Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	O			F				*			*				N							
RHWO	308	W	*	*				M	S			F	F	F	*	*														
Yellow-bellied Sapsucker		B																												
YBSA	309	W	*	*				M	M				F	F	*							*			*					

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Longleaf Pine-Slash Pine

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Hairy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	S					*	*	*						*			*					
HAWO	309	W	*	*				M	S					*	*	*														
Downy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	M				*	*	*	*					*				*					
DOWO	310	W	*	*				M	M				*	*	*	*					*				*					
Red-cockaded Woodpecker		B	*	PSIOC				M	O					F	F		N								*					
RCWO	310	W	*	PSIOC				S	O					F	F		P								*					
Eastern Kingbird		B	*	*		M	M	M	M			F			*	F			*		F									
EAKI	311	W																												
Great Crested Flycatcher		B	*	*				M	S					F	*	N						N			N					
GCFL	313	W	F	CT				M	M					F	*	P														
Eastern Phoebe		B																												
EAPH	313	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F	*						*											
Eastern Pewee		B	*	*				M	O					F	*	F					F									
EAPE	316	W																												
Barn Swallow		B	*	*		M																					N			
BASW	319	W																												
Purple Martin		B	*	*		M										N						N			N					
PUMA	320	W																												
Blue Jay		B	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*															
BLJA	320	W	*	*			M	M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Longleaf Pine-Slash Pine

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	distribution States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
American Crow		B	*	*				M	M	F		F			*			N												
AMCR	322	W	*	*		S	M	M	M	F		F			*			P												
Fish Crow		B	*	*				M	M	F		F	*		*														A	F
FICR	322	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F			*														A	F
Carolina Chickadee		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S				F	*	*	N					NP				NP					
CACH	323	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	S				F	*	*	P					P				P					
Tufted Titmouse		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M				F	*	*	N					N									
TUTI	324	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M				F	*	*															
White-breasted Nuthatch		B	GS NV	MPSIOC				M	M						*	*	*								N					
WBNU	324	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M						*	*														
Red-breasted Nuthatch		B																												
RBNU	325	W	*	MPSIOC			M	S	S					*	*															
Brown-headed Nuthatch		B	*	PSIOC				S	O					*	*	N					N				N					
BHNU	325	W	*	PSIOC			M	S	O					*	*															
Brown Creeper		B																												
BRCR	326	W	*	MPSIOC				S	S					*	*															
House Wren		B																												
HOWR	326	W	*	PSIOCT		M	S	S	S			F	*													*				
Carolina Wren		B	*	*			M	M	M	*	*	*	*	*							N				N	*	N			
CAWR	328	W	*	*			M	M	M	*	*	*	*	*												*				

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Longleaf Pine-Slash Pine

Code / Species	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Sedge Wren		B																												
SEWR	329	W	*	IOCT		M	M	M	M	F		*	*																	
Brown Thrasher		B	*	*			M	M	M	F	F	F	*	P	P															
BRTH	330	W	*	*			M	M	M	*	*	*	*																	
Hermit Thrush		B																												
HETH	332	W	*	*				M	M		*	F	*					*												
Eastern Bluebird		B	*	MPSIOC		S	M	S	S	F		F			*	NP			*		NP									
EABL	333	W	*	*		S	S	S	S	F		F			*	P			*		P									
Blue-gray Gnatcatcher		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M				*	*	*															
BGGN	334	W																												
Golden-crowned Kinglet		B																												
GCKI	334	W	*	MPSIOC			M	S	S				F	F	*															
Ruby-crowned Kinglet		B																												
RCKI	335	W	*	*			S	S	S				*	*	*															
Solitary Vireo		B																												
SOVI	338	W	*	PSIOCT				M	S					*	*															
Yellow-rumped Warbler		B																												
YRWA	347	W	*	*			M	M	M	*		*	*	*	*															
Yellow-throated Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M						*	F	*													
YTWA	349	W	FG SN	IOCT				M	O						*	F	*													

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Longleaf Pine-Slash Pine		geographic distribution				stage															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use [a]	States [b]	Physiographic provinces [c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water [f]	Flowing water [f]
Pine Warbler		B	*	*			M	M	O					F	*															
PIWA	350	W	*	*				S	O			F		F	*															
Prairie Warbler		B	*	*			M	M	M			F	*																	
PRWA	351	W	FG S	OCT			M	M	M			*	*																	
Palm Warbler		B																												
PAWA	351	W	*	PSIOCT		M	M	M		*		*	*																	
Common Yellowthroat		B	*	*		M	S	M	M			*	*																	
COYE	354	W	*	PSIOCT		M	M					*	*																	
Yellow-breasted Chat		B	*	*			M						*			P														
YBCH	355	W																												
House Sparrow		B	*	*		M				F		F																		
HOSP	357	W	*	*		M				F		F																		
Eastern Meadowlark		B	*	*		M	M					*																		
EAME	358	W	*	*		M	M					*																		
Red-winged Blackbird		B	*	*		M						*	*	P	P															
RWBL	358	W	*	*		M						*	P	P	P															
Spotted Oriole		B	F	CT					M					F	*				*											
SPOR	359	W	F	CT					M					F	*				*											
Common Grackle		B	*	*				M	M	F		F	N	N	N															
COGR	362	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Longleaf Pine-Slash Pine

			distribution																			Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use [a]	States [b]	Physiographic provinces [c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water [f]	Flowing water [f]
Brown-headed Cowbird		B	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F				N			*		N									
BHCO	362	W																												
Summer Tanager		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S					F	*															
SUTA	363	W																												
Northern Cardinal		B	*	*			M	M	M		*	*	*	F	F															
NOCA	364	W	*	*			M	M	M		*	*	*																	
Indigo Bunting		B	*	MPSIOC			S	M	M			*	*	P	P				*											
INBU	365	W																												
Evening Grosbeak		B																												
EVGR	367	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M	F			*	*	*															
Purple Finch		B																												
PUFI	367	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M				*	*	*															
Pine Siskin		B																												
PISI	368	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M	F		*	*	*	*															
American Goldfinch		B																												
AMGO	369	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	*		*	*	*	*															
Red Crossbill		B																												
RECR	369	W	GS NV	MPSIOC				M	M					*	*															
Rufous-sided Towhee		B	*	*			O	O	S		F	*	*	P	P															
RSTO	370	W	*	*			O	O	S		F	*	*																	

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Longleaf Pine-Slash Pine

Species Code	Page	geographic distribution				stage															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Savannah Sparrow		B																												
SASP	371	W	*	*		M						*																		
Grasshopper Sparrow		B																												
GRSP	371	W	FG SN	PSIOCT		S	M					*																		
Henslow's Sparrow		B																												
HESP	372	W	FG SN	PSIOC		O	M	S	O			*																		
Le Conte's Sparrow		B																												
LCSP	372	W	FG S	PSIOC		O						*																		
Bachman's Sparrow		B	*	PSIOC		O	M	O	O			*	*	P	P				*											
BASP	374	W	*	SIOC		O	M	O	O			*																		
Northern Junco		B																												
NOJU	375	W	*	MPSIOC		M	M	S	S	F	F	*	*	*																
Chipping Sparrow		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M	F		*	*	*	*				*											
CHSP	376	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		*	*	*	*				*											
Field Sparrow		B	GS NV	*			S					*	*																	
FISP	376	W	*	*		S	S					*	*																	
White-throated Sparrow		B																												
WTSP	377	W	*	*		M	M	M	M		F	F	*	*	*															
Fox Sparrow		B																												
FOSP	378	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M		F		*	*																

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Longleaf Pine-Slash Pine

		distribution																			Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic[c] provinces	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Lincoln's Sparrow		B																												
LISP	378	W	*	PSIOC		M	M	M	M			*	*																F	
Swamp Sparrow		B																												
SWSP	379	W	*	*		M						*																	FB	
Song Sparrow		B																												
SOSP	379	W	*	*		M	M					*	*																	
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

aquatica), blackgum, sweetgum (Liquidambar styraciflua), oaks, or cypress (Taxodium spp.), singly or in combination, compose a plurality of the stocking. The type contains a number of NFS and SAF types (Table 2), and coincides with the RRE designation 60, oak-gum-cypress.

Major development of oak-gum-cypress vegetation is along the floodplains of large Coastal Plain rivers throughout the Southeast; the type also occurs in headwater swamps in the Outer Coastal Plain. Some stands are intermediate between this type and either the elm-ash-cottonwood type or the bay swamp-pocosin type. The status of such stands is determined by substrate conditions and by whether the water in the stands is flowing or standing. Where floodwaters frequently flow through the stands, conditions between oak-gum-cypress and elm-ash-cottonwood prevail; where floodwaters stand for prolonged periods and flow little, conditions between oak-gum-cypress and bay swamp-pocosin can occur.

The most important variable in the type, extent and duration of flooding, has profound and predictable effects not only on the vegetation but also on the bird communities. For example, birds that commonly utilize understory vegetation and the ground are not found on the wetter sites in this type. Prothonotary Warblers are confined to those wetter sites.

Twelve censuses have been published from this type in the Southeast 1947-1979 (Table 3).

Characteristic of this vegetation type are Red-shouldered Hawks, Yellow-billed Cuckoos (B), Barred Owls, Pileated Woodpeckers, Red-bellied Woodpeckers, Red-headed Woodpeckers (W), Acadian Flycatchers (B), Tufted Titmice, Blue-gray Gnatcatchers (B), Prothonotary Warblers (B), Northern Parula Warblers (B), Yellow-rumped Warblers (W), Yellow-throated Warblers (B), and Rusty Blackbirds (W).

Restricted to this type are Swallow-tailed Kites (B), Mississippi Kites (B), and Bachman's Warblers (B).

Table 2. SAF and NFS forest types included in oak-gum-cypress.

SAF no.	SAF type name
82	loblolly pine-hardwood (in part)
88	willow oak-water oak-diamondleaf oak
91	swamp chestnut oak-cherrybark oak
92	sweetgum-willow oak
96	overcup oak-water hickory
100	pondcypress
101	baldcypress
102	baldcypress-tupelo
103	water tupelo-swamp tupelo

NFS no.	NFS type name
23	pond cypress
24	bald cypress
46	bottomland hardwood-yellow pine (in part)
61	swamp chestnut oak-cherrybark oak
62	sweetgum-Nuttall oak-willow
64	laurel oak-willow oak
65	overcup oak-water hickory
67	bald cypress-water tupelo
68	sweetbay-swamp tupelo-red maple (in part)

State	Season	Successional stage[a]	
		Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber
Florida	Breeding	1(2)	0
	Winter	1(1)	0
Georgia	Breeding	1(1)	0
South Carolina	Breeding	2(2)	1(1)
North Carolina	Breeding	0	2(4)
Virginia	Breeding	0	1(1)

[a] Entries are listed as "Plots (Years censused)".

Management of birds in bottomland habitats has been treated by Dickson (1978) and Dickson and Noble (1978). Dickson et al. (1980) summarize seven censuses from this type.

Oak-Gum-Cypress

		distribution																			Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Double-cr. Cormorant		B	*	OCT				M	O						N	N			N										A	F
DCCO	265	W																												
American Anhinga		B	FG SN	IOCT		M	M	M	O				NP	NP	NP														FB	
AMAN	265	W	FG SN	IOCT		M	M	M	O				P	P	P														FB	
Great Blue Heron		B	*	IOCT					O	F		F			NP	NP													A	F
GBHE	266	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F			P	P													A	F
Green Heron		B	*	*		M	O	O	S	F		F	*	NP	NP											F			A	F
GRHE	267	W																												
Little Blue Heron		B	*	IOCT		S	S	O	S	F		F	*		NP														A	F
LBHE	267	W																												
Cattle Egret		B	*	SIOCT		S	S	O	S	F		F	NP		NP														F	
CAEG	268	W																												
Great Egret		B	*	IOCT		S	S	O	O	F		F	NP	NP	NP														A	F
GREG	269	W																												
Snowy Egret		B	*	OCT		S	S	O	S	F		F	NP		NP														A	F
SNEG	269	W																												
Louisiana Heron		B	*	OCT		S	S	S	S	F		F	NP		NP														A	
LOHE	270	W																												
Black-cr. Night Heron		B	*	IOCT		S	S	S	S			F	NP		NP														A	F
BCNH	270	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Oak-Gum-Cypress

Species Code	Page	geographic distribution Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic[c] provinces	Local area	stage Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Yellow-cr. Night Heron		B	*	PSIOCT			M	O	O	F				NP	NP														A	F
YCNH	271	W																												
Wood Stork		B	FG S	OCT		M	M	S	O				NP	NP	NP														A	
WOST	272	W																												
Glossy Ibis		B	*	OCT		M	S	S	M	F		F	NP	NP	NP														A	
GLIB	273	W																												
White Ibis		B	FG SN	SIOCT		M	S	O	S	F		F	NP	NP	NP														A	
WHIB	273	W																												
Wood Duck		B	*	MPSIOT			M	O	O							N								N	N				F	F
WODU	274	W	*	MPSIOT			M	O	O																				F	F
Hooded Merganser		B	NV	PIO		M	M	O	O							N								N	N				F	
HOME	275	W																												
Turkey Vulture		B	*	*		M	M	O	O	F	F	F	F		*															
TUVU	275	W	*	*		M	M	O	O	F	F	F	F		*															
Black Vulture		B	*	*		M	M	O	O	F	F	F	F		*															
BLVU	276	W	*	*		M	M	O	O	F	F	F	F		*															
Swallow-tailed Kite		B	FG S	OT					O	F		F	F	F	NP		NP												F	F
STKI	277	W																												
Mississippi Kite		B	FG SN	SIO					S						NP														F	F
MIKI	277	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Oak-Gum-Cypress

Species Code	Page		distribution																		Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Sharp-shinned Hawk		B																												
SSHA	278	W	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Cooper's Hawk		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*			N												
COHA	279	W	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Red-shouldered Hawk		B	*	*				M	O	F		F	F		*														F	F
RSHA	280	W	*	*		M	M	S	O	F		F	F		*														F	F
Short-tailed Hawk		B	F	CT				S	O	F		F	F		*															
STHA	281	W	F	CT				S	S	F		F	F		*															
Bald Eagle		B	*	IOCT					O						NP		NP							NP					A	F
BAEA	283	W	*	SIOCT				M	S						P		P							P					A	F
Northern Harrier		B																												
NOHA	283	W	*	*		S				F		*																		
Osprey		B	*	OCT				M	O						NP	NP	NP							NP					A	F
OSPR	284	W	FG S	OCT				M	O						P	P	P							P					A	F
Wild Turkey		B	*	MPSIOC			M	M	S	F	*	*		P	P					F										
WITU	288	W	*	*				M	S	F	*	*		P	P					F										
Limpkin		B	FG	OT		O	O	O	O	F		*	N																F	F
LIMP	289	W	FG	OT		O	O	O	O	F		*																	F	F
King Rail		B	*	PSIOCT		M				F		*																	FB	
KIRA	289	W	*	OCT		M				F		*																	FB	

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Oak-Gum-Cypress

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
			geographic distribution			stage															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Virginia Rail		B																												
VIRA	290	W	*	PSIOCT		M				F		*																	FB	
Sora		B																												
SORA	291	W	*	PSIOCT		M				F		*																	F	
Yellow Rail		B																												
YERA	291	W	FG SN	C		M				F		*																	A	
Black Rail		B																												
BLRA	292	W	FG SN	C		M				F		*																	A	
Purple Gallinule		B	FG SN	SIOCT		M	M	M	M			*																	F	
PUGA	292	W	F	OCT		M	M	M	M			*																	F	
Common Gallinule		B	*	SIOCT		M	M	M	M			*																	F	
COGA	293	W	*	SIOCT		M	M	M	M			*																	F	
American Woodcock		B	*	*			M	M	S	F	*	F																	F	
AMWO	294	W	*	*			M	O	O	F	*	F																	F	
Common Snipe		B																												
COSN	295	W	*	*		S	M			F		F																	FB	F
Mourning Dove		B	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F		NP	NP															
MODO	297	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F		P	P															
Yellow-billed Cuckoo		B	*	*				O	O				N	*	*															
YBCU	298	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
G — Georgia
N — North Carolina
F — Florida
S — South Carolina
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Oak-Gum-Cypress

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	distribution States[b]	Physiographic[c] provinces	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Common Screech Owl		B	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*	N							N		N					
CSOW	300	W	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*	P							P		P					
Great Horned Owl		B	*	*					M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
GHOW	301	W	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Barred Owl		B	*	*				S	O	F	F	F	F	F	*		N								N				F	F
BDOW	302	W	*	*				S	O	F	F	F	F	F	*		P								P				F	F
Short-eared Owl		B																												
SEOW	303	W	*	PSIOC		M				F		*																		
Whip-poor-will		B																												
WPWI	304	W	FG SN	OCT				M	M		P																			
Chimney Swift		B	*	*					M														N		N					
CHSW	305	W																												
Ruby-throated Hummingbird		B	*	*			M	S	S				*	*	*															
RTHU	306	W	F	OCT		M	M	M	M				*	*	*															
Belted Kingfisher		B	*	*				M	S				P	P		P					F					F		N	A	F
BEKI	306	W	*	*				M	S				P	P		P					F					F			A	F
Common Flicker		B	*	*				M	M	F		F			*	*			*				N		N					
COFL	307	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F			*	*														
Pileated Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	O					F	*	*	*	*						*	N	F logs				
PIWO	307	W	*	*				M	O					F	*	*	*	*						*	P	F logs				

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Oak-Gum-Cypress

Species / Code	Page	geographic distribution				stage[d]															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Red-bellied Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	O						*	*							N		N					
RBWO	308	W	*	*				M	O						*	*							P		P					
Red-headed Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	M			F				*			*				N							
RHWO	308	W	*	*				S	O			F	F	F	*	*														
Yellow-bellied Sapsucker		B																												
YBSA	309	W	*	*				M	S				F	F	*							*			*					
Hairy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	O					*	*	*						*			*					
HAWO	309	W	*	*				M	O					*	*	*														
Downy Woodpecker		B	*	*				S	O				*	*	*	*					*				*					
DOWO	310	W	*	*				S	O				*	*	*	*					*				*					
Great Crested Flycatcher		B	*	*			M	S	O					F	*	N						N			N					
GCFL	313	W	F	CT				M	M					F	*	P														
Eastern Phoebe		B	GS NV	MPSIO				M	M				*	*					*								N			
EAPH	313	W	*	*		S	O	S	S	F		F	*						*											
Acadian Flycatcher		B	*	*				O	O					*	*	F		*			F								F	F
ACFL	314	W																												
Eastern Pewee		B	*	*			M	M	M					F	*	F					F									
EAPE	316	W																												
Tree Swallow		B																												
TRSW	317	W	*	OCT		M	M	M	M				*																FB	F

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Oak-Gum-Cypress

			distribution																			Snags minimum d.b.h.								
Species Code	Page	Season of use [a]	States [b]	Physiographic provinces [c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water [f]	Flowing water [f]
Barn Swallow		B	*	*		M																					N			
BASW	319	W																												
Purple Martin		B	*	*		M										N						N			N					
PUMA	320	W																												
Blue Jay		B	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	*	*															
BLJA	320	W	*	*			M	M		F	F	F	F	*	*															
American Crow		B	*	*				M	M	F		F			*			N												
AMCR	322	W	*	*		S	M	M	M	F		F			*			P												
Fish Crow		B	*	*				M	M	F		F	*		*														A	F
FICR	322	W	*	*		S	M	M	M	F		F			*														A	F
Carolina Chickadee		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S				F	*	*	N					NP				NP					
CACH	323	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	S				F	*	*	P					P				P					
Tufted Titmouse		B	*	MPSIOC				S	O				F	*	*	N					N									
TUTI	324	W	*	MPSIOC			M	S	O				F	*	*															
White-breasted Nuthatch		B	GS NV	MPSIOC				M	S						*	*	*								N					
WBNU	324	W	*	MPSIOC				M	S						*	*														
Brown Creeper		B																												
BRCR	326	W	*	MPSIOC				S	S					*	*															
House Wren		B																												
HOWR	326	W	*	PSIOCT		M	M					F	*													*				

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Oak-Gum-Cypress

Species Code	Page	geographic distribution				stage[d]															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Winter Wren		B																												
WIWR	327	W	*	*				O	O	*	*	F	F													*				
Carolina Wren		B	*	*			M	O	O	*	*	*	*	*							N				N	*	N			
CAWR	328	W	*	*			M	O	O	*	*	*	*	*												*				
Marsh Wren		B	*	IOC		M						*																	A	
MAWR	328	W	*	IOCT		M						*																	A	
Sedge Wren		B																												
SEWR	329	W	*	IOCT		M				F		*	*																	
Gray Catbird		B	*	MPSIOC			S	S	M				*	P																
GRCA	330	W	*	PSIOCT			S	S	M				*																	
Brown Thrasher		B	*	*			S			F	F	F	*	P	P															
BRTH	330	W	*	*			S	S	S	*	*	*	*																	
American Robin		B																												
AMRO	331	W	*	*		M	M	S	O	F		F	*	*	*															
Wood Thrush		B	*	MPSIOC				M	O		F	F	*	P				*												
WOTH	331	W																												
Hermit Thrush		B																												
HETH	332	W	*	*				S	S		*	F	*					*												
Blue-gray Gnatcatcher		B	*	MPSIOC				M	O				*	*	*															
BGGN	334	W	FG SN	SIOCT		M	M	M	M				*	*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Oak-Gum-Cypress

Species Code	Page	Seasonal and geographic distribution Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	stage Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Golden-crowned Kinglet		B																												
GCKI	334	W	*	MPSIOC					M				F	F	*															
Ruby-crowned Kinglet		B																												
RCKI	335	W	*	*			M	S	O				*	*	*															
Water Pipit		B																												
WAPI	335	W	*	MPSIOC		S				*		*																		
Cedar Waxwing		B																												
CEWA	336	W	*	*			M	M	M				*	*	*				*											
European Starling		B																												
EUST	337	W	*	*			M	S	S	F		F																		
White-eyed Vireo		B	*	*			S	S	M			F	*	P																
WEVI	337	W	FG SN	IOCT			S	M	M			F	*																	
Yellow-throated Vireo		B	*	*					S					F	*															
YTVI	338	W																												
Solitary Vireo		B																												
SOVI	338	W	*	PSIOCT				M	M					*	*															
Red-eyed Vireo		B	*	MPSIOC				M	O					*	*															
REVI	339	W																												
Black-and-white Warbler		B	GS NV	MPSIO				M	M		N	N		F	F			*												
BAWW	340	W	FG SN	SIOCT				S	O					F	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Oak-Gum-Cypress

Species Code	Page	Seasonal and geographic distribution				Successional stage[d]															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Prothonotary Warbler		B	*	PSIOC				S	O				*	*		*					N								F	F
POWA	341	W																												
Swainson's Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				S	O	F	F	F	*	P																
SWWA	341	W																												
Worm-eating Warbler		B	*	MPIO				M	S		*	F	*	P				*												
WEWA	342	W																												
Bachman's Warbler		B	S	OC			S	S	O			F	*	P	P				*											
BAWA	343	W																												
Orange-crowned Warbler		B																												
OCWA	344	W	*	PSIOCT			S	S	S			*	*	*																
Northern Parula Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				M	O					*	*															
NPWA	345	W	F	OCT				M	O					*	*															
Yellow-rumped Warbler		B																												
YRWA	347	W	*	*			S	O	O	*		*	*	*	*															
Black-thr. Green Warbler		B	GS NV	MPOC				M	O					F	*			*												
BTGW	348	W																												
Yellow-throated Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				M	O						*	F	*													
YTWA	349	W	FG SN	IOCT				M	M						*	F	*													
Prairie Warbler		B	*	*			S					F	*																	
PRWA	351	W	FG S	OCT			M	M	M			*	*																	

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Oak-Gum-Cypress

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	distribution States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Ovenbird		B	GS NV	MPSIOC				M	M	*	*		P	P																
OVEN	352	W	FG S	OCT				O	O	*	*																			
Northern Waterthrush		B																												
NOWA	352	W	F	OCT			S	S	M	*																			F	F
Louisiana Waterthrush		B	*	MPSIO					M	*			P	P													*			F
LOWA	353	W																												
Kentucky Warbler		B	*	*				M	O	F	F	*	*	P																
KEWA	353	W																												
Common Yellowthroat		B	*	*		S	O	M	M			*	*																	
COYE	354	W	*	PSIOCT		M	M					*	*																	
Yellow-breasted Chat		B	*	*			S						*			P														
YBCH	355	W																												
Hooded Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				M	O				*	FP																
HOWA	355	W																												
American Redstart		B	*	MPSIO				S	S				*	*	FP															
AMRE	356	W	F	CT				M	M				*	*	*															
Eastern Meadowlark		B	*	*		M						*																		
EAME	358	W	*	*		M						*																		
Red-winged Blackbird		B	*	*		O	O					*	*	P	P															
RWBL	358	W	*	*		O	O	S	M			*	P	P	P															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Oak-Gum-Cypress

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
			geographic distribution			stage															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Rusty Blackbird		B																												
RUBL	360	W	*	*		M	M	S	O	F		F	P	P	P															
Boat-tailed Grackle		B	*	OCT		M	M	M	M	F		*	N	N	N														A	
BTGR	361	W	*	OCT		M	M	M	M	F		*	P	P	P														A	
Common Grackle		B	*	*			S			F		F	N	N	N															
COGR	362	W	*	*		M	M	S	S	F		*	P	P	P															
Brown-headed Cowbird		B	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F				N			*		N									
BHCO	362	W	*	MPSIOC		M	M	M	M	F		*	P	P	P															
Summer Tanager		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M					F	*															
SUTA	363	W																												
Northern Cardinal		B	*	*			S	S	S		*	*	*	F	F															
NOCA	364	W	*	*			S	S	S		*	*	*																	
Blue Grosbeak		B	*	MPSIOC			M					*	*																	
BLGR	365	W																												
Indigo Bunting		B	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M			*	*	P	P				*											
INBU	365	W	F	OCT			M					*	*																	
Painted Bunting		B	FG SN	IOC			M	M				*	*	P																
PABU	366	W	F	OCT			M	M				*	*																	
Purple Finch		B																												
PUFI	367	W	*	MPSIOC				M	S				*	*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Oak-Gum-Cypress

Code / Species	Page		distribution																		Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Pine Siskin		B																												
PISI	368	W	*	MPSIOC			S	S	S	F		*	*	*	*															
American Goldfinch		B																												
AMGO	369	W	*	*		M	S	S	S	*		*	*	*	*															
Rufous-sided Towhee		B	*	*			M	M	M		F	*	*	P	P															
RSTO	370	W	*	*			M	M	M		F	*	*																	
Savannah Sparrow		B																												
SASP	371	W	*	*		S						*																		
Grasshopper Sparrow		B																												
GRSP	371	W	FG SN	PSIOCT		M						*																		
Le Conte's Sparrow		B																												
LCSP	372	W	FG S	PSIOC		M						*																		
White-throated Sparrow		B																												
WTSP	377	W	*	*		M	M	S	O		F	F	*	*	*															
Fox Sparrow		B																												
FOSP	378	W	*	MPSIOC		M	M	M	M		F		*	*																
Lincoln's Sparrow		B																												
LISP	378	W	*	PSIOC		M	M					*	*																F	
Swamp Sparrow		B																												
SWSP	379	W	*	*		S	M					*																	FB	

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Oak-Gum-Cypress

Code	Species	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
	Song Sparrow		B																												
SOSP		379	W	*	*		M	M					*	*																	
			B																												
			W																												
			B																												
			W																												
			B																												
			W																												
			B																												
			W																												
			B																												
			W																												
			B																												
			W																												
			B																												
			W																												
			B																												
			W																												
			B																												
			W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

the influence of salt spray and maritime breezes along the Atlantic and Gulf coasts and on barrier islands. The type has no precise NFS, SAF, or RRE equivalent; such stands would probably be classed as oak-hickory (RRE type 50) growing on sand dunes and sand ridges (RRE Physiographic Class 12). Cabbage palmetto (*Sabal palmetto*) is a frequent component of stands of this type; SAF type 74, cabbage palmetto, is an associated type common in peninsular Florida. Likewise, SAF type 73, southern redcedar, is an associated forest type.

This type is important as nesting habitat for many birds that feed in aquatic habitats. The winter avifauna of live oak maritime forests is also very diverse. Look for accidental insectivorous and nectarivorous species here in winter.

Eleven BBC and WBPS have been published from this type in the Southeast in 1947-1979 (Table 4).

Characteristic of this vegetation type are Great Crested Flycatchers (B), Fish Crows, Carolina Wrens, Ruby-crowned Kinglets (W), Solitary Vireos (W), Northern Parula Warblers (B), Yellow-rumped Warblers (W), Yellow-throated Warblers, Boat-tailed Grackles, Northern Cardinals, Rufous-sided Towhees, and Fox Sparrows (W).

No species are *restricted* to the type.

Table 4. Published Breeding Bird Censuses and Winter Bird Population Studies from live oak maritime plots.

State	Season	Successional stage[a]		
		Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber
Florida	Breeding	0	2(3)	0
	Winter	1(1)	2(2)	0
South Carolina	Breeding	0	0	1(1)
	Winter	0	0	1(3)
North Carolina	Breeding	0	0	1(1)

[a] Entries are listed as "Plots (Years censused)".

Live Oak Maritime

Species Code	Page	Season of use [a]	States [b]	Physiographic provinces [c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water [f]	Flowing water [f]
			geographic distribution			stage															minimum d.b.h.									
Brown Pelican		B	FG SN	C		M	M			N		N	N																S	
BRPE	264	W																												
Great Blue Heron		B	*	IOCT			M	M	S	F		F			NP	NP													A	F
GBHE	266	W																												
Green Heron		B	*	*			S	S	S	F		F	*	NP	NP											F			A	F
GRHE	267	W																												
Little Blue Heron		B	*	IOCT			S	O	S	F		F	*		NP														A	F
LBHE	267	W																												
Cattle Egret		B	*	SIOCT			S	O	S	F		F	NP		NP														F	
CAEG	268	W																												
Great Egret		B	*	IOCT			S	O	O	F		F	NP	NP	NP														A	F
GREG	269	W																												
Snowy Egret		B	*	OCT			S	O	S	F		F	NP		NP														A	F
SNEG	269	W																												
Louisiana Heron		B	*	OCT			S	O	S	F		F	NP		NP														A	
LOHE	270	W																												
Black-cr. Night Heron		B	*	IOCT			S	O	S			F	NP		NP														A	F
BCNH	270	W																												
Yellow-cr. Night Heron		B	*	PSIOCT			S	S	S	F				NP	NP														A	F
YCNH	271	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Live Oak Maritime

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Wood Stork		B	FG S	OCT			M	M	M				NP	NP	NP														A	
WOST	272	W																												
Glossy Ibis		B	*	OCT			S	O	S	F		F	NP	NP	NP														A	
GLIB	273	W																												
White Ibis		B	FG SN	SIOCT			S	O	S	F		F	NP	NP	NP														A	
WHIB	273	W																												
Turkey Vulture		B	*	*			M	M	M	F	F	F	F		*															
TUVU	275	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F	F	F	F		*															
Black Vulture		B	*	*			M	M	M	F	F	F	F		*															
BLVU	276	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F	F	F	F		*															
Sharp-shinned Hawk		B																												
SSHA	278	W	*	*				O	O	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Cooper's Hawk		B																												
COHA	279	W	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Red-tailed Hawk		B	*	*					M	F		F			*	P														
RTHA	279	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F			*	P														
Red-shouldered Hawk		B	*	*				M	M	F		F	F		*														F	F
RSHA	280	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F	F		*														F	F
Rough-legged Hawk		B																												
RLHA	282	W	NV	MPIOC		M				F		F																		

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Live Oak Maritime

Species Code	Page	geographic distribution																			minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use [a]	States [b]	Physiographic provinces [c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water [f]	Flowing water [f]
Northern Harrier		B																												
NOHA	283	W	*	*		S				F		*																		
Osprey		B	*	OCT				M	M						NP	NP	NP							NP					A	F
OSPR	284	W	FG S	OCT				M	M						P	P	P							P					A	F
Peregrine Falcon		B																												
PEFA	285	W	*	OCT		S	M	M	M	F		F			F	P											P			
Merlin		B																												
MERL	285	W	*	*		S	M	M	M	F		F																		
American Kestrel		B																												
AMKE	286	W	*	*		O	S	M	M	F		F			*	F					F									
Common Bobwhite		B	*	*		M	M			F		*								F										
COBO	287	W	*	*		M	M			F		*								F										
Ring-necked Pheasant		B	NV	MPIOC		M				F		*																		
RNPH	287	W	NV	MPIOC		M				F		*																		
Wild Turkey		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S	F	*	*		P	P					F										
WITU	288	W	*	*			S	S	S	F	*	*		P	P					F										
Clapper Rail		B	*	C		M				F		*																	SB	
CLRA	290	W	*	C		M				F		*																	SB	
American Woodcock		B																												
AMWO	294	W	*	*			M	S	S	F	*	F																	F	

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Live Oak Maritime

			geographic distribution																			minimum d.b.h.								
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Rock Dove		B	*	*		M				F		F															N			
RODO	296	W	*	*		M				F		F															P			
Mourning Dove		B	*	*			S	S	S	F		F		NP	NP															
MODO	297	W	*	*		S	S	S	S	F		F		P	P															
Common Ground Dove		B	FG SN	IOCT			O	S	M	F		*	N																	
CGDO	297	W	FG SN	IOCT		O	O	S	M	F		*	*																	
Yellow-billed Cuckoo		B	*	*				S	S				N	*	*															
YBCU	298	W																												
Barn Owl		B	*	*		S	M			F		F	P		P									N	N		N			
BAOW	300	W	*	*		O	M			F		F	P		P									P	P		P			
Common Screech Owl		B	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*	N							N		N					
CSOW	300	W	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*	P							P		P					
Great Horned Owl		B	*	*					S	F	F	F	F	F	*															
GHOW	301	W	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Short-eared Owl		B																												
SEOW	303	W	*	PSIOC		S	M			F		*																		
Chuck-will's-widow		B	*	PSIOCT				S	S		N																			
CWWI	304	W	F	OCT				M	M		P																			
Whip-poor-will		B																												
WPWI	304	W	FG SN	OCT				S	O		P																			

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Live Oak Maritime

Species Code	Page	geographic distribution				stage																minimum d.b.h.								
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Common Nighthawk		B	*	*		M	M	M	M	N																	N			
CONI	305	W																												
Ruby-throated Hummingbird		B	*	*			M	S	S				*	*	*															
RTHU	306	W																												
Belted Kingfisher		B	*	*				M	M				P	P		P					F					F		N	A	F
BEKI	306	W	*	*				M	M				P	P		P					F					F			A	F
Common Flicker		B	*	*				M	M	F		F			*	*			*				N		N					
COFL	307	W	*	*				M	S	F		F			*	*														
Pileated Woodpecker		B	*	*					M					F	*	*	*	*						*	N	F logs				
PIWO	307	W	*	*					M					F	*	*	*	*						*	P	F logs				
Red-bellied Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	S						*	*							N		N					
RBWO	308	W	*	*				M	S						*	*							P		P					
Red-headed Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	M			F				*			*				N							
RHWO	308	W	*	*				M	M			F	F	F	*	*														
Yellow-bellied Sapsucker		B																												
YBSA	309	W	*	*				M	M				F	F	*							*			*					
Hairy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	M					*	*	*						*			*					
HAWO	309	W	*	*				M	M					*	*	*														
Downy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	S				*	*	*	*					*				*					
DOWO	310	W	*	*				M	S				*	*	*	*					*				*					

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Live Oak Maritime

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	minimum d.b.h. 10" (25 cm)	minimum d.b.h. 14" (35 cm)	minimum d.b.h. 18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Eastern Kingbird		B	*	*		M						F			*	F			*		F									
EAKI	311	W																												
Gray Kingbird		B	FG S	C			M	S	M				*	*	*	F					F									
GRKI	311	W																												
Great Crested Flycatcher		B	*	*				M	O					F	*	N						N			N					
GCFL	313	W	F	CT				M	M					F	*	P														
Eastern Phoebe		B																												
EAPH	313	W	*	*		S	O	S	M	F		F	*						*											
Eastern Pewee		B	*	*				M	M					F	*	F					F									
EAPE	316	W																												
Tree Swallow		B																												
TRSW	317	W	*	OCT		S	S	M	M				*																FB	F
Barn Swallow		B	*	*		M																					N			
BASW	319	W																												
Purple Martin		B	*	*		M										N						N			N					
PUMA	320	W																												
Blue Jay		B	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*															
BLJA	320	W	*	*			M	M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*															
Scrub Jay		B	F	OC			M	S					*																	
SCJA	321	W	F	OC			M	S					*																	

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Live Oak Maritime

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
			geographic distribution																		minimum d.b.h.									
American Crow		B	*	*				M	M	F		F			*			N												
AMCR	322	W	*	*		S	M	M	M	F		F			*			P												
Fish Crow		B	*	*			S	O	O	F		F	*		*														A	F
FICR	322	W	*	*		O	S	O	O	F		F			*														A	F
Carolina Chickadee		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S				F	*	*	N					NP				NP					
CACH	323	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	S				F	*	*	P					P				P					
Tufted Titmouse		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M				F	*	*	N					N									
TUTI	324	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M				F	*	*															
Brown Creeper		B																												
BRCR	326	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M					*	*															
House Wren		B																												
HOWR	326	W	*	PSIOCT		M	M					F	*													*				
Winter Wren		B																												
WIWR	327	W	*	*				M	M	*	*	F	F													*				
Carolina Wren		B	*	*			S	O	O	*	*	*	*	*							N				N	*	N			
CAWR	328	W	*	*			S	O	O	*	*	*	*	*												*				
Northern Mockingbird		B	*	*		M	M					F	*						*											
NOMO	329	W	*	*		M	M					F	*						*											
Gray Catbird		B	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M				*	P																
GRCA	330	W	*	PSIOCT			S	S	M				*																	

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Live Oak Maritime

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	minimum d.b.h. 10" (25 cm)	minimum d.b.h. 14" (35 cm)	minimum d.b.h. 18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Brown Thrasher		B	*	*			S	M	M	F	F	F	*	P	P															
BRTH	330	W	*	*			S	M	M	*	*	*	*																	
American Robin		B																												
AMRO	331	W	*	*			M	M	S	F		F	*	*	*															
Wood Thrush		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M		F	F	*	P				*												
WOTH	331	W																												
Hermit Thrush		B																												
HETH	332	W	*	*				S	S		*	F	*					*												
Blue-gray Gnatcatcher		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S				*	*	*															
BGGN	334	W	FG SN	SIOCT			M	O	O				*	*	*															
Golden-crowned Kinglet		B																												
GCKI	334	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M				F	F	*															
Ruby-crowned Kinglet		B																												
RCKI	335	W	*	*			S	O	O				*	*	*															
Cedar Waxwing		B																												
CEWA	336	W	*	*			S	S	S				*	*	*				*											
European Starling		B																												
EUST	337	W	*	*			M	M	M	F		F																		
White-eyed Vireo		B	*	*			M	M	M			F	*	P																
WEVI	337	W	FG SN	IOCT			M	M	M			F	*																	

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Live Oak Maritime

Species / Code	Page	geographic distribution																			minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use [a]	States [b]	Physiographic provinces [c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water [f]	Flowing water [f]
Solitary Vireo		B																												
SOVI	338	W	*	PSIOCT				S	O					*	*															
Red-eyed Vireo		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M					*	*															
REVI	339	W																												
Black-and-white Warbler		B																												
BAWW	340	W	FG SN	SIOCT				S	O					F	*															
Orange-crowned Warbler		B																												
OCWA	344	W	*	PSIOCT		M	O	S	S			*	*	*																
Northern Parula Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC					O					*	*															
NPWA	345	W	F	OCT				M	M					*	*															
Yellow-rumped Warbler		B																												
YRWA	347	W	*	*			O	O	O	*		*	*	*	*															
Black-thr. Green Warbler		B	GS NV	MPOC				M	M					F	*			*												
BTGW	348	W																												
Yellow-throated Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S						*	F	*													
YTWA	349	W	FG SN	IOCT				M	O						*	F	*													
Prairie Warbler		B	*	*			O	S				F	*																	
PRWA	351	W	FG S	OCT			S	S	M			*	*																	
Palm Warbler		B																												
PAWA	351	W	*	PSIOCT		S	O	M		*		*	*																	

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Live Oak Maritime

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h.				Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
																					6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)						
Ovenbird		B																												
OVEN	352	W	FGS	OCT				M	S	*	*																			
Common Yellowthroat		B	*	*		M	S					*	*																	
COYE	354	W	*	PSIOCT		M	S					*	*																	
Yellow-breasted Chat		B	*	*			M						*			P														
YBCH	355	W	*	OCT			S						*																	
Hooded Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M				*	FP																
HOWA	355	W																												
House Sparrow		B	*	*		M				F		F																		
HOSP	357	W	*	*		M				F		F																		
Eastern Meadowlark		B	*	*		M						*																		
EAME	358	W	*	*		M						*																		
Red-winged Blackbird		B	*	*		S						*	*	P	P															
RWBL	358	W	*	*		M						*	P	P	P															
Orchard Oriole		B	*	MPSIOC		M		M	M				*	*	*				*											
OROR	359	W																												
Boat-tailed Grackle		B	*	OCT		S	O	S	M	F		*	N	N	N														A	
BTGR	361	W	*	OCT		S	O	S	M	F		*	P	P	P														A	
Common Grackle		B	*	*				S	S	F		F	N	N	N															
COGR	362	W	*	*				M	M	F		*	P	P	P															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Live Oak Maritime

Species / Code	Page	Season of use [a]	States [b]	Physiographic provinces [c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	minimum d.b.h. 10" (25 cm)	minimum d.b.h. 14" (35 cm)	minimum d.b.h. 18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water [f]	Flowing water [f]
Brown-headed Cowbird		B	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F				N			*		N									
BHCO	362	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M	F		*	P	P	P															
Summer Tanager		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S					F	*															
SUTA	363	W																												
Northern Cardinal		B	*	*			S	O	O		*	*	*	F	F															
NOCA	364	W	*	*			O	O	O		*	*	*																	
Indigo Bunting		B	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M			*	*	P	P				*											
INBU	365	W	F	OCT		M	M	M	M			*	*																	
Painted Bunting		B	FG SN	IOC			S	O				*	*	P																
PABU	366	W	F	OCT			S	S				*	*																	
Dickcissel		B																												
DICK	366	W	*	OCT		M	M					*	*																	
Purple Finch		B																												
PUFI	367	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M				*	*	*															
Pine Siskin		B																												
PISI	368	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M	F		*	*	*	*															
American Goldfinch		B																												
AMGO	369	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	*		*	*	*	*															
Rufous-sided Towhee		B	*	*			O	O	S		F	*	*	P	P															
RSTO	370	W	*	*			O	O	S		F	*	*																	

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Live Oak Maritime

			distribution																		Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Savannah Sparrow		B																												
SASP	371	W	*	*		S						*																		
Grasshopper Sparrow		B																												
GRSP	371	W	FG SN	PSIOCT		M						*																		
Sharp-tailed Sparrow		B	V	C		M				*		*																	SB	
STSP	373	W	*	C		M				*		*																	SB	
Seaside Sparrow		B	*	C		M				*		*																	SB	
SESP	373	W	*	C		M				*		*																	SB	
Vesper Sparrow		B																												
VESP	374	W	*	PSIOC		M				*		*																		
Bachman's Sparrow		B																												
BASP	374	W	*	SIOC		M						*																		
Northern Junco		B																												
NOJU	375	W	*	MPSIOC		M	M	M	M	F	F	*	*	*																
Chipping Sparrow		B																												
CHSP	376	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		*	*	*	*				*											
Field Sparrow		B	GS NV	*			M					*	*																	
FISP	376	W	*	*		S	S					*	*																	
White-throated Sparrow		B																												
WTSP	377	W	*	*		M	S	S	S		F	F	*	*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Live Oak Maritime

			geographic distribution			stage [d]															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use [a]	States [b]	Physiographic provinces [c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water [f]	Flowing water [f]
Fox Sparrow		B																												
FOSP	378	W	*	MPSIOC			M	S	S		F		*	*																
Song Sparrow		B	GS NV	MPIC			M					*	*																	
SOSP	379	W	*	*		M	M					*	*																	
Lapland Longspur		B																												
LALO	380	W	*	MPIC		M				*		*																		
Snow Bunting		B																												
SNBU	380	W	*	MPC		M				*		*																		
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

These are bottomland forests in which elm [illegible] singly or in combination, compose a plurality of the stocking. The type corresponds to a number of NFS and SAF types (Table 5), and to RRE type 70, elm-ash-cottonwood.

In the Southeast, this type reaches its greatest development in bottomlands in the Piedmont and Mountains. In the Coastal Plain, elm-ash-cottonwood vegetation occurs as riverfront hardwoods, as the pioneer plant community on new land in river meanders, and as the early successional community to oak-gum-cypress on abandoned farmland.

The considerations pointed out for the effects of water levels on the avifauna of oak-gum-cypress forests apply also to the birds of elm-ash-cottonwood stands.

Table 5. SAF and NFS forest types equivalent to elm-ash-cottonwood.

SAF no.	SAF type name
39	black ash-American elm-red maple
57	yellow-poplar (except in Mountains)
61	river birch-sycamore
62	silver maple-American elm
63	cottonwood
65	pin oak-sweetgum
87	sweetgum-yellow-poplar
93	sugarberry-American elm-green ash
94	sycamore-sweetgum-American elm
95	black willow
108	red maple (in part)
NFS no.	**NFS type name**
50	yellow-poplar (except in Mountains)
58	sweetgum-yellow-poplar
63	sugarberry-American elm-green ash
71	black ash-American elm-red maple
72	river birch-sycamore
73	cottonwood
74	willow
75	sycamore-pecan-American elm
76	silver maple-American elm
82	black walnut

North Carolina.

Characteristic of this vegetation type are Wild Turkeys, American Woodcocks, Yellow-billed Cuckoos (B), Pileated Woodpeckers, Red-bellied Woodpeckers, Acadian Flycatchers (B), Carolina Wrens, American Robins (W), Blue-gray Gnatcatchers (B), Yellow-rumped Warblers (W), Kentucky Warblers (B), Hooded Warblers (B), American Redstarts (B), and White-throated Sparrows (W).

Restricted to this type are Mississippi Kites (B) and Bachman's Warblers (B).

Samson (1979) presents introductory information on management of birds in this type.

Table 6. Published Breeding Bird Censuses and Winter Bird Population Studies from elm-ash-cottonwood plots.

State	Season	Successional stage[a]		
		Grass-forb or Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber
North Carolina	Breeding	4(19)	1(18)[b]	0
	Winter	4(29)	0	0
Virginia	Breeding	0	0	2(3)
	Winter	0	0	1(3)

[a] Entries are listed as "Plots (Years censused)".

[b] This was a small 6.3 acre (2.5 ha) plot of sapling timber surrounded by agricultural fields.

Elm-Ash-Cottonwood

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
			geographic distribution			stage															minimum d.b.h.									
Double-cr. Cormorant		B	*	OCT				M	M						N	N			N										A	F
DCCO	265	W																												
American Anhinga		B	FG SN	IOCT		M	M	M	M				NP	NP	NP														FB	
AMAN	265	W	FG SN	IOCT		M	M	M	M				P	P	P														FB	
Great Blue Heron		B	*	IOCT					S	F		F			NP	NP													A	F
GBHE	266	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F			P	P													A	F
Green Heron		B	*	*			O	S	M	F		F	*	NP	NP											F			A	F
GRHE	267	W																												
Little Blue Heron		B	*	IOCT		S	S	S	S	F		F	*		NP														A	F
LBHE	267	W																												
Cattle Egret		B	*	SIOCT		S	S	S	S	F		F	NP		NP														F	
CAEG	268	W																												
Great Egret		B	*	IOCT		M	M	S	S	F		F	NP	NP	NP														A	F
GREG	269	W																												
Snowy Egret		B	*	OCT		M	M	M	M	F		F	NP		NP														A	F
SNEG	269	W																												
Louisiana Heron		B	*	OCT		M	M	M	M	F		F	NP		NP														A	
LOHE	270	W																												
Black-cr. Night Heron		B	*	IOCT		M	M	M	M			F	NP		NP														A	F
BCNH	270	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Elm-Ash-Cottonwood

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Yellow-cr. Night Heron		B	*	PSIOCT		M	M	S	S	F				NP	NP														A	F
YCNH	271	W																												
Glossy Ibis		B	*	OCT		M	M	M	M	F		F	NP	NP	NP														A	
GLIB	273	W																												
White Ibis		B	FG SN	SIOCT		M	S	S	S	F		F	NP	NP	NP														A	
WHIB	273	W																												
Wood Duck		B	*	MPSIOT			M	S	S							N								N	N				F	F
WODU	274	W	*	MPSIOT			M	S	S																				F	F
Hooded Merganser		B	NV	PIO		M	M	M	M							N								N	N				F	
HOME	275	W																												
Turkey Vulture		B	*	*		M	M	S	S	F	F	F	F		*															
TUVU	275	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F	F	F	F		*															
Black Vulture		B	*	*		M	M	S	S	F	F	F	F		*															
BLVU	276	W	*	*		M	M	S	S	F	F	F	F		*															
Swallow-tailed Kite		B	FG S	OT					S	F		F	F	F	NP		NP												F	F
STKI	277	W																												
Mississippi Kite		B	FG SN	SIO					O						NP														F	F
MIKI	277	W																												
Sharp-shinned Hawk		B																												
SSHA	278	W	*	*				S	S	F	F	F	F	F	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Elm-Ash-Cottonwood

		distribution																				minimum d.b.h.								
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Cooper's Hawk		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*			N												
COHA	279	W	*	*				S	S	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Red-tailed Hawk		B	*	*					M	F		F			*	P														
RTHA	279	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F			*	P														
Red-shouldered Hawk		B	*	*				M	O	F		F	F		*														F	F
RSHA	280	W	*	*		M	M	S	O	F		F	F		*														F	F
Short-tailed Hawk		B	F	CT				M	M	F		F	F		*															
STHA	281	W	F	CT				M	M	F		F	F		*															
Bald Eagle		B	*	IOCT					M						NP		NP							NP					A	F
BAEA	283	W	*	SIOCT				M	M						P		P							P					A	F
Northern Harrier		B																												
NOHA	283	W	*	*		S				F		*																		
Osprey		B	*	OCT				M	M						NP	NP	NP							NP					A	F
OSPR	284	W	FG S	OCT				M	M						P	P	P							P					A	F
King Rail		B	*	PSIOCT		M				F		*																	FB	
KIRA	289	W	*	OCT		M				F		*																	FB	
Virginia Rail		B																												
VIRA	290	W	*	PSIOCT		M				F		*																	FB	
Sora		B																												
SORA	291	W	*	PSIOCT		M				F		*																	F	

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Elm-Ash-Cottonwood

Species Code	Page		distribution																		Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Yellow Rail		B																												
YERA	291	W	FG SN	C		M				F		*																	A	
Black Rail		B																												
BLRA	292	W	FG SN	C		M				F		*																	A	
American Woodcock		B	*	*				S	O	F	*	F																	F	
AMWO	294	W	*	*			S	O	O	F	*	F																	F	
Common Snipe		B																												
COSN	295	W	*	*		S	M			F		F																	FB	F
Rock Dove		B	*	*		M				F		F															N			
RODO	296	W	*	*		M				F		F															P			
Mourning Dove		B	*	*		S	S	S	S	F		F		NP	NP															
MODO	297	W	*	*		S	S	S	S	F		F		P	P															
Yellow-billed Cuckoo		B	*	*				O	O				N	*	*															
YBCU	298	W																												
Black-billed Cuckoo		B	GS NV	MPIO				M	M				N	*	*															
BBCU	299	W																												
Common Screech Owl		B	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*	N							N		N					
CSOW	300	W	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*	P							P		P					
Great Horned Owl		B	*	*					M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
GHOW	301	W	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Elm-Ash-Cottonwood

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	geographic distribution States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	stage Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Barred Owl		B	*	*				S	O	F	F	F	F	F	*		N								N				F	F
BDOW	302	W	*	*				S	O	F	F	F	F	F	*		P								P				F	F
Short-eared Owl		B																												
SEOW	303	W	*	PSIOC		M				F		*																		
Whip-poor-will		B	GS NV	MPSIO				M	M		N																			
WPWI	304	W	FG SN	OCT				M	M		P																			
Chimney Swift		B	*	*					M													N		N						
CHSW	305	W																												
Ruby-throated Hummingbird		B	*	*			S	O	O				*	*	*															
RTHU	306	W																												
Belted Kingfisher		B	*	*				M	S				P	P		P					F					F		N	A	F
BEKI	306	W	*	*				M	S				P	P		P					F					F			A	F
Common Flicker		B	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F			*	*			*				N		N					
COFL	307	W	*	*		M	M	M	S	F		F			*	*														
Pileated Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	O					F	*	*	*	*						*	N	F logs				
PIWO	307	W	*	*				M	O					F	*	*	*	*						*	P	F logs				
Red-bellied Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	O						*	*							N		N					
RBWO	308	W	*	*				M	O						*	*							P		P					
Red-headed Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	M			F				*			*				N							
RHWO	308	W	*	*				S	O			F	F	F	*	*														

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Elm-Ash-Cottonwood

Species / Code	Page	Season of use[a]	distribution: States[b]	distribution: Physiographic provinces[c]	distribution: Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	Snags minimum d.b.h. 10" (25 cm)	Snags minimum d.b.h. 14" (35 cm)	Snags minimum d.b.h. 18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Yellow-bellied Sapsucker		B																												
YBSA	309	W	*	*				M	S				F	F	*							*			*					
Hairy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	O					*	*	*						*			*					
HAWO	309	W	*	*				M	O					*	*	*														
Downy Woodpecker		B	*	*				S	O				*	*	*	*					*				*					
DOWO	310	W	*	*				S	O				*	*	*	*					*				*					
Great Crested Flycatcher		B	*	*				M	S					F	*	N						N			N					
GCFL	313	W																												
Eastern Phoebe		B	GS NV	MPSIO				M	S				*	*					*								N			
EAPH	313	W	*	*		S	O	S	S	F		F	*						*											
Acadian Flycatcher		B	*	*				O	O					*	*	F		*			F								F	F
ACFL	314	W																												
Willow Flycatcher		B	GN V	MP			S						*																F	F
WIFL	314	W																												
Least Flycatcher		B	GN V	M				M	M					*	*				*											
LEFL	315	W																												
Eastern Pewee		B	*	*			M	M	S					F	*	F					F									
EAPE	316	W																												
Horned Lark		B	GS NV	*		M				*		*																		
HOLA	317	W	GS NV	*		M				*		*																		

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Elm-Ash-Cottonwood

Species Code	Page	geographic distribution				stage [d]															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use [a]	States [b]	Physiographic provinces [c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water [f]	Flowing water [f]
Tree Swallow		B	NV	MPC		M	M	M	M							N					N								FB	F
TRSW	317	W																												
Barn Swallow		B	*	*		M																					N			
BASW	319	W																												
Cliff Swallow		B	GS NV	MP		M																					N			
CLSW	319	W																												
Purple Martin		B	*	*		M										N						N			N					
PUMA	320	W																												
Blue Jay		B	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	*	*															
BLJA	320	W	*	*			M	M	M	F	F	F	F	*	*															
American Crow		B	*	*				M	M	F		F			*			N												
AMCR	322	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F			*			P												
Fish Crow		B	*	*				M	M	F		F	*		*														A	F
FICR	322	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F			*														A	F
Carolina Chickadee		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S				F	*	*	N					NP				NP					
CACH	323	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	S				F	*	*	P					P				P					
Tufted Titmouse		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S				F	*	*	N					N									
TUTI	324	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	S				F	*	*															
White-breasted Nuthatch		B	GS NV	MPSIOC				M	S						*	*	*								N					
WBNU	324	W	*	MPSIOC				M	S						*	*														

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Elm-Ash-Cottonwood

		distribution																			Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic[c] provinces	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Brown Creeper		B																												
BRCR	326	W	*	MPSIOC				S	S					*	*															
House Wren		B																												
HOWR	326	W	*	PSIOCT		M	M					F	*													*				
Winter Wren		B																												
WIWR	327	W	*	*				O	O	*	*	F	F													*				
Carolina Wren		B	*	*			M	O	O	*	*	*	*	*							N				N	*	N			
CAWR	328	W	*	*			M	O	O	*	*	*	*	*												*				
Marsh Wren		B	*	IOC		M						*																	A	
MAWR	328	W	*	IOCT		M						*																	A	
Sedge Wren		B																												
SEWR	329	W	*	IOCT		M				F		*	*																	
Gray Catbird		B	*	MPSIOC			O	O	S				*	P																
GRCA	330	W	*	PSIOCT			O	O	S				*																	
Brown Thrasher		B	*	*			S	M	M	F	F	F	*	P	P															
BRTH	330	W	*	*			S	M	M	*	*	*	*																	
American Robin		B																												
AMRO	331	W	*	*		M	M	S	O	F		F	*	*	*															
Wood Thrush		B	*	MPSIOC				S	O		F	F	*	P				*												
WOTH	331	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Elm-Ash-Cottonwood

Species / Code	Page	geographic distribution				stage																minimum d.b.h.								
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Hermit Thrush		B																												
HETH	332	W	*	*				O	O		*	F	*					*												
Blue-gray Gnatcatcher		B	*	MPSIOC				M	O				*	*	*															
BGGN	334	W	FG SN	SIOCT			M	M	M				*	*	*															
Ruby-crowned Kinglet		B																												
RCKI	335	W	*	*			M	M	S				*	*	*															
Water Pipit		B																												
WAPI	335	W	*	MPSIOC		S				*		*																		
Cedar Waxwing		B	GS NV	MP				M	M				*	*	*				*											
CEWA	336	W	*	*			M	S	S				*	*	*				*											
European Starling		B																												
EUST	337	W	*	*		M	M	S	S	F		F																		
White-eyed Vireo		B	*	*			O	S	M			F	*	P																
WEVI	337	W	FG SN	IOCT		M	S	M	M			F	*																	
Yellow-throated Vireo		B	*	*					O					F	*															
YTVI	338	W																												
Solitary Vireo		B																												
SOVI	338	W	*	PSIOCT				M	M					*	*															
Red-eyed Vireo		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S					*	*															
REVI	339	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Elm-Ash-Cottonwood

		distribution																			Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Warbling Vireo		B	NV	MP					S						*				*											
WAVI	340	W																												
Black-and-white Warbler		B	GS NV	MPSIO				M	M		N	N		F	F			*												
BAWW	340	W	FG SN	SIOCT				M	S					F	*															
Prothonotary Warbler		B	*	PSIOC				M	S				*	*		*					N								F	F
POWA	341	W																												
Swainson's Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				S	S	F	F	F	*	P																
SWWA	341	W																												
Worm-eating Warbler		B	*	MPIO				M	M		*	F	*	P				*												
WEWA	342	W																												
Blue-winged Warbler		B	GN V	MP			M					*	*		P															
BWWA	343	W																												
Bachman's Warbler		B	S	OC			S	S	S			F	*	P	P				*											
BAWA	343	W																												
Orange-crowned Warbler		B																												
OCWA	344	W	*	PSIOCT		M	S	S	S			*	*	*																
Northern Parula Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				M	O					*	*															
NPWA	345	W																												
Yellow Warbler		B	*	*			S	M					*																	
YEWA	345	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Elm-Ash-Cottonwood

Species Code	Page	geographic distribution				stage															minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use [a]	States [b]	Physiographic [c] provinces	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water [f]	Flowing water [f]
Yellow-rumped Warbler		B																												
YRWA	347	W	*	*		M	S	O	O	*		*	*	*	*															
Black-thr. Green Warbler		B	GS NV	MPOC				M	S					F	*			*												
BTGW	348	W																												
Cerulean Warbler		B	NV	MPI					S						*		*	*												
CRWA	348	W																												
Yellow-throated Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				M	O						*	F	*													
YTWA	349	W																												
Prairie Warbler		B	*	*			M					F	*																	
PRWA	351	W	FG S	OCT		M	M	M	M			*	*																	
Ovenbird		B	GS NV	MPSIOC				M	M	*	*		P	P																
OVEN	352	W	FG S	OCT				M	M	*	*																			
Northern Waterthrush		B																												
NOWA	352	W	F	OCT			M	M	M	*																			F	F
Louisiana Waterthrush		B	*	MPSIO					S	*			P	P													*			F
LOWA	353	W																												
Kentucky Warbler		B	*	*				M	O	F	F	*	*	P																
KEWA	353	W																												
Common Yellowthroat		B	*	*		S	O					*	*																	
COYE	354	W	*	PSIOCT		S	O					*	*																	

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Elm-Ash-Cottonwood

Species / Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Yellow-breasted Chat		B	*	*			S						*			P														
YBCH	355	W	*	OCT			M						*																	
Hooded Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				M	O				*	FP																
HOWA	355	W																												
American Redstart		B	*	MPSIO				S	O				*	*	FP															
AMRE	356	W	F	CT				M	M				*	*	*															
House Sparrow		B	*	*		M				F		F																		
HOSP	357	W	*	*		M				F		F																		
Eastern Meadowlark		B	*	*		M						*																		
EAME	358	W	*	*		M						*																		
Red-winged Blackbird		B	*	*		S	O	M				*	*	P	P															
RWBL	358	W	*	*		S	O	S	M			*	P	P	P															
Orchard Oriole		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M				*	*	*				*											
OROR	359	W																												
Northern Oriole		B	GS NV	MP				M	M					F	*				*											
NOOR	360	W																												
Rusty Blackbird		B																												
RUBL	360	W	*	*		M	M	S	S	F		F	P	P	P															
Boat-tailed Grackle		B	*	OCT		M	M	M	M	F		*	N	N	N														A	
BTGR	361	W	*	OCT		M	M	M	M	F		*	P	P	P														A	

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Elm-Ash-Cottonwood

Species Code	Page	Seasonal and geographic distribution Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Successional stage[d] Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Common Grackle		B																												
COGR	362	W	*	*		M	M	S	S	F		*	P	P	P															
Brown-headed Cowbird		B	*	*		S	S	S	S	F		F				N			*		N									
BHCO	362	W	*	MPSIOC		M	M	S	S	F		*	P	P	P															
Scarlet Tanager		B	GS NV	MPIOC					M					F	*			*												
SCTA	363	W																												
Summer Tanager		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M					F	*															
SUTA	363	W																												
Northern Cardinal		B	*	*			S	S	S		*	*	*	F	F															
NOCA	364	W	*	*		M	S	S	S		*	*	*																	
Blue Grosbeak		B	*	MPSIOC		M	S					*	*																	
BLGR	365	W																												
Indigo Bunting		B	*	MPSIOC		M	M	M	M			*	*	P	P				*											
INBU	365	W	F	OCT		M	M					*	*																	
Painted Bunting		B	FG SN	IOC			M	M				*	*	P																
PABU	366	W	F	OCT			M	M				*	*																	
Evening Grosbeak		B																												
EVGR	367	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M	F			*	*	*															
Purple Finch		B																												
PUFI	367	W	*	MPSIOC			M	S	O				*	*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Elm-Ash-Cottonwood

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Pine Siskin		B																												
PISI	368	W	*	MPSIOC			S	S	O	F		*	*	*	*															
American Goldfinch		B	GS NV	MPSIO			O					*	*	P	P															
AMGO	369	W	*	*		S	O	S	S	*		*	*	*	*															
Rufous-sided Towhee		B	*	*			S	S	M		F	*	*	P	P															
RSTO	370	W	*	*			S	S	M		F	*	*																	
Savannah Sparrow		B																												
SASP	371	W	*	*		S						*																		
Grasshopper Sparrow		B																												
GRSP	371	W	FG SN	PSIOCT		M						*																		
Le Conte's Sparrow		B																												
LCSP	372	W	FG S	PSIOC		M						*																		
Field Sparrow		B	GS NV	*			M					*	*																	
FISP	376	W	*	*		M	M					*	*																	
White-throated Sparrow		B																												
WTSP	377	W	*	*		M	S	S	O		F	F	*	*	*															
Fox Sparrow		B																												
FOSP	378	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	S		F		*	*																
Lincoln's Sparrow		B																												
LISP	378	W	*	PSIOC		M	S					*	*																F	

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Elm-Ash-Cottonwood

		geographic distribution				stage [d]															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use [a]	States [b]	Physiographic provinces [c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water [f]	Flowing water [f]
Swamp Sparrow		B																												
SWSP	379	W	*	*		S	S					*																	FB	
Song Sparrow		B	GS NV	MPIC			S					*	*																	
SOSP	379	W	*	*		M	S					*	*																	
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

(P. echinata), singly or in combination [illegible] types 31, loblolly pine; 32, shortleaf pine; 35, eastern redcedar; and 37, spruce pine. Equivalent SAF types are 46, eastern redcedar; 75, shortleaf pine; 80, loblolly pine-shortleaf pine; and 81, loblolly pine. The type occurs in a wide variety of topographic conditions across most of the physiographic regions of the Southeast outside of Florida. In unmanaged conditions the type is successional to an array of hardwood types, from mesic and hydric types, such as bay swamp-pocosin, elm-ash-cottonwood, and oak-gum-cypress, to upland types, such as oak-hickory. Mature sawtimber stands very often have a substantial hardwood component appropriate to the successional sequence on the site. Thus, the avifauna of older stands includes species typical of hardwood stands in those geographic and physiographic locations. Frequently, mature stands typed as loblolly pine or shortleaf pine in management prescriptions appear to us to be mixed pine-hardwood stands. Such stands have complements of birds typical of mixed pine-hardwood stands. Users of this matrix must consider those facts when estimating bird communities in this type.

Timber management for pine is often quite intensive in this type. Certain silvicultural practices, such as regular controlled burning and herbicide injection of hardwoods, produce stands of essentially pure pine. The bird communities of these pine stands are very different from those in stands with a mixture of pine and hardwood. Users of the matrix must consider the actual stand composition when assessing bird communities in this type.

Twelve BBC and WBPS conducted in this type in the Southeast were published in 1947-1979 (Table 7).

State	Season	Successional stage[a]			
		Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber
Georgia	Breeding	1(1)	0	2(2)	0
	Winter	1(1)	0	0	0
South Carolina	Winter	1(1)	0	0	0
North Carolina	Breeding	0	1(1)	1(1)	3(3)
	Winter	0	1(1)	1(1)	0

[a] Entries are listed as "Plots (Years censused)".

Characteristic of this vegetation type are Eastern Pewees (B), Carolina Chickadees, Red-breasted Nuthatches (W), Brown-headed Nuthatches, Brown Creepers (W), Golden-crowned Kinglets (W), Ruby-crowned Kinglets (W), Pine Warblers, and Northern Juncos (W).

No species are restricted to the type.

Meyers and Johnson (1978) analyze bird-habitat relationships in this type. Dickson et al. (1980) summarize 16 censuses from this type.

Loblolly Pine-Shortleaf Pine Species Code	Page	Seasonal and geographic distribution				stage[d]															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Turkey Vulture		B	*	*			M	S	S	F	F	F	F		*															
TUVU	275	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F	F	F	F		*															
Black Vulture		B	*	*			M	S	S	F	F	F	F		*															
BLVU	276	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F	F	F	F		*															
Mississippi Kite		B	FG SN	SIO					M						NP														F	F
MIKI	277	W																												
Sharp-shinned Hawk		B																												
SSHA	278	W	*	*				S	S	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Cooper's Hawk		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*			N												
COHA	279	W	*	*				S	S	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Red-tailed Hawk		B																												
RTHA	279	W	*	*		S	M	M	S	F		F			*	P														
Rough-legged Hawk		B																												
RLHA	282	W	NV	MPIOC		M				F		F																		
Bald Eagle		B	*	IOCT					S						NP		NP							NP					A	F
BAEA	283	W	*	SIOCT				M	M						P		P							P					A	F
Northern Harrier		B																												
NOHA	283	W	*	*		M				F		*																		
Osprey		B	*	OCT				M	M						NP	NP	NP							NP					A	F
OSPR	284	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Loblolly Pine-Shortleaf Pine Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
American Kestrel		B	*	MPSIO		S				F		F			*	*					F		*		N					
AMKE	286	W	*	*		O	M			F		F			*	F					F									
Common Bobwhite		B	*	*		O	O	M	S	F		*								F										
COBO	287	W	*	*		S	S	M	S	F		*								F										
Ring-necked Pheasant		B	NV	MPIOC		M				F		*																		
RNPH	287	W	NV	MPIOC		M				F		*																		
Wild Turkey		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S	F	*	*		P	P					F										
WITU	288	W	*	*			M	M	S	F	*	*		P	P					F										
American Woodcock		B																												
AMWO	294	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F	*	F																	F	
Upland Sandpiper		B	V	MP		M						*																	FB	F
UPSA	295	W																												
Rock Dove		B	*	*		M				F		F															N			
RODO	296	W	*	*		M				F		F															P			
Mourning Dove		B	*	*		M	S	S	M	F		F		NP	NP															
MODO	297	W	*	*		O	S	S	S	F		F		P	P															
Common Ground Dove		B	FG SN	IOCT		O	M			F		*	N																	
CGDO	297	W	FG SN	IOCT		S	M			F		*	*																	
Barn Owl		B	*	*		O	M			F		F	P		P									N	N		N			
BAOW	300	W	*	*		O	M			F		F	P		P									P	P		P			

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Loblolly Pine–
Shortleaf Pine

Species Code	Page	geographic distribution				stage															minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Common Screech Owl		B	*	*				M	O	F	F	F	F	*	*	N							N		N					
CSOW	300	W	*	*				M	O	F	F	F	F	*	*	P							P		P					
Great Horned Owl		B	*	*					O	F	F	F	F	F	*															
GHOW	301	W	*	*				M	O	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Long-eared Owl		B																												
LEOW	302	W	GS NV	*			S	O	S	F	F	F	F	*	*															
Short-eared Owl		B																												
SEOW	303	W	*	PSIOC		M				F		*																		
Saw-whet Owl		B																												
SWOW	303	W	GS NV	MPSIOC			S	O	M	F	F	F	F	*	*	P						P			P					
Chuck-will's-widow		B	*	PSIOCT				S	O		N																			
CWWI	304	W	F	OCT				M	M		P																			
Whip-poor-will		B	GS NV	MPSIO				S	S		N																			
WPWI	304	W	FG SN	OCT				S	S		P																			
Common Flicker		B	*	*				M	M	F		F			*	*			*				N		N					
COFL	307	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F			*	*														
Pileated Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	M					F	*	*	*	*						*	N	F logs				
PIWO	307	W	*	*				M	M					F	*	*	*	*						*	P	F logs				
Red-bellied Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	M						*	*							N		N					
RBWO	308	W	*	*				M	M						*	*							P		P					

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Loblolly Pine-
Shortleaf Pine

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Red-headed Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	M			F				*			*				N							
RHWO	308	W	*	*				M	M			F	F	F	*	*														
Yellow-bellied Sapsucker		B																												
YBSA	309	W	*	*				M	S				F	F	*							*			*					
Hairy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	M					*	*	*						*			*					
HAWO	309	W	*	*				M	M					*	*	*														
Downy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	S				*	*	*	*					*				*					
DOWO	310	W	*	*				M	S				*	*	*	*					*				*					
Red-cockaded Woodpecker		B	*	PSIOC				M	S					F	F		N								*					
RCWO	310	W	*	PSIOC				S	O					F	F		P								*					
Eastern Kingbird		B	*	*		M						F			*	F			*		F									
EAKI	311	W																												
Great Crested Flycatcher		B	*	*			M	M	S					F	*	N						N			N					
GCFL	313	W																												
Eastern Phoebe		B																												
EAPH	313	W	*	*		S	S	S	M	F		F	*						*											
Eastern Pewee		B	*	*			M	M	O					F	*	F					F									
EAPE	316	W																												
Horned Lark		B	GS NV	*		M				*		*																		
HOLA	317	W	GS NV	*		M				*		*																		

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Loblolly Pine-
Shortleaf Pine

Species Code	Page	geographic distribution				stage															minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Barn Swallow		B	*	*		M																					N			
BASW	319	W																												
Cliff Swallow		B	GS NV	MP		M																					N			
CLSW	319	W																												
Purple Martin		B	*	*		M										N						N			N					
PUMA	320	W																												
Blue Jay		B	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*															
BLJA	320	W	*	*			M	M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*															
American Crow		B	*	*				M	O	F		F			*			N												
AMCR	322	W	*	*		S	M	M	O	F		F			*			P												
Fish Crow		B	*	*				S	O	F		F	*		*														A	F
FICR	322	W	*	*		S	M	M	S	F		F			*														A	F
Carolina Chickadee		B	*	MPSIOC				S	O				F	*	*	N					NP				NP					
CACH	323	W	*	MPSIOC			M	S	O				F	*	*	P					P				P					
Tufted Titmouse		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M				F	*	*	N					N									
TUTI	324	W	*	MPSIOC			M	S	S				F	*	*															
White-breasted Nuthatch		B	GS NV	MPSIOC				M	M						*	*	*								N					
WBNU	324	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M						*	*														
Red-breasted Nuthatch		B																												
RBNU	325	W	*	MPSIOC			M	O	O					*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Loblolly Pine-Shortleaf Pine

Species Code																				minimum d.b.h.									
	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Brown-headed Nuthatch		B	*	PSIOC				S	O					*	*	N					N				N					
BHNU	325	W	*	PSIOC			M	S	O					*	*															
Brown Creeper		B																												
BRCR	326	W	*	MPSIOC				S	O					*	*															
House Wren		B																												
HOWR	326	W	*	PSIOCT		M	M					F	*													*				
Winter Wren		B																												
WIWR	327	W	*	*				M	S	*	*	F	F													*				
Carolina Wren		B	*	*			M	S	S	*	*	*	*	*							N				N	*	N			
CAWR	328	W	*	*			M	S	S	*	*	*	*	*												*				
Northern Mockingbird		B																												
NOMO	329	W	*	*		M	M					F	*						*											
Brown Thrasher		B	*	*			S	M	M	F	F	F	*	P	P															
BRTH	330	W	*	*			S	M	M	*	*	*	*																	
American Robin		B	*	*			M	M	M	F		F	N	N	NP					*										
AMRO	331	W																												
Wood Thrush		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S		F	F	*	P				*												
WOTH	331	W																												
Hermit Thrush		B																												
HETH	332	W	*	*				S	S		*	F	*					*												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Loblolly Pine-
Shortleaf Pine

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
			geographic distribution																		minimum d.b.h.									
Eastern Bluebird		B	*	MPSIOC		M		M	M	F		F			*	NP			*		NP									
EABL	333	W	*	*		S	M	S	S	F		F			*	P			*		P									
Blue-gray Gnatcatcher		B																												
BGGN	334	W	FG SN	SIOCT			M	S	S				*	*	*															
Golden-crowned Kinglet		B																												
GCKI	334	W	*	MPSIOC			M	O	O				F	F	*															
Ruby-crowned Kinglet		B																												
RCKI	335	W	*	*			S	O	O				*	*	*															
European Starling		B																												
EUST	337	W	*	*			M	M	M	F		F																		
Solitary Vireo		B	GS NV	MPS				M	S				N	*	*															
SOVI	338	W	*	PSIOCT				S	O					*	*															
Red-eyed Vireo		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M					*	*															
REVI	339	W																												
Yellow-rumped Warbler		B																												
YRWA	347	W	*	*			M	S	S	*		*	*	*	*															
Yellow-throated Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S						*	F	*													
YTWA	349	W	FG SN	IOCT				M	S						*	F	*													
Pine Warbler		B	*	*				M	O					F	*															
PIWA	350	W	*	*				S	O			F		F	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Loblolly Pine-
Shortleaf Pine

Species Code	Page		geographic																		minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Prairie Warbler		B	*	*			S					F	*																	
PRWA	351	W	FG S	OCT			M	M	M			*	*																	
Palm Warbler		B																												
PAWA	351	W	*	PSIOCT		S	O	M		*		*	*																	
Ovenbird		B	GS NV	MPSIOC				M	M	*	*		P	P																
OVEN	352	W	FG S	OCT				M	M	*	*																			
Common Yellowthroat		B	*	*		S	M					*	*																	
COYE	354	W	*	PSIOCT		M	M					*	*																	
Yellow-breasted Chat		B	*	*		M	S	M					*			P														
YBCH	355	W																												
Hooded Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC					S				*	FP																
HOWA	355	W																												
House Sparrow		B	*	*		M				F		F																		
HOSP	357	W	*	*		M				F		F																		
Bobolink		B	NV	M		M						*																		
BOBO	357	W																												
Eastern Meadowlark		B	*	*		O	M					*																		
EAME	358	W	*	*		O	M					*																		
Red-winged Blackbird		B	*	*		S						*	*	P	P															
RWBL	358	W	*	*		M						*	P	P	P															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Loblolly Pine-
Shortleaf Pine

Species Code	Page	geographic distribution				stage															minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Brewer's Blackbird		B																												
BRBL	361	W	FG	PIOC		M				F		F	P	P	P															
Common Grackle		B	*	*				S	S	F		F	N	N	N															
COGR	362	W	*	*				M	M	F		*	P	P	P															
Brown-headed Cowbird		B	*	*		M	S	S	S	F		F				N			*		N									
BHCO	362	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M	F		*	P	P	P															
Summer Tanager		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S					F	*															
SUTA	363	W																												
Northern Cardinal		B	*	*			M	S	S		*	*	*	F	F															
NOCA	364	W	*	*			S	S	S		*	*	*																	
Blue Grosbeak		B	*	MPSIOC		M	S					*	*																	
BLGR	365	W																												
Indigo Bunting		B	*	MPSIOC		M	S					*	*	P	P				*											
INBU	365	W																												
Dickcissel		B	GS NV	MPI		M						*	P																	
DICK	366	W																												
Evening Grosbeak		B																												
EVGR	367	W	*	MPSIOC				S	O	F			*	*	*															
Purple Finch		B																												
PUFI	367	W	*	MPSIOC				M	S				*	*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Loblolly Pine-
Shortleaf Pine

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h.				Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
																					6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)						
House Finch		B																												
HOFI	368	W	GS NV	MPSIOC		M				*		*	*																	
Pine Siskin		B																												
PISI	368	W	*	MPSIOC		M	S	S	O	F		*	*	*	*															
American Goldfinch		B																												
AMGO	369	W	*	*		O	M	M	M	*		*	*	*	*															
Red Crossbill		B	NV	M				M	M					F	*															
RECR	369	W	GS NV	MPSIOC				M	S					*	*															
Rufous-sided Towhee		B	*	*			S	S	S		F	*	*	P	P															
RSTO	370	W	*	*			S	S	S		F	*	*																	
Savannah Sparrow		B																												
SASP	371	W	*	*		S						*																		
Grasshopper Sparrow		B	*	MPSIOC		O						*																		
GRSP	371	W	FG SN	PSIOCT		O	M					*																		
Henslow's Sparrow		B	V	MPC		M						*																	FB	
HESP	372	W	FG SN	PSIOC		M						*																		
Le Conte's Sparrow		B																												
LCSP	372	W	FG S	PSIOC		O						*																		
Vesper Sparrow		B																												
VESP	374	W	*	PSIOC		S				*		*																		

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Loblolly Pine-
Shortleaf Pine

Species Code	Page	geographic distribution Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	stage[d] Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Bachman's Sparrow		B	*	PSIOC		S	O	M				*	*	P	P				*											
BASP	374	W	*	SIOC		M	M					*																		
Northern Junco		B																												
NOJU	375	W	*	MPSIOC		M	S	S	O	F	F	*	*	*																
American Tree Sparrow		B																												
ATSP	375	W	NV	MPIOC		M						*	*																	
Chipping Sparrow		B	*	MPSIOC		M	M	M	S	F		*	*	*	*				*											
CHSP	376	W	*	*		S	M	M	S	F		*	*	*	*				*											
Field Sparrow		B	GS NV	*		S	O					*	*																	
FISP	376	W	*	*		O	S					*	*																	
White-crowned Sparrow		B																												
WCSP	377	W	*	*		M	M			F		*	*																	
White-throated Sparrow		B																												
WTSP	377	W	*	*		M	M	M	M		F	F	*	*	*															
Fox Sparrow		B																												
FOSP	378	W	*	MPSIOC			M	S	O		F		*	*																
Song Sparrow		B																												
SOSP	379	W	*	*		S	M					*	*																	
		B																												
		W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

percent of the stocking is hardwoods. The type corresponds to SAF types 45, pitch pine; and 79, Virginia pine. NFS and RRE types 33, Virginia pine; 38, pitch pine; and 39, Table Mountain pine are equivalent. Stands in the type usually grow on upland sites under severe conditions, e.g. high elevation, southern exposure, poor soils, or xeric situations. This type is successional to upland hardwoods. Comments made above with respect to succession in loblolly pine-shortleaf pine apply here as well.

Eight censuses from this type in the Southeast were published in 1947-1979. One poletimber stand in Virginia was censused during seven winters; a shrub-seedling stand in Virginia was censused in one winter.

Characteristic of this vegetation type are Red-breasted Nuthatches (W) and Golden-crowned Kinglets (W).

No species are restricted to this type.

Capen (1979) presents information on bird-habitat associations in this type.

Virginia Pine-Pitch Pine

Species / Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
			geographic distribution																		minimum d.b.h.									
Turkey Vulture		B	*	*			M	M	M	F	F	F	F		*															
TUVU	275	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F	F	F	F		*															
Sharp-shinned Hawk		B	GS NV	MPSI				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*			N												
SSHA	278	W	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Cooper's Hawk		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*			N												
COHA	279	W	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Red-tailed Hawk		B																												
RTHA	279	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F			*	P														
Northern Harrier		B																												
NOHA	283	W	*	*		M				F		*																		
American Kestrel		B	*	MPSIO		M				F		F			*	*					F		*		N					
AMKE	286	W	*	*		M	M			F		F			*	F					F									
Ruffed Grouse		B	GS NV	MP			M	M	M	F	*	*	F	P																
RUGR	286	W	GS NV	MP			M	M	S	F	*	*	F	P																
Common Bobwhite		B	*	*		S	M	M	M	F		*								F										
COBO	287	W	*	*		S	M	M	M	F		*								F										
Ring-necked Pheasant		B	NV	MPIOC		M				F		*																		
RNPH	287	W	NV	MPIOC		M				F		*																		
Upland Sandpiper		B	V	MP		M						*																	FB	F
UPSA	295	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Virginia Pine-Pitch Pine

Species Code	Page	Season of use [a]	distribution States [b]	Physiographic provinces [c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water [f]	Flowing water [f]
Rock Dove		B	*	*		M				F		F															N			
RODO	296	W	*	*		M				F		F															P			
Mourning Dove		B	*	*			M	M	M	F		F		NP	NP															
MODO	297	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F		P	P															
Barn Owl		B	*	*		M	M			F		F	P		P									N	N		N			
BAOW	300	W	*	*		M	M			F		F	P		P									P	P		P			
Common Screech Owl		B	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	*	*	N							N		N					
CSOW	300	W	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	*	*	P							P		P					
Great Horned Owl		B	*	*					M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
GHOW	301	W	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Long-eared Owl		B	V	MP				M	M	F	F	F	F	*	*															
LEOW	302	W	GS NV	*			M	S	M	F	F	F	F	*	*															
Saw-whet Owl		B																												
SWOW	303	W	GS NV	MPSIOC			S	S	M	F	F	F	F	*	*	P						P			P					
Whip-poor-will		B	GS NV	MPSIO				S	S		N																			
WPWI	304	W																												
Common Flicker		B	*	*				M	M	F		F			*	*			*				N		N					
COFL	307	W	*	*				M	M	F		F			*	*														
Pileated Woodpecker		B																												
PIWO	307	W	*	*				M	M					F	*	*	*	*						*	P	F logs				

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Virginia Pine-Pitch Pine

Code / Species	Page	distribution																			Specific requirements minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Yellow-bellied Sapsucker		B																												
YBSA	309	W	*	*				M	M				F	F	*							*			*					
Hairy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	M					*	*	*						*			*					
HAWO	309	W	*	*				M	M					*	*	*														
Downy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	M				*	*	*	*					*				*					
DOWO	310	W	*	*				M	M				*	*	*	*					*				*					
Red-cockaded Woodpecker		B	*	PSIOC					M					F	F		N								*					
RCWO	310	W	*	PSIOC				M	M					F	F		P								*					
Great Crested Flycatcher		B	*	*				M	M					F	*	N						N			N					
GCFL	313	W																												
Eastern Phoebe		B																												
EAPH	313	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F	*						*											
Least Flycatcher		B	GN V	M		M		M	M					*	*				*											
LEFL	315	W																												
Eastern Pewee		B	*	*				M	M					F	*	F					F									
EAPE	316	W																												
Horned Lark		B	GS NV	*		M				*		*																		
HOLA	317	W	GS NV	*		M				*		*																		
Barn Swallow		B	*	*		M																					N			
BASW	319	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Virginia Pine-Pitch Pine

Species Code	Page		distribution																		Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic[c] provinces	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Cliff Swallow		B	GS NV	MP		M																					N			
CLSW	319	W																												
Purple Martin		B	*	*		M										N						N			N					
PUMA	320	W																												
Blue Jay		B	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	*	*															
BLJA	320	W	*	*			M	M	M	F	F	F	F	*	*															
Northern Raven		B	GS NV	M			M	M	M	F		F			P												N			
NORA	321	W	GS NV	M		M	M	M	M	F		F			P															
American Crow		B	*	*				M	S	F		F			*			N												
AMCR	322	W	*	*		S	M	M	S	F		F			*			P												
Black-capped Chickadee		B																												
BCCH	323	W	NV	MP			M	M	M				F	*	*	P					P				P					
Carolina Chickadee		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S				F	*	*	N					NP				NP					
CACH	323	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	S				F	*	*	P					P				P					
Tufted Titmouse		B																												
TUTI	324	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M				F	*	*															
Red-breasted Nuthatch		B	NV	M				M	M					*	*	N					N									
RBNU	325	W	*	MPSIOC			M	O	O					*	*															
Brown-headed Nuthatch		B	*	PSIOC				M	M					*	*	N					N				N					
BHNU	325	W	*	PSIOC				M	M					*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Virginia Pine-Pitch Pine

			distribution																		minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Brown Creeper		B																												
BRCR	326	W	*	MPSIOC				S	S					*	*															
Winter Wren		B																												
WIWR	327	W	*	*				M	M	*	*	F	F													*				
Carolina Wren		B	*	*			M	M	M	*	*	*	*	*							N				N	*	N			
CAWR	328	W	*	*			M	M	M	*	*	*	*	*												*				
Northern Mockingbird		B																												
NOMO	329	W	*	*		M	M					F	*						*											
Brown Thrasher		B	*	*			S	M	M	F	F	F	*	P	P															
BRTH	330	W	*	*			M	M	M	*	*	*	*																	
American Robin		B	*	*			M	M	M	F		F	N	N	NP					*										
AMRO	331	W																												
Hermit Thrush		B																												
HETH	332	W	*	*				M	M		*	F	*					*												
Golden-crowned Kinglet		B																												
GCKI	334	W	*	MPSIOC			M	O	O				F	F	*															
Ruby-crowned Kinglet		B																												
RCKI	335	W	*	*			S	S	S				*	*	*															
Solitary Vireo		B	GS NV	MPS				M	M				N	*	*															
SOVI	338	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Virginia Pine-Pitch Pine

Species Code	Page		distribution																		Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Yellow-rumped Warbler		B																												
YRWA	347	W	*	*			M	M	M	*		*	*	*	*															
Black-thr. Green Warbler		B	GS NV	MPOC				M	M					F	*			*												
BTGW	348	W																												
Yellow-throated Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M						*	F	*													
YTWA	349	W																												
Pine Warbler		B	*	*				M	M					F	*															
PIWA	350	W	*	*				M	M			F		F	*															
Palm Warbler		B																												
PAWA	351	W	*	PSIOCT		M	M	M		*		*	*																	
House Sparrow		B	*	*		M				F		F																		
HOSP	357	W	*	*		M				F		F																		
Eastern Meadowlark		B	*	*		S	M					*																		
EAME	358	W	*	*		S	M					*																		
Red-winged Blackbird		B	*	*		M						*	*	P	P															
RWBL	358	W	*	*		M						*	P	P	P															
Common Grackle		B	*	*				M	M	F		F	N	N	N															
COGR	362	W																												
Brown-headed Cowbird		B	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F				N			*		N									
BHCO	362	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Virginia Pine-Pitch Pine

Species Code	Page	geographic distribution				stage															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Northern Cardinal		B	*	*			M	M	M		*	*	*	F	F															
NOCA	364	W	*	*			M	M	M		*	*	*																	
Dickcissel		B	GS NV	MPI		M						*	P																	
DICK	366	W																												
Evening Grosbeak		B																												
EVGR	367	W	*	MPSIOC				S	S	F			*	*	*															
Purple Finch		B																												
PUFI	367	W	*	MPSIOC				M	S				*	*	*															
Pine Siskin		B																												
PISI	368	W	*	MPSIOC		M	S	S	O	F		*	*	*	*															
American Goldfinch		B																												
AMGO	369	W	*	*		S	M	M	M	*		*	*	*	*															
Red Crossbill		B	NV	M				M	M					F	*															
RECR	369	W	GS NV	MPSIOC				M	S					*	*															
White-winged Crossbill		B																												
WWCR	370	W	NV	MPI				M	M					*	*															
Rufous-sided Towhee		B	*	*			M	M	M		F	*	*	P	P															
RSTO	370	W	*	*			S	M	M		F	*	*																	
Savannah Sparrow		B																												
SASP	371	W	*	*		M						*																		

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Virginia Pine-Pitch Pine

Species / Code	Page	distribution																			Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use [a]	States [b]	Physiographic provinces [c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water [f]	Flowing water [f]
Grasshopper Sparrow		B	*	MPSIOC		M						*																		
GRSP	371	W																												
Henslow's Sparrow		B	V	MPC		M						*																	FB	
HESP	372	W																												
Vesper Sparrow		B	NV	MPI		M				*		*	P																	
VESP	374	W																												
Bachman's Sparrow		B	*	PSIOC		M	M					*	*	P	P				*											
BASP	374	W																												
Northern Junco		B																												
NOJU	375	W	*	MPSIOC		M	S	S	S	F	F	*	*	*																
American Tree Sparrow		B																												
ATSP	375	W	NV	MPIOC		M						*	*																	
Field Sparrow		B	GS NV	*			S					*	*																	
FISP	376	W	*	*		S	S					*	*																	
White-crowned Sparrow		B																												
WCSP	377	W	*	*		M	M			F		*	*																	
White-throated Sparrow		B																												
WTSP	377	W	*	*		M	M	M	M		F	F	*	*	*															
Fox Sparrow		B																												
FOSP	378	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M		F		*	*																

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Virginia Pine-Pitch Pine

Species			geographic distribution			stage															minimum d.b.h.									
Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Song Sparrow		B																												
SOSP	379	W	*	*		M	M					*	*																	
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

These are forests in which hardwoods (usually oaks) and pines stocking. The type corresponds to NFS types 11, eastern redcedar-hardwood; 12, shortleaf pine-oak; 13, loblolly pine-hardwood (in part, see below); 15, pitch pine-oak (in part, see below); 16, Virginia pine-oak (in part, see below); 20, Table Mountain pine-oak (in part, see below); 43, oak-eastern redcedar; 44, southern red oak-yellow pine; 45, chestnut oak-scarlet oak-yellow pine; 46, bottomland hardwood-yellow pine (in part, see below); 47, white oak-black oak-yellow pine; 48, northern red oak-hickory-yellow pine; and 49, bear oak-southern scrub oak-yellow pine (in which the oak is bear oak). Equivalent SAF types are 76, shortleaf pine-oak; 78, Virginia pine-oak (in part, see below); and 82, loblolly pine-hardwood (in part, see below).

Many stands classed as pine in management prescriptions have sufficient stocking of hardwoods to support bird communities typical of this mixed type. Our treatment of mixed pine-hardwood focuses on stands in which the pine is loblolly pine, shortleaf pine, or, to a lesser extent, Virginia pine. Thus, the treatment involves all mixed pine-hardwood stands in the Piedmont and lower Mountains, as well as mixed pine-hardwood stands on upland sites in the Coastal Plain. Mixed pine-hardwood stands in Coastal Plain bottomlands are better treated as bottomland hardwood stands with appropriate addition of species typical of loblolly pine stands. In mixed stands containing Virginia pine, the expected species pool is virtually the same as for mixed loblolly pine-hardwood or shortleaf pine-hardwood; however, stated suitability ratings for these mixed types may be uniformly too high for the poorer sites. Stands of hardwood and pitch pine or Table Mountain pine are best treated as combinations of Virginia pine-pitch pine and the appropriate hardwood type.

Eighty-three censuses made in this type in the Southeast were published in 1947-1979 (Table 8).

State	Season	Successional stage[a]			
		Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber
Georgia	Breeding	0	0	0	1(11)
	Winter	0	0	0	1(10)
North Carolina	Breeding	1(2)	3(5)	2(5)	1(23)
	Winter	0	0	0	1(23)
Virginia	Breeding	0	1(2)	0	1(2)

[a] Entries are listed as "Plots (Years censused)".

Characteristic of this vegetation type are Chuck-will's-widows (B), Whip-poor-wills (B), Great Crested Flycatchers (B), Eastern Pewees (B), Blue Jays, Carolina Chickadees, Tufted Titmice, Brown Creepers (W), Hermit Thrushes (W), Ruby-crowned Kinglets (W), Yellow-rumped Warblers (W), Summer Tanagers (B), Northern Cardinals, Northern Juncos (W), and Fox Sparrows (W).

No species are restricted to this type.

Evans (1978) treats bird-habitat associations in this type. Dickson et al. (1980) summarize four censuses from this type. Kerlinger and Doremus (1981) studied birds in mixed pitch pine-hardwood stands.

Mixed Pine-Hardwood

Species Code	Page	geographic distribution Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	stage Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Turkey Vulture		B	*	*			M	O	O	F	F	F	F		*															
TUVU	275	W	*	*		M	M	S	S	F	F	F	F		*															
Black Vulture		B	*	*			M	O	O	F	F	F	F		*															
BLVU	276	W	*	*		M	M	S	S	F	F	F	F		*															
Swallow-tailed Kite		B	FG S	OT					M	F		F	F	F	NP		NP												F	F
STKI	277	W																												
Mississippi Kite		B	FG SN	SIO					M						NP														F	F
MIKI	277	W																												
Sharp-shinned Hawk		B	GS NV	MPSI				M	O	F	F	F	F	F	*			N												
SSHA	278	W	*	*				O	O	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Cooper's Hawk		B	*	MPSIOC				M	O	F	F	F	F	F	*			N												
COHA	279	W	*	*				O	O	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Red-tailed Hawk		B	*	*					O	F		F			*	P														
RTHA	279	W	*	*		S	M	S	O	F		F			*	P														
Broad-winged Hawk		B	*	MPSIO					S	F	F	F	F		*															
BWHA	280	W																												
Rough-legged Hawk		B																												
RLHA	282	W	NV	MPIOC		S				F		F																		
Golden Eagle		B																												
GOEA	282	W	SN V	MOC		M				F		F															P			

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Mixed Pine-Hardwood		distribution																			Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Bald Eagle		B	*	IOCT					M						NP		NP							NP					A	F
BAEA	283	W	*	SIOCT				M	M						P		P							P					A	F
Northern Harrier		B																												
NOHA	283	W	*	*		S				F		*																		
American Kestrel		B	*	MPSIO		S				F		F			*	*					F		*		N					
AMKE	286	W	*	*		O	M			F		F			*	F					F									
Ruffed Grouse		B	GS NV	MP			M	S	M	F	*	*	F	P																
RUGR	286	W	GS NV	MP			M	S	S	F	*	*	F	P																
Common Bobwhite		B	*	*		S	O	M	M	F		*								F										
COBO	287	W	*	*		O	O	M	M	F		*								F										
Ring-necked Pheasant		B	NV	MPIOC		S				F		*																		
RNPH	287	W	NV	MPIOC		S				F		*																		
Wild Turkey		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S	F	*	*		P	P					F										
WITU	288	W	*	*			M	S	S	F	*	*		P	P					F										
American Woodcock		B	*	*				M	S	F	*	F																	F	
AMWO	294	W	*	*		M	M	M	S	F	*	F																	F	
Upland Sandpiper		B	V	MP		O						*																	FB	F
UPSA	295	W																												
Rock Dove		B	*	*		M				F		F															N			
RODO	296	W	*	*		M				F		F															P			

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Mixed Pine-Hardwood

Species Code	Page	geographic distribution				stage															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Mourning Dove		B	*	*		S	O	O	S	F		F		NP	NP															
MODO	297	W	*	*		S	S	S	S	F		F		P	P															
Common Ground Dove		B	FG SN	IOCT			M			F		*	N																	
CGDO	297	W	FG SN	IOCT		M	M			F		*	*																	
Yellow-billed Cuckoo		B	*	*				M	M				N	*	*															
YBCU	298	W																												
Black-billed Cuckoo		B	GS NV	MPIO				M	M				N	*	*															
BBCU	299	W																												
Barn Owl		B	*	*		O	M			F		F	P		P									N	N		N			
BAOW	300	W	*	*		O	M			F		F	P		P									P	P		P			
Common Screech Owl		B	*	*				M	O	F	F	F	F	*	*	N							N		N					
CSOW	300	W	*	*				M	O	F	F	F	F	*	*	P							P		P					
Great Horned Owl		B	*	*					O	F	F	F	F	F	*															
GHOW	301	W	*	*				M	O	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Long-eared Owl		B	V	MP				M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*															
LEOW	302	W	GS NV	*			M	M	M	F	F	F	F	*	*															
Short-eared Owl		B																												
SEOW	303	W	*	PSIOC		M				F		*																		
Saw-whet Owl		B																												
SWOW	303	W	GS NV	MPSIOC			M	M	M	F	F	F	F	*	*	P						P			P					

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Mixed Pine-Hardwood

Species Code	Page	distribution Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Chuck-will's-widow		B	*	PSIOCT				S	O		N																			
CWWI	304	W	F	OCT				S	S		P																			
Whip-poor-will		B	GS NV	MPSIO				S	O		N																			
WPWI	304	W	FG SN	OCT				S	O		P																			
Ruby-throated Hummingbird		B	*	*			M	M	M				*	*	*															
RTHU	306	W																												
Common Flicker		B	*	*				M	S	F		F			*	*			*				N		N					
COFL	307	W	*	*		M	M	M	S	F		F			*	*														
Pileated Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	S					F	*	*	*	*						*	N	F logs				
PIWO	307	W	*	*				M	S					F	*	*	*	*						*	P	F logs				
Red-bellied Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	S						*	*							N		N					
RBWO	308	W	*	*				M	S						*	*							P		P					
Red-headed Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	M			F				*			*				N							
RHWO	308	W	*	*				M	M			F	F	F	*	*														
Yellow-bellied Sapsucker		B																												
YBSA	309	W	*	*				S	O				F	F	*							*			*					
Hairy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	S					*	*	*						*			*					
HAWO	309	W	*	*				M	S					*	*	*														
Downy Woodpecker		B	*	*				S	O				*	*	*	*					*				*					
DOWO	310	W	*	*				S	O				*	*	*	*					*				*					

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Mixed Pine-Hardwood

Species Code	Page	Season of use [a]	distribution																		minimum d.b.h.									
			States [b]	Physiographic provinces [c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water [f]	Flowing water [f]
Red-cockaded Woodpecker		B	*	PSIOC				M	M					F	F		N								*					
RCWO	310	W	*	PSIOC				M	M					F	F		P								*					
Eastern Kingbird		B	*	*		M						F			*	F		*	F											
EAKI	311	W																												
Great Crested Flycatcher		B	*	*				M	O					F	*	N						N			N					
GCFL	313	W																												
Eastern Phoebe		B																												
EAPH	313	W	*	*		S	S	S	M	F		F	*						*											
Acadian Flycatcher		B	*	*				M	M					*	*	F		*			F								F	F
ACFL	314	W																												
Eastern Pewee		B	*	*				M	O					F	*	F					F									
EAPE	316	W																												
Horned Lark		B	GS NV	*		M				*		*																		
HOLA	317	W	GS NV	*		M				*		*																		
Bank Swallow		B	NV	MPI		M																						N	FB	F
BKSW	318	W																												
Barn Swallow		B	*	*		M																					N			
BASW	319	W																												
Cliff Swallow		B	GS NV	MP		M																					N			
CLSW	319	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Mixed Pine-Hardwood		distribution				stage															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic[c] provinces	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Purple Martin		B	*	*		M										N						N			N					
PUMA	320	W																												
Blue Jay		B	*	*				M	O	F	F	F	F	*	*															
BLJA	320	W	*	*			M	S	O	F	F	F	F	*	*															
Northern Raven		B	GS NV	M			M	M	M	F		F			P												N			
NORA	321	W	GS NV	M		M	M	M	M	F		F			P															
American Crow		B	*	*				S	O	F		F			*			N												
AMCR	322	W	*	*		S	M	S	O	F		F			*			P												
Fish Crow		B	*	*				M	S	F		F	*		*														A	F
FICR	322	W	*	*		S	M	M	S	F		F			*														A	F
Black-capped Chickadee		B	NV	M				M	M				F	*	*	N					NP				NP					
BCCH	323	W	NV	MP			M	M	M				F	*	*	P					P				P					
Carolina Chickadee		B	*	MPSIOC				S	O				F	*	*	N					NP				NP					
CACH	323	W	*	MPSIOC			M	S	O				F	*	*	P					P				P					
Tufted Titmouse		B	*	MPSIOC				S	O				F	*	*	N					N									
TUTI	324	W	*	MPSIOC			M	S	O				F	*	*															
White-breasted Nuthatch		B	GS NV	MPSIOC				M	M						*	*	*								N					
WBNU	324	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M						*	*														
Red-breasted Nuthatch		B																												
RBNU	325	W	*	MPSIOC			M	S	O					*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Mixed Pine-Hardwood

Species Code	Page	geographic distribution				stage				Specific requirements[e]												Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic[c] provinces	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Brown-headed Nuthatch		B	*	PSIOC				M	M					*	*	N					N				N					
BHNU	325	W	*	PSIOC				M	M					*	*															
Brown Creeper		B																												
BRCR	326	W	*	MPSIOC				S	O					*	*															
House Wren		B																												
HOWR	326	W	*	PSIOCT		M	M					F	*													*				
Winter Wren		B																												
WIWR	327	W	*	*				S	S	*	*	F	F													*				
Bewick's Wren		B																												
BEWR	327	W	FG	PSIOC			M					*	*													*				
Carolina Wren		B	*	*			S	O	O	*	*	*	*	*							N				N	*	N			
CAWR	328	W	*	*			S	O	O	*	*	*	*	*												*				
Northern Mockingbird		B	*	*		M	M					F	*						*											
NOMO	329	W	*	*		M	M					F	*						*											
Gray Catbird		B	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M				*	P																
GRCA	330	W	*	PSIOCT			M	M	M				*																	
Brown Thrasher		B	*	*			O	M	M	F	F	F	*	P	P															
BRTH	330	W	*	*			O	M	M	*	*	*	*																	
American Robin		B	*	*			M	M	M	F		F	N	N	NP					*										
AMRO	331	W	*	*			M	M	M	F		F	*	*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Mixed Pine-Hardwood

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Wood Thrush		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S		F	F	*	P				*												
WOTH	331	W																												
Hermit Thrush		B																												
HETH	332	W	*	*				O	O		*	F	*					*												
Eastern Bluebird		B	*	MPSIOC		M		M	M	F		F			*	NP			*		NP									
EABL	333	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F			*	P			*		P									
Blue-gray Gnatcatcher		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S				*	*	*															
BGGN	334	W	FG SN	SIOCT			M	O	O				*	*	*															
Golden-crowned Kinglet		B																												
GCKI	334	W	*	MPSIOC			M	O	O				F	F	*															
Ruby-crowned Kinglet		B																												
RCKI	335	W	*	*			S	O	O				*	*	*															
Cedar Waxwing		B																												
CEWA	336	W	*	*			M	M	M				*	*	*				*											
European Starling		B	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F				N						N			N		N			
EUST	337	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F																		
Yellow-throated Vireo		B	*	*					M					F	*															
YTVI	338	W																												
Solitary Vireo		B	GS NV	MPS				M	S				N	*	*															
SOVI	338	W	*	PSIOCT				S	O					*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Mixed Pine-Hardwood

		distribution																			minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Red-eyed Vireo		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S					*	*															
REVI	339	W																												
Black-and-white Warbler		B	GS NV	MPSIO				M	M		N	N		F	F			*												
BAWW	340	W	FG SN	SIOCT				M	S					F	*															
Worm-eating Warbler		B	*	MPIO				M	M		*	F	*	P				*												
WEWA	342	W																												
Golden-winged Warbler		B	GN V	M			M	M				N	*	P	P															
GWWA	342	W																												
Blue-winged Warbler		B	GN V	MP			M					*	*		P															
BWWA	343	W																												
Orange-crowned Warbler		B																												
OCWA	344	W	*	PSIOCT		M	M	M	M			*	*	*																
Northern Parula Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S					*	*															
NPWA	345	W																												
Yellow-rumped Warbler		B																												
YRWA	347	W	*	*			S	O	O	*		*	*	*	*															
Black-thr. Green Warbler		B	GS NV	MPOC				M	S					F	*			*												
BTGW	348	W																												
Yellow-throated Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S						*	F	*													
YTWA	349	W	FG SN	IOCT				M	S						*	F	*													

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Mixed Pine-Hardwood

		Seasonal and geographic distribution				Successional stage				Substrate utilization											Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Chestnut-sided Warbler		B	GS NV	M			S	M	M				*	*	P				*											
CSWA	350	W																												
Pine Warbler		B	*	*				M	S					F	*															
PIWA	350	W	*	*				M	S			F		F	*															
Prairie Warbler		B	*	*			O					F	*																	
PRWA	351	W	FG S	OCT			M	M	M			*	*																	
Palm Warbler		B																												
PAWA	351	W	*	PSIOCT		M	S	M		*		*	*																	
Ovenbird		B	GS NV	MPSIOC				S	O	*	*		P	P																
OVEN	352	W	FG S	OCT				M	S	*	*																			
Louisiana Waterthrush		B	*	MPSIO					M	*			P	P													*			F
LOWA	353	W																												
Kentucky Warbler		B	*	*					M	F	F	*	*	P																
KEWA	353	W																												
Common Yellowthroat		B	*	*		S	S					*	*																	
COYE	354	W	*	PSIOCT		M	M					*	*																	
Yellow-breasted Chat		B	*	*		M	S						*			P														
YBCH	355	W	*	OCT			M						*																	
Hooded Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S				*	FP																
HOWA	355	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Mixed Pine-Hardwood

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
House Sparrow		B	*	*		M				F		F																		
HOSP	357	W	*	*		M				F		F																		
Bobolink		B	NV	M		M						*																		
BOBO	357	W																												
Eastern Meadowlark		B	*	*		O	M					*																		
EAME	358	W	*	*		O	M					*																		
Red-winged Blackbird		B	*	*		S						*	*	P	P															
RWBL	358	W	*	*		M						*	P	P	P															
Rusty Blackbird		B																												
RUBL	360	W	*	*				M	M	F		F	P	P	P															
Brewer's Blackbird		B																												
BRBL	361	W	FG	PIOC		M				F		F	P	P	P															
Common Grackle		B	*	*				S	S	F		F	N	N	N															
COGR	362	W	*	*				M	M	F		*	P	P	P															
Brown-headed Cowbird		B	*	*		M	S	S	S	F		F				N			*		N									
BHCO	362	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M	F		*	P	P	P															
Scarlet Tanager		B	GS NV	MPIOC					S					F	*			*												
SCTA	363	W																												
Summer Tanager		B	*	MPSIOC				M	O					F	*															
SUTA	363	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Mixed Pine-Hardwood

		distribution																			Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Northern Cardinal		B	*	*			M	S	O		*	*	*	F	F															
NOCA	364	W	*	*			O	O	O		*	*	*																	
Blue Grosbeak		B	*	MPSIOC		M	S					*	*																	
BLGR	365	W																												
Indigo Bunting		B	*	MPSIOC		M	S	M	M			*	*	P	P				*											
INBU	365	W																												
Dickcissel		B	GS NV	MPI		M						*	P																	
DICK	366	W																												
Evening Grosbeak		B																												
EVGR	367	W	*	MPSIOC				M	O	F			*	*	*															
Purple Finch		B																												
PUFI	367	W	*	MPSIOC				S	O				*	*	*															
House Finch		B																												
HOFI	368	W	GS NV	MPSIOC		M	M			*		*	*																	
Pine Siskin		B																												
PISI	368	W	*	MPSIOC		M	S	S	O	F		*	*	*	*															
American Goldfinch		B	GS NV	MPSIO			M					*	*	P	P															
AMGO	369	W	*	*		O	S	M	M	*		*	*	*	*															
Red Crossbill		B																												
RECR	369	W	GS NV	MPSIOC				M	M					*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Mixed Pine-Hardwood

Species / Code	Page	distribution																			minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Rufous-sided Towhee		B	*	*			O	O	S		F	*	*	P	P															
RSTO	370	W	*	*			O	O	S		F	*	*																	
Savannah Sparrow		B	V	MP		S						*																		
SASP	371	W	*	*		S						*																		
Grasshopper Sparrow		B	*	MPSIOC		O						*																		
GRSP	371	W	FG SN	PSIOCT		O	M					*																		
Henslow's Sparrow		B	V	MPC		M						*																	FB	
HESP	372	W	FG SN	PSIOC		M						*																		
Le Conte's Sparrow		B																												
LCSP	372	W	FG S	PSIOC		O						*																		
Vesper Sparrow		B	NV	MPI		M				*		*	P																	
VESP	374	W	*	PSIOC		S				*		*																		
Bachman's Sparrow		B	*	PSIOC		M	S					*	*	P	P				*											
BASP	374	W	*	SIOC		M	M					*																		
Northern Junco		B																												
NOJU	375	W	*	MPSIOC		M	S	S	O	F	F	*	*	*																
American Tree Sparrow		B																												
ATSP	375	W	NV	MPIOC		O	M					*	*																	
Chipping Sparrow		B	*	MPSIOC		M	M	M	M	F		*	*	*	*				*											
CHSP	376	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		*	*	*	*				*											

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Mixed Pine-Hardwood

		geographic distribution				stage															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Field Sparrow		B	GS NV	*		S	O					*	*																	
FISP	376	W	*	*		O	S					*	*																	
White-crowned Sparrow		B																												
WCSP	377	W	*	*		S	M			F		*	*																	
White-throated Sparrow		B																												
WTSP	377	W	*	*		M	M	S	S		F	F	*	*	*															
Fox Sparrow		B																												
FOSP	378	W	*	MPSIOC			M	S	O		F		*	*																
Swamp Sparrow		B																												
SWSP	379	W	*	*		M						*																	FB	
Song Sparrow		B	GS NV	MPIC			M					*	*																	
SOSP	379	W	*	*		S	M					*	*																	
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

make up less than 25 percent of the stocking. Equivalent NFS types are 10, white pine-upland hardwoods (in part); 42, upland hardwoods-white pine (in part); 51, post oak-blackjack oak; 52, chestnut oak; 53, white oak-red oak-hickory; 54, white oak; 55, northern red oak; and 59, scarlet oak. The type corresponds to SAF types 20, white pine-northern red oak-red maple (in part); 40, post oak-blackjack oak; 43, bear oak; 44, Chestnut oak; 50, black locust; 51, white pine-chestnut oak (in part); 52, white oak-black oak-northern red oak; 53, white oak; 55, northern red oak (in uplands); 64, sassafras-persimmon; and 110, black oak. RRE types 50, oak-hickory; and 52, chestnut oak are included in the type. Oak-hickory forests occur across a wide range of geographical and physiographical conditions. Bird communities of this type also vary across the Southeast. Users of the matrix must consider this fact when estimating the bird community on a specific site.

Ninety-two censuses made in oak-hickory plots in the Southeast were published in 1947-1979 (Table 9).

Characteristic of this vegetation type are Red-bellied Woodpeckers, Hairy Woodpeckers, Downy Woodpeckers, Blue Jays, Tufted Titmice, White-breasted Nuthatches, Carolina Wrens, Wood Thrushes (B), Red-eyed Vireos (B), Ovenbirds (B), Scarlet Tanagers (B).

No species are restricted to the type.

Evans (1978) and Probst (1979) treat bird-habitat associations in this type. Dickson et al. (1980) summarize 27 censuses from this type.

Table 9. Published Breeding Bird Censuses and Winter Bird Population Studies from oak-hickory plots in the Southeast in 1947-1979.

State	Season	Successional stage[a]			
		Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber
Georgia	Breeding	0	1(2)	0	2(2)
North Carolina	Breeding	1(4)	0	3(9)	4(12)
	Winter	1(5)	0	0	3(5)
Virginia	Breeding	0	0	3(3)	7(22)
	Winter	4(8)	1(4)	1(1)	3(15)

[a] Entries are listed as "Plots (Years censused)".

Oak-Hickory

Species / Code	Page	distribution																			Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic[c] provinces	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Turkey Vulture		B	*	*			M	O	O	F	F	F	F		*															
TUVU	275	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F	F	F	F		*															
Black Vulture		B	*	*			M	S	S	F	F	F	F		*															
BLVU	276	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F	F	F	F		*															
Sharp-shinned Hawk		B	GS NV	MPSI				M	O	F	F	F	F	F	*			N												
SSHA	278	W	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Cooper's Hawk		B	*	MPSIOC				M	O	F	F	F	F	F	*			N												
COHA	279	W	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Red-tailed Hawk		B	*	*					O	F		F			*	P														
RTHA	279	W	*	*		S	M	S	O	F		F			*	P														
Broad-winged Hawk		B	*	MPSIO					O	F	F	F	F		*															
BWHA	280	W	F	CT				M	M	F	F	F	F		*															
Rough-legged Hawk		B																												
RLHA	282	W	NV	MPIOC		O				F		F																		
Golden Eagle		B																												
GOEA	282	W	SN V	MOC		M				F		F															P			
Northern Harrier		B																												
NOHA	283	W	*	*		S				F		*																		
American Kestrel		B	*	MPSIO		S				F		F			*	*					F		*		N					
AMKE	286	W	*	*		O	M			F		F			*	F					F									

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Oak-Hickory

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
		distribution																			minimum d.b.h.									
Ruffed Grouse		B	GS NV	MP			M	M	S	F	*	*	F	P																
RUGR	286	W	GS NV	MP			M	M	M	F	*	*	F	P																
Common Bobwhite		B	*	*		M	O			F		*								F										
COBO	287	W	*	*		M	O			F		*								F										
Ring-necked Pheasant		B	NV	MPIOC		S				F		*																		
RNPH	287	W	NV	MPIOC		S				F		*																		
Wild Turkey		B	*	MPSIOC			M	M	S	F	*	*		P	P					F										
WITU	288	W	*	*			M	M	S	F	*	*		P	P					F										
American Woodcock		B	*	*				M	S	F	*	F																	F	
AMWO	294	W	*	*				M	S	F	*	F																	F	
Upland Sandpiper		B	V	MP		O						*																	FB	F
UPSA	295	W																												
Rock Dove		B	*	*		M				F		F															N			
RODO	296	W	*	*		M				F		F															P			
Mourning Dove		B	*	*			O	O	S	F		F		NP	NP															
MODO	297	W	*	*		S	S	S	S	F		F		P	P															
Yellow-billed Cuckoo		B	*	*				S	S				N	*	*															
YBCU	298	W																												
Black-billed Cuckoo		B	GS NV	MPIO				S	S				N	*	*															
BBCU	299	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Oak-Hickory

Species Code	Page	Season of use [a]	States [b]	Physiographic provinces [c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water [f]	Flowing water [f]
			geographic distribution			stage															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Barn Owl		B	*	*		O	M			F		F	P		P									N	N		N			
BAOW	300	W	*	*		O	M			F		F	P		P									P	P		P			
Common Screech Owl		B	*	*				M	O	F	F	F	F	*	*	N							N		N					
CSOW	300	W	*	*				M	O	F	F	F	F	*	*	P							P		P					
Great Horned Owl		B	*	*					S	F	F	F	F	F	*															
GHOW	301	W	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Barred Owl		B	*	*					M	F	F	F	F	F	*		N								N				F	F
BDOW	302	W	*	*					M	F	F	F	F	F	*		P								P				F	F
Short-eared Owl		B																												
SEOW	303	W	*	PSIOC		M				F		*																		
Chuck-will's-widow		B	*	PSIOCT				M	M		N																			
CWWI	304	W																												
Whip-poor-will		B	GS NV	MPSIO				S	S		N																			
WPWI	304	W																												
Chimney Swift		B	*	*					M														N		N					
CHSW	305	W																												
Ruby-throated Hummingbird		B	*	*			M	S	S				*	*	*															
RTHU	306	W																												
Belted Kingfisher		B	*	*				M	M				P	P		P					F					F		N	A	F
BEKI	306	W	*	*				M	M				P	P		P					F					F			A	F

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Oak-Hickory

Species Code	Page	distribution																			d.b.h.									
		Season of use [a]	States [b]	Physiographic [c] provinces	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water [f]	Flowing water [f]
Common Flicker		B	*	*				M	S	F		F			*	*			*				N		N					
COFL	307	W	*	*				M	S	F		F			*	*														
Pileated Woodpecker		B	*	*					O					F	*	*	*	*						*	N	F logs				
PIWO	307	W	*	*				M	O					F	*	*	*	*						*	P	F logs				
Red-bellied Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	O						*	*							N		N					
RBWO	308	W	*	*				M	O						*	*							P		P					
Red-headed Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	S			F				*			*				N							
RHWO	308	W	*	*				M	S			F	F	F	*	*														
Yellow-bellied Sapsucker		B	NV	M				M	M				F	F	*	*						N			N					
YBSA	309	W	*	*				S	O				F	F	*							*			*					
Hairy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	O					*	*	*						*			*					
HAWO	309	W	*	*				M	O					*	*	*														
Downy Woodpecker		B	*	*				S	O				*	*	*	*					*				*					
DOWO	310	W	*	*				S	O				*	*	*	*					*				*					
Eastern Kingbird		B	*	*		M						F			*	F			*		F									
EAKI	311	W																												
Great Crested Flycatcher		B	*	*				M	O					F	*	N						N			N					
GCFL	313	W																												
Eastern Phoebe		B	GS NV	MPSIO				M	M				*	*					*								N			
EAPH	313	W	*	*		S	O	S	M	F		F	*						*											

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Oak-Hickory

			distribution																		Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Acadian Flycatcher		B	*	*				M	S					*	*	F		*			F								F	F
ACFL	314	W																												
Willow Flycatcher		B	GN V	MP			M						*																F	F
WIFL	314	W																												
Least Flycatcher		B	GN V	M		S		M	M					*	*				*											
LEFL	315	W																												
Eastern Pewee		B	*	*				M	O					F	*	F					F									
EAPE	316	W																												
Horned Lark		B	GS NV	*		M				*		*																		
HOLA	317	W	GS NV	*		M				*		*																		
Bank Swallow		B	NV	MPI		M																						N	FB	F
BKSW	318	W																												
Barn Swallow		B	*	*		M																					N			
BASW	319	W																												
Cliff Swallow		B	GS NV	MP		M																					N			
CLSW	319	W																												
Purple Martin		B	*	*		M										N						N			N					
PUMA	320	W																												
Blue Jay		B	*	*				M	O	F	F	F	F	*	*															
BLJA	320	W	*	*			M	S	O	F	F	F	F	*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Oak-Hickory

			distribution																		d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Northern Raven		B	GS NV	M		M	M	M	M	F		F			P												N			
NORA	321	W	GS NV	M		M	M	M	M	F		F			P															
American Crow		B	*	*				M	S	F		F			*			N												
AMCR	322	W	*	*		S	M	M	M	F		F			*			P												
Black-capped Chickadee		B	NV	M				M	M				F	*	*	N					NP				NP					
BCCH	323	W	NV	MP			M	M	S				F	*	*	P					P				P					
Carolina Chickadee		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S				F	*	*	N					NP				NP					
CACH	323	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	S				F	*	*	P					P				P					
Tufted Titmouse		B	*	MPSIOC				S	O				F	*	*	N					N									
TUTI	324	W	*	MPSIOC			M	S	O				F	*	*															
White-breasted Nuthatch		B	GS NV	MPSIOC				M	O						*	*	*								N					
WBNU	324	W	*	MPSIOC				M	O						*	*														
Brown Creeper		B																												
BRCR	326	W	*	MPSIOC				S	S					*	*															
House Wren		B	GS NV	MPIO			M					F	*								N									
HOWR	326	W	*	PSIOCT		M	M					F	*													*				
Winter Wren		B																												
WIWR	327	W	*	*				S	S	*	*	F	F													*				
Bewick's Wren		B	GN V	MP			M					*	*								N				N	*	N			
BEWR	327	W	FG	PSIOC			M					*	*													*				

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Oak-Hickory

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Carolina Wren		B	*	*			S	O	O	*	*	*	*	*							N				N	*	N			
CAWR	328	W	*	*			S	O	O	*	*	*	*	*												*				
Northern Mockingbird		B	*	*		M	M					F	*						*											
NOMO	329	W	*	*		M	M					F	*						*											
Gray Catbird		B	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M				*	P																
GRCA	330	W																												
Brown Thrasher		B	*	*			O	M	M	F	F	F	*	P	P															
BRTH	330	W	*	*			O	M	M	*	*	*	*																	
American Robin		B	*	*			M	M	M	F		F	N	N	NP					*										
AMRO	331	W	*	*			M	M	M	F		F	*	*	*															
Wood Thrush		B	*	MPSIOC				S	O		F	F	*	P				*												
WOTH	331	W																												
Hermit Thrush		B																												
HETH	332	W	*	*				S	S		*	F	*					*												
Veery		B	GN V	M				M	M		*	*	P	P	P			*												
VEER	333	W																												
Eastern Bluebird		B	*	MPSIOC		M		M	M	F		F			*	NP			*		NP									
EABL	333	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F			*	P			*		P									
Blue-gray Gnatcatcher		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S				*	*	*															
BGGN	334	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Oak-Hickory

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
			distribution																		d.b.h.									
Golden-crowned Kinglet		B																												
GCKI	334	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M				F	F	*															
Ruby-crowned Kinglet		B																												
RCKI	335	W	*	*			S	S	S				*	*	*															
Cedar Waxwing		B	GS NV	MP				M	M				*	*	*				*											
CEWA	336	W	*	*			M	S	S				*	*	*				*											
European Starling		B	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F				N						N			N		N			
EUST	337	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F																		
White-eyed Vireo		B	*	*			M					F	*	P																
WEVI	337	W																												
Yellow-throated Vireo		B	*	*					S					F	*															
YTVI	338	W																												
Solitary Vireo		B	GS NV	MPS				M	M				N	*	*															
SOVI	338	W																												
Red-eyed Vireo		B	*	MPSIOC				S	O					*	*															
REVI	339	W																												
Warbling Vireo		B	NV	MP					M						*				*											
WAVI	340	W																												
Black-and-white Warbler		B	GS NV	MPSIO				M	O		N	N		F	F			*												
BAWW	340	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Virginia Pine-Pitch Pine

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	Snags minimum d.b.h. 10" (25 cm)	Snags minimum d.b.h. 14" (35 cm)	Snags minimum d.b.h. 18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Rock Dove		B	*	*		M				F		F															N			
RODO	296	W	*	*		M				F		F															P			
Mourning Dove		B	*	*			M	M	M	F		F		NP	NP															
MODO	297	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F		P	P															
Barn Owl		B	*	*		M	M			F		F	P		P									N	N		N			
BAOW	300	W	*	*		M	M			F		F	P		P									P	P		P			
Common Screech Owl		B	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	*	*	N							N		N					
CSOW	300	W	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	*	*	P							P		P					
Great Horned Owl		B	*	*					M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
GHOW	301	W	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Long-eared Owl		B	V	MP				M	M	F	F	F	F	*	*															
LEOW	302	W	GS NV	*			M	S	M	F	F	F	F	*	*															
Saw-whet Owl		B																												
SWOW	303	W	GS NV	MPSIOC			S	S	M	F	F	F	F	*	*	P						P			P					
Whip-poor-will		B	GS NV	MPSIO				S	S		N																			
WPWI	304	W																												
Common Flicker		B	*	*				M	M	F		F			*	*			*				N		N					
COFL	307	W	*	*				M	M	F		F			*	*														
Pileated Woodpecker		B																												
PIWO	307	W	*	*				M	M					F	*	*	*	*						*	P	F logs				

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Virginia Pine-Pitch Pine

Species Code	Page	Season of use [a]	States [b]	Physiographic provinces [c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water [f]	Flowing water [f]
Yellow-bellied Sapsucker		B																												
YBSA	309	W	*	*				M	M				F	F	*							*			*					
Hairy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	M					*	*	*						*			*					
HAWO	309	W	*	*				M	M					*	*	*														
Downy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	M				*	*	*	*					*				*					
DOWO	310	W	*	*				M	M				*	*	*	*					*				*					
Red-cockaded Woodpecker		B	*	PSIOC					M					F	F		N								*					
RCWO	310	W	*	PSIOC				M	M					F	F		P								*					
Great Crested Flycatcher		B	*	*				M	M					F	*	N						N			N					
GCFL	313	W																												
Eastern Phoebe		B																												
EAPH	313	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F	*						*											
Least Flycatcher		B	GN V	M		M		M	M					*	*				*											
LEFL	315	W																												
Eastern Pewee		B	*	*				M	M					F	*	F					F									
EAPE	316	W																												
Horned Lark		B	GS NV	*		M				*		*																		
HOLA	317	W	GS NV	*		M				*		*																		
Barn Swallow		B	*	*		M																					N			
BASW	319	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Virginia Pine-Pitch Pine

			distribution																		Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Cliff Swallow		B	GS NV	MP		M																					N			
CLSW	319	W																												
Purple Martin		B	*	*		M										N						N			N					
PUMA	320	W																												
Blue Jay		B	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	*	*															
BLJA	320	W	*	*			M	M	M	F	F	F	F	*	*															
Northern Raven		B	GS NV	M			M	M	M	F		F			P												N			
NORA	321	W	GS NV	M		M	M	M	M	F		F			P															
American Crow		B	*	*				M	S	F		F			*			N												
AMCR	322	W	*	*		S	M	M	S	F		F			*			P												
Black-capped Chickadee		B																												
BCCH	323	W	NV	MP			M	M	M				F	*	*	P					P				P					
Carolina Chickadee		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S				F	*	*	N					NP				NP					
CACH	323	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	S				F	*	*	P					P				P					
Tufted Titmouse		B																												
TUTI	324	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M				F	*	*															
Red-breasted Nuthatch		B	NV	M				M	M					*	*	N					N									
RBNU	325	W	*	MPSIOC			M	O	O					*	*															
Brown-headed Nuthatch		B	*	PSIOC				M	M					*	*	N					N				N					
BHNU	325	W	*	PSIOC				M	M					*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Virginia Pine-Pitch Pine

Species / Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
			distribution																		d.b.h.									
Brown Creeper		B																												
BRCR	326	W	*	MPSIOC				S	S					*	*															
Winter Wren		B																												
WIWR	327	W	*	*				M	M	*	*	F	F													*				
Carolina Wren		B	*	*			M	M	M	*	*	*	*	*							N				N	*	N			
CAWR	328	W	*	*			M	M	M	*	*	*	*	*												*				
Northern Mockingbird		B																												
NOMO	329	W	*	*		M	M					F	*						*											
Brown Thrasher		B	*	*			S	M	M	F	F	F	*	P	P															
BRTH	330	W	*	*			M	M	M	*	*	*	*																	
American Robin		B	*	*			M	M	M	F		F	N	N	NP					*										
AMRO	331	W																												
Hermit Thrush		B																												
HETH	332	W	*	*				M	M		*	F	*					*												
Golden-crowned Kinglet		B																												
GCKI	334	W	*	MPSIOC			M	O	O				F	F	*															
Ruby-crowned Kinglet		B																												
RCKI	335	W	*	*			S	S	S				*	*	*															
Solitary Vireo		B	GS NV	MPS				M	M				N	*	*															
SOVI	338	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Virginia Pine-Pitch Pine

Species Code	Page	distribution																			Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Yellow-rumped Warbler		B																												
YRWA	347	W	*	*			M	M	M	*		*	*	*	*															
Black-thr. Green Warbler		B	GS NV	MPOC				M	M					F	*			*												
BTGW	348	W																												
Yellow-throated Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M						*	F	*													
YTWA	349	W																												
Pine Warbler		B	*	*				M	M					F	*															
PIWA	350	W	*	*				M	M			F		F	*															
Palm Warbler		B																												
PAWA	351	W	*	PSIOCT		M	M	M		*		*	*																	
House Sparrow		B	*	*		M				F		F																		
HOSP	357	W	*	*		M				F		F																		
Eastern Meadowlark		B	*	*		S	M					*																		
EAME	358	W	*	*		S	M					*																		
Red-winged Blackbird		B	*	*		M						*	*	P	P															
RWBL	358	W	*	*		M						*	P	P	P															
Common Grackle		B	*	*				M	M	F		F	N	N	N															
COGR	362	W																												
Brown-headed Cowbird		B	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F				N			*		N									
BHCO	362	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Virginia Pine-Pitch Pine

Species Code	Page			distribution																	minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Northern Cardinal		B	*	*			M	M	M		*	*	*	F	F															
NOCA	364	W	*	*			M	M	M		*	*	*																	
Dickcissel		B	GS NV	MPI		M						*	P																	
DICK	366	W																												
Evening Grosbeak		B																												
EVGR	367	W	*	MPSIOC				S	S	F			*	*	*															
Purple Finch		B																												
PUFI	367	W	*	MPSIOC				M	S				*	*	*															
Pine Siskin		B																												
PISI	368	W	*	MPSIOC		M	S	S	O	F		*	*	*	*															
American Goldfinch		B																												
AMGO	369	W	*	*		S	M	M	M	*		*	*	*	*															
Red Crossbill		B	NV	M				M	M					F	*															
RECR	369	W	GS NV	MPSIOC				M	S					*	*															
White-winged Crossbill		B																												
WWCR	370	W	NV	MPI				M	M					*	*															
Rufous-sided Towhee		B	*	*			M	M	M		F	*	*	P	P															
RSTO	370	W	*	*			S	M	M		F	*	*																	
Savannah Sparrow		B																												
SASP	371	W	*	*		M						*																		

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Virginia Pine-Pitch Pine

Species Code	Page		distribution																		Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic[c] provinces	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Grasshopper Sparrow		B	*	MPSIOC		M						*																		
GRSP	371	W																												
Henslow's Sparrow		B	V	MPC		M						*																	FB	
HESP	372	W																												
Vesper Sparrow		B	NV	MPI		M				*		*	P																	
VESP	374	W																												
Bachman's Sparrow		B	*	PSIOC		M	M					*	*	P	P				*											
BASP	374	W																												
Northern Junco		B																												
NOJU	375	W	*	MPSIOC		M	S	S	S	F	F	*	*	*																
American Tree Sparrow		B																												
ATSP	375	W	NV	MPIOC		M						*	*																	
Field Sparrow		B	GS NV	*			S					*	*																	
FISP	376	W	*	*		S	S					*	*																	
White-crowned Sparrow		B																												
WCSP	377	W	*	*		M	M			F		*	*																	
White-throated Sparrow		B																												
WTSP	377	W	*	*		M	M	M	M		F	F	*	*	*															
Fox Sparrow		B																												
FOSP	378	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M		F		*	*																

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Virginia Pine-Pitch Pine

		distribution																			minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Song Sparrow		B																												
SOSP	379	W	*	*		M	M					*	*																	
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

These are forests in which hardwoods (usually oaks) and pines (usually stocking. The type corresponds to NFS types 11, eastern redcedar-hardwood; 12, shortleaf pine-oak; 13, loblolly pine-hardwood (in part, see below); 15, pitch pine-oak (in part, see below); 16, Virginia pine-oak (in part, see below); 20, Table Mountain pine-oak (in part, see below); 43, oak-eastern redcedar; 44, southern red oak-yellow pine; 45, chestnut oak-scarlet oak-yellow pine; 46, bottomland hardwood-yellow pine (in part, see below); 47, white oak-black oak-yellow pine; 48, northern red oak-hickory-yellow pine; and 49, bear oak-southern scrub oak-yellow pine (in which the oak is bear oak). Equivalent SAF types are 76, shortleaf pine-oak; 78, Virginia pine-oak (in part, see below); and 82, loblolly pine-hardwood (in part, see below).

Many stands classed as pine in management prescriptions have sufficient stocking of hardwoods to support bird communities typical of this mixed type. Our treatment of mixed pine-hardwood focuses on stands in which the pine is loblolly pine, shortleaf pine, or, to a lesser extent, Virginia pine. Thus, the treatment involves all mixed pine-hardwood stands in the Piedmont and lower Mountains, as well as mixed pine-hardwood stands on upland sites in the Coastal Plain. Mixed pine-hardwood stands in Coastal Plain bottomlands are better treated as bottomland hardwood stands with appropriate addition of species typical of loblolly pine stands. In mixed stands containing Virginia pine, the expected species pool is virtually the same as for mixed loblolly pine-hardwood or shortleaf pine-hardwood; however, stated suitability ratings for these mixed types may be uniformly too high for the poorer sites. Stands of hardwood and pitch pine or Table Mountain pine are best treated as combinations of Virginia pine-pitch pine and the appropriate hardwood type.

Eighty-three censuses made in this type in the Southeast were published in 1947-1979 (Table 8).

State	Season	Successional stage[a]			
		Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber
Georgia	Breeding	0	0	0	1(11)
	Winter	0	0	0	1(10)
North Carolina	Breeding	1(2)	3(5)	2(5)	1(23)
	Winter	0	0	0	1(23)
Virginia	Breeding	0	1(2)	0	1(2)

[a] Entries are listed as "Plots (Years censused)".

Characteristic of this vegetation type are Chuck-will's-widows (B), Whip-poor-wills (B), Great Crested Flycatchers (B), Eastern Pewees (B), Blue Jays, Carolina Chickadees, Tufted Titmice, Brown Creepers (W), Hermit Thrushes (W), Ruby-crowned Kinglets (W), Yellow-rumped Warblers (W), Summer Tanagers (B), Northern Cardinals, Northern Juncos (W), and Fox Sparrows (W).

No species are restricted to this type.

Evans (1978) treats bird-habitat associations in this type. Dickson et al. (1980) summarize four censuses from this type. Kerlinger and Doremus (1981) studied birds in mixed pitch pine-hardwood stands.

Mixed Pine-Hardwood

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
		distribution				stage																								
Turkey Vulture		B	*	*			M	O	O	F	F	F	F		*															
TUVU	275	W	*	*		M	M	S	S	F	F	F	F		*															
Black Vulture		B	*	*			M	O	O	F	F	F	F		*															
BLVU	276	W	*	*		M	M	S	S	F	F	F	F		*															
Swallow-tailed Kite		B	FG S	OT					M	F		F	F	F	NP		NP												F	F
STKI	277	W																												
Mississippi Kite		B	FG SN	SIO					M						NP														F	F
MIKI	277	W																												
Sharp-shinned Hawk		B	GS NV	MPSI				M	O	F	F	F	F	F	*			N												
SSHA	278	W	*	*				O	O	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Cooper's Hawk		B	*	MPSIOC				M	O	F	F	F	F	F	*			N												
COHA	279	W	*	*				O	O	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Red-tailed Hawk		B	*	*					O	F		F			*	P														
RTHA	279	W	*	*		S	M	S	O	F		F			*	P														
Broad-winged Hawk		B	*	MPSIO					S	F	F	F	F		*															
BWHA	280	W																												
Rough-legged Hawk		B																												
RLHA	282	W	NV	MPIOC		S				F		F																		
Golden Eagle		B																												
GOEA	282	W	SN V	MOC		M				F		F															P			

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Mixed Pine-Hardwood

Species			distribution																		Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Bald Eagle		B	*	IOCT					M						NP		NP							NP					A	F
BAEA	283	W	*	SIOCT				M	M						P		P							P					A	F
Northern Harrier		B																												
NOHA	283	W	*	*		S				F		*																		
American Kestrel		B	*	MPSIO		S				F		F			*	*					F		*		N					
AMKE	286	W	*	*		O	M			F		F			*	F					F									
Ruffed Grouse		B	GS NV	MP			M	S	M	F	*	*	F	P																
RUGR	286	W	GS NV	MP			M	S	S	F	*	*	F	P																
Common Bobwhite		B	*	*		S	O	M	M	F		*								F										
COBO	287	W	*	*		O	O	M	M	F		*								F										
Ring-necked Pheasant		B	NV	MPIOC		S				F		*																		
RNPH	287	W	NV	MPIOC		S				F		*																		
Wild Turkey		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S	F	*	*		P	P					F										
WITU	288	W	*	*			M	S	S	F	*	*		P	P					F										
American Woodcock		B	*	*				M	S	F	*	F																	F	
AMWO	294	W	*	*		M	M	M	S	F	*	F																	F	
Upland Sandpiper		B	V	MP		O						*																	FB	F
UPSA	295	W																												
Rock Dove		B	*	*		M				F		F															N			
RODO	296	W	*	*		M				F		F															P			

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Mixed Pine-Hardwood

Species Code	Page	Season of use [a]	distribution States [b]	Physiographic provinces [c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water [f]	Flowing water [f]
Mourning Dove		B	*	*		S	O	O	S	F		F		NP	NP															
MODO	297	W	*	*		S	S	S	S	F		F		P	P															
Common Ground Dove		B	FG SN	IOCT			M			F		*	N																	
CGDO	297	W	FG SN	IOCT		M	M			F		*	*																	
Yellow-billed Cuckoo		B	*	*				M	M				N	*	*															
YBCU	298	W																												
Black-billed Cuckoo		B	GS NV	MPIO				M	M				N	*	*															
BBCU	299	W																												
Barn Owl		B	*	*		O	M			F		F	P		P									N	N		N			
BAOW	300	W	*	*		O	M			F		F	P		P									P	P		P			
Common Screech Owl		B	*	*				M	O	F	F	F	F	*	*	N							N		N					
CSOW	300	W	*	*				M	O	F	F	F	F	*	*	P							P		P					
Great Horned Owl		B	*	*					O	F	F	F	F	F	*															
GHOW	301	W	*	*				M	O	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Long-eared Owl		B	V	MP				M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*															
LEOW	302	W	GS NV	*			M	M	M	F	F	F	F	*	*															
Short-eared Owl		B																												
SEOW	303	W	*	PSIOC		M				F		*																		
Saw-whet Owl		B																												
SWOW	303	W	GS NV	MPSIOC			M	M	M	F	F	F	F	*	*	P						P			P					

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Mixed Pine-Hardwood

Species / Code	Page	Season of use[a]	distribution			Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h.				Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
			States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area																6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)						
Chuck-will's-widow		B	*	PSIOCT				S	O		N																			
CWWI	304	W	F	OCT				S	S		P																			
Whip-poor-will		B	GS NV	MPSIO				S	O		N																			
WPWI	304	W	FG SN	OCT				S	O		P																			
Ruby-throated Hummingbird		B	*	*			M	M	M				*	*	*															
RTHU	306	W																												
Common Flicker		B	*	*				M	S	F		F			*	*			*				N		N					
COFL	307	W	*	*		M	M	M	S	F		F			*	*														
Pileated Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	S					F	*	*	*	*						*	N	F logs				
PIWO	307	W	*	*				M	S					F	*	*	*	*						*	P	F logs				
Red-bellied Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	S						*	*							N		N					
RBWO	308	W	*	*				M	S						*	*							P		P					
Red-headed Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	M			F				*			*				N							
RHWO	308	W	*	*				M	M			F	F	F	*	*														
Yellow-bellied Sapsucker		B																												
YBSA	309	W	*	*				S	O				F	F	*							*			*					
Hairy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	S					*	*	*						*			*					
HAWO	309	W	*	*				M	S					*	*	*														
Downy Woodpecker		B	*	*				S	O				*	*	*	*					*				*					
DOWO	310	W	*	*				S	O				*	*	*	*					*				*					

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Mixed Pine-Hardwood

Species Code	Page	distribution Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic[c] provinces	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Red-cockaded Woodpecker		B	*	PSIOC				M	M					F	F		N								*					
RCWO	310	W	*	PSIOC				M	M					F	F		P								*					
Eastern Kingbird		B	*	*		M						F			*	F		*	F											
EAKI	311	W																												
Great Crested Flycatcher		B	*	*				M	O					F	*	N						N			N					
GCFL	313	W																												
Eastern Phoebe		B																												
EAPH	313	W	*	*		S	S	S	M	F		F	*						*											
Acadian Flycatcher		B	*	*				M	M					*	*	F		*			F								F	F
ACFL	314	W																												
Eastern Pewee		B	*	*				M	O					F	*	F					F									
EAPE	316	W																												
Horned Lark		B	GS NV	*		M				*		*																		
HOLA	317	W	GS NV	*		M				*		*																		
Bank Swallow		B	NV	MPI		M																						N	FB	F
BKSW	318	W																												
Barn Swallow		B	*	*		M																					N			
BASW	319	W																												
Cliff Swallow		B	GS NV	MP		M																					N			
CLSW	319	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Mixed Pine-Hardwood

Species Code	Page	Seasonal and distribution				Successional stage															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use [a]	States [b]	Physiographic [c] provinces	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water [f]	Flowing water [f]
Purple Martin		B	*	*		M										N						N			N					
PUMA	320	W																												
Blue Jay		B	*	*				M	O	F	F	F	F	*	*															
BLJA	320	W	*	*			M	S	O	F	F	F	F	*	*															
Northern Raven		B	GS NV	M			M	M	M	F		F			P												N			
NORA	321	W	GS NV	M		M	M	M	M	F		F			P															
American Crow		B	*	*				S	O	F		F			*			N												
AMCR	322	W	*	*		S	M	S	O	F		F			*			P												
Fish Crow		B	*	*				M	S	F		F	*		*														A	F
FICR	322	W	*	*		S	M	M	S	F		F			*														A	F
Black-capped Chickadee		B	NV	M				M	M				F	*	*	N					NP				NP					
BCCH	323	W	NV	MP			M	M	M				F	*	*	P					P				P					
Carolina Chickadee		B	*	MPSIOC				S	O				F	*	*	N					NP				NP					
CACH	323	W	*	MPSIOC			M	S	O				F	*	*	P					P				P					
Tufted Titmouse		B	*	MPSIOC				S	O				F	*	*	N					N									
TUTI	324	W	*	MPSIOC			M	S	O				F	*	*															
White-breasted Nuthatch		B	GS NV	MPSIOC				M	M						*	*	*								N					
WBNU	324	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M						*	*														
Red-breasted Nuthatch		B																												
RBNU	325	W	*	MPSIOC			M	S	O					*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Mixed Pine-Hardwood

Species Code	Page	geographic distribution				stage															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Brown-headed Nuthatch		B	*	PSIOC				M	M					*	*	N					N				N					
BHNU	325	W	*	PSIOC				M	M					*	*															
Brown Creeper		B																												
BRCR	326	W	*	MPSIOC				S	O					*	*															
House Wren		B																												
HOWR	326	W	*	PSIOCT		M	M					F	*													*				
Winter Wren		B																												
WIWR	327	W	*	*				S	S	*	*	F	F													*				
Bewick's Wren		B																												
BEWR	327	W	FG	PSIOC			M					*	*													*				
Carolina Wren		B	*	*			S	O	O	*	*	*	*	*							N				N	*	N			
CAWR	328	W	*	*			S	O	O	*	*	*	*	*												*				
Northern Mockingbird		B	*	*		M	M					F	*						*											
NOMO	329	W	*	*		M	M					F	*						*											
Gray Catbird		B	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M				*	P																
GRCA	330	W	*	PSIOCT			M	M	M				*																	
Brown Thrasher		B	*	*			O	M	M	F	F	F	*	P	P															
BRTH	330	W	*	*			O	M	M	*	*	*	*																	
American Robin		B	*	*			M	M	M	F		F	N	N	NP					*										
AMRO	331	W	*	*			M	M	M	F		F	*	*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Mixed Pine-Hardwood			geographic				stage														minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Wood Thrush		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S		F	F	*	P				*												
WOTH	331	W																												
Hermit Thrush		B																												
HETH	332	W	*	*				O	O		*	F	*					*												
Eastern Bluebird		B	*	MPSIOC		M		M	M	F		F			*	NP			*		NP									
EABL	333	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F			*	P			*		P									
Blue-gray Gnatcatcher		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S				*	*	*															
BGGN	334	W	FG SN	SIOCT			M	O	O				*	*	*															
Golden-crowned Kinglet		B																												
GCKI	334	W	*	MPSIOC			M	O	O				F	F	*															
Ruby-crowned Kinglet		B																												
RCKI	335	W	*	*			S	O	O				*	*	*															
Cedar Waxwing		B																												
CEWA	336	W	*	*			M	M	M				*	*	*				*											
European Starling		B	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F				N						N			N		N			
EUST	337	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F																		
Yellow-throated Vireo		B	*	*					M					F	*															
YTVI	338	W																												
Solitary Vireo		B	GS NV	MPS				M	S				N	*	*															
SOVI	338	W	*	PSIOCT				S	O					*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Mixed Pine-Hardwood

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Red-eyed Vireo		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S					*	*															
REVI	339	W																												
Black-and-white Warbler		B	GS NV	MPSIO				M	M		N	N		F	F			*												
BAWW	340	W	FG SN	SIOCT				M	S					F	*															
Worm-eating Warbler		B	*	MPIO				M	M		*	F	*	P				*												
WEWA	342	W																												
Golden-winged Warbler		B	GN V	M			M	M				N	*	P	P															
GWWA	342	W																												
Blue-winged Warbler		B	GN V	MP			M					*	*		P															
BWWA	343	W																												
Orange-crowned Warbler		B																												
OCWA	344	W	*	PSIOCT		M	M	M	M			*	*	*																
Northern Parula Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S					*	*															
NPWA	345	W																												
Yellow-rumped Warbler		B																												
YRWA	347	W	*	*			S	O	O	*		*	*	*	*															
Black-thr. Green Warbler		B	GS NV	MPOC				M	S					F	*			*												
BTGW	348	W																												
Yellow-throated Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S						*	F	*													
YTWA	349	W	FG SN	IOCT				M	S						*	F	*													

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Mixed Pine-Hardwood

Species Code	Page	distribution Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Chestnut-sided Warbler		B	GS NV	M			S	M	M				*	*	P				*											
CSWA	350	W																												
Pine Warbler		B	*	*				M	S					F	*															
PIWA	350	W	*	*				M	S			F		F	*															
Prairie Warbler		B	*	*			O					F	*																	
PRWA	351	W	FG S	OCT			M	M	M			*	*																	
Palm Warbler		B																												
PAWA	351	W	*	PSIOCT		M	S	M		*		*	*																	
Ovenbird		B	GS NV	MPSIOC				S	O	*	*		P	P																
OVEN	352	W	FG S	OCT				M	S	*	*																			
Louisiana Waterthrush		B	*	MPSIO					M	*			P	P													*			F
LOWA	353	W																												
Kentucky Warbler		B	*	*					M	F	F	*	*	P																
KEWA	353	W																												
Common Yellowthroat		B	*	*		S	S					*	*																	
COYE	354	W	*	PSIOCT		M	M					*	*																	
Yellow-breasted Chat		B	*	*		M	S						*			P														
YBCH	355	W	*	OCT			M						*																	
Hooded Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S				*	FP																
HOWA	355	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Mixed Pine-Hardwood

		distribution																			minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code.	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
House Sparrow		B	*	*		M				F		F																		
HOSP	357	W	*	*		M				F		F																		
Bobolink		B	NV	M		M						*																		
BOBO	357	W																												
Eastern Meadowlark		B	*	*		O	M					*																		
EAME	358	W	*	*		O	M					*																		
Red-winged Blackbird		B	*	*		S						*	*	P	P															
RWBL	358	W	*	*		M						*	P	P	P															
Rusty Blackbird		B																												
RUBL	360	W	*	*				M	M	F		F	P	P	P															
Brewer's Blackbird		B																												
BRBL	361	W	FG	PIOC		M				F		F	P	P	P															
Common Grackle		B	*	*				S	S	F		F	N	N	N															
COGR	362	W	*	*				M	M	F		*	P	P	P															
Brown-headed Cowbird		B	*	*		M	S	S	S	F		F				N			*		N									
BHCO	362	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M	F		*	P	P	P															
Scarlet Tanager		B	GS NV	MPIOC					S					F	*			*												
SCTA	363	W																												
Summer Tanager		B	*	MPSIOC				M	O					F	*															
SUTA	363	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Mixed Pine-Hardwood Species Code	Page		geographic distribution				stage														minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Northern Cardinal		B	*	*			M	S	O		*	*	*	F	F															
NOCA	364	W	*	*			O	O	O		*	*	*																	
Blue Grosbeak		B	*	MPSIOC		M	S					*	*																	
BLGR	365	W																												
Indigo Bunting		B	*	MPSIOC		M	S	M	M			*	*	P	P				*											
INBU	365	W																												
Dickcissel		B	GS NV	MPI		M						*	P																	
DICK	366	W																												
Evening Grosbeak		B																												
EVGR	367	W	*	MPSIOC				M	O	F			*	*	*															
Purple Finch		B																												
PUFI	367	W	*	MPSIOC				S	O				*	*	*															
House Finch		B																												
HOFI	368	W	GS NV	MPSIOC		M	M			*		*	*																	
Pine Siskin		B																												
PISI	368	W	*	MPSIOC		M	S	S	O	F		*	*	*	*															
American Goldfinch		B	GS NV	MPSIO			M					*	*	P	P															
AMGO	369	W	*	*		O	S	M	M	*		*	*	*	*															
Red Crossbill		B																												
RECR	369	W	GS NV	MPSIOC				M	M					*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piédmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Mixed Pine-Hardwood

		distribution																				d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Rufous-sided Towhee		B	*	*			O	O	S		F	*	*	P	P															
RSTO	370	W	*	*			O	O	S		F	*	*																	
Savannah Sparrow		B	V	MP		S						*																		
SASP	371	W	*	*		S						*																		
Grasshopper Sparrow		B	*	MPSIOC		O						*																		
GRSP	371	W	FG SN	PSIOCT		O	M					*																		
Henslow's Sparrow		B	V	MPC		M						*																	FB	
HESP	372	W	FG SN	PSIOC		M						*																		
Le Conte's Sparrow		B																												
LCSP	372	W	FG S	PSIOC		O						*																		
Vesper Sparrow		B	NV	MPI		M				*		*	P																	
VESP	374	W	*	PSIOC		S				*		*																		
Bachman's Sparrow		B	*	PSIOC		M	S					*	*	P	P				*											
BASP	374	W	*	SIOC		M	M					*																		
Northern Junco		B																												
NOJU	375	W	*	MPSIOC		M	S	S	O	F	F	*	*	*																
American Tree Sparrow		B																												
ATSP	375	W	NV	MPIOC		O	M					*	*																	
Chipping Sparrow		B	*	MPSIOC		M	M	M	M	F		*	*	*	*				*											
CHSP	376	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		*	*	*	*				*											

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Mixed Pine-Hardwood

			geographic			stage															minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic[c] provinces	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Field Sparrow		B	GS NV	*		S	O					*	*																	
FISP	376	W	*	*		O	S					*	*																	
White-crowned Sparrow		B																												
WCSP	377	W	*	*		S	M			F		*	*																	
White-throated Sparrow		B																												
WTSP	377	W	*	*		M	M	S	S		F	F	*	*	*															
Fox Sparrow		B																												
FOSP	378	W	*	MPSIOC			M	S	O		F		*	*																
Swamp Sparrow		B																												
SWSP	379	W	*	*		M						*																	FB	
Song Sparrow		B	GS NV	MPIC			M					*	*																	
SOSP	379	W	*	*		S	M					*	*																	
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Oaks and hickories (*Carya* spp.), make up less than 25 percent of the stocking. Equivalent NFS types are 10, white pine-upland hardwoods (in part); 42, upland hardwoods-white pine (in part); 51, post oak-blackjack oak; 52, chestnut oak; 53, white oak-red oak-hickory; 54, white oak; 55, northern red oak; and 59, scarlet oak. The type corresponds to SAF types 20, white pine-northern red oak-red maple (in part); 40, post oak-blackjack oak; 43, bear oak; 44, Chestnut oak; 50, black locust; 51, white pine-chestnut oak (in part); 52, white oak-black oak-northern red oak; 53, white oak; 55, northern red oak (in uplands); 64, sassafras-persimmon; and 110, black oak. RRE types 50, oak-hickory; and 52, chestnut oak are included in the type. Oak-hickory forests occur across a wide range of geographical and physiographical conditions. Bird communities of this type also vary across the Southeast. Users of the matrix must consider this fact when estimating the bird community on a specific site.

Ninety-two censuses made in oak-hickory plots in the Southeast were published in 1947-1979 (Table 9).

Characteristic of this vegetation type are Red-bellied Woodpeckers, Hairy Woodpeckers, Downy Woodpeckers, Blue Jays, Tufted Titmice, White-breasted Nuthatches, Carolina Wrens, Wood Thrushes (B), Red-eyed Vireos (B), Ovenbirds (B), Scarlet Tanagers (B).

No species are *restricted* to the type.

Evans (1978) and Probst (1979) treat bird-habitat associations in this type. Dickson et al. (1980) summarize 27 censuses from this type.

Table 9. Published Breeding Bird Censuses and Winter Bird Population Studies from oak-hickory plots in the Southeast in 1947-1979.

State	Season	Successional stage[a]			
		Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber
Georgia	Breeding	0	1(2)	0	2(2)
North Carolina	Breeding	1(4)	0	3(9)	4(12)
	Winter	1(5)	0	0	3(5)
Virginia	Breeding	0	0	3(3)	7(22)
	Winter	4(8)	1(4)	1(1)	3(15)

[a] Entries are listed as "Plots (Years censused)".

Oak-Hickory

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
			geographic distribution			stage															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Turkey Vulture		B	*	*			M	O	O	F	F	F	F		*															
TUVU	275	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F	F	F	F		*															
Black Vulture		B	*	*			M	S	S	F	F	F	F		*															
BLVU	276	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F	F	F	F		*															
Sharp-shinned Hawk		B	GS NV	MPSI				M	O	F	F	F	F	F	*			N												
SSHA	278	W	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Cooper's Hawk		B	*	MPSIOC				M	O	F	F	F	F	F	*			N												
COHA	279	W	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Red-tailed Hawk		B	*	*					O	F		F			*	P														
RTHA	279	W	*	*		S	M	S	O	F		F			*	P														
Broad-winged Hawk		B	*	MPSIO					O	F	F	F	F		*															
BWHA	280	W	F	CT				M	M	F	F	F	F		*															
Rough-legged Hawk		B																												
RLHA	282	W	NV	MPIOC		O				F		F																		
Golden Eagle		B																												
GOEA	282	W	SN V	MOC		M				F		F															P			
Northern Harrier		B																												
NOHA	283	W	*	*		S				F		*																		
American Kestrel		B	*	MPSIO		S				F		F			*	*					F		*		N					
AMKE	286	W	*	*		O	M			F		F			*	F					F									

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Oak-Hickory

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
			distribution																		d.b.h.									
Ruffed Grouse		B	GS NV	MP			M	M	S	F	*	*	F	P																
RUGR	286	W	GS NV	MP			M	M	M	F	*	*	F	P																
Common Bobwhite		B	*	*		M	O			F		*								F										
COBO	287	W	*	*		M	O			F		*								F										
Ring-necked Pheasant		B	NV	MPIOC		S				F		*																		
RNPH	287	W	NV	MPIOC		S				F		*																		
Wild Turkey		B	*	MPSIOC			M	M	S	F	*	*		P	P					F										
WITU	288	W	*	*			M	M	S	F	*	*		P	P					F										
American Woodcock		B	*	*				M	S	F	*	F																	F	
AMWO	294	W	*	*				M	S	F	*	F																	F	
Upland Sandpiper		B	V	MP		O						*																	FB	F
UPSA	295	W																												
Rock Dove		B	*	*		M				F		F															N			
RODO	296	W	*	*		M				F		F															P			
Mourning Dove		B	*	*			O	O	S	F		F		NP	NP															
MODO	297	W	*	*		S	S	S	S	F		F		P	P															
Yellow-billed Cuckoo		B	*	*				S	S				N	*	*															
YBCU	298	W																												
Black-billed Cuckoo		B	GS NV	MPIO				S	S				N	*	*															
BBCU	299	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Oak-Hickory

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seeding	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
			geographic			stage															minimum d.b.h.									
Barn Owl		B	*	*		O	M			F		F	P		P									N	N		N			
BAOW	300	W	*	*		O	M			F		F	P		P									P	P		P			
Common Screech Owl		B	*	*				M	O	F	F	F	F	*	*	N							N		N					
CSOW	300	W	*	*				M	O	F	F	F	F	*	*	P							P		P					
Great Horned Owl		B	*	*					S	F	F	F	F	F	*															
GHOW	301	W	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Barred Owl		B	*	*					M	F	F	F	F	F	*		N								N				F	F
BDOW	302	W	*	*					M	F	F	F	F	F	*		P								P				F	F
Short-eared Owl		B																												
SEOW	303	W	*	PSIOC		M				F		*																		
Chuck-will's-widow		B	*	PSIOCT				M	M		N																			
CWWI	304	W																												
Whip-poor-will		B	GS NV	MPSIO				S	S		N																			
WPWI	304	W																												
Chimney Swift		B	*	*					M														N		N					
CHSW	305	W																												
Ruby-throated Hummingbird		B	*	*			M	S	S				*	*	*															
RTHU	306	W																												
Belted Kingfisher		B	*	*				M	M				P	P		P					F					F		N	A	F
BEKI	306	W	*	*				M	M				P	P		P					F					F			A	F

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Oak-Hickory

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	distribution States[b]	Physiographic[c] provinces	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Common Flicker		B	*	*				M	S	F		F			*	*			*				N		N					
COFL	307	W	*	*				M	S	F		F			*	*														
Pileated Woodpecker		B	*	*					O					F	*	*	*	*						*	N	F logs				
PIWO	307	W	*	*				M	O					F	*	*	*	*						*	P	F logs				
Red-bellied Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	O						*	*							N		N					
RBWO	308	W	*	*				M	O						*	*							P		P					
Red-headed Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	S			F				*			*				N							
RHWO	308	W	*	*				M	S			F	F	F	*	*														
Yellow-bellied Sapsucker		B	NV	M				M	M				F	F	*	*						N			N					
YBSA	309	W	*	*				S	O				F	F	*							*			*					
Hairy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	O					*	*	*						*			*					
HAWO	309	W	*	*				M	O					*	*	*														
Downy Woodpecker		B	*	*				S	O				*	*	*	*					*				*					
DOWO	310	W	*	*				S	O				*	*	*	*					*				*					
Eastern Kingbird		B	*	*		M						F			*	F			*		F									
EAKI	311	W																												
Great Crested Flycatcher		B	*	*				M	O					F	*	N						N			N					
GCFL	313	W																												
Eastern Phoebe		B	GS NV	MPSIO				M	M				*	*					*								N			
EAPH	313	W	*	*		S	O	S	M	F		F	*						*											

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Oak-Hickory

		geographic distribution				stage															minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Acadian Flycatcher		B	*	*				M	S					*	*	F		*			F								F	F
ACFL	314	W																												
Willow Flycatcher		B	GN V	MP			M						*																F	F
WIFL	314	W																												
Least Flycatcher		B	GN V	M		S		M	M					*	*				*											
LEFL	315	W																												
Eastern Pewee		B	*	*				M	O					F	*	F					F									
EAPE	316	W																												
Horned Lark		B	GS NV	*		M				*		*																		
HOLA	317	W	GS NV	*		M				*		*																		
Bank Swallow		B	NV	MPI		M																						N	FB	F
BKSW	318	W																												
Barn Swallow		B	*	*		M																					N			
BASW	319	W																												
Cliff Swallow		B	GS NV	MP		M																					N			
CLSW	319	W																												
Purple Martin		B	*	*		M										N						N			N					
PUMA	320	W																												
Blue Jay		B	*	*				M	O	F	F	F	F	*	*															
BLJA	320	W	*	*			M	S	O	F	F	F	F	*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Oak-Hickory

Species Code	Page	distribution Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Northern Raven		B	GS NV	M		M	M	M	M	F		F			P												N			
NORA	321	W	GS NV	M		M	M	M	M	F		F			P															
American Crow		B	*	*				M	S	F		F			*			N												
AMCR	322	W	*	*		S	M	M	M	F		F			*			P												
Black-capped Chickadee		B	NV	M				M	M				F	*	*	N					NP				NP					
BCCH	323	W	NV	MP			M	M	S				F	*	*	P					P				P					
Carolina Chickadee		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S				F	*	*	N					NP				NP					
CACH	323	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	S				F	*	*	P					P				P					
Tufted Titmouse		B	*	MPSIOC				S	O				F	*	*	N					N									
TUTI	324	W	*	MPSIOC			M	S	O				F	*	*															
White-breasted Nuthatch		B	GS NV	MPSIOC				M	O						*	*	*								N					
WBNU	324	W	*	MPSIOC				M	O						*	*														
Brown Creeper		B																												
BRCR	326	W	*	MPSIOC				S	S					*	*															
House Wren		B	GS NV	MPIO			M					F	*								N									
HOWR	326	W	*	PSIOCT		M	M					F	*													*				
Winter Wren		B																												
WIWR	327	W	*	*				S	S	*	*	F	F													*				
Bewick's Wren		B	GN V	MP			M					*	*								N				N	*	N			
BEWR	327	W	FG	PSIOC			M					*	*													*				

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Oak-Hickory

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	minimum d.b.h. 10" (25 cm)	minimum d.b.h. 14" (35 cm)	minimum d.b.h. 18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Carolina Wren		B	*	*			S	O	O	*	*	*	*	*							N				N	*	N			
CAWR	328	W	*	*			S	O	O	*	*	*	*	*												*				
Northern Mockingbird		B	*	*		M	M					F	*						*											
NOMO	329	W	*	*		M	M					F	*						*											
Gray Catbird		B	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M				*	P																
GRCA	330	W																												
Brown Thrasher		B	*	*			O	M	M	F	F	F	*	P	P															
BRTH	330	W	*	*			O	M	M	*	*	*	*																	
American Robin		B	*	*			M	M	M	F		F	N	N	NP					*										
AMRO	331	W	*	*			M	M	M	F		F	*	*	*															
Wood Thrush		B	*	MPSIOC				S	O		F	F	*	P				*												
WOTH	331	W																												
Hermit Thrush		B																												
HETH	332	W	*	*				S	S		*	F	*					*												
Veery		B	GN V	M				M	M		*	*	P	P	P			*												
VEER	333	W																												
Eastern Bluebird		B	*	MPSIOC		M		M	M	F		F			*	NP			*		NP									
EABL	333	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F			*	P			*		P									
Blue-gray Gnatcatcher		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S				*	*	*															
BGGN	334	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Species Code Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	d.b.h. 10" (25 cm)	d.b.h. 14" (35 cm)	d.b.h. 18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Golden-crowned Kinglet	B																												
GCKI 334	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M				F	F	*															
Ruby-crowned Kinglet	B																												
RCKI 335	W	*	*			S	S	S				*	*	*															
Cedar Waxwing	B	GS NV	MP				M	M				*	*	*				*											
CEWA 336	W	*	*			M	S	S				*	*	*				*											
European Starling	B	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F				N						N			N		N			
EUST 337	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F																		
White-eyed Vireo	B	*	*			M					F	*	P																
WEVI 337	W																												
Yellow-throated Vireo	B	*	*					S					F	*															
YTVI 338	W																												
Solitary Vireo	B	GS NV	MPS				M	M				N	*	*															
SOVI 338	W																												
Red-eyed Vireo	B	*	MPSIOC				S	O					*	*															
REVI 339	W																												
Warbling Vireo	B	NV	MP					M						*				*											
WAVI 340	W																												
Black-and-white Warbler	B	GS NV	MPSIO				M	O		N	N		F	F			*												
BAWW 340	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Oak-Hickory		distribution																			Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Code Species	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Worm-eating Warbler		B	*	MPIO				M	S		*	F	*	P				*												
WEWA	342	W																												
Golden-winged Warbler		B	GN V	M			S	M				N	*	P	P															
GWWA	342	W																												
Blue-winged Warbler		B	GN V	MP			O					*	*		P															
BWWA	343	W																												
Northern Parula Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC					M					*	*															
NPWA	345	W																												
Yellow Warbler		B	*	*			M	M					*																	
YEWA	345	W																												
Black-thr. Blue Warbler		B	GS NV	M				M	M				*	*	F	P		*												
BTBW	347	W																												
Yellow-rumped Warbler		B																												
YRWA	347	W	*	*			M	M	M	*		*	*	*	*															
Black-thr. Green Warbler		B	GS NV	MPOC				M	M					F	*			*												
BTGW	348	W																												
Cerulean Warbler		B	NV	MPI					S						*		*	*												
CRWA	348	W																												
Blackburnian Warbler		B	GS NV	M					M					F	*		*	*												
BLWA	349	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Oak-Hickory

			distribution																		minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use [a]	States [b]	Physiographic provinces [c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water [f]	Flowing water [f]
Yellow-throated Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M						*	F	*													
YTWA	349	W																												
Chestnut-sided Warbler		B	GS NV	M			O	M	M				*	*	P				*											
CSWA	350	W																												
Prairie Warbler		B	*	*			O					F	*																	
PRWA	351	W																												
Palm Warbler		B																												
PAWA	351	W	*	PSIOCT		M	M	M		*		*	*																	
Ovenbird		B	GS NV	MPSIOC				S	O	*	*		P	P																
OVEN	352	W	FG S	OCT				M	M	*	*																			
Louisiana Waterthrush		B	*	MPSIO					S	*			P	P													*			F
LOWA	353	W																												
Kentucky Warbler		B	*	*					S	F	F	*	*	P																
KEWA	353	W																												
Common Yellowthroat		B	*	*		S	S					*	*																	
COYE	354	W	*	PSIOCT		M	M					*	*																	
Yellow-breasted Chat		B	*	*		M	O						*			P														
YBCH	355	W	*	OCT			M						*																	
Hooded Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				M	O				*	FP																
HOWA	355	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Oak-Hickory

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Redstart		B	*	MPSIO				M	S				*	*	FP															
AMRE	356	W																												
House Sparrow		B	*	*		M				F		F																		
HOSP	357	W	*	*		M				F		F																		
Bobolink		B	NV	M		S						*																		
BOBO	357	W																												
Eastern Meadowlark		B	*	*		O	M					*																		
EAME	358	W	*	*		O	M					*																		
Red-winged Blackbird		B	*	*		S						*	*	P	P															
RWBL	358	W	*	*		M						*	P	P	P															
Orchard Oriole		B	*	MPSIOC		M		M	M				*	*	*				*											
OROR	359	W																												
Northern Oriole		B	GS NV	MP		M		M	M					F	*				*											
NOOR	360	W	*	PSIOCT				M	M				*	F	*				*											
Rusty Blackbird		B																												
RUBL	360	W	*	*				M	M	F		F	P	P	P															
Brewer's Blackbird		B																												
BRBL	361	W	FG	PIOC		M				F		F	P	P	P															
Common Grackle		B																												
COGR	362	W	*	*				M	M	F		*	P	P	P															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Oak-Hickory

Species / Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Brown-headed Cowbird		B	*	*		M	O	O	O	F		F				N			*		N									
BHCO	362	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M	F		*	P	P	P															
Scarlet Tanager		B	GS NV	MPIOC					O					F	*			*												
SCTA	363	W																												
Summer Tanager		B	*	MPSIOC				M	O					F	*															
SUTA	363	W																												
Northern Cardinal		B	*	*			S	S	S		*	*	*	F	F															
NOCA	364	W	*	*			M	M	M		*	*	*																	
Rose-breasted Grosbeak		B	GS NV	M				M	S				N	*	*															
RBGR	364	W																												
Blue Grosbeak		B	*	MPSIOC		M	O					*	*																	
BLGR	365	W																												
Indigo Bunting		B	*	MPSIOC		M	S	M	M			*	*	P	P				*											
INBU	365	W																												
Dickcissel		B	GS NV	MPI		O						*	P																	
DICK	366	W	*	OCT		M	S					*	*																	
Evening Grosbeak		B																												
EVGR	367	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M	F			*	*	*															
Purple Finch		B																												
PUFI	367	W	*	MPSIOC				M	S				*	*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Oak-Hickory

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
House Finch		B																												
HOFI	368	W	GS NV	MPSIOC		M	S	M	M	*		*	*																	
Pine Siskin		B																												
PISI	368	W	*	MPSIOC		M	M	M	M	F		*	*	*	*															
American Goldfinch		B	GS NV	MPSIO			S					*	*	P	P															
AMGO	369	W	*	*		O	O	S	S	*		*	*	*	*															
Rufous-sided Towhee		B	*	*			O	O	S		F	*	*	P	P															
RSTO	370	W	*	*			O	M	M		F	*	*																	
Savannah Sparrow		B	V	MP		O						*																		
SASP	371	W	*	*		S						*																		
Grasshopper Sparrow		B	*	MPSIOC		O						*																		
GRSP	371	W	FG SN	PSIOCT		O						*																		
Henslow's Sparrow		B	V	MPC		S						*																	FB	
HESP	372	W	FG SN	PSIOC		M						*																		
Le Conte's Sparrow		B																												
LCSP	372	W	FG S	PSIOC		S						*																		
Vesper Sparrow		B	NV	MPI		M				*		*	P																	
VESP	374	W	*	PSIOC		S				*		*																		
Bachman's Sparrow		B	*	PSIOC		M	M					*	*	P	P				*											
BASP	374	W	*	SIOC		M						*																		

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Oak-Hickory

Species Code	Page	distribution																				minimum d.b.h.								
		Season of use [a]	States [b]	Physiographic provinces [c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water [f]	Flowing water [f]
Northern Junco		B	GN V	M				M	M	N	F	*	*	P	P															
NOJU	375	W	*	MPSIOC		M	M	M	M	F	F	*	*	*																
American Tree Sparrow		B																												
ATSP	375	W	NV	MPIOC		O	M					*	*																	
Chipping Sparrow		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M	F		*	*	*	*				*											
CHSP	376	W	*	*		M				F		*	*	*	*				*											
Field Sparrow		B	GS NV	*			O					*	*																	
FISP	376	W	*	*		O	S					*	*																	
White-crowned Sparrow		B																												
WCSP	377	W	*	*		S	S			F		*	*																	
White-throated Sparrow		B																												
WTSP	377	W	*	*		M	M	S	S		F	F	*	*	*															
Fox Sparrow		B																												
FOSP	378	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M		F		*	*																
Song Sparrow		B	GS NV	MPIC			M					*	*																	
SOSP	379	W	*	*		S	M					*	*																	
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

combination, compose a plurality of the stocking. Equivalent NFS types are 3, white pine; 4, white pine-hemlock; 5, hemlock; 8, hemlock-hardwood (in part); 9, white pine-cove hardwoods (in part); 10, white pine-upland hardwoods (in part); 41, cove hardwoods-white pine-hemlock (in part); and 42, upland hardwoods-white pine (in part). The type corresponds to SAF types 20, white pine-northern red oak-red maple (in part); 21, eastern white pine; 22, white pine-hemlock; 23, eastern hemlock; 24, hemlock-yellow birch (in part); and 51, white pine-chestnut oak (in part). Equivalent RRE type is 4, white pine-hemlock.

Three BBC have been published from sawtimber stands in this type; a North Carolina plot was studied in two years and a Virginia plot was censused in one year.

Characteristic of this vegetation type are Solitary Vireos (B), Northern Parula Warblers (B), Black-throated Green Warblers (B), Blackburnian Warblers (B), Canada Warblers (B), and Northern Juncos.

No species are restricted to the type.

Capen (1979) presents information on bird-habitat associations in this type. Dickson et al. (1980) summarize nine censuses from this type.

White Pine-Hemlock

		distribution																				d.b.h.								
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Sharp-shinned Hawk		B	GS NV	MPSI				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*			N												
SSHA	278	W	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Cooper's Hawk		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*			N												
COHA	279	W	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Red-tailed Hawk		B																												
RTHA	279	W	*	*				M	M	F		F			*	P														
Ruffed Grouse		B	GS NV	MP			M	M	M	F	*	*	F	P																
RUGR	286	W	GS NV	MP			M	O	O	F	*	*	F	P																
Wild Turkey		B																												
WITU	288	W	*	*				M	M	F	*	*		P	P					F										
Common Screech Owl		B	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	*	*	N							N		N					
CSOW	300	W	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	*	*	P							P		P					
Great Horned Owl		B	*	*					S	F	F	F	F	F	*															
GHOW	301	W	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Barred Owl		B	*	*					M	F	F	F	F	F	*		N								N				F	F
BDOW	302	W	*	*					M	F	F	F	F	F	*		P								P				F	F
Long-eared Owl		B	V	MP				M	O	F	F	F	F	*	*															
LEOW	302	W	GS NV	*			S	O	O	F	F	F	F	*	*															
Saw-whet Owl		B																												
SWOW	303	W	GS NV	MPSIOC			M	M	M	F	F	F	F	*	*	P						P			P					

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

White Pine-Hemlock

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
			distribution																		Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Chimney Swift		B	*	*					M														N		N					
CHSW	305	W																												
Belted Kingfisher		B	*	*				M	M				P	P		P					F					F		N	A	F
BEKI	306	W	*	*				M	M				P	P		P					F					F			A	F
Common Flicker		B	*	*				M	M	F		F			*	*			*				N		N					
COFL	307	W	*	*				M	M	F		F			*	*														
Pileated Woodpecker		B	*	*					M					F	*	*	*	*						*	N	F logs				
PIWO	307	W	*	*					M					F	*	*	*	*						*	P	F logs				
Yellow-bellied Sapsucker		B																												
YBSA	309	W	*	*				M	M				F	F	*							*			*					
Hairy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	S					*	*	*						*			*					
HAWO	309	W	*	*				M	S					*	*	*														
Downy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	M				*	*	*	*					*				*					
DOWO	310	W	*	*				M	M				*	*	*	*					*				*					
Eastern Phoebe		B	GS NV	MPSIO				M	M				*	*					*								N			
EAPH	313	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F	*						*											
Acadian Flycatcher		B	*	*				M	S					*	*	F		*			F								F	F
ACFL	314	W																												
Least Flycatcher		B	GN V	M		M		M	M					*	*				*											
LEFL	315	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

White Pine-Hemlock

Species Code	Page	distribution																				minimum d.b.h.								
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Olive-sided Flycatcher		B	NV	M				M	M						*	F						F								
OSFL	316	W																												
Horned Lark		B	GS NV	*		M				*		*																		
HOLA	317	W	GS NV	*		M				*		*																		
Barn Swallow		B	*	*		M																					N			
BASW	319	W																												
Purple Martin		B	*	*		M										N						N			N					
PUMA	320	W																												
Northern Raven		B	GS NV	M		M	M	M	M	F		F			P												N			
NORA	321	W	GS NV	M		M	M	M	M	F		F			P															
American Crow		B	*	*				M	M	F		F			*			N												
AMCR	322	W	*	*		S	M	M	M	F		F			*			P												
Black-capped Chickadee		B	NV	M				M	M				F	*	*	N					NP				NP					
BCCH	323	W	NV	MP			M	M	S				F	*	*	P					P				P					
Carolina Chickadee		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S				F	*	*	N					NP				NP					
CACH	323	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	S				F	*	*	P					P				P					
White-breasted Nuthatch		B	GS NV	MPSIOC				M	M						*	*	*								N					
WBNU	324	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M						*	*														
Red-breasted Nuthatch		B	NV	M				M	S					*	*	N					N									
RBNU	325	W	*	MPSIOC			M	S	S					*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

White Pine-Hemlock

Species / Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	minimum d.b.h. 10" (25 cm)	minimum d.b.h. 14" (35 cm)	minimum d.b.h. 18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Brown Creeper		B	NV	M				M	S					*	*							N			N					
BRCR	326	W	*	MPSIOC				S	S					*	*															
Winter Wren		B	NV	M				M	S	*	*	F	F	P	P			*								*				
WIWR	327	W	*	*				S	S	*	*	F	F													*				
Carolina Wren		B	*	*		M	M	M	M	*	*	*	*	*							N				N	*	N			
CAWR	328	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	*	*	*	*	*												*				
Gray Catbird		B	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M				*	P																
GRCA	330	W																												
Brown Thrasher		B	*	*			M			F	F	F	*	P	P															
BRTH	330	W																												
American Robin		B	*	*			M	M	M	F		F	N	N	NP					*										
AMRO	331	W																												
Wood Thrush		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S		F	F	*	P				*												
WOTH	331	W																												
Hermit Thrush		B																												
HETH	332	W	*	*				M	M		*	F	*					*												
Veery		B	GN V	M				M	S		*	*	P	P	P			*												
VEER	333	W																												
Golden-crowned Kinglet		B	NV	M				M	S					F	*			*												
GCKI	334	W	*	MPSIOC			M	S	S				F	F	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

White Pine-Hemlock

Species Code	Page	distribution																			minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Ruby-crowned Kinglet		B																												
RCKI	335	W	*	*			M	M	M				*	*	*															
Cedar Waxwing		B	GS NV	MP				S	O				*	*	*				*											
CEWA	336	W																												
Solitary Vireo		B	GS NV	MPS				S	O				N	*	*															
SOVI	338	W																												
Swainson's Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S	F	F	F	*	P																
SWWA	341	W																												
Worm-eating Warbler		B	*	MPIO				M	M		*	F	*	P				*												
WEWA	342	W																												
Northern Parula Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC					O					*	*															
NPWA	345	W																												
Magnolia Warbler		B	NV	M			M	M	M				*	*	*															
MAWA	346	W																												
Black-thr. Blue Warbler		B	GS NV	M				S	S				*	*	F	P		*												
BTBW	347	W																												
Yellow-rumped Warbler		B																												
YRWA	347	W	*	*			M	M	M	*		*	*	*	*															
Black-thr. Green Warbler		B	GS NV	MPOC				M	O					F	*			*												
BTGW	348	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

White Pine-Hemlock

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	distribution States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Blackburnian Warbler		B	GS NV	M					O					F	*		*	*												
BLWA	349	W																												
Yellow-throated Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M						*	F	*													
YTWA	349	W																												
Chestnut-sided Warbler		B	GS NV	M			M	M	M				*	*	P				*											
CSWA	350	W																												
Northern Waterthrush		B	V	M			M	M		*			P	P															F	
NOWA	352	W																												
Louisiana Waterthrush		B	*	MPSIO					M	*			P	P													*			F
LOWA	353	W																												
Canada Warbler		B	GS NV	M				S	O	N	N	N	*																	
CAWA	356	W																												
Common Grackle		B	*	*				M	M	F		F	N	N	N															
COGR	362	W																												
Rose-breasted Grosbeak		B	GS NV	M				M	M				N	*	*															
RBGR	364	W																												
Evening Grosbeak		B																												
EVGR	367	W	*	MPSIOC				S	S	F			*	*	*															
Purple Finch		B																												
PUFI	367	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M				*	*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

White Pine-Hemlock

			geographic distribution																		minimum d.b.h.									
Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Pine Siskin		B																												
PISI	368	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	S	F		*	*	*	*															
Red Crossbill		B	NV	M				M	S					F	*															
RECR	369	W	GS NV	MPSIOC				M	S					*	*															
White-winged Crossbill		B																												
WWCR	370	W	NV	MPI				M	M					*	*															
Northern Junco		B	GN V	M			M	S	S	N	F	*	*	P	P															
NOJU	375	W	*	MPSIOC		M	M	S	S	F	F	*	*	*																
Fox Sparrow		B																												
FOSP	378	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M		F		*	*																
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

plurality of the stocking and which occur on moist, fertile, protected sites in deep hollows extending back into mountain ranges. Characteristic tree species are yellow-poplar (*Liriodendron tulipifera*), basswood (*Tilia heterophylla*), sugar maple (*Acer saccharum*), buckeye (*Aesculus octandra*), and white oak (*Quercus alba*). Equivalent NFS types are 8, hemlock-hardwood (in part); 9, white pine-cove hardwoods (in part); 41, cove hardwoods-white pine-hemlock (in part); 50, yellow-poplar (in the Mountains); and 56, yellow-poplar-white oak-northern red oak. The type corresponds to SAF types 26, sugar maple-basswood (in part); 28, black cherry-maple (in part); 55, northern red oak (in part); 57, yellow-poplar (in the Mountains); 58, yellow-poplar-eastern hemlock; 59, yellow-poplar-white oak-northern red oak; and 108, red maple (in the Mountains). No precise RRE equivalent exists; oak-hickory (RRE type 50) or maple-beech-birch (RRE type 80) stands growing in mountain coves (RRE Physiographic Class 27) or on mountain saddles and moist slopes (RRE Physiographic Class 24) approximate our cove hardwoods designation.

Eleven BBC were done in sawtimber cove hardwoods stands in the Southeast in 1947-1979; 10 were made on a single plot in Georgia, and the remaining one was conducted on a North Carolina plot.

Characteristic of this vegetation type are Pileated Woodpeckers, White-breasted Nuthatches, Solitary Vireos (B), Red-eyed Vireos (B), Black-and-white Warblers (B), Black-throated Blue Warblers (B), Canada Warblers (B), Scarlet Tanagers (B), and Northern Juncos.

Cerulean Warblers are *restricted* to the type in the breeding season in the Mountains.

Hooper (1978) and Samson (1979) discuss bird-habitat associations in cove hardwood forests.

Cove Hardwoods

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	geographic distribution States[b]	Physiographic[c] provinces	Local area	stage Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Turkey Vulture		B	*	*			M	M	M	F	F	F	F		*															
TUVU	275	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F	F	F	F		*															
Sharp-shinned Hawk		B	GS NV	MPSI				M	S	F	F	F	F	F	*			N												
SSHA	278	W	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Cooper's Hawk		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S	F	F	F	F	F	*			N												
COHA	279	W	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Red-tailed Hawk		B	*	*					M	F		F			*	P														
RTHA	279	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F			*	P														
Broad-winged Hawk		B	*	MPSIO					S	F	F	F	F		*															
BWHA	280	W																												
Ruffed Grouse		B	GS NV	MP		M	S	S	S	F	*	*	F	P																
RUGR	286	W	GS NV	MP		M	O	S	M	F	*	*	F	P																
Common Bobwhite		B	*	*		M	M			F		*								F										
COBO	287	W	*	*		M	M			F		*								F										
Wild Turkey		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S	F	*	*		P	P					F										
WITU	288	W	*	*			M	M	S	F	*	*		P	P					F										
American Woodcock		B	*	*				M	M	F	*	F																	F	
AMWO	294	W																												
Mourning Dove		B	*	*			M			F		F		NP	NP															
MODO	297	W	*	*		M	M			F		F		P	P															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Cove Hardwoods

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Yellow-billed Cuckoo		B	*	*				M	M				N	*	*															
YBCU	298	W																												
Black-billed Cuckoo		B	GS NV	MPIO				S	S				N	*	*															
BBCU	299	W																												
Common Screech Owl		B	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*	N							N		N					
CSOW	300	W	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*	P							P		P					
Great Horned Owl		B	*	*					M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
GHOW	301	W	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	F	*															
Barred Owl		B	*	*					M	F	F	F	F	F	*		N								N				F	F
BDOW	302	W	*	*					M	F	F	F	F	F	*		P								P				F	F
Whip-poor-will		B	GS NV	MPSIO				M	M		N																			
WPWI	304	W																												
Chimney Swift		B	*	*					M														N		N					
CHSW	305	W																												
Ruby-throated Hummingbird		B	*	*			M	S	S				*	*	*															
RTHU	306	W																												
Common Flicker		B	*	*				M	S	F		F			*	*			*				N		N					
COFL	307	W	*	*				M	M	F		F			*	*														
Pileated Woodpecker		B	*	*					O					F	*	*	*	*						*	N	F logs				
PIWO	307	W	*	*				M	O					F	*	*	*	*						*	P	F logs				

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Cove Hardwoods

Species Code	Page	distribution																			minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Yellow-bellied Sapsucker		B	NV	M				M	M				F	F	*	*						N			N					
YBSA	309	W	*	*				M	M				F	F	*							*			*					
Hairy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	S					*	*	*						*			*					
HAWO	309	W	*	*				M	S					*	*	*														
Downy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	S				*	*	*	*					*				*					
DOWO	310	W	*	*				M	S				*	*	*	*					*				*					
Great Crested Flycatcher		B	*	*				M	S					F	*	N						N			N					
GCFL	313	W																												
Eastern Phoebe		B	GS NV	MPSIO				M	M				*	*					*								N			
EAPH	313	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F	*						*											
Acadian Flycatcher		B	*	*				S	O					*	*	F		*			F								F	F
ACFL	314	W																												
Least Flycatcher		B	GN V	M		M		M	M					*	*				*											
LEFL	315	W																												
Eastern Pewee		B	*	*				M	S					F	*	F					F									
EAPE	316	W																												
Horned Lark		B	GS NV	*		M				*		*																		
HOLA	317	W	GS NV	*		M				*		*																		
Barn Swallow		B	*	*		M																					N			
BASW	319	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Cove Hardwoods

Species / Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	minimum d.b.h. 10" (25 cm)	minimum d.b.h. 14" (35 cm)	minimum d.b.h. 18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Purple Martin		B	*	*		M										N						N			N					
PUMA	320	W																												
Blue Jay		B	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*															
BLJA	320	W	*	*			M	M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*															
Northern Raven		B	GS NV	M			M	M	M	F		F			P												N			
NORA	321	W	GS NV	M		M	M	M	M	F		F			P															
American Crow		B	*	*				M	M	F		F			*			N												
AMCR	322	W	*	*		S	M	M	M	F		F			*			P												
Black-capped Chickadee		B	NV	M				M	M				F	*	*	N					NP				NP					
BCCH	323	W	NV	MP			M	M	S				F	*	*	P					P				P					
Carolina Chickadee		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S				F	*	*	N					NP				NP					
CACH	323	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	S				F	*	*	P					P				P					
Tufted Titmouse		B	*	MPSIOC				S	O				F	*	*	N					N									
TUTI	324	W	*	MPSIOC			M	S	O				F	*	*															
White-breasted Nuthatch		B	GS NV	MPSIOC				M	O						*	*	*								N					
WBNU	324	W	*	MPSIOC				M	O						*	*														
Brown Creeper		B																												
BRCR	326	W	*	MPSIOC				S	S					*	*															
Winter Wren		B	NV	M				M	M	*	*	F	F	P	P			*								*				
WIWR	327	W	*	*				S	S	*	*	F	F													*				

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Cove Hardwoods

Species Code	Page	geographic distribution Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	stage Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	Snags minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Carolina Wren		B	*	*			M	S	S	*	*	*	*	*							N				N	*	N			
CAWR	328	W	*	*			M	S	S	*	*	*	*	*												*				
Gray Catbird		B	*	MPSIOC			S	S	S				*	P																
GRCA	330	W																												
Brown Thrasher		B	*	*			M			F	F	F	*	P	P															
BRTH	330	W																												
Wood Thrush		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S		F	F	*	P				*												
WOTH	331	W																												
Hermit Thrush		B																												
HETH	332	W	*	*				M	M		*	F	*					*												
Veery		B	GN V	M				M	S		*	*	P	P	P			*												
VEER	333	W																												
Blue-gray Gnatcatcher		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M				*	*	*															
BGGN	334	W																												
Ruby-crowned Kinglet		B																												
RCKI	335	W	*	*			M	M	M				*	*	*															
Cedar Waxwing		B	GS NV	MP				M	M				*	*	*				*											
CEWA	336	W																												
Yellow-throated Vireo		B	*	*					M					F	*															
YTVI	338	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Cove Hardwoods

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	minimum d.b.h. 10" (25 cm)	minimum d.b.h. 14" (35 cm)	minimum d.b.h. 18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Solitary Vireo		B	GS NV	MPS				S	O				N	*	*															
SOVI	338	W																												
Red-eyed Vireo		B	*	MPSIOC				S	O					*	*															
REVI	339	W																												
Black-and-white Warbler		B	GS NV	MPSIO				M	O		N	N		F	F			*												
BAWW	340	W																												
Swainson's Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				S	O	F	F	F	*	P																
SWWA	341	W																												
Worm-eating Warbler		B	*	MPIO				S	O		*	F	*	P				*												
WEWA	342	W																												
Golden-winged Warbler		B	GN V	M			S	M				N	*	P	P															
GWWA	342	W																												
Blue-winged Warbler		B	GN V	MP			M					*	*		P															
BWWA	343	W																												
Northern Parula Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC					S					*	*															
NPWA	345	W																												
Yellow Warbler		B	*	*			M						*																	
YEWA	345	W																												
Black-thr. Blue Warbler		B	GS NV	M				S	O				*	*	F	P		*												
BTBW	347	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Cove Hardwoods

Species Code	Page		distribution																		minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Yellow-rumped Warbler		B																												
YRWA	347	W	*	*			M	M	M	*		*	*	*	*															
Black-thr. Green Warbler		B	GS NV	MPOC				M	S					F	*			*												
BTGW	348	W																												
Cerulean Warbler		B	NV	MPI					O						*		*	*												
CRWA	348	W																												
Blackburnian Warbler		B	GS NV	M					M					F	*		*	*												
BLWA	349	W																												
Chestnut-sided Warbler		B	GS NV	M			S	M	M				*	*	P				*											
CSWA	350	W																												
Prairie Warbler		B	*	*			M					F	*																	
PRWA	351	W																												
Ovenbird		B	GS NV	MPSIOC				S	O	*	*		P	P																
OVEN	352	W																												
Louisiana Waterthrush		B	*	MPSIO					S	*			P	P													*			F
LOWA	353	W																												
Kentucky Warbler		B	*	*					M	F	F	*	*	P																
KEWA	353	W																												
Mourning Warbler		B	V	M			M					*	*																	
MOWA	354	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Code Species	Page																				minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Common Yellowthroat		B	*	*			M					*	*																	
COYE	354	W																												
Yellow-breasted Chat		B	*	*			M						*			P														
YBCH	355	W																												
Hooded Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC				M	O				*	FP																
HOWA	355	W																												
Canada Warbler		B	GS NV	M			M	S	S	N	N	N	*																	
CAWA	356	W																												
American Redstart		B	*	MPSIO				M	S				*	*	FP															
AMRE	356	W																												
Brown-headed Cowbird		B	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F				N			*		N									
BHCO	362	W																												
Scarlet Tanager		B	GS NV	MPIOC					O					F	*			*												
SCTA	363	W																												
Summer Tanager		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M					F	*															
SUTA	363	W																												
Northern Cardinal		B	*	*			M	M	M		*	*	*	F	F															
NOCA	364	W	*	*			M	M	M		*	*	*																	
Rose-breasted Grosbeak		B	GS NV	M				M	S				N	*	*															
RBGR	364	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Cove Hardwoods

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Indigo Bunting		B	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M			*	*	P	P				*											
INBU	365	W																												
Evening Grosbeak		B																												
EVGR	367	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M	F			*	*	*															
Purple Finch		B																												
PUFI	367	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M				*	*	*															
Pine Siskin		B																												
PISI	368	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M	F		*	*	*	*															
American Goldfinch		B	GSNV	MPSIO			M					*	*	P	P															
AMGO	369	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	*		*	*	*	*															
Rufous-sided Towhee		B	*	*			S	S	M		F	*	*	P	P															
RSTO	370	W	*	*			M	M	M		F	*	*																	
Northern Junco		B	GNV	M				M	S	N	F	*	*	P	P															
NOJU	375	W	*	MPSIOC		M	M	M	M	F	F	*	*	*																
Field Sparrow		B	GSNV	*			M					*	*																	
FISP	376	W	*	*		M	M					*	*																	
White-throated Sparrow		B																												
WTSP	377	W	*	*		M	M	S	S		F	F	*	*	*															
Song Sparrow		B	GSNV	MPIC			M					*	*																	
SOSP	379	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

compose a plurality of the stocking. In the Southeast, stands of this type occur primarily at higher elevations in the Mountains. Equivalent NFS types are 17, red spruce-northern hardwoods (in part); and 81, sugar maple-beech-yellow birch. The type corresponds to SAF types 17, pin cherry; 24, hemlock-yellow birch (in part); 25, sugar maple-beech-yellow birch; 26: sugar maple-basswood (in part); 27, sugar maple; 28, black cherry-maple (in part); 30, red spruce-yellow birch (in part); 31, red spruce-sugar maple-beech (in part); and 60, beech-sugar maple. The corresponding RRE type is 80, maple-beech-birch.

No census from this type in the Southeast was published in 1947-1979.

Characteristic of this vegetation type are White-breasted Nuthatches, Veeries (B), Solitary Vireos (B), Black-throated Blue Warblers (B), Rose-breasted Grosbeaks (B), and Northern Juncos (B).

Yellow-bellied Sapsuckers are restricted to this type in the breeding season in the Southeast.

Noon and Able (1978), Noon et al. (1979) and Samson (1979) present information on the avifauna of this type.

Maple-Beech-Birch

Species / Code	Page		distribution																		minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic[c] provinces	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Turkey Vulture		B	*	*			M	M	M	F	F	F	F		*															
TUVU	275	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F	F	F	F		*															
Sharp-shinned Hawk		B	GSNV	MPSI				M	S	F	F	F	F	F	*			N												
SSHA	278	W																												
Cooper's Hawk		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S	F	F	F	F	F	*			N												
COHA	279	W																												
Red-tailed Hawk		B	*	*					M	F		F			*	P														
RTHA	279	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F			*	P														
Broad-winged Hawk		B	*	MPSIO					M	F	F	F	F		*															
BWHA	280	W																												
Golden Eagle		B	NV	M		M	M			F		F															N			
GOEA	282	W	SNV	MOC		S	M			F		F															P			
Peregrine Falcon		B	N	M		M	M			F		F			F	P											NP			
PEFA	285	W																												
Ruffed Grouse		B	GSNV	MP			O	O	O	F	*	*	F	P																
RUGR	286	W	GSNV	MP			O	S	S	F	*	*	F	P																
Wild Turkey		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S	F	*	*		P	P					F										
WITU	288	W	*	*			M	M	M	F	*	*		P	P					F										
American Woodcock		B	*	*				M	M	F	*	F																	F	
AMWO	294	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Maple-Beech-Birch Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	geographic States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	stage Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Mourning Dove		B	*	*			M	M	M	F		F		NP	NP															
MODO	297	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F		P	P															
Black-billed Cuckoo		B	GS NV	MPIO				O	O				N	*	*															
BBCU	299	W																												
Common Screech Owl		B	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*	N							N		N					
CSOW	300	W	*	*				M	S	F	F	F	F	*	*	P							P		P					
Barred Owl		B	*	*					M	F	F	F	F	F	*		N								N				F	F
BDOW	302	W	*	*					M	F	F	F	F	F	*		P								P				F	F
Chimney Swift		B	*	*					M														N		N					
CHSW	305	W																												
Ruby-throated Hummingbird		B	*	*			M	M	M				*	*	*															
RTHU	306	W																												
Pileated Woodpecker		B	*	*					S					F	*	*	*	*						*	N	F logs				
PIWO	307	W	*	*					S					F	*	*	*	*						*	P	F logs				
Yellow-bellied Sapsucker		B	NV	M				M	O				F	F	*	*						N			N					
YBSA	309	W	*	*				M	M				F	F	*							*			*					
Hairy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	O					*	*	*						*			*					
HAWO	309	W	*	*				M	O					*	*	*														
Downy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	M				*	*	*	*					*				*					
DOWO	310	W	*	*				M	M				*	*	*	*					*				*					

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Maple-Beech-Birch

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic[c] provinces	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Eastern Phoebe		B	GS NV	MPSIO				M	M				*	*					*								N			
EAPH	313	W																												
Alder Flycatcher		B	NV	M			M						*																	
ALFL	315	W																												
Least Flycatcher		B	GN V	M		S		M	M					*	*				*											
LEFL	315	W																												
Eastern Pewee		B	*	*				M	M					F	*	F					F									
EAPE	316	W																												
Horned Lark		B	GS NV	*		M				*		*																		
HOLA	317	W	GS NV	*		M				*		*																		
Barn Swallow		B	*	*		M																					N			
BASW	319	W																												
Purple Martin		B	*	*		M										N						N			N					
PUMA	320	W																												
Blue Jay		B	*	*				M	M	F	F	F	F	*	*															
BLJA	320	W	*	*			M	M	M	F	F	F	F	*	*															
Northern Raven		B	GS NV	M		M	M	M	M	F		F			P												N			
NORA	321	W	GS NV	M		S	S	S	S	F		F			P															
American Crow		B	*	*				M	S	F		F			*			N												
AMCR	322	W	*	*		S	M	M	M	F		F			*			P												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Maple-Beech-Birch

Species / Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic[c] provinces	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
			geographic			stage															minimum d.b.h.									
Black-capped Chickadee		B	NV	M				S	O				F	*	*	N					NP				NP					
BCCH	323	W	NV	MP			M	S	O				F	*	*	P					P				P					
Carolina Chickadee		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S				F	*	*	N					NP				NP					
CACH	323	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	S				F	*	*	P					P				P					
Tufted Titmouse		B	*	MPSIOC				M	S				F	*	*	N					N									
TUTI	324	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	S				F	*	*															
White-breasted Nuthatch		B	GS NV	MPSIOC				M	O						*	*	*								N					
WBNU	324	W	*	MPSIOC				M	O						*	*														
Brown Creeper		B	NV	M				M	M					*	*							N			N					
BRCR	326	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M					*	*															
Winter Wren		B	NV	M				M	M	*	*	F	F	P	P			*								*				
WIWR	327	W	*	*				M	M	*	*	F	F													*				
Bewick's Wren		B	GN V	MP			M					*	*								N				N	*	N			
BEWR	327	W																												
Carolina Wren		B	*	*			M	M	M	*	*	*	*	*							N				N	*	N			
CAWR	328	W	*	*			M	M	M	*	*	*	*	*												*				
Gray Catbird		B	*	MPSIOC			O	O	S				*	P																
GRCA	330	W																												
Brown Thrasher		B	*	*			M			F	F	F	*	P	P															
BRTH	330	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piédmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Maple-Beech-Birch

Species / Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
		distribution																			minimum d.b.h.									
American Robin		B	*	*			M	S	S	F		F	N	N	NP					*										
AMRO	331	W																												
Wood Thrush		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M		F	F	*	P				*												
WOTH	331	W																												
Veery		B	GN V	M			S	S	O		*	*	P	P	P			*												
VEER	333	W																												
Cedar Waxwing		B	GS NV	MP				M	M				*	*	*				*											
CEWA	336	W																												
Solitary Vireo		B	GS NV	MPS				S	O				N	*	*															
SOVI	338	W																												
Red-eyed Vireo		B	*	MPSIOC				M	M					*	*															
REVI	339	W																												
Black-and-white Warbler		B	GS NV	MPSIO				M	S		N	N		F	F			*												
BAWW	340	W																												
Golden-winged Warbler		B	GN V	M			O	M				N	*	P	P															
GWWA	342	W																												
Northern Parula Warbler		B	*	MPSIOC					S					*	*															
NPWA	345	W																												
Yellow Warbler		B	*	*			M						*																	
YEWA	345	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Species Code Page	distribution																			d.b.h.									
	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Black-thr. Blue Warbler	B	GS NV	M				S	O				*	*	F	P		*												
BTBW 347	W																												
Black-thr. Green Warbler	B	GS NV	MPOC				M	S					F	*			*												
BTGW 348	W																												
Cerulean Warbler	B	NV	MPI					M						*		*	*												
CRWA 348	W																												
Blackburnian Warbler	B	GS NV	M					S					F	*		*	*												
BLWA 349	W																												
Chestnut-sided Warbler	B	GS NV	M			O	S	M				*	*	P				*											
CSWA 350	W																												
Ovenbird	B	GS NV	MPSIOC				M	S	*	*		P	P																
OVEN 352	W																												
Mourning Warbler	B	V	M			S					*	*																	
MOWA 354	W																												
Common Yellowthroat	B	*	*			M					*	*																	
COYE 354	W																												
Yellow-breasted Chat	B	*	*			M						*			P														
YBCH 355	W																												
Hooded Warbler	B	*	MPSIOC				M	S				*	FP																
HOWA 355	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	d.b.h. 10" (25 cm)	d.b.h. 14" (35 cm)	d.b.h. 18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Canada Warbler		B	GS NV	M			M	S	S	N	N	N	*																	
CAWA	356	W																												
Brown-headed Cowbird		B	*	*		M	M	M	M	F		F				N			*		N									
BHCO	362	W																												
Scarlet Tanager		B	GS NV	MPIOC					S					F	*			*												
SCTA	363	W																												
Northern Cardinal		B	*	*			M	M	M		*	*	*	F	F															
NOCA	364	W	*	*			M	M	M		*	*	*																	
Rose-breasted Grosbeak		B	GS NV	M				M	O				N	*	*															
RBGR	364	W																												
Indigo Bunting		B	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M			*	*	P	P				*											
INBU	365	W																												
Evening Grosbeak		B																												
EVGR	367	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M	F			*	*	*															
Purple Finch		B																												
PUFI	367	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M				*	*	*															
Pine Siskin		B																												
PISI	368	W	*	MPSIOC			M	M	M	F		*	*	*	*															
American Goldfinch		B	GS NV	MPSIO			M					*	*	P	P															
AMGO	369	W	*	*		M	M	M	M	*		*	*	*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Maple-Beech-Birch

Species / Code	Page		distribution																		Snags minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Rufous-sided Towhee		B	*	*			M	M	M		F	*	*	P	P															
RSTO	370	W																												
Vesper Sparrow		B	NV	MPI		S				*		*	P																	
VESP	374	W																												
Northern Junco		B	GN V	M			M	S	O	N	F	*	*	P	P															
NOJU	375	W	*	MPSIOC		M	M	M	M	F	F	*	*	*																
American Tree Sparrow		B																												
ATSP	375	W	NV	MPIOC		M	M					*	*																	
Field Sparrow		B	GS NV	*			M					*	*																	
FISP	376	W	*	*								*	*																	
White-throated Sparrow		B																												
WTSP	377	W	*	*		M	M	M	M		F	F	*	*	*															
Song Sparrow		B	GS NV	MPIC			S					*	*																	
SOSP	379	W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia
N — North Carolina
S — South Carolina
G — Georgia
F — Florida
* — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

(Abies fraseri), singly or in combination, constitute a plurality of the stocking. In the Southeast the type is confined to sites at the highest elevations (above 4500 ft, 1450 m) in the Mountains in North Carolina and Virginia. Equivalent NFS types are 6, Fraser fir; 7, red spruce-Fraser fir; and 17, red spruce-northern hardwoods (in part). The type corresponds to SAF types 30, red spruce-yellow birch (in part); 31, red spruce-sugar maple-beech (in part); 32, red spruce; and 34, red spruce-Fraser fir. The corresponding RRE type is 10, spruce-fir.

Two BBC, one from each of two sawtimber stands in North Carolina, were reported from this type in 1947-1979.

Characteristic of this vegetation type are Black-capped Chickadees, Red-breasted Nuthatches (B), Brown Creepers (B), Winter Wrens (B), Golden-crowned Kinglets (B), Solitary Vireos (B), Black-throated Green Warblers (B), Blackburnian Warblers (B), and Northern Juncos.

Restricted to this type are Saw-whet Owls (B), Olive-sided Flycatchers (B), Red-breasted Nuthatches (B), Brown Creepers (B), Hermit Thrushes (B), Swainson's Thrushes (B), Golden-crowned Kinglets (B), Nashville Warblers (B), Magnolia Warblers (B), Purple Finches (B), Pine Siskins (B), and Red Crossbills (B).

Noon and Able (1978) and Crawford and Titterington (1979) discuss birds in spruce-fir forests.

Spruce-Fir

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	minimum d.b.h.				Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
																					6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)						
Golden Eagle		B	NV	M		M	M			F		F															N			
GOEA	282	W	SN V	MOC		O	M			F		F															P			
Peregrine Falcon		B	N	M		M	M			F		F			F	P											NP			
PEFA	285	W																												
Ruffed Grouse		B	GS NV	MP		M	S	M	M	F	*	*	F	P																
RUGR	286	W	GS NV	MP		M	S	M	M	F	*	*	F	P																
American Woodcock		B	*	*				M	M	F	*	F																	F	
AMWO	294	W																												
Barred Owl		B	*	*					M	F	F	F	F	F	*		N								N				F	F
BDOW	302	W	*	*					M	F	F	F	F	F	*		P								P				F	F
Long-eared Owl		B	V	MP				M	M	F	F	F	F	*	*															
LEOW	302	W																												
Saw-whet Owl		B	NV	M				M	O	F	F	F	F	*	*	N						N			N					
SWOW	303	W	GS NV	MPSIOC			M	M	M	F	F	F	F	*	*	P						P			P					
Chimney Swift		B	*	*					M														N		N					
CHSW	305	W																												
Pileated Woodpecker		B	*	*					M					F	*	*	*	*						*	N	F logs				
PIWO	307	W	*	*					M					F	*	*	*	*						*	P	F logs				
Hairy Woodpecker		B	*	*				M	S					*	*	*						*			*					
HAWO	309	W	*	*				M	S					*	*	*														

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Spruce-Fir

Species Code	Page	distribution																				minimum d.b.h.									
		Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Alder Flycatcher		B	NV	M			S						*																	
ALFL	315	W																												
Olive-sided Flycatcher		B	NV	M				M	S						*	F						F								
OSFL	316	W																												
Northern Raven		B	GS NV	M		S	M	S	S	F		F			P												N			
NORA	321	W	GS NV	M		S	S	S	O	F		F			P															
Black-capped Chickadee		B	NV	M				S	O				F	*	*	N					NP				NP					
BCCH	323	W	NV	MP			M	S	S				F	*	*	P					P				P					
Red-breasted Nuthatch		B	NV	M				S	O					*	*	N					N									
RBNU	325	W	*	MPSIOC			M	S	S					*	*															
Brown Creeper		B	NV	M				M	O					*	*							N			N					
BRCR	326	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M					*	*															
Winter Wren		B	NV	M				S	O	*	*	F	F	P	P			*								*				
WIWR	327	W	*	*				S	S	*	*	F	F													*				
Gray Catbird		B	*	MPSIOC			S	M	M				*	P																
GRCA	330	W																												
Brown Thrasher		B	*	*			M			F	F	F	*	P	P															
BRTH	330	W																												
American Robin		B	*	*			S	O	O	F		F	N	N	NP					*										
AMRO	331	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Spruce-Fir

Species			geographic distribution			stage															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Code	Page	Season of use [a]	States [b]	Physiographic provinces [c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water [f]	Flowing water [f]
Hermit Thrush		B	V	M				S	O		*	F	P	P	P			*												
HETH	332	W																												
Swainson's Thrush		B	V	M				S	O		F	F	*	FP	FP			*												
SWTH	332	W																												
Veery		B	GN V	M				M	S		*	*	P	P	P			*												
VEER	333	W																												
Golden-crowned Kinglet		B	NV	M				S	O					F	*			*												
GCKI	334	W	*	MPSIOC			M	S	S				F	F	*															
Cedar Waxwing		B	GS NV	MP				M	S				*	*	*				*											
CEWA	336	W																												
Solitary Vireo		B	GS NV	MPS				S	O				N	*	*															
SOVI	338	W																												
Nashville Warbler		B	V	M			O	S	M			N	*	P																
NAWA	344	W																												
Magnolia Warbler		B	NV	M			S	O	O				*	*	*															
MAWA	346	W																												
Black-thr. Blue Warbler		B	GS NV	M				S	S				*	*	F	P		*												
BTBW	347	W																												
Black-thr. Green Warbler		B	GS NV	MPOC				M	O					F	*			*												
BTGW	348	W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Spruce-Fir

Species Code	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	d.b.h. 6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Blackburnian Warbler		B	GS NV	M					O					F	*		*	*												
BLWA	349	W																												
Chestnut-sided Warbler		B	GS NV	M			S	M	M				*	*	P				*											
CSWA	350	W																												
Northern Waterthrush		B	V	M			M	M		*			P	P															F	
NOWA	352	W																												
Mourning Warbler		B	V	M			S					*	*																	
MOWA	354	W																												
Common Yellowthroat		B	*	*			M					*	*																	
COYE	354	W																												
Canada Warbler		B	GS NV	M			M	S	O	N	N	N	*																	
CAWA	356	W																												
Rose-breasted Grosbeak		B	GS NV	M				M	M				N	*	*															
RBGR	364	W																												
Evening Grosbeak		B																												
EVGR	367	W	*	MPSIOC				S	O	F			*	*	*															
Purple Finch		B	V	M				S	O					*	*															
PUFI	367	W	*	MPSIOC				M	M				*	*	*															
Pine Siskin		B	NV	M			M	S	O			F	F	*	*															
PISI	368	W	*	MPSIOC			S	S	O	F		*	*	*	*															

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

Spruce-Fir

		geographic distribution				d															Snags minimum d.b.h.									
Code / Species	Page	Season of use[a]	States[b]	Physiographic provinces[c]	Local area	Grass-forb	Shrub-seedling	Sapling-poletimber	Sawtimber	Bare soil	Thick deciduous leaf litter	Herbaceous groundcover	Shrubs	Midstory canopy	Overstory canopy	Dead trees or limbs	Large sawtimber trees, at least 20" d.b.h.	Closed canopy	Open canopy	Grassy forest openings	6" (15 cm)	10" (25 cm)	14" (35 cm)	18" (46 cm)	Living cavity trees	Slash piles & windows	Rock outcrops, caves, crevices	Earth banks	Standing water[f]	Flowing water[f]
Red Crossbill		B	NV	M				M	O					F	*															
RECR	369	W	GS NV	MPSIOC				M	O					*	*															
White-winged Crossbill		B																												
WWCR	370	W	NV	MPI				M	O					*	*															
Rufous-sided Towhee		B	*	*			M				F	*	*	P	P															
RSTO	370	W																												
Vesper Sparrow		B	NV	MPI		M				*		*	P																	
VESP	374	W																												
Northern Junco		B	GN V	M			M	S	O	N	F	*	*	P	P															
NOJU	375	W	*	MPSIOC		M	S	S	S	F	F	*	*	*																
Song Sparrow		B	GS NV	MPIC			S					*	*																	
SOSP	379	W																												
Snow Bunting		B																												
SNBU	380	W	*	MPC		M				*		*																		
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												
		B																												
		W																												

[a] B — Breeding, March-August
W — Winter, November-February

[b] V — Virginia G — Georgia
N — North Carolina F — Florida
S — South Carolina * — All states

[c] M — Mountains
P — Piedmont
I — Inner Coastal Plain
O — Outer Coastal Plain
C — Coastline
S — Sandhills
T — Subtropical Florida
* — All provinces

[d] O — Optimal
S — Suitable
M — Marginal

[e] F — Feeding or foraging
N — Nesting site
P — Perching for resting, roosting, or singing
* — All requirements

[f] F — Fresh
B — Brackish
S — Salt
* — Any

In this chapter we present brief narrative summaries of the biology of the 234 species treated in this manual, gleaned and condensed from literature and our personal experience. The names of the species agree with those of the American Birding Association (A.B.A.) Checklist (Robbins et al. 1975). We have adopted this nomenclature to conform to the standards proposed for fish and wildlife data base systems by the U. S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Eastern Energy and Land Use Team in their Procedures for Describing Fish and Wildlife. Four letter code names for the species were formed according to the abbreviation rules proposed by Klimkiewicz and Robbins (1978), as amended by Hamel and Klimkiewicz (1981). Usually these codes involve the first one or two letters of the words in the English common name, and they are unique among North American birds. Where the A.B.A. names differ from those of the American Ornithologists' Union (A.O.U. 1957, and suppl.), we list both names, the A.B.A. name first, and the A.O.U. name below it.

As many as 10 sections may compose an individual account:

(a) legal status of species,
(b) abundance status of species,
(c) primary habitats,
(d) key habitat requirements,
(e) sample breeding densities in the Southeast,
(f) sample winter densities in the Southeast,
(g) reproduction,
(h) food habits,
(i) guild, and
(j) references.

(a) Legal status of species.--This section cannot be considered an up-to-date listing; nor should it be used in lieu of official documentation from the Fish and Wildlife Service for Federal listings, and from the several states for their jurisdictions. We provide it to indicate to the user those species that have, at the time of this writing (December 1981), been recognized as meriting special protective measures to maintain their populations by the Federal Government or one or more state governments. This information was compiled from the Federal Register and by direct correspondence with the resource management agencies of the states within and adjacent to the U. S. Forest Service Region 8, the Southern Region. We indicate, for each listed species, the affected subspecies and the specific designations applied by each listing agency. Two lists are maintained in Alabama; an official list of endangered and threatened species coincides with the list of federally listed endangered and threatened species that occur in Alabama; and an unofficial list maintained by the Alabama Department of Conservation and Natural Resources. We have marked species included on either of the Alabama lists. In addition, we identify in this section those species included by Tate (1981) on the National Audubon Society's Blue List for 1981. Although unofficial, this listing is suitable for our purpose in this section of alerting managers to species that merit particular attention.

(b) Abundance status of species.--Here we list the relative abundance of a given species in the Southeast, often by physiographic region or state. Abundance classes are listed only by symbols: A = abundant, VC = very common, C = common, FC = fairly common, U = uncommon, R = rare, VR = very rare. Where two statuses are listed together (such as FC to C), the abundance of the species tends to be intermediate between the two categories.

The arrival and departure dates list the time when a given species is expected to be seen first, or seen last, on the breeding or wintering grounds, taking geography into consideration. For example, a species that breeds over the entire Southeast may have a spring arrival listed as "mid-April to early May." Arrival in southern Florida would be expected in mid-April, arrival in northern Virginia would be in early May, and arrival in the Carolinas in late April. Likewise, for a fall departure listed as "late September to late October," the species would be seen last in northern Virginia in late September, and in late October in southern Florida. For species that winter in the region but do not breed, the situation is reversed. Thus, a fall arrival listed as "early October to early November" indicates that the first individuals are seen in the northern part of the wintering range typically in early October, but not until early November in the southern portion. The dates apply to the arrival and departure on the breeding and wintering grounds only, and not to points along the migration route. For example, a species that nests only in the mountains, arriving from late April to early May, might migrate through Florida in early or mid-April.

presented in the matrices.

(d) Key Habitat Requirements: Here we present in narrative form the essential features in the habitats where a given species occurs, such as an abandoned woodpecker cavity, a dense understory layer, or a cliff ledge. Where possible, this information is included in the matrices in Chapter III to be of maximal usefulness to the manager; it is presented here to provide clarification and reinforcement of the matrix entries.

(e) Sample breeding densities in the Southeast, and (f) Sample winter densities in the Southeast.--In these two sections we summarize the published BBC and WBPS relevant to the range of population densities achieved by each species in the Southeast. We present, in each account, one or more habitats (a habitat is a single successional stage of a vegetation type) representing the low mean densities recorded in 1947-1979 in the Southeast, and one or more habitats in which the high mean densities were achieved. Each listing includes notation of the mean density in the selected habitat, followed parenthetically by the number of censuses in that habitat on which the mean is based. In cases in which the same mean density was recorded from several habitats, all habitats with that mean density are listed. The values given are mean values; as such, some of the numerous sources of variability in reporting density are reduced; however, the reader must recognize these as samples, and not as absolute limits on the densities of the species.

(g) Reproduction.--This section provides a summary of the breeding biology of the species. The dates of the breeding season listed for each species refer only to eggs in the nests, and not to courtship, nest building, or fledging of young. The span of dates for the breeding season refers to the species as a whole and not to an individual pair of birds. In most cases, individuals of a given species in the southern portion of the range tend to breed earlier than those in the northern portion. Information on the structure and placement of the nest and the clutch size are also presented. When the structure of the nest is not described for a species, it is assumed that the nest is cup-shaped, and made of twigs, grasses, or other similar items. Although the data for the period of the breeding season are taken only from the Southeast, data on nest structure, nest placement, and clutch size were gathered in many parts of North America and are not restricted to the Southeast. However, there is usually little difference in the breeding biology of most species in the Southeast as compared with other parts of their breeding ranges.

(h) Food habits.--This is a brief summary of the food items consumed by individuals of a species, the manner of foraging, and the substrates (such as shallow water or tree foliage) on which they forage.

(i) Guild.--Here we present a brief summary of the nesting and foraging habits, expressed in a terse phrase. For most species the guild is expressed as: nesting site, foraging substrate, foraging technique, and diet. Species that do not breed in the Southeast do not have a phrase concerning nesting. The designation of a given term (such as "gleaning" or "carnivore") is based on the predominant manner of foraging, food type, or other aspects. Where two or more classes of the same category are frequent, the word "or" is used. For example, a species whose individuals forage commonly both in tall herbaceous cover and in shrubs is listed as "herb or bush." Where individuals of a species change their diet noticeably from summer to winter, such as from primarily insects to mainly seeds, a hyphen is used to separate the summer diet from the winter diet (insectivore-granivore). For species that breed only, or winter only, in the Southeast, the guild listed is that for the season of occurrence in the region. Definitions of all terms found in the guild section are listed in the Glossary.

(j) References.--Most of the information condensed in the narrative accounts has been drawn from general literature sources. In this brief section we present a series of citations of faunal works--many state bird books as well as nationwide and regional accounts that treat the species. We have chosen these works in part because of their general information, but also because of their wide availability, in the belief that each user of the present manual will have at his or her disposal at least one of them. Each citation of one of the general works includes a page reference to the account of the cited species. In this way we provide the user with an immediately available "second opinion" of the biology of each species, against which questions raised by our treatment can be settled. In addition to the general works, we present, where available, other important works dealing with the general biology or management of the species.

lines show the distribution in winter, and the dashed lines indicate irregular or sporadic occurrence (Figure 2).

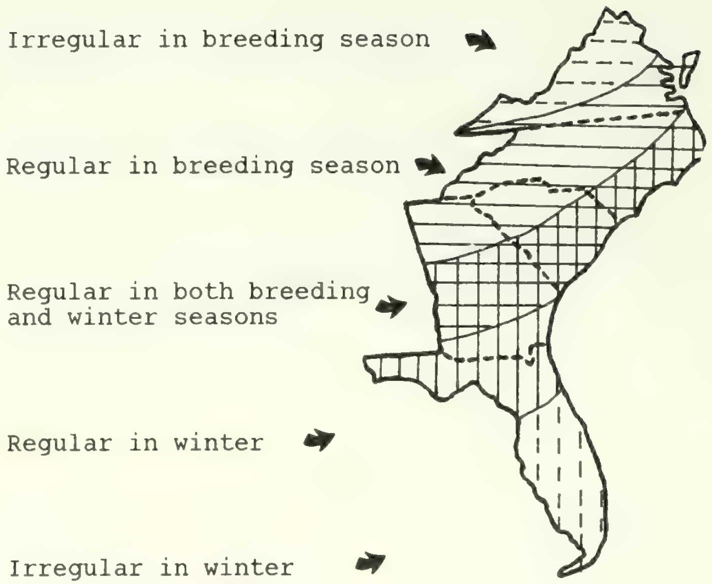

Irregular in breeding season
Regular in breeding season
Regular in both breeding and winter seasons
Regular in winter
Irregular in winter

Figure 2. Sample range map.

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- mostly U to locally [illegible] Coastal Plain, but R over much of this section; VR and erratic in the Piedmont and in mountain valleys. Wintering -- FC to C over most of the region, though U in the mountains.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- lakes, ponds, or impoundments, where there is emergent vegetation for hiding the nest. Wintering -- lakes, ponds, impoundments, sluggish streams, bays, canals, and other open water; prefer fresh water, but frequently occur on brackish water.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- emergent vegetation in a body of fresh or slightly brackish water. Wintering -- open body of fresh or brackish water.

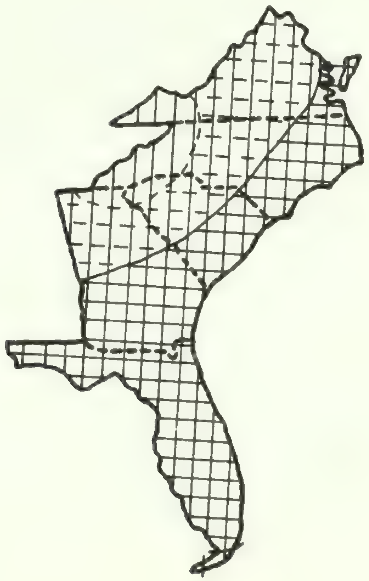
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) grass-forb longleaf pine-slash pine, 3(1) Everglades.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from April to July, rarely to October in Florida, with the peak from mid-May to mid-June. Nests are floating masses of dead vegetation, anchored to reeds or other live vegetation in a lake or pond. Eggs usually number from 4 to 7 per clutch, with a range of 2 to 10.

FOOD HABITS: Forage by diving from the surface of a body of water and capturing aquatic insects, fish, crustaceans, and other small animals; plants are rarely eaten.

GUILD: ground nesting, aquatic diving insectivore or carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:42; Verner and Boss 1980:95; DeGraaf et al. 1980:101; Lowery 1974:109; Mengel 1965:155; Forbush and May 1939:9; Imhof 1976:56; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:54; Sprunt 1954:4; Oberholser 1974(1):67; Burleigh 1958:83; Stewart and Robbins 1958:45; Palmer 1962:104.



state listed as Endangered in Alabama, [illegible] Mississippi, North Carolina, South Carolina, Texas, and Virginia; and as Threatened in Florida.

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- locally C, in colonies, north to Ocracoke Inlet, North Carolina; occur in summer over the entire coast north to Oregon Inlet, North Carolina. Wintering -- C along the coast of peninsular Florida; less numerous elsewhere; U to FC along the North Carolina coast, and U in western Florida.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- generally on islands, where there are shrub thickets or dense stands of small trees; infrequently on the ground among grasses. Foraging -- coastlines, inlets, bays, and the inshore ocean; always near salt water.

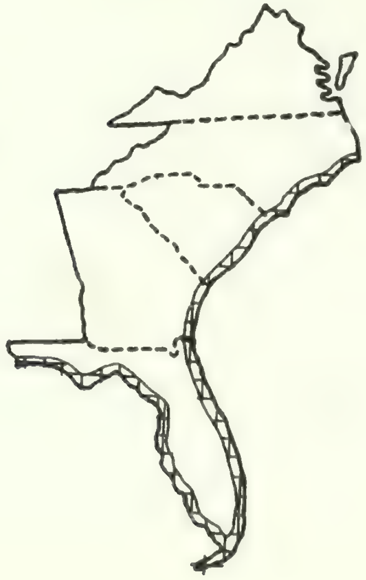
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- vegetation, usually woody, along the coast; prefer islands. Foraging -- shallow salt water and adjacent shores.

REPRODUCTION: The season extends from December to August in Florida, and March to June northward; the peak is from mid-April to early June. Nests are built in bushes or small trees, or on the ground, invariably in colonies on islands. Three eggs are the most common clutch, but 2 are also frequent.

FOOD HABITS: Brown Pelicans plunge into a body of water, usually the ocean, from an average height of 25 feet (8 m) and capture fish below the water surface.

GUILD: ground or bush nesting, aquatic pouncing carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:51; Lowery 1974:121; Forbush and May 1939:20; Imhof 1976:62; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:67; Sprunt 1954:13; Oberholser 1974(1):80; Burleigh 1958:89; Stewart and Robbins 1958:49; Palmer 1962:271; Kale 1978:23.



need of management" in Tennessee. Blue Listed by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- locally FC to C in Florida; elsewhere, breed only at single sites in North Carolina and Virginia. Non-breeders occur along the entire coastline in summer. Wintering -- C to A along the coast, south of Cape Hatteras, North Carolina; C in inland Florida; U along the Virginia coast and inland north of Florida.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- generally in swamps or scattered trees along the shore of a lake or other body of water. Foraging -- mainly along the coast, such as in bays, inshore ocean, or inlets; also at large lakes inland.

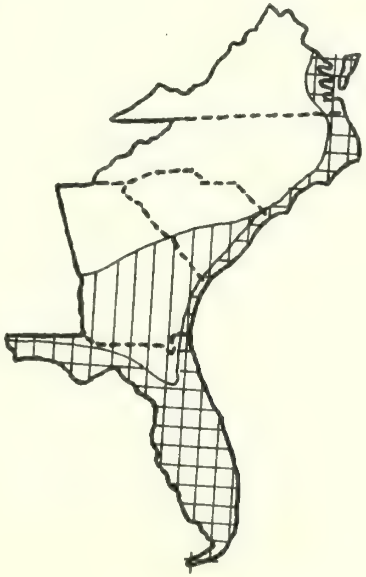
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- trees in or near a large body of water, generally near fresh water. Foraging -- open bodies of water, preferably salt water.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from late December to late October, but the peak is from early March to mid-June. Nests are platforms built in tall trees, usually near the edge of a lake or other body of water; mainly in colonies. The usual clutch size is 3, with 4 infrequent.

FOOD HABITS: They dive from the surface of a body of water and chase fish underwater; crustaceans are rarely taken.

GUILD: tree nesting, aquatic diving carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:55: Lowery 1974:132; Mengel 1965:157; Forbush and May 1939:23; Imhof 1976:65; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:73; Sprunt 1954:18; Oberholser 1974(I):90; Burleigh 1958:92, 93; Stewart and Robbins 1958:50; Palmer 1962:325.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C over most of Florida; U to locally FC elsewhere. Wintering -- C in Florida; mainly U in Georgia and South Carolina; R in North Carolina.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- swamps, river bottoms, swampy edges of lakes and ponds, and trees along marsh edges; primarily in fresh water habitats, but in brackish areas in Florida.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: All seasons -- open or semi-open body of fresh or brackish water, with trees nearby for nesting, perching, or roosting.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) Everglades.

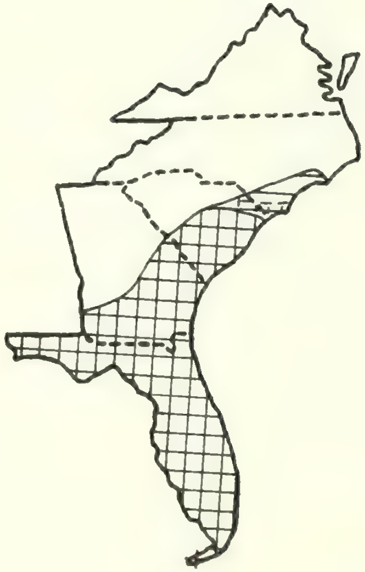
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress, 3(1) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from December to August in Florida, with the peak in the Southeast from mid-March to mid-May. Nests are platforms, built in trees near water, often in colonies with herons and egrets. The usual clutch size is 3 or 4, with 5 infrequent.

FOOD HABITS: Anhingas dive or sink below the surface of a body of water and spear fish with their bills. Some aquatic insects, amphibians, reptiles, and crustaceans are also taken.

GUILD: bush or tree nesting, aquatic diving carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:57; Lowery 1974:135; Mengel 1965:158; Forbush and May 1939:25; Imhof 1976:66; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:74; Sprunt 1954:20; Oberholser 1974(I):95; Burleigh 1958:94; Stewart and Robbins 1958:51; Palmer 1962:357; Ohlendorf et al. 1979.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding Florida, where an average of 100 pairs have nested since 1969; widespread breeders south of the United States; non-breeders are FC to C in summer along the southern two-thirds of the Florida coast; R north of Florida in summer. Wintering -- mostly U in the range, but FC in the keys.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- in mangrove thickets on islands; the only colony in Florida nests in red mangrove thickets. Foraging -- inshore ocean and bays; roost in coastal thickets, particularly in mangroves.

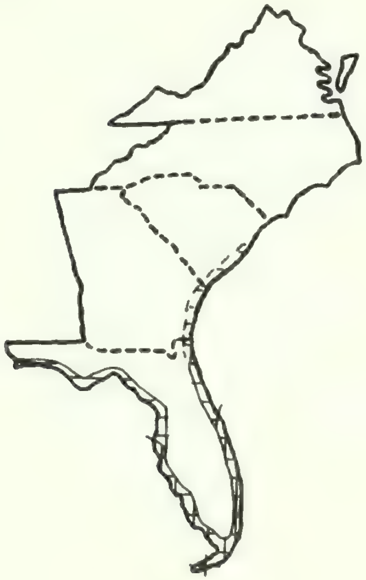
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- dense shrub or tree thickets on coastal islands. Foraging -- coastal areas, with thickets for roosting.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season is poorly known in Florida, but it is mainly from February to April; the young take about 6 months to completely fledge. Nests are typical ones built in mangroves on islands, in a colony. The clutch consists of a single egg.

FOOD HABITS: They forage by swooping over a body of water, usually the ocean, and taking fish from the surface. They also chase other seabirds and force them to drop prey items. Almost all foraging is done in flight.

GUILD: bush nesting, aerial or aquatic pouncing or piratical carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:58; Lowery 1974:136; Forbush and May 1939:26; Imhof 1976:68; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:76; Sprunt 1954:21; Oberholser 1974(1):98; Burleigh 1958:96; Palmer 1962:367; Kale 1978:25.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- nest in colonies; C over much of Florida; mostly U to locally FC northward; post-season dispersal carries birds to the entire region by July. Wintering -- C over most of Florida and northward along the coast; U to FC elsewhere, but R to U in the mountains.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- in colonies in swamps or trees on the edge of a body of water; favor tall trees, and not common in thickets with other waders; mainly in fresh water areas. Foraging -- mudflats, shallow water shores of ponds, lakes, and bays, and in marshes; in fresh or salt water.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- trees near a body of water; usually tall trees in a remote area. Foraging -- shallow shores or mudflats in all salinity ranges.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in nine habitats.

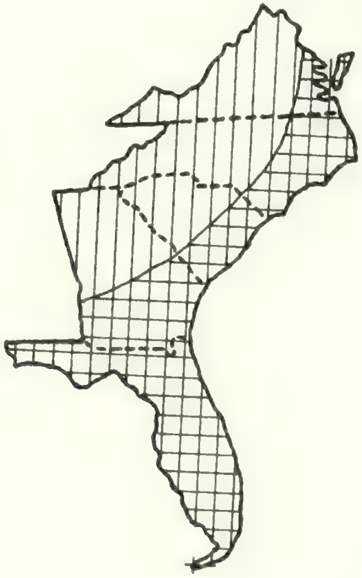
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime, 2(1) Everglades.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season occurs throughout the year in southern Florida, with a peak in that state in February and March. Farther north, most nesting is in April or May. Most nests are built in the canopies of tall trees in swamps or along shores of bodies of water. Clutch size 3-6, most commonly 4, eggs.

FOOD HABITS: The birds wade in shallow water and chase fish, but they also take frogs, snakes, insects, and other aquatic animals.

GUILD: tree nesting, aquatic stalking carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:61; Verner and Boss 1980:96; DeGraaf et al. 1980:104; Lowery 1974:139; Mengel 1965:159; Forbush and May 1939:27, 28; Imhof 1976:70; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:78, 79; Sprunt 1954:23-26; Oberholser 1974(1):100, 101; Burleigh 1958:97, 99; Stewart and Robbins 1958:51; Palmer 1962:383-403; Meyerreicks 1960:86; Ohlendorf et al. 1979; Kale 1978:69.



FC to C in the Piedmont; mostly U in mountains. Wintering -- U to C north of Florida.
Spring arrival -- mid-March to mid-April.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- singly or in small colonies; usually near fresh water, but often near brackish or salt water; in swamps, thickets, or dense woods. Foraging -- on shores, shallow water, marshes, and infrequently on mudflats; often in wooded areas, such as swamps and along creeks.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- moderate to dense woods or shrub thickets near a body of water. Foraging -- shores of bodies of water.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.6(2) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood, 13(1) Everglades.

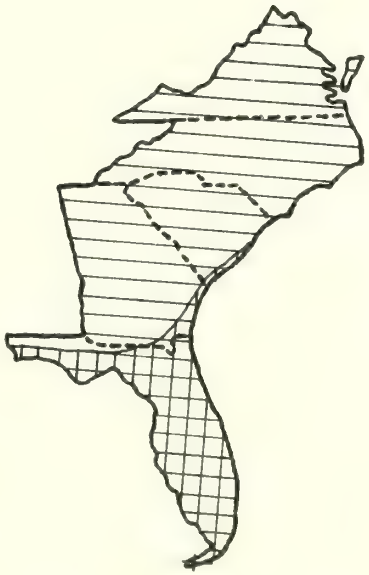
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime, 5(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from late March to late July, with a peak from mid-April to late May. The nests are built in shrubs or trees, most commonly 5 to 20 feet (2-6 m) from the ground, in a swampy place not far from water. The normal clutch size is 4 or 5, ranging from 3 to 6.

FOOD HABITS: These birds forage in shallow water, or from a stick just out of the water, stabbing at fish, reptiles, amphibians, and other aquatic animals in the water.

GUILD: bush or tree nesting, aquatic stalking carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:62; DeGraaf et al. 1980:116; Verner and Boss 1980:97; Lowery 1974:140; Mengel 1965:162; Forbush and May 1939:34; Imhof 1976:71; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:88; Sprunt 1954:34; Oberholser 1974(I):111; Burleigh 1958:109; Stewart and Robbins 1958:53; Palmer 1962:415; Meyerreicks 1960:3; Ohlendorf et al. 1979.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- in colonies; C over most of Florida, as well as northward along the coast; generally U in the interior Coastal Plain north of Florida. Wintering -- U in Virginia; increasing southward to FC in South Carolina, and C over most of Florida. Large scale post-breeding movements; present over most of the region in July and August.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- usually in mixed species colonies; nest in swamps, coastal forests, and especially in thickets and woods on coastal islands. Foraging -- forage on mudflats and shallow water of estuaries, lakes, streams, and other bodies of water; prefer to forage in fresh water.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- woods or thickets near a body of water. Foraging -- shorelines of bodies of water.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in two habitas

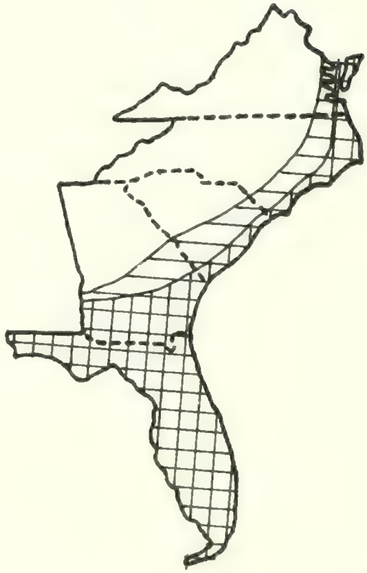
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(2) grass-forb longleaf pine-slash pine, 1(1) Everglades.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from January to September, with the peak from early April to mid-May. The platform nests are built in shrubs or trees, generally 5 to 15 feet (2-5 m) from the ground, and near water; always in colonies. The clutch size is usually 3 to 5, rarely 6.

FOOD HABITS: Feed by wading in shallow water and taking small fish, frogs, snakes, crustaceans, and various insects; at times feed on mudflats.

GUILD: bush or tree nesting, aquatic stalking carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:63; DeGraaf et al. 1980:114; Lowery 1974:140; Mengel 1965:163; Forbush and May 1939:33; Imhof 1976:72; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:87; Sprunt 1954:33; Oberholser 1974(I):110; Burleigh 1958:107; Stewart and Robbins 1958:54; Palmer 1962:428; Ohlendorf et al. 1979; Kale 1978:72.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C over most of the [illegible] local in the inner Coastal Plain. Wintering -- R in the Carolinas, increasing to C in the southern part of Florida. Cattle Egrets spread into the Southeast from tropical regions in the early 1950s; their numbers rose sharply in the 1950s and 1960s. Spring arrival -- mid-March to mid-April; fall departure -- early October to mid-November.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- nest in thickets or swamps with other herons and egrets, frequently on coastal islands; large numbers also nest in inland swamps. Foraging -- mainly in cattle pastures; also in other grassy areas, pond margins, and mudflats; seldom near tidal water.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- thickets or woods near water. Foraging -- cattle pastures or other short grass areas.

SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(2) grass-forb longleaf pine-slash pine, 2.4(8) sapling-poletimber pine savanna, 2.5(2) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine.

REPRODUCTION: The season extends from early April to late July, with June the most common time for egg laying. Nests are built in thickets of trees or shrubs near water, generally 5 to 15 feet (2-5 m) from the ground. The average clutch size is 4 or 5, with 3 being frequent.

FOOD HABITS: Glean insects and other small invertebrates from grass, bare ground, or from the backs of cattle. Most foraging is done in pastures and other grasslands; only infrequently near water.

GUILD: bush or tree nesting, terrestrial gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:64; DeGraaf et al. 1980:110; Lowery 1974:141; Mengel 1965:164; Imhof 1976:74; Sprunt 1954:31; Oberholser 1974(1):113; Stewart and Robbins 1958:55; Palmer 1962:438; Ohlendorf et al. 1979.

Protected in Texas, and Threatened in Alabama [illegible]

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- U, perhaps locally FC, at a few sites in extreme southern Florida; a few pairs nest sparingly north to Tampa Bay. Non-breeding (since they nest mostly in winter, a "wintering" status would be inappropriate) -- mainly U in extreme southern Florida at all seasons; R to U along the entire Gulf coast during most of the year; generally R along the Atlantic coast of Florida, and mainly during the warmer months.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- forage in salt water habitats; shallow bays, creeks, and shores. Nest in thickets on islands, generally in mangroves.

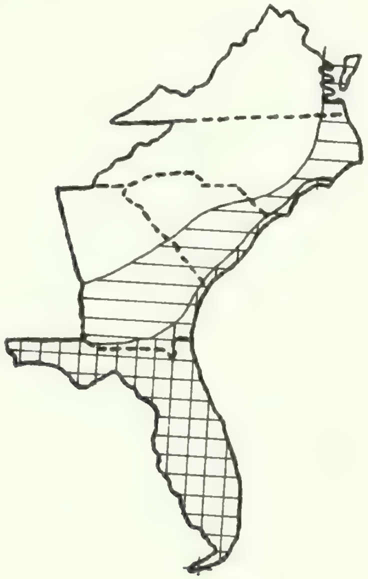
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site in dense thickets of small trees or shrubs on coastal islands, favoring mangroves; foraging habitats must have shallow salt water.

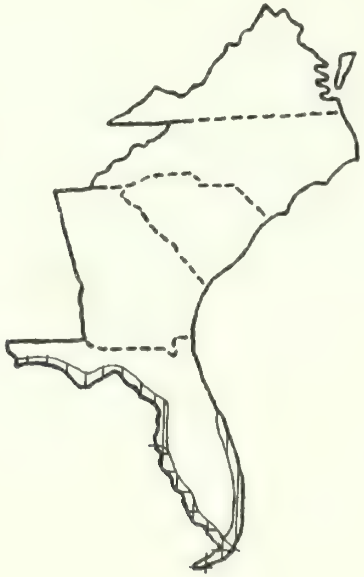
REPRODUCTION: The season extends from December to May, with the peak from January to March. The nests are built 5 to 15 feet (2-5 m) from the ground in dense coastal thickets, mainly in mangroves. The clutch size is generally 3 or 4, ranging from 2 to 6.

FOOD HABITS: These egrets wade in shallow salt water and stalk after small fish, frogs, tadpoles, and occasionally crustaceans.

GUILD: bush or tree nesting, aquatic stalking carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:65; Lowery 1974:143; Forbush and May 1939:31; Imhof 1976:77; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:84; Sprunt 1954:29; Oberholser 1974(1):106; Burleigh 1958:104; Palmer 1962:448; Meyerreicks 1960:106; Ohlendorf et al. 1979; Kale 1978:51.





local in the Inner Coastal Plain. Wintering -- U to FC in Virginia; FC in the Carolinas; increasing to C in Georgia and Florida, and especially so in southern Florida. Light to moderate post-breeding dispersal throughout the region from July to September.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- in thickets of trees or shrubs on coastal islands, in remote swamps, or along a lakeshore in tall trees. Foraging -- in shallow water of ponds, lakes, marshes, and bays, and on mudflats; favor fresh water, but commonly use salt water.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- trees (or rarely shrubs) near a large body of water. Foraging -- shores of bodies of water.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in four habitats.

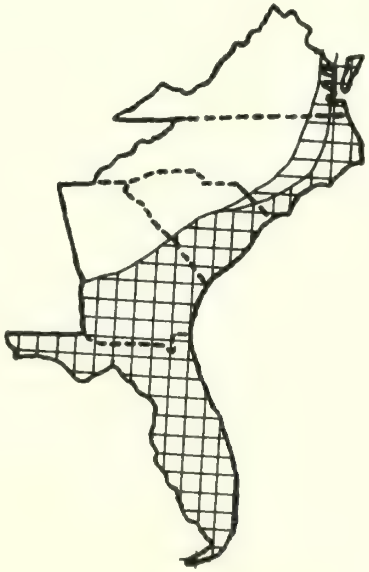
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime, 3(1) sapling-poletimber bay swamp-pocosin.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from late December to July, occasionally into the fall in Florida. The peak is from late March to late May. The nests are typical for waders, stick platforms built in trees, usually 20 to 40 feet (6-12 m) from the ground. The clutch size seldom is other than 3 or 4.

FOOD HABITS: Forage in shallow water, taking fish, frogs, small snakes, crayfish, and many other items.

GUILD: tree nesting, aquatic stalking carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:65; DeGraaf et al. 1980:106; Lowery 1974:144; Mengel 1965:164; Forbush and May 1939:29; Imhof 1976:77; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:81; Sprunt 1954:26; Oberholser 1974(1):103; Burleigh 1958:100; Stewart and Robbins 1958:55; Palmer 1962:406; Ohlendorf et al. 1979; Kale 1978:73.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C over most of Florida, and on the coast elsewhere; R to U inland north of Florida. Wintering -- U in Virginia, increasing to FC in southern North Carolina, and becoming C over most of Florida. Very light post-breeding dispersal to the remainder of the region, seldom reaching the mountains.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- shrub or tree thickets on islands, lake margins, or in swamps; almost always with flocks of other waders. Foraging -- in shallow water of ponds, lakes, marshes, bays, and other bodies of water; prefer fresh water, but often in brackish and salt water.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- thickets of shrubs or trees near water. Foraging -- shores of bodies of water.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in two habitats.

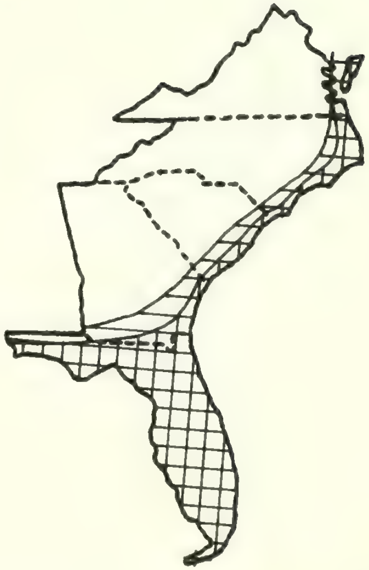
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(2) sawtimber live oak maritime.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from mid-January to late July, with a peak from mid-April to mid-May. The nests are placed in trees in thickets, mainly 10 to 20 feet (3-6 m) from the ground; almost always in colonies with other species of waders. The clutch size ranges from 2 to 5, with 4 most common.

FOOD HABITS: Like most waders, Snowies forage in shallow water by stalking small fish, crustaceans, frogs, aquatic insects, and other items.

GUILD: bush or tree nesting, aquatic stalking carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:66; DeGraaf et al. 1980:108; Lowery 1974:147; Mengel 1965:165; Forbush and May 1939:30; Imhof 1976:79; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:83; Sprunt 1954:28; Oberholser 1974(1):104; Burleigh 1958:102; Stewart and Robbins 1958:56; Palmer 1962:456; Meyerreicks 1960:125; Ohlendorf et al. 1979; Kale 1978:75.



Clemson University Library

LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: Florida listed as Special Concern.

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C over most of Florida, and elsewhere along the coast; do not breed inland north of Florida, except at Okefenokee National Wildlife Refuge in Georgia, and casually at Eufaula Refuge in that state. Wintering -- U in Virginia, FC in the Carolinas, and C over most of Florida. Light post-breeding dispersal throughout the region, seldom reaching the mountains.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- thickets of shrubs or trees on islands or lake shores; not numerous in swamps; most common near the coast. Foraging -- shallow water and mudflats, usually in salt water, such as in bays and in salt marshes.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- thickets near water, usually near the coast. Foraging -- shores of bodies of water.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 2(1) Everglades.

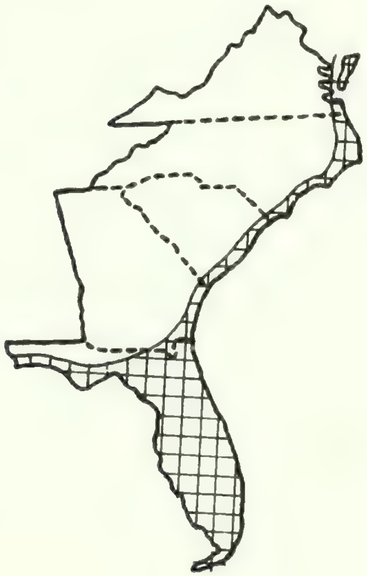
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime, 1(1) Everglades.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from January to mid-August, with the peak from early April to early June. The nests are built in shrubs or trees, mainly in colonies with other species of waders. The clutch size is commonly 3, 4, or 5, rarely 2 or 6.

FOOD HABITS: Forage mainly in shallow salt or brackish water, taking small fish, frogs, crayfish, and numerous other items.

GUILD: bush or tree nesting, aquatic stalking carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:68; DeGraaf et al. 1980:112; Lowery 1974:147; Forbush and May 1939:32; Imhof 1976:80; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:85; Sprunt 1954:32; Oberholser 1974(I):108; Burleigh 1958:105; Stewart and Robbins 1958:57; Palmer 1962:464; Ohlendorf et al. 1979; Kale 1978:77.



LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: State listed as [illegible] management" in Tennessee; and Special Concern in Alabama (unofficially). Blue Listed by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C over most of Florida, and elsewhere near the coast; U inland in Georgia, but casual or accidental as a breeder inland in the Carolinas and Virginia. Wintering -- essentially the same as the breeding status, though some withdrawal southward from inland Georgia sites. Inland post-breeding dispersal is very rare; in fact, most individuals inland are migrants to and from breeding areas to the north of the region.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- dense woods or thickets, near a lake or bay. Foraging -- generally nocturnal, seldom seen during the day; shallow water of marshes, bays, lakes, and ponds. Occur in both fresh and salt water.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- dense thickets near a body of water. Foraging -- shores of bodies of water.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in one habitat.

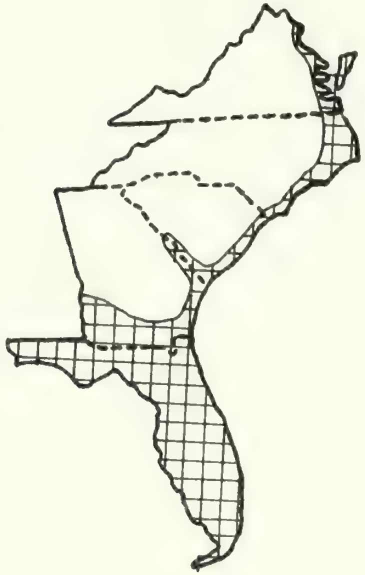
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sawtimber live oak maritime, 26(1) Everglades.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from mid-March to mid-June, with the peak from mid-April to mid-May. The nests are built in dense vegetation in thickets, mainly from 10 to 30 feet (3-6 m) above the ground; almost always in colonies. The usual clutch size is 3 to 5, ranging from 2 to 6.

FOOD HABITS: Forage in shallow water for fish, crustaceans, aquatic insects, frogs, and other items. They feed only at night and spend the day in dense thickets.

GUILD: bush or tree nesting, nocturnal aquatic stalking carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:68; Verner and Boss 1980:98; DeGraaf et al. 1980:118; Lowery 1974:149; Mengel 1965:166; Forbush and May 1939:35; Imhof 1976:80; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:89; Sprunt 1954:35; Oberholser 1974(I):115; Burleigh 1958:111; Stewart and Robbins 1958:58; Palmer 1962:472; Ohlendorf et al. 1979; Kale 1978:78.



and sporadic in the Piedmont, and in the Virginia [illegible] northern Florida; R in Georgia and South Carolina. Light post-breeding dispersal inland. Spring arrival -- late March to mid-April; fall departure -- October to mid-November.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- favor swamps and riverbottom forests; less numerous in coastal thickets or woods along a lakeshore. Foraging -- both nocturnal and diurnal; mainly use freshwater habitats: swamps, streams, marshes, lakeshores, and other bodies of water; occur in wooded areas more frequently than most waders.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- dense woods or thickets near water, preferably in swamps. Foraging -- shores of bodies of water.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in two habitats.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from late March to mid-July, with a peak from mid-April to early May. The nests are built in shrubs or trees, mainly in a swamp. They seldom nest in large colonies. Clutch sizes are generally 3 to 5, ranging from 2 to 7.

FOOD HABITS: Feed in shallow water, and take mostly crustaceans (such as crabs); other items include fish, frogs, and insects.

GUILD: bush or tree nesting, aquatic stalking carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:69; DeGraaf et al. 1980:120; Lowery 1974:151; Mengel 1965:167; Forbush and May 1939:37; Imhof 1976:81; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:90; Sprunt 1954:37; Oberholser 1974(I):117; Burleigh 1958:113; Stewart and Robbins 1958:59; Palmer 1962:484; Ohlendorf et al. 1979; Kale 1978:79.

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- FC to C over most of Florida, and in coastal areas farther north; generally R to U, with a limited amount of habitat, in the inland portions of Virginia, the Carolinas, and Georgia. Wintering -- FC to C in a few areas of southern Florida, but mostly U. Spring arrival -- early April to late April; fall departure -- poorly known, but probably mid-September to mid-October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- generally in freshwater marshes, especially where the vegetation is at least 3 feet (1 m) high; commonly in cattails (Typha spp.). Common in brackish marshes, but infrequent in salt marshes.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Marshes with tall herbaceous cover, preferably in fresh water.

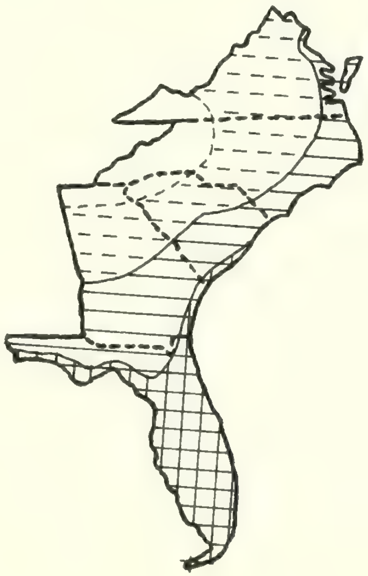
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 4.5(2) grass-forb bay swamp-pocosin.

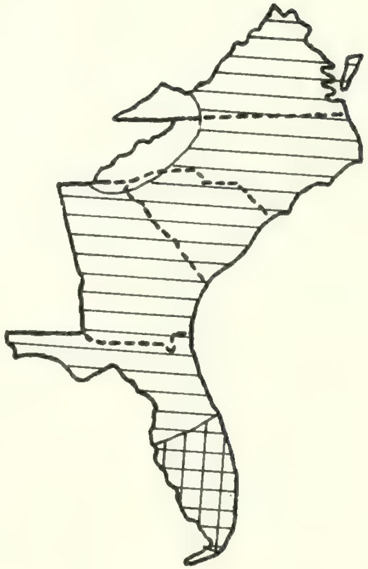
REPRODUCTION: The season extends from late March to mid-July, with the peak from late April to early June. The nests are platforms built in marshes, generally 1 to 2 feet (.3-.6 m) above the water. The typical clutch size is 4 or 5, ranging from 3 to 6.

FOOD HABITS: Forage in marshes, taking small fish, frogs, tadpoles, slugs, leeches, and many other animals. Prey are taken from shallow water, mud, or marsh vegetation.

GUILD: ground nesting, herb or aquatic gleaning carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:70; DeGraaf et al. 1980:124; Lowery 1974:151; Mengel 1965:169; Forbush and May 1939:40; Imhof 1976:83; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:96; Sprunt 1954:40; Oberholser 1974(I):120; Burleigh 1958:117; Stewart and Robbins 1958:60; Palmer 1962:491; Ohlendorf et al. 1979; Kale 1978:81.





LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: State listed as Rare in West Virginia. Blue Listed by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- mostly R to U within the range; R in coastal Virginia and North Carolina; possibly breed in South Carolina and Georgia, but not regularly. Wintering -- U in coastal Virginia; U to FC in the Carolinas and Georgia near the coast, but R inland; FC over most of Florida. Majority of the population nest to the north of the region. Fall arrival -- mid-September to mid-October; spring departure -- late April to early May.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- mainly in extensive freshwater marshes, where the vegetation is over 3 feet (1 m) high, and especially so in the breeding season. At other seasons occur in all types of marshes, even where salty, but prefer fresh water.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Marshes with tall vegetation, showing a preference for fresh water.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in one habitat.

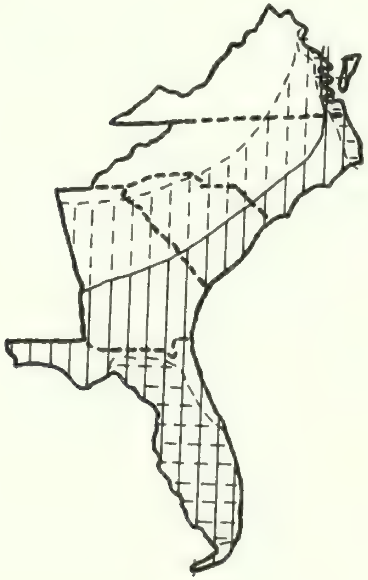
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 5(1) Everglades.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from early May to early July, with a peak from mid-May to mid-June. The platform nests are built in marshes, usually only a few inches above the water. The clutch size ranges from 3 to 7, with 4 or 5 usual.

FOOD HABITS: Feed in marshes, taking fish, crayfish, insects, frogs, salamanders, and other animals from shallow water, mud, or marsh vegetation.

GUILD: ground nesting, herb or aquatic gleaning or stalking carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:72; DeGraaf et al. 1980:122; Lowery 1974:153; Mengel 1965:170; Forbush and May 1939:38; Imhof 1976:83; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:95; Sprunt 1954:38; Oberholser 1974(1):119; Burleigh 1958:115; Stewart and Robbins 1958:61; Palmer 1962:499; Ohlendorf et al. 1979.



in South Carolina, Protected in Texas, and Special Concern in Alabama (unofficially). Blue Listed by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- U to FC within the range, locally C at a few rookeries; nest north to Okefenokee Swamp in Georgia, and on very rare occasions possibly in coastal South Carolina. Non-breeding -- during the warmer months, FC over much of Florida, and northward along the coast to central South Carolina; small numbers occur on the coast north to southern North Carolina, and inland over the southern halves of South Carolina and Georgia. In the colder months (when most breeding occurs), most individuals are in Florida; R on the coasts of Georgia and South Carolina. Stork numbers have declined drastically in recent decades, largely because of fluctuating water levels in the Florida wetlands.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- in swamps, tall trees along lakeshores or thickets of trees or large shrubs; mainly near fresh water, but also in coastal areas. Foraging -- favor fresh water in Florida, but frequent all salinity types, and mainly in salt water north of Florida; habitats include swamps, lake shores, pools, streams, estuaries, and mudflats.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- trees (or rarely shrubs) near a large body of water. Foraging -- areas of shallow water, preferably where 6 to 10 inches (1-2 dm) deep.

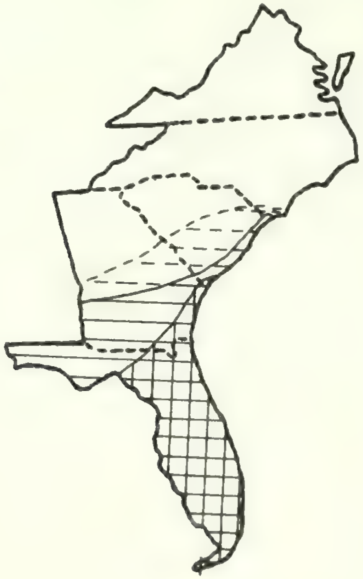
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) Everglades.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from mid-December to late April, with the peak from late January to mid-March. The stick platform nests are usually placed high in trees in a swamp. Three eggs are normal, with 2 or 4 rather uncommon

FOOD HABITS: Storks feed in shallow water, moving the bill around in the water until it touches a prey item, when the bill then quickly grabs the animal in a reflex action. Prey items are mainly fish, but also frogs, tadpoles, crustaceans, and others.

GUILD: tree nesting, aquatic stalking or gleaning carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:73; Lowery 1974:154; Mengel 1965:171; Forbus and May 1939:41; Imhof 1976:84; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:97; Sprunt 1954:41; Oberholser 1974(1):124; Burleigh 1958:118; Stewart and Robbins 1958:63; Palmer 1962:509; Ohlendorf et al. 1979; Kale 1978:3.



northern North Carolina; decreasing southward to U to FC in Georgia; C over much of Florida; R along the coast from Georgia to Virginia. Post-breeding dispersal is very rare inland. These birds have become much more numerous in this century, first in Florida, and within the past several decades in the northern part of the range.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- primarily thickets of small trees or shrubs near water, and commonly near the coast. Foraging -- mostly in shallow water, such as ponds, pools, marshes, and estuaries, at times in grassy areas; feed in water of any salinity.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- thickets near a body of water. Foraging -- shores of bodies of water; occasionally in grasslands.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from late March to late June, with a peak from mid-April to late May. The nests are generally placed in shrubs or trees in thickets near water, and very seldom on the ground. The clutch size is usually 3 or 4.

FOOD HABITS: Forage in shallow water, on mud, or occasionally in grassy places. They glean or probe for food in mud or water, taking crayfish, aquatic insects, and other invertebrates, but relatively few fish are consumed.

GUILD: bush or tree nesting, aquatic gleaning or probing insectivore or carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:74; DeGraaf et al. 1980:126; Lowery 1974:156; Forbush and May 1939:42; Imhof 1976:86; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:98; Sprunt 1954:43; Oberholser 1974(1):126; Burleigh 1958:120; Stewart and Robbins 1958:63; Palmer 1962:515; Ohlendorf et al. 1979; Kale 1978:82.

generally U to FC northward along the coast. Light to moderate post-breeding dispersal to most of the region, but few mountain records; mainly July and August. The population of White Ibises has increased greatly over the past several decades, especially north of Florida.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- thickets or forests near water, especially fresh water; commonly nest in swamps and bottomlands, as well as in coastal thickets. Foraging -- in shallow water of bays, streams, ponds, swamps, and marshes; occur on both fresh and salt water shores.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- thickets of trees or shrubs near a body of water. Foraging -- shores of bodies of water.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in two habitats.

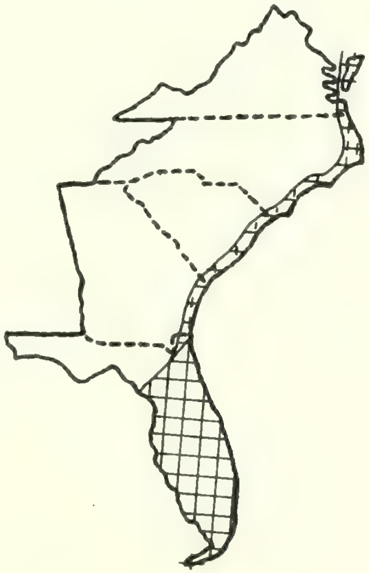
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress, 14(1) Everglades.

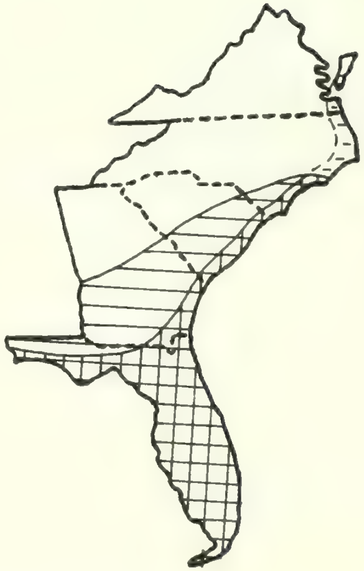
REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from January (in south Florida) to late July, with the peak from late March to mid-May. The nests are placed in trees or shrubs, usually at low or medium heights, in dense vegetation near water. Clutch size 2-5, usually 3-4.

FOOD HABITS: Forage in shallow water, on mudflats, and rarely in grassy areas, where they glean or probe. Primary food is crustaceans; fish, frogs, aquatic insects, etc., are also taken.

GUILD: tree or bush nesting, aquatic gleaning or probing carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:75; Lowery 1974:158; Forbush and May 1939:44; Imhof 1976:89; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:100; Sprunt 1954:45; Oberholser 1974(1):128; Burleigh 1958:120; Palmer 1962:522; Ohlendorf et al. 1979; Kale 1978:83.





LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: Florida listed as Special Concern.

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- FC in extreme southern Florida; nest in small numbers northward on the Gulf Coast to Tampa Bay. Nonbreeding -- occur regularly, often FC, over much of the southern half of Florida throughout the year; most numerous in coastal areas; R to VR elsewhere in Florida, with a few reaching the Georgia coast in the summer. Numbers of these birds declined greatly in Florida between 1880 and 1950, but the population is increasing steadily at the present, though still far below pre-1880 numbers.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- dense thickets of small trees along the coast, preferably on islands of mangroves. Foraging -- generally in salt or brackish water; shallow water of bays, tidal creeks, ponds, and other bodies of water.

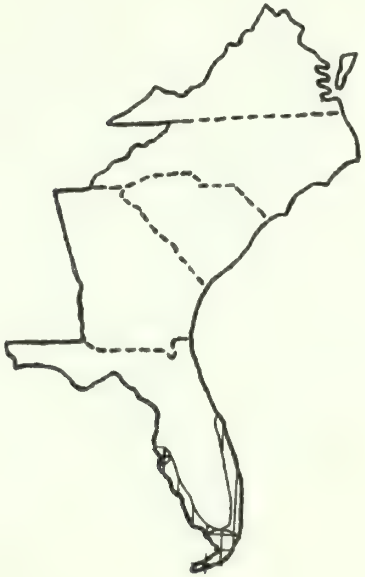
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- thickets of small trees on coastal islands. Foraging -- shallow water, generally salt or brackish water.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from November to January, peaking in mid-November to early January. The bulky, stick nests are placed in mangroves or other trees, generally within 30 feet (9 m) of the ground. Clutch size 2-5, typically 3.

FOOD HABITS: Forage in shallow water by sweeping the bill from side to side, straining or picking prey items from the water. Brackish water is favored. Prey consist primarily of small fish; some small aquatic insects, crustaceans, and a few plants are also taken.

GUILD: bush or tree nesting, aquatic filter-feeding or gleaning insectivore or carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:76; Lowery 1974:160; Forbush and May 1939:45; Imhof 1976:91; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:101; Sprunt 1954:47; Oberholser 1974(1):132; Burleigh 1958:122; Palmer 1962:534; Allen 1966; Ohlendorf et al. 1979; Kale 1978:52.



Plain and Piedmont; [illegible] but U in the North Carolina mountains. Wintering -- C over much of the Coastal Plain, U in the Piedmont, and VR in the mountains.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- in a cavity, such as a nest box or a tree cavity, in a swamp, wooded stream, or at a lake or pond. Foraging -- strictly in fresh water, and usually near wooded areas; open swamps, wooded lakes, streams, or in marshes.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- a cavity near a body of fresh water. Foraging -- body of fresh water, usually close to wooded cover.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1.6(2) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress, 13(3) sawtimber oak-gum-cypress.

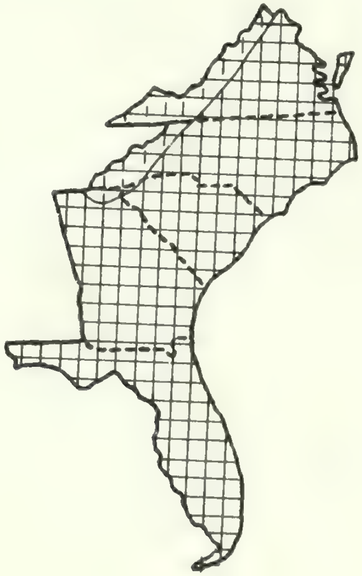
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood, 4(1) sapling-poletimber bay swamp-pocosin, 4(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from late February to late July, with peak in late March to late April. Nest in cavities, such as abandoned Pileated Woodpecker holes, other large tree cavities, or in nest boxes; always near or over water. Clutch size 9-14, averaging 11-12.

FOOD HABITS: Forage in shallow fresh water, usually near deciduous woods or other vegetation. Glean food from water surface, from vegetation, etc. Summer diet includes aquatic insects, other invertebrates, as well as fish, tadpoles, and plants. Winter diet is primarily plant matter, often acorns.

GUILD: cavity nesting, aquatic diving or gleaning omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:90; Scott et al. 1977:8; Verner and Boss 1980:108; DeGraaf et al. 1980:150; Lowery 1974:190; Mengel 1965:186; Forbush and May 1939:70; Imhof 1976:111; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:124; Sprunt 1954:73; Oberholser 1974(1):171; Burleigh 1958:145; Stewart and Robbins 1958:85; Johnsgard 1978:160; Bellrose 1976:170; Palmer 1976(111):252.



-- generally FC over most of the Coastal Plain, U to locally FC in the Piedmont of the region. Fall arrival -- late October to mid-November; spring departure -- late March to mid-April.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- in a cavity (usually in a tree or bird box), in a swamp or bottomland forest. Foraging -- usually in freshwater swamps, lakes, or ponds; infrequent in brackish water, but rare in salt water. Often in open bodies of water in winter, but close to wooded cover during the breeding season.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- a cavity near water in wooded country. Foraging -- body of water, usually fresh water.

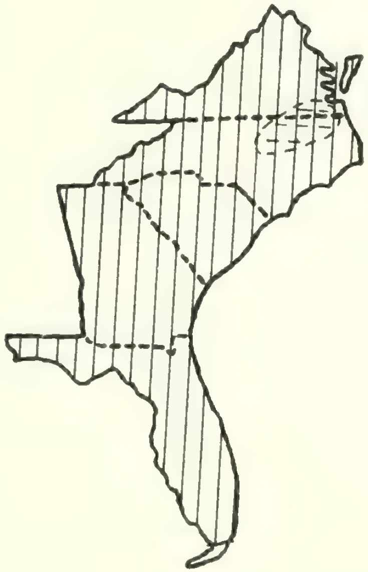
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) grass-forb longleaf pine-slash pine.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding occurs from mid-February to late April, with peak in early to mid-March. Nests are placed in cavities such as nest boxes or abandoned Pileated Woodpecker holes. Clutch size 6-18, usually 8-12.

FOOD HABITS: Dive beneath the water surface of a lake, pond, or swamp for small fish, crayfish, other crustaceans, aquatic insects, etc.

GUILD: cavity nesting, aquatic diving carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:99; Scott et al. 1977:12; Verner and Boss 1980:117; DeGraaf et al. 1980:166; Lowery 1974:207; Mengel 1965:197; Forbush and May 1939:89; Imhof 1976:124; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:145; Sprunt 1954:86; Oberholser 1974(I):195; Burleigh 1958:163; Stewart and Robbins 1958:102; Johnsgard 1978:346; Bellrose 1976:437; Palmer 1976(III):448.



and essentially throughout Virginia; FC to locally C in the Piedmont and mountains of Georgia and the Carolinas. Moderate to heavy spring and fall migration through the region, mainly of birds that breed to the north of the region and winter primarily in the southern portion of the region.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- usually in a woodland, or in a remote area; commonly on the ground in a wooded thicket, in an old barn or shed, or on ledges of cliffs. Foraging -- occur over many habitats as they soar, searching for carrion; often over mountains or woodlands, and somewhat less so around extensive fields. These birds are not associated with any single habitat.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- a sheltered spot on the ground or on a ledge, in many situations. Foraging -- no essential habitat requirements.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in 12 habitats; 0.5(1) sawtimber loblolly pine-shortleaf pine.

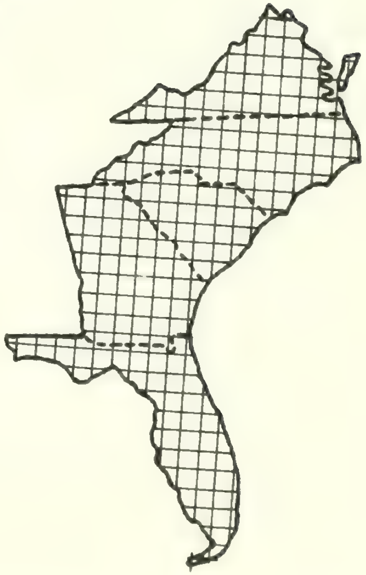
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(3) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood, 6(1) Everglades.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from March to June, with peak in early April to early May. Do not build nests, but lay the clutch of two eggs on cliffs, in caves, in hollow logs, in old sheds, or beneath the vegetation of thickets.

FOOD HABITS: Turkey Vultures, usually alone or in pairs, soar and glide on set wings searching for their primarily carrion prey, generally singly. Possibly locate carrion by smell; rarely kill live prey.

GUILD: cavity, ground, or ledge nesting, terrestrial soaring scavenger.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:14; Potter et al. 1980:102; Verner and Boss 1980:119; DeGraaf et al. 1980:172; Lowery 1974:213; Mengel 1965:200; Forbush and May 1939:94; Imhof 1976:128; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:149; Sprunt 1954:90; Oberholser 1974(I):201; Burleigh 1958:168; Stewart and Robbins 1958:104; Bent 1937:12.



LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: State listed as Rare in West Virginia, [illegible] of management" in Tennessee. Blue Listed by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: All seasons -- C throughout Florida, the Coastal Plain of Georgia and South Carolina, and most of Virginia; FC in the Coastal Plain of North Carolina; U to locally FC in the Piedmont of the Carolinas and Georgia; VR to absent in the mountains of North Carolina and extreme western Virginia, and in the Florida Keys. Essentially non-migratory.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- mainly in remote woodlands, with the nest on the ground in a thicket, in a hollow log, in a shed, or in many other spots. Foraging -- soar over a wide variety of habitats, from woods to open country; frequently feed in cities and towns in the southern part of the region.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- a sheltered spot in many situations, but usually in a forest. Foraging -- no essential habitat requirements, though generally not in rugged mountainous areas.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in four habitats.

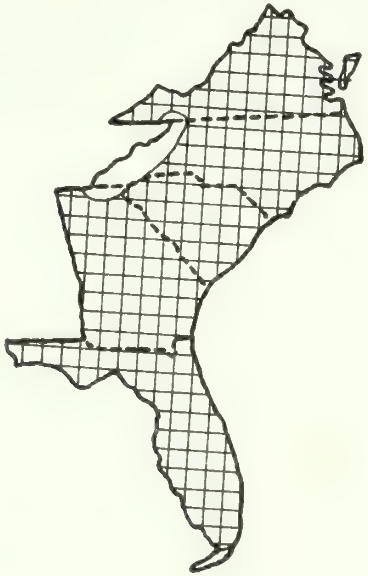
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber bay swamp-pocosin, 4(2) grass-forb loblolly pine-shortleaf pine.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding occurs from January to July, with peak egg-laying activity from early March to mid-April. Build no nests, but lay the two egg clutch on cliffs, in caves, hollow trees, logs, sheds, or under thickets.

FOOD HABITS: Often feed in large flocks on carrion detected visually while soaring. Prey is primarily carrion, and occasionally young animals, garbage, etc. They are reputed to have a weak sense of smell.

GUILD: cavity, ground, or ledge nesting, terrestrial soaring scavenger.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:15; Potter et al. 1980:103; Lowery 1974:216; Mengel 1965:201; Forbush and May 1939:95; Imhof 1976:129; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:150; Sprunt 1954:92; Oberholser 1974(1):203; Burleigh 1958:170; Stewart and Robbins 1958:106; Bent 1937:28.



seldom more than one or two [illegible] Presumably somewhat more numerous in the 19th Century, but those have always been rare birds in Florida. Most occur in Mexico and Central America.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- open, savanna-like habitats with scattered trees; prairies, marshes, and other fields.

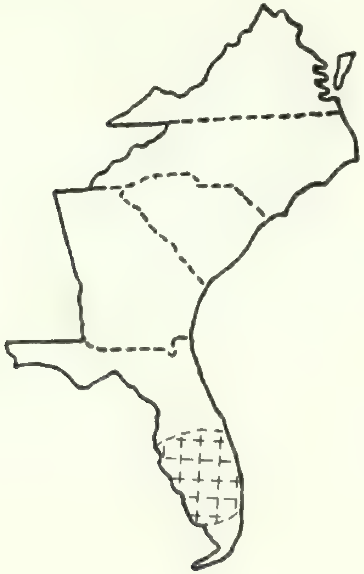
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Scattered trees or saplings in extensive open country.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from February to May, with peak in April. Nests are built in trees 10-30 feet (3-9 m) high. Clutch size 4-5, sometimes 3.

FOOD HABITS: Forage in slow flight, often hovering, at low heights over open areas. Drop onto the ground chiefly for small mammals; small birds, lizards, amphibians, and large insects, etc., are also taken.

GUILD: tree nesting, pouncing carnivore on many substrates.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:104; Verner and Boss 1980:121; Lowery 1974:219; Forbush and May 1939:96; Imhof 1976:130; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:152; Sprunt 1954:93; Oberholser 1974(1):206; Bent 1937:54; Kale 1978:54.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding, [illegible] Florida; mostly [illegible] and local in the Georgia and South Carolina portion of the range; one or two pairs possibly nest in coastal North Carolina. Winter to the south of the United States. Spring arrival -- late February to mid-March; fall departure -- mid-August to late September.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Prefer a mixture of swamp forests and marshes; feed over marshes and ponds, as well as in open swamps; usually avoid dry or upland habitats.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Mature trees (either in forests or in the open) adjacent to marshes or ponds; usually a swamp is essential.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from mid-March to mid-May, with peak in April. Nests are usually built at great heights in living trees, often in pines; in forests near water. Clutch size 2, or less commonly 3.

FOOD HABITS: Forage in the air by gracefully swooping and gliding. Snatch prey from foliage and branches of trees, and from other substrates; often eat on the wing. Diet is primarily small reptiles, amphibians, large insects, and some nestling birds.

GUILD: tree nesting, aerial or soaring insectivore, or pouncing carnivore on various substrates.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:105; Lowery 1974:219; Mengel 1965:204; Forbush and May 1939:97; Imhof 1976:131; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:153; Sprunt 1954:94; Oberholser 1974(1):208; Burleigh 1958:172; Stewart and Robbins 1958:107; Bent 1937:44.

several sites in North Carolina. Winter to the south of the United States. Spring arrival -- mid-April to late April; fall departure -- late August to late September.

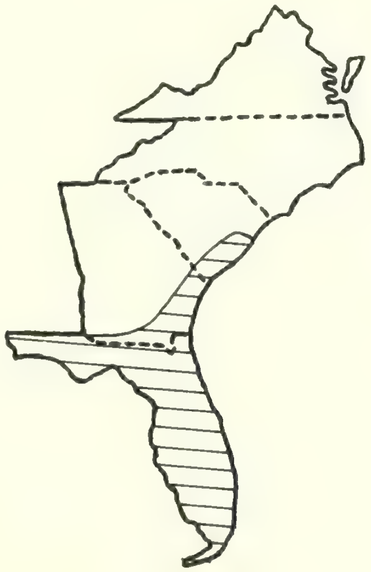
PRIMARY HABITATS: Primarily in extensive riverbottom hardwoods, where the nests are built, but feed over adjacent fields or marshes. Much foraging is done in the vicinity of cultivated fields, as well as over bottomland woods.

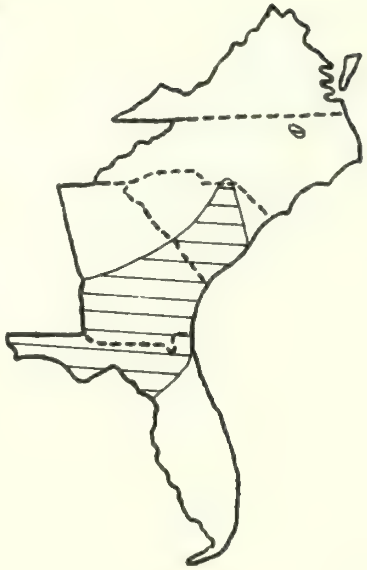
REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from May to July, with peak in early June. Nests built high in canopies of trees, sometimes over 100 feet (30 m), in forests. Clutch size 1-2, sometimes 3.

FOOD HABITS: While on the wing over open areas or forests, Mississippi Kites capture and eat their primarily large insect prey. Occasionally take reptiles and amphibians.

GUILD: tree nesting, aerial insectivore at various heights.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:105; Lowery 1974:220; Mengel 1965:204; Forbush and May 1939:98; Imhof 1976:132; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:155; Sprunt 1954:97; Oberholser 1974(1):209; Burleigh 1958:173; Bent 1937:63.





LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: Federally listed as Endangered. State listed as Endangered in Florida.

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: All seasons -- R and restricted, only in southern Florida, where perhaps 100 pairs are present. Most "Snail Kites" occur from Mexico and the West Indies south to South America. Non-migratory, but gregarious and somewhat nomadic.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- extensive freshwater marshes, usually where scattered shrubs or small trees are present, in addition to areas of shallow open water.

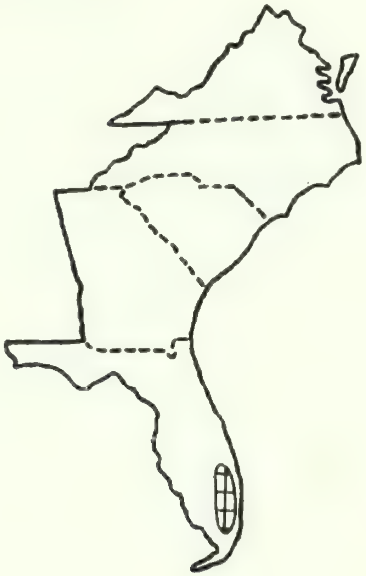
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Freshwater marshes where Apple Snails (Pomacea paludosa) are present.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from mid-February to mid-July with peak in mid-March to late April. Nests are placed in marsh grasses, shrubs, or small trees. The birds readily accept artificial platforms into which the nests have been transferred. Clutch size 2-4, usually 3.

FOOD HABITS: Feed almost entirely on large freshwater snails, Pomacea paludosa, which are located while the birds fly slowly low over the marshes, and are captured by pouncing. Captured prey are taken to a tree or feeding post for eating.

GUILD: bush or ground nesting, aquatic or herb pouncing carnivore.

REFERENCES: Forbush and May 1939:98; Sprunt 1954:98; Oberholser 1974(1):211; Stieglitz and Thompson 1967; Bent 1937:70; Sykes 1979; Kale 1978:4.



(unofficially). Blue Listed by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- mostly U in the mountains; R in the Piedmont; VR to R in the Coastal Plain of Virginia. Wintering -- FC in coastal areas; mostly U to FC elsewhere. Heavy fall migration along the coast and in the mountains, less so elsewhere. Fall arrival -- mid-August to late September; spring departure -- mid-April to early May.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- in a wide variety of forests, but generally where extensive. Most numerous in mixed forest, but not partial to hardwoods or conifers. Foraging -- a mixture of woods and open country is preferred, especially a complex of woodlots and openings; occur in most types of woods, but in winter mainly in pines.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- forests of many types; few strict requirements. Foraging -- mixture of woods and open country.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sawtimber loblolly pine-shortleaf pine.

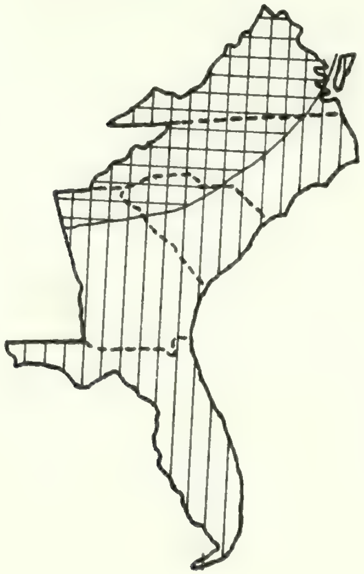
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(2) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood, 3.5(4) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from early May to late June with peak in late May. Nests are hidden in the canopies of large forest trees, often pines. Clutch size 3-8, usually 4-5.

FOOD HABITS: Sharpies are bird hawks, chasing and catching small birds on the wing in woodlands. Seldom forage in open areas. Small mammals, lizards, and insects are also taken.

GUILD: tree nesting, aerial or hawking carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:106; Verner and Boss 1980:123; DeGraaf et al. 1980:176; Lowery 1974:223; Mengel 1965:206; Forbush and May 1939:101; Imhof 1976:134; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:156; Sprunt 1954:102; Oberholser 1974(1):214; Burleigh 1958:175; Stewart and Robbins 1958:108; Bent 1937:95.



(unofficially). Blue Listed by Tate (1981)

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- U in the mountains and Virginia Piedmont; generally R elsewhere, south to central Florida. Wintering -- mostly U throughout the region; not numerous anywhere. Moderate migration of individuals into the Southeast in the fall; generally more numerous everywhere in winter than in summer.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- in forests of a wide variety, either in an extensive stand or near an opening. Foraging -- usually where forests or woodlots are interspersed with fields and other openings; mainly in mixed woods or pinewoods in winter.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- in a wide variety of forested habitats. Foraging -- woodlands with scattered fields or other openings.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in four habitats, 1(3) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood.

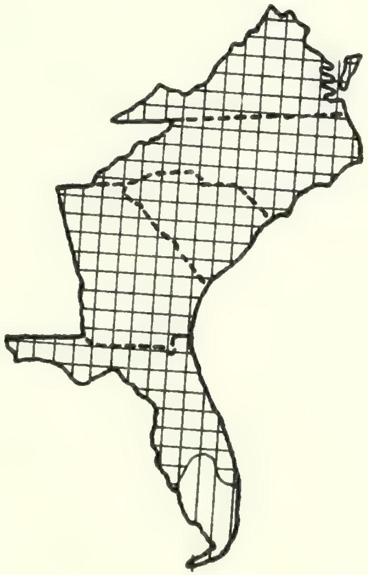
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber bay swamp-pocosin, 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime, 0.5(2) grass-forb or shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood, 1(2) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from early April to late May, with peak occurring during early to mid-May. Nests are placed in crotches of limbs well up in forest trees. Clutch size 3-6, usually 4-5.

FOOD HABITS: Chase and catch medium-sized (e.g. Robin-sized) birds on the wing or from other substrates, usually in forests, occasionally in open areas. Lizards and amphibians are also taken.

GUILD: tree nesting, aerial or hawking carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:108; Verner and Boss 1980:124; DeGraaf et al. 1980:178; Lowery 1974:224; Mengel 1965:207; Forbush and May 1939:104; Imhof 1976:135; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:158; Sprunt 1954:104; Oberholser 1974(1):216; Burleigh 1958:177; Stewart and Robbins 1958:109; Bent 1937:112; Kale 1978:85.



Florida at all seasons.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- in mature, usually deciduous or mixed forests; primarily in uplands. Foraging -- prefer a mixture of forests and extensive open fields; generally in deciduous or mixed forests. In winter favor more open habitats than during the nesting season.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- mature forests, mainly in upland hardwoods. Foraging -- mixture of forests and open country.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in seven habitats, 1(1) sawtimber cove hardwoods.

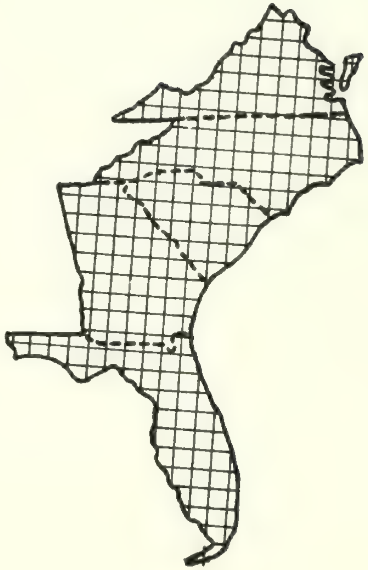
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(6) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood, 3(1) grass-forb oak-hickory.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from mid-February to mid-June, with a peak from mid-March to mid-April. The nests are placed in crotches of trees, usually large ones, in woodland. They are used year after year, if not taken over by another species (such as Great Horned Owl). Two is the usual clutch size; 3 eggs are rare.

FOOD HABITS: Feed on rodents and other small to medium-sized mammals, with some herps and birds taken. The birds sight prey from soaring flight or from a perch and swoop down on the animals.

GUILD: tree nesting, terrestrial or herb soaring or pouncing carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:109; Verner and Boss 1980:125; DeGraaf et al. 1980:180; Lowery 1974:225; Mengel 1965:208; Forbush and May 1939:105; Imhof 1976:136; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:159; Sprunt 1954:105; Oberholser 1974(1):217; Burleigh 1958:179-182; Stewart and Robbins 1958:110; Bent 1937:147-179.



management" in Tennessee, and Special Concern in Alabama (unofficially). Blue Listed by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: All seasons -- C in the southern half of Florida; FC to C elsewhere in Florida; FC over the remainder of the Coastal Plain; mainly U in the Piedmont; R in the mountains, with most occurring in Virginia. Light migration into the Southeast in the fall; thus, probably slightly more numerous in winter than in summer at most localities.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- generally in swamps or bottomland forests; at times in other moist forests; never nest in upland forests. Foraging -- seldom far from wetlands; feed at marshes, wooded lakes or ponds, or in swamps.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- wet or moist hardwood forests. Foraging -- wetlands, both in forests and open areas.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(3) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress, 3.5(2) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood.

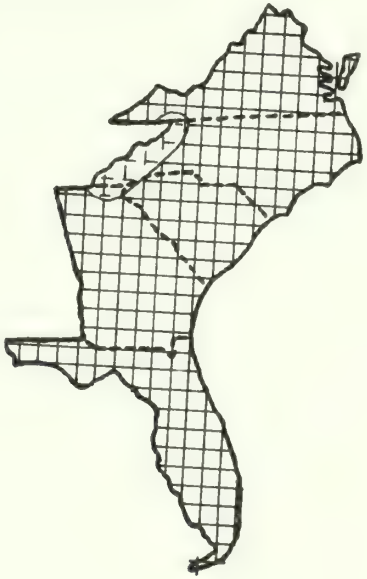
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(4) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood, 5(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress.

REPRODUCTION: The season extends from late January to early June, with the peak from early March to early April. Nests are built in crotches in large trees growing in swamps or bottomlands; generally not reused in succeeding years. Two or 3 eggs are normal, rarely 4.

FOOD HABITS: The birds observe prey from soaring flight or from a perch, and swoop onto small mammals, herps, large insects, and occasionally birds; generally feed in wetlands.

GUILD: tree nesting, soaring or pouncing carnivore on variable substrates.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:110; Verner and Boss 1980:126; DeGraaf et al. 1980:182; Lowery 1974:227; Mengel 1965:211; Forbush and May 1939:108; Imhof 1976:137; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:162, 167; Sprunt 1954:107-109; Oberholser 1974(1):221; Burleigh 1958:182-185; Stewart and Robbins 1958:112; Bent 1937:180-211.



Wintering -- U in southern Florida. Scattered winter [illegible] the region, but many (or perhaps the majority) of those north of Florida are suspect. Most of the birds winter south of the United States. Heavy fall migration in the mountain section, mainly in late September. Spring arrival -- mid-March to mid-April; fall departure -- late September to late October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- mainly in deciduous forests; prefer upland, often hilly, woods, as opposed to bottomlands; forage mainly in woodlands, and not normally over extensive open country. Wintering -- mainly in woodlands, preferring broadleaf evergreen woods.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- deciduous or mixed forests, usually in uplands. Wintering -- woodlands.

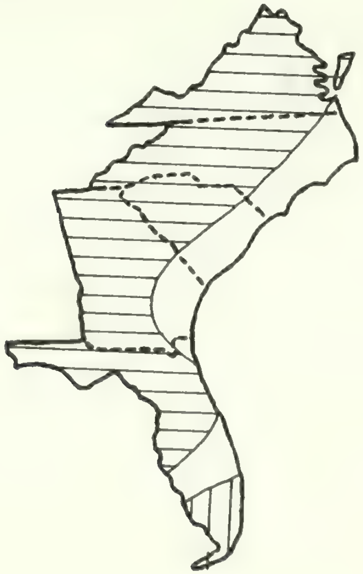
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(6) sawtimber oak-hickory, 3(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from mid-April to mid-June, with a peak from early to mid-May. The nests are built in crotches of trees, in the canopy, either in conifers or hardwoods; and usually used for just one season. Two eggs are the most common clutch size, but 3 eggs are frequent.

FOOD HABITS: Broad-wings generally spot prey from a perch, but also in soaring flight. Small mammals, herps, and large insects are the normal foods, taken from inside a forest.

GUILD: tree nesting, pouncing carnivore on variable substrates.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:110; DeGraaf et al. 1980:184; Lowery 1974:228; Mengel 1965:212; Forbush and May 1939:110; Imhof 1976:138; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:168; Sprunt 1954:109; Oberholser 1974(1):232; Burleigh 1958:185; Stewart and Robbins 1958:113; Bent 1937:236.



most winter in South America.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Generally in the vicinity of freshly plowed fields; less numerous in other types of fields; always in extensive open country.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Extensive, usually plowed, fields.

SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine.

REPRODUCTION: Do not breed in the region.

FOOD HABITS: Observe prey from a perch in open country and drop to the ground to feed. Large insects are most common prey, but rodents, herps, and other animals are also taken.

GUILD: terrestrial pouncing insectivore or carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:111; Verner and Boss 1980:127; Lowery 1974:230; Forbush and May 1939:112; Imhof 1976:139; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:169; Sprunt 1954:110; Oberholser 1974(1):234; Bent 1937:222.

U in the Everglades National Park, but R elsewhere, mainly in the southern quarter of the state. Most occur south of the United States.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- in swamps or bottomland woods, especially in cypress swamps, less so in mangrove forests; occasionally in pines or in upland woods. Foraging -- mainly in wetlands, such as open swamps, wooded streams, marshes, and bottomlands.

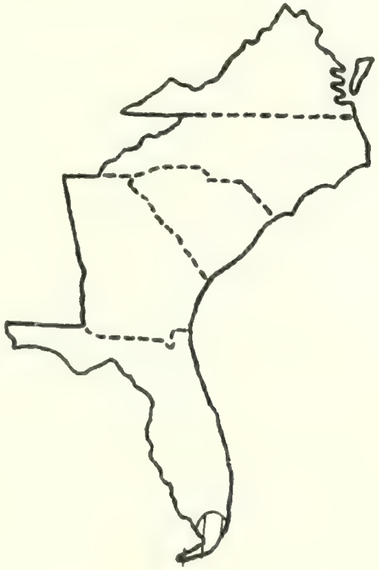
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- moist or wet forests. Foraging -- mainly wet places, such as swamps, marshes, or ponds.

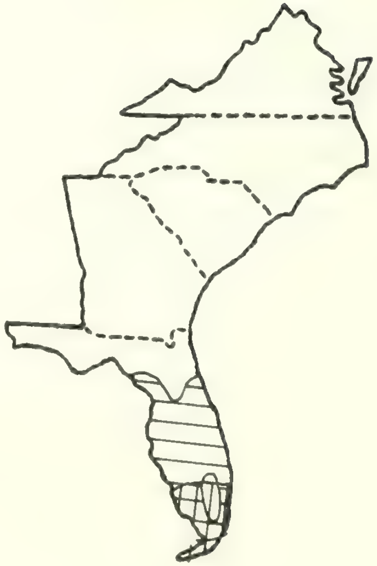
REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from late January to early May, with a peak from mid-March to late April. The nests are placed in crotches of trees, especially cypresses. The usual clutch size is 2, with a range of 1 to 3.

FOOD HABITS: Usually spot prey while soaring, often at great heights. They swoop down onto birds, the major prey item, as well as onto rodents, herps, and large insects.

GUILD: tree nesting, soaring or pouncing carnivore on various substrates.

REFERENCES: Forbush and May 1939:113; Imhof 1976:141; Sprunt 1954:111; Oberholser 1974(1):233; Bent 1937:254; Kale 1978:55.





and near the coast of that state; VR to R, and somewhat erratic, to central North Carolina; many scattered records elsewhere in the region. Breed to the north of the region. Fall arrival -- late October to mid-December; spring departure -- mid-February to late March.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Extensive open country; avoid woodlands. Occur in large expanses of marshes or grassy fields; less commonly around plowed fields and coastal dunes.

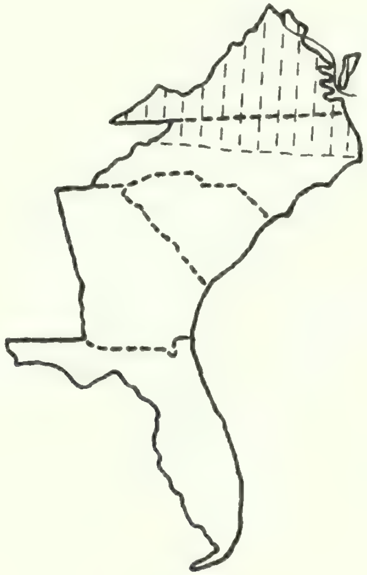
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Extensive areas of fields or marshes; favor a few widely scattered trees or fence posts for perching.

REPRODUCTION: Do not breed in the region.

FOOD HABITS: Rough-legs fly slowly and low over fields or marshes, and drop onto rodents they find. Some prey are observed from perches. Large insects and medium-sized mammals are sometimes eaten.

GUILD: terrestrial or herb pouncing carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:111; DeGraaf et al. 1980:186; Lowery 1974:232; Mengel 1965:214; Forbush and May 1939:113; Imhof 1976:141; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:170; Sprunt 1954:113; Oberholser 1974(1):226; Burleigh 1958:187; Stewart and Robbins 1958:114; Bent 1937:269.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- R to casual in the mountain region as summer visitors, but do not currently breed; apparently nested on rare occasions many decades ago in the mountains of Virginia and North Carolina, though positive records are not known. Wintering -- more numerous at this season than in summer; R at high elevations in North Carolina; VR elsewhere, though generally absent from the Florida peninsula. The majority of the population in North America breed in the western half of the continent.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- only on ledges of steep and remote mountain cliffs. Foraging -- prefer extensive open country, such as large pastures, fields, or marshes. Most frequently seen in the region in high elevation fields, pastures, and grassy balds; may be seen soaring over forests, but most foraging is in open areas.

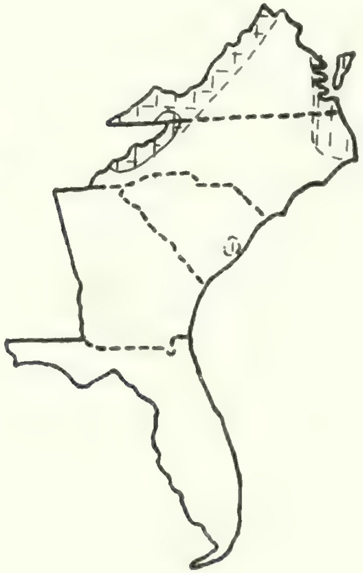
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- a ledge on a cliff. Foraging -- extensive open country, mainly at high elevations (over 4000 feet, 1200 m).

REPRODUCTION: Rumors indicate that Golden Eagles once nested in the region, but this has never been proved. Based on data from other areas, the nests are built on ledges of cliffs in remote places. Two is the usual clutch size, rarely 1 or 3.

FOOD HABITS: These eagles soar high over fields or woods, stooping onto prey they observe. Small to medium-sized mammals are the major food items; some carrion and birds are taken.

GUILD: ledge nesting, terrestrial soaring carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:111; Verner and Boss 1980:128; DeGraaf et al. 1980:188; Lowery 1974:234; Mengel 1965:214; Forbush and May 1939:115; Imhof 1976:142; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:171; Sprunt 1954:115; Oberholser 1974(1):242; Burleigh 1958:187; Stewart and Robbins 1958:115; Bent 1937:293.



LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: H. l. leucocephalus is federally listed as Endangered. State; Louisiana, Maryland, Mississippi, North Carolina, South Carolina, Tennessee, Texas, Virginia, and West Virginia; as Threatened in Florida; and as Rare in West Virginia (sic).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: All seasons -- have greatly declined throughout the Southeast since the 1930s and 1940s, mainly because of poor reproductive success resulting directly from the use of DDT, a chemical that causes egg-shell thinning in the birds. At present, FC over much of the Florida peninsula; U in the Chesapeake Bay area of Virginia, and in parts of northern Florida and coastal South Carolina; R elsewhere, and mainly along the coast north of Florida. Have not nested in the past several years in Georgia and North Carolina, though breeding in these states could resume at any time. There is some migration of individuals throughout the Southeast, and small numbers winter on a few of the large inland lakes from Virginia to Georgia.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- usually in a large living tree near a body of water, either in the open or in a grove, but seldom in deep woods; usually in a conspicuous location. Foraging -- almost always near estuaries, lakes, large ponds, open marshes, and shorelines; feed in both salt water and fresh water.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- tall, usually living trees near water. Foraging -- large bodies of water, with trees nearby for perching.

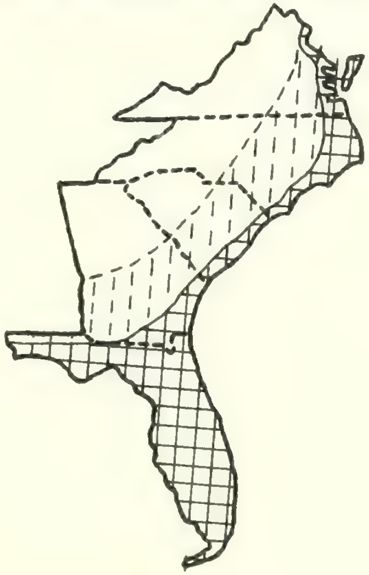
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in one habitat.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from early November to May, with a peak in Florida from early December to late January, and in Virginia from late February to mid-March. The large nests, reused in succeeding years, are built in crotches of large living trees (usually); pines are common nest sites. Two is the normal clutch size; rarely 1 or 3.

FOOD HABITS: Bald Eagles soar over a body of water and swoop to the surface for fish. They also scavenge for dead fish along shores, and they occasionally consume birds and small mammals.

GUILD: tree nesting, aquatic soaring or pouncing carnivore or scavenger.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:112; Verner and Boss 1980:129; DeGraaf et al. 1980:190; Lowery 1974:236; Mengel 1965:215; Forbush and May 1939:117; Imhof 1976:143; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:172; Sprunt 1954:116; Oberholser 1974(1):244; Burleigh 1958:189; Stewart and Robbins 1958:115; Spencer 1976; Steenhoff and Brown 1978; Bent 1937:321-348; Kale 1978:27.



LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: State listed as Endangered in Missouri, Threatened in Tennessee, and Rare in West Virginia. Blue Listed by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- R to U along the Virginia coast; VR to R along the northern coast of North Carolina; a few breeding records for northern Florida, but very irregular. Wintering -- C in most coastal localities; U to FC in inland Florida, but mostly U elsewhere inland; R in the mountains. Fall arrival -- late August to late September; spring departure -- early April to early May.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- only in marshes, generally where fresh or brackish and rather extensive. Wintering -- favor extensive marshes, but also forage at weedy fields and other open country habitats. Absolutely avoid wooded habitats.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- extensive marsh. Wintering -- large areas of open country, preferably marshes but also weedy fields.

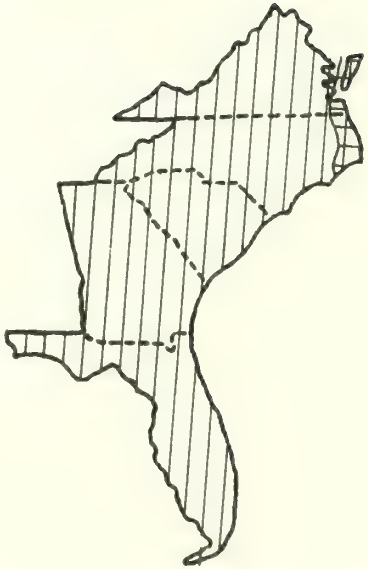
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(2) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood, 2.5(2) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from early May to late May, perhaps into April and June; the peak appears to be in early May and mid-May. The nests are built on the ground in a marsh, amid tall reeds. The clutch size is frequently 4 to 6, ranging up to 9.

FOOD HABITS: The birds fly slowly over a marsh or field, generally within 10 feet (3 m) of the ground, and drop onto small mammals. At times, birds, herps, and insects are also taken.

GUILD: ground nesting, herb or terrestrial pouncing carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:114; Verner and Boss 1980:130; DeGraaf et al. 1980:192; Lowery 1974:238; Mengel 1965:217; Forbush and May 1939:119; Imhof 1976:145; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:175; Sprunt 1954:118; Oberholser 1974(1):246; Burleigh 1958:191; Stewart and Robbins 1958:116; Watson 1977; Bent 1937:78.



LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: State listed as Endangered and Alabama (unofficially); Threatened in South Carolina; Protected in Texas; and Rare in West Virginia. Blue Listed by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C over much of Florida; FC to locally C elsewhere in tidal areas. Somewhat less numerous than 30 or 40 years ago. Wintering -- U along the coasts of South Carolina and Georgia, and in parts of northwestern Florida; increasing southward, becoming C in southern Florida. Spring arrival -- late February to mid-March; fall departure -- late October to mid-November.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- usually in an exposed structure (dead tree, marker, buoy, and others) near or in a large body of water; prefer coastal to inland shores. Foraging -- always at large bodies of water: bays, lakes, and even the ocean; prefer salt water shores, and favor a few trees for perching.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- a conspicuous structure, commonly a dead tree, near a large body of water. Foraging -- large bodies of water.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in one habitat.

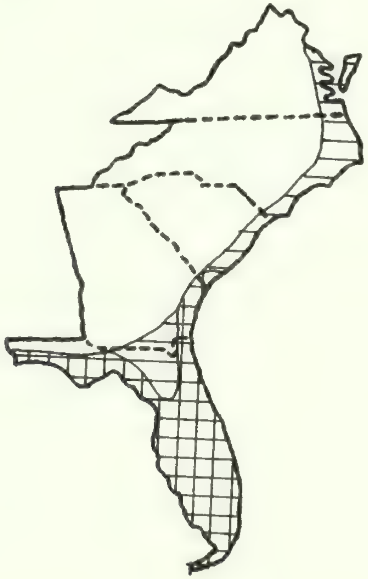
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) grass-forb longleaf pine-slash pine, 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from November to early July, with a Florida peak from mid-March to mid-April, and a Virginia peak from late April to mid-May. The nests are commonly built in the tops of trees, especially dead ones. Other sites include buoys, platforms, and markers; rarely on the ground. The clutch size is almost always 3, rarely 2 or 4.

FOOD HABITS: Ospreys feed almost entirely on fish, diving onto them from a considerable height.

GUILD: tree or ledge nesting, aquatic pouncing carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:114; Verner and Boss 1980:131; DeGraaf et al. 1980:194; Lowery 1974:239; Mengel 1965:218; Forbush and May 1939:121; Imhof 1976:146; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:177; Sprunt 1954:120; Oberholser 1974(1):249; Burleigh 1958:193; Stewart and Robbins 1958:118; Bent 1937:352; Ogden 1977; Kale 1978:30.



Crested Caracara (Caracara cheriway) CRCA

LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: State listed as Threatened in Florida. Blue Listed by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: All seasons -- restricted to a fairly small area in peninsular Florida (though widespread in Mexico and Central America); U in the central section of the range, mainly in the Kissimmee Prairie; R near the coasts. Non-migratory. A steady decline has occurred in the Florida population, and only several hundred individuals are believed to exist.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Prairie and savanna areas; usually in fairly dry areas with scattered trees and saplings, especially cabbage palmettos. The open areas may be native prairie, pastures, or cultivated fields.

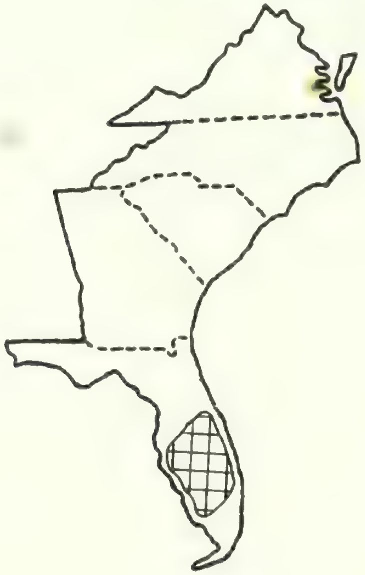
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Extensive open country with scattered trees; a typical savanna landscape.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from September to April, with a peak from late January to late February. The nests are usually built in the crowns of small cabbage palmettos, often not high above ground, and always in open country. Two eggs are common, 3 frequent, and 4 rare.

FOOD HABITS: Caracaras frequently forage on carrion, as well as on a great variety of live animals. They often find food by soaring, or by stalking on foot in short grass habitats.

GUILD: bush nesting, terrestrial pouncing or stalking carnivore or scavenger.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:116; Lowery 1974:242; Forbush and May 1939:123; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:178; Sprunt 1954:121; Oberholser 1974(1):251; Bent 1938:127; Kale 1978:34.



listed as Endangered; and state listed as Endangered in Alabama, Arkansas, Delaware, Florida, Georgia, Kentucky, Louisiana, Maryland, Mississippi, North Carolina, South Carolina, Tennessee, Texas, Virginia, and West Virginia; and Rare in West Virginia (sic).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- probably absent as breeders at the present, though occasional summer sightings are made in the North Carolina mountains. Formerly nested on rare occasions in the mountains from Virginia to northwestern Georgia. Nest to the north of the region. Wintering -- U along the coast of Florida, but mainly in the southern half of the state; generally R elsewhere along the coast, and in the interior of Florida; VR and erratic elsewhere. Moderate fall migration along the Atlantic coast. Fall arrival -- mid-September to mid-October; spring departure -- early April to early May.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- only on remote cliffs, where ledges are present. Foraging -- along the coast, they prefer open areas, such as mudflats, dunes, ponds, and marshes; inland, mainly where a mixture of forests and extensive fields, marshes, or water are present. Perches, such as telephone poles, bare trees, or stumps, are generally necessary.

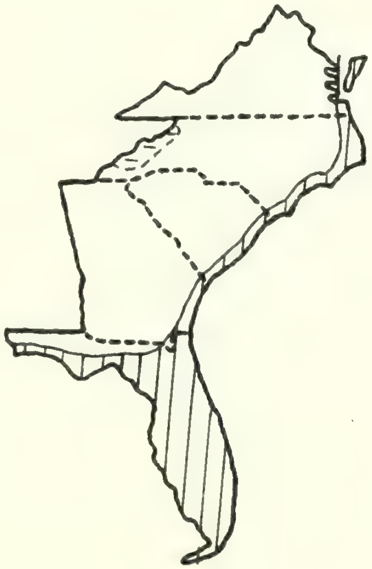
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- a ledge on a cliff. Foraging -- extensive open country, preferably near wetlands; at times in or near forests.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season is poorly known in the Southeast, as few nests have been found. It is apparently from March to May, but Peregrines no longer breed in the region. Nests are built on ledges on remote cliffs. The clutch size is mainly 3 or 4, rarely 5.

FOOD HABITS: Observe prey items from a perch or during soaring flight. They swoop down on medium-sized birds from above, striking them in midair. Birds such as doves, pigeons, quail, and shorebirds are often taken.

GUILD: ledge nesting, aerial or pouncing carnivore.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:16; Potter et al. 1980:116; Verner and Boss 1980:133; DeGraaf et al. 1980:196; Lowery 1974:243; Mengel 1965:219; Forbush and May 1939:126; Imhof 1976:148; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:179; Sprunt 1954:123; Oberholser 1974(1):254; Burleigh 1958:195; Stewart and Robbins 1958:119; Hickey 1969; Ratcliffe 1980; Bent 1938:42-69; Kale 1978:7.



(Falco columbarius) MERL

LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: State listed as Rare in West Virginia, and Special Concern in Alabama (unofficially). Blue Listed by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Wintering -- generally U along the entire coast; R in the interior of Florida; VR to R, and erratic, elsewhere inland. Often FC along the Atlantic coast in fall. Breed to the north of the region. Fall arrival -- early September to mid-October; spring departure -- mid-March to early May.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Only in open country; most numerous at coastal wetlands, such as mudflats, ponds, marshes, and thickets. Often in large fields or pastures. Perches, such as fence posts, bare trees, or telephone poles, must be present for observing prey.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Extensive open country, usually near coastal wetlands.

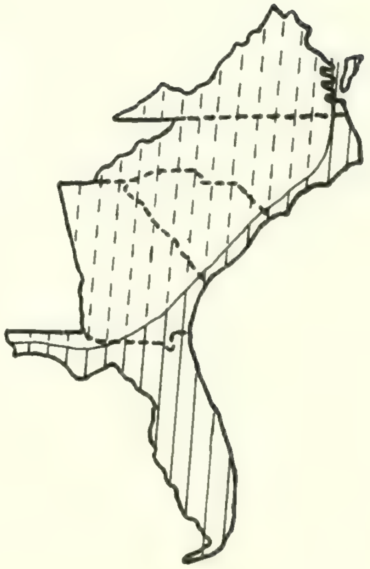
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(4) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood, 1(1) sawtimber live oak maritime.

REPRODUCTION: Do not breed in the region.

FOOD HABITS: Merlins sit on exposed perches in open country and make a quick dash at small birds, striking them in midair. In addition to birds, small mammals, herps, and insects are consumed.

GUILD: aerial or pouncing carnivore.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:17; Potter et al. 1980:117; Verner and Boss 1980:134; Lowery 1974:245; Mengel 1965:221; Forbush and May 1939:129; Imhof 1976:149; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:181; Sprunt 1954:125; Oberholser 1974(1):258; Burleigh 1958:197, 198; Stewart and Robbins 1958:121; Bent 1938:70-95; Kale 1978:111.



Blue Listed by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- U over most of Virginia, and the mountains of North Carolina; R over most of Georgia, and the Piedmont of the Carolinas; U to FC in Florida, most numerous in the central portion; very few nest in the Coastal Plain of the Carolinas, and absent from extreme southern Florida. Wintering -- C throughout the Coastal Plain, even VC in parts of Florida; FC to C in the Piedmont and lower mountains.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- in extensive open country, where scattered trees occur, such as in open pine savannas, trees in a pasture or grassy field, or telephone poles in open areas. Foraging -- in open areas; plowed fields, grassy fields, savannas, roadsides, and woodland margins; usually perch on telephone wires or poles or in exposed trees.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- a cavity (such as in a dead tree) in extensive open country. Foraging -- open country with scattered high perches.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.6(2) shrub-seedling southern scrub oak, 1.7(3) sawtimber oak-hickory.

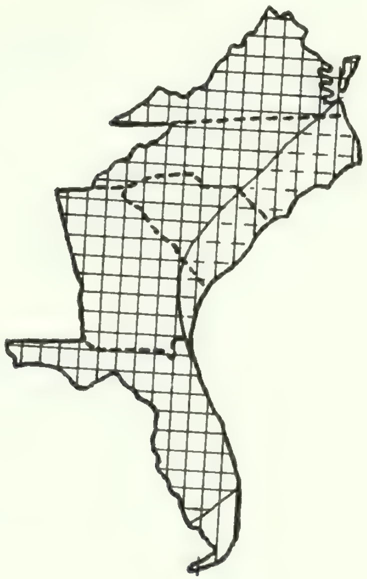
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(9) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood, 6.2(4) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from late March to early June, with a peak from mid-April to mid-May. The usual nest sites are cavities in dead trees, dug by woodpeckers; also used are holes in telephone poles and crevices in buildings. The clutch generally contains 4 or 5 eggs, with a range of 3 to 7.

FOOD HABITS: Kestrels sit on exposed perches, commonly telephone wires, and drop to the ground when food is spotted; they also hover over a field and then drop onto prey. Large insects are the primary food in summer, but small mammals and birds predominate in winter.

GUILD: cavity nesting, terrestrial pouncing insectivore-carnivore.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:18; Potter et al. 1980:117; Verner and Boss 1980:135; DeGraaf et al. 1980:198; Lowery 1974:245; Mengel 1965:222; Forbush and May 1939:131; Imhof 1976:150; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:182; Sprunt 1954:126; Oberholser 1974(1):260; Burleigh 1958:199, 200; Stewart and Robbins 1958:122; Bent 1938:106-126; Kale 1978:32.



Ruffed Grouse

1500 feet (500 m), ranging to the highest elevations. Despite their numbers, they are secretive and quiet, and often difficult to find. Non-migratory.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Forests of a wide variety; in summer mainly in deciduous or mixed forests, where the understory is moderate to rather light, and often where very hilly. In winter, they move to areas with some evergreen cover, and are found mainly in mixed forests. They often forage along wooded roadsides or openings in woods.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Hardwood or mixed forests, usually in uplands, with a moderate understory; some evergreen cover is preferred in winter.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(5) sawtimber cove hardwoods, 8(3) sapling-poletimber oak-hickory.

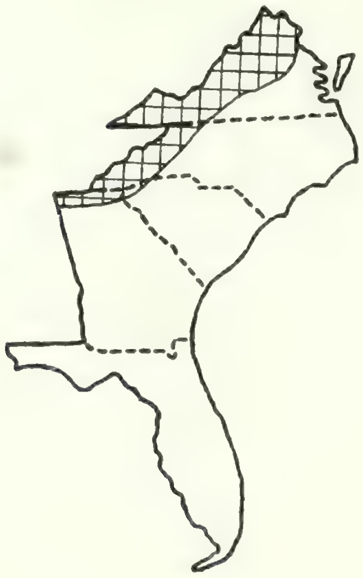
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sapling-poletimber oak-hickory, 3.7(3) shrub-seedling oak-hickory.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from mid-April to early June, with the peak from late April to mid-May. The nests are built on the ground in thick cover in a woodland, usually next to a tree, shrub, or fallen log. The clutch size is generally 9 to 12, ranging from 8 to 14.

FOOD HABITS: These birds forage by walking on the ground, gleaning and scratching for seeds, or in shrubs or small trees, taking buds, fruits, and leaves; some insects are also eaten.

GUILD: ground nesting, terrestrial or bush gleaning folivore, frugivore, or granivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:119; DeGraaf et al. 1980:202; Mengel 1965:223; Forbush and May 1939:135; Imhof 1976:152; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:185; Burleigh 1958:202; Stewart and Robbins 1958:124; Bump et al. 1947; Johnsgard 1973:253; Bent 1932:141-177.



Common Bobwhite (*Colinus virginianus*) COBO

LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: Blue Listed by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: All seasons -- C to often VC throughout, though not numerous in the higher mountains. Non-migratory. Occur in coveys of 10 to 30 birds in non-breeding seasons.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Brushy areas; favored habitat is abandoned fields; also numerous in hedgerows, thickets, woodland margins, and open woods (usually pines).

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Thickets where tall herbs, shrubs, and saplings are present.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(4) sapling-poletimber oak-hickory, 12(5) shrub-seedling mixed pine-hardwood.

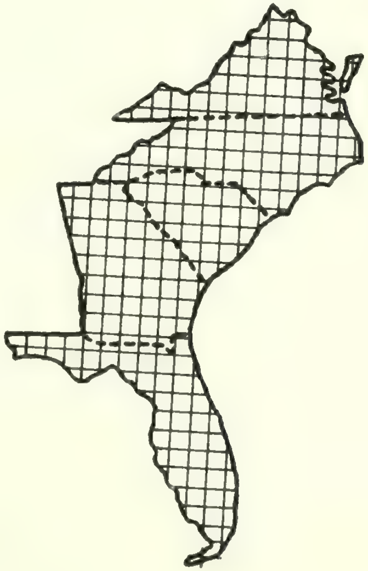
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-scrub oak, 15(2) shrub-seedling southern scrub oak.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from mid-April to mid-September, with a peak from mid-May to mid-June. The nests are built on the ground, in dense grass or other thick cover, in hedgerows or thickets. The clutch size ranges from 12 to 20, with 14 to 16 being common.

FOOD HABITS: These birds feed on the ground in thick cover, taking seeds, nuts, fruits, and other items, including some insects. Insects are commonly eaten in summer, as well as seeds.

GUILD: ground nesting, herb or terrestrial gleaning omnivore-granivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:120; DeGraaf et al. 1980:204; Lowery 1974:249; Mengel 1965:226; Forbush and May 1939:147; Imhof 1976:153; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:186; Sprunt 1954:128-131; Oberholser 1974(1):270; Burleigh 1958:204; Stewart and Robbins 1958:125; Rosene 1969; Johnsgard 1973:408; Reid and Goodrum 1979; Bent 1932:9-36; Rosahn 1980.



Ring-necked Pheasant (*Phasianus colchicus*) RNPH

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Introduced from Europe. All seasons -- locally C on Hatteras Island, North Carolina; elsewhere, occur only in Virginia, where R to U in most areas; not thriving in that state, and introductions elsewhere have been unsuccessful. Non-migratory.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Occur in fields, meadows, croplands, and dry borders of marshes; generally where the vegetation is 1 to 3 feet (.3-1 m) high.

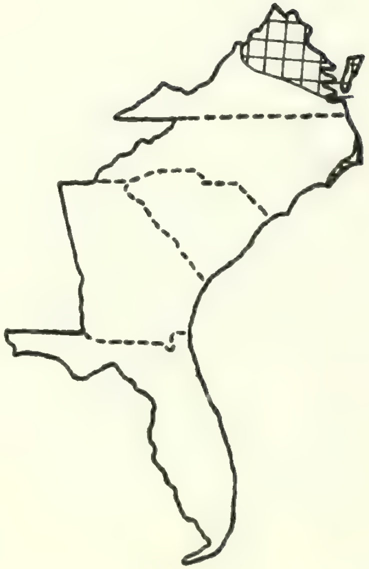
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Moderate to tall herbaceous cover.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from mid-April to mid-July, with the peak probably from mid-April to early May. The nests are built on the ground, well hidden in fields or other grasslands. Clutch size ranges from 6 to 15, with 10 to 12 common.

FOOD HABITS: Pheasants forage on the ground, gleaning seeds, fruits, and nuts, as well as numerous insects. A large amount of seeds consumed are various crop and grain varieties.

GUILD: ground nesting, herb or terrestrial gleaning omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:121; DeGraaf et al. 1980:206; Forbush and May 1939:151; Oberholser 1974(1):279; Stewart and Robbins 1958:125; Bent 1932:310.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: All seasons -- R over much of the Coastal Plain, but FC in certain bottomlands; R to U in the Piedmont; U in the mountains, mostly in Virginia. Not at all widespread, and completely absent from many localities; most numerous in wildlife refuges, state or national parks or forests, or on game management lands. Very secretive for such large birds; non-migratory.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Most common in extensive bottomland forests, where understory is moderate; also in extensive upland hardwood or mixed forests, less so in pine forests; not numerous in open woods, wood margins, and woodland openings, though they do forage on occasions in these areas. Contrary to popular opinion, Turkeys are birds of extensive and remote forests.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Mature forests with a moderate understory, preferably in bottomlands.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.8(2) sawtimber loblolly pine-shortleaf pine, 2(1) sawtimber live oak maritime.

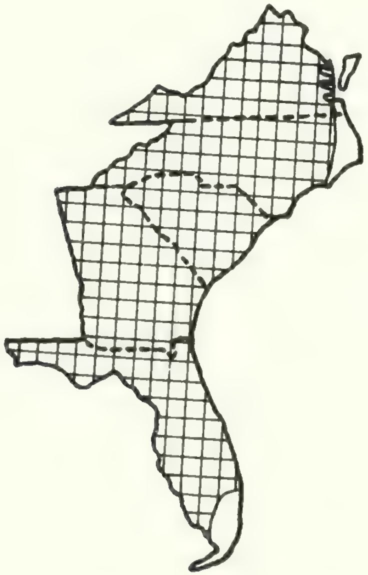
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.8(2) sawtimber oak-hickory.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from late March to late May, with a peak from late April to mid-May. The nests are built on the ground in woodlands, well hidden under shrubs or other vegetation. The usual clutch size is 8 to 15, occasionally 20, eggs.

FOOD HABITS: Turkeys forage on the ground, gleaning a wide variety of food items. Seeds, nuts, fruits, and other plant foods are most numerous, but substantial numbers of insects are also consumed.

GUILD: ground nesting, terrestrial gleaning omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:122; Verner and Boss 1980:141; DeGraaf et al. 1980:208; Lowery 1974:253; Mengel 1965:227; Forbush and May 1939:152; Imhof 1976:154; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:188; Sprunt 1954:131-133; Oberholser 1974(I):282; Burleigh 1958:205; Stewart and Robbins 1958:126; Hewitt 1967; Bent 1932:323-344.



Sandhill Crane (Grus canadensis) SACR

Tennessee and Special Concern in Alabama (unofficially); G. c. pratensis listed as Threatened in Florida, and G. c. pulla listed as Endangered in Mississippi.

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- U over most of the range, but locally FC. Wintering -- FC to locally C in a few areas, though U over much of Florida. The breeding population is non-migratory, but a moderate migration of individuals from the Great Lakes and Canada into the region occurs in November.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- prairies with marshy areas and small ponds; open pine savannas with small pools or ponds. Wintering -- in similar habitats as for breeding, though not as restricted to shallow ponds; prairies, marshes, cattle pastures, and margins of bodies of fresh water; often in somewhat dry areas in winter.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- extensive prairies or marshes with shallow open water. Wintering -- extensive areas of short grass, either wet or somewhat dry.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in one habitat.

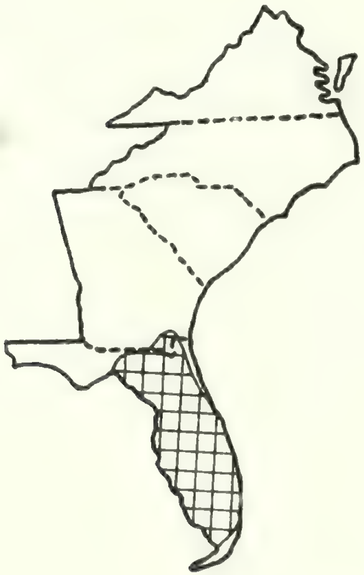
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber bay swamp-pocosin, 1(2) grass-forb longleaf pine-slash pine.

REPRODUCTION: The season extends from late January to August, with the peak from late February to late March. The nests are built on mounds of grasses and dead plants in marshes or shallow ponds. Two eggs form the usual clutch; 1 or 3 are rare.

FOOD HABITS: Cranes glean items from shallow water, mud, or short grass; the major foods are roots, tubers, seeds, and other plant matter. Insects, herps, and other animals are also consumed.

GUILD: ground nesting, terrestrial or aquatic gleaning omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:124; Lowery 1974:261; Mengel 1965:229; Forbush and May 1939:156; Imhof 1976:156; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:191; Sprunt 1954:135; Oberholser 1974(I):288; Burleigh 1958:212; Buller 1979; Bent 1926:231-253; Kale 1978:36.



Limpkin (*Aramus guarauna*) LIMP

LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: State listed as Special Concern in Florida.

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: All seasons -- generally U to FC over most of Florida; locally C in a few places; R and poorly known in Georgia. Nonmigratory.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Open swamps, marshes, swamp borders, lake margins, and woods or thickets along rivers are the principal habitats; occur only in freshwater situations. Active at night as well as during daylight. Forage in shallow fresh water.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Vegetation near open fresh water, preferably in fairly dense woody areas.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) Everglades.

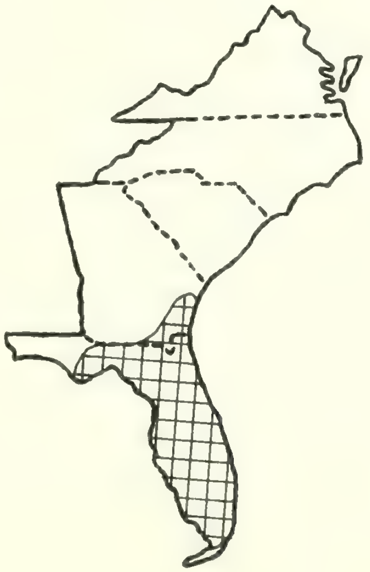
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress, 3(1) Everglades.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from December to September, with the peak from mid-March to mid-April. The platform nests are usually built in marshes, but may also be placed in shrubs or small trees up to 15 feet (5 m) from the ground. Clutch size ranges from 4 to 8, and is usually 5 or 6.

FOOD HABITS: Limpkins wade in shallow water or walk on muddy shores, consuming mainly large aquatic snails. Other mollusks, crustaceans, insects, and herps are also taken.

GUILD: ground or bush nesting, aquatic gleaning carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:125; Lowery 1974:262; Forbush and May 1939:157; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:192; Sprunt 1954:138; Oberholser 1974(1):291; Burleigh 1958:213; Bent 1926:254; Kale 1978:86.



King Rail (*Rallus elegans*)

LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: Blue Listed by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- FC to C in suitable habitat in most of Florida, and northward near the coast; R in most inland areas north of Florida. Wintering -- mostly U in coastal Virginia; FC along the coast of the Carolinas and Georgia; FC to C in most of Florida; R in southern Georgia. Essentially absent at all seasons in the mountains. Inland status at all seasons is poorly known.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- extensive freshwater or brackish marshes; occasionally in rice fields or wet meadows.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Favor freshwater marshes; also use brackish areas.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) Everglades.

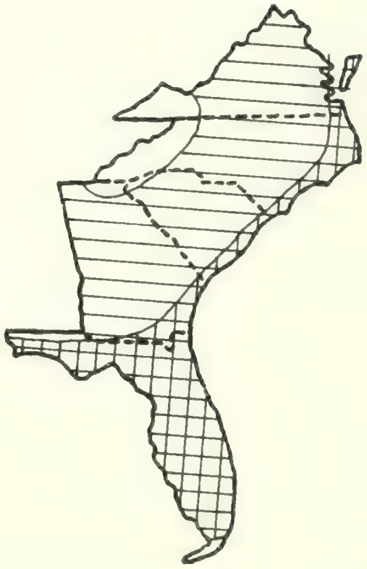
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 4(1) Everglades.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from April to early July, but the peak is poorly known. The nests are built in marshes, generally several inches above the water. Usual clutch size is 8 to 11, ranging from 6 to 15.

FOOD HABITS: These birds glean or probe for food in mud or shallow water in a marsh. The summer prey items are mainly invertebrates, but plant material is also consumed in winter.

GUILD: ground nesting, herb or aquatic gleaning or probing carnivore-omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:126; DeGraaf et al. 1980:210; Lowery 1974:264; Mengel 1965:230; Forbush and May 1939:159; Imhof 1976:157; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:193; Sprunt 1954:141; Oberholser 1974(1):293; Burleigh 1958:215; Stewart and Robbins 1958:126; Meanley 1969a; Bent 1926:260.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: All seasons -- C to VC essentially everywhere along the coast, south to central Florida; mostly U in southern Florida. Light migration of individuals into the Southeast, as there are several inland tower kills, but seasonal changes of abundance in the region are not detectable.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- essentially in salt marshes, favoring Spartina alterniflora, and infrequent in brackish marshes.

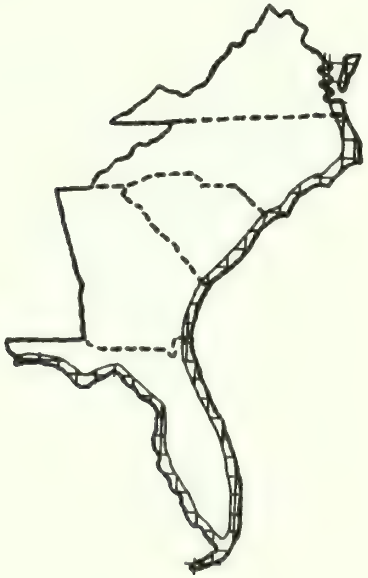
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Salt marshes.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from mid-March to mid-October, with a peak from early May to mid-June. The nests are built in salt marshes, mainly in clumps of grass on high ground. Clutch size is generally 9 to 12, ranging from 6 to 14.

FOOD HABITS: Glean or probe for prey items from mud or shallow water in marshes. Small crabs, mollusks, insects, and other invertebrates are taken; rarely plant material.

GUILD: ground nesting, herb or aquatic gleaning or probing carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:127; DeGraaf et al. 1980:212; Lowery 1974:265; Forbush and May 1939:160; Imhof 1976:158; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:194; Sprunt 1954:143-145; Oberholser 1974(1):294; Burleigh 1958:216, 217; Stewart and Robbins 1958:127; Wilbur and Tomlinson 1976; Bent 1926:267-292; Kale 1978:112, 113.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- U to locally FC on the coast and tidewater sections of Virginia and North Carolina, but mainly in Virginia. Status inland poorly known; apparently VR to R in much of Virginia; have occurred in summer in the Piedmont of both Carolinas and Georgia, nesting on occasions, but believed to be only of casual occurrence. Wintering -- FC to locally C along the coasts of Virginia and North Carolina; FC southward along the coast to central Florida, and the northern Gulf coast; U in south Florida. Inland, apparently R to locally U, though regular in suitable marshes. Fall arrival -- early September to early October; spring departure -- late April to mid-May.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- generally in fresh or brackish marshes; infrequent in salt marshes (and mainly in winter).

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Marshes, preferably extensive ones, but marshes of very small size (0.1 ha) are also inhabited.

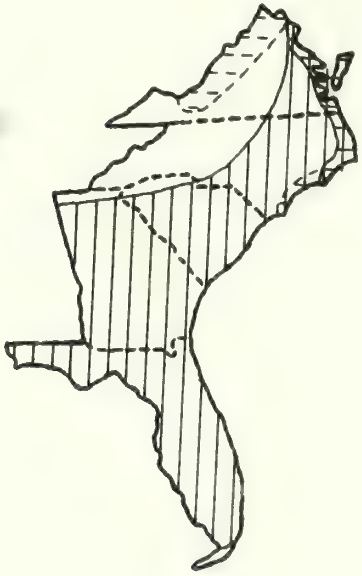
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 15(1) sapling-poletimber elm-ash-cottonwood (small plot).

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from mid-May to mid-July, with a peak from mid-May to early June. Nests are built in marshes, usually only a few inches above the water. Clutch size is generally 8 or 9, ranging from 7 to 12.

FOOD HABITS: These rails feed on a great variety of small animals, such as insects, small fish, worms, and others; rarely plant material. Forage is by gleaning or probing in shallow water or mud in marshes.

GUILD: ground nesting, herb or aquatic gleaning or probing insectivore or carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:128; Verner and Boss 1980:142; DeGraaf et al. 1980:214; Lowery 1974:265; Mengel 1965:231; Forbush and May 1939:162; Imhof 1976:158; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:196; Sprunt 1954:145; Oberholser 1974(1):295; Burleigh 1958:218; Stewart and Robbins 1958:128; Bent 1926:292.



status poorly known. Wintering -- C along the northern half of the Atlantic coast of Florida; FC elsewhere in Florida, and northward on the coast to southern North Carolina; decreasing to R in coastal Virginia; R inland (north of Florida). Fall arrival -- mid-August to mid-September; spring departure -- early to mid-May.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- generally in freshwater marshes; infrequent in brackish ones, and very rare in salt marshes. Also occur in winter in wet grassy areas, such as low meadows.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Marshes, usually in fresh ones; small marshes (0.1 ha) may be inhabited, as well as extensive marshes.

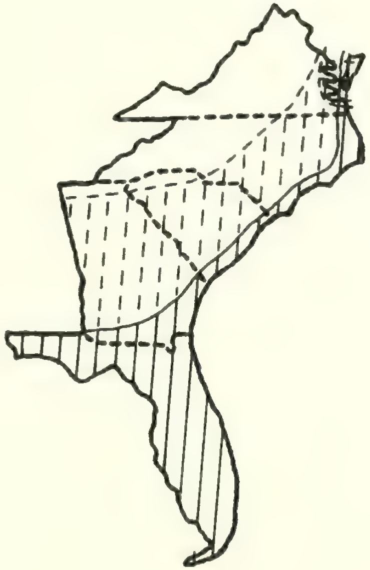
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) Everglades.

REPRODUCTION: Nesting data for the Southeast are essentially non-existent; the only evidence of breeding being an adult with young in June, and a nest with eggs in late April, both in Virginia. The nests are built in marshes several inches above the water. Clutch size varies from 6 to 15, with 10 or 11 being normal.

FOOD HABITS: Soras glean food from mud or shallow water in marshes, with a variety of seeds and small invertebrates being taken.

GUILD: ground nesting, herb or aquatic gleaning omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:128; DeGraaf et al. 1980:216; Lowery 1974:266; Mengel 1965:231; Forbush and May 1939:163; Imhof 1976:159; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:196; Sprunt 1954:146; Oberholser 1974(I):297; Burleigh 1958:220; Stewart and Robbins 1958:129; Bent 1926:303.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Wintering -- perhaps the most secretive birds in North America, and quiet (as well) during the winter months; exact status poorly known. Seemingly R most everywhere along the coast, north to North Carolina; locally numerous, possibly C, in a few areas; might winter regularly in coastal Virginia. Breed to the north of the region. Fall arrival -- late September to mid-October; spring departure -- late March to early May.

PRIMARY HABITATS: The drier portions of marshes, mainly fresh or brackish ones; wet grassy areas, such as low meadows; infrequent in dry fields or grain fields.

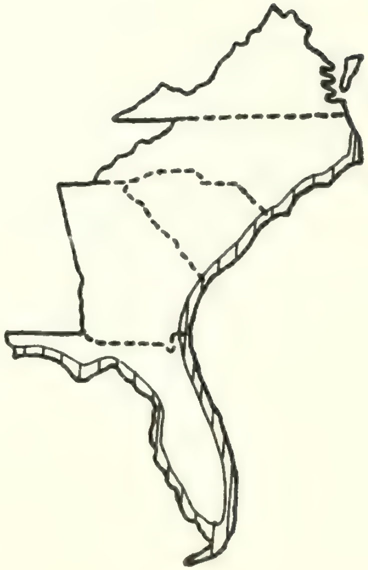
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Thick herbaceous cover in semi-moist places; at times in dry areas.

REPRODUCTION: Do not nest in the region.

FOOD HABITS: These very secretive birds glean small invertebrates from mud, shallow water, or the vegetation of a marsh; some plant seeds are also taken.

GUILD: herb gleaning omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:129; Lowery 1974:267; Mengel 1965:232; Forbush and May 1939:164; Imhof 1976:160; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:197; Sprunt 1954:147; Oberholser 1974(I):299; Burleigh 1958:221; Stewart and Robbins 1958:130; Bent 1926:316.



(unofficially).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- secretive at all seasons, and call mainly at night in warm weather; thus, the status is poorly known. R over much of the breeding range, though locally C in some coastal areas; R and irregular inland. Wintering -- probably some withdrawal southward, but this is only speculation; apparently only near the coast in winter, ranging north at least to North Carolina, and perhaps Virginia.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- favor brackish marshes, or the dry portions of salt marshes, in a wide range of vegetation; in some areas with matted grass only 6 inches (15 cm) high, in others in tall sedges over 3 feet (1 m) high. Less frequent in fresh marshes, moist meadows, and other damp spots. Rare in wet salt marshes.

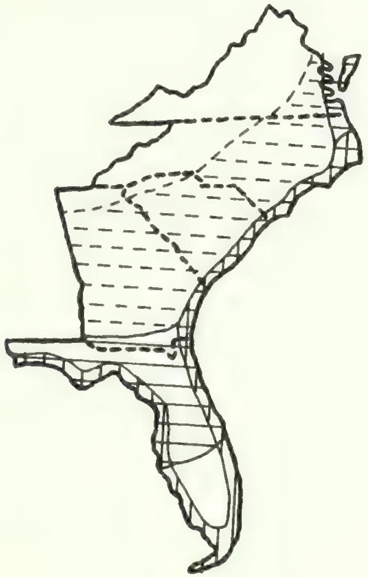
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Dense herbaceous cover of marshes or wet meadows.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from mid-May to mid-August. The peak is poorly known, but it is likely from late May to early July. Nests are built in marshes or wet meadows, on the ground, with grasses arched over the top. Clutch size is generally 6 to 10, rarely to 13.

FOOD HABITS: These very secretive rails glean small invertebrates and some seeds from mud, shallow water, and vegetation in marshes.

GUILD: ground nesting, herb gleaning omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:130; DeGraaf et al. 1980:218; Lowery 1974:268; Forbush and May 1939:165; Imhof 1976:161; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:198; Sprunt 1954:148; Oberholser 1974(1):300; Burleigh 1958:222; Stewart and Robbins 1958:130; Bent 1926:326-336; Wilbur 1974; Kale 1978:114.



general, but C at many localities; U in most of South Carolina and North Carolina. Wintering -- only in peninsular Florida, where U in most areas. Spring arrival -- early April to late April; fall departure -- late August to early October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- margins of lakes or ponds with floating and emergent vegetation; marshes with open water; open swamps with marsh vegetation. Use freshwater habitats only.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Freshwater wetlands with emergent and floating vegetation along the margins.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) Everglades.

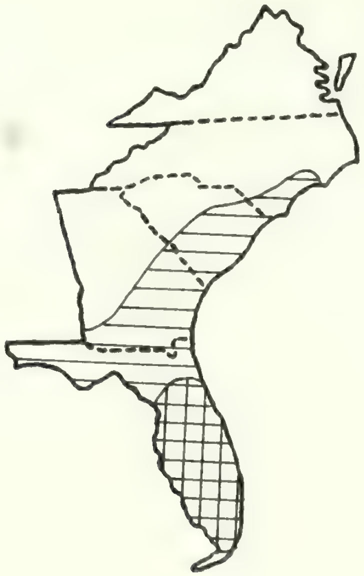
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 4(1) Everglades.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from mid-April to late June, with the peak from early May to late May. The nests are shallow cups, supported by vegetation, just above the water in marshes; usually close to open water. Typical clutch size is 6 to 8, ranging from 5 to 10.

FOOD HABITS: Glean small insects and seeds in summer, and mainly seeds and other plant matter in winter. Foraging is done on lily pads, in mud, in marsh vegetation, or shallow water.

GUILD: ground nesting, aquatic or herb gleaning omnivore-granivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:131; Lowery 1974:269; Forbush and May 1939:165; Imhof 1976:161; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:203; Sprunt 1954:150; Oberholser 1974(1):302; Burleigh 1958:223; Stewart and Robbins 1958:131; Bent 1926:339.



Common Gallinule (*Gallinula chloropus*) COGA

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- generally C over most of Florida, and in the Outer Coastal Plain of Georgia and South Carolina; mostly U to locally FC elsewhere in the range. Wintering -- C over most of Florida; FC along the coast north to South Carolina; generally U elsewhere, and R to U in Virginia.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- freshwater ponds, lakes, marshes, and open swamps, where marsh vegetation occurs along the edges of the water; prefer somewhat more open water than Purple Gallinules do. Avoid brackish or salty habitats.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Open fresh water with marshy vegetation along the shores.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 12(1) sapling-poletimber elm-ash-cottonwood (small plot).

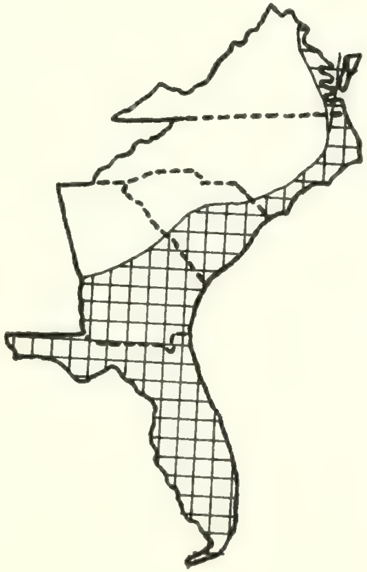
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber bay swamp-pocosin, 2(1) Everglades.

REPRODUCTION: The season extends from mid-May to mid-July, with the peak from late May to mid-June. The nests are built in marsh vegetation just above the water, usually not far from open water. Clutch size ranges from 6 to 17, with 10 to 12 usual.

FOOD HABITS: These birds glean food from shallow water or marsh vegetation, taking mainly parts of aquatic plants, such as seeds, roots, and berries. Invertebrates are infrequently taken.

GUILD: ground nesting, aquatic or herb gleaning granivore or folivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:132; DeGraaf et al. 1980:220; Lowery 1974:270; Mengel 1965:233; Forbush and May 1939:166; Imhof 1976:162; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:204; Sprunt 1954:152; Oberholser 1974(I):303; Burleigh 1958:225; Stewart and Robbins 1958:132; Bent 1926:346.



American Coot (*Fulica americana*) AMCO

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- mostly U in Florida; VR to R, and sporadic nester elsewhere, mainly near the coast; non-breeding birds are often C over much of the breeding range in summer. Wintering -- C to A along the coast and in most of Florida; FC to C inland elsewhere, but generally U in the mountains. Fall arrival -- early October to late October; spring departure -- mid-April to early May.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- on lakes or ponds where some marsh vegetation is present; generally avoid wooded areas, such as open swamps. Wintering -- mainly on lakes and ponds, but also on bays and other brackish water. Rare on salt water; tend to occur in more open water in winter than in summer.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- body of fresh water with marsh vegetation. Wintering -- open, shallow fresh water; infrequently in brackish water.

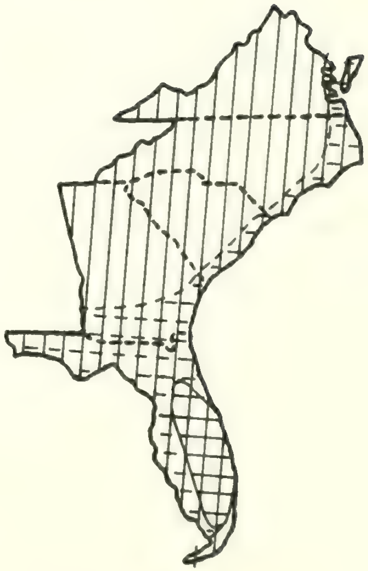
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) Everglades, 5(1) sawtimber live oak maritime.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from late April to late July, with the peak likely from mid-May to mid-June. Nests are floating platforms of reeds, anchored to marsh vegetation, near or at the edge of a lake or pond. Clutch sizes are usually 8 to 12, ranging from 6 to 20.

FOOD HABITS: Coots forage in water, tipping from the surface and obtaining roots and leaves of plants, in addition to aquatic invertebrates, fish, and other items. They occasionally dive underwater, and often walk on shores gleaning food items.

GUILD: ground nesting, aquatic gleaning or diving omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:133; Verner and Boss 1980:143; DeGraaf et al. 1980:222; Lowery 1974:271; Mengel 1965:233; Forbush and May 1939:168; Imhof 1976:163; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:206; Sprunt 1954:153; Oberholser 1974(I):304; Burleigh 1958:226; Stewart and Robbins 1958:132; Bent 1926:358.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- FC over most of Virginia, and the Piedmont of the Carolinas and Georgia; generally U elsewhere, becoming R near the coast. Wintering -- FC to C over most of the Southeast, but less numerous in the mountains.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- prefer large fields with a few areas of bare ground; also nest on gravel rooftops in towns; common habitats are plowed fields, pastures, and farms, preferably near ponds or lakes. Wintering -- considerably more widespread; mudflats, plowed fields, pastures, large lawns, airports, and other areas with bare ground or short grass.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- extensive open country with some patches of bare ground or gravel. Wintering -- open areas in short grass or bare ground, in wet or dry situations.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(4) grass-forb elm-ash-cottonwood.

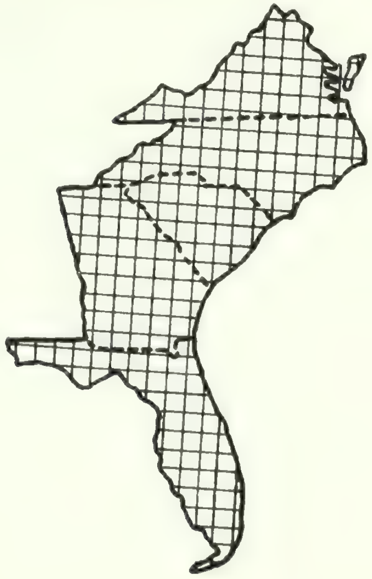
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 2.5(13) grass-forb elm-ash-cottonwood, 66(4) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from mid-March to mid-June, with the peak from late March to mid-May. Nests are usually on the ground, in a bare area or near gravel, but not exposed. The birds frequently nest on flat-topped gravel roofs. Four eggs are the normal clutch, with 3 or 5 fairly common.

FOOD HABITS: Killdeers glean small insects and other invertebrates from such substrates as mudflats, bare ground, and short grass.

GUILD: ground nesting, terrestrial gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:140; Verner and Boss 1980:144; DeGraaf et al. 1980:226; Lowery 1974:279; Mengel 1965:236; Forbush and May 1939:173; Imhof 1976:168; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:215; Sprunt 1954:161; Oberholser 1974(1):316; Burleigh 1958:235; Stewart and Robbins 1958:136; Bent 1927:202.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- U to FC over most of the Piedmont and mountains; U over the remainder of the range. Wintering -- FC to perhaps locally C throughout Georgia, South Carolina, the eastern half of North Carolina, southeastern Virginia, and northern Florida; mostly U elsewhere, and R in the mountains.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- woodland thickets and bottomland forests, preferably where somewhat moist, with moderate shrub and understory layers, and plenty of dead leaves on the ground. Forage in moist woods or in open places, commonly in plowed fields, marshes, roadsides, and other short grass habitats; feed only at night, thus seldom seen in daylight except when flushed from a forest floor.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Deciduous or mixed woods with an abundance of dead leaves on the ground; generally in moist soil.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.6(2) sawtimber oak-gum-cypress, 15(8) sapling-poletimber elm-ash-cottonwood (small plot).

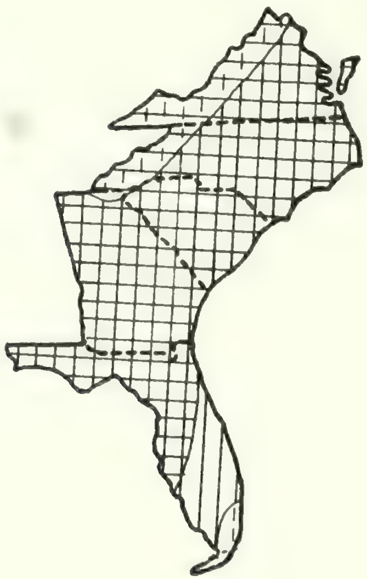
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(3) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from late February to mid-May, with the peak from mid-March to mid-April. Nests are built on the ground in woodlands with plenty of dead leaves, often under shrubs or saplings. Clutch sizes range from 3 to 5, with 4 most common.

FOOD HABITS: These birds feed at twilight or at night, probing in damp ground fields or woods for earthworms and larvae.

GUILD: ground nesting, nocturnal or crepuscular terrestrial probing insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:152; DeGraaf et al. 1980:228; Lowery 1974:303; Mengel 1965:239; Forbush and May 1939:178; Imhof 1976:173; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:220; Sprunt 1954:167; Oberholser 1974(1):325; Burleigh 1958:240; Stewart and Robbins 1958:139; Sheldon 1967; Dwyer et al. 1979; Bent 1929:61.



Common Snipe (*Capella gallinago*) COSN

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Wintering -- C over most of the Coastal Plain; FC in the Piedmont; U in the lower mountains, but R above 3000 feet (900 m). Breed to the north of the region. Fall arrival -- early September to early October; spring departure -- late April to mid-May.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Favor damp grassy places, such as boggy spots in pastures, short-grass marshes, margins of marshes and ponds, and on mudflats. Prefer freshwater situations.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Damp ground in open country, generally where short grass is present.

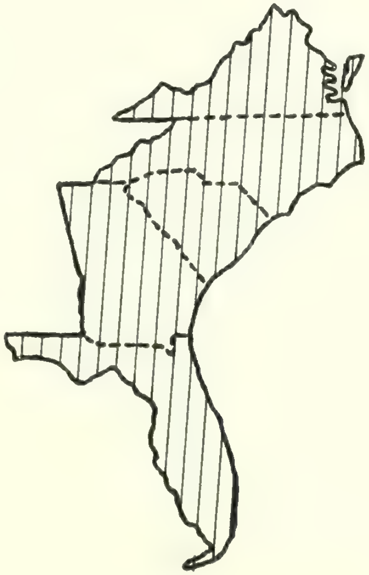
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) grass-forb elm-ash-cottonwood, 7.5(2) grass-forb longleaf pine-slash pine.

REPRODUCTION: Do not breed in the Southeast.

FOOD HABITS: Snipes probe their long bills into mud or wet ground for various worms, insects, insect larvae, and other invertebrates.

GUILD: terrestrial or aquatic probing insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:153; Verner and Boss 1980:145; DeGraaf et al. 1980:230; Lowery 1974:305; Mengel 1965:241; Forbush and May 1939:181; Imhof 1976:175; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:222; Sprunt 1954:169; Oberholser 1974(1):327; Burleigh 1958:242; Stewart and Robbins 1958:140; Bent 1929:78-98.



Upland Sandpiper (*Bartramia longicauda*) UPSA

LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: State Listed as Rare in West Virginia. Blue Listed by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- R, only in Virginia; occur in the extreme northern Piedmont, and in valleys in the northern half of the mountains. Formerly more numerous as breeders in the mountains of that state. The bulk of the population breeds to the north of the region, and all individuals winter south of the United States. Spring arrival -- late March to mid-April; fall departure -- late August to mid-September.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Fields or meadows where the grass is 1 to 3 feet (.3-1 m) high; must have an extensive area, perhaps 10 to 15 acres (4 to 6 ha).

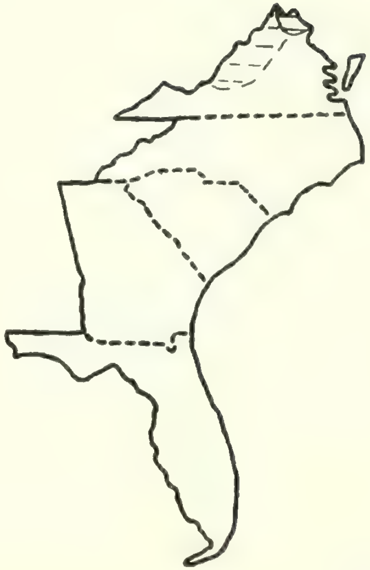
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Extensive grasslands, with moderate to tall vegetation.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season is poorly known, but it is apparently from early May to mid-June. Nests are placed on the ground in dense grasses in a field. Four is the usual clutch size, with 3 or 5 frequent.

FOOD HABITS: These shorebirds forage in tall grasses for insects, which are gleaned from the ground or vegetation.

GUILD: ground nesting, herb gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:145; DeGraaf et al. 1980:232; Lowery 1974:291; Mengel 1965:242; Forbush and May 1939:185; Imhof 1976:177; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:227; Sprunt 1954:172; Oberholser 1974(1):334; Burleigh 1958:246; Stewart and Robbins 1958:141; Bent 1927:55.



LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: State listed as Threatened in Florida.

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C in the restricted range in southern Florida, mainly on the Keys, but also on the adjacent mainland. Wintering -- U to FC, but the bulk of the breeding population leaves Florida in the winter. Primarily a species of the West Indies. Spring arrival -- late March to late April; fall departure -- poorly known, perhaps mainly in October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- generally in broadleaf evergreens; prefer mangrove thickets, but also use tropical hammocks and other thickets.

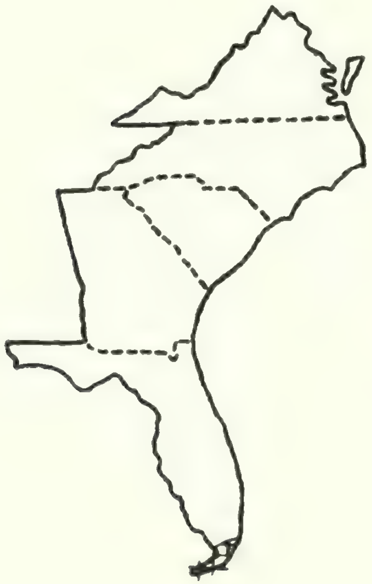
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Moderate to dense stands of broadleaf evergreens, generally where berries are present.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season is poorly known in Florida, though it probably extends from May to July. Nests are built in trees or shrubs, in rather dense woods or thickets. Two is the usual clutch size, though single egg clutches are not rare.

FOOD HABITS: These pigeons feed almost wholly in trees, picking berries and other fruits from twigs. Also take some insects and seeds.

GUILD: bush or tree nesting, tree foliage gleaning frugivore.

REFERENCES: Forbush and May 1939:250; Sprunt 1954:230; Bent 1932:369; Kale 1978:43.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: All seasons -- C to A in cities and towns throughout the Southeast; infrequent away from urban areas, except at farms; not common in most of the mountains. Non-migratory. Introduced from Europe.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- cities with ledges on buildings for nesting, and parks or other open places for foraging; often feed on concrete and other man-made substances. Also occur in farmyards, such as in feedlots.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: A ledge on a building or inside a barn; bare ground or short grass for foraging.

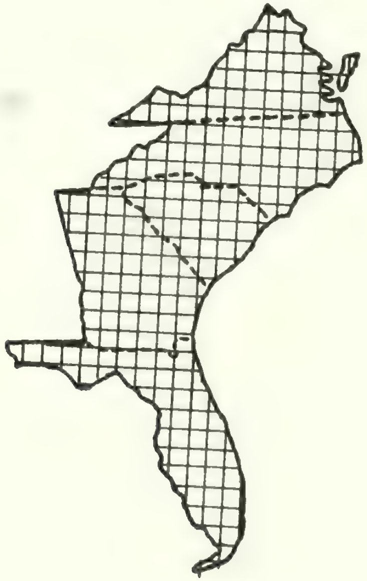
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sawtimber oak-hickory, 85(2) sawtimber live oak maritime.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from February to August, with a likely peak in April and May. Nests are built on ledges on man-made structures; commonly on city buildings, but also in barns or sheds, under bridges, and in many other places. Two is the normal clutch size, sometimes only 1.

FOOD HABITS: These tame birds forage almost entirely on the ground, gleaning seeds and grain; some insects and berries are eaten from time to time.

GUILD: ledge nesting, terrestrial gleaning granivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:188; DeGraaf et al. 1980:236; Lowery 1974:358; Mengel 1965:265; Forbush and May 1939:251; Imhof 1976:221; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:287; Oberholser 1974(1):413.



Mourning Dove (Zenaida macroura) MODO

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: All seasons -- VC nearly everywhere in the Southeast; tend to be C in the lower mountains in summer, but somewhat less numerous in winter; scarce above 4500 feet (1350 m). There is considerable movement of birds into the region in the winter, when Mourning Doves are A at many places.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- prefer open woods, wood margins, trees or shrubs along a hedgerow, or woods in residential areas; seldom nest in deep woods; nests are not far from open fields. Foraging -- in cultivated fields, plowed fields, farmyards, roadsides, lawns, and other areas of short grass or bare ground.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- trees, saplings, or shrubs in the vicinity of fields or other open country. Foraging -- open areas of bare ground or short grass, generally in agricultural country.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.7(13) grass-forb or shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood, 11(3) sawtimber oak-gum-cypress.

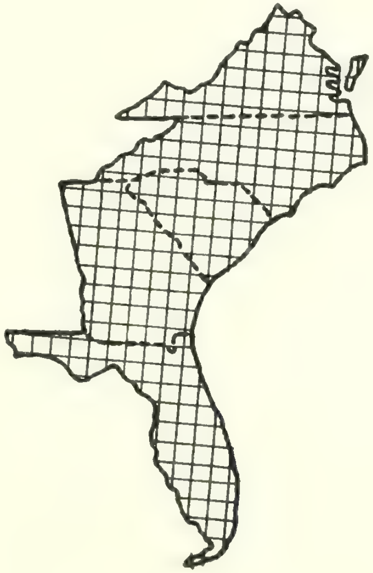
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) shrub-seedling southern scrub oak, 1(2) grass-forb longleaf pine-slash pine, 1(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress, 1(1) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime, 1(1) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood, 46(28) grass-forb elm-ash-cottonwood, 70(9) sapling-poletimber pine savanna.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from early March to late August, with the peak from mid-March to mid-April. Nests are frail platforms of sticks, placed at a fairly low (often 10 to 15 feet, 3-5 m) height in trees or shrubs, mainly along a wooded edge. Clutch sizes range from 1 to 4, though 2 is the usual number.

FOOD HABITS: These doves forage mainly in short grass or on bare ground. Seeds and other grains form nearly the entire diet.

GUILD: bush or tree nesting, terrestrial gleaning granivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:189; Verner and Boss 1980:152; DeGraaf et al. 1980:238; Lowery 1974:359; Mengel 1965:265; Forbush and May 1939:252; Imhof 1976:223; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:288; Sprunt 1954:232; Oberholser 1974(1):413; Burleigh 1958:303, 305; Stewart and Robbins 1958:172; Bent 1932:402-416.



Common Ground Dove (Columbina passerina) CGDO

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: All seasons -- C over most of Florida and extreme southern Georgia; FC north on the coast to central South Carolina; U to locally FC elsewhere, occurring north to Beaufort Inlet, North Carolina. Essentially non-migratory, though vagrants have occurred at many places in the region.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- generally in a shrub or small tree along a woodland edge, in a thicket or hedgerow, or in residential areas. Foraging -- favor sandy soil, such as in dunes, lawns, roadsides, farmyards, and others. Generally infrequent in open fields or extensive open country; usually stay close to woods or thickets.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- small trees or shrubs not far from open areas. Foraging -- short grass or bare ground, mainly in sandy soil.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(2) sapling-poletimber mixed pine-hardwood, 6(2) shrub-seedling southern scrub oak.

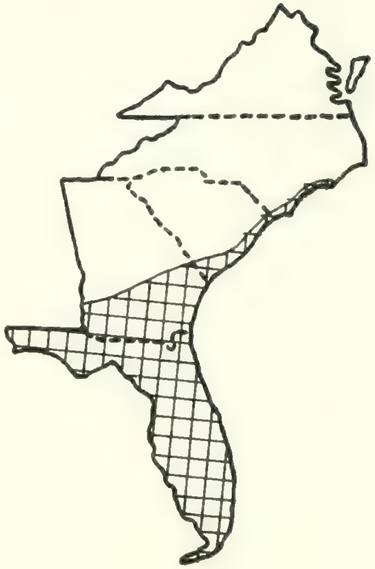
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(2) sapling-poletimber pine savanna, 6(4) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 7(1) shrub-seedling live oak maritime.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from late February to mid-October, with a peak from mid-April to mid-June. The frail platform nests are built in shrubs, low trees, or on the ground. The clutch size is usually 2, with 3 not unusual.

FOOD HABITS: These birds forage on the ground, especially in sandy soil. They glean seeds primarily, with some berries and insects also consumed.

GUILD: bush or ground nesting, terrestrial gleaning granivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:190; Lowery 1974:361; Forbush and May 1939:255; Imhof 1976:225; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:290; Sprunt 1954:236; Oberholser 1974(1):424; Burleigh 1958:310, 311; Stewart and Robbins 1958:175; Bent 1932:435-443.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- U, in the Florida Keys, and the mainland from the southern tip north to the central Gulf coast. Wintering -- presumably somewhat less numerous than in summer, apparently R in many areas. Details of seasonal movements are poorly known. Apparently absent in winter north of Everglades National Park. Primarily a West Indian species.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- mainly in mangrove thickets; also occur in tropical hammocks and other thickets.

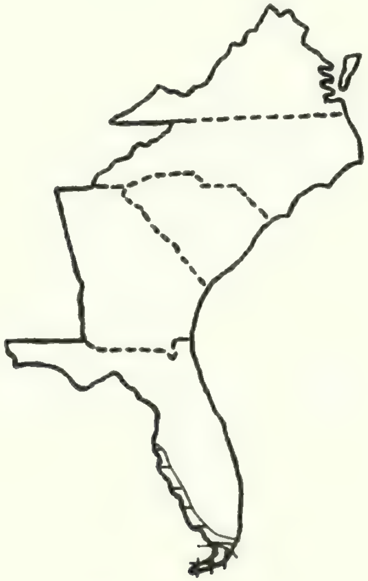
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Dense broadleaf evergreen woods, generally in mangroves.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from mid-May to mid-July, but the peak is unknown. The nests are usually built in mangroves, being well hidden in the dense vegetation of a mangrove forest. Two or 3 eggs is the usual clutch size.

FOOD HABITS: These birds are easily overlooked in the dense foliage of mangroves, where most foraging takes place. They take caterpillars most commonly, but other insects are eaten also.

GUILD: bush or tree nesting, tree foliage gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Forbush and May 1939:257; Sprunt 1954:242; Oberholser 1974(1):434; Bent 1940:51; Kale 1978:57.



LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: Blue Listed by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C throughout the Coastal Plain; FC to C in the Piedmont; FC in mountain valleys, but seldom above 3500 feet (1050 m). Winter to the south of the United States. Spring arrival -- early April to early May; fall departure -- early October to late October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Mainly in deciduous forests, especially where moist; bottomland woods, woodland thickets, and other hardwood forests; usually where tangles occur in the canopy. Generally avoid coniferous woods.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Broadleaf woods or forests, especially in rather thick vegetation.

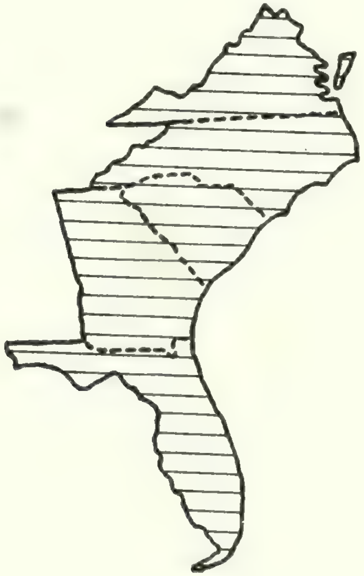
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.4(3) shrub-seedling mixed pine-hardwood, 7.8(23) sawtimber oak-hickory, 8.5(6) sawtimber oak-gum-cypress.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from mid-April to mid-September, with the peak during the first half of May in Florida, but from early June to early July farther north. The frail nests are built in dense tangles (often in vines) in small to medium-sized trees, but usually within 20 feet (6 m) of the ground. The usual clutch size is 3 or 4, ranging from 1 to 5.

FOOD HABITS: These cuckoos forage on caterpillars, especially hairy ones, in the vegetation in the canopy of trees.

GUILD: tree nesting, tree foliage gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:194; DeGraaf et al. 1980:240; Lowery 1974:368; Mengel 1965:271; Forbush and May 1939:257; Imhof 1976:228; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:295; Sprunt 1954:243; Oberholser 1974(1):434; Burleigh 1958:315; Stewart and Robbins 1958:176; Bent 1940:54-69.



Black-billed Cuckoo (Coccyzus erythropthalmus), BBCU

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- U in the mountains of Virginia and extreme northern North Carolina; R in the remainder of the mountain region, and in northern Virginia; VR and sporadic south to southern Virginia and northern Georgia. Winter south of the United States. Spring arrival -- late April to mid-May; fall departure -- late September to mid-October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Mature and usually extensive deciduous forests, often where tangles are present; at times in rather open woods, such as along streams; also in mixed forests on occasions; range up to 5000 feet (1500 m).

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Deciduous forests, particularly in dark, tangled places; mainly in montane country.

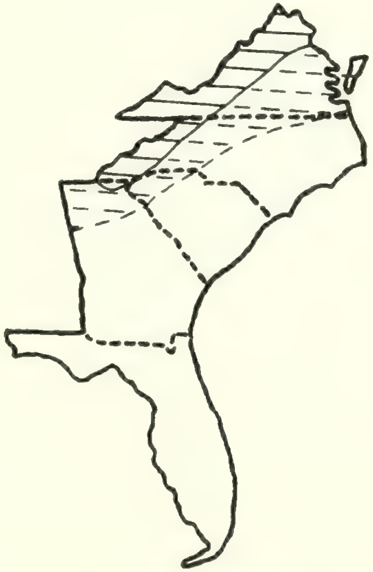
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in two habitats.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from mid-May to mid-July, with a likely peak during the first half of June. The nests are built in shrubs or trees, often within 10 feet (3 m) of the ground, usually in dense tangles. The most common clutch size is 2 or 3, ranging from 2 to 5.

FOOD HABITS: These birds feed primarily on caterpillars, especially hairy ones. Foraging is generally in the canopy of trees where tangles are present.

GUILD: tree or bush nesting, tree foliage gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:196; DeGraaf et al. 1980:242; Lowery 1974:370; Mengel 1965:272; Forbush and May 1939:259; Imhof 1976:229; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:296; Sprunt 1954:244; Oberholser 1974(1):435; Burleigh 1958:317; Stewart and Robbins 1958:177; Bent 1940:70.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: All seasons -- FC in most of southern Florida; locally C in a few areas, mainly near Lake Okeechobee; scarce in the Keys. Essentially non-migratory. Invaded Florida from the West Indies, mainly since 1930.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- generally around farms and fields with scattered groves, thickets, and hedgerows; often occur around cattle, and occur in residential areas. The nests are built in trees or shrubs along a hedgerow or in a thicket.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Scattered trees or shrubs in open country, especially in agricultural areas.

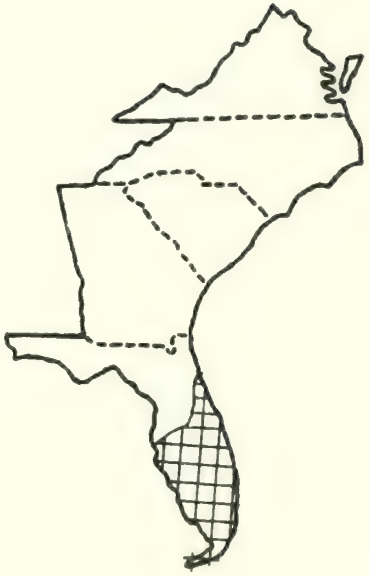
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 16(3) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine.

REPRODUCTION: The season apparently extends from March to September, but the peak is poorly known. Nests are very bulky structures placed in shrubs or trees; several females may lay eggs in the same nest. Generally 3 or 4 eggs are laid by a female, but communal nests with 20 or more eggs have been reported.

FOOD HABITS: They forage primarily on insects, as well as ticks, with some seeds and fruits taken. Most foraging is on the ground in short grass, especially in pastures, though they do feed in trees.

GUILD: bush or tree nesting, terrestrial gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Lowery 1974:371; Sprunt 1954:245; Oberholser 1974(1):439; Bent 1940:19.



LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: State listed as Endangered in Missouri, "In need of management" in Tennessee, and Rare in West Virginia. Blue Listed by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: All seasons -- generally U over the entire area, but somewhat more numerous near the coast. Absent in the higher mountains. Partly migratory, with individuals from north of the region (presumably) migrating into the Southeast in fall; tend to be more numerous coastally and in southern Florida in winter than in summer, at some places being FC.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- strictly in open country; favor extensive marshes and weedy fields for foraging. May nest in old barns, hunting blinds, in belfries, tree cavities, or in many other places; frequently nest in towns and residential areas. In winter, the birds roost in dense trees or shrubs, often in stands of young pines or cedars.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Forage in extensive fields or marshes; nest in sheltered cavities or old buildings, and roost in dense cover of evergreen trees or saplings.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(2) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime.

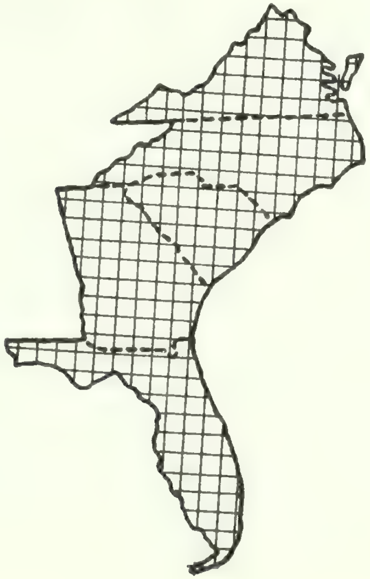
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sapling-poletimber pine savanna.

REPRODUCTION: Breed in all months of the year, even north of Florida. The peak is generally from March to May. Nest in sheltered cavities or other dark areas; often in old barns, hunting blinds, tree cavities, and belfries. The usual clutch size is 5 to 7, ranging up to 11.

FOOD HABITS: These owls feed at night by flying low over marshes or fields, dropping onto rodents and other small mammals they hear.

GUILD: ledge or cavity nesting, nocturnal herb pouncing carnivore.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:19; Potter et al. 1980:197; Verner and Boss 1980:154; DeGraaf et al. 1980:244; Lowery 1974:376; Mengel 1965:274; Forbush and May 1939:260; Imhof 1976:231; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:299; Sprunt 1954:248; Oberholser 1974(1):442; Burleigh 1958:319; Stewart and Robbins 1958:178; Bent 1938:140; Stewart 1980.



LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: Blue Listed by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: All seasons -- essentially C throughout; in the mountains rarely up to 4500 feet (1350 m). Believed to be non-migratory.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- in a wide variety of woods and forests; prefer open to medium growth woods, both in residential areas and in rural country; pine woods or mixed woods are favored over bottomlands and swamps. Foraging -- in open to medium growth woods, and also in open areas, such as fields, clearings, and wood margins.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- a cavity, generally in a tree, in a woodland; few strict requirements. Foraging -- no essential requirements, but woodlands of some type must be present.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in four habitats, 2.8(5) sawtimber cove hardwoods.

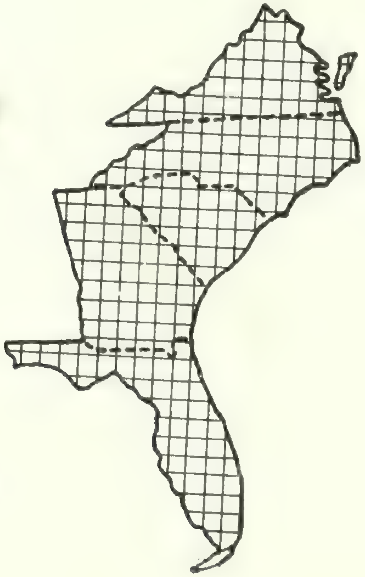
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress, 2.5(11) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from mid-March to late May, with a peak from early April to mid-April. Nest in a cavities, not dug by the birds; mainly in old woodpecker holes, but also in natural tree cavities and bird houses. The average clutch size is 4 or 5, ranging from 3 to 8.

FOOD HABITS: Screech Owls sit on perches, usually in woods, and drop to the ground when food is seen or (at night) heard. Insects, rodents, herps, birds, and other invertebrates are taken.

GUILD: cavity nesting, nocturnal terrestrial pouncing carnivore.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:20; Potter et al. 1980:198; Verner and Boss 1980:155; DeGraaf et al. 1980:246; Lowery 1974:378; Mengel 1965:275; Forbush and May 1939:261; Imhof 1976:232; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:301; Sprunt 1954:249; Oberholser 1974(1):444; Burleigh 1958:321-324; Stewart and Robbins 1958:179; Van Camp and Henny 1975; Bent 1938:243-285.



Great Horned Owl (Bubo virginianus) GHOW

LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: State listed as Rare in West Virginia.

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: All seasons -- FC essentially throughout the region, but scarce over 3500 feet (1050 m). Non-migratory.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- generally in pinewoods or mixed woods in upland areas; favor medium growth woods, but near the coast may nest in rather open groves. Not normally associated with wet or moist forests, and infrequent in deciduous forests. Foraging -- both inside forests or in adjacent open country; especially in weedy fields and marshes.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- fairly mature woods or forests, preferably in pines. Foraging -- no essential requirements, but a combination of woods and field/marsh is usually present.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.3(18) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 0.6(4) sawtimber oak-hickory, 1(1) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-scrub oak.

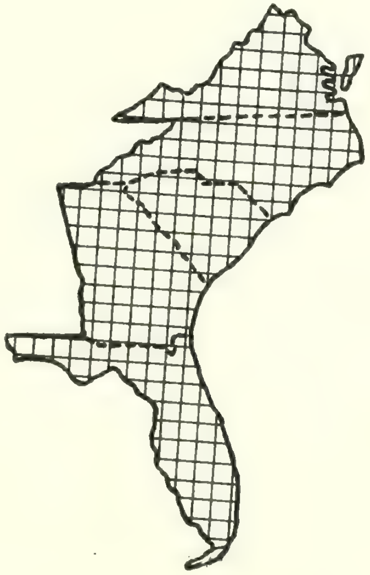
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as 1 individual/40 ha on 13 plots in five habitats.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from mid-December to late April, with the peak from mid-January to early March. At most localities, Great Horned Owls are the first birds to begin nesting in late winter. Do not build nests; instead, they utilize abandoned hawk or crow nests in treetops, especially in pines. Rarely nest on ledges or other sites. Two eggs are common, with 3 frequent.

FOOD HABITS: These owls may hunt in flight, or from a perch. They pounce on rabbits, squirrels, other mammals, birds, and herps, on open ground or the woodland floor, always at night.

GUILD: tree nesting, nocturnal terrestrial pouncing carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:200; Verner and Boss 1980:157; DeGraaf et al. 1980:248; Lowery 1974:379; Mengel 1965:277; Forbush and May 1939:265; Imhof 1976:233; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:303; Sprunt 1954:250; Oberholser 1974(I):447; Burleigh 1958:325; Stewart and Robbins 1958:179; Bent 1938:295-357.



LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: State listed as Special Concern in Florida. Blue Listed by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: All seasons -- quite local, but often FC where found; R over most of the range. Non-migratory.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Extensive open country, such as prairies, savannas, grassy fields, airports, and large lawns. Favor sandy areas.

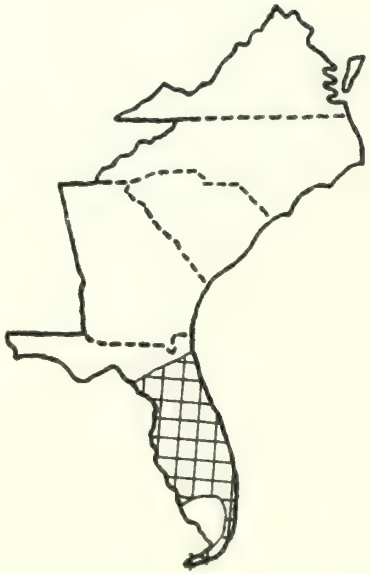
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Short grass habitats in sandy soil.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from November to mid-May, with the peak from early April to mid-April. Nest in underground burrows in sandy soil, either dug by the birds or taken over from other animals. Nests are often in colonies, always in an open area of short grass. The usual clutch size is 5 or 6, ranging from 4 to 8.

FOOD HABITS: Most foraging is at night, though they are sometimes active by day. The owls run along the ground for prey items or make short chases in the air, feeding on beetles, other insects, rodents, herps, and other animals.

GUILD: burrow nesting, nocturnal terrestrial stalking insectivore or carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:201; Verner and Boss 1980:159; Lowery 1974:381; Forbush and May 1939:271; Imhof 1976:234; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:305; Sprunt 1954:251-252; Oberholser 1974(I):454; Bent 1938:384-400; Kale 1978:97.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: All seasons -- FC to C in the Coastal Plain; FC over much of the Piedmont; mainly U in the mountains, but regularly occur to the tops of the highest mountains (6600+ feet, 1980 m). Non-migratory.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Nest site -- generally in swamps or bottomland hardwoods in the Piedmont and Coastal Plain; in the mountains occur along wooded streams, in spruce-fir forest, or in hemlocks. Foraging -- in both moist forests and in open country, such as weedy fields and marshes.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Nest site -- wet or moist forests, usually in swamps; cavities must be present for nesting. Foraging -- in moist woods, usually with fields or marshes in the vicinity.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in three habitats, 1.4(5) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress, 1.7(28) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood.

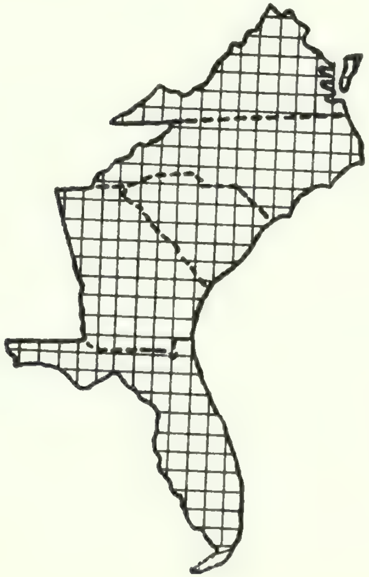
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) in four habitats, 2(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress, 2.4(17) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from mid-January to mid-May, with the peak from late February to late March. Nest usually in large trees that are hollow at the top, in swamps or moist woods; rarely in old crow or hawk nests. Two eggs form the usual clutch, with 3 also frequent.

FOOD HABITS: These owls forage at night from flight or from a perch. They drop onto rodents (usually), but also consume birds, herps, insects, crustaceans, and many mammals.

GUILD: cavity nesting, nocturnal pouncing carnivore on variable subtrates.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:27; Potter et al. 1980:201; DeGraaf et al. 1980:250; Lowery 1974:381; Mengel 1965:279; Forbush and May 1939:272; Imhof 1976:235; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:306; Sprunt 1954:254; Oberholser 1974(1):455; Burleigh 1958:327; Stewart and Robbins 1958:180; Bent 1938:182-201.



LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: State listed as Rare in West Virginia.

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- R, and poorly known, in the mountains of Virginia and the extreme northern Piedmont of that state. Wintering -- very secretive at this season, as they are silent and roost in dense trees; apparently R but regular over the region south to central South Carolina and central Georgia. Fall arrival -- mid-October to late November; spring departure -- late February to early April.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- in dense and fairly dark coniferous forests, probably most numerous in white pines or hemlocks. Wintering -- in dense dark places; most often in dense stands of pine saplings; but also in pine forests, thick cedars in old fields, and thickets. Forage at all seasons in forests and in fields.

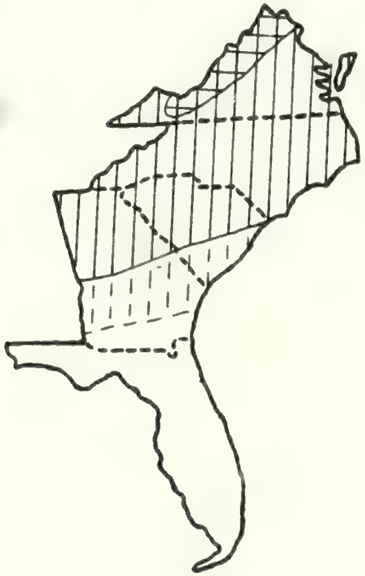
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- cool, coniferous forests; abandoned nests of crows or hawks are generally requisite for nesting. Wintering -- dense conifers, usually not far from open fields.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from mid-March to late May, but the peak is not known, as few nests have been found in Virginia. Nest in abandoned crow or hawk nests, generally in crotches in evergreen trees in a cool, shady forest. Four or 5 is the normal clutch size, with a range of 3 to 8.

FOOD HABITS: Like most owls, these birds forage at night either in flight or from a perch, in woods or in the open. They drop to the ground for rodents or other small mammals; birds are taken rarely.

GUILD: tree nesting, nocturnal terrestrial pouncing carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:203; Verner and Boss 1980:162; DeGraaf et al. 1980:252; Lowery 1974:382; Mengel 1965:280; Forbush and May 1939:274; Imhof 1976:236; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:311; Sprunt 1954:255; Oberholser 1974(1):458; Burleigh 1958:329; Stewart and Robbins 1958:181; Bent 1938:153; Armstrong 1958.



Short-eared Owl (Asio flammeus) SEOW

LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: Blue-Listed by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- R in Loudoun County, Virginia; formerly scarce breeders along the Virginia coast. Breed mainly north of the region. Wintering -- U to locally FC along the coast of the region, and in tidewater areas; VR to R, and erratic, inland; regular only in Loudoun County away from the coast. Fall arrival -- late October to mid-November; spring departure -- mid-March to mid-April.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- in large wet meadows or marshes, preferably fresh or brackish ones. Wintering -- mainly in marshes (fresh, brackish, or salt), but also in weedy fields, wet meadows, dunes, and shrub thickets. Roost in grassy cover or in shrubs. Unlike other owls, which are almost strictly nocturnal, these birds frequently forage in the very late afternoon in partial light.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- extensive areas of tall grasses or sedges in damp places. Wintering -- marshes or other grasslands.

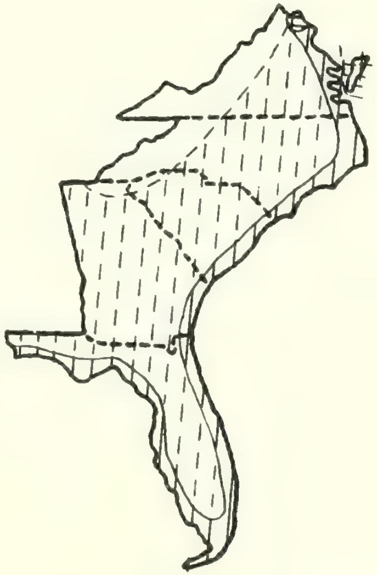
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 4(1) grass-forb loblolly pine-shortleaf pine.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from mid-April to mid-May, but the peak is not known, though presumably in late April or early May. The nests are built on the ground in marshes, well hidden in tall grasses. The clutch is usually 5 to 7 eggs.

FOOD HABITS: These owls forage by slowly flying a few feet over a marsh or weedy field, then dropping onto prey when movement is seen or heard. Rodents are the primary food, but other small mammals, insects, and birds are sometimes taken.

GUILD: ground nesting, nocturnal herb pouncing carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:203; Verner and Boss 1980:163; DeGraaf et al. 1980:254; Lowery 1974:383; Mengel 1965:281; Forbush and May 1939:275; Imhof 1976:237; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:312; Sprunt 1954:256; Oberholser 1974(1):459; Burleigh 1958:329; Stewart and Robbins 1958:181; Bent 1938:169.



Saw-whet Owl (Aegolius acadicus) SWOW

LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: State listed as Rare in West Virginia.

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- at high elevations in the mountains, generally over 5000 feet (1500 m); R in Virginia; U in North Carolina, but FC in a few areas. Wintering -- status poorly known, as they are silent at this season; apparently R over most of the region. Fall arrival -- mid-October to mid-November; spring departure -- mid-March to early April.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- in spruce-fir forests, or where mixed with hardwoods; nest in cavities in dead trees. Wintering -- in conifers, such as pinewoods, dense young pines, and cedars; often in conifers in open country. Forage in woods primarily in summer, but in woods or fields in winter.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- cavity in dead tree in a spruce-fir forest. Wintering -- dense conifers, usually saplings, in either woods or open country.

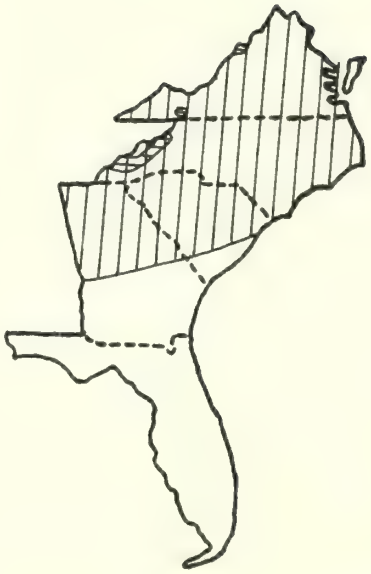
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in sawtimber spruce-fir.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season is poorly known, and no active nest has been discovered in the region; it is probably late April to early June. Nest in abandoned woodpecker cavities in dead trees in spruce-fir forest. Clutch sizes are usually 5 or 6, ranging from 4 to 7.

FOOD HABITS: These tiny owls search for food from a perch, usually inside a forest. They drop onto rodents and other small mammals, and forage only at night.

GUILD: cavity nesting, nocturnal terrestrial pouncing carnivore.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:30; Potter et al. 1980:203; Verner and Boss 1980:164; DeGraaf et al. 1980:256; Lowery 1974:383; Mengel 1965:282; Forbush and May 1939:278; Imhof 1976:238; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:313; Oberholser 1974(1):461; Burleigh 1958:331; Stewart and Robbins 1958:182; Bent 1938:228-242.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: C over most of its breeding range, especially in the Coastal Plain; R to U in Florida in winter. Arrive early April to late April; depart -- August to September (departure dates poorly known).

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breed in woods and forests, primarily dry or mesic ones; pines or hardwoods, but favor mixed woods; feed mainly over adjacent fields and clearings. Winter in dense woods, hammocks, etc.; mainly in broadleaf evergreen woods.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- woodlands of many types, with a light to moderate understory, generally near open country. Wintering -- woodlands of broadleaf evergreens, generally with a moderate understory.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.3(2) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime, 0.6(7) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 6(3) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 7(1) sapling-poletimber sand pine-southern scrub oak, 7(1) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-scrub oak.

SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress, 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime.

REPRODUCTION: From mid-March in Florida, until late June; peak is from early May to late May. The birds lay their eggs (almost always 2) in a woodland on the ground in dead leaves.

FOOD HABITS: Feed at night, chasing insects in sustained flight over fields, clearings, and woods. Large insects, such as moths and beetles, are preferred; rarely small birds are taken.

GUILD: ground nesting, nocturnal aerial insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:205; Lowery 1974:386; Mengel 1965:282; Forbush and May 1939:279; Imhof 1976:239; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:315; Sprunt 1954:257; Oberholser 1974(1):462; Burleigh 1958:332; Stewart and Robbins 1958:183; Bent 1940:147.

LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: Blue Listed by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C, somewhat less so in the mountains (absent at higher elevations). Winter -- U to FC in central and southern Florida, apparently U elsewhere. Arrive -- mid-March to early April, and depart in September and October (departure dates poorly known).

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- woodlands, usually not far from fields and other open country. Inhabit mostly medium-growth and upland woods, primarily where deciduous or mixed. Feed over adjacent fields. Wintering -- primarily in mixed woods, often in broadleaf evergreen woods.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- medium growth woods of many types, usually in uplands and not far from open country. Wintering -- broadleaf evergreen woods, not far from open country.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1.9(6) sapling-poletimber oak-hickory, 3.7(3) shrub-seedling mixed pine-hardwood.

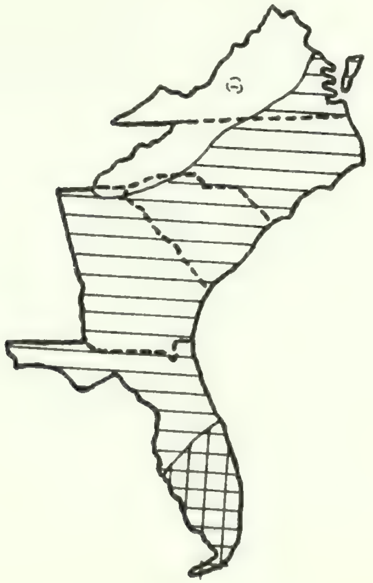
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber sand pine-southern scrub oak, 2(1) Everglades.

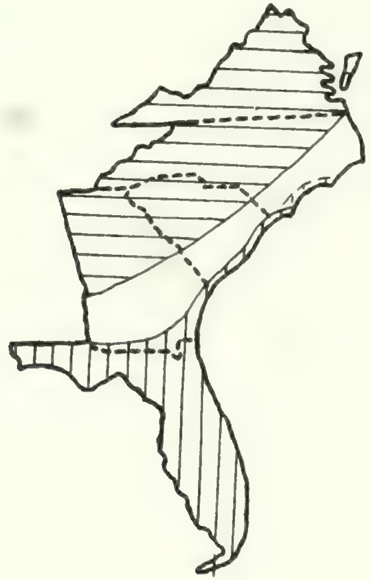
REPRODUCTION: Breed from mid-April to early July, with a peak from early May to early June. Lay their clutches of 2 in a woodland on the ground on dead leaves.

FOOD HABITS: Feed at night, catching insects in sustained flight over fields, woods, or small openings. A wide variety of flying insects are taken.

GUILD: ground nesting, nocturnal aerial insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:206; DeGraaf et al. 1980:258; Lowery 1974:388; Mengel 1965:284; Forbush and May 1939:280; Imhof 1976:240; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:317; Sprunt 1954:259; Oberholser 1974(1):464; Burleigh 1958:333; Stewart and Robbins 1958:184; Bent 1940:163-186.





ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C over much of Florida, especially in the southern part; U to FC, but local, elsewhere. More numerous in cities than in rural country. Arrive from early April to early May, and depart from late September to mid-October. Large flocks of migrants are frequently seen from late August to mid-September, mainly in the mountains. Winter south of the United States.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Over most of Florida, and northward along the coast, prefer area with sand and bare ground, such as dunes, open scrubby woods, and margins of thickets. Inland they nest mainly in cities and large towns, where they breed on flat-topped gravel roofs.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Areas of bare ground, both on graveled rooftops in cities and in sandy soil in rural country.

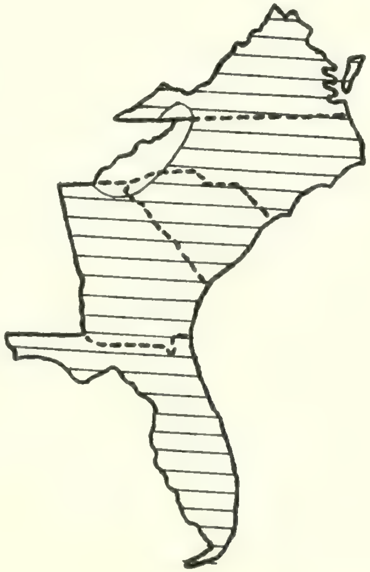
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in five habitats, 3.5(4) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-scrub oak.

REPRODUCTION: Breed from mid-April (in Florida) to mid-July, peaking from mid-May to mid-June. Eggs, almost always 2, are laid directly onto gravel or sand, as no nest is built.

FOOD HABITS: Nighthawks catch a variety of insects in extended flight, generally well off the ground. They feed mostly in very late afternoon and at night; are frequently seen before dark.

GUILD: ground or ledge nesting, nocturnal aerial insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:206; Verner and Boss 1980:166; DeGraaf et al. 1980:260; Lowery 1974:389; Mengel 1965:285; Forbush and May 1939:282; Imhof 1976:241; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:319; Sprunt 1954:260; Oberholser 1974(1):470; Burleigh 1958:335, 337; Stewart and Robbins 1958:185; Bent 1940:205-243; Kale 1978:58.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C to A nearly throughout; less numerous in the mountains, though C in much of this region. Winter south of the United States. Arrive from mid-March to mid-April, and depart from early October to late October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Mainly around towns, cities, and other open areas near human settlements. Feed over various habitats, even forests, but most common over open country and residential areas.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Chimneys, or large hollow trees in a forest. Most nest inside tall chimneys in urban areas.

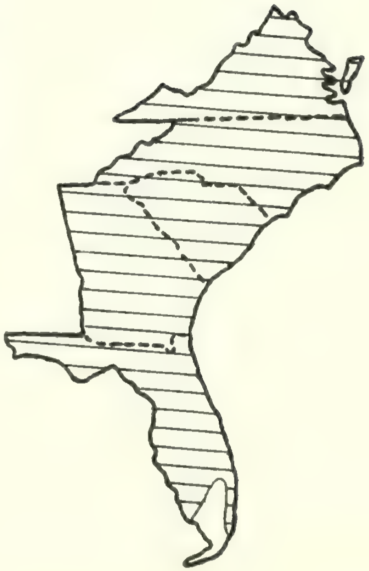
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in 16 habitats, 1.3(4) sawtimber oak-gum-cypress, 2.6(2) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress, 14(2) grass-forb mixed pine-hardwood.

REPRODUCTION: The stick nest is glued by saliva to the inside of a hollow or open structure; usually in the inside of a tall chimney, rarely in a hollow tree. Clutch size usually 4 or 5, rarely 3 or 6. Breed from early May to mid-July, peaking from late May to mid-June.

FOOD HABITS: The swifts are the most aerial of all landbirds, catching small insects in sustained flight.

GUILD: cavity nesting, aerial insectivore.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:31; Potter et al. 1980:208; DeGraaf et al. 1980:262; Lowery 1974:394; Mengel 1965:287; Forbush and May 1939:284; Imhof 1976:243; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:321; Sprunt 1954:263; Oberholser 1974(1):475; Burleigh 1958:339; Stewart and Robbins 1958:186; Bent 1940:271.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- FC over most of the Southeast, seldom C anywhere. Wintering -- mostly U in Florida, tending to increase in numbers in extreme southern Florida. Spring arrival is mainly early April to late April; departure is from mid-September to mid-October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding and wintering -- quite varied, but always near tubular flowers. They are more numerous in somewhat moist areas, such as bottomland woods, wet thickets, and tangles. Also inhabit upland woods, overgrown fields, and residential areas. Generally avoid coniferous woods.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- woody vegetation (woods or thickets) near tubular flowers, usually in moist habitats. Wintering -- woods or thickets near tubular flowers or hummingbird feeders.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in seven habitats, 4.2(14) sawtimber oak-hickory, 5.4(5) sawtimber oak-gum-cypress.

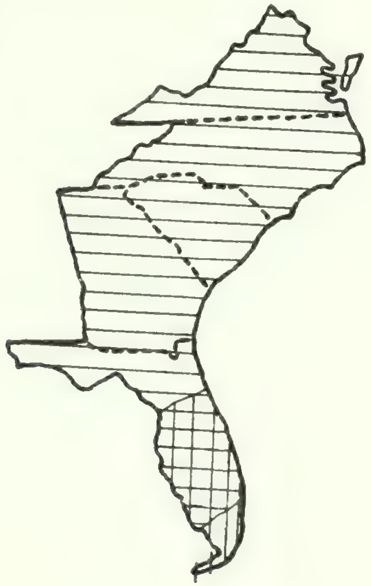
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress, 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime, 4.2(4) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine.

REPRODUCTION: Nesting ranges from early April (in Florida) to mid-July, with the peak from mid-May to early June. Nests are very small cups saddled on the tops of branches, in woodlands or thickets. Typically the nest is 10-20 feet (3-6 m) above ground, usually near or over a stream. The clutch size is always 2.

FOOD HABITS: Generally small insects and nectar obtained from tubular flowers, while hovering. Most foraging is within 10 feet (3 m) of the ground. Frequently take colored sugar-water from hummingbird feeders.

GUILD: tree or bush nesting, nectarivore or insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:209; DeGraaf et al. 1980:264; Lowery 1974:400; Mengel 1965:288; Forbush and May 1939:286; Imhof 1976:244; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:323; Sprunt 1954:265; Oberholser 1974(1):482; Burleigh 1958:341; Stewart and Robbins 1958:187; Bent 1940:332.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding and wintering -- C near the coast; mostly FC elsewhere, but U over much of the mountain region. Not C as breeders in southern Florida. There is some movement of birds into the Southeast, from farther north, in the fall.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding and wintering -- always near water, such as lakes, ponds, streams, and tidewater. Breed in holes in vertical banks along streams or lakes. Perch on trees, stubs, telephone wires, etc.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- vertical, sandy banks adjacent to or near a body of water. Wintering -- a body of water with scattered perches.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in six habitats, 0.6(2) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood.

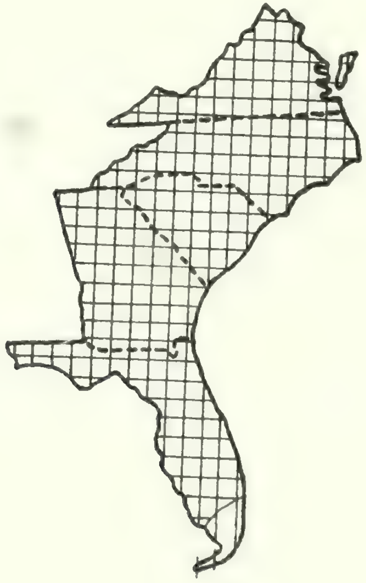
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress, 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime, 0.5(1) shrub-seedling oak-hickory, 2.3(3) sawtimber live oak maritime, 5(1) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood.

REPRODUCTION: Nesting occurs from early April to mid-June, for the most part, with a peak from early May to late May. The nests are long tunnels or burrows, dug by the birds, in vertical banks of sand or dirt near water. Commonly 6 or 7 eggs are laid, though 5 or 8 eggs are not unusual.

FOOD HABITS: Kingfishers hover or fly slowly over water and plunge into the water when food is sighted. Small fish are the primary food, but some insects, crayfish, shellfish, and other prey items are also taken.

GUILD: burrow nesting, aquatic pouncing carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:211; Verner and Boss 1980:175; DeGraaf et al 1980:266; Lowery 1974:406; Mengel 1965:289; Forbush and May 1939:290; Imhof 1976:247; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:326; Sprunt 1954:268; Oberholser 1974(1):501; Burleigh 1958:344; Stewart and Robbins 1958:189; Bent 1940:111-129.



Piedmont and Coastal Plain; FC at lower and middle elevations in the mountains, but scarce over 4000 feet (1200 m). There is some movement of flickers into the Southeast in fall. They tend to be conspicuously more C on the coast in winter than in summer. Migration is generally in October and November, and again in March and April.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- prefer open woods and groves (generally hardwoods) in a variety of situations; wooded residential areas, woodland margins, groves in rural country, and many forest types. They are seldom common in deep, extensive forests.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- open woods, groves, or scattered trees, with dead trees or poles for a nesting cavity. Wintering -- open woods and scattered trees.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(5) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 0.6(4) sawtimber cove hardwoods, 3.1(28) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 4(5) sapling-poletimber mixed pine-hardwood, 6(4) sawtimber oak-gum-cypress.

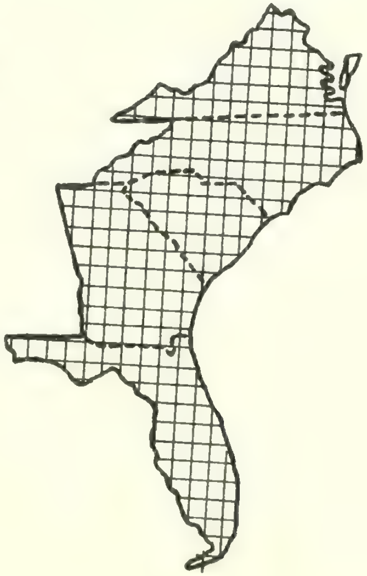
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber bay swamp-pocosin, 0.5(14) grass-forb elm-ash-cottonwood, 0.5(1) shrub-seedling Virginia pine-pitch pine, 6.7(3) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood, 10(3) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 25(3) sawtimber live oak maritime.

REPRODUCTION: Nesting season ranges from late March to mid-July, with a peak from late April to mid-May. Nests are cavities, dug by the birds, generally in dead trees, but sometimes in telephone poles or posts; the holes are usually high above the ground. Clutch size is commonly 6 to 8, ranging from 4 to 10.

FOOD HABITS: Flickers feed commonly on ants, as well as other insects; berries and seeds are frequently taken in fall and winter. They probe for insects on tree trunks and limbs, but spend considerable time on the ground feeding on ants.

GUILD: cavity nesting, tree trunk or terrestrial probing insectivore-omnivore.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:34; Potter et al. 1980:213; Verner and Boss 1980:176; DeGraaf et al. 1980:268; Lowery 1974:409; Mengel 1965:290; Forbush and May 1939:291; Imhof 1976:248; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:328, 329; Sprunt 1954:271; Oberholser 1974(1):506, 508; Burleigh 1958:346-348; Stewart and Robbins 1958:190; Bent 1939:259-308; Lawrence 1967.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: FC in most of the Coastal Plain and mountains; generally U to locally FC in the Piedmont. They are absent from the higher mountains. Non-migratory.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- mature and extensive forests, primarily in deciduous forests. Occur in both deep woods and swamps as well as in rather open and upland forests; seem most numerous in riverbottom hardwoods.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding and wintering -- mature and extensive forests with dead trees for nesting.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sawtimber loblolly pine-shortleaf pine, 4(1) sawtimber live oak maritime, 7.2(10) sawtimber cove hardwoods.

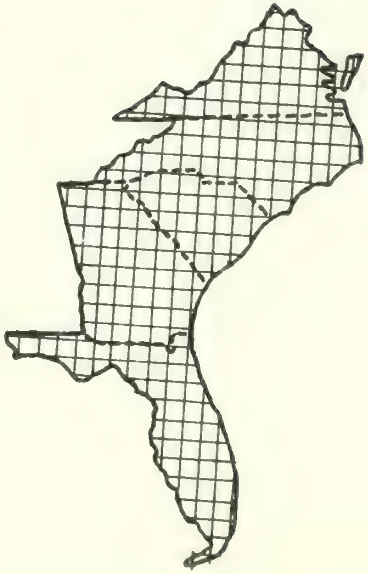
Swx 0.6(2) sapling-poletimber Virginia pine-pitch pine, 4(1) sapling-poletimber oak-hickory, 5.5(2) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from mid-March to late May, with the peak from mid-April to late April. Nests are large cavities, dug by the birds in dead trees, usually over 30 feet (9 m) from the ground; mainly in forests where well hidden. Clutch size is commonly 4, with 3 or 5 also frequent.

FOOD HABITS: They feed on the trunks of large trees, for the most part, but are frequently seen also on fallen logs. They probe in the wood for ants, insects, and insect larvae; some fruits and berries are taken in fall and winter.

GUILD: cavity nesting, tree trunk probing insectivore.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:35; Potter et al. 1980:214; Verner and Boss 1980:177; DeGraaf et al. 1980:270; Lowery 1974:410; Mengel 1965:293; Forbush and May 1939:294; Imhof 1976:249; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:331; Sprunt 1954:273; Oberholser 1974(1):509; Burleigh 1958:348; Stewart and Robbins 1958:191; Kroll et al. 1980; Bent 1939:164-194.



Red-bellied Woodpecker (Melanerpes carolinus) RBWO

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: C throughout the Coastal Plain and Piedmont; U in the mountains up to approximately 2500 feet (750 m), and generally absent above 3000 feet (900 m). Non-migratory.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- widespread in woodlands and forests; most common in bottomland hardwoods, but also common in upland deciduous woods, pine forests, and residential woodlands.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding and wintering -- mature woodlands or forests of many types with some dead trees or stubs for nesting.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(2) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 1(1) shrub-seedling loblolly pine-shortleaf pine, 1(1) sapling-poletimber oak-hickory, 8.1(33) sawtimber oak-hickory, 9.4(5) sawtimber oak-gum-cypress, 10(8) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 12(4) sapling-poletimber mixed pine-hardwood.

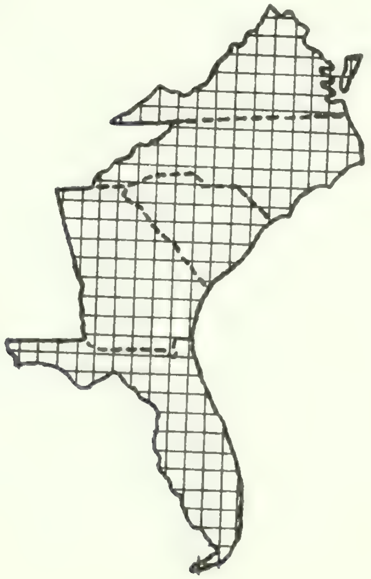
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(5) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood, 10(3) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood, 15(1) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-scrub oak, 16(2) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime, 26(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from mid-April to early July, with the peak from late April to mid-May. Nest in cavities dug by the birds in dead trees or branches in woodland. They occasionally nest in abandoned holes dug by other species. Eggs are generally 4 or 5 to a clutch, rarely as few as 3 or as many as 8.

FOOD HABITS: The birds pick and probe for food on trunks and branches of trees, preferably hardwoods. Insects and insect larvae are the chief foods, but fruits, nuts, and berries are also consumed. They occasionally feed on the ground.

GUILD: cavity nesting, tree trunk probing insectivore-omnivore.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:36; Potter et al. 1980:216; DeGraaf et al. 1980:272; Lowery 1974:411; Mengel 1965:295; Forbush and May 1939:297; Imhof 1976:250; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:332; Sprunt 1954:274; Oberholser 1974(1):510; Burleigh 1958:351, 353; Stewart and Robbins 1958:192; Kroll et al. 1980; Bent 1939:237.



Red-headed Woodpecker (Melanerpes erythrocephalus) RHWO

LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: State listed as "In need of management" in Tennessee. Blue Listed by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: FC, though local, in much of the Coastal Plain; mostly U and local in the Piedmont; generally R below 2500 feet (750 m) in the mountains and absent above that elevation except in migration. Noticeable fall migration in September. These woodpeckers are slightly more numerous in the region in winter than in summer, particularly in swamps and bottomland woods.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- prefer open woods and groves, such as parks, campuses, open pinewoods, rural groves, and open swamps. Wintering -- same habitats as for breeding, except considerably more numerous in winter in beaver pond woods, open swamps, and other wet places where there is an abundance of dead trees.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- open, mature woods and groves, with dead trees, stubs, or poles for nesting. Wintering -- open woods, especially in bottomlands.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) shrub-seedling southern scrub oak, 3.8(4) sapling-poletimber mixed pine-hardwood, 4(2) grass-forb mixed pine-hardwood.

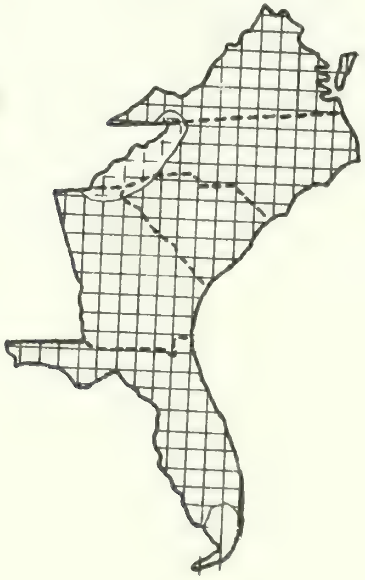
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(2) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood, 5(1) sawtimber live oak maritime.

REPRODUCTION: Nesting season ranges from mid-April to mid-July, with the peak from mid-May to mid-June. Nest cavities are dug by the birds in dead trees or limbs (usually); occasionally in telephone poles or fence posts. They usually nest in fairly open situations. Five eggs are most commonly laid, though 4, 6, or 7 are frequent.

FOOD HABITS: These birds have a varied diet. They usually dig for insects and grubs in the bark of trunks and twigs; but also take nuts and berries from twigs, flycatch for flying insects, and probe for insects on the ground.

GUILD: cavity nesting, tree trunk probing insectivore-omnivore.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:39; Potter et al. 1980:216; DeGraaf et al. 1980:274; Lowery 1974:412; Mengel 1965:297; Forbush and May 1939:298; Imhof 1976:251;
Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:333; Sprunt 1954:276; Oberholser 1974(1):514; Burleigh 1958:355; Stewart and Robbins 1958:193; Bent 1939:195.



LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: State listed as "in need of management" in

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- mostly U and local, mainly over 4000 feet (1200 m). Wintering -- FC to C over the entire Southeast. Fall migration mainly from late September to mid-October; spring migration generally from late March to late April.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- high elevation deciduous forests that are open with dead trees, such as near burns, diseased areas, woodland borders, and blowdowns. Wintering -- in various habitats; mainly in open deciduous woods, groves, residential areas, and parks; not common in deep, dense woods.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- dead trees in or near high elevation deciduous forest. Wintering -- woodlands of many types, mainly in hardwoods.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in grass-forb mixed pine-hardwood.

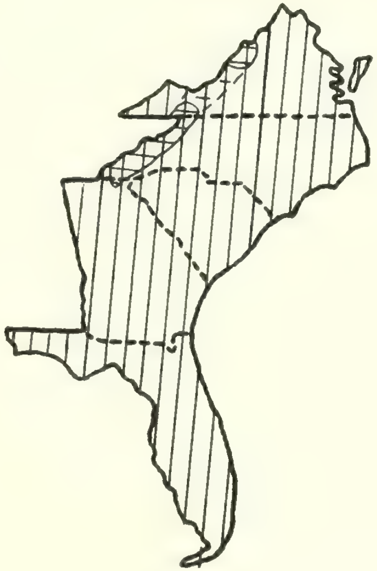
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber sand pine-southern scrub oak, 9.5(2) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime, 16(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from mid-April to mid-June, with the peak probably from mid-May to late May (few nests with eggs have been found in the Southeast). Nest cavities are dug by the birds in dead trees or stubs, and are generally in open situations. Eggs are usually 5 or 6, with 4 or 7 being infrequent.

FOOD HABITS: Sapsuckers feed on insects and grubs in the bark of trees, drill holes in bark to feed on cambium and sap, and also pick berries and nuts in winter. They rarely feed on the ground.

GUILD: cavity nesting, tree trunk probing omnivore.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:42; Potter et al. 1980:217; Verner and Boss 1980:180; DeGraaf et al. 1980:276; Lowery 1974:413; Mengel 1965:299; Forbush and May 1939:299; Imhof 1976:252; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:335; Sprunt 1954:277; Oberholser 1974(1):518; Burleigh 1958:356, 358; Stewart and Robbins 1958:194; Lawrence 1967; Bent 1939:126-153.



LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES:

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: FC in the mountains and most of the Piedmont; generally U over most of the Coastal Plain; especially scarce in southern Florida. Essentially non-migratory.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- mature forests of many types; mainly in deciduous or mixed woods, but do occur in spruce-fir, hemlocks, and pines; not partial to either uplands or lowlands, but generally scarce in woods near human habitation.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: All seasons -- mature, and usually extensive, forest; dead trees or stubs required for nesting.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.7(3) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress, 5.3(8) sawtimber cove hardwoods, 5.5(20) sawtimber oak-hickory, 10(2) sawtimber white pine-hemlock.

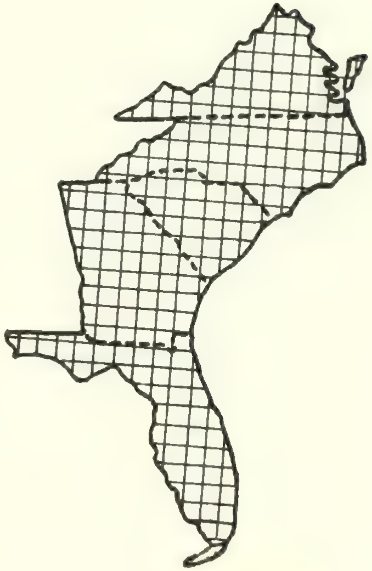
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 1(1) sapling-poletimber oak-hickory, 1(1) sawtimber live oak maritime, 1(1) sapling-poletimber Virginia pine-pitch pine, 5(1) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-scrub oak, 5(3) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood.

REPRODUCTION: The season extends from early April to mid-May, with the peak in late April and early May. Nest cavities are dug by the birds in dead trees or stubs, and are usually well hidden in the forest interior. Commonly 4 eggs are laid, but 5 are regular, as well.

FOOD HABITS: Very similar to most other woodpeckers; generally probe for insects and larvae on bark of trunks and limbs, favoring deciduous trees. A few berries and nuts are consumed in cold weather.

GUILD: cavity nesting, tree trunk probing insectivore.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:44; Potter et al. 1980:218; Verner and Boss 1980:182; DeGraaf et al. 1980:278; Lowery 1974:413; Mengel 1965:299; Forbush and May 1939:300; Imhof 1976:253; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:336; Sprunt 1954:279; Oberholser 1974(1):521; Burleigh 1958:358-360; Stewart and Robbins 1958:196; Kroll et al. 1980; Bent 1939:13-44; Lawrence 1967; Kale 1978:99.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: C over most of the region, but only FC in the mountains; generally only FC in Florida, becoming U in the southern half of that state. Essentially non-migratory.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- a wide variety of woodlands; inhabit middle-aged and mature woods, from uplands to lowlands; prefer hardwoods to conifers. Common in woodlots, groves, parks, and residential areas as well as in forests.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: All seasons -- middle-aged to mature trees in many situations; dead trees or stubs necessary for nesting.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.3(2) sawtimber loblolly pine-shortleaf pine, 0.3(4) shrub-seedling mixed pine-hardwood, 5.7(10) sawtimber cove hardwoods, 6.1(33) sawtimber oak-hickory, 8.7(3) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood.

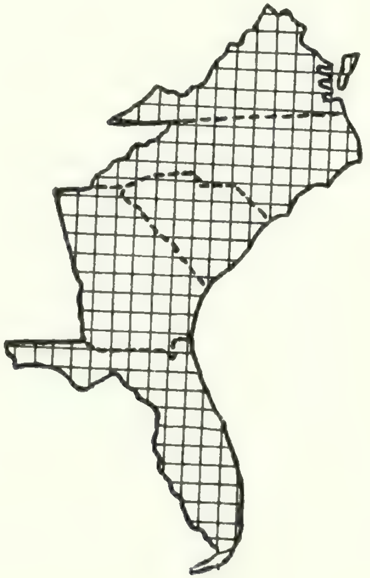
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 1(3) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 1(3) sawtimber live oak maritime, 1(1) shrub-seedling Virginia pine-pitch pine, 0.6(8) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood, 4.1(20) sawtimber oak-hickory, 8(1) sapling-poletimber oak-hickory.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from early April to late May, with a peak from mid-April to early May. Nest cavities are dug by the birds in dead trees or stubs; frequently excavated in stubs of living trees. Like most woodpecker cavities, nest holes are at medium height from the ground (30-50 feet or 9-15 m). Eggs are usually 4 or 5, rarely 3 or 6.

FOOD HABITS: They probe in bark of trunks and twigs for insects and larvae in both hardwoods and conifers. Nuts and berries are infrequently taken. Downies feed on smaller twigs and in smaller trees than other woodpeckers.

GUILD: cavity nesting, arboreal or bush probing insectivore.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:45; Potter et al. 1980:219; Verner and Boss 1980:183; DeGraaf et al. 1980:280; Lowery 1974:414; Mengel 1965:302; Forbush and May 1939:302; Imhof 1976:253; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:337, 338; Sprunt 1954:280; Oberholser 1974(1):522; Burleigh 1958:360-363; Stewart and Robbins 1958:196; Kroll et al. 1980; Bent 1939:45-71; Lawrence 1967.



Endangered in Alabama, Arkansas, Georgia, Kentucky, Louisiana, Maryland, Mississippi, North Carolina, South Carolina, Tennessee, Texas, and Virginia; and as Threatened in Florida.

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: In the Coastal Plain, U to locally FC from southeastern North Carolina to northern Florida; generally R in Virginia, northern North Carolina, southern Florida, and in the Piedmont. Non-migratory.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Strictly in open pinewoods; prefer longleaf pine, but also use loblolly and slash pines. Habitat is generally of fairly mature trees with little or no understory (resembling a park-like stand).

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Mature and open pinewoods; and some trees must have proper heartwood conditions for nest cavities. The birds prefer conditions of minimal understory.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.6(2) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 1.5(2) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine.

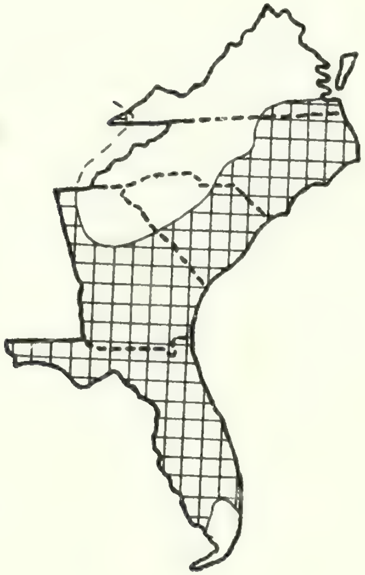
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 2(1) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-slash pine.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season is from early April to late May, with the peak from late April to mid-May. The nest cavity is unique: it is always in the trunk of a live pine. The birds dig their own cavity, and they then peck small holes around the exterior of the nest hole to cause sap to run. Eggs are usually 3 or 4, rarely 5.

FOOD HABITS: The birds pick and probe for insects and larvae in the bark of pines (very seldom on hardwoods). They feed fairly high up on the trunks of the trees, as well as on large branches. Nuts and berries are rarely taken.

GUILD: cavity nesting, tree trunk probing insectivore.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:49; Potter et al. 1980:220; Lowery 1974:415; Mengel 1965:306; Forbush and May 1939:304; Imhof 1976:254; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:339; Sprunt 1954:280; Oberholser 1974(1):526; Burleigh 1958:363; Stewart and Robbins 1958:197; Hooper et al. 1980; Bent 1939:72; Patterson and Robertson 1981; Thompson 1971; Jackson et al. 1979; Lennartz and McClure 1979; Kale 1978:11.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C over most of the [illegible] above 3000 feet (900 m). Winter south of the United States. Spring arrival -- late March to mid-April, rarely to late April; fall departure -- mid-August to late September. A heavy fall migration occurs along the coast.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Birds of open country. Prefer areas with scattered trees, fences, telephone wires, and fields. Groves and roadsides are typical habitats.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Open country with scattered trees, telephone wires, or other perches.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(2) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 1(2) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 8(2) grass-forb mixed pine-hardwood, 15(2) sapling-poletimber (edge) elm-ash-cottonwood (small plot), 10(3) grass-forb bay swamp-pocosin.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season is from early May to mid-July, with the peak from late May to mid-June. The nests are typical cup nests built in trees growing in the open, usually 15-25 feet (4-8 m) high. They frequently are well out from the trunks on horizontal limbs. The normal clutch is 3, sometimes 4 or 5, eggs.

FOOD HABITS: Kingbirds dart after flying insects from a conspicuous perch in a tree, on a fence, or on a telephone wire. In addition to flying insects, a few caterpillars and berries are gleaned from leaves and twigs.

GUILD: tree nesting, hawking insectivore at variable heights.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:224; DeGraaf et al. 1980:286; Lowery 1974:421; Mengel 1965:309; Forbush and May 1939:308; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:347; Sprunt 1954:286; Imhof 1976:257; Burleigh 1958:367; Stewart and Robbins 1958:198; Oberholser 1974(II):533; Bent 1942:11.

[illegible] the southern half of Florida, particularly in the Keys. Decreasing in abundance northward; thus, R and local in northwestern Florida and the coasts of Georgia and South Carolina. Winter south of the United States. Spring arrival -- late March to mid-April; fall departure -- late August to late September.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Open or semi-open areas near the coast; prefer the edges of mangroves and other thickets where plenty of perches exist; also occur in scattered trees in residential areas, wood margins, golf courses, and rural country.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Scattered trees, shrubs, or thickets not far from salt water.

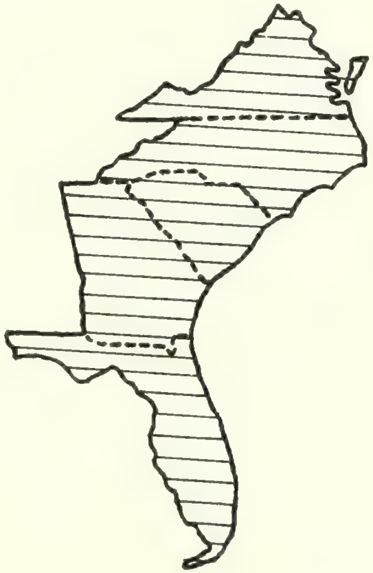
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in sapling-poletimber live oak maritime.

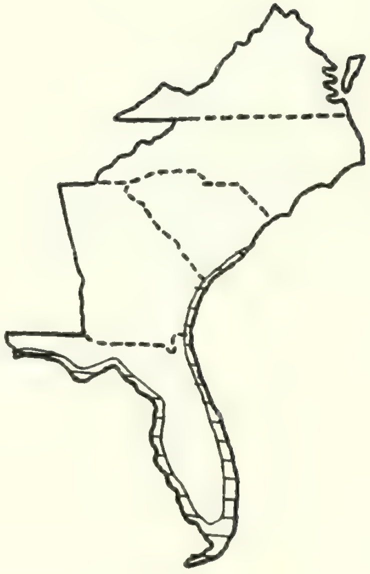
REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from early April to late July, with the peak in mid-May and late May. The cup nests are usually 3-20 feet (1-6 m) from the ground, and are placed in thickets, especially in mangroves. The clutch size is generally 3, with 4 infrequent and 5 rare.

FOOD HABITS: Sally after insects from a perch, or glean insects from vegetation while hovering. Flying insects are the most common food items. Berries and fruit are also taken.

GUILD: bush or tree nesting, hawking insectivore at variable heights.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:224; Lowery 1974:422; Forbush and May 1939:310; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:348; Sprunt 1954:287; Imhof 1976:258; Burleigh 1958:369; Bent 1942:29.





ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Florida, mainly along the east coast and in the Keys. Breed mainly in the western United States; occur in fall (late September to November) along the Atlantic coast of all five states. Fall arrival in southern Florida is mid-October; depart in early April.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Open country. Usually on telephone wires, fences, or other exposed perches in the vicinity of fields, pastures, and other open spots.

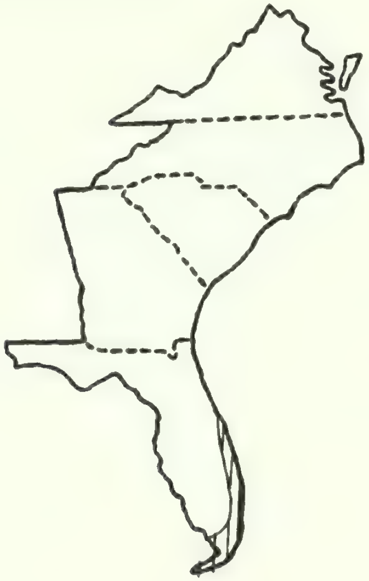
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Extensive open country with plenty of exposed perches.

REPRODUCTION: Do not breed in the Southeast.

FOOD HABITS: Most foraging is done by sallying after flying insects, but they frequently drop to the ground to feed on insects.

GUILD: hawking or pouncing insectivore at variable heights.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:225; Verner and Boss 1980:187; Lowery 1974:424; Forbush and May 1939:310; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:349; Sprunt 1954:289; Imhof 1976:260; Burleigh 1958:371; Stewart and Robbins 1958:199; Oberholser 1974(II):536; Bent 1942:57.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Very similar in southern Florida in winter, mainly on the Keys. the region, in the southern Great Plains. Most individuals winter south of the United States. Very rare as visitors to the Southeast except in Florida. Arrive in October; depart by early April.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Open country with telephone wires and/or fences for perching. Areas with scattered trees also utilized; even occur in towns on the Keys.

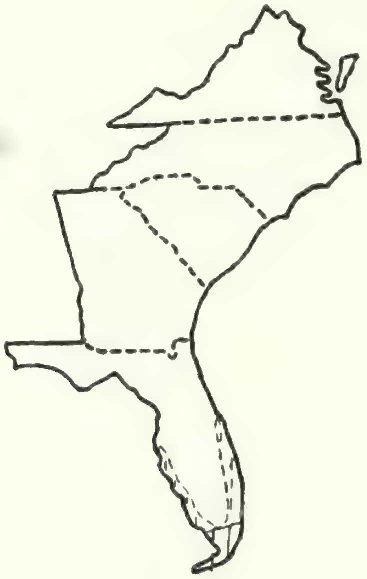
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Open country with scattered perches.

REPRODUCTION: Do not breed in the Southeast.

FOOD HABITS: Feed primarily by sallying after flying insects from a perch, but also take grasshoppers and crickets from the ground by hovering or dropping to the ground.

GUILD: hawking insectivore at variable heights.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:226; Lowery 1974:425; Forbush and May 1939:311; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:350; Sprunt 1954:290; Imhof 1976:261; Burleigh 1958:372; Stewart and Robbins 1958:199; Oberholser 1974(II):540; Bent 1942:82.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: [illegible] FC in the lower mountains, but generally absent above 4500 feet (1350 m). Wintering -- U to FC in southern Florida, mainly at the southern tip and Keys; majority of the breeding population winters south of Florida. Spring arrival -- late March to late April; fall departure -- mid-September to mid-October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- medium-growth to somewhat open woods and forest; occur in hardwoods, mixed woods, or pines (no clear preference); also found in groves and wooded residential areas, but generally scarce in dense forests.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- woodlands or forests, generally somewhat open, with a suitable cavity for a nest. Wintering -- a wide variety of woodlands and forests.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 2(3) sawtimber loblolly pine-shortleaf pine, 2.3(10) sapling-poletimber oak-hickory, 12(2) sawtimber live oak maritime, 15(5) sapling-poletimber mixed pine-hardwood, 25(4) sawtimber oak-gum-cypress.

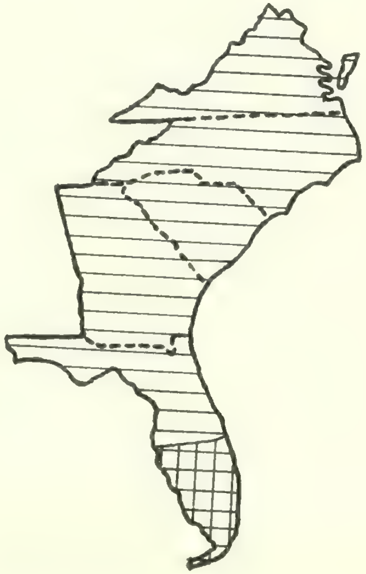
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime, 7(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress, 7.3(6) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-scrub oak.

REPRODUCTION: The season extends from late March (in Florida) to early July, with the peak from early May to early June. These flycatchers do not build nests, but utilize vacant cavities. Generally these cavities are old woodpecker holes in dead trees or stubs, but they also nest in bird boxes, natural cavities, and even mailboxes. Nests are lined with twigs and often include a shed snakeskin. The clutch size is usually 5 or 6, with 4, 7, or 8 eggs rare.

FOOD HABITS: Varied; sally after flying insects from a branch, generally in the canopy; hover at vegetation to take caterpillars and other insects; occasionally take fruits and berries. Do not hunt from exposed perches.

GUILD: cavity nesting, arboreal hawking insectivore.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:55; Potter et al. 1980:227; DeGraaf et al. 1980:288; Lowery 1974:428; Mengel 1965:310; Forbush and May 1939:311; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:351, 352;
Sprunt 1954:291-294; Imhof 1976:262; Burleigh 1958:373-376; Stewart and Robbins 1958:199; Oberholser 1974(II):542; Bent 1942:106-122.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- FC to C in the mountains; mostly FC east of the mountains. Wintering -- generally FC over the Coastal Plain and most of the Piedmont; rather U in the mountains. Migration mainly in March, and October - November.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- usually, but not necessarily, near water; the preferred habitats are near small bridges over creeks, in farmyards, near cliffs and waterfalls. Wintering -- widespread in open or partly open country, generally near water, but commonly far from water; pond and stream margins, farmyards, hedgerows, stubble fields, wood margins, and even residential areas.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- ledges, such as on buildings, under bridges, or on cliffs; no other essential requirements. Wintering -- no essential requirements, but usually in open habitats.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.6(2) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood, 8.3(7) sawtimber oak-hickory, 9(2) shrub-seedling mixed pine-hardwood.

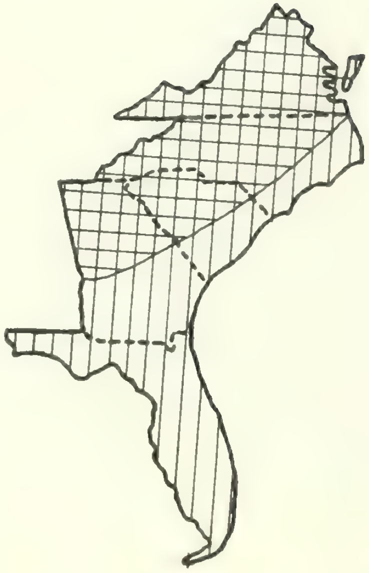
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) Everglades, 1(1) shrub-seedling southern scrub oak, 1(1) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 1(2) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood, 1(1) shrub-seedling Virginia pine-pitch pine, 1(2) sapling-poletimber Virginia pine-pitch pine, 1(5) grass-forb mixed pine-hardwood, 1(3) grass-forb oak-hickory, 7(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress, 14(2) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season ranges from late March to mid-July, with the peak from mid-April to late May. Nests are built in crannies or on ledges in sheltered places; most commonly underneath bridges over streams, but also on rafters of barns and farm houses, on cliff ledges, and other spots. Five is the most common clutch size, with a range from 3 to 8.

FOOD HABITS: Sally for flying insects from a perch, such as a bare twig or telephone wire, usually during the warmer months; do much feeding from the ground, dropping onto prey from a perch, especially in winter.

GUILD: ledge nesting, hawking or pouncing insectivore at variable heights.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:228; DeGraaf et al. 1980:290; Lowery 1974:430; Mengel 1965:311; Forbush and May 1939:313; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:353; Sprunt 1954:294;
Imhof 1976:264; Burleigh 1958:376; Stewart and Robbins 1958:201; Oberholser 1974(II):547; Bent 1942:140.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C nearly throughout; occur in the mountains up to 4000 feet (1200 m). Winter south of the United States. Spring arrival -- early April to early May; fall departure -- early September to early October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Mainly in deciduous forests near streams; favored habitats are bottomland hardwoods and rich deciduous forests along small streams.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Moist deciduous forests with a moderate understory, generally near a stream.

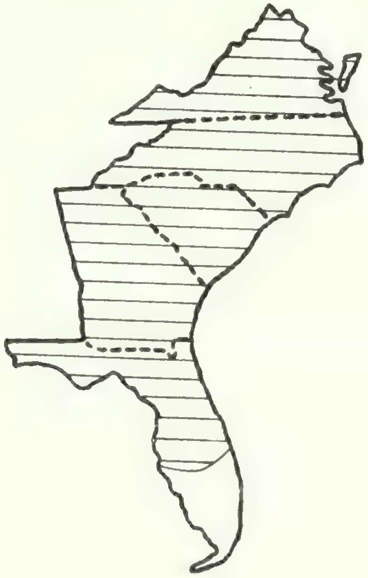
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) shrub-seedling loblolly pine-shortleaf pine, 3(1) sawtimber live oak maritime, 28(5) sawtimber oak-gum-cypress, 43(10) sawtimber cove hardwoods.

REPRODUCTION: The season extends from late April to late July, with the peak from late May to mid-June. Nests are built on horizontal or down-hanging branches of deciduous trees in forests, usually over a stream. Typical nest is 10-15 feet (3-4 m) above the ground. Clutch size is generally 3, with 2 or 4 being somewhat rare.

FOOD HABITS: Acadians generally sit near a stream on a branch 10-40 feet (3-12 m) from the ground, beneath the hardwood canopy, and sally after flying insects.

GUILD: tree nesting, arboreal hawking insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:230; DeGraaf et al. 1980:294; Lowery 1974:432; Mengel 1965:313; Forbush and May 1939:316; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:355; Sprunt 1954:295; Imhof 1976:267; Burleigh 1958:379; Stewart and Robbins 1958:203; Oberholser 1974(II):552; Bent 1942:183.



LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: Blue Listed by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- U to locally FC in mountain valleys along streams; quite R above 2800 feet (850 m); R to VR, and local, in the Piedmont, mostly in Virginia. Winter south of the United States. Arrive very late, generally from mid-May to late May; depart from mid-August to mid-September.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Generally in shrub thickets along streams or ponds in open country; favor alders and willows; seldom far from water. Also inhabit bogs, but to a lesser extent than streamside shrubbery.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Shrub or sapling thickets in open country, generally near water.

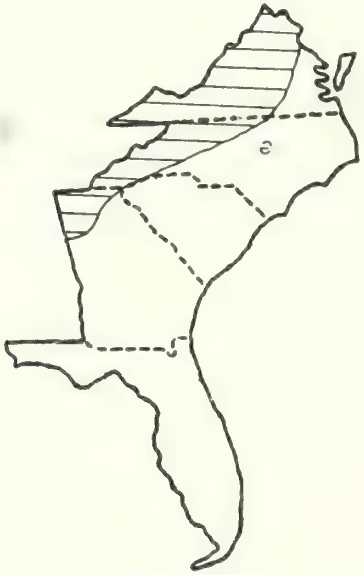
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.7(3) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood, 39(18) sapling-poletimber elm-ash-cottonwood (small plot).

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season is apparently from early June to late June, with a probable peak in early and mid-June (few nests with eggs have been found in the region). Nests are built in shrubs or small trees, usually 2-8 feet (.6-3 m) from the ground, in thickets. The clutch size is 3 or 4, rarely 2.

FOOD HABITS: Sally after flying insects from shrubs and saplings in thickets, foraging entirely within 20 feet (6 m) of the ground.

GUILD: bush nesting, bush hawking insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:230; Verner and Boss 1980:191; DeGraaf et al. 1980:296; Lowery 1974:433; Mengel 1965:314; Forbush and May 1939:317; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:356; Sprunt 1954:297; Imhof 1976:267; Burleigh 1958:381; Stewart and Robbins 1958:204; Oberholser 1974(II):553; Bent 1942:197.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- R and quite local at elevations virginia; and in North Carolina in Watauga County, at Roan Mt., and in southern Haywood County. These recent colonizers have begun breeding in the region within the past ten years. Winter south of the United States. Arrive late, probably from mid-May to late May; departure is probably from mid-August to mid-September.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Two distinct habitats -- high elevation bogs, with scattered shrubs and saplings, and high elevation shrub-sapling thickets in uplands. Occur in alders (Alnus crispa) on Roan Mt., as well as in spruce-fir saplings and blackberry thickets.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: High elevation (above 1050 m) shrub or sapling thickets.

REPRODUCTION: Essentially nothing is known of the breeding season in the Southeast, and no nest with eggs has been found in the region. The season probably extends from early June to early July. Nests are built in shrubs or saplings, within 10 feet (3 m) of the ground. The usual clutch size is 3 or 4.

FOOD HABITS: Essentially the same as the Willow Flycatcher. They sally out after flying insects in thickets and bogs.

GUILD: bush nesting, bush hawking insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:231; Lowery 1974:434; Mengel 1965:314; Forbush and May 1939:317; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:356; Sprunt 1954:297; Imhof 1976:269; Burleigh 1958:381; Stewart and Robbins 1958:204; Oberholser 1974(II):553; Bent 1942:204.

of the mountains, FC in some others, but C in only a few areas. Occur mainly between 2500-4500 feet (750-1350 m). Wintering -- R to U in extreme southern Florida; bulk of the breeding population winters south of the United States. Spring arrival -- mid-April to early May; fall departure -- mid-September to early October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- favor groves, open woods, streamside trees, woods in residential areas, and golf courses; mostly in rural, open country where scattered hardwoods are present. Avoid deep woods, and infrequent in conifers. Wintering -- generally at the edge of hammocks and other woods, or in thickets.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- open woods or groves in the mountains, but few strict requirements. Wintering -- shrubs, saplings, or other brushy places.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in grass-forb oak-hickory, 15(2) sapling-poletimber elm-ash-cottonwood (small plot).

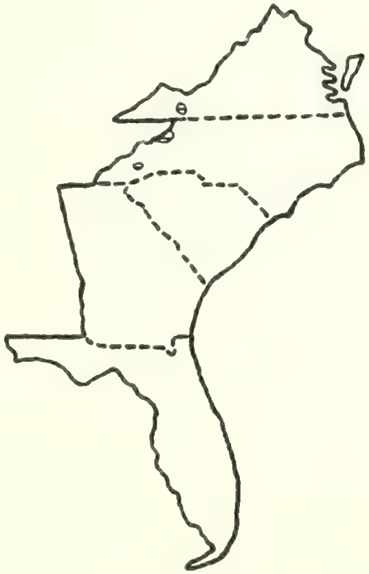
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(3) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine.

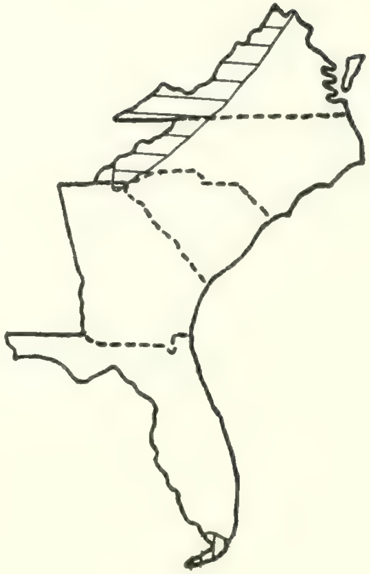
REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from mid-May to mid-June, with the peak from late May to early June. Nests are built on horizontal limbs, well out from the trunks of hardwood trees (rarely conifer), generally 15-25 feet (4-8 m) off the ground. The clutch size is most commonly 4, but 3, 5, and 6 also occur.

FOOD HABITS: Essentially only flying insects, caught in flight from a perch. The perch is usually a branch of a tree in a fairly open situation, and foraging (in the summer) is mainly 15-50 feet (4-15 m) from the ground.

GUILD: tree nesting, arboreal hawking insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:232; DeGraaf et al. 1980:300; Lowery 1974:434; Mengel 1965:315; Forbush and May 1939:318; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:356; Imhof 1976:270; Burleigh 1958:382; Stewart and Robbins 1958:205; Oberholser 1974(II):555; Bent 1942:213.





ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C over nearly all the Southeast, up to 3000 feet (900 m); FC up to 4500 feet (1350 m); seldom above 4500 feet. Winter south of the United States. Arrive from mid-April to early May; depart from early October to late October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: A variety of open to medium-growth forests and woodlots; favor neither pines nor hardwoods; preferred habitat is a rather open, mature woodland in a rather dry situation. Inhabit open pines, parks, wooded residential areas, as well as remote forests.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Open to medium-growth woods, with few other specific requirements.

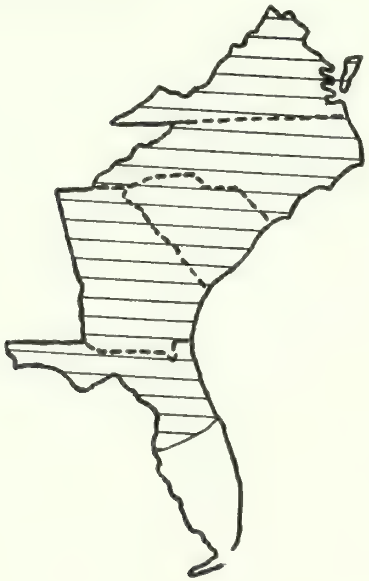
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1.4(3) sawtimber cove hardwoods, 9.3(28) sawtimber oak-hickory, 9.5(11) sapling-poletimber oak-hickory, 11(3) sawtimber loblolly pine-shortleaf pine.

REPRODUCTION: The season extends from mid-May to mid-July, with the peak from early June to mid-June. Nests are built well out from the trunks of hardwoods or conifers, on horizontal limbs, and generally 15-50 feet (4-15 m) from the ground. Clutch size is usually 3, though 2 or 4 are frequent.

FOOD HABITS: Pewees sally after flying insects from a twig of a tree. Most foraging occurs at the canopy level; occasionally hover at leaves and twigs to take insects.

GUILD: tree nesting, arboreal hawking insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:233; DeGraaf et al. 1980:302; Lowery 1974:435; Mengel 1965:316; Forbush and May 1939:319; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:357; Sprunt 1954:297; Imhof 1976:270; Burleigh 1958:384; Stewart and Robbins 1958:206; Oberholser 1974(II):561; Bent 1942:266.



m). Apparently more numerous 50 or more years ago. Winter south of the United States. Arrival -- early May to mid-May; departure -- late August to late September.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Favor openings and edges of coniferous forests, mainly in spruce-fir; generally in areas where dead trees are present (from disease or fire) above 5000 feet (1500 m).

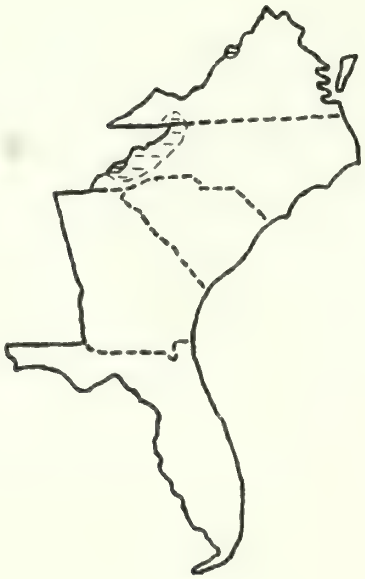
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: High elevation coniferous forests with openings and dead trees.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season is poorly known in the Southeast, but is probably from late May to early July. The peak is presumably in early and mid-June. Nests are built on horizontal limbs of conifers, generally fairly high up in the trees. Clutch size is almost always 3; 4 eggs are rare.

FOOD HABITS: These flycatchers eat flying insects strictly, especially bees and wasps. The birds sally after the insects from conspicuous perches near tree tops, particularly dead branches in conifers.

GUILD: tree nesting, arboreal hawking insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:234; Verner and Boss 1980:196; DeGraaf et al. 1980:304; Lowery 1974:436; Mengel 1965:317; Forbush and May 1939:320; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:358; Sprunt 1954:299; Imhof 1976:271; Burleigh 1958:385; Stewart and Robbins 1958:208; Oberholser 1974(II):563; Bent 1942:288.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- generally FC and local in the Piedmont of North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia; R to U in most of the mountains. Wintering -- FC to C over most of Virginia; FC in parts of northern North Carolina, but generally U southward. Fall arrival in October and November, and spring departure mainly in March. Erratic in migration, depending on the severity of the winter (more numerous in southern parts in cold winters).

PRIMARY HABITATS: Always in short grass or bare ground habitats. Breeding -- mainly at airports, large plowed fields, and grazed pastures; also around extensive lawns. Wintering -- most occur in plowed fields, but also in dunes, short grass pastures, lawns, and other bare ground habitats.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: All seasons -- extensive area of bare ground or short grass.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1.8(6) grass-forb elm-ash-cottonwood.

SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 3.7(10) grass-forb elm-ash-cottonwood, 96(7) grass-forb oak-hickory.

REPRODUCTION: The season extends from early March to early July, with the peak from early April to mid-May. Nest sites are bare spots on the ground, frequently next to stones, dirt clods, or clumps of grass. Four eggs are most common, but 3 or 5 are not unusual.

FOOD HABITS: Larks feed exclusively on the ground. In summer they glean insects and other invertebrates from grass or the ground, but in winter they take mostly weed seeds.

GUILD: ground nesting, terrestrial gleaning insectivore-granivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:235; Verner and Boss 1980:197; DeGraaf et al. 1980:306; Lowery 1974:438; Mengel 1965:318; Forbush and May 1939:321; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:359, 360; Sprunt 1954:301; Imhof 1976:272; Burleigh 1958:389; Stewart and Robbins 1958:208; Oberholser 1974(II):568; Bent 1942:320-371.

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- locally C on the Virginia coast; mostly R and local elsewhere in Virginia; one North Carolina nesting record (1979). Wintering -- C to A along the Florida coast; C in the interior of Florida; generally U as far north as North Carolina and Virginia. Fall arrival in July and August (but heavily in October); spring departure in March and April.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- mainly where dead trees and stubs occur in or around ponds, lakes, or estuaries. Wintering -- very widespread, but generally near water in open country; feed over marshes, ponds, lakes, bays, and in waxmyrtle (Myrica cerifera) thickets.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- cavities near open water. Wintering -- open country, generally near water. Few essential requirements in winter.

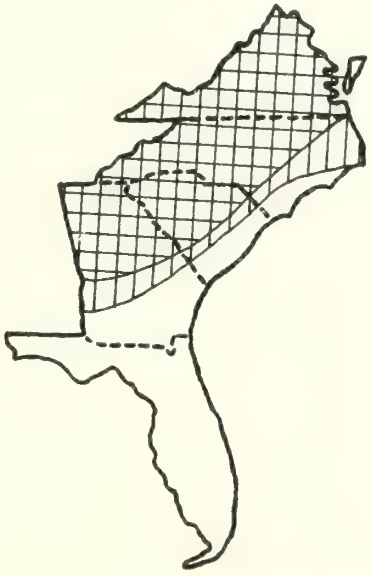
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 17(4) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine.

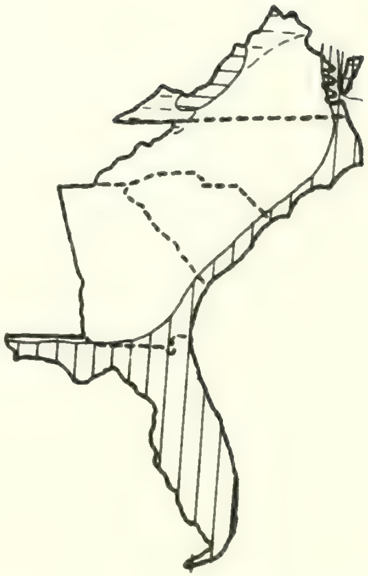
REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from late April to early July, with probable peak in mid-May and late May. Nest in cavities, not dug by the birds, usually in old woodpecker holes, but also in bird boxes. They often nest in colonies. Clutches average 5 eggs, but 4 and 6 eggs are frequently laid.

FOOD HABITS: At all seasons they catch flying insects in sustained flight, usually low over ponds, bays, or marshes. They commonly eat berries, especially waxmyrtle berries, in the winter.

GUILD: cavity nesting, aerial insectivore-omnivore.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:61; Potter et al. 1980:237; Verner and Boss 1980:199; DeGraaf et al. 1980:308; Lowery 1974:440; Mengel 1965:321; Forbush and May 1939:324; Imhof 1976:274; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:361; Sprunt 1954:302; Burleigh 1958:392; Stewart and Robbins 1958:209; Oberholser 1974(II):573; Bent 1942:384.





colonies in Virginia, and at one Piedmont site in North Carolina; R and very local. Winter to the south of the United States. Spring arrival from mid-April to mid-May; fall departure is early, from mid-July to mid-September.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Cliffs or bluffs along a river, large stream, or lake; possibly in quarries or road cuts.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: A high, steep bank, preferably over 10 feet (3 m) high. Most nests are near water, but this is not an essential requirement.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from mid-May to late June, with the peak probably in late May and early June. Nests are long, horizontal burrows, dug by the birds, into high vertical banks. These swallows are highly colonial, often placing dozens of nests in a single bank. Clutch size is usually 4 or 5, with 6 being uncommon.

FOOD HABITS: Feed almost entirely on flying insects caught in sustained flight over water or other open country.

GUILD: burrow nesting, aerial insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:238; DeGraaf et al. 1980:310; Lowery 1974:441; Mengel 1965:322; Forbush and May 1939:326; Imhof 1976:275; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:362; Sprunt 1954:305; Burleigh 1958:393; Stewart and Robbins 1958:211; Oberholser 1974(II):574; Bent 1942:400.

locally U in southeastern Florida. Most of the breeding population winters south of the United States. Spring arrival -- mainly early March to mid-March; fall departure -- very early, mainly mid-July to late August.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- usually at vertical banks on the shores of ponds, lakes, rivers, quarries, or road cuts; also nest in drainage pipes in buildings and under bridges. Forage over water or other open country. Wintering -- mainly around bodies of water, such as lakes and ponds.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- vertical banks are preferred; otherwise, a long horizontal drainage pipe or other narrow tunnel. Wintering -- no specific requirements, but generally near bodies of water.

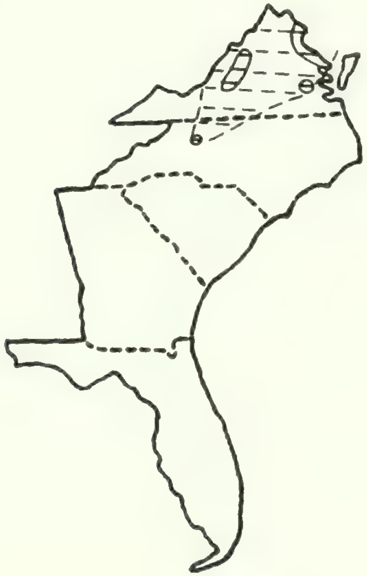
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in six habitats, 0.2(9) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood.

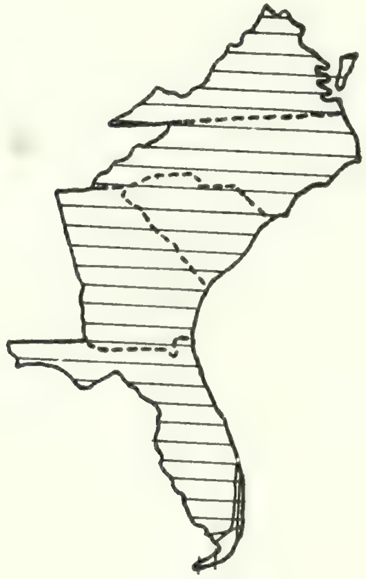
REPRODUCTION: The season extends from late April to mid-June, with the peak from late April to mid-May. Most nests are burrows dug by the birds in vertical banks, but horizontal pipes are also utilized for nesting. These swallows are rather solitary, though several nests may be placed in the same bank. Clutch size is usually 6 or 7, with a range of 4 to 8.

FOOD HABITS: Feed principally on insects caught in sustained flight.

GUILD: burrow nesting, aerial insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:239; Verner and Boss 1980:200; DeGraaf et al. 1980:312; Lowery 1974:442; Mengel 1965:323; Forbush and May 1939:327; Imhof 1976:275; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:363; Sprunt 1954:306; Burleigh 1958:394; Stewart and Robbins 1958:213; Oberholser 1974(II):576; Lunk 1962; Bent 1942:424.





Breeding -- C to A throughout the Piedmont; generally C over the remainder of Virginia and North Carolina; mostly R to U elsewhere, decreasing southward. Increasing in numbers and expanding in range clutch size is 7, with a range of 4-8. Nests are globular Arrive from mid-March to early April; depart by late September to mid-October, with the heaviest migration in August and early September.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Two major habitats: on dams or under bridges at lakes and ponds, and in barns or sheds in open country. They also nest under bridges over highways, under docks, and on or under many other structures. The vicinity of water is preferred.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Ledges of some type, usually on man-made structures; proximity to water is favored but not essential.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in seven habitats, 10(2) grass-forb mixed pine-hardwood.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from late April to late July, with the peak from early May to mid-June. Nest are cups placed on ledges, usually in sheltered spots; frequently under bridges, on dams, or inside barns. Colonies are most numerous at bridges over large lakes. Clutch size is usually 4 or 5, with 6 eggs also frequent.

FOOD HABITS: Feed almost solely on flying insects captured in sustained flight over water, fields, or other open habitats.

GUILD: ledge nesting, aerial insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:240; Verner and Boss 1980:201; DeGraaf et al. 1980:314; Lowery 1974:443; Mengel 1965:324; Forbush and May 1939:329; Imhof 1976:276; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:364; Sprunt 1954:307-310; Burleigh 1958:396; Stewart and Robbins 1958:214; Oberholser 1974(II):577; Bent 1942:439-462.

Cliff Swallow (Petrochelidon

LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: State listed as Threatened in Mississippi and Rare in West Virginia. Blue Listed by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- generally U and very local, mainly at lakes in the Piedmont, but also sparingly in the Virginia mountains; most common at Kerr Reservoir on the Virginia - North Carolina border. Have declined as breeders in the mountains since 1960, but a great increase since then in the Piedmont. Arrive mainly from mid-April to early May; depart mainly in August, rarely after mid-September.

PRIMARY HABITATS: In the Piedmont, nest only under bridges or on dams at large lakes. Thus, breeding sites are very restricted. In the mountains, nest mainly on barns. Foraging occurs over lakes, fields, or other open areas.

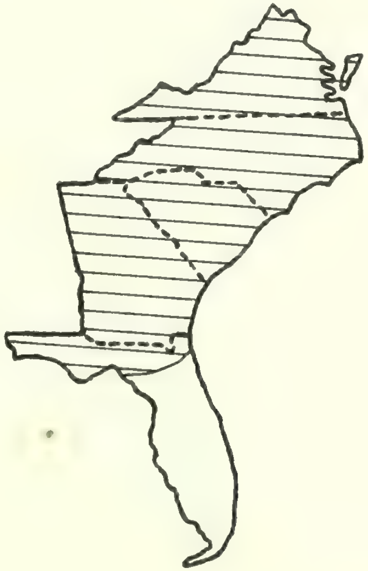
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Bridges or dams in the Piedmont, and perhaps in the mountains; barns in the mountains.

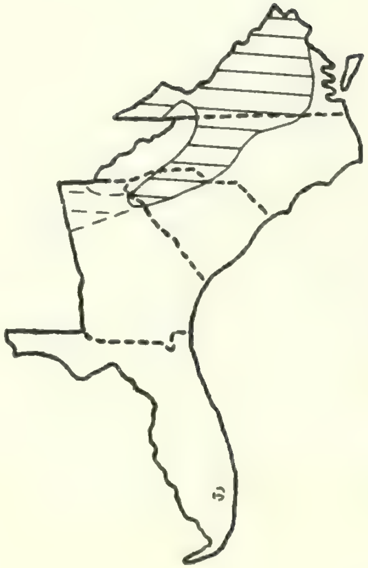
REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from mid-May to late June, with a peak in early and mid-June. The unique nests are built of mud and are plastered onto vertical faces or corners beneath bridges, on dams, or barns. The nests are somewhat hemispherical, with a small entrance on the side. These birds are quite colonial, and frequently nest with Barn Swallows. The clutch size is usually 4 or 5.

FOOD HABITS: As with other swallows, Cliff Swallows feed exclusively on insects caught in sustained flight.

GUILD: nesting on vertical faces, aerial insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:242; Verner and Boss 1980:202; DeGraaf et al. 1980:316; Lowery 1974:444; Mengel 1965:326; Forbush and May 1939:331; Imhof 1976:278; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:365; Stewart and Robbins 1958:310; Burleigh 1958:398; Stewart and Robbins 1958:215; Oberholser 1974(II):578; Bent 1942:463-485.





LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: Blue Listed by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C over much of the Coastal Plain, but mostly FC in the Piedmont; U to FC in the lower mountains. Not widespread, as they are restricted to areas where proper nest sites are available. Winter south of the United States. Arrive in Florida from late January to mid-February, and by mid-March in Virginia; depart very early, mainly mid-August to early October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breed almost entirely at multi-cellular bird houses or gourds; very rarely in other cavities. Feed over adjacent country, primarily over ponds and fields. Often inhabit open residential areas and farmyards, as long as proper nesting cavities are present.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Cavities in open country, preferably multi-celled ones such as martin houses and gourds.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in nine habitats.

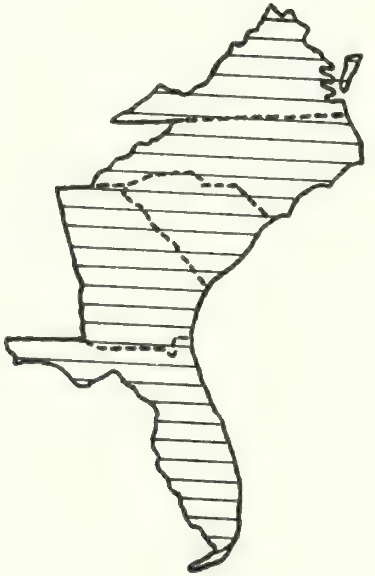
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine.

REPRODUCTION: The season extends from late March to early July, with the peak from mid-April to late May. The nest is built in a cavity, mainly in martin houses and gourds. Martins are highly colonial, and pairs nest in very close proximity to each other. The clutch size is usually 4 or 5, with a range of 3 to 9.

FOOD HABITS: Martins capture insects in sustained flight, frequently foraging several hours before dawn, as well as during daylight.

GUILD: cavity nesting, aerial insectivore.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:62; Potter et al. 1980:243; DeGraaf et al. 1980:318; Lowery 1974:444; Mengel 1965:327; Forbush and May 1939:334; Imhof 1976:280; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:366; Sprunt 1954:311; Burleigh 1958:399; Stewart and Robbins 1958:216; Oberholser 1974(II):582; Bent 1942:489.



Piedmont and Coastal Plain; FC in the mountains up to 4000 feet (1200 m). Heavy diurnal migration, mainly in the Piedmont, in April-May and September-October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- a wide variety of woodlands and forests; most common in open, mature woods, especially in oaks, such as parks, residential areas, and campuses; also common in mixed woods. Not as numerous in deep forests or bottomlands.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Middle-aged to mature trees, preferably oaks, in a wide variety of situations; few strict requirements.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sawtimber oak-gum-cypress, 6.4(29) sawtimber oak-hickory, 8.2(11) sawtimber cove hardwoods, 8.6(36) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 16(1) sawtimber live oak maritime.

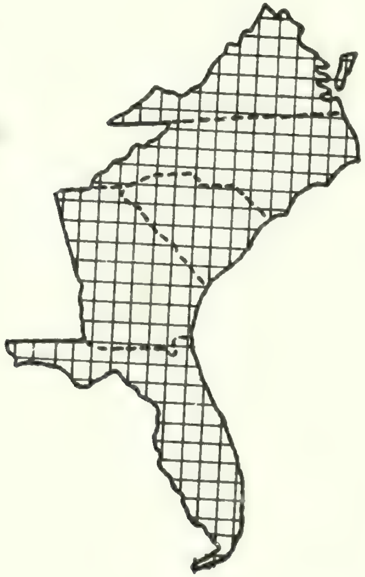
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(4) grass-forb elm-ash-cottonwood, 9.4(31) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 52(3) sawtimber live oak maritime, 62(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from mid-March to early July, with a peak from mid-April to mid-May. The typical cup nest is usually placed on a horizontal limb of a tree from 10-50 feet (3-15 m) above ground. The normal clutch size is 4 or 5; rarely 3 or 6 eggs are laid.

FOOD HABITS: Blue Jays have a varied diet; in summer, they usually glean insects and other invertebrates from vegetation, but in winter they consume mainly nuts and seeds. Acorns are a favored winter food.

GUILD: tree nesting, arboreal gleaning omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:245; DeGraaf et al. 1980:322; Lowery 1974:449; Mengel 1965:329; Forbush and May 1939:337; Imhof 1976:281; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:368; Sprunt 1954:313-316; Burleigh 1958:401-405; Stewart and Robbins 1958:217; Oberholser 1974(II):585; Bent 1946:32-56.



state listed as Threatened in Florida. Blue Listed by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding and Wintering -- FC over most of the range, in suitable habitat; locally C in a few places. Non-migratory.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Quite selective; limited to thick scrub vegetation in sandy areas, mainly in various species of scrub oaks; also where sand pine occurs with oaks.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Oaks of sapling or pole-timber size, preferably in poor, sandy soil.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 5(1) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-scrub oak, 7.5(2) shrub-seedling southern scrub oak.

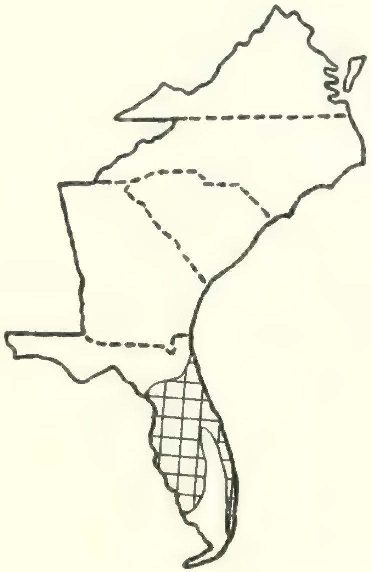
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 20(1) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-scrub oak, 28(2) shrub-seedling southern scrub oak.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from mid-March to mid-June, with a peak in mid-April and late April. The usual nest is built in a shrub or small tree and is generally well hidden. Four eggs is the most common clutch size, with 3 or 5 also frequent.

FOOD HABITS: Scrub Jays feed primarily in the vegetation of small oaks or other hardwood saplings. In the warmer months their diet is primarily insects and other small animals gleaned from the vegetation; in winter, nuts, seeds, and fruits are commonly taken.

GUILD: bush nesting, bush gleaning omnivore.

REFERENCES: Verner and Boss 1980:204; Forbush and May 1939:340; Sprunt 1954:316; Oberholser 1974(II):588; Bent 1946:77-117; Kale 1978:45.



Northern Raven

LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: State listed as Endangered in Tennessee and Rare in West Virginia.

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: All seasons -- U over most of the range, though FC in a few areas; tend to occur in flocks in winter, when several dozen or more individuals may share a roost. Occur mainly above 3500 feet (1050 m), but are present as low as 1500 feet (450 m). Little or no migration of individuals into the Southeast from farther north, but considerable local movements do occur.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- only in the vicinity of rocky and remote cliffs (where the nest is placed); forage over various habitats, such as open woods, margins, and fields at high elevation. Frequently seen around campgrounds, picnic areas, dumps, and other places where garbage is left. Wintering -- widespread in many montane habitats, especially in brushy areas and other open country in remote places.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- rocky cliffs with ledges (a sheer vertical cliff is unsuitable), especially where far from human habitation. Wintering -- no essential requirements.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in four habitats.

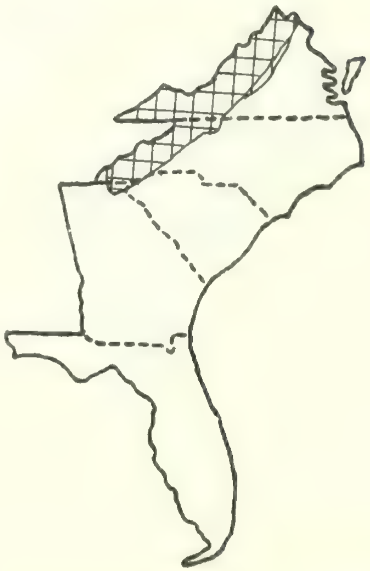
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) shrub-seedling oak-hickory.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season is early for a passerine, extending from early March to late April; the peak is probably from late March to mid-April. Nests are usually built on ledges on the sides of high cliffs; rarely built in crotches in trees. Five or 6 eggs are most common; 4, 7, or 8 eggs are rare.

FOOD HABITS: Ravens have a highly varied diet, and forage mainly on the ground. Carrion and garbage are commonly consumed, as are small mammals, insects, berries, nuts, and other items.

GUILD: ledge nesting, terrestrial gleaning omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:246; Verner and Boss 1980:207; DeGraaf et al. 1980:324; Mengel 1965:331; Forbush and May 1939:342; Imhof 1976:283; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:370; Burleigh 1958:405; Stewart and Robbins 1958:218; Oberholser 1974(II):593; Bent 1946:183-214; Hooper 1977.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: All seasons -- C essentially everywhere, except rather U in southern Florida; occur on the highest mountains, but not C above 5000 feet (1500 m). Undoubtedly some migration into the Southeast in winter; crows are so common at all seasons that seasonal population changes are difficult to determine.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- generally in pine or mixed pine - hardwood forests, but feed mostly in cultivated fields, pastures, and other open habitats. Wintering -- roost in forests, especially in pines, but continue to forage in a wide variety of open habitats (mainly agricultural ones).

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- woodlands or forest, preferably in pines. Wintering -- no essential requirements, other than woods for roosting and open country for foraging.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.3(8) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood, 2.2(24) sawtimber oak-hickory, 4.6(10) sapling-poletimber oak-hickory, 8(1) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine.

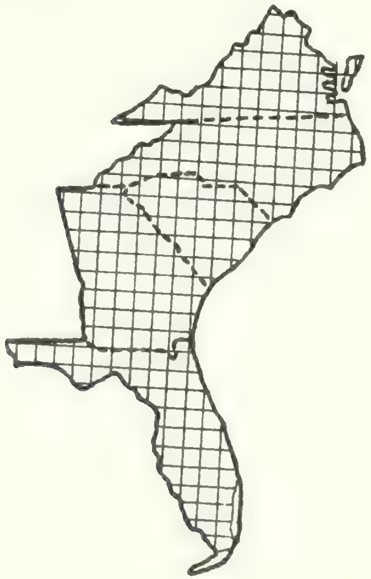
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) Everglades, 1(1) sapling-poletimber pine savanna, 1(1) sawtimber longleaf pine-scrub oak, 1(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress, 12(21) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 66(29) grass-forb elm-ash-cottonwood.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from late January (in Florida) to early June, with a peak in March and April. The typical nest is built in the crotch of a tree, generally in the canopy of a pine. The nest site is usually in a remote area, and the breeding pair is very quiet and secretive. The clutch size is usually 4 to 6.

FOOD HABITS: Crows take a wide variety of food items, mainly from the ground. In the warmer months they feed mostly on insects and other small animals. In winter they commonly take grain seeds and berries, in addition to small animals.

GUILD: tree nesting, terrestrial gleaning omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:247; Verner and Boss 1980:208; DeGraaf et al. 1980:326; Lowery 1974:450; Mengel 1965:332; Forbush and May 1939:343; Imhof 1976:283;
Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:371, 372;
Sprunt 1954:318; Burleigh 1958:406;
Stewart and Robbins 1958:220;
Oberholser 1974(II):596; Bent 1946:226-274.



[illegible]

tidewater areas of the other four states, [illegible] U to FC, but generally U in the Piedmont and mountain valleys. Wintering -- essentially the same as for breeding, but usually absent in the Piedmont and Inner Coastal Plain of North and South Carolina and Georgia. Spring arrival -- late February to early April; fall departure -- early October to mid-November.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Along the coast, occur in a wide variety of habitats; along shores, in marshes, thickets, and even woodlands. Inland, they are more restricted, being found mainly along the shores of lakes and rivers, or in pinewoods. Seldom feed in fields and pastures, though they do occur in towns, residential areas, and other urban areas.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- woods or thickets, preferably near water; few essential requirements. Wintering -- no essential features, though generally near water.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.4(3) sawtimber oak-hickory, 13(1) sapling-poletimber mixed pine-hardwood.

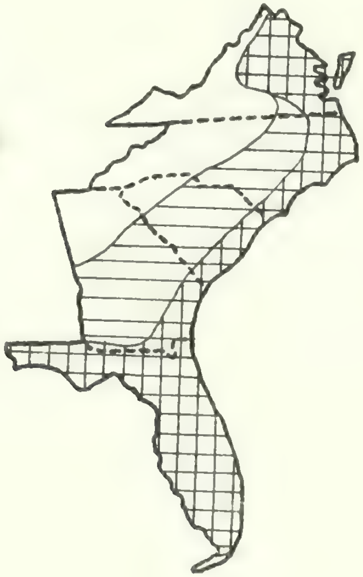
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.4(3) sapling-poletimber pine savanna, 0.4(3) sapling-poletimber Virginia pine-pitch pine, 0.4(3) sawtimber oak-hickory, 68(3) sawtimber live oak maritime.

REPRODUCTION: The season extends from late March to mid-June, with a peak from late April to early June. The nests may be high in crotches of trees (usually pines) or in thickets; frequently nest in colonies. The clutch size is seldom other than 4 or 5.

FOOD HABITS: Highly varied; dead fish, garbage, bird eggs, many kinds of small animals, berries, and other items are consumed. Most foraging is done on the ground, especially along shores, but they feed in trees and shrubs as well.

GUILD: tree or bush nesting, terrestrial gleaning omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:248; DeGraaf et al. 1980:328; Lowery 1974:453; Forbush and May 1939:346; Imhof 1976:284; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:373; Sprunt 1954:321; Burleigh 1958:408; Stewart and Robbins 1958:221; Oberholser 1974(II):597; Bent 1946:275.



and in northwestern Virginia (near the West Virginia border); mostly U elsewhere in Virginia. Wintering -- some movement of birds from north of region into Virginia, so that they are FC over much of that state's mountain region, and U in the northern Piedmont. Little or no migration in winter into North Carolina.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- in North Carolina, occur in spruce-fir and northern hardwoods, mainly over 4500 feet (1350 m); in Virginia, mainly in hardwoods or mixed forest. Wintering -- a wide variety of forests and woodlands, but prefer coniferous or mixed woods. Often in pines in winter.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- rather mature forests with dead trees or stubs for nesting sites. Wintering -- woods of many types, with no strict requirements.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in sawtimber cove hardwoods, sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 7(1) sawtimber spruce-fir.

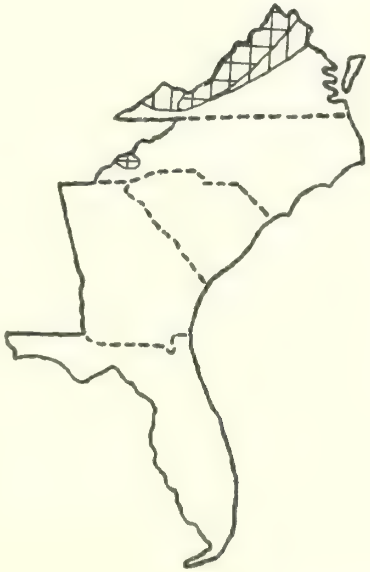
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 3(1) sawtimber oak-hickory, 5(1) shrub-seedling oak-hickory.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from late April to early June, with a probable peak in mid-May and late May. Nest in cavities, generally in dead trees or stubs, but occasionally in bird boxes. The birds may dig their own cavities, or take over vacant ones dug by other species. The clutch size is mostly 6-8; 5, 9, and 10 are rather rare.

FOOD HABITS: In summer, these chickadees glean insects and other small invertebrates from leaves and twigs; whereas, in winter they take insects, larvae, berries, and other fruit.

GUILD: cavity nesting, arboreal gleaning insectivore-omnivore.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:63; Potter et al. 1980:250; DeGraaf et al. 1980:330; Forbush and May 1939:347; Stewart and Robbins 1958:222; Oberholser 1974(II):605; Bent 1946:322-344.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: C to VC nearly throughout; occur in mountains up to 5000 feet (1500 m) where Black-capped Chickadees are absent. Nonmigratory.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- woods and forests of many types, but are most common in mixed pine-hardwood forests. Common in pinewoods, but less so in purely hardwood forests. Widespread in wooded residential areas, as well as in remote forested areas.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- mature woods with a few dead trees or stubs. Wintering -- no essential requirements other than woodlands.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) shrub-seedling loblolly pine-shortleaf pine, 1(2) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood, 13(34) sawtimber oak-hickory, 15(6) sawtimber oak-gum-cypress, 16(10) sawtimber cove hardwoods.

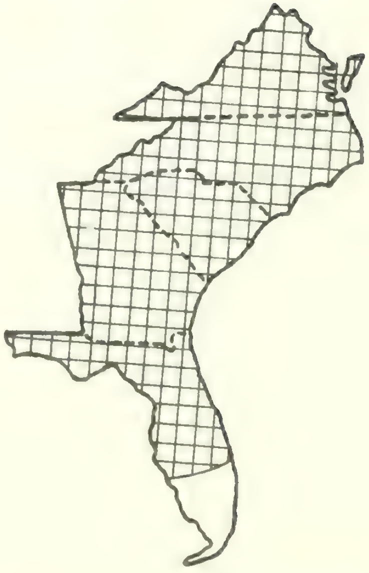
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sawtimber live oak maritime, 2.7(6) grass-forb oak-hickory, 14(19) sawtimber oak-hickory, 15(7) sapling-poletimber Virginia pine-pitch pine, 16(31) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 24(1) sapling-poletimber oak-hickory.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from early April to mid-June, with the peak from mid-April to early May. Chickadees nest in cavities, usually in dead trees or stubs, at times in bird boxes. They may dig their own cavities or utilize existing ones. Six eggs represent the most frequent clutch size, with 5, 7, or 8 eggs not rare.

FOOD HABITS: Glean insects from the twigs and foliage of trees in summer, and in winter forage mainly on insect larvae or eggs, berries, or seeds.

GUILD: cavity nesting, arboreal gleaning insectivore-omnivore.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:64; Potter et al. 1980:251; Lowery 1974:454; Mengel 1965:335; Forbush and May 1939:349; Imhof 1976:286; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:374; Sprunt 1954:323; Burleigh 1958:409; Stewart and Robbins 1958:224; Oberholser 1974(II):606; Bent 1946:344-355.



to 5000 feet (1500 m). Non-migratory.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- widespread in woodlands and forests; prefer deciduous woods to pines. Both upland woods and bottomlands are suitable; commonly occur in residential areas, parks, and other open woods.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- woods with a few dead trees or stubs for nesting. Wintering -- woodlands of a great variety.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) shrub-seedling loblolly pine-shortleaf pine, 1(1) shrub-seedling mixed pine-hardwood, 11(35) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 13(34) sawtimber oak-hickory, 20(11) sawtimber cove hardwoods, 23(5) sawtimber oak-gum-cypress.

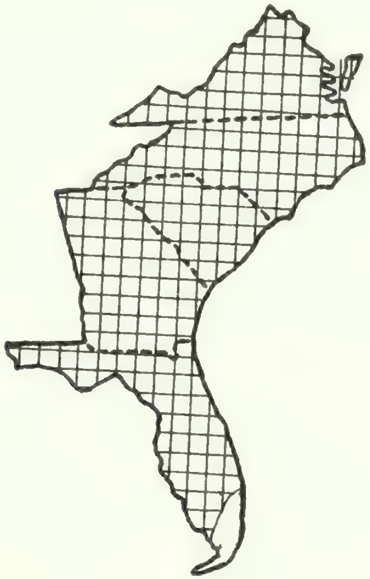
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress, 9.8(20) sawtimber oak-hickory, 12(3) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood, 16(33) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 20(1) sapling-poletimber oak-hickory.

REPRODUCTION: The season extends from early April to early June, with the peak from late April to mid-May. Titmice nest in cavities in trees or stubs, or in suitable bird boxes. They rarely dig their own cavities. The usual clutch size is 5 or 6; rarely 4, 7, or 8.

FOOD HABITS: During the warmer months, titmice usually glean insects from foliage or twigs of trees, but in winter they take insect eggs, insect larvae, seeds, nuts, and a few other items. Titmice, as well as chickadees, are common at bird feeders in winter, consuming sunflower seeds and suet.

GUILD: cavity nesting, arboreal gleaning insectivore-omnivore.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:70; Potter et al. 1980:252; DeGraaf et al. 1980:334; Lowery 1974:455; Mengel 1965:336; Forbush and May 1939:351; Imhof 1976:286; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:376; Sprunt 1954:324; Burleigh 1958:411; Stewart and Robbins 1958:225; Oberholser 1974(II):608; Bent 1946:393-411.



generally U elsewhere, becoming R near the coast. Formerly regular over much of Florida, but seldom recorded in recent years. Seem to be most numerous in Virginia, decreasing in numbers southward. Light to moderate migration into the area in fall, and thus are slightly more numerous in most localities in winter than in summer.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- birds of mature trees, preferably hardwoods. Most numerous in rather open upland hardwood forests, but frequently occur in bottomlands, parks, campuses, residential areas, and other places where mature trees are found.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: All seasons -- mature trees, with stubs, knotholes, or other sites for nesting and roosting (cavities); strong preference for hardwoods.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 1(1) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood, 5.1(9) sawtimber cove hardwoods, 5.4(3) sawtimber white pine-hemlock, 5.6(5) sawtimber oak-gum-cypress, 6.5(25) sawtimber oak-hickory.

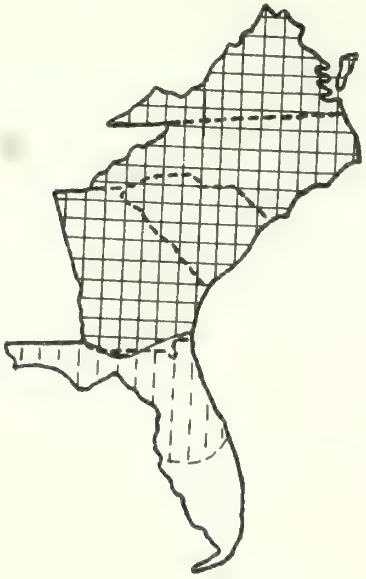
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 1(1) grass-forb oak-hickory, 2.8(22) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 3.7(3) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood, 4.4(17) sawtimber oak-hickory.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from mid-March to late May, with the peak from early April to late April. They nest in cavities in living trees, particularly in knotholes. They may dig their own cavities or utilize those of other species. The main clutch size is 6, with a range of 5-8 eggs.

FOOD HABITS: Nuthatches creep up and down tree trunks and limbs, probing in the bark for insects, larvae, and insect eggs. In winter they also take a few seeds and nuts.

GUILD: cavity nesting, tree trunk probing or gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:73; Potter et al. 1980:254; Verner and Boss 1980:215; DeGraaf et al. 1980:336; Lowery 1974:456; Mengel 1965:337; Forbush and May 1939:352; Imhof 1976:288; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:378; Sprunt 1954:325; Burleigh 1958:413; Stewart and Robbins 1958:227; Oberholser 1974(II):619; Bent 1948:1-21; Kale 1978:101.



local at lower elevations in pines or hemlocks; generally above 3500 feet (1050 m), but numerous only above 5000 feet (1500 m). Wintering -- very erratic, with a heavy migration into the region generally in alternate winters (in odd-numbered falls); FC to C in some winters, but U in others; usually more numerous in the mountains and Piedmont than in the Coastal Plain. Fall arrival -- mid-September to mid-October; spring departure -- early April to late April.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- generally in spruce and/or fir forests; infrequently in hemlocks, and rarely in pines. Favor mature stands. Wintering -- prefer coniferous woods, perhaps especially Virginia pines; rarely seen in hardwoods. Occur in mature trees as well as saplings, particularly in rather dense stands; regularly found in residential woodlands.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- montane coniferous woods with dead trees or stubs. Wintering -- coniferous trees, with few other specific requirements.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 10(1) sapling-poletimber oak-hickory, 14(2) sawtimber spruce-fir, 17(2) sawtimber white pine-hemlock.

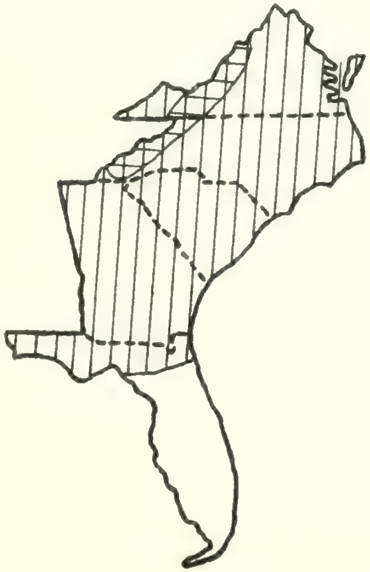
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) shrub-seedling oak-hickory, 1(1) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood, 1(1) sapling-poletimber loblolly pine-shortleaf pine, 1(1) sawtimber oak-hickory, 3.5(4) sapling-poletimber Virginia pine-pitch pine, 3.8(13) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from mid-May to mid-June, with a probable peak in late May and early June. Nest in cavities, usually dug by the birds, in dead trees or stubs, in a coniferous forest. The clutch size is generally 5 or 6, with 4 or 7 infrequent.

FOOD HABITS: In summer, these birds feed mainly on insects or larvae in the bark of evergreen trees, either on the trunk or on branches. In winter, they take insect larvae or eggs, nuts, and pine seeds.

GUILD: cavity nesting, arboreal (trunk or foliage) probing or gleaning insectivore-omnivore.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:74; Potter et al. 1980:254; Verner and Boss 1980:216; DeGraaf et al. 1980:338; Lowery 1974:457; Mengel 1965:341; Forbush and May 1939:354;
Imhof 1976:289; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:384; Sprunt 1954:326; Burleigh 1958:415; Stewart and Robbins 1958:228; Oberholser 1974(II):621; Bent 1948:22.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: C essentially throughout the range; in the mountains of Georgia and South Carolina they occur up to 1800 feet (550 m), perhaps to 2000 feet (600 m). More widespread in the Coastal Plain because of the greater abundance of pines. Non-migratory.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- strictly in pines; prefer mature, open pinewoods; not often common in dense stands of pines. Widespread in residential woodlands, parks, and other areas where mature pines are present.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- a dead tree, stub, or post near or in pines. Wintering -- pine trees, particularly mature ones.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sawtimber oak-hickory, 1(2) sapling-poletimber mixed pine-hardwood, 9.5(2) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 12(2) sapling-poletimber loblolly pine-shortleaf pine.

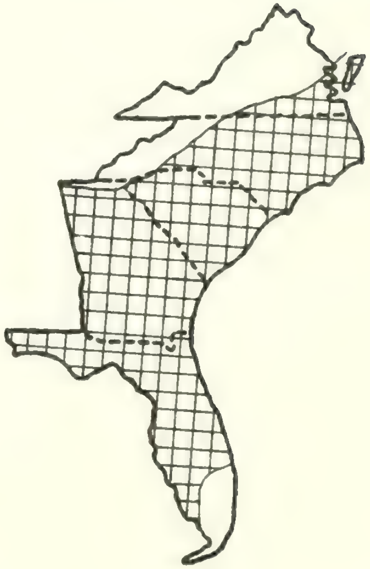
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sawtimber oak-hickory, 4(1) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 5.5(2) sawtimber longleaf pine-scrub oak.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from early March to mid-June, with the peak from late March to late April. The usual nest is in a cavity, usually dug by the birds, in a stump, post, dead tree, or stub. It is generally within 20 feet (6 m) of the ground, often in an open and conspicuous location. The clutch size is mostly 5 or 6, with a range of 3-9.

FOOD HABITS: Forage in pines, generally on branches, twigs, and cones, but frequently on trunks. Insects are the predominant food in summer, but pine seeds, nuts, and insect larvae are the major food items in the winter. Nuthatches generally probe in bark for food, but they commonly glean items as well.

GUILD: cavity nesting, arboreal (trunk or foliage) probing or gleaning insectivore-omnivore.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:75; Potter et al. 1980:257; Lowery 1974:458; Forbush and May 1939:355; Imhof 1976:290; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:384; Sprunt 1954:327; Burleigh 1958:416-420; Stewart and Robbins 1958:229; Oberholser 1974(II):623; Bent 1948:35-43.



generally R and local in hemlocks, pines, or mixed woods. Generally above 3500 feet (1050 m), and mostly over 5000 feet (1500 m). Wintering -- FC across the mountains, Piedmont, and Inner Coastal Plain; U in most of the Outer Coastal Plain. Fall arrival in mid-October and late October; spring departure from late March to mid-April.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- favor mature spruce and/or fir forests, or forests where hardwoods are mixed with spruce or fir; infrequent in hemlock or white pine forests. Wintering -- widespread in many woodland types; favor mixed woods or pines, but are found frequently in hardwood forests as well. No clear preference for lowland or upland woods. Commonly occur with flocks of kinglets, chickadees, and titmice in winter.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- mature, montane forests, with a preference for spruce or fir. Wintering -- no essential requirements, other than middle-aged to mature trees.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in sawtimber cove hardwoods, 5.4(5) sawtimber oak-hickory, 5.5(2) sawtimber spruce-fir, 8(2) sawtimber white pine-hemlock.

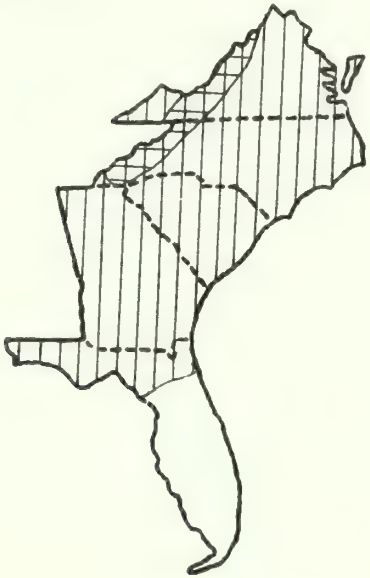
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sapling-poletimber oak-hickory, 1(2) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood, 3.7(6) sapling-poletimber Virginia pine-pitch pine, 3.7(18) sawtimber oak-hickory, 7(1) sapling-poletimber loblolly pine-shortleaf pine.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season is from mid-May to mid-July, with a probable peak from late May to late June. Typical nest is built behind a loose piece of bark still clinging to the trunk of a tree; usually the nest is on a spruce or fir tree. The clutch size is normally 5 or 6, with a range of 4-8.

FOOD HABITS: Creepers climb up tree trunks, keeping to the shaded side of the trunk; they also creep on large limbs. At all seasons they pick small insects, larvae, and insect eggs from crevices in the bark.

GUILD: cavity nesting (behind loose bark), tree trunk gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:77; Potter et al. 1980:259; Verner and Boss 1980:218; DeGraaf et al. 1980:340; Lowery 1974:458; Mengel 1965:342; Forbush and May 1939:356;
Imhof 1976:291; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:385; Sprunt 1954:328; Burleigh 1958:420-422; Stewart and Robbins 1958:230; Oberholser 1974(II):626; Bent 1948:56-79.



Piedmont and Coastal Plain portion of the range; U in parts of
of Virginia and northern North Carolina. Wintering -- C in Florida, and north to southern South Carolina; decreasing in numbers northward, and only U in the Piedmont portion of the winter range. Bulk of migration in April to early May, and late September through October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- fairly open country with shrubbery, fencerows, and a few scattered trees is favored; generally House Wrens are found in residential areas and farmyards. In fact, as breeders, they are restricted to towns and suburbs over most of the Piedmont and Coastal Plain. Wintering -- widespread in brushy places, and usually away from towns; favored habitats are overgrown fields, hedgerows, thickets, wood margins, and tangles under open pines.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- a cavity, such as a bird box, in open country with shrubs and/or saplings. Wintering -- brushy cover (shrubs, saplings, and tall herbs) in many situations.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) shrub-seedling mixed pine-hardwood, 1(2) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood, 15(5) sapling-poletimber elm-ash-cottonwood, 16(2) grass-forb mixed pine-hardwood.

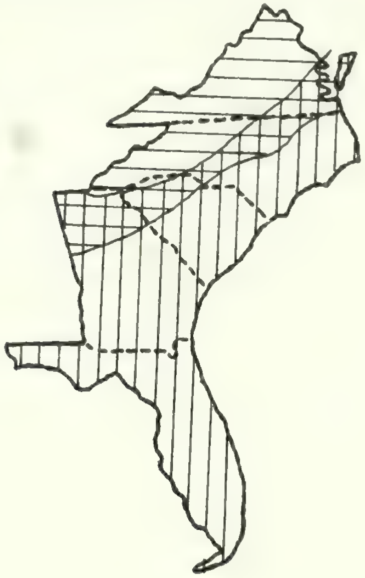
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber sand pine-southern scrub oak, 4.3(3) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 5(1) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 5(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress, 5(1) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime, 5.5(2) sawtimber live oak maritime.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from mid-April to late July, with a peak from early May to early June. The nest is in a cavity, not dug by the birds, in open country. Usually nest in bird boxes, but the birds also utilize knotholes, old woodpecker holes, and other crannies. The normal clutch size is 6-8, with a range of 5-9.

FOOD HABITS: At all seasons House Wrens glean insects and other small invertebrates from vegetation within 10 feet (3 m) of the ground (shrubs, saplings, or tall herbs).

GUILD: cavity nesting, bush gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:78; Potter et al. 1980:260; Verner and Boss 1980:222; DeGraaf et al. 1980:342; Lowery 1974:460; Mengel 1965:343; Forbush and May 1939:357; Imhof 1976:292; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:387; Sprunt 1954:330; Burleigh 1958:422-425; Stewart and Robbins 1958:231; Oberholser 1974(II):630; Kendeigh 1941; Bent 1948:113-146.



(1350 m), but R to U down to 3500 feet (1050 m). Wintering -- FC over most of the range, but R to U in Florida. Arrive in fall from early October to late October; depart from late March to mid-April.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- mainly in spruce-fir forests, where they inhabit tangles, uprooted trees, and other cover; away from spruce-fir they favor cool, dark ravines, especially under hemlocks, but also beneath hardwoods. Always in cool, moist, and tangled areas. Wintering -- a wide variety of forests, where tangles, fallen logs, uprooted trees, or stream banks are found; most common in broadleaf evergreen woods and bottomlands.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- cool, moist forests where tangles are present. Wintering -- tangles or thickets in woodlands.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in sawtimber cove hardwoods, 34(2) sawtimber spruce-fir.

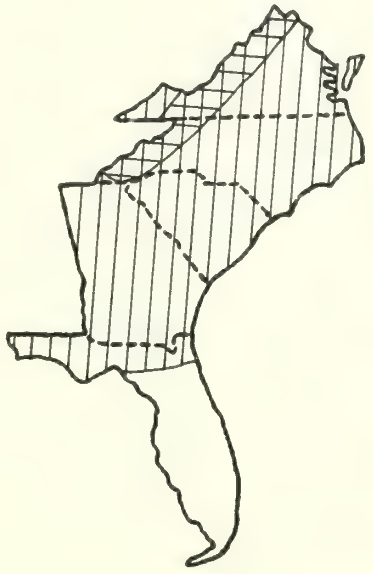
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(4) sapling-poletimber Virginia pine-pitch pine, 1(6) sawtimber oak-hickory, 3.2(20) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 5.3(3) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season is from mid-May to mid-June, with the peak in late May and early June. Nests are built on or very near the ground in forests; sites include among the tangled roots of an upturned tree, along a stream bank, beside a fallen log, and inside a dense tangle. Usually 5-6 is the clutch size, with 4 or 7 rare.

FOOD HABITS: At all seasons Winter Wrens consume insects, other small invertebrates, larvae, or insect eggs. These items are gleaned within 5 feet (1.5 m) of the ground, usually around tangles and stream banks.

GUILD: ground nesting, terrestrial gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:80; Potter et al. 1980:261; Verner and Boss 1980:221; DeGraaf et al. 1980:344; Lowery 1974:460; Mengel 1965:346; Forbush and May 1939:359; Imhof 1976:293; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:389; Sprunt 1954:331; Burleigh 1958:426-428; Stewart and Robbins 1958:232; Oberholser 1974(II):631; Bent 1948:148-175.



LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: State listed as Threatened in Tennessee, Rare in West Virginia, and Special Concern in Alabama (unofficially). Blue Listed by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- R to VR, mainly in Virginia; generally above 4000 feet (1200 m). In the early decades of this century, they were C over much of the mountain region, but have declined drastically, and are now virtually extirpated in North Carolina and Georgia. Wintering -- now R, essentially only in western Georgia and the Florida panhandle; formerly in small numbers elsewhere in the region. Migration mainly from mid-March to mid-April, and early October to early November.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- formerly mainly in towns and farmyards in mountain valleys; now mostly at high elevations in open, brushy country; habitats usually include brush piles, fencerows, and old barns. Wintering -- in open, brushy places, especially in tangles and brush near old barns.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- varied open country, with shrubs, saplings, and/or brush piles. Wintering -- brushy places in open country, particularly near sheds or barns.

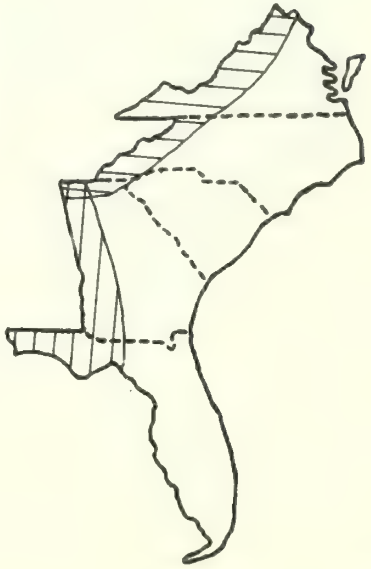
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) grass-forb loblolly pine-shortleaf pine.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from mid-April to late June, with the peak from early May to late May. Nests are built in cavities, crannies, or placed on ledges; the cavities are not dug by the birds. Frequent sites are inside a barn or shed, in a knothole, or rarely in a bird box. The clutch size is normally 5-7, with 4, 8, or 9 rare.

FOOD HABITS: Glean insects, insect eggs and larvae, and other invertebrates from shrubs, saplings, and tall herbs, and seldom feed more than 10 feet (3 m) off the ground.

GUILD: cavity or ledge nesting, bush or herb gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:81; Potter et al. 1980:262; Verner and Boss 1980:223; Lowery 1974:461; Mengel 1965:347; Forbush and May 1939:361; Imhof 1976:294; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:390; Sprunt 1954:332; Burleigh 1958:428-430; Stewart and Robbins 1958:233; Oberholser 1974(II):633; Bent 1948:176-204.



LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: Blue Listed by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: C to VC throughout, though somewhat less numerous in the mountains, and generally absent above 4000 feet (1200 m); most numerous in the Coastal Plain. Recent severe winters have reduced the mountain population. Non-migratory.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- prefer brushy and tangled areas in or near woods. Inhabit many woodland types, particularly broadleaf evergreens; often common in wooded residential areas. A preference shown for moist or bottomland woods rather than dry or upland ones. Also found in overgrown fields and woodland margins.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: All seasons -- moderate to dense shrub, sapling, or other brushy cover, preferably in a woodland.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-scrub oak, 15(3) sapling-poletimber loblolly pine-shortleaf pine, 15(6) sawtimber oak-gum-cypress, 15(30) sawtimber oak-hickory, 22(2) sawtimber live oak maritime, 27(5) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress, 43(3) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime.

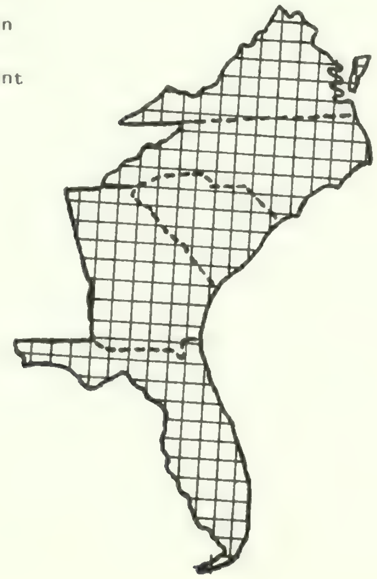
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sapling-poletimber bay swamp-pocosin, 1(1) sawtimber live oak maritime, 1(1) shrub-seedling Virginia pine-pitch pine, 10(3) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood, 20(1) sapling-poletimber sand pine-southern scrub oak, 34(2) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime, 48(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from early March to mid-July, with the peak from late April to mid-May. Build nests in a wide variety of places, generally in crannies or secluded places. They may be placed at the bases of trees, in upturned roots, in bird boxes or other cavities, on ledges of buildings, even in old hats, coat pockets, and other highly unusual sites. The clutch averages 5 eggs, with 4-6 the usual range of clutch sizes.

FOOD HABITS: Carolina Wrens feed almost entirely within 10 feet (3 m) of the ground, gleaning insects, larvae, and other invertebrates from shrubs, herbs, and the ground.

GUILD: cavity, ledge, or ground nesting, terrestrial or bush gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:82; Potter et al. 1980:263; DeGraaf et al. 1980:346; Lowery 1974:461; Mengel 1965:349; Forbush and May 1939:362; Imhof 1976:295; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:392; Sprunt 1954:333; Burleigh 1958:430-433; Stewart and Robbins 1958:235; Oberholser 1974(II):635; Bent 1948:205-218.



LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: C. p. marianae and C. p. griseus state listed as Special Concern in Florida.

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- in tidewater areas, C to A, but often quite local; generally R and local inland (in Virginia). Wintering -- C in tidewater areas south to central Florida; mostly U in southern Florida, and inland north to southern Georgia; R to U inland farther north (mainly in the Coastal Plain and extreme lower Piedmont). Migration generally from early April to mid-May, and mid-September to late October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- marshes, most commonly in brackish ones, but also in fresh or salt marshes. Wintering -- prefer brackish marshes, but also salt or fresh marshes, and less frequently in wet meadows and other wet grassy places. Favor herbaceous cover at least 2 feet (.6 m) high.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- a marsh, preferably an extensive brackish one. Wintering -- a marsh or other damp grassy place.

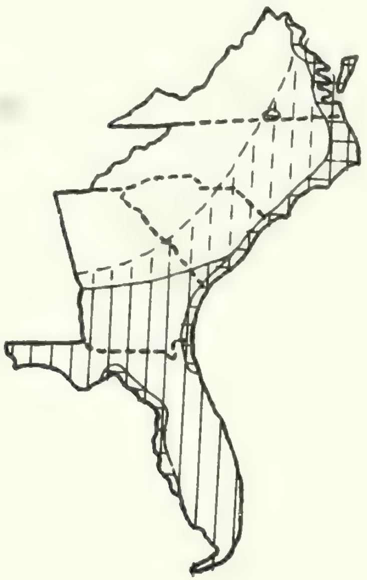
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 5(1) Everglades.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from late April to mid-August, with the peak from late May to late June. Nests are spherical masses of "grass" with side entrances, attached to marsh vegetation, generally suspended 1 to 3 feet (.3-1 m) above the ground. The usual clutch size is 5 or 6, with 3, 4, or 7 not rare.

FOOD HABITS: Strictly insects, invertebrates, and the larvae and eggs of these animals, gleaned from the ground, from marsh plants, or from the surface of shallow water near a marsh.

GUILD: ground nesting, herb gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:264; Verner and Boss 1980:224; DeGraaf et al. 1980:348; Lowery 1974:463; Mengel 1965:351; Forbush and May 1939:363; Imhof 1976:296; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:393-397; Sprunt 1954:334-338; Burleigh 1958:433-437; Stewart and Robbins 1958:235; Oberholser 1974(II):638; Kale 1965; Bent 1948:235-264; Kale 1978:102, 103.



Short-billed Marsh Wren

LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: State listed as Rare in West Virginia. Blue Listed by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- R and local in tidewater Virginia, only near Saxis and Virginia Beach. Wintering -- FC to C in tidewater areas south to central Florida, most common in coastal North Carolina; U inland and in the tidewater section of southern Florida. Fall arrival -- early September to early October; spring departure -- early May to late May.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- favor brackish marshes, but perhaps in fresh marshes and wet meadows. Wintering -- mostly in fresh to brackish marshes, especially in the drier parts where scattered shrubs are present; less frequent in wet meadows and damp grass under open pines (flatwoods).

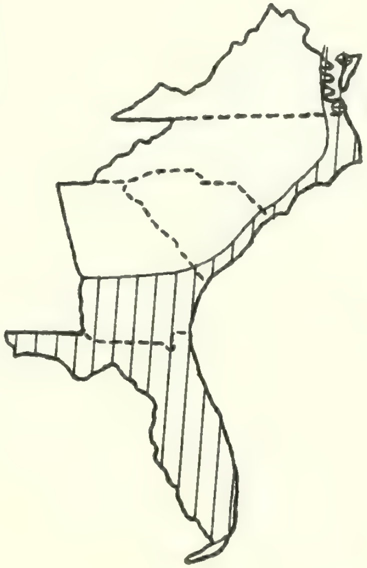
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- moist herbaceous cover, usually where brackish. Wintering -- moist herbaceous cover, either fresh or brackish conditions.

REPRODUCTION: No nest has been found in the Southeast, though they are assumed to breed in Virginia. Data from north of the region suggest that the nesting season extends from late May to mid-August. Most frequent clutch size is 7, with a range of 4-8. Nests are globular structures, with side entrances, attached to reeds in marshes or wet meadows.

FOOD HABITS: The food is solely insects and other small invertebrates, gleaned from herbs, the ground, or mud in a marsh. Feed at times in small shrubs.

GUILD: ground nesting, herb gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:265; DeGraaf et al. 1980:350; Lowery 1974:465; Mengel 1965:352; Forbush and May 1939:366; Imhof 1976:297; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:397; Sprunt 1954:338; Burleigh 1958:437; Stewart and Robbins 1958:236; Oberholser 1974(II):641; Bent 1948:265.



Mockingbird

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: C to A, and conspicuous, nearly everywhere; FC to C in mountain valleys to 2500 feet (750 m), and VR to absent above 3500 feet (1050 m). Generally non-migratory, though there are some localized population changes.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- mainly in open residential or rural country. Prefer scattered trees or shrubs with telephone wires, fences, and other conspicuous perches. Most common in towns, suburbs, and roadsides.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: All seasons -- open country with scattered trees and/or shrubs.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.6(2) shrub-seedling southern scrub oak, 0.6(11) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood, 15(16) sapling-poletimber elm-ash-cottonwood (small plot), 22(1) sawtimber live oak maritime.

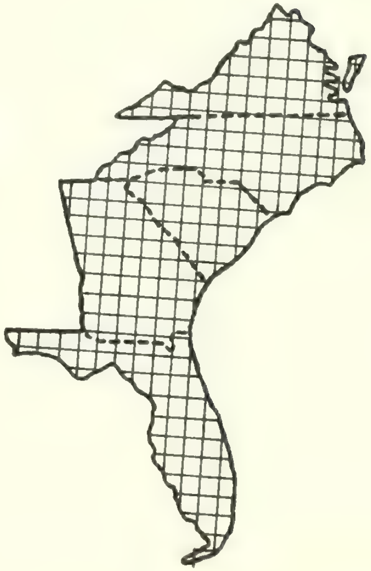
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(2) grass-forb longleaf pine-slash pine, 0.6(11) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood, 15(9) sapling-poletimber pine savanna, 17(3) sawtimber live oak maritime, 18(2) shrub-seedling southern scrub oak.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from late March to mid-August, with the peak from late April to late May. The usual nest is a cup placed in a small tree or shrub, especially where covered with vines or where the leaves are dense. Most nests are 5 to 15 feet (1.5-5 m) from the ground. The clutch size is generally 4 or 5, with 3 or 6 infrequent.

FOOD HABITS: Mockingbirds feed mainly on insects in summer, but they feed mainly on berries and other fruits, with some insects, in winter. They forage commonly on the ground, as well as in shrubs or small trees. Most foraging is within 30 feet (9 m) of the ground.

GUILD: bush nesting, terrestrial or bush gleaning insectivore-omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:267; Verner and Boss 1980:227; DeGraaf et al. 1980:352; Lowery 1974:466; Mengel 1965:354; Forbush and May 1939:367; Imhof 1976:299; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:398; Sprunt 1954:339; Burleigh 1958:439; Stewart and Robbins 1958:238; Oberholser 1974(II):646; Bent 1948:295-319.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C to VC in the mountains, C in the Piedmont; decreasing in abundance toward the coast, where generally U. Wintering -- C over most of Florida; FC in the Outer Coastal Plain farther north, but U in the Lower Coastal Plain, and R in the Piedmont. Spring arrival -- mid-April to late April; fall departure -- early October to late October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- dense, dark, tangled vegetation, especially in shrubbery. Favor damp thickets along streams, but common in residential areas with abundant shrubbery. Wintering -- mainly in dense tangles in wood margins, thickets, and open woods, especially in broadleaf evergreen cover; generally scarce in residential areas.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- dense thickets or shrubbery, especially where moist. Wintering -- dense tangles and thickets, but not necessarily where moist.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood, 1(1) sawtimber cove hardwoods, 14(2) sawtimber oak-gum-cypress, 16(2) sawtimber white pine-hemlock, 67(18) sapling-poletimber elm-ash-cottonwood (small plot).

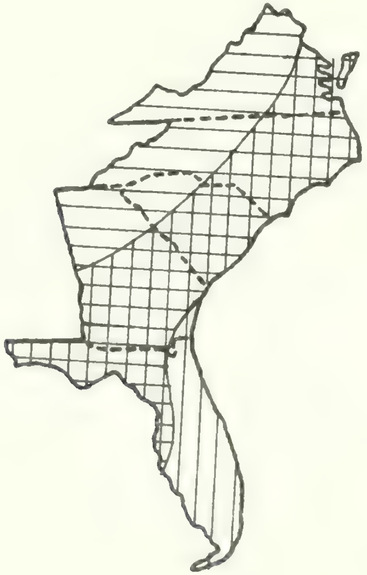
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(2) sapling-poletimber pine savanna, 29(4) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 53(1) shrub-seedling live oak maritime.

REPRODUCTION: The season extends from late April to mid-August, with a peak from mid-May to early June. The nests are usually placed 4 to 8 feet (1-2.5 m) from the ground in dense shrubbery or vine tangles. The normal clutch size is 4, but 3 or 5 eggs are frequent.

FOOD HABITS: In the summer, catbirds feed mainly on insects gleaned from shrubs or saplings, but rather infrequently on the ground. They forage mostly on berries, and some seeds, in winter. Most feeding is done within 10 feet (3 m) of the ground.

GUILD: bush nesting, bush gleaning insectivore-frugivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:268; DeGraaf et al. 1980:354; Lowery 1974:466; Mengel 1965:355; Forbush and May 1939:369; Imhof 1976:300; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:399; Sprunt 1954:341; Burleigh 1958:441; Stewart and Robbins 1958:240; Oberholser 1974(II):648; Bent 1948:320.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C nearly throughout, but only FC in much of the mountain region, occurring sparingly up to 5500 feet (1650 m). Wintering -- mostly U in the mountains; FC over most of the remainder of Virginia, North Carolina, and South Carolina; becoming C in lower Georgia and over Florida. Fall migration mainly in October and November; spring migration most common in March.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- favor brushy places, usually in drier habitats than those of the Gray Catbird. Frequent overgrown fields, woodland borders, thickets, open woods, and residential areas.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: All seasons -- moderate to dense cover of shrubs, saplings, and other brush.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.6(2) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime, 5.9(8) sawtimber oak-hickory, 8(2) sawtimber oak-gum-cypress, 8(2) grass-forb mixed pine-hardwood, 22(13) sapling-poletimber elm-ash-cottonwood (small plot).

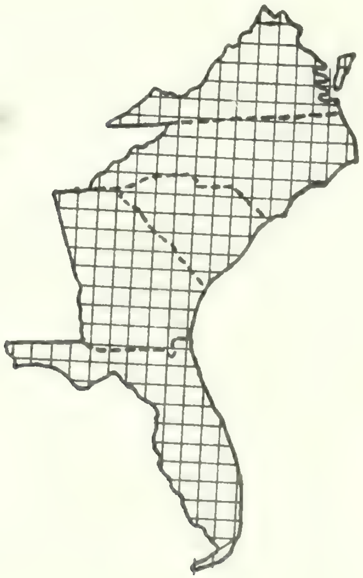
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber bay swamp-pocosin, 15(1) sapling-poletimber sand pine-southern scrub oak, 15(1) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-scrub oak, 18(3) sawtimber live oak maritime.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from late March to late July, with the peak from late April to late May. The usual nest is built in a shrub or small tree in a thicket or hedgerow, and it is generally 3 to 10 feet (1-3 m) from the ground. Four is the most common clutch size, with a range of 3 to 6.

FOOD HABITS: Thrashers take mostly insects in the warmer months, but they feed on insects, seeds, nuts, and other items in winter. They forage essentially within 10 feet (3 m) of the ground, commonly on the ground, as well as in low vegetation.

GUILD: bush nesting, terrestrial or bush gleaning insectivore-omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:270; DeGraaf et al. 1980:356; Lowery 1974:469; Mengel 1965:356; Forbush and May 1939:371; Imhof 1976:301; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:400; Sprunt 1954:342; Burleigh 1958:443; Stewart and Robbins 1958:241; Oberholser 1974(II):650; Bent 1948:351-374.



American Robin (Turdus migratorius) AMRO

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C to A in the mountains and Piedmont, FC to C over the Inner Coastal Plain, but U in the Outer Coastal Plain. Wintering -- quite erratic in a given area from week to week; may be somewhat scarce one week, but very common a week later; generally C, often A, everywhere except the mountains, where usually only FC in the lower elevations, and probably R above 3500 feet (1050 m). Heavy migration in March and in October and November.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- generally where lawns and other short grass areas are interspersed with shrubs and trees, such as residential areas, towns, farmyards, and parks. Also breed in spruce-fir forests where openings or grassy areas are nearby, but elsewhere, they tend to occur near human settlements. Wintering -- mostly in bottomland woods, and/or near berry-bearing trees; generally in moist woods in early winter, but in late winter occur commonly on lawns, pastures, and other open places.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- trees or shrubs near lawns or other short grass. Wintering -- no essential requirements, but mostly near berry-bearing trees and moist woods.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(16) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood, 5.3(24) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 8(2) grass-forb mixed pine-hardwood, 12(2) sawtimber spruce-fir.

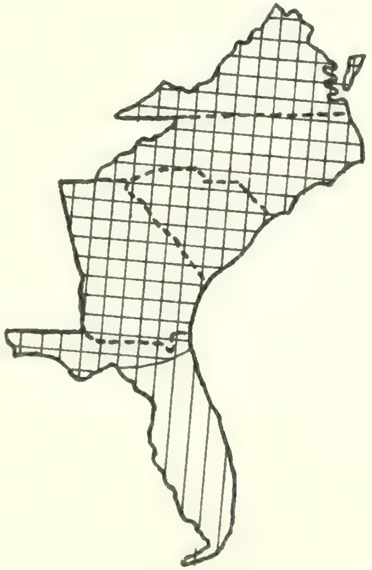
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber sand pine-southern scrub oak, 16(29) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 190(2) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime.

REPRODUCTION: The season extends from late March to late August, with a peak from late April to late May. Nests are usually placed in trees or bushes, often in exposed locations. Occasionally, the nest is built on a ledge of a building, and rarely on the ground. Clutch size is commonly 4, with 3 or 5 frequent and 6 rare.

FOOD HABITS: During the warmer months, robins consume earthworms and a wide variety of other invertebrates, feeding essentially on the ground. In the winter, berries and other fruits are the major food items, but they begin foraging for animal food on the ground in late winter.

GUILD: tree or bush nesting, terrestrial gleaning insectivore (summer), tree or bush gleaning frugivore (winter).

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:272; Verner and Boss 1980:229; DeGraaf et al. 1980:358; Lowery 1974:472; Mengel 1965:358; Forbush and May 1939:373; Imhof 1976:303; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:401-404; Sprunt 1954:345; Burleigh 1958:445-449; Stewart and Robbins 1958:243; Oberholser 1974(II):660; Bent 1949:14-65.



Wood Thrush (Hylocichla mustelina)

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C throughout the mountains and Piedmont, but generally U in the Outer Coastal Plain, particularly scarce in southern Georgia and northern Florida. Occur in the mountains to 4000 feet (1200 m), rarely higher. Winter south of the United States. Spring arrival -- late March to late April; fall departure -- early October to late October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Favor deciduous or mixed forests with a fairly well-developed deciduous understory, especially where moist. Bottomland and other rich hardwood forests are prime habitats; also frequent in pine forests with a deciduous understory and in well-wooded residential areas.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Woodland understory of deciduous shrubs or saplings, especially where moist.

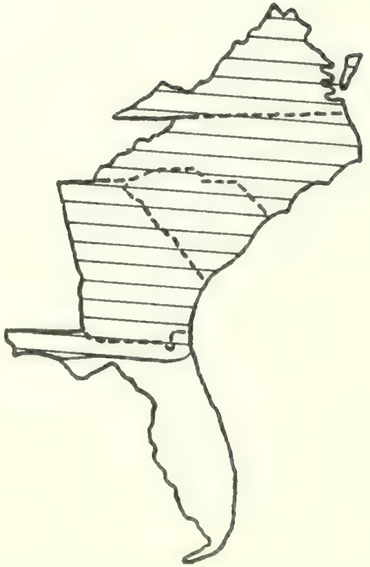
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(2) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood, 15(6) sawtimber oak-gum-cypress, 15(25) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 18(30) sawtimber oak-hickory, 41(3) sawtimber loblolly pine-shortleaf pine.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from late April to early August, with a peak from mid-May to early June. Nests are built in shrubs, saplings, or trees in wooded areas, mainly 5 to 15 feet (1.5-5 m) from the ground. Clutch size is nearly always 3 or 4.

FOOD HABITS: Glean insects and other invertebrates on the forest floor, often among dead leaves on the ground. Some feeding occurs in shrubs and in low trees.

GUILD: bush nesting, terrestrial gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:273; DeGraaf et al. 1980:360; Lowery 1974:473; Mengel 1965:361; Forbush and May 1939:377; Imhof 1976:304; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:404; Sprunt 1954:347; Burleigh 1958:449; Stewart and Robbins 1958:245; Oberholser 1974(II):664; Bent 1949:101; Noon and Able 1978.



LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: State listed as Rare in West Virginia.

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- R and local at high elevations in Virginia (above 4000 feet, 1200 m); one noted on territory in 1979 at Roan Mt., North Carolina. Wintering -- FC to C over much of the Coastal Plain, though U in southern Florida; FC in the Piedmont; generally U in the lower portion of the mountains. Fall arrival -- mid-October to late October; spring departure -- early April to early May.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- spruce and/or fir forests, especially in moist spots, with a light to moderate understory. Wintering -- forests of a wide variety, but usually some evergreen cover is present; favor mixed forests, and most numerous where hollies, bays, or other broadleaf evergreens are present in the understory.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- spruce-fir forests, with a rather open understory. Wintering -- woodlands with a moderate understory, especially where broadleaf evergreens are present.

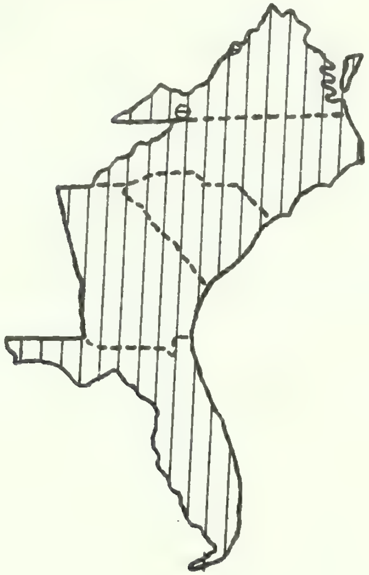
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber bay swamp-pocosin, 2.8(6) sawtimber oak-hickory, 2.8(33) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 8.5(2) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime.

REPRODUCTION: No nest has been found in the Southeast, though the breeding season likely extends from mid-May to July. Based on information gathered north of this region, the nests are usually built on the ground, rarely a few feet from the ground in shrubs or saplings. The usual clutch has 3 or 4 eggs, with 5 or 6 being rare.

FOOD HABITS: In the summer, feed primarily on the ground on insects and other small invertebrates; but in winter, they take berries from trees and shrubs, in addition to some insects from the ground or from foliage.

GUILD: ground nesting, terrestrial gleaning insectivore (summer), terrestrial or bush gleaning omnivore (winter).

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:275; Verner and Boss 1980:231; DeGraaf et al. 1980:362; Lowery 1974:474; Mengel 1965:362; Forbush and May 1939:378; Imhof 1976:305; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:405; Sprunt 1954:348; Burleigh 1958:451-454; Stewart and Robbins 1958:247; Oberholser 1974(II):665; Bent 1949:123-162; Noon and Able 1978.



LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: State listed as Rare in West Virginia.

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- one to several pairs have bred or probably bred at Mt. Rogers, Virginia, since 1966; a possible nesting in Rockbridge County, Virginia, in 1969. Winter south of the United States; breed generally north of the region. Spring arrival -- late April to mid-May; fall departure -- early October to mid-October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Spruce-fir forests only, apparently where the understory is sparse to moderate.

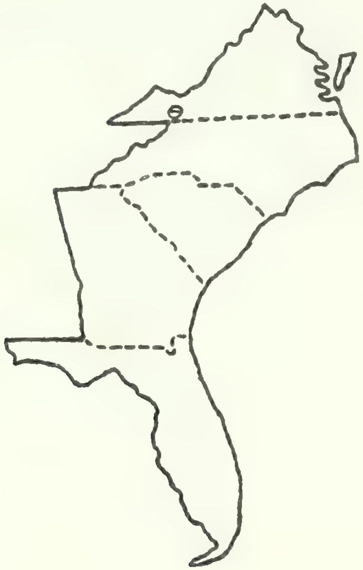
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Spruce or fir forests, but other specifics of the habitat are not well known in this region.

REPRODUCTION: No nest has been found in the Southeast, but the breeding season is probably from mid-May to July. To the north of this region, nests are placed in shrubs or small trees. Clutch size is 3-4 , rarely 5, eggs.

FOOD HABITS: These thrushes forage on the ground, as well as in trees and shrubs. They glean insects from foliage and scratch for insects and other invertebrates in dead leaves on the forest floor.

GUILD: bush nesting, terrestrial or arboreal gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:275; Verner and Boss 1980:232; DeGraaf et al. 1980:364; Lowery 1974:474; Mengel 1965:363; Forbush and May 1939:380; Imhof 1976:306; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:407; Sprunt 1954:349; Burleigh 1958:454-456; Stewart and Robbins 1958:248; Oberholser 1974(II):668; Bent 1949:163-188; Noon and Able 1978.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C in the mountains above 4000 feet (1200 m), but local down to 3000 feet (900 m) in Virginia and 3500 feet (1050 m) in North Carolina. Winter south of the United States. Spring arrival -- late April to mid-May; fall departure -- late August to late September.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Widespread in many montane forests; most common in mature deciduous forests with much understory. Also occur in numbers in hemlock forests, spruce-fir forests, and mixed forests, but mainly where moist with considerable understory.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Montane forests with moderate understory, mainly above 3500 feet (1050 m).

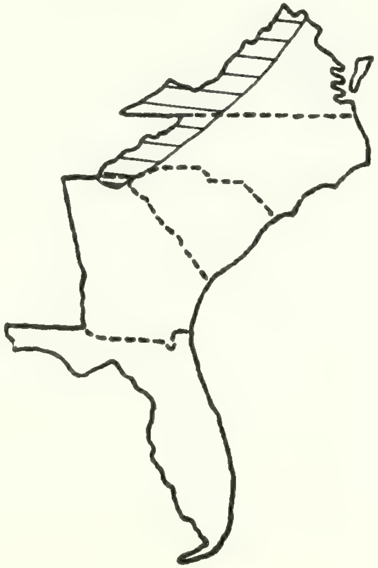
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in sapling-poletimber oak-hickory, 17(2) sawtimber spruce-fir, 18(2) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 20(1) sawtimber oak-hickory.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from mid-May to late June, with a peak in late May and early June. The usual nest is built on the ground near a tussock, log, or shrub in a forest; at times the nest is placed in a shrub or a sapling. Four is the most common clutch size, with 3 or 5 infrequent.

FOOD HABITS: Veeries feed almost solely on the forest floor, scratching for insects and other invertebrates in leaf litter.

GUILD: ground nesting, terrestrial gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:276; DeGraaf et al. 1980:368; Lowery 1974:475; Mengel 1965:365; Forbush and May 1939:383; Imhof 1976:308; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:409; Sprunt 1954:351; Burleigh 1958:458-461; Stewart and Robbins 1958:250; Oberholser 1974(11):670; Bent 1949:217-233; Noon and Able 1978.



LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: Blue Listed by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- FC in many areas, and C in others; most numerous in the Piedmont; R in southern Florida. Wintering -- generally C over most of the Coastal Plain and Piedmont, but less so in the mountains; R to U in southern Florida. In the mountains, seldom occur above 4000 feet (1200 m). Moderate migration into the Southeast in fall and winter; most movement in October and March.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- prefer open country with scattered trees; orchards, groves, farmyards, roadsides, open residential areas, and open woods. They are particularly partial to open country where telephone lines are present for perching.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- a cavity (for nesting) in open or semi-open country, usually with a few scattered trees. Wintering -- no essential requirements, though usually in open country with conspicuous perches.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.6(2) sapling-poletimber loblolly pine-shortleaf pine, 5.2(2) grass-forb bay swamp-pocosin, 6(2) shrub-seedling oak-hickory.

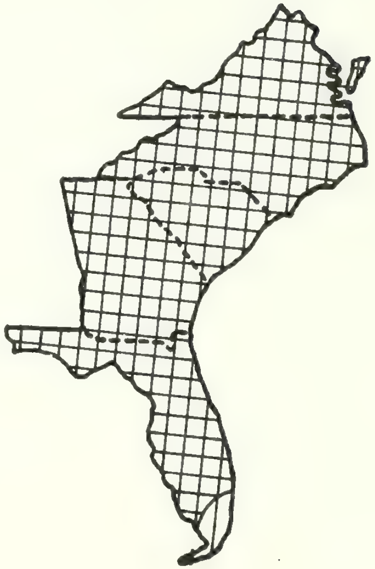
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.8(10) grass-forb elm-ash-cottonwood, 10(6) grass-forb oak-hickory, 12(2) grass-forb loblolly pine-shortleaf pine, 13(1) shrub-seedling Virginia pine-pitch pine.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from mid-March to mid-August, with the peak from late March to mid-May. Nests are built in cavities that are not dug by the birds. Most common sites are bird boxes, in the open, and within 10 feet (3 m) of the ground. Other sites include knotholes and old woodpecker holes. Clutch size is generally 4 or 5, rarely 3 or 6.

FOOD HABITS: Bluebirds sit on exposed perches, and drop to the ground when a prey item is spotted. Food is mainly insects and other invertebrates, taken from short grass or bare ground, rarely from trees or shrubs.

GUILD: cavity nesting, terrestrial pouncing insectivore.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:83; Potter et al. 1980:279; DeGraaf et al. 1980:370; Lowery 1974:476; Mengel 1965:367; Forbush and May 1939:385; Imhof 1976:309;
Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:411; Sprunt 1954:351; Burleigh 1958:461; Stewart and Robbins 1958:251; Oberholser 1974(11):672; Bent 1949:233-262.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C in the Coastal Plain and Piedmont; FC in the mountains, up to 3500 feet (1050 m), rarely to 4000 feet (1200 m). Wintering -- C in the Florida peninsula, declining in abundance northward; generally U in Georgia and the Carolinas. Spring arrival -- early March to early April; fall departure -- mid-September to mid-October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- primarily in moist deciduous forests, such as bottomland forests and swamps; seldom far from water; avoid coniferous woods. Wintering -- more widespread, occurring in many woodland types, frequently with kinglets, chickadees, and titmice; mixed forests and broadleaf evergreen woods preferred.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- mature and moist hardwood forest. Wintering -- forests or thickets; no essential requirements, but mainly in broadleaf evergreens.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.7(3) sapling-poletimber loblolly pine-shortleaf pine, 8.7(9) sapling-poletimber oak-hickory, 8.7(24) sawtimber oak-hickory, 26(5) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-southern scrub oak, 30(6) sawtimber oak-gum-cypress, 37(3) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress.

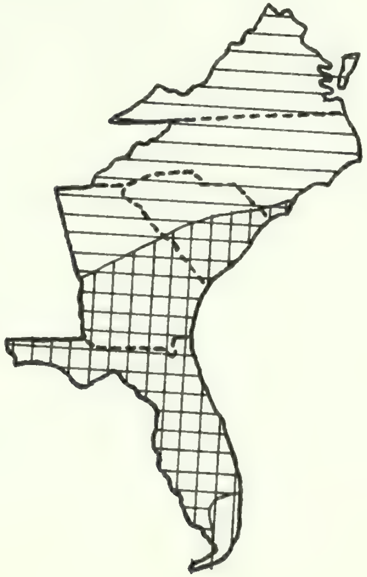
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(4) sapling-poletimber pine savanna, 1(2) sawtimber live oak maritime, 52(2) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime, 60(1) sapling-poletimber sand pine-southern scrub oak, 98(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from mid-April to early June, with the peak from early May to late May. Nests are small cups saddled on branches in deciduous (usually) trees, generally in the canopy. The usual clutch size is 4 or 5, rarely 3 or 6.

FOOD HABITS: Consume small insects at all seasons, even in winter. Most foraging is done in the canopy by gleaning items from leaves, though they frequently hover. Some foraging occurs in saplings and shrubs.

GUILD: tree nesting, tree foliage gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:281; Verner and Boss 1980:236; DeGraaf et al. 1980:372; Lowery 1974:479; Mengel 1965:368; Forbush and May 1939:387; Imhof 1976:311;
Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:413; Sprunt 1954:353; Burleigh 1958:463; Stewart and Robbins 1958:253; Oberholser 1974(II):678; Bent 1949:344-368.



LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: Blue Listed by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C in spruce-fir forests; mostly U and local in hemlocks and white pines; generally absent below 3500 feet (1050 m). Wintering -- C to VC in the mountains and Piedmont, but decreasing to FC in most coastal areas; U in Florida, southern Georgia, and southern South Carolina. Fall arrival -- early October to late October; spring departure -- late March to mid-April.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- montane coniferous forests; mainly in spruce-fir, and infrequently in hemlocks or white pines; also where hardwoods are mixed with these conifers. Wintering -- a wide variety of coniferous or mixed woods; prefer pinewoods, but also in pine-hardwoods, hemlocks, and spruce-fir; seldom occur in pure hardwood stands.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- mature and cool coniferous forests in the mountains. Wintering -- coniferous trees, either in pure stands or mixed with hardwoods.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 50(2) sawtimber spruce-fir.

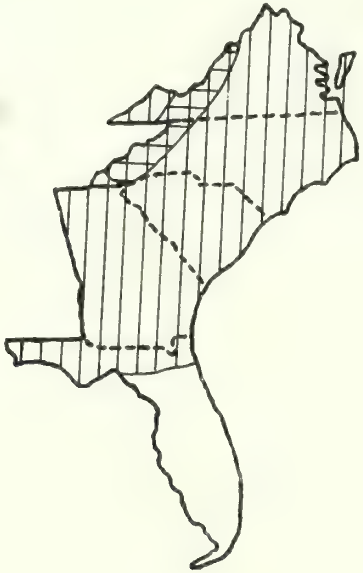
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber sand pine-southern scrub oak, 4.4(17) sawtimber oak-hickory, 20(1) sapling-poletimber oak-hickory, 23(7) sapling-poletimber Virginia pine-pitch pine, 28(1) sapling-poletimber loblolly pine-shortleaf pine.

REPRODUCTION: Few nests with eggs have been reported from the Southeast. The breeding season likely occurs from early May to mid-June, with a peak from mid-May to early June. Build small cup nests in conifers, generally over 30 feet (9 m) from the ground. The small size of the nests, plus the very dense foliage of spruce-fir forests, makes them very difficult to locate. The usual clutch size is 8 or 9, with a normal range of 5 to 10.

FOOD HABITS: Glean and hover for small insects, larvae, insect eggs, and other small invertebrates in the foliage of conifers; infrequently forage in hardwoods.

GUILD: tree nesting, tree foliage gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:282; Verner and Boss 1980:237; DeGraaf et al. 1980:374; Lowery 1974:480; Mengel 1965:369; Forbush and May 1939:388; Imhof 1976:312;
Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:414; Sprunt 1954:355; Burleigh 1958:465; Stewart and Robbins 1958:254; Oberholser 1974(II):680; Bent 1949:382-399.



Plain and Piedmont, but only U in the northern and western sections of the Virginia Piedmont, as well as in southern Florida; U to FC at low elevations of mountains in the Carolinas and Georgia, and U in Virginia mountains. Breed to the north of the region. Fall arrival -- late September to mid-October; spring departure -- mid-April to early May.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Highly varied; prefer evergreen woods or thickets; most common in pinewoods or mixed woods, but also frequent in wood margins, thickets, and brush. Rather infrequent in pure hardwood stands. Both species of kinglets occur in flocks with chickadees, titmice, and other small woodland species in winter.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Woods or thickets, but no essential features other than the presence of woody vegetation.

SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) shrub-seedling Virginia pine-pitch pine, 0.7(3) shrub-seedling oak-hickory, 15(19) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 34(2) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime, 70(1) sapling-poletimber sand pine-southern scrub oak.

REPRODUCTION: Do not breed in the Southeast.

FOOD HABITS: Feed extensively on small insects, insect eggs, and larvae; rarely on small seeds. Forage by gleaning or hovering for prey at foliage or twigs in trees, saplings, or shrubs.

GUILD: tree or bush foliage gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:282; Verner and Boss 1980:238; DeGraaf et al. 1980:376; Lowery 1974:480; Mengel 1965:370; Forbush and May 1939:389; Imhof 1976:312; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:419; Sprunt 1954:356; Burleigh 1958:466; Stewart and Robbins 1958:255; Oberholser 1974(II):682; Bent 1949:400-418.

south to central Florida; mostly FC in the Piedmont, ranging from U in northern Virginia to C in Georgia; R and irregular in the mountains. Breed to the north of the region. Fall arrival -- late September to early November; spring departure -- late March to late April. Winter in flocks of as many as 200 birds, and tend to be erratic from month to month at a given locality.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Always in short grass or bare ground; plowed fields are favored; also in pastures, airports, large lawns, and mudflats.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Extensive areas of bare ground or short grass.

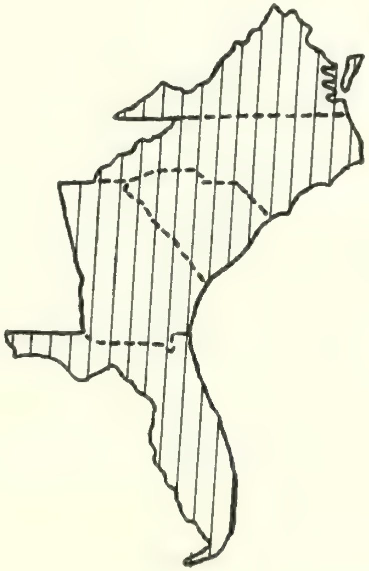
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.8(2) grass-forb longleaf pine-slash pine, 0.8(2) grass-forb elm-ash-cottonwood, 92(1) grass-forb loblolly pine-shortleaf pine.

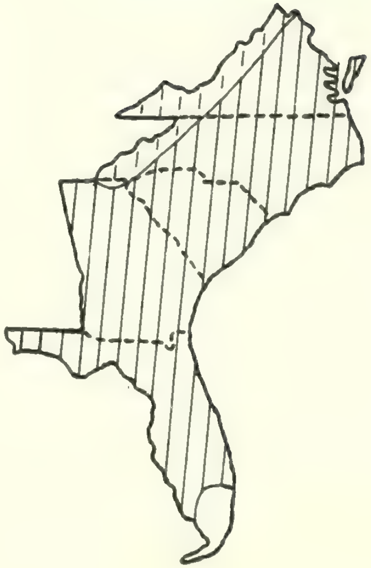
REPRODUCTION: Do not breed in the Southeast.

FOOD HABITS: Pipits forage solely on the ground, picking insects and other invertebrates from grass or the soil. Some seeds are taken.

GUILD: terrestrial gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:283; Verner and Boss 1980:239; Lowery 1974:482; Mengel 1965:371; Forbush and May 1939:390; Imhof 1976:313; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:420; Sprunt 1954:357; Burleigh 1958:467; Stewart and Robbins 1958:256; Oberholser 1974(II):685; Bent 1950:25-40.





to the highest elevations; R and erratic in the Piedmont portion of the breeding range. Wintering -- erratic at this season, wandering about in large flocks; generally C over most of the Piedmont and Coastal Plain, though somewhat less numerous in the mountains and in southern Florida. Fall arrival -- early September to early November (very erratic); spring departure -- early May to late May.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- prefer open, mature conifers in many situations; openings or margins of spruce-fir forests, hemlock or white pine forests, residential areas with scattered trees, groves, and margins of bogs. Infrequent in hardwoods in summer. Wintering -- in many wooded habitats, usually near berry-bearing trees or shrubs; occur in open woods, groves, residential areas, and wooded thickets; rather uncommon in remote or extensive forests, and tend to favor broadleaf trees at this season.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- scattered trees or open woods, preferably in conifers in the mountains. Wintering -- berry-bearing trees or shrubs.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(2) shrub-seedling mixed pine-hardwood, 15(1) sapling-poletimber elm-ash-cottonwood (small plot).

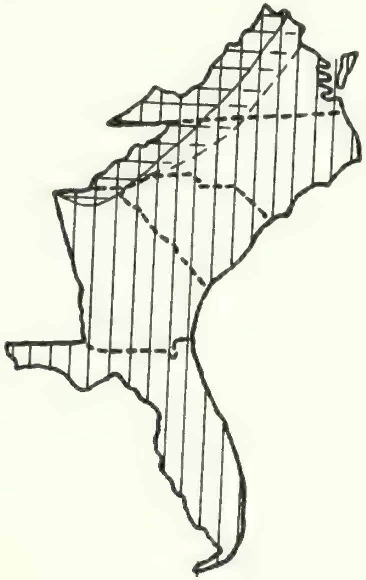
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 3(1) sawtimber oak-hickory, 3(2) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood, 48(4) shrub-seedling oak-hickory, 147(3) sawtimber live oak maritime.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from late May to late August, with the peak from mid-June to late July. Nests are built fairly high up in trees, usually 25 to 50 feet (8-15 m) from the ground. A conifer in the open is a favored site. The clutch size averages 4, with 3, 4, or 5 the usual range.

FOOD HABITS: In the summer, waxwings feed primarily on insects, gleaned from the foliage of trees; in winter they take mainly berries from shrubs and trees.

GUILD: tree nesting, tree or bush foliage gleaning insectivore-frugivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:285; Verner and Boss 1980:240; DeGraaf et al. 1980:378; Lowery 1974:484; Mengel 1965:372; Forbush and May 1939:393; Imhof 1976:315;
Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:421; Sprunt 1954:359; Burleigh 1958:470; Stewart and Robbins 1958:257; Oberholser 1974(II):689; Bent 1950:79.



by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: C over most of Florida; FC in southern Georgia and southern South Carolina; mostly U northward, and VR above 2000 feet (600 m). There is an increase in shrike populations over the Southeast in winter. Numbers of this species have slowly, though drastically, declined over the past two decades, particularly in the states north of Florida.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- strictly in open country habitats; usually in open fields, pastures, and cultivated fields where there are scattered trees for nesting and telephone wires or fences for perching.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Open country with scattered trees or shrubs and conspicuous perches; a thorny shrub is a favored nesting site.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in five habitats, 5(1) grass-forb oak-hickory.

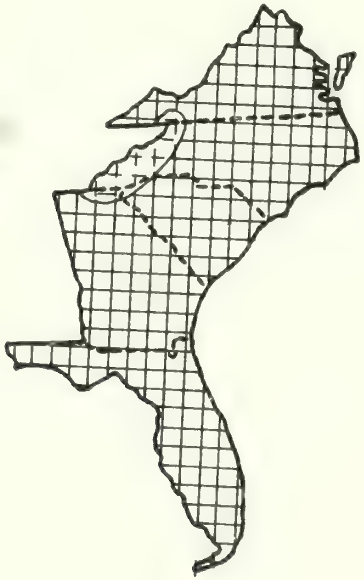
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(10) grass-forb elm-ash-cottonwood, 3.4(5) grass-forb oak-hickory, 6.2(4) sapling-poletimber pine savanna.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from late February (in Florida) to early July, with a peak from late March to late April. Nests are built in trees or shrubs in open country, usually 5 to 20 feet (1.5-6 m) from the ground, and often in thorny shrubs. The clutch size is usually 4 or 5, with 6 being rare.

FOOD HABITS: Shrikes watch for prey from a conspicuous perch, particularly from a telephone wire, and drop to the ground when a food item is observed. In summer they feed mainly on large insects, but in winter they feed on large insects, rodents, and small birds.

GUILD: bush or tree nesting, terrestrial pouncing insectivore or carnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:287; Verner and Boss 1980:242; DeGraaf et al. 1980:382; Lowery 1974:485; Mengel 1965:374; Forbush and May 1939:397; Imhof 1976:317; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:422; Sprunt 1954:360; Burleigh 1958:473-476; Stewart and Robbins 1958:259; Oberholser 1974(II):694; Bent 1950:131-181.



the higher mountains; generally absent above 5000 feet (1500 m). Occur in tremendous flocks in the non-breeding season, at times roosting in numbers of over a million birds.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- abundant in cities, towns, open residential areas, farms, and other places where humans live; not common in wooded residential areas. In the winter, forage in various urban and rural open country habitats, but the birds tend to roost in large flocks in woods, especially in moist and dense ones. Swamp forests or dense stands of pines are favored for roosting.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- a cavity, ledge, or cranny in open country, especially around human habitation. Wintering -- no essential requirements, though favor urban areas or farmlands for foraging.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.7(12) grass-forb elm-ash-cottonwood, 28(2) grass-forb mixed pine-hardwood.

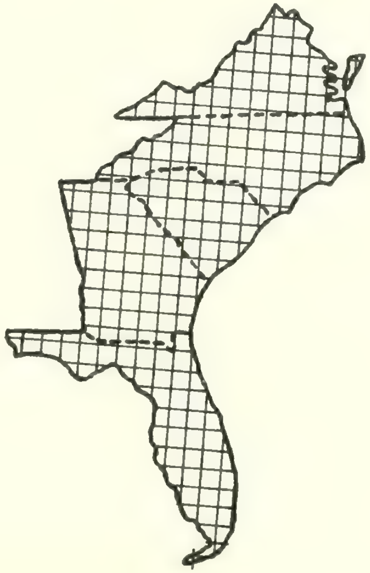
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 2(1) shrub-seedling Virginia pine-pitch pine, 2(2) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 54(9) grass-forb oak-hickory, 85(3) sawtimber live oak maritime, 148(28) grass-forb elm-ash-cottonwood.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from mid-March to mid-June, with the peak from early April to early May. Nests are placed in a variety of sites, usually in cavities or crannies of some kind. Common sites are old woodpecker holes, knotholes, crannies in buildings, and ledges on buildings. Clutch size is commonly 4 or 5, but 6 eggs are not unusual.

FOOD HABITS: Starlings forage mainly on insects in the summer, picking or probing into the ground for food. They take insects, berries, other fruits, and many additional items in winter. Human garbage is consumed at all seasons. Some foraging is done in trees or shrubs.

GUILD: cavity or ledge nesting, terrestrial gleaning or probing omnivore.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:86; Potter et al. 1980:289; Verner and Boss 1980:243; DeGraaf et al. 1980:384; Lowery 1974:487; Mengel 1965:376; Forbush and May 1939:399; Imhof 1976:319; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:424; Sprunt 1954:362; Burleigh 1958:476; Stewart and Robbins 1958:260; Oberholser 1974(II):697; USDI Fish & Wildl. Serv. 1980; Dolbeer and Stehn 1979; Crase and DeHaven 1975; Bent 1950:182.



lower mountains, ranging upward to approximately 4000 feet (1200 m). Wintering -- FC to C in the southern half of Florida, decreasing to U in Georgia and South Carolina. Spring arrival -- mid-March to mid-April; fall departure -- early October to late October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- primarily in dense thickets, especially where moist; common habitats are streamside shrubbery, swamp borders and openings, willow thickets, and damp tangles. Wintering -- generally in evergreen shrubs and vines in woodland understory, wood margins, or thickets; seldom away from dense cover of shrubs or saplings.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- dense, and usually moist, thickets. Wintering -- dense thickets where cover is mainly evergreen.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 2(1) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime, 14(5) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 28(5) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress.

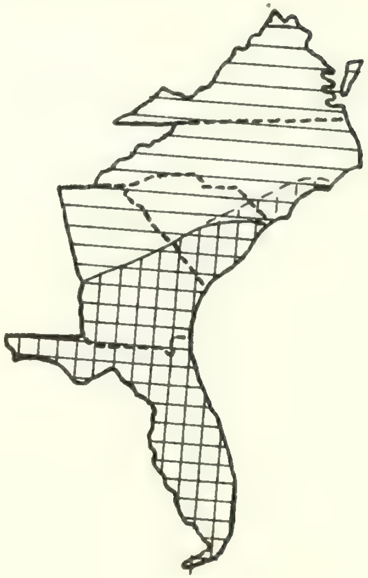
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(2) sapling-poletimber pine savanna, 1(4) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 6.8(4) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 10(1) sapling-poletimber sand pine-southern scrub oak, 17(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress.

REPRODUCTION: The season extends from late March to mid-July, with a peak from early May to late May. Nests are placed in shrubs, vine tangles, or small trees, generally 3 to 6 feet (1-2 m) above the ground, and often well hidden in a thicket. Four eggs represent the usual clutch, but 3 or 5 eggs are not rare.

FOOD HABITS: Insects are the major food item throughout the year, though some berries are taken in winter. White-eyed Vireos forage almost exclusively between 3 and 15 feet (1-5 m) of the ground, gleaning insects from leaves and twigs.

GUILD: bush nesting, bush foliage gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:290; DeGraaf et al. 1980:386; Lowery 1974:490; Mengel 1965:377; Forbush and May 1939:401; Imhof 1976:321; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:426; Sprunt 1954:364; Burleigh 1958:478-483; Stewart and Robbins 1958:262; Oberholser 1974(II):702; Bent 1950:227-241.



range; U over much of Florida; in the mountains, range up to 3500 feet (1050 m). Wintering -- R to U in extreme southern Florida. Spring arrival -- mid-March to mid-April· fall departure -- late September to mid-October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- a wide variety of woodlands; favor mature deciduous trees in a fairly open setting, especially where moist. Habitats include streamside groves, parks, open hardwoods, woodland borders, and rather open bottomlands; avoid pure coniferous forests. Wintering -- usually in mature, open to medium-growth broadleaf evergreen woods (hammocks).

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- tall deciduous trees, usually near water and in a fairly open stand. Wintering -- mature or medium-sized trees, usually broadleaf evergreens.

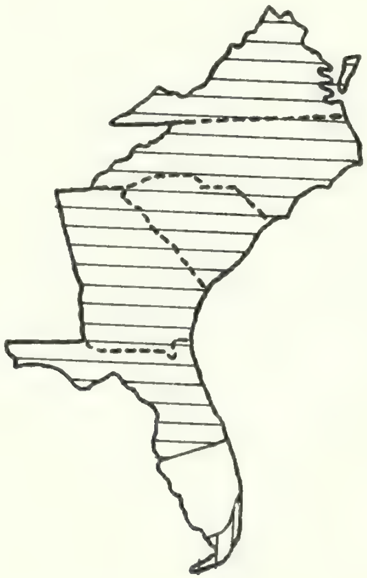
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.3(2) sawtimber loblolly pine-shortleaf pine, 9(5) sawtimber cove hardwoods, 9.8(4) sawtimber oak-gum-cypress.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from late April to mid-July, with the peak from mid-May to early June. Typical nest is suspended inside the fork of two twigs of a tree, usually a deciduous one and generally 15-50 feet (5-15 m) from the ground. The most common clutch size is 4, with 3 or 5 infrequent.

FOOD HABITS: Feed almost solely on insects, gleaned from leaves and twigs of hardwood trees at least 20 feet (6 m) from the ground. Almost never seen below 15 feet (5 m) from the ground.

GUILD: tree nesting, tree foliage gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:292; DeGraaf et al. 1980:388; Lowery 1974:492; Mengel 1965:379; Forbush and May 1939:403; Imhof 1976:322; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:428; Sprunt 1954:366; Burleigh 1958:483; Stewart and Robbins 1958:263; Oberholser 1974(II):707; Bent 1950:276.



in the Piedmont, though a moderate population exists in central North Carolina. Wintering -- FC in the Coastal Plain portion of the range; U in parts of the Georgia Piedmont, but R in the Piedmont of the Carolinas (mainly late fall stragglers). Spring arrival -- mid-March to mid-April; fall departure -- late October to mid-November.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- in the mountains, in many forest types, but favor mixed coniferous-hardwood forests; spruce-fir, hemlock, and white pine forests; hardwood forests mainly above 3500 feet (1050 m). In the Piedmont and mountain foothills, they inhabit mature pine forests of many types, but favor loblolly pine. Wintering -- usually with chickadees, titmice, and kinglets in mixed woods or pine forests; often found in broadleaf evergreen trees.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- middle-aged to mature forests, mainly in the mountains. Wintering -- woods of many types; no other essential requirements.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 3(1) shrub-seedling mixed pine-hardwood, 3.3(8) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 16(3) sawtimber white pine-hemlock, 28(2) sawtimber spruce-fir.

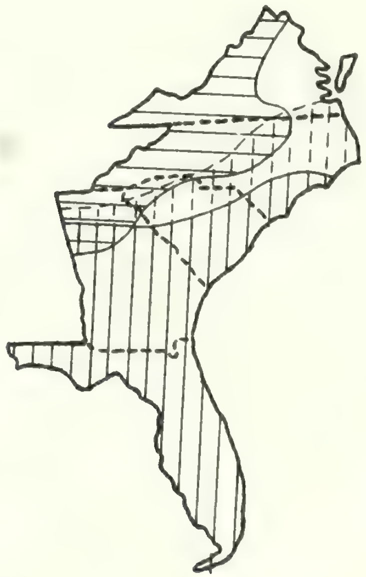
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber sand pine-southern scrub oak, 9(1) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from mid-April to early July, with a peak from late April to mid-May. Build nests in saplings or trees, commonly 5 to 10 feet (1.5-3 m) from the ground, but frequently in the canopy. Four is the usual clutch size, but 3 or 5 are also common.

FOOD HABITS: Insects are the main food item in summer; in winter, insects, larvae, and insect eggs are the primary items. The birds glean their food from leaves or twigs, mainly in the canopies of hardwoods and conifers.

GUILD: tree or bush nesting, tree foliage gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:292; Verner and Boss 1980:246; DeGraaf et al. 1980:390; Lowery 1974:492; Mengel 1965:380; Forbush and May 1939:404; Imhof 1976:324; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:429, 430; Sprunt 1954:367; Burleigh 1958:485-489; Stewart and Robbins 1958:264; Oberholser 1974(II):708; Bent 1950:290-308.



most of the remainder of its Florida range. Winter to the south of the United States. Spring arrival -- late March to late April; fall departure -- mid-September to early October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Primarily in dense mangroves, also in other fairly dense, broadleaf woods (such as hammocks); seldom far from the coast.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Broadleaf, usually evergreen, woods or thickets in the vicinity of the coast.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in sapling-poletimber live oak maritime.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season apparently extends from late May to late June, but the peak is not certain, as rather few nests with eggs have been reported from Florida. Nests are built in trees or shrubs, in dense cover, generally 5 to 15 feet (1.5-5 m) from the ground. The clutch size is usually 3, but frequently 2.

FOOD HABITS: These vireos feed mainly on insects, with a few berries or other fruits taken. Foraging is by gleaning items from foliage of trees or saplings, mainly over 10 feet (3 m) from the ground.

GUILD: tree or bush nesting, tree foliage gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:293; Lowery 1974:493; Forbush and May 1939:405; Imhof 1976:324; Sprunt 1954:368; Oberholser 1974(II):710; Bent 1950:316; Kale 1978:59.

over nearly all the Coastal Plain, Piedmont, and lower mountains; somewhat less numerous in the Outer Coastal Plain; range up to 5000 feet (1500 m) in the mountains. Winter south of the United States. Spring arrival -- late March to late April; fall departure -- early October to late October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Deciduous forests of many types; favor mature hardwood forests, both in uplands and bottomlands; also found in mixed woods, even in the deciduous understory of pinewoods. Not common in open woods, such as parks or groves.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Deciduous forests.

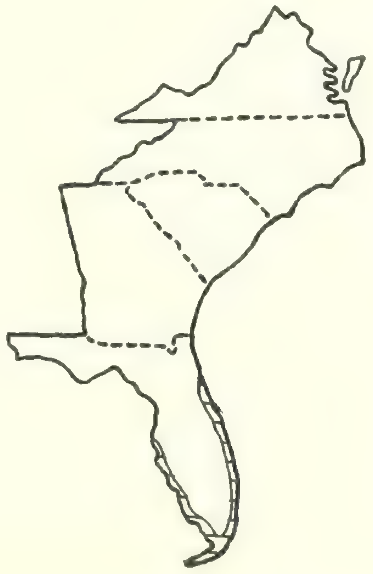
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood, 1.6(2) shrub-seedling mixed pine-hardwood, 29(34) sawtimber oak-hickory, 31(6) sawtimber oak-gum-cypress, 32(2) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime, 60(11) sawtimber cove hardwoods.

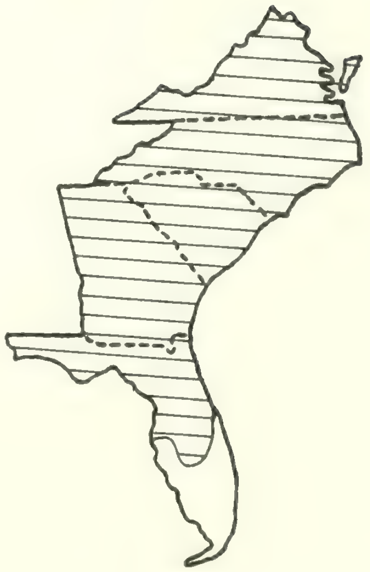
REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from early May to late July, with the peak from late May to mid-June. The nest is a typical vireo one, suspended from twigs in a tree at a moderate height; usually in a deciduous tree. Four is the most common clutch size, with 3 infrequent and 5 rare.

FOOD HABITS: Glean insects and other small invertebrates from leaves and twigs in the canopy of hardwood trees. Seldom forage in conifers or in saplings.

GUILD: tree nesting, tree foliage gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:294; DeGraaf et al. 1980:392; Lowery 1974:494; Mengel 1965:382; Forbush and May 1939:406; Imhof 1976:325; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:431; Sprunt 1954:370; Burleigh 1958:489; Stewart and Robbins 1958:265; Oberholser 1974(II):711; Bent 1950:335.





ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- U to locally FC in mountain valleys, along large streams and rivers; C in a few areas in the Virginia mountains; R to U in the Virginia Piedmont. Winter south of the United States. Spring arrival -- mid-April to late April; fall departure -- mid-September to late September.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Strictly in open mature hardwoods; restricted in the Southeast to open hardwoods along rivers and large streams; do not occur in forests, but only where hardwoods line streams and rivers in open country.

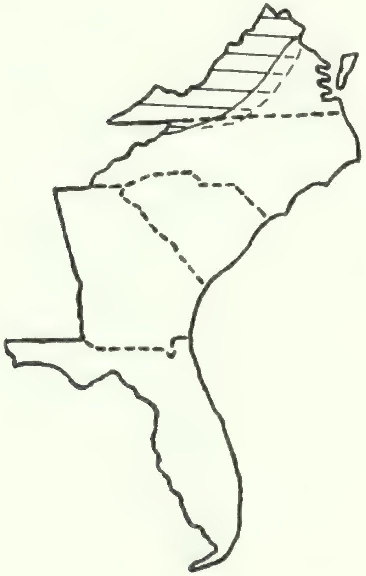
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Scattered hardwoods in open country, especially near a stream or river.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from mid-May to late June, with the peak probably from late May to early June. Nests are built in hardwood trees, usually in the canopy and well out on branches. The clutch size is most commonly 4, with 3 or 5 less frequent.

FOOD HABITS: The food is generally insects, with a few other invertebrates taken. The prey are gleaned from leaves and twigs in the canopy of deciduous trees.

GUILD: tree nesting, tree foliage gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:296; Verner and Boss 1980:247; DeGraaf et al. 1980:396; Lowery 1974:496; Mengel 1965:385; Forbush and May 1939:408; Imhof 1976:327; Sprunt 1954:373; Stewart and Robbins 1958:268; Oberholser 1974(II):714; Bent 1950:362-378.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C over most of the mountains, R to U over the Piedmont and Coastal Plain, except FC in northern Piedmont of Virginia; Wintering -- FC in much of Florida, decreasing to U in northeastern South Carolina and adjacent North Carolina. Spring arrival -- mid-March to early April; fall departure -- early October to late October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- in the mountains, generally in mature hardwood forests; cove forests, northern hardwoods, and other types; away from the mountains mainly in swamps or bottomland hardwoods, not numerous in upland hardwoods, except in foothills. Wintering -- hardwood forests, such as bottomlands, broadleaf evergreen woods, and hammocks; infrequent in conifers.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- mature hardwood forests. Wintering -- hardwood forests, less so in mixed forests.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(3) sawtimber oak-gum-cypress, 9.8(15) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 13(10) sapling-poletimber oak-hickory, 19(11) sawtimber cove hardwoods.

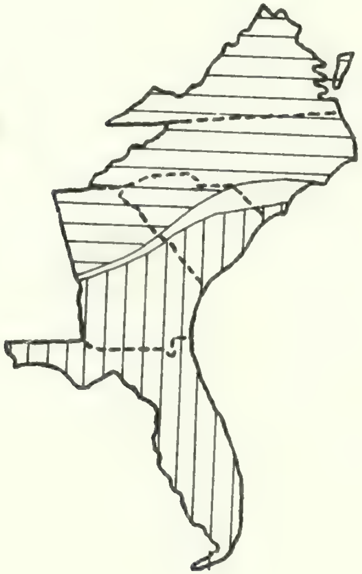
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) Everglades, 1(1) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 1(2) sawtimber live oak maritime, 10(2) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime, 10(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from late April to mid-June, with the peak from early May to late May. Nest on the ground in forests, and usually at the bases of trees, shrubs, or logs. Five is the most common clutch size, with 4 also common.

FOOD HABITS: In summer feed entirely on insects, and in winter take insect eggs and larvae. The birds climb along trunks and limbs and pick food items from the bark, usually on hardwoods.

GUILD: ground nesting, tree trunk gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:297; DeGraaf et al. 1980:398; Lowery 1974:498; Mengel 1965:386; Forbush and May 1939:410; Imhof 1976:328; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:432; Sprunt 1954:375; Burleigh 1958:492; Stewart and Robbins 1958:269; Oberholser 1974(II):716; Bent 1953:5.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C in the Coastal Plain and lower remainder of the Piedmont; a few breed in Virginia valleys. Winter to the south of the United States. Spring arrival -- late March to mid-April; fall departure -- mid-August to mid-September.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Almost always near standing water; prefer swamps that are somewhat open with scattered dead stumps; bottomland forests; extensive willow thickets near lakes or ponds.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Swamps or bottomlands with standing water and cavities in stumps, stubs, or dead trees.

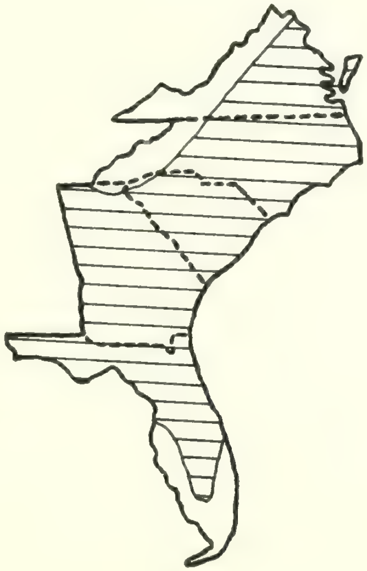
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 6(2) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood, 28(4) sawtimber oak-gum-cypress.

REPRODUCTION: The season extends from mid-April to mid-June, with the peak from early May to late May. Nests are nearly always in cavities in dead trees, in stubs, or in cypress knees. They are not dug by the birds, and are usually 3 to 10 feet (1-3 m) above ground (mainly over water). The clutch size is mostly 5 or 6, with 4 or 7 infrequent.

FOOD HABITS: Generally forage within 15 feet (5 m) of the ground or water surface, gleaning insects and other small invertebrates from leaves, twigs, stubs, and other places in a swamp or bottomland.

GUILD: cavity nesting, bush gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:88; Potter et al. 1980:299; DeGraaf et al. 1980:400; Lowery 1974:525; Mengel 1965:387; Forbush and May 1939:411; Imhof 1976:330; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:433; Sprunt 1954:376; Burleigh 1958:493; Stewart and Robbins 1958:271; Oberholser 1974(II):718; Bent 1953:17.



management in Tennessee, and Special Concern in Alabama (unofficially).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- U, perhaps locally FC, in the Coastal Plain; VR to R in the Piedmont of Georgia and South Carolina; FC to locally C in the mountains of South Carolina, northeastern Georgia, and adjacent North Carolina, but VR farther northward in the mountains. Winter to the south of the United States. Spring arrival -- late March to late April; fall departure -- mid-September to mid-October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Coastal Plain and Piedmont -- favor bottomland hardwoods, where rather damp with a good growth of cane; less numerous in swamps; in the mountains, occur in rhododendron or mountain laurel (Kalmia latifolia) tangles, generally in ravines in a hardwood or mixed forest. At all locations found in woods with a fairly dense understory.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Coastal Plain and Piedmont -- bottomland forests with a rich understory. Mountains -- forests with rhododendron (usually) or mountain laurel understory.

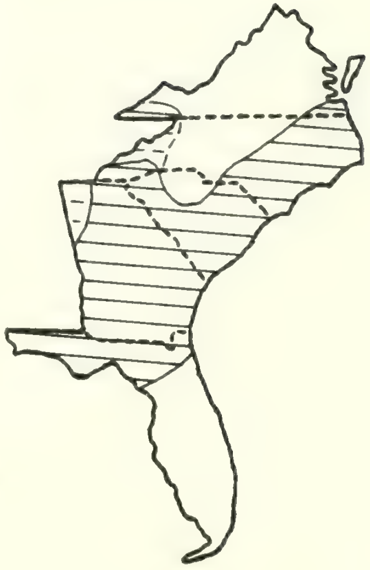
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 3(2) sawtimber oak-gum-cypress, 8.8(9) sawtimber cove hardwoods, 17(2) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from early May to early July, with a peak from mid-May to mid-June. Nests are large, bulky structures placed in saplings, shrubs, or vine tangles, and usually 2 to 10 feet (.6-3 m) above ground. Three is the usual clutch size, with 4 or 5 eggs rare.

FOOD HABITS: Glean insects and other invertebrates from the ground and leaf litter, or infrequently from the vegetation of shrubs, saplings, or vines.

GUILD: bush nesting, terrestrial gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:300; Meanley 1969b; Lowery 1974:522; Mengel 1965:389; Forbush and May 1939:412; Imhof 1976:331; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:435; Sprunt 1954:378; Burleigh 1958:495-499; Stewart and Robbins 1958:272; Oberholser 1974(II):719; Bent 1953:30; Eddleman 1978.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- U to FC in the mountains between 1800 and 3000 feet (540-900 m); ranges up to 4000 feet (1200 m); R to U in mountains below 1800 feet (540 m); and R and local in the Piedmont and Coastal Plain parts of the range. Most numerous near the junction of Georgia, South Carolina, and North Carolina. Wintering -- R to U in extreme southern Florida. Spring arrival -- mid-April to late April; fall departure -- mid-September to early October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- occur in ravines and mountainsides in the mountains and Piedmont, in deciduous or mixed forests with a rich understory (especially of rhododendron or mountain laurel); in the Coastal Plain found in bottomland hardwoods with a rich understory of broadleaf evergreen shrubs or saplings. Wintering -- mainly in dense hammocks, particularly with a dense understory layer.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- forests with a dense and usually broadleaf evergreen understory, mainly on steep slopes. Wintering -- forests with a dense understory, in broadleaf evergreen cover.

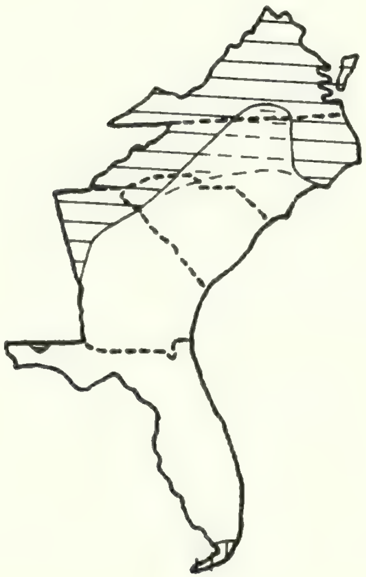
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 2.9(4) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 30(10) sawtimber cove hardwoods.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from mid-May to late June, with a peak from late May to early June. Nests are well hidden in leaf litter on the forest floor. The usual clutch size is 4 or 5, rarely 3 or 6.

FOOD HABITS: Feed primarily on insects and other invertebrates, but rarely on worms (as the common name suggests). Glean their prey from the forest floor or from shrub or sapling vegetation.

GUILD: ground nesting, terrestrial or bush gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:301; DeGraaf et al. 1980:402; Lowery 1974:524; Mengel 1965:392; Forbush and May 1939:412; Imhof 1976:333; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:437; Sprunt 1954:379; Burleigh 1958:500; Stewart and Robbins 1958:273; Oberholser 1974(II):720; Bent 1953:38; Kale 1978:104.



LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: Blue Listed by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- U over most of the mountains, but FC in southwestern North Carolina; range from 1000-5000 feet (300-1500 m), but most numerous between 2000-4000 feet (600-1200 m). Winter south of the United States. Spring arrival -- mid-April to early May; fall departure -- mid-September to late September.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Favor abandoned fields with scattered deciduous saplings up to 25 feet (8 m) high; occasionally in open woods; also in woodland borders where saplings are present. Generally on hillsides rather than in valleys.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Deciduous saplings in the mountains, especially in black locust (Robinia pseudo-acacia).

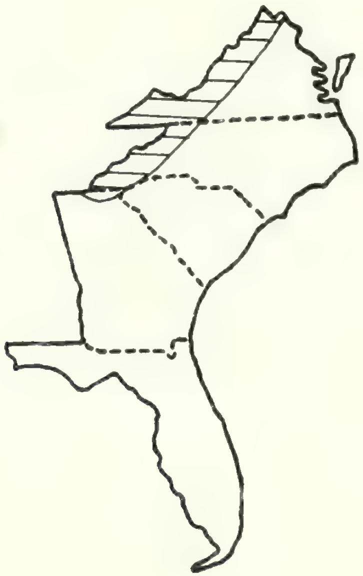
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 14(2) shrub-seedling mixed pine-hardwood.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from mid-May to late June, with the peak from late May to early June. Nests are built on or near the ground in abandoned fields or wood margins, and are well hidden in tall grasses or near the bases of saplings. The clutch size is usually 4 or 5; 6 or 7 eggs are rare.

FOOD HABITS: These birds glean insects and other small invertebrates from the leaves and twigs of deciduous shrubs and saplings; only infrequently forage on the ground in tall grasses.

GUILD: ground nesting, bush gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:302; DeGraaf et al. 1980:404; Lowery 1974:500; Mengel 1965:394; Forbush and May 1939:413; Imhof 1976:334; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:438; Sprunt 1954:380; Burleigh 1958:501; Stewart and Robbins 1958:275; Oberholser 1974(II):721; Bent 1953:47.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- mostly U in the mountains of Virginia mountains; primarily occur below 2000 feet (600 m), and absent above 2500 feet (750 m); VR to R, and local, in the Piedmont portion of the range. Winter to the south of the United States. Spring arrival -- mid-April to early May; fall departure -- early September to mid-September.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Favor overgrown fields or thickets, on fairly level ground. Often occur in moist situations, such as streamside shrubbery, but are not birds of dense thickets.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Deciduous shrubs or saplings in a variety of situations (in open country).

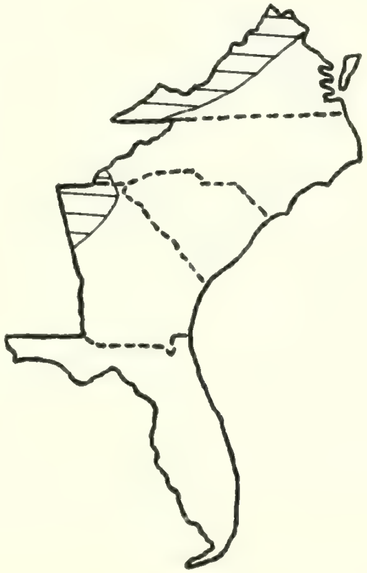
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in sawtimber oak-gum-cypress.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from mid-May to late June, with a peak from late May to early June. Build nests on or near the ground, in grass clumps or other dense herbaceous cover in old fields or thickets. The clutch size is most commonly 5, with 6 being frequent; 4 or 7 are rare.

FOOD HABITS: Habits are very similar to those of Golden-winged Warblers. Forage mainly on insects, gleaned from the vegetation of shrubs or saplings, and less commonly in herbaceous cover.

GUILD: ground nesting, bush gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:303; DeGraaf et al. 1980:406; Lowery 1974:501; Mengel 1965:394; Forbush and May 1939:415; Imhof 1976:335; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:439; Sprunt 1954:381; Burleigh 1958:502; Stewart and Robbins 1958:276; Oberholser 1974(II):723; Bent 1953:58.



Endangered in Alabama, Arkansas, Florida, Georgia, Kentucky, Louisiana, Mississippi, North Carolina, South Carolina, Texas, and Virginia.

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- extremely R, possibly even extinct; a few recent sight reports, mainly from Francis Marion National Forest, South Carolina, but the last confirmed report was in the early 1960s. In the past breeding has been most frequent in I'On Swamp in that forest. These birds have always been rare and local, though considerably more numerous at the turn of the century. Winter in Cuba. Spring arrival -- late February to mid-March; fall departure -- late July to early September (departure dates poorly known).

PRIMARY HABITATS: Bottomland forests or swamps with dense shrub layer, particularly in the vicinity of openings, edges, and dense second growth woods. Almost always in hardwood forests; a preference for areas with blackberries or cane.

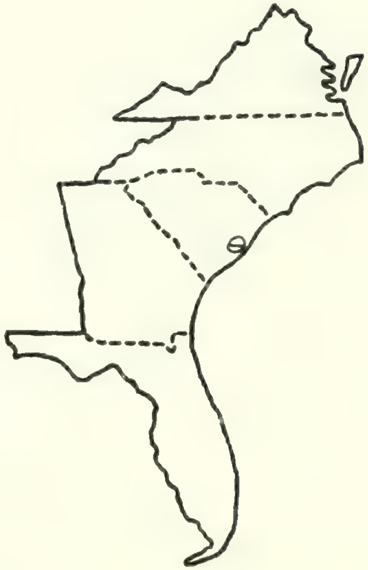
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Moist deciduous forests with dense shrub layer, especially where openings in the canopy are present.

REPRODUCTION: The season extends from late March to mid-June, with the peak from late March to early April. Nests are generally less than 3 feet (1 m) from the ground, placed in dense shrub or vine tangles in swamps or bottomlands. The clutch size is usually 3 or 4, rarely 5.

FOOD HABITS: These warblers feed primarily in the middle and lower portions of hardwood trees and in shrubs, gleaning insects from leaves and twigs.

GUILD: bush nesting, bush or tree foliage gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:305; Lowery 1974:498; Mengel 1965:396; Forbush and May 1939:416; Imhof 1976:337; Hamel 1981; Hooper and Hamel 1977; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:439; Sprunt 1954:382; Burleigh 1958:504; Oberholser 1974(II):724; Bent 1953:67; Kale 1978:13.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Wintering -- FC over most of Florida, southern Georgia, and southeastern South Carolina; mostly U over the remainder of the wintering range. Breed to the north and west of the region. Fall arrival -- early October to early November; spring departure -- early April to early May.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Various types of thickets or brush; favor waxmyrtle thickets, wood margins, abandoned fields, hedgerows, and other shrubby areas; frequently in rather open woods, especially in broadleaf evergreens; also in weedy fields with sparrows.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Dense cover of shrubs, saplings, or herbs preferred, though no strict requirements.

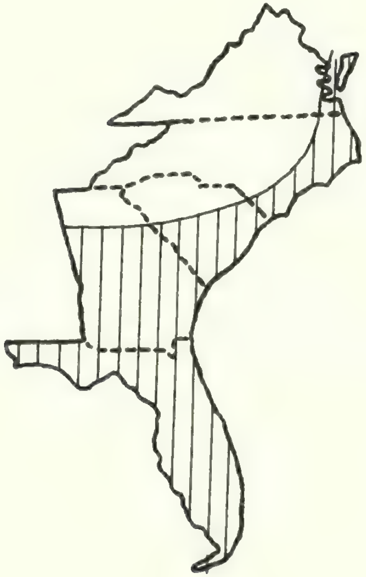
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sapling-poletimber pine savanna, 1(1) sapling-poletimber bay swamp-pocosin, 1(1) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 1(1) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 1(3) sawtimber live oak maritime, 1(2) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 5(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress.

REPRODUCTION: Do not breed in the Southeast.

FOOD HABITS: The food items consist both of insects and berries, gleaned from leaves or twigs from shrubs or saplings (primarily), trees, or from herbaceous vegetation.

GUILD: bush or herb gleaning omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:307; Verner and Boss 1980:248; Lowery 1974:503; Mengel 1965:397; Forbush and May 1939:417; Imhof 1976:339; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:443; Sprunt 1954:385; Burleigh 1958:506; Stewart and Robbins 1958:279; Oberholser 1974(II):725; Bent 1953:89-104.



Virginia (mainly over 4000 feet, 1200 m); exact status is poorly known. Winter to the south of the United States. Spring arrival -- late April to early May; fall departure -- early October to mid-October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Mainly in small to medium-sized spruce or fir trees, such as along the margins of high elevation bogs and in spruce-fir forests and margins.

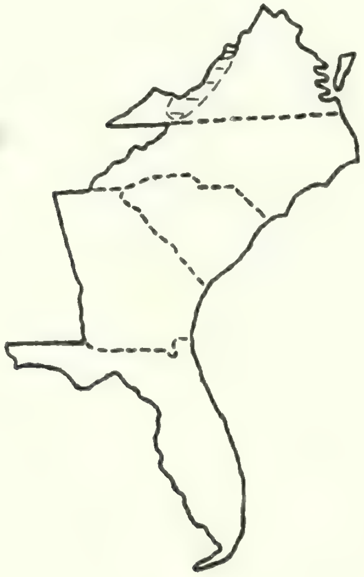
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Spruce or fir trees or saplings.

REPRODUCTION: Apparently, no nest has been discovered in the Southeast, though they are presumed to breed in Virginia. The season probably extends from mid-May to late June. Build nests on the ground, well hidden in mossy hummocks, tall grasses, or at the bases of trees or shrub. The clutch size is almost always 4 or 5.

FOOD HABITS: Feed almost entirely on insects, larvae, and other small invertebrates. These items are gleaned from the leaves and twigs of shrubs and saplings, both hardwood and coniferous.

GUILD: ground nesting, bush gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:308; Verner and Boss 1980:249; DeGraaf et al. 1980:410; Lowery 1974:503; Mengel 1965:398; Forbush and May 1939:418; Imhof 1976:340; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:445; Sprunt 1954:386; Burleigh 1958:507; Stewart and Robbins 1958:279; Oberholser 1974(II):727; Bent 1953:105-118.



especially in the outer Coastal Plain; generally FC to C in the mountains; mostly U in the Piedmont, especially scarce in Georgia and South Carolina portions. Wintering -- U over most of Florida range, but FC in the extreme south. Spring arrival -- mid-March to mid-April; fall departure -- early October to late October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- in the Coastal Plain and Piedmont, mainly in swamps and bottomland forests, especially where Spanish moss (Tillandsia usneoides) and Usnea are common. In the mountains, favor hemlock or mixed hemlock-hardwood forest, particularly along streams, but occur in pure hardwood forests and other forests also. Wintering -- in woodlands or forests, mainly in broadleaf evergreens.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- forests of many types, but usually mature and moist ones where Spanish moss or Usnea grow. Wintering -- woodlands, mainly broadleaf evergreen ones.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 3.4(5) sapling-poletimber oak-hickory, 34(2) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime, 36(5) sawtimber oak-gum-cypress, 44(2) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress.

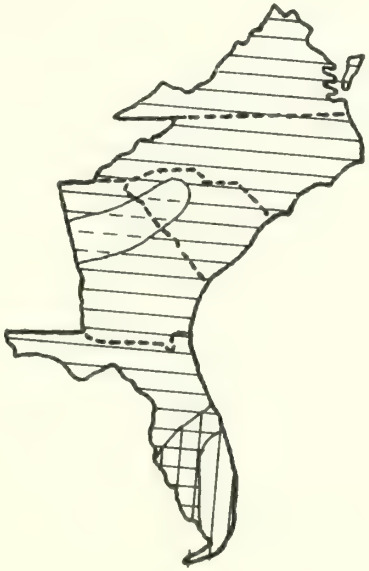
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 10(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress, 12(1) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from early April to late June, with the peak from late April to mid-May. Build nests in trees, generally at medium heights, and especially in clumps of Spanish moss or Usnea. The clutch size is usually 4 or 5, with a range of 3 to 7.

FOOD HABITS: At all seasons the primary items are insects, insect eggs, and larvae. These foods are gleaned from the vegetation of hardwood or coniferous trees, mainly in the canopy. Seldom forage within 25 feet (8 m) of the ground.

GUILD: tree nesting, tree foliage gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:308; DeGraaf et al. 1980:412; Lowery 1974:504; Mengel 1965:398; Forbush and May 1939:419; Imhof 1976:340; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:445, 446; Sprunt 1954:387; Burleigh 1958:509; Stewart and Robbins 1958:280; Oberholser 1974(II):731; Bent 1953:135-148.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C in the mountains and parts of the upper Piedmont, mostly U in the lower Piedmont and Coastal Plain portions of the range, though FC to C over nearly all of Virginia; a separate race occurs in extreme southern Florida, where it is FC to C. Wintering -- generally U in southern Florida; majority of the breeding population winters south of the United States. Spring arrival -- early April to late April; fall departure -- early September to mid-October, but most of the migration occurs in July and August.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- favor willow thickets along streams, ponds, and lakes; in the mountains, also common in shrubs and saplings in farmyards and other open places; essentially only in mangrove thickets in Florida. Wintering -- hammocks, mangroves, or other shrubby places.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- broadleaf saplings or shrubs in open country. Wintering -- broadleaf evergreen shrubs or saplings.

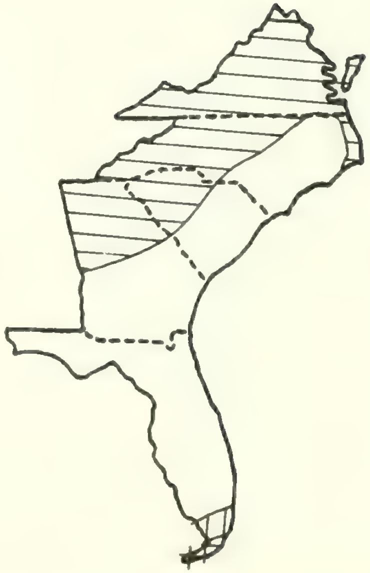
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood, 57(18) sapling-poletimber elm-ash-cottonwood (small plot).

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from early May to mid-June, with a peak from mid-May to late May. Nests are built in shrubs or small trees, usually 3 to 10 feet (1-3 m) off the ground. They are usually in areas of scatttered trees or shrubs, and not often in thickets. Clutch size is 3-6, usually 4-5.

FOOD HABITS: Insects and other small invertebrates form the bulk of the diet. They glean, and occasionally flycatch, food in the vegetation of hardwood shrubs and saplings, generally within 20 feet (6 m) of the ground.

GUILD: bush nesting, bush gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:309; Verner and Boss 1980:250; DeGraaf et al. 1980:414; Lowery 1974:506; Mengel 1965:400; Forbush and May 1939:421; Imhof 1976:341; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:447; Sprunt 1954:389-391; Burleigh 1958:512-515; Stewart and Robbins 1958:282; Oberholser 1974(II):734; Bent 1953:160-194; Kale 1978:61.



Virginia; R to U elsewhere at high elevations in Virginia; VR to R in extreme northwestern North Carolina, where breeding status is unclear; occur south to Roan Mountain. Wintering -- R to U in extreme southern Florida. Spring arrival -- late April to early May; fall departure -- early October to mid-October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- favor spruce or fir forests, both mature stands or fairly young ones; also around the edges of bogs where spruce or fir occur; probably occur sparingly in hemlock forests; avoid pure hardwood forests, but may occur in mixed forests. Wintering -- hammocks or other broadleaf evergreen woods.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- spruce and/or fir trees, in several situations; rarely in hemlocks. Wintering -- broadleaf evergreen woods.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from late May to late June, with a probable peak in early June and mid-June. Nests are usually built in conifers, mostly 3-10 feet (1-3 m) off the ground, but occasionaly over 30 feet (9 m) from the ground. Four is the usual clutch size, rarely 3 or 5. As only one nest with eggs has been reported for the Southeast, data in this section are based on those gathered from elsewhere in the breeding range.

FOOD HABITS: Magnolia Warblers glean insects from the foliage of trees and saplings, usually in conifers. Forage at variable heights, but seldom on the ground.

GUILD: bush or tree nesting, bush or tree foliage gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:311; DeGraaf et al. 1980:416; Lowery 1974:514; Mengel 1965:401; Forbush and May 1939:422; Imhof 1976:343; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:449; Sprunt 1954:391; Burleigh 1958:515; Stewart and Robbins 1958:283; Oberholser 1974(II):737; Bent 1953:195.

Wintering -- U in extreme southern Florida. Breed to the north of the region, and the bulk of the nesting population winters south of the United States. Fall arrival -- late September; spring departure -- early May.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Mainly in coastal hammocks; probably also occur in other broadleaf evergreen woods or thickets.

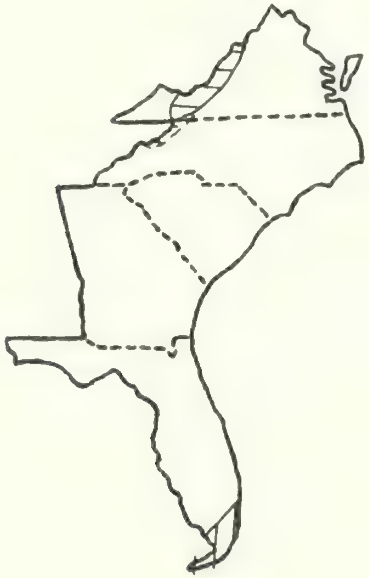
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Broadleaf evergreen woods.

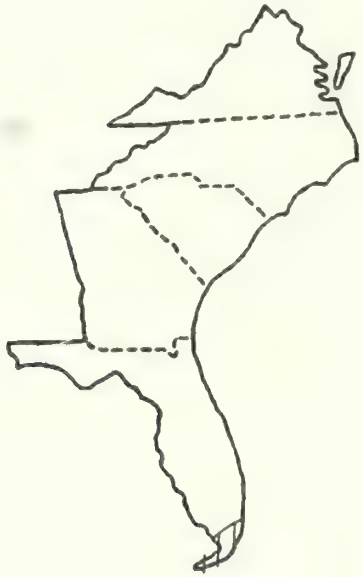
REPRODUCTION: Do not breed in the Southeast.

FOOD HABITS: Primarily insectivorous. In the fall and winter fruit, such as grapes and berries, and nectar are eaten as well.

GUILD: tree or bush foliage gleaning omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:312; DeGraaf et al. 1980:418; Lowery 1974:513; Mengel 1965:402; Forbush and May 1939:423; Imhof 1976:343; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:451; Sprunt 1954:392; Burleigh 1958:516; Stewart and Robbins 1958:284; Oberholser 1974(II):739; Bent 1953:212.





ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C and widespread throughout the m); wintering -- U in extreme southern Florida. Spring arrival -- mid-April to late April; fall departure -- early October to mid-October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- a wide variety of forest types; favor medium-growth forests with a moderate to dense understory, especially rhododendron or mountain laurel; inhabit mixed forest, pure hardwoods, and even spruce-fir. Wintering -- essentially in broadleaf evergreen woods (hammocks).

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- montane forests with a moderate to rich understory. Wintering -- broadleaf evergreen woods.

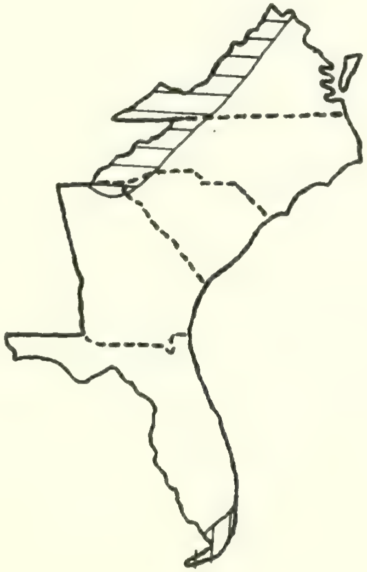
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 3(1) shrub-seedling mixed pine-hardwood, 49(3) sawtimber white pine-hemlock, 56(2) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from mid-May to late June, with the peak from late May to early June. Nests are generally placed 1 to 4 feet (<1.5 m) from the ground in shrubs or small trees and are usually not well hidden. Rhododendrons are the favored sites for nests. The usual clutch size is 4, with 3 infrequent and 5 rare.

FOOD HABITS: Glean insects from twigs and leaves of hardwoods or conifers. Forage commonly from the middle of the crown down to the shrub and sapling layer.

GUILD: bush nesting, tree or bush foliage gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:312; DeGraaf et al. 1980:420; Lowery 1974:508; Mengel 1965:402; Forbush and May 1939:424, 425; Imhof 1976:344; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:452, 453; Sprunt 1954:393-394; Burleigh 1958:517-520; Stewart and Robbins 1958:285; Oberholser 1974(II):740; Bent 1953:224-238.



particularly along the coast; mostly C in the remainder of Georgia and South Carolina; declining in numbers northward, and only U to FC in northern Virginia; R to U in the mountains. Breed to the north of the region. Fall arrival -- late September to mid-October; spring departure -- early May to mid-May.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Extremely widespread in wooded habitats; especially common in coastal waxmyrtle thickets; also common in bottomland hardwoods and swamps, woodland borders, pinewoods, overgrown fields, and thickets. Generally prefer moist habitats to dry and upland ones.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Trees or shrubs; no specific requirements.

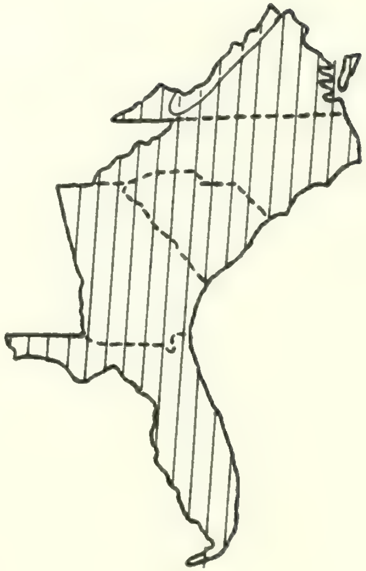
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood, 1(3) grass-forb oak-hickory, 110(4) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 203(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress, 413(1) shrub-seedling live oak maritime.

REPRODUCTION: Do not breed in the Southeast.

FOOD HABITS: Myrtle Warblers commonly take berries and seeds, as well as large numbers of insects, insect eggs, and larvae. They glean food from leaves and twigs, ranging from the canopy of mature trees to shrubs and saplings; infrequently forage on the ground. Some flycatching is also done.

GUILD: bush or tree foliage gleaning omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:314; Verner and Boss 1980:251; DeGraaf et al. 1980:422; Lowery 1974:514; Mengel 1965:404; Forbush and May 1939:426; Imhof 1976:345; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:454; Sprunt 1954:395; Burleigh 1958:520; Stewart and Robbins 1958:286; Oberholser 1974(II):741-745; Bent 1953:239-274.



in the mountains (mainly from 2000 feet, 600 m, to the highest elevations); R and local in a few isolated mountain ranges extending into the western Piedmont. In the Coastal Plain, generally U to FC, but C in a few places; quite local. Wintering -- U in extreme southern Florida. Spring arrival -- mid-March to mid-April; fall departure -- early October to mid-October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- in the mountains, occur mainly in coniferous or mixed forests; favor hemlocks and white pines, but also in spruce-fir and other species of pines; generally scarce in pure hardwood forest. In the Coastal Plain, inhabit swamps and bottomlands, commonly in cypress and white cedar (*Chamaecyparis thyoides*), but often in pure stands of hardwoods and mixed pine-hardwood areas. Wintering -- mostly in broadleaf evergreen woods, such as hammocks.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- forests of many types, usually moist ones with conifers present. Wintering --broadleaf evergreen woods.

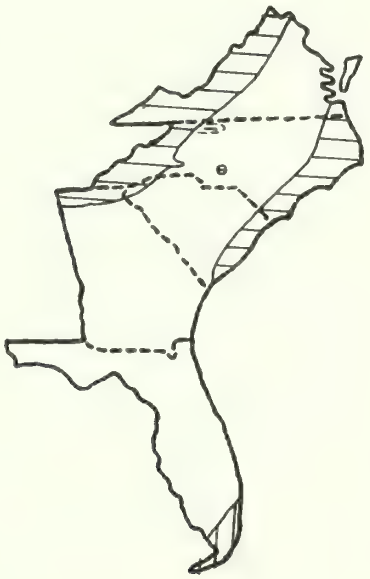
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 7(2) sawtimber oak-hickory, 44(2) sawtimber spruce-fir.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from late April to late June, with a peak from mid-May to early June. Nests are built in trees, usually at middle heights; conifers are preferred. The clutch size is most commonly 4, with 5 also frequent.

FOOD HABITS: Glean insects and other small invertebrates from leaves and twigs of trees, spending most of the time in the crowns of conifers, but also in hardwoods.

GUILD: tree nesting, tree foliage gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:315; DeGraaf et al. 1980:424; Lowery 1974:511; Mengel 1965:405; Forbush and May 1939:429; Imhof 1976:347; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:456, 457; Sprunt 1954:397; Burleigh 1958:522-524; Stewart and Robbins 1958:287; Oberholser 1974(II):749; Bent 1953:291-315.



"colonies"; FC to locally C in parts of the Virginia mountains, but R and local in the North Carolina mountains; also nest along the Roanoke River in northeastern North Carolina, where FC, and east of Richmond, Virginia, where R; possibly breed in northern Georgia. Winter to the south of the United States. Spring arrival -- mid-April to late April; fall departure -- August to early September.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Favor mature and somewhat open hardwoods; in the mountains, mostly on hilly to steep slopes that have little understory. In the Coastal Plain, found in bottomlands where there is little understory. Always breed in mature hardwoods; never in conifers.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Mature hardwood forests with a sparse understory.

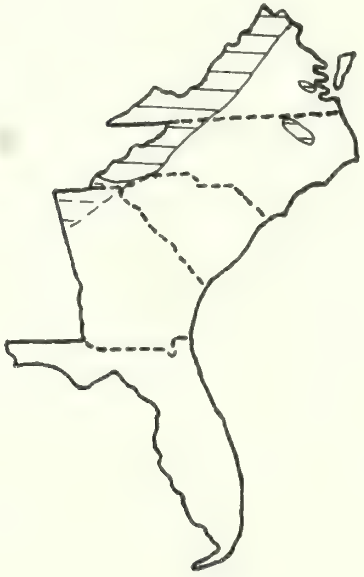
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 9.8(6) sawtimber oak-hickory.

REPRODUCTION: The season extends from mid-May to late June, with a probable peak in late May and early June. Nests are built in hardwoods, well out from the trunks, and usually fairly high in the trees. Four is the most common clutch size, with 3 or 5 rather infrequent.

FOOD HABITS: Feed in the crown of deciduous trees, gleaning insects from leaves and twigs.

GUILD: tree nesting, tree foliage gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:316; DeGraaf et al. 1980:426; Lowery 1974:507; Mengel 1965:408; Forbush and May 1939:430; Imhof 1976:348; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:459; Sprunt 1954:398; Burleigh 1958:524; Stewart and Robbins 1958:289; Oberholser 1974(II):755; Bent 1953:329; Lynch 1981.



above 3500 feet (1050 m); much less numerous down to 1600 feet (480 mid-April to early May; fall departure -- early October to mid-October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Favor rather mature forests of many types, with a slight preference for hardwoods mixed with hemlock, spruce, or fir; numerous in pure spruce-fir forests or hemlock forests, but less common in pure hardwood stands.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Mature mountain forests.

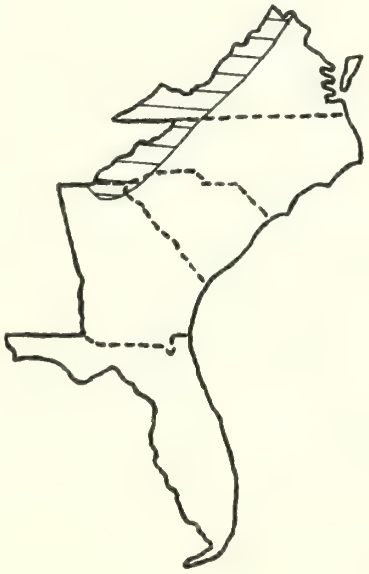
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 6(2) sapling-poletimber oak-hickory, 6(1) sawtimber oak-hickory, 6(1) sawtimber cove hardwoods, 19(2) sawtimber spruce-fir, 20(2) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 44(2) sawtimber white pine-hemlock.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from mid-May to late June, with a peak from early June to mid-June. Place nests at various heights in trees, usually fairly high in conifers. The normal clutch size is 4, with 5 fairly uncommon.

FOOD HABITS: Feed almost entirely on insects, gleaned from leaves and twigs of hardwood or coniferous trees. Most foraging is done in the crowns of the trees.

GUILD: tree nesting, tree foliage gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:317; DeGraaf et al. 1980:428; Lowery 1974:513; Mengel 1965:410; Forbush and May 1939:431; Imhof 1976:350; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:459; Sprunt 1954:399; Burleigh 1958:525; Stewart and Robbins 1958:290; Oberholser 1974(II):756; Bent 1953:337.



mountains of Georgia, South Carolina, and southern North Carolina, but scarce to absent farther northward in the mountains. The near absence of these warblers over much of the Piedmont is a complete mystery. Wintering -- FC over most of the range, becoming U at the northern edge of the range. Spring arrival -- early March to mid-April; fall departure -- early September to mid-October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- in the Coastal Plain and Piedmont, favor broadleaf evergreen woods or bottomland forests, especially where some pines or cypresses are present; most common where Spanish moss is present. In the mountains usually found in pinewoods or mixed pine-hardwood forests, generally below 2000 feet (600 m). Wintering -- in pinewoods, mixed hardwood-pine forest, or in broadleaf evergreens.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- mature forests, often where moderately open and moist; few essential requirements. Wintering -- woods with pines or broadleaf evergreens.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1.7(3) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 19(1) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood, 25(1) sawtimber live oak maritime.

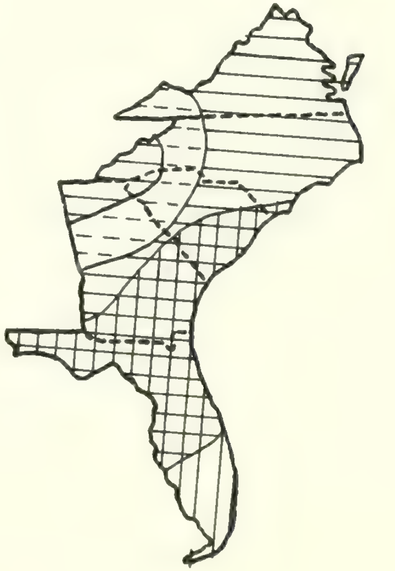
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber bay swamp-pocosin, 10(1) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-scrub oak, 20(1) sapling-poletimber sand pine-southern scrub oak.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from early April to early June, with a peak from mid-April to early May. Nests are often built in clumps of Spanish moss, where present; usually fairly high in conifers or hardwoods. Four is the normal clutch size, with 5 being uncommon.

FOOD HABITS: The primary food items are insects, with some larvae and insect eggs also taken in winter. Much of the food is gleaned from leaves and twigs, fairly high up in both conifers and hardwoods; however, they frequently creep on large limbs, and rarely trunks, for food.

GUILD: tree nesting, tree foliage or trunk gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:318; Lowery 1974:509; Mengel 1965:411; Forbush and May 1939:432; Imhof 1976:351; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:460; Sprunt 1954:400;
Burleigh 1958:527-532; Stewart and Robbins 1958:292; Oberholser 1974(II):758; Bent 1953:349-362; Kale 1978:62.



feet (1050 m); occur sparingly down to 2000 feet (600 m). Winter to the south of the United States. Spring arrival -- mid-April to early May; fall departure -- late September to mid-October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Favor second growth woods and overgrown fields; most numerous in abandoned fields with scattered saplings, but also common along woodland edges and in open, parklike woods. Generally in hardwoods.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Deciduous (usually) saplings or open, middle-aged woods.

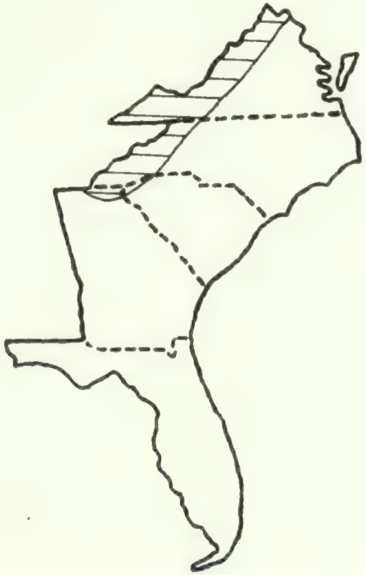
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 6(1) sawtimber cove hardwoods, 36(2) shrub-seedling mixed pine-hardwood.

REPRODUCTION: The nesting season extends from mid-May to early July, with the peak from late May to early June. The typical nest is located 1-4 feet (<1.5 m) from the ground in a sapling or shrub, in an overgrown field or thicket. The usual clutch size is 4, with 3 being rare and 5 very rare.

FOOD HABITS: This species feeds essentially on insects gleaned from leaves and twigs. Most foraging is done in saplings, shrubs, and low in trees; mainly in deciduous vegetation.

GUILD: bush nesting, bush gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:319; DeGraaf et al. 1980:430; Lowery 1974:507; Mengel 1965:413; Forbush and May 1939:433; Imhof 1976:352; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:463; Sprunt 1954:402; Burleigh 1958:532; Stewart and Robbins 1958:293; Oberholser 1974(II):761; Bent 1953:367.



Plain and Piedmont; mostly U in the lower mountains, and absent over 3000 feet (900 m). Wintering -- C in the Coastal Plain north to southeastern North Carolina; mostly FC in the Piedmont; U over most of Virginia, but VR to absent in the mountains.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- middle-aged to mature pine forest; seldom in hardwoods; occur in open pinewoods and residential pinewoods, as well as in fairly dense stands of pines.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: All seasons -- pine woods in a variety of situations.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress, 12(8) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 14(1) sawtimber live oak maritime, 25(3) sawtimber loblolly pine-shortleaf pine, 30(3) sapling-poletimber loblolly pine-shortleaf pine.

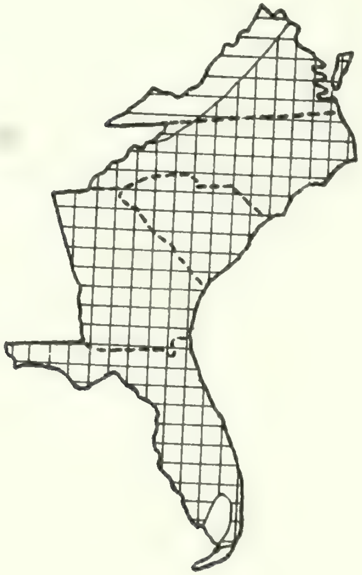
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sapling-poletimber pine savanna, 1(1) shrub-seedling southern scrub oak, 1(2) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 1(1) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood, 1(1) sawtimber oak-hickory, 16(9) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 25(1) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 34(1) grass-forb loblolly pine-shortleaf pine, 35(1) sapling-poletimber sand pine-southern scrub oak.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from mid-March to early June, with the peak from mid-April to early May. Nests are built in pines, usually at medium heights from the ground. The usual clutch size is 4, rarely 3 or 5.

FOOD HABITS: In the summer, Pine Warblers take essentially insects, but they forage on insects, berries, and small seeds in winter. They glean insects and berries from twigs and pine needles, and they occasionally forage on the ground for seeds and insects. Most foraging is done in the crowns of pine trees.

GUILD: tree nesting, tree foliage gleaning insectivore-omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:321; DeGraaf et al. 1980:436; Lowery 1974:509; Mengel 1965:416; Forbush and May 1939:437; Imhof 1976:354; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:466; Sprunt 1954:405-407; Burleigh 1958:537; Stewart and Robbins 1958:296; Oberholser 1974(II):765; Bent 1953:408-416.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C over most of the Pied[illegible] Carolina; decreasing in abundance southward in the Coastal Plain (mostly U south to southern Georgia); generally only U to FC in the lower mountains; in Florida, mainly confined to coastal areas, where they inhabit mangroves and are locally C. Wintering -- C in southern Florida, but decreasing greatly northward; R to U in coastal South Carolina. Spring arrival -- mid-March to mid-April; fall departure -- mid-September to mid-October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- abandoned fields with scattered saplings, scrubby thickets, cutover or burned-over woods, woodland margins, and other sapling-shrub growth, generally in poor and dry soil; occur in mangrove thickets in Florida. Wintering -- more widespread than in summer; in thickets, old fields, wood margins, and in open woods of many types.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- saplings or shrubs, usually in open country and in poor soil. Wintering -- saplings, shrubs, or open woods; very few essential features.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(2) sapling-poletimber loblolly pine-shortleaf pine, 18(1) shrub-seedling loblolly pine-shortleaf pine, 24(2) shrub-seedling oak-hickory, 43(5) shrub-seedling mixed pine-hardwood.

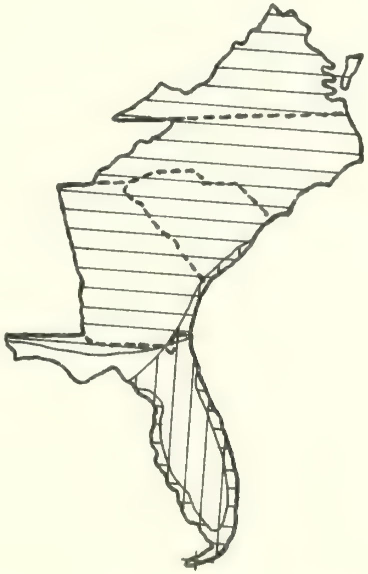
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime, 5(1) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-scrub oak.

REPRODUCTION: The breeding season extends from late April to early July, with the peak from mid-May to early June. Nests are generally placed 2 to 5 feet (<1.5 m) from the ground in saplings or shrubs, in an overgrown fields or thickets. Four is the usual clutch size, with 3 or 5 eggs rare.

FOOD HABITS: Insects and other small invertebrates are the primary food items, gleaned from leaves and twigs of hardwoods or conifers. Most foraging occurs from 1-10 feet (.3-3 m) from the ground.

GUILD: bush nesting, bush gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:323; Nolan 1978; DeGraaf et al. 1980:438; Lowery 1974:512; Mengel 1965:418; Forbush and May 1939:439; Imhof 1976:356;
Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:468; Sprunt 1954:408-410; Burleigh 1958:539; Stewart and Robbins 1958:298; Oberholser 1974(II):767; Bent 1953:428-438; Kale 1978:105.



[illegible] to A in the Florida peninsula, generally FC in the remainder of the Coastal Plain, though U in severe winters; U in the Piedmont (mainly in Georgia and South Carolina). Breed to the north of the region. Fall arrival -- early September to late September; spring departure -- mid-April to early May.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Highly varied, but usually in open country; overgrown fields with pine saplings, woodland margins, weedy fields, residential shrubbery, thickets, and open woods. Commonly seen on the ground.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: No essential features, though usually associated with saplings, shrubs, or herbaceous cover in open country.

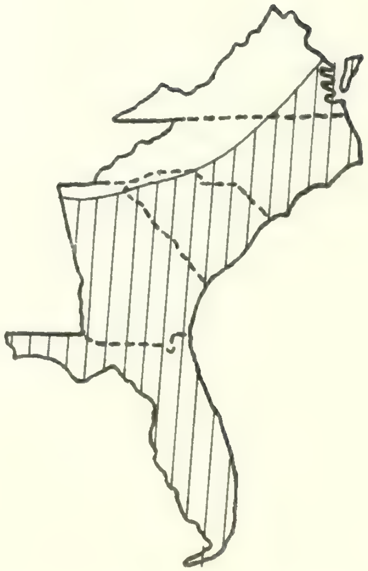
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sawtimber oak-hickory, 0.8(2) grass-forb longleaf pine-slash pine, 20(1) shrub-seedling live oak maritime, 33(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress.

REPRODUCTION: Do not breed in the Southeast.

FOOD HABITS: Palm Warblers forage mainly within 10 feet (3 m) of the ground, commonly in saplings, weeds, or on the ground. Insects are the chief food item, but some berries and seeds are taken.

GUILD: terrestrial, herb, or bush gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:324; DeGraaf et al. 1980:440; Lowery 1974:516; Mengel 1965:419; Forbush and May 1939:441; Imhof 1976:357; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:470; Sprunt 1954:410-412; Burleigh 1958:541-543; Stewart and Robbins 1958:299; Oberholser 1974(II):769; Bent 1953:439-456.



Ovenbird (Seiurus aurocapillus) OVEN

and upper Piedmont, becoming only FC near the southern edge of the range; occurs to 5000 feet (1500 m) in the mountains. Wintering -- hard to determine, as the birds are secretive; apparently FC in southern Florida, but U elsewhere. Spring arrival -- late March to mid-April; fall departure -- early October to mid-October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- favor rather dry deciduous forests, where the understory is moderate in density; also prefer a hilly terrain. Occur in mixed forests, in pinewoods with a deciduous understory, and to an extent in hardwood bottomlands. Wintering -- in mixed or broadleaf evergreen forests with moderate understory.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- deciduous or mixed forests (rarely pure pinewoods) with moderate understory, preferably in uplands. Wintering -- broadleaf evergreen woods.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1.5(2) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood, 2(2) sawtimber white pine-hemlock, 13(24) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 13(25) sawtimber oak-hickory, 23(1) shrub-seedling loblolly pine-shortleaf pine, 23(1) sapling-poletimber loblolly pine-shortleaf pine, 23(11) sapling-poletimber oak-hickory, 24(3) sawtimber loblolly pine-shortleaf pine.

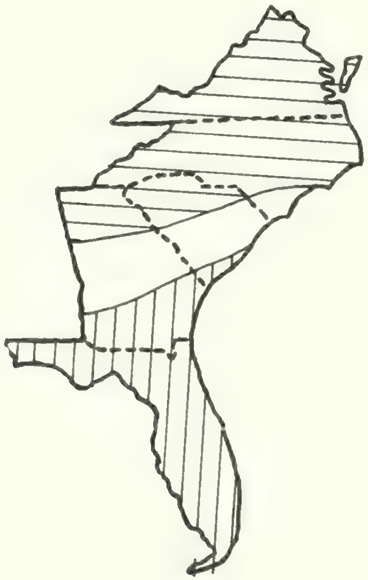
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 2.5(2) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 6(2) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from early May to early July, peaking in mid-May to early June. The domed nests with side entrances are placed on the ground in dead leaves, usually at the bases of trees or shrubs. Clutch size is 3-6, typically 4-5, eggs.

FOOD HABITS: Typically glean prey from leaf litter or soil; seldom forage in trees. Summer food primarily insects and other invertebrates; in winter some seeds and berries are also eaten.

GUILD: ground nesting, terrestrial gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:325; DeGraaf et al. 1980:442; Lowery 1974:520; Mengel 1965:421; Forbush and May 1939:442; Imhof 1976:358; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:471; Sprunt 1954:413; Burleigh 1958:543-548; Stewart and Robbins 1958:301; Oberholser 1974(II):770; Bent 1953:457-477.



Northern Waterthrush

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- R and local, at high elevations in Virginia (mainly above 4000 feet, 1200 m); Wintering -- U to FC in the southern portion of Florida. The bulk of the population of this species breeds to the north of the region and winters south of the United States. Spring arrival -- late April to early May; fall departure -- poorly known, but probably early September to early October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- favor edges of bogs, but also in shrubs and thickets at the edges of ponds or lakes. Wintering -- in thickets near water, such as mangroves and the shores of streams or ponds.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- shrubs or thickets near bogs or ponds in the higher mountains. Wintering -- thickets near water.

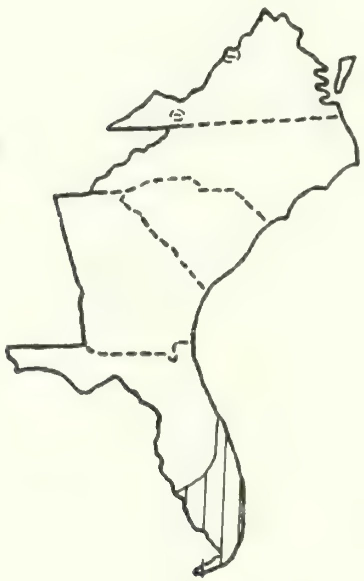
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime.

REPRODUCTION: No nest has been reported from Virginia, but the season probably extends from late May to late June. Based on information gathered to the north of the region, the usual nest is built on the ground in a damp or boggy place, especially in sphagnum moss, and often at the base of a tree or log. The clutch size is usually 4 or 5.

FOOD HABITS: Glean insect and other aquatic invertebrate prey from the shores of streams, ponds, etc. Almost strictly terrestrial.

GUILD: ground nesting, terrestrial or aquatic gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:326; DeGraaf et al. 1980:444; Lowery 1974:520; Mengel 1965:422; Forbush and May 1939:444; Imhof 1976:359; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:473; Sprunt 1954:414; Burleigh 1958:548-552; Stewart and Robbins 1958:302; Oberholser 1974(II):772; Bent 1953:477-492.



though in a somewhat restricted habitat; generally U in the Coastal Plain, being more numerous in Virginia and somewhat R in southern Georgia and Florida; rarely to 4000 feet (1200 m) in the mountains. Winter to the south of the United States. Spring arrival -- mid-March to early April; fall departure -- very early for a warbler, usually mid-July to mid-September.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Favor deciduous or mixed forests with rocky streams, but also occur along sluggish streams and rivers, and infrequently in swamps. Always near streams or other small bodies of water, preferably with scattered rocks, in woodlands or forests.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Forest near a stream or river, usually where rocks project from the water.

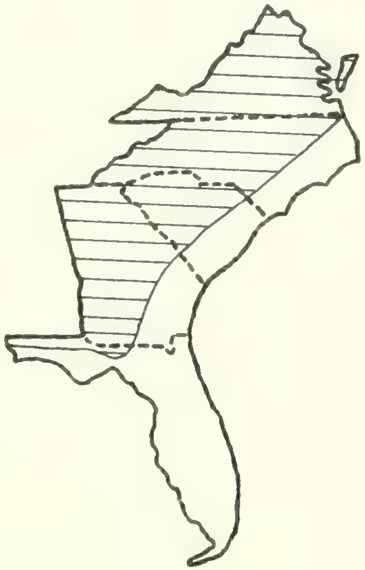
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 3(1) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 4.6(22) sawtimber oak-hickory, 10(2) sawtimber oak-gum-cypress, 15(4) sapling-poletimber elm-ash-cottonwood (small plot).

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from mid-April to early June; peak occurs late April to mid-May. Nests are built on the ground in forested habitats, generally in the sides of a stream banks, but often among the roots of trees or stumps. Clutch size 4-6, usually 5, eggs.

FOOD HABITS: Forage on the ground, always near streams, where insects and other small invertebrates are gleaned from surface of rocks, mud, or water.

GUILD: ground nesting, terrestrial or aquatic gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:326; DeGraaf et al. 1980:446; Lowery 1974:521; Mengel 1965:423; Forbush and May 1939:445; Imhof 1976:360; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:475; Sprunt 1954:415; Burleigh 1958:552; Stewart and Robbins 1958:303; Oberholser 1974(II):773; Bent 1953:493; Kale 1978:63.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- mainly FC in the lower mountains and Piedmont, sparingly up to 3500 feet (1050 m); FC in much of the Coastal Plain of Virginia and northern North Carolina, but generally U elsewhere in this section. Winter to the south of the United States. Spring arrival -- early April to late April; fall departure -- early September to late September.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Favor rich, moist deciduous forests; bottomland forests, rich woods near streams, and other moist hardwood types. Seldom in conifers; a rich understory of hardwoods is essential.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Moist deciduous forests with an abundant understory layer.

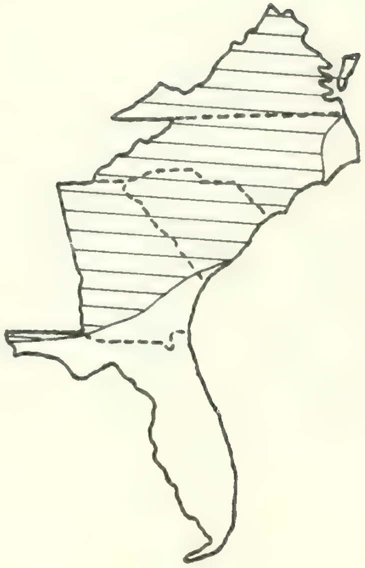
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sapling-poletimber mixed pine-hardwood, 5.8(16) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 7.5(2) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood, 8.5(2) sawtimber oak-gum-cypress.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from early May to mid-July; peak period is late May to early June. Cup nests are built on the ground usually in dense vegetation, such as the bases of shrubs or clumps of herbaceous vegetation. Usual clutch size is 4-5, rarely 3 or 6, eggs.

FOOD HABITS: Forage usually on the ground, sometimes in shrubs to 10 feet (3 m), gleaning insects from herbaceous vegetation, leaf litter, or soil.

GUILD: ground nesting, terrestrial gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:327; Lowery 1974:527; Mengel 1965:424; Forbush and May 1939:446; Imhof 1976:361; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:476; Sprunt 1954:416; Burleigh 1958:554; Stewart and Robbins 1958:304; Oberholser 1974(II):775; Bent 1953:503.



LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: State listed as Rare in West Virginia.

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- R in northwestern Highland County, Virginia, above 3000 feet (900 m). Winter to the south of the United States. Spring arrival -- mid-May to late May; fall departure -- poorly known, but probably late August to late September.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Fairly dense thickets; generally in the shrubby margins of bogs, but also in thickets in old fields or woodland edges, favoring blackberry (*Rubus* spp.) thickets.

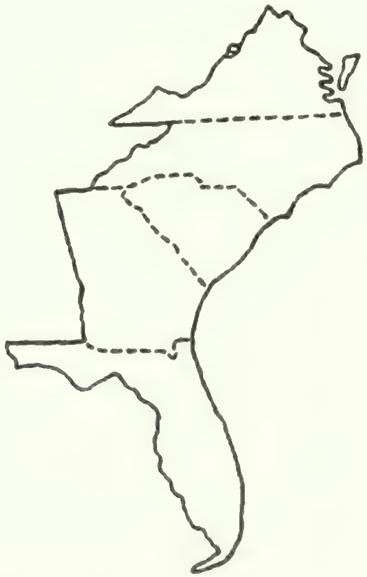
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Dense thickets at high elevations.

REPRODUCTION: No nest has been found in the region. Breeding season apparently extends from late May to early July; possible peak in early to mid-June. Nest, always in dense vegetation, usually on the ground, or in shrubs up to 3 feet (1 m). Clutch size 3-5, most commonly 4, eggs.

FOOD HABITS: Glean insect and other small invertebrate prey from shrubs, saplings, or herbs.

GUILD: ground nesting, bush or herb gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:329; DeGraaf et al. 1980:448; Lowery 1974:529; Mengel 1965:426; Forbush and May 1939:448; Imhof 1976:363; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:478; Sprunt 1954:418; Burleigh 1958:557; Stewart and Robbins 1958:307; Oberholser 1974(II):778; Bent 1953:524.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C to VC nearly throughout, but only FC to C in the higher mountains. Wintering -- C throughout Florida, mostly FC in the remainder of the Coastal Plain; generally U in the Piedmont portion of the range. Spring arrival -- late March to mid-April; fall departure -- mid-October to early November.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- in shrubby, brushy places; abandoned fields, shrubby marshes, thickets, woodland borders, and swamp edges are typical; favor moist habitats, but frequently in uplands as well. Wintering -- typically occur in damp places, such as brushy tangles, marsh edges, and damp thickets; inhabit fresh and brackish marshes, usually near shrubs.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- shrubs, saplings, or tall herbs, generally in open country. Wintering -- moist places with shrubs, saplings, or tall herbaceous cover.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.6(2) shrub-seedling southern scrub oak, 0.7(6) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood, 18(4) grass-forb oak-hickory, 29(3) sawtimber oak-gum-cypress, 41(18) sapling-poletimber elm-ash-cottonwood (small plot).

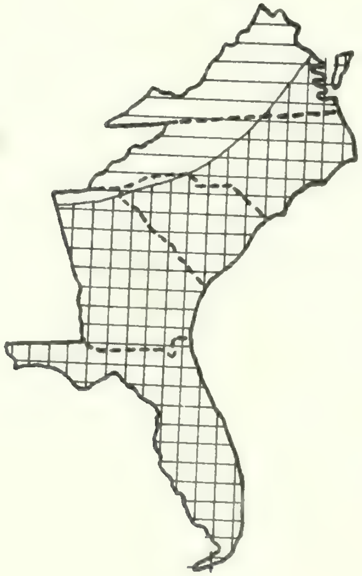
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) grass-forb longleaf pine-slash pine, 27(1) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime, 49(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from late April to late July, with peak period in early to late May. Build nests on or near the ground in moist thickets, in dense grasses or reeds, occasionally in shrubs. Clutch size 3-6, most commonly 4.

FOOD HABITS: Glean insects from reeds, grasses, and other vegetation, usually on or within 3 feet (1 m) of the ground.

GUILD: ground or bush nesting, bush or herb gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:329; Verner and Boss 1980:256; DeGraaf et al. 1980:450; Lowery 1974:526; Mengel 1965:427; Forbush and May 1939:449; Imhof 1976:363; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:479-482; Sprunt 1954:419-421; Burleigh 1958:557-562; Stewart and Robbins 1958:308; Oberholser 1974(II):781; Bent 1953:542-584.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding the mountains at middle elevations (2500 to 4000 feet; 750 m to 1200 m), sparingly to 5000 feet (1500 m); FC in the Inner Coastal Plain, but U near the coast. Wintering -- R to U, and secretive, along the coast; occur sporadically in peninsular Florida; scattered winter records from nearly throughout the Southeast. Spring arrival -- mid-April to late April; fall departure -- early September to late September.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- overgrown fields, hedgerows, thickets, and woodland margins; generally in dry situations, particularly in briar thickets. Wintering -- dense tangles, usually in broadleaf evergreens; hedgerows and thickets, especially in Japanese honeysuckle (Lonicera japonica) and privet (Ligustrum spp.).

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- dense cover of shrubs or saplings. Wintering -- thickets, mainly in broadleaf evergreen cover.

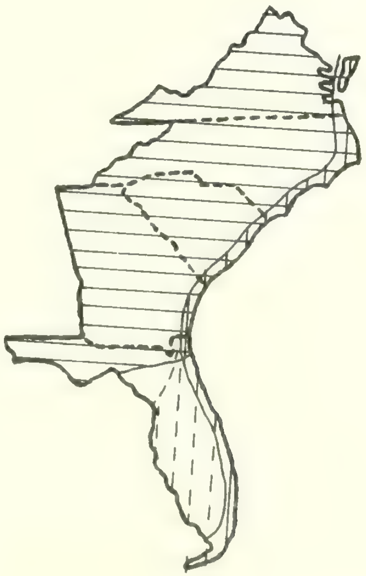
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(3) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood, 28(6) shrub-seedling mixed pine-hardwood, 32(17) sapling-poletimber elm-ash-cottonwood (small plot).

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from mid-May to early July, with peak occuring in mid-May to early June. Nests are generally built 2-8 feet (.6-2.5 m) up in dense vegetation such as vine tangles, Rubus thickets, etc. Difficult to find. Clutch size 3-6, usually 4-5.

FOOD HABITS: Forage in low vegetation, usually below 10 feet (3 m), occasionally on the ground. Glean prey from vegetation. Summer diet is insects and other small invertebrates; in winter berries are also eaten.

GUILD: bush nesting, bush foliage gleaning insectivore-omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:330; Verner and Boss 1980:257; DeGraaf et al. 1980:452; Lowery 1974:533; Mengel 1965:428; Forbush and May 1939:451; Imhof 1976:364; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:482; Sprunt 1954:421; Burleigh 1958:563-565; Stewart and Robbins 1958:310; Oberholser 1974(II):787; Bent 1953:587-601.



Breeding -- C nearly throughout, even in the mountains, but rarely above 4000 feet (1200 m). Winter south of the United States. Spring arrival -- late March to late April; fall departure -- mid-September to mid-October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Primarily in deciduous forests, but also in mixed forests; favor moist forests with a fairly dense understory, such as bottomlands, rich woods, and ravines. Sometimes in the deciduous understory of mature pine forests.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Forests (usually deciduous) with a rich understory layer.

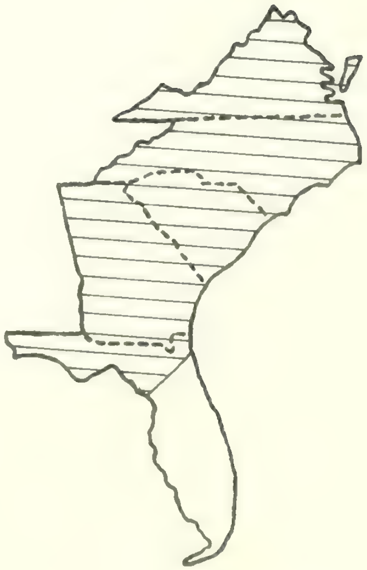
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 2(2) sapling-poletimber loblolly pine-shortleaf pine, 24(3) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress, 25(1) shrub-seedling loblolly pine-shortleaf pine, 47(10) sawtimber cove hardwoods.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from late April to late June, with peak activity occurring in early to late May. The nests, often poorly concealed, are built 2-5 feet (.6-1.5 m) off the ground in shrubs or saplings. Clutch size is usually 3-4, occasionally 5.

FOOD HABITS: Forage primarily in shrubs within 15 feet (5 m) of the ground, by gleaning and hawking insect and other invertebrate prey.

GUILD: bush nesting, bush or tree gleaning or hawking insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:332; DeGraaf et al. 1980:454; Lowery 1974:530; Mengel 1965:429; Forbush and May 1939:453; Imhof 1976:365; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:483; Sprunt 1954:423; Burleigh 1958:565; Stewart and Robbins 1958:311; Oberholser 1974(II):790; Bent 1953:610.



Carolina and Virginia mountains; FC in the Georgia mountains, but R to U in adjacent South Carolina; seldom occur below 3000 feet (900 m). Winter to the south of the United States. Spring arrival -- late April to early May; fall departure -- mid-September to late September.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Dense understory or shrub layers in a variety of forests; prefer rhododendron or mountain laurel tangles; the canopy over the tangles may be spruce-fir, hemlocks, or pure hardwoods; ravines or other cool slopes are favored.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Montane forests with a dense shrub or understory layer, showing a preference for rhododendron.

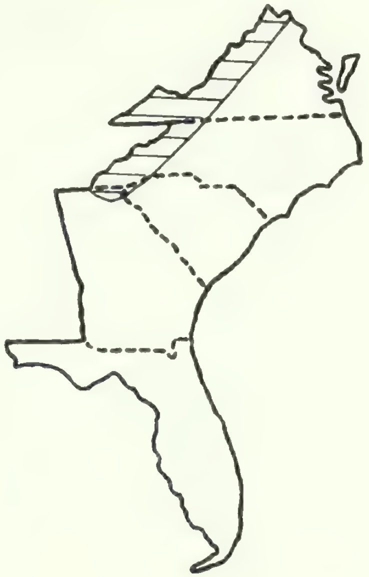
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 5(1) sawtimber spruce-fir, 22(3) sawtimber white pine-hemlock, 47(1) sawtimber oak-hickory, 60(2) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from late May to early July, peaking in late May to early June. Ground nests are generally well-hidden near root tangles, bases of trees, in stream banks, etc. Clutch size 3-5, commonly 4.

FOOD HABITS: Glean or hawk insect prey, usually below 10 feet (3 m) in low vegetation or on the ground.

GUILD: ground nesting, bush gleaning or hawking insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:334; DeGraaf et al. 1980:458; Lowery 1974:531; Mengel 1965:432; Forbush and May 1939:454; Imhof 1976:367; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:485; Sprunt 1954:426; Burleigh 1958:568; Oberholser 1974(II):792; Bent 1953:646.



mountains; FC to C in the Piedmont; locally FC to C in parts of the Coastal Plain (mainly in Virginia); seldom in the mountains above 4000 feet (1200 m). Wintering -- U in southern Florida. Spring arrival -- early April to late April; fall departure -- early October to mid-October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- in the Piedmont and Coastal Plain, favor bottomland hardwoods and swamps, especially in extensive stands; in the mountains they occur in hardwoods along streams, usually where open and not heavily wooded; less frequent in medium-growth hardwood forests away from water. Wintering -- mainly in broadleaf evergreen woods and thickets, such as hammocks and mangroves.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- hardwood forests, usually near water. Wintering -- broadleaf evergreen woods or thickets.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 2.7(5) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 16(8) sapling-poletimber elm-ash-cottonwood, 87(1) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood.

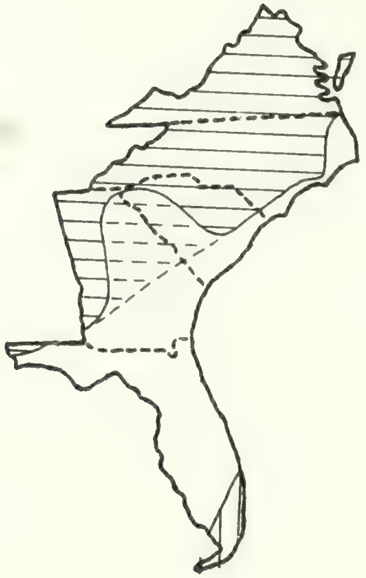
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sawtimber live oak maritime, 4(1) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from early May to late June, with the peak in late May to early June. Cup nests are built 6-25 feet (2-8 m) up in trees. Clutch size 3-5, usually 4.

FOOD HABITS: Glean and hawk insect and other invertebrate prey in and below tree canopies at 10-50 feet (3-15 m).

GUILD: tree nesting, tree foliage gleaning or hawking insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:335; DeGraaf et al. 1980:460; Lowery 1974:519; Mengel 1965:434; Forbush and May 1939:455; Imhof 1976:367; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:486; Sprunt 1954:427; Burleigh 1958:569-573; Stewart and Robbins 1958:315; Oberholser 1974(II):795; Bent 1953:656-681; Kale 1978:64.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: All seasons -- VC, somewhat less numerous in the mountains, but occur in all mountain towns; R over 4000 feet (1200 m). Essentially non-migratory.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Seldom far from human settlements; widespread in cities, towns, open residential areas, and farms; scarce in wooded residential areas.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Areas of human habitation, principally in open places.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.7(3) grass-forb elm-ash-cottonwood, 44(2) grass-forb mixed pine-hardwood.

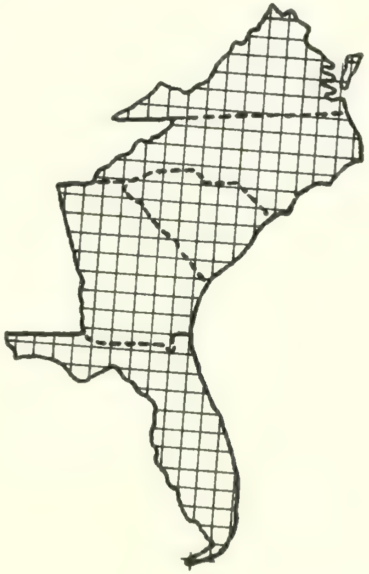
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 48(9) sapling-poletimber pine savanna, 70(2) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding occurs from late March to mid-August, probably peaking in April and May. Nest sites varied, including woodpecker holes, bird boxes, on ledges or crannies in buildings, etc.; occasionally in trees. Very bulky and untidy nests. Clutch size 3-7, usually 4-6.

FOOD HABITS: Varied diet includes mainly vegetable matter, seeds, grains, "tablescraps," as well as insects. Forage generally on the ground and low vegetation, usually by gleaning, occasionally other tactics employed.

GUILD: cavity or ledge nesting, terrestrial gleaning omnivore.

REFERENCES: Scott et al. 1977:90; Potter et al. 1980:337; Verner and Boss 1980:259; DeGraaf et al. 1980:462; Lowery 1974:535; Mengel 1965:436; Forbush and May 1939:456; Imhof 1976:369; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:488; Sprunt 1954:428; Burleigh 1958:573; Stewart and Robbins 1958:317; Oberholser 1974(II):799; Kendeigh 1973; Bent 1958:1.



Breeding -- R in Highland County, Virginia; have occurred in summer and possibly nested at several sites in Virginia and northwestern North Carolina, but are sporadic and not regular in these areas. One positive nesting in North Carolina (North Wilkesboro). The majority of the breeding population nests to the north of the region and winters south of the United States. Spring arrival -- late April to early May; fall departure -- mid-September to late September.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Areas of tall grasses or other herbs; meadows, hay fields, or weedy fields, always where extensive.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Tall grassy places in open country.

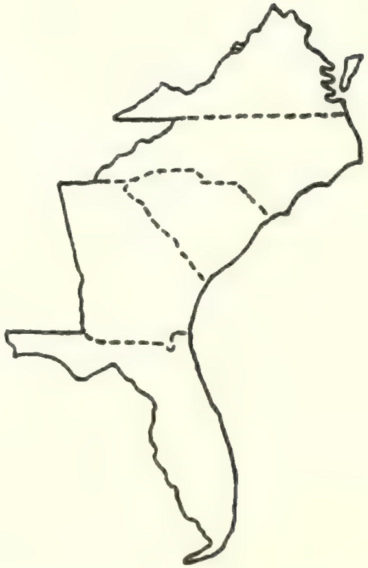
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(3) grass-forb elm-ash-cottonwood.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season, poorly known in Southeast, late May to late June, probably peaking in early to mid-June. Nest on the ground, well-concealed in grasses. Clutch size 4-7, usually 5-6.

FOOD HABITS: Glean insects from grasses or other herbaceous cover near the ground; in the fall, diet is primarily grain seeds. Formerly made serious depredations of rice crops in the coastal Carolinas.

GUILD: ground nesting, herb gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:338; DeGraaf et al. 1980:464; Lowery 1974:537; Mengel 1965:437; Forbush and May 1939:459; Imhof 1976:370; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:489; Sprunt 1954:429; Burleigh 1958:574; Stewart and Robbins 1958:318; Oberholser 1974(II):802; Bent 1958:28.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C to VC in the Piedmont and Coastal Plain, though somewhat less numerous near the coast and in the mountains; seldom occur over 5000 feet (1500 m); Wintering -- a noticeable increase in numbers in most areas, becoming A at many Piedmont and Coastal Plain localities. Partly migratory.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- prefer short to medium-height grasses; fields, pastures, and other grassy places. Favor somewhat taller grasses (up to 2 feet high, .6 m) for nesting than for foraging.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Grassy places in a wide variety of situations.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.6(2) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 20(2) grass-forb mixed pine-hardwood.

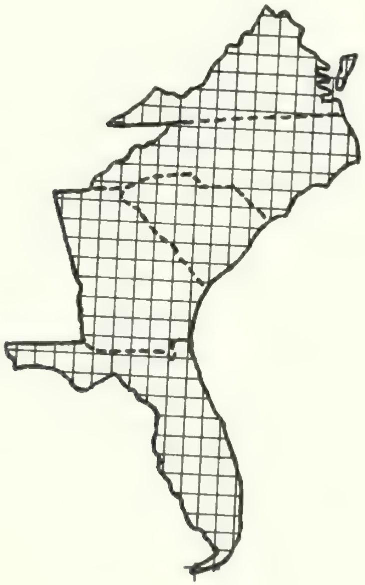
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 2.5(2) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 13(25) grass-forb elm-ash-cottonwood, 16(2) grass-forb loblolly pine-shortleaf pine, 18(1) sawtimber longleaf pine-scrub oak, 29(11) grass-forb oak-hickory.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from mid-April to mid-July, peaking in early to late May. Domed ground nests with side entrances well-hidden in grass. Clutch size 3-7, usually 4-6.

FOOD HABITS: Glean and probe ground and grasses. Summer diet primarily consists of insects; in winter considerable amounts of grain and grass seeds are also taken.

GUILD: ground nesting, terrestrial or herb probing or gleaning insectivore-omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:339; DeGraaf et al. 1980:466; Lowery 1974:538; Mengel 1965:438; Forbush and May 1939:461; Imhof 1976:371; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:491; Sprunt 1954:430; Burleigh 1958:576-579; Stewart and Robbins 1958:319; Oberholser 1974(II):804; Lanyon 1957; Bent 1958:53-83.



Plain; C in the mountains, but habitat somewhat more restricted. Wintering -- VC to A everywhere except the mountains, where only U to FC at most places.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- favor freshwater marshes, but also common in wet thickets, grassy fields, borders of lakes and ponds, and openings and edges of swamps, among other habitats. Wintering -- forage in marshes, grain fields, cropland, edges of ponds, streams, and swamps, and in moist woodlands; roost in large flocks, often in marshes, but commonly with other blackbirds in thick woodlands.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- shrubs, saplings, or herbaceous vegetation, usually where moist or wet, but few essential requirements. Wintering -- no essential features, but most foraging in varied open habitats.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(15) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood, 24(2) grass-forb mixed pine-hardwood, 34(2) sawtimber oak-gum-cypress, 53(3) grass-forb bay swamp-pocosin.

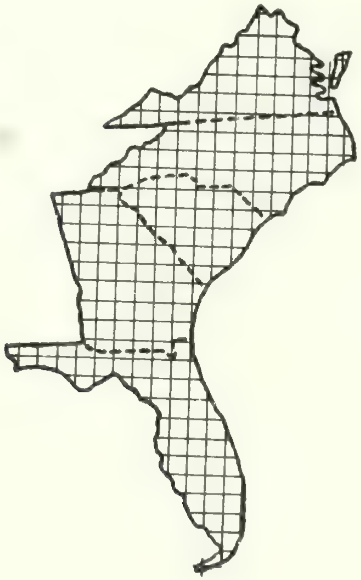
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(2) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood, 27(18) grass-forb elm-ash-cottonwood, 29(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season mid-April to mid-August; peak occurs in early to late May. Nests are placed in reeds, shrubs, or saplings, usually 1-3 feet (.3-1 m) above ground or water. Clutch size usually 3-4, sometimes 5.

FOOD HABITS: In summer glean insects and other small invertebrates from ground or low vegetation. In winter feed primarily on grain and weed seeds on the ground.

GUILD: bush or ground nesting, herb or terrestrial gleaning insectivore-omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:341; Verner and Boss 1980:262; DeGraaf et al. 1980:468; Lowery 1974:541; Mengel 1965:442; Forbush and May 1939:465; Imhof 1976:374; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:493; Sprunt 1954:433-436; Burleigh 1958:580-584; Stewart and Robbins 1958:321; Oberholser 1974(II):809; USDI Fish & Wildl.
Serv. 1980; Dolbeer and Stehn 1979; Crase and DeHaven 1975; Bent 1958:123-178.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: [illegible] in the Piedmont, generally only U to FC in the mountains, mainly confined to valleys; scarce over 2500 feet (750 m). Winter south of the United States. Spring arrival -- late March to late April; fall departure -- very early for a songbird, mainly early August to early September.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Scattered hardwoods in open country; favor old orchards, groves, roadside or creekside trees, farmyards, and woodland margins.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Scattered hardwood trees in open country.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(2) sapling-poletimber mixed pine-hardwood, 12(1) grass-forb loblolly pine-shortleaf pine, 15(4) sapling-poletimber elm-ash-cottonwood (small plot).

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from mid-May to late June, peaking in mid- to late May. Nests generally placed 10-30 feet (3-9 m) up in the canopies of hardwood trees. Clutch size 3-7, usually 4-5.

FOOD HABITS: Glean insects and other small invertebrates from leaves and twigs at middle canopy levels of trees. Occasionally eat berries.

GUILD: tree nesting, tree foliage gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:344; DeGraaf et al. 1980:470; Lowery 1974:541; Mengel 1965:445; Forbush and May 1939:468; Imhof 1976:375; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:495; Sprunt 1954:436; Burleigh 1958:584; Stewart and Robbins 1958:322; Oberholser 1974(II):813; Bent 1958:191.

Spotted-breasted Oriole

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: All seasons -- FC to locally C, but only in cities and residential areas; not numerous in rural areas. Introduced from Central America in 1949. Non-migratory.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Scattered trees in open, urban or residential areas; commonly in palms or palmettos, but also in other broadleaf trees.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Scattered trees in residential areas.

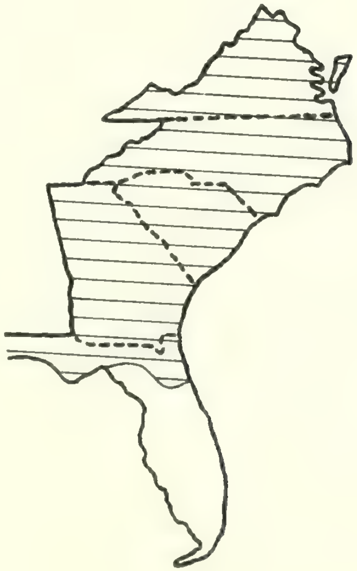
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1.8(5) sapling-poletimber pine savanna, 2.5(2) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine.

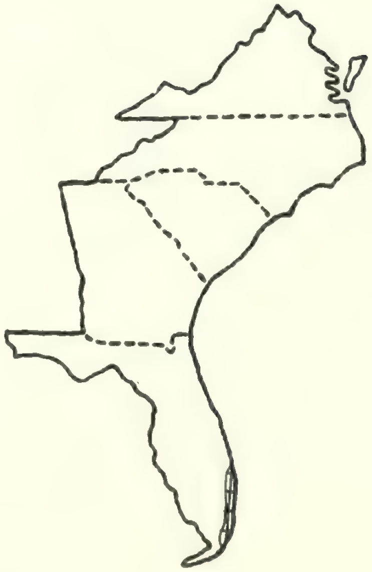
REPRODUCTION: Little is known of the breeding habits, especially on the timing of egg-laying. The typical nest is a bag or cup structure placed at a moderate height in a tree, often in a palm. The clutch is generally 3 or 4 eggs.

FOOD HABITS: These orioles feed mainly on various fruits and nectar, and presumably some insects and small berries.

GUILD: tree nesting, tree foliage gleaning frugivore or nectarivore.

REFERENCES: Sprunt 1954:440.





ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- FC to C in mountain valleys south to northwestern North Carolina; generally R and erratic elsewhere, though FC to C in extreme northern Virginia and in the Piedmont of Virginia adjacent to the Blue Ridge. Wintering -- essentially restricted to towns and residential areas in open country; U over most of the range, though FC in the eastern half of North Carolina. Spring arrival -- mid-April to early May; fall departure -- early September to late September.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- scattered hardwoods, usually along a stream or river, but also along roadsides, in farmyards, and other open country habitats. Wintering -- almost always near feeders in towns, primarily with a good cover of evergreen shrubs and a scattering of hardwood trees; almost never in pines.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- scattered hardwoods in open country. Wintering -- near feeders in towns or residential areas.

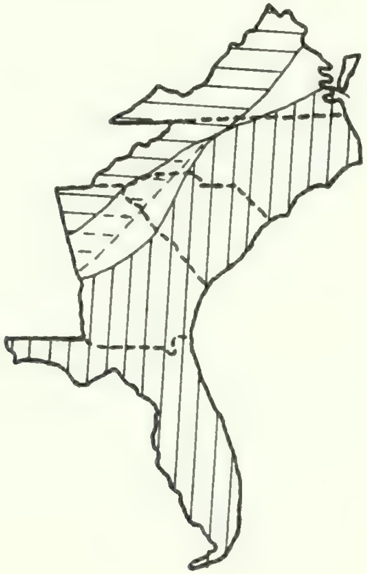
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in shrub-seedling, sapling-poletimber, and sawtimber oak-hickory, 4(2) grass-forb mixed pine-hardwood.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from mid-May to mid-June, probably peaking in mid- to late May. Usual nest, a deep bag, is built in the canopy of a hardwood tree, usually above 30 feet (9 m). Clutch size 4, occasionally 5 or 6.

FOOD HABITS: In summer glean insects from twigs and leaves in canopies of hardwood trees. Winter foods include berries, insects, and items from feeders such as suet, fruits, and nuts.

GUILD: tree nesting, tree foliage gleaning insectivore-omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:346; Verner and Boss 1980:264; DeGraaf et al. 1980:472; Lowery 1974:543; Mengel 1965:446; Forbush and May 1939:469; Imhof 1976:376; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:497; Sprunt 1954:438, 439; Burleigh 1958:586-590; Stewart and Robbins 1958:323; Oberholser 1974(II):823-827; Bent 1958:247-282.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Wintering -- FC to C in the Coastal Plain, though scarce in most of Florida; FC in the Piedmont; U in the mountains, mostly in the valleys. Occur in large flocks, and are thus often C in one locality and quite scarce in a nearby area. Breed to the north of the region. Fall arrival -- mid-October to mid-November; spring departure -- early April to late April.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Favor damp, wooded places; swamps, swamp margins, and wet thickets are the primary habitats, but they are frequently found in croplands and lawns with other blackbirds.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: No strict requirements, though usually found in moist or wet areas where hardwood trees are present.

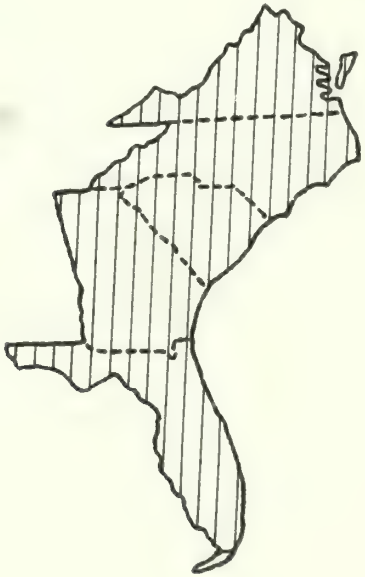
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood, 1(1) sawtimber oak-hickory, 3.1(9) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood.

REPRODUCTION: Do not breed in this region.

FOOD HABITS: Glean insects, small invertebrates, seeds, and berries, primarily on the ground in damp places.

GUILD: terrestrial gleaning omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:347; DeGraaf et al. 1980:474; Lowery 1974:545; Mengel 1965:448; Forbush and May 1939:471; Imhof 1976:378; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:499; Sprunt 1954:441; Burleigh 1958:590; Stewart and Robbins 1958:324; Oberholser 1974(II):829; Bent 1958:282-301.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Wintering -- occur locally, in flocks, thus not [illegible] Breed to the west of the region. Fall arrival -- early November to late November; spring departure -- late March to early April.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Open farming country; favor cattle pastures and feedlots, plowed fields, lawns, and other short grass areas.

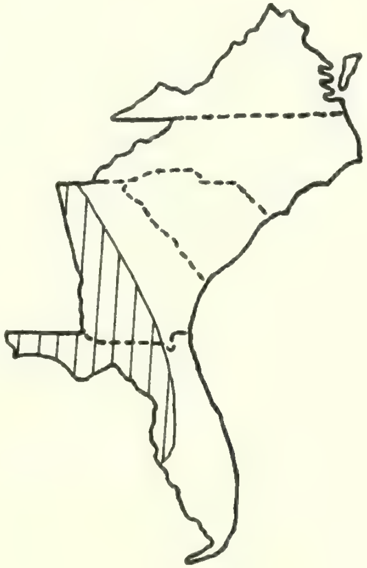
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Open country in agricultural habitats.

REPRODUCTION: Do not breed in this region.

FOOD HABITS: Glean insects and grain seeds almost strictly from the ground.

GUILD: terrestrial gleaning omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:348; Verner and Boss 1980:265; Lowery 1974:545; Mengel 1965:449; Forbush and May 1939:472; Imhof 1976:378; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:500; Sprunt 1954:442; Burleigh 1958:592; Stewart and Robbins 1958:325; Oberholser 1974(II):830; Bent 1958:302.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: [illegible] the range. Some migratory movements occur, but little change in abundance at a given locality from season to season.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Seldom far from water. Occur in thickets, open woods, residential areas, and other habitats near large bodies of water, generally near salt water. Most common in thickets adjacent to salt marshes and estuaries. Feed in marshes, lawns, and on shores.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Trees or shrubs, particularly thickets, in close proximity to large bodies of water.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress, and sapling-poletimber mixed pine-hardwood, 5(1) Everglades.

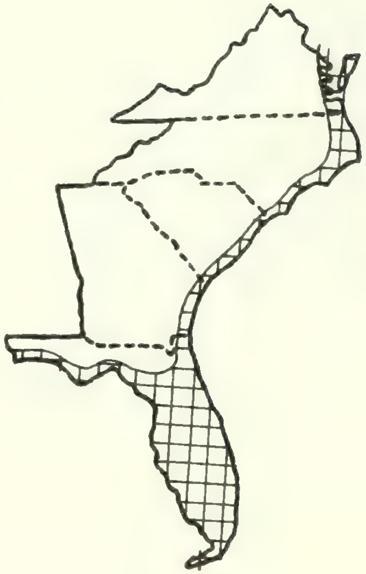
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 44(2) grass-forb longleaf pine-slash pine.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from early March to late June, with peak occurring in late March to mid-May. Nests are built typically 3-10 feet (1-3 m) from the ground in shrubs or trees, often on the edges of woods or thickets, not far from water. Clutch size usually 3 in southern part of the region, 4 farther north.

FOOD HABITS: Wide variety of animal and plant foods taken primarily by gleaning from the ground. Summer diet includes primarily animal prey; in winter seeds and grain are commonly eaten. Boat-tails scavenge throughout the year as well.

GUILD: bush or tree nesting, terrestrial gleaning omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:348; Lowery 1974:548; Forbush and May 1939:473; Imhof 1976:38[illegible]; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:501; Sprunt 1954:443; Burleigh 1958:593; Stewart and Robbins 1958:326; Oberholser 1974(II):836; Bent 1958:357-374.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- VC to A nearly everywhere, except C in the mountains; seldom occur above 4500 feet (1350 m). Wintering -- generally A in the Coastal Plain; C to locally A in the Piedmont; U in most of the mountains. Roost in huge flocks in the fall and winter, with the flocks of grackles and other blackbirds frequently numbering over one million birds.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- usually nest in conifers, particularly in open stands; favored sites are groves of pines in residential areas or in farmyards; seldom nest in deep forests. Wintering -- roost in huge flocks in woodlands, generally in dense woods, swamps, or pinewoods. At all seasons forage in open areas; favorite sites are croplands, pastures, lawns, and plowed fields; infrequently feed in woodlands.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- scattered trees or groves in open country, mainly in pines. Wintering -- no essential requirements, but usually in open, agricultural areas.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.2(15) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood, 28(1) sawtimber live oak maritime, 28(2) grass-forb mixed pine-hardwood, 82(16) sapling-poletimber elm-ash-cottonwood (small plot).

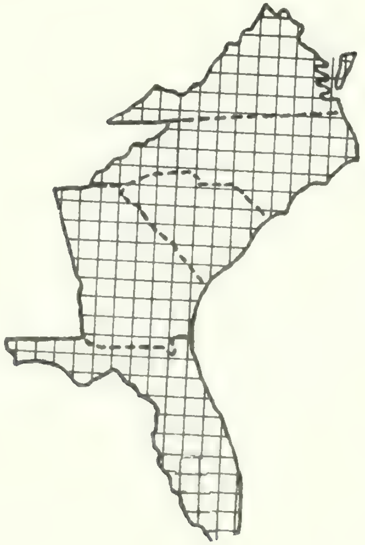
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.8(2) sawtimber oak-hickory, 1(1) sapling-poletimber bay swamp-pocosin, 1(1) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 16(5) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood, 87(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from late March to early August; peak in mid- to late April. Place nests often near tops of trees 20 feet (6 m) or more high, in a variety of locations, including swamps, pine groves, etc. Clutch size 4-7, commonly 5.

FOOD HABITS: Typically forage on the ground, gleaning insects and other animal food in summer, and grain and other seeds in winter.

GUILD: bush or tree nesting, terrestrial gleaning insectivore-granivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:349; DeGraaf et al. 1980:476; Lowery 1974:549; Mengel 1965:449; Forbush and May 1939:474, 475; Imhof 1976:380; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:503-505; Sprunt 1954:445; Burleigh 1958:596-599; Stewart and Robbins 1958:326; Oberholser 1974(II):838-841; USDI Fish & Wildl. Serv. 1980; Dolbeer and Stehn 1979; Crase and DeHaven 1975; Bent 1958:374-420.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C over most of the Piedmont and lower mountains; generally FC elsewhere, but U at best in southern Georgia and Florida. Wintering -- C over most of the region, but U in the mountains; erratic in occurrence in winter, and move about in large flocks. Roost with other blackbirds and Starlings in winter.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- as females lay eggs in other species' nests, they roam from habitat to habitat. Cowbirds are usually found in open woods, margins, thickets, farmyards, and residential areas. Wintering -- mainly in open country for foraging; favor cattle pastures and feedlots, but also in plowed fields, lawns, and other open places. Roost in forests or thickets.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- no essential requirements. Wintering -- open country, generally in pastures or feedlots; woods or thickets required for roosting.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.4(3) shrub-seedling mixed pine-hardwood, 15(2) sapling-poletimber elm-ash-cottonwood (small plot), 19(1) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood.

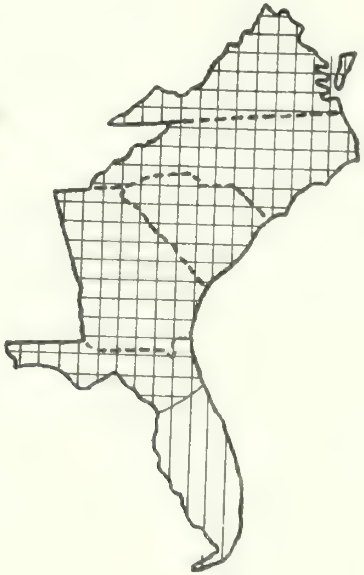
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 2(1) sawtimber oak-hickory, 9(3) grass-forb elm-ash-cottonwood, 9.5(2) grass-forb longleaf pine-slash pine.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from early April to late July, with peak in mid-May to early June. Build no nest; female cowbirds lay usually one, sometimes two, eggs in the nests of other species. Clutch size probably 4-5.

FOOD HABITS: Glean insects, invertebrates, seeds, grain, and berries, mainly on the ground. Occasionally pick insects from cattle. Winter food primarily seeds and grain.

GUILD: tree or bush nesting, terrestrial gleaning omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:351; Verner and Boss 1980:256; DeGraaf et al. 1980:478; Lowery 1974:550; Mengel 1965:452; Forbush and May 1939:477; Imhof 1976:381; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:505; Sprunt 1954:446; Burleigh 1958:599; Stewart and Robbins 1958:328; Oberholser 1974(II):841; USDI Fish & Wildl. Serv. 1980; Dolbeer and Stehn 1979; Crase and DeHaven 1975; Bent 1958:421-455.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding [illegible] in the mountains (up to 4000 feet, 1200 m), but essentially absent above 5000 feet (1500 m); FC over most of the Piedmont, and FC to C in Virginia; generally U in the Coastal Plain section of the range. Winter to the south of the United States. Spring arrival -- mid-April to late April; fall departure -- early October to mid-October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Favor mature deciduous forests, especially in uplands; also breed in bottomlands; less numerous in mixed forests.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Mature deciduous forests.

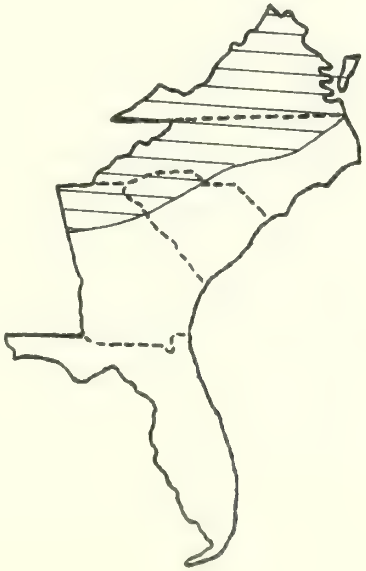
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) shrub-seedling loblolly pine-shortleaf pine, 1(1) shrub-seedling mixed pine-hardwood, 6.9(25) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 9.8(23) sawtimber oak-hickory, 13(11) sawtimber cove hardwoods, 19(3) sawtimber white pine-hemlock.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from mid-May to early August, with peak from late May to mid-June. Nest at moderate height, commonly 20-50 feet (6-15 m), in a hardwood tree. Clutch size 3-5, most commonly 4.

FOOD HABITS: Glean insects from leaves and twigs, usually 30 feet (9 m) or higher in tree canopies. Also eat berries, especially in the fall.

GUILD: tree nesting, tree foliage gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:353; DeGraaf et al. 1980:480; Lowery 1974:554; Mengel 1965:457; Forbush and May 1939:480; Imhof 1976:383; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:507; Sprunt 1954:447; Burleigh 1958:603; Stewart and Robbins 1958:330; Oberholser 1974(II):847; Bent 1958:479.



[illegible] Breeding -- C over most of the Coastal Plain, and in the Piedmont north to southern Virginia; generally U in northern Virginia, and in mountain valleys; seldom above 2500 feet (750 m). Winter to the south of the United States. Spring arrival -- late March to late April; fall departure -- mid-September to mid-October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Prefer open to medium-growth woods, usually in dry soil; favor mixed woods or hardwoods, but frequently in pinewoods; also in wooded residential areas and bottomlands.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Forests of many types, with a preference for dry sites.

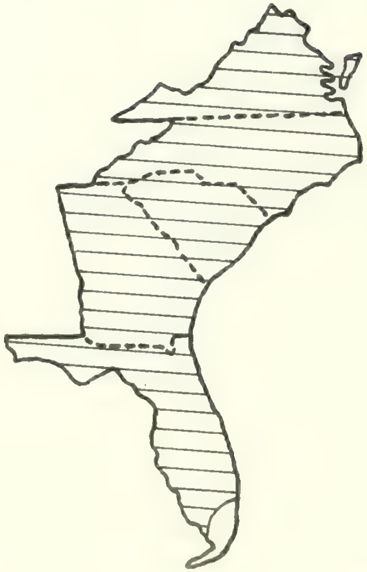
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.6(2) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood, 8.3(3) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress, 22(5) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-scrub oak.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from early May to mid-July, with peak in mid- to late May. Nests are built in trees, 20-40 feet (6-12 m) above the ground. Clutch size 3-4, sometimes 5.

FOOD HABITS: Glean and hawk insects, particularly bees, wasps, and other flying forms; mostly in tree canopies.

GUILD: tree nesting, tree foliage gleaning insectivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:354; Lowery 1974:555; Mengel 1965:459; Forbush and May 1939:482; Imhof 1976:385; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:508; Sprunt 1954:448; Burleigh 1958:605; Stewart and Robbins 1958:332; Oberholser 1974(II):850; Bent 1958:496-509.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: All seasons -- C to A nearly everywhere, though not common in the mountains at middle elevations, and absent above 4500 feet (1350 m). Essentially non-migratory; there are local movements, with many individuals leaving woodlands and flocking loosely in open habitats.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Widespread in wooded or shrubby habitats; favor open woods, margins, and thickets, being most common in wooded residential areas where shrubs abound. Generally not common in deep forests, but present in nearly all forest types except for high mountain ones.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Few specific requirements; generally in woodland understory, saplings, or shrubs.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber sand pine-southern scrub oak. Average density above 20 in 11 habitats: sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine, sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress, sapling-poletimber and sawtimber live oak maritime, sapling-poletimber and sawtimber (max. 41 pairs/40 ha on 2 plots) elm-ash-cottonwood, sawtimber loblolly pine-shortleaf pine, sapling-poletimber and sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, sawtimber oak-hickory, sawtimber cove hardwoods.

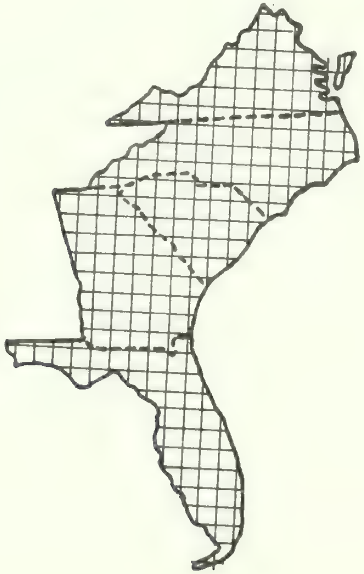
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber sand pine-southern scrub oak. Average density above 15 birds/40 ha in six habitats: sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine, max. 54(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress and 54(2) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime, sawtimber live oak maritime, grass-forb oak-hickory, shrub-seedling oak-hickory.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding occurs from late March to early August, with peak occurring throughout May. Nest in a variety of situations, usually below 10 feet (3 m). Clutch size 3-4, rarely 5.

FOOD HABITS: Forage most often on the ground, commonly also in shrubs and understory, occasionally higher. Cardinals glean insects, seeds, and berries; winter diet primarily vegetable matter.

GUILD: bush nesting, terrestrial or bush foliage gleaning omnivore-granivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:356; DeGraaf et al. 1980:482; Lowery 1974:557; Mengel 1965:461; Forbush and May 1939:483; Imhof 1976:386; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:509;
Sprunt 1954:450; Burleigh 1958:607-609; Stewart and Robbins 1958:333; Oberholser 1974(II):853; Bent and Austin 1968a:1-22.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C in the mountains above 3500 feet (1050 m); less numerous down to 2500 feet (750 m). Winter south of the United States. Spring arrival -- late April to early May; fall departure -- early October to mid-October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Almost strictly in hardwood forests; medium-growth and mature hardwoods are favored; also occur in open hardwoods in residential areas; rather uncommon in hardwoods mixed with spruce, fir, or hemlock.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Mature hardwood forests in the mountains.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 2.7(3) sawtimber white pine-hemlock, 43(1) sawtimber cove hardwoods.

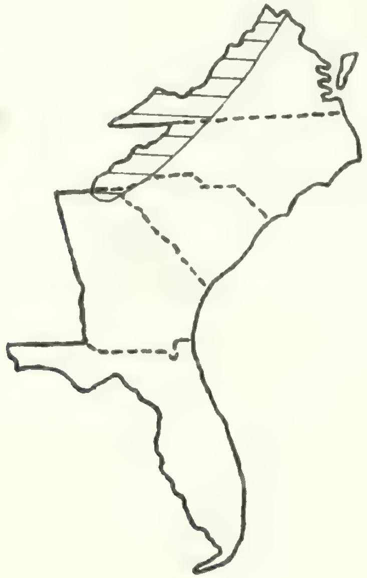
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from mid-May to late June, with peak in late May to early June. Nests built at 5-25 feet (1.6-8 m) in shrubs, saplings, or lower portions of trees; often in rhododendron. Clutch size 3-5, most commonly 4.

FOOD HABITS: Forage primarily above 20 feet (6 m) in tree canopies, where they glean insects, seeds, and berries from twigs and leaves.

GUILD: bush or tree nesting, tree foliage gleaning omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:358; DeGraaf et al. 1980:484; Lowery 1974:558; Mengel 1965:463; Forbush and May 1939:484; Imhof 1976:388; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:511; Sprunt 1954:451; Burleigh 1958:609; Stewart and Robbins 1958:334; Oberholser 1974(II):856; Bent and Austin 1968a:36.



Coastal Plain, but U to FC in northern Virginia; U in the lower mountains, and seldom over 2500 feet (750 m). Winter to the south of the United States. Spring arrival -- early April to late April; fall departure -- late September to mid-October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Favor abandoned fields with plenty of saplings, wood margins, dry thickets, and other brushy places; not as numerous in damp thickets as in uplands.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Deciduous saplings or shrubs.

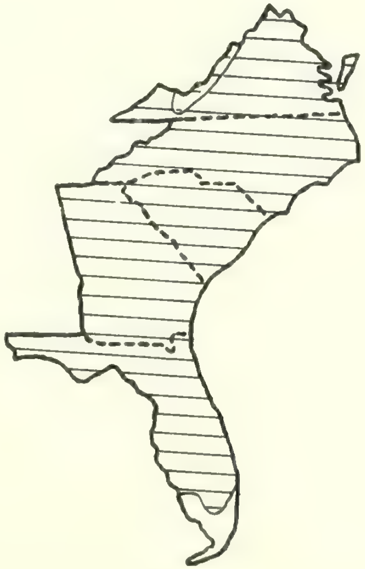
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.3(5) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood, 4(1) grass-forb loblolly pine-shortleaf pine, 4(4) shrub-seedling mixed pine-hardwood, 5.4(5) sawtimber oak-hickory, 10(7) sapling-poletimber elm-ash-cottonwood (small plot).

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from late May to early August, with peak in late May to mid-June. Build nests usually 3-12 feet (1-4 m) from the ground, in shrubs, saplings, or other vegetation in thickets. Clutch size 3-5, most often 4.

FOOD HABITS: Glean insects, as well as weed and grain seeds, on or near the ground.

GUILD: bush nesting, herb or bush gleaning omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:360; Verner and Boss 1980:269; Lowery 1974:560; Mengel 1965:465; Forbush and May 1939:486; Imhof 1976:390; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:512; Sprunt 1954:452; Burleigh 1958:613; Stewart and Robbins 1958:335; Oberholser 1974(II):860; Bent and Austin 1968a:67-89.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C to VC in the mountains and Piedmont; C in the Inner Coastal Plain, but less numerous toward the coast; occur infrequently above 5000 feet (1500 m). Wintering -- U to FC, in the southern half of Florida. Spring arrival -- mid-April to early May; fall departure -- early October to late October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- prefer wood margins, openings and clearings in woods, overgrown fields, and groves; not as common in shrubby thickets and hedgerows, because males favor a few trees within their territories; deciduous vegetation highly favored over conifers. Wintering -- woodland edges, open woods, bushy edges, overgrown fields, and thickets.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- deciduous saplings or trees in an open or partly open situation, particularly along woodland edges. Wintering -- trees or shrubs in many situations, often in brushy places and thick cover.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.7(3) sawtimber loblolly pine-shortleaf pine, 0.7(9) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood, 21(2) shrub-seedling oak-hickory, 23(18) sapling-poletimber elm-ash-cottonwood, 32(2) sapling-poletimber mixed pine-hardwood.

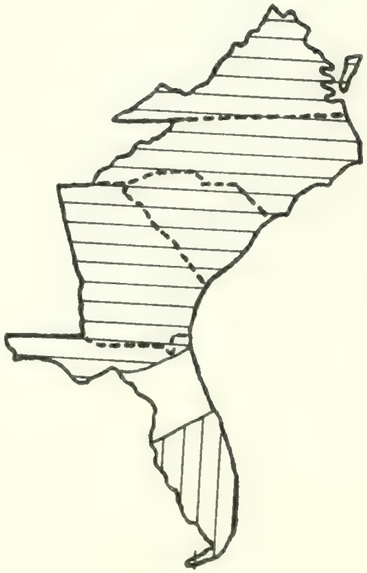
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) grass-forb oak-hickory, 10(4) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from mid-May to mid-August, peaking from late May to mid-June. Nests placed in variety of sites in vegetation, usually 3-12 feet (1-4 m) above the ground. Clutch size 2-5, usually 3-4.

FOOD HABITS: Glean insects, as well as seeds, grains, berries. Forage on the ground or in vegetation, generally below 15 feet (5 m).

GUILD: bush nesting, herb or bush gleaning omnivore-granivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:361; DeGraaf et al. 1980:486; Lowery 1974:561; Mengel 1965:466; Forbush and May 1939:486; Imhof 1976:390; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:513; Sprunt 1954:453; Burleigh 1958:615; Stewart and Robbins 1958:337; Oberholser 1974(II):863; Bent and Austin 1968a:80.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- generally C along the immediate coast; locally FC inland along a few of the larger rivers, such as the Savannah; mainly R to U at most inland sites within the range. Wintering -- U to locally FC, in southern Florida.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- dense thickets, wood margins, hedgerows, and other dense shrubby areas; often common in residential areas with dense shrubbery; frequent dense stands of second-growth woods, but usually along the edges or openings. Wintering -- dense shrubbery or second-growth woods, primarily in broadleaf evergreens; always in thick cover.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: All seasons -- dense thickets of shrubs, saplings, or second-growth trees, primarily near the coast.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine and sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 5.2(4) sapling-poletimber mixed pine-hardwood, 9(2) sawtimber live oak maritime.

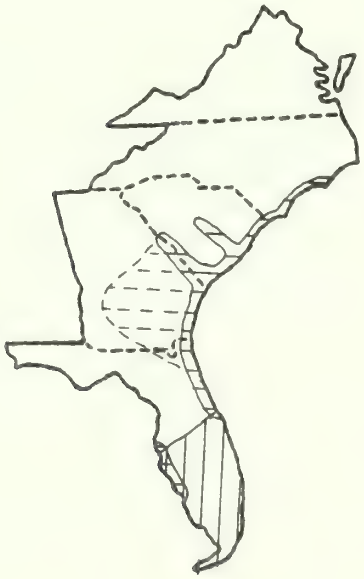
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber live oak maritime, 23(4) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding occurs in early May to late July, with peak from mid-May to early June. Nests built always in thick cove , generally 3-6 feet (1-2 m) from the ground. Clutch size 3-4, rarely 5.

FOOD HABITS: Forage usually below 10 feet (3 m) in shrubs, saplings, and herbaceous vegetation. Glean insects and seeds in summer, insects and a variety of plant food in winter.

GUILD: bush nesting, herb or bush gleaning omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:362; Lowery 1974:562; Forbush and May 1939:487; Imhof 1976:392; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:514; Sprunt 1954:455; Burleigh 1958:617; Oberholser 1974(II):868; Bent and Austin 1968a:137-155.



LEGAL STATUS OF SPECIES: State listed as Rare in West Virginia. Blue Listed by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- R and very sporadic everywhere within the range in this region; primarily in the Piedmont, and in valleys of the Virginia mountains; most numerous in northern Virginia, but erratic even there. One to several pairs may occur, or perhaps breed, in a given field one summer, only to disappear completely the next summer. In the 19th Century, Dickcissels were C in much of this area. Wintering -- VR to R, and erratic, at scattered locations in the Piedmont and Coastal Plain, but generally near the coast; mainly near feeders. The bulk of the population breeds to the west of the region and winters south of the United States. Spring arrival -- late April to late May, sometimes not arriving until July; fall departure -- probably late August to mid-September.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- always in open "grassy" areas; usually in weedy fields or grain fields; also in meadows. Wintering -- seldom in grassy areas, but occur with other native sparrows or with House Sparrows in hedgerows, weedy tangles, wood margins, and thickets; often at feeders in open residential areas where thickets or weedy cover is nearby.

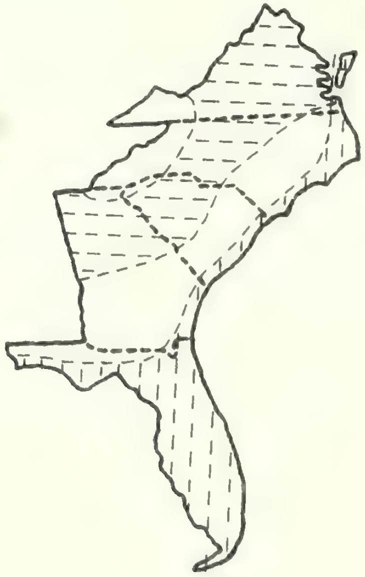
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- herbaceous cover where vegetation is at least 2 feet (.6 m) high. Wintering -- few specific requirements, but mainly in shrubs, saplings, or tall forbs (such as composites).

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from mid-May to early August, peaking probably in early to mid-June. Nest on the ground in dense grasses in a field. Clutch size 3-5, most often 4.

FOOD HABITS: Glean insects and seeds (summer) from the ground and herbaceous vegetation; mainly seeds in winter.

GUILD: ground nesting, herb gleaning omnivore-granivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:363; DeGraaf et al. 1980:488; Lowery 1974:562; Mengel 1965:467; Forbush and May 1939:488; Imhof 1976:392; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:516; Sprunt 1954:458; Burleigh 1958:618; Stewart and Robbins 1958:338; Oberholser 1974(II):870; Bent and Austin 1968a:158.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Wintering -- highly variable from winter to winters. In "off-years" generally U to absent everywhere; in good years, C to occasionally VC in the mountains and Piedmont; FC to at times C in the Coastal Plain; usually more numerous in the northern portion of the region than in the southern and coastal areas. Breed to the north of the region. Fall arrival -- late October to late November; spring departure -- late April to mid-May.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Generally in coniferous woods; mainly in pines, but also in spruce-fir; regularly seen in hardwoods feeding in the treetops. Commonly occur in residential areas, especially at feeders that provide sunflower seeds.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Woodlands of various types, where seeds or dry fruits are present; prefer conifers.

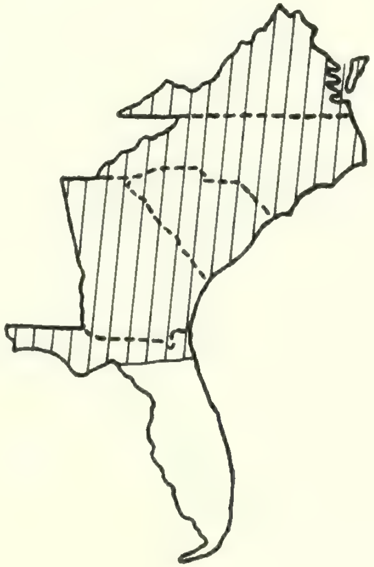
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood, 1(1) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 11(8) grass-forb elm-ash-cottonwood.

REPRODUCTION: Breed to the north of this region. A few summer records suggest that this status may change in the future.

FOOD HABITS: Glean tree seeds and buds generally in tree canopies, often at treetops; occasionally forage on the ground. Great strength of their mandibles enables them to eat even hard foods such as cherry, plum, occasionally peach seeds. Sunflower seeds are a favorite food at feeders.

GUILD: tree foliage gleaning granivore or folivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:364; Verner and Boss 1980:271; DeGraaf et al. 1980:490; Lowery 1974:563; Mengel 1965:470; Forbush and May 1939:489; Imhof 1976:394; Burleigh 1958:621; Stewart and Robbins 1958:340; Oberholser 1974(II):871; Bent and Austin 1968a:206-256.



Virginia, essentially only in Highland County and at Mt. Rogers. Wintering -- somewhat variable in numbers from winter to winter, but present every year; C to VC over most of the region in some winters, only FC in others (usually in alternating years). On the whole, less numerous in the Coastal Plain than elsewhere, and seldom C in southern Georgia and Florida. Fall arrival -- early October to early November; spring departure -- late March to late April.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- spruce-fir forests, or bogs where spruce or fir is present. Wintering -- favor hardwood forests, especially in trees with winter fruits or buds present; often in pine or mixed woods, and commonly occur in wooded residential areas. Infrequent in thickets and other brushy places.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- spruce or fir trees. Wintering -- woodlands of many types, both in hardwoods and conifers, generally where seeds, buds, or dry fruits are present.

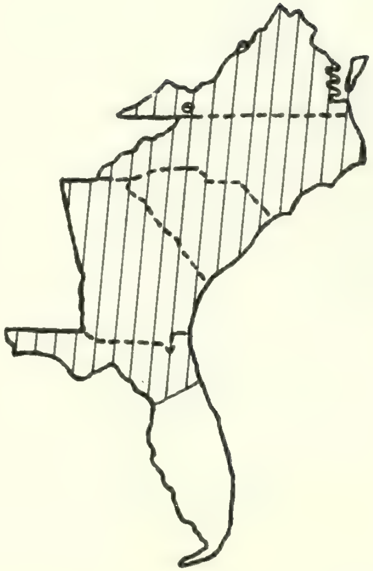
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.6(2) grass-forb oak-hickory, 12(19) grass-forb elm-ash-cottonwood, 15(3) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season apparently extends from mid-May to early July, with probable peak from late May to mid-June. Nests placed mainly in spruces, at heights of 15-25 feet (5-8 m). Clutch size 3-6, commonly 4-5.

FOOD HABITS: Forage mainly in tree canopies, occasionally on the ground, where they glean insects, fruits, and berries in summer. Winter diet primarily seeds and buds.

GUILD: tree nesting, tree foliage gleaning omnivore (summer) and granivore or folivore (winter).

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:365; Verner and Boss 1980:272; DeGraaf et al. 1980:492; Lowery 1974:564; Mengel 1965:471; Forbush and May 1939:491; Imhof 1976:396; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:517; Sprunt 1954:459; Burleigh 1958:622-624; Stewart and Robbins 1958:341; Oberholser 1974(II):874; Bent and Austin 1968a:263-279.



only in cities and towns; U to locally C in northern Virginia; in southern Virginia and North Carolina, mainly in the Piedmont, and R to U in most cities; only since 1978 has nesting been reported from the northern Piedmont of Georgia and South Carolina. Wintering -- both in urban and rural habitats at this season; FC to C over much of the northern half of Virginia; elsewhere in Virginia and the Piedmont of North Carolina U to locally C; generally U (at best) in the remainder of the range. Thess western birds were introduced in the New York City area several decades ago and have spread tremendously in the last decade. Fall arrival -- mid-October to early November; spring departure -- mid-March to early April.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- essentially limited to urban and suburban areas; thickets, residential shrubbery, and dense trees (often introduced conifers), usually near homes. Wintering -- most common in suburban areas, but moderately widespread in open, rural country; shrubbery, weedy tangles, hedgerows, and brushy thickets. Frequently associate with House Sparrows or native sparrows, but only infrequently with Purple Finches.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- thick shrubs or trees in open residential areas. Wintering -- thickets and brushy places in open country, both suburban and rural.

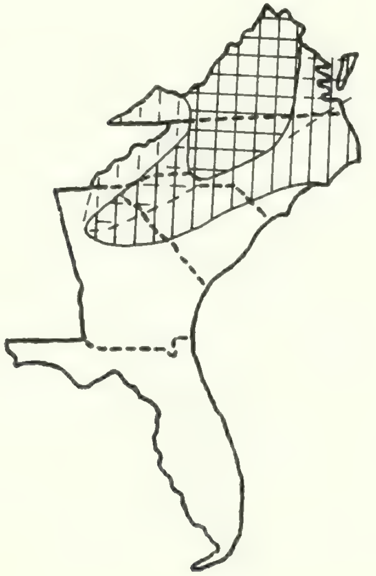
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood, 1(1) sawtimber oak-hickory.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season poorly known in the region, apparently extending from mid-April to early June. Nest at variable height in shrubs or trees, often in cedars or broadleaf evergreens. Clutch size 2-6, usually 4-5.

FOOD HABITS: Forage primarily in shrubs or small trees, also in herbaceous vegetation. Glean insects, seeds, berries in summer; in winter eat primarily seeds and berries.

GUILD: bush or tree nesting, bush or herb gleaning omnivore (summer) and granivore or frugivore (winter).

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:367; Verner and Boss 1980:274; DeGraaf et al. 1980:494; Imhof 1976:397; Oberholser 1974(II):877; Bent and Austin 1968a:290-321.



North Carolina and southwestern Virginia, but actual breeding is probably VR; most birds appear to be non-breeders; juveniles have been reported, but no nest has yet been found; mainly over 5000 feet (1500 m). Wintering -- very erratic, with major influxes into the region tending to occur in alternate years; C to VC over most of the Southeast in some winters, but U to absent in others; always less numerous in the southern portion of the region than elsewhere. Fall arrival -- mid-October to early November; spring departure -- late April to mid-May.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- spruce-fir forests, especially where open, or along edges of this forest type. Wintering -- in a wide variety of forests and thickets; found in hardwood forests (usually where moist), conifers, thickets (especially in Alnus), residential areas, and even in weedy fields.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- spruce-fir forests. Wintering -- variety of woods or thickets; few essential requirements.

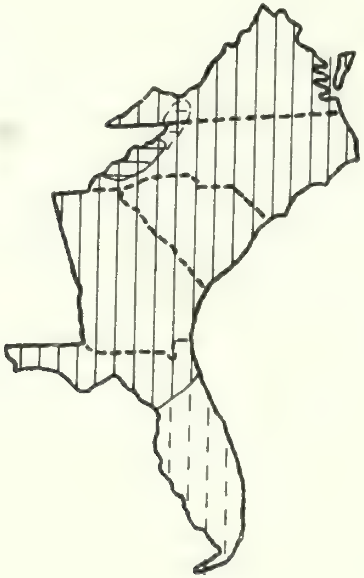
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-scrub oak, 1(1) grass-forb oak-hickory, 4.5(2) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 10(1) shrub-seedling oak-hickory.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season possibly early April to late May, based on data from outside the region. Nests are almost always built in conifers, usually at heights of 10-20 feet (3-6 m). Clutch size 3-5

FOOD HABITS: Glean food from branches, cones, foliage, at various heights in shrubs and trees. Winter diet is primarily seeds and other plant material, to which insects are added in summer.

GUILD: tree nesting, tree or bush foliage gleaning omnivore-granivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:370; Verner and Boss 1980:277; DeGraaf et al. 1980:500; Lowery 1974:565; Mengel 1965:472; Forbush and May 1939:497; Imhof 1976:398; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:518; Sprunt 1954:460; Burleigh 1958:624-628; Stewart and Robbins 1958:344; Oberholser 1974(II):883; Bent and Austin 1968a:424.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C over most of the mountains; FC in over most of the Southeast; less numerous in the higher mountains.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- generally in moist shrubby places; overgrown fields, shrubs along margins of ponds and streams, marsh edges, and hedgerows. Wintering -- very widespread; in weedy fields, thickets, hedgerows, and deciduous woods; generally scarce in pinewoods.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- shrubs or saplings, generally near water. Wintering -- no essential requirements, but usually in weedy places, thickets, and open woods.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.3(5) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood, 7.5(4) grass-forb oak-hickory, 10(2) grass-forb mixed pine-hardwood.

SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber bay swamp-pocosin, 0.5(1) shrub-seedling Virginia pine-pitch pine, 15(3) sapling-poletimber pine savanna, 33(1) shrub-seedling live oak maritime.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from mid-June to mid-September, peaking from late July to mid-August. This timing is apparently based upon the availability of thistle down, with which they line their nests. Nests are usually placed 3-15 feet (1-5 m) up in shrubs or saplings in thickets or old fields. Clutch size 4-6, most often 5.

FOOD HABITS: Glean primarily insects in summer and various seeds in winter, at all heights.

GUILD: bush nesting, gleaning insectivore-granivore at variable heights.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:371; Verner and Boss 1980:278; DeGraaf et al. 1980:502; Lowery 1974:565; Mengel 1965:473; Forbush and May 1939:498; Imhof 1976:399; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:519; Sprunt 1954:461; Burleigh 1958:628; Stewart and Robbins 1958:345; Oberholser 1974(II):884; Bent and Austin 1968a:447-469.

North Carolina and southwestern Virginia, but erratic from summer to summer; most individuals apparently do not breed, but there are several positive nesting records; VR away from the higher mountains. Wintering -- highly erratic; major invasions into the region occur only several times a decade, and usually do not follow the alternating year pattern of those of the Evening Grosbeaks and Pine Siskins. Often absent everywhere in certain winters; at best, U to locally FC in Virginia and in the Piedmont and mountains of North Carolina; R to U elsewhere in invasion years. Fall arrival -- late October to late November; spring departure -- late April to late May.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- mainly in spruce-fir forests; occasionally in pine forests (principally in white pine). Wintering -- coniferous woods; spruce-fir, hemlock, or pine; occasionally in hardwood trees.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- spruce-fir forests; Wintering -- coniferous woods.

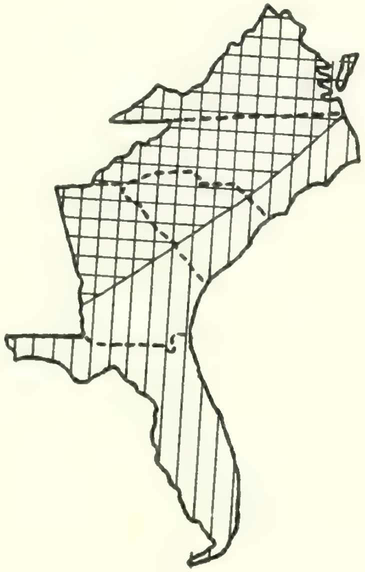
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in sapling-poletimber oak-hickory and sawtimber spruce-fir.

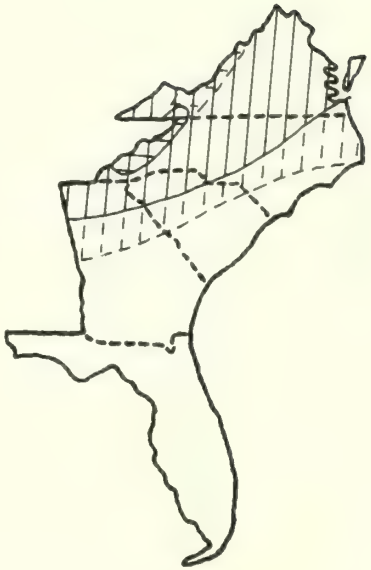
REPRODUCTION: Red Crossbills are erratic breeders in the region, few of whose nests have been found in North Carolina and Virginia. Breeding season probably extends from early March to July. Nests are generally placed in conifers, 10-40 feet (3-12 m) up. Clutch size is 3-5.

FOOD HABITS: Forage mainly in the treetops of conifers, especially around cones, where they glean insects and use their unique crossed bills to pry out conifer seeds. Winter diet seeds, especially of conifers; in summer insects are also eaten.

GUILD: tree nesting, tree foliage gleaning or probing omnivore-granivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:372; Verner and Boss 1980:281; DeGraaf et al. 1980:504; Lowery 1974:567; Mengel 1965:474; Forbush and May 1939:500; Imhof 1976:401; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:520; Sprunt 1954:462; Burleigh 1958:631-635; Stewart and Robbins 1958:346; Oberholser 1974(II):889; Bent and Austin 1968a:497-526.





region in at least half of the winters; in other winters, R to locally U in extreme northern Virginia and the mountains of that state; reach North Carolina only once per decade, on the average. Breed to the north of the region. Fall arrival -- mid-November to early December; spring departure -- late March to early May.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Favor spruce-fir forests, but also in pinewoods and other conifers; infrequent in hardwood trees.

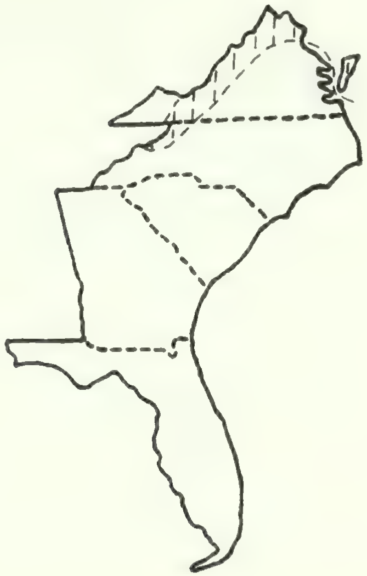
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Coniferous woods.

REPRODUCTION: Breed to the north of this region.

FOOD HABITS: Forage primarily in the canopies of conifers where they pry conifer seeds from cones; also glean other seeds.

GUILD: tree foliage gleaning or probing granivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:374; DeGraaf et al. 1980:506; Mengel 1965:476; Forbush and May 1939:501; Stewart and Robbins 1958:347; Bent and Austin 1968a:527.



the higher mountains. Wintering -- C to VC nearly throughout, but mostly U in northern and western Virginia, and FC in the North Carolina mountains; not common in extreme southern Florida. There is some migration of birds into the region in winter, but it is hardly noticeable at most localities.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- very widespread; mainly in brushy places; woodland margins, overgrown fields, thickets, woodland understory, cutover woods, and shrubbery in residential areas.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Shrubs, saplings, or understory trees in a wide variety of situations, usually where a thicket is present.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 2(2) sawtimber live oak maritime, 2(2) grass-forb mixed pine-hardwood, 45(1) sapling-poletimber sand pine-southern scrub oak, 48(2) shrub-seedling southern scrub oak, 50(1) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-scrub oak, 65(2) shrub-seedling oak-hickory.

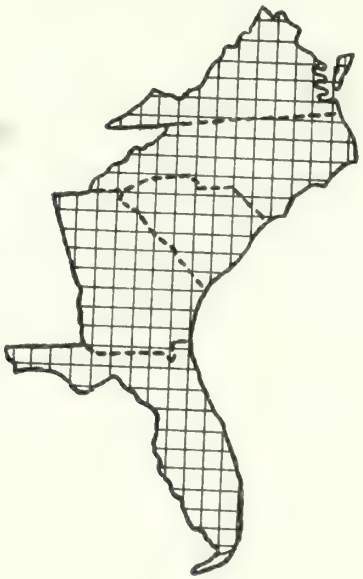
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress, 0.8(11) grass-forb elm-ash-cottonwood, 75(2) shrub-seedling southern scrub oak, 75(1) sapling-poletimber sand pine-southern scrub oak, 85(1) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-scrub oak.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from mid-April to mid-August, with peak from early May to early June. Nest in thickets or brushy places, on the ground or in shrubs or saplings to 5 feet (1.5 m) high. Clutch size 2-6, usually 3-5.

FOOD HABITS: Forage on the ground in leaf litter, or in shrubs. Scratch in leaf litter to expose insects, seeds, and fruits which they glean. Winter diet more vegetarian than summer diet.

GUILD: ground or bush nesting, terrestrial or bush gleaning omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:374; Verner and Boss 1980:283; DeGraaf et al. 1980:508; Lowery 1974:569; Mengel 1965:476; Forbush and May 1939:502; Imhof 1976:403; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:522-524; Sprunt 1954:463-466; Burleigh 1958:635-641; Stewart and Robbins 1958:348; Oberholser 1974(II):894; Bent and Austin 1968a:562-602.



Ipswich Sparrow (P. s. princeps) listed as Endangered in South Carolina

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- R and local in mountain valleys in Virginia, and in the extreme northern Piedmont of that state. Wintering -- C to A in most of the Coastal Plain; C in the Piedmont north to southern Virginia; U in mountain valleys, but VR to R in northwestern Virginia. Fall arrival -- mid-September to early October; spring departure -- late April to mid-May.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- grassy fields or meadows, preferably where the vegetation is 1-2 feet (<.6 m) high; in moist or dry ground. Wintering -- prefer grassy areas, but in shorter grass than in summer; pastures, short-grass fields, airports, dunes, and weedy fields.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- grasslands with vegetation generally 1-2 feet (<.6 m) high. Wintering -- grasses or forbs, usually where less than 6 inches (.2 m) in height.

SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1.2(6) grass-forb elm-ash-cottonwood, 22(2) grass-forb loblolly pine-shortleaf pine, 47(1) shrub-seedling live oak maritime.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season apparently extends from early May to late July, with probable peak from late May to mid-June. Nests are placed on the ground in tall grasses. Clutch size 3-6, usually 4-5.

FOOD HABITS: Forage on the ground in grasses usually less than 3 feet (1 m) tall, where they glean insects and seeds. Primary diet is seeds, to which insects are added in summer.

GUILD: ground nesting, herb or terrestrial gleaning omnivore-granivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:376; Verner and Boss 1980:285; DeGraaf et al. 1980:510; Lowery 1974:572; Mengel 1965:478; Forbush and May 1939:505, 507; Imhof 1976:404; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:525-527; Sprunt 1954:466-468; Burleigh 1958:643-647; Stewart and Robbins 1958:349-352; Oberholser 1974(II):901-903; Bent and Austin 1968b:657-724.

(1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- FC in the Piedmont, and in the mountain valleys of Virginia; generally U in the Coastal Plain, and at low elevations in the North Carolina mountains. Wintering -- very secretive at this season, and easily overlooked; probably FC in southern Florida, U in the remainder of the Coastal Plain, and R in the Piedmont. Spring arrival -- early April to mid-April; fall departure -- early October to late October.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- favor grassy fields; less numerous in weedy fields, pastures, and grain fields. Wintering -- broomsedge (*Andropogon* spp.) fields are preferred; also in other grasses, weedy fields, and in herbs under open pinewoods.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- fields of several types, preferably where vegetation is approximately 1 foot (.3 m) high. Wintering -- a wide variety of fields or grassy habitats.

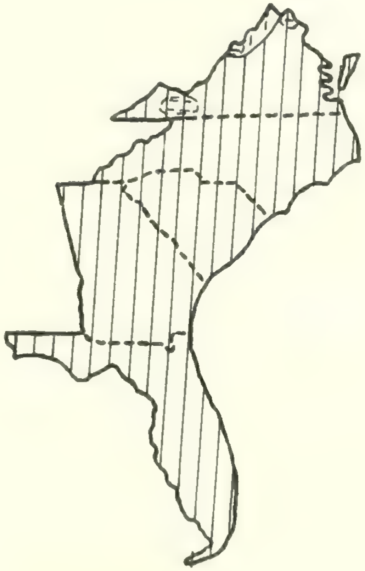
SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 2(2) grass-forb mixed pine-hardwood, 16(4) shrub-seedling mixed pine-hardwood.

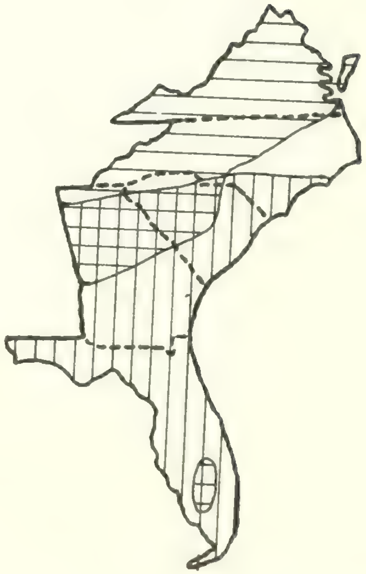
REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from early April (in Florida) to mid-August. Peak occurs late April to early May in Florida, late May to early June elsewhere. Nests are placed on the ground in tall grasses. Clutch size 3-6, commonly 4-5.

FOOD HABITS: Forage on the ground in grasses usually about 1 foot (.3 m) tall, where they glean insects. Winter diet also includes seeds. Grasshopper Sparrows are more insectivorous than most other sparrows.

GUILD: ground nesting, herb gleaning insectivore-omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:377; Verner and Boss 1980:286; DeGraaf et al. 1980:512; Lowery 1974:572; Mengel 1965:481; Forbush and May 1939:508; Imhof 1976:405; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:527; Sprunt 1954:468; Burleigh 1958:647-650; Stewart and Robbins 1958:352; Oberholser 1974(II):903; Bent and Austin 1968b:725; Kale 1978:15.





by Tate (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- R and local, in addition to being erratic from year to year; at the present, only in Virginia; mainly in mountain valleys and the extreme northern Piedmont of that state; formerly more numerous, occurring in summer in scattered areas over most of Virginia, central and western North Carolina, and once in South Carolina. Wintering -- very secretive at this season, and thus difficult to determine population size; generally U throughout the range. Fall arrival -- late October to early November; spring departure -- late March to early April.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- in wet meadows; less numerous in marsh borders or dry fields. Wintering -- favor moist grassy spots under open pinewoods; also in broomsedge or other grasses, usually where moist.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- moist grassy areas, generally where extensive in area. Wintering -- grassy areas, both under open pinewoods and away from trees.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) grass-forb elm-ash-cottonwood.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from mid-May to early July, probably peaking from late May to mid-June. Nests are built on the ground among grasses or forbs, generally in damp places. Clutch size 3-5, usually 4.

FOOD HABITS: Glean insects (summer) and seeds (winter) from the ground in grasses usually 2 feet (.6 m) or more tall.

GUILD: ground nesting, herb gleaning insectivore-granivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:378; DeGraaf et al. 1980:514; Lowery 1974:573; Mengel 1965:484; Forbush and May 1939:510; Imhof 1976:407; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:529, 530; Sprunt 1954:470; Burleigh 1958:651-653; Stewart and Robbins 1958:353; Oberholser 1974(II):907; Bent and Austin 1968b:776-788.

more numerous than records indicate; R to U in the Coastal Plain portion of the range; R in the Piedmont of Georgia. Breed to the northwest of the region. Fall arrival -- late October to mid-November; spring departure -- early April to late April.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Favor medium height to tall grasses, often where matted; occur in broomsedge fields, old rice fields, open pinewoods, and dry edges of marshes.

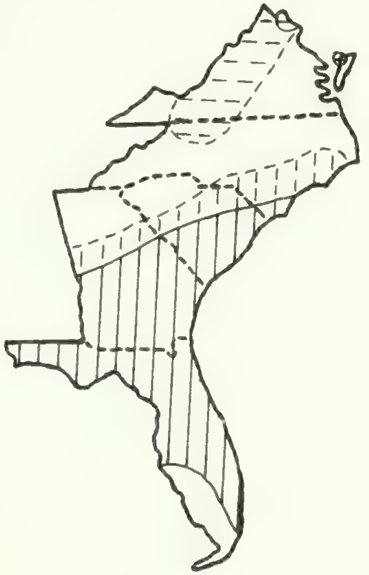
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Herbaceous cover, preferably where vegetation is at least 2 feet (.6 m) high.

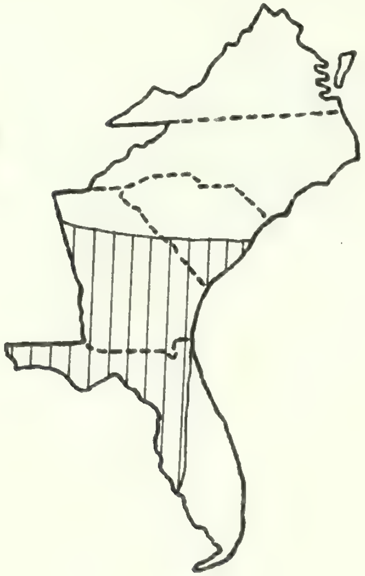
REPRODUCTION: Breed to the northwest of this region.

FOOD HABITS: Glean seeds and occasionally insects from the ground in dense grass.

GUILD: herb gleaning granivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:379; Lowery 1974:574; Mengel 1965:485; Forbush and May 1939:510; Imhof 1976:407; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:529; Sprunt 1954:470; Burleigh 1958:650; Oberholser 1974(II):906; Bent and Austin 1968b:765.





Virginia; possibly a R breeder elsewhere on the Virginia coast. Fall arrival -- early September to late September; spring departure -- early May to late May.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- brackish or salt marshes; a slight preference for brackish marshes for breeding and salt marshes for wintering.

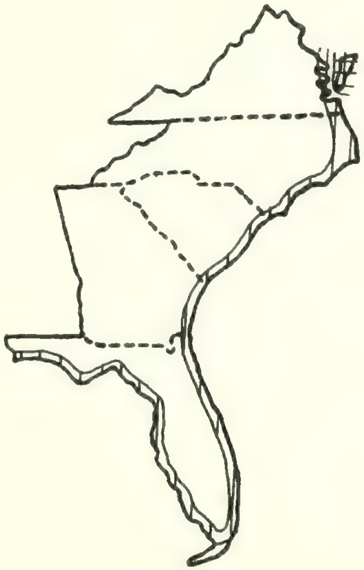
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Brackish or salt marshes.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding occurs in May, with peak in late May (Virginia). Nests are placed near the ground above the high tide line in salt marsh grasses. Clutch size is 3-6, usually 4.

FOOD HABITS: Forage on the ground, such as on the mud of a salt marsh, where they glean a variety of small animal prey (all year) and seeds (winter).

GUILD: ground nesting, herb or terrestrial gleaning insectivore-omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:379; DeGraaf et al. 1980:516; Lowery 1974:575; Forbush and May 1939:511, 513; Imhof 1976:408; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:531-533; Sprunt 1954:471-473; Burleigh 1958:653-656; Stewart and Robbins 1958:353; Oberholser 1974(II):908; Bent and Austin 1968b:789-818.



peninsulae and *A. m. junicola* state listed as Special Concern in Florida.

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: C in most areas, though R in central and southern Florida. There is some migration of birds from Virginia and farther north to areas along the coast from North Carolina southward.

PRIMARY HABITATS: All seasons -- occur strictly in brackish or salt marshes; generally more common in summer in brackish marshes, and in winter more numerous in salt marshes.

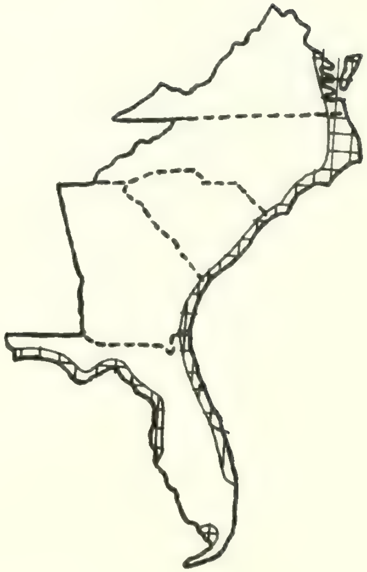
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: All seasons -- salt or brackish marshes.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from mid-April to late June, peaking in late April to late May. Nests are placed on or near the ground above the high water line in dense grasses of marshes. Clutch size 3-5.

FOOD HABITS: Forage on the ground, such as on the mud of marshes, or on grasses. Glean primarily invertebrates and insects in summer; many seeds are also taken in winter.

GUILD: ground nesting, herb or terrestrial gleaning insectivore-omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:380; DeGraaf et al. 1980:518; Lowery 1974:576; Forbush and May 1939:513-516; Imhof 1976:409; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:533; Sprunt 1954:473-481; Burleigh 1958:656-662; Stewart and Robbins 1958:355; Oberholser 1974(II):910; Bent and Austin 1968b:819-868; Sykes 1980; Kale 1978:16, 19, 47, 106, 107, 115.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- somewhat local, but generally FC in the higher mountains, but U in the lower mountains; mainly over 3000 feet (900 m); R in the Piedmont and Coastal Plain of Virginia. Wintering -- FC to C in southern Georgia and northern Florida; less numerous elsewhere, and mostly U in Virginia, the Piedmont portion of the range, and in southern Florida. Fall arrival -- early October to early November; spring departure -- early April to late April.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- pastures, meadows, and grassy fields are preferred, generally where hilly and rocky; ideal habitat has a few rocks, shrubs, or fence posts for singing perches. Wintering -- most numerous in sandy grasslands; sandy fields, pastures, airports, plowed fields; usually where herbaceous cover is less than 1 foot (3 dm) high.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- fields where grass is short to medium in height, usually in hilly areas, with scattered singing perches. Wintering -- short grass or bare ground, preferably in sandy soil.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in grass-forb loblolly pine-shortleaf pine and grass-forb mixed pine-hardwood, 1(2) sapling-poletimber oak-hickory.

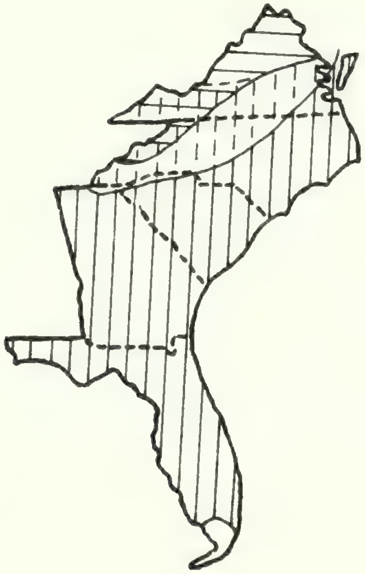
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) grass-forb elm-ash-cottonwood, 23(2) grass-forb loblolly pine-shortleaf pine.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from late April to early August, with peak in mid- to late May. Nests are placed on the ground in fields or pastures, often in or near clumps or tussocks of grass. Clutch size 3-5.

FOOD HABITS: Forage by gleaning almost strictly on the ground. Summer diet mostly insects, with many seeds; winter diet is primarily grass and other seeds.

GUILD: ground nesting, herb or terrestrial gleaning insectivore-granivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:380; Verner and Boss 1980:287; DeGraaf et al. 1980:520; Lowery 1974:577; Mengel 1965:487; Forbush and May 1939:516; Imhof 1976:409; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:535; Sprunt 1954:481; Burleigh 1958:662-664; Stewart and Robbins 1958:356; Oberholser 1974(II):912; Bent and Austin 1968b:868-885.



by late (1981).

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- FC, but local, in the Outer Coastal Plain; U in the Inner Coastal Plain; R in the Piedmont. Wintering -- very secretive; actual abundance poorly known at this season; apparently FC in the Outer Coastal Plain; U in the Inner Coastal Plain. The species has declined in numbers in recent decades, and is no longer known to nest in Virginia.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- in the Coastal Plain, usually in open pinewoods, especially where there is a thick cover of grasses or saw palmetto (Serenoa repens). In the Piedmont, mainly in overgrown fields with scattered saplings, occasionally in open woods with thick grass cover. Wintering -- mostly in thick grasses under open pinewoods; also in grassy fields, such as broomsedge fields.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- dense grassy places where scattered trees or saplings are present, usually in pines. Wintering -- similar to breeding habitats; always in thick grassy cover.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 2(2) sawtimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 10(2) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-slash pine.

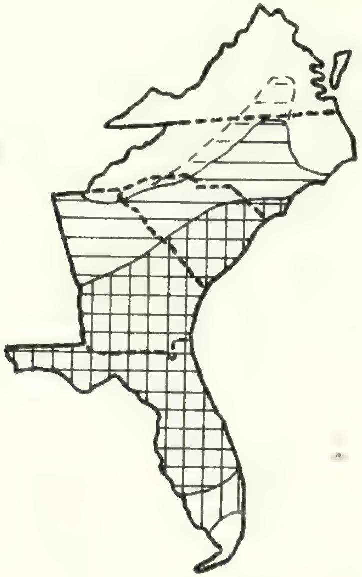
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) shrub-seedling southern scrub oak.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from late April to mid-July, with peak during May. Build domed nests with side extrances on the ground in dense cover, such as under brush, saw palmettos, or saplings. Clutch size 3-5.

FOOD HABITS: Forage strictly on the ground, in dense grass, palmettos, or shrubs. Glean insects and seeds in summer; winter diet probably seeds.

GUILD: ground nesting, herb gleaning insectivore-granivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:382; Lowery 1974:578; Mengel 1965:490; Forbush and May 1939:519; Imhof 1976:411; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:537, 538; Sprunt 1954:484; Burleigh 1958:664-668; Stewart and Robbins 1958:358; Oberholser 1974(II):917; Bent and Austin 1968b:956-975.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C in most mountain and Piedmont areas; C to VC in the Coastal Plain of Virginia, decreasing to U in southern Georgia and northern Florida. Fall arrival -- late September to late October; spring departure -- late March to late April.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- widespread at high elevations; usually in woods with short grass or lawns nearby; spruce-fir forest; various mixed forests; hardwood forests, preferably where cool and moist; even in residential areas with trees, shrubs, and lawns. Wintering -- generally near pinewoods or mixed woods where short grass is nearby; commonly feed on lawns and grassy roadsides, with a wooded area nearby; also in open woods, wooded residential areas, and wood margins; infrequent in weedy fields and thickets.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- cool and moist habitats with trees and short grass or open ground, only in the mountains. Wintering -- short grass or bare ground near a woodland, usually associated with conifers.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 6(1) sawtimber oak-hickory, 47(1) sawtimber cove hardwoods, 71(2) sawtimber spruce-fir.

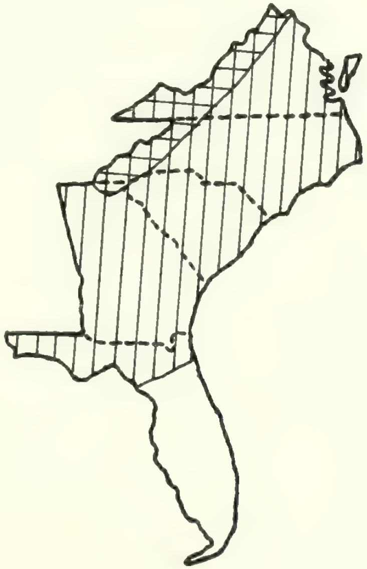
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sawtimber live oak maritime, 1(1) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood, 11(13) sawtimber oak-hickory, 15(1) grass-forb loblolly pine-shortleaf pine, 83(1) shrub-seedling Virginia pine-pitch pine.

REPRODUCTION: Usually rear two broods during breeding from mid-April to mid-August; peak for first brood in mid-May to early June; for second brood in July. Nests are generally placed on the ground in forests, especially along stream banks, uprooted trees, or trails. Occasionally nest in trees and shrubs, seldom above 5 feet (1.5 m). Clutch size 3-4.

FOOD HABITS: Forage primarily on the ground, often scratching in leaf litter. In summer glean insects and seeds; winter diet consists of seeds.

GUILD: ground nesting, terrestrial gleaning omnivore-granivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:382; Verner and Boss 1980:292; DeGraaf et al. 1980:522; Lowery 1974:578; Mengel 1965:493; Forbush and May 1939:520; Imhof 1976:412;
Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:539, 540;
Sprunt 1954:485; Burleigh 1958:669-673;
Stewart and Robbins 1958:359-361;
Oberholser 1974(II):925-930; Bent and Austin 1968b:1021-1098.



STATUS OF SPECIES: Wintering -- FC to occasionally C in the northern half of the Virginia mountains and Piedmont; generally U elsewhere in Virginia; R over the North Carolina portion of the range. Usually are more numerous in severe winters than mild ones. Breed to the north of the region. Fall arrival -- early November to late November; spring departure -- mid-March to late March.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Favor weedy fields, hedgerows, and other brushy areas, generally with Field Sparrows.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Weedy or brushy cover in open country.

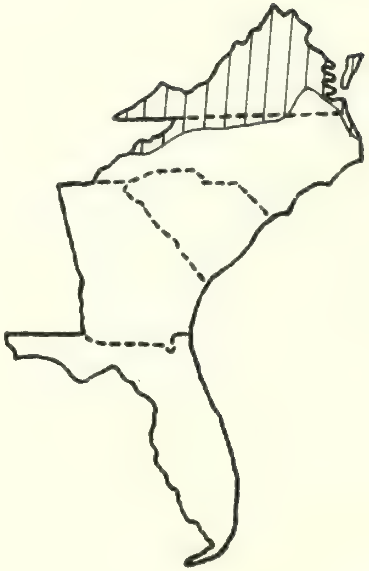
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sawtimber oak-hickory, 20(1) shrub-seedling Virginia pine-pitch pine, 45(1) grass-forb oak-hickory.

REPRODUCTION: Do not breed in this region.

FOOD HABITS: Glean seeds, particularly those of grasses and composites, from the ground, herbaceous vegetation, and occasionally from shrubs.

GUILD: herb gleaning granivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:384; DeGraaf et al. 1980:524; Lowery 1974:580; Mengel 1965:496; Forbush and May 1939:522; Imhof 1976:413; Stewart and Robbins 1958:361; Oberholser 1974(II):933; Bent and Austin 1968b:1137.



Breeding -- U in the mountains and Piedmont; FC over much of the Coastal Plain, but U near the coast. Wintering -- C from southern South Carolina to central Florida; decreasing to U in most of the Piedmont, as well as in southern Florida.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- favor scattered trees with short grass nearby; wooded residential areas, rural groves, farmyards, golf courses, and open woods are primary habitats. Wintering -- generally in short grass areas; favor weedy fields, plowed fields, golf courses, hedgerows, and lawns. Tend to occur in more open habitats in winter than in summer.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- scattered trees and short grass, mainly in pines. Wintering -- various short grass habitats.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sawtimber oak-gum-cypress, 1(1) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood, 1(1) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood, 1(2) sawtimber loblolly pine-shortleaf pine, 14(7) sawtimber oak-hickory, 26(2) grass-forb mixed pine-hardwood.

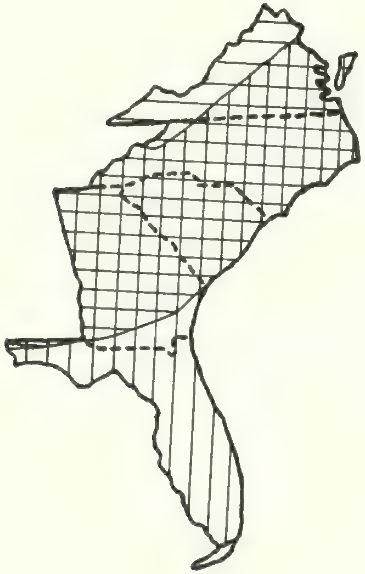
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sapling-poletimber pine savanna, 1(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress, 25(1) grass-forb loblolly pine-shortleaf pine.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from mid-April to mid-August, with peak in May. Nests are placed in shrubs, saplings, or trees, often pines, usually from 5-25 feet (1.5-8 m) up, and not far from lawns or other short grass areas. Clutch size is 2-5, usually 4.

FOOD HABITS: Forage on the ground, particularly in short grasses. Glean insects and some seeds in summer; seeds are primary winter diet.

GUILD: bush or tree nesting, terrestrial gleaning insectivore-granivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:385; Verner and Boss 1980:293; DeGraaf et al. 1980:526; Lowery 1974:582; Mengel 1965:497; Forbush and May 1939:523; Imhof 1976:414; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:541; Sprunt 1954:486; Burleigh 1958:673; Stewart and Robbins 1958:362; Oberholser 1974(II):934; Bent and Austin 1968b:1166-1186.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- C to VC over most of the region, but U in southern and coastal Georgia. Wintering -- C to A in most areas, but U to FC in the southern half of Florida.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- favor scattered saplings or shrubs in weedy habitats; overgrown fields, wood margins, hedgerows, and thickets. Wintering -- more numerous in open fields than in summer; prime habitats are weedy fields, broomsedge fields, hedgerows, wood margins, and thickets.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- scattered saplings, shrubs, and tall herbaceous cover. Wintering -- dense cover of herbs, particular tall composites.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1.1(13) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood, 19(6) shrub-seedling mixed pine-hardwood, 29(4) grass-forb oak-hickory, 51(7) sawtimber oak-hickory (peculiar plot, wooded pasture).

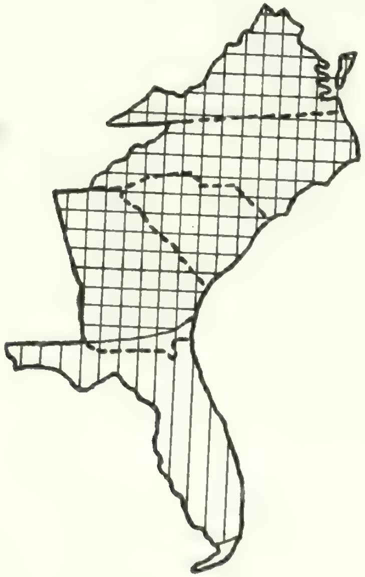
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 3.2(11) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood, 19(6) grass-forb oak-hickory.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from early April to mid-August, peaking in May. Nests are placed on the ground or in shrubs or saplings in thickets or old fields. Early nests are often on the ground; later ones are often placed in shrubs. Clutch size 2-5, usually 3-4.

FOOD HABITS: Forage on the ground, especially in grasses and forbs about 3 feet (1 m) tall, where they glean insects and seeds in summer, and seeds in winter.

GUILD: bush or ground nesting, herb gleaning omnivore-granivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:386; DeGraaf et al. 1980:528; Lowery 1974:584; Mengel 1965:499; Forbush and May 1939:525; Imhof 1976:415; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:543; Sprunt 1954:488; Burleigh 1958:676; Stewart and Robbins 1958:363; Oberholser 1974(II):939; Bent and Austin 1968b:1217-1235.



thus are rather local; C in the Virginia mountain valleys; [illegible] the Coastal Plain. Breed to the north of the region. Fall arrival -- mid-October to early November; spring departure -- mid-April to early May.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Open, weedy fields with some brushy tangles; hedgerows, briar thickets, and overgrown fields are principal habitats. Do not usually occur along woodland margins; favor extensive open country.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Weedy fields, generally with scattered shrubs or other tangles among the herbaceous cover.

SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: Recorded as Visitor in grass-forb oak-hickory, 0.8(8) shrub-seedling elm-ash-cottonwood.

REPRODUCTION: Do not breed in the region.

FOOD HABITS: Glean seeds from the ground or herbaceous vegetation.

GUILD: terrestrial or herb gleaning granivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:388; Verner and Boss 1980:296; Lowery 1974:585; Mengel 1965:501; Forbush and May 1939:527; Imhof 1976:417; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:544; Sprunt 1954:488; Burleigh 1958:679-681; Stewart and Robbins 1958:365; Oberholser 1974(II):944; Bent and Austin 1968c:1273-1351.

ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Wintering [illegible] mountains, but not numerous at the higher elevations; U in central Florida. Breed to the north of the region. Fall arrival -- early October to late October; spring departure -- early May to mid-May.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Favor woodland thickets; generally in low or moist deciduous or broadleaf evergreen woods; not common in open fields; primary habitats are open woods, bottomlands, wood margins, thickets, and shrubbery in residential areas.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Leafy ground and thickets within or near woodlands.

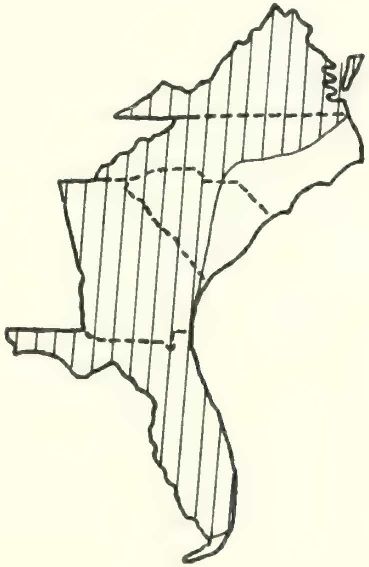
REPRODUCTION: Do not breed in the region.

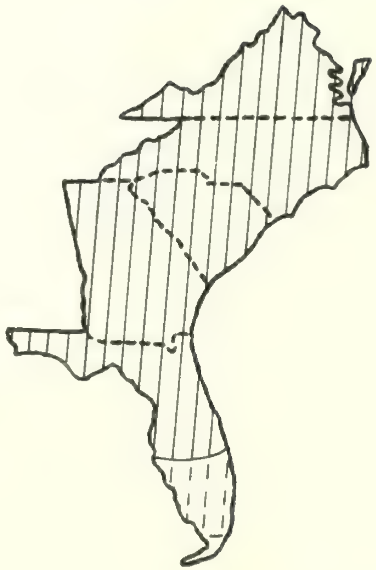
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sapling-poletimber longleaf pine-slash pine, 1(1) shrub-seedling Virginia pine-pitch pine, 31(5) grass-forb oak-hickory, 100(3) sawtimber live oak maritime.

FOOD HABITS: Forage mainly on the ground, especially in dead leaves; occasionally in shrubs or trees. Scratch in dead leaves for seeds; also glean berries and buds from shrubs or trees.

GUILD: terrestrial gleaning granivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:388; DeGraaf et al. 1980:530; Lowery 1974:587; Mengel 1965:503; Forbush and May 1939:528; Imhof 1976:418; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:545;S Sprunt 1954:489; Burleigh 1958:681; Stewart and Robbins 1958:366; Oberholser 1974(II):949; Bent and Austin 1968c:1364.





Carolina, U in the lower mountains, R in Florida. Breed to the north of the region. Fall arrival -- late October to late November; spring departure -- early March to late March.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Dense cover of thickets or woodland understory; favor evergreen cover, particularly in broadleaf evergreen shrubs under pines or broadleaf evergreen trees; also in dense shrub-sapling thickets, woodland margins, and shrubbery; generally scarce in herbaceous cover of open fields.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Dense woodland understory or thickets, usually in evergreen cover.

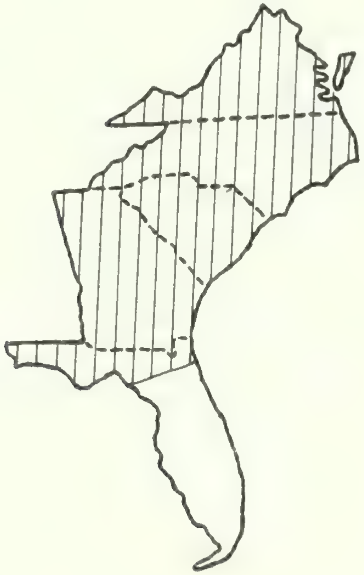
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) grass-forb oak-hickory, 10(1) sawtimber live oak maritime, 18(9) sawtimber mixed pine-hardwood.

REPRODUCTION: Do not breed in the region.

FOOD HABITS: Forage primarily by scratching in dead leaves for food, gleaning for seeds, berries, and other fruits. Occasionally forage in trees and shrubs.

GUILD: terrestrial gleaning granivore or frugivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:389; Verner and Boss 1980:298; DeGraaf et al. 1980:532; Lowery 1974:588; Mengel 1965:504; Forbush and May 1939:529; Imhof 1976:419; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:547; Sprunt 1954:490; Burleigh 1958:683-685; Stewart and Robbins 1958:368; Oberholser 1974(II):951; Bent and Austin 1968c:1392-1433.



in coastal Virginia, at least in December; VR elsewhere. Most records are birds seen on Christmas Bird Counts, in December; thus, the January and February status is little known. Breed to the north of the region. Fall arrival -- late September to late October; spring departure -- late April to mid-May.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Favor damp, brushy places; shrubs or saplings along a stream, pond margin, or marsh edge are the usual habitats; also in old fields, hedgerows, and weedy spots, usually where moist; commonly associate with Song and Swamp sparrows.

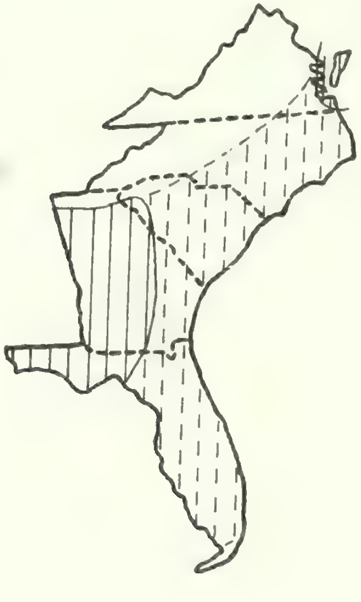
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Shrubs and tall grass in moist places.

REPRODUCTION: Do not breed in the region.

FOOD HABITS: Glean primarily weed seeds, also berries and insects, from the ground and herbaceous vegetation; occasionally forage in shrubs.

GUILD: herb gleaning granivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:390; Verner and Boss 1980:299; DeGraaf et al. 1980:534; Lowery 1974:588; Mengel 1965:505; Forbush and May 1939:530; Imhof 1976:420; Sprunt 1954:491; Burleigh 1958:685; Stewart and Robbins 1958:369; Oberholser 1974(II):953; Bent and Austin 1968c:1434-1473.



ABUNDANCE STATUS OF SPECIES: Breeding -- R in northwestern Highland Co north to southern Virginia; U in the mountains and in southern Florida. Most Swamp Sparrows breed to the north of the region. Fall arrival -- early October to mid-October; spring departure -- late April to mid-May.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- essentially only in high elevation bogs, especially the shrubby margins of bogs. Wintering -- in fresh or brackish marshes, marshy edges, stream and pond margins, damp fields, and hedgerows; usually in wet or damp spots where herbaceous cover is present.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- mountain bogs, usually in shrubby spots. Wintering -- marshes or other damp herbaceous cover.

SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 0.5(1) sapling-poletimber oak-gum-cypress, 0.5(1) shrub-seedling oak-hickory, 5.3(3) sawtimber elm-ash-cottonwood, 47(1) shrub-seedling live oak maritime.

REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from mid-May to late June, probably peaking in mid- to late May, although no nest has been found in the region. Nests are usually placed just off the ground in grass tussocks or small shrubs. Clutch size 3-6, usually 4-5.

FOOD HABITS: Forage on the ground or in marsh vegetation, where they glean insects and some seeds in summer, and insects and seeds in winter.

GUILD: ground or bush nesting, herb gleaning insectivore-omnivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:390; DeGraaf et al. 1980:536; Lowery 1974:589; Mengel 1965:506; Forbush and May 1939:532; Imhof 1976:421; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:548; Sprunt 1954:492; Burleigh 1958:687-689; Stewart and Robbins 1958:369; Oberholser 1974(II):954; Bent and Austin 1968c:1474-1490.

to A in the mountains, ranging to the highest elevations; FC to C in the upper Piedmont; mostly U in the lower Piedmont and Coastal Plain; C along the coast. Wintering -- A over most of the region, though less numerous in the mountains; U in southern Florida. Fall arrival -- early October to mid-October; spring departure -- mid-April to late April.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Breeding -- favor shrubby areas in open country; residential shrubbery, farmyards, streamside thickets, hedgerows, and edges of ponds are frequent habitats. Wintering -- occur in the same habitats as for breeding, but in many other habitats; most common in weedy fields, marshes and marshy edges, thickets, and other brushy places; usually in somewhat moist habitats.

KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Breeding -- shrubs or saplings in open country, in a wide variety of situations. Wintering -- thick herbaceous cover or shrubby thickets.

SAMPLE BREEDING DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1.1(5) sapling-poletimber oak-hickory, 10(2) grass-forb mixed pine-hardwood, 10(4) grass-forb oak-hickory, 35(18) sapling-poletimber elm-ash-cottonwood (small plot).

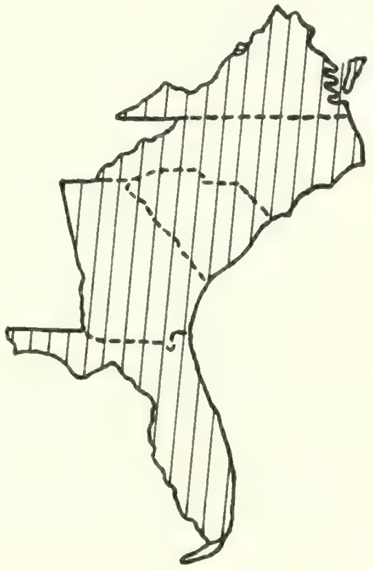
SAMPLE WINTER DENSITIES IN THE SOUTHEAST: 1(1) sawtimber live oak maritime, 1(1) sapling-poletimber oak-hickory, 11(4) shrub-seedling oak-hickory, 28(8) grass-forb oak-hickory.

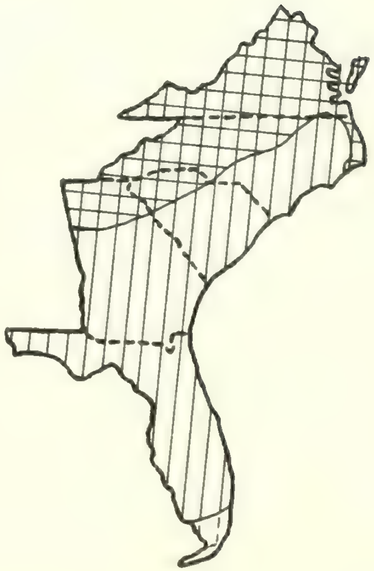
REPRODUCTION: Breeding season extends from early April to mid-August, with peak in late April to early June. First nests are often placed on the ground, later ones in shrubs or saplings. Clutch size usually 4-5, sometimes 3.

FOOD HABITS: Forage primarily on the ground, often also in shrubs, or saplings. Glean insects and some seeds in summer and mainly weed seeds in winter.

GUILD: ground or bush nesting, terrestrial or herb gleaning insectivore-granivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:390; Verner and Boss 1980:300; DeGraaf et al. 1980:538; Lowery 1974:589; Mengel 1965:508; Forbush and May 1939:533; Imhof 1976:422; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:549-552; Sprunt 1954:493; Burleigh 1958:689-694; Stewart and Robbins 1958:371; Oberholser 1974(II):956; Bent and Austin 1968c:1491-1563.





and erratic elsewhere. Breed to the north of the region. Fall arrival -- late October to late November; spring departure -- early March to early April.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Along the coast, prefer low dunes and very short grass habitats; inland, they favor extensive plowed fields, but also at airports and other extensive areas of short grass. Usually found with Horned Larks inland and with larks or Snow Buntings along the coast.

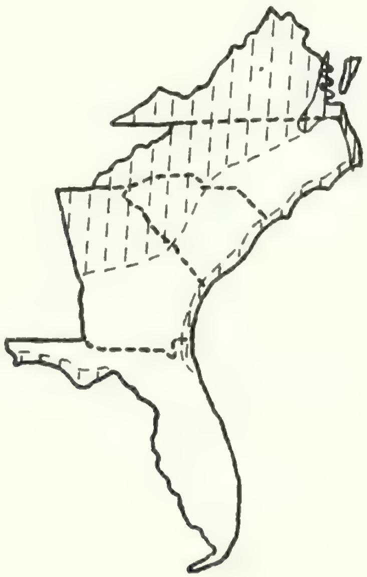
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: bare ground or short grass, in extensive open country.

REPRODUCTION: Do not breed in the region.

FOOD HABITS: Forage on the ground in short grass or bare areas, where they glean grass and forb seeds.

GUILD: terrestrial gleaning granivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:392; DeGraaf et al. 1980:540; Lowery 1974:590; Mengel 1965:514; Forbush and May 1939:536; Imhof 1976:424; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:552; Sprunt 1954:494; Burleigh 1958:694; Stewart and Robbins 1958:373; Oberholser 1974(II):961; Bent and Austin 1968c:1597-1627.



elevation balds along the North Carolina - Tennessee border; VR elsewhere, mainly in northern Virginia. Breed to the north of the region. Fall arrival -- early November to late November; spring departure -- late February to mid-March.

PRIMARY HABITATS: Mainly in dunes, especially rather low and extensive ones; also on grassy balds in the high mountains. Seldom found in plowed fields or short grass habitats.

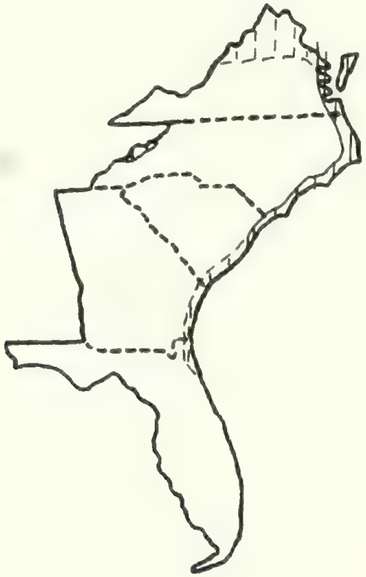
KEY HABITAT REQUIREMENTS: Primarily in sand dunes; otherwise in short grass or bare ground.

REPRODUCTION: Do not breed in the region.

FOOD HABITS: Glean seeds of grasses and forbs on the ground, usually in sand dunes.

GUILD: terrestrial gleaning granivore.

REFERENCES: Potter et al. 1980:393; DeGraaf et al. 1980:541; Lowery 1974:593; Mengel 1965:515; Forbush and May 1939:537; Sprunt and Chamberlain 1970:553; Sprunt 1954:494; Burleigh 1958:695; Stewart and Robbins 1958:374; Bent and Austin 1968c:1652-1677.



CHARACTERISTIC, RESTRICTED, AND SENSITIVE SPECIES

A. Characteristic Species

The following is a list of species, by vegetation type, that are characteristic of each type and are usually present in good numbers in that type. As a general rule, these species are present in the majority of sizable stands (20 acres or more) of the associated vegetation type, and they usually occur in peak numbers. Only mature stages of the vegetation types are considered. The symbols (B) and (W) following the names of species denote that the species are characteristic of the breeding and wintering seasons, respectively. A species with no symbol following its name is characteristic at all seasons.

Everglades: Least Bittern, American Bittern (W), Northern Harrier (W), King Rail, Common Yellowthroat, Red-winged Blackbird.

Tropical hardwoods: White-crowned Pigeon (B), Yellow-billed Cuckoo (B), Great Crested Flycatcher (W), Gray Catbird (W), White-eyed Vireo, Black-whiskered Vireo (B), Prairie Warbler (W), Palm Warbler (W), Northern Cardinal.

Mangroves: Louisiana Heron (B), White Ibis (B), Gray Kingbird (B), Fish Crow, Black-whiskered Vireo (B), Prairie Warbler (W), Red-winged Blackbird.

Pine savanna: Crested Caracara, American Kestrel (W), Common Bobwhite, Sandhill Crane, Burrowing Owl, Eastern Bluebird, Pine Warbler, Eastern Meadowlark, Rufous-sided Towhee, Bachman's Sparrow.

Southern scrub oak: Common Bobwhite, Common Ground Dove, Scrub Jay, Carolina Wren, Rufous-sided Towhee.

Sand pine-southern scrub oak: Common Ground Dove, Scrub Jay, Rufous-sided Towhee.

Longleaf pine-scrub oak: Pine Warbler, Rufous-sided Towhee.

Sandhills longleaf pine: Red-cockaded Woodpecker, Brown-headed Nuthatch, Pine Warbler.

Southern mixed mesic hardwoods: Pileated Woodpecker, Red-bellied Woodpecker, Great Crested Flycatcher (B), Blue Jay, Tufted Titmouse, Carolina Wren, Hermit Thrush (W), Northern Cardinal.

Bay swamp-pocosin: Red-bellied Woodpecker, Winter Wren (W), Carolina Wren, American Robin (W), Hermit Thrush (W), Yellow-rumped Warbler (W), White-throated Sparrow (W), Fox Sparrow (W).

Pond pine pocosin: Carolina Chickadee, Carolina Wren.

Longleaf pine-slash pine: Red-headed Woodpecker (B), Red-cockaded Woodpecker, Brown-headed Nuthatch, Eastern Bluebird, Pine Warbler, Bachman's Sparrow.

Oak-gum-cypress: Red-shouldered Hawk, Yellow-billed Cuckoo (B), Barred Owl, Pileated Woodpecker, Red-bellied Woodpecker, Red-headed Woodpecker (W), Acadian Flycatcher (B), Tufted Titmouse, Blue-gray Gnatcatcher (B), Prothonotary Warbler (B), Northern Parula Warbler (B), Yellow-rumped Warbler (W), Yellow-throated Warbler (B), Rusty Blackbird (W).

Live oak maritime: Great Crested Flycatcher (B), Fish Crow, Carolina Wren, Ruby-crowned Kinglet (W), Solitary Vireo (W), Northern Parula Warbler (B), Yellow-rumped Warbler (W), Northern Cardinal, Rufous-sided Towhee, Fox Sparrow (W).

Elm-ash-cottonwood: Wild Turkey, American Woodcock, Yellow-billed Cuckoo (B), Pileated Woodpecker, Red-bellied Woodpecker, Acadian Flycatcher (B), Carolina Wren, American Robin (W), Blue-gray Gnatcatcher (B), Yellow-rumped Warbler (W), Kentucky Warbler (B), Hooded Warbler (B), American Redstart (B), White-throated Sparrow (W).

Loblolly pine-shortleaf pine: Eastern Wood Pewee (B), Carolina Chickadee, Red-breasted Nuthatch (W), Brown-headed Nuthatch, Brown Creeper (W), Golden-crowned Kinglet (W), Ruby-crowned Kinglet (W), Pine Warbler, Northern Junco (W).

Crested Flycatcher (B), Eastern Wood Pewee (B), Blue Jay, Carolina Chickadee, Tufted Titmouse, Brown Creeper (W), Hermit Thrush (W), Ruby-crowned Kinglet (W), Yellow-rumped Warbler (W), Summer Tanager (B), Northern Cardinal, Northern Junco (W), Fox Sparrow (W).

Oak-hickory: Red-bellied Woodpecker, Hairy Woodpecker, Downy Woodpecker, Blue Jay, Tufted Titmouse, White-breasted Nuthatch, Carolina Wren, Wood Thrush (B), Red-eyed Vireo (B), Ovenbird (B), Scarlet Tanager (B).

White pine-hemlock: Solitary Vireo (B), Northern Parula Warbler (B), Black-throated Green Warbler (B), Blackburnian Warbler (B), Canada Warbler (B), Northern Junco.

Cove hardwoods: Pileated Woodpecker, White-breasted Nuthatch, Solitary Vireo (B), Red-eyed Vireo (B), Black-and-white Warbler (B), Black-throated Blue Warbler (B), Canada Warbler (B), Scarlet Tanager (B), Northern Junco.

Maple-beech-birch: White-breasted Nuthatch, Veery (B), Solitary Vireo (B), Black-throated Blue Warbler (B), Rose-breasted Grosbeak (B), Northern Junco (B).

Spruce-fir: Black-capped Chickadee, Red-breasted Nuthatch (B), Brown Creeper (B), Winter Wren (B), Golden-crowned Kinglet (B), Solitary Vireo (B), Black-throated Green Warbler (B), Blackburnian Warbler (B), Northern Junco.

B. Restricted Species

The following is a list of species, by vegetation type, that are somewhat restricted in their habitat preferences in the Southeast. Generally speaking, listed species reach peak numbers in the associated vegetation type, but away from the favored habitat they occur in few other habitats and only in relatively small numbers. Only mature stages of the vegetation types are considered. The list also applies only to the Southeast; for example, a number of species are restricted as breeders to the spruce-fir zone in the Southeast, but they may breed in a wide variety of vegetation types in the northeastern United States. The symbols (B) and (W) following the species' names denote that the species are restricted in the breeding season or wintering season, respectively. A species with no symbol following its name is restricted at all seasons.

Everglades: Snail Kite.

Tropical hardwoods: Black-whiskered Vireo (B).

Mangroves: Magnificent Frigatebird (B), Reddish Egret (B), Roseate Spoonbill (B), Mangrove Cuckoo, Black-whiskered Vireo (B).

Pine savanna: White-tailed Kite, Crested Caracara, Sandhill Crane.

Southern scrub oak: Scrub Jay.

Sand pine-southern scrub oak: Scrub Jay.

Longleaf pine-scrub oak: no species.

Sandhills longleaf pine: Red-cockaded Woodpecker.

Southern mixed mesic hardwoods: no species.

Bay swamp-pocosin: no species.

Pond pine pocosin: no species.

Longleaf pine-slash pine: Red-cockaded Woodpecker, Henslow's Sparrow (W).

Oak-gum-cypress: Swallow-tailed Kite (B), Mississippi Kite (B), Bachman's Warbler (B).

Live oak maritime: no species.

Elm-ash-cottonwood: Mississippi Kite (B), Bachman's Warbler (B).

Loblolly pine-shortleaf pine: no species.

Mixed pine-hardwood: no species.

Oak-hickory: no species.

White pine-hemlock: no species.

Cove hardwoods: Cerulean Warbler (B).

Maple-beech-birch: Yellow-bellied Sapsucker (B).

Spruce-fir: Saw-whet Owl (B), Olive-sided Flycatcher (B), Red-breasted Nuthatch (B), Brown Creeper (B), Hermit Thrush (B), Swainson's Thrush (B), Golden-crowned Kinglet (B), Nashville Warbler (B), Magnolia Warbler (B), Purple Finch (B), Pine Siskin (B), Red Crossbill (B).

C. Sensitive Species

A sensitive species is one with special requirements or vulnerabilities, particularly in the breeding season. Such species usually are specialized in regard to habitat selection, nest site selection, or food preference, or else they are quite vulnerable to habitat disturbances or other changes in their habitats (such as pesticides). Thus, forest managers should give special concern to these sensitive species, making sure that the essential features of each species' habitats are provided or maintained and that perturbations are avoided. Many, rather small habitat alterations have the potential to greatly affect the population of such species.

Limited nest site availability: Suitable habitat for the following species is generally widespread and common, but the birds cannot nest in the habitat unless a key feature, often one that is very limited in numbers, is present. Such features include dead trees, existing cavities, cliffs, or sandy banks. We include all cavity nesting species, Golden Eagle, Peregrine Falcon, Barn Owl, Great Horned Owl, Long-eared Owl, Belted Kingfisher, Eastern Phoebe, Bank Swallow, Rough-winged Swallow, Barn Swallow, Cliff Swallow, Common Raven.

their ranges. Species that nest in the region only peripherally, such as in northern Virginia or in the extreme southern tip of Florida, are not included. We include Pied-billed Grebe, Brown Pelican, most Ciconiiform species (herons, egrets, and allies), Golden Eagle, Peregrine Falcon, King Rail, Black Rail, Purple Gallinule, Common Gallinule, American Coot, Common Nighthawk, Red-cockaded Woodpecker, Alder Flycatcher, Bank Swallow, Cliff Swallow, Common Raven, Nashville Warbler, Northern Waterthrush, Henslow's Sparrow.

Limited food types: The following species forage on a very narrow range of food items that are vulnerable pollution and other disturbances. These food items are often in short supply over a large area. We include Turkey Vulture, Black Vulture, Snail Kite, Limpkin, Ruby-throated Hummingbird.

Sensitivity to human disturbances (especially near the nest): The following species are easily disturbed by human activities, even by people walking through their habitats. Human activity near the nest frequently causes abandonment of the site. Most of these species are large in size, and many prefer remote areas for nesting. We include Wood Stork, Golden Eagle, Bald Eagle, Peregrine Falcon, Wild Turkey, Upland Sandpiper, Great Horned Owl, Pileated Woodpecker, Common Raven, Henslow's Sparrow.

Sensitivity to pesticides: The following species are adversely affected by pesticides, in that a buildup of these chemicals in the females causes them to lay eggs with thin shells. The shells frequently crack under the weight of an incubating bird, thereby reducing reproductive output. All of these species have declined in numbers on the continent within the past three decades. We include Brown Pelican, Bald Eagle, Osprey, Peregrine Falcon, American Kestrel, Loggerhead Shrike.

GLOSSARY

AERIAL: foraging in sustained flight.

AQUATIC: foraging in a body of water.

ARBOREAL: inhabiting trees, especially in relation to foraging.

BAYS and WET POCOSINS: large, low, wet forested land recesses along the Outer Coastal Plain. Peaty soils and boggy conditions characterize these sites. RRE physiographic class 36.

BAY SWAMP-POCOSIN: forests of boggy, poorly drained soils in which various species of broadleaf evergreen "bay" trees, singly or in combination, make up a plurality of the stocking. The primary species are blackgum (Nyssa sylvatica var. biflora), red bay (Persea borbonia), sweet bay (Magnolia virginiana), loblolly bay (Gordonia lasianthus), fetterbush (Lyonia lucida), gallberry (Ilex spp.), and the semi-evergreen titi (Cyrilla racemiflora). RRE forest type 60 in physiographic classes 36 and 33, and possibly 32 and 34.

BIRD-HABITAT MATRIX: a table showing the preferential usage of habitats by bird species.

BLUFFS: high, steep, broad-faced banks or cliffs along the margins of streams. These areas are normally quite fertile but the terrain is usually rugged. RRE physiographic class 23.

BROAD STREAM MARGINS: broad, moist bottoms of land forming the margins of large streams. These bottoms are normally well-drained but might experience flooding during short periods of excessive rainfall. These sites are rich in alluvial deposits. RRE physiographic class 29.

BURROW: a nest cavity in soil, either in a bank or underground.

BUSH: a shrub or a sapling, generally less than 5 m in height.

CARNIVORE: an animal that feeds on meat, especially on animals larger than 5 cm in length.

CAVITY: a nest cavity inside a plant or a man-made structure, especially in a dead tree or stub.

CHARACTERISTIC SPECIES: a species that is characteristic of a given habitat is usually present in good numbers, and is generally present in most large stands of that habitat.

COVE HARDWOODS: forests in which many species of hardwood constitute a plurality and which occur on moist, fertile, protected sites in deep hollows extending back into mountain ranges. Characteristic tree species are yellow-poplar (Liriodendron tulipifera), basswood (Tilia heterophylla), sugar maple (Acer saccharum), buckeye (Aesculus octandra), and white oak (Quercus alba). RRE forest types 50 or 80 in physiographic classes 24 or 27.

CYPRESS PONDS: small depressions scattered throughout the flatwoods and pocosins of the Outer Coastal Plain. These areas are filled with water during wet seasons. RRE physiographic class 34.

CYPRESS STRANDS: strands of forest land along the deep drainage features of the Outer Coastal Plain. There is a severe species limitation in these areas because of the presence of water. RRE physiographic class 32.

DBH: diameter of a tree measured at breast height, 4.5 feet (1.35 m).

DEEP SWAMPS: large, low, wet, flat forested areas which are flooded for long periods of time. Most of the large, poorly drained stream margins fall into this class. Soil and moisture conditions on these sites are generally quite favorable for forest growth of restricted species. RRE physiographic class 31.

DIVING: foraging on underwater food items by tipping from the surface of the water or by diving from the surface. Also includes "dabbling".

ELM-ASH-COTTONWOOD: bottomland forests in which elm (Ulmus spp.), ash (Fraxinus spp.), cottonwood (Populus deltoides or P. heterophylla),

EVERGLADES: extensive treeless freshwater marshes of Florida south of Lake Okeechobee, and often covered by water. Saw-grass (Cladium jamaicense) and a variety of grasses dominate the vegetation. No RRE forest type. RRE ground land use class 68.

FLATWOODS and DRY POCOSINS: flat or fairly level areas, ordinarily with sandy soil, which are somewhat dry throughout much of the year. RRE physiographic class 21.

FOLIAGE: the leaves of a woody plant, including twigs (but excluding large branches and trunks).

FOLIVORE: an animal that feeds on the vegetative parts of plants, such as leaves, roots, or buds; flowers also included.

FOREST TYPE: a classification of forest land based on the species that form a plurality of live-tree stocking.

FRUGIVORE: an animal that eats fruits, in particular, fleshy fruits such as berries.

GLEANING: picking of a food item (usually non-moving or slow-moving) from a substrate. Includes "hovering".

GRANIVORE: an animal that feeds on dry fruits, especially seeds or nuts.

GROUND (NEST): a nest on the ground or in herbaceous vegetation.

GUILD: a manner or mode of habitat utilization by animals, usually expressed in terms of foraging and/or nesting.

HABITAT PROFILE: a listing, in coded form, of habitats and habitat features (such as age of vegetation and topography) for each species in the breeding and/or wintering seasons.

HAWKING: foraging in the air by making short flights from a perch; also called "sallying" or "flycatching".

HERB (HERBACEOUS VEGETATION): non-woody vascular plants, especially grasses, sedges, rushes, and composites.

HIGH MOUNTAIN TOPS and SLOPES: elevations in the Southern Appalachians above 5000 feet (1500 m). These sites are characterized by steep slopes, rock outcrops, natural balds, exposure to severe climatic conditions, and short growing seasons. RRE physiographic class 11.

INSECTIVORE: an animal that feeds on insects or other small animals, generally less than 5 cm in length. Larvae and eggs of these animals are included in the diets of insectivores.

LEDGE (NEST): a nest on a rather horizontal surface above the ground, especially on a cliff or a man-made structure.

LIVE OAK MARITIME: forests in which live oak (Quercus virginiana) composes at least 50 percent of the stocking. This type has no precise RRE forest type equivalent. Probably such stands would be classified as RRE forest type 50 in RRE physiographic class 12.

LOBLOLLY PINE-SHORTLEAF PINE: forests in which loblolly pine (Pinus taeda) or shortleaf pine (P. echinata), singly or in combination, constitute a plurality of the stocking. Hardwoods make up less than 25 percent of the stocking. RRE forest types 31 and 32.

LONGLEAF PINE-SCRUB OAK: forests of sandy, upland topography in which longleaf pine and any of several scrub oaks (Quercus spp.) each composes at least 25 percent of the stocking. RRE forest type 21 in physiographic class 14.

LONGLEAF PINE-SLASH PINE: forests of moist, flat topography in which a plurality of the stocking is longleaf pine (Pinus palustris) or slash pine (P. elliottii), singly or in combination. RRE forest types 21 and 22.

western exposure. RRE physiographic class 13.

MANGROVES: forests in which red mangrove (Rhizophora mangle), black mangrove (Avicennia nitida), or white mangrove (Laguncularia racemosa), singly or in combination, make up a plurality of the stocking. RRE forest type 93.

MAPLE-BEECH-BIRCH: forests in which sugar maple, beech (Fagus grandifolia), or yellow birch (Betula lutea), singly or in combination, compose a plurality of the stocking. RRE forest type 80.

MARL FLATS and FORESTED PRAIRIES: broad expanses of low site conditions marking the transition zones along the glades and marshes of the Southeast. RRE physiographic class 37.

MIXED PINE-HARDWOOD: forests in which hardwoods (usually oaks) and pines each constitute at least 25 percent of the stocking. Occurs in several RRE forest types, as 31, 32, 50, and 60. Listed as oak-pine on page D-2 of RRE Field Instruction for Florida.

MOUNTAIN COVES: moist, fertile, protected sites found in deep hollows extending back into the low mountain ranges. These sites receive very little direct exposure to sun and wind. RRE physiographic class 27.

MOUNTAIN FOOTHILLS: low hills at or near the base of mountain ranges. These sites are characterized by dryness, thin soil, and more gentle terrain than that associated with the mountain ranges. RRE physiographic class 15.

MOUNTAIN SADDLES and MOIST MOUNTAIN SLOPES: broad gaps in mountain ridges below 5000 feet (1500 m) in elevation and moist slopes with northern or eastern exposure. These sites are characterized by adequate moisture, relatively deep soil, and rugged terrain. RRE physiographic class 24.

NARROW STREAM MARGINS: low, moist, fertile areas along small streams. These sites are normally well drained but might experience flooding during short periods of excessive rainfall. RRE physiographic class 28.

NATURAL STREAM LEVEES: embankments formed along the edges of larger streams by periodic flooding and receding waters. These sites are normally higher and drier than the general level of the stream margin. RRE physiographic class 25.

NECTARIVORE: an animal that feeds on nectar.

NFS: National Forest Systems, the forest management division of the U. S. Forest Service.

NONSTOCKED: land less than 16.7 percent stocked with growing-stock trees.

OAK-GUM-CYPRESS: bottomland or swamp forests in which tupelo (Nyssa aquatica), blackgum, sweetgum (Liquidambar styraciflua), oaks, or cypress (Taxodium spp.), singly or in combination, compose a plurality of the stocking. RRE forest type 60.

OAK-HICKORY: forests in which a plurality of the stocking is upland oaks or hickories (Carya spp.), singly or in combination, and where pines make up less than 25 percent of the stocking. RRE forest types 50 and 52.

OMNIVORE: an animal that feeds on both animals and plants.

PHYSIOGRAPHIC CLASS: a measure of a forest plot based on topography, aspect, soil, moisture, and drainage.

PINE SAVANNA: "forest" of scattered trees with no crown closure in which longleaf pine or slash pine, singly or in combination, constitute a plurality of the stocking. RRE forest types 21 and 22 in physiographic class 37, in which basal areas are low (ca. 10-20 square feet per acre). Typically occurs in central Florida.

PIRACY: foraging by attacking other animals, causing them to drop their prey, and taking the prey. The technique is also known as kleptoparasitism.

POLETIMBER TREES: growing-stock trees of commercial species 5-9 inches (12-22 cm) DBH for coniferous trees and 5-11 inches (12-28 cm) DBH for hardwood trees.

POUNCING: dropping onto a prey item (on the ground or in water) from a perch or from the air.

PROBING: inserting the bill into a substrate, such as bark or mud, for a food item.

RESTRICTED SPECIES: a species that occurs primarily in just one to several habitats (in the Southeast).

ROLLING UPLANDS: well-drained terrain with level areas broken by gentle slopes and numerous small drains. (Excludes deep sands.) RRE physiographic class 22.

RRE: Renewable Resources Evaluation Project, an activity of the U. S. Forest Service Southeastern Forest Experiment Station, formerly called Forest Survey.

SAF: Society of American Foresters.

SAND DUNES and SAND RIDGES: formed by wind along the beach and shores of large bodies of water. RRE physiographic class 12.

SAND HILLS: rolling uplands of deep sand with level areas broken by gentle slopes and small drains. RRE physiographic class 14.

SANDHILLS LONGLEAF PINE: forests of sandy, upland topography in which longleaf pine constitutes a majority of the stocking, and where less than 25 percent of the stocking is hardwoods. RRE forest type 21 in physiographic class 14.

SAND PINE-SOUTHERN SCRUB OAK: forests of sandy, upland topography in which sand pine (Pinus clausa) and several species of scrub oaks (Quercus spp.) each compose at least 25 percent of the stocking. RRE forest type 34.

SAPLINGS: live trees 1.0 to 5.0 inches (2.5-12 cm) DBH.

SAWTIMBER TREES: live trees of commercial species at least 9.0 inches DBH for coniferous trees and 11.0 inches DBH for hardwood trees.

SCAVENGER: an animal that feeds on non-living organic matter, especially dead animals (carrion) or garbage.

SEEDLINGS: live trees less than 1.0 inch (2.5 cm) in diameter that are expected to survive and develop.

SENSITIVE SPECIES: a species with special requirements or vulnerabilities, such that any small change or disturbance to its habitat may greatly affect its population.

SMALL DRAINS: narrow, wet strands without a well defined stream. Although these areas serve as drains for the surrounding areas, they are usually poorly drained themselves. RRE physiographic class 33.

SNAG: a dead tree. We prefer this broad definition from forestry to one limiting "snag" to mean dead parts of otherwise live trees.

SOARING: foraging by searching for terrestrial or aquatic prey from high in the air.

SOUTHERN MIXED MESIC HARDWOODS: forests along stream banks or bluffs in southern Georgia and northern Florida where beech or southern magnolia (Magnolia grandiflora), singly or in combination, constitute a plurality of the stocking. This has no precise RRE forest type equivalent. Probably it would be classified as RRE forest type 50 or in physiographic classes 22 and 23.

SOUTHERN SCRUB OAK: forests of sandy, upland topography in which various species of scrub oaks (Quercus spp.) compose at least 75 percent of the stocking. RRE forest type 57.

SPRUCE-FIR: forests in which a plurality of the stocking is red spruce (Picea rubens) or Fraser fir (Abies fraseri), singly or in combination. RRE forest type 10.

of the size of trees, in terms of DBH.

STATUS: the relative abundance of a species in the region during the breeding and/or wintering seasons. Abundance codes: A = abundant, VC = very common, C = common, FC = fairly common, U = uncommon, R = rare, VR = very rare.

TERRESTRIAL: pertaining to the ground, including bare ground, short grass, and mud.

TREE: a woody plant over 5 m in height.

TROPICAL HARDWOODS: forests of central and southern Florida in which various species of mostly tropical broadleaf evergreen trees, singly or in combination, compose a plurality of the stocking. These forests are rarely if ever flooded. RRF forest type 95.

TRUNK: the main axis and large branches of a tree or bush.

mountain ranges or foothills. These [illegible] physiographic class 26.

VEGETATION TYPE: a classification of vegetation based on major plant associations, with topography and geography taken into consideration.

VIRGINIA PINE-PITCH PINE: forests in which Virginia pine (Pinus virginiana) or pitch pine (P. rigida), singly or in combination, compose a plurality of the stocking. Hardwoods constitute less than 25 percent of the stocking. RRF forest types 33 and 38.

WHITE PINE-HEMLOCK: forests in which a plurality of the stocking is hemlock (primarily Tsuga canadensis and rarely T. caroliniana) or white pine (Pinus strobus), singly or in combination. RRF forest type 04.

WILLOW HEADS and STRANDS: small areas in the early stages of succession to forest found around deep ponds and strands of permanent water. RRF physiographic class 35.

This work was supported by cooperative agreements between the U. S. Forest Service and the Clemson Univ. Dept. of Zoology. We owe much to Jerry Verner for discussion and stimulation that led to the development of our matrix presentation format. Earlier drafts of the manuscript have benefitted from review by Danny Bystrak, Andy Clewell, Dick Conner, Noel Cost, Dick DeGraaf, Jim Dickson, John Fussell, Bob Hooper, Fran James, Syd Johnson, Jim Karr, Joe McClure, Ray Sheffield, Henry Stevenson, Paul Sykes, and Noel Wamer. We appreciate their comments and have accepted most of their suggestions. For those cases in which we incorrectly overruled them, as well as those where we did so correctly, we accept full responsibility.

We especially acknowledge those dedicated individuals who conducted Breeding Bird Censuses and Winter Bird Population Studies. The late Wendell P. Smith, who conducted no fewer than 125 censuses on several plots near his North Wilkesboro, NC, home between 1954 and 1977, deserves particular mention.

Chris Oliver typed the Narrative Species Accounts from an often cryptic original longhand draft. Anna Ross gave valuable assistance with proofreading and organization of the tables. Bob Biesterfeldt and Mel Weiland effectively shepherded the manuscript through editing and preparation of camera copy, respectively.

LITERATURE CITED

Allen, R. P. 1966. The Roseate Spoonbill. NY: Dover Publ. 142 p. (Reprint of 1942 ed. published by National Audubon Soc.)

American Ornithologists' Union. 1957. Check-list of North American birds, 5th ed. Baltimore, Md.: Amer. Ornithol. Union. 691 p.

Armstrong, W. H. 1958. Nesting and food habits of the Long-eared Owl in Michigan. Publ. Mus., Mich. State Univ., Biol. Ser. 1(2):61-96.

Beedy, E. C. 1981. Bird communities and forest structure in the Sierra-Nevada of California. Condor 83:97-105.

Bellrose, F. C. 1976. Ducks, geese, and swans of North America. Harrisburg, Penna.: Stackpole Books. 544 p.

Bent, A. C. Life histories of North American Birds:

" 1926. Marsh birds. USNM Bull. 135, 392 p.

" 1927. Shore birds, I. USNM Bull. 142, 340 p.

" 1929. Shore birds, II. USNM Bull. 146, 359 p.

" 1932. Gallinaceous birds. USNM Bull. 162, 490 p.

" 1937. Birds of prey, I. USNM Bull. 167, 409 p.

" 1938. Birds of prey, II. USNM Bull. 170, 482 p.

" 1939. Woodpeckers. USNM Bull. 174, 334 p.

" 1940. Cuckoos, goatsuckers, hummingbirds, and their allies. USNM Bull. 176, 506 p.

" 1942. Flycatchers, larks, swallows, and their allies. USNM Bull. 179, 555 p.

" 1946. Jays, crows and titmice. USNM Bull. 191, 495 p.

" 1948. Nuthatches, wrens, thrashers, and their allies. USNM Bull. 195, 475 p.

" 1949. Thrushes, kinglets, and their allies. USNM Bull. 196, 452 p.

" 1950. Wagtails, shrikes, vireos, and their allies. USNM Bull. 197, 411 p.

" 1953. Wood warblers. USNM Bull. 203, 734 p.

" 1958. Blackbirds, orioles, tanagers, and allies. USNM Bull. 211, 549 p.

Bent, A. C., and O. L. Austin, Jr., eds. 1968a. Life histories of North American cardinals, grosbeaks, buntings, towhees, finches, sparrows, and allies, I. USNM Bull. 237(1):1-602.

Bent, A. C., and O. L. Austin, Jr., eds. 1968b. Life histories of North American cardinals, grosbeaks, buntings, towhees, finches, sparrows, and allies, II. USNM Bull. 237(2):603-1248.

Bent, A. C., and O. L. Austin, Jr., eds. 1968c. Life histories of North American cardinals, grosbeaks, buntings, towhees, finches, sparrows, and allies, III. USNM Bull. 237(3):1249-1889.

Braun, E. L. 1964. Deciduous forests of eastern North America. Hafner Publ. Co., New York. 596 p.

Buller, R. J. 1979. Lesser and Canadian Sandhill Crane populations, age structure, and harvest. USDI Fish & Wildl. Serv., Spec. Sci. Rep. - Wildl. No. 221. 10 p.

Burleigh, T. D. 1958. Georgia birds. Univ. Oklahoma Press, Norman. 746 p.

Capen, D. E. 1979. Management of northeastern pine forests for nongame birds. pp. 90-109. In DeGraaf, R. M. and K. E. Evans, compilers. Proc. workshop management of northcentral and northeastern forests for nongame birds. USDA For. Serv., Gen. Tech. Rep. NC-51. St. Paul, Minn.

Cely, J. E. and J. A. Sorrow. 1981. Breeding bird census 30. Virgin hardwood bottomland swamp forest. Amer. Birds 35:57.

Cody, M. L. 1974. Competition and the structure of bird communities. Monogr. Popul. Biol. no. 7. Princeton, N. J.: Princeton Univ. Press. 318 p.

Cody, M. L. and J. M. Diamond, eds. 1975. Ecology and evolution of communities. Cambridge, Mass.: Belknap Press. 545 p.

Cost, N. D. 1979. Ecological structure of forest vegetation. In Forest resource inventories, vol. I. W. F. Frayer, ed. pp. 29-37.

Crase, F. T. and R. W. DeHaven. 1975. Selected bibliography on the food habits of North American blackbirds. USDI Fish & Wildl. Serv., Spec. Scient. Rep. - Wildl., No. 179, 17 p.

Crawford, H. S., and R. W. Titterington. 1979. Effects of silvicultural practices on bird communities in upland spruce-fir stands. pp. 110-119. In DeGraaf, R. M. and K. E. Evans, compilers. Proc. workshop management of northcentral and northeastern forests for nongame birds. USDA For. Serv., Gen. Tech. Rep. NC-51. St. Paul, Minn.

Cyr, A. and J. Cyr. 1979. Which characteristics of the vegetation are determinant for bird communities? Vogelwelt 100(5):165-181.

DeGraaf, R. M. (technical coordinator). 1978a. Proceedings of the workshop on nongame bird habitat management in the coniferous forests of the western United States. USDA For. Serv. Pacific Northwest For. and Range Expt. Stn., Gen Tech. Rep. 64, 100 p.

DeGraaf, R. M. (technical coordinator). 1978b. Proceedings of the workshop management of southern forests for nongame birds. USDA For. Serv. Gen. Tech. Rep. SE-14, 175 p. Asheville, N. C.

DeGraaf, R. M., and K. E. Evans, compilers. 1979. Workshop proceedings management of north central and northeastern forests for nongame birds. USDA For. Serv., North Central For. Expt. Stn., Gen. Tech. Rep. 51, 268 p.

DeGraaf, R. M., and N. G. Tilghman, compilers. 1980. Workshop proceedings management of western forests and grasslands for nongame birds. USDA For. Serv., Intermountain For. and Range Expt. Stn., Gen. Tech. Rep. 86, 535 p.

DeGraaf, R. M., G. M. Witman, J. W. Lanier, B. J. Hill, and J. M. Keniston. 1980. Forest habitat for birds of the Northeast. USDA Forest Serv., Northeastern Forest Expt. Stn. and Eastern Reg. 598 p.

Denton, J. F. (chairman). 1977. Annotated checklist of Georgia birds. Occasional Publ. No. 6, Georgia Ornithol. Soc. 59 p.

Dickson, J. G. 1978. Forest bird communities of the bottomland hardwoods. pp. 66-73. In DeGraaf, R. M., tech. coord. Proc. workshop management of southern forests for nongame birds. USDA For. Serv., Gen. Tech. Rep. SE-14. Asheville, N. C.

Dickson, J. G., and R. F. Noble. 1978. Vertical distribution of birds in a Louisiana bottomland hardwood forest. Wilson. Bull. 90:19-30.

Dickson, J. G., R. N. Conner, and J. H. Williamson. 1980. Relative abundance of breeding birds in forest stands in the Southeast. South. J. Appl. Forestry 4:175-179.

Dolbeer, R. A., and R. A. Stehn. 1979. Population trends of blackbirds and Starlings in North America 1966-1976. USDI Fish & Wildl. Serv., Spec. Scient. Rep. - Wildl., No. 214, 99 p.

Dwyer, T. J., R. A. Coon, and P. H. Geissler. 1979. The technical literature on the American Woodcock 1927-1978. USDI Fish & Wildl. Serv., Spec. Scient. Rep. - Wildl., No. 213.

census. Am. Birds

Eddleman, W. R. 1978. Selection and management of Swainson's Warbler habitat. Unpubl. M. S. thesis, Univ. of Missouri. 75 p.

Engstrom, T. 1981. Breeding bird census 32. Mature beech-magnolia forest. Amer. Birds 35:58.

Evans, K. E. 1978. Oak-pine and oak-hickory forest bird communities and management options. pp. 76-89. In DeGraaf, R. M., tech. coord. Proc. workshop management of southern forests for nongame birds. USDA For. Serv., Gen. Tech. Rep. SE-14. Asheville, N. C.

Evans, K. E. and R. N. Conner. 1979. Snag management. pp. 214-225. In DeGraaf, R. M., and K. E. Evans, compilers. Proc. workshop management of northcentral and northeastern forests for nongame birds. USDA For. Serv., Gen. Tech. Rep. NC-51. St. Paul, Minn.

Evans, K. E. and R. A. Kirkman. 1981. Guide to bird habitats of the Ozark Plateau. USDA Forest Service, North Central Forest Expt. Stn., Gen. Tech. Rep. 68, 79 p.

Eyre, F. H., ed. 1980. Forest cover types of the United States and Canada. Washington, D. C.: Soc. Amer. Foresters. 148 p.

Forbush, E. H. and J. B. May. 1939. A natural history of birds of eastern and central North America. NY: Bramhall House. 552 p.

Hall, G. A. 1964. Breeding - Bird Censuses -- why and how. Audubon Field Notes 18:413-416.

Hamel, P. B. 1981. Bachman's Warbler: bibliography of a species in peril. Unpublished manuscript on file at R. M. Cooper Library, Clemson Univ., Clemson, S. C. 41 p.

Hamel, P. B., and M. K. Klimkiewicz. 1981. Stand abbreviations for common names of birds - revisited. No. Amer. Bird Bander 6:46.

Hewitt, O. H., ed. 1967. The wild turkey and its management. Washington, D. C.: Wildlife Soc. 589 p.

Hickey, J. J. 1969. Peregrine Falcon populations. Madison, Wisc.: Univ. Wisconsin Press. 596 p.

Hooper, R. G. 1977. Nesting habitat of Common Ravens in Virginia. Wilson Bull. 89:233-242.

Hooper, R. G. 1978. Cove forests and bird communities. pp. 90-97. In DeGraaf, R. M., tech. coord. Proc. workshop management of southern forests for nongame birds. USDA For. Serv., Gen. Tech. Rep. SE-14. Asheville, N. C.

Hooper, R. G. and P. B. Hamel. 1977. Nesting habitat of Bachman's Warbler--a review. Wilson Bull. 89:373-379.

Hooper, R. G., A. F. Robinson, Jr., and J. A. Jackson. 1980. The Red-cockaded Woodpecker: notes on life history and management. USDA Forest Serv. Southern Region, Gen. Rep. 9, 8 p.

Hutchinson, G. E. 1978. An introduction to population ecology. Yale Univ. Press, New Haven. 260 p.

Imhof, T. A. 1976. Alabama birds, 2nd ed. University, Ala.: Univ. Alabama Press. 445 p.

International Bird Census Committee. 1970. An international standard for a mapping method -- bird census work. Audubon Field Notes 24:722-726.

Jackson, J. A., M. R. Lennartz, and R. G. Hooper. 1979. Tree age and cavity initiation by Red-cockaded Woodpeckers. J. Forestry 77:102-103.

Johnsgard, P. A. 1973. Grouse and quails of North America. Lincoln, Nebr.: Univ. Nebraska Press. 553 p.

Johnsgard, P. A. 1978. Ducks, geese and swans of the world. Lincoln, Neb.: Univ. Nebraska Press. 404 p.

wren, Telmatodytes palustris griseus Brewster, in Georgia salt marshes. Publ. Nuttall Ornithol. Club 5, 142 p.

Kale, H. W., II. (editor). 1978. Rare and endangered biota of Florida. Vol. 2. Birds. Univ. Presses of Florida, Gainesville.

Kendeigh, S. C. 1941. Territorial and mating behavior of the House Wren. Urbana, Ill.: Univ. Illinois Press. 120 p.

Kendeigh, S. C., Chrm. 1973. A symposium on the House Sparrow (Passer domesticus) and European Tree Sparrow (P. montanus) in North America. Amer. Ornithol. Union, Ornithol. Monogr. 14, 121 p.

Kerlinger, P. and C. Doremus. 1981. Habitat disturbance and the decline of dominant avian species in pine barrens of the northeastern United States. Amer. Birds 35:16-20.

Klimkiewicz, M. K., and C. S. Robbins. 1978. Standard abbreviations for common names of birds. No. Amer. Bird Bander 3:16-25.

Kolb, H. 1965. The Audubon Winter Bird - Population Study. Am. Birds, 19:432-434.

Kroll, J. C., R. N. Conner, and R. R. Fleet. 1980. Woodpeckers and the southern pine beetle. USDA Forest Serv., Agric. Hdbk. 564, 23 p.

Lanyon, W. E. 1957. The comparative biology of the meadowlarks (Sturnella) in Wisconsin. Publ. Nuttall Ornithol. Club 1, 67 p.

Larner, Y. R. (checklist committee chairman). 1979. Virginia's birdlife: an annotated checklist. Virginia Avifauna No. 2, Virginia Soc. Ornithol., Inc. 118 p.

Lawrence, L. de K. 1967. A comparative life-history study of four species of woodpeckers. Amer. Ornithol. Union, Ornithol. Monogr. 5, 156 p.

LeGrand, H. E., Jr., and P. B. Hamel. 1980. Bird - habitat associations on southeastern forest lands. Unpubl. report to S. E. Forest Expt. Stn., Clemson, S. C. 276 p.

Lennartz, M. R., and J. P. McClure. 1979. Estimating the extent of Red-cockaded Woodpecker habitat in the Southeast. In Forest resource inventories, vol. I. W. E. Frayer, ed. pp. 48-62.

Lowery, G. H., Jr. 1974. Louisiana birds. Baton Rouge, La.: La. Wildl. and Fish. Comm. and La. State Univ. Press. 651 p.

Lunk, W. A. 1962. The Rough-winged Swallow, Stelgidopteryx ruficollis (Vieillot): a study based on its breeding biology in Michigan. Publ. Nuttall Ornithol. Club 4, 155 p.

Lynch, J. M. 1981. Status of the Cerulean Warbler in the Roanoke River basin of North Carolina. Chat 45:29-35.

MacArthur, R. H. 1972. Geographical ecology. N.Y.: Harper & Row. 269 p.

McClure, J. P. 1979. Multiresource inventories -- a new concept for forest survey in the Southeast. In Forest resource inventories, vol. I. W. E. Frayer, ed. pp. 23-28.

Meanley, B. 1969a. Natural history of the King Rail. USDI Fish & Wildl. Serv., North Amer. Fauna, No. 67, 108 p.

Meanley, B. 1969b. Natural history of the Swainson's Warbler. USDI Fish & Wildl. Serv., North Amer. Fauna, No. 69, 90 p.

Mengel, R. M. 1965. The birds of Kentucky. Amer. Ornithol. Union, Ornithol. Monogr. 3, 581 p.

Meyerreicks, A. J. 1960. Comparative breeding behavior of four species of North American herons. Publ. Nuttall Orn. Club 2, 158 p.

Meyers, J. M., and A. S. Johnson. 1978. Bird communities associated with succession and management of loblolly-shortleaf pine forests. pp. 50-65. In DeGraaf, R. M. (tech. coord.) Proc. workshop management of southern forests for nongame birds. USDA For. Serv., Southeast. For. Expt. Stn., Gen. Tech. Rep. 14. Asheville, N. C.

Dendroica discolor. Amer. Ornithol. Union, Ornithol. Monogr. 26, 595 p.

A comparison of avian community structure in the northern and southern Appalachian mountains. pp. 98-117. In DeGraaf, R. M. (tech. coord.) Proc. workshop management of southern forests for nongame birds. USDA For. Serv., Southeast. For. Expt. Stn., Gen. Tech. Rep. 14. Asheville, N. C.

Noon, B. R., V. P. Bingman, and J. P. Noon. 1979. The effects of changes in habitat on northern hardwood forest bird communities. pp. 33-48. In DeGraaf, R. M., and K. E. Evans, compilers. Proc. workshop management of northcentral and northeastern forests for nongame birds. USDA For. Serv., Northcentral For. Expt. Stn., Gen. Tech. Rep. 51.

Oberholser, H. C. 1974. The bird life of Texas, 2 vols. Austin, Tex.: Univ. Texas Press. 1069 p.

Ogden, J. C. 1969. Checklist of birds of Everglades National Park. Everglades Nat'l. Hist. Assoc.

Ogden, J. C., ed. 1977. Trans. North American Osprey Research Conf. USDI Nat. Park Serv., Trans. and Proc. Ser., No. 2, 258 p.

Ohlendorff, H. M., E. E. Klaas, and T. E. Kaiser. 1979. Environmental pollutants and eggshell thickness: Anhingas and wading birds in the eastern United States. USDI Fish & Wildl. Serv., Spec. Scient. Rep. - Wildl., No. 216, 94 p.

Palmer, R. S. (editor). 1962. Handbook of North American birds. Vol. 1. New Haven, Conn.: Yale Univ. Press. 567 p.

Palmer, R. S. (editor). 1976. Handbook of North American birds. Vol. 2 and 3. New Haven, Conn.: Yale Univ. Press. 1081 p.

Patterson, G. A. and W. B. Robertson, Jr. 1981. Distribution and habitat of the Red-cockaded Woodpecker in Big Cypress National Reserve. USDI Nat. Park Serv., South Fla. Res. Cent., Rep. T-613, 137 p.

Pearson, T. G., C. S. Brimley, and H. H. Brimley. 1959. Birds of North Carolina. Revised by D. L. Wray and H. T. Davis. Bynum Printing Co., Raleigh. 434 p.

Potter, E. F., J. F. Parnell, and R. P. Teulings. 1980. Birds of the Carolinas. Chapel Hill, N. C.: Univ. N. C. Press. 408 p.

Probst, J. R. 1979. Oak forest bird communities. pp. 80-88. In DeGraaf, R. M., and K. E. Evans, compilers. Proc. workshop management of northcentral and northeastern forests for nongame birds. USDA For. Serv., Gen. Tech. Rep. NC-51. St. Paul, Minn.

Ralph, C. J., and J. M. Scott, eds. 1981. Estimating numbers of terrestrial birds. Cooper Ornithol. Soc., Studies in Avian Biol., no. 6. 630 p.

Ratcliffe, D. 1980. The Peregrine Falcon. Vermillion, South Dakota: Buteo Books. 416 p.

Reid, V. H., and P. H. Goodrum. 1979. Winter feeding habits of quail in longleaf-slash pine habitat. USDI Fish & Wildl. Serv., Spec. Scient. Rep. - Wildl., No. 220, 39 p.

Reilly, E. M., Jr. 1968. The Audubon illustrated handbook of American birds. McGraw-Hill, New York. 524 p.

Richardson, C. J., ed. 1981. Pocosin wetlands. Stroudsburg, Penna.: Hutchinson Ross Publishing Co. 364 p.

Robbins, C. S. 1978. Census techniques for forest birds. pp. 142-163. In R. M. DeGraaf, tech. coordinator. Proceedings of the workshop management of southern forests for nongame birds. USDA Forest Serv., Southeastern For. Expt. Stn., Gen. Tech. Rep. 14.

Robbins, C. S. 1979. Effects of forest fragmentation on bird populations. pp. 198-212. In R. M. DeGraaf and K. E. Evans, Compilers. Proceedings of the workshop management of northcentral and northeastern forests for nongame birds. USDA Forest Serv., Northcentral For. Expt. Stn., Gen. Tech. Rep. 51.

Robbins, C. S., W. Harrison, G. S. Keith, R. G. McCaskie, R. T. Peterson, N. Pettingell, O. S. Pettingill, Jr., A. Small, R. W. Smart, and J. A. Tucker. 1975. A.B.A. checklist: birds of continental United States and Canada. Austin, Tex.: Amer. Birding Assn. 64 p.

Robertson, W. B., Jr., and J. A. Kushlan. 1974. The southern Florida avifauna. Miami Geol. Soc., memoir 2:414-452.

Rosahn, J. W. 1980. Bobwhite populations - a ten year study. Amer. Birds 34:695-697.

Rosene, W. 1969. The Bobwhite Quail: its life and management. New Brunswick, N. J.: Rutgers Univ. Press. 418 p.

Samson, F. B. 1979. Lowland hardwood bird communities. pp. 49-66. In DeGraaf, R. M., and K. E. Evans, compilers. Proc. workshop management of northcentral and northeastern forests for nongame birds. USDA For. Serv., Gen. Tech. Rep. NC-51. St. Paul, Minn.

Scott, V. E., K. E. Evans, D. R. Patton, and C. P. Stone. 1977. Cavity-nesting birds of North American forests. USDA, Agric. Hdbk. 511, 112 p.

Sheldon, W. G. 1967. The book of the American Woodcock. Amherst, Mass.: Univ. Mass. Press. 227 p.

Shelford, V. E. 1963. The ecology of North America. Univ. Illinois Press, Urbana. 610 p.

Shugart, H. H., T. M. Smith, J. T. Kitchings, R. L. Kroodsma. 1978. The relationship of nongame birds to southern forest types and successional stages. pp. 5-16. In DeGraaf, R. M. (tech. coord.) Proc. workshop management of southern forests for nongame birds. USDA For. Serv., Southeast. For. Expt. Stn., Gen. Tech. Rep. 14. Asheville, N. C.

Smith, D. R. (technical coordinator). 1975. Proceedings of the symposium on management of forest and range habitats for nongame birds. USDA For. Serv. Gen. Tech. Rep. WO-1, 343 p. Washington, D. C.

Soc. Amer. Foresters. 1954. Forest cover types of North America (exclusive of Mexico). Washington, D.C.: Soc. Amer. Foresters. 67 p.

Spencer, D. A. 1976. Wintering of the migrant Bald Eagles in the lower 48 states. Washington, D. C.: Nat. Agric. Chem. Assn. 170 p.

Sprunt, A., Jr. 1954. Florida bird life. Coward-McCann, Inc., New York. 527 p.

Sprunt, A., Jr., and E. B. Chamberlain. 1970. South Carolina bird life. Reprint of 1949 ed. with a Supplement by E. M. Burton. Univ. South Carolina Press, Columbia. 655 p.

Sprunt, A. IV, J. C. Ogden, and S. Winckler, eds. 1978. Wading birds. Res. Rep. 7. 381 p. NY: Natl. Audubon Soc.

Steenhof, K. and J. M. Brown. 1978. Management of wintering Bald Eagles. USDI Fish & Wildl. Serv., Biol. Serv. Prog., FWS/OBS-78/79, 59 p.

Stewart, P. A. 1980. Population trends of Barn Owls in North America. Amer. Birds 34:698-700.

Stewart, R. E., and C. S. Robbins. 1958. Birds of Maryland and the District of Columbia. USDI Bur. Sport Fish. & Wildl., North Amer. Fauna, No. 62, 401 p.

Stieglitz, W. O. and R. L. Thompson. 1967. Status and life history of the Everglade Kite in the United States. USDI Fish & Wildl. Serv., Spec. Scient. Rep. - Wildl., No. 109, 21 p.

Sykes, P. W., Jr. 1979. Status of the Everglade Kite in Florida - 1968-1978. Wilson Bull. 91:495-511.

Sykes, P. W., Jr. 1980. Decline and disappearance of the Dusky Seaside Sparrow from Merritt Island, Florida. Amer. Birds 34:728-737.

Sykes, P. W., Jr., and G. S. Hunter. 1978. Bird use of flooded agricultural fields during summer and early fall and some recommendations for management. Fla. Field Nat. 6:36-43.

Amer. Birds 35:68-69.

Terwilliger, K. 1981b. Breeding Bird Census 79. Atlantic white-cedar stand. Amer. Birds 35:69.

Thomas, J. W., ed. 1979. Wildlife habitats in managed forests: the Blue Mountains of Oregon and Washington. USDA For. Serv., Agric. Handbook 553, 512 p. Washington, D. C.

Thompson, R. L., ed. 1971. Proc. Symp. Ecology and management of the Red-cockaded Woodpecker. USDI Bur. Sport Fish & Wildl. 188 p.

USDA Forest Service, Southern Region. 1979. Compartment prescription field book. Atlanta, Ga.: USDA Forest Serv. 50 p., looseleaf.

USDI, Fish & Wildl. Serv. 1980. Publications of the section of bird damage control. Denver, Colo.: USDI Fish & Wildl. Serv. 30 p.

Van Camp, L. F. and C. J. Henny. 1975. The Screech Owl: life history and population ecology in northern Ohio. USDI Fish & Wildl. Serv., North Amer. Fauna 71, 65 p.

Verner, J., and A. S. Boss. 1980. California wildlife and their habitats: western Sierra Nevada. USDA Forest Serv., Pacific Southwest For. and Range Expt. Stn., Gen. Tech. Rep. 37, 439 p.

Watson, D. 1977. The Hen Harrier. Berkhamsted, Herts., England: T. & A. D. Poyser. 307 p.

Whitcomb, R. F. 1977. Island biogeography and "habitat islands" of eastern forest. Am. Birds 31:3-23.

Whittaker, R. H. 1967. Gradient analysis of vegetation. Biol. Rev. 42:207-264.

Wiens, J. A. 1977. On competition and variable environments. Amer. Scient. 65:590-597.

Wilbur, S. R. 1974. The literature of the California Black Rail. USDI Fish & Wildl. Serv., Spec. Scient. Rep. - Wildl., No. 179, 17 p.

Wilbur, S. R. and R. F. Tomlinson. 1976. The literature of the western Clapper Rails. USDI Fish & Wildl. Serv., Spec. Scient. Rep. - Wildl., No. 194, 31 p.

Wood, G. W., and L. Niles. 1978. Longleaf-slash pine forest bird communities. pp. 40-49. In DeGraaf, R. M., tech. coord. Proc. workshop management of southern forests for nongame birds. USDA For. Serv., Gen. Tech. Rep. SE-14. Asheville, N. C.

APPENDICES

Each of the following 12 appendices either summarizes data that are dispersed in the matrices (Chapter III) and in the narrative species accounts (Chapter IV), or presents data not conveniently handled in those locations.

Appendix A summarizes the published census literature from the Southeast 1947-1979 by state, vegetation type, and successional stage. Areas in which more censusing needs to be done are immediately obvious from inspection of the tables in Appendix A.

Appendix B identifies all the vegetation types and seasons of occurrence of the 234 species treated in this manual. Readers can go from the narrative account for a species to this appendix to find the habitat distribution in the Southeast of the species.

Appendix C is a tabular summary of the quantitative census information published for the Southeast 1947-1979. Here alone are listed the sample sizes, mean recorded densities, and standard errors for the censuses in which each species was found. This appendix also lists the low average density from a single habitat in the Southeast, the high average density from a single habitat in the Southeast, and sample sizes associated with those average densities. The reader can get a brief overview of the frequencies and abundances of the species on published censuses in the Southeast from this appendix.

Appendix D summarizes the information listed in the guild section of the species's narrative accounts, as well as some of that listed in the substrate utilization columns in the matrices. Here are the lists of species likely to be affected when management practices enhance or remove certain habitat elements.

Appendices E-J are summaries of information in selected columns of the specific requirements section of the matrices. Appendix E identifies snag and cavity dependent species. Appendix F identifies species dependent on large sawtimber trees. Appendix G identifies species dependent on forest interior conditions or areas of extensive forest. Appendix H identifies species requiring slash piles or windrows. Appendix I identifies species requiring rock outcrops, caves, crevices, or earthen banks. Appendix J identifies species requiring aquatic habitats.

Appendices K and L cross-reference our vegetation types with the standard types of the Society of American Foresters (SAF; Eyre 1980; Appendix K) and of the U. S. Forest Service Southern Region (USFS; USDA 1979; Appendix L).

Table A-1. Summary of published Breeding Bird Censuses made in the Southeast in 1947-1979.

Vegetation type and successional stage	State[a] Florida	Georgia	S. C.	N. C.	Virginia	Total
Everglades						
Grass-forb	1(1)	-	-	-	-	1(1)
Southern scrub oak						
Shrub-seedling	2(2)	-	-	-	-	2(2)
Sand pine-southern scrub oak						
Sapl.-poletimber	1(1)	-	-	-	-	1(1)
Longleaf pine-scrub oak						
Sapl.-poletimber	2(6)	-	-	-	-	2(6)
Bay swamp-pocosin						
Grass-forb	-	-	3(3)	-	-	3(3)
Longleaf pine-slash pine						
Sapl.-poletimber	-	2(2)	-	-	-	2(2)
Sawtimber	1(1)	4(7)	-	-	-	5(8)
Oak-gum-cypress						
Sapl.-poletimber	1(2)	1(1)	2(2)	-	-	4(5)
Sawtimber	-	-	1(1)	2(4)	1(1)	4(6)
Live oak maritime						
Sapl.-poletimber	2(3)	-	-	-	-	2(3)
Sawtimber	-	-	1(1)	1(1)	-	2(2)
Elm-ash-cottonwood						
Grass-forb or Shrub-seedling	-	-	-	4(19)	-	4(19)
Sapl.-poletimber	-	-	-	1(18)	-	1(18)
Sawtimber	-	-	-	-	2(3)	2(3)
Loblolly pine-shortleaf pine						
Grass-forb	-	1(1)	-	-	-	1(1)
Shrub-seedling	-	-	-	1(1)	-	1(1)
Sapl.-poletimber	-	2(2)	-	1(1)	-	3(3)
Sawtimber	-	-	-	3(3)	-	3(3)
Mixed pine-hardwood						
Grass-forb	-	-	-	1(2)	-	1(2)
Shrub-seedling	-	-	-	3(5)	1(2)	4(7)
Sapl.-poletimber	-	-	-	2(5)	-	2(5)
Sawtimber	-	1(11)	-	1(23)	1(2)	3(36)
Oak-hickory						
Grass-forb	-	-	-	1(4)	-	1(4)
Shrub-seedling	-	1(2)	-	-	-	1(2)
Sapl.-poletimber	-	-	-	3(9)	3(3)	6(12)
Sawtimber	-	2(2)	-	4(12)	7(22)	13(36)
White pine-hemlock						
Sawtimber	-	-	-	1(2)	1(1)	2(3)
Cove hardwoods						
Sawtimber	-	1(10)	-	1(1)	-	2(11)
Spruce-fir						
Sawtimber	-	-	-	2(2)	-	2(2)
Totals	10(16)	15(38)	7(7)	32(112)	16(34)	78(207)

[a] Entries are listed as "Plots (Years censused)".

Table A-2 Summary of published

the Southeast in 1947-1979.

Vegetation type and successional stage	State[a] Florida	Georgia	S. C.	N. C.	Virginia	Total
Everglades						
Grass-forb	1(1)	-	-	-	-	1(1)
Pine savanna						
Sapl.-poletimber	1(9)	-	-	-	-	1(9)
Southern scrub oak						
Shrub-seedling	2(2)	-	-	-	-	2(2)
Sand pine-southern scrub oak						
Sapl.-poletimber	1(1)	-	-	-	-	1(1)
Longleaf pine-scrub oak						
Sapl.-poletimber	1(1)	-	-	-	-	1(1)
Sawtimber	-	-	-	1(2)	-	1(2)
Bay swamp-pocosin						
Sapl.-poletimber	-	1(1)	-	-	-	1(1)
Longleaf pine-slash pine						
Grass-forb	1(2)	-	-	-	-	1(2)
Sapl.-poletimber	-	1(1)	-	-	-	1(1)
Sawtimber	1(4)	-	-	-	-	1(4)
Oak-gum-cypress						
Sapl.-poletimber	1(1)	-	-	-	-	1(1)
Live oak maritime						
Shrub-seedling	1(1)	-	-	-	-	1(1)
Sapl.-poletimber	2(2)	-	-	-	-	2(2)
Sawtimber	-	-	1(3)	-	-	1(3)
Elm-ash-cottonwood						
Grass-forb or Shrub-seedling	-	-	-	4(29)	-	4(29)
Sawtimber	-	-	-	-	1(3)	1(3)
Loblolly pine-shortleaf pine						
Grass-forb	-	1(1)	1(1)	-	-	2(2)
Shrub-seedling	-	-	-	1(1)	-	1(1)
Sapl.-poletimber	-	-	-	1(1)	-	1(1)
Virginia pine-pitch pine						
Shrub-seedling	-	-	-	-	1(1)	1(1)
Sapl.-poletimber	-	-	-	-	1(7)	1(7)
Mixed pine-hardwood						
Sawtimber	-	1(10)	-	1(23)	-	2(33)
Oak-hickory						
Grass-forb	-	-	-	1(5)	4(8)	5(13)
Shrub-seedling	-	-	-	-	1(4)	1(4)
Sapl.-poletimber	-	-	-	-	1(1)	1(1)
Sawtimber	-	-	-	3(5)	3(15)	6(20)
Totals	12(24)	4(13)	2(4)	12(66)	12(39)	42(146)

[a] Entries are listed as "Plots (Years censused)".

Appendix B.

Species Occurrence by Vegetation Type,
Habitat Suitability, and Season.

Species	Everglades	Tropical Hardwoods	Mangroves	Pine Savanna	Southern Scrub Oak	Sand P. - S. Scrub Oak	Longleaf P. - Scrub Oak	Sandhills Longleaf Pine	So. Mixed Mesic Hardwds	Bay Swamp - Pocosin	Pond Pine Pocosin	Longleaf P. - Slash P.	Oak - Gum - Cypress	Live Oak Maritime	Elm - Ash - Cottonwood	Loblolly P. - Shortleaf P.	Virginia P. - Pitch P.	Mixed Pine - Hardwood	Oak - Hickory	White Pine - Hemlock	Cove Hardwoods	Maple - Beech - Birch	Spruce - Fir	No. of optimal habitats	No. of vegetation types with optimal habitats
Pied-billed Grebe	P																							0	0
Brown Pelican		B	B*											B										1	1
Double-cr. Cormorant		B	B*										B*		B									1	1
American Anhinga	W	B	B*										B*		P									1	1
Magnificent Frigatebird			B*																					1	1
Great Blue Heron	W*	B*	B*	W						B*			P*	B*	P*									3	3
Green Heron	W*	B*	B*						B	B*			B*	B*	B*									6	4
Little Blue Heron	W*	B*	B*	W					B	P*	W		B*	B*	B*									3	3
Cattle Egret	W	B*	B*	W*					B	B*			B*	B*	B*									3	3
Reddish Egret	W	B*	B*																					1	1
Great Egret	W*	B*	B*	W					B	P*	W		B*	B*	B*									6	4
Snowy Egret	W*	B*	B*	W						P*	W		B*	B*	B									4	4
Louisiana Heron	W*	B*	B*	W						P*	W		B*	B*	B									3	3
Black-cr. Night Heron	W*	B*	B*	W					B	P*	W		B*	B*	B									3	3
Yellow-cr. Night Heron	W*	B	B*						B	P*	W		B*	B*	B*									2	1
Least Bittern	P*			P																				0	0
American Bittern	P*			P*																				1	1
Wood Stork	W*	B*	B*	W						P			B*	B										2	2
Glossy Ibis	W*	B*	B*	W						P	W		B*	B*	B									3	3
White Ibis	W*	B*	B*	W					B	P*	W		B*	B*	B*									4	4

[a] B — Breeding only, W — Winter only, P — Permanent Resident, * — At least one habitat rated "Suitable" or "Optimal"

Species	Everglades	Tropical Hardwoods	Mangroves	Pine Savanna	Southern Scrub Oak	Sand P. - S. Scrub Oak	Longleaf P. - Scrub Oak	Sandhills Longleaf Pine	So. Mixed Mesic Hardwood	Bay Swamp - Pocosin	Pond Pine Pocosin	Longleaf P. - Slash P.	Oak - Gum - Cypress	Live Oak Maritime	Elm - Ash - Cottonwood	Loblolly P. - Shortleaf P.	Virginia P. - Pitch P.	Mixed Pine - Hardwood	Oak - Hickory	White Pine - Hemlock	Cove Hardwoods	Maple - Beech - Birch	Spruce - Fir	No. of optimal habitats	No. of vegetation types with optimal habitats
Roseate Spoonbill	W	B*	B*																					1	1
Wood Duck													P*		P*									2	1
Hooded Merganser													B*		B									2	1
Turkey Vulture		P*		P*	P*	P*	P*	P	P*	P*	P	P*	P*	P	P*	P*	P	P*	P*		P	P		11	6
Black Vulture		P*		P*	P*	P*	P*	P	P*	P*	P	P	P*	P	P*	P*		P*	P*					9	5
White-tailed Kite				P*	P*	P						P												1	1
Swallow-tailed Kite		B		B*					B	B		B	B*		B*			B						1	1
Mississippi Kite									B*	B			B*		B*	B		B						1	1
Snail Kite	P*			P*																				1	1
Sharp-shinned Hawk		W*	W		W*	W	W	W	W*	W*	W*	W	W	W*	W*	W*	P	P*	P*	P	P*	B*		5	3
Cooper's Hawk		W*	W		P*	W	W	W	P*	P*	W*	W	P	W	P*	P*	P	P*	P*	P	P*	B*		3	2
Red-tailed Hawk		P		P	W	W	W	W	P*	P	W	W		P	P	W*	W	P*	P*	W	P	P		2	2
Red-shouldered Hawk	W	P*	P	P*					P*	P*	W	P	P*	P	P*									3	3
Broad-winged Hawk		W*	W						B*	B								B*	P*		B*	B		2	2
Swainson's Hawk		W																						0	0
Short-tailed Hawk		P*	P*	B					B	B			P*		P									4	3
Rough-legged Hawk														W		W		W*	W*					1	1
Golden Eagle																		W	W			P*	P*	1	1
Bald Eagle	P	P*	P	P*								B	P*	W	P	P*		P						1	1
Northern Harrier	W*	W		W	W	W	W	W	W	W	W	W	W*	W*	W*	W	W	W*	W*					1	1

[a] B — Breeding only, W — Winter only, P — Permanent Resident, * — At least one habitat rated "Suitable" or "Optimal"

Species	Everglades	Tropical Hardwoods	Mangroves	Pine Savanna	Southern Scrub Oak	Sand P. - S. Scrub Oak	Longleaf P. - Scrub Oak	Sandhills Longleaf Pine	So. Mixed Mesic Hardwoo	Bay Swamp - Pocosin	Pond Pine Pocosin	Longleaf P. - Slash P.	Oak - Gum - Cypress	Live Oak Maritime	Elm - Ash - Cottonwood	Loblolly P. - Shortleaf P.	Virginia P. - Pitch P.	Mixed Pine - Hardwood	Oak - Hickory	White Pine - Hemlock	Cove Hardwoods	Maple - Beech - Birch	Spruce - Fir	No. of optimal habitats	No. of vegetation types with optimal habitats
Osprey	P*	P*	P*	P*						P*	B	B	P*	P	P	B								1	1
Crested Caracara				P*	P																			1	1
Peregrine Falcon	W	W*	W	W										W*								B	B	0	0
Merlin	W	W*	W	W										W*										0	0
American Kestrel	W	W*		P*	P*	P*	W*	W*	W	W	W	P		W*		P*	P	P*	P*					9	6
Ruffed Grouse																	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	6	3
Common Bobwhite		P		P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P		P	P*		P		P*	P*	P*	P*		P			9	4
Ring-necked Pheasant														P		P	P	P*	P*					0	0
Wild Turkey		P		P	P*	P	P*	P*	P*	P		P*	P*	P*	P*	P*		P*	P*	W	P*	P*		2	2
Sandhill Crane	P	P		P*								P												1	1
Limpkin	P*			P						P*			P*											4	1
King Rail	P*			P									P		P									1	1
Clapper Rail														P										0	0
Virginia Rail	W												W		W									0	0
Sora	W*												W		W									1	1
Yellow Rail	W*												W		W									0	0
Black Rail	W												W		W									0	0
Purple Gallinule	P												P											0	0
Common Gallinule	P												P											0	0
American Coot	W																							0	0

[a] B — Breeding only, W — Winter only, P — Permanent Resident, * — At least one habitat rated "Suitable" or "Optimal"

Species	Everglades	Tropical Hardwoods	Mangroves	Pine Savanna	Southern Scrub Oak	Sand P. - S. Scrub Oak	Longleaf P. - Scrub Oak	Sandhills Longleaf Pine	So. Mixed Mesic Hardwoods	Bay Swamp - Pocosin	Pond Pine Pocosin	Longleaf P. - Slash P.	Oak - Gum - Cypress	Live Oak Maritime	Elm - Ash - Cottonwood	Loblolly P. - Shortleaf P.	Virginia P. - Pitch P.	Mixed Pine - Hardwood	Oak - Hickory	White Pine - Hemlock	Cove Hardwoods	Maple - Beech - Birch	Spruce - Fir	No. of optimal habitats	No. of vegetation types with optimal habitats
Killdeer				P																				0	0
American Woodcock		W							P*	P*	W	W	P*	W*	P*	W		P*	P*		B	B	B	6	3
Common Snipe	W*												W*		W*									0	0
Upland Sandpiper																B	B	B*	B*					2	2
White-crowned Pigeon		P*	P*		P																			2	2
Rock Dove				P	P	P	P	P	P			P		P	P	P	P	P	P					0	0
Mourning Dove		P*		P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P	P	P*	P	P*	P*	P*	P	P*	P*		P	P		7	4
Common Ground Dove		P*		P	P*	P*	P*	P						P*		P*		P						7	4
Mangrove Cuckoo		P*	P*																					2	2
Yellow-billed Cuckoo		B*	B*		B				B*	B*			B*	B*	B*			B	B*		B			8	4
Black-billed Cuckoo															B			B	B*		B*	B*		2	1
Smooth-billed Ani		P	P*		P																			0	0
Barn Owl	P*	P*		P*	P*	P	P	P	P	P*	P*	P*		P*		P*	P	P*	P*					5	5
Common Screech Owl		P*		P*	P	P	P*	P*	P*	P*	P	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P	P*	P*	P	P*	P*		4	4
Great Horned Owl		P		P*			P	P*	P*	P	P	P*	P	P*	P	P*	P	P*	P*	P*	P			2	2
Burrowing Owl				P*	P*	P	P																	1	1
Barred Owl		P*							P*	P*			P*		P*				P	P	P	P	P	3	3
Long-eared Owl																W*	P*	P*		P*			B	3	2
Short-eared Owl	W			W						W	W	W	W	W*	W	W		W	W					0	0
Saw-whet Owl																W*	W*	W		W			P*	2	2

[a] B — Breeding only, W — Winter only, P — Permanent Resident, * — At least one habitat rated "Suitable" or "Optimal"

Species	Everglades	Tropical Hardwoods	Mangroves	Pine Savanna	Southern Scrub Oak	Sand P. - S. Scrub Oak	Longleaf P. - Scrub Oak	Sandhills Longleaf Pine	So. Mixed Mesic Hardwo	Bay Swamp - Pocosin	Pond Pine Pocosin	Longleaf P. - Slash P.	Oak - Gum - Cypress	Live Oak Maritime	Elm - Ash - Cottonwood	Loblolly P. - Shortleaf P.	Virginia P. - Pitch P.	Mixed Pine - Hardwood	Oak - Hickory	White Pine - Hemlock	Cove Hardwoods	Maple - Beech - Birch	Spruce - Fir	No. of optimal habitats	No. of vegetation types with optimal habitats
Chuck-will's-widow		P*			P*	P*	P*	B	B*	P*	B	B		P*		P*		P*	B					3	3
Whip-poor-will		W*			W	W	W		W	P*	B		W	W*	P	P*	B*	P*	B*		B			2	2
Common Nighthawk		B		B	B*	B*	B*	B*				B		B										2	2
Chimney Swift									B				B		B				B	B	B	B	B	0	0
Ruby-throated Hummingbird		W*	W		P*	P	B		B*	P*	B	B	P*	B*	B*			B	B*		B*	B		4	2
Belted Kingfisher	P	P	P						P				P*	P	P*				P	P				0	0
Common Flicker		P*		P*	P	P	P	P	P*	P*	P*	P*	P	P*	P	P	P	P*	P*	P	P*			0	0
Pileated Woodpecker		P*	P						P*	P*	P	P	P*	P	P*	P	W	P*	P*	P	P*	P*	P	5	5
Red-bellied Woodpecker		P*	P*	P	P	P	P*	P*	P*	P*	P	P*	P*	P*	P*	P		P*	P*					5	5
Red-headed Woodpecker				P*	P	P	P*	P*	W	P*	B*	P*	P*	P	P*	P		P	P*					4	4
Yellow-bellied Sapsucker		W	W	W	W*	W	W	W	W*	W	W	W	W*	W	W*	W*	W	W*	P*	W	P	P*		4	4
Hairy Woodpecker		P			P	P	P	P	P*	P*	P	P*	P*	P	P*	P	P	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	5	5
Downy Woodpecker		P		P	P	P	P	P	P*	P*	P	P	P*	P*	P*	P*	P	P*	P*	P	P*	P		5	5
Red-cockaded Woodpecker				P*		P	P*	P*			P	P*				P*	P	P						3	3
Eastern Kingbird				B								B		B		B		B	B					0	0
Gray Kingbird		B*	B*											B*										2	2
Western Kingbird		W*																						0	0
Scissor-tailed Flycatcher		W*																						0	0
Great Crested Flycatcher		P*	P	B	P	B	B*	B*	B*	P*	B*	P*	P*	P*	B*	B*	B	B*	B*		B*			6	6
Eastern Phoebe		W*	W	W*	W	W	W	W	W*	W*	W	W	P*	W*	P*	W*	W	W*	P*	P	P	B		5	5

[a] B — Breeding only, W — Winter only, P — Permanent Resident, * — At least one habitat rated "Suitable" or "Optimal"

Species	Everglades	Tropical Hardwoods	Mangroves	Pine Savanna	Southern Scrub Oak	Sand P. - S. Scrub Oak	Longleaf P. - Scrub Oak	Sandhills Longleaf Pine	So. Mixed Mesic Hardwoods	Bay Swamp - Pocosin	Pond Pine Pocosin	Longleaf P. - Slash P.	Oak - Gum - Cypress	Live Oak Maritime	Elm - Ash - Cottonwood	Loblolly P. - Shortleaf P.	Virginia P. - Pitch P.	Mixed Pine - Hardwood	Oak - Hickory	White Pine - Hemlock	Cove Hardwoods	Maple - Beech - Birch	Spruce - Fir	No. of optimal habitats	No. of vegetation types with optimal habitats
Acadian Flycatcher									B*	B*			B*		B*			B	B*	B*	B*			6	4
Willow Flycatcher															B*				B*					0	0
Alder Flycatcher																						B	B*	0	0
Least Flycatcher		W*			W	W									B		B		B*	B	B	B*		1	1
Eastern Pewee				B	B	B	B*	B*	B*	B*	B	B*	B	B	B*	B*	B	B*	B*		B*	B		6	6
Olive-sided Flycatcher																				B			B*	0	0
Horned Lark															P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P		0	0
Tree Swallow	W*	W*	W*	W						W*	W		W	W*	B									4	3
Bank Swallow																		B	B					0	0
Rough-winged Swallow	W*	W	W																					0	0
Barn Swallow							B	B		B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B		0	0
Cliff Swallow															B	B	B	B	B					0	0
Purple Martin	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B		0	0
Blue Jay		P*			P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P	P*	P	P*	P	P*	P*		P*	P		3	3
Scrub Jay					P*	P*	P*							P*										1	1
Northern Raven																	P	P	P	P	P	P*	P*	1	1
American Crow		P*			P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*		2	2
Fish Crow	P*	P	P*		P*	P			P	P*	P*	P	P*	P*	P	P*		P*						5	3
Black-capped Chickadee																	W	P	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	2	2
Carolina Chickadee					P	P	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*		3	3

[a] B — Breeding only, W — Winter only, P — Permanent Resident, * — At least one habitat rated "Suitable" or "Optimal"

Species	Everglades	Tropical Hardwoods	Mangroves	Pine Savanna	Southern Scrub Oak	Sand P. - S. Scrub Oak	Longleaf P. - Scrub Oak	Sandhills Longleaf Pine	So. Mixed Mesic Hardwood	Bay Swamp - Pocosin	Pond Pine Pocosin	Longleaf P. - Slash P.	Oak - Gum - Cypress	Live Oak Maritime	Elm - Ash - Cottonwood	Loblolly P. - Shortleaf P.	Virginia P. - Pitch P.	Mixed Pine - Hardwood	Oak - Hickory	White Pine - Hemlock	Cove Hardwoods	Maple - Beech - Birch	Spruce - Fir	No. of optimal habitats	No. of vegetation types with optimal habitats
Tufted Titmouse		P			P*	P	P	P	P*	P*	P	P	P*	P	P*	P*	W	P*	P*		P*	P*		5	5
White-breasted Nuthatch									P*	P		P	P*		P*	P		P	P*	P	P*	P*		3	3
Red-breasted Nuthatch							W	W*			W	W*				W*	P*	W*		P*			P*	6	4
Brown-headed Nuthatch				P*		P*	P*	P*			P*	P*				P*	P	P						4	4
Brown Creeper				W	W	W	W*	W*	W	W	W	W*	W*	W	W*	W*	W*	W*	W*	P*	W*	P	P*	3	3
House Wren		W*	W	W*	W*	W*	W*	W	W	W*	W*	W*	W	W	W	W		W	P					3	3
Winter Wren									W*	W*	W*		W*	W	W*	W*	W	W*	W*	P*	P*	P	P*	7	4
Bewick's Wren					W													W	P			B		0	0
Carolina Wren		P*	P		P*	P*	P*	P	P*	P*	P*	P	P*	P*	P*	P*	P	P*	P*	P	P*	P		19	10
Marsh Wren	W			W									P											0	0
Sedge Wren	W*			W						W	W	W	W		W									0	0
Northern Mockingbird		P		P	P	P	P		P					P		W	W	P	P					0	0
Gray Catbird		W*	W*		W*	W	W		P*	P*	P*		P*	P*	P*			P	B	B	B*	B*	B*	10	5
Brown Thrasher				P*	P*	P*	P*		P*	P	P	P	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	B	B	B	B	5	5
American Robin		W*	W		W				W*	W*	W*		W*	W*	W*	B	B	P	P	B		B*	B*	6	4
Wood Thrush									B*	B			B*	B	B*	B*		B*	B*	B*	B*	B		4	4
Hermit Thrush		W*			W	W	W		W*	W*	W*	W	W*	W*	W*	W*	W	W*	W*	W	W		B*	9	5
Swainson's Thrush																							B*	1	1
Veery																			B	B*	B*	B*	B*	1	1
Eastern Bluebird				P*	P*	P*	P*	P*				P*				P*		P	P					3	1

[a] B — Breeding only, W — Winter only, P — Permanent Resident, * — At least one habitat rated "Suitable" or "Optimal"

Species[a]	Everglades	Tropical Hardwoods	Mangroves	Pine Savanna	Southern Scrub Oak	Sand P. - S. Scrub Oak	Longleaf P. - Scrub Oak	Sandhills Longleaf Pine	So. Mixed Mesic Hardwoods	Bay Swamp - Pocosin	Pond Pine Pocosin	Longleaf P. - Slash P.	Oak - Gum - Cypress	Live Oak Maritime	Elm - Ash - Cottonwood	Loblolly P. - Shortleaf P.	Virginia P. - Pitch P.	Mixed Pine - Hardwood	Oak - Hickory	White Pine - Hemlock	Cove Hardwoods	Maple - Beech - Birch	Spruce - Fir	No. of optimal habitats	No. of vegetation types with optimal habitats
Blue-gray Gnatcatcher		P*	W		P*	W*	W		P*	P*	W	B	P*	P*	P*	W*		P*	B*		B			11	7
Golden-crowned Kinglet							W	W*	W		W	W*	W	W		W*	W*	W*	W	P*			P*	7	4
Ruby-crowned Kinglet			W*	W*	W	W*	W*	W*	W*	W*	W*	W*	W*	W*	W*	W*	W*	W*	W*	W	W			7	4
Water Pipit													W*		W*									0	0
Cedar Waxwing		W	W		W				W*	W*			W	W*	P*			W	P*	B*	B	B	B*	3	2
Loggerhead Shrike				P*																				0	0
European Starling		W							W	W*	W		W*	W	W*	W		P	P*					0	0
White-eyed Vireo	P*	P*	P*		P*	P	P		P*	P*	P*		P*	P	P*				B					5	5
Yellow-throated Vireo		W*					B		B*	B			B*		B*			B	B*		B			2	2
Solitary Vireo		W*	W		W*	W*	P*	W	W*	W*	W	W*	W	W*	W	P*	B	P*	B	B*	B*	B*	B*	8	8
Black-whiskered Vireo		B*	B*																					3	2
Red-eyed Vireo							B		B*	B*			B*	B	B*	B		B*	B*		B*	B		4	4
Warbling Vireo															B*				B					0	0
Black-and-white Warbler		W*	W		W	W	W		P*	P*	W		P*	W*	P*			P*	B*		B*	B*		6	6
Prothonotary Warbler									B	B*	B		B*		B*									1	1
Swainson's Warbler									B*	B*	B		B*		B*					B*	B*			1	1
Worm-eating Warbler		W*							B	B			B*		B			B	B*	B	B*			3	2
Golden-winged Warbler																		B	B*		B*	B*		1	1
Blue-winged Warbler															B			B	B*		B			1	1
Bachman's Warbler										B*	B		B*		B*									1	1

[a] B — Breeding only, W — Winter only, P — Permanent Resident, * — At least one habitat rated "Suitable" or "Optimal"

Species occurrence by vegetati [a]

Species	Everglades	Tropical Hardwoods	Mangroves	Pine Savanna	Southern Scrub Oak	Sand P. - S. Scrub Oak	Longleaf P. - Scrub Oak	Sandhills Longleaf Pine	So. Mixed Mesic Hardwoods	Bay Swamp - Pocosin	Pond Pine Pocosin	Longleaf P. - Slash P.	Oak - Gum - Cypress	Live Oak Maritime	Elm - Ash - Cottonwood	Loblolly P. - Shortleaf P.	Virginia P. - Pitch P.	Mixed Pine - Hardwood	Oak - Hickory	White Pine - Hemlock	Cove Hardwoods	Maple - Beech - Birch	Spruce - Fir	No. of optimal habitats	No. of vegetation types with optimal habitats
Orange-crowned Warbler		W*	W		W*	W	W		W	W*	W		W*	W*	W*			W						3	3
Nashville Warbler																							B*	1	1
Northern Parula Warbler		W*	W		W				B*	B*			P*	P*	B*			B*	B	B*	B*	B*		5	5
Yellow Warbler		P*	P*		W										B*				B		B	B		2	1
Magnolia Warbler		W*	W																	B			B*	3	2
Cape May Warbler		W*	W																					1	1
Black-thr. Blue Warbler		W*	W																B	B*	B*	B*	B*	3	3
Yellow-rumped Warbler		W*	W*	W	W*	W*	W*	W	W*	W*	W*	W	W*	W*	W*	W*	W	W*	W	W	W			14	6
Black-thr. Green Warbler		W*	W							B	B*		B*	B	B*		B	B*	B	B*	B*	B*	B*	4	4
Cerulean Warbler															B*				B*		B*	B		1	1
Blackburnian Warbler																			B	B*	B	B*	B*	2	2
Yellow-throated Warbler		W*	W		W	W	W*	W	P	P*	P	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	B	P*	B	B				4	4
Chestnut-sided Warbler																		B*	B*	B	B*	B*	B*	2	2
Pine Warbler				P*		P*	P*	P*			P	P*				P*	P	P*						4	4
Prairie Warbler		W*	P*	W*	W*	W*	P*	P	B*	P*	P*	P	P*	P*	P	P*	B	P*	B*		B			8	6
Palm Warbler	W	W*	W*	W*	W*	W*	W*	W	W	W*	W	W		W*		W*	W	W*	W					5	5
Overbird		W*			W*				W*	P*	W		P*	W*	P	P		P*	P*		B*	B*		9	6
Northern Waterthrush		W*	W*							W			W*		W					B			B	2	1
Louisiana Waterthrush									B*				B		B*			B	B*	B	B*			0	0
Kentucky Warbler									B	B			B*		B*			B	B*		B			2	2

[a] B — Breeding only, W — Winter only, P — Permanent Resident, * — At least one habitat rated "Suitable" or "Optimal"

Species	Everglades	Tropical Hardwoods	Mangroves	Pine Savanna	Southern Scrub Oak	Sand P. - S. Scrub Oak	Longleaf P. - Scrub Oak	Sandhills Longleaf Pine	So. Mixed Mesic Hardwoods	Bay Swamp - Pocosin	Pond Pine Pocosin	Longleaf P. - Slash P.	Oak - Gum - Cypress	Live Oak Maritime	Elm - Ash - Cottonwood	Loblolly P. - Shortleaf P.	Virginia P. - Pitch P.	Mixed Pine - Hardwood	Oak - Hickory	White Pine - Hemlock	Cove Hardwoods	Maple - Beech - Birch	Spruce - Fir	No. of optimal habitats	No. of vegetation types with optimal habitats
Mourning Warbler																					B	B*	B*	0	0
Common Yellowthroat	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P	P		P	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*		P*	P*		B	B	B	5	5
Yellow-breasted Chat		W*	W*		W*	W*	P		B	W	B	B	B*	P*	P*	B*		P*	P*		B	B		3	3
Hooded Warbler									B*	B*			B*	B	B*	B*		B*	B*		B*	B*		4	4
Canada Warbler																				B*	B*	B*	B*	2	2
American Redstart		W*	W*						B*				P*		P*				B*		B*			3	3
House Sparrow				P	P	P	P	P	P			P		P	P	P	P	P	P					0	0
Bobolink																B		B	B*					0	0
Eastern Meadowlark	P*	P		P*	P	P	P	P	P			P	P	P	P	P*	P*	P*	P*					4	4
Red-winged Blackbird	P*	P*	P*	P*	P	P	P	P	P	P*	P*	P	P*	P*	P*	P*	P	P*	P*					8	6
Orchard Oriole					B	B	B							B	B				B					0	0
Spotted Oriole				P								P												0	0
Northern Oriole		W*													B				P					0	0
Rusty Blackbird									W	W*	W		W*		W*			W	W					2	2
Brewer's Blackbird																W		W	W					0	0
Boat-tailed Grackle	P*									P			P	P*	P									2	2
Common Grackle			W	B*	W	B	B	B	W*	W*	P*	B	P*	P*	W*	P*	B	P*	W	B				0	0
Brown-headed Cowbird		W			P	B	B	B	P	P*	P	B	P	P	P*	P*	B	P*	P*		B	B		3	1
Scarlet Tanager															B			B*	B*		B*	B*		2	2
Summer Tanager		B		B	B	B	B*	B*	B*	B		B*	B	B*	B	B*		B*	B*		B			4	4

[a] B — Breeding only, W — Winter only, P — Permanent Resident, * — At least one habitat rated "Suitable" or "Optimal"

Species	Everglades	Tropical Hardwoods	Mangroves	Pine Savanna	Southern Scrub Oak	Sand P. - S. Scrub Oak	Longleaf P. - Scrub Oak	Sandhills Longleaf Pine	So. Mixed Mesic Hardwo	Bay Swamp - Pocosin	Pond Pine Pocosin	Longleaf P. - Slash P.	Oak - Gum - Cypress	Live Oak Maritime	Elm - Ash - Cottonwood	Loblolly P. - Shortleaf P.	Virginia P. - Pitch P.	Mixed Pine - Hardwood	Oak - Hickory	White Pine - Hemlock	Cove Hardwoods	Maple - Beech - Birch	Spruce - Fir	No. of optimal habitats	No. of vegetation types with optimal habitats
Northern Cardinal		P*	P	P	P*	P	P*	P	P*	P*	P	P	P*	P*	P*	P*	P	P*	P*		P	P		11	4
Rose-breasted Grosbeak																			B*	B	B*	B*	B	1	1
Blue Grosbeak					B*	B			B*	B*			B		B	B*		B*	B*					1	1
Indigo Bunting		W*	W		P*	W	B		B*	P		B*	P	P	P	B*		B*	B*		B	B		2	2
Painted Bunting		W*	P		P*	W			B	P			P	P*	P									5	3
Dickcissel		W			W									W		B	B	B	P*					1	1
Evening Grosbeak							W	W		W	W	W			W	W*	W*	W*	W	W*	W	W	W*	3	3
Purple Finch							W	W	W	W*	W	W	W*	W	W*	W*	W*	W*	W*	W	W	W	P*	3	3
House Finch																W		W	W*					0	0
Pine Siskin							W	W	W	W	W	W	W*	W	W*	W*	W*	W*	W	W*	W	W	P*	5	5
American Goldfinch		W*	W	W	W	W	W	W	W*	W	W	W	W*	W	P*	W*	W*	P*	P*		P	P		5	4
Red Crossbill							W	W				W				P*	P*	W		P*			P*	1	1
White-winged Crossbill																	W			W			W*	1	1
Rufous-sided Towhee		P*	P	P	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*		P*	B	B	18	9
Savannah Sparrow	W	W*		W*	W	W	W	W	W	W	W	W	W*	W*	W*	W*	W	P*	P*					1	1
Grasshopper Sparrow	W	W*		P*	W	W	W	W	W	W	W	W*	W	W	W	P*	B	P*	P*					4	4
Henslow's Sparrow				W*					W	W	W	W*				P	B	P	P*					4	2
Le Conte's Sparrow				W			W	W		W	W	W*	W		W	W*		W*	W*					3	3
Sharp-tailed Sparrow	W													P										0	0
Seaside Sparrow	P													P										0	0

[a] B — Breeding only, W — Winter only, P — Permanent Resident, * — At least one habitat rated "Suitable" or "Optimal"

Species occurrence by vegetation type[a]

Species	Everglades	Tropical Hardwoods	Mangroves	Pine Savanna	Southern Scrub Oak	Sand P. - S. Scrub Oak	Longleaf P. - Scrub Oak	Sandhills Longleaf Pine	So. Mixed Mesic Hardwoods	Bay Swamp - Pocosin	Pond Pine Pocosin	Longleaf P. - Slash P.	Oak - Gum - Cypress	Live Oak Maritime	Elm - Ash - Cottonwood	Loblolly P. - Shortleaf P.	Virginia P. - Pitch P.	Mixed Pine - Hardwood	Oak - Hickory	White Pine - Hemlock	Cove Hardwoods	Maple - Beech - Birch	Spruce - Fir	No. of optimal habitats	No. of vegetation types with optimal habitats
Vesper Sparrow				W	W	W	W*	W*	W					W		W*	B	P*	P*			B*	B	0	0
Bachman's Sparrow				P*	W	P	P*	P*				P*		W		P*	B	P*	P					8	3
Northern Junco							W*	W*	W	W	W	W*		W		W*	W*	W*	P	P*	P*	P*	P*	4	4
American Tree Sparrow																W	W	W*	W*			W		2	2
Chipping Sparrow		W		W*	W*	W*	P*	P*	W			P		W		P*		P	P					0	0
Field Sparrow		W		W	W*	W*	P*	P*	W*			P*		P*	P*	P*	P*	P*	P*		P	B		6	3
White-crowned Sparrow				W	W											W	W	W*	W*					0	0
White-throated Sparrow					W	W	W	W	W*	W*	W	W	W*	W*	W*	W	W	W*	W*		W*	W		3	3
Fox Sparrow							W	W	W*	W*	W*	W	W	W*	W*	W*	W	W*	W	W				3	3
Lincoln's Sparrow		W		W					W	W	W	W	W		W*									0	0
Swamp Sparrow	W*		W	W						W	W	W	W*		W*			W						0	0
Song Sparrow	W		W	W					W*	W*	W*	W	W	W	P*	W*	W	P*	P*		B	B*	B*	0	0
Lapland Longspur														W										0	0
Snow Bunting														W									W	0	0

---

[a] B — Breeding only, W — Winter only, P — Permanent Resident, * — At least one habitat rated "Suitable" or "Optimal"

Summary of Published Bird Density Information in the Southe...
...censuses and winter bird population studies, 1947-1979.

Breeding: pairs/40 ha; Winter: birds/40 ha

Species	Season	Total sample[a]			Density range[b]	
		N	Mean	S. E.	Low	High
Pied-billed Grebe	Winter	3	1.7	0.7	1(1)	3(1)
American Anhinga	Breeding	5	0.3	0.2	1(1)	-
	Winter	3	2.3	0.7	1(1)	3(1)
Great Blue Heron	Breeding	9	Visitor in nine habitats			
	Winter	11	1.0	0.1	0.5(1)	2(1)
Green Heron	Breeding	26	8.4	1.6	0.6(2)	13(1)
	Winter	6	2.7	0.8	1(1)	5(1)
Little Blue Heron	Breeding	3	Visitor in two habitats			
	Winter	3	1.0	0	1(2)	-
Cattle Egret	Winter	12	2.1	0.6	0.5(2)	2.5(2)
Great Egret	Breeding	5	Visitor in four habitats			
	Winter	8	1.3	0.3	0.5(1)	3(1)
Snowy Egret	Breeding	2	Visitor in two habitats			
	Winter	2	1.0	0	1(2)	-
Louisiana Heron	Breeding	1	2.0	0	1(2)	-
	Winter	2	0.8	0.25	0.5(1)	1(1)
Black-cr. Night Heron	Breeding	2	Visitor in one habitat			
	Winter	4	9.0	5.8	1(1)	26(1)
Yellow-cr. Night Heron	Breeding	2	Visitor in two habitats			
Least Bittern	Breeding	2	4.5	2.5	4.5(2)	-
American Bittern	Breeding	1	Visitor in one habitat			
	Winter	1	5.0	0	5(1)	-
Wood Stork	Winter	1	1.0	0	1(1)	-
White Ibis	Breeding	2	Visitor in two habitats			
	Winter	3	6.3	3.9	1(1)	14(1)
Mallard	Winter	5	4.4	2.3	4(1)	4.5(4)
Black Duck	Winter	4	1.8	0.75	1(1)	2(3)
Mottled Duck	Breeding	1	Visitor in one habitat			
	Winter	2	1.2	0.75	0.5(1)	2(1)
Gadwall	Winter	2	1.0	0	1(1)	-
*Blue-winged Teal	Breeding	1	30.0	0	-	30(1)
American Wigeon	Winter	1	1.0	0	1(1)	-
Wood Duck	Breeding	22	4.1	1.4	1.6(2)	13(3)
	Winter	5	2.1	0.8	0.5(1)	4(1)
Hooded Merganser	Winter	1	1.0	0	1(1)	-
Turkey Vulture	Breeding	24	Visitor in 12 habitats			
	Winter	48	1.4	0.22	0.5(3)	6(1)
Black Vulture	Breeding	5	Visitor in four habitats			
	Winter	17	1.7	0.33	0.5(1)	4(2)
Sharp-shinned Hawk	Breeding	2	0.3	0.2	0.5(1)	-
	Winter	14	1.6	0.4	0.5(2)	3.5(4)
Cooper's Hawk	Breeding	9	0.4	0.3	Visit(4)	1(3)
	Winter	8	0.6	0.1	0.5(1)	1(2)
Red-tailed Hawk	Breeding	30	0.2	0.1	Visit(7)	1(1)
	Winter	33	0.8	0.1	0.5(6)	3(1)
Red-shouldered Hawk	Breeding	22	0.7	0.23	0.5(3)	3.5(2)
	Winter	31	1.4	0.24	0.5(4)	5(1)
Broad-winged Hawk	Breeding	31	0.9	0.2	1(6)	3(1)
Swainson's Hawk	Winter	1	1.0	0	1(1)	-
Bald Eagle	Breeding	1	Visitor in one habitat			
Northern Harrier	Winter	12	1.2	0.4	0.5(2)	2.5(2)
Osprey	Breeding	1	Visitor in one habitat			
	Winter	2	0.5	0	0.5(1)	-
Merlin	Winter	5	0.6	0.1	0.5(4)	1(1)
American Kestrel	Breeding	13	0.8	0.4	0.6(2)	1.7(3)
	Winter	36	2.4	0.4	0.5(9)	6.2(4)
Ruffed Grouse	Breeding	13	2.1	1.3	0.5(5)	8(3)
	Winter	4	3.0	2.3	1(1)	3.7(3)
Common Bobwhite	Breeding	109	6.7	1.0	1(4)	12(5)
	Winter	38	6.0	1.1	1(1)	15(2)
Wild Turkey	Breeding	8	0.7	0.23	0.8(2)	2(1)
	Winter	2	0.8	0.25	0.8(2)	-
Sandhill Crane	Breeding	1	Visitor in one habitat			
	Winter	3	0.8	0.17	0.5(1)	1(2)
Limpkin	Breeding	3	0.2	0.13	0.5(1)	-
	Winter	2	2.0	1.0	1(1)	3(1)
King Rail	Breeding	1	1.0	0	1(1)	-
	Winter	1	4.0	0	4(1)	-
Virginia Rail	Breeding	1	15.0	0	15(1 small plot)	
Sora	Winter	1	1.0	0	1(1)	-
Purple Gallinule	Breeding	4	0.3	0.22	1(1)	-
	Winter	1	4.0	0	4(1)	-
Common Gallinule	Breeding	1	12.0	0	12(1 small plot)	
	Winter	3	1.2	0.44	0.5(1)	2(1)
American Coot	Winter	4	3.1	1.0	0.5(1)	5(1)
Killdeer	Breeding	6	0.7	0.2	1(4)	-
	Winter	21	14.9	8.1	2.5(13)	66(4)
American Woodcock	Breeding	15	8.8	1.8	0.6(2)	7.5(8)
	Winter	4	1.0	0	1(3)	-
Common Snipe	Winter	9	2.7	1.0	0.5(1)	7.5(2)
Greater Yellowlegs	Winter	1	1.0	0	1(1)	-
Lesser Yellowlegs	Winter	1	0.5	0	0.5(1)	-
Herring Gull	Winter	2	Visitor in two habitats			
Ring-billed Gull	Breeding	1	Visitor in one habitat			
	Winter	11	36.2	19.2	0.5(3)	127(3)
Black-headed Gull	Winter	1	1.0	0	1(1)	-
Rock Dove	Winter	13	28.5	8.6	1(1)	85(2)
White-winged Dove	Winter	1	1.0	0	1(1)	-
Mourning Dove	Breeding	112	7.3	1.0	0.7(13)	11(3)
	Winter	93	24.6	3.8	1(1)	70(9)
Common Ground Dove	Breeding	6	2.7	1.5	1(2)	6(2)
	Winter	10	4.0	1.4	1(2)	6(4)
Yellow-billed Cuckoo	Breeding	101	6.1	0.6	0.4(3)	8.5(6)
Black-billed Cuckoo	Breeding	4	Visitor in two habitats			
Smooth-billed Ani	Winter	3	16.0	4.0	16(3)	-
Barn Owl	Breeding	2	1.0	0	1(2)	-
	Winter	1	1.0	0	1(1)	-
Common Screech Owl	Breeding	60	2.3	0.4	Visit(4)	2.8(5)
	Winter	16	2.1	0.27	0.5(1)	2.5(11)
Great Horned Owl	Breeding	26	0.4	0.1	0.3(18)	1(1)
	Winter	13	1.0		1(13 plots, 5 habitats)	
Barred Owl	Breeding	50	1.3	0.17	Visit(3)	1.7(28)
	Winter	28	1.9	0.2	1(1)	2.4(17)
Short-eared Owl	Winter	1	4.0	0	4(1)	-
Saw-whet Owl	Breeding	1	Visitor in one habitat			
Chuck-will's-widow	Breeding	28	2.7	0.63	0.3(2)	7(1)
	Winter	2	0.5	0	0.5(1)	-
Whip-poor-will	Breeding	32	2.2	0.25	1.9(6)	3.7(3)
	Winter	6	1.1	0.2	0.5(1)	2(1)
Common Nighthawk	Breeding	14	1.2	0.6	Visit(5)	3.5(4)
Chimney Swift	Breeding	51	0.8	0.4	Visit(16)	14(2)
Ruby-thr. Hummingbird	Breeding	64	3.8	0.53	Visit(7)	5.4(5)
	Winter	6	3.0	0.8	0.5(1)	4.2(4)
Belted Kingfisher	Breeding	15	0.2	0.06	Visit(6)	0.6(2)
	Winter	15	1.6	0.4	0.5(1)	5(1)
Common Flicker	Breeding	127	4.2	0.44	0.5(5)	6(4)
	Winter	68	3.5	0.7	0.5(14)	10(3)
Pileated Woodpecker	Breeding	89	2.1	0.26	0.5(1)	7.2(10)
	Winter	49	2.4	0.24	0.6(2)	5.5(2)
Red-bellied Woodpecker	Breeding	116	6.9	0.5	1(2)	12(4)
	Winter	84	5.6	0.55	0.5(5)	26(1)
Red-headed Woodpecker	Breeding	16	2.3	0.43	1(1)	4(2)
	Winter	4	1.8	1.1	0.5(2)	5(1)
Yellow-bellied Sapsucker	Breeding	1	Visitor in one habitat			
	Winter	59	3.2	0.43	0.5(1)	16(1)
Hairy Woodpecker	Breeding	73	3.2	0.36	0.7(3)	10(2)
	Winter	43	2.2	0.24	1(1)	5(3)
Downy Woodpecker	Breeding	134	4.2	0.36	0.3(4)	8.7(3)
	Winter	92	2.8	0.21	0.6(8)	8(1)

Species	Season	Total sample[a]			Density range[b]	
		N	Mean	S. E.	Low	High
		Breeding: pairs/40 ha; Winter: birds/40 ha				
Red-cockaded Woodpecker	Breeding	4	1.0	0.39	0.6(2)	1.5(2)
	Winter	1	2.0	0	2(1)	-
Eastern Kingbird	Breeding	25	3.8	1.1	Visit(3)	10(3)
Gray Kingbird	Breeding	1	Visitor in one habitat			
Great Crested Flycatcher	Breeding	135	5.6	0.56	2(3)	25(4)
	Winter	4	2.4	1.5	0.5(1)	7.3(6)
Eastern Phoebe	Breeding	25	4.8	1.1	0.6(2)	9(2)
	Winter	36	2.3	0.6	1(1)	14(2)
Acadian Flycatcher	Breeding	102	14.5	1.45	1(1)	43(10)
*Willow Flycatcher	Breeding	22	31.9	3.8	0.7(3)	39(18)
*Least Flycatcher	Breeding	3	10.0	5.0	Visit(1)	15(2)
	Winter	3	1.0	0	1(3)	-
Eastern Wood Pewee	Breeding	98	7.4	0.52	1.4(3)	11(3)
Horned Lark	Breeding	6	1.8	0.17	1.8(6)	-
	Winter	20	36.2	13.7	3.7(10)	96(7)
Tree Swallow	Winter	11	11.4	2.3	1(1)	17(4)
Rough-winged Swallow	Breeding	26	0.1	0.03	Visit(6)	0.2(9)
Barn Swallow	Breeding	33	0.7	0.43	Visit(7)	10(2)
Purple Martin	Breeding	10	Visitor in nine habitats			
	Winter	1	1.0	0	1(1)	-
Blue Jay	Breeding	138	6.8	0.47	1(1)	16(1)
	Winter	86	9.6	1.5	0.5(4)	62(1)
Scrub Jay	Breeding	3	6.7	1.7	5(1)	7.5(2)
	Winter	3	25.0	2.9	20(1)	28(2)
Northern Raven	Breeding	7	Visitor in four habitats			
	Winter	1	0.5	0	0.5(1)	-
American Crow	Breeding	94	1.7	0.36	0.3(8)	8(1)
	Winter	97	26.4	4.5	1(1)	66(29)
Fish Crow	Breeding	34	0.6	0.4	0.4(3)	13(1)
	Winter	27	10.9	4.3	0.4(3)	68(3)
Black-capped Chickadee	Breeding	5	2.8	1.5	Visit(2)	7(1)
	Winter	2	4.0	1.0	3(1)	5(1)
Carolina Chickadee	Breeding	137	9.2	0.6	1(2)	16(10)
	Winter	83	11.8	1.2	1(1)	24(1)
Tufted Titmouse	Breeding	143	12.1	0.7	1(1)	23(5)
	Winter	87	10.2	1.0	0.5(1)	20(1)
White-breasted Nuthatch	Breeding	79	4.7	0.5	1(1)	6.5(25)
	Winter	53	3.3	0.28	1(1)	4.4(17)
Red-breasted Nuthatch	Breeding	5	14.4	2.3	10(1)	17(2)
	Winter	21	3.2	1.0	0.5(1)	3.8(13)
Brown-headed Nuthatch	Breeding	18	4.5	1.5	1(1)	12(2)
	Winter	9	2.7	0.7	1(1)	5.5(2)
Brown Creeper	Breeding	10	5.4	1.4	Visit(1)	8(2)
	Winter	53	2.5	0.27	1(1)	7(1)
House Wren	Breeding	14	7.9	2.1	1(1)	16(2)
	Winter	14	5.0	1.8	0.5(1)	5.5(2)
Winter Wren	Breeding	3	22.7	11.3	Visit(1)	34(2)
	Winter	36	2.8	0.46	1(6)	5.3(3)
Bewick's Wren	Winter	1	0.5	0	0.5(1)	-
Carolina Wren	Breeding	155	16.8	1.2	1(1)	43(3)
	Winter	93	6.0	0.84	1(1)	48(1)
Marsh Wren	Winter	1	5.0	0	5(1)	-
Northern Mockingbird	Breeding	62	5.0	0.9	0.6(11)	22(1)
	Winter	56	5.8	1.0	0.5(2)	18(2)
*Gray Catbird	Breeding	89	17.0	2.9	1(1)	67(18)
	Winter	11	20.4	5.9	1(2)	53(1)
*Brown Thrasher	Breeding	97	6.0	0.8	0.6(2)	22(13)
	Winter	26	5.3	1.2	0.5(1)	18(3)
American Robin	Breeding	101	14.2	2.8	0.5(16)	12(2)
	Winter	94	18.7	4.6	0.5(1)	190(2)
Wood Thrush	Breeding	114	14.2	1.0	1.0(2)	41(3)
Hermit Thrush	Winter	59	2.9	0.32	0.5(1)	8.5(2)
Veery	Breeding	9	12.9	3.7	Visit(2)	20(1)
Eastern Bluebird	Breeding	28	3.2	0.5	0.6(2)	6(2)
	Winter	43	3.8	0.82	0.8(10)	13(1)
Blue-gray Gnatcatcher	Breeding	96	10.0	1.3	0.7(3)	37(3)
	Winter	18	20.7	6.8	1(4)	98(1)

Species	Season	Total sample[a]			Density range[b]	
		N	Mean	S. E.	Low	High
		Breeding: pairs/40 ha; Winter: birds/40 ha				
Golden-crowned Kinglet	Breeding	2	50.0	0	-	50(2)
	Winter	61	5.9	1.2	0.5(1)	28(1)
Ruby-crowned Kinglet	Winter	52	11.1	2.2	0.5(1)	70(1)
Water Pipit	Winter	5	19.0	18.2	0.8(2)	92(1)
*Cedar Waxwing	Breeding	9	2.5	1.6	1(2)	15(1)
	Winter	22	33.3	18.1	3(2)	147(3)
Loggerhead Shrike	Breeding	8	0.7	0.6	Visit(5)	5(1)
	Winter	25	2.3	0.5	0.5(10)	6.2(4)
European Starling	Breeding	39	5.8	1.3	0.7(12)	28(2)
	Winter	61	85.6	16.4	2(2)	148(28)
White-eyed Vireo	Breeding	65	10.7	1.4	2(1)	28(5)
	Winter	17	4.8	1.2	1(4)	17(1)
Bell's Vireo	Breeding	1	1.0	0	1(1)	-
Yellow-throated Vireo	Breeding	83	5.1	0.51	0.3(2)	9.8(4)
Solitary Vireo	Breeding	24	8.6	2.3	3.0(1)	28(2)
	Winter	12	1.6	0.67	0.5(1)	9(1)
Black-whiskered Vireo	Breeding	1	Visitor in one habitat			
Red-eyed Vireo	Breeding	142	22.7	1.7	1(1)	60(11)
Black-and-white Warbler	Breeding	58	10.4	1.3	1(3)	19(11)
	Winter	17	3.6	0.94	1(2)	10(2)
Prothonotary Warbler	Breeding	14	14.9	3.9	6(2)	28(4)
Swainson's Warbler	Breeding	14	8.5	2.1	3(2)	17(2)
Worm-eating Warbler	Breeding	26	13.8	2.8	2.9(4)	30(10)
Golden-winged Warbler	Breeding	2	14.5	5.5	-	14(2)
Blue-winged Warbler	Breeding	1	Visitor in one habitat			
Orange-crowned Warbler	Winter	12	1.4	0.37	1(3)	5(1)
Northern Parula Warbler	Breeding	71	13.7	2.5	3.4(5)	44(2)
	Winter	2	11.0	1.0	-	12(1)
*Yellow Warbler	Breeding	26	40.4	6.2	1(1)	57(18)
Black-thr. Blue Warbler	Breeding	14	35.5	9.3	3(1)	56(2)
Yellow-rumped Warbler	Winter	59	29.4	9.2	1(3)	413(1)
Black-thr. Green Warbler	Breeding	14	25.7	5.2	7(2)	44(2)
Cerulean Warbler	Breeding	6	9.8	1.4	-	10(6)
Blackburnian Warbler	Breeding	12	17.2	4.8	6(2)	44(2)
Yellow-throated Warbler	Breeding	41	5.1	0.91	1.7(3)	25(1)
	Winter	13	4.4	1.6	0.5(1)	20(1)
Chestnut-sided Warbler	Breeding	13	11.9	3.4	6(1)	36(2)
Pine Warbler	Breeding	59	8.9	1.2	1(1)	30(3)
	Winter	21	12.3	2.4	1(2)	35(1)
Prairie Warbler	Breeding	28	14.6	3.2	1(2)	43(5)
	Winter	5	1.8	0.84	0.5(1)	5(1)
Palm Warbler	Winter	28	5.8	1.4	0.5(1)	33(1)
Ovenbird	Breeding	88	12.8	1.4	1.5(2)	24(3)
	Winter	5	4.0	1.3	2.5(2)	6(2)
Northern Waterthrush	Winter	1	0.5	0	0.5(1)	-
Louisiana Waterthrush	Breeding	45	5.6	0.82	3(1)	15(4)
Kentucky Warbler	Breeding	41	4.8	0.56	1(1)	8.5(2)
*Common Yellowthroat	Breeding	73	14.6	2.0	0.6(2)	41(18)
	Winter	19	12.1	3.1	0.5(1)	49(1)
*Yellow-breasted Chat	Breeding	56	17.0	2.3	1(3)	32(17)
Hooded Warbler	Breeding	77	16.0	1.8	2(2)	47(10)
Canada Warbler	Breeding	9	28.9	7.8	5(1)	60(2)
American Redstart	Breeding	32	8.7	2.8	2.7(5)	87(1)
	Winter	2	2.5	1.5	1(1)	4(1)
House Sparrow	Breeding	11	12.3	5.1	0.7(3)	44(2)
	Winter	30	23.2	5.0	1(1)	70(2)
Bobolink	Breeding	3	1.0	0	1(3)	-
Eastern Meadowlark	Breeding	36	5.7	0.76	0.6(2)	20(2)
	Winter	44	16.0	3.1	2.5(2)	29(11)
Red-winged Blackbird	Breeding	58	13.0	2.3	0.5(15)	53(3)
	Winter	35	17.1	5.0	1(2)	29(1)
*Orchard Oriole	Breeding	16	6.2	1.5	1(2)	15(4)
Spotted-breasted Oriole	Winter	7	2.0	0.65	1.8(5)	2.5(2)
Northern Oriole	Breeding	9	1.0	0.57	Visit(3)	4(2)
	Winter	1	1.0	0	1(1)	-
Rusty Blackbird	Winter	11	2.7	0.92	1(1)	3.1(9)

Species	Season	Total sample[a]			Density range[b]	
		N	Mean	S. E.	Low	High
		Breeding: pairs/40 ha; Winter: birds/40 ha				
Boat-tailed Grackle	Breeding	3	1.7	1.6	Visit(2)	5(1)
	Winter	14	10.9	4.6	1(1)	44(2)
*Common Grackle	Breeding	107	15.5	3.2	0.2(15)	41(16)
	Winter	23	10.2	4.8	0.8(2)	87(1)
Brown-headed Cowbird	Breeding	73	5.1	0.72	0.4(3)	19(1)
	Winter	6	8.0	3.6	2(1)	9.5(2)
Scarlet Tanager	Breeding	80	8.2	0.64	1(1)	19(3)
Summer Tanager	Breeding	87	6.1	0.6	0.6(2)	22(5)
Northern Cardinal	Breeding	179	23.4	1.6	0.5(1)	41(2)
	Winter	108	9.3	1.4	0.5(1)	54(2)
Rose-breasted Grosbeak	Breeding	10	7.2	4.0	2.7(3)	43(1)
	Winter	1	1.0	0	1(1)	-
Blue Grosbeak	Breeding	29	4.4	1.0	0.3(5)	5.4(5)
Indigo Bunting	Breeding	87	12.4	1.4	0.7(9)	32(2)
	Winter	5	8.6	2.7	1(1)	10(4)
Painted Bunting	Breeding	12	3.3	1.1	Visit(2)	9(2)
	Winter	5	18.3	5.5	0.5(1)	23(4)
Evening Grosbeak	Winter	15	6.2	5.3	1(1)	11(8)
Purple Finch	Winter	54	7.6	1.3	0.6(2)	15(3)
House Finch	Winter	2	1.0	0	1(1)	-
Common Redpoll	Winter	1	0.5	0	0.5(1)	-
Pine Siskin	Winter	8	3.4	1.3	1(1)	10(1)
American Goldfinch	Breeding	71	5.2	0.84	0.3(5)	10(2)
	Winter	74	4.9	0.84	0.5(1)	33(1)
Red Crossbill	Breeding	2	Visitor in two habitats			
Rufous-sided Towhee	Breeding	121	15.9	1.4	2(2)	65(2)
	Winter	62	14.8	2.8	0.5(1)	85(1)
Savannah Sparrow	Winter	13	8.9	4.1	1.2(6)	47(1)
Grasshopper Sparrow	Breeding	17	6.6	1.5	2(2)	16(4)
Henslow's Sparrow	Breeding	2	0.6	0.45	1(1)	-
Vesper Sparrow	Breeding	4	0.6	0.48	Visit(2)	1(2)
	Winter	3	15.7	14.2	1(1)	23(2)
Bachman's Sparrow	Breeding	10	5.2	1.5	2(2)	10(2)
	Winter	1	1.0	0	1(1)	-
Northern Junco	Breeding	10	27.0	8.9	6(1)	71(2)
	Winter	65	7.7	1.6	1(1)	83(1)
American Tree Sparrow	Winter	7	11.8	6.1	0.5(1)	45(1)
Chipping Sparrow	Breeding	25	6.8	1.8	1(2)	26(2)
	Winter	4	7.2	5.9	1(1)	25(1)
Field Sparrow	Breeding	58	17.4	2.4	1.1(13)	51(7)
	Winter	50	7.1	1.0	3.2(11)	19(6)
White-crowned Sparrow	Winter	9	0.7	0.18	Visit(1)	0.8(8)
White-throated Sparrow	Winter	78	16.3	3.1	1(1)	100(3)
Fox Sparrow	Winter	33	7.7	2.0	1(1)	18(9)
Swamp Sparrow	Winter	10	6.8	4.6	0.5(1)	47(1)
*Song Sparrow	Breeding	62	12.3	2.1	1.1(5)	35(18)
	Winter	67	8.4	1.8	1(1)	28(8)

[a] Total Sample includes all censuses made in forested habitats in the Southeast 1947-1979 that were published in Audubon Field Notes or in American Birds.

[b] Entries are listed as "Average density (No. of censuses)". Each entry indicates the mean and sample size of censuses recorded from a single habitat (a vegetation type-successional stage combination) for a single bird species in a single season.

* Species with asterisks:
High density figure exaggerated because it was recorded on a small 6.3 a (2.5 ha) plot of poletimber Elm-ash-cottonwood surrounded by agricultural fields near North Wilkesboro, N. C.

Species Associations (Guilds) by Nest Sites and by Diets.

D-1. Species Associations by Nest Sites.

Following are the eight lists of species by nest sites.

Nest site category	Location	
	Category no.	Page
Behind loose bark	D-1.1.	407
Burrows	D-1.2.	407
Bushes (or shrubs)	D-1.3.	407
Cavities	D-1.4.	407
Ground or ground covering vegetation	D-1.5.	408
Ledges	D-1.6.	408
Trees	D-1.7.	408
Vertical surfaces	D-1.8.	408

D-1.1. Nests placed behind loose bark.

Brown Creeper

D-1.2. Nests placed in burrows.

Burrowing Owl
Belted Kingfisher
Bank Swallow
Rough-winged Swallow

D-1.3. Nests placed in bushes.

Brown Pelican
American Anhinga
Magnificent Frigatebird
Green Heron
Little Blue Heron
Cattle Egret
Reddish Egret
Snowy Egret
Louisiana Heron
Black-cr. Night Heron
Yellow-cr. Night Heron
Glossy Ibis
White Ibis
Roseate Spoonbill
Snail Kite
Crested Caracara
Limpkin
White-crowned Pigeon
Mourning Dove
Common Ground Dove
Mangrove Cuckoo
Black-billed Cuckoo
Smooth-billed Ani
Ruby-thr. Hummingbird
Gray Kingbird
Willow Flycatcher
Alder Flycatcher
Scrub Jay
Fish Crow
Northern Mockingbird
Gray Catbird
Brown Thrasher
American Robin
Wood Thrush
Swainson's Thrush
Loggerhead Shrike
White-eyed Vireo
Solitary Vireo
Black-whiskered Vireo
Swainson's Warbler
Bachman's Warbler
Yellow Warbler
Magnolia Warbler
Black-thr. Blue Warbler
Chestnut-sided Warbler
Prairie Warbler
Common Yellowthroat
Yellow-breasted Chat
Hooded Warbler
Red-winged Blackbird
Boat-tailed Grackle
Common Grackle
Brown-headed Cowbird
Northern Cardinal
Rose-breasted Grosbeak
Blue Grosbeak
Indigo Bunting
Painted Bunting
House Finch
American Goldfinch
Rufous-sided Towhee
Chipping Sparrow
Field Sparrow
Swamp Sparrow
Song Sparrow

D-1.4. Nests placed in cavities.

Wood Duck
Hooded Merganser
Turkey Vulture
Black Vulture
American Kestrel
Barn Owl
Common Screech Owl
Barred Owl
Saw-whet Owl
Chimney Swift
Common Flicker
Pileated Woodpecker
Red-bellied Woodpecker
Red-headed Woodpecker
Yellow-bel. Sapsucker
Hairy Woodpecker
Downy Woodpecker
Red-cockaded Woodpecker
Great Cr. Flycatcher
Tree Swallow
Purple Martin
Black-capped Chickadee
Carolina Chickadee
Tufted Titmouse
White-breasted Nuthatch
Red-breasted Nuthatch
Brown-headed Nuthatch
Brown Creeper
House Wren
Bewick's Wren
Carolina Wren
Eastern Bluebird
European Starling
Prothonotary Warbler
House Sparrow

Brown Pelican
Least Bittern
American Bittern
Turkey Vulture
Black Vulture
Snail Kite
Northern Harrier
Ruffed Grouse
Common Bobwhite
Ring-necked Pheasant
Wild Turkey
Sandhill Crane
Limpkin
King Rail
Clapper Rail
Virginia Rail
Sora
Black Rail
Purple Gallinule
Common Gallinule
American Coot

American Woodcock
Upland Sandpiper
Common Ground Dove
Short-eared Owl
Chuck-will's-widow
Whip-poor-will
Common Nighthawk
Horned Lark
Winter Wren
Carolina Wren
Marsh Wren
Sedge Wren
Hermit Thrush
Veery
Black-and-white Warbler
Worm-eating Warbler
Golden-winged Warbler
Blue-winged Warbler
Nashville Warbler
Ovenbird
Northern Waterthrush

Kentucky Warbler
Mourning Warbler
Common Yellowthroat
Canada Warbler
Bobolink
Eastern Meadowlark
Red-winged Blackbird
Dickcissel
Rufous-sided Towhee
Savannah Sparrow
Grasshopper Sparrow
Henslow's Sparrow
Sharp-tailed Sparrow
Seaside Sparrow
Vesper Sparrow
Bachman's Sparrow
Northern Junco
Field Sparrow
Swamp Sparrow
Song Sparrow

D-1.6. Nests placed on ledges.

Turkey Vulture
Black Vulture
Golden Eagle
Osprey
Peregrine Falcon

Rock Dove
Barn Owl
Common Nighthawk
Eastern Phoebe
Barn Swallow

Northern Raven
Bewick's Wren
Carolina Wren
European Starling
House Sparrow

D-1.7. Nests placed in trees.

Double-cr. Cormorant
American Anhinga
Great Blue Heron
Green Heron
Little Blue Heron
Cattle Egret
Reddish Egret
Great Egret
Snowy Egret
Louisiana Heron
Black-cr. Night Heron
Yellow-cr. Night Heron
Wood Stork
Glossy Ibis
White Ibis
Roseate Spoonbill
White-tailed Kite
Swallow-tailed Kite
Mississippi Kite
Sharp-shinned Hawk
Cooper's Hawk
Red-tailed Hawk
Red-shouldered Hawk
Broad-winged Hawk
Short-tailed Hawk
Bald Eagle

Osprey
White-crowned Pigeon
Mourning Dove
Mangrove Cuckoo
Yellow-billed Cuckoo
Black-billed Cuckoo
Smooth-billed Ani
Great Horned Owl
Long-eared Owl
Ruby-thr. Hummingbird
Eastern Kingbird
Gray Kingbird
Acadian Flycatcher
Least Flycatcher
Eastern Pewee
Olive-sided Flycatcher
Blue Jay
American Crow
Fish Crow
American Robin
Blue-gray Gnatcatcher
Golden-crowned Kinglet
Cedar Waxwing
Loggerhead Shrike
Yellow-throated Vireo
Solitary Vireo

Black-whiskered Vireo
Red-eyed Vireo
Warbling Vireo
Northern Parula Warbler
Magnolia Warbler
Black-thr. Green Warbler
Cerulean Warbler
Blackburnian Warbler
Yellow-throated Warbler
Pine Warbler
American Redstart
Orchard Oriole
Spotted Oriole
Northern Oriole
Boat-tailed Grackle
Common Grackle
Brown-headed Cowbird
Scarlet Tanager
Summer Tanager
Rose-breasted Grosbeak
Purple Finch
House Finch
Pine Siskin
Red Crossbill
Chipping Sparrow

D-1.8. Nests placed on vertical surfaces.

Cliff Swallow

Following are 36 lists of species grouped according to the foraging technique and substrate used by the birds. The categories are listed alphabetically. We have prepared an introductory dictionary to the lists in which the categories are cross-referenced both by technique and by substrate. Numbers in the cross-references indicate where in the table a particular category can be found.

Foraging substrate and behavioral category[a]	Location	
	Category no.	Page
aerial piracy over marine habitats.	D-2.1.	409
airborn prey, capturing during sustained flight.	D-2.2.	409
bushes, gleaning in.	D-2.9.	409
bushes, hawking from.	D-2.16.	410
bushes, probing in.	D-2.24.	410
canopies of trees, gleaning in.	D-2.12.	409
canopies of trees, probing in various substrates in.	D-2.25.	410
capturing airborn prey during sustained flight.	D-2.2.	409
crepuscular.	D-2.3.	409
diurnal.	D-2.4.	409
diving from the surface of water.	D-2.5.	409
filter-feeding in water.	D-2.6.	409
foliage of trees, gleaning from the.	D-2.10.	409
gleaning at various heights.	D-2.7.	409
gleaning from the water surface.	D-2.8.	409
gleaning in bushes.	D-2.9.	409
gleaning in foliage of trees.	D-2.10.	409
gleaning in herbaceous vegetation.	D-2.11.	409
gleaning in tree canopies.	D-2.12.	409
gleaning on the ground.	D-2.13.	409
gleaning on trunks of trees.	D-2.14.	409
ground, gleaning on the.	D-2.13.	409
ground, pouncing onto the.	D-2.21.	410
ground, probing into the.	D-2.28.	410
ground, stalking on the.	D-2.36.	410
habitats, SEE marine habitats, terrestrial habitats		
hawking at various heights.	D-2.15.	410
hawking from bushes.	D-2.16.	410
hawking from trees.	D-2.17.	410
herbaceous vegetation, gleaning in.	D-2.11.	409
herbaceous vegetation, pouncing into.	D-2.20.	410
herbaceous vegetation, probing into.	D-2.27.	410
herbaceous vegetation, soaring over.	D-2.30.	410
herbaceous vegetation, stalking in.	D-2.34.	410
hovering.	D-2.18.	410
marine habitats, aerial piracy over.	D-2.1.	409
nocturnal.	D-2.19.	410
piracy, aerial, over marine habitats.	D-2.1.	409
plunging or pouncing into water.	D-2.23.	410
pouncing into herbaceous vegetation.	D-2.20.	410
pouncing onto the ground.	D-2.21.	410
pouncing onto various substrates.	D-2.22.	410
pouncing or plunging into water.	D-2.23.	410
probing in bushes.	D-2.24.	410
probing in various substrates in tree canopies.	D-2.25.	410
probing in water.	D-2.26.	410
probing into herbaceous vegetation.	D-2.27.	410
probing into the ground.	D-2.28.	410
probing into trunks of trees.	D-2.29.	410
soaring over herbaceous vegetation.	D-2.30.	410
soaring over terrestrial habitats.	D-2.31.	410
soaring over various substrates.	D-2.32.	410
soaring over water.	D-2.33.	410
stalking in herbaceous vegetation.	D-2.34.	410
stalking in water.	D-2.35.	410
stalking on the ground.	D-2.36.	410
substrates, SEE various substrates		
sustained flight, capturing airborn prey during.	D-2.2.	409
terrestrial habitats, soaring over.	D-2.31.	410
trees, gleaning from the foliage of.	D-2.10.	409
trees, gleaning in canopies of.	D-2.12.	409
trees, gleaning on trunks of.	D-2.14.	409

Foraging substrate and behavioral category	Category no.	Page
trees, hawking from.	D-2.17.	410
trees, probing into trunks of.	D-2.29.	410
trees, probing in various substrates in canopies.	D-2.25.	410
trunks of trees, gleaning on.	D-2.14.	409
trunks of trees, probing into.	D-2.29.	410
various heights, gleaning at.	D-2.7.	409
various heights, hawking at.	D-2.15.	410
various substrates in tree canopies, probing in.	D-2.25.	410
various substrates, pouncing onto.	D-2.22.	410
various substrates, soaring over.	D-2.32.	410
water, diving from the surface of.	D-2.5.	409
water, filter-feeding in.	D-2.6.	409
water, probing in.	D-2.26.	410
water, soaring over.	D-2.33.	410
water, stalking in.	D-2.35.	410
water surface, diving from.	D-2.5.	409
water surface, gleaning from the.	D-2.8.	409

[a] Throughout these lists we have designated non-diurnal species as (C) - Crepuscular, or (N) - Nocturnal.

D-2.1. Foraging by aerial piracy over marine habitats.

Magnificent Frigatebird

D-2.2. Foraging by capturing airborn prey during sustained flight.

Swallow-tailed Kite
Mississippi Kite
Sharp-shinned Hawk
Cooper's Hawk
Peregrine Falcon
Merlin
Chuck-will's-widow (N)
Whip-poor-will (N)
Common Nighthawk (C,N)
Chimney Swift
Tree Swallow
Bank Swallow
Rough-winged Swallow
Barn Swallow
Cliff Swallow
Purple Martin

D-2.3. Crepuscular.

American Woodcock
Common Nighthawk

D-2.4. Diurnal.

All species save those listed as "Crepuscular" or "Nocturnal".

D-2.5. Foraging by diving from the surface of water.

Pied-billed Grebe
Double-cr. Cormorant
American Anhinga
Wood Duck
Hooded Merganser
American Coot

D-2.6. Foraging by filter-feeding in water.

Roseate Spoonbill

D-2.7. Foraging by gleaning at various heights.

Yellow-rumped Warbler
American Goldfinch

D-2.8. Foraging by gleaning from the water surface.

Least Bittern
American Bittern
Wood Stork
Glossy Ibis
Roseate Spoonbill
Wood Duck
Sandhill Crane
Limpkin
King Rail
Clapper Rail
Virginia Rail
Sora
Purple Gallinule
Common Gallinule
American Coot
Northern Waterthrush
Louisiana Waterthrush
Boat-tailed Grackle

Ruffed Grouse
House Wren
Bewick's Wren
Carolina Wren
Northern Mockingbird
Gray Catbird
Brown Thrasher
American Robin
Hermit Thrush
Ruby-crowned Kinglet
Cedar Waxwing
White-eyed Vireo
Prothonotary Warbler
Golden-winged Warbler
Blue-winged Warbler
Bachman's Warbler
Orange-crowned Warbler
Nashville Warbler
Yellow Warbler
Magnolia Warbler
Cape May Warbler
Black-thr. Blue Warbler
Chestnut-sided Warbler
Prairie Warbler
Palm Warbler
Mourning Warbler
Yellow-breasted Chat
Hooded Warbler
Canada Warbler
Northern Cardinal
Blue Grosbeak
Indigo Bunting
Painted Bunting
House Finch
Pine Siskin
Rufous-sided Towhee
White-throated Sparrow

D-2.10. Foraging by gleaning in foliage of trees.

White-crowned Pigeon
Mangrove Cuckoo
Yellow-billed Cuckoo
Black-billed Cuckoo
Blue-gray Gnatcatcher
Golden-crowned Kinglet
Ruby-crowned Kinglet
Cedar Waxwing
Yellow-throated Vireo
Solitary Vireo
Black-whiskered Vireo
Red-eyed Vireo
Warbling Vireo
Bachman's Warbler
Northern Parula Warbler
Magnolia Warbler
Cape May Warbler
Black-thr. Blue Warbler
Black-thr. Green Warb.
Cerulean Warbler
Blackburnian Warbler
Yellow-throated Warbler
Pine Warbler
American Redstart
Orchard Oriole
Spotted Oriole
Northern Oriole
Scarlet Tanager
Summer Tanager
Rose-breasted Grosbeak
Evening Grosbeak
Purple Finch
Pine Siskin
Red Crossbill
White-winged Crossbill

D-2.11. Foraging by gleaning in herbaceous vegetation.

Least Bittern
American Bittern
Common Bobwhite
Ring-necked Pheasant
King Rail
Clapper Rail
Virginia Rail
Sora
Yellow Rail
Black Rail
Purple Gallinule
Common Gallinule
Upland Sandpiper
Bewick's Wren
Marsh Wren
Sedge Wren
Orange-crowned Warbler
Palm Warbler
Mourning Warbler
Common Yellowthroat
Bobolink
Eastern Meadowlark
Red-winged Blackbird
Blue Grosbeak
Indigo Bunting
Painted Bunting
Dickcissel
House Finch
Savannah Sparrow
Grasshopper Sparrow
Henslow's Sparrow
Le Conte's Sparrow
Sharp-tailed Sparrow
Seaside Sparrow
Vesper Sparrow
Bachman's Sparrow
American Tree Sparrow
Field Sparrow
White-crowned Sparrow
Lincoln's Sparrow
Swamp Sparrow
Song Sparrow

D-2.12. Foraging by gleaning in tree canopies.

Blue Jay
Black-capped Chickadee
Carolina Chickadee
Tufted Titmouse
Red-breasted Nuthatch
Brown-headed Nuthatch
American Robin
Swainson's Thrush
Hooded Warbler

D-2.13. Foraging by gleaning on the ground.

Cattle Egret
Ruffed Grouse
Common Bobwhite
Ring-necked Pheasant
Wild Turkey
Sandhill Crane
Killdeer
Rock Dove
Mourning Dove
Common Ground Dove
Smooth-billed Ani
Horned Lark
Northern Raven
American Crow
Fish Crow
Winter Wren
Carolina Wren
Northern Mockingbird
Brown Thrasher
American Robin
Wood Thrush
Hermit Thrush
Swainson's Thrush
Veery
Water Pipit
European Starling
Swainson's Warbler
Worm-eating Warbler
Pine Warbler (W)
Palm Warbler
Ovenbird
Northern Waterthrush
Louisiana Waterthrush
Kentucky Warbler
House Sparrow
Eastern Meadowlark
Red-winged Blackbird
Rusty Blackbird
Brewer's Blackbird
Boat-tailed Grackle
Common Grackle
Brown-headed Cowbird
Northern Cardinal
Rufous-sided Towhee
Savannah Sparrow
Sharp-tailed Sparrow
Seaside Sparrow
Vesper Sparrow
Northern Junco
Chipping Sparrow
White-crowned Sparrow
White-throated Sparrow
Fox Sparrow
Song Sparrow
Lapland Longspur
Snow Bunting

D-2.14. Foraging by gleaning on trunks of trees.

White-br. Nuthatch
Red-breasted Nuthatch
Brown-headed Nuthatch
Brown Creeper
Black-and-white Warbler
Yellow-throated Warbler

Cooper's Hawk
Eastern Kingbird
Western Kingbird
Scissor-tailed Flycatcher

D-2.16. Foraging by hawking from bushes.

Willow Flycatcher
Alder Flycatcher
Hooded Warbler
Canada Warbler

D-2.17. Foraging by hawking from trees.

Great Cr. Flycatcher
Acadian Flycatcher
Least Flycatcher
Eastern Pewee
Olive-sided Flycatcher
Hooded Warbler
American Redstart

D-2.18. Foraging by hovering.

Ruby-throated Hummingbird

D-2.19. Nocturnal.

Black-cr. Night Heron
American Woodcock
Barn Owl
Common Screech Owl
Great Horned Owl
Burrowing Owl
Barred Owl
Long-eared Owl
Short-eared Owl
Saw-whet Owl
Chuck-will's-widow
Whip-poor-will
Common Nighthawk

D-2.20. Foraging by pouncing into herbaceous vegetation.

Snail Kite
Red-tailed Hawk
Rough-legged Hawk
Northern Harrier
Barn Owl (N)
Short-eared Owl (N)

D-2.21. Foraging by pouncing onto the ground.

Red-tailed Hawk
Swainson's Hawk
Rough-legged Hawk
Northern Harrier
Crested Caracara
American Kestrel
Common Screech Owl(N)
Great Horned Owl (N)
Long-eared Owl(N)
Saw-whet Owl (N)
Eastern Bluebird
Loggerhead Shrike

D-2.22. Foraging by pouncing onto various substrates.

White-tailed Kite
Swallow-tailed Kite
Red-shouldered Hawk
Broad-winged Hawk
Short-tailed Hawk
Peregrine Falcon
Merlin
Barred Owl (N)
Western Kingbird
Eastern Phoebe

D-2.23. Foraging by pouncing or plunging into water.

Brown Pelican
Magnificent Frigatebird
Snail Kite
Bald Eagle
Osprey
Belted Kingfisher

D-2.24. Foraging by probing in bushes.

Downy Woodpecker

D-2.25. Foraging by probing in various substrates in tree canopies.

Downy Woodpecker
Red-breasted Nuthatch
Brown-headed Nuthatch
Red Crossbill
White-winged Crossbill

D-2.26. Foraging by probing in water.

Wood Stork
Glossy Ibis
White Ibis
King Rail
Clapper Rail
Virginia Rail
Common Snipe

D-2.27. Foraging by probing into herbaceous vegetation.

European Starling
Eastern Meadowlark

D-2.28. Foraging by probing into the ground.

Glossy Ibis
White Ibis
King Rail
Clapper Rail
Virginia Rail
American Woodcock (N,C)
Common Snipe
Common Flicker
European Starling
Eastern Meadowlark

Pileated Woodpecker
Red-bellied Woodpecker
Red-headed Woodpecker
Downy Woodpecker
Red-cockaded Woodpecker
Brown-headed Nuthatch

D-2.30. Foraging by soaring over herbaceous vegetation.

Red-tailed Hawk

D-2.31. Foraging by soaring over terrestrial habitats.

Turkey Vulture
Black Vulture
Red-tailed Hawk
Golden Eagle

D-2.32. Foraging by soaring over various substrates.

Red-shouldered Hawk
Short-tailed Hawk

D-2.33. Foraging by soaring over water.

Magnificent Frigatebird
Bald Eagle
Osprey

D-2.34. Foraging by stalking in herbaceous vegetation.

American Bittern

D-2.35. Foraging by stalking in water.

Great Blue Heron
Green Heron
Little Blue Heron
Reddish Egret
Great Egret
Snowy Egret
Louisiana Heron
Black-cr. Night Heron (N)
Yellow-cr. Night Heron
American Bittern
Wood Stork

D-2.36. Foraging by stalking on the ground.

Crested Caracara
Burrowing Owl (N)

Following are the eight lists of species by diet categories.

Diet Category[a]	Category no.
Carnivores	D-3.1.
Folivores	D-3.2.
Frugivores	D-3.3.
Granivores	D-3.4.
Insectivores	D-3.5.
Nectarivores	D-3.6.
Omnivores	D-3.7.
Scavengers	D-3.8.

[a] Birds whose diets change depending upon seasonal availability of food items are marked (S) - summer diet, and (W) - winter diet.

D-3.1. Carnivores.

Pied-billed Grebe
Brown Pelican
Double-cr. Cormorant
American Anhinga
Magnificent Frigatebird
Great Blue Heron
Green Heron
Little Blue Heron
Reddish Egret
Great Egret
Snowy Egret
Louisiana Heron
Black-cr. Night Heron
Yellow-cr. Night Heron
Least Bittern
American Bittern
Wood Stork
Glossy Ibis
White Ibis
Roseate Spoonbill
Hooded Merganser
White-tailed Kite
Swallow-tailed Kite
Snail Kite
Sharp-shinned Hawk
Cooper's Hawk
Red-tailed Hawk
Red-shouldered Hawk
Broad-winged Hawk
Swainson's Hawk
Short-tailed Hawk
Rough-legged Hawk
Golden Eagle
Bald Eagle
Northern Harrier
Osprey
Crested Caracara
Peregrine Falcon
Merlin
American Kestrel (W)
Limpkin
King Rail (S)
Clapper Rail
Virginia Rail
Barn Owl
Common Screech Owl
Great Horned Owl
Burrowing Owl
Barred Owl
Long-eared Owl
Short-eared Owl
Saw-whet Owl
Belted Kingfisher
Loggerhead Shrike

D-3.2. Folivores.

Ruffed Grouse
Common Gallinule
Evening Grosbeak
Purple Finch (W)

D-3.3. Frugivores.

Ruffed Grouse
White-crowned Pigeon
Gray Catbird (W)
Cedar Waxwing (W)
Spotted Oriole
House Finch (W)
Fox Sparrow

D-3.4. Granivores.

Ruffed Grouse
Common Bobwhite (W)
Purple Gallinule (W)
Common Gallinule
Rock Dove
Mourning Dove
Common Ground Dove
Horned Lark (W)
Common Grackle (W)
Northern Cardinal (W)
Indigo Bunting (W)
Dickcissel (W)
Evening Grosbeak
Purple Finch (W)
House Finch (W)
Pine Siskin (W)
American Goldfinch (W)
Red Crossbill (W)
White-winged Crossbill
Savannah Sparrow (W)
Henslow's Sparrow (W)
Le Conte's Sparrow
Vesper Sparrow (W)
Bachman's Sparrow (W)
Northern Junco (W)
American Tree Sparrow
Chipping Sparrow (W)
Field Sparrow (W)
White-crowned Sparrow
White-throated Sparrow
Fox Sparrow
Lincoln's Sparrow
Lapland Longspur
Snow Bunting

Pied-billed Grebe
Glossy Ibis
Roseate Spoonbill
Swallow-tailed Kite
Mississippi Kite
Swainson's Hawk
American Kestrel (S)
Virginia Rail
Killdeer
American Woodcock
Common Snipe
Upland Sandpiper
Mangrove Cuckoo
Yellow-billed Cuckoo
Black-billed Cuckoo
Smooth-billed Ani
Burrowing Owl
Chuck-will's-widow
Whip-poor-will
Common Nighthawk
Chimney Swift
Ruby-thr. Hummingbird
Common Flicker (S)
Pileated Woodpecker
Red-bellied Woodp. (S)
Red-headed Woodp. (S)
Hairy Woodpecker
Downy Woodpecker
Red-cockaded Woodpecker
Eastern Kingbird
Gray Kingbird
Western Kingbird
Scissor-t. Flycatcher
Great Cr. Flycatcher
Eastern Phoebe
Acadian Flycatcher
Willow Flycatcher
Alder Flycatcher
Least Flycatcher
Eastern Pewee
Olive-sided Flycatcher
Horned Lark (S)
Tree Swallow (S)
Bank Swallow
Barn Swallow
Cliff Swallow
Purple Martin
Black-c. Chickadee (S)
Carolina Chickadee (S)
Tufted Titmouse (S)
White-br. Nuthatch
Red-br. Nuthatch (S)
Brown-h. Nuthatch (S)
Brown Creeper
House Wren
Winter Wren
Bewick's Wren
Carolina Wren
Marsh Wren
Sedge Wren
North. Mockingbird (S)
Gray Catbird (S)
Brown Thrasher (S)
American Robin (S)
Wood Thrush
Hermit Thrush (S)
Swainson's Thrush
Veery
Eastern Bluebird
Blue-gray Gnatcatcher
Golden-crowned Kinglet
Ruby-crowned Kinglet
Water Pipit
Cedar Waxwing (S)
Loggerhead Shrike
White-eyed Vireo
Yellow-throated Vireo
Solitary Vireo
Black-whiskered Vireo
Red-eyed Vireo
Warbling Vireo
Black-and-white Warbler
Prothonotary Warbler
Swainson's Warbler
Worm-eating Warbler
Golden-winged Warbler
Bachman's Warbler
Nashville Warbler
Northern Parula Warbler
Yellow Warbler
Magnolia Warbler
Black-thr. Blue Warbler
Black-thr. Green Warbler
Cerulean Warbler
Blackburnian Warbler
Yellow-throated Warbler
Chestnut-sided Warbler
Pine Warbler (S)
Prairie Warbler
Palm Warbler
Ovenbird
Northern Waterthrush
Louisiana Waterthrush
Kentucky Warbler
Mourning Warbler
Common Yellowthroat
Yellow-breasted Chat (S)
Hooded Warbler
Canada Warbler
American Redstart
Bobolink
Eastern Meadowlark (S)
Red-winged Blackbird (S)
Orchard Oriole
Northern Oriole (S)
Common Grackle (S)
Scarlet Tanager
Summer Tanager
American Goldfinch (S)
Grasshopper Sparrow (S)
Henslow's Sparrow (S)
Sharp-tailed Sparrow (S)
Seaside Sparrow (S)
Vesper Sparrow (S)
Bachman's Sparrow (S)
Chipping Sparrow (S)
Swamp Sparrow (S)
Song Sparrow (S)

D-3.6. Nectarivores.

Ruby-throated Hummingbird
Spotted Oriole

D-3.7. Omnivores.

Wood Duck
Common Bobwhite (S)
Ring-necked Pheasant
Wild Turkey
Sandhill Crane
King Rail (W)
Sora
Yellow Rail
Black Rail
Purple Gallinule (S)
American Coot
Common Flicker (W)
Red-bellied Woodp. (W)
Red-headed Woodp. (W)
Yellow-bel. Sapsucker
Tree Swallow (W)
Blue Jay
Scrub Jay
Northern Raven
American Crow
Fish Crow
Black-c. Chickadee (W)
Carolina Chickadee (W)
Tufted Titmouse (W)
Red-br. Nuthatch (W)
Brown-h. Nuthatch (W)
North. Mockingbird (W)
Brown Thrasher (W)
American Robin (W)
Hermit Thrush (W)
European Starling
Orange-crowned Warbler
Cape May Warbler
Yellow-rumped Warbler
Pine Warbler (W)
Yellow-br. Chat (W)
House Sparrow
Eastern Meadowlark (W)
Red-wing. Blackbird (W)
Northern Oriole (W)
Rusty Blackbird
Brewer's Blackbird
Boat-tailed Grackle
Brown-headed Cowbird
Northern Cardinal (S)
Rose-breasted Grosbeak
Blue Grosbeak
Indigo Bunting (S)
Painted Bunting
Dickcissel (S)
Purple Finch (S)
House Finch (S)
Pine Siskin (S)
Red Crossbill (S)
Rufous-sided Towhee
Savannah Sparrow (S)
Grasshopper Sparrow (W)
Sharp-tailed Sparrow (W)
Seaside Sparrow (W)
Northern Junco (S)
Field Sparrow (S)
Swamp Sparrow (W)
Song Sparrow (W)

D-3.8. Scavengers.

Turkey Vulture
Black Vulture
Bald Eagle
Crested Caracara

Species Requiring Snags, Cavities, or Both

Species	Cavity use		Snag use[a]		Use of living cavity trees[a]
	Excavator	Secondary	Uses	Minimum d.b.h.	
			d.b.h.: inches(cm)		
Wood Duck		*	N	18 (46)	N
Hooded Merganser		*	N	18 (46)	N
&Turkey Vulture		*	N	?	N
&Black Vulture		*	N	?	N
Bald Eagle			N,P	20 (51)	
Osprey			N,P	20 (51)	
American Kestrel			F	6 (15)	
		*	N	14 (35)	N,P
Barn Owl		*	N,P	18 (46)	N,P
Common Screech Owl		*	N,P	14 (35)	N,P
Barred Owl		*	N,P	20 (51)	N,P
Saw-whet Owl		*	N,P	10 (25)	N,P
Chimney Swift		*	N,P	14 (35)	N,P
&Belted Kingfisher			F	6 (15)	
Common Flicker	*	*	N,P	14 (35)	N,P
Pileated Woodpecker	*		All	20 (51)	N,P
Red-bellied Woodpecker	*	*	N,P	14 (35)	N,P
Red-headed Woodpecker	*	*	N,P	14 (35)	N,P
Yellow-bellied Sapsucker	*		N	10 (25)	F
Hairy Woodpecker	*		All	10 (25)	All
Downy Woodpecker	*		All	6 (15)	All
Red-cockaded Woodpecker	*				All
&Eastern Kingbird			F	6 (15)	
&Gray Kingbird			F	6 (15)	
&Western Kingbird			F	6 (15)	
Great Crested Flycatcher		*	N,P	10 (25)	N,P
&Acadian Flycatcher			F	6 (15)	
&Eastern Pewee			F	6 (15)	
&Olive-sided Flycatcher			F	10 (25)	
Tree Swallow		*	N	6 (15)	
Purple Martin		*	N	10 (25)	N
Black-capped Chickadee	*	*	N,P	6 (15)	N,P
Carolina Chickadee	*	*	N,P	6 (15)	N,P
Tufted Titmouse	*	*	N,P	6 (15)	N,P
White-breasted Nuthatch	*	*			N
Red-breasted Nuthatch	*	*	N	6 (15)	
Brown-headed Nuthatch	*	*	N	6 (15)	N
Brown Creeper		*	N	10 (25)	N
House Wren		*			
Bewick's Wren		*	N	6 (15)	N
Carolina Wren		*	N	6 (15)	N
Eastern Bluebird		*	N,P	6 (15)	N,P
&Loggerhead Shrike			F	6 (15)	
European Starling		*	N	10 (25)	N
Prothonotary Warbler		*	N	6 (15)	N
&Brown-headed Cowbird			P	6 (15)	

[a] Symbols are: N - breeding activities and nest site; P - resting, roosting, or singing perches; F - foraging sites; All - all activities.

& Explanatory notes for species marked with ampersands:

Turkey Vulture	Frequently nest in hollow logs and cavities at base of hollow trees
Black Vulture	Frequently nest in hollow logs and cavities at base of hollow trees
Belted Kingfisher	Require perches with unobstructed view of water for foraging
Eastern Kingbird	Require exposed perches for foraging and territory defense
Gray Kingbird	Require exposed perches for foraging and territory defense
Western Kingbird	Require exposed perches for foraging
Acadian Flycatcher	Require exposed perches in midstory for foraging
Eastern Pewee	Require exposed perches for foraging
Olive-sided Flycatcher	Require exposed perches above canopy for foraging and territory defense
Loggerhead Shrike	Require exposed perches for foraging
Brown-headed Cowbird	Females use exposed perches as observation posts to locate hosts building nests

Species Requiring Large Sawtimber Trees

Species	Use of large sawtimber trees
Swallow-tailed Kite	Nesting and perching
Bald Eagle	Nesting and perching
Osprey	Nesting and perching
Barred Owl	Nesting and perching
Pileated Woodpecker	All activities
Red-cockaded Woodpecker	Nesting and perching
White-breasted Nuthatch	All activities
Cerulean Warbler	All activities
Blackburnian Warbler	All activities
Yellow-throated Warbler	All activities

Areas of Extensive Forest.

Species	Utilization of forest	
	Forest interior	Extensive forest areas[a]
Swallow-tailed Kite		x
Mississippi Kite		x
Sharp-shinned Hawk	x	
Cooper's Hawk	x	
Red-shouldered Hawk		x,*(100 ha)
Broad-winged Hawk		x
Ruffed Grouse		x
Wild Turkey		x
Black-billed Cuckoo		x
Barred Owl		x
Pileated Woodpecker		x
Hairy Woodpecker	x	*(4 ha)
Red-cockaded Woodpecker		x
Acadian Flycatcher	x	*(30 ha)
Winter Wren	x	
Wood Thrush	x	*(100 ha)
Hermit Thrush	x	x
Swainson's Thrush	x	x
Veery	x	x
Yellow-throated Vireo		x,*(100 ha)
Solitary Vireo		x
Red-eyed Vireo		x,*(100 ha)
Black-and-white Warbler		x,*(300 ha)
Prothonotary Warbler	x	x,*(100 ha)
Worm-eating Warbler	x	x,*(300 ha)
Swainson's Warbler	x	x
Bachman's Warbler		x
Northern Parula Warbler		x,*(100 ha)
Black-throated Blue Warbler	x	
Black-throated Green Warbler		x
Cerulean Warbler		x
Blackburnian Warbler		x
Yellow-throated Warbler		x
Pine Warbler		*(30 ha)
Ovenbird	x	x,*(2650 ha)
Louisiana Waterthrush	x	x,*(100 ha)
Kentucky Warbler	x	x,*(30 ha)
Hooded Warbler	x	x,*(30 ha)
Scarlet Tanager		x,*(100 ha)
Summer Tanager		*(100 ha)
Rose-breasted Grosbeak		x

---

[a] Species marked with an asterisk (*) were suggested by Robbins (1979; cf. Whitcomb 1977) to require tracts in excess of 250 acres (100 ha) in order to maintain populations consistently over time.

Species	Use of slash piles, windrows, and downed logs
Green Heron	Use slash at water's edge for foraging perches
Turkey Vulture	Frequently nest in downed logs and cavities at base of hollow trees
Black Vulture	Frequently nest in downed logs and cavities at base of hollow trees
Belted Kingfisher	Require perches with unobstructed view of water for foraging
Pileated Woodpecker	Forage on downed logs
House Wren	All activities
Winter Wren	All activities
Bewick's Wren	All activities
Carolina Wren	All activities

Species	Use of rock outcrops, caves, crevices, and earthen banks
Golden Eagle	Nest and roost on cliffs and rock outcrops
Peregrine Falcon	Nest and roost on cliffs and rock outcrops
Rock Dove	Nest and roost on rock outcrops, especially on buildings
Barn Owl	Nest and roost in caves and crevices
Burrowing Owl	Nest in burrows dug in sand by other animals
Common Nighthawk	Nest on gravel surfaces, such as roofs of buildings
Chimney Swift	Nest and roost in chimneys
Belted Kingfisher	Excavate nesting burrows in earthen banks near water
Eastern Phoebe	Nest on rock outcrops, buildings, bridges, and other sites
Bank Swallow	Excavate nesting burrows in earthen banks
Rough-winged Swallow	Excavate nesting burrows in earthen banks, or use existing cavities there
Barn Swallow	Build nests on buildings, bridges, or other sites
Cliff Swallow	Build nests on vertical surfaces
Northern Raven	Nest and roost on cliffs and rock outcrops
Bewick's Wren	Nest in a variety of crevices
Carolina Wren	Nest in a variety of crevices
European Starling	Nest in a variety of crevices
Louisiana Waterthrush	Frequently breed along rocky streams

Species	Season	Water type[b] Standing	Water type[b] Flowing
Pied-billed Grebe	Breeding	F	-
	Winter	F,B	-
Brown Pelican	All	S	-
Double-crested Cormorant	All	A	F
American Anhinga	All	F,B	-
Magnificent Frigatebird	All	S	-
Great Blue Heron	All	A	F
Green Heron	All	A	F
Little Blue Heron	All	A	F
Cattle Egret	All	F	-
Reddish Egret	All	S,B	-
Great Egret	All	A	F
Snowy Egret	All	A	F
Louisiana Heron	All	A	-
Black-crowned Night Heron	All	A	F
Yellow-crowned Night Heron	All	A	F
Least Bittern	All	F,B	-
American Bittern	All	A	-
Wood Stork	All	A	-
Glossy Ibis	All	A	-
White Ibis	All	A	-
Roseate Spoonbill	All	S,B	-
Wood Duck	All	F	F
Hooded Merganser	Breeding	F	-
	Winter	F,B	-
Swallow-tailed Kite	Breeding	F	F
Mississippi Kite	Breeding	F	F
Snail (Everglade) Kite	All	F	-
Red-shouldered Hawk	All	F	F
Bald Eagle	All	A	F
Osprey	All	A	F
Sandhill Crane	All	F	-
Limpkin	All	F	F
King Rail	All	F,B	-
Clapper Rail	All	S,B	-
Virginia Rail	All	F,B	-
Sora	All	F	-
Yellow Rail	Winter	A	-
Black Rail	All	A	-
Purple Gallinule	All	F	-
Common Gallinule	All	F	-
American Coot	All	F,B	-
American Woodcock	All	F	-
Common Snipe	All	F,B	F
Barred Owl	All	F	F
Belted Kingfisher	All	A	F
Acadian Flycatcher	Breeding	F	F
Willow Flycatcher	Breeding	F	F
Tree Swallow	All	F,B	F
Bank Swallow	Breeding	F,B	F
Rough-winged Swallow	All	F,B	F
Fish Crow	All	A	F
Marsh Wren	All	A	-
Sedge Wren	Breeding	S,B	-
Prothonotary Warbler	Breeding	F	F
Northern Waterthrush	Breeding	F	-
	Winter	F	F
Louisiana Waterthrush	Breeding	-	F
Boat-tailed Grackle	All	A	-
Henslow's Sparrow	Breeding	F,B	-
Sharp-tailed Sparrow	All	S,B	-
Seaside Sparrow	All	S,B	-
Lincoln's Sparrow	Winter	F	-
Swamp Sparrow	Breeding	F	-
	Winter	F,B	-

[a] A - Any salinity, B - Brackish water, F - Fresh water, S - Salt water.

[b] In order to simplify designations of the species, we include as standing water all marshes, whether they occur in headwater situations or associated with inland or tidewater rivers. Flowing water is thus defined to be only the unvegetated parts of freshwater rivers and creeks.

SAF no.	SAF forest type[a]	Vegetation type used in this work
17	Pin cherry	Maple-beech-birch
20	White pine-northern red oak-red maple	White pine-hemlock
21	Eastern white pine	White pine-hemlock
22	White pine-hemlock	White pine-hemlock
23	Eastern hemlock	White pine-hemlock
24	Hemlock-yellow birch	White pine-hemlock (in part), Maple-beech-birch (in part)
25	Sugar maple-beech-yellow birch	Maple-beech-birch
26	Sugar maple-basswood	Maple-beech-birch (in part), Cove hardwoods (in part)
27	Sugar maple	Maple-beech-birch
28	Black cherry-maple	Maple-beech-birch (in part), Cove hardwoods (in part)
30	Red spruce-yellow birch	Spruce-fir (in part), Maple-beech-birch (in part)
31	Red spruce-sugar maple-beech	Spruce-fir (in part), Maple-beech-birch (in part)
32	Red spruce	Spruce-fir
34	Red spruce-Fraser fir	Spruce-fir
39	Black ash-American elm-red maple	Elm-ash-cottonwood
40	Post oak-blackjack oak	Oak-hickory
43	Bear oak	Oak-hickory
44	Chestnut oak	Oak-hickory
45	Pitch pine	Virginia pine-pitch pine
46	Eastern redcedar	Loblolly pine-shortleaf pine
50	Black locust	Oak-hickory
51	White pine-chestnut oak	White pine-hemlock (in part), Oak-hickory (in part)
52	White oak-black oak-northern red oak	Oak-hickory
53	White oak	Oak-hickory
55	Northern red oak	Oak-hickory (upland sites) Cove hardwoods (in coves)
57	Yellow-poplar	Cove hardwoods (in the Mountains) Elm-ash-cottonwood (elsewhere)
58	Yellow-poplar-eastern hemlock	Cove hardwoods
59	Yellow-poplar-white oak-northern red oak	Cove hardwoods
60	Beech-sugar maple	Maple-beech-birch
61	River birch-sycamore	Elm-ash-cottonwood
62	Silver maple-American elm	Elm-ash-cottonwood
63	Cottonwood	Elm-ash-cottonwood
64	Sassfras-persimmon	Oak-hickory
65	Pin oak-sweetgum	Elm-ash-cottonwood
69	Sand pine	Sand pine-southern scrub oak
70	Longleaf pine	Sandhills longleaf pine (in part), Longleaf pine-slash pine (in part)
71	Longleaf pine-scrub oak	Longleaf pine-scrub oak
72	Southern scrub oak	Southern scrub oak
73	Southern redcedar	Live oak maritime
74	Cabbage palmetto	Live oak maritime (on the Coast), Bay swamp-pocosin (elsewhere in Florida)
75	Shortleaf pine	Loblolly pine-shortleaf pine
76	Shortleaf pine-oak	Mixed pine-hardwood
78	Virginia pine-oak	Mixed pine-hardwood
79	Virginia pine	Virginia pine-pitch pine
80	Loblolly pine-shortleaf pine	Loblolly pine-shortleaf pine
81	Loblolly pine	Loblolly pine-shortleaf pine
82	Loblolly pine-hardwood	Mixed pine-hardwood (on uplands), Oak-gum-cypress (on bottomlands, in part), Loblolly pine-shortleaf pine (on bottomlands, in part)
83	Longleaf pine-slash pine	Longleaf pine-slash pine
84	Slash pine	Longleaf pine-slash pine
85	Slash pine-hardwood	Longleaf pine-slash pine (in part), Bay swamp-pocosin (in part)
87	Sweetgum-yellow-poplar	Elm-ash-cottonwood
88	Willow oak-water oak-diamondleaf oak	Oak-gum-cypress
91	Swamp chestnut oak-cherrybark oak	Oak-gum-cypress
92	Sweetgum-willow oak	Oak-gum-cypress
93	Sugarberry-American elm-green ash	Elm-ash-cottonwood
94	Sycamore-sweetgum-American elm	Elm-ash-cottonwood
95	Black willow	Elm-ash-cottonwood
96	Overcup oak-water hickory	Oak-gum-cypress
97	Atlantic white-cedar	Pond pine pocosin
98	Pond pine	Pond pine pocosin
100	Pondcypress	Oak-gum-cypress
101	Baldcypress	Oak-gum-cypress
102	Baldcypress-tupelo	Oak-gum-cypress
103	Water tupelo-swamp tupelo	Oak-gum-cypress
104	Sweetbay-swamp tupelo-redbay	Bay swamp-pocosin
105	Tropical hardwoods	Tropical hardwoods
106	Mangrove	Mangroves
108	Red maple	Cove hardwoods (in Mountains), Elm-ash-cottonwood (in Piedmont and Sandhills), Bay swamp-pocosin (in Coastal Plain)
110	Black oak	Oak-hickory
111	South Florida slash pine	Longleaf pine-slash pine

[a] SAF forest types from Eyre (1980).

USFS no.	USFS forest type[a]	Vegetation type used in this work
03	White pine	White pine-hemlock
04	White pine-hemlock	White pine-hemlock
05	Hemlock	White pine-hemlock
06	Fraser fir	Spruce-fir
07	Red spruce-Fraser fir	Spruce-fir
08	Hemlock-hardwood	White pine-hemlock (in part), Cove hardwoods (in part)
09	White pine-cove hardwoods	White pine-hemlock (in part), Cove hardwoods (in part)
10	White pine-upland hardwoods	White pine-hemlock (in part), Oak-hickory (in part)
11	Eastern red cedar-hardwood	Mixed pine-hardwood
12	Shortleaf pine-oak	Mixed pine-hardwood
13	Loblolly pine-hardwood	Mixed pine-hardwood (on uplands), Oak-gum-cypress (on bottomlands, in part), Loblolly pine-shortleaf pine (on bottomlands, in part)
14	Slash pine-hardwood	Longleaf pine-slash pine (in part), Bay swamp-pocosin (in part)
15	Pitch pine-oak	Mixed pine-hardwood
16	Virginia pine-oak	Mixed pine-hardwood
17	Red spruce-northern hardwoods	Spruce-fir (in part), Maple-beech-birch (in part)
18	Pond pine-hardwood	Pond pine pocosin (in part), Bay swamp-pocosin (in part)
19	Sand pine-hardwood	Sand pine-southern scrub oak
20	Table Mountain pine-hardwood	Mixed pine-hardwood
21	Longleaf pine	Longleaf pine-scrub oak, Sandhills longleaf pine, or Longleaf pine-slash pine, depending upon site and associated understory species
22	Slash pine	Longleaf pine-slash pine
23	Pond cypress	Oak-gum-cypress
24	Bald cypress	Oak-gum-cypress
31	Loblolly pine	Loblolly pine-shortleaf pine
32	Shortleaf pine	Loblolly pine-shortleaf pine
33	Virginia pine	Virginia pine-pitch pine
34	Sand pine	Sand pine-southern scrub oak
35	Eastern red cedar	Loblolly pine-shortleaf pine
36	Pond pine	Pond pine pocosin
37	Spruce pine	Loblolly pine-shortleaf pine
38	Pitch pine	Virginia pine-pitch pine
39	Table Mountain pine	Virginia pine-pitch pine
40	Hardwood-pond pine	Pond pine pocosin (in part), Bay swamp-pocosin (in part)
41	Cove hardwoods-white pine-hemlock	Cove hardwoods (in part), White pine-hemlock (in part)
42	Upland hardwoods-white pine	White pine-hemlock (in part), Oak-hickory (in part)
43	Oak-eastern red cedar	Mixed pine-hardwood
44	Southern red oak-yellow pine	Mixed pine-hardwood
45	Chestnut oak-scarlet oak-yellow pine	Mixed pine-hardwood
46	Bottomland hardwood-yellow pine	Oak-gum-cypress (in part), Mixed pine-hardwood (in part)
47	White oak-black oak-yellow pine	Mixed pine-hardwood
48	Northern red oak-hickory-yellow pine	Mixed pine-hardwood
49	Bear oak-southern scrub oaks-yellow pine	Sand pine-southern scrub oak, Longleaf pine-scrub oak, Southern scrub oak, or Mixed pine-hardwood depending upon location and which "yellow pine" involved
50	Yellow-poplar	Cove hardwoods (in the Mountains), Elm-ash-cottonwood (elsewhere)
51	Post oak-black oak	Oak-hickory
52	Chestnut oak	Oak-hickory
53	White oak-red oak-hickory	Oak-hickory
54	White oak	Oak-hickory
55	Northern red oak	Oak-hickory
56	Yellow-poplar-white oak-northern red oak	Cove hardwoods
57	Scrub oak	Southern scrub oak
58	Sweetgum-yellow-poplar	Elm-ash-cottonwood
59	Scarlet oak	Oak-hickory
61	Swamp chestnut oak-cherrybark oak	Oak-gum-cypress
62	Sweetgum-Nuttall oak-willow	Oak-gum-cypress
63	Sugarberry-American elm-green ash	Elm-ash-cottonwood
64	Laurel oak-willow oak	Oak-gum-cypress
65	Overcup oak-water hickory	Oak-gum-cypress
66	Atlantic white cedar	Pond pine pocosin
67	Bald cypress-water tupelo	Oak-gum-cypress
68	Sweetbay-swamp tupelo-red maple	Bay swamp-pocosin (in part), Oak-gum-cypress (in part)
69	Beech-magnolia	Southern mixed mesic hardwoods
71	Black ash-American elm-red maple	Elm-ash-cottonwood
72	River birch-sycamore	Elm-ash-cottonwood
73	Cottonwood	Elm-ash-cottonwood
74	Willow	Elm-ash-cottonwood
75	Sycamore-pecan-American elm	Elm-ash-cottonwood
76	Silver maple-American elm	Elm-ash-cottonwood
81	Sugar maple-beech-yellow birch	Maple-beech-birch
82	Black walnut	Elm-ash-cottonwood
98	Undrained flatwoods	Pine savanna

---

[a] USFS forest types from the Compartment Prescription Handbook (USDA 1979).

* GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE [illegible]

Hamel, P. B., H. E. LeGrand, Jr., M. R. Lennartz, and S. A. Gauthreaux, Jr.
1982. Bird-habitat relationships on southeastern forest lands. U. S. Dep. Agric. For. Serv., Gen. Tech. Rep. SE-22, 417 p. Southeast. For. Exp. Stn., Asheville, N. C.

Distribution, abundance, and autecology of 234 species that breed and/or winter in the Southeast are presented in narrative form. Species associations with successional stages of 23 vegetation types are expressed in a series of tables. Designed primarily for forest land managers and planners, the work provides information useful to others interested in birds and bird communities in the Southeast as well.

KEYWORDS: avian distribution, ecology, nongame management, forest succession, environmental assessment, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, Florida.

Hamel, P. B., H. E. LeGrand, Jr., M. R. Lennartz, and S. A. Gauthreaux, Jr.
1982. Bird-habitat relationships on southeastern forest lands. U. S. Dep. Agric. For. Serv., Gen. Tech. Rep. SE-22, 417 p. Southeast. For. Exp. Stn., Asheville, N. C.

Distribution, abundance, and autecology of 234 species that breed and/or winter in the Southeast are presented in narrative form. Species associations with successional stages of 23 vegetation types are expressed in a series of tables. Designed primarily for forest land managers and planners, the work provides information useful to others interested in birds and bird communities in the Southeast as well.

KEYWORDS: avian distribution, ecology, nongame management, forest succession, environmental assessment, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, Florida.

The Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture, is dedicated to the principle of multiple use management of the Nation's forest resources for sustained yields of wood, water, forage, wildlife, and recreation. Through forestry research, cooperation with the States and private forest owners, and management of the National Forests and National Grasslands, it strives—as directed by Congress—to provide increasingly greater service to a growing Nation.

USDA policy does not permit discrimination because of race, color, national origin, sex or religion. Any person who believes he or she has been discriminated against in any USDA-related activity should write immediately to the Secretary of Agriculture, Washington, D.C. 20250.

U ited States
D partment of
A iculture

F est Service

S theastern Forest
E eriment Station

G eral Technical Report SE-23

GROWING EUCALYPTS IN FLORIDA FOR INDUSTRIAL WOOD PRODUCTION

T.F. Geary, G.F. Meskimen, E.C. Franklin

Cover Photo

Robusta plantation 12 years after planting on palmetto prairie.

1983

Southeastern Forest Experiment Station
200 Weaver Boulevard
Asheville, North Carolina 28804

GROWING EUCALYPTS IN FLORIDA FOR INDUSTRIAL WOOD PRODUCTION

T. F. Geary, G. F. Meskimen, and E. C. Franklin

Th authors are, respectively, Research Plant Physiologist and Research Forester, USDA Forest Service, Southeastern Forest Experiment Station, Forest Re urces Laboratory, Lehigh Acres, Florida, and Director, Small Woodlot Forestry Research and Development Program, School of Forest Resources, North Ca lina State University, Raleigh.

Contents

Page

Preface 1

Summary 1

Introduction 3

History 3

Species and Sites 4
  Southern Zone 4
  Central Zone 6
  Northern Zone 6
  Edaphic and Silvicultural Effects 7

Plant Locally Improved Stock . . . 8
  Selection for Freeze Resistance 9
  Resistant Individuals 9

The Breeding Strategy 10
  Grandis Breeding Population . . . 10
  Breeding Populations of Other Species 12

Seed Collection and Handling . . . 12
  Seed Collection 12
  Seed Extraction 13
  Seed Cleaning 14
  Testing Seed Viability and Purity 15
  Storage 15
  Stratification 16
  Seed Mixtures for Commercial Planting 16
  Pelleting 16

Seedling Production 17
  Containers 17
  Potting Mix 18
  Sowing 18
  Water Quality 19
  Germination 19
  Growing Seedlings to Planting Size 20

Pag

Site Preparation 2
  Bedding 2
  Spacing 2
  Fertilization 2
  Burning 2
  Common Site-Preparation Practice 2
  Old Fields 2

Planting 2

After-Planting Care 3

Growth and Yields 3

Harvesting and Coppice Tending . . 3

Protection 3

Utilization 3

Prospects and Problems of the Future 3

Literature Cited 4

Appendix
  Scientific Nomenclature of Eucalyptus Species Mentioned in the Text 4

Peface

This paper describes the technology o eucalyptus culture in Florida. It is itended to help landowners decide if tey want to grow eucalypts for idustrial wood production, to help fresters prescribe silvicultural practces, and to inform the world's eucalptus technologists of new methods dveloped in Florida. The strategy used i Florida to domesticate a new wood cop in a difficult environment could be a model for others to follow, not only wth eucalypts but with other species.

Practices in Florida are developing rpidly, and our purpose is to provide crrent information. Previously upublished research results are rported from the Lehigh Acres laboratry of the USDA Forest Service, and fom the Florida Forests Foundation, wich was absorbed by the Lehigh Acres lboratory. Cooperator's experimental rsults are drawn upon as needed.

The work described was done with the lp of many cooperators. Several of tem participated in a formal eucalyptus rsearch cooperative and are mentioned i the section on history. Other cpperators in field experiments have ben Alico, Inc., Babcock Florida Cmpany, Collier Corporation, Gorgia-Pacific Corporation, Turner Crporation, and Walt Disney World.

Jackson Burgess, founder of the Forida Forests Foundation, started formal research on eucalypts in Florida. P. Lykes and Ben Swendsen of Lykes Bos., Inc., have provided solid support fr the research over the years. The Forida Division of Forestry has partly fnanced the research, and many of its prsonnel have participated in a variety of research studies. Employees of the vided much assistance describing soils in the field.

The Australian common names of eucalypts are seldom descriptive of species characteristics in Florida, and a separate convention for names has developed here. The common name of a eucalypt in Florida usually comes from its scientific name. Thus *Eucalyptus grandis* Hill ex Maiden is known simply as "grandis." That convention is used in this publication. Occasionally, a more descriptive nickname is used in Florida; for example, Spanish camaldulensis to designate a strain of camaldulensis that came from seed imported from Spain. The scientific names of eucalyptus species mentioned in the text are listed in the Appendix.

Summary

Eucalyptus trees have been planted on 4 million ha (10 million acres) in the world because of their rapid growth, adaptability to diverse sites, and ability to coppice. Eucalypts were first planted in Florida in 1878, but no industrial plantations were established until 1972. By 1981, 6,000 ha (15,000 acres) of eucalyptus pulpwood plantations existed in southern Florida due to a cooperative research and development effort by government, private landowners, and industry. The area in eucalyptus plantations may expand rapidly in Florida as strains of trees and suitable silvicultural methods are developed for central and northern Florida, and the coastal plain of other Southern States.

Proper species selection, site selection, and site preparation are critical to plantation establishment. Grandis and robusta are recommended for planting on palmetto prairie and acid flatwoods of the southern planting zone. Camaldulensis and tereticornis are recommended for ridges. Grandis and robusta grow excellently on subsided muck soils, but these soils are not presently available to forestry. Lack of suitable strains of eucalypts or proven silvicultural techniques prevent recommendations for other landtypes in the southern zone.

---

ce: The use of trade, firm, or corcation names in this publication is the information and convenience of reader. Such use does not constie an official endorsement or approval the U.S. Department of Agriculture or Forest Service of any product or vice to the exclusion of others that be suitable.

Camaldulensis, macarthurii, nova-anglica, tereticornis, viminalis, and a saligna X tereticornis hybrid are suitable for plantations in the central zone. However, lack of genetically improved seeds and insufficient knowledge of site requirements and silvicultural techniques restrict planting to small test plantations. Grandis and robusta might be suitable for the central zone despite damage from freezes, because more wood might be produced in plantations of these species than in plantations of slower growing, more freeze-resistant species.

Macarthurii, nova-anglica, and viminalis show exceptional promise in the northern zone, but a lack of genetically improved seeds precludes commercial planting at this time.

Soil type and site drainage have a pronounced effect on eucalyptus growth, and the effect varies with species. Even on flatlands there is enough soil variation that soil mapping prior to planting to delineate priority soils for planting would be beneficial.

Plantations in Florida should be established with eucalyptus strains bred in Florida, because plantations established with imported seeds have been unsatisfactory for industrial wood production. Selection for freeze resistance is important in the Florida breeding work. However, striving for complete resistance may reduce yields too much, so some risk of freeze damage can be acceptable.

Genetically improved seeds and seedlings of grandis, robusta, camaldulensis, and tereticornis are available from the Florida Division of Forestry. A breeding system that uses recurrent selection in successive generations of open-pollinated families is most advanced for grandis, which in Florida is a landrace from three generations of selection.

Methods have been developed for seed collection, extraction, cleaning, germination testing, and storage. Pelleted seeds are precision-sowed in nursery containers that are designed to air-prune roots. Seedlings are removed from the containers and are shipped to planting sites in cardboard boxes.

Experience in site preparation is concentrated on palmetto prairie in the southern zone, and to a much lesser extent on cutover and stumped acid flat woods in the southern and central zones. Standard site preparation on these land is to either double chop, cross disk, c root plow. Ground rock phosphate (GRP) is broadcast if grandis or robusta are to be planted (GRP is toxic to camaldulensis and tereticornis), and beds are constructed. Beds are essential on sites that may be flooded at summer planting time. Bedding also often controls some types of competing vegeta tion but not the grasses found on old-field sites.

Planting is typically done in summe in the southern and central zones, because it is the only season in which adequate soil moisture is certain. Mos planting is done with bare-root machine planters designed for pines.

In Florida, plantations are not tended after planting, but weed control would probably be very beneficial. Application of nitrogen fertilizer to young stands also might greatly stimulate growth.

Plantations of grandis and robusta in the southern zone are currently producing pulpwood at a rate of 16 m^3 per ha per yr (2.5 cords/acre/yr). Much higher yields of total biomass can be achieved by intensifying silvicultural practices and planting at high seedling densities. Yields of other species and in other planting zones are unknown.

Little harvesting of eucalyptus has occurred in Florida. Chain saws or shears will probably be satisfactory for harvest as long as stump bark is no damaged. Whole-tree chipping would reduce fire hazard, keep debris off stumps, and reduce regeneration from seed, although nutrient drain is a concern. One major problem to face foresters is the unreliable coppicing o grandis in Florida, especially after a summer harvest.

Cattle and deer damage newly established plantations, and fire can b a problem in plantations of any age if an understory of saw-palmetto or other flammable vegetation is present. Insects, diseases, and lightning are nuisances, but they are not serious limiting factors in growing eucalypts in Florida. Hurricanes could cause serious plantation losses.

The eucalypts selected for growing in Florida are good furnish for pulp. They would be a good choice for fuelwood plantations, and other uses are possible.

Use of rooted cuttings and tissue culture plants from cloned superior trees promises large gains in adaptability and productivity.

Introduction

Eucalypts are evergreen hardwood trees and shrubs of the genus *Eucalyptus* in the family Myrtaceae. The genus includes about 500 species (Boland and others 1980; Chippendale 1976; and Hall and others 1970), almost all native to Australia and adjacent islands. Several are native to Indonesia, Papua, New Guinea, and the Philippines (FAO of the UN 1981), but only two of these species, deglupta and urophylla, are not also native to Australia. The genus has attracted worldwide interest, because eucalypts have grown exceptionally rapidly in short-rotation plantations when planted in countries where they are not native. Moreover, the stumps of most plantation species sprout after harvest, making coppice regeneration possible. Because of high productivity and ease of regeneration, eucalyptus plantations occupy 4 million ha (10 million acres) worldwide (FAO of the UN 1981)--probably more plantation area than that of all other hardwoods combined. Among the hundreds of eucalyptus species, no more than 30 have shown potential for high-yielding timber plantations (FAO of the UN 1981). Almost all the world's acreage of eucalyptus plantations is planted to just 10 species: camaldulensis, globulus, grandis, maculata, paniculata, robusta, saligna, tereticornis, urophylla, and viminalis (FAO of the UN 1981).

In southern Florida, eucalypts grow much more rapidly than other hardwoods or pines on a variety of sites. Rapid growth might make eucalyptus forestation profitable on land presently not replanted following timber harvest and on rangeland with low carrying capacity. Demand for accessible hardwood supplies when bottom lands are flooded in northern Florida, and the adaption of eucalypts to available low-quality rangeland in southern Florida led to the establishment of 6,000 ha (15,000 acres) of eucalypts west of Lake Okeechobee between 1972 and 1981.

Possibly a million hectares in southern Florida and a far larger area in the State as a whole have potential for eucalyptus plantations. Planting stock and cultural techniques are available to plant eucalypts operationally in southern Florida and on a pilot scale in central Florida. Freeze-tolerant stock is not available for planting farther north but soon may be. Thus, eucalyptus planting could expand rapidly over the next 10 years in Florida and in the warm coastal regions of neighboring states.

History

The earliest documented planting of eucalypts in Florida was in 1878 on Merritt Island. In 1910, Zon and Briscoe (1911) found eucalypts growing at 27 locations, and 16 species were represented. They urged caution in establishing commerical plantations because of insufficient information on matching species to sites, silvicultural practices, and yields, and an uncertain market for the wood. They pointed to a need for systematic introduction of species and planned experiments.

Zon and Briscoe's caution was heeded. Through the first half of the 20th century, some eucalypts were planted in Florida for shade, ornamentals, and windbreaks, especially around homesteads in southern Florida, and a few small plantations were established. However, Zon and Briscoe's call for scientific research went unheeded until 1959.

In 1959 in Fort Myers, the private Florida Forests Foundation started scientifically based eucalyptus research that included species selection for various landtypes, site preparation, fertilization, spacing, weed control, and nursery practices. The Florida Forests Foundation was absorbed by the

USDA Forest Service in 1965, and the eucalyptus research was continued but at a reduced level. In about 1966, the Florida Division of Forestry (FDF) published a planting guide for eucalypts in Florida (Schory [n.d.]). However, until 1972, only research plantations had been established.

At that time, some pulpmills in northern Florida wanted eucalyptus wood, but they did not own land suitable for growing it, because only southern Florida appeared to have acceptable frost risk for growing eucalypts. Some southern Florida landowners wanted to grow wood, but they were uncertain about markets, silvicultural practices, and yields. The FDF had a bare-root pine nursery in southern Florida but could not invest in eucalyptus container facilities without an assured market, and the technology was lacking for mass producing seedlings at low cost. The Southeastern Forest Experiment Station, USDA Forest Service, had the research expertise needed to develop the technology, but it was not certain that there were sufficient clients for the research.

Impetus for major planting came in 1971 with formation of a eucalyptus research cooperative designed to aid Forest Service scientists at Lehigh Acres, Florida, to develop genetically improved planting stock, nursery practices, and establishment techniques. Cooperating formally with the Forest Service for various periods of time were Buckeye Cellulose Corp., Perry, Fla.; Container Corp. of America, Fernandina Beach, Fla.; the FDF; Hudson Pulp & Paper Corp., Palatka, Fla.; International Paper Co., Bainbridge, Ga.; ITT Rayonier, Fernandina Beach, Fla.; Lykes Bros., Inc., Tampa, Fla.; and St. Regis Paper Co., Jacksonville, Fla. The cooperative effort shared the risks and broke the barriers that had prevented commerical eucalyptus planting (Uhr 1976).

In 1972 a quality facial tissue with ideal strength and softness was manufactured in a Florida pulpmill from a mill-scale run of grandis grown in Florida, and this added confidence to commerical eucalyptus growing (Uhr 1976). Also in 1972, the North Carolina State University (NCSU) Hardwood Management Cooperative began systematic testing to find eucalypts hardy enough to withstand the freezing temperatures of northern Florida and the coastal plain of other Southern States.

Species and Sites

Proper species selection, site selection, and site preparation are critical to plantation establishment. Species trials and planting tests suggest three planting zones in Florida, based on the severity of freeze damage to several eucalyptus species (fig. 1).

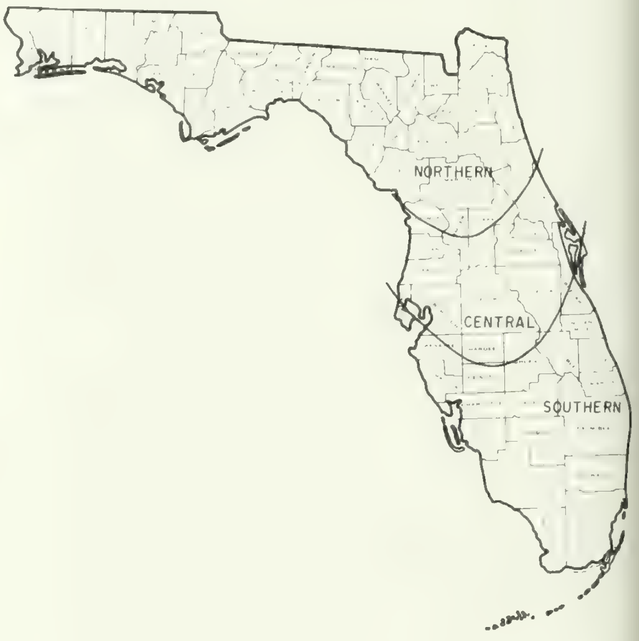


Figure 1.— Provisional eucalyptus planting zones in Florida.

Southern Zone

In the southern zone, five species and two hybrids stand out in vigor and freeze resistance (table 1). Four of these--camaldulensis, grandis, robusta, and tereticornis--are currently used for plantations. Rudis has been excluded because its poor form makes it unsuitable for pulpwood. The camaldulensis

Tble 1 — Eucalyptus species that are suitable after genetic improvement for industrial wood plantations in Florida.

Species and origin	Planting zone suitability			Adaptability and site selection criteria	Utilization qualities	Availability of genetically improved seed (alternative propagation method)
	Southern	Central	Northern			
Caldulensis						
Israel	Yes	Probably	No	Good growth rate on a variety of sites, freeze resistant (?) in southern zone	Mediocre form; pulping not tested	None. (Propagate with rooted cuttings or tissue culture plants)
Spain	Yes	Yes	No	Good growth rate except on wet sites; plant on excessively drained sites in southern zone and on all but wet sites in central zone; good choice for reclaimed strip mines; very freeze resilient in central zone	Fair form; as good as native hardwood pulp furnish, if not better (Franklin 1977)	Scarce - sporadic seed production from first-generation seed orchard. (Can propagate with rooted cuttings or tissue culture plants)
Western Australia	Yes	Probably	No	Vigorous growth on a variety of sites; exceptionally freeze resistant in southern zone	Crooked, limby; pulping not tested, but thick bark may be a problem	None. (Propagate with rooted cuttings or tissue culture plants)
Caldulensis grandis						
Morocco and Florida	Yes	Probably	No	Very vigorous growth on a variety of sites; freeze resistant (?) in southern zone	Good form; pulping not tested	None. (Propagate with rooted cuttings or tissue culture plants)
Gndis						
Many	Yes	Provisionally	No	Very vigorous growth on acid flatwoods and palmetto prairie; freeze resilient in southern zone; freeze susceptible to moderately freeze resilient in central zone; coppices poorly from summer harvests	Excellent form; as good as native hardwood pulp furnish, if not better (Franklin 1977)	Abundant from third-generation of selection; fourth-generation seed available soon. (Rooted cuttings and tissue culture plants are an option)
Gndis robusta						
Florida selections	Yes	Provisionally	No	Apparent hybrid vigor and better coppicing ability than pure grandis	Probably similar to grandis and robusta	None. (Propagate with rooted cuttings or tissue culture plants)
Marthurii						
Many	No	Yes	Yes	Very freeze resistant; preferred sites not defined	Fair form; pulp quality unknown	None. (Propagation by rooted cuttings or tissue culture plants might be possible)
Na-anglica						
Many	No	Yes	Yes	Very freeze resistant; preferred sites not defined	Fair form; pulping properties similar to native hardwoods (Hunt and Zobel 1978)	None. (Propagation by rooted cuttings or tissue culture plants might be possible)
Rusta						
Many	Yes	Provisionally	No	Grows as well as grandis on wetter soils of palmetto prairie and flatwoods; probably more freeze resilient than grandis; coppices more reliable than grandis, especially in summer	Good form; as good as native hardwood pulp furnish, if not better (Franklin 1977)	Abundant from third-generation of selection. (Rooted cuttings and tissue culture plants are an option)
Ris						
Western Australia	Yes	Probably	No	Vigorous growth on a variety of sites; exceptionally freeze resistant in southern zone	Crooked, limby; pulping not tested	None. (Propagate with rooted cuttings or tissue culture plants)
Signa ‹ ereticornis						
Unknown	Maybe	Provisionally	No	Grows slower than grandis, but is more freeze resilient	Good form; probably good pulp	Tenuous; single tree in Florida. (Propagate with rooted cuttings or tissue culture plants)
Teticornis						
Unknown	Yes	Yes	No	Good growth rate; plant on excessively drained sites in southern zone, good choice for reclaimed strip mines in central zone; freeze resistance slightly less than that of Spanish camaldulensis; growth rate less than that of Spanish camaldulensis on better drained soils, but might be the better grower on poorer drained soils	Good form; good only for NSSC pulp (Franklin 1977); densest wood of selected eucalypts	More abundant than camaldulensis, but supplies sporadic; two first-generation seed orchards--Ft. [illegible] and Fort Meade; the latter is the more freeze-hardy strain. (Rooted cuttings and tissue culture plants are an option)
Vinalis						
Many	No	Yes	Yes	Best prospect for northern zone; freeze resistant; sites not defined	Fair form; pulping properties similar to native hardwoods (Hunt and Zobel 1978)	None. (Propagation by rooted cuttings or tissue culture plants might be possible)

X grandis and grandis X robusta hybrids are desirable, but F_1 hybrid seeds cannot be mass produced. Camaldulensis planting is restricted to a strain that originated from seed collected in Spain, because this strain has superior form.

Sites suitable and available for planting in the southern zone are sandy soils of the palmetto or dry prairie, pine flatwoods, pine-oak forest, and scrub ridges (Davis 1943). The palmetto prairie and the pine flatwoods are similar in soils and vegetation with the exception that the prairies have always been treeless. Pine flatwoods are either forested now or cutover. Many sites of the types described have been farmed temporarily and are known as old fields.

A palmetto prairie, a preferred land type for planting eucalypts in the Southern planting zone.

Prairie and flatwoods soils that are suitable for planting range from poorly drained, and occasionally flooded, to moderately well drained ridges. Interspersed are areas of wet prairie (Davis 1943) unsuitable for planting. On raw land, saw-palmetto, *Serenoa repens* (Bartr.) Small, is a helpful indicator of natural drainage suitable for eucalypts. The lack of saw-palmetto indicates the site is too wet. Some flatwoods have thin soils over calcareous materials--often marl or limerock. Very little research has been done on these sweet flatwoods soils, but growth of the few eucalyptus plantings has been poor. There are no recommended species or establishment techniques for sweet flatwoods.

On the palmetto prairie and acid flatwoods, recommended species are grandis on all except the wettest soils and ridges, robusta on the wetter soils, and camaldulensis and tereticornis on the ridges. Camaldulensis and tereticornis are also recommended for the major ridges such as the Highlands Ridge (Davis 1943). Subsided muck soils (Snyder and others 1978) can be planted with either grandis or robusta, which grow outstandingly on these soils, but intensive agriculture currently occupies almost all drained mucklands.

Central Zone

Camaldulensis, macarthurii, nova-anglica, tereticornis, viminalis, and a saligna X tereticornis hybrid have sufficient resistance to freezes for the central zone (table 1). However, lack of genetically improved seeds and insufficient knowledge of site requirements and establishment techniques restrict planting to small trials. Camaldulensis and tereticornis appear to be the best species for reclaimed phosphate strip mines, which are a common landtype in the central zone, but success is difficult to predict because of the variability of reclaimed soils.

Grandis and robusta planted in the central zone often are frozen to the ground in the first winter after planting, but most individuals coppice the following spring and the vigorous coppice growth frequently survives freezes in subsequent winters, even though there is often substantial crown damage. These trees have produced more wood than slower growing, more freeze-resistant species. Flatwoods are best suited for grandis and robusta in the central zone, and planting of these species should be continued in small areas for selection of outstanding individuals. Kirtoniana and a robusta x rudis hybrid show potential for the central zone, but little research has been done on them.

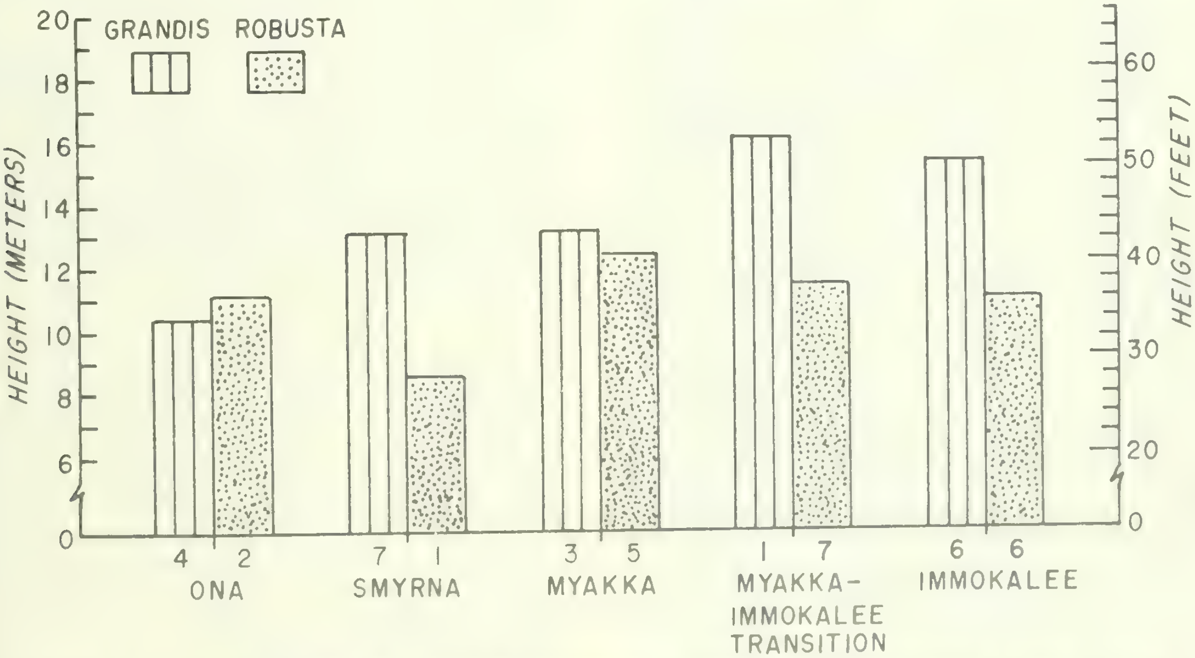
Northern Zone

Macarthurii, nova-anglica, and viminalis show exceptional promise in the northern zone (Hunt and Zobel 1978; table 1). A lack of genetically improved seeds precludes commercial lanting at this time. Dalrympleana and ubida also might be selectively bred nto suitable species for planting. amphora, cinerea, and neglecta are xceptionally freeze resistant in the orthern zone, but their growth rate and orm are too poor for consideration as lantation species.

daphic and Silvicultural Effects

Soil type has a pronounced effect on ucalyptus growth, and the effect varies ith species. Even on the very flat and of southern Florida, there is ubstantial variation in soil type over hort distances. The result is microsite" variation in tree growth ithin plantations. For example, in one 7-ha (168 acres) plantation on palmetto airie in Glades County, 50 percent of he area contains 73 percent of the olume. In this plantation, at least our different soils occur, and these orm a continuum in characteristics from ha fine sand, which has the poorest nternal drainage and the highest summer ter table, to Immokalee fine sand, which has the best internal drainage and the lowest summer water table. Grandis and robusta alternate in strips six beds wide over the plantation. Grandis has grown best in the drier areas of the plantation (fig. 2). Robusta growth was affected less than grandis by soil type, but it has grown much slower than grandis on the drier soils. These relationships of grandis and robusta to soil type and drainage status have been observed in other plantations. Therefore, soil mapping can be beneficial in selecting areas and species to plant, although not all poor microsites can be excluded from a plantation because of their scattered occurrence and small size.

Drainage characteristics also are important in matching species and sites in central Florida, but indicators are not as well known as in southern Florida. The growth of Spanish camaldulensis and tereticornis from the St. Leo seed orchard in Florida was measured on a bedded flatwoods in central Florida that ran from a pond edge to a ridge top (fig. 3). The trees grew faster ini-



gure 2.—Height of 4.5-year-old grandis and robusta on different soil series of palmetto prairie in Glades County, orida. The number at the base of each bar denotes the number of plots representing each species on each soil ries. All the soils are poorly drained, sandy, siliceous, hyperthermic representatives of the Great Group of plaquods. Soils are arranged according to depth to a spodic horizon: Ona, less than 25 cm; Smyrna, 25 to 50 cm; akka, 50 to 75 cm; and Immokalee, 75 to 125 cm—this gradient also corresponds to drainage, with Ona most poorly ained and Immokalee least poorly drained. (S. McCollum of the USDA Soil Conservation Service described and pped the soils.)

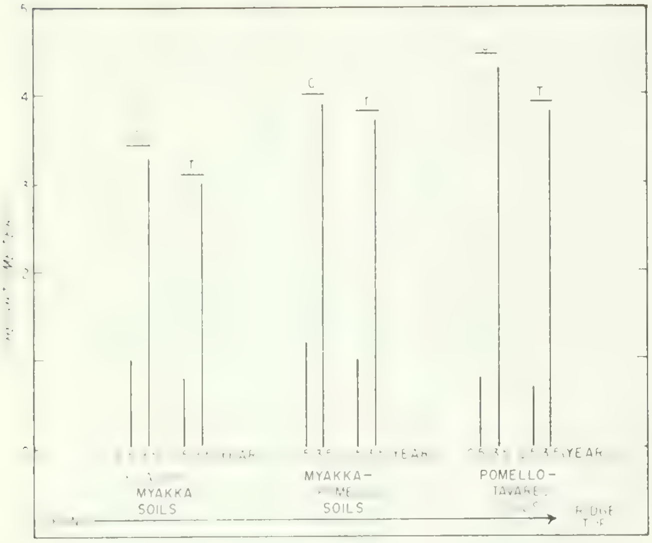


Figure 3.—Growth of Spanish camaldulensis (C) and St. Leo tereticornis (T) on a bedded flatwoods in central Florida with a soil gradient from very wet to very dry.

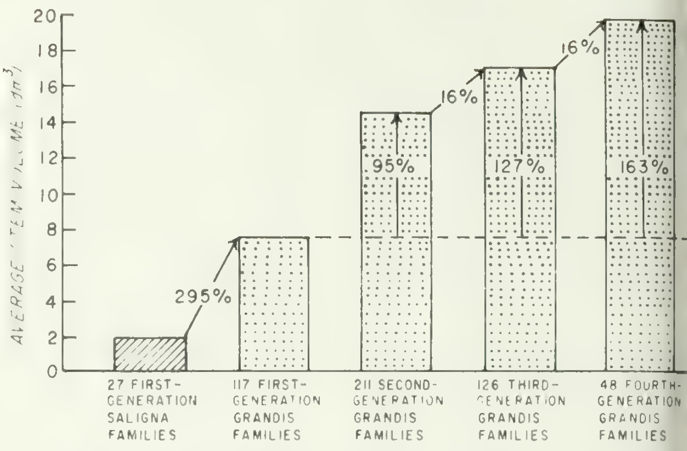


Figure 4.—Improving growth of grandis by successive generations of selection.

tially in the intermediate area of the plantation, probably because the beds on the ridge were too dry (but bedding was needed to control vegetative competition). Later, growth became faster on the drier areas.

In recent years lowered water tables due to extensive drainage and aquifer pumping have obscured the relationships of growth to soil series in some areas. In other areas, weirs installed on drainways keep water tables artificially high during the dry season. Therefore, soil series, while important in species and site selection, can at times be a poor guide without additional information on present drainage conditions.

Introducing species from Australian climates matched to Florida's climate has been successful (i.e., grandis and robusta) but not conclusive. A common generalization holds that species native to areas of Australia with dry summers and wet winters (Mediterranean climate) adapt poorly when introduced to areas with wet summers and dry winters, like southern Florida. Generally the rule has held, with dozens of Australian winter rainfall species failing in southern Florida trials. But there are notable exceptions; sources of camaldulensis and rudis introduced from the Mediterranean climate of Western Australia display broad adaptability in southern Florida, as have sources of these species from trees growing as exotics in the Mediterranean Basin (Israel, Spain, Morocco).

Species respond to site treatments differently. On sites fertilized with GRP, grandis responded with added growth, but camaldulensis and tereticornis became stunted and the leaders died back. But without GRP, camaldulensis often grew as fast as grandis, if not faster.

Plant Locally Improved Stock

When someone reads about the amazing productivity of some species or strain of eucalyptus in some other part of the world, the tendency is to want to plant the same material in Florida to get the same yields. That approach is a mistake. Eucalyptus plantations established from imported seeds have been unsatisfactory for industrial wood production in Florida, because most of the introduced individuals were poorly adapted to Florida conditions. But selection and breeding of the best individuals in these plantings has resulted in locally adapted strains and large gains in productivity (fig. 4). Therefore, plantations should be established only with improved strains selected in Florida.

Orchards for the production of genetically improved seeds are established on private land. The FDF maintains these orchards and collects the seeds. The seed orchards are the final product of the Forest Service's long-term breeding program that will be described later in this paper. The NCSU Hardwood Cooperative has a similar program for developing eucalyptus strains suitable for the northern zone and the coastal plain of other Southern States.

Selection for Freeze Resistance

Eucalypts do not have annual resting buds. Instead they have indeterminate shoots that grow continuously as long as conditions are favorable; there is no requirement for rest or overwintering (FAO of the UN 1981; Hillis and Brown 1978). In southern Florida, eucalypts grow through the winter except for periods of extraordinary cold or drought. Continuous growth maximizes wood production, but it also maximizes freeze hazard.

Freeze resistance is a critical selection factor in Florida. The need for freeze resistance increases from south to north and inland from either coast. Testing is chancy because of year-to-year variation in the type, timing, and intensity of freezes. The larger a tree is at the time of a freeze, the greater its resistance.

Assessments of eucalyptus freeze resistance in other parts of the world often are not fully predictive of results in Florida. In their native Australia and in some other countries where eucalypts grow as exotics, cool weather precedes freezes and hardens the trees. In Florida, swift-moving cold fronts turn balmy afternoons into freezing mornings overnight, severely challenging the tender, growing eucalypts.

Two types of freezes occur in peninsular Florida--radiation freezes and blowing colds (Johnson 1970). Radiation freezes are most common, with a layer of freezing air extending from ground level to a height of only a few centimeters or meters. Tree crowns and stems may or may not be damaged, depending on their height and bark thickness. Blowing colds are less common but more destructive, with freezing air churning through the crowns of even the tallest trees.

In general, fast-growing eucalyptus species are less freeze resistant than slower growing species. Growers and tree breeders must decide how much freeze damage to risk in striving for high yield.

Resistant Individuals

Some trees of a species are more freeze resistant than others, and these make valuable breeding parents for improving tolerance to freezes. We select for two types of tolerance--freeze resistance and freeze resilience.

Freeze-resilient eucalypts which froze to the ground in their first winter and withstood subsequent freezes. On most stools, several coppice shoots self-thinned to a single main stem, but some original competing shoots can still be seen.

The crowns of resistant selections are lightly damaged, if at all, by severe freezes. Other selections are only freeze resilient. Their stems may be killed to the ground by a hard freeze in their first winter, but they resprout swiftly and gracefully. In subsequent winters they suffer only superficial damage. Individuals neither resistant nor resilient simply die or freeze to the ground and resprout year after year.

In practical terms, a plantation of fully freeze-resilient trees may lose 6 months of growth to a severe freeze, but it is not destroyed. In central Florida, moderately freeze-resilient selections from species like grandis and robusta that are on average freeze-susceptible in the central zone, often produce more wood than selections from slower growing, freeze-resistant species, even after subtracting freeze losses. Almost all select trees have been picked within the past 9 years, and all have been subjected to severe freezes. They may not have been tested as yet, however, by the strongest freeze that might occur.

The Breeding Strategy

Large variations among trees in resistance to freezing and in other characteristics make eucalypts good candidates for genetic improvement. It should be recognized, however, that the selection and breeding process is complex. Many species have a wide ecological and geographical range, and seed sources from throughout the range should be tested before rejecting a species as unsuitable. Eucalypts hybridize readily under some conditions. The hybrids complicate determination of the quality of the affected species, for first cross (F_1) hybrids often show hybrid vigor, whereas trees grown from seeds collected from hybrids are often inferior.

Since commerical planting began in Florida in 1972, seedlings supplied by the FDF nursery for each planting season have been the best genetic stock available from an ongoing tree improvement program of the Forest Service. The breeding system uses recurrent selection to derive seedling seed orchards from successive generations of open-pollinated families (Franklin and Meskimen 1975). Eucalypts are basically insect pollinated (Pryor 1976), and beehives are stationed in the orchards during flowering season. Commercial seed is harvested from the orchard's best mother trees as identified by progeny testing. All seed is stored separately by mother trees, so in any crop year the latest progeny test results are used to select seed from the best mother trees for the current season's nursery crop.

Breeding populations presently involve four species: grandis, robusta, camaldulensis, and tereticornis. Grandis breeding is most advanced and best illustrates the system.

Grandis Breeding Population

Grandis planted in Florida constitutes a landrace developed through three generations of selection and progeny testing in the local environment. The fourth-generation breeding population is ready for conversion to a seedling seed orchard. The breeding system has combined species trials, provenance testing, and progeny testing in the same plantings (see fig. 4--saligna included in a third-generation breeding population of grandis). Species trials are phased out during roguing to a seedling seed orchard. The best species is retained in the seedling seed orchard, while the other species are eliminated.

As many grandis seedlots as possible have been imported. Ideally, seedlots represented select single trees in Australia, but some bulk lots have been included along with many lots from exotic populations outside Australia. Each seedlot (called a family) contributes about 60 seedlings to a large outplanting called the genetic base population. All individuals of all families are completely randomized in single-tree plots.

Stocking is 1,916 trees per ha (775 trees/acre) in a precise row X column grid, mapped to preserve the location and pedigree of each tree. Planting beds are paired, with 2.3-m (7.5 ft) spacing within a pair and 3.5-m (11.5

) spacing between pairs, and seedlings lanted 1.8 m (6 ft) apart along the eds. The 3.5-m (11.5 ft) spacing beween pairs allows access to any tree by ork vehicles, particularly bucket rucks for seed collection. The two loser spacings promote dense stocking n the base population, which later ranslates to a reasonable stocking of eed trees and pollinators in the eedling seed orchard.

Each tree in the base population is easured for growth rate and scored for reeze resistance, stem straightness, ranch habit, and general adaptation. t age 2.7 years (one-third of planned otation age for plantations), the best henotypes are selected and the rest are ogued in the first stage of converting he base population to a seedling seed rchard. The best families usually ontribute three or four selects to the eedling seed orchard, and the maximum umber allowed for one family is based n a sliding scale derived from its elatedness to other families. Most amilies contribute only one or two elects, and about a third of the famiies drop out of the breeding population or lack of any worthy candidates.

Select trees exchange pollen in the irst massive bloom at age 3+ years, and he following spring the seeds are ollected and used to establish the next eneration's base population, which is lso the progeny test of the seedling eed orchard. Thus, a generation is urned in 4 years. Progeny test results dentify the best commercial seed trees s well as poor seed trees to be rogued rom the orchard.

Each generation of selection enances the landrace's adaptation to local onditions (fig. 4), but new families ust be imported to broaden the genetic ase and guard against inbreeding epression. The current genetic base opulation (fourth-generation seed rchard) consists of 31,725 trees repreenting 529 families on 17.3 ha (43 cres). Nine percent of the families re fourth generation (great grandothers selected for excellence in a lorida plantation); 24 percent, third eneration (grandmothers selected in lorida); 40 percent, second generation mothers selected in Florida); and 27 percent, first generation (newly imported families).

The Florida landrace is predominantly grandis, but a few seed orchard trees and scattered offspring display traits from robusta, tereticornis, camaldulensis, and saligna. Some of the interbreeding originated in early species trials in Florida, but hybridity also occurs occasionally in seedlots from natural stands in Australia.

Three generations of selection have enhanced freeze resistance and dramatically increased growth capacity (fig. 4). The select trees demonstrate superior adaptation to Florida and can transmit that adaptability to their progeny. However, predicting gains in commercial wood production should be verified in yield plots rather than inferred from the genetic base population. This is because a base population is a competition matrix of elite, average, and poor families; whereas commercial plantations include only elite families--a much more competitive population. A grandis yield experiment compares the following three populations:

> *Premier*--Six advanced-generation families (average 3.5 generations of selection) that are top ranked for the combined traits of volume production, freeze resistance, form, and coppicing.
>
> *Commercial*--The 33 advanced-generation families (average 2.9 generations) included in the seed mix for the 1979 commercial planting season.
>
> *Ancestral*--Four imported seedlots from which all six premier families descend and 21 of the 33 commercial families.

At age 1.5 years, heights of premier and commercial trees exceeded those of ancestral trees by 23 and 13 percent, respectively. During the second winter of the study, damage from a severe freeze was scored on a scale of 10 = undamaged, 9 down through 5 = increasing degrees of foliar damage, 4 down through 1 = increasing degrees of wood damage, 0 = frozen to ground but sprouting, and -1 = frozen dead. The three populations differed significantly in their mean freeze damage scores: premier, 6.8; commercial, 4.8; and ancestral, 2.0.

Breeding Populations of Other Species

Robusta breeding is not as advanced as grandis. The progeny of trees selected in Florida, however, grew 68 percent faster in volume than the original, imported seedlots (Franklin and Meskimen 1973). Robusta stock for commerical planting comes from a second-generation, progeny-tested seed orchard and from a third-generation orchard of phenotypic selects that have not been progeny tested. The third generation robusta seed orchard is interplanted with grandis to generate F_1 hybrids, which appear to be more productive in Florida than either pure species.

Progeny tested, first-generation seed orchards exist for Spanish camaldulensis and two strains of tereticornis. Second-generation offspring for these two species have been mixed in a combined base population along with several rudis families. This combined base population is not yet selected and rogued.

Eucalyptus capsules, seeds, and chaff.

Seed Collection and Handling

Seed Collection

The time of seed maturation in Florida varies by species and year. Samples of seed capsules should be cut and examined before any large-scale collection. Immature seeds are white, mucilaginous, and stuck together. Mature seeds are firm, free, and dark brown to black, except for camaldulensis seeds, which are yellowish brown.

Grandis seeds have been collected as early as mid-February to meet a March 15 nursery sowing deadline, but the seed crop is not completely mature before March 15. Robusta seeds do not mature before April 15. Since the seeds of these two species remain on the tree for a full year, seed crops from 2 years can be obtained by collecting every other year.

The collection window for camaldulensis and tereticornis is narrow because their seed capsules open a short time after the seeds mature. Collection cannot begin before late May and must be completed by mid-June. Each seed orchard of these species has its own distinct collection time, and the orchards must be watched closely to avoid loss of seeds. Viminalis and other freeze-resistant eucalypts have not flowered abundantly in Florida, so their seed collection dates are unknown.

Operational quantities of grandis seeds can be harvested from an orchard at age 3.7 years, and production increases through about age 10. (Trees are topped to keep them in range of bucket trucks, so eventually crown size stabilizes.) Large crops are produced every year, but individual trees vary greatly in the quantity, purity, and viability of seeds. In 1980, 38 grandis trees were selected for commercial seed collection from a 7-year-old orchard of 285 trees. The mean, coefficient of variation (CV), and range in seed production were:

	Mean	CV(%)	Range
olume of raw eed (1)	1.70	81	0.02-5.99
eight of raw eed (kg)	0.99	79	0.01-3.28
ealthy erminations er g of raw seed	688	57	140-1,591
ealthy erminations er tree	694,000	86	23,000-2,518,000

Robusta seed crops vary widely. In ome years, much chaff but few seeds are roduced. The seed crop of Spanish amaldulensis is generally sparse, ecause a twig dieback during winter and pring causes loss of capsules. Seed rops of other camaldulensis strains and ereticornis have been abundant, but any seeds have been lost in central lorida due to freezing of the flowers nd immature capsules.

Seed capsules are collected from ree crowns by workers raised by bucket rucks whenever possible. Genetic ollections are sometimes made by clipping branches of small trees with pole pruners, or by shooting branches from tall trees with a .222 caliber rifle with 9 X scope and soft point bullets.

ollecting seeds in an 8-year-old grandis seed orchard. he trees have been topped to keep the crowns within he range of the bucket truck.

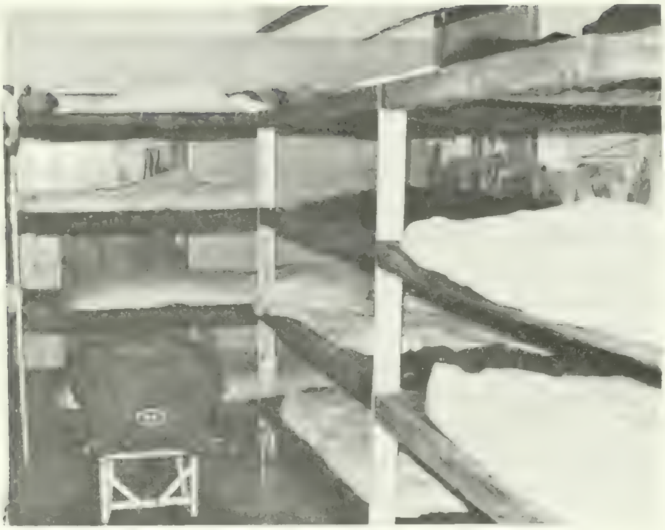
In Florida seed orchards, seed capsules are shucked into the bucket of the bucket truck. The bucket, if of open design, is lined to retain the capsules. Shucking is done by running a gloved hand down the branch, while the other hand holds tension on the branch tip. Trees are topped lightly after they grow too tall to be reached with a bucket truck, and fallen tops are shucked on the ground. Epicormic branches form new seed-bearing crowns on topped trees.

Collection methods tried but rejected include felling the seed trees, severing seed-bearing twigs, and shucking the capsules from the crown for collection on ground cloths. Felled trees, if they coppice, take at least 2 years to resume flowering and at least 5 years to rebuild full seed-bearing crowns. Similarly, twig pruning drastically reduces the next bloom crop. Capsules shucked to the ground are often lost because those with leaves attached often sail beyond the dropcloth.

Seed capsules are bagged at the tree as collected because they can open rapidly on hot, dry days. In Florida, large collections are put in mattress covers, and small collections in kraft paper bags. The baggers try to remove free leaves and twigs as they bag. Capsules from each tree are bagged separately, and the bags are labeled and protected from rain.

Seed Extraction

Capsules are delivered to the extractory within a day of collection to prevent heating and molding in the tightly packed collection bags. At the extractory, capsules are transferred to many loosely packed kraft paper bags or mattress covers for drying. Capsules mixed with leaves and twigs can be spread to a depth of 15 cm (6 in) in the drying bags, but clean capsules, which pack tightly, should not be more than 10 cm (4 in) deep to promote drying and to dissipate heat.



Drying seed capsules in mattress covers.

Mattress covers are placed lengthwise on decked racks of wire mesh. Kraft bags rest open-topped on wire shelves lined with paper to prevent seeds of one mother tree from sifting into a lower bag of another mother tree. The kraft bags are cut to a height of 20 cm (8 in) to allow closer spacing of the shelves.

The valves of mature capsules open through dessication. The extractory should simulate hot, dry, windy days in the forest--heating from 30° to 35° C, dehumidification, and air circulation to drive moisture-laden air from around the capsules. Capsules open in 1 to 2 weeks, depending on their maturity. Drying outside is not dependable in Florida, but efficient solar dryers could undoubtedly be developed.

Shaking extracts the seeds from the opened capsules. Capsules of small seedlots are put in a stovepipe-like cylinder that fits snugly inside a No. 16 U.S. Standard sieve. A pan is put on the bottom of the sieve and a lid on the top of the cylinder, and the unit is shaken. Seeds, chaff, and some small trash pass through the sieve, but most trash is trapped.

Large seedlots are dumped from the drying bags into a cement mixer which is capped with a frame of hardware cloth. The mixer tumbles the capsules for about 10 minutes; then seeds, chaff, and fine trash are poured through the hardware-cloth cap into a large funnel over a collection bucket. With the cap removed, the mixer is emptied of leaves twigs, and spent capsules, then vacuum-cleaned before receiving capsules from different seedlot.

Extracting seeds and chaff from capsules.

The extracted seeds and chaff are sieved through a No. 16 U.S. Standard sieve and the quantity passing through the sieve becomes the recorded weight and volume of the raw seedlot. A large opening sieve might have to be used for standardizing yields of viminalis and some other species that have larger seeds than the established species.

Seed Cleaning

Raw seed is a mixture of fertile seeds in a much greater mass of chaff, which consists of sterile and unfertilized ovules (Boland and others 1980) plus tiny particles of capsules and leaves. Seed purity is usually less than 10 percent, and often as low as 1 or 2 percent. The tiny seeds must be eparated from chaff and other impuriies before seeds can be sowed singly in ach nursery container.

Some seeds are larger and heavier han any chaff and, therefore, are eparated readily; some other seeds and haff differ either in size or weight nd can also be separated; but some eeds and chaff are equal in both size nd weight and cannot be separated. herefore, a goal of 100 percent seed urity is unrealistic, and losses of ome seeds with the chaff must be nticipated.

Seeds from different trees are leaned separately because the size of eeds and chaff vary from tree to tree. ombining raw seeds from different trees an create a matrix of overlapping sizes f seeds and chaff that defy separation.

Raw seeds are sieved into size lasses, which are processed separately n a batch-type seed blower, because the orce of air needed to remove light haff differs by size class. Sizing educes the amount of seed blown away ith the chaff. For lots larger than 4 (1 gal), cleaning is made easier if e lightest chaff is removed with a ontinuous-type seed blower before ieving. Blowing before sieving eleases much dust in the air. A quick ieving on a fine sieve reduces this roblem. Sieves are agitated by a ibrating table to hasten sieving. Shaking sieves is not as effective as vibration.

ieving raw seed on a vibration table to produce artially cleaned seeds for later blowing.

U.S. Standard soil sieves 18, 20, 25, and 30 have the greatest utility for grandis, robusta, camaldulensis, and tereticornis. Seeds that pass through a No. 30 sieve usually are difficult to separate from chaff. Sieve No. 18 primarily catches large trash, although seeds are sometimes caught. Sieve Nos. 14 and 16 are needed for cleaning lots of larger seed species, such as viminalis.

Cleaning eliminates the smallest and lightest seeds, but cleaned seeds collected from Florida seed orchards still vary greatly in size and weight, both within and between seedlots. Cleaned grandis lots contain from 2,000 to 6,500 seeds per g. Tereticornis seeds weigh the same as grandis seeds, camaldulensis seeds are somewhat heavier, and robusta seeds are distinctly heavier. Imported viminalis seeds are much bigger and heavier than even robusta seeds.

Testing Seed Viability and Purity

At the Forest Service laboratory, seeds are germinated on standard 100-indentation, blue germination blotters in closed plastic boxes, lined on the bottom with tissue paper for extra water storage. Known weights of uncleaned seeds are sprinkled on the surface of the blotters, and results are expressed as number of germinations per gram of seeds. In tests of cleaned seeds, one particle (either seed, chaff, or trash) is placed in each blotter indentation, after the 100 particles are weighed. Therefore, the germination test is also a purity analysis. Germination will occur in a room open to daylight, but to standardize results, germination is routinely tested in a chamber maintained at 25° C and lighted for 8 hours each day. Germination of all species used in Florida has been rapid under these conditions.

Storage

Eucalyptus seeds have retained viability during long periods of storage under a variety of conditions at the Forest Service laboratory. Seeds stored at room temperature for 2 years have not noticeably lost viability. Seeds refrigerated for 8 years, then frozen 11 more years, remained viable, although losses in germination percentage and in vigor of germination were suspected.

Eucalyptus seeds remain viable despite wide fluctuations in storage temperatures. Seeds stored at 7° C have retained viability after several periods at 32° C when the refrigerator malfunctioned. Seeds repeatedly frozen and thawed from movement in and out of a freezer have not shown any noticeable loss in viability.

Humidity and seed moisture content influence seed deterioration. Jones (1967) recommended a moisture content of 2.5 percent or less for storage of eucalyptus seeds of some species. In Florida, however, seed moisture content is not reduced beyond that obtained during extraction, and the storage moisture content is not known.

Eucalyptus seeds are stored in a variety of containers. Screw-capped containers, such as plastic milk jugs, are used for storing uncleaned lots. Seeds destined for long-term storage are cleaned to reduce volume, then sealed in plastic packets which store more compactly than bottles.

Large lots of uncleaned seeds are stored at 7° C. Clean seeds, genetic samples, and other research lots are freeze-stored at -18° C. However, freeze storage has not been shown to have any advantage over cold storage for preserving viability. Experiences with seed storage in Florida are similar to those in Australia (Boland and others 1980).

Stratification

Seeds from Florida trees do not need stratification for good germination. Freshly collected seeds and those stored for long periods germinate with similar vigor. The advice of the supplier should be sought in deciding whether to stratify imported seeds.

Seed Mixtures for Commercial Planting

Nursery seedlings for commercial eucalyptus plantations in Florida are raised from a mixture of seeds from m selected trees. The number of parent is not fixed, but to maintain genetic diversity in the plantations, a good rule is to obtain no more than 8 perc of the seeds in a mixture from any on parent. An effort is made to have th same number of viable seeds of each c sen seedlot in the sowing mixture. D to shortages, these rules have been b ken for some species in some years in Florida. The number of viable seeds gram of cleaned seeds is known; therefore, seed mixtures are prepared by weighing out the calculated quantity c each seedlot.

Pelleting

Placing a single seed in each nursery container is tedious but possible on a small scale, such as for a researc study. Dispensers that sow a few seed by tapping are useful for this work. For single seeding on a large scale, however, the tiny seeds must be coated to form pellets of convenient, uniform size. Pellets permit the use of mecha ical sowers and greatly facilitate han sowing.

Florida seeds are pelleted by the FDF with a coating of fine sand and a water-soluble polyvinyl alcohol binder in a custom-built apparatus (Geary and Millier 1982). A yellow vegetable dye

Pelleting seeds with fine sand and a polyvinyl alcohol i a reciprocating-rotating pan.

s added to the sticker solution to make ellets more visible. These pelleted eeds germinate as well as bare seeds in he nursery. Some other pellet coatings ecrease germination.

eedling Production

ontainers

As in most of the world, eucalyptus lanting stock in Florida is grown in ontainers. Florida containers range in olume from 47 to 78 cm^3 (2.8 to 4.8 in^3), hich is small by world standards.

Containerization developed because urvival of bare-root seedlings was nconsistent in Florida. In one study, 9 percent of seedlings grown in 1-1 (1 t) containers survived summer planting, hile only 71 percent of the bare-root eedlings survived. The growth rate of are-root seedlings initially lagged ehind that of container-grown seedings. Although growth rates were qual by the fifth month after plantng, the container-grown seedlings ere still taller, and height is a critcal factor in surviving freezes and apturing sites from competing egetation.

Since it is too expensive to grow nd plant seedlings in containers as arge as 1 l (1 qt), container size was educed. Survival of bare-root eedlings has not been compared to that f seedlings in the containers currently n use. Improvements elsewhere in anaging bare-root eucalyptus seedlings ith improved root-pruning equipment uggest that research on bare-root eucaypts in Florida be reactivated. The ower costs associated with production nd planting bare-root stock are always ppealing. An experiment in Georgia ith bare-root eucalyptus seedlings emonstrated that planting bare-root eedlings is promising (Hunt 1980).

Containers used in Florida are esigned to prevent root spiraling, and hey are suspended to air-prune seedling oots. For its eucalyptus research the orest Service uses styrofoam Todd lanter[1] blocks almost exclusively because of the ease of fertilizing, watering, and pulling seedlings at packing time; the ease of planting; and the reliable field survival. The block is a 34.5 by 66.5-cm (13.6 by 26.2 in) rectangle that contains 72 cavities, each shaped as a truncated, inverted pyramid. Internal dimensions of a cavity are 5 by 5 cm (2 by 2 in) wide at the top, tapering over a 7.5-cm (3 in) depth to a 0.9- by 0.9-cm (0.35 by 0.35 in) drain hole. Cavity volume is 75 cm^3 (4.6 in^3), and spacing is 330 cavities per m^2 (31/ft^2).

Eucalyptus seedling and its root plug pulled from a Todd Planter

Seedlings at the FDF nursery are grown in Leach Cone-tainers (Tinus and McDonald 1979) and LaBelle planter blocks.[2] The Leach Cone-tainer used is a plastic tube that has a volume of 47 cm^3 (2.9 in^3) and is 12.5 cm (5 in) long, with a 2.5-cm (1 in) top diameter, tapering to a 0.8-cm (0.32 in) bottom diameter drain hole. The inside of the container is ribbed.

---

[1] Speedling, Inc., P.O. Box 7098, Sun City, FL 33586

[2] LaBelle Plant World, Inc., P.O. Box 398, LaBelle, FL 33935

The LaBelle styrofoam block is a 42- by 66.5-cm (16.5 by 26.2 in) rectangle; it contains 77 tubular cavities and fits the suspension system developed for the ubiquitous Todd Planter. Each cavity in the LaBelle block is 3.6 cm (1.4 in) in diameter at top, tapering slightly over a 10-cm (4 in) depth, then tapering more sharply in the last 2 cm (0.8 in) to a 1-cm (0.4 in) drain hole. Cavity volume is 78 cm^3 (4.75 in^3). Each cavity contains 3 ribs to prevent root spiraling, and the cavity spacing is 270 per m^2 (25 ft^2).

Leach tubes have an advantage of being independently movable. A tube in which germination has failed can be replaced, and spacing of the growing crop can be tailored to the requirements of the species grown. A disadvantage is that it is difficult to get water and nutrients into the tube after the seedling foliage forms an umbrella over the tube opening. This inefficiency in liquid collection occurs because the tubes are held in wire racks, rather than the custom Leach racks, which pack tubes too tightly for growing eucalypts to planting size.

With a block planter, nutrients and water that run off the foliage fall onto the block surface and run into the cavities. The Todd Planter, which has a top surface that is almost all potting mix, is very efficient in collecting applied liquids. The LaBelle block has more styrofoam at the top surface than cavity opening, making it less efficient in liquid collection than the Todd Planter (water can run off the edges of the LaBelle block) but more efficient than Leach tubes in wire racks.

The greater amount of open area of the Leach system permits much better aeration than that with block planters. As a result, killing of seedlings by the fungus, *Cylindrocladium scoparium*, is a greater problem with the LaBelle block than with Leach tubes. However, *Cylindrocladium* disease has not been a problem with the Todd Planter.

Potting Mix

Through the years, the Forest Service and the FDF nursery have used a commercially prepared potting mix of peat and vermiculite. A mixture of sand, peat, and vermiculite was tested by the FDF, but sand increased the amount of watering required and did not give a firm root plug. Viminalis is t only species grown with sand at the FD nursery; its growth is improved considerably by adding sand. The FDF nursery currently uses a commercially prepared mixture of 50 percent peat, 2 percent vermiculite, and 25 percent perlite. The perlite addition is base on proprietary information that perlit increases retention of nutrients. Thi potting mix does not contain starter nutrients, but it does have a wetting agent.

The mixture is packed moist, pressed, topped up and repressed, leaving a depression of about 5 mm (0. in) to hold pelletized seed and mulch. Careful filling and pressing are neede If the sowing depression is too deep, germinated seedling cannot emerge, and if too shallow, the mulch is easily lost.

Packing potting mix in Leach Cone-tainers to form depressions for pelleted seeds.

Sowing

Research seedlings are raised from cleaned seeds sowed by hand or with a

owing pelleted seeds into Leach Cone-tainers with a ravity seeder.

eed dispenser. One to three seeds are owed in a cavity, depending on study bjectives, seed quantity, and expected ermination. In commercial operations elleted seeds are sowed with a gravity eeder or by hand. Vacuum seeders roved unreliable.

Sowing strategy, which varies with he crop, is based on labor availabil- ty, quantity of seeds, expected ger- ination, and type of container. Leach ubes may be used efficiently by sowing ne pellet in a tube. Then tubes in hich germination fails can be removed nd resowed. By this method, hand hinning of excess seedlings is avoided. ouble sowing is done at times, however, o increase the percentage of tubes with seedling and to avoid a germination ime gap in the crop.

The two alternatives to single eeding directly into containers-- ransplanting from germination flats to ontainers, and broadcast sowing the ontainers with raw seed and then hinning to one seedling per cavity-- roved to be too labor intensive for lorida. Broadcast sowing and then hinning also wasted valuable geneti- ally improved seeds.

Block containers usually are sowed ith two or three pellets per cavity in rder to obtain a high percentage of avities with a seedling. The exact number to sow is difficult to estimate because germination is always poorer in the nursery than in the laboratory. Oversowing is needed because it is not feasible to resow cavities in a block, if for no other reason than the younger seedlings cannot compete with those first sowed. Occasionally, excess seedlings are transplanted to cavities without a seedling during thinning.

Sowed cavities are mulched with coarse vermiculite to a depth of 5 mm (0.2 in). Fine vermiculite is avoided because it restricts aeration and germination. Chopped pine needles performed well in the past but are now difficult to obtain.

Water Quality

The biggest problem with growing eucalyptus seedlings in southern Florida has been water quality. It is difficult to obtain well water with less than 700 p/m total dissolved solids (TDS). If the water has TDS greater than 700 p/m, eucalyptus will germinate slowly, then die. Water that is even slightly alkaline or high in lime will also seriously retard seedling growth. If water is alkaline, it can be acidified, or acidic compounds can be applied periodically to the crop, as is done at the FDF nursery at Lake Placid.

Germination

Sowed cavities are placed under a plastic or shade cloth shelter to protect them from torrential rain and wind, not to provide shading to improve germination. Good germination occurs in full sun. The Forest Service germinates and grows seedlings in an unheated, plastic-topped plant house of a design similar to that used by the vegetable industry in southern Florida.

At the FDF nursery, seeds are germinated under 25 percent shade. Leach tubes are closely spaced at germination in the custom Leach tray, or in every opening of a palletlike, chicken-wire mesh rack (1.2 by 2.4 m) (4 by 8 ft). Leach trays and LaBelle Blocks are placed on hardware cloth pallets for transporting. Pallets are transported with a pallet grabber designed and built by the FDF; it operates off the power takeoff of a tractor.

Germination can occur in 4 days under favorable conditions, but cool temperatures can result in a month or more passing before seedlings break through the mulch. Watering is done with a trolley boom in the Forest Service plant house and with fixed overhead sprinklers in the FDF shade area.

When seedlings are 3 to 5 cm (1.2 to 2 in) tall, they are moved from the shade area to raised racks in an open field at the FDF nursery. Containers with more than one seedling are thinned by pulling or scissoring when they are moved from shade to the open.

Growing Seedlings to Planting Size

Seedlings of grandis, robusta, and tereticornis will grow to the desired planting height of 30 cm (12 in) in 12 weeks after sowing under optimum conditions. An average of 16 weeks to planting size from mid-March sowing is normal. Camaldulensis grows more slowly. Production times of other species are not well established.

Density should not exceed 300 seedlings per m^2 (28 ft^2) for broad-crowned grandis, robusta, and tereticornis seedlings to reach planting size. Narrow-crowned camaldulensis can be grown at somewhat closer spacing. Seedlings grown in Leach tubes are placed in chicken-wire racks at a spacing of 227 per m^2 (21 ft^2) when they are moved from shade house to open nursery.

A 20-20-20 liquid fertilizer has been applied, beginning as soon as seedlings have emerged from mulch. Fertilizer concentration is 708 p/m N, and is applied at the rates of 0.6 g N per m^2 (0.2 oz/100 ft^2) to small seedlings and up to 2.8 g N per m^2 (1.0 oz/100 ft^2) for larger seedlings. To maintain rapid growth, liquid fertilizer must be applied two or three times a week for Leach tubes in chicken-wire racks, because much liquid fertilizer falls to waste. Block planters require much lower fertilization rates.

Applying liquid fertilizer to eucalypt seedlings in Leach Cone-tainers that are suspended in chicken-wire racks and arranged at growing spacing.

Since frequent fertilizer application is a nuisance, controlled release fertilizers are now routinely used to supplement liquid feed. Controlled release fertilizer provides steady growth, while supplements of liquid fertilizer speed growth as needed. At the FDF nursery, 4.3 kg of Osmocote 14-14-14 controlled release fertilizer are added per m^3 (7.3 lb/yd^3) of potting mix.

Watering is critical because seedlings can easily die from desiccation. During hot, dry, windy afternoons of late spring, the seedlings can be lost by failure of one afternoon watering.

Cylindrocladium blight at the FDF nursery is controlled by a weekly fungicide treatment developed by FDF personnel. Benomyl and chlorothalonil are sprayed on the seedlings in alternate weeks.

At planting time, seedlings are pulled from containers at the nursery and packed in vented, waxed-cardboard boxes. A seedling's roots and the potting medium form a firm plug that usually remains intact from seedling pulling through planting.

Site Preparation

Control of competition is important in establishing eucalypts because they need full sunlight for good growth and they compete poorly for water and nutrients against grasses. Eucalypts ften survive competition to eventually ominate the site, but growth is slowed nd the stand structure of the planation becomes very irregular. Bedding s often the best approach for controling competition, particularly on sites here water may stand for extended eriods during the rainy season.

Bedding

Prior to bedding, the site must be thoroughly cultivated to kill the existing vegetation and to chop roots and other debris into small pieces that will not impede machine planting of seedlings. Root raking is not ecommended; it tends to remove topsoil, f which there is precious little on ost plantation sites. The entire planation area must be cultivated where here is saw-palmetto, because leaving trips of saw-palmetto creates a serious ire hazard.

Preparing a palmetto prairie planting site by chopping.

Broad, high beds made with a forestry bedding harrow and hourglass packer are preferred. Low beds of the type made by the vegetable industry are not adequate, and beds made with fire plows are too steep and too close together.

Bedding a flatwoods planting site.

Bedding improves root aeration and normally gives an unflooded place to plant when water stands on the site at planting time. Although bedding controls competing vegetation for a while, it prevents cultivation after planting. Most planters presently are bedding to prepare sites.

The effects of bedding and flat harrowing on growth of grandis were compared in a study on palmetto prairie (table 2). Bedding improved survival and growth rate and increased crop uniformity. The response of robusta to bedding in the same study was similar to that of grandis, but overall growth was less.

Table 2.--Effects of bedding or flat harrow site preparation on a palmetto prairie on establishme and growth of grandis through 4.5 years

Characteristic	Bedded	Flat
Survival (%)	75	62
Survival coefficient of variation (%)	7	25
Height (m)	12.2	9.8
(ft)	40.0	32.1
Height coefficient of variation (%)	30	41
D.b.h. (cm)	5.6	3.3
(in)	2.2	1.3
D.b.h. coefficient of variation (%)	39	82
Merchantable trees (%)	90	76

Bedding enhanced growth of both Spanish camaldulensis and St. Leo tereticornis on a flatwoods in central Florida (table 3). Even on a ridge of Pomello-Tavares soil, growth on beds exceeded growth on a flat harrowed area. The improvement on this dry ridge was probably due to control of competition. After a year, hardly any seedlings survived on the flat harrowed area, because of intense competition.

Table 3.--Effect of bedding or flat harrow site preparation on 6-month height growth of Spanish camaldulensis and St. Leo tereticornis on a central Florida flatwoods

Species and site preparation	Soil series[a]		
	Placid/Myakka	Myakka	Pomello/Tavares
	m (ft)	*m (ft)*	*m (ft)*
Camaldulensis			
Bedded	1.0 (3.3)	1.3 (4.3)	0.8 (2.6)
Flat harrowed	0.6 (2.0)	0.7 (2.3)	0.5 (1.6)
Tereticornis			
Bedded	0.8 (2.6)	1.1 (3.6)	0.6 (2.0)
Flat harrowed	0.4 (1.3)	0.5 (1.6)	0.5 (1.6)

[a] The soils represent a gradient of improving drainage, running from a Placid soil at a pond edge to a ridge of Tavares soil.

Spacing

The distance between beds is dictated by the desired plantation stocking as well as physical restrictions. In the only long-term study on spacing in Florida, increases in grandis planting density from 840 to 3,362 seedlings per ha (340 to 1,361/acre) led to increases in total volume of wood produced (Meskimen and Franklin 1978). However, the merchantable volume, based on conventional size restrictions on pulpwood, was the same over the range of initial planting densities. In a subsequent study, as of 33 months increasing planting densities up to 40,000 seedlings per ha (16,000/acre) produced increasing amounts of wood (Rockwood and others 1982). Again these large amounts of volume produced at high planting densities cannot be used for conventional pulpwood, but they suggest opportunities if total biomass can be utilized.

While the lower cost of planting only 840 seedlings per ha (340/acre) seems attractive, this number is probably too few considering the risks of planting mortality and coppice failure. Planting 1,500 seedlings per ha (607/acre) seems a safe hedge against mortality and for future efficiencies in harvesting total biomass.

Spacing between beds is constrained by the width of bedding harrows, cost per unit of bed length, and need for vehicle access into the plantations. Conventional forestry harrows prepare beds from 2.2 to 3.2 m wide (7 to 10.5 ft), depending on the harrow's width, so 3.2 m (10.5 ft) is the closest practical spacing between beds for owners of the largest harrows. Each bed, however, represents distance to be traveled by a tractor with bedding harrow, and then later with seedling planter. The greater the distance between beds, the shorter the distance to be traveled over the plantation. Beds have been spaced as wide as 4.3 m (14 ft) in some plantations, but at this width it takes crowns a long time to shade out vegetation between the beds, and the spacing of seedlings on beds seems too close. A spacing of 3.7 m (12 ft) between beds appears to be a reasonable compromise among all factors. At that distance, seedlings must be placed 1.8 m (6 ft) apart to get 1,500 seedlings per ha (607/acre). It is practical for a worker to develop the rhythm to plant at that spacing on a fast-moving tree planter. Vehicles can, in an emergency, drive through the plantation when beds are spaced at 3.7 m (12 ft) intervals, but such travel is not recommended, as bed edges and roots will be damaged.

On nonbedded sites, 2.5- by 2.5-m (8.2- by 8.2-ft) is a good spacing. It allows room for cross cultivating with a small tractor and disk, and gives 1,600 seedlings per ha (648/acre). For cross cultivating, exact spacing is required; hand planting is not necessary--International Paper Co. has done it by machine, by scoring of the earth in one direction to mark the planting spot.

Fertilization

The only operational fertilization practice in eucalyptus plantations in Florida is the application of ground rock phosphate (GRP). Florida soils tend to be very phosphorus deficient, very acid (pH can be as low as 3.8), and do not retain soluble phosphorus. GRP dissolves slowly in the acid soils and thereby furnishes a long-term supply of phosphorus. GRP application, however, is useful only on very acid soils.

In only one study of GRP application have trees reached rotation age. In that study, grandis receiving 1,400 kg per ha GRP (1,250 lb/acre) grew more rapidly initially than nonfertilized trees on palmetto prairie (table 4). Eventually, nonfertilized trees started to catch up, but at 8.75 years after planting, phosphated trees contained 18 percent more volume than nonphosphated trees. The volume gain on an area basis cannot be calculated, because the study design was not suitable for area projections.

Grandis responded similarly to GRP on sweet flatwoods, wet prairie, and dry ridge sites, but overall growth was less than on palmetto prairie. Robusta also responded to GRP, but a camaldulensis x grandis hybrid and rudis did not; pure camaldulensis seedlots developed terminal dieback from the GRP.

Table 4.--Effect of ground rock phosphate (GRP) fertilizer on growth of grandis eucalyptus on palmetto prairie, by treatments, tree characteristic, and age

Treatment	Height		D.b.h.	Volume[a]	Dry weight[a]
	1.5 yr	8.8 yr	8.8 yr	8.8 yr	8.8 yr
	m (ft)	*m (ft)*	*cm (in)*	*m^3 (ft^3)*	*kg (lb)*
GRP	5.1 (16.7)	19.4 (63.6)	18.0 (7.1)	0.182 (6.4)	70 (154)
No GRP	3.9 (12.8)	18.5 (60.7)	17.3 (6.8)	0.154 (5.4)	59 (130)
Difference	1.2 (3.9)	0.9 (2.9)	0.7 (0.3)	0.028 (1.0)	11 (24)
Gain (%)	31	5	4	18	19

[a] Volumes and weights are for all aboveground wood; bark is excluded.

Table 5.--Height, d.b.h., and basal area of three eucalyptus species 3.5 years after planting on palmetto prairie in plots fertilized with ground rock phosphate[a]

Species[b] and application (kg/ha)	(lb/acre)	Height		D.b.h.		Basal area	
		m	*(ft)*	*cm*	*(in)*	*m^2/ha*	*(ft^2/acre)*
Grandis							
0	(0)	5.3	(17)	4.5	(1.8)	2.1	(9)
560	(500)	5.8	(19)	5.0	(2.0)	2.5	(11)
1,120	(1,000)	8.1	(27)	7.5	(3.0)	4.6	(20)
1,680	(1,500)	8.1	(27)	7.5	(3.0)	4.7	(20)
Robusta							
0	(0)	5.7	(19)	5.6	(2.2)	3.0	(13)
560	(500)	5.6	(18)	5.9	(2.3)	3.6	(16)
1,120	(1,000)	5.5	(18)	5.8	(2.3)	3.3	(14)
1,680	(1,500)	5.7	(19)	6.3	(2.5)	4.0	(17)
Viminalis							
0	(0)	3.8	(12)	3.6	(1.4)	1.1	(5)
560	(500)	4.3	(14)	4.2	(1.7)	1.8	(8)
1,120	(1,000)	4.0	(13)	4.2	(1.7)	1.8	(8)
1,680	(1,500)	3.6	(12)	3.5	(1.4)	1.1	(5)

[a] E. Underhill and K. Imse of Hudson Pulp and Paper Corporation (now Georgia-Pacific Corporation) installed this study.

[b] The three species are planted in separate experiments and cannot be compared by analysis-of-variance techniques for two-way tables.

In a more recent experiment on almetto prairie, three rates of GRP ere applied. Grandis responded trongly at a young age (table 5). The esponse by robusta was not as pronounced. Viminalis was damaged by the eaviest application of GRP applied, but t did respond positively to lesser mounts.

It appears, then, that GRP stimuates early growth of grandis, and to a esser extent robusta, helping the trees o more quickly reach sizes that are ore resistant to freezes and weed competition. The increases in yield of andis and robusta due to GRP over a otation are not known. It is not advisable to apply GRP to camaldulensis, reticornis, or viminalis, and it ould be applied cautiously to species ot yet tested.

Farmers in Florida often apply lime o acid soils to increase soil pH to a oint were soluble phosphate fertilizers are retained. This practice was attempted in a grandis planting on palmetto prairie. Dolomitic limestone was broadcast prior to bedding, and superphosphate was broadcast after planting to simulate aerial application, the planned operational practice. There was no significant response in growth to superphosphate or limestone alone or in combination in rates of application of up to 4,500 kg per ha (4,000 lb/acre) of dolomite and 202 kg per ha (180 lb/acre) of superphosphate (45% P_2O_5). Banding of superphosphate on the beds to provide a heavy concentration needs testing.

Little is known about effects of applying nutrients other than phosphorus (and the calcium-magnesium in dolomite) before or at planting. Fifteen g (0.5 oz) of controlled-release fertilizer applied in the planting hole has increased early growth (table 6), but also has increased first-year mortality. Whether mortality of winter-planted

Table 6.--Effect of Osmocote 14-14-14 controlled release fertilizer placed in the planting hole on establishment and growth of grandis eucalyptus[a]

Characteristic and planting time	Quantity of Osmocote per seedling		
	0 g (0 oz)	15 g (0.5 oz)	30 g (1.0 oz)
	------------------- Percent ------------------		
Survival 3 months after planting			
August	92	95	88
December	99	73	34
	------------------- dm (ft) ------------------		
Height growth 9 months after planting			
August	15 (4.9)	21 (6.9)	20 (6.6)
December[a]	6 (2.0)	9 (3.0)	10 (3.3)

[a] Seedlings were planted in August and December on an August-harvested grandis stand that failed to coppice. Seedlings planted in December were subjected to more competition than those planted in August.

seedlings was due to toxicity of fertilizer in the planting hole or to greater freeze mortality of the more succulent fertilized seedlings is not clear. Long-term effect of this initial growth boost is not known. Application of controlled-release fertilizers in a hole a short distance from the seedling, or perhaps dribbled into the planting trench with an apparatus yet to be developed, is worth trying on a small scale to gain experience.

In summary, the growth rate of eucalyptus can be boosted by applying fertilizers before or at planting. But the nutritional requirements for eucalypts in Florida are not known well enough to make optimal fertilizer prescriptions, nor can expected yield increases from fertilization be predicted.

Burning

Burning prior to mechanical site preparation has been done, but the danger of escape is high. It may make mechanical vegetation control easier, but it will not kill competing root stocks. Therefore, burning should be avoided unless needed to reduce debris that would interfere with planting.

Common Site-Preparation Practice

Experience on site preparation is concentrated on palmetto prairie in the southern planting zone, and to a much lesser extent on cutover, stumped, acid flatwoods in the southern and central zones. Sites are either double chopped, cross disked, or root plowed (locally called webbing) to kill palmetto. In the south, March and April are usually hot and dry, and drought adds to the effectiveness of mechanical treatment in those months in killing vegetation.

Next, 1,100 kg per ha (1,000 lb/acre) of GRP are broadcast on areas to be planted with grandis and robusta. Application is usually restricted to early morning, before breezes develop. After phosphate is applied, beds are constructed with a bedding harrow and an hourglass roller. Bedding needs to be completed prior to heavy summer rains because mud is difficult to bed, and th beds need time to settle before plantin

Old Fields

Abandoned agricultural fields and pasture often are available for planting. This land is dominated by hardy, creeping grasses which are impossible to eradicate mechanically. Once summer rains begin, these grasses, and in some fields tall herbaceous weeds, compete strongly with eucalypts and retard their growth substantially. Two, three, and sometimes more years pass before the eucalypts, one by one, break free of the competition. A practical treatment to control the competition has not been developed, but herbicides appear promising. A safe application system that does not leave a toxic residue is needed, and the cost must be reasonable.

Weed-free beds of grandis on old field that was treated with granular atrazine after seedlings were planted.

In one experiment, granular atrazine (% active) was broadcast over grandis sedlings at a rate of 4.48 g active igredient per m^2 (0.13 oz/yd^2). Sedlings had been planted with their rot collars 7 cm (2.8 in) below the sil surface. Beds were weed free at te time of herbicide application. The sedlings were dry, so atrazine granules dd not stick to leaves. Atrazine kept te beds free of weeds until the grandis culd expand their crowns and shade out weds (in about 3 months). Grandis grew mch more rapidly on treated than on utreated beds. Heights and stem volues of treated and untreated seedlings a 13 months were:

	Height		*Volume*	
	m	*(ft)*	*m^3/ha*	*(ft^3/acre)*
Arazine	4.2	(14.0)	9.2	(132.0)
N atrazine	1.6	(5.2)	0.2	(3.0)

In another experiment, glyphosate hrbicide (41% active ingredient) was aplied[3] in meter-wide (3.3 ft) strips a a variety of rates directly to a psture that had a vigorous stand of bhia and bermuda grasses (*Paspalum ntatum* Fluegge and *Cynodon dactylon* Prs.). Twenty days after application, gandis seedlings were planted directly ito the turf to test no-till establishmnt in the hope that dead turf would rtard invasion by weeds. There was a lght rain 5 hours after the final spray aplication, and even the highest rate o application did not kill all grass. Te grasses eventually began to compete srongly with the eucalypts, but growth i the sprayed strips greatly exceeded tat in controls by 4.5 years after panting:

Quantity of Gphosate Applied		*Mean Plot Basal Area*	
l/ha	*(qt/acre)*	*m^2*	*(ft^2)*
.0	(0)	0.01	(0.1)
4.7	(2)	0.26	(2.8)
7.0	(3)	0.36	(3.9)
9.3	(4)	0.49	(5.3)
18.7	(8)	0.43	(4.6)

Planting

The climate of peninsular Florida is subtropical. However, frosts and freezing temperatures can occur during the late fall, winter, or early spring in any inland area that might be planted to eucalypts (Johnson 1970). There is a distinct rainy season from mid-June to mid-September, and a dry season the rest of the year. Occasional rains occur in the dry season in association with cold fronts, but they are not dependable. Summer is the only time when it is certain that soil moisture will be adequate for successful planting in the southern and central zones. Seedlings can be grown in the nursery during spring for summer planting with assurance that they can be planted without any long holdover period in the nursery. Rainless periods of a week or more in summer create drought conditions, and seedlings planted then are likely to die. Therefore, summer planting at times must stop until soil moisture is restored. It is moisture at planting time that is critical; a dry spell after planting does not kill seedlings.

The earlier in summer that planting starts the better, to take advantage of the lack of weeds on the site at the start of the rains and to allow as much growth as possible prior to the first freeze of the year. Mid-June is the earliest predictable date that planting can begin, but if the spring was exceptionally dry, beds may not be wet enough to plant until late July. The rule is to be prepared to plant in June, but also be prepared to wait and to start and stop if the rains stop.

Although summer planting is standard practice, fall and winter plantings have been done experimentally (Geary 1977; table 6) and operationally with grandis in the south in at least 2 years with good success. Bare-root stock may have to be planted in cool weather (Hunt 1980). Freezing and drought are hazards in fall and winter planting. However, if the seedlings are planted deep enough, the below-ground stem should survive freezes and sprout, so that the crop will not be lost. Fall and winter plantings need to be studied further to extend the planting season. Spring has the least chance of success. Spring is usually hot and dry, and, if the preceding winter was cold, seedlings could not be grown to planting size for spring planting. A wet spring, which occurs occasionally, would be ideal for planting.

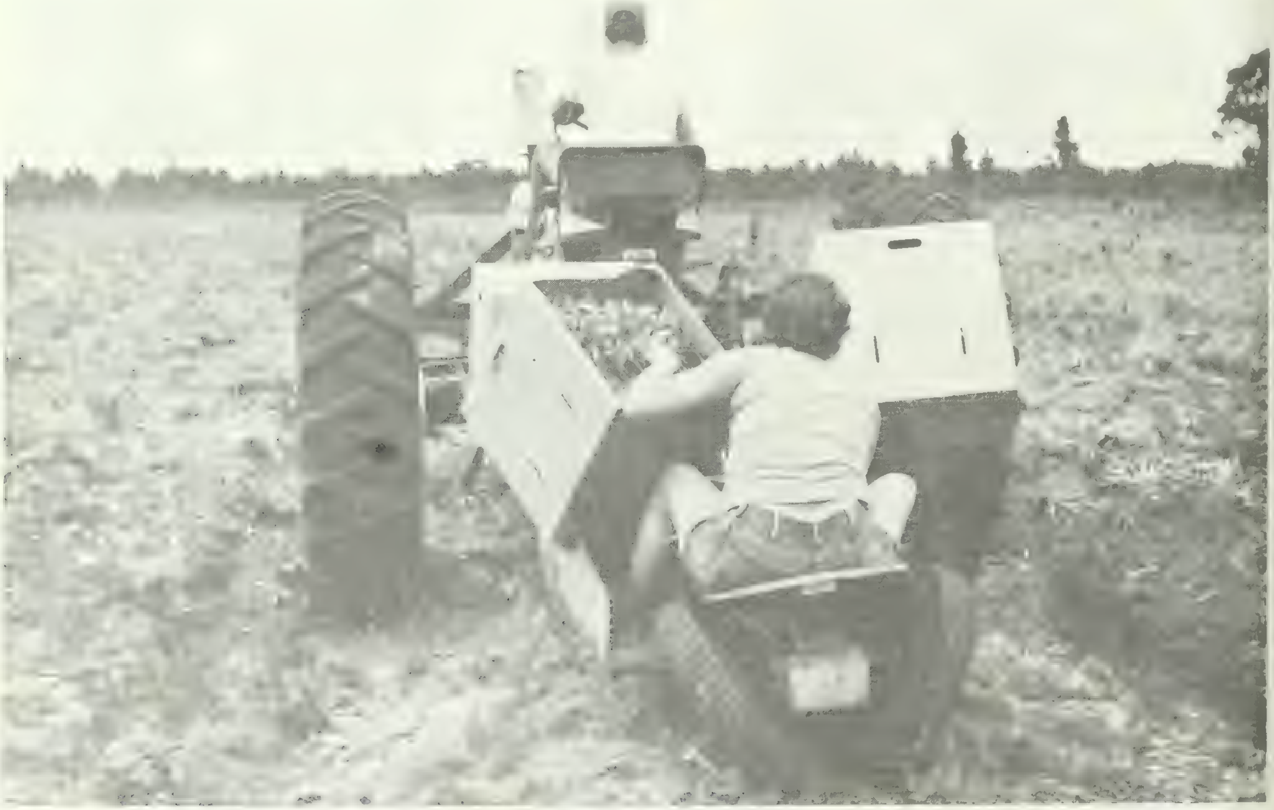
---

[3] r. D. Baird of Monsanto Chemical Co. aplied the herbicide.

Spring may be more suitable for planting in the northern zone, for that zone has wetter winters and springs than the other zones. Even winter planting looks promising in the northern zone, despite the frequent hard freezes (Hunt 1980).

Planting in the summer rainy season presents two complications in addition to the potential lapse of rains--heat and mud. Seedlings must be shaded and ventilated while awaiting planting. The quicker they are planted after being pulled from containers in the nursery, the better. Seedlings have been stored in a refrigerated van at the planting site, but whether that preserved seedlings better than just shade and ventilation is not certain. Occasional sprinkling with water is necessary if storage is prolonged. The foliage can dry out without harm, but a seedling will die if its root plug dries. Furthermore, if seedlings are not well aerated, they will rot or overheat. Seedlings are hardy and will survive if they are packed loosely in boxes--a shipment of experimental seedlings survived 1 week of storage in a vented box in the storage room of a bus station.

One must be prepared to plant when the areas between beds are muddy or even flooded, because the removal of vegetation from a site raises the water table. Operational planting is almost all done with planting machines--standard bare-root pine planters that have been modified to carry boxes of seedlings. Because of the mud, high-clearance tractors that can straddle beds are needed. Planting machines must have a three-point hitch or straddle the bed on their own wheeled frames. Drag machines will not work on beds--they fall off and tear down beds. Planters need frames to hold enough boxes of seedlings to make it from one end of the plantation to the other and return.



Machine planting eucalyptus seedlings from cardboard boxes in which they were packed at the nursery.

Hand planting a eucalyptus seedling with a tubular root plug into a hole dibbled with a broom handle.

Hand planting is an option; it is esy--all that is needed is a dibble to pnch a hole in the soil (a broom handle wll do for tubeling seedlings). Root pugs slip easily into the hole, which cn be pressed closed with a foot.

Seedlings should be planted so that te cotyledons are well below the soil srface; burying the stem at least 5 cm (in) deep is usually adequate. Expsed plugs lose moisture through wickig action, and some stem tissue should rmain below ground after settling and eosion of the bed surface. Stem tissue blow the cotyledon will not produce eicormic shoots, so it is the belowgound tissue above the cotyledons that i the source of shoots, should the stem b killed to the groundline by freeze, fre, or sun scald.

Good survival and uniform spacing ae more important in a plantation to be mnaged for coppice than in a plantation t be felled and replanted. Irregularites in stand structure become progressvely exaggerated in subsequent coppice cops (FAO of the UN 1981). Unfortuntely, survival of machine-planted sedlings in summer is variable--running fom zero to near 100 percent survival oer short distances on one landownersip in one planting season. Serious lsses are due to planting when it is to dry, to flooding (the seedlings can down, or float out of the soil), and occasionally to fungal infection of seedlings in packing boxes. When conditions are ideal for planting, the seedlings will survive very poor planting, but such conditions rarely prevail. Hand-planted seedlings have a better chance of survival than machine-planted. In research studies, survival of hand-planted seedlings usually exceeds 90 percent; at times survival is 100 percent.

Planting delays in summer result in oversized seedlings because it has been impossible to stop eucalypts from growing in the nursery in hot weather without risk of killing them. Oversize seedlings can be too tall to fit in the packing boxes, even if the stems are bent. Seedlings that are too tall can be damaged also by the planting machine as it passes over them. Tall seedlings are usually topheavy and can lean severely after planting, causing basal sweep. Under dry planting conditions, oversize seedlings may have too great a shoot-to-root ratio for good survival.

Clipping seedling tops may be a solution, but results of a test are not encouraging. Grandis seedlings averaging 60 cm (24 in) tall and robusta seedlings averaging 55 cm (22 in) tall were clipped to 30 cm (12 in) the day before planting. Planting was in August during a break in the rains. The soil was too dry to have recommended commercial planting. Survival of unclipped grandis and robusta seedlings was 70 and 57 percent, respectively; survival of clipped grandis and robusta was substantially less--41 and 27 percent, respectively. Seedlings clipped a few weeks in advance of pulling might survive planting well, because they will have had time to recover from the shock of clipping. Clipping is not expected to increase double leadering or stem malformation (Horne 1979).

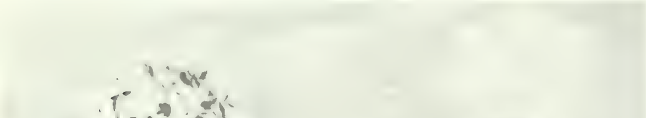
After-Planting Care

Eucalyptus plantations receive after-planting weed control in most parts of the world (FAO of the UN 1981). Weeds are usually controlled by cross-disking with tractor and harrow, then tending by hand around boles of trees. The site is kept clean of weeds until crowns shade out competition, usually in the second year after planting.

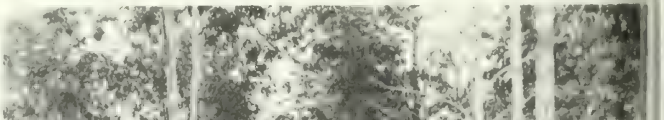
Florida and New South Wales, Australia, are exceptions to after-planting weed control. In New South Wales, the initial site preparation treatment is sufficient to prevent competition (Clarke 1975). In Florida, it often is not. However, in Florida, cross-disking of bedded areas is impossible; disking the areas between beds is of little help, and hand weeding is too expensive. Weed control after planting on bedded sites awaits an effective system of applying herbicides.

In Florida, if high beds are made in dry weather and planting starts in the early rains, broad-crowned eucalypts like grandis and robusta develop wide enough crowns by 3 months after planting to shade out weeds on beds. Rapid shading occurs only on beds that remain free of weeds during those months. Unfortunately, beds are not always weed free for months; sometimes weeds develop on them before planting. Rapid invasion of beds by weeds is most serious on old-field sites and on wet soils, where standing water allows seeds on the surface of beds to germinate and grasses to creep over the beds.

Weed competition is particularly serious with the narrow-crowned camaldulensis, tereticornis, and viminalis. Even though these species may grow rapidly in height after planting, they take much longer than grandis and robusta to develop crowns that can shade out competition. Young plantations of



Grandis 5 months after planting on bedded and phosphated palmetto prairie.



Grandis plantation 4 years after planting on a bedded palmetto prairie site. This stage of stand development might be the time to fertilize with nitrogen.

tese species often become choked with weds, which appear to retard growth. Wrkable solutions are needed badly. An oerational system for herbicide treatmnt has not yet been developed, but it culd be highly useful.

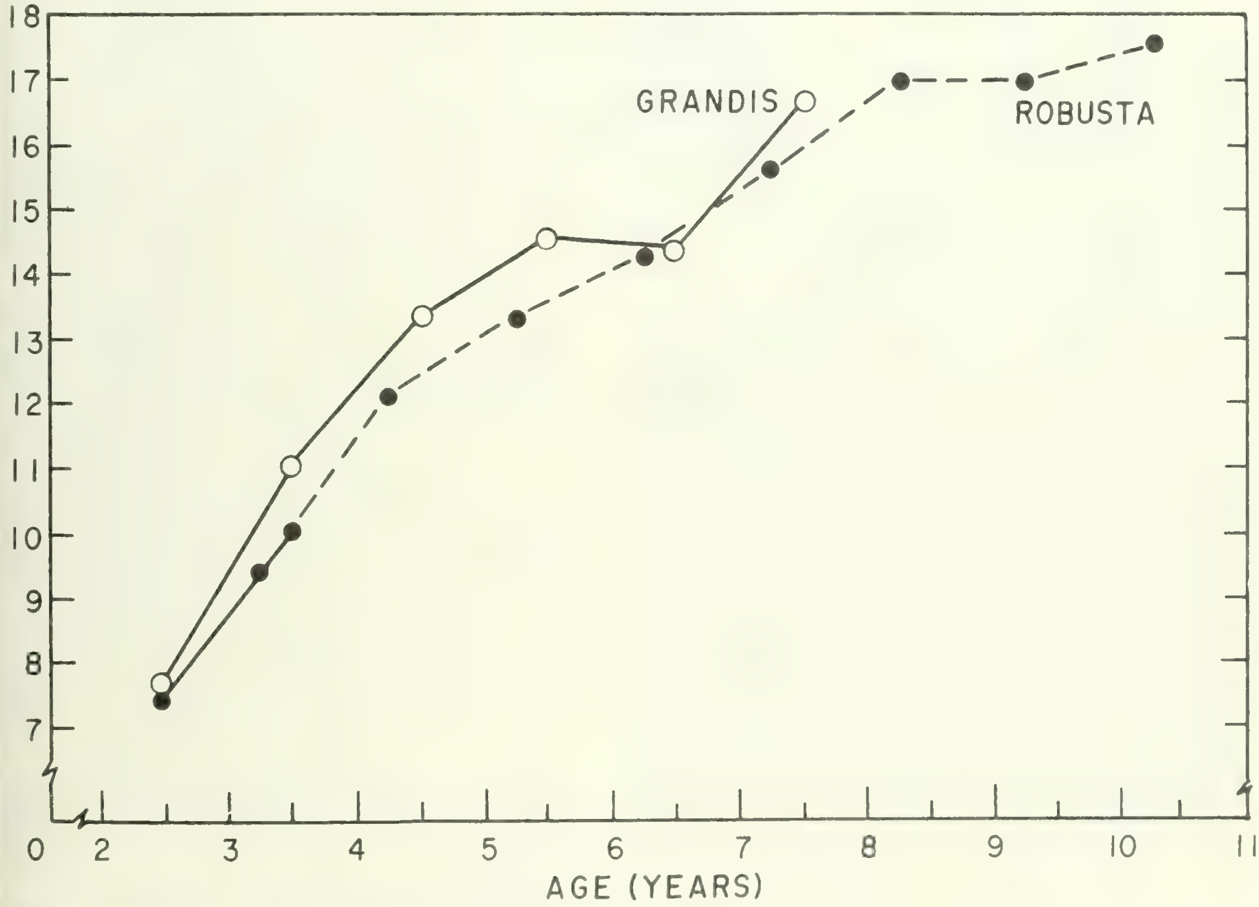
Fertilizer application after plantig may prove practical. In the only mjor study in Florida, University of Forida scientists in cooperation with te Forest Service and its cooperators aplied isobutylidene diurea (IBDU) and amonium nitrate at rates of 0, 100, 200 k N per ha (0, 89, and 178 lb/acre) on a 3-year-old grandis plantation on palmtto prairie to which GRP had been aplied prior to planting. The most effctive treatment, ammonium nitrate at 20 kg N per ha (179 lb/acre), increased hight growth 69 percent and diameter gowth 76 percent over controls in the 1 months after treatment (Barros and Pitchett 1979).

Control of weeds after planting and aplication of nutrients in addition to posphorus promise substantial increases i production and need to be researched.

Weed control after planting promises to be the single most effective treatment; it may be a substitute for normal levels of fertilization (Schonau and others 1981). Without good weed control, excessive quantities of fertilizer are needed to stimulate growth of eucalypts (Meskimen 1970; Schonau and others 1981).

Growth and Yields

Annual growth of eucalypts in Florida has been observed on a variety of sites. The product yield, however, is still a guess, because most plantations have not reached the anticipated harvest age of 8 years and most have stocking well below that needed for highest productivity. Performance of a 1969 robusta and a 1972 grandis plantation on palmetto prairie in the southern zone may be indicative. Height growth was initially rapid, but it decreased sharply at about age 3 (fig. 5). Stand basal area increased through at least



igure 5.—Mean height of tallest stem on each stool.

age 10, but increment in basal area peaked in 4 to 6 years (fig. 6). Stand volume also increased for at least 10 years (fig. 7). The time when mean annual increment in volume peaks is uncertain, but it probably occurs within 8 years (fig. 8). Plantations, then, might be expected to be harvested by age

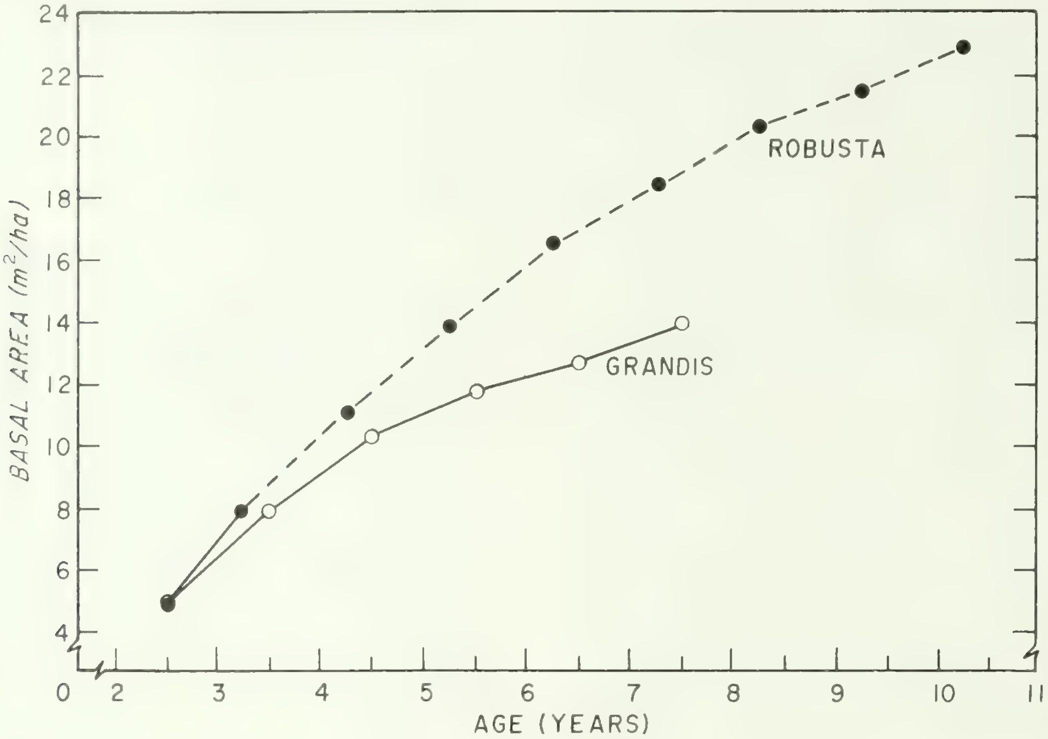


Figure 6.—Stand basal area.

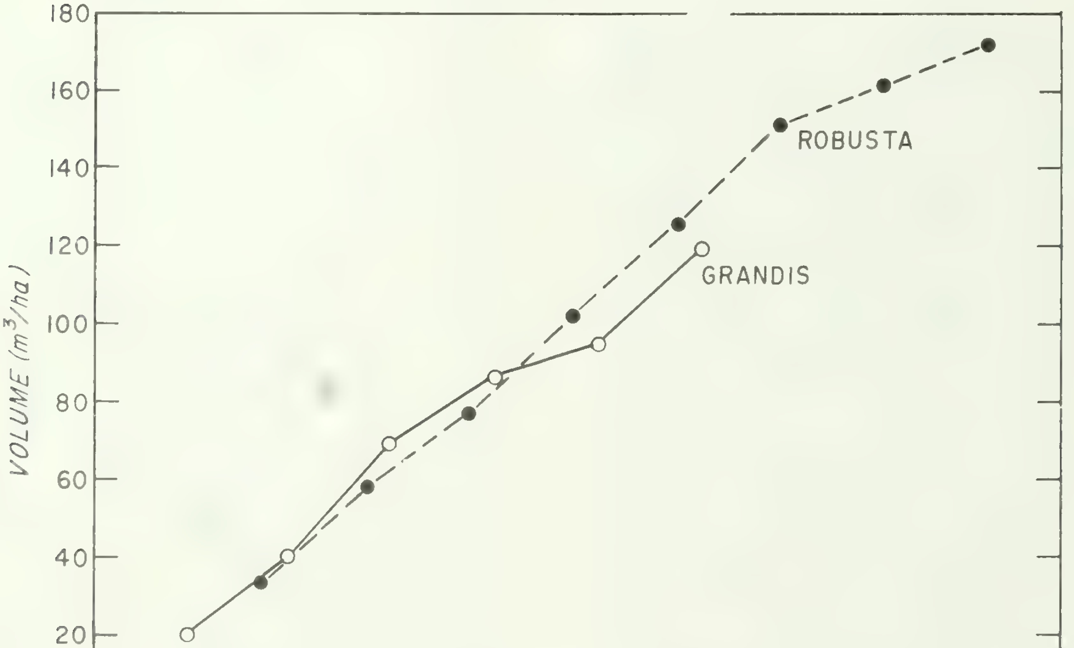


Figure 7.—Stand volume of stem wood and bark to a 5-cm top.

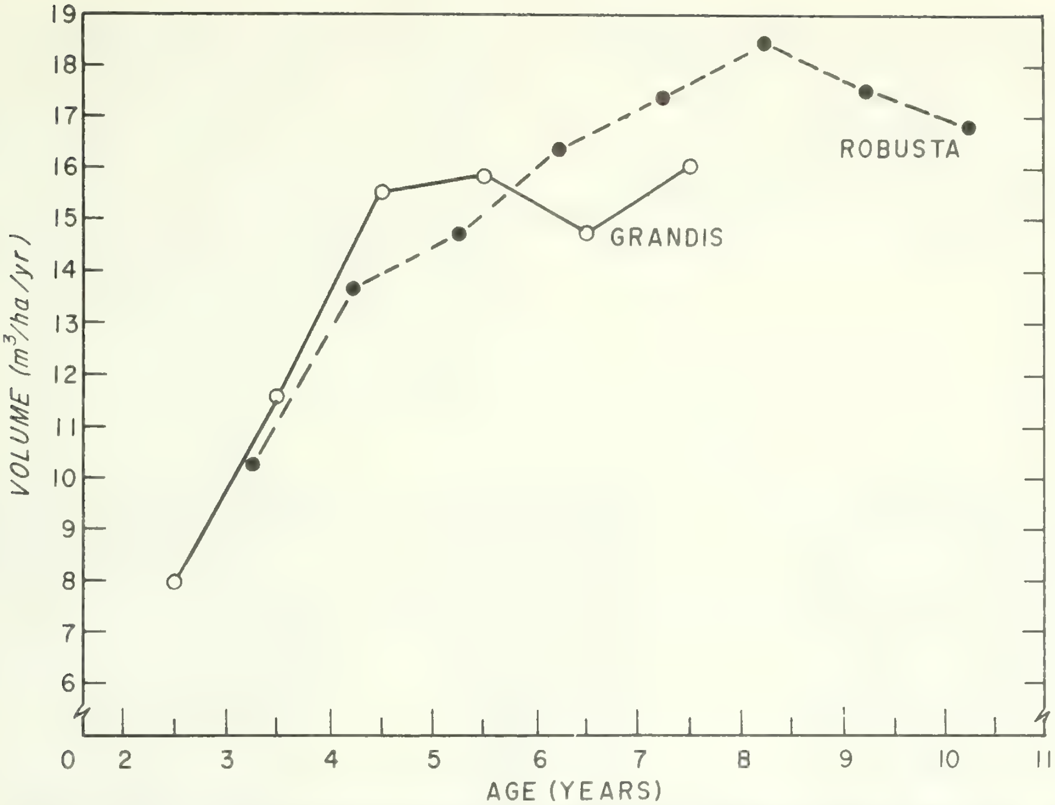


Figure 8.—Mean annual increment of stand volume of stem wood and bark to a 5-cm top.

8 and at that age will have produced p lpwood at a rate of 16 m^3 per ha per y (229 ft^3/acre/yr or 2.5 cords/acre/ y). These yields are low by world s andards for grandis plantations, which a erage perhaps 26 m^3 per ha per yr (372 f^3/acre/yr) and range from 14 to 50 m^3 p r ha per yr (200 to 715 ft^3/acre/yr) (AO of the UN 1981). However, yields o grandis in Florida have reached 25 m per ha per yr (372 ft^3/acre/yr) on p lmetto prairie and 56 m^3 per ha per yr (00 ft^3/acre/yr) in under 3 years at v ry high planting densities (Rockwood a d others, In Press).

The yields of camaldulensis and t reticornis growing on ridges will be l ss than those of grandis and robusta o palmetto prairie and acid flatwoods. W ight yields of grandis stands as pos-s ble biomass fuels have been calcu-l ted, and the standing dry weight of a t pical 8-year-old pulpwood stand (whole t ees without leaves) is predicted to be 7 t per ha (29 ton/acre).

In central and northern Florida, p antings are too small to estimate p ssible yields. Furthermore, current p rformance may be far less than that to b expected from strains that are being

Grandis plantation 8 years after planting on a cutover flatwoods. The shallow beds made by an agricultural bedding harrow are barely visible.

bred. In general, freezing problems in central Florida probably will cause yields to be somewhat lower than for similar sites in southern Florida. In northern Florida, somewhat better soils are available for planting, and this advantage may offset losses caused by the colder climate.

Harvesting and Coppice Tending

Eucalypts in Florida will either be harvested mechanically by severing stems with anvil shears or chain-saw heads on grapple-fellers, or by hand with chain saws. In either case, stump bark must be left intact. Anvil shears must cut sharply so that the bark is not torn from the stump as the bole is pulled off, and the stumps should not be struck by mechanical equipment. Debris should be kept off the stump, because it causes deformities of coppice shoots as they snake their way through it. Whole-tree harvesting is a way to avoid the debris problem as well as reduce fire hazard, and it facilitates replanting of stands in which coppicing is inadequate. Whole-tree harvesting, however, may cause nutrient drain by taking away nutrients stored in leaves and branches.

Stump height is also important. The higher the stump, the greater the chance of coppicing, but high stumps tend to produce shoots that are not windfirm. A stump height of 10 to 12 (4 to 5 in) is recommended (FAO of the UN 1981). A slanted cut is recommende to facilitate water runoff.

In much of the world, eucalyptus stumps coppice prolifically, and in short rotation plantations two to four coppice crops are anticipated before replanting is necessary (FAO of the UN 1981; Poynton 1981). Dying of stumps following harvest, rather than loss of vigor of living stumps, is the usual cause of a need to replant after the second or third coppice crop (FAO of t UN 1981). Eventually such mortality causes the stand to be understocked.

A eucalypt being harvested with anvil shears.

In Florida, coppicing of grandis i not as reliable, and the season of harvest affects it (fig. 9). In summer, coppicing ability drops drastically in grandis, and to a lesser extent in robusta. In the Republic of South Afric a major growing area for grandis, 95 percent coppicing success is expected, except in the dry season when success i somewhat less (Stubbings and Schonau 1980). Grandis coppices reliably in so parts of Brazil (Ayling and Martins 1981) but not in others (Campinhos and Ikemori 1980). In its native New Sout Wales, Australia, grandis coppices poorly through fall and winter, and

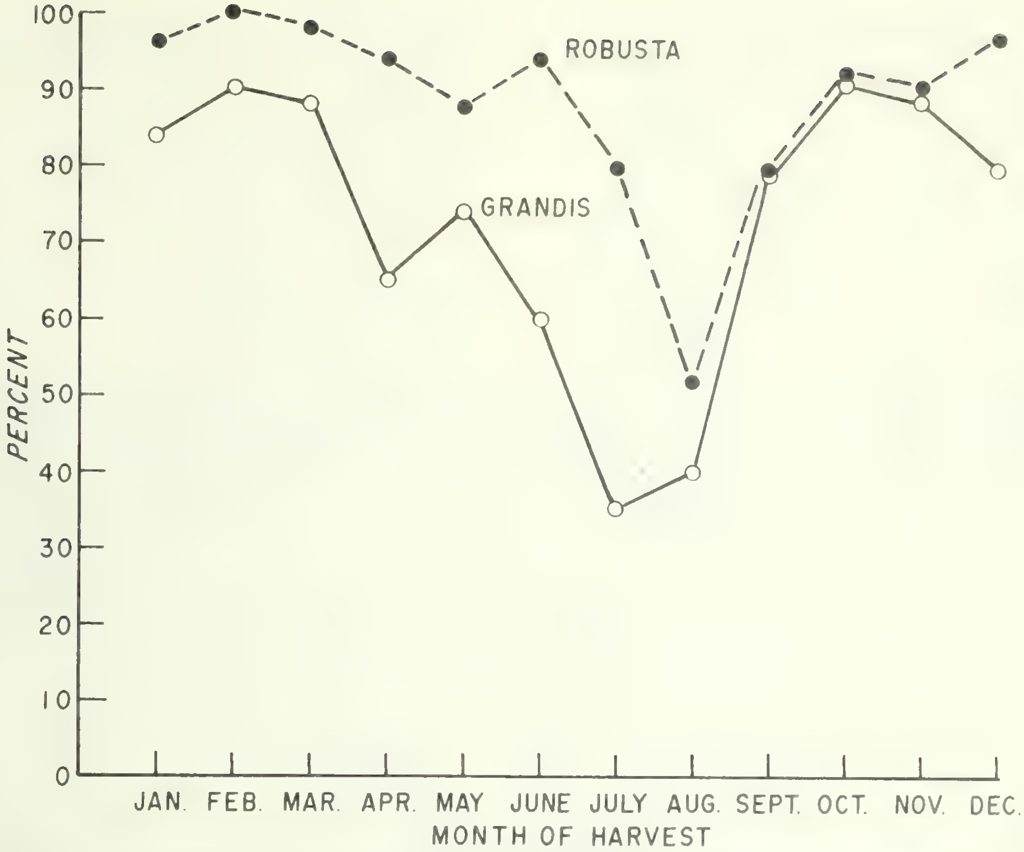


Figure 9.—Percentage of stumps of 5- to 6-year-old grandis and robusta that coppiced after harvesting in different months on palmetto prairie in Glades County, Florida.

apparently grandis plantations there cannot be managed by coppicing (Clarke 975; Hillis and Brown 1978).

Coppicing ability was assumed and was not a selection factor in genetic mprovement efforts in Florida. A ecent progeny test revealed genetic ariation in coppicing ability. Trees hat originated from South African seed oppiced with twice the frequency of trees grown from Australian seed. Moreover, the seedlings used in the earliest lantations of grandis came from trees ith poor coppicing ability. There is a tendency for the fastest growing grandis trees to produce progeny with below-average coppicing ability. Coppicing uccess is greater in trees that are hybrids with robusta, camaldulensis, or reticornis. Coppicing does not seem to be a problem with camaldulensis or tereticornis, but the experience with these pecies is insufficient to be sure.

What is to be done about the probem with grandis coppicing? Harvesting f this species could be restricted to the better months for coppicing, but even then the success rate does not reach a desirable 95 percent. Another approach is to harvest during summer, then replant. The new seedlings will be genetically superior to the old and will have better coppicing ability. And last, local technology is being developed that will produce rooted cuttings and tissue culture plants from hybrids with superior coppicing ability, as has happened in Brazil (Campinhos 1980; Campinhos and Ikemori 1980).

Replanting should not require site preparation if planting is done by hand. Immediately after harvest, beds are weed free and tend to remain that way for some time. If seedlings, rooted cuttings, or tissue culture plants are hand planted, the stumps can be left in place. If replanting is delayed until stumps that will coppice are evident, planting next to living stumps can be avoided. Killing of the old, living stumps by burying or with herbicides might be done (FAO of the UN 1981), but may not be necessary, because interplanting in understocked grandis plantations immediately following harvest has succeeded in South Africa (Wattle Research Institute 1972). Since most plantations in Florida are already understocked by the recommended standard, replanting of the larger voids may be desirable. A test of replanting has been successful in Florida (table 6). The addition of 15 g (0.5 oz) of Osmocote controlled-release fertilizer in a hole next to the new plant probably will be beneficial.

Young coppice of robusta.

Stumps that coppice usually produce many shoots. Everywhere in the world where eucalypts are managed on coppice rotations, except in Florida, these shoots are reduced to three or less shoots a stool (FAO of the UN 1981; Poynton 1981). The number of shoots left on the stool depends on the product desired, site quality, and stool density.

In Florida, hand thinning shoots is thought to be too expensive, and no mechanical system has been devised. The few harvested plots are still too young to say precisely what the result of no thinning will be. But it appears that 2 to 4 stems per stool will dominate, and the remainder will be shaded out. The expected larger number of stems on a stool might be desirable, as it will tend to counter the problem of understocking. In an experiment in Moroc the total and salable volume of 6-ye old grandis coppice was greater in u thinned coppice than in thinned copp (Knockaert 1979).

When crowns with ripe seeds are left on the ground, some seedlings w appear along with coppice regenerati At the wide spacings in some Florida

Grandis coppice 6 years after felling of plantation Coppice shoots were not thinned.

pantations, natural seedling regeneraion can be dense and the seedlings wll grow into trees. These trees will b of lower genetic quality than nursery sedlings, and they may obstruct row hrvesting and plantation access, but tey are free. Natural seedling regneration cannot be predicted, so rplanting should not be delayed in aticipation of it. Seedlings planted o beds suppress most natural seedlings, ad whole-tree harvesting eliminates the sed source and the problem.

Potection

After planting, seedlings need protction from cattle. Cattle ordinarily d not eat seedlings, but they pull them ot of the ground, break off their tops, ad trample them. However, cattle did bowse a fall-winter planting of grands, where the grandis seedlings were te only green vegetation in sight. It i tempting to allow cattle to graze in pantations in the first year or two. Te growth of grasses stimulated by GRP aplication makes good forage (Moore and Sindel 1981), and grazing reduces the fre hazard. But the damage cattle can d appears to outweigh the advantages. Oce trees are 4 m (13 ft) tall and 4 cm (.5 in) d.b.h., light grazing may be alowed to reduce fire hazard and utilze the residual vegetation. Once tees are large enough to resist cattle dmage, however, the cattle become diffcult to find and remove at roundup tme.

A large deer population can seriosly damage a eucalyptus plantation. Bowsed trees eventually get ahead of te deer, but the resulting stand has an ueven structure and the stems are often bdly forked. It may be impossible to gt a satisfactory stand of eucalypts were deer browsing is heavy.

Plantations must be protected from itense fires, which cause substantial dmage. In their native habitats, some ecalypts are part of a fire ecosystem, ad experience with wildfires and experiental burns suggests that light fires wll not cause serious damage. Presribed burning might be useful, but lttle is known about fire effects on eucalyptus plantations in Florida. Clean weeding in the first year of plantation growth is a good means of fire protection.

Insects have rarely been a problem. Cone-headed grasshoppers (family Tettigoniidae, subfamily Copiphorinae) destroyed one experimental planting of grandis the summer it was planted. The trees were expected to resprout, but they did not. No other examples of serious mortality from grasshoppers are known. A leaf-eating beetle, *Maecolaspis favosa* (Say), has seriously damaged a number of seedlings and coppice shoots on a few occasions.

Diseases are a nagging, but apparently not serious, problem. Basal stem cankers on grandis caused by *Cryphonectria cubensis* (Bruner) Hodges, comb. nov. (= *Diaporthe cubensis* Bruner) are common (Barnard and English 1980). Cankers do not kill trees, but might retard growth of some trees. The canker fungus might be a cause of coppice failure from summer felling--the fungus thrives in hot, wet weather.

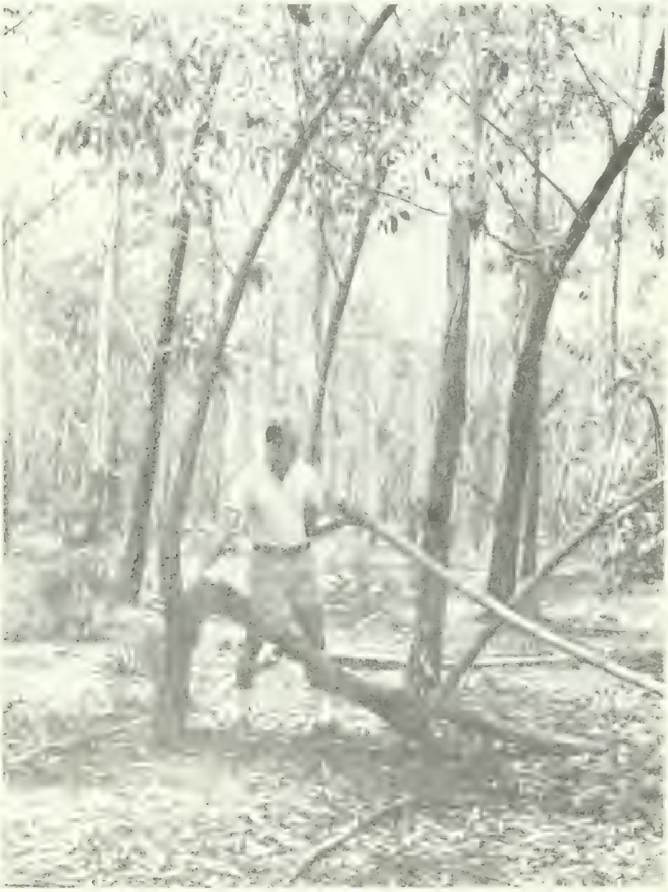
A basal canker on a grandis tree.

The fungus *Clitocybe tabescens* (Fr.) Bres. has been associated with sudden death of small patches of eucalypts in the southern zone. The major cause of patches of dead trees, however, is lightning. Over an 8.5-year rotation on a 67-ha (165 acre) plantation in the southern zone, 2.5 percent of permanent sample trees were killed by lightning and another 4.4 percent were injured. Many seed orchard trees are lost to lightning.

In late winter and early spring in the southern zone, twigs on roadside trees often die back. Seed trees of Spanish camaldulensis frequently lose their seed crop to twig dieback. A fungus is suspected.

No hurricane has struck the commercial plantations, but if one did, heavy breakage, windthrow, and lean would probably occur.

A condition called robusta breakup is found in a number of plantations. Tops tend to break out and trees start leaning. The cause is unknown. Top breakage may be due to decay at sites of freeze damage, and leaning may be a physiological response. The problem does not exist with other species.



Robusta breakup disease.

Utilization

The properties of the slow-grown, mature wood of natural eucalyptus stand differ from those of the juvenile wood of fast-grown plantation trees. Only utilization of fast-grown, short-rotation trees is discussed here.

Properties of eucalypts differ substantially by species. Even within species, there are great differences in wood characteristics. For example, the cellulose content of 260 selected globulus trees in Portugal varied from 36 to 57 percent; the wood density of those selected trees had a wider range than that of pine, spruce, or birch pulpwood (Hillis and Brown 1978). Opportunities to alter the wood properties of eucalypts by breeding, therefore, appear to be substantial. Wood properties are also affected by environment. For example, the formation of kino, a phenolic exudate that degrades pulping quality, can be induced by freezes, wind, and growth tension shakes (Hillis and Brown 1978).

At present, the most important utilization characteristic in Florida is suitability for pulp and paper. In general, the eucalypts grown in the world's industrial plantations produce good-quality short-fiber pulp from a variety of pulping processes (FAO of th UN 1981; Hillis and Brown 1978). Eucalyptus wood can also be used to make dissolving pulp for viscose and acetate films and filaments (FAO of the UN 1981). Those eucalypts that are suitable for industrial plantations in Florida and have been tested for pulping quality are as good as native hardwood furnish, if not better (Franklin 1977; Hunt and Zobel 1978). Tereticornis, however, is good furnish only for the neutral sulfite semichemical process.

Eucalyptus wood is difficult to us for lumber because of growth stresses, shrinkage in drying, collapse, spiral grain, and proneness of sapwood to attack by post-hole borers (FAO of the UN 1981; Hillis and Brown 1978). Pro-tion of sawed wood from small-diameter eucalyptus logs is unlikely where better quality timbers are available (Hillis and Brown 1978). Quality products such as furniture and laminated beams can be made, however, from fast-grown eucalypts (Hillis and Brown 1978).

The use of eucalypts for veneers and plywood is still not on a large scale, but plantation-grown eucalypts are used for sliced decorative veneer, and plantation logs of grandis can be peeled for plywood because grandis wood does not collapse like that of many of the other eucalypts (FAO of the UN 1981). Eucalypts can be made into good hardboard and particleboard (Hillis and Brown 1978). Eucalypts are used extensively for mine timbers, railroad crossties, smelter poles, fenceposts, and utility poles (FAO of the UN 1981; Hillis and Brown 1978). The sapwood accepts preservation treatments, but care must be taken to reduce end splitting during drying (FAO of the UN 1981; Hillis and Brown 1978).

Thinning to maximize diameter growth and extending rotations of eucalyptus plantations to 15 to 25 years improves wood quality for lumber, veneer, and utility poles (Wattle Research Institute 1972), and might be an option for Florida growers.

The eucalypts are good firewoods and are used to make charcoal, including metallurgical charcoal in several countries (Ayling and Martins 1981; FAO of the UN 1981). Florida-grown grandis is easily whole-tree chipped for fuel use, and these chips are highly suitable for pyrolytic fuel systems (Purdy and others 1978). A good-quality activated carbon can be made from Florida-grown grandis (Smith 1979).

Eucalyptus honey can be of good quality (FAO of the UN 1981). Camaldulensis, tereticornis, and viminalis are good honey trees and are suitable for plantations in Florida. Tereticornis has sometimes been planted in central Florida as a winter flower crop to maintain hives. There is danger that the flower crop can be lost to a freeze, however.

Nearly all species of eucalypts have oil-producing glands in their leaves that give the leaves their characteristic odor (FAO of the UN 1981). These essential oils are useful in pharmaceuticals, solvents, floating agents, and perfumes. Fewer than 20 species produce oils in sufficient quantity for commercial production (Hillis and Brown 1978). Macarthurii has a good yield of genariol and eudesmol for use in perfumes (FAO of the UN 1981), and this species is widely adaptable in Florida. The premier essential oil producers in the world market--globulus, radiata, and dives--have not shown adaptability in Florida.

The juvenile foliage of young eucalypts is different from the leaves of older trees. Coppice and epicormic sprouts usually have juvenile foliage, which for some species has suitable shape and color for floral arrangements. Unfortunately, the best species for the production of ornamental foliage, such as pulverulenta, which is used in California, are not well adapted to Florida. However, neglecta, nova-anglica, cinerea, and perhaps a few other species that are adapted to Florida might be good substitutes.

Prospects and Problems of the Future

Over the short term, planting of eucalypts in Florida will depend on the interest of pulp manufacturers in establishing captive supplies of hardwood fiber on accessible sites, on the need for close-by supplies of boiler fuel, and on the stumpage price for hardwood pulpwood. The current stumpage price in southern Florida is relatively low because the nearest pulpmill is in northern Florida. It is unfortunate that the farther the distance from pulpmills in Florida, the more advanced is the technology for establishing short-rotation, high-yielding plantations. There is a world market for eucalyptus pulpwood chips, but the present volume of eucalyptus wood in southern Florida is insufficient to enter the market.

Over a longer term, the construction of wood-burning boilers by industries could have a great impact. Southern Florida, in particular, has an excellent potential for fuelwood plantations, once boilers that can use that fuel are installed. Coal must be hauled an even greater distance to get to southern Florida than the distance traveled by southern Florida pulpwood to northern Florida. Thus, wood might be priced competitively with coal in the switch away from oil-fired boilers. Agricultural industries, with their vast landholdings in southern Florida, could establish eucalyptus fuelwood plantations close to their processing plants.

The technology for obtaining high yields from eucalyptus plantations can be improved greatly. This technology is just being born in northern Florida and has yet to walk in central Florida. In northern Florida, success rests with breeding. The germplasm of the few trees with good growth, form, and resistance to freezing must be multiplied, perhaps through propagation of rooted cuttings as in Brazil and the People's Republic of the Congo (Hartney 1980), or by tissue culture. Rooted cuttings are already being produced at the FDF nursery from superior trees by Forest Service developed adaptations of Brazilian methods of rooting cuttings, and a private research laboratory in Florida has succeeded in producing tissue culture clones of superior eucalyptus trees in Florida and is test marketing clonal plants. Only the present high costs of clonal plants is holding back substantial gains in adaptability and productivity of eucalypts in Florida. Selected clones could solve the problem of undependable coppicing of grandis in southern Florida. Clones that would exploit clean weeding and complete fertilization could make such treatments profitable. Hybridizing through controlled pollination and other intensive breeding techniques has yet to be tried in Florida, but it offers opportunities for developing unique strains for optimum performance in Florida.

Rooted eucalyptus cuttings in LaBelle planter blocks.

Tissue culture plants produced from epicormic shoots of a select Spanish camaldulensis. (Photo courtesy of Clonal Resources, Inc., Lakeland, Florida.)

rature Cited

ing, R. D.; Martins, P. J. The growing eucalypts on short rotation in azil. For. Chron. 57(1): 9-16. 1981.

ard, E. L.; English, F. T. Basal nkers of *Eucalyptus* spp. Plant thol. Circ. 219. Tallahassee: orida Department of Agriculture and nsumer Services, Division of Plant dustry; 1980. 2 p.

os, N. F.; Pritchett, W. L. Effect sources and rates of nitrogen on owth and composition of *Eucalyptus andis*. In: Soil and Crop Science ciety of Florida Proceedings. inesville, FL: Univ. of Florida, il Science Department; 1979. 38: 1-104.

nd, D. J.; Brooker, M. I. H.; rnbull, J. W. Eucalyptus seed. lbourne, Australia: Commonwealth ientific and Industrial Research ganization; 1980. 191 p.

inhos, E., Jr. More wood of better ality: intensive silviculture with pid-grown improved *Eucalyptus* spp. r pulpwood. In: Proceedings of the chnical Association of the Pulp and per Industry, 1980 annual meeting; lanta, GA. Atlanta, GA: Tappi Press, 80: 351-357.

inhos, E., Jr.; Ikemori, Y. K. Mass oduction of *Eucalyptus* spp. by oted cuttings. In: Proceedings IUFRO nference on fast growing trees; 1980 nuary 7, Aguas de Sao Pedro, S.P. azil. 1980: Div. 2 S2.02-8.

ppendale, G. M. Eucalyptus menclature. Aust. For. Res. 7: -107; 1976.

ke, B. Establishment of eucalypt lantations, Coffs Harbour, N.S.W. i. and Technol. (Australia) 12(6): -13; 1975.

s, J. H., Jr. The natural features southern Florida, especially the getation, and the Everglades. Geol. ll. 25. Tallahassee: Florida partment of Conservation, Florida ological Survey; 1943. 311 p.

d and Agriculture Organization of the ited Nations. Eucalypts for anting. rev. ed. FAO For. Ser. 11. me, Italy: Food and Agriculture ganization of the United Nations; 81. 677 p.

Frankin, E. C. Yield and properties of pulp from eucalypt wood grown in Florida. Tappi 60(6): 65-67. 1977.

Franklin, E. C.; Meskimen, G. F. Genetic improvement of *Eucalyptus robusta* Sm. in southern Florida. In: Burley, J.; Nikles, D. G., eds. Proceedings of a joint meeting on tropical provenance and progeny research and international cooperation; 1973 October 22-26; Nairobi, Kenya. Oxford, UK; Commonwealth Forestry Institute; 1973: 421-424.

Franklin, E. C,; Meskimen, G. Progeny testing in a eucalyptus breeding program. In: Proceedings: workshop on progeny testing hardwood tree species; 1974 November 19; Knoxville, TN; IUFRO Working Party on Progeny Testing; 1975: 2-4. Available from: Southeastern Forest Experiment Station, Asheville, NC.

Geary, T. F. Winter planting potential of four eucalypt species in south Florida. Tree Plant. Notes 28(3,4): 14-17; 1977.

Geary, T. F.; Millier, W. F. Pelleting small volumes of eucalyptus seeds for precision sowing. S. Afr. For. J. 121: 79-83; 1982.

Hall, N.; Johnston, R. D.; Chippendale, G. M. Forest trees of Australia. Canberra: Australian Government Printing Service: 1970. 333 p.

Hartney, V. J. Vegetative propagation of the eucalypts. Aust. For. Res. 10(3): 191-211; 1980.

Hillis, W. E.; Brown, A. G., eds. Eucalypts for wood production. Melbourne, Australia: Commonwealth Scientific and Industrial Research Organization; 1978. 434 p.

Horne, R. R. Raising eucalypts for plantations on the north coast of N.S.W. Res. Note 22. Sydney, Australia: Forestry Commission of New South Wales; 1979. 24 p.

Hunt, R. Bareroot planting of eucalyptus. Tree Plant. Notes 31(4): 20-22; 1980.

Hunt, R.; Zobel, B. Frost-hardy eucalyptus grow well in the Southeast. South J. Appl. For. 2(1): 6-10; 1978.

Johnson, W. O. Minimum temperatures in agricultural areas of peninsular Florida--summary of 30 winter seasons - 1937-67. Publ. 9. Gainesville: Univ.

of Florida, Agricultural Experiment Stations, Institute of Food and Agricultural Sciences; 1970. 154 p.

Jones, LeRoy. Effect of storage at various moisture contents and temperatures on seed germination of silk oak, Australian pine, and *Eucalyptus* spp. Res. Note SE-83. Asheville, NC: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Southeastern Forest Experiment Station; 1967. 4 p.

Knockaert, C. Depressage des taillis d'Eucalyptus. Ann. de la Rech. For. au Maroc 19: 79-145; 1979.

Meskimen, G. Combating grass competition for eucalypts planted in turf. Tree Plant. Notes 21(4): 3-5; 1970.

Meskimen, G.; Franklin, E. C. Spacing *Eucalyptus grandis* in southern Florida--a question of merchantable versus total volume. South. J. Appl. For. 2(1): 3-5; 1978.

Moore, W. H.; Swindel, B. F. Effects of site preparation on dry prairie vegetation in south Florida. South. J. Appl. For. 5(2): 89-92; 1981.

Poynton, R. J. The silvicultural treatment of eucalypt plantations in southern Africa. S. Afr. For. J. 116: 11-16; 1981.

Pryor, L. D. Biology of the eucalypts. London: Edward Arnold; 1976. 82 p.

Purdy, K. R.; Elston, L. W.; Hurst, D. R. [and others]. Pyrolysis of *Eucalyptus grandis* and *Melaleuca* whole-tree chips. Final Rep. Proj. A-2148. Atlanta, GA: Georgia Institute of Technology, Engineering Experiment Station; 1978. 34 p.

Rockwood, D. L.; Geary, T. F.; Bourgeron, P. S. Planting density and genetic influences on seedling growth and coppicing of eucalypts in southern Florida. In: Proceedings of 1982 southern forest biomass workshop; 1982 June 16-18; Alexandria, LA. Georgetown, SC: The Belle W. Baruch Forest Science Institute of Clemson University; 1982: 95-102.

Schonau, A. P. G.; van Themaat, R. Verloren; Boden, D. I. The importance of complete site preparation and fertilizing in the establishment of *Eucalyptus grandis*. S. Afr. For. J. 116: 1-10; 1981.

Schory, E. A., Sr. Eucalyptus planting guide for Florida. Tallahassee: Florida Department of Agriculture and Consumer Services, Division of Forestry; [n.d.]. 23 p.

Smith, S. B. Activated charcoal for water purification from Florida woods. Final Rep. Proj. A-2214. Atlanta, GA: Georgia Institute of Technology, Engineering Experiment Station; 1979. 49 p.

Snyder, G. H.; Burdine, H. W.; Crockett, J. R. [and others]. Water table management for organic soil conservation and crop production in the Florida Everglades. Bull. 801. Belle Glade, FL: Univ. of Florida, Agricultural Experiment Stations, Agricultural Research and Educational Center; 1978. 22 p.

Stubbings, J. A.; Schonau, A. P. G. Management of short rotation coppice crops of *Eucalyptus grandis* Hill ex Maiden. S. Afr. For. J. 115: 38-46. 1980.

Tinus, R. W.; McDonald, S. E. How to grow tree seedlings in containers in greenhouses. Gen. Tech. Rep. RM-60. Fort Collins, CO: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Rocky Mountain Forest and Range Experiment Station; 1979. 256 p.

Uhr, S. C. Eucalypt--the wonder tree. Am For. 82(10): 42-43, 59-63; 1976.

Wattle Research Institute. Handbook on eucalypt growing. Notes on the management of eucalypt plantations grown fo timber in the wattle-growing regions of South Africa. Pietermaritzburg, Natal, South Africa: Wattle Research Institute; 1972. 173 p.

Zon, R.; Briscoe, J. M. Eucalypts in Florida. Bull. 87. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service; 1911. 47 p.

Appendix

Scientific Nomenclature of Eucalyptus Species Mentioned in the Text

Scientific Name[4]	Text Name
Eucalyptus camuldulensis Dehnh. var. *camuldulensis*	Camaldulensis
camphora R. T. Bak.	Camphora
cinerea F. Muell. ex Benth.	Cinerea
dalrympleana Maid. subsp. *dalyrmpleana*	Dalrympleana
dives Schau.	Dives
globulus Labill. subsp. *globulus*	Globulus
grandis Hill ex Maid.	Grandis
macarthurii Deane & Maid.	Macarthurii
maculata Hook	Maculata
neglecta Maid.	Neglecta
nova-anglica Deane & Maid.	Nova-anglica
paniculata Sm.	Paniculata
pulverulenta Sims	Pulverulenta
radiata Sub. ex D.C.	Radiata
robusta Sm.	Robusta
rubida Deane & Maid.	Rubida
saligna Sm.	Saligna
tereticornis Sm.	Tereticornis
urophylla S. T. Blake	Urophylla
viminalis Labill.	Viminalis

---

[4] From Chippendale (1976).

U.S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE: 1983—651-976/4976

Geary, T. F.; Meskimen, G. F.; Franklin, E. C.
Growing eucalypts in Florida for industrial wood production. Gen. Tech. Rep. SE-23. Asheville, NC: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Southeastern Forest Experiment Station; 1983.
43 p.

Eucalypt planting is practical on many sites in southern Florida, and strains resistant to freezes farther north are being bred. Methods have been developed for tree improvement, seed collection and handling, nursery management, plantation establishment and protection, and coppice regeneration. Guides to yields and utilization have been produced.

KEYWORDS: Reforestation, eucalyptus, tree improvement, seed technology, nursery practices, establishment methods, protection, coppice management, yields, utilization.

Geary, T. F.; Meskimen, G. F.; Franklin, E. C.
Growing eucalypts in Florida for industrial wood production. Gen. Tech. Rep. SE-23. Asheville, NC: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Southeastern Forest Experiment Station; 1983.
43 p.

Eucalypt planting is practical on many sites in southern Florida, and strains resistant to freezes farther north are being bred. Methods have been developed for tree improvement, seed collection and handling, nursery management, plantation establishment and protection, and coppice regeneration. Guides to yields and utilization have been produced.

KEYWORDS: Reforestation, eucalyptus, tree improvement, seed technology, nursery practices, establishment methods, protection, coppice management, yields, utilization.

The Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture, is dedicated to the principle of multiple use management of the Nation's forest resources for sustained yields of wood, water, forage, wildlife, and recreation. Through forestry research, cooperation with the States and private forest owners, and management of the National Forests and National Grasslands, it strives—as directed by Congress—to provide increasingly greater service to a growing Nation.

USDA policy does not permit discrimination because of race, color, national origin, sex or religion. Any person who believes he or she has been discriminated against in any USDA-related activity should write immediately to the Secretary of Agriculture, Washington, D.C. 20250.

te States
ament of
iculture

es Service

teastern Forest
ment Station

lle,
rth Carolina

al Technical Report
2
3

Proceedings of the Second Biennial Southern Silvicultural Research Conference

Atlanta, Georgia
November 4-5, 1982

GOVERNMENT
LIBRARY

Edited by
Earle P. Jones, Jr.

vics \'sil-viks\ *n pl but sing in constr* [NL *silva*] : the study of
life history, characteristics, and ecology of forest trees esp. in
stands
i.vi•cul•tur•al \,sil-və-'kəlch-(ə-)rəl\ *adj* : of or relating to sil-
viculture — sil•vi•cul•tur•al•ly \-ē\ *adv*
sl•vi•cul•ture \'sil-və-,kəl-chər\ *n* [F, fr. L *silva*, *sylva* forest +
cultura culture] : a phase of forestry dealing with the development
and care of forests — sil•vi•cul•tur•ist \,sil-və-'kəlch-(ə-)rəst\ *n*

sil•vics \'sil-viks\ *n pl but sing in constr* [NL *silva*] : the study
the life history, characteristics, and ecology of forest trees esp.
stands
sil•vi•cul•tur•al \,sil-və-'kəlch-(ə-)rəl\ *adj* : of or relating to
viculture — sil•vi•cul•tur•al•ly \-ē\ *adv*
sil•vi•cul•ture \'sil-və-,kəl-chər\ *n* [F, fr. L *silva*, *sylva* fores
cultura culture] : a phase of forestry dealing with the developm
and care of forests — sil•vi•cul•tur•ist \,sil-və-'kəlch-(ə-)rəs

Jones, Earle P., Jr., ed.
Proceedings of the second biennial southern silvicultural research conference; 1982 November 4-5; Atlanta, GA: Gen. Tech. Rep. SE-24. Asheville, NC: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Southeastern Forest Experiment Station, 1983. 514 p.

86 papers are presented in 13 categories: Site Preparation, Prescribed Fire, Pine Regeneration, Hardwood Regeneration, Thinning, Harvesting, Growth and Yield, Biometry, Pest Management, Nursery Practices, Tree Improvement, Water, and Wildlife.

The use of trade or company names of products or services in these Proceedings is for the benefit of the reader. Such use does not constitute an endorsement or approval of any service or product by the Conference sponsors to the exclusion of others that may be suitable.

Remarks about pesticides appear in some technical papers contained in these Proceedings. Publication of these statements does not constitute endorsement or recommendation of them by the Conference sponsors, nor does it imply that uses discussed have been registered. Use of most pesticides is regulated by State or Federal law. Applicable regulations must be obtained from appropriate regulatory agencies.

CAUTION: Pesticides can be injurious to humans, domestic animals, desirable plants, and fish or other wildlife--if they are not handled or applied properly. Use all pesticides selectively and carefully. Follow recommended practices given on the label for use and disposal of pesticides and pesticide containers.

March 1983
Southeastern Forest Experiment Station
Asheville, North Carolina

Proceedings

of the

SECOND BIENNIAL SOUTHERN SILVICULTURAL RESEARCH CONFERENCE

Edited by

Earle P. Jones, Jr.

Atlanta, Georgia

November 4-5, 1982

Sponsored by:

Southern Forest Experiment Station

Southeastern Forest Experiment Station

Southern Region of the Association of State College and University Forestry Research Organizations

Southern Industrial Forest Research Council

PREFACE

As its name implies, the Southern Silviculture Research Conference is a place for research scientists to describe and discuss their work in silviculture. Forest practitioners, however, are always anxious to learn the results of silviculture research. Many field foresters attended the Conference, and many more will see these Proceedings. I hope the form and content of this publication will facilitate such use. The 1982 Conference included many aspects of silviculture research in the South, from site preparation to harvesting and from pest management to wildlife management. Of 112 proposals submitted as abstracts for consideration by the Program Committee, 86 were selected for presentation at the Conference. The criteria for selection included timeliness, appropriateness of subject matter, and importance of the message.

The Conference was organized and conducted by a number of people representing university, industry, and Forest Service research organizations. Conference cochairmen for the 1982 conference were John W. Henley and Gordon D. Lewis, of the Southern and Southeastern Stations, USDA Forest Service. Others who served on the Program Planning Committee were:

Roger P. Belanger, Southeastern Forest Experiment Station,
Athens, Georgia

Charles E. McGee, Southern Forest Experiment Station,
Suwannee, Tennessee

James B. Baker, Southern Forest Experiment Station,
Monticello, Arkansas

Michael S. Golden, Auburn University,
Auburn, Alabama

Andrew W. Ezell, Texas A&M University,
College Station, Texas

O. Michael Beach, Champion International,
Huntsville, Texas

Harold J. Hill, Hammermill Paper Company,
Selma, Alabama

Special thanks are due to the contributors who prepared and presented the research papers, and to the 18 moderators who presided over the topic sessions and maintained a very strict time schedule. Thanks also go to others who submitted abstracts for consideration by the Program Committee, and to those who attended the Conference and participated in the discussions of the presented papers.

Papers are published in this Proceedings as they were submitted by the authors--in camera-ready form. Authors are responsible for the content of their papers. Printing and production were supervised by the Southeastern Forest Experiment Station, USDA Forest Service, Asheville, North Carolina.

EARLE P. JONES, JR.
Program Chairman

CONTENTS

Page

SITE PREPARATION

A Spectrum of Site Preparation Alternatives in the Lower Piedmont of Georgia. 1
M. Boyd Edwards

First-Year Survival and Growth of Loblolly Pine (*Pinus taeda* L.) as Affected by Site Preparation on the South Carolina and Georgia Piedmont. 5
D. O. Lantagne and J. A. Burger

Mechanical Site Preparation Improves Growth of Genetically Improved and Unimproved Slash Pine on a Florida Flatwoods Site 11
Kenneth W. Outcalt

Response of Planted Pines to Site Preparation on a Beauregard-Caddo Soil. 14
James D. Haywood

Effect of Surface Soil Removal on Selected Soil Properties and Loblolly Pine Seedlings After the First Growing Season. 18
Charles L. Tuttle, Michael S. Golden, and Ralph S. Meldahl

First-Year Effects of Rootraking on Available Nutrients in Piedmont Plateau Soils. 23
R. E. Banker, J. H. Miller, and D. E. Davis

Root Development of Loblolly Pine Seedlings in Compacted Soils . . . 26
Gerry L. Simmons and Andrew W. Ezell

Handplanting Costs are Influenced by Planting Site Characteristics . 30
Richard W. Guldin

Effect of Site Preparation and Fertilization on Slash Pine Growing on a Good Site. 34
Allan E. Tiarks

Site Preparation Effects on Early Loblolly Pine Growth, Hardwood Competition, and Soil Physical Properties. 40
James N. DeWit and Thomas A. Terry

Methods of Sericea Lespedeza Establishment for Forest Soil Improvement. 48
Jacques R. Jorgensen and Charles E. Davis

Soil Response to Clearcutting and Site Preparation in East Texas. . 54
J. J. Stransky, L. K. Halls, and K. G. Watterston

Intensive Whole-Tree Harvesting as a Site Preparation Technique . . 59
James W. McMinn

PRESCRIBED FIRE

Growth of Young Longleaf Pine as Affected by Biennial Burns Plus Chemical or Mechanical Treatments for Competition Control. 62
William D. Boyer

Prescribed Burning and Nitrogen Fertilization of Slash Pine Plantations. 66
A. V. Mollitor, N. B. Comerford, and R. F. Fisher

May Burns Benefit Survival and Growth of Longleaf Pine Seedlings. . 70
Harold E. Grelen

Prescribed Fire for Hardwood Control and Fuel Reduction in Pine Plantations on the Cumberland Plateau. 74
Michael York and Edward Buckner

Influence of Burning and Grazing on Soil Nutrient Properties and Tree Growth on a Georgia Coastal Plain Site After 40 Years 79
William H. McKee, Jr., and Clifford E. Lewis

PINE REGENERATION

Regeneration of Loblolly Pine Plantations in the Piedmont by Clearcutting With Seed in Place. 87
D. H. Van Lear, J. E. Douglass, S. K. Cox, M. K. Augspurger, and S. K. Nodine

Regenerating Loblolly Pine by Natural Seeding and by Planting in Southeastern Louisiana 94
S. C. Hu

Choctawhatchee Sand Pine Survival, Height, and Biomass in South Carolina: Third-Year Results 96
W. Henry McNab and R. H. Brendemuehl

Factors Influencing Survival and Early Stocking Trends in Plantation of Loblolly Pine. 101
G. Kenneth Xydias

Early Development of Longleaf Pine Planted on Prepared Sites in the East Gulf. 109
Robert M. Farrar, Jr., and John B. White

Effects of Initial Seedling Density on Spot-Seeded Loblolly and Slash Pines at Age 15 Years. 118
Thomas E. Campbell

Height Growth of Containerized White Pine on the Cumberland Plateau, Tennessee 128
Ronald L. Hay and John C. Rennie

Page

First-Year Survival and Growth of Containerized Pine (*Pinus* spp.) Seedlings on Strip Mined Lands as Affected by Cultural Treatments and Edaphic Factors. 134
Stephen H. Schoenholtz and James A. Burger

Container-Grown Pine Seedlings Enable Extended Planting Season on Surface Mines in East Tennessee. 141
Peter Moditz and Edward Buckner

HARDWOOD REGENERATION

Regenerating Red Oak on Productive Sites in the Southern Appalachians: A Research Approach. 144
David L. Loftis

Species and Site Relationships Among Oak Regeneration Types After Clearcutting in the Virginia Ridge and Valley 151
M. S. Ross, T. L. Sharik, and D. Wm. Smith

Suitable Trees for the Bottomlands of West Tennessee 157
Thomas A. Waldrop, Edward R. Buckner, and Allan E. Houston

Understory Light Intensity in Bottomland Hardwood Stands 161
Jim L. Chambers and Michael W. Jenkins

Composition and Characteristics of Advance Reproduction in the Pure Yellow-Poplar Component of Cove Hardwoods in the Southern Appalachians 166
Lino Della-Bianca

The Influence of Different Site Preparation Methods on Natural Regeneration in Bottomland Stands. 172
Jon T. Morrissey and Andrew W. Ezell

Water Oak Regeneration in the South's Upland Bottomland 177
John C. Adams

First-Year Growth of Etiolated Northern Red Oak 180
G. M. Hopper, D. Wm. Smith, and D. J. Parrish

Response of Underplanted Seedlings to Canopy Removal in Upper Piedmont Hardwood Stands 185
T. J. Tworkoski, D. Wm. Smith, and D. J. Parrish

Suckering and Root Connections of Sweetgum on Clayey Soil 189
John K. Francis

THINNING

Ten-Year Results From Thinning an Eleven-Year-Old Stand of Loblolly Pine on an Excellent Site 193
G. K. Xydias, A. H. Gregory, and P. T. Sprinz

Page

Precommercial Thinning for the Private, Nonindustrial Landowner: A Methodology Report 200
Michael D. Cain

Results After 21 Years in Precommercially Thinned Direct-Seeded Southern Pine Stands 206
Robert M. Farrar, Jr.

An Experiment to Evaluate Row, Selection, and Combination Thinning: Design and Installation Results 213
Robert L. Bailey and Leon V. Pienaar

Guides for Thinning Shortleaf Pine 217
Robert Rogers

Recovery of Understocked, Uneven-Aged Pine Stands and Suppressed Trees 226
B. F. McLemore

HARVESTING

Thinning the Upland Hardwood Forest: A Mechanized System 230
H. G. Gibson, P. E. Pope, D. L. Cassens, B. C. Fischer, and G. M. Wright

Operational Characteristics of a Harvester in Intermediate Cuttings. 240
Bryce J. Stokes and Donald L. Sirois

Analysis of the Taylor Skyliner in Western North Carolina. 247
Jerry L. Koger and James R. Sherar

Financial Analysis of Equipment: A General Approach to Selection, Replacement, and Machine Cost Problems. 253
W. L. Mills, Jr., and Robert A. Tufts

Effect of Logging Equipment Traffic on Soil Density and Growth and Survival of Young Loblolly Pine (Abstract). 260
B. Graeme Lockaby and Clyde G. Vidrine

GROWTH AND YIELD

Ecological and Silvicultural Factors Associated With Rapid Growth of Loblolly Pine Stands. 261
Paul Y. Burns and S. C. Hu

Effects of Thinning and Fertilization on Growth of Upland Oak Stands in the Boston Mountains of Arkansas: 7-Year Results 269
David L. Graney

Page

A Growth and Yield Model for Unthinned Slash Pine Plantations Infected With Fusiform Rust. 275
Warren L. Nance, Ronald C. Froelich, Tommy R. Dell, and Eugene Shoulders

Crown Size and Stand Density Determine Periodic Growth in Loblolly Pine Plantations 283
James D. Burton and Eugene Shoulders

Growth and Development of a 20-Year-Old Unthinned Spruce Pine Plantation 288
John R. Toliver and James E. Hotvedt

Comparing Growth and Yield Between 31-Year-Old Slash and Loblolly Pine Plantations 291
Terry R. Clason and Quang V. Cao

Variable Density Yield Tables for Red Oak-Sweetgum Stands 298
Alfred D. Sullivan, Thomas G. Matney, and John D. Hodges

Rate of Return From Fertilization of Semimature Slash Pine Plantations. 302
Duane R. Dippon and John T. Shelton

BIOMETRY

Evaluating Regeneration Success in Plantations Using Distance Sampling 312
W. D. Smith

Approximating Thinned Stand Diameter Distributions With Statistical Probability Functions 315
T. G. Matney and A. D. Sullivan

A Segmented Diameter Distribution Method for Modeling Thinned Stands 325
Quang V. Cao

Density Effects on Height Growth and Its Implications for Site Index Prediction and Growth Projection 329
F. Thomas Lloyd and Earle P. Jones, Jr.

An Empirical Function for Predicting Survival Over a Wide Range of Densities 334
William R. Harms

Stem Volume Prediction and Crown Characteristics of Thinned Longleaf Pine Plantations 338
Richard E. Lohrey

A Regression-Adjusted Approach Can Estimate Competing Biomass . . 344
James H. Miller

Page

A Continuous Function Design for Fertilizer Rate Trials in Young Pine Plantations. 352
Eugene Shoulders and Allan E. Tiarks

The Competition-Release Enigma: Adding Apples and Oranges and Coming up With Lemons 357
Shepard M. Zedaker

PEST MANAGEMENT

Southern Pine Beetle Hazard Ratings: Uses, Implementation, and Evaluation 365
G. N. Mason, G. D. Hertel, and R. C. Thatcher

Evaluation of Loblolly Pine Thinning Regimes for Reduction of Losses From Southern Pine Beetle Attack 371
Roy L. Hedden

Impact of Thinning on Host Susceptibility. 376
T. Evan Nebeker, David M. Moehring, John D. Hodges, Mark W. Brown, and Catalino A. Blanche

Salvage Cutting in Southern Pine Forests 382
R. P. Belanger, J. F. Godbee, T. Miller, and R. S. Webb

NURSERY PRACTICES

Freeze- and Kiln-Drying of Slash Pine Cones and Seeds. 387
James P. Barnett

Sweetgum Seedling Root Starch Content as an Indicator of Dormancy. 390
Robert W. Rose, Jr., and M. Monica McGregor

The Effect of Photoperiod During Cold Storage on the Survival and Growth of Loblolly Pine Seedlings 401
Jon D. Johnson

The Development of Ectomycorrhizae on Containerized Sweet Birch and European Alder Seedlings for Planting on Low-Quality Sites. . 409
R. F. Walker, D. C. West, and S. B. McLaughlin

Effect of Bifenox and Oxyfluorfen on Emergence and Mortality of Loblolly Seedlings Under Growth Chamber Conditions 418
David B. South and John G. Mexal

TREE IMPROVEMENT

Field Resistance of Slash Pine Families Affected by Interactions With Local Rust Populations 427
Harry R. Powers, Jr., and Marvin Zoerb

Page

Performance and G-E Interactions of Sycamore Established From Cuttings and Seedlings. 431
Samuel B. Land, Jr.

Pollen Storage Methods Influence Filled Seed Yields in Controlled Pollinations of Loblolly Pine. 441
Frederick R. Matthews and David L. Bramlett

Simulated Growth and Yield of Single-Family Versus Multi-Family Loblolly Pine Plantations. 446
Warren L. Nance

WATER

Stormflow Changes After Prescribed Burning and Clearcutting Pine Stands in the South Carolina Piedmont. 454
James E. Douglass, David H. Van Lear, and Carmen Valverde

Sediment Losses From Forest Practices in the Gulf Coastal Plain of Arkansas 461
R. Scott Beasley and Alfredo B. Granillo

An Overview of Watershed and Nutrient Cycling Research at the Reynolds Homestead Research Center 468
T. R. Fox, J. A. Burger, R. E. Kreh, and J. E. Douglass

Nutrient Distributions in Runoff From Ouachita Mountain Watersheds 477
Edwin R. Lawson and Leslie H. Hileman

WILDLIFE

Biological Relationships Between Wildlife and Southern Forests: State of the Art (Abstract). 483
Ernest A. Gluesing and Donna M. Field

Impacts of Silvicultural Practices in Loblolly Pine Plantations on White-Tailed Deer Habitat 484
George A. Hurst and Randy C. Warren

Squirrel Den Tree Management: Reducing Incompatibility With Timber Production in Upland Hardwoods 488
Jimmy C. Huntley

Pine Utilization by Deer in Young Loblolly Pine Plantations in East Texas. 496
Patti L. Furrh and Andrew W. Ezell

APPENDIX I--REGISTRATION LIST 507

APPENDIX II--ALPHABETICAL LIST OF AUTHORS 513

A SPECTRUM OF SITE PREPARATION ALTERNATIVES IN THE LOWER PIEDMONT OF GEORGIA[1]

M. Boyd Edwards[2]

Abstract.--At the Hitchiti Experimental Forest impacts of various site preparation treatments are being observed. A mature, natural stand of loblolly pine and some hardwoods were harvested before the treatments. The treatments include 1) control, 2) chainsaw and plant, 3) shear with KG-blade and drum chop, 4) KG, drum chop, and apply herbicide, 5) KG, windrow, burn windrows and disk, and 6) KG, windrow, burn windrows, disk, fertilize, and apply herbicide. This paper reviews research activities from preharvest to 1-year post-harvest.

INTRODUCTION

The selection of site preparation treatments for replanting after loblolly pine (Pinus taeda L.) stands are harvested on Piedmont sites must be based on thorough knowledge of both silviculture and applied ecology. Loblolly pine is a subclimax vegetation type, and some treatment is likely to be needed on many soil types to prevent more tolerant species from dominating stands planted after harvests. The purpose of the study described here is to evaluate the effects of various intensities of site preparation on the survival and growth of loblolly pine in the lower Piedmont Province of Georgia. The original stand was carefully sampled and characterized before timber was harvested.

The study area is in Jones County, Georgia, on the Hitchiti Experimental Forest, 20 miles north of Macon. It is an 84.6-acre tract which supported a mixture of pine and hardwood that regenerated naturally after cotton fields were abandoned in the 1930's. The condition is typical of many forested sites in the lower Piedmont.

METHODS

A preharvest inventory was conducted in the fall of 1979. First the entire area was divided into 194 0.4-acre plots by means of a 2-chain x 2-chain grid system. Twenty of these plots were randomly selected as a sample of the mature stand. Thus, slightly more than 10 percent of the study area was sampled. A 0.10-acre circular plot was established at the center of each of the square plots. Each overstory tree was tallied by species, d.b.h., and height, and was marked with a numbered aluminum tag at groundline. The tag allowed for additional data, such as tree age, to be taken for selected pines after harvesting. The understory was evaluated by a general classification system based on an estimate of the percentage of cover in grass, vines, and shrubs on ¼-milacre plots distributed on the 0.4-acre plots.

Biomass data were taken by harvesting all vegetation on the ¼-milacre plots and separating it into grasses, vines, and shrubs. This material was ovendried in the laboratory at 80° C and weighed to the nearest 0.1 gram.

In spring 1980, the entire area was clearcut. Late in the summer after harvest, flora on each of the original study plots was surveyed. A 10-foot-wide transect was made diagonally across each 0.4-acre plot, and the first-growing-season invaders were collected. These specimens were identified and deposited in the herbarium at the Hitchiti Experimental Forest.

---

[1] Paper presented at Second Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Research Ecologist, Southeastern Forest Experiment Station, Macon, Georgia.

Site Preparation Treatments

The site was prepared for planting in fall 1981. The experimental design is five replications of six treatments in randomized blocks. Treatment plots each cover about 2 acres. The treatments, in order of increasing intensity, are:

1. Cut only, no site preparation.--These plots were planted in the same manner as the other treatment plots and will serve as controls for the study.

2. Chainsaw and plant.--All trees 1-inch d.b.h. or larger, were cut with a chainsaw after the timber harvest. This treatment required about 8 man-days for 10 acres.

3. Shear and chop.--All standing hardwood trees were sheared with a KG-blade, and the area was single chopped with a drum chopper.

4. Shear, chop, and apply herbicide.--In addition to the shearing and chopping of treatment 3, ½ cc Velpar® Gridball™ pellets with 10 percent active ingredient were applied at a rate of 25 lbs/acre in March 1982.

5. Shear, windrow, burn, and disk.--Residuals were sheared with KG-blade, then the debris was pushed into windrows. The windrows were allowed to dry for 3 weeks and then burned. The remaining debris and ash were scattered over the plot with a dozer blade, then the plots were disked with an offset harrow.

6. Shear, windrow, burn, disk, fertilize, and apply herbicide.--The plots were sheared, windrowed, burned, and disked as in treatment 5. Fertilizer and herbicide will be applied during the second growing season.

The study area was planted in January 1982 at a spacing of 6 feet x 10 feet. The seedlings were improved loblolly pine seedlings obtained from the Georgia Forestry Commission nursery.

Diameter and height growth will be measured annually on the treatment plots. Trees from 50 randomly selected points within each treatment plot will be observed.

PRELIMINARY RESULTS

The preharvest inventory data were summarized by calculating three quantitative parameters--relative density, relative dominance, and relative frequency for all trees 4.5 inches d.b.h. or larger, where

relative density =

$$\frac{\text{number of individuals of species}}{\text{total number of individuals}} \text{ X } 100$$

relative dominance =

$$\frac{\text{dominance of species}}{\text{dominance of all species}} \text{ X } 100$$

and, relative frequency =

$$\frac{\text{frequency of a species}}{\text{sum frequency of all species}} \text{ X } 100$$

These three values were summed to estimate t importance value.

The analysis of these data (Table 1) in ated that loblolly pine was the dominant overstor species in the stand and that sweetgum (Liqu mbar styraciflua L.) and dogwood (Cornus florida were the major codominants.

A total of 14 species of trees was foun the preharvest stand (Table 2). Among stems inch d.b.h. and larger, d.b.h. averaged 7.50 ches and ranged up to 23 inches; height averaged feet and ranged up to 136 feet (Table 2). Ar 61 sample loblolly pines from the overstory, mean age was 45 years and the range was from to 63 years.

Ground layer vegetation before harvest w according to the method of Oosting (1956) to determine the percentage of cover for major t es of analyzed vegetation. This analysis indica that 26.70 percent of the total ground layer various species of grasses, 10.35 percent was vines, and 14.80 percent was shrubs.

In terms of dry biomass in the ground la there were 2.79 tons/acre in grass, 2.08 tons acre in vines, and 4.79 tons/acre in shrubs. e total for the three categories was 9.66 tons/ re, which is a sizeable resource.

The postharvest floristic survey reveale specimens from 23 families, 62 genera, and 89 species. It included 4 families 20 genera, 33 species of monocots--mostly grasses. The t frequent grass species were Panicum (8 specie Aristida (2 species), Digitaria (2 species), Erianthus (2 species), and Paspalum (2 specie There were 19 families, 42 genera, and 56 spe s of dicots. The largest families were Asterac and Fabaceae. Nomenclature in the list of sp es follows that of Radford, Ahles, and Bell (196 when possible.

The frequency of each species is the percentage of the 20 sample plots on which th species occurred. Each species has been plac in a frequency class as follows: 0-20 percent occasional; 21-40 percent--frequent; 41-60 percent--common; 61-80 percent--abundant; 81- percent--very abundant. A checklist is avail e from the author.

Table 1.--Importance values (I.V.) for all stems 4.5 inches d.b.h. or larger in preharvest stand

Species	Relative density	Relative dominance	Relative frequency	Importance value	I.V. rank
Prunus serotina	0.26	0.06	3.23	3.55	8
Nyssa sylvatica	0.60	0.19	3.23	4.02	6
Cornus florida	9.28	0.61	20.43	30.32	3
Ulmus alata	1.89	0.23	9.68	11.80	5
Quercus sp.	7.39	2.49	13.98	23.86	4
Diospyros virginiana	0.60	0.03	3.23	3.86	7
Pinus taeda	51.29	90.03	21.51	162.83	1
Juniperus virginiana	0.17	0.12	1.08	1.37	10
Liquidambar styraciflua	28.35	5.65	21.51	55.51	2
Liriodendron tulipifera	0.17	0.30	2.15	2.62	9

Table 2.--Numbers and sizes of individual trees 1-inch d.b.h. or greater in preharvest stand

Species	Number individuals	Mean d.b.h.	Mean ht.	Minimum d.b.h.	Minimum ht.	Maximum d.b.h.	Maximum ht.
		In.	Ft.	In.	Ft.	In.	Ft.
Prunus serotina	3	3.50	16.34	3.00	15.00	5.00	19.00
Nyssa sylvatica	5	4.20	30.18	3.00	22.00	8.00	49.00
Cornus florida	22	3.41	22.83	2.00	10.00	6.00	35.00
Ulmus alata	15	3.23	23.59	1.00	4.00	6.00	43.00
Crataegus sp.	4	2.50	14.76	1.00	6.00	4.00	27.00
Carya sp.	6	2.75	24.41	2.00	21.00	4.00	35.00
Ilex opaca	1	3.50	14.99	3.50	15.00	3.50	15.00
Acer sp.	9	2.28	21.56	1.00	11.00	4.00	36.00
Quercus sp.	22	9.47	41.54	2.00	4.00	23.00	71.00
Diospyros virginiana	1	3.00	21.00	3.00	21.00	3.00	21.00
Pinus taeda	280	9.47	54.13	2.00	15.00	23.00	136.00
Juniperus virginiana	3	5.17	31.00	2.00	20.00	7.00	43.00
Liquidambar styraciflua	79	4.78	35.73	1.00	10.00	15.00	87.00
Liriodendron tulipifera	4	5.00	42.49	2.00	36.00	7.00	53.00
ALL	454	7.50	45.47	1.00	4.00	23.00	136.00

According to Raunkier's "law of frequency" (Oosting 1956), the percentage of species expected in the classes should be approximately O>F>C = A<V.[4] This high percentage of species in the 0-20 percent class and their absence in the 81-100 percent class suggests that the majority of first-growing-season invaders are either low in density or not evenly dispersed. The distribution is also indicative of a diverse flora and the existence of complex micro- and macro-environments.

Soil

An evaluation was made of the effects of the various intensities of site preparation on the chemical and physical properties of the soil, with the help of Dr. Jim Miller of the Southern Forest Experiment Station.

Composite samples were collected with a Lord-tube sampler at each of two depths (0-6 inches and 6-18 inches) at 25-foot intervals along the diagonal transect on each plot. A core sample was also extracted at a depth of 2¼ inches with an impact sampler at every 5th sample point on each transect. Approximately 3 miles of transect were established through the study area for sampling the soil. Samples were taken in 1981 prior to site preparation treatments, and again in the spring of 1982 after treatments.

The soils on the study site are eroded; the A-horizon is partially or wholly missing due to cultivation that ceased approximately 60 years ago. An area adjacent to the study plots is eroded to the C-horizon with gullies over 10 feet deep. The soils on the study site are classified as Ultisols and may be defined more precisely as follows:

Series	Family	Subgroup
a. Cecil	Clayey, kaolinitic, thermic	Typic Hapludults
1. Sandy loam		
2. Sandy clay loam		
b. Davidson	Clayey, kaolinitic, thermic	Rhodic Paleudults
c. Vance	Clayey, mixed, thermic	Typic Hapludults

Series appear to change with the aspects three ridges that are oriented in a southeast direction off a main ridge to the northwest. Intermittent streams with broad, flat sides separate the ridges, and a perennial stream bo the site to the south and east.

Composite samples will be air-dried and ground to pass a 2 mm sieve. Duplicate 5 g sub samples will be extracted in 1 N NH_4OAC with 1 minute shaking time to determine extractable calcium, magnesium, and potassium. Manganese be extracted with 1 N NH_4OAC and intermittent shaking for 6 hours. After filtration, cations will be quantified by standard atomic absorptio techniques.

Total nitrogen and phosphorus will be determined in duplicate 1-9 subsamples after we digestion with sulfuric acid at 310°C. Nitroge will be quantified with an ammonia-specific ion electrode and phosphorus by the molybdenum blue method.

Core samples will be placed in pressure extractors at 1/3 and 15 atmospheres tension an then ovendried to determine available moisture bulk density.

The soil samples have been collected and shipped to the Auburn laboratory for analysis. Results of these data will be presented at a la date.

SUMMARY

The original stand condition, including understory vegetation and soils, has been documented. The merchantable trees have been clearcut, six levels of site preparation have b installed, and all plots have been planted with genetically improved loblolly pines at a 6- x 10-foot spacing. Performance of the planted tr and the occurrence of growth of competing vegetation will be monitored through the pine rotation. Ecological data related to successio competition, and edaphic state will be utilized in determining stand response to the specific treatments.

LITERATURE CITED

Oosting, Henry J.
1956. The study of plant communities. W. H. Freeman and Co., San Francisco. 440 p.

Radford, A. E., H. E. Ahles, and R. Bell
1968. Manual of the vascular flora of the Carolinas. Univ. of North Carolina Press, Chapel Hill. 1183 p.

---

[4] Class O will normally be very high because of the numerous sporadic species to be found with low frequency in most stands. Class V, and to a lesser extent A, must always be relatively high because of the species that dominate the community. If quadrants are enlarged, classes O and V will enlarge and the lesser classes will decrease accordingly. Frequency classes, therefore, are comparable only when based upon samples of the same size.

FIRST-YEAR SURVIVAL AND GROWTH OF LOBLOLLY PINE (PINUS TAEDA L.) AS AFFECTED BY SITE PREPARATION ON THE SOUTH CAROLINA AND GEORGIA PIEDMONT[1]

D. O. Lantagne and J. A. Burger[2]

Abstract.--Studies were installed on 12 study sites, on the South Carolina and Georgia Piedmont, to determine the effects of several site preparation methods on loblolly pine survival and growth. Among the seven treatments, the shear-pile-disk, shear-disk, shear-V-blade-disc, and chop-burn treatments significantly improved loblolly pine survival and growth by 26 and 50 percent respectively compared to that of the chemical and control treatments. The beneficial effect on survival and growth by tillage treatments was equalled by the chop-burn treatment. Subsoiling improved survival and growth 32 and 30 percent, respectively, over that of the control while discing improved survival and growth 22 and 30 percent, respectively. Results show that good survival and early growth is dependent upon intensive site preparation on the Piedmont. These first-year results and inferences are tentative pending future measurements and evaluations.

INTRODUCTION

Regeneration of intensively managed southern ine forests is accomplished primarily through lear felling, site preparation and planting McClurkin and Moehring, 1978); however in achieving his goal, considerable variation in approach xists. Timber merchantability standards affect he amount of material remaining after harvest, hich in turn affects the choice of site preparation echnique, job quality and cost. Site preparation an be accomplished with chemical, fire or echanical methods and is commonly defined as a set f procedures which provides conditions favorable o seedling survival and growth (Post, 1974). The echniques most commonly employed are shearing, iling, discing, bedding, chopping, herbiciding, urning and subsoiling. Several authors (Brown, 971; Burns and Reynolds, 1972; Packer, 1972; White *et al*., 1976; Schultz, 1976) have listed reasons for mechanical site preparation; some of which are applicable to chemical and fire site preparation as well. The reasons include 1) optimizing the soil moisture regime; 2) organic matter incorporation to increase mineralization and nutrient release to promote early growth; 3) reduce vegetation competing for soil moisture and nutrients; 4) clearing the land making planting easier; 5) increase wood production due to both increased survival and seedling growth; 6) shorten the length of the rotation to optimize the financial return; and 7) allow use of genetically improved planting stock.

Although most of the aforementioned site preparation techniques are used in the Piedmont, there presently exists little documentation of their effect on survival and growth. Studies on the effect of various site preparation techniques on loblolly pine survival and growth have been carried out by forest industries on the Piedmont but the results have not been widely disseminated. Haines (1978) studied the effect of several site preparation techniques on loblolly pine survival and growth. One of several treatments was discing, and when compared to the control, the results indicated no significant increases in survival, height and seedling volumes after two growing seasons.

---

[1] Research funded and established in ooperation with the Western Carolina Region of hampion International Corporation. Paper preented at the Second Biennial Southern Silvicultural esearch Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November -5, 1982.

[2] Graduate Assistant and Assistant Professor f Forest Soils respectively, at Virginia Polytechic Institute and State University, Blacksburg, irginia.

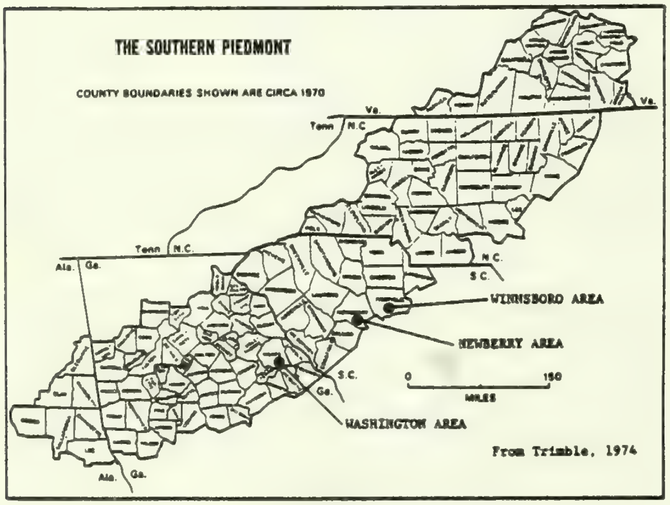
The effects of subsoiling on survival and growth of horticultural and forest tree species on the Piedmont have been evaluated. Savage et al. (1968) reported that subsoiling prior to planting of peach trees affected survival and growth when measured 3 and 13 years after establishment. At 3 years, height growth of seedlings in the unsubsoiled treatments was 50 percent less than seedlings in the subsoiled treatments. Seedling volumes were also substantially improved. After 13 years, survival and seedling volume were approximately 25 percent better in the subsoiled treatments. Berry (1979), working in the Piedmont of Georgia, found that subsoiling increased height and root-collar diameter of five year old loblolly (Pinus taeda) and shortleaf pines (Pinus enchinata) by 5 and 10 percent, respectively. The resulting increase in seedling volume of 19 percent was a significant improvement. Berry concluded that subsoiling would be beneficial on many sites of this type.

The objective of this research was to quantify the effect of several site preparation prescriptions on first-year survival and growth of loblolly pine.

PROCEDURES

Study Sites

Three study areas in the central Piedmont, two in western South Carolina and one in eastern Georgia, were selected. The South Carolina areas were located in Fairfield and Newberry counties, and the Georgia areas in the counties of Wilkes and Oglethorpe (fig. 1). Four sites supporting natural, mature loblolly pine-hardwood stands, were selected within each area and clearcut in the summer of 1980. The prevalent hardwoods on the sites were yellow-poplar (Liriodendron tulipifer) post oak (Quercus stellata), white oak (Quercus alba), water oak (Quercus nigra), and willow oak (Quercus phellos). Eastern red cedar (Juniperus virginiana) was often an understory component. The clearcut stands ranged in age from 30 to 50 years, with site indices (base age 50) ranging from 68 to 90.



From Trimble, 1974

Figure 1.--Map of the Southern Piedmont showing the location of the study sites.

In addition to forest cover, sites were selected on the basis of similarity in soil type. The soils of the study sites were Appling, Pacole Cecil or Hiwasee which have minor differences in the depth, color and texture of the subsoil (SCS, 1975). The soils are deep, well drained with med fertility and moderate permeability. All are clayey, kaolinitic, thermic, Typic Hapludults exc Hiwasee which is a Typic Rhodudult. The uneroded surface soils are predominantly sandy loam and th subsoils range from a sandy clay to clay. Bulk density of the surface soils ranged from 1.17 to 1.24 gms/cm^3 prior to disturbance.

Site Prescriptions

A spectrum of operationally feasible prescri tions, varying in intensity and cost, were includ in the study. The seven treatments ranged from a control to a 3-pass prescription. They included:

1. Control
2. Herbicide and burn
3. Chop and burn
4. Shear, rake-pile
5. Shear and disc (1-pass)
6. Shear, V-blade and disc (2-pass)
7. Shear, rake-pile, disc (3-pass)

Figure 2 shows an idealized layout of the study. Treatments within study sites ranged in si from three to five acres. All treatments were applied in the summer and fall of 1980. Glyphosat was aerially applied at a rate of 1 gallon Roundu per acre. After six weeks the treated areas were burned.

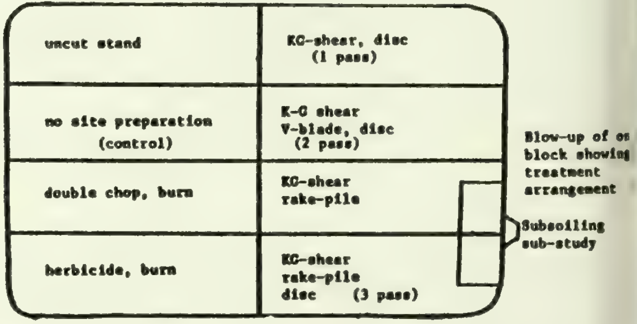


Figure 2.--Idealized experimental layout of the si preparation treatments and controls.

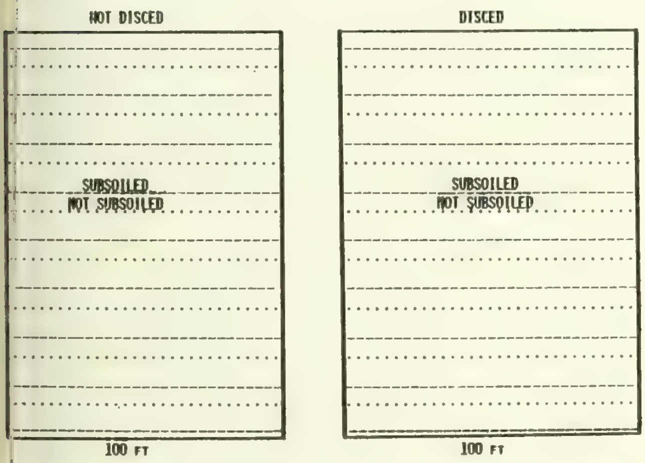
The shear and disc prescription (5) was appli with shearing and discing occurring simultaneously

Residual vegetation was sheared in place; however some piling occurred when vegetation and debris was exceptionally heavy. The shear, V-blade and disc treatment (6) consisted of shearing residual vegetation in place with the first pass, followed by a V-blade and disk with the second pass. The V-blade aligned the sheared material into small windows between which the soil was disced. The remaining site preparation prescriptions are self-explanatory. All treatment areas were planted by machine, with 1-0 genetically improved loblolly pine, with the exception of the control and herbicide plots which were hand planted. Five 0.1 acre subplots were randomly located within each treatment plot. Each subplot contained approximately 64 seedlings which provided about 320 measured trees per treatment.

Subsoiling Study

The subsoiled plots, located only in the Georgia area, have a 2 x 2 factoral arrangement of treatments in a split-plot design (fig. 3). Each of the four replicates is 0.8 acre in size and contains the following four 0.2 acre treatments:

1. Control
2. Subsoil (single 24 in (60 cm) long tooth)
3. Disc (tandom harrow with 35 inch (90 cm) diameter discs)
4. Disc and subsoil



igure 3.--Experimental layout of the subsoiling study.

Subsoil furrows (split-plot) were made cross the disced and non-disced main plots. The ites were machine planted with 1-0 genetically mproved loblolly pine seedlings, within and etween furrows, for a total of 18 rows at a inal seedling spacing of 8 x 8 feet. All planting was accomplished in late March 1981.

Approximately 100 trees were measured for each treatment at each site. Survival, tree height, and root-collar diameter were recorded in early March 1982. Data within each area was analyzed separately using analysis of variance procedures (Sokal and Rohlf, 1969). This paper reports on these first-year results.

RESULTS

Site Preparation Prescriptions

Seedling survival in the five mechanical treatment plots was significantly better than seedling survival in the herbicide-burn and control plots (Table 1). Survival was 30 percent better in the shear-pile and shear-pile-disc plots, and 22 percent better in the shear-pile and chop-burn plots as compared to the herbicide-burn and control plots. The differences among mechanical treatments were not significant with the exception of the shear-pile-disc which had significantly better survival than the chop-burn treatment.

The mechanical treatments, with the exception of the shear-pile prescription, improved height growth by a significant 11 percent over that of the herbicide-burn and control treatments (Table 1). The shear-pile-disc had significantly greater height growth than the chop-burn treatment, but was not significantly different from the other mechanical treatments, again with the exception of the shear-pile treatment.

Except for the shear-pile treatment, seedling volumes (D^2H volume index) were significantly improved by mechanical prescriptions (Table 1). The shear-V-blade-disc and shear-pile-disc prescriptions improved volume about 60 percent over that of the herbicide-burn and control treatments and 40 percent over the shear-pile prescription. The shear-disc and chop-burn treatments improved volume nearly 50 percent over the herbicide-burn and control treatments, and a nonsignificant 25 percent over the shear-pile treatment.

Subsoiling Study

Subsoiling and discing significantly increased seedling survival by 22 and 12 percent, respectively, and seedling volume by 13 percent for both treatments (Table 2). The disc x subsoil interaction was also significant for survival and seedling volume meaning there was an additive effect for these two treatments.

An analysis of the significant interaction term for survival showed that subsoiling improved survival by 12 percent over discing alone, and by 32 percent over the control, while discing alone improved survival by 22 percent over the control (fig. 4). An analysis of the significant disk x subsoil volume interaction showed a significant 30 percent increase over the control by both treatments (fig. 5).

Table 1.--Loblolly pine survival and growth as affected by site preparation treatments.

Site Preparation Treatments	Survival	Height	Diameter	Volume Index[1]
	(%)	(cm)	(mm)	(cm^3)
Control	45a[3]	27.5a	5a	9a
Herbicide[2] and Burn	47a	28.3a	5a	11ab
Chop and Burn	58b	30.6b	6ab	20cd
Shear, Rake-Pile	59bc	28.7a	6ab	15bc
Shear and Disc (1-pass)	65bc	30.9b	7b	20cd
Shear, V-Blade and Disc (2-pass)	59bc	30.9b	7b	26e
Shear, Rake-Pile, Disc (3-pass)	67c	32.5b	7b	24de

[1] Volume Index = d^2 x ht

[2] Glyphosate as Round-up^R applied by helicopter in September.

[3] Means with different subscripts are significantly different at the .05 level of probability using Duncan's Multiple Range Test.

DISCUSSION

During site preparation and planting, and for some months following, the southeastern United States experienced drought conditions. In the period from June 1980 to June 1981, actual rainfall averaged 13 inches below normal. Six tenths of an inch was received 27 days prior to planting on the Georgia sites, however in the 15 days after planting 2.5 inches of rainfall was received in two events. Only 1.25 inches of rain was received on the South Carolina sites over a 44-day period prior to planting. While the seedlings were planted over a period of several days during which 1.3 inches of rain was received, there were only 0.8 inches of rain over the nex 28 days. The lack of rainfall during this critical period of seedling establishment is largely responsible for the overall poor seedli survival on these sites.

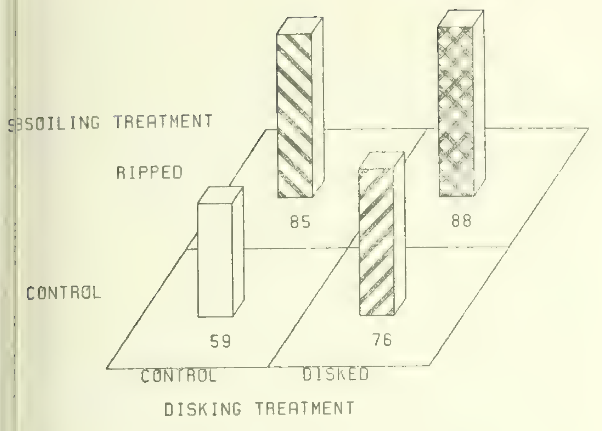
The site preparation prescriptions used in this study vary in cost, competition control, degree of tillage, and the extent to which orga materials were manipulated. Shearing, chopping and herbicides reduce the amount of residual material which could compete with seedlings for light, moisture and nutrients. After shearing, material is raked into piles which allows for effective discing and easy planting. Chopped a

Table 2.--Loblolly pine survival and growth as affected by subsoiling and discing.

Site Preparation Treatments	Survival	Height	Diameter	Volume Index[2]
	(%)	(cm)	(mm)	(cm^3)
Control	72a[1]	31.6a	7a	20a
Disc	82b	31.7a	7a	23b
Control	68a	30.9a	7a	20a
Subsoil	87b	32.3a	7a	23b

[1] Means with different subscripts are significantly different at the .05 level of probability using Duncan's Multiple Range test.

[2] Volume Index = d^2 x ht.



igure 4.--Interaction effect of discing and subsoiling on loblolly pine survival (percent).

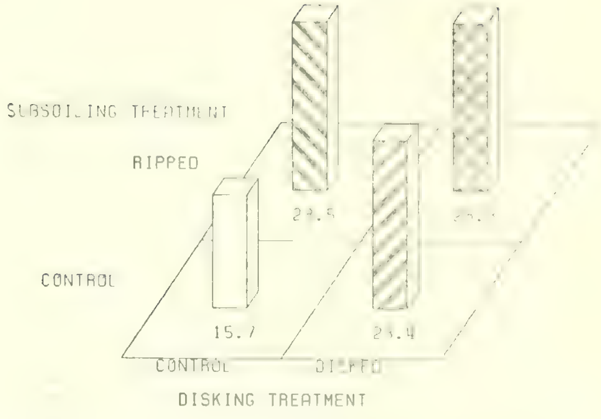


Figure 5.--Interaction effect of discing and subsoiling on loblolly pine seedling volume (cm^3).

erbicided areas are normally burned to reduce the nount of residual material at ground level and to ontrol sprouting hardwoods. Burning the treated rea provides readily available nutrients for eedlings and leaves the larger materials to decompose and slowly release nutrients over the ong term. Discing, the final step in the shear-ake-disc treatment is often thought to be necesary for the enhancement of survival and growth. he disc does provide competition control through oil tillage, and with the incorporation of organic atter, increases short-term mineralization and vailable nutrients.

The shear-V-blade-disc treatment left the rganic materials on the site by eliminating the ake but retained the beneficial effects of soil illage. The shear-disk operation reduced the ecessary passes for site preparation to one and rovides both the benefits of discing and larger ong term nutrient pools.

With each reduction in the number of passes he disk was less effective in tilling the soil urface, however the shear-rake-disc prescription id not result in better survival or growth when ompared to the other prescriptions using the disc. eedlings in the chop-burn treatment did equally s well in survival and growth as those in the hear-disc and shear-V-blade-disc plots. Discing n the 3-pass prescription did not enhance the eedling volume growth over that achieved by the hop-burn treatment and in general has not provided significant reason for its use to date. The erbicide-burn treatment did poorly which is thought o be due in part to a higher level of vegetative ompetition.

While subsoiling did improve survival and rowth, it should be noted that dry soil conditions llow for effective breakage of compact subsoils nd that soil conditions at the time of study stablishment were probably drier than could be xpected in a year of normal rainfall. The effect of the disc + subsoil combination on seedling survival and growth was neither additive nor synergistic and appears to be an expensive alternative to discing or subsoiling only. Although subsoiling alone improved seedling survival compared to discing, it did not improve seedling volume over that of discing and is an expensive alternative to discing alone. As seedlings grow, the loosened subsoil may provide a greater effective soil volume for rooting and provide benefits not yet discernible within the first growing season. Overall this study showed that improved survival and growth was dependent upon some type of intensive site preparation.

CONCLUSIONS

First-year results show the beneficial effect of mechanical site preparation on early seedling survival and growth. The chop-burn treatment was as effective as the shear-disc, and shear-V-blade-disc treatments for improving seedling survival and height growth and was not significantly different from the shear-rake-disc treatment in volume growth. Subsoiling significantly improved seedling survival over that of discing and the control, but the disc + subsoil combination did not significantly improve seedling survival over that of subsoiling alone. Subsoiling does not significantly improve seedling growth over that achieved by discing and appears an expensive alternative to discing in either case. These are first-year results and inferences made are only tentative pending future measurement and evaluation.

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

The authors are grateful for the assistance provided by Champion International's foresters and site preparation, field and equipment personnel in the installation of this study.

LITERATURE CITED

Balmer, W.R., H.L. Williston, G.E. Dissmeyer and C. Pierce.
1976. Site preparation - why and how? For. Mgt. Bull. Southeastern Area, State and Private, Atlanta, Georgia, 8 p.

Berry, C.R.
1979. Subsoiling improves growth of pine on a Georgia Piedmont site. USDA SE Exp. Sta. Res. Note SE-284, 3 p.

Brown, A.G.
1971. Soil preparation for plantation establishment in Australia. *In* 15th IUFRO Congress, Gainesville, Florida.

Burns, R.M. and R.D. McReynolds.
1972. Scheduling and intensity of site preparation for pine in west Florida sandhills. J. of For. 70(12):737-740.

Guild, D.W.
1971. Windrowing and Ripping - A comparative study with other site preparation techniques. NZ. J. of For. 16:88-97.

Haines, S.G.
1978. Site preparation and cultural treatments affect growth of planted *Pinus taeda* L. School of Forest Resources, NC State University Technical Report No. 60, 77 p.

McClurkin, D.C. and C.M. Moehring.
1978. Consequences of site disturbances in the upper coastal plan, p. 73-84. *In* T. Tippin (ed.) Proceedings: A symposium on principles of maintaining productivity on prepared sites. Mississippi State Univ., March 21-22, 1978.

Packer, P.E.
1972. Site preparation in relation to enviro mental quality, p. 23-28. *In* Maintaining productivity of forest soils, 1971 Annul. M West. Reforestation Coord. Comm. Proc., West For. and Conser. Assoc., Portland, Oregon.

Post, B.W.
1974. Soil preparation in stand establishment IUFRO Joint Meeting, Div. 1 and 3. Symposiu Stand Establishment-Proceedings. Wageniuge The Netherlands, October 15-19, 1974.

Savage, E.F., R.A. Nayden and W.E. Ward.
1968. The effect of subsoiling on the growth and yield of peach trees. U. Ga. Agric. R Sta. Res. Bull. 30, 15 p.

Schultz, R.P.
1976. Environmental change after site prepara and slash pine planting on a flatwoods site. USDA For. Ser. Res. Paper SE-156, SE For. Ex Sta., Asheville, NC, 20 p.

Soil Conservation Service.
1975. Soil Survey of Laurens and Union Counti South Carolina. U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C., 65 p.

Sokal, R.R. and F.J. Rohlf.
1969. Biometry. W.H. Freeman and Company, San Francisco, 776 p.

Trimble, S.W.
1974. Man-induced soil erosion on the Souther Piedmont. Soil Conservation Society of Amer Ankeny, Iowa, 180 p.

White, L.D., L.D. Harris, J.E. Johnston and D.G. Milchunas.
1975. Impact of site preparation on flatwoods wildlife habitat, p. 347-353. *In* Proc. Ann. Conf., SE Assoc. Game Fish Comm., No. 29.

MECHANICAL SITE PREPARATION IMPROVES GROWTH OF GENETICALLY IMPROVED AND UNIMPROVED SLASH PINE ON A FLORIDA FLATWOODS SITE [1]

Kenneth W. Outcalt [2]

Abstract.-- In 1971 genetically improved and unimproved slash pine *(Pinus elliottii* Engelm.) seedlings were planted on north Florida flatwoods sites prepared by four different methods: no treatment (control), prescribed burn, burn + double disk, and burn + double disk + bed. Ten years after planting, survival of seedlings established under all treatment conditions was equally good, averaging almost 90 percent. There were no differences in diameter, height, or volume between control and burn-only plots. Disking significantly increased average tree diameter and height. Volume production was 60 percent greater on the disked than on control or burn plots. Bedding after disking was no better than disking alone. Genetically improved stocks yielded about 40 percent more wood than unimproved stock at age 10.

Intensive site preparation has become a
andard practice for establishment of pine plan-
tions on most sites in the Atlantic and Gulf
astal Plains. Past work has shown that mech-
ical site preparation, such as disking and/or
dding, can increase initial survival and growth
planted pines (Derr and Mann 1970, Lennartz
d McMinn 1973). The relative effectiveness of
rious methods, however, depends on site char-
teristics (Derr and Mann 1977). The study
scribed here was established to compare the
fects of different site preparation methods on
rvival and growth of slash pine on a north
orida flatwoods site. A secondary purpose of
he study was to compare the response of gene-
ically improved with unimproved slash pine seed-
ings when planted on areas prepared by different
thods. Reported here are the results at plan-
tion age 10 years.

METHODS

The study area of about 8 acres is on the Olustee Experimental Forest in Baker County, Florida. The soil is a poorly drained Leon fine sand (Aeric Haplaquod) with a spodic horizon at a depth of 12 to 18 inches. The water table is at or near the surface during portions of the year (Schultz 1976) and mottling occurs in the profile at 15 to 21 inches.

Twenty-four plots, each 70 by 100 feet, were established in a randomized block design with 3 blocks, 4 methods of site preparation, and 2 types of planting stock. The site preparations were: no treatment; prescribed burn; burn and double disk; and burn, double disk, and bed. Planting stock was of two types: unimproved and genetically improved, a mixture of 10 superior families. Types of stock were included in factorial combinations with the different methods of site preparation.

In 1968 a sparse stand of 60-year-old longleaf pine (*Pinus palustris* Mill.) was harvested from the site. Sites were prepared in the spring of 1970. The prescribed burns (backfires) consumed most of the vegetation, leaving only woody stems of shrubs standing. A heavy-duty offset harrow was used for disking. Beds about 6 inches high and 10 feet apart were formed with a bedding harrow and water-filled rolling hourglass packer.

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural
esearch Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November
-7, 1980.

[2] Soil Scientist, Southeastern Forest Experi-
ent Station, Olustee, Florida 32072

Improved seed was collected from select crosses in the Olustee Experimental Forest clone bank. The Florida Division of Forestry furnished unimproved seed and grew all the seedlings at its Chiefland nursery. In February 1971, 1-0 seedlings were lifted and planted on the study site. One hundred trees were hand-planted in each of the 24 plots. Spacing was 7 feet within rows with rows 10 feet apart. A 4-row isolation strip planted to unimproved seedlings was established around each plot.

RESULTS

Site preparation had no significant effect on survival, with all treatments having good survival at 10 years of age (table 1). Burning improved neither survival nor growth of trees. Mechanical site preparation, however, increased growth of both improved and unimproved stock. Disking increased average tree diameter by 0.5 inches, average height by 3.8 feet, and volume production by over 200 feet^3/acre (0.25 cds/acre/year) above control trees. Trees on disked and bedded plots were not significantly larger than those on disked-only plots.

Table 1.—Survival, growth, and yield of slash pine, by type of seedling and method of site preparation 10 years after planting.

Seedling type and site preparation	Survival	Average diameter	Average height	Volume 1/
	(percent)	*(inches)*	*(feet)*	*(ft^3/acre)*
Unimproved seedlings				
Control	83	3.3	20.4	280
Burn	87	3.0	18.4	240
Burn + disk	91	3.6	22.6	405
Burn + disk + bed	90	4.1	25.6	575
Average	88	3.5	21.8	375
Improved seedlings				
Control	82	3.5	22.4	345
Burn	83	3.5	22.3	360
Burn + disk	91	4.3	27.7	680
Burn + disk + bed	90	4.4	28.3	705
Average	87	3.9	25.2	523
All seedlings				
Control	83 a 2/	3.4 a	21.4 a	315 a
Burn	85 a	3.3 a	20.3 a	300 a
Burn + disk	91 a	3.9 a	25.2 b	545 b
Burn + disk + bed	90 a	4.2 b	27.0 b	640 b

1/Total inside bark volumes based on equation of Schmitt and Bower (1970).

2/Values within a column not followed by the same letter are significantly different at the .05 level.

Improved and unimproved seedlings had equal good survival at age 10, but improved trees grew faster than unimproved ones. After 10 growing seasons improved trees were an average of 0.44 inches larger in diameter and 3.4 feet taller an had produced 40 percent more wood. The overall interaction between site preparation and plantin stock was not statistically significant, but it appears that bedding after disking was beneficia for growth of the unimproved, but not the improv seedlings.

DISCUSSION

The similarity in growth between trees on t control and the burned plots was due, at least i part, to the 1-year delay between site preparati and planting. A contributing factor was the gre amount of understory vegetation, especially saw palmetto (*Serenoa repens* [Bartr.] Small) on burn plots prior to treatment (Schultz 1976). Althou the burn reduced competition, by planting time t burned plots had as much or more competition tha the control plots.

A major justification for bedding flatwoods sites is to increase seedling survival by reduci prolonged saturation of the root zone (Schultz 1976). However, not all sites are wet enough to benefit from this treatment. On some sites disk is as effective as bedding for increasing growth planted slash pine (Derr and Mann 1977, Cain 197 The reason for the lack of response on some site may not be completely understood, but what sites will occur on has become more predictable. Bedd sites with Spodosols without an argillic horizon like the soil in this study, has not improved si productivity (Broerman and Sarigumba 1981). On these soils competition control is the major ben of site preparation, and disking or harrowing ac complishes this quite well. Bedding after diski on these soils will not likely pay off and can e cause some negative effects. Thus, bedding like silvicultural practices needs to be prescribed b site.

Since there was no interaction between site preparation and type of planting stock, their ef are assumed to be additive. Disking should incr volume production at age 10 by about 230 cubic f per acre over untreated sites no matter what typ of planting stock is used. The gain from using improved stock should be about 150 cubic feet pe acre. With improved stock planted on disked sit volume at age 10 should average about 660 cubic per acre, or about double the yield from untreat sites planted with unimproved stock.

LITERATURE CITED

B erman, F.S., and T.I. Sarigumba.
1981. Site preparation and slash pine productivity. In Proceedings Managed Slash Pine Ecosystem Symposium, June 9-11, 1981. University of Florida, Gainesville. 30 p.

C n, M.D.
1978. Planted loblolly and slash pine response to bedding and flat disking on a poorly drained site--an update. USDA For. Serv. Res. Note SO-237, South. For. Exp. Stn., New Orleans, La. 6 p.

D r, H.J., and W.F. Mann, Jr.
1970. Site preparation improves growth of planted pines. USDA For. Serv. Res. Note SO-106, South. For. Exp. Stn., New Orleans, La. 3 p.

D r, H.J., and W.F. Mann, Jr.
1977. Bedding poorly drained sites for planting loblolly and slash pines in southwest Louisiana. USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. SO-134, South. For. Exp. Stn., New Orleans, La. 5 p.

Lennartz, M.R., and J.W. McMinn.
1973. Growth of two varieties of slash pine on prepared sites in south Florida: 10-year results. USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. SE-103, Southeast. For. Exp. Stn., Asheville, N.C. 10 p.

Schmitt, D., and G. Bower.
1970. Volume tables for young loblolly, slash, and longleaf pines in plantations in south Mississippi. USDA For. Serv. Res. Note SO-102, South. For. Exp. Stn., New Orleans, La. 6 p.

Schultz, R.P.
1976. Environmental change after site preparation and slash pine planting on a flatwoods site. USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. SE-156, Southeast. For. Exp. Stn., Asheville, N.C. 20 p.

RESPONSE OF PLANTED PINES TO SITE PREPARATION ON A BEAUREGARD-CADDO SOIL[1]

James D. Haywood[2]

Abstract.--The only real advantage to mechanically preparing sites prior to planting was better survival of loblolly pines at age 2. Slash pine survival was unaffected by site treatment. Because of survival differences, more volume (535 ft^3 (o.b.)/A) was thinned from 13-year-old loblolly stands that had been mechanically treated than from burned-only stands. After the first thinning, the method of site preparation did not influence the growth rate of either pine.

INTRODUCTION

Pine survival on somewhat poorly to poorly drained silt loam flatwoods in Louisiana is usually acceptable without site preparation. Yet, the inherent wetness of these sites and competition from dense plant cover slows initial height growth of newly planted pines. To determine if harrowing or bedding would improve survival and increase the rates of height and diameter growth on these flatwoods, studies were initiated by the Southern Forest Experiment Station in Pineville, Louisiana. This paper summarizes data through age 20 on survival and yield of planted loblolly (*Pinus taeda* L.) and slash (*P. elliottii* Engelm. var. *elliottii*) pines from one of these studies.

SITE DESCRIPTION

The study area, located in Rapides Parish, Louisiana, comprises Beauregard (Pinthaquic Paleudult, fine-silty, siliceous, thermic), and Caddo (Typic Glossaqualfs, fine-silty, siliceous, thermic) silt loam soils. These soils are acidic, have low natural fertility, and are common in flatwoods of the West Gulf Coastal Plain. Relief is level to slightly sloping, but a few "pimple" mounds are present. The Caddo soil has very slow surface and internal drainage; the Beauregard has medium drainage throughout. These soils have a perched water table which can be at or just below the surface during extended periods from December through February. On any given date, depth to water table was highly variable from one replic to the next.

Originally, the site supported a longleaf pine (*P. palustris* Mill.) stand. After harvest a cover of bluestem (*Andropogon* spp.) and scatt post oak (*Quercus stellata* Wangenh.), blackjack oak (*Q. marilandica* Muenchh.), and southern bay berry (*Myrica cerifera* L.) developed. Prior to initiation of site preparation treatments, the area was burned to reduce the grass rough and the woody vegetation cut down and removed.

METHODS

Treatments were replicated three times wit each species in a randomized block design. Sit treatments were:

Burn-only--The study plots were burned to facilitate planting.

Burn-harrow--Plots were treated with an offse disk harrow in the fall of 1960 and again in July 1961 to eliminate grass competitio.

Burn-harrow-bed--After harrowing, the plots were double bedded by making two passes with a bedding harrow. Beds were spaced 8 feet apart and averaged 20 inches tall from furrow-to-crest before settling. By age 15, the beds averaged 10 inches tall.

Harrowing was done twice, because after the fall 1960 harrowing treatment heavy rains kept t bedding treatment from being applied. By the ne spring, grasses had reinvaded the harrowed plots, which necessitated a second harrowing treatment July 1961. The burn-harrow-bed plots were bedde in late September 1961.

---

[1] Paper presented at the Second Biennial Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Assistant Silviculturist, Southern Forest Experiment Station, Forest Service--USDA, 2500 Shreveport Highway, Pineville, LA 71360.

Graded, bare-root, 1-0 loblolly and slash pne seedlings were planted by hand at a 6- by 8-fot spacing on 0.36 acre plots during February 152. Heights and diameters at 4.5 feet above goundline (d.b.h.) were taken on the center 100 tees per plot over several years. The plots wre thinned after the 13th growing season. Leave-tees were selected by the following criteria: () absence of fusiform rust galls on the main sem, (2) stem quality, (3) spacing, and (4) tree sze. No truck or heavy equipment traffic was alowed within the plots, and the residual stand ws undamaged by the thinning operation.

Volumes harvested at age 13 were estimated b use of a local volume table developed for ech plot (Spurr 1954). At ages 15 and 20, total sem wood volume outside bark (o.b.) was calculted for standing loblolly (Hasness and Lenhart 172) and slash (Moehring et al. 1973) pines.

Pine survival, quadratic mean d.b.h., averae height, and volumes per acre were analyzed a different ages with analyses of variance (α= 005) and preplanned orthogonal trend comparisons (urn-only vs burn-harrow + burn-harrow-bed and brn-harrow vs burn-harrow-bed). The analysis cmpared species and treatments and determined if secies by treatment interactions occurred. Aso, treatments among individual species were cmpared. Percentages were transformed into acsine $\sqrt{\text{proportion}}$, and both percentages and tansformed data were analyzed.

RESULTS

Responses before thinning

There was a species by treatment interaction fr average heights of 2-year-old pines (table 1). Iblolly was taller on the burn-harrow plots tan on the other two treatments, while slash ws tallest on the burn-harrow-bed plots. Slash ws taller than loblolly on the burn-only and brn-harrow-bed plots, but the two species had smilar average heights on the burn-harrow plots. I the comparisons across both species, loblolly aeraged 3 feet taller than slash by age 8, and tis height difference persisted through age 13. A age 8, pines on the two mechanical treatments aeraged two feet taller than those on the burn-cly plots, while pines on the burn-harrow-bed pots were two feet taller than those on the burn-hrrow plots. By age 13, pine height differences aong treatments were not significantly different.

At 8 years, slash pines on the burn-harrow-bd plots averaged a 0.4-inch greater d.b.h. over tose on the other two treatments, but no diameter dfference was shown at age 13 (table 1). In te comparisons across both species, loblolly aeraged 0.2-inch greater d.b.h. than slash at ae 8, and this difference persisted through ae 13.

Survival among 2-year-old loblolly pines on the burn-only plots averaged 15-percentage points less than survival among those on the mechanical treatments (table 1). By age 13, differences in survival were not significantly different.

The thinning operation

The thinning operation at age 13 reduced loblolly stocking from 725 to 343 trees per acre, while slash stocking was reduced from 682 to 346 trees per acre (table 2). Among loblolly pines, this reduced the basal area on the burn-only plots by 52 ft^2/acre, while the reduction in basal area averaged 75 ft^2/acre on the two mechanical treatments. Among slash pines, the reduction in basal area varied little and averaged 55 ft^2/acre across all treatments.

Responses after thinning

In the comparisons across both species, loblolly maintained a 3-foot height advantage over slash through age 20 (table 3). At 15 years, pines on mechanically treated plots averaged 1-foot taller than those on burn-only plots, but this height difference was no longer significant by age 20. Through age 20, loblolly averaged a 0.3-inch greater d.b.h. than slash. There were no diameter differences among treatments, however.

At age 13, more loblolly volume per acre was cut on the two mechanical treatments than was cut on the burn-only plots (table 3), but at age 15, loblolly on the burn-only plots produced more standing volume per acre than those on the two mechanical treatments. By age 20, loblolly standing volume per acre was similar among all treatments. However, the difference in harvested volumes at age 13 meant that loblolly on the mechanical treatments averaged 12 percent more total wood production (harvested and standing volumes) per acre over those on the burn-only plots, but this volume difference was not statistically significant. For slash pines, there were no volume differences among treatments.

DISCUSSION

Loblolly pines planted on mechanically treated plots had a higher survival rate at age 2 and a 2-foot height advantage at age 8 over loblolly planted on plots not mechanically treated. This higher survival and improved early height growth on the mechanically treated plots was translated into greater yields at thinning, an added 535 ft^3 (o.b.) per acre at age 13. The approximately 6 cord per acre gain in pulpwood volume was worth about $96 at 1982 stumpage prices. After the first thinning, the method of site preparation did not influence the growth rate of the pines. Since treatments were thinned to similar basal areas, volume production at age 20 was also similar among treatments. Slash pine survival and yields were not influenced by site treatment.

Survival was similar between species, but loblolly pines outgrew slash pines in both d.b.h. and height. These differences did not translate into added gains in volume for loblolly, because at a given d.b.h. and height, slash pine has 12 percent more volume per tree than loblolly pine (Hasness and Lenhart 1972, Moehring, et al. 1973).

In conclusion, the silt loam flatwoods of Louisiana are inherently productive sites. Site preparation beyond the level needed to insure adequate pine stocking will only produce modest gains in pulpwood yields at first thinning.

LITERATURE CITED

Hasness, J. R. and J. D. Lenhart.
1972. Cubic-foot volumes for loblolly pine trees in old-field plantations in the Interi West Gulf Coastal Plain. Stephen F. Austin State Univ., Texas Forestry Paper 12, 7 p.

Moehring, D. M., M. R. Holmes, and R. G. Merrifi
1973. Tables for estimating cubic foot volume and fresh weight of planted slash pine. Tex A&M Univ., MP-1079, 29 p.

Spurr, S. H.
1954. Simplified computation of volume and growth. J. For. 52(12): 914-922.

Table 1.--Pine responses to initial site preparation, before thinning

Species and treatments	Survival		Height			Quadratic mean d.b.h.	
	Age 2	Age 13	Age 2	Age 8	Age 13	Age 8	Age 13
	percent	*percent*	*feet*	*feet*	*feet*	*inches*	*inches*
Loblolly pine							
Burn-only	74 a[1]	71[2]	2.2 a[3]	26	46	4.3	6.2
Burn-harrow	88 b	82	2.5 b	28	48	4.5	6.1
Burn-harrow-bed	90 b	87	2.1 a	29	48	4.5	6.0
Mean for all three treatments	84	80	2.3	28	47	4.4	6.1
Slash pine							
Burn-only	87	76	2.5 b	24	43	4.1 a[1]	5.9
Burn-harrow	81	73	2.5 b	24	43	4.1 a	5.9
Burn-harrow-bed	89	76	2.8 c	27	45	4.5 b	5.9
Mean for all three treatments	86	75	2.6	25	44	4.2	5.9
COMPARISONS ACROSS BOTH SPECIES							
Loblolly pine	84	80	2.3[4]	28	47	4.4	6.1
Slash pine	86	75	2.6*	25*	44*	4.2*	5.9*
Burn-only	80	73	2.4	25	45	4.2	6.0
Mechanical	87	80	2.5	27*	46	4.4	6.0
Burn-harrow	85	77	2.5	26	45	4.3	6.0
Burn-harrow-bed	90	82	2.5	28*	46	4.5	6.0

---

[1] For loblolly or slash pine, columnar means followed by the same letter are not significantly different (α = 0,05)

[2] For columnar means not followed by any letter, there were no significant differences.

[3] At age 2, there was a species by treatment interaction for height of pines. Columnar means followed by the same letter are not significantly different (α = 0.05)

[4] Paired comparisons followed by an asterisk are significantly different (α = 0.05)

Tble 2.--Stems per acre and basal area in square feet before and after plots were thinned during the thirteenth growing season

Secies and teatment	Trees per acre: Before thinning	Trees per acre: After thinning	Basal area: Before thinning	Basal area: After thinning
	Stems/acre[1]		ft^2*/acre*	
Lblolly pine				
Burn-only	646[2]	347	140	88
Burn-harrow	740	340	155	84
Burn-harrow-bed	790	340	160	81
Mean for all three treatments	725	343	152	84
Sash pine				
Burn-only	688	345	134	79
Burn-harrow	665	345	129	77
Burn-harrow-bed	692	347	136	78
Mean for all three treatments	682	346	133	78

[1] Statistical analysis was not done on these data

[2] 908 pines were planted per acre for each treatment.

Tble 3.--Pine response to initial site preparation, after thinning

Secies and teatment	Height: Age 15	Height: Age 20	Quadratic mean d.b.h.: Age 15	Quadratic mean d.b.h.: Age 20	Total stem volume per acre: Age 13 harvested	Total stem volume per acre: Age 15 standing	Total stem volume per acre: Age 20 standing	Total stem volume per acre: Total production at age 20
	feet	*feet*	*inches*	*inches*	ft^3 *(o.b.)*	ft^3 *(o.b.)*	ft^3 *(o.b.)*	ft^3 *(o.b.)*
Lblolly pine								
Burn-only	51[1]	60	7.5	8.7	1,010 a[2]	2,150 b	3,420	4,430
Burn-harrow	53	62	7.4	8.7	1,450 b	1,970 a	3,460	4,910
Burn-harrow-bed	53	61	7.2	8.4	1,640 b	1,880 a	3,350	4,990
Mean for all three treatments	52	61	7.4	8.6	1,370	2,000	3,410	4,780
Sash pine								
Burn-only	49	58	7.2	8.4	1,110	2,100	3,380	4,490
Burn-harrow	49	57	7.1	8.2	1,040	1,980	3,320	4,360
Burn-harrow-bed	50	60	7.1	8.3	1,240	1,950	3,070	4,310
Mean for all three treatments	49	58	7.1	8.3	1,130	2,010	3,260	4,390
CMPARISONS ACROSS BTH SPECIES								
Iblolly pine	52[3]	61*	7.4*	8.6*	1,370	2,000	3,410	4,780
Sash pine	49*	58	7.1	8.3	1,130	2,010	3,260	4,390
Brn-only	50*	59	7.3	8.5	1,060	2,130	3,400	4,460
Mchanical	51	60	7.2	8.4	1,340	1,940	3,300	4,640
Brn-harrow	51	60	7.2	8.4	1,250	1,980	3,390	4,640
Brn-harrow-bed	51	60	7.1	8.3	1,440	1,910	3,210	4,650

[1] For columnar means not followed by an letter, there were no significant differences

[2] For loblolly pine, columnar means followed by the same letter are not significantly different (α = 0.05)

[3] Paired comparisons followed by an asterisk are significantly different (α = 0.05)

EFFECT OF SURFACE SOIL REMOVAL ON SELECTED SOIL PROPERTIES AND LOBLOLLY PINE SEEDLINGS AFTER THE FIRST GROWING SEASON[1]

Charles L. Tuttle, Michael S. Golden, and Ralph S. Meldahl[2]

Abstract -- The effects of removal of 0, 2.54 and 7.62 cm of topsoil were tested on five sites in east-central Alabama. Results of the first year's data showed; 1) an increase in seedling survival on plots where the topsoil was removed; 2) higher bulk density on the treated areas than on the control; and 3) soil nutrient levels were significantly reduced after one growing season. Other variables (height growth, organic matter, etc.) were also tested but did not exhibit significant differences after 1 year.

INTRODUCTION

Harvesting and site preparation procedures currently are being used on over 60,000 ha of forest land in Alabama each year (Forest Industries Council 1980). Harvesting and mechanical site preparation many times results in moderate to severe topsoil disturbance, exposure, or removal due to the equipment used and through possible erosion losses (Blackburn et al. 1978; McClurkin and Moehring 1978; Golden et al. 1982). Glass (1976) estimated that at least 5.08 cm of topsoil were removed from a Piedmont site in North Carolina by root-raking alone. Further attempts have been made to quantify the amount of topsoil lost from forest sites by using the Universal Soil Loss Equation and its modifications (Wischmeier and Smith 1978; Dissmeyer and Foster 1980). However, little quantitative data is available to show the effects of topsoil removal on soil properties and seedling survival and growth.

This paper presents partial first year results of a study designed to quantify the effects of topsoil removal on selected soil properties, seedling survival, and seedling growth. The questions which we hope to answer include: (1) does the quantity of topsoil lost from a site affect the quantity of nutrients in the soil that are available for plant use, (2) is there a change in nutrient levels within treatments over time, and (3) does the quantity of soil lost have an effect on seedling survival and growth?

METHODS AND PROCEDURES

Plot Location and Establishment

Five study sites, two in the Piedmont and three in the Hilly Coastal Plain of Alabama, were selected. At each site, a split plot design containing three replications of three treatments was used. Treatments consisted of control (no topsoil removed), 2.54 cm (1 inch of topsoil removed, and 7.62 cm (3 inches) of topsoil removed. After treatment, each plot was split and one-half treated to control competition using herbicides (a mixture of Goal, Garlon, and Roundup). First year data on the competition control by herbicides was found to be non-significant.

Treatment areas measuring 11.8 m by 23.0 m were laid out and the specified treatments were applied using a D-6 crawler tractor. After treatment, measurement areas of 6.2 m by 20.3 m were located in the center of the treated areas with the remainder of each treatment area maintained as a buffer zone.

---

[1] Paper presented at the Second Biennial Southern Silvicultural ResearchConference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] The authors are Research Associate, Associate Professor, and AssistantProfessor, Department of Forestry, Alabama Agricultural Experiment Station, Auburn University, Auburn, Alabama.

The study sites were hand planted using -0 loblolly pine (*Pinus taeda* L.) seedlings at spacing of 1.83 m x 2.44 m (6x8 ft, 2240 rees/ha) within two weeks of treatment. A inimum of one row of seedlings was left utside of the measurement area on all sides to ct as a buffer. After planting, the height of ach seedling was recorded. At the end of the rowing season, seedling survival and heights ere again measured.

Soil Sampling and Analysis

Soil samples for nutrient analyses were ollected at three random locations in each easurement plot. At each sample point, the pper 15.24 cm (6 inches) of soil was sampled y taking two successive 7.62 cm incremental ores 7.62 cm in diameter. For each plot, the eparate incremental samples were composited ver the three locations for analysis. The alues obtained for the two levels were then veraged to determine the soil values for the pper 15.62 cm. These samples were collected mmediately after planting and also at the end the first growing season.

Soil samples were prepared for analysis by ir drying, grinding, and sieving through a 2 m sieve. After sieving, soil organic matter as determined using the Walkley-Black rocedure (Jackson 1958; Allison 1965). Ca, g, K, and Mn were extracted using 1 *N* ammonium cetate adjusted to pH 7.0 (Chapman 1965) and heir concentrations determined using atomic bsorption spectrophotometry. Strontium hloride was added to the extracts prior to the eterminations for Ca and Mg (David 1960). ation exchange capacity was calculated using xchangeable acidity determined using the Adams Evans buffering system (Adams and Evans 1962; ajek et al. 1972) and summation of Ca, Mg, and values. From this, base saturation was omputed. Available soil P was extracted using dilute double acid solution (Bray and Kurtz) and obtained using the chlorostannous - educed molybdophosphoric blue color method Jackson 1958).

Soil bulk density was determined for only e upper 7.62 cm of soil using the core method escribed by Blake (1965). A 347.6 cm^3 ring ampler was used to collect five cores from ch plot after treatment and at the end of the rst growing season. The five values were en averaged to obtain the bulk density within plot at each sampling time.

Data Analysis

The soil and seedling data collected was analyzed using analysis of variance and Duncan's multiple range tests of the Statistical Analysis System (Barr et al. 1979).

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Soil Data

After one growing season, nutrient levels for treatments where 2.54 cm at 7.62 cm were removed were significantly lower than the control for Mg, K, and Mn (Table 1). However, there was no difference in nutrient values between the two removal treatments for any of the nutrients. Ca and P levels were lower than the control only for the 7.62 cm removal treatment.

The nutrient decreases observed are probably attributable to organic matter removal. Soil organic matter content significantly decreased where topsoil was removed (Table 1). Upon decay, this organic matter would normally supply large quantities of nutrients to the root systems of the planted seedlings (Pritchett 1979; Bengston 1981). Greenhouse studies on slash pine have confirmed the effect of organic matter loss on nutrient losses (Brendemuhl 1967).

Bulk density on all treated plots was significantly higher than on the controls. Compaction resulting from the equipment used to remove the topsoil is the probable explanation. However, no bulk density difference was observed between the two levels of topsoil removal.

Nutrient values at the end of the first growing season were compared with values obtained at planting time to determine if any changes occurred over time (Table 2). Except for Ca and Mg, soil nutrient levels were not significantly different for the two sampling times although the measured values were lower for the two removal treatments. Mg alone significantly decreased over the first growing season for all treatments. The Mg reduction is attributable to some leaching losses which have been reported to occur in the immediate area (Gordon et al. 1980). The reason for the lack of a significant decrease over time for the other nutrients is not clear.

TABLE 1 - Mean soil nutrient levels, organic matter content, and bulk density for the three treatments at the end of the first growing season. Means with the same letter are not significantly different at the 0.05 level.

TREATMENT[1/]	P	Ca	Mg	K	Mn	Base Saturation	Organic Matter	Bulk Density
	ppm	- - - - - - meq/100g - - - - - - - - - -				- - - - - % - - - - -		g/cc
Control	3.65 A	0.24 A	0.34 A	0.14 A	0.06 A	39.3 A	1.89 A	1.30 B
2.54 cm removal	3.14 A B	0.24 A B	0.26 B	0.09 B	0.03 B	35.3 B	1.21 B	1.50 A
7.62 cm removal	2.52 B	0.20 B	0.21 B	0.08 B	0.03 B	34.0 B	0.86 B	1.56 A

[1/] Treatment indicates amount of topsoil removed. For the control, no topsoil was removed.

TABLE 2 - Mean soil nutrient levels, organic matter content, and bulk density for each treatment at planting and at the end of the first growing season. Means with the same letter are not significantly different at the 0.05 level.

TREATMENT[1/]	TIME	P	Ca	Mg	K	Mn	Base Saturation	Organic Matter	Bulk Density
		ppm	- - - - - - -meq/100g- - - - - - -				- - - - - % - - - - -		g/cc
Control	Planting	3.86 A	0.15 B	0.58 A	0.13 A	0.05 A	40.2 A	1.72 A	1.47 A
	1 Season	3.65 A	0.24 A	0.34 B	0.14 A	0.06 A	39.3 A	1.89 A	1.30 B
2.54 cm removal	Planting	3.36 A	0.19 B	0.56 A	0.11 A	0.04 A	40.2 A	1.46 A	1.55 A
	1 Season	3.14 A	0.24 A	0.26 B	0.09 A	0.03 A	35.3 B	1.21 B	1.50 B
7.62 cm removal	Planting	2.51 A	0.11 B	0.46 A	0.09 A	0.03 A	36.1 A	0.95 A	1.61 A
	1 Season	2.52 A	0.20 A	0.21 B	0.08 A	0.03 A	34.0 A	0.86 A	1.56 B

[1/] Treatment indicates amount of topsoil removed. For the control, no topsoil was removed.

Ca levels on all plots increased during he first growing season. However, the reasons or this increase have not been ascertained. etesting of samples has not uncovered any rrors in Ca analysis.

Organic matter content of the soil ecreased between planting time and the end of he first growing season for the 2.54 cm reatment. Little change might be expected for he 7.62 cm treatment, since the level of rganic matter was already quite low due to its emoval with the topsoil. The 2.54 cm reatment, however, removed topsoil but left any of the fine feeder roots which would be lassified as soil organic matter at planting ime. But, over the growing season these fine oots decomposed, thus reducing organic matter ontent of the soil on these plots.

Surface soil bulk density decreased for ll treatments over the first growing season. his decrease is probably due to vegetative oot expansion reducing compaction which had ccurred during treatment or logging. The ength of time needed for complete recovery rom compaction is uncertain, but other studies ave provided estimates of 18 to 40 years Perry 1964; Hatchell and Ralston 1971).

Seedling Survival and Growth

Survival for seedlings planted on the reated areas was higher than on the control Table 3). This is most easily explained as eing due to the reduction in the level of ompetition, which would lead to an increase in ater available to the planted seedlings Zahner 1958; Moehring 1977). However, there as no difference in survival between the 2.54 m and the 7.62 cm removal treatments.

After one season, seedling height and growth were not found to be significantly affected by the amount of topsoil removed. This may be due to the large variation in seedling heights which occurred. Much of this was due to tip dieback and damage by deer and insects. Future measurements will be made to determine whether differences in growth do develop due to differences in soil nutrient status, bulk density, and organic matter content.

CONCLUSIONS

After one growing season, the nutrient status was significantly reduced where topsoil was removed. Sample means indicate a trend toward higher nutrient differences as the quantity of topsoil removed increased. The nutrient losses occurring are probably due to leaching of these nutrients from the upper soil layer, where they are readily available to a majority of seedling roots. As a result of reduced competition, seedling survival increased where topsoil was removed. However, the seedling heights and growth did not increase.

LITERATURE CITED

Adams, F. and C. E. Evans.
1962. A rapid method for measuring lime requirements of red-yellow podzolic soils. Soil Sci. Soc. Amer. Proc. 26 :355-357.

Allison, L. E.
1965. Organic carbon. P. 1367-1378. In C.A. Black (ed). Methods of soil analysis, Part II. Amer. Soc. of Agron., Inc., Madison, Wisc.

TABLE 3 - Mean height, survival, and growth of planted loblolly pine seedlings at the end of the first growing season. Means with the same letter are not significantly different at the 0.05 level.

TREATMENT[1/]	Total Height	Survival	Height Growth
	cm	%	cm
Control	38.47 A	65 B	19.13 A
2.54 cm removal	37.39 A	79 A	18.02 A
7.62 cm removal	36.10 A	82 A	17.59 A

[1/] Treatment indicates quantity of topsoil removed. For the control, no topsoil was removed.

Barr, A. J., J. H. Goodnight, J. P. Sall, W. H. Blair, and D. N. Chilko.
1979. SAS user's guide, 1979 ed. SAS Institute, Inc. Raleigh, N.C. 494 p.

Bengston, G. W.
1981. Nutrient conservation in forestry: a perspective. So. J. of App. For. 5:50-58.

Blackburn, W. H., C. A. Hickman, J. E. de Steiguer, B. D. Jackson, R. A. Blume, and M. G. DeHaven.
1978. Silvicultural activities in relation to water quality in Texas: an assessment of potential problems and solutions. Tex. Agri. Exp. Sta., College Station, TX. 266 p.

Blake, G. R.
1965. Particle density. pp. 374-391. In C.A. Black (ed.). Methods of soil analysis, Part I. Amer. Soc. of Agron., Inc. Madison, Wisc.

Brendemuehl, R. H.
1967. Loss of topsoil slows slash pine seedling growth in Florida sandhills. U.S. For. Ser. Res. Note SO-53. 4 p.

Chapman, H. D.
1965. Total exchangeable bases. pp. 902-904. In C.A. Black (ed.). Methods of soil analysis, Part II. Amer. Soc. of Agron., Inc. Madison, Wis.

David, D. H.
1960. The determination of exhangeable sodium, potassium, calcium, and magnesium in soils by atomic absorption spectrophotometry. Analyst 85: 495-503.

Dissmeyer, G. E. and G. R. Foster.
1980. A guide for predicting sheet and rill erosion on forest land. USDA For. Serv. State and Priv. For. Tech. Pub. SA-TP 11. 40 p.

Forest Industries Council.
1980. Forest productivity report. Nat. For. Produc. Assoc., Washingtin, D.C. 66 p.

Glass, G. G., Jr.
1976. The effects from rootraking on an upland piedmont loblolly pine (*Pinus taeda* L.) site. Tech. Rep. No. 56, School of For. Resources, N.C. State Univ. Raleigh. 44 p.

Golden, M. S., C. L. Tuttle, J. S. Kush, and J. M. Bradley, III.
1982. Guidelines for refinement of best management practices for silvicultural activities in Alabama: Report for the Alabama Forestry Commission. Dept. of For., Auburn, Univ., Auburn, AL. 107 p.

Gorden, R., J. H. Miller, and C. Brewer.
1980. Site preparation and nutrient loss following complete harvest using the Nicholson - Koch mobile chipper. p. 79- In J. P. Barnett (ed.) Proc. of the first biennial southern silvicultural research conference. Nov. 6-7. 1980. USDA For. Serv. Gen. Tech. Rep. SO-34.

Hajek, B. F., F. Adams, and J. T. Cope.
1972. Rapid determination of exchangeabl loses and base saturation for soil characterization. Soil Sci. Soc. Amer. Proc. 36:436-438.

Hatchell, G. E. and C. W. Ralston.
1971. Natural recovery of surface soils disturbed in logging. USDA For. Serv. Tree Planters' Notes 22(2):5-9.

Jackson, M. L.
1958. Soil chemical analysis. Prentice-Hall, Inc., Englewood Cliffs. 498 p.

McClurkin, D. C. and D. M. Moehring.
1978. Consequences of site disturbances in the upper coastal plain. p. 73-84. In T. Tippin (ed.). Proc: a symposium on principles of maintaining productivit on prepared sites. USDA For. Serv. and Southern Region of the Assoc. of State College and Univ. Forestry Res. Organization. Miss. St. Univ. March 21-22, 1978.

Moehring, D. M.
1977. Final harvest, site preparation, a regeneration in southern pine plantatio p. 99-113. In Proc: second annual seminar on harvesting, site preparation, and regeneration in southern pine planta- tions. LSU/MSU Logging and For. Oper. Center. Bay St. Louis, Miss.

Perry, T. O.
1964. Soil Compaction and loblolly pine growth. USDA For. Serv. Tree Planter's Notes 69:9.

Pritchett, W. L.
1979. Management of forest soils. John Wiley and Sons, Inc. New York, NY. 500 p.

Wischmeier, W. H. and D. D. Smith.
1978. Predicting rainfall erosion losses A guide to conservation planning. USD Agri. Handbook 537. 58 p.

Zahner, R.
1958. Hardwood understory depletes soil water in pine stands. For. Sci. 4:178-

FIRST-YEAR EFFECTS OF ROOTRAKING ON AVAILABLE NUTRIENTS IN PIEDMONT PLATEAU SOILS [1]

R. E. Banker, J. H. Miller, and D. E. Davis [2]

Abstract.--The effects of rootraking on the levels of Ca, Mg, K, PO_4 and Na and on infiltration rates in Piedmont Plateau soils were investigated. Soil samples were taken before and after treatments at 10-foot intervals along permanent 100-foot lines located on the ridge, upper slope and lower slopes. Samples were taken at 0-2, 2-4, 4-6, 6-12, 12-18 and 18-24 in. depths and composited. Infiltration rates were measured with a double-ring infiltrometer. There was a general tendency toward nutrient increase at almost all depths with some differences significant at the 5 and 10% levels. A major increase in the PO_4 content was found at the 4-6 and 6-12 in depths. Infiltration rates decreased.

Over recent years the use of heavy machinery n forest site preparation has increased. KG lades and rootrakes are now commonly used for indrowing treatments on the rolling sites of the iedmont Plateau. Of the two treatments, rootaking seems to have the most potential for damagng the soil due to the resulting tillage impact n easily-erodible sites. Drastic decreases in oil nutrients could be counterproductive, offetting the short-term benefits of these treatents.

The effects of selected site preparation reatments on Piedmont Plateau soils have been nvestigated by Campbell (1971). In his study, ites were treated with a single chopping, two ingle choppings or double chopping. No signifiant differences between treatments were found n available Ca, K or P or in bulk density. ampbell (1973) also tested the effects of harowing, bedding, and chopping. Bedding increased vailable Ca, K and P, and harrowing increased a and P. Minor increases in Ca were reported ith chopping. Chopping had no effect on bulk ensity while both harrowing and bedding lowered bulk densities. Thus, treatments having a tillage affect increased major nutrients while chopping increased Ca only.

Glass (1976) investigated the effects of rootraking on site quality of Piedmont soils. Soil characteristics and the volume of usable wood produced were compared using a 17-yr old rootraked area and an adjacent broadcast-burned area. Windrows were also compared with the intervening area. Soil texture, nutrient, and organic matter analyses substantiated his observation that the windrows contained not only logging slash and other debris, but also substantial quantities of topsoil. There is no information available on the early effects of rootraking on soil nutrients or infiltration.

We have initiated a 10-yr study, the objective of which is to investigate the effects of rootraking on the fine-textured soils of the Piedmont Plateau.

Materials and Methods

Study areas were made available by private industry in Georgia. Three of the sites were located in Heard County, and one in each of Talbot and Baldwin Counties. A representative slope was selected for study on each site (Table 1).

The study areas were sampled at the beginning of the experiment and again 3-4 months after treatment. They will be resampled at 2, 3, 4,

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvi-ultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, ovember 4-5, 1982.

[2] Graduate Student, Auburn University Agri-ultural Experiment Station, Auburn University, la. 36849; Research Forester, USDA Forest Serice, George W. Andrews Forestry Sciences Laboraory, Auburn University, Ala. 36849; Professor, uburn University Agricultural Experiment Staon, Auburn University, Ala. 36849

Table 1. Study slope characteristics

Study area	Soil series	% Slope	Aspect
Heard County:			
Ricks tract	Cecil	15	East
Sall Hull tract	Madison	9	Northeast
Denny tract	Pacolet	16	Southeast
Talbot County	Vance	10	South
Baldwin County	Cecil	12	South

6, 8 and 10 years. One hundred-ft lines were established at each study slope on the ridge, upper slope and lower slope. Two points off the study area were permanently marked for each line. Triangulation from these points was used to relocate the original lines after treatment. Soil samples were collected at 10-ft intervals along each 100-ft line (11 points). Samples were taken with a Lord tube sampler at depths of 0-6, 6-12, 12-18 and 18-24 inches. The 0-6 in. sample was subdivided into 0-2, 2-4 and 4-6 in. depths. A hand auger was used when dry conditions made it impossible to use the tube sampler. All samples from a given depth along each line were composited. Samples were air dried and then crushed to pass a 2mm-mesh sieve.

Duplicate, 5-g samples were extracted with double-acid solution of 0.05 N hydrochloric acid and 0.025 N sulfuric acid (Mehlich 1953). Standard techniques of atomic absorption spectrophotometry were used to determine concentrations of Ca, Mg, K and Na. Phosphate was assayed by the ascorbic acid method (Watonabe and Olsen 1965).

Table 2. Mean values of soil nutrients before (B) and after (A) windrowing treatments in Piedmont soils [1]

Depth	PO_4		Ca		Mg		K		Na	
	B	A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B	A
(inches)	(parts per million)									
0-2	1.04	1.24	365	330	12.2	21.7	12.2	14.0	6.9	8.5
2-4	0.40	0.68	193	234	8.4	9.9	7.6	8.7	5.9	8.7
4-6	0.31	1.36	154	222	8.2	10.7	6.8	7.5	5.3	7.5
6-12	0.13	0.54	173	192	9.4	17.5	5.9	6.2	5.6	6.7
12-18	0.16	0.46	163	187	10.5	13.0	5.0	4.8	5.9	6.7
18-24	0.20	0.58	151	166	10.4	21.1	4.6	4.5	6.0	7.7

---

[1] Two underlines indicate a significant difference at the 5% level and 1 underline, the 10% level.

A double-ring infiltrometer (Haise 1956) was sed to measure infiltration on the Talbot County tudy area. Three infiltration readings were taken t each of the ridge, upper slope and lower slope. nfiltration was measured over a 2-hour period.

Results and Discussion

Analyses of Variance established that there as no significant effect from slope except at the 3-24 in. depth for Ca ($P < .05$). Thus, data for ne slopes were pooled and comparisons between efore and after treatments were performed. Table shows mean values for the nutrients tested.

Although not all differences were statistically ignificant, there was a general tendency after indrowing toward increases for all elements at lmost all depths. The PO_4 increases were particularly interesting because phospherous is often limiting factor in growth. At the 4-6 and 6- 2 in. depths there were particularly large ineases. The increased availability of P at nese depths could be beneficial to seedling stablishment. However, these results show xtremely low P levels at all depths. Due to ime of sampling, these differences could be ttributed to seasonal changes.

Explanations for these increases would be irely speculative at this time. Possible xplanations could include an increase from ineralization, a decrease in plant uptake, nd decomposition and mineralization of root aterials. This could account for increases ven at the lower depths. We are presently nalyzing organic matter and N data and these ill be reported later.

Mean 2-hr. infiltration rates for each slope efore and after rootraking were ridge - 4 and gal, upper slope - 7 and 2 gal, lower slope and 4 gal, respectively. This is interesting that Campbell (1971) and Grelon (1959) found at site preparation reduced bulk density, ereby increasing infiltration. However, this as not the case in this study.

A decrease in infiltration could be the irect result of the method of site preparation the study area tested. The company owning e land parked their equipment nightly on the idge where the upper line was established. The indrow was established so that it ran across e contour of the slope rather than with the ontour. Because of this, the windrow interected the lines on both the upper and lower slopes. Repeated passes were made across these established lines as the tractors moved material to the windrows. This could account for increased compaction, increased bulk density and, therefore, decreased infiltration.

Summary

Significant increases in available nutrients at the 5 and 10% levels of probability were seen for Mg at the 18-24 in. depth, K at the 0-2 in. depth, P at all depths, and Na at 2-4, 4-6, and 18-24 in. depths. There was a major increase in P at the 4-6 and 6-12 in. depth. There was a general tendency towards increases in all available nutrients tested at almost all depths. Accompanying these changes in nutrient levels, there was decreased infiltration of the soils.

Literature Cited

Campbell, R. G.
1971. A case study of site preparation in Jones County, Georgia. Unpub. Master's Thesis, University of Georgia, Athens. 64 p.

Campbell, R. G.
1973. The impact of timber harvesting and site preparation on selected soil conditions and plant growth. Ph.D. Diss. University of Georgia, Athens. 64 p.

Glass, G. G., Jr.
1976. The effects from rootraking on an upland Piedmont loblolly pine (Pinus taeda L.) site. Tech. Rept. No. 56, School of Forest Resources. N. C. State University, Raleigh. 44 p.

Grelon, H. E.
1959. Mechanical preparation of pine planting sites in Florida Sandhills. Weeds 7: 184-188.

Haise, H. R., W. D. Donnan, J. T. Phelan, L. F. Lawhon, and D. G. Shockley.
1956. The use of cylinder infiltrometers to determine the intake characteristics of irrigated soils. USDA-ARS Res. Rept. 41-7. 10 p.

Mehlich, A.
1953. Determination of P, Ca, Mg, K, Na, and NH_4 by North Carolina soil testing laboratories. N. C. State University, Raleigh. Mimeo.

Watonabe, F. S., and S. R. Olsen.
1965. Test of an ascorbic acid method for determining phosphorus in water and $NaHCO_3$ extracts from soil. Soil Sci. Soc. Am. Proc. 29: 677-678.

ROOT DEVELOPMENT OF LOBLOLLY PINE
SEEDLINGS IN COMPACTED SOILS[1]

Gerry L. Simmons and Andrew W. Ezell[2]

Abstract.--Loblolly pine seedling root responses to various levels of soil compaction were investigated on two study sites in East Texas. Seedlings were grown in field conditions and in a maintained environment situation. Bulk density increased 11 percent at one site and 10 percent at the other after one vehicle pass over the area, but showed a negligible increase after a second pass. Seedling root growth generally decreased with an increase in bulk density.

INTRODUCTION

Roots play an important role in the survival and productive potential of forest trees by providing anchorage, water and nutrients needed for growth and development (Bilan 1968). Due to its effect on the initial growth and development of root systems, compaction produced by heavy equipment used in harvesting and cultural operations will become even more important as pressures for increased forest production lead to more intensive management programs (Foil and Ralston 1967). The objectives of this study were to measure loblolly pine (*Pinus taeda* L.) seedling root responses to various degrees of soil compaction which occurred during a simulated site preparation operation, and to evaluate the effects of this soil compaction on physical parameters of two soil types found on industry owned timberland in East Texas.

METHODS

Two sites were located on land owned and managed by Champion International Corporation. To simulate a site preparation operation a D-8 track-type tractor with a V-blade attached was used to apply compaction treatments at each site. The area designated as Compaction Level I was traversed once by the tractor and the area designated as Compaction Level II was traversed twice. At each site an undisturbed area was also established as a Control.

A sample of 150 nursery-grown 1-0 loblolly pine seedlings from the same provenance were measured to determine length of lateral roots, volume of the root system, and shoot height. A the end of one growing season seedling paramete were remeasured and the percent change for each parameter was determined.

Twenty-five seedlings were hand planted on each treatment area at both sites. On compacte areas seedlings were planted in the tracks caus by the tractor tranversing the area. Fifteen seedlings from each treatment remained in the field until the end of the growing season.

The other ten seedlings from each treatmen were transported undisturbed to the laboratory PVC pipe containers. The sixty transported see lings were positioned by random methods into si rows outside the laboratory. Sand was used to the space surrounding the containers, providing insulation against radiation which would have heated the sides of the containers. Soil moist tension was monitored with tensiometers and whe the average tension reached 70 centibars the so was saturated again.

Particle size analysis of the top 18 inches in each soil horizon was determined using the Bouyoucos hydrometer method (Black 1965). Bulk density was determined for the 0-3, 3-6, and 6- inch soil layers using the core method (Black 1 Volumetric water content was determined for both sites immediately prior to compaction.

The water retention capacity for each treatment was determined at 1/3 bar and 15 bars of so moisture tension using the tension plate method (Black 1965). Using this data the available wat content (cm^3/cm^3) was estimated by calculating t erence in water retention capacity between 1/3 and 15 bars of soil moisture tension.

---

[1] Paper presented at Second Biennial Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia. November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Graduate Research Assistant and Assistant Professor of Forestry, Texas A&M University, College Station, Texas.

Analysis of variance was used to test for ificant ($P<0.05$) seedling response differences een locations (field vs. lab) and sites and g treatments. Separate analyses of variance also performed for field grown seedlings and grown seedlings. Analysis of variance was also to test for significant ($P<0.05$) bulk density erences between sites and among treatments and hs. All analysis of variance models were con- red fixed.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Soil Parameters

Textural analyses for Site I revealed a y loam surface layer (0-6 in.) overlying a urface layer (6-18 in.) ranging from loam to y clay loam. At Site II the texture ranged loamy sand to sandy loam throughout the pro-

The average soil water content (cm^3/cm^3) at I exceeded field capacity water content at time of compaction. Site II had an average water content very slightly below that of d capacity. Due to the lesser percent sand ite I, this site had a higher water retention city and consequently a greater potential lable water content than did Site II.

Analysis of variance showed significant erences for bulk density values between sites treatments and among depths. At both sites bulk density increased with an increase in h on all treatments and when depths were aged the bulk density increased with increased action. Values were higher for all treatments ite II, probably due to the increased sand ent on this site.

On both sites the bulk densities for the top inches of each soil profile increased the between the Control and Compaction Level I. ite I the Control had a bulk density of 1.28 /n^3. This value increased 11 percent to 1.42 /n^3 on Compaction Level I. Compaction Level II a bulk density of 1.43 g/cm^3, which was only percent greater than that of Compaction Level On Site II the bulk density for the Control 1.38 g/cm^3. The bulk density for Compaction el I was 1.52, a 10 percent increase over that the Control. Compaction Level II bulk density y increased an additional 1.3 percent to 1.54 /n^3.

Seedling Responses

Analysis of variance of the percent change in lateral root length showed significant dif- ences between locations and sites, and a signi- ant location x site interaction term. A sepa- e analysis of variance performed for seedlings grown in the field showed significant differences among treatments and sites. However, the analysis of variance for seedlings grown at the lab showed a significant difference only between sites.

These results suggest that on these sites, differences between sites and amount of soil compaction both influence lateral root elongation when seedlings are grown in the field. However, when seedlings are grown at the lab under monitored conditions, differences in lateral root growth are attributable primarily to site differences.

The significant location x site interaction term indicates that seedlings from different sites did not react in the same manner when grown under monitored conditions. Seedlings from Site II, which had a site index (age 50 years) of 65, grew much better at the lab than did the seedlings grown in the field. Seedlings from Site I ($SI_{50} = 100$) which were grown at the lab also exhibited an increase in growth over field grown Site I seedlings. However, because Site I was a very good site and seedling growth in the field was good, the comparative growth differential exhibited by the lab seedlings was not as great as that shown by Site II lab seedlings.

Seedlings grown at the lab exhibited greater lateral root elongation than did the field grown seedlings. This greater percent increase in lab grown seedlings was also observed for all other measured variables and was probably attributable primarily to the lower soil moisture tension maintained at the lab.

At the lab the lateral root elongation of Site I seedlings decreased as soil compaction increased (table 1). The greatest growth differential occurred between the Control and Compaction Level I seedlings. Lab seedlings from Site II showed the least lateral root elongation on Compaction Level 1. The Control seedlings showed the greatest average increase, followed by Compaction Level II seedlings. This trend was also observed for Site II seedlings grown in the field.

Table 1.--Average percent change in lateral root growth for Site I and Site II seedlings by locations and treatments.

	SITE I		SITE II	
TREATMENT	LAB	FIELD	LAB	FIELD
CON	540	115	205	4
CLI	490	126	60	-20
CLII	480	25	97	-16

The low average percent changes associated with Compaction Level I on Site II for this and other variables was probably due to differences in planting techniques. Compaction Level I at Site II was the first treatment to be planted and the planting crew was inexperienced. Consequently, a lower quality planting job was performed on this treatment, which could have resulted in reduced survival and growth.

In the field the greatest average percent increase exhibited by Site I seedlings occurred on Compaction Level I (table 1). The mean for the Control seedlings dropped slightly, while that for Compaction Level II seedlings decreased almost 100 percent. Compaction Level I exhibited a greater water retention capacity than did the other two treatments on this site, which possibly resulted in slightly more prolific lateral root growth. Site II field seedlings showed little or no lateral root elongation on all treatments.

Differences between locations and sites and the location x site interaction were significant in the analysis of variance of the percent change in the root system volume. An analysis of variance of seedlings grown in the field showed significant differences among treatments and between sites. Again these results imply that in this study both site and treatment effects are important in determining percent change in volume occupied by the root system when seedlings are grown in the field. However, under monitored conditions the treatment effects become less important and site differences become the primary factor influencing changes in root volumes.

The root system volume decreased with increasing compaction for lab seedlings from Site I (table 2). Site II lab seedlings again displayed the least average percent increase on Compaction Level I. Field seedlings at both sites showed a decrease in volume with increasing compaction. On Site II a negative average percent change occurred on Compaction Level I and Compaction Level II for this and other variables. This probably occurred due to poor site conditions, in combination with the effects of soil compaction, which acted to inhibit growth almost entirely.

Table 2.--Average percent change in volume of water displaced by the root system for Site I and Site II seedlings by locations and treatments.

TREATMENT	SITE I LAB	 FIELD	SITE II LAB	 FIELD
CON	1207	157	247	53
CLI	1125	100	124	-38
CLII	861	35	163	-44

Analysis of variance of the percent change in shoot height for all seedlings showed significant differences between locations and sites and among treatments. In separate analysis bot the field grown and the lab grown seedlings sho significant differences between sites and among treatments. These results imply that site differences and compaction effects both have a sig nificant impact on the rate of root elongation. Shoot growth trends were similar to lateral roo elongation trends, with average shoot height de creasing as compaction increased.

Seedling survival was also determined for each treatment at each site and location. At t lab the Control and Compaction Level II seedlin from Site I had 100 percent survival and Compaction Level II had 90 percent. Site II lab seedlings had 100 percent survival on Compactio Level I, 80 percent on Compaction Level II and 70 percent on the Control. The lower survival the Control probably resulted from the accident loss of soil from two containers during transpo tation. In the field site I had 100 percent su vival on the Control and Compaction Level I are and 90 percent on Compaction Level II. Surviva decreased on Site II to 47 percent on the Contr 33 percent on Compaction Level I and 53 percent on Compaction Level II.

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

This study was conducted on sites having f sandy loam and gravelly loamy fine sand texture Compaction applied when the soil moisture conte was equal to or exceeding that of field capacit resulted in the greatest bulk density increase with one vehicle trip over the area on both sit The second trip resulted in very little bulk density increases. Because of the high sand co tent of the study site soils and the high soil water content at the time of compaction, the initial bulk densities and changes in bulk densities due to compaction treatments were probab higher than would be observed on drier sites or on sites with finer textured soils. However, because of the similarity of many soils in East Texas to the sandy loam and loamy sand soils on the study sites, these results can probably be used in a qualitative manner to predict general seedling root responses to increased bulk densi on these types of soils under similar moisture conditions.

Generally, seedling growth means decreased with an increase in bulk density. The poor grow encountered on compaction treatments having hig bulk densities was probably due to some combination of the following factors: increased mechanical resistance to root elongation, a decrease i macropore volume, poor aeration, and slower infiltration and internal movement of soil water.

Lab seedlings from both sites exhibited muc higher growth means than those seedlings grown i the field due to the low soil moisture tension a the lab. However, the differences among compaction treatments at the lab were usually not as great as differences between sites. This implies that the effects of soil compaction are not as important as site differences in determining seedling growth responses when seedlings are supplied with adequate water.

The results of this study suggest that site conditions and soil compaction caused by heavy equipment prior to planting are both very important in determining seedling establishment and growth on sandy loam and loamy sand soils during the first growing season. Because larger increases in bulk density occur on sandy soils which are at or near field capacity, sites having these characteristics should not be traversed during wet weather conditions if possible. However, sites having sandy soils are usually harvested or prepared for planting during wet weather when sites having heavier textured soils are inaccessible. Under these circumstances traffic should be limited to a minimum number of primary trails. Since additional vehicle trips seem to cause very little increase in bulk density under these conditions, the area subjected to higher bulk densities would thus be minimized.

LITERATURE CITED

Bilan, M. V.
1968. Effects of physical soil environment on growth and development of root systems of southern pines. In Forest fertilization - theory and practice. Tennessee Valley Authority, Knoxville, Tenn. p. 15-19.

Black, C. A.
1965. Methods of soil analysis, Part I. ASA Monograph No. 9, 770 p. N.Y.: Academic Press.

Foil, R. R. and C. W. Ralston
1967. The establishment and growth of loblolly pine seedlings on compacted soils. Soil Sci. Soc. of Am. Proc. 31:565-568.

HANDPLANTING COSTS ARE INFLUENCED BY PLANTING SITE CHARACTERISTICS[1]

Richard W. Guldin [2]

Abstract.--The primary artificial regeneration method used for southern pine is planting seedlings by hand. While improvements in survival, growth and yield from more intensive site preparation have been heavily studied, the effect of intensive treatments on total regeneration cost has drawn little attention. From 70 planting contracts for both national forests and industrial lands, a regression equation is developed that relates planting site characteristics and preparation activities to planting cost. It contains six independent variables: two acreage variables, three treatment variables, and type of ownership. The analysis provides guides for more efficient regeneration decisions.

The past 2 years have been exceptionally difficult ones for the southern pine industry. Markets have been poor and sales low. Consequently, budgets for reforestation have been tightly squeezed.

This paper explores ways in which the type and intensity of site preparation affect subsequent costs of handplanting southern pine seedlings on national forests and industry lands.

Site preparation procedures vary widely, depending in large part on landowner objectives and policies. It is not unusual for 2 adjacent landowners to use widely differing site preparation methods. The Francis Marion National Forest in South Carolina favors a single drum chopping treatment coupled with herbicide injections of trees too big to chop. On adjacent private land, similar sites are either being sheared, raked and bedded; or sheared, chopped, burned and bedded before handplanting. Private landowners spent up to twice as much per acre for site preparation as the national forest. However, the national forest spent more to get its sites handplanted, even though the planting methods were generally the same.

To explore the relationship between site preparation and planting investments, site characteristics and preparation practices were reviewed for 70 separate planting sites. The sites covered 11,633 acres in 230 individual parcels on 8 national forests and 6 industrial ownerships. Both coastal plain and piedmont sites in South Carolina, Alabama, Mississippi and Louisiana were included.

Data were collected for sites planted in bot the 1979-1980 (25%) and 1980-1981 (75%) seasons. Contractors performed all of the planting and si preparation activities except prescribed burning --on both public and private lands.

Contract costs are preferred for analysis instead of "in house" or "force account" estimat because contract costs were established by the market and not by accounting practices.

ANALYSIS

Handplanting cost per acre, excluding the co of seedlings, was selected as the dependent variable for regression analysis. From the 13 categories of information considered as potentia independent variables, Equation 1 was obtained.

The F-statistic for the equation is 23.58, having a probability less than 0.001. The coefficient of multiple determination (R^2) is 0.69. The standard error of the estimate is 8.02. The t-statistics, shown in parentheses beneath the coefficients, are all significant, having probability less than 0.008.

---

[1] Paper presented at 2nd Biennial Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Economist, USDA, Forest Service, Southern Forest Experiment Station, New Orleans, Louisiana.

Equation 1.

$$\text{HANDPLT\$} = \$2.00 - \underset{(2.85)}{\$0.040}\ (\text{TOTLACRE}) + \underset{(3.24)}{\$17.20}\ (\text{LOGACRE})$$

$$- \underset{(2.90)}{\$3.75}\ (\text{\#MACHPAS}) + \underset{(2.72)}{\$7.91}\ (\text{BURNED}) - \underset{(4.08)}{\$0.49}\ (\text{BURNCOST})$$

$$+ \underset{(6.74)}{\$20.43}\ (\text{OWNER})$$

Where:

HANDPLT$ - Handplanting cost, dollars per acre
TOTLACRE - Total acreage offered for planting
LOGACRE - Logarithm, base 10, of TOTLACRE
#MACHPAS - Number of machine passes used in site preparation
BURNED - Zero-one variable, 1 if broadcast burn was used
BURNCOST - Cost of prescribed broadcast burn, dollars per acre
OWNER - Zero-one variable, 1 if national forest, 0 if industry

DISCUSSION

Site preparation activities are directed at three goals: (1) controlling competing vegetation; (2) improving the seedling's growing location; and (3) simplifying planting (Smith 1962). Dollar benefits from controlling competition and improving the planting spot normally accrue as increases in future harvest value. Through economic formulas, the expected future harvest value can be discounted to an equivalent benefit value in today's dollars. Reductions in planting contract costs measure the dollar benefits obtained from simplified planting. The sum of the present worth of future harvest benefits and the reduction in planting cost must exceed the total cost of the site preparation treatments for the combination of site preparation treatments to be economically justified.

Although altering site preparation activities induces changes in benefits from all 3 goals, the equation only estimates the economic benefits from the simplified planting goal, i.e. a reduction in HANDPLT$. A separate economic analysis is required to measure the competition control and planting spot improvement benefits provided.

The independent variables fall into 3 categories: acreage, treatment and ownership.

Acreage

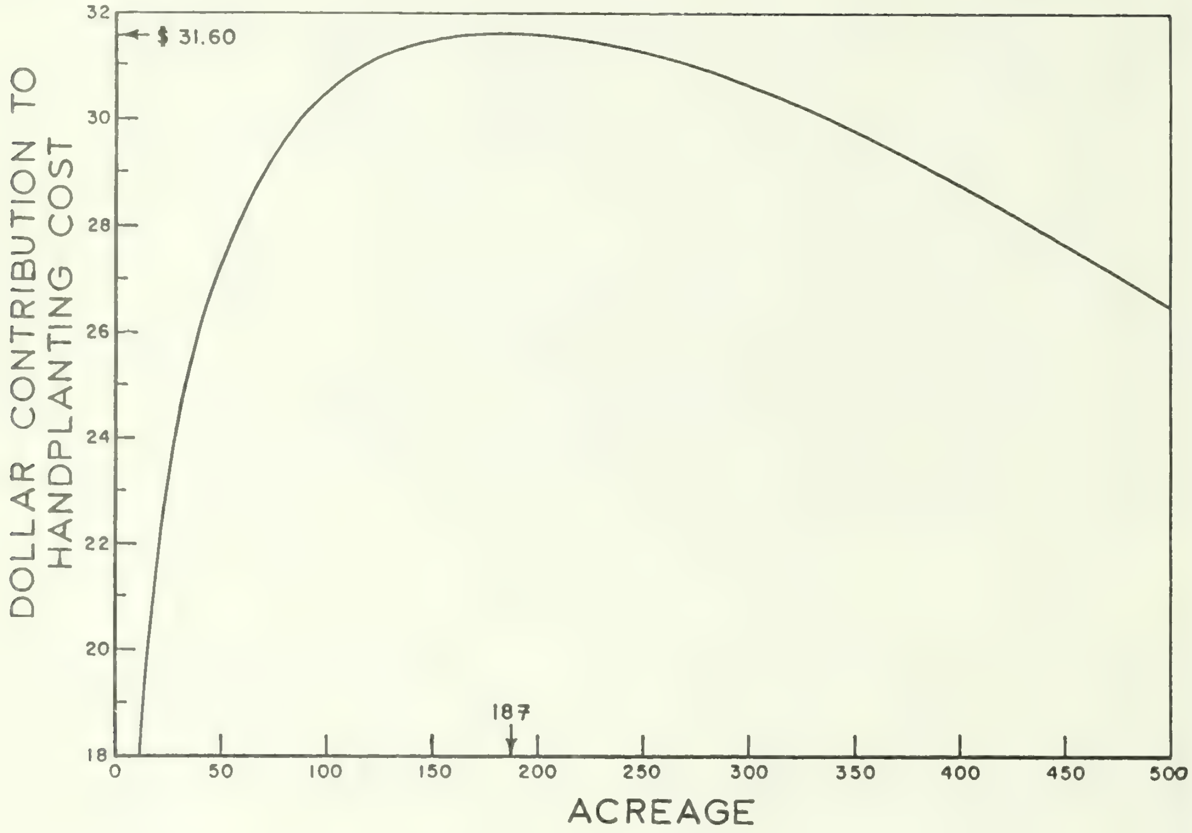
TOTLACRE and LOGACRE combined have a curvilinear effect on HANDPLT$. As the planting contract acreage increases up to 160 acres, the cost contribution of acreage to HANDPLT$ increases up to $31.60. Between 160 and 200 acres, the cost contribution to HANDPLT$ is constant. For areas larger than 200 acres the net acreage contribution to HANDPLT$ declines.

Differences in planting contractors are responsible for the cost peak between 160 and 200 acres (fig. 1). Contractors with a large permanent crew cannot economically plant small tracts because they spend too much time moving from site to site. Small acreages are usually planted by small local contractors. But as acreage increases (up to 200 acres), a small contractor has to hire temporary laborers or work overtime to get the job finished on time. Hiring temporaries and working overtime both reduce planting efficiency and increase costs. As contract acreage increases, a point is finally reached (160 acres) where a contractor with a large permanent crew can plant the area economically. Between 160 and 200 acres, large and small contractors are directly competing for the low bid.

Treatments

The forest product firms studied began site preparation with shearing on 81 percent of the sites. They used bedding on 41 percent of the sites and broadcast burning on 33 percent of the sites. National forest managers used shearing as the initial treatment on only 19 percent of the sites. They never bedded, but burned 48 percent of the sites. The principal preparation method used by national forests was injection of herbicides with hand tools (53 percent of the sites). Consequently, preparation of industrial land was more intensive, using an average of 2.1 machine passes compared to 0.5 machine passes for national forests.

The coefficient of #MACHPAS reveals that each additional mechanical site preparation treatment reduces HANDPLT$ by $3.75 per acre. For example, Figure 1.--The effect of contract acreage on HANDPLT$



if bedding costs $20 per acre, it would reduce HANDPLT$ $3.75 (simplified planting benefits) because between-row spacings have already been established by the beds. Only $16.25 remains to be justified by present worth benefits from competition control and site amelioration.

The two burning variables combine to reduce HANDPLT$ when burning costs more than $16.01 per acre. Several firms burn to facilitate planting. But the present worth benefits from low-cost burning are not captured in reduced planting costs. Because low-cost burning actually raised HANDPLT$, present worth benefits from competition control and planting spot improvement must be greater than the sum of the cost of burning plus the increase in HANDPLT$.

High burning costs were common where hand injection of herbicides was used for overstory competition control instead of shearing. Such sites tended to have heavier fuel accumulations. On these sites, burning did not merely kill sprouts and eliminate herbaceous competition, it also replaced mechanical treatments to destroy harvest residues and thereby simplify planting. Whether a burn or an additional mechanical treatment has a greater net present worth depends on the interaction of benefits from competition control spot improvement.

Owner

The coefficient of the OWNER variable indic cates that planting the same sized site prepare the same way will cost $20.43 per acre more if the acreage is national forest than in industri ownership. The increased cost of Forest Servic planting contracts is not the result of inconsi tent data. Some of the planting contractors di business with both, and the bids were always higher for national forest contracts.

Five factors contribute to the difference i handplanting bid prices between the two ownerships: 1) harvest utilization standards, 2) harvest tract size differences, 3) visual ameni consequences, 4) seedling spacings and 5) contr administration procedures.

Harvest Utilization Standards stem from differences in harvesting philosophy and emphas Southern forest products firms leave less materi on the site following harvest. The recent emph in energy self-sufficiency has led many firms t all wood-burning boilers for steam and elec- ity generation. Mill waste is insufficient eet total fuel needs in most cases, so logging e and small trees previously left on the site now chipped and hauled to the mill for fuel. ational forests, contract specifications uently limit the cutting of small fuelwood s. Although small stems may be cut by private viduals having firewood collection permits, fuelwood harvesting is not nearly as complete ndustrial chipping of residuals. The result ore stems and harvest debris left to hinder site preparation and planting process on onal forest land than on industrial-owner s.

Harvest tract sizes differ between ownership sses. Although the average planting contract ages are similar (143.8 acres for industry 180.4 for national forests), the average t size for industrial land is 138.7 acres ared to only 50.6 acres on national forests. onal forests tend to lump several small parcels ther into one planting contract.

Small tract sizes are more costly to plant. is spent moving the crew and laying out the before beginning work at each site. If more one tract is being planted simultaneously, s increase because the foreman spends less supervising planting crews because of commut- between sites. Decreased supervision may lt in slower progress of the crews (raising head costs per acre), lower quality of work increased need for interplanting.

Visual amenity consequences of harvest have the Forest Service to use irregularly shaped els to minimize the visual impacts of harvest ing. The results are large increases in el perimeter per unit acre and concommitant eases in planting difficulty. Irregular es create and cut off short lengths of row g the perimeter if rows are laid out parallel he parcel's longest axis. Alternatively, s may twist and turn to follow the parcel's dary. In either case, keeping the proper ing between and within rows is difficult. ging crews back to areas needing interplant- to bring planting density up to minimum levels costly. The alternative is to plant more trees ssure meeting stocking minimums, which results slower progress.

Seedling spacings differ between ownerships hough the mean number of seedlings planted acre is comparable between ownerships(± 10 cent). Cost differences due to planting den- y per acre, although minor, should favor ional forests because they plant fewer seed- gs per acre. But the same seedling density be obtained with different spacings. Planters k 20 percent less row when the spacing between s is 10 feet versus 8 feet to plant at the density per acre. The 10-foot spacing ween rows is favored by industry and the Kisatchie National Forest, LA. The other national forests favored 8-foot spacings.

Contract administration procedures influence the OWNER coefficient through 2 elements: the bidding mechanism and the documentation mechanism. Sealed bidding for contract planting, required on national forests, leaves no latitude for negotiating a lower price with bidders. Industries, on the other hand, negotiate contract prices. They can add perquisites in the form of guaranteed minimum acreages or preferences on future contracts and reward good performance. All these factors can result in lower bid prices for industry land than for federal land.

National forest contracts require more documentation than industry contracts. Each time the contract officer or his representative contacts the contractor, a written record is created. The contractor is required to initial or sign forms, often daily. Many planting contractors reflect their feelings about such thorough documentation by raising the bid prices higher than those charged on industrial ownerships where less documentation is required.

SUMMARY

There is a strong negative association between handplanting cost and intensity of site preparation. The higher cost of handplanting national forests compared to industry lands appears due to sites that have more harvest residuals obstructing planter access, that are smaller and more irregularly shaped, and that are planted at less efficient spacings. The lower intensity of mechanical site preparation on national forests and contract administration procedures also add to the planting cost premium.

Land managers can use the results of the analysis as guidelines for evaluating the efficiency of their regeneration programs. By considering the effects that site preparation methods and harvest tract size have on handplanting cost, today's scarce regeneration funds can be stretched to expand the acreage reforested and help assure future timber supplies.

EFFECT OF SITE PREPARATION AND FERTILIZATION ON SLASH PINE GROWING ON A GOOD SITE [1]

Allan E. Tiarks [2]

Abstract.--Thirteen years after planting, slash pine (*Pinus elliottii* Engelm. var. *elliottii*) was still responding to a preplant application of 88 lb of phosphorus per acre. Bedding and flat disking improved height growth through age 13, but the effects of the site preparation treatments declined after age 10. Lime did not affect tree growth. Fusiform rust (*Cronartium quercuum* (Berk.) Miyabe ex Shirai f. sp. *fusiforme*) infection of the main stems was about 84 percent for all treatments. Still, the volume increase from phosphorus application and bedding compare favorably with the expected increase in volume on poorer sites now being operationally bedded and fertilized.

INTRODUCTION

The effects of bedding and phosphorus fertilizer on wet flatwood sites are usually dramatic, turning unproductive sites into productive ones (Pritchett 1979). However, this increase in growth from site modification must be compared to the increase that can be expected if the same expenditure were made on initially productive sites. Then the land manager can decide which of his sites will provide the greatest return, given the additional inputs.

This paper reports the effects of flat disking, bedding, phosphorus fertilizer, and liming on tree growth on a site that would produce a good crop without application of any of the site modifications.

METHODS

The study area was located in Rapides Parish, Louisiana, on a site occupied by native grasses and scattered small hardwoods. The soil is moderately well drained Beauregard silt loam (fine-silty, siliceous, thermic Plinthaquic Paleudult). The depth of the winter water table was estimated to be 18 to 28 inches using the depth to gray mottles as an indicator. Site index for slash at age 50 is 90, determined by using heights of the check plots at age 13 and site index curves (USDA Forest Service, 1976; Farrar, 1973).

Site preparation and fertilizer treatments were applied in a split plot design. Site preparation treatments, consisting of check, flat disking, and bedding, were applied to the main plots which were 116 x 148 feet. The check plots were burned several weeks before planting. The flat disked plots were tilled twice with an offset disk in the fall of 1967. Bedded plots were treated at the same time with a bedding harrow that formed ridges 6 inches higher than the original soil surface and 8 feet apart. Plan ing was delayed one season to allow the beds to settle.

Four fertilizer treatments were applied to subplots of each main plot. The treatments were no fertilizer, 1,000 lb/acre of lime, 88 lb/acre of phosphorus, and the lime and phosphorus treatments combined. The lime was agricultural lime less than 200 mesh and was applied to find the effects of increasing the amount of calcium on th exchange complex. Triple superphosphate was used as the phosphorus source. The fertilizers were broadcast by hand just before site preparation.

In February 1969, slash pine seedlings (1-0; grades 1 and 2) were planted at a 6- x 8-foot spacing. At the end of the first growing season, all dead trees were replaced with 1-1 stock.

Measurements were made on 24 pines in the middle of each subplot. Heights were measured annually through age 5 and then at ages 7, 10, and 13. Diameter at breast height and fusiform rust infection measurements were begun at age 4 and from then on at the same time as height measurements. Reported diameters are quadratic means. Volume (inside bark) was calculated from the diameter and height of each tree using the equation:

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural Research Conference held in Atlanta, GA., November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Soil Scientist, Southern Forest Experiment Station, USDA--Forest Service, Pineville, LA 71360.

$$V = 0.02408 + 0.0021058D^2H$$

(Schmitt and Bower, 1970). Fusiform rust infection was recorded if one or more galls had formed in the main stem. Mortality before age 4 was attributed to the establishment phase. Only trees alive at age 4 were used as a basis in calculating mortality and fusiform rust infection percentages.

Phosphorus and calcium concentrations in the needles were determined from samples collected in the winter, 2 years after planting, and in August, 10 years after planting. August sampling was used to maximize nutrient differences due to treatment. The foliar samples were dried at 70°C, ground to pass through a 20-mesh screen, ashed at 500°C and taken up in $0.3N$ HNO_3. Phosphorus was determined colorimetrically and calcium by atomic absorption spectrophotometry.

Available phosphorus and exchangeable calcium were measured on soil samples collected 13 years after planting. Available phosphorus was extracted by shaking with $0.05\underline{N}$ HCl+$0.025\underline{N}$ H_2SO_4 for 15 minutes (Nelson et al.1953, Wells et al. 1973). Exchangeable calcium was removed with N NH_4OAc at pH 7.

Analysis of variance, including preplanned orthogonal comparisons, was used to test for differences with the significance level set at the 0.05 level. The arcsine transformation was used to normalize mortality and infection percentages.

RESULTS

Growth

The site preparation treatments and phosphorus fertilizer increased tree height through age 13. The mechanical and fertilizer treatments did not interact, so the effects of the two are additive.

The trees on the mechanically treated plots were significantly taller than the check plots beginning at age 3 (fig. 1). The bedding increased height by 1.0 feet at age 3 and by 2.1 feet at age 10. However, by age 13 the trees on bedded plots were only 1.4 feet taller than the trees on the check plots. The flat disking increased the height growth about half as much as the bedding treatment for ages 3 through 10. By age 13 the advantage of bedding over flat disking was no longer significant.

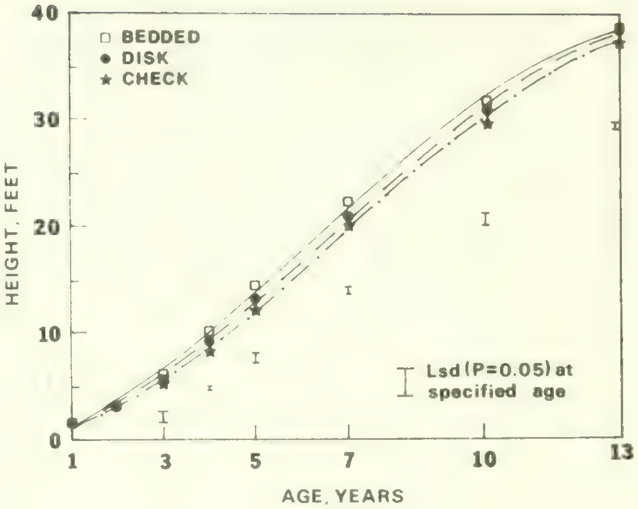


Figure 1.--Effect of flat disking and bedding on height of slash pine stand 1 to 13 years old.

Bedding also increased tree diameter in the period before age 13 (table 1). Flat disking was marginally better than no mechanical site preparation for ages 4 through 10. Neither treatment was significantly better than the check by age 13. The standard error of the difference had almost doubled from 0.06 inch to 0.11 inch in the 3-year period. This accounted for the loss of significance rather than a decrease in growth differences.

Table 1.--Effects of site preparation treatments on diameter and volume of slash pine at ages 4 through 13 (average of all lime and phosphorus treatments)

	Average d.b.h.			Total volume (i.b.)		
Age	Check	Disk	Bed.	Check	Disk	Bed.
	inches			(ft^3/acre)		
4	1.31a [1]	1.56b	1.72b	33a	48ab	62b
5	2.34a	2.54ab	2.74a	137a	171ab	208b
7	3.71a	3.89b	4.08c	518a	584ab	666b
10	4.73a	4.91b	5.08c	1040a	1180b	1170b
13	5.64a	5.76a	5.98a	1560a	1750a	1670a

[1] Means of common measurement age and type and followed by the same letter are not significantly different (P = 0.05).

The bedding treatments increased the total volume significantly in the first 10 years (table 1). The volume in the flat disked plots was significantly greater than on check plots only at age 10. Again by age 13 the effects of mechanical treatments were no longer significant. The effects of bedding and disking were no longer significant. Bedding and disking had equivalent effects on volume at all ages.

The phosphorus fertilizer applied during site preparation significantly increased the height of the trees by 7 to 10 percent beginning at age 4 (fig. 2). Phosphorus had increased total height by 0.6 foot at age 4 and by 2.5 feet at age 10. By age 13 the difference was 1.7 feet, a 5 percent advantage over the plots not receiving phosphorus fertilizer. These values were averages of all site preparation treatments.

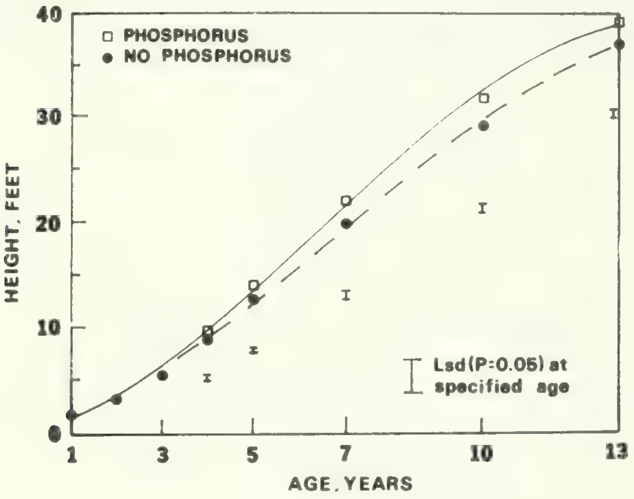


Figure 2.--Effect of phosphorus fertilizer applied 1 year before planting of slash pine on the height of the plantation

Diameter at breast height and volume were also consistently increased by phosphorus (table 2). The increase in diameter was similar to the increase in height, about 7 to 10 percent over the unfertilized plots. The increase in both height and diameter combined meant the total volume had been increased by more than 30 percent at ages 7 and 10. By age 13 the percent increase had been reduced to 23 percent. At age 13 the volume attributed to phosphorus fertilization was 347 ft^3/acre.

The lime treatment had no signficant direct effect on tree growth. Nor did the lime interact with the phosphorus fertilizer on mechanical site treatments to enhance their effects.

Table 2.--Effects of phosphorus fertilizer on diameter and volume of slash pine at ages 4 through 13 (average of all site preparation treatments)

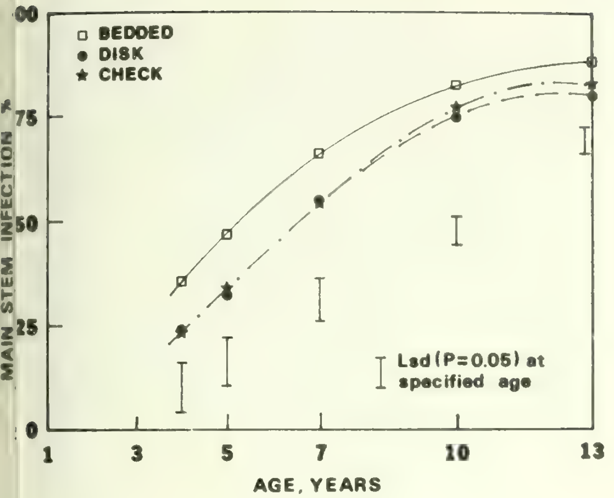
Age	Average d.b.h.		Total volume (i.]	
	Check	Phosphorus	Check	Phosphor
	------inches--------		------ft^3/acre----	
4	1.48a[1]	1.59b	44a	52b
5	2.41a	2.67b	151a	194b
7	3.64a	4.14b	498a	681b
10	4.65a	5.17b	971a	1283b
13	5.58a	6.01b	1487a	1834b

[1] Means of common measurement age and type and followed by the same letter are not significant different (P = 0.05).

Fusiform Rust Infection

Rust infection in all of the plots was s Of all trees alive at age 4, about 84 percent been infected or killed by rust at age 13 (fi Bedding had increased the incidence of rust o the other two site preparation treatments by percentage points at age 4. By age 13 the di ference in infection between bedding and the two treatments was 7 percentage points which significantly greater than any other treatment. The phosphorus and lime treatments did not con sistently affect the incidence of fusiform rus The percentage of trees infected was significa lower on the phosphorus-treated plots at age on the lime-treated plots at ages 5 and 10. differences in rust incidence are not consiste with the other measurement periods and do not appear to be meaningful.

By age 13, 31 percent of the trees alive age 4 had died. The rate of mortality, expres on the basis of number of trees alive at age 4 increased from 1.3 percent per year at age 5 t 4.3 percent per year at ages 10 and 13. Most the mortality was associated with stem infecti None of the site preparation or fertilizer treatments affected mortality significantly ar consistently with time.



F gure 3.--Effect of site preparation on percen age of slash pine main stems infected with usiform rust galls.

Nutrients in Foliage and Soil

The phosphorus fertilizer alone had increase the concentration of phosphorus in the foliage b 22 percent 2 years after planting and 3 years a er application (table 3). By age 10 the p ts that had received phosphorus fertilizer s ll contained significantly more phosphorus in t foliage compared to the controls. The added l e significantly reduced the phosphorus conc tration in the foliage at age 2 or 3 years a er treatment. By age 10, the lime had no e ect on the phosphorus in the needles from plots n receiving phosphorus fertilizer. However, t lime significantly reduced phosphorus in the f iage of plots treated with both lime and p sphorus.

T le 3.--Concentration of phosphorus and calcium n slash needles 2 and 10 years after planting

		Fertilizer applied			
E ment	Age	None	Phosphorus	Lime	Lime and Phosphorus
	-yr-	g/kg			
P sphorus	2	0.85b[1]	1.04c	0.71a	0.85b
	10	0.57a	0.80c	0.57a	0.75b
C cium	2	1.80a	1.90a	1.89a	1.98a
	10	1.07a	1.10a	1.07a	1.17a

[1] eans in the same row and followed by the same l ter are not significantly different (P = 0.05).

Neither lime nor phosphorus had an effect on calcium in the foliage at either sampling time.

At age 13, the soil in plots fertilized with phosphorus still contained significantly more acid extractable phosphorus (table 4). The lime treatment did not affect the available phosphorus in the soil.

Table 4.--Concentration of phosphorus and calcium in the soil and soil pH 13 years after planting

	Fertilizer applied			
Measurement and units	None	Phosphorus	Lime	Lime and Phosphorus
Mehlich 1 P, mg/kg	1.3 a[1]	2.5 b	1.5 a	2.3 b
Exchangeable Ca, meq/100 g	0.60a	0.62a	0.66a	1.00b
pH	4.11a	4.15ab	4.23c	4.29c

[1] Means in the same row and followed by the same letter are not significantly different (P = 0.05)

The lime treatment had no effect on exchangeable calcium in the soil 13 years after application unless phosphorus fertilizer was also applied. However, the lime treatment increased soil pH by a small but statistically significant amount, independent of the phosphorus treatment.

DISCUSSION

The severe incidence of fusiform rust in the stand precludes growing susceptible slash pine on the site under any level of culture. The percentage of main stem infection without fertilizer or mechanical site preparation was 81 percent at age 13. While bedding caused a small increase in infection, the inherent level of infection is too high to make this a realistic difference. However, because rust often does not significantly affect tree growth until stem breakage occurs (Jones 1972, Nance et al. 1981), the growth data presented here should still be valid for comparison purposes.

The slash pine grew tallest on the bedded plots in the early measurement periods. But after age 10, the bedding treatment was not improving growth. In other studies where similar soils were bedded (Cain 1978, Haywood 1980), the early gain in growth was maintained but became insignificant as the stand increased in size. Also, in the present study the difficulty in measuring a small response in growth was confounded by a large mortality in later years. For example, the average diameter of trees which died between the ages of 10 and 13 was 4.4 and 4.0 inches for the bedded and check plots, respectively. This significant difference in the size of trees which died was caused mainly by random stem breakage at fusiform gall sites, causing greatest volume losses in plots with the largest trees.

The flat disking also caused a growth response from ages 4 through 10. While flat disking is usually credited with weed control (Haywood 1980, Pritchett 1979), it is difficult to relate the delayed response in this study to less competition. Perhaps both bedding and flat disking had an ameliorating effect on soil physical properties that enhanced growth from the time the trees had overtopped the competition until the pines had occupied the site. Further research is needed in this area.

The phosphorus fertilizer caused a significant and prolonged growth response after age 3. The response was probably delayed by grass and other herbaceous competition. Much of the applied phosphorus was retained on the site through age 13 as evidenced by the long-term growth response, increased available phosphorus in the soil, and increased phosphorus concentration in the foliage. However, 14 years after phosphorus fertilization the soil available P is below the critical limits set by Pritchett and Gooding (1975) of 4 to 6 ppm. Another phosphorus application would probably be required at age 10 for maximum production. Because the phosphorus was applied before site preparation, the phosphorus on the bedded and flat disked plots was incorporated, while it was only surface applied on the check plots. The lack of interaction between phosphorus and site preparation suggests that surface application of P is sufficient on these soils.

Langdon and Hatchell (1976) reported that slash pine did respond to liming when fertilized with phosphorus as well. Their soils originally contained from 0.2 to 1.5 meq/100 g of exchangeable calcium compared to about 0.6 meq/100 g in the present study. Thus, the lack of response to lime cannot be attributed to a higher calcium content in the soil. Other factors such as pH, stand age, or the availability of micronutrients probably caused the difference in response between their study and the present one.

Pritchett (1979) reported that by age 8, bedding and phosphorus fertilizer had increased volume by 688 ft^3/acre on a site that produced only 23 ft^3/acre without any treatment which is a very good relative increase. However, on the better site being reported on here, the check plot average interpolated to age 8 was about 80% of the best volume production reported by Pritchett (1979). Phosphorus fertilization and bedding at age 8 had increased volume by another 360 ft^3/acre. And the increase was in a fully stocked stand where treatments did not affect survival.

The land manager can use cultural practic
to substantially improve production of both t
very poor sites and good sites that are respo
to the inputs. On this moderately well drain
site, bedding would not be a recommended prac
Phosphorus fertilizer has increased volume pr
duction sufficiently to make an economic anal
worthwhile. Such an analysis must include sp
land managing concerns such as the value of c
trating wood production on a smaller acreage
the risk of treating unresponsive sites as we
as the constantly changing costs of fertilize
and the price of timber. Therefore, a genera
recommendation for phosphorus fertilizer on s
lar sites is not possible. But using the cos
phosphorus fertilizer in 1967 and 1982 pulpwo
prices the fertilization made a good return.

LITERATURE CITED

Cain, Michael D.
1978. Planted loblolly and slash pine resp
to bedding and flat disking on a poorly
drained site - an update. U.S. Dep. Agri
Forest Serv., Res. Note SO-237, 6 p. Sou
For. Exp. Stn., New Orleans, LA.

Farrar, R. M., Jr.
1973. Southern pine site index equations.
J. For. 71: 696-697.

Haywood, James D.
1980. Planted pines do not respond to bedd
on an Acadia-Beauregard-Kolin silt loam
site. U.S. Dep. Agric., For. Serv., Res.
Note SO-259, 4 p. South. For. Exp. Stn.,
New Orleans, LA.

Jones, Earle P., Jr.
1972. Fusiform rust affects planted slash
pine. J. For. 70: 350-352.

Langdon, O. Gordon, and Glyndon E. Hatchell.
1976. Performance of loblolly, slash, and
pines on a poorly drained site with ferti
zation at ages 11 and 14. p. 121-126. I
W. E. Balmer, ed. Proc. Sixth Southern Fo
Soils Workshop. USDA For. Serv. Southeas
Area State and Private Forestry, Charlest
SC.

Nelson, W. L., A. Mehlich and E. Winters.
1953. The development, evaluation and use
soil tests for phosphorus availability.
153-188. In: W. H. Pierre and A. G. Nor
ed., Soil and Fertilizer Phosphorus. Vol
Agronomy Series of Monographs, Academic
Press, Inc., N.Y.

nce, Warren L., Ronald C. Froelich, and Eugene oulders.
1981. Effects of fusiform rust on survival and structure of Mississippi and Louisiana slash pine plantations. U.S. Dep. Agric., For. Serv., Res. Pap. SO-172, 11 p. South. For. Exp. Stn., New Orleans, LA.

itchett, W. L.
1979. Site preparation and fertilization of slash pine on a wet Savanna soil. South. J. Appl. For. 3: 86-90.

itchett, W. L. and J. W. Gooding.
1975. Fertilizer recommendations for pines in the southeastern coastal plain of the United States. Fla. Agric. Exp. Stn. Bull. 774, 23 p. Univ. of Florida, Gainesville, FL.

Schmitt, D. and D. Bower.
1970. Volume tables for young loblolly, slash, and longleaf pines in plantations in south Mississippi. U.S. Dep. Agric., For. Serv. Res. Note SO-102, 6 p. South. For. Exp. Stn., New Orleans, LA.

U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service.
1976. Volume, yield, and stand tables for second-growth southern pines. U.S. Dep. Agric. Misc. Pub. 50 (revision of 1929 edition), 202 p., Washington, DC.

Wells, Carol G., D. M. Crutchfield, N. M. Berenyi, and C. B. Davey.
1973. Soil and foliar guidelines for phosphorus fertilization of loblolly pine. U.S.Dep. Agric., For. Serv. Res. Pap. SE-110, 15 p., Southeast. For. Exp. Stn., Asheville, NC.

SITE PREPARATION EFFECTS ON EARLY LOBLOLLY PINE GROWTH, HARDWOOD COMPETITION, AND SOIL PHYSICAL PROPERTIES [1]

James N. DeWit and Thomas A. Terry [2]

Abstract.--Height, diameter, and volume growth ranking of eight-year-old loblolly pine by site preparation method on Wilcox and Falkner soils in Kemper County, Miss., was as follows: shear-pile-bed > shear-pile > tree-crushed; hardwood basal area followed an exact opposite trend by site preparation method. Total hardwood plus pine basal area remained fairly constant among treatments; as hardwood basal area decreased pine basal area increased. Soil bulk density was greatest on shear-pile plots and soil macropore space was greatest on bedded plots. Hardwood competition and soil physical properties appeared to be limiting pine growth on the study site.

INTRODUCTION

The purpose of site preparation is to favorably modify the site for planting by reducing the level of logging residuals and competing vegetation and occasionally to ameliorate soil conditions. The choice of treatments to use to accomplish these objectives should be partially determined by the amount of residual vegetation and logging debris present, soil physical properties, and soil moisture conditions. Therefore, the critical step in treatment prescriptions is to identify those variables that are most limiting seedling survival and growth on a particular site.

One site preparation method which has been developed in the South to insure survival and enhance tree growth on wet sites is bedding. Survival trends on bedded versus flat-planted sites are inconsistent. Some researchers have found little to no advantage to bedding over flat-planting except on very poorly drained soils (McMinn 1969, Terry 1978, Derr and Mann 1977). Bedding has been demonstrated to increase survival by 10 percent (Terry and Hughes 1975) to 40 percent (Terry 1978) on very poorly drained soils but decreased survival by 10 percent to 20 percent on soils with sandy surface horizons and heavy root mats or on unsettled beds (Terry a
Hughes 1975). The sandy surface and excessiv
vegetative debris can dry very quickly causin
newly planted tree to go into drought stress
unless frequent rainfall occurs.

Numerous investigators have reported substantial gains in early growth of loblolly (Pinus taeda L.) and slash pine (Pinus elliot
var. elliottii Englem.) from bedding on wet s
(Baker 1973, Derr and Mann 1977, Mann and McGilvray 1974, McMinn 1969, and Terry 1978). However, height growth responses are quite variable by region and soil type (table 1). Bedding can provide long term growth advantag
over alternative site preparation techniques
medium-to-fine textured soils in the Lower Coastal Plain where high winter and spring wa
tables can limit growth, summer droughts are infrequent, and soil physical properties are altered by tillage treatments. Pine growth response to bedding appears to be less than t
obtained in the Lower Atlantic Coastal Plain
similar medium-to-fine textured soils in the
Coastal Plain where summer droughts are frequ
and chronically high water tables do not exist

This early growth response to bedding ha
been attributed to numerous soil physical and
chemical factors. The most important factor
poorly and very poorly drained sites probably
the improvement in soil drainage associated w
the elevated microsite (McKee and Shoulders 1
Terry and Hughes 1975). Also, the tillage act
that occurs during bed construction increases
macropore space and decreases bulk density (T
1978). Bedding also concentrates nutrients o
site by pulling the nutrient rich surface soil
from the furrowed strips onto the beds

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Graduate Research Assistant, Department of Forestry, Mississippi State University, Miss. State, MS 39762 and Station Manager, Weyerhaeuser Company Forestry Research Field Station, Columbus, MS 39801, respectively.

able 1. Pine plantation height growth comparisons among site preparation methods on various wet sites.

eographic Location	Soil-Site Description	Species	Plantation Age	Single-Bed Comparison with	Height Advantage (m)	% Increase	Reference
lorida andhills	Lakeland Series	Slash Pine	6	Chopping	0.4	17	Baker (1973)
lorida, ower oastal Plain	Plummer Series	Slash Pine	8	Burn Only	1.1	29	Mann & McGilvray (1974)
outh Florida	Acid Soils	Slash Pine	5	No Treatment	0.8	34	McMinn (1969)
orthwest lorida	Plummer Series	Slash Pine	17 35	Undrained, Unbedded	3.3 1.7	28 8	Wilhite & Jones (1981)
. Carolina ower Coastal lain	Leaf, Lenior	Loblolly Pine	7	K-G plus rootrake	1.4	60	Terry (1978)
	Bladen, Leaf, Lenior, Rains, Onslow, Lynchburg Series	Loblolly Pine	3	K-G plus rootrake	0.02-0.7 over four locations	4-86 over four locations	Terry & Hughes (1975)
	Bladen	Loblolly Pine	18	K-G plus rootrake	2.4	19	Hughes et al. (1979)
. Carolina ower Coastal lain	Sandy loam over sandy clay	Loblolly Pine	7	K-G only	1.3	20	Westvaco Res. Rep. No. 66 (1973) Unpbl.
labama terior latwoods	Wilcox Series	Loblolly pine	10	Shear & Burn	0.9	13	Amer. Can Rep. WS-35 (1980) Unpbl.
ssissippi astal latwoods	Atmore Series	Loblolly Pine	5	No Treatment	0.8	100	Haines & Haines (1977)
ntral uisiana	Beauregard, Wrightsville, Caddo Series	Loblolly Pine	5	No Treatment	0.3-0.5 over four locations	12-35 over four locations	Derr & Mann (1977)
			10	No Treatment	0.4-1.0 over four locations	7-23 over four locations	

chultz 1976), thereby making a relatively large trient pool available to the planted seedlings aines and Pritchett 1965). This improved soil vironment should favor rapid root development aines and Haines 1977).

Wet sites characteristically have a large mponent of understory and hardwood vegetation. vels of competing vegetation have not been antified in most bedding studies. Control of mpeting vegetation during the site preparation eration has a positive effect on growth of ne. Cain and Mann (1980) found that on sites ere hardwoods were controlled loblolly pine lume at age six was 49 percent higher than on treated areas. They concluded that even though te preparation by chopping allowed tablishment of pine, growth was not maximized cause of competition from woody and herbaceous getation. Stransky (1981) reported that rvival, height and diameter growth of loblolly ne was poorest on those sites having the eatest densities of overtopping hardwoods; ese sites had received little site preparation. ny other investigators have found that creases in site preparation intensity decrease the amount of competing vegetation in the subsequent pine stand (Haines and Pritchett 1965, Schultz and Wilhite 1974, Schultz 1976).

While some site preparation practices may actually ameliorate the soil, there is increasing concern that certain intensive site preparation operations can negatively modify the soil environment by increasing bulk density and decreasing macropore volume. Stransky (1981) found that soil bulk density increased with increasing intensities of site preparation (table 2), and there was little perceptable recovery of the compacted soils over a three-year period.

Wet, fine-textured soils often receive shear-pile treatments to facilitate subsequent bedding operations. These sites are easily compacted and normally have a narrow time range in which they can be worked with little damage (Terry and Hughes 1975). Shearing and piling operations are potentially the most damaging to soil physical properties because the entire site being treated is traversed by heavy equipment (Terry 1979).

Table 2. Soil bulk densities by site preparation treatment and year from treatment (Stransky 1981).

Year	Site Preparation Treatment			
	Control	Burn	Chop	KG-Shear
	--------- Bulk Density gms/cc ----------			
1	1.29 a*	1.28 a	1.33 b	1.44 b
2	1.26 a	1.27 a	1.33 b	1.36 b

*All values in row followed by same letter are not significantly different at the 5% level.

Little quantitative information exists relating growth performance to both soil physical properties and hardwood competition as affected by site preparation methods. The objectives of this paper are (1) to examine and interpret the growth performance of loblolly pine as related to soil pore space distribution and bulk density and brush competition across three different site preparation treatments in the Interior Flatwoods of Mississippi and (2) to compare soil physical properties under natural loblolly pine stands to that on intensively site-prepared land.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Data for this investigation were obtained from existing research plots located in the Interior Flatwoods of Kemper County, Mississippi. This resource area is underlain by a deposit of gray, acid shale, known as the Porter's Creek formation, which is relatively impervious to water movement. Consequently, many of the soils become waterlogged for long periods in the winter and spring months. The soils represented in this study are fine-textured, somewhat poorly drained, and of the Falkner (fine-silty, siliceous, thermic Aquic Paleudalf) and Wilcox (fine, montmorillonitic, thermic Vertic Hapludalf) series. While both soils are classified as being somewhat poorly drained, the Wilcox series has poorer internal drainage than the Falkner due to its clayey surface texture. The study site is on an upper slope position with a two to three percent slope which aids in drainage of excess surface water.

The experiment was installed to determine the response of planted loblolly pine to different site preparation techniques. The treatments were:

1. Tree-crushed (TC) with a Letourneau "tree-crusher"
2. K-G sheared and rootraked-piled (SP)
3. K-G sheared, rootraked-piled, and bedded (SPB)

The study design is a randomized block four replications. The measurement plots ra in size from 15.0 m, six rows, wide by approximately 50 m in length in Block I and 7.5 m, three rows, wide by approximately 50 length in the remaining blocks.

Height growth on all trees was measured the end of one, two, three, five, and eight in the field. Diameter at 1.37 m, DBH, was measured at the end of eight years in the fie Total wood volume (inside bark) was then calculated using equation [1] (Schmidt and Bo 1970) for trees with both diameter and height measurements and equation [2] (North Carolin State Forest Fertilization Cooperative, 1975) trees with only height measurements:

$$[1]\ V = [0.03789 + (0.0020911\ ((DBH/2.54)^2\ (H/0.305))]0.028317$$

$$[2]\ V = (0.1153(H/0.305)^{3.191})(1.64 \times 10^{-5})$$

Where: V = Total volume (m^3) inside bark

DBH = Tree diameter (cm) at 1.37 m ab soil surface

H = Tree height (m)

At the eight-year measurement, basal are per hectare, height of the tallest 500 trees hectare, percent survival, and incidence of fusiform rust (*Cronartium quercum* f. sp. *fusiforme*) also were determined.

Soil bulk density and pore space distribution were determined from undisturbed cores collected with a 7.6 cm diameter double ring, hammer-driven, core sampler (Blake 1965 (fig. 1). Ten sampling points were randomly located within each measurement plot with one core taken at each sampling point in the 0-7. depth. Pore space distribution was determine using methods described by Cassel (1974).

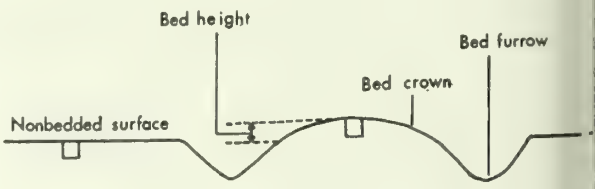


Figure 1. Bed cross-section and sample locati

Organic matter content was determined by Mississippi State Extension Service Soil Testi Lab using a modified colorimetric method (DeBo 1974).

Data for the competition evaluation were tken within twenty, 8.8 x 10^{-4} hectare, circular sbplots located randomly within the measurement pots of each treatment. All woody and pithy semmed perennials, hereafter referred to as tush competition, were tallied by species and ctegorized into 2 cm diameter classes within two rlative height classes. The two height classes cnsisted of stems which were less than one-half te average dominant/co-dominant pine height and tose which were equal to or greater than this hight (Terry and Breedlove 1982). Total brush cmpetition basal area per hectare was then clculated for each diameter-height class.

One way analysis of variance procedures were ued to determine if significant differences eisted among treatments with regard to pine gowth, stand density, fusiform rust incidence, sil physical properties, and hardwood cmpetition. A 0.05 F-test was used for testing oerall treatment differences. Duncan's New Mltiple Range test was subsequently used to ealuate differences among treatment means when oerall treatment differences were significant.

In order to obtain base-line data on height gowth and physical properties on a relatively udisturbed Wilcox soil, two natural loblolly pne stands, ages 46 and 43, were studied near te study area. Two dominant sample trees that hd been free to grow from an early age as dtermined by increment boring were selected wthin a 0.04 hectare circular plot at each ste. Selected trees were then felled and annual hight growth was determined on each tree using sem analysis. Soil physical properties were dtermined with the same procedures used on the ste-prepared plots. Although the natural stand hight growth and soils data cannot be satistically compared to the site preparation sudy data, they provide useful points of rference.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Stand Characteristics

Significant survival and stocking dfferences were not observed across the three teatments. The topographic positions where this sudy is located, an upper slope position with a gntle grade, is conducive to drainage of excess srface water which is beneficial for seedling srvival.

Evaluation of the height growth differences aong tree crush (TC), sheared and piled (SP), ad sheared-piled and bedded (SPB) treatments sowed significant pine growth responses to both searing-piling and the bedding treatments (able 3). Average pine heights on the bedded stes were 1 m or 20 percent greater than on the cushed sites and 0.4 m or 7 percent greater than o the sheared and piled treatment. Height of te tallest 500 trees per hectare showed similar trends with trees on the SPB plots being taller than the TC and SP plots by 16 percent and 5 percent, respectively.

Table 3. Loblolly pine stand characteristics at plantation age eight years by site preparation treatment - Kemper Co., Miss., site preparation trial.

Variable	Site Preparation Treatment Tree-Crush	 Shear-Pile	 Shear-Pile-Bed
Average Height (m) $\bar{x}$	4.9 a *	5.5 b	5.9 c
($S_{\bar{x}}$)	(0.3)	(0.2)	(0.2)
Dominant Height (m)	5.8 a	6.4 b	6.7 b
	(0.4)	(0.2)	(0.2)
DBH (cm)	6.7 a	7.9 b	9.0 c
	(0.5)	(0.4)	(0.2)
BA (m^2/ha)	4.7 a	7.8 b	9.4 b
	(1.0)	(1.0)	(1.2)
Vol. (m^3/ha)	11.5 a	19.3 b	24.0 c
	(1.1)	(1.2)	(1.3)
Survival (%)	72 a	82 a	71 a
	(7.8)	(3.8)	(9.5)
Trees/ha	1268 a	1584 a	1458 a
	(158)	(100)	(126)
Incidence of Bole Cankers (%)	14.9 a	25.8 b	34.0 c
	(1.9)	(3.2)	(3.8)

* Means with the same letter are not significantly different at the 0.05 risk level.

The growth advantages exhibited by the bedded plots were evident at an early age (fig. 2). Height growth differences between treatments still appear to be increasing after eight years. Height growth increments in the age five to eight-year period were 3.7, 3.6, and 3.1 m for the SPB, SP, and TC treatments, respectively. The height growth increment in the natural stands for the same period was 3.3 m; these trees were growing at nearly the same rate as those on the tree-crushed plots.

Whether the bedded sites will continue to express a height growth rate advantage over flat-planted sites on these soils will be answered in time. Wilhite and Jones (1981) found the height growth advantage of a bedded slash pine plantation to decline from 3.3 m to 1.7 m for ages 17 to 35, respectively, when compared to trees on flat-planted sites. Other researchers have observed this decline at earlier ages, e.g., height advantages were disappearing between the fifth and tenth years for slash pine in south Florida (Lennartz and McMinn 1973). However, on poorly drained fine-textured soils in the N. C. Lower Coastal Plain, early pine height growth response gains appear to be maintained at least through age 18 (Hughes et al. 1979).

Average pine diameters were 6.7 cm, 7.9 cm, and 9.0 cm for TC, SP, SPB treatments, respectively (table 3). Pine basal area on bedded plots was twice that on TC plots but not significantly different from the SP treatment.

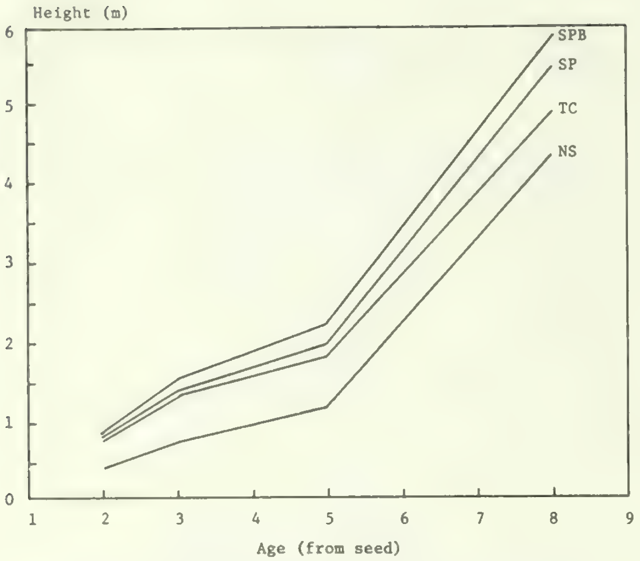


Figure 2. Loblolly pine average tree height as a function of age for shear-pile-bed (SPB), shear-pile (SP), and tree-crushed (TC) site prepared plots and adjacent natural stands (NS). Site prepared areas are on Falkner and Wilcox soils and the natural stand is on a Wilcox soil, Kemper Co., Miss.

The bedding treatment produced the largest total wood volume after eight years in the field. Total pine volume on the bedded plots is currently 110 percent greater than that on the TC plots and 24 percent greater than on the SP treatment (table 3).

It has been reported that by increasing the early growth rate of pine, the proportion of trees infected with fusiform rust can increase substantially (Derr and Mann 1977). That observation also is supported by the results of this study; 34 percent of the trees on the SPB treatment have stem cankers, while only 26 percent and 15 percent of the trees were infected on the SP and TC plots, respectively. Most of the infected trees could be removed during the first commercial pulpwood thinning. Because of the growth advantage on the bedded site, the first thinning would occur earlier than on the other treatments and, except for some possible early mortality, the actual pine volume and value loss associated with the relatively high rust infection level on the bedded plots may not be too great. Future monitoring of this study will identify any losses in merchantable pine volume associated with rust infection.

Soil Physical Properties

Soil physical properties were not monitored before the harvest operation or immediately after the site preparation treatments; such data would have defined the effects of logging and site preparation on soil physical properties. Others, however, have found harvesting and site preparation treatment effects to be long lasting (Terry 1978, Switzer et al. 1978); therefore, the differences we found likely resulted fr harvest and site preparation treatments.

Shearing and piling increased surface bulk density values by 7 percent over TC pl (table 4). This increase was probably caus the increased contact of the shear and rake tractors with bare mineral soil and some to removal during the piling operation. Beddin after the SP operation reduced soil bulk de The bulk density value on the SP plots prob represents a soil physical condition which limit growth somewhat. Foil and Ralston (1 reported a study which demonstrated a trend reduced seedling growth as soil bulk densit increased from 1.0 to 1.4 g/cc. The increa soil bulk density on the SP plots probably represents "moderate" soil damage if a bulk density of 1.4 g/cc is considered to be sev compaction on a fine-textured soil.

Table 4. Soil physical properties by treatment - Kemper Miss., site preparation trial.

Soil Variable (0-7.6 cm depth)		Site Preparation Treatment TC	SP	SPB	Natura
Bulk Density	$\bar{x}$	1.19 a *	1.27 b	1.16 a	1
(g/cc)	$(S\bar{x})$	(0.02)	(0.03)	(0.06)	(C
Macropore Space		14.2 a	13.8 a	18.8 b	1
(Vol. %)		(0.4)	(0.2)	(1.5)	(
Micropore Space		38.1 a	35.4 a	35.2 a	4
(Vol. %)		(0.8)	(0.8)	(0.9)	(
Total Pore		52.2 a	49.3 a	54.0 a	5
Space (Vol. %)		(0.7)	(0.6)	(1.8)	(
Organic Matter		4.69 a	3.76 a	3.05 a	4
(Wt. %)		(0.5)	(0.32)	(0.52)	(

* Means with same letter are not significantly different 0.05 risk level.

Bedding significantly increased the macropore volume on the bedded sites without decreasing the micropore volume (table 4). probably occurred by rearranging the strongl developed soil aggregates into a more porou medium without destroying the aggregates. fine-textured soils, large, freely draining macropores are especially important to good drainage and aeration. These conditions in are conducive to rapid development of new ro

Soil bulk density under the natural sta was less than that on the treated sites (table 4). These differences could be partl to soil textural differences that occur betw the two sites. The natural stands had fine textured surface soil than the site preparat study, i.e., clay versus silty clay loam. W the surface textural differences in mind, th soils on the modified sites may not have bee dramatically altered by logging or site preparation but some disturbance has occurre evidenced by the increase in bulk density on eared-piled plots. In an intensive forest nagement operation, more entries and equipment afficing are required on a given land unit to complish management goals. This fact coupled th shortened rotation ages could have additive trimental effects on soil physical properties. me form of soil amelioration, such as disking, pping or bedding, or combinations of the three, obably will be needed to amend soil physical operties (Moehring 1970).

Brush Competition

Brush competes with pine for both light and isture during the growing season on these atwoods sites. While soil moisture levels are gh through a portion of the year, it is often ry low during the later part of the growing ason. Vigorous sprouting occurs on those sites ere hardwood root stocks are left intact such the TC sites. Shearing, piling, and bedding, eferably the latter, eliminate much of this rdwood sprouting problem because root-raking d bedding sever and expose hardwood roots to ssication by sun and wind. In this study the ear and pile treatment reduced hardwood mpetition proportionally more than the bedding eatment. This probably is due to the rake and le part of the treatment which scarified the il surface. Scarification and raking into the il, however, should be minimized or eliminated ring piling to avoid topsoil removal. Bedding ould be able to reduce hardwood competition to ceptable levels. After eight years TC plots d 195 percent more total brush basal area than e SPB plots and 145 percent more brush basal ea than the SP treatment (table 5); brush basal ea, in fact, exceeded the pine basal area by 19 rcent on the TC plots (table 4).

Total basal area of pine and brush was irly constant among treatments (table 5). The re intensive site preparation treatments peared to redistribute basal area from brush to ne in almost a 1:1 proportion.

ble 5. Total hardwood basal area in an age eight loblolly pine plantation by site preparation treatment - Kemper Co., Miss. site preparation trial.

	Basal Area (m^2/ha)		
	Site Preparation Treatment		
mponent	Tree Crush	Shear-Pile	Shear-Pile-Bed
ne	4.7 a * (1.0)	7.8 b (1.0)	9.4 b (1.2)
ush	5.6 a (0.8)	2.3 b (0.6)	1.9 b (0.4)
tal	10.3 (1.3)	10.1 (0.6)	11.3 (1.0)

* Means with the same letter are not significantly different at the 0.05 risk level.

CONCLUSIONS

Identification of site specific factors limiting the growth potential of pine is a prerequisite to developing effective, economically sound site preparation prescriptions. Brush competition was probably the principle factor limiting pine growth on this study site. Total basal area, pine plus brush, was very similar on all treatments. Site preparation noticeably redistributed basal area from brush to pine as site preparation intensity increased from TC to SPB. Incremental gains in tree growth were greater between the SP and TC treatments than between the SP and SPB treatments. The most plausible explanation for this trend is that brush, which was reduced most by the SP treatment, was limiting pine growth more than the soil physical properties which were modified by bedding. Trees on bedded plots, however, did show a growth advantage over trees on the SP plots and this additional growth gain could be associated with improvement in soil macropore space and additional hardwood control.

One can only speculate what tree growth rates would have been on a chemical site preparation treatment with complete hardwood control or on the TC plots had the hardwoods been removed by burning or chemical means. Disking also could be considered an alternative treatment to bedding on these soils because disking can effectively control hardwoods and should amend soil physical properties.

It could be argued that careful logging debris removal with minimum soil compaction and displacement followed by disking would be preferred treatments on these soils although this combination of treatments was not tested in this study. If a high proportion of a tract was more poorly drained, then bedding may be needed instead of disking. Chemical site preparation treatments also could be proposed as an alternative site preparation treatment since in this case hardwood competition was the factor most limiting growth, but these treatments can not amend soil physical properties and the probability of chemical treatment success is usually less than that with mechanical treatments.

The early pine growth gains exhibited on the more intensively site prepared plots in this study will either be (1) maintained, (2) decreased, or (3) increased through the rotation. Regardless of the growth pattern that finally occurs, the increased early growth on the more intensively prepared sites may represent a significant financial opportunity because of the early age that commercial thinning can be initiated.

LITERATURE CITED

Anonymous.
1980. Ten-year progress report WS-35, Mechanical site preparation in heavy clay soils. American Can Co., Butler, Ala.

Baker, J.B.
1973. Bedding and fertilization influence on slash pine development in the Florida sandhills. For. Sci. 19:135-138.

Blake, G. R.
Bulk density, pp. 374-390. In C. A. Black et al. (eds.), Methods of Soil Analysis. Part 1. Amer. Soc. Agron., Madison, Wisc.

Bower, D. and D. Schmitt.
1970. Volume tables for young loblolly, slash and longleaf pines in plantations in south Mississippi. USDA For. Serv. Res. Note SO-102. 6 p. S. For. Exp. Stn., New Orleans.

Cain, M. D.
1978. Planted loblolly and slash pine response to bedding and flat disking on a poorly drained site - an update. USDA For. Serv. Res. Note SO-237. 6 p. S. For. Exp. Stn., New Orleans.

Cain, M. D. and W. F. Mann, Jr.
1980. Annual brush control increases early growth of loblolly pine. S. J. Appl. For. 4:67-70.

Cassel, D. K.
1974. In situ unsaturated soil hydraulic conductivity for selected North Dakota soils. Bull. 494., Agric. Exp. Stn., North Dakota State Univ. of Agric. and Appl. Sci., Fargo, North Dakota. 20 p.

DeBolt, B. C.
1974. A high sample volume procedure for the colorimetric determination of soil organic matter. Comm. Soil Sci. Plant Anal. 5:131-137.

Derr, H. J. and W. F. Mann, Jr.
1977. Bedding poorly drained sites for planting loblolly and slash pines in southwest Louisiana. USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. SO-134. 5 p. S. For. Exp. Stn., New Orleans.

Foil, R. R. and C. W. Ralston.
1967. The establishment and growth of loblolly pine seedlings on compacted soils. Soil Sci. Soc. Amer. Proc. 31:565-568.

Haines, L. W. and S. G. Haines.
1977. Site preparation for regeneration, p. 176-195. In W. E. Balmer (ed.) Proc. Soil Moisture ... Site Productivity Symp., Myrtle Beach, SC, June 1978. USDA For. Serv., Southeast. Area State and Priv. For., South. and Southeast. For. Exp. Stns.

Haines. L. W. and W. L. Pritchett.
1965. The effects of site preparation on the availability of soil nutrients and on slash pine growth. Soil and Crop Sci. Soc. Fla. Proc. 25:356-364.

Hughes, J. H., R. G. Campbell, H. W. Duzan, C. S. Dudley.
1979. Site index adjustments for intensiv management treatments at North Carolina. Weyerhaeuser Co. For. Res. Tech. Rep. 042-1404/79. 51 p.

Lennartz, M. R. and J. W. McMinn.
1973. Growth of two varieties of slash pi on prepared sites in south Florida: 10-y results. USDA For. Serv. Res. Paper SE-1 10 p. Southeast. For. Exp. Stn., Ashevill NC.

Mann, W. F., Jr. and H. J. Derr.
1970. Response of planted loblolly and sla pine to disking on a poorly drained site. USDA For. Serv. Res. Note SO-110. 5 p. South. For. Exp. Stn., New Orleans.

Mann, W. F., Jr. and J. M. McGilvray.
1974. Response of slash pine to bedding an phosphorous application in southeastern flatwoods. USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. SO- 9 p. South. For. Exp. Stn., New Orleans, LA.

McKee, W. H., Jr. and E. Shoulders.
1970. Depth of water table and redox potential of soil affect slash pine growt For. Sci. 16:399-402.

McKee, W. H., Jr. and E. Shoulders.
1974. Slash pine biomass response to site preparation and soil properties. Soil Sc Soc. Am. Proc. 38:144-148.

McMinn, J. W.
1969. Preparing sites for pine planting in south Florida. USDA For. Serv. Res. Note SE-117. 5 p. Southeast. For. Exp. Stn., Asheville, NC.

Moehring, D. M.
1970. Forest soil improvement through cultivation. J. For. 68:328-331.

North Carolina State Forest Fertilization Cooperative.
1975. Fifth annual report NCSFFC. Sch. Fo Res., N. C. State Univ., Raleigh. 70 p.

Owens, E. G.
1973. Site preparation on coastal plain pinelands. Westvaco Res. Rep. No. 66. Summerville Research Center, Summerville, SC. 14 p.

Schultz, R. P.
1976. Environmental change after site preparation and slash pine planting on a flatwoods site. USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. SE-156. 20 p. South. For. Exp. Stn., Ashville, NC.

Schultz, R. P. and L. P. Wilhite.
1974. Changes in a flatwoods site following intensive preparation. For. Sci. 20:230-237.

Steel, R. G. D. and J. H. Torrie.
1980. Principles and Procedures of Statistics: A Biometrical Approach. McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York City, New York. 633 p.

Stransky. J. J.
1981. Site preparation effects on soil bulk density and pine seedling growth. S. J. Appl. For. 5:176-179.

tzer, G. L., D. M. Moehring, and T. A. Terry.
978. Clearcutting vs. alternative timber harvesting - stand regeneration systems: Effects on soils and environment of the South, p. 447-515. *In* C. T. Youngberg (ed.) Proceedings: Forest Soils and Land Use, Fifth N. Am. For. Soils Conf., Colorado State Univ.

ry T. A.
978. The factors related to the growth of intensively managed loblolly pine (*Pinus taeda* L.) on selected soils in the North Carolina Lower Coastal Plain, Ph.D Dissertation, N. C. State Univ., Raleigh, NC. 163 p.

ry, T. A.
979. Consequences of regeneration practices on soils and environment in the South: An overview. Weyerhaeuser Co. For. Res. Tech. Rep. 042-2111/79/34. 32 p.

Terry, T. A. and D. L. Breedlove.
1981. Hardwood competition effects on loblolly pine basal area in MS/AL plantations. Weyerhaeuser Co. For. Res. Tech. Rep. 050-3512/3. 20 p.

Terry, T. A. and J. H. Hughes.
1975. The effects of intensive management on planted loblolly pine (*Pinus taeda* L.) growth on poorly drained soils of the Atlantic Coastal Plain, p. 351-377. *In* B. Bernier and C. H. Winget (eds.) Forest Soils and Forest Land Management. Proc. Fourth N. Am. For. Soils Conf., Laval Univ., Quebec. Les Presses de L'Universite, Laval Quebec.

Wilhite. L. P. and E. P. Jones, Jr.
1981. Bedding effects in maturing slash pine stands. S. J. Appl. For. 5:24-27.

METHODS OF SERICEA LESPEDEZA ESTABLISHMENT FOR FOREST SOIL IMPROVEMENT[1]

Jacques R. Jorgensen and Charles E. Davis[2]

Abstract.--Sericea lespedeza stands for forestry purposes were established by several methods. Stand development was followed over two growing seasons. On soils that ranged from excessively to moderately well-drained, burning was nearly as effective for stand establishment as was intensive disking. Planting 11.2 kg of seed/ha produced adequate first-year stands. During the second growing season, stands, especially those with few plants, became more dense. Seeding in late winter was more successful than in late spring. Coating seeds improved initial stand establishment and second-year development on severe and moderate sites sown in the winter but had little influence on stands seeded in late spring. Phosphorus fertilization had no influence on first-year establishment or development, but second-year height of plants grown on moderate sites was improved by fertilization.

INTRODUCTION

Forest trees respond to nitrogen (N) application more frequently than to any other fertilizer element, and rising costs for N fertilizers have stimulated interest in biological fixation of N. The majority of N-fixing plants are not adapted to the forest environment[3], but sericea (Lespedeza cuneata (Dum.) G. Don) is an exception. Under forest plantation conditions, it has produced stands dense enough to fix substantial quantities of N (Jorgensen, 1981).[4] A great deal, however, must be learned about conditions for establishment and management of this valuable species.

In this paper we report research results about quantity of seeds needed to obtain an ad quate stand, methods of site preparation, seas of sowing, seed coating, application of P fertilizer, and quality of site for pine survival In our studies, sericea was successfully established on recently logged sites with mode amounts of site preparation. Costs of establi ment, competition effects on planted pines, an amounts of N fixed by the established stands a yet to be determined.

---

[1] Paper presented at Second Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982. Work supported by the U.S. Department of Energy, Assistant Secretary for the Environment, Office of Health and Environmental Research, under Interagency Agreement No. DE-AI10980SR10702.

[2] Research Soil Scientist, USDA Forest Service, Southeastern Forest Experiment Station, Research Triangle Park, NC, and Research Technician, Savannah River Ecology Laboratory, SRP, Aiken, SC.

[3] Jorgensen, J. R., and J. R. Craig. Legume in forestry: results of adaptability trials in the Southeast. USDA For. Serv., Res. Note. Southeast. For. Exp. Stn., Asheville, NC. (Manuscript submitted for publication).

[4] Jorgensen, J. R. 1981. Use of legumes in Southeastern forestry research. Proc. First Biennial Southern Silvicultural Res. Conf. USDA, For. Serv. Gen. Tech. Rep. SO-34. p. 205-211.

METHODS AND MATERIALS

The experimental areas were located on the annah River Project (SRP) south of Aiken, SC, n near Saxapahaw and Troy, NC. Experimental ra locations, soil series, the basic site preation they received, and the severity of the ie for tree seedling survival are given in ale 1. Soils ranged from excessively wellrined (Lakeland) to moderately well-drained Yhannah) and had received site preparation aging from very intensive windrowing, stumping n disking to burning or no preplanting disturace of slash and residual vegetation. In most ntances site preparation for tree planting preeed planting sericea by several months.

On all areas sowing rates were 5.6, 11.2, n 22.4 kg/ha of live seeds. Seeds were usually ch between late February and early March for h winter season and between mid-April and early la for the spring sowing. At the time of eding, ground rock phosphate (GRP), triple uerphosphate (TSP) or no phosphate was applied cthe plots. No other fertilizers or lime were plied. In some experimental areas, preinocuaed seeds with a lime coating were sown at one rmore rates in addition to uncoated seed. hre equipment was available, soils were lightly iked or raked after seeding and fertilizing to eermine the effect covering seeds and incorcating the fertilizer with soil had on stand eelopment. All seeds, except those that were cted and preinoculated were inoculated within a da or two of sowing.

Each area included three replicates in some form of block design. Plots within blocks were usually 6.1 x 6.1 meters. Where seeds were covered with soil by disking with a small tractor, plots were split into disked and undisked segments. If seeds were covered by hand-raking, individual plots were assigned the raking treatment in combination with other treatments and the design was an incomplete randomized block factorial. Seeds were covered on only four areas, all in 1981; three of these areas were on the SRP. Coated seeds were sown on most areas in 1981, but were not used in 1982. Ground rock phosphate was the primary P fertilizer on the SRP experimental areas in 1981. Triple superphosphate was used on other areas in 1981 and on plots sown in 1982.

Sericea populations and height of stands planted in 1981 on the SRP were measured in July or August of 1981 and 1982. Plant numbers and height were tallied in two mechanically located 0.093 m^2 areas in each half plot. Although the presence of more than 10 plants per half plot was noted, we believe that more than 10 seedlings do not enhance stand establishment or development, especially on severe sites. Plants in stands established in 1982 were tallied only once in early August 1982.

Since not all experimental sites received the same treatments, only specific data sets or portions of data sets were used to determine the importance of the experimental factors (table 1).

Table 1.--Experimental area descriptions, treatments and use of data

Soil series	Location[1]	Year seeded	Site preparation	Hazard[2] rating	Treatment[3] applied	Table application
Cecil	Sax.	1981	Windrowing, disking	Moderate	C,F,W,R,S	3
"	"	1982	" "	"	W, R	3
Dothan	SRP	"	Moderate burn	"	F, WS, R	2-4
Eustus-Lakeland	"	"	" "	Severe	F, WS, R	2-4
Lakeland	"	1981	Hot burn	"	F,WS,R,S	2-7
"	"	"	Windrowing, disking	"	C,F,WS,R,S	2-7
"	"	"	None	"	F,WS,R,S	3
"	"	"	Windrowing, disking	"	C,F,W, S	7
Lucy	"	1982	Moderate burn	Moderate	F, WS, R	2-4
Orangeburg	"	1981	" "	"	F,WS,R,S	2-7
Orangeburg-Lucy	"	"	Windrowing, disking	"	C,F,WS,R,S	2-7
Orangeburg-Red Bay	"	1982	Moderate burn	"	F, WS, R	2-4
Pinkston	Troy	"	Windrowing, disking	"	W, R	3
Yauhannah	SRP	"	"	"	F, WS, R	2-4

[1] SRP = Savannah River Project, Aiken, SC
Sax. = Saxapahaw, NC
Troy = Troy, NC

[2] Hazard rating = degree of expected tree seedling mortality during first two growing seasons

[3] Treatments--may not be complete factorials on each site.
C = Seed covered with soil in some plots
F = Comparison of ground rock phosphate or triple superphosphate, with no fertilizer
WS = Winter and spring plantings
W = Winter planting only
R = Three seeding rates--5.6, 11.2, 22.4 kg/ha

Sites were grouped according to the Soil Conservation Service rating for pine seedling survival into severe and moderate to slight hazard locations. Severe hazard sites, five in all, were droughty Lakeland and Eustis-Lakeland soils low in organic matter. The remaining nine moderate to slight hazard sites, henceforth referred to as moderate, had surface soils that ranged from clayey on one of the Orangeburg sites, to sandy for a site with the Lucy series.

RESULTS

Site Hazard

First-year winter seeding results showed about 25 percent difference, 38.9 vs 28.3 plants/m^2, in favor of the moderate sites (table 2). Spring seeding produced a much lower seedling density: 16.5 plants/m^2 on the moderate vs 11.4 on the severe sites, but the percent difference between the sites was about the same as in the winter sowing. Seedling stocking averaged 67 percent on moderate sites sown in the winter compared to 55 percent on the severe sites. The spring sowing on both sites averaged only 27 percent stocking with no difference due to site severity. On both the moderate and severe sites, the 5.6 kg sowing rate produced fewer plants and had lower stocking than did the two higher rates. The 22.4 kg seeding rate was not clearly superior in number of seedlings or percent stocking to the 11.2 kg seeding rate.

Site Preparation

Type of site preparation influenced the number of plants obtained at each seeding rate (table 3). When seeds were sown on unprepared areas, which contained logging slash as well as a residual forest floor, no significant sericea stand was obtained in the first growing sea severe sites. The few plants that were foun growing where the soil had been bared by har- vesting or tree planting. Unfortunately, n moderate completely unprepared sites were available for comparison.

Table 2. Effect of site quality, season and rate of sowing on sericea density and stocking after the first growing season[1]

Rate of sowing	Seedling density winter	Seedling density spring	Seedling stocking winter	Seedling stocking spring
kg/ha	---plants/m^2---		----percent----	
		Severe sites		
5.6	19.4	1.8	42	11
11.2	31.9	7.7	55	17
22.4	33.7	24.6	67	56
$\bar{x}$	28.3	11.4	55	28
		Moderate sites		
5.6	22.9	9.2	53	15
11.2	39.8	20.8	71	33
22.4	54.0	19.4	78	31
$\bar{x}$	38.9	16.5	67	26

[1] Summary of data from nine areas, table 1

[2] Percent of 0.093 m^2 plots with one or more plants

The two major methods of site preparati reduce competition to newly planted pines, burning and windrowing plus disking, were bo effective compared to no preparation in increasing the number of sericea plants. Or severe sites, burning was somewhat inferior windrowing plus disking, 22.2 vs 38.0 plants in promoting establishment. On the moderate sites, however, there were no important diff ces in the site preparation treatments; burn areas had an average of 33.7 plants/m^2 and windrowed plus disked areas had 40.5. One a of Yauhannah soil that had been windrowed bu disked had a plant density about twice that other moderate sites. The greater plant den was probably due to the relatively high seas water table on the site when seed were sown.

Rate of Sowing

The 5.6 kg sowing rate generally produc fewer plants than the two higher rates (tab 3). On the severe sites, there were no diffe ces in the numbers of plants produced by the and 22.4 rates, but on the moderate sites seedling density generally increased with see rate for all site preparation treatments.

Season of Planting

Season of planting significantly influen seedling density, and interacted with site quality and year of planting (table 4). Seve and moderate sites planted in the winter had

Table 3.--Effect of site preparation and winter sowing of uncoated sericea seed at three rates on sericea density after the first growing season[1].

Seeding rate	Severe sites: No preparation	Severe sites: Burned	Severe sites: Windrowed disked	Moderate sites: Burned	Moderate sites: Windrowed disked	Moderate sites: Wind
-kg/ha-	-----plants/m^2-----					
5.6	No stand	21.5	15.1	17.2	25.6	[illegible]
11.2		16.5	54.9	40.6	35.5	[illegible]
22.4		28.5	44.1	43.3	60.5	[illegible]
$\bar{x}$		22.2	38.0	33.7	40.5	[illegible]

[1] Summary of data from 13 areas, table 1

ble 4.--Influence of planting year, site quality and season of sowing on sericea density and percent of plots stocked with seedlings[1]

Year	Seedling density		Seedling stocking[2]	
	Winter	Spring	Winter	Spring
	--plants/m^2--		----percent----	
Severe sites				
1981	24.9	16.5	56	41
1982	18.3	0	50	0
Moderate sites				
1981	42.8	32.0	64	43
1982	35.9	6.3	65	16

[1] Summary of data from nine areas, table 1.

[2] Percent of 0.093 m^2 plots with one or more plants

ae plant densities of 18.3 to 42.8 plants/m^2. atings made in the winter of 1982 resulted in ads about 80 percent of the density obtained evear before. Spring plantings made in 1982 ouced few satisfactory stands. Severe sites dho plants and moderate sites had only 6.3 ats/m^2 whereas in 1981, stocking averaged 24.2 ats/m^2 on both sites. Stocking percent was oely related to the number of plants/m^2.

Seedbed Preparation

Disking for seedbed preparation and ferlzer incorporation on moderate sites resulted pring sown sericea stands that were only intly less dense than were stands from winter wngs (table 5). On moderate sites that were tdisked, spring sowing produced first-season ad densities that were only about 60 percent hose from the winter plantings. Tallies of ads planted in both seasons on disked moderate its showed an average density increase of from lants/m^2 the first year to 64 plants/m^2 the ecnd year. On undisked areas with the same retments there was a small unimportant increase r 40 to 44 plants/m^2.

On severe hazard sites, disking in preparai for winter planting increased first-year erity from 36.4 to 57.7 plants/m^2, but the nease in number of plants through the second eaon was without regard to disking.

Spring sowings on undisked moderate sites hed no increase in the number of plants from hfirst to second year, but on disked areas the end year population was 149 percent of the it. Undisked severe sites sown in the spring o than doubled plant populations between the it and second growing seasons, increasing from 1 to 29.7 plants/m^2. No sericea stands were sblished in the spring on severe sites that a been disked for seedbed preparation.

Table 5.--Effect of site quality, season of sowing, and disking for seedbed preparation and fertilizer incorporation on sericea density over two growing seasons[1]

Site quality	Season of planting	Disked		Not disked	
		First season	Second season	First season	Second season
		---------------plants/m^2-------------			
Moderate	Winter	44.9	72.5	50.0	56.8
	Spring	37.7	56.1	30.4	31.6
Severe	Winter	57.7	85.1	36.4	61.3
	Spring	--	--	11.6	29.7

[1] Summary of data from four areas, table 1

Disking appeared to have a larger overall effect on plant density in the second growing season than in the first (table 5). In winter sowings, there were 43 and 59 plants/m^2 for first and second growing seasons on undisked sites and 51 and 79 on disked sites. Spring sowings on moderate sites produced 30 and 32 plants/m^2 for first and second growing seasons on undisked sites and 38 and 56 on disked areas.

Fertilization

Phosphorus fertilization had little important influence on plant density, percent stocking, or plant height during first year of sericea establishment (table 6). On severe and moderate sites with and without P, there were 41 plants/m^2. Stocking averaged 68 and 79 percent and plant height 21 and 18 cm, respectively, for fertilized and unfertilized plots. By the end of the second growing season, however, fertilized plots averaged 63 plants/m^2 or 52 percent more than after the first season. On unfertilized plots only 49 plants were present, an increase of 20 percent. Second-year percent stocking was not affected by fertilization nor was plant height on the severe site, but fertilized plants on the moderate site averaged 89 cm tall compared to 68 cm for plants on unfertilized plots.

Table 6.--Effect of P fertilization on density, percent stocking, and height over two growing seasons on sericea stands developed by winter sowing 11.2 kg of seed/ha[1]

Fertilizer	Site	Density		Stocking[2]		Height	
		First season	Second season	First season	Second season	First season	Second season
		----plants/m^2---		-----percent----		-------cm-------	
P	Severe	42.1	68.4	69	97	18	55
	Moderate	40.4	57.3	67	94	24	89
None	Severe	38.2	48.2	67	94	18	56
	Moderate	44.1	50.6	92	92	17	68

[1] Summary of data from four areas, table 1

[2] Percent of 0.093 m^2 plots with one or more plants

Seed Coating

The use of coated seeds, had an important positive influence on sericea density in winter sowings on both severe and moderate sites (table 7). At the end of the first season, on these areas, there were 52 plants/m^2 derived from coated seed and only 40 from uncoated seed, with similar increases due to coating on both sites. During the second season on the two sites, the number of plants derived from uncoated seed increased by about 9 to 49/m^2, but when coated seed were used, the number increased by 19 to 71 plants/m^2. The majority of increase from both types of seed occurred on the severe site. Density on the moderate site remained about the same. When seed were sown in the spring there was no overall difference due to coating at the first or second growing season. Most of these data were extremely variable, but it is believed variation is due to experimental error rather than to any treatment effects.

Table 7.--Effect of seeding rate, seed coating, site quality, and season of sowing on sericea density over two growing seasons[1]

Rate of seeding	Seed coating	Severe sites		Moderate sites		All sites	
		First season	Second season	First season	Second season	First season	Second season
		plants/m^2					
		Winter sowing					
5.6	+[2]	35.0	74.2	48.4	44.6		
	-[3]	21.0	26.4	14.6	28.5		
11.2	+	46.0	80.7	35.2	64.6		
	-	38.2	54.6	50.5	50.0		
22.4	+	62.1	81.6	88.1	82.3		
	-	47.0	65.3	67.8	70.5		
$\bar{x}$	+	47.7	78.8	57.2	63.8	52.4	71.3
	-	35.4	48.8	44.3	49.7	39.8	49.2
		Spring sowing					
5.6	+	11.4	17.6	19.4	44.6		
	-	2.7	32.0	21.6	27.4		
11.2	+	6.6	26.5	31.7	24.5		
	-	9.7	19.5	28.2	30.1		
22.4	+	6.4	36.0	68.8	50.0		
	-	37.0	46.6	38.8	29.6		
$\bar{x}$	+	8.1	26.7	40.0	39.7	24.0	33.2
	-	16.4	32.4	29.5	29.0	23.0	30.7

[1] Summary of data from five areas, table 1
[2] + = coated seed
[3] - = uncoated seed

DISCUSSION

Good stands of sericea lespedeza can be established at seeding rates as low as 5.6 kg of seed/ha. This rate is only about an eighth of that recommended for agronomic use. Since plants are harvested during the first year in an agronomic stand, initial plant development and seed production are limited and a dense initial stand is required. In forestry, plants may develop and produce seeds during the first season and have only minor harvesting by wildlife. Thus, effective stands of sericea for forest management may be less than fully stocked at the end of the first growing season and still completely occ the site by the end of the second growing sea

Areas sown in the winter with 5.6 kg of seed/ha had approximately 20 plants/m^2 at the end of the first season and were predicted to have 37 plants by the end of the second. This second-year population is believed sufficient t produce the biomass needed to support an important amount of N fixation and to compete with other vegetation. However, many sites sown wit 5.6 kg of seed will have fewer than 10-15 plants/m^2 and some insurance for good stands m be had by increasing the sowing rate to 11 kg seed/ha. Any heavier sowing will not generall result in a denser stand at the end of the sec growing season. Sericea stands that are established at low seeding rates, may be more sensitive to an adverse environment--drought, competition, browsing--than will somewhat dens stands that develop from higher seeding rates.

A major precaution to be taken for assuran of successful sericea establishment is to sow seed in late winter. Seeds sown during this period are more likely to have sufficient moisture for germination and the young plants have more time for development to resist summe droughts than will spring sown plants. Seeds s in April or May produced only half the plant de sity as earlier sowings. This reduction in initial density was followed by fewer plants at the end of the second growing season compared to stands established from winter sowings.

Over the 2-year test period reasonably uniform sericea establishment was achieved on moderate and severe sites by sowing in the winter. Spring sowings were satisfactory in 1981, but failed in 1982. Undoubtedly, if there is a choice between early and late sowing, early sowing is preferred. If early sowing cannot be done, is it better to sow late or wait until the following year? There is no documented answer this time.

Some site preparation is necessary to establish a sericea stand and carry it through the end of the first growing season. Seeds sown on areas without any preparation failed to produce significant stands of plants. The preparation need not be extensive; burning is sufficient. Stands on burned areas tended to be less dense than those on windrowed and disked areas, especially on severe sites, but on moderate sites the difference in stand density due to preparation method was small.

Disking to prepare seedbeds and to incorporate fertilizer is an effective method of increasing stand density the first year. During the second growing season, in most instances, stands on disked and undisked areas developed at the same rate. Thus, the most costly aspect of sericea establishment, separate seedbed preparation, is unnecessary or may in part be replaced wing somewhat more than the minimum amount ed.

ertilization with P had no effect on stand lishment and only influenced height of s on moderate sites during the second ng season. This result may not be unusual he SRP area, since much of it was farmland was taken out of agriculture about 30 years Residual P, in the soil from crop fer- ation, apparently was sufficient for eas' initial growth and enabled it to com- with weeds. Although plant density was not enced by fertilization, stand height on ate sites was. Stand height is usually ed to biomass and this to the plants' capa- to fix N. Thus, larger plants on fertilized are capable of more N fixation than are an number of smaller plants on unfertilized . In the Lower Coastal Plain of North ina on low-P, nonagricultural soils, sericea lished without P fertilization was prac- ly eliminated by native weed competition 4 after establishment, and even at age 2, s were poor compared to$_4$those receiving P lizer (Jorgensen 1981).[4]

eed coating improved both initial and d-growing-season stands derived from winter g on both severe and moderate sites. However, coated seed showed no overall advantage when sown in the spring. Whether or not coated seed should be used will depend on cost and ease of seed placement, especially if large areas are to be sown from the air.

CONCLUSIONS

Sericea stands can be successfully established on unfertile, acid forest soils by:

1. Preparing the site prior to planting by burning or other procedures which will expose mineral soil.

2. Sowing hulled, scarified, inoculated sericea seeds at a minimum rate of 5.6 kg and maximum of 11.2 kg of live seed/ha.

3. Sowing seeds in late winter, after severe cold weather has passed (sericea seedlings are cold-tolerant).

4. Applying approximately 50 kg of P/ha for stand maintenance and development on sites that are low in available P.

SOIL RESPONSE TO CLEARCUTTING AND SITE PREPARATION IN EAST TEXAS[1]

J. J. Stransky, L. K. Halls, and K. G. Watterston[2]

Abstract.-- On an east Texas forest site, clearcutting and site preparation did not change the soil pH. Chopping and KG blading significantly reduced organic matter in the surface soil, while burning slightly increased it. Organic matter showed a positive and significant relationship to potassium, calcium and magnesium. All site treatments increased phosphorus and potassium, with the greatest increase on the burned plots. Calcium and magnesium contents also increased with burning but decreased with KG blading. Burning appeared better than the other treatments for maintaining or improving the soil nutrient regime. However, planted loblolly pine seedlings survived and grew best with mechanical treatments that controlled competing vegetation.

INTRODUCTION

For fifty years clearcutting has been a serious issue among forest managers. In the late twenties and early thirties, many European foresters expressed concern about the effects of clearcutting on the soil. Wittich (1930) found no biological changes in the soil after clearcutting in Germany and attributed temporary changes in the nutrient regime to the transition from one plant successional stage to another. Fehér (1931) in Hungary supported Wittich's findings that the effects of clearcutting are short-lived and are reversed by the beneficial shading of upcoming vegetation.

The clearcutting issue became more complicated with the addition of questions about its unsightliness and loss of wildlife habitat. But the current controversy centers largely on loss of soil productivity. As a result, court decisions have banned clearcutting in many parts of the United States. Facts are needed to clarify some of the misunderstandings between propone and opponents of clearcutting and site prepa Recent studies in New Hampshire and in the ce and southern Appalachians indicated relativel little adverse effects from clearcutting on s nutrients (Reinhart 1973).

OBJECTIVE

The objective of this study was to deter soil response to timber clearcutting and the preparation of planting sites in the loblolly shortleaf pine-hardwood forest type that cove nearly 70 million ac in the South and reaches westernmost extension in east Texas.

STUDY SITE

The study site was located on a nearly l to gently sloping terrace on the Angelina Riv Jasper County, Texas. The tract, owned by Temp Eastex, Incorporated, had never been cleared agricultural crops, although it was probably grazed by livestock in the past (Stransky 197

The area is part of the Gulf Coastal Plai Quaternary deposits, which are underlain by sa sandstones, and clays of the Tertiary's Oligoc period (Dumble 1918).

Soils belong to the Bernaldo-Elysian comp and to the Sacul series. Bernaldo-Elysian soil moundy and occur in such a complex pattern tha separation is very difficult. Bernaldo soils (Glossic Paleudalfs, fine-loamy siliceous) occ the lower part of the mounds and most of the

---

[1] Paper presented at the Second Biennial Southern Silvicultural Research Conference. Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Research Forester and Project Leader (retired), respectively, Southern Forest Experiment Station, USDA Forest Service, Wildlife Habitat and Silviculture Laboratory, Nacogdoches, Texas 75962; maintained in cooperation with the School of Forestry, Stephen F. Austin State University, where Dr. Watterston is professor of forest soils. The study was established and is maintained with the assistance of Temple-Eastex, Incorporated of Jasper, Texas.

ining low areas, and compose about 50 percent
he mapped areas. Elysian soils (Haplic
sudalfs, coarse-loamy, siliceous) occupy most
he large mounds and compose about 40 percent
he area. The major difference between these
s is that the sandy surface layer is more
20 inches thick on the Elysian soil, but is
ner on the Bernaldo. Slopes of both soils
e from 0 to 3 percent. These are well drained,
rately permeable soils that have slow runoff.

Sacul soils (Aquic Hapludalfs, clayey,
d) occur at the head of drains and normally
a concave topography. They occupy slopes
1 to 6 percent, are moderately well drained,
have slow permeability.

Summers are hot and humid, and the winters
. The growing season is about 240 days long.
al rainfall averages about 51 inches, but in
, 1973, and 1974 it was 54, 87, and 70 inches;
n interfering with planned study activities.

On the experimental site, loblolly pine
us taeda L.) and some shortleaf pine (*Pinus*
nata Mill.) occurred in admixture with
hern red oak (*Quercus falcata* Michx.), post
(*Quercus stellata* Wang.), water oak (*Quercus*
a L.), sweetgum (*Liquidambar styraciflua* L.),
blackgum (*Nyssa sylvatica* Marsh.).

Prominent shrubs were American beautyberry
licarpa americana L.), yaupon (*Ilex vomitoria*
), blackberry (*Rubus* spp.), and southern
yrtle (*Myrica cerifera* L.). Carolina jessa-
(*Gelsemium sempervirens* (L.) Ait. f.),
adine grape (*Vitis rotundifolia* Michx.), and
nbriers (*Smilax* spp.) were the most prominent
s.

Longleaf uniola (*Uniola sessiliflora* Poir.),
ls's grandmother (*Elephantopus tomentosus* L.),
two-eyed-berry (*Mitchella repens* L.) were the
abundant herbaceous plants.

STUDY METHODS

Design and Treatments

In September 1972 all the merchantable trees
cut and removed from the study area. During
uary and March 1974 the following site prepa-
on treatments were applied to 1 1/2 ac plots in
ndomized block design with unequal replications:

Control--No site preparation, all woody stems greater than 1 inch in diameter at breast height (d.b.h.) were cut.

Burn--all stems greater than 1 inch d.b.h. were cut and burned with the logging slash. Fanned by a steady wind of about 12 miles per hour, the head fire consumed the tops of all herbaceous plants, most shrubs and small trees, nearly all the leaf litter, and all but the large branches of the logging slash.

Chop--logging slash and all stems were cut with a chopper and burned. The chopper resembles a huge lawn roller equipped with cutting blades parallel to the long axis of the cylinder. Pulled by a large crawler tractor, the chopper cut non-merchantable trees and shrubs into small chunks and crushed the debris into the surface soil. The chopped plots have been prepared in October 1972, but heavy rains prevented completion of the other treatments. These plots were rechopped when the other site treatments were applied.

KG--all stems were cut with a KG blade, and the logging slash was raked off the plots and burned. The KG blade resembles a straight razor and is mounted at an angle on the front of a tractor. It sheared off all stems in its path. The cutting process greatly churned up the soil surface and pushed some litter and topsoil off the planting site.

The area was handplanted with 1-0 loblolly pine seedlings at 8 x 10 foot spacing in mid-March 1974.

Soil Response Measurements

In August 1972 (before clearcutting) and in December 1974 (one growing season after site treatments were applied) five 1 inch diameter soil cores were taken at the depth of 0 to 2 and 2 to 5 inches near each of 20 sample points that were established in the interior 1 ac center of each plot. The five individual samples from each depth were composited and analyzed for organic matter by loss on ignition, pH by glass electrode, phosphorus by the sulfomolybdic blue color method, and potassium, calcium, and magnesium by the atomic absorption method.

The 1972 and 1974 data were compared by analysis of variance. All testing was at the 0.05 percent level of significance. The Bernaldo-Elysian and the Sacul soils were combined and considered as one soil because initially (1972) neither forage yield nor most surface soil characteristics were significantly different between the two soil types.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Clearcutting itself probably did not remove sizeable amounts of nutrients as only the logs were taken from the area. The upper stems and crowns with their branches, twigs, and foliage were left on the ground to be incorporated into the soil by decay, fire, or chopping. Nutrient losses from this type of logging are small because the logs contain few nutrients, and most are in the leaves and twigs (Stone 1973). Some leaching of soil nutrients could occur after clearcutting, but rapid revegetation usually protects the soil surface and continues to add nutrients (Burns and Hebb 1972, Stransky et al. 1974).

pH

Soil pH values were similar for all treatments and at both soil depths before and after site preparation (Table 1). This result is somewhat in contrast to another study that shows small increases in pH by burning (Wells 1971).

Organic Matter

In both 1972 and 1974, organic matter was about two times higher in the surface soil than in the 2 to 5 inch depth (Table 1). Differences between plots were not significant in 1972, but in 1974 the soil on the chopped and KG plots had significantly less organic matter content in the surface soil than the control and burned plots.

Several studies have described the positive relationship between fertility and organic matter content of southern forest soils. Stransky (1961, 1964) showed that the growth of planted pine seedlings was retarded by organic matter removal. Thus, the decreased organic matter on the chopped and KG plots can possibly influence the future productivity of the site. The effects of litter and slash removal are likely to be most pronounced where hardwoods predominate because the hardwood litter contains more nutrients and decomposes faster than pine litter (Alway et al. 1933, Coile 1937).

The explanation for the lowered organic ter content on the KG plots is fairly obvious. organic matter was simply removed from the plo Haines et al. (1975) warned that such practice would be detrimental to the soil nutrient regi and Hicock et al. (1931) noted that the remova litter alone would seriously deplete organic reserves.

The losses with chopping are difficult t plain as no organic matter was removed from th plots. The slash was broken up by repeated cho and pressed into the soil surface, possibly re ing in more rapid decay. Because of heavy rain 1973 and 1974, some of it could have been wash from the ridges into the valleys cut by the ch blades. As only the ridges were sampled, some organic matter may have been excluded. It is u that the organic matter moved to lower soil de as the 2 to 5 inch depth showed no increase.

Phosphorus

Before clearcutting, the soils had a hig phosphorus content in the surface layer than i 2 to 5 inch depth. After the timber was cut an sites prepared, however, the differences betwe depths became non-significant (Table 1). In th study it appeared that phosphorus increased in lower depth as a result of leaching from the su

Table 1.-- Soil characteristics before clearcutting (1972) and after site preparation (1974).

Soil Characteristics	Soil Depth (in)	Site treatments Control 1972	Control 1974	Burn 1972	Burn 1974	Chop 1972	Chop 1974	KG 1972	KG 1974
pH	0-2	5.3	5.3	5.4	5.5	5.6	5.6	5.2	5.4
	2-5	5.3	5.3	5.5	5.5	5.7	5.6	5.3	5.4
Organic Matter (percent)	0-2	5.8	5.2	5.3	5.6	5.7	4.4	6.0	3.6
	2-5	2.8	2.5	2.4	2.6	2.7	2.6	3.0	2.0
Phosphorus (ppm)	0-2	6.5	5.2	5.4	6.4	4.0	4.4	4.7	5.5
	2-5	3.7	4.6	3.5	4.6	1.9	4.0	2.0	5.8
Potassium (ppm)	0-2	39.3	39.9	30.7	38.9	30.8	34.2	31.2	34.2
	2-5	16.3	19.7	16.9	18.4	18.9	19.4	17.5	18.7
Calcium (ppm)	0-2	243.6	286.4	180.6	232.4	232.7	227.0	157.2	145.3
	2-5	85.4	84.3	65.1	67.0	99.7	87.7	46.9	46.0
Magnesium (ppm)	0-2	65.2	50.8	51.6	54.8	42.6	43.8	49.9	38.0
	2-5	41.0	27.9	22.0	19.9	17.1	19.7	22.0	22.0

In 1972, the plots to be chopped and KG ded were significantly lower in phosphorus than control and burn plots, but the reason why was obvious. In 1974, phosphorus had increased on treatments except the control, and treatment ferences were still significant. The greatest rease in phosphorus occurred on the burned ts, probably because of the phosphorus released burning. The interactions of depth x treat- ts were not significant in either 1972 or 1974.

Potassium

Potassium content of the soil was con- tently higher in the surface than in the 2 to nch depth (Table 1). For an as yet unknown son it was higher, too, in the surface soil of control plots than on the other plots in 1972. fer site preparation the treatment differences e no longer significant. This difference in assium between years was significant in the face soil, but not in the 2 to 5 inch depth, icating greater increases in the surface bet- n years. The depth x treatment interaction was -significant in both years.

Calcium

Calcium content was significantly greater the surface soil than in the 2 to 5 inch depth both 1972 and 1974 (Table 1). Calcium contents both soil depths were not significantly dif- ent between plots before cutting and site treat- ts. However, differences in calcium levels bet- n treatments were significant for the surface l layer in 1974 as a result of increases on the trol and burned plots and slight decreases on chopped and KG bladed plots.

Magnesium

Magnesium content was approximately two es higher in the surface soil than in the 2 to nch depth (Table 1). In 1972, magnesium content significantly higher on the control plots n on any others. In 1974, the KG bladed plots the lowest content of magnesium in the surface l, probably because raking the logging slash the plots removed organic matter.

Nutrient Relationships

Simple linear regressions indicated that anic matter was significantly related to cium, magnesium, and potassium content of the l. Other studies have also shown the close re- ionship between organic matter and mineral con- t of coarse-textured soils (Wilde 1946). The rease of phosphorus, potassium, calcium, and nesium in the 0 to 2 inch layer of soil corrobo- es studies which indicate that fire benefits soil nutrient regime in southern upland ests (Moehring et al. 1966, Stone 1971, Wells 1).

However, despite of their generally lower nutrient regime and higher soil bulk density (Stransky 1981), the planted pines survived and grew best on the mechanically prepared sites where competing vegetation was effectively reduced (Stransky and Halls 1981).

LITERATURE CITED

Alway, F. M., J. Kittredge, and W. J. Methley.
1933. Composition of the forest floor layer under different forest types on the same soil type. Soil Sci. 36:387-398.

Burns, R. M., and E. A. Hebb.
1972. Site preparation and reforestation of droughty acid sands. USDA Agric. Handb. 426, 61 p.

Coile, T. S.
1937. Composition of the leaf litter of forest trees. Soil Sci. 43:349-355.

Dumble, E. T.
1918. The geology of east Texas. Univ. Texas Bull. 1879. 388 p.

Fehèr, D.„
1931. Über den Einfluss des Kahlschlages auf den Verlauf der biologischen und biochemischen Prozesse im Waldboden. Silva 19:185-190, 193-195.

Haines, L. W., T. K. Maki, and S. G. Sanderford.
1975. The effects of mechanical site preparation treatments on soil productivity and tree (Pinus taeda L. and P. elliottii Engelm. var. elliottii) growth. p. 379. In Bernier, B., and C. H. Winget (eds.) Forest soil and forest land management. Proc. Fourth Am. For. Soils Conf., Laval Univ. Press, Quebec. 675 p.

Hicock, H. W., M. F. Morgan, H. G. Lutz, H. Bull, and H. A. Lunt.
1931. The relation of forest composition and rate of growth to certain soil characters. Connecticut Agric. Exp. Stn. Bull. 330:673-750.

Moehring, D. M., C. X. Grano, and J. R. Bassett.
1966. Properties of forested loess soils after repeated prescribed burns. USDA For. Serv. Res. Note SO-40, 4 p. South. For. Exp. Stn. New Orleans, LA.

Reinhart, K. G.
1973. Timber-harvest clearcutting and nutrients in the northeastern United States. USDA For. Serv. Res. Note NE-170. 5 p. Northeast. For. Exp. Stn. Upper Darby, PA.

Stone, E. L., Jr.
1971. Effects of prescribed burning on long-term productivity of Coastal Plains soils. USDA For. Serv. Prescribed burning symposium proc. 160 p. Southeast. For. Exp. Stn. Asheville, NC.

Stone, E. L., Jr.
1973. The impact of timber harvest on soils and water. In Report of President's Advisory Panel on Timber and the Environment, Appendix M:427-467. U.S. Govt. Print. Office, Washington, DC.

Stransky, J. J.
1961. Weed control, soil moisture, and loblolly pine seedling behavior. J. For. 59:282-284, and 289-290.

Stransky, J. J.
1964. Site preparation effects on early growth of loblolly pine. USDA For. Serv. Tree Plant. Notes 64:4-6

Stransky, J. J.
1976. Vegetation and soil response to clearcutting and site preparation in east Texas. Ph. D. Diss. Texas A&M Univ. College Station, TX. 193 p.

Stransky, J. J.
1981. Site preparation effects on soil bulk density and pine seedling growth. South. J. Applied For. 5:176-180.

Stransky, J. J., and L. K. Halls.
1981. Forage and pine growth with clearcutting and site preparation. p. 343-348. In J. P. Barnett (ed.) Proc. First Biennial South. Silvicultural Res. Conf. USDA For. Serv. Gen. Tech. Rep. SO-34. 375 p. South. For. Exp. Stn. New Orleans, LA.

Stransky, J. J., E. S. Nixon, C. L. Burandt, and R. L. Willett.
1974. First-year revegetation following timber harvest in east Texas. USDA For. Serv. Res. Note SO-173. 7 p. South. For. Exp. Stn. New Orleans, LA.

Wells, C. G.
1971. Effects of prescribed burning on soil chemical properties and nutrient availabilit In USDA For. Serv. Prescribed burning sympos proc. 160 p. Southeast. For. Exp. Stn. Ashev NC.

Wilde, S. A.
1946. Forest soil and forest growth. Chroni Botanica Co., Waltham, MA. 241 p.

Wittich, H.
1930. Untersuchungen über den Einfluss des Kahlschlages auf den Bodenzustand. Mitt. For wirtschaft Forstwiss. 1:438-506. Hannover.

INTENSIVE WHOLE-TREE HARVESTING AS A SITE PREPARATION TECHNIQUE[1]

James W. McMinn[2]

Abstract.--Whole-tree harvesting for fuel chips can create better site conditions for regenerating desirable species than does clearcutting for conventional wood products. In mixed hardwood-pine stands of the Upper Piedmont, all woody biomass was removed down to 1-inch or 4-inch diameter limits in both winter and summer. The 1-inch limit harvest exposed twice as much mineral soil area as the 4-inch limit harvest in both seasons, and the winter harvest exposed 16 percent more mineral soil than the summer harvest at both intensities. Hardwood sprouting was most prolific after the 1-inch winter harvest and least prolific after the 4-inch summer harvest. Adequate stocking of pine seedlings was obtained by the seeds-in-place technique after the winter harvest.

INTRODUCTION

During the past three decades the cost of site reparation has increased more than the cost of any ther widespread forestry practice in the South. he increase averaged 11.9 percent annually for the eriod 1952-1979, while the annual increase in the holesale price index was 3.2 percent (Moak 1982). his increasing real cost coincided with a growing ormal recognition that more preparation will be equired to maintain southern forestlands in a com-ercially productive state (Boyce and McClure 1975, ociety of American Foresters 1979). Whole-tree hipping for fuel could eliminate this dilemma. uel chip production is economically feasible because t permits removal of so much more material than onventional harvesting and it has the potential for educing or eliminating the need for site preparation Butts and Preston 1979). McGee (1980) found in a tudy on the Cumberland Plateau that whole-tree har-esting of all material 4 inches and larger could be ollowed by successful pine planting or desirable ardwood sprout regeneration, although further site reparation or release might be necessary. Four nches is a generally accepted lower limit for fuel-ood harvesting, but even smaller limits might be ractical if better site preparation were effected.

The objective of the work reported here was to ompare the effects of season and intensity of hole-tree harvesting in mixed hardwood-pine stands f the Upper Piedmont on the site and the subsequent tand. This is one phase of a broader study with several objectives, including the effects on site productivity (McMinn and Nutter 1981, McNab and McMinn 1982). Mineral soil exposure and hardwood sprout regrowth were used as indices of site preparation success. Exposed soil and minimal sprout growth favor regeneration of pines (Langdon 1981) and relatively intolerant hardwoods (Smith 1980) that are more desirable than the tolerant hardwoods dominating the upland sites studied.

METHODS

The study was conducted on the Dawson Forest, located in the Upper Piedmont of Georgia NNE of Atlanta, and managed by the Georgia Forestry Commission. Soils are Fannin fine sandy loam and Tallapoosa fine sandy loam. The site reverted to forest following agricultural abandonment early in the century. Prior to the relatively recent control by the Commission, the timber stands on this site had been high-graded for both pine and hardwood, leaving stands with insufficient merchantable volumes for profitable conventional logging. The hardwood component was comprised primarily of chestnut oak (*Quercus prinus* L.), northern red oak (*Q. rubra* L.), post oak (*Q. stellata* Wangenh.), scarlet oak (*Q. coccinea* Muenchh.), southern red oak (*Q. falcata* Michx.), and hickory (*Carya* spp.). The pine component was primarily loblolly (*Pinus taeda* L.) and shortleaf (*P. echinata* Mill.). Basal area averaged approximately 100 square feet per acre, of which about 65 percent was hard hardwood, 10 percent soft hardwood, and 25 percent was pine. Diameters ranged from 1 to 20 inches for hard hardwoods, 1 to 16 inches for soft hardwoods, and 1 to 14 inches for pine. There were approximately 980 stems per acre for all species combined. Nearly 80 percent of these stems were smaller than 4.5 inches d.b.h. but this component accounted for only 26 percent of the total basal area per acre.

Georgia Forestry Commission crews accomplished the harvesting treatments with a typical whole-tree system comprised of small feller-bunchers, grapple-skidders, and an 18-inch disk-type chipper. Harvesting was done to 4-inch or 1-inch d.b.h. limits in both winter and summer. Harvesting was completed in January and June of 1980. Each combination of season and intensity was replicated three times in a completely randomized design. Logging plots were 1 acre in size, and detailed observations and sampling were confined to the interior half-acre of each plot. The most intensive harvest yielded from about 67 to 83 green tons per acre and the least intensive approximately 20 percent less.

---

[1] Paper presented at Second Biennial Southern ilvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, GA, ovember 4-5, 1982.

[2] Research Forester, USDA, Forest Service, outheastern Forest Experiment Station, Forestry ciences Laboratory, Athens, GA.

Logging disturbance was estimated on a 180-point grid on each plot. The grid consisted of a point every 2 feet along three line transects bisecting the measurement plots at quarter-, half-, and three-quarter intervals. Each point was classified either as (1) undisturbed, (2) mineral soil exposed but not scarified, or (3) soil scarified. Analysis of variance was performed on arcsine transformations of the percentage of points falling in the last category and the last two categories combined. Sprout regrowth was characterized by a 100 percent inventory of sprout clumps in October of 1981. Height of the tallest sprout and average diameter at the widest horizontal spread were recorded for each clump. Both mean sprout height per plot and sprout coverage per acre, based on vertical projections of clump diameter, were subjected to analysis of variance. In April 1981 milacre plots at 10-foot intervals along the line transects were examined for pine seedling stocking.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

There was no significant difference among treatments in the percent area scarified (table 1). Overall, approximately 16 percent of the area was scarified, and treatment means ranged only from 13 to 19 percent. There were, however, significant differences both due to season and intensity in the area of mineral soil exposed by the logging (table 2). There was twice as much soil exposure in plots harvested to a 1-inch limit as in plots harvested to a 4-inch limit in both winter and summer. Pine seedling stocking in April 1981 was significantly influenced by harvest intensity. After winter logging to a 1-inch limit, 94 percent of the milacres were stocked with natural pine regeneration, whereas harvesting to a 4-inch limit resulted in 62 percent stocking (which is still adequate by most standards). This finding is consistent with Pomeroy's (1949) conclusion that a mineral soil seedbed substantially enhances loblolly seedling establishment. Logging in winter, when conditions were and normally are wetter than in summer, resulted in approximately 15 percent more soil exposure than summer logging at both harvest intensities. No natural pine regeneration occurred after the summer logging, because in this study pine regeneration depended on the "seeds-in-place" technique described by Lotti (1961). The technique consists of removing a mature stand from which adequate viable seeds have recently fallen.

Areal coverage of sprout regrowth was significantly affected by both season and intensity of harvesting (table 3). Sprout coverage averaged almost 70 percent greater on winter- than on summer-logged plots. Part of this difference may be attributed to the two full seasons of regrowth on the winter treatment and only one-an a-half seasons on the summer treatment. Howeve it is unlikely that all of the disparity was because of the fractional difference in growing seasons, and observations will be made during t next few years to determine if this relationshi holds over time. Belanger (1979) reported that coppice growth of sycamore (*Platanus occidental* L.) in the Georgia Piedmont was more prolific after winter harvesting than after summer harvesting.

Harvest intensity also had a significant effect on sprout coverage. The 1-inch limit resulted in 1-1/2 times the coverage of the 4-inc limit after winter logging and almost twice the coverage after summer logging. Sprouting of sm stumps contributed little to areal coverage on most intensively logged treatments. Therefore, difference by logging intensity was attributed marily to competition from the residual stand o small stems. Since this competition will likel affect intolerant seedlings more than sprouts, seedling stocking is expected to decline on the 4-inch limit treatment.

Table 1.--Summary of analysis of variance resu
(**=statistically significant at the .01 lev
*=statistically significant at the .05 level,
NS=nonsignificant)

Source of variation	Soil Exposure	 Scarification	Sprouti Coverage	 H
Season	*	NS	*	
Intensity	**	NS	*	
S X I	NS	NS	NS	

Table 2.--Percent area over which mineral soil
exposed by season and intensity of whole-tre
harvesting (standard deviations in parenthes

Diameter limit (inches)	Season Winter	 Summer
	- - - - - - -*Percent*- - - - -	
4	34.7(5.1)	30.3(7.1)
1	70.7(3.5)	61.0(3.0)
Mean	52.7	45.6

Table 3.--Sprout coverage per acre by season and
intensity of whole-tree harvesting (standard
deviations in parentheses)

Diameter limit (inches)	Season Winter	 Summer
	- - - - - - Ft^2*/acre* - - - - -	
4	3985(715)	2046(653)
1	6175(2490)	3996(1336)
Mean	5080	3021

Mean sprout height varied little among treat-
ts (table 4); sprouts after winter logging were
ghtly but significantly taller than those after
mer logging. This difference was less than 10
cent, and it is attributed to the fractional dif-
ence in growing seasons between treatments.

le 4.--Mean sprout height by season and intensity
f whole-tree harvesting (standard deviations of
ean plot values in parentheses)

ameter limit (ches)	Season		
	Winter	Summer	Mean
	- - - - - - - *Feet*	- - - - - - - -	
4	6.3(.2)	5.9(.3)	6.1
1	6.2(.3)	5.7(.3)	6.0
n	6.3	5.8	

CONCLUSIONS

Although additional observations will be re-
red to assess the need for reducing competition,
site preparation effects are evident after 2
rs. Site preparation on Upper Piedmont soils is
stantially better when whole-tree harvesting is
e to a 1-inch limit rather than a 4-inch limit.
s improvement in site preparation is needed for
olerant species requiring a mineral soil seedbed.
vesting to a 1-inch limit during winters following
adequate pine seed crop provides a good chance
successful natural regeneration. However, if
prescription involves direct seeding or plant-
, a summer harvest to a 1-inch limit is recom-
ded because harvesting during that period tends
minimize regrowth of competing stump sprouts.

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

The author wishes to express his appreciation
the Division of Research, Georgia Forestry Com-
sion, for the support and cooperation that made
s research possible.

LITERATURE CITED

anger, R. P.
979. Stump management increases coppice yield of sycamore. South. J. of Appl. For. 3:101-103.

ce, Stephen G. and Joe P. McClure
975. How to keep one-third of Georgia in pine. USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. SE-144. Southeast. For. Exp. Stn., Asheville, NC. 23 p.

ts, Paul M. and Druid N. Preston
979. Whole tree chipping: a forest management tool. Georgia Forest Research Paper 4. Georgia Forestry Commission, Macon, GA. 8 p.

gdon, O. Gordon
981. Natural regeneration of loblolly pine: a sound strategy for many forest landowners. South. J. Appl. For. 5:170-176.

Lotti, T.
1961. The case for natural regeneration. In Proc. 10th Annual Forestry Symp. p. 16-23. A. B. Crow, ed. Louisiana State Univ. Press, Baton Rouge, LA.

McGee, C. E.
1980. Expanding options for reforestation of the Cumberland Plateau. South. J. of Appl. For. 4:158-162.

McMinn, James W. and Wade L. Nutter
1981. Energy wood harvesting: a study of promises and pitfalls. Georgia Forest Research Paper 17. Georgia Forestry Commission, Macon, GA. 6 p.

McNab, W. Henry and James W. McMinn
1982. Woody biomass harvesting and site productivity: ongoing research in Georgia and adjacent states. Georgia Forest Research Paper 34. Georgia Forestry Commission, Macon, GA. 14 p.

Moak, James E.
1982. Forest practices cost trends in the South. South. J. of Appl. For. 6:130-132.

Pomeroy, K. B.
1949. The germination and initial establishment of loblolly pine under various surface soil conditions. J. For. 47:541-543.

Smith, H. C.
1980. An evaluation of four uneven-age cutting practices in central Appalachian hardwoods. South. J. of Appl. For. 4:193-200.

Society of American Foresters
1979. Improving outputs from nonindustrial private forests: study report of a task force of the Society of American Foresters, Washington, DC. 11 p.

GROWTH OF YOUNG LONGLEAF PINE AS AFFECTED BY BIENNIAL BURNS PLUS CHEMICAL OR MECHANICAL TREATMENTS FOR COMPETITION CONTROL[1]

William D. Boyer[2]

Abstract.--A study of the effects of understory control treatments on the growth of sapling longleaf pine was begun in 1973. Four burning treatments were combined with each of three supplemental treatments. After 7 years, pine growth was not improved by cultural treatments. Growth was significantly better on unburned than burned plots, while supplemental treatments had no effect.

INTRODUCTION

Competing understory vegetation, particularly hardwoods and other woody plant species, deters optimum growth of overstory pine, especially at young ages. Controlling this competition is the principal objective of most cultural treatments. These include (1) mechanical treatments, usually applied to prepare the site before regeneration, (2) herbicides, which may be applied for site preparation or to release pines from competition and (3) prescribed fire which, if regularly applied, can prevent or retard the encroachment of hardwoods into pine stands. Except for fire, these treatments are expensive, but their cost is justified through expected increases in volume yields.

Pines have responded with improved growth to reduction or elimination of understory hardwoods, according to a number of reports. This positive response covers a range of sizes or ages that include loblolly pines under age 10 (Cain and Mann 1980, Clason 1978), sapling loblolly, shortleaf, and longleaf (Loyd et al. 1978) and also pole to sawlog size loblolly and shortleaf pines (Bower and Ferguson 1968, Grano 1970). Positive growth responses are not always observed. Removal of more than 3,800 hardwood understory stems did not improve growth of pole-sized loblolly pine (Russell 1961).

Longleaf pine appears to be more sensiti to competition than other pines. Elimination understory hardwoods should promote a positiv growth response in longleaf at least as great that observed in other pines. Little informa is available on longleaf growth response to c petition control beyond the seedling stage. Treatment of grass-stage longleaf stands with 2,4,5-T applied from the air resulted in grea average height and 40 percent more merchantab volume after 20 years than similar untreated stands (Michael 1980). Whether this growth differential resulted from earlier initiation of height growth by treated stands, or better gr through the entire period, or both, is unknow

A study was initiated in 1973 on the Escambia Experimental Forest in South Alabama determine the effects of repeated understory competition control treatments on understory structure and biomass, and growth of a 12-yea old longleaf pine overstory.

METHODS

The study is located on sandy upland soi of the middle coastal plain. The predominant soil series in all study blocks is Troup although some Wagram and Dothan soils are als present.

Three study blocks, each comprised of 12 square 0.4-acre plots, were established in rel tively uniform, even-aged stands of young long leaf pine. A 0.1 acre net plot was centered i each 0.4-acre treatment plot. The stands originated from the 1958 seed crop and were released from the parent overstory during the nter of 1961. Dated from overstory removal, ands were 12 years old at study establishment 1973. All plots were thinned to 500 dominant nes per acre, and 50 pines in each 0.1-acre t plot were numbered, and total height and ameter at breast height (d.b.h.) recorded. dividual tree inside bark total cubic foot lume was obtained from height and d.b.h. using longleaf pine volume table (Farrar 1981). At e 12, pines averaged 3.2 inches d.b.h., 22.6 et in total height, with a density of 30.1 ft^2 sal area/acre.

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] The author is Principal Silviculturist at the George W. Andrews Forestry Sciences Laboratory, Auburn, AL, maintained by the Southern Forest Experiment Station, Forest Service--USDA, in cooperation with Auburn University.

Twelve treatment combinations were randomly signed among the 12 plots in each block. Four rning treatments include prescribed fire at o-year intervals in winter, spring, summer d unburned check. Combined with each burning eatment were three supplemental treatments. ese were chemical treatment of all woody stems th 2,4-D at time of study establishment, ndclearing of all woody vegetation 4.5 feet or e in height at beginning of the study and at year intervals thereafter, and an untreated eck.

At study establishment, and before treatnt, the composition and structure of underory vegetation was sampled on 9 (3.1-foot uare) subplots in each net plot. The number stems and species of all woody plants were corded, as well as dry weights of all woody nts less than 0.5-inch in diameter at 6 ches above ground. Dry weights were also tained for grasses and grass likes, legumes, bs, and surface litter (all dead organic terial above mineral soil).

Pines in net plots were remeasured during e winter of 1980. In addition, all hardwoods each net plot in the 2-inch d.b.h. class and ger (1.5" d.b.h.) were inventoried, and .h. and species recorded. Understory vegetan (woody and herbaceous) and litter were pled on 9 subplots per plot, as before. ber of woody stems per subplot was recorded, species, in two groups: Those above 0.5-inch diameter at 6 inches above ground to -inches d.b.h., and those 0.5-inch in ameter or less. The latter were both counted harvested for dry weight determination.

Analysis of variance was used to determine atment effects on understory conditions and e growth.

RESULTS

Pine growth was not improved by any of the tural treatments. To the contrary, pine ght, diameter and volume growth were significtly better on unburned plots than on any of burning treatments. Supplemental treatments no significant effect on any measure of wth.

Height growth over the 7-year period averaged 19 feet on unburned plots, and 17 feet for each of the burning treatments. Annual d.b.h. growth averaged 0.219" on unburned plots, and ranged from 0.187" to 0.196" for the three burning treatments, and 0.193" to 0.207" for supplemental treatments. Annual per acre volume growth (Table 1) averaged 125 ft^3 for the no-burn treatments compared with 96 to 103 ft^3 for burning and 104 to 109 ft^3 for supplemental treatments. Merchantable volume growth (trees over 3.5 inches d.b.h.) averaged 135 ft^3/acre annually for the unburned treatment, compared with averages of 103 to 110 ft^3 for the three burning treatments and 111 to 118 ft^3 for the three supplemental treatments. Pine basal area averaged 66 ft^2/acre for unburned treatments, and ranged from 54 to 60 ft^2 for the burning treatments, and 58 to 61 ft^2 for supplemental treatments.

Table 1.--Understory treatment and average annual volume growth of overstory pine over 7 years

Supplemental Treatment	Season of Biennial Burn				Average
	Winter	Spring	Summer	None	
	(Cubic feet/acre)				
Chemical	94	91	134	118	109a
Hand Clearing	99	104	90	134	107a
None	111	113	65	125	104a
Average	102a[1/]	103a	96a	125b	107

[1/] Column or row means followed by the same letter are not significantly different at the .05 level.

Growth was least under the summer burn-check treatment combination, an averge of 65 ft^3/acre annually (Table 1). Much of this low growth can be attributed to pine mortality. For the entire study mortality averaged 1.6 trees/plot over the 7 years, or 16 trees per acre. However, losses for the summer burn-check treatment averaged 8.7 trees/plot, about 17 percent of the initial stand. Despite the reduction in stand density, survivors apparently did not respond with increased diameter growth. Average annual d.b.h. growth for this combination was 0.176 inches, less than any other treatment combination. Excluding the summer burn-check treatment, overall mortality averaged 1 tree per plot over 7 years, although higher on burned (1.2 trees/plot) than unburned (0.4 trees/plot) treatments. Trees that died averaged about the same size as survivors. If mortality on the three summer burn-check plots had been only one tree/plot, then annual volume growth (assuming added trees grew at the average rate) for this treatment combination would have increased from 65 to 86 ft^3, and the average for all summer burn treatments to 103 ft^3, similar to the other two burning treatments.

Cultural treatments had a highly significant effect on understory hardwood competition (Table 2). The chemical and handclearing treatments essentially eliminated larger hardwoods.

Table 2.--Understory treatment and number of hardwoods larger than 1.5 inches d.b.h.

Supplemental Treatment	Season of Biennial Burn				Average
	Winter	Spring	Summer	None	
	---------(Stems per acre)----------				
Chemical	0	0	10	0	2a
Hand Clearing	0	0	0	0	0a
None	233	170	97	307	202b
Average	78ab[1/]	57ab	36a	102b	68

[1/] Column or row means followed by the same letter are not significantly different at the .05 level.

Among burning treatments only, numbers of hardwoods (over 1.5 inches d.b.h.) ranged from 97/acre with biennial summer burns up to 307/acre on the unburned check. Hardwood basal area for this latter treatment combination averaged 9.7 ft^2/acre. All of the small hardwood trees(0.5- to 1.5-inch diameter) were confined to the unburned-check treatment and numbered 1007 stems/acre. All burning and supplemental treatments had eliminated this component of the understory. Hardwood tree stems less than 0.5-inch diameter 6-inches above ground were numerous everywhere, averaging over 11 thousand stems/acre. Woody shrubs contributed an additional average of 159 thousand stems/acre. Cultural treatments affected small stem numbers but not nearly to the extent that it influenced trees above 0.5-inch in diameter. Dry weight of small woody stems (0.5-inch), both trees and shrubs combined, was highest on unburned-handcleared and unburned-check treatment combinations.

DISCUSSION

Results of this study indicate that the biennial burning regimes lessened longleaf pine growth. All measures of pine growth were significantly reduced by burning treatments, although excessive mortality on the summer burn-check treatment was partly to blame. It is not kno why burning should have reduced the growth of this comparatively fire-resistant species, or why just one of the three summer burn treatme should have resulted in almost half of all recorded pine mortality. Recorded fire intensities were relatively low, due in part to la of a heavy fuel build-up during the two years between burns.

The supplemental treatments eliminated nearly all hardwood competition above the 0.5-inch diameter class on all plots. Yet th treatments, while eliminating mid- and understory hardwoods, did not significantly improve pine growth. Over the first 7 years of this study, presence of a hardwood component comprising 13 percent of total plot basal area for unburned-check plots has not slowed pine growth, while all biennial burning treatments have. Apparently, under the conditions studie competition on untreated plots was not great enough to adversely affect growth of overstory pine. None of the treatment combinations can justified on the basis of improved pine growth, although some may be desirable because of othe benefits resulting from changes in the structure and composition of understory vegetation.

LITERATURE CITED

Bower, D. R. and E. R. Ferguson
1968. Understory removal improves shortlea pine growth. J. For. 66:421-422.

Cain, M. D. and W. F. Mann, Jr.
1980. Annual brush control increases early growth of loblolly pine. South. J. Appl. For. 4:67-70.

Clason, T. R.
1978. Removal of hardwood vegetation increases growth and yield of a young loblolly pine stand. South. J. Appl. For. 2:96-97.

Farrar, R. M., Jr.
1981. Cubic-foot volume, surface area, and merchantable height functions for longleaf pine trees. U.S. Dep. Agric. Forest Serv. South. Forest Exp. Stn. New Orleans, LA.

Grano, C. X
1970. Small hardwoods reduce growth of pine overstory. U.S. Dep. Agric. Forest Serv. South. Forest Exp. Stn. New Orleans, LA. Res. Pap. SO-55, 11p.

Loyd, R. W., A. G. Thayer and G. L. Lowry
1978. Pine growth and regeneration followin three hardwood control treatments. South. J. Appl. For. 2:25-27.

Michael, J . L.
1980. Long-term impact of aerial application of 2,4,5-T to longleaf pine (*Pinus palustris*). Weed Sci. 28:255-257.

Russell, T. E.
1961. Control of understory hardwoods fails to speed growth of pole-size loblolly. U.S. Dep. Agric. Forest Serv. South. Forestry Note 131, South. Forest Exp. Stn. New Orleans, LA.

PRESCRIBED BURNING AND NITROGEN FERTILIZATION OF SLASH PINE PLANTATIONS[1]

A.V. Mollitor, N.B. Comerford,

and R.F. Fisher[2]

Abstract.--To examine prescribed fire influences on urea fertilization of slash pine plantations, studies were established on flatwoods sites in Florida, Georgia, and South Carolina. Significant nitrogen fertilization responses were observed, and these responses were independent of burning regime. Apparently, nitrogen fertilization and prescribed burning are compatible silvicultural tools.

INTRODUCTION

For a variety of silvicultural and operational reasons, many slash pine (Pinus elliottii var. elliottii Engelm.) plantations are prescribed burned. Burning is often initiated soon after the trees reach sufficient size to be undamaged by fire. Forest fertilization is an increasingly common practice in slash pine plantations. Many stands are fertilized with phosphorus (P) at time of planting and again with nitrogen (N) at mid-rotation. Alternatively, N plus P may be applied at mid-rotation.

Because both prescribed fire and N fertilizers may be applied to stands at about the same time, there is some concern that fire may reduce fertilizer effectiveness. Although it is well known that fire may volatilize appreciable quantities of N (Wells 1971), long term effects on total soil N and forest productivity appear negligible (Stone 1971, Richter et al. 1982). However, burning the forest floor and understory vegetation in stands recently enriched by fertilization may be disproportionately wasteful of applied N.

In an effort to determine the compatabili prescribed burning and N fertilization, a seri three studies were initiated by the Cooperativ Research in Forest Fertilization (CRIFF) prog 1976. This report summarizes third and fifth y measurement results.

METHODS

Tests were established in mid-rotation slash pine plantations in Nassau County, Flori (Test 1), Wayne County, Georgia (Test 3), and Jasper County, South Carolina (Test 5). Tests and 5 are on sandy, siliceous, thermic Ultic Haplaquod soils and Test 3 is on a sandy, siliceous, thermic Aeric Haplaquod. Initial stand conditions are indicated in Table 1.

Table 1.--Initial stand characteristics and changes in stocking rate for three burning-fertilization trials.

	Initial Stand Conditions					Stocki	
Test	Age	Mean DBH	Mean Ht	Basal Area	Total Volume	Yr0	Yr3
	yrs	in	ft	sqft/ac	cuft/ac	- -stem/a	
1	14	4.7	34	69	1017	528	526
3	14	5.5	36	64	1049	372	370
5	15	4.6	38	76	1273	596	537

---

[1] Paper presented at Second Biennial Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] CRIFF Program Manager, School of Forest Resources and Conservation, University of Florida, Gainesville, FL 32611; Assistant Professor, Soil Science Department, University of Florida, Gainesville, FL 32611; Department Head, Department of Forest Resources, Utah State University, Logan, UT 84322.

Burning and fertilization treatments were plied in split-plot designs. Four burning ratments were applied in randomized complete lck designs with three blocks (replications) eermined by initial plot basal area. Burning ratments were (1) no burn, (2) burn four to five oths before fertilization, (3) burn five to seven oths after fertilization, and (4) burn four to five oths before and two to three years after fert-lzation. Main plots were split into two subplots. n half was fertilized with 200 pounds N per acre as ra, the other half recieved no added N. All plots ee fertilized with P. Specific treatment sequences r presented in Table 2.

ale 2.-- Measurement and treatment sequences.

	Test1	Test3	Test5
	- - - -	Date - - - -	
nial Measurement	Feb 76	Mar 76	Feb 76
u Before Fert.	Feb 76	Jan 76	Mar 76
eilization	Jun 76[1]	Jun 76[2]	Jul 76[3]
u After Fert.	Dec 76	Nov 76	Feb 77
end Year Burn	Mar 78	Jan 78	Mar 79
hrd Year Measurement	Nov 78	Dec 78	Apr 79
ih Year Measurement	Mar 81	May 81	Mar 81

[1] 200 lb. N/acre as urea, 80 lb. P/acre as CSP
[2] 200 lb. N/acre as urea, 100 lb. P/acre as CSP
[3] 200 lb. N/acre as urea, 50 lb. P/acre as CSP

Three and five growing seasons after fert-lation, heights and breast-height diameters of res on measurement plots were taken (Table 2). ol outside-bark volumes to a 3-inch top were lermined using the equation of Bennet et al. (19). Effects of burning and fertilization and hr interaction on volume and diameter growth ve evaluated by analysis of covariance using inial volumes and diameters, respectively, as coriates (Freund and Littell 1981). Single leee of freedom contrasts were used to compare (1 no burning with the average effect of burning rtments 2-4, (2) treatment 2 with treatment 3, an (3) the average effect of treatments 2 and 3 wi treatment 4. Per-acre volume growth was esmated by multiplying adjusted mean tree volume grth by a single average number of trees per acre fo each test (Table 1).

RESULTS

In no case was the burning-by-fertilization inraction significant (Table 3). This indicates th burning and fertilization responses were inpendent of one-another and can therefore be exined separately.

Burning responses were variable (Table 3). Test 1 showed decreased diameter growth on burned plots. Test 3 showed better five year volume and diameter growth on plots burned before fertilization than on plots burned after fertilization. Test 5 showed an early negative effect of fire, but by year 5 these differences were less obvious.

Response to N fertilization was significant in all cases. Fifth year volume growth was increased by 13 to 25 percent on fertilized plots, or about 30 to 54 cubic feet per acre per year. Diameter growth increased 17 to 38 percent (Table 4).

Figure 1 illustrates three- and five- year per-acre volume growth for individual burning and fertilization conbinations. Response to N is apparent across all burning treatments. For Tests 1 and 5, the general decrease in growth with burning can be seen. In Test 3, the superiority of volume growth for the before-fertilization burn is evident. Also, in contrast to Test 1 and 5, Test 3 shows an increase in growth in years 3-5 over that observed in years 0-3.

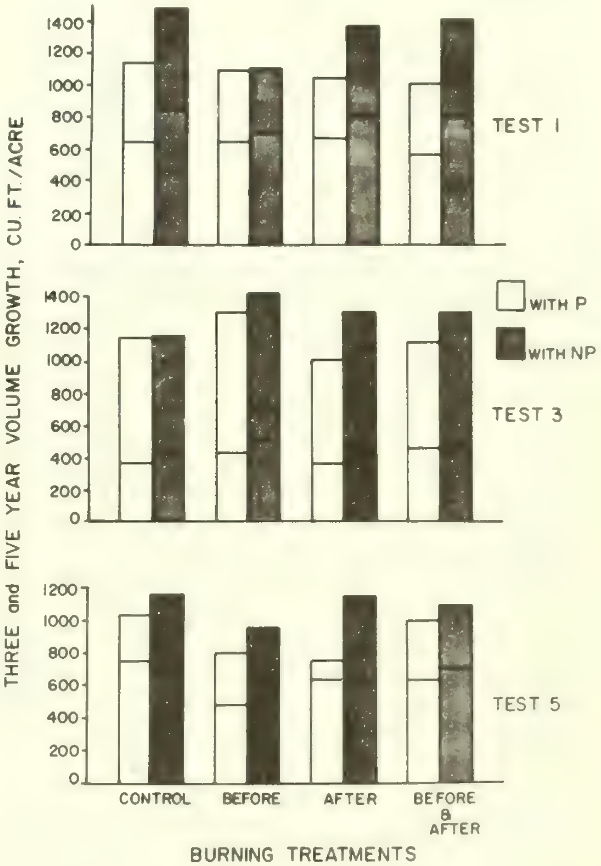


Figure 1.--Three-and five-year per-acre adjusted mean volume growth for individual burning-fertilization combinations. Horizontal lines within bars indicate third year means.

Table 3.-- Results of analyses of covariance of third and fifth year individual tree volume growth a diameter growth.

		Volume Growth						Diameter Growth				
		Test 1		Test 3		Test 5		Test 1		Test 3		Test
Source of Variation	d.f	Yr3	Yr5	Yr3	Yr5	Yr3	Yr5	Yr3	Yr5	Yr3	Yr5	Yr3
		-Probability of greater F-										
Main Plots												
Replication	2	.01	.03	.54	.95	.02	.02	.01	.01	.54	.66	.01
Burning	3	.65	.58	.06	.04	.17	.58	.33	.29	.24	.08	.86
Split Plots												
Fertilization	1	.01	.01	.07	.09	.04	.06	.01	.01	.01	.01	.01
Burn x Fert.	3	.53	.44	.65	.64	.91	.64	.63	.55	.51	.17	.86
Contrasts												
Control vs. Burned	1	.41	.27	.02	.14	.08	.33	.20	.08	.78	.31	.06
Before vs. After	1	.42	.48	.10	.02	.15	.66	.19	.49	.40	.02	.22
Once vs. Twice	1	.71	.64	.48	.35	.89	.39	.86	.83	.08	.70	.65

Table 4.--Three and five year individual tree adjusted mean total volume growth and diameter growth burning and fertilization treatments.

	Volume Growth						Diameter Growth					
	Test 1		Test 3		Test 5		Test 1		Test 3		Test	
	Yr 3	Yr 5	Yr 3	Yr 5	Yr 3	Yr 5	Yr 3	Yr 5	Yr 3	Yr 5	Yr 3	Y
	- - - - cubic feet per tree- - - - -						- - - - - - -inches- - - - - - -					
Burning Treatments												
No Burn	1.42	2.51	1.10	3.18	1.51	2.17	.6	1.1	.5	1.2	.8	1
Before Fertilization	1.28	2.10	1.27	3.75	1.07	1.73	.5	.9	.5	1.4	.6	
After Fertilization	1.40	2.32	1.17	3.18	1.34	1.88	.6	.9	.5	1.2	.7	1
Before and After	1.30	2.32	1.26	3.32	1.22	2.05	.5	.9	.6	1.3	.7	1
Fertilizer Treatments												
No Nitrogen	1.20	2.06	1.11	3.15	1.16	1.80	.5	.8	.5	1.2	.6	
200 lb. N/acre	1.50	2.57	1.30	3.57	1.41	2.15	.6	1.1	.6	1.4	.8	1

DISCUSSION

Burning effects were generally variable and ll. For the two tests showing negative burning ects, is not known if the cause was an overall N s or direct tree injury. Damage to the stand ever, appeared minimal. The positive burning ects in Test 3 could be due to competing vegeta- n control or to response to nutrients released burning. The increasing growth rates in years suggest that this stand may have been P icient. It is unfortunate that quantitative ormation on fire intensity and competing vegeta- n are not available for these studies. Some the observed growth response variation could due to burn-to-burn variation in intensity and iciency.

Nitrogen responses observed in these tests are ical of slash pine plantations on flatwoods soils sher and Garbett 1980). It is of practical impor- ce to note that, as evidenced by the lack of a ning-by-fertilization interaction, prescribed ning within six months of urea application has no reciable effect on this response. Thus, early mer fertilization and winter burning, either ore or after fertilization, appear compatible.

It remains to be seen if burning more closely time of fertilization might significantly affect esponse. In these studies, the six month period ween N application and post-fertilization burning undoubtedly long enough to avoid significant atilization of applied N. The quantity of lied N returned to the forest floor in needle- l and volatilized by second-year burns was most ely small.

CONCLUSION

Carefully planned prescribed burning of sh pine plantations should not interfere with rogen fertilization. Significant growth re- nses to N applications are common on flatwoods ls, and in addition to increasing overall growth es, these responses may compensate for any small wth losses associated with burning.

LITERATURE CITED

Bennett, F.A., C.E. McGee and J.L. Clutter.
1959. Yield of old-field slash pine plantations. U.S. Dep. Agric. For. Serv. Stn. Pap. 107. Southeast For. Exp. Stn.

Fisher, R.F. and W.S. Garbett.
1980. Response of semimature slash and loblolly pine plantations to fertilization with nitrogen and phosphorus. Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 44:850-854.

Freund, R.J. and R.C. Littell.
1981. SAS for linear models. SAS Institute Inc., Cary, N.C.

Richter, D.D., C.W. Ralston, and W.R. Harms.
1982. Prescribed fire: Effects on water quality and forest nutrient cycling. Science 215:661-663.

Stone, E.L.
1971. Effects of prescribed burning on long-term productivity of coastal plain soils. In U.S. Dep. Agric. For. Serv., Prescribed burning symposium proceedings. Southeast. For. Exp. Stn., Asheville, N.C.

Wells, C.G.
1971. Effects of prescribed burning on soil chemical properties and nutrient availability. In U.S. Dep. Agric. For. Serv., Perscribed burning symposium proceedings. Southeast. For. Exp. Stn., Asheville, N.C.

MAY BURNS BENEFIT SURVIVAL AND GROWTH OF LONGLEAF PINE SEEDLINGS[1]

HAROLD E. GRELEN[2]

Abstract.--Three replications of annual and biennial March and May burns plus an unburned control were compared 7 years in a direct-seeded stand of longleaf pine (*Pinus palustris* Mill.) seedlings in central Louisiana. May burning resulted in best survival and growth.

A fire is usually fatal to young seedlings of most pine species. But burning is beneficial--if not essential--to the survival and growth of longleaf pine seedlings. Brown-spot needle blight fungus (*Scirrhia acicola* (Dearn.) Siggers) infection and competition from other woody plants and herbaceous vegetation are factors that retard initiation of longleaf seedling height growth (Pessin 1944). Burning alleviates both problems, and earlier observations indicated that the effectiveness of fire is related to the season of burning (Grelen 1975).

Most prescribed burning in southern pine forests takes place during the dormant season, usually January through March. However, Bruce (1951) noted that light summer fires improved the early height growth of longleaf seedlings. In the early 1960's, the results of a season-of-burn study in Louisiana indicated that burning on or near May 1 was beneficial to the initiation of height growth by grass-stage longleaf seedlings (Grelen 1975). Croker (1975) found that longleaf seedling mortality following a May fire in Alabama was no greater than that after a fire in January. Two years later, Maple (1977) reported significantly greater growth by Croker's May-burned seedlings.

Because the Louisiana study in the 1960's was not designed to measure pine response, a new study was initiated in 1973 to compare the effects of March and May fires on longleaf pine survival and growth. This paper discusses final results of that study.

METHODS

The earlier seasonal burning study was
dry sandy site, so the new study was conduct
a moist, clay-loam soil. Thus, if similar
results were obtained, conclusions might ha
wider range of application. An area was se
on the Palustris Experimental Forest about
miles south of Alexandria, Louisiana, in an
pine-hardwood stand that had been direct-see
to longleaf pine in 1968. The area had not
burned since 1970 and grass-stage longleaf
lings were abundant in 1973. All large pin
hardwoods on study plots were removed or gi
to prevent overstory influences on treatmen
parisons.

Southern bayberry (*Myrica cerifera* L.)
the dominant shrub, and young blackgum (*Nys*
sylvatica Marsh.), sweetgum (*Liquidambar st*
ciflua L.), and blackjack oak (*Quercus mari*
dica Muenchh.) were the common hardwoods.
abundance of accumulated herbage, predomina
bluestem grasses (*Schizachyrium* spp. and
Andropogon spp.), provided fuel for first-y
burning treatments. The area was not graze
the duration of the study.

Burning Treatments

The following treatments were applied
pletely at random to three replications of
tiguous quarter-acre plots:

March 1 annual burn
March 1 biennial burn
May 1 annual burn
May 1 biennial burn
Unburned control

Plots were burned within four days of the M
and May 1 target dates beginning in 1973, wh
most grass-stage seedlings were 5 years old
Annual fires were applied seven consecutive
years, 1973-79, and biennial fires in the f
odd-numbered years. Plots were burned with
fires when weather and fuel conditions perm

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] The author is Range Scientist, Range Management Research, Southern Forest Experiment Station, Pineville, LA 71360.

Pine Measurements

Before burning treatments began, 25 grass-stage longleaf pine seedlings and five seedlings already in height growth were permanently tagged on each treatment plot. Selected grass-stage seedlings had not yet formed a terminal bud, and the five seedlings already in height growth were less than 1 foot tall.

Survival and heights were recorded for all tagged seedlings after each growing season. Severe infections (more than 50 percent of foliage diseased) by the brown-spot disease were recorded for seedlings below 1 foot in height. Differences among treatments in survival, seedling height, and severe brown-spot infection were assessed by analyses of variance at the 5-percent level of probability.

RESULTS

Grass-stage Seedlings

No tagged grass-stage seedlings had begun height growth by the end of the 1973 growing season following initial burning treatments. Survival averaged 96 percent, with no significant differences among treatments. Through the third (975) season, seedlings on plots of both May-burn treatments maintained highest survival percentages and the greatest percentage of survivors in height growth. Final survival on plots of the May-annual-burn treatment averaged 71 percent, significantly higher than other treatments, and all seedlings had begun height growth (Figure 1). Unburned plots averaged 45 percent survival, with slightly more than half the survivors in height growth by the end of the study.

Height growth of seedlings on plots of the two May-burn treatments exceeded that of other treatments after the second year and for the remainder of the study (Figure 2). The two May-burn treatments, with final pine heights averaging 51 ft, did not differ significantly, but cumulative seedling growth on May-burn plots significantly exceeded that of the March-burn plots. Seedlings on the unburned-control plots averaged only 8 in tall at the end of the study, significantly less than all other treatments except the March biennial burn (Table 1). Tallest at the final measurement were two trees 12.5 ft tall on a May-annual plot, although average height for the May-annual treatment was only 4.8 ft.

Height-growth seedlings

The May-annual burn had the highest final survival at 93 percent, followed by the March-annual burn with 80 percent. Survival on these two annual-burning treatments did not differ significantly. Significantly lower seedling survival occurred with the biennial-burn treatments, which averaged 50 percent, and the unburned-control, which averaged 33 percent.

Throughout the study period, the May-annual burn led all treatments in tree height. The final average tree height on plots of this treatment was 16.1 ft, not significantly greater than that of the March and May biennial-burn treatments, but greater than the March-annual burn and the unburned control (Table 1). The tallest individual tree, also on a May-annual burn, was 22 feet.

Brown-spot needle blight

At the end of the first year, more than half of the measured seedlings on unburned control plots were severely infected by brown-spot. On these plots, shading and competition from rapidly growing woody plants combined with the disease to reduce pine survival and growth.

Severe infections on unburned control-plots increased during the second year to an average of 86 percent. Infected seedlings on March-biennial and May-biennial burn plots, unburned the second year of the study, increased from an average of 4 percent after the initial burn to more than 40 percent. Infection on annual-burn plots averaged 23 percent at the end of the second year.

By the end of the third year, in which all burning treatments were reapplied, infection in May-burn plots averaged 24 percent, significantly less that the 58 percent average on March-burn plots. Infection of seedlings on unburned-control plots averaged 76 percent, significantly greater than that of seedlings on any burning treatment.

After the third growing season, brown-spot measurements were discontinued because more than half of the seedlings on all but the unburned plots were in height growth. By the end of the study, 80 percent of the surviving seedlings on unburned-control plots were severely infected.

Reinfection by brown-spot following burning is rapid on small plots such as used in this study.[3] Thus, higher infections might be expected in this study than on larger brown-spot-control burns.

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

Results from this and the earlier seasonal-burn study indicate that prescribed burning as frequently as feasible on or near May 1 will improve survival and early height growth of longleaf pine seedlings.

---

[3] Derr, Harold J. Manuscript review comment.

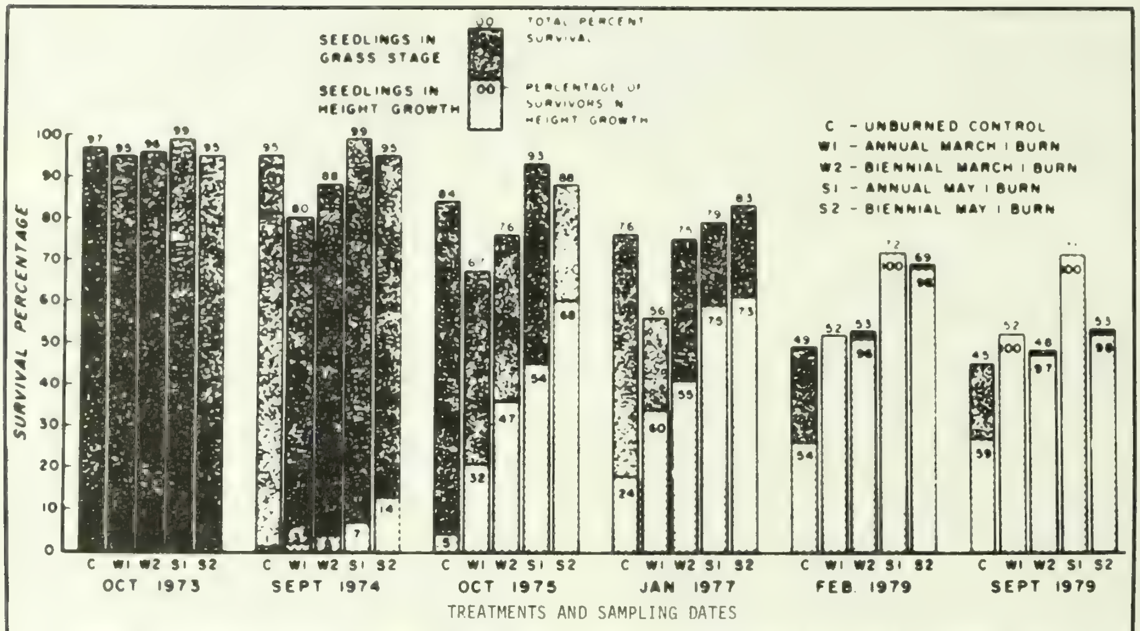


Figure 1.--Progressive survival percentages, showing percent of surviving seedlings in height growth.

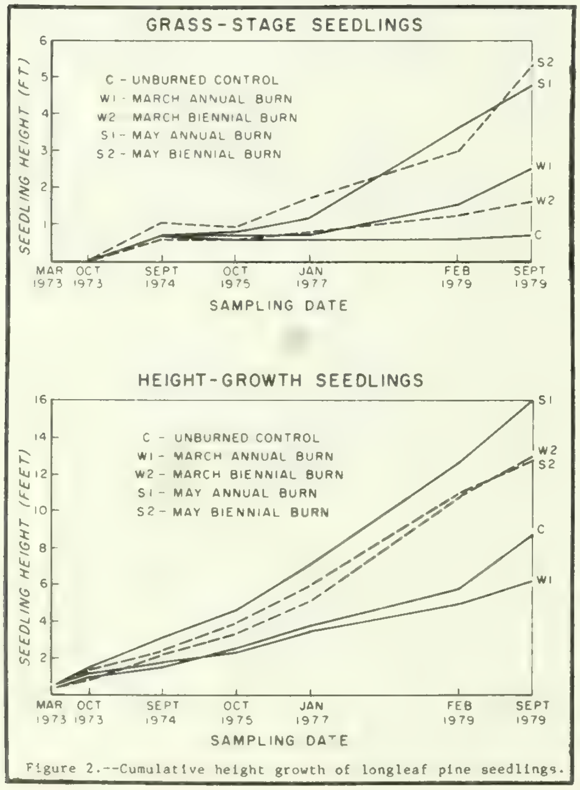


Figure 2.--Cumulative height growth of longleaf pine seedlings.

Table 1. Final average survival and heights of sample seedlings in relation to burning treatments.

Burning Treatment	Grass-stage Survival Percent	Grass-stage Height Feet	Height-growth Survival Percent	Height-growth Height[1] Feet
March-annual	52 b[1]	2.5 b	80ab	6.2 b
March-biennial	48 b	1.6 bc	53 bc	13.0a
May-annual	71a	4.8a	93a	16.1a
May-biennial	53 b	5.3a	47 c	12.8a
Unburned	45 b	0.67 c	33 c	8.8 b

[1] Figures in columns followed by the same letter are not significantly different.

Frequent burns, especially annual fires, pre- nt the buildup of herbaceous fuel and the tense heat from a well-fueled grass fire. The w grass growth produced before a May burn also ntributes to a cooler fire. New longleaf edling growth, which in March is usually a lvery "candle", by May 1 is surrounded by an sulating sheath of elongating needles. Thus, e growing point is more protected in May. But competition and brown-spot are the two main ctors hindering early height growth, the fre- ent burning of herbaceous competition and seased foliage must be the key. Woody-plant ot reserves are low around May 1, which may be a itical time for the release of longleaf from mpetition and brown-spot.

A reduction of woody cover and an increase of rbage was obvious on all burned plots. During e 7-year study, unburned control plots had grown to thickets of blackberry (*Rubus* spp.), loblolly ne saplings (*Pinus taeda* L.), and small hard- ods.

Growth might have been as great or greater if res had been applied less frequently, especially ter height growth had begun. After the fourth y-annual fire, survival on plots of that treat- nt dropped sharply. A number of trees that had gun height growth died or were killed back to ound level and had to start growth again from teral sprouts. Longleaf 6 in to 4 ft tall are ghly vulnerable to damage by fire (Bruce 1951), d more than half of the surviving seedlings on y-burn plots had begun height growth after three nual or two biennial May fires (Figure 1).

The burning frequencies used in this study may be too severe for operational burning programs. Where livestock grazing is an additional use of the plantation, fuel accumulation might not be adequate for effective annual or biennial fires. Thus, grazing should be excluded from longleaf pine regeneration areas if frequent fires are applied. While results of this study do not provide a recommended burning schedule for young longleaf pines, they suggest that frequent May fires can improve early survival and height growth.

LITERATURE CITED

Bruce, David.
1951. Fire, site, and longleaf pine height growth. J. For. 49:25-28.
Croker, Thomas C.
1975. Longleaf seedlings survive fire in clearcut strips. USDA For. Serv. Res. Note SO-188, 3 p. SFES, New Orleans, LA.
Grelen, Harold E.
1975. Vegetative response to twelve years of seasonal burning on a Louisiana longleaf pine site. USDA For. Serv. Res. Note SO-192, 4 p. SFES, New Orleans, LA.
Grelen, Harold E.
1978. May burns stimulate growth of longleaf pine seedlings. USDA For. Serv. Res. Note SO-234, 5 p. SFES, New Orleans, LA.
Maple, William R.
1977. Spring burns aid longleaf pine seedling growth. USDA For. Serv. Res. Note SO-228, 2 p. SFES, New Orleans, LA.
Pessin, L. J.
1944. Stimulating the early height growth of longleaf pine seedlings. J. For. 42:95-98.

PRESCRIBED FIRE FOR HARDWOOD CONTROL AND FUEL REDUCTION IN PINE PLANTATIONS ON THE CUMBERLAND PLATEAU[1]

Michael York and Edward Buckner[2]

Abstract.--Fuel moisture and relative humidity were key factors controlling burn intensity. Topography strongly influenced wind movement: upslope fires generally burned as head fires while downslope fires burned as backfires. Both were equally effective for hardwood control and rough reduction. Disadvantages were that downslope fires were slow-moving and upslope fires difficult to control.

INTRODUCTION

The Cumberland Plateau, an extension of the Appalachian Highland Region, extends across East Tennessee in a north-south direction, occupying approximately 5000 square miles. It varies in width from about 70 miles at the Kentucky-Tennessee border to 50 miles in northern Alabama. The eastern edge of the Plateau is a steep escarpment that rises approximately 1000 feet above the Ridge and Valley Province. The western margin, which is highly dissected by streams flowing from the Plateau surface, stands approximately 700 feet above the Eastern Highland Rim. Most of the Plateau is a gently rolling upland with an average elevation of approximately 2000 feet. The Plateau exists because a massive, horizontally bedded sandstone cap protects softer underlying shales, siltstones and clays from erosion (Phelps 1977).

Due to its height and exposure the Plateau has a cooler and wetter climate than adjacent regions to the east and west. Mean annual precipitation is 54 inches, but the shallow, sandy soils have a low water-holding capacity; soil nutrients are readily lost to leaching (Hasty 1948). The Plateau is approximately 70 percent forested. Native stands are characteristically low-quality upland hardwoods due largely to a history of repeated highgrading and frequent wildfires.

Much of the Plateau would be more productive if these native stands were replaced with pines (Murphy 1972). This potential and the availability of large tracts of land at relati low prices has resulted in a large forest indu ownership. Over the past two decades, much of region has been converted to loblolly pine (Pi taeda L.) plantations. Even though it is not native to this area, loblolly pine grows faste than the native pines, even when planted consi ably north of its natural range (Williston and Huckenpahler 1958; Walker 1962).

Despite the use of both chemical and mech cal measures for hardwood control, pine stocki and growth in most plantations suffers from aggressive hardwood competition. Heavy rough accumulations in older, well-stocked pine pla tions and exposure to high winds make wildfire continual threat. A safe and economical means controlling hardwoods and reducing dangerous f levels is needed if pine plantation management to be feasible on the Cumberland Plateau. Exp ence in the Coastal Plain suggests that prescr fire might fill this need if safe techniques c developed for using it in this rolling, hilly terrain.

Numerous studies have demonstrated the des ability of using prescribed fire for hardwood control on the flat terrain of the Coastal Pla (Riebold 1955; Neel 1965; McClay 1955; Klaw 1959). These studies show that while single b may kill a significant portion of the above-gr hardwood biomass, repeated burns are necessary provide the rootstock kill that is essential t effective hardwood control (Grano 1970; Lotti 1962).

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Graduate Student and Professor of Forestry, respectively, in the Department of Forestry, Wildlife and Fisheries, The University of Tennessee, Knoxville, Tennessee.

Prescribed fires are also widely used to
duce heavy fuel accumulations thereby minimizing
danger of devastating wildfires. Cooper
75) used backfires during the cool winter
son to reduce heavy roughs that had accumulated
r many years. Headfires, which reduce aerial
ls more than backfires, may be more attractive
successive fuel-reduction burns since they
less costly than backfires (Sackett 1975).

In recent years a few studies have demon-
ated that prescribed fire can be used safely
sloping terrain in the South. Brender and
per (1968) found that both downslope back-
es and upslope strip headfires were effective
killing hardwoods in a loblolly pine stand on
Georgia Piedmont. In the hilly Coastal Plain
Alabama, Chen, Hodgkins, and Watson (1975)
nd that burns during the growing season top
led more understory hardwoods than dormant
son burns, and that sweetgum (Liquidambar
raciflua L.) and winged elm (Ulmus alata L.)
e more susceptible to top kill than the oaks
ercus spp.) and hickories (Carya spp.)

In a test of upslope and downslope headfires
backfires on sloping terrain in West Tennessee,
Bruyn[3] found that downslope burns killed more
dwoods and consumed more fuel than upslope
ns when burning conditions were marginal. When
es burned intensely, however, these differences
e less noticable. Since the danger of wild-
e was much greater under these conditions,
nslope fires were recommended. He found that
d movement on sloping terrain tended to make
nslope fires behave as backfires (i.e., wind
ection is generally upslope during the day).
s further reduced the rate-of-spread of down-
pe fires, accentuating their primary disadvan-
e, i.e., very slow rate-of-spread, enabling
treatment of only small areas during the
ited periods when burning conditions were
isfactory.

The objective of this study was to develop
e and effective burning techniques for hard-
d control and fuel reduction in pine planta-
ns on the rolling terrain of the Cumberland
teau.

METHODS

Study plots were located in a 26-year old, industry-owned loblolly pine plantation on an east-west oriented ridge on the Cumberland Plateau. The plantation was established following the clear-cutting of a low-quality hardwood stand followed by chemical treatment to control residual hardwoods and hardwood sprouts. Several years after plantation establishment herbicides were applied by helicopter to selectively control hardwoods that were competing with the planted pines. Pine stocking was good on the south-facing slope but scattered hardwoods remained in the overstory on the north slope. Understory hardwoods were abundant on both slopes.

For each of 3 seasons (fall, spring, and summer) in which burns were tested, 4 plots were established, 2 on the north- and 2 on the south-facing slopes. These 12 plots provided for tests of both headfires and backfires both up and down slope. They were arranged in anticipation that a regional wind pattern would control where fires burned as headfires or backfires (i.e., where a fire was ignited at the base of one slope to burn as an upslope headfire, the headfire on the opposite slope would be ignited at the top of the ridge to burn downslope). Burn treatment plots occupied approximately 2 acres each, giving a total acreage burned for each season of approximately 8 acres.

In each burn plot 4 randomly located transects 9.8 feet wide and extending 164 feet in the up/downslope direction were established. All hardwood stems over 6 inches high were located on transect maps and tallied according to 0.4 inch diameter classes, diameter being measured 6 inches above the average groundline.

Immediately prior to burning, a steel cylinder 10 inches in diameter and sharpened on one end, was used to obtain 9 randomly located litter samples (to the litter-mineral soil interface), each of which was immediately placed in a plastic bag to prevent moisture loss. These were returned to the laboratory where moist weight and oven dry weight (at 70^{o}C) were determined (to the nearest 0.1 gram) to provide both fuel moisture and fuel loading estimates.

Seasonal burns were carried out as follows: the fall burn was on October 22, 1979; the spring burn on May 12, 1980; and the summer burn on August 27, 1980. Weather and fuel conditions on these dates are given in Table 1.

3/ de Bruyn, Peter. 1981. Prescribed fire
a 23-year-old loblolly pine (Pinus taeda L.)
antation on sloping terrain in West Tennessee.
published M.S. Thesis. University of Tennessee,
oxville, Tennessee. 43 p.

Table 1.--Weather and fuel conditions at the time of the 3 seasonal burns.

	FALL BURN	SPRING BURN	SUMMER BURN
Wind (m.p.h.)	2.40	1.64	0.50
Temperature (°F)	72	84	87
Relative Humidity (%)	71	54	45
Fuel Moisture (%)	40	22	31
Fuel Volume (lbs./ac.)	17,230	32,090	14,370

Suitable weather conditions for winter burns had been so infrequent in earlier phases of this project that they were not included in this study. These will be added to future studies as experience indicates they can occasionally be effective. The downslope backfire was always ignited first as its rate of spread was the slowest, while the upslope headfire was ignited last as it spread most rapidly. The average time required for fires to burn the length of the four 164 foot transects was used to calculate the rate-of-spread. Following each burn, litter samples were taken again to determine fuel reduction.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

The spring burns were by far the most intense of the seasonal tests, and most nearly achieved the goals established for this study, i.e., reducing fuels and controlling hardwoods (Table 2). However, they also killed more of the pine crop trees.

Table 2.--Hardwood top kill, fuel reduction and crop tree mortality according to season of burn.

SEASON OF BURN	HARDWOOD TOPKILL	FUEL REDUCTION	LOBLOLLY PINE CROP TREE MORTALITY
	- - - - - - - - PERCENT	- - - - - - - -	
FALL	88	34	11
SPRING	98	66	22
SUMMER	90	33	7

The low fuel moisture on this date resulted i much greater fuel reduction than for burns in other seasons. While these fires were succes in killing back more of the large hardwoods, were not otherwise better for hardwood contro Most of the crop tree mortality resulted from the upslope, headfire on the steeper southern slope. This fire spread at the rate of 577 feet per hour, the fastest of the 12 burns. of the dead pines were in the smaller diamete classes suggesting that such fires may functi as a thinning from below under these conditio

The summer burns on the northern slope w pine stocking was low due to aggressive hardw competition in the overstory, were especially poor as the litter layer was largely decompos and the surface organic matter that remained compacted. On north and east aspects in this region the greater hardwood component in most pine plantations will likely create fuel cond tions that make fires less intense and hardwo control more difficult. Brender and Cooper (found that hardwood leaves form compact layer that restrict air movement, keeping lower leaves moist for longer periods of time.

Experience with these summer burns reinf the observation made in other tests in Tennes that summer burns will be difficult to carry High humidity is characteristic of this seaso resulting in generally high fuel moisture lev Although conditions appeared good for burning these burns were sluggish and had to be conti reignited on the north slope where there was large component of hardwood litter.

Relative humidity, fuel moisture, and wi speed were higher during the fall burn than d the other seasonal burns. Under these unfavo conditions of relative humidity and fuel mois it is unlikely that the burn could have been conducted had it not been for the higher wind speed. This was the only time that winds were high enough to permit a downslope headfire.

Fires burned with greater intensity on the south slope as the litter was largely from the loblolly pine crop trees. In Alabama's hi Coastal Plain Hodgkins and Whipple (1963) repor that backfires in pine litter were more inten and consumed more fuel than backfires in hardw litter.

As was true for an earlier phase of this project conducted in West Tennessee, wind move was more strongly influenced by topography tha by regional wind patterns. When regional win were essentially absent, or when wind speeds were low, there was a strong tendency for upslope fires to burn as headfires and downsl fires as backfires. This was generally the ca for the spring and summer burns, although beha was often erratic.

This behavior is consistent with general observations regarding surface wind movement on irregular terrain. During the day when the ground surface is warming there is a tendency for warmed air to move upslope and form convection pillars along ridges. During the night this direction is reversed, with colder air building along the ground surface and this cool air "flowing" downslope (cold-air drainage). Because of the upslope movement of surface winds during the day the average rate-of-spread of upslope fires on both aspects was much greater than for fires burning downslope (Table 3).

Table 3.--Spread rates for upslope and downslope fires and their effect on hardwood topkill, fuel reduction and crop tree mortality.

FIRE TYPE	FIRE SPREAD RATE	HARDWOOD TOPKILL	FUEL REDUCTION	LOBLOLLY PINE CROP TREE MORTALITY
	Feet/hour	- - - - PERCENT	- - - - -	
UPSLOPE	212	92	51	17
DOWNSLOPE	66	92	51	9

The burn having the most rapid rate-of-spread was consistently the one intended as an upslope, headfire and the slowest always the downslope, backfire. This indicates that while regional winds may not determine surface wind direction on sloping terrain, they do influence surface wind speed. Wind movement was generally greater on the south slope as it was steeper and the slope-length was much greater than that of the north aspect.

Downslope fires were as effective as upslope fires in reducing fuel levels and controlling all but the largest hardwoods (Table 3). Their very slow rate-of-spread was, however, a serious drawback. Unless long fire lines along ridges can be ignited, which is generally not possible in the dissected terrain characteristic of the Cumberland Plateau, these slow-moving fires will be too expensive for practical use in pine plantation management.

In the flat Coastal Plain, regional wind patterns uniformly affect the movement of surface fires. This is not the case on sloping terrain. A dangerously high regional wind would be required to uniformly drive a surface fire beneath a pine overstory on irregularly sloping terrain. This suggests that prescribed burning on irregularly sloping terrain should be done when upslope fires will be headfires and downslope fires backfires. The tendency on sloping terrain for daytime winds to be upslope (most pronounced on clear days) provides a degree of predictability to fire behavior. It further provides sufficient wind movement, when regional winds are too light to drive fires, to prevent the vertical flame pattern that is most likely to cause crown scorch and mortality in crop trees.

Since both upslope headfires and downslope backfires were equally effective in reducing fuels and hardwood competition (Table 3), the problem becomes one of obtaining a rate-of-spread great enough to enable reasonable coverage during that part of the day having satisfactory burning conditions, yet not so intense as to kill crop trees. A topography-related igniting sequence that will be effective and safe for burning terrain such as that of the Cumberland Plateau has yet to be developed. The chevron-type burns, ignited along ridges and on hills, may provide a good starting point, but to enable sufficient coverage they will likely need to be supplemented with contour strip firing to speed burning of the slopes.

LITERATURE CITED

Brender, C. V. and Robert W. Cooper.
1968. Prescribed burning in Georgia's Piedmont loblolly pine stands. Journal of Forestry 66:31-36.

Chen, M. Y., E. J. Hodgkins, and W. J. Watson.
1975. Prescribed burning for improving pine production and wildlife habitat in the hilly Coastal Plain of Alabama. Alabama Agricultural Experiment Station Bulletin 473. Auburn, AL. 19 p.

Cooper, Robert W.
1975. Prescribed burning. Journal of Forestry 73(12):776-780.

Grano, C. X.
1970. Eradicating understory hardwoods by repeated prescribed burning. USDA Forest Service Research Paper 50-56. Southern Forest Experiment Station. New Orleans, LA. 11 p.

Hasty, A. H.
1948. Soil Survey of Rhea County, Tennessee. USDA Soil Conservation Service in Cooperation with Tennessee Agricultural Experiment Station.

Hodgkins, E. J. and S. D. Whipple.
1963. Changes in stand structure following prescribed burning in a loblolly-shortleaf pine forest. Journal of Forestry 61:498-502.

Klawitter, Ralph A.
1959. Prescribed burning can pay its way. Forest Farmer 18(9):8.

Lotti, Thomas.
1962. The use of prescribed fire in the silviculture of loblolly pine. Proceedings Tall Timbers Fire Ecology Conference No. 1. p. 109-120.

McClay, T. A.
1955. Loblolly pine growth as affected by removal of understory hardwoods and shrubs. USDA Forest Service Southeastern Forest Experiment Station Research Note 73. Asheville, NC.

Murphy, Paul A.
1972. Forest resources of Tennessee. USDA Forest Service Bulletin SO-35. Southern Forest Experiment Station. New Orleans, LA. 33 p.

Neel, Leon.
1965. Head fires in southeastern pines. Proceedings Tall Timbers Fire Ecology Conference No. 4. p. 231-240.

Phelps, Jewell.
1977. The Cumberland Plateau. IN Fullerton, Ralph and John Ray (eds.), Tennessee: Geographical Patterns and Regions, p. 69-74. Kendall Hunt Publishing Co. Dubuque, Iowa 150 p.

Riebold, R. J.
1955. Summer burns for hardwood control i loblolly pine. USDA Forest Service Fire Control Notes 16:34-36.

Sackett, S. S.
1975. Scheduling prescribed burns for haza reduction in the Southeast. Journal of Forestry 73(3):143-147.

Walker, Laurence C.
1962. The Southern Pine Region. IN Barrett John W. (ed.), Regional Silviculture of t United States. p. 246-295. The Ronald Company. New York. 610 p.

Williston, Hamlin L. and Bernard J. Huckenpa
1958. Response of six conifers in North Mississippi underplantings. Journal of F 56:135-137.

INFLUENCE OF BURNING AND GRAZING ON SOIL NUTRIENT PROPERTIES AND TREE GROWTH ON A GEORGIA COASTAL PLAIN SITE AFTER 40 YEARS[1]

William H. McKee, Jr., and Clifford E. Lewis[2]

Abstract.--Soil analysis of a study area in the Coastal Plain of Georgia indicates that 40 years of grazing and prescribed burning have had no adverse effect on concentrations of total nitrogen, available phosphorus, exchangeable bases, or organic matter in mineral soil. Burning alone reduced organic matter and nutrients in the forest floor and tended to increase them in the surface 6 inches of mineral soil. Grazing did not affect soil nutrient properties nor did grazing interact significantly with prescribed burning. Results indicate that well-managed grazing in conjunction with prescribed burning has no adverse effects on site quality for longleaf-slash pine-wiregrass sites.

INTRODUCTION

Burning to improve grass production and woods azing is common throughout much of the Southern astal Plain (Lewis et al. 1982). Most studies these practices have addressed forage quality, mber reproduction, burning frequency, and direct teraction of grazing and timber production. A btle problem frequently overlooked is the effect at grazing and prescribed burning, which must company the grazing, has on future site quality d nutrient cycling in the forest floor and soil.

In this paper we report effects of grazing mbined with biennial prescribed burning over a riod of 40 years on nutrient levels on sandy astal Plain sites.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Pastures were intensively sampled in 1980 ter 40 years of prescribed burning and grazing search on a Coastal Plain site in Berrien County, orgia. A portion of the Alapaha Experimental nge, which consists of a variable stand of longaf and slash pine, was fenced into eight 50-acre pastures in 1942 so that two replications of four different prescribed burning regimes could be established. Burning treatments maintained until 1950 consisted of an unburned "control", triennial burning, biennial burning, and annual burning (Table 1). During 1950-54, the six pastures were burned annually. Beginning in 1954, fire was excluded from all pastures to permit reestablishment of pine by natural regeneration. The old mature trees were removed in 1961. An inventory of the trees in 1963 indicated that fairly similar stocking existed on all pastures. During 1965-67, biennial burning of pastures which has a previous burning treatment was initiated that continued to the present. The two unburned pastures have been protected from fire since 1941, when wildfire swept through the area.

The present timber stand consists of slash and longleaf pine with basal areas averaging 75 square feet per acre from 368 trees per acre (fig. 1). Average tree heights and diameters are 48 feet and 5.7 inches, respectively, with no significant effects on tree growth due to burning or grazing.[3] Understory vegetation consits of wiregrass range as described in detail by Halls et al. (1956).

All pastures were grazed at 8.3 acres per animal for 7 to 10 months per year from 1942-49. During 1950-54, grazing varied from light stocking at 17 acres per animal to heavy stocking at 4 acres per animal for 10 months of the year. Pastures

---

[1] Paper presented at the Second Biennial uthern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, orgia, November 5-6, 1982.

[2] Authors are Soil Scientist and Range Scitist, Southeastern Forest Experiment Station, arleston, South Carolina 29407 and Gainesville, orida 32611, respectively.

[3] Unpublished data: C. E. Lewis, USDA Forest Service, Gainesville, Florida.

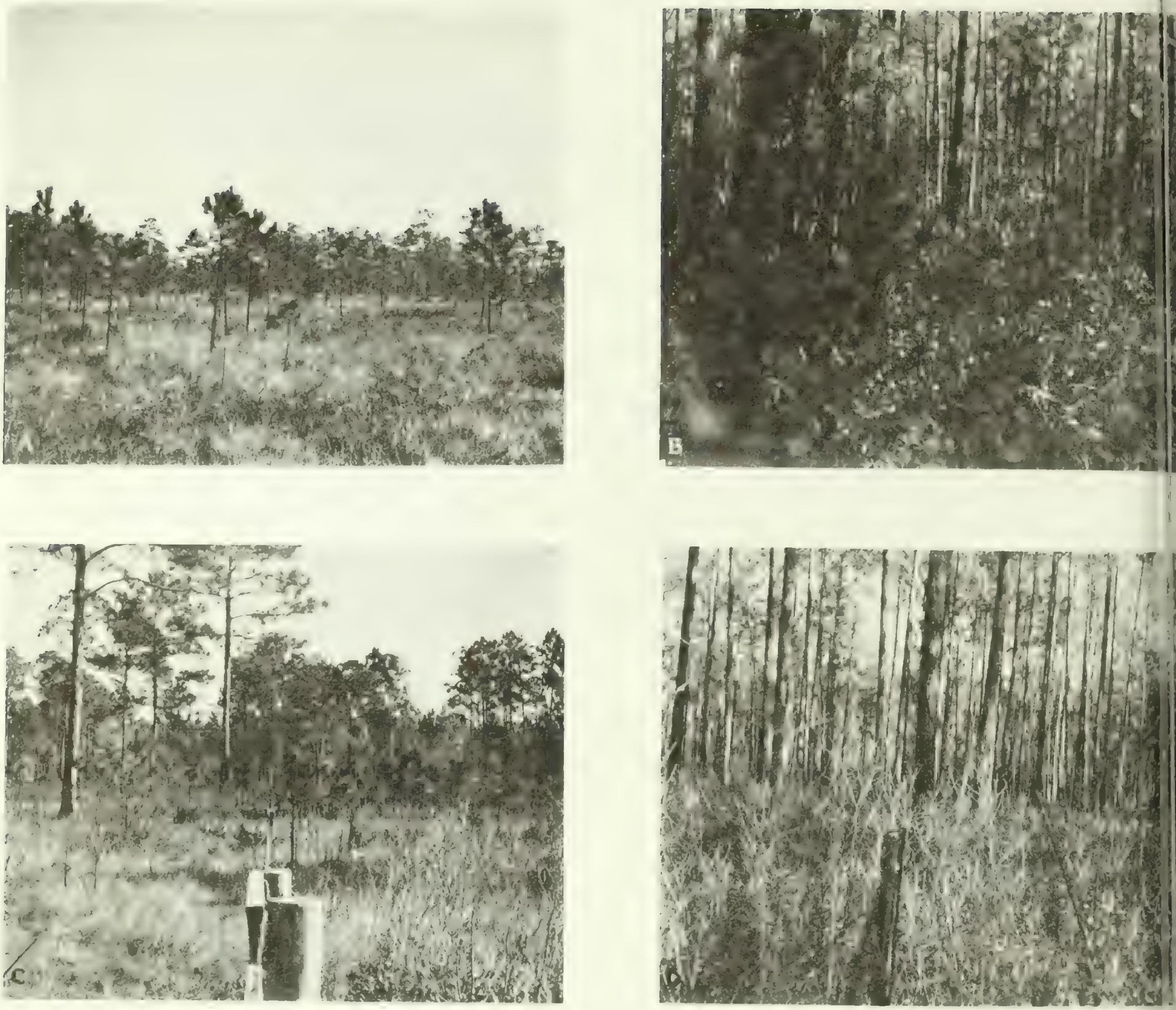


Figure 1.--Changes in trees and understory vegetation are evident on areas burned in 1941 as they appea in 1942 on an unburned treatment initially (a) and again in 1980 (b); and on a burned treatment initi (c) and again in 1980 (d).

Table 1.--History of burning treatments for pastures on Alapaha Range.

	Initial burning treatments and subsequent changes in fire management			
Years	Control	Triennial	Biennial	Annual
1941[1]	Wildfire	Wildfire	Wildfire	Wildfire
1942-1949	Unburned	Triennial burns	Biennial burns	Annual burns
1950-1954	Unburned	Annual burns	Annual burns	Annual burns
1955-1964	Unburned	Unburned	Unburned	Unburned
1965-1982	Unburned	Biennial burns	Biennial burns	Biennial burns

[1] The area was protected from fire from 1934 but a widlfire in 1941 burned about half of the experimental area.

wre neither grazed nor burned from 1954-59 to alow for natural regeneration of pine. From 1960-6, pastures were stocked at 20 acres per animal along with 0.6 acres of improved pasture per animal fr 10 months per year. From 1967-82, pastures hve been grazed at this same intensity, but for oly 6 months each year.

Soils in the study area are: Alapaha loamy snd (Arenic Paleaquult loamy siliceous thermic), a poorly drained soil making up about 2/3 of the sudy area; Leefield loamy sand (Arenic Plinthoqic Paleudult loamy siliceous thermic), a somewat poorly drained soil representing about 1/4 o the study area; Irvington loamy sand (Plinthic Paguidult fine-loamy siliceous thermic), a moderaely well drained soil found on a relatively small prtion of the study area; and Pelham loamy sand (renic Paleaquult loamy siliceous thermic), a porly drained soil representing about 1/4 of the eght pastures but only 2 sampling areas in differet pastures in the study (USDA, SCS 1975-80).

On upland portions (low ridges 2 to 5 feet aove drainageways) within each of the eight pstures, six randomly located 1/4-acre fenced eclosures were established to exclude grazing. Ajacent to each exclosure is a like area with etablished corners but no fence. Samples were cllected on two subplots in these 1/4-acre sample pots. At each subplot, forest floor and mineral sil samples were collected at four random points.

The forest floor was a mor humus that mixed ttle with the mineral soil. The forest floor mples included all material from the L, F, and layers (litter, fungal, and humus) from within 6-inch-square frame. No attempt was made to gment the forest floor by layers. Two 1-inch ameter soil cores were then collected from within e 6-inch squares. The cores were segmented into pths of 0-3 and 3-6 inches. The 0-3 inch sample presents the A1 horizon and the 3-6 inch sample, most cases, the A2 horizon, 6 inches being the west depth on which a measurable effect of burng was expected.

Forest floor samples were oven dried at 70°C for 24 hours, weighed, and ground to pass a 40-mesh screen. Nitrogen was determined by a modified micro-Kjeldahl procedure; 0.1 g of material was digested in a test tube, and ammonia content was determined by the salicylate-cyanurate procedure (Nelson and Sommers 1973). Other analyses were made on material dry-ashed for 2 hours at 450°C and taken up in 0.03 N HNO_3. Phosphorus was determined by the molybdovanadate procedure (Jackson 1958) and K, Ca, Mg, and Na by atomic absorption. A separate sample was dry-ashed at 500°C for 2 hours to determine mineral content, which was subtracted from the dry weight. Thus, weights of forest floor material represent only the loss on ignition component.

Soil samples were air-dried and crushed to pass a 2-mm sieve. Organic matter content was assayed by wet oxidation (Jackson 1958). Particle-size distribution was determined by the hydrometer method (Day 1965). Exchangeable bases were determined by atomic absorption on extracts made with 1 N NH_4OAC (Jackson 1958). Available phosphorus was determined by extracting 2.5 g of soil with 20 ml of Bray P2 solution (Bray and Kurtz 1945). Soil pH was measured with a glass electrode on a 1:2 soil/water mixture. Total soil nitrogen was determined by micro-Kjeldahl digestion of a 1.0 g sample with ammonia being determined by the salicylate-cyanurate method (Nelson and Sommers 1973).

Results are expressed as concentration of nutrients in the soil components and as total amounts in the surface soil and forest floor. Bulk density values are taken from results published in an earlier report (Suman and Halls 1955). Comparisons of burning and grazing treatments are made by analysis of variance and "t" test with significance reported at the 0.05 level.

RESULTS

Soil

Nutrient concentrations were altered by the burning and grazing treatments (Table 2). Clay content of soils for the burning and grazing treatments ranged from 3 to 6 percent in the 0-3 inch soil layer and from 4 to 7 percent in the 3-6 inch soil layer. These soil textures are typical of many wet flatwoods.

Soil pH ranged from 3.50 to 4.39 for burning and grazing treatments in the 0-3 inch depth and from 3.77 to 4.52 in the 3-6 inch depth (Table 2). High acidity is typical of Ultisols throughout the Coastal Plain. Suman and Carter (1954) reported pH values of 4.7 in the 0-3 inch layer of soil and 4.8 to 4.9 in the 3-10 inch soil layer for this study area. Differences between their analysis and the present sampling may in part reflect different sampling techniques and seasonal variations in the soils.

Total nitrogen ranged from 282 to 435 pa per million in the 0-3 inch soil layer and fr 144 to 213 parts per million in the 3-7 inch layer. These concentrations in the top 6 inc of soil are low in comparison to other sites the Coastal Plain (McKee 1982); they reflect sandy nature of the study site and its low nu holding capacity. Of interest is the slightl but not significantly, higher level of nitrog grazed compared to ungrazed plots.

Concentrations of available phosphorus r from 2.4 to 3.3 parts per million in the 0-3 soil layer and from 1.7 to 2.3 in the 3-6 inc layer. These values fall in the range of tho observed on a sandy site in Alabama (McKee 19 As in other prescribed burning studies, conce tions of available phosphorus were higher on ed plots than on unburned control. Grazing ha no noticeable effect on phosphorus levels.

Table 2.--Average chemical and physical properties for mineral soil as related to initial grazing and p scribed burning treatments during 1942-49. All burned pastures have been burned biennally since 1965

					Exchangeable bases						
Original burning treatment	Grazing treatment	Soil pH	Total nitrogen	Available phosphorus	Calcium	Potassium	Magnesium	Sodium	Total bases	Clay	O m
			- - - ppm - - -		- - - - - - - -		meq/100 g	- - - - - - -		- perc	
					0-3 Inch Soil Depth						
Control	None	4.07	282	2.4	0.12	0.01	0.05	0.09	0.27	5	[illegible]
	Grazed	4.05	304	2.5	0.11	0.02	0.04	0.07	0.24	6	[illegible]
Triennial	None	3.52	305	3.0	0.18	0.02	0.05	0.08	0.33	3	[illegible]
burning	Grazed	3.50	309	3.3	0.18	0.02	0.06	0.07	0.33	4	[illegible]
Biennial	None	4.39	378	3.2	0.33	0.02	0.08	0.08	0.51	5	[illegible]
burning	Grazed	4.31	435	3.3	0.26	0.03	0.07	0.06	0.42	5	[illegible]
Annual	None	4.14	406	2.6	0.16	0.02	0.05	0.09	0.32	4	1.
burning	Grazed	4.13	412	2.8	0.15	0.02	0.05	0.08	0.30	4	1.
					3-6 Inch Soil Depth						
Control	None	4.38	203	2.1	0.09	0.01	0.02	0.06	0.18	6	1
	Grazed	4.41	209	2.1	0.09	0.01	0.02	0.06	0.18	6	1
Triennial	None	3.77	144	2.1	0.11	0.01	0.02	0.06	0.20	4	1
burning	Grazed	3.82	165	2.3	0.12	0.01	0.03	0.06	0.22	4	1
Biennial	None	4.52	213	2.2	0.14	0.01	0.03	0.06	0.24	7	1
burning	Grazed	4.52	198	2.1	0.11	0.01	0.02	0.05	0.19	6	1
Annual	None	4.20	189	1.7	0.12	0.01	0.02	0.07	0.22	4	1
burning	Grazed	4.22	193	1.9	0.12	0.01	0.02	0.07	0.22	4	1

Concentrations of total exchangeable bases
he upper soil layer ranged from 0.24 to 0.27
iequivalent per 100 g for the unburned control
from 0.42 to 0.51 milliequivalent per 100 g
the areas receiving biennial prescribed burns.
burning treatments contained slightly more
angeable bases. Grazing had no noticeable
ct on bases. In the 3-6 inch soil layer base
entrations ranged from 0.18 to 0.24 milli-
valent, and effects of treatments were even
apparent. The trend for burning to increase
entrations of most exchangeable bases in the
rizons is consistent with determinations made
ther sites where prescribed burning was
ied (McKee 1982, Wells et al. 1979). Although
ing may have increased Ca slightly in the A2
zon, it appears unlikely that burning mobil-
any element to the extent that it moved
nd the upper part of the soil profile where
s are concentrated.

Organic matter concentrations in mineral
l were not strongly or consistently influenced
the prescribed burning treatments. These soils
typically low in organic matter. Of interest
the 0.04 to 0.13 percentage points higher
anic content on grazed compared to ungrazed
s at the 0-3 inch depth. This trend was not
arent at the lower depth.

est Floor

Prescribed burning significantly reduced
unts of organic materials and nutrients in the
est floor (Table 3). However, any effects of
initial burning treatments (1942-54) on the
est floor properties did not persist in the
1 samples. Amounts of organic matter and nutrients were somewhat higher on areas burned annually than on areas burned less frequently. Grazing effects were not consistent and do not appear to affect measured forest floor properties.

Burning reduced the weight of organic matter in the forest floor by 69 to 88 percent and reduced that of nitrogen by 76 to 90 percent. The reductions in nitrogen content of the forest floor are similar to those of other burning studies (McKee 1982).

Phosphorus in the forest floor ranged from 12.1 to 17.2 pounds per acre without burning and from 2.0 to 4.0 pounds per acre with burning. Prescribed burning also decreased the amounts of cations (calcium, potassium, and magnesium) by 66 to 89 percent. These changes are similar to those found on other Coastal Plain sites following burning (McKee 1982, Wells 1971).

Total Nutrient Budget

The changes in the forest floor and mineral soil are seen together (fig. 2). Bulk density values published by Suman and Halls (1955) for the soils in this study area were used to estimate quantities of nutrients per acre in the surface 6 inches of soil. At the time of sampling, the top 3 inches of soil in the grazed areas which were burned had higher bulk densities (1.48) than areas unburned (1.40) or areas burned and ungrazed (1.40).

Since only the biennial burning treatment has been applied consistently since the study began, and since the soils on this treatment's plots are similar to those of control plots, comparisons involving only this treatment and the control were

ble 3.--Organic matter and nutrient contents in forest floor as related to initial grazing and prescribed burning treatments. All burn pastures have been burned biennially since 1965-66.

Treatments		Forest floor content					
riginal urning eatment	Grazing treatment	Organic X1000	Nitrogen	Phosphorus	Calcium	Potassium	Magnesium
		- - - - - - - -	- - - - - - - -	- - - - - pounds	per acre - - - - -	- - - - - - - -	- - - - - - - -
ntrol	None	59.7[1]	514	17.2	85	15.1	24.5
	Grazed	46.5^A	369^A	12.1^A	64^A	10.9^A	16.5^A
iennial	None	11.2$_B$	75$_B$	3.0$_B$	20$_B$	2.3$_B$	3.5$_B$
urning	Grazed	11.0	70	2.8	17	2.1	2.9
ennial	None	6.3$_B$	46$_B$	2.0$_B$	12$_B$	1.5$_B$	2.3$_B$
urning	Grazed	7.0	54	2.1	15	1.5	2.4
nual	None	13.6$_B$	97$_B$	3.5$_B$	24$_B$	2.9$_B$	4.0$_B$
urning	Grazed	16.2	107	4.0	25	3.6	5.1

[1] Burn treatments with the same letter in columns are not significantly different at the 0.05 level.

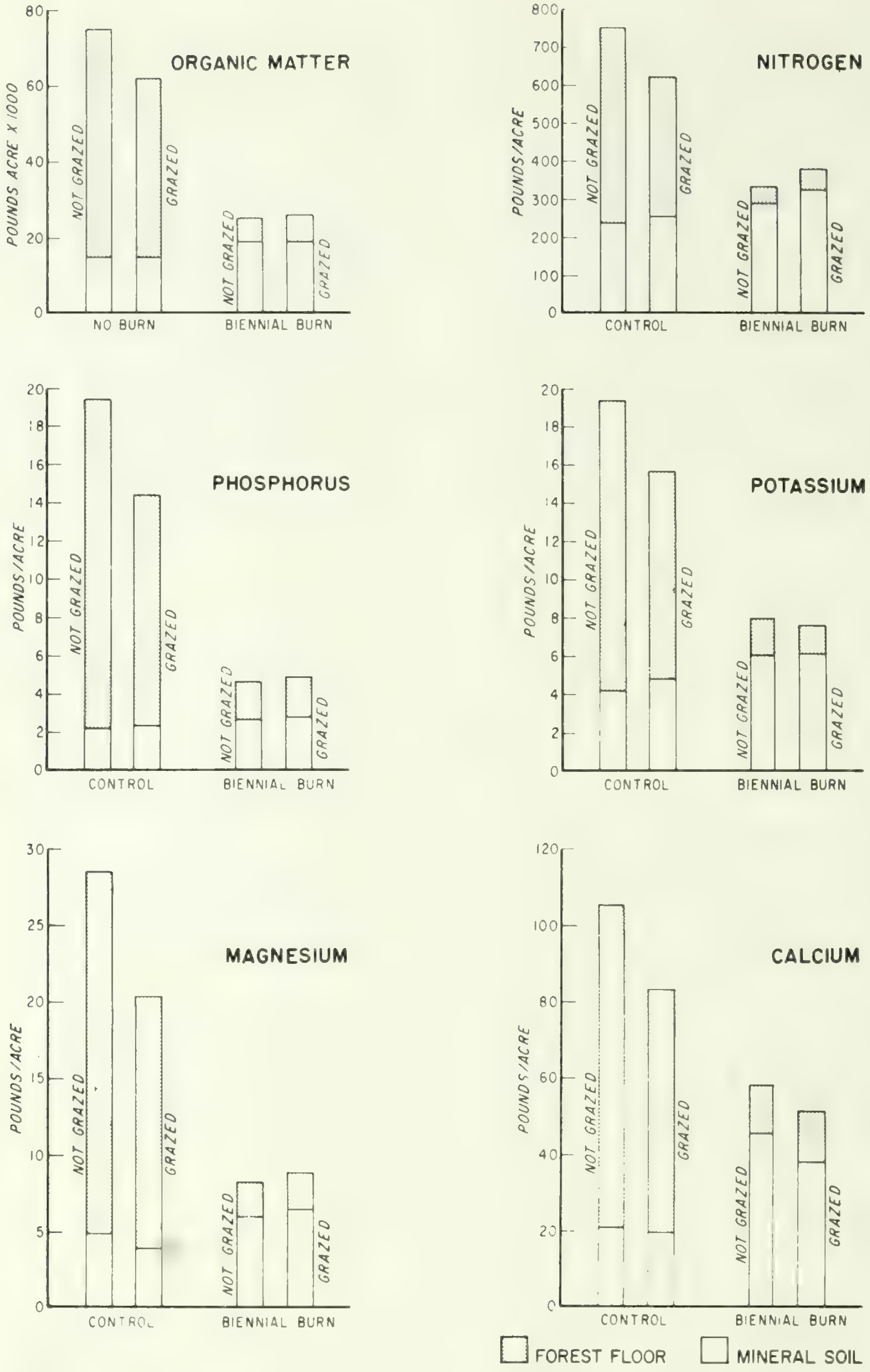


Figure 2.--Nutrient and organic matter content of forest floor and the surface 6 inches of mineral soil
they contribute to the total nutrient budget.

i wn. Amounts of organic matter and nutrients w e compared by the "t" test of paired subplots a the 0.05 level.

While burning decreased the organic matter i the forest floor by approximately 40,000 pounds p acre, it increased organic matter in the s face 6 inches of soil by 25 percent or 4,000 p nds per acre. Grazing had no significant e ect on organic content of the forest floor or s l with or without burning.

Nitrogen decreased in the forest floor and i reased significantly in the mineral soil in m h the same way as organic matter. The indic ed increase of nitrogen in the mineral soil m result from mobilization of nitrogen by burn- i . In any case, the increase in readily availa e nitrogen stimulates plant growth. Grazing d not alter nitrogen content significantly.

A decrease in the ratio of forest floor o anic matter to nitrogen found in other areas o the South with prescribed burning (McKee 1982) w not observed at this site. Here, ratios of o anic matter to nitrogen appear to be unaffected b burning.

Burning decreased total phosphorus in the f est floor but significantly increased available p sphorus from 1.84 to 2.18 pounds per acre. A t e comparison of phosphorus contents in the f est floor and soil is impossible because the f est floor analysis represents the total phos- p rus present but the values for the soil are for a ilable phosphorus. Grazing had no significant e ect on phosphorus content in the total nutrient b get.

Although burning doubled calcium content in t e mineral soil, it reduced the amount in the f est floor sufficiently to lower total calcium i the total nutrient budget. Grazing did not s gnificantly alter totals for calcium or other c tions. Calcium contents for this site are 1/3 t 1/10 those of other sandy Coastal Plain sites w ere burning was studied (McKee 1982). A defi- c ency of calcium may develop without burning and a fect either timber or forage production on such a site. However, no effects of burning on timber h ve been observed in the study.

Prescribed burning reduced the total potas- s um in the forest floor but increased exchange- a le potassium in the soil. Grazing had no e fect on potassium content. The increase in a ailability of potassium may be more important t forage production than to timber production s nce it is uncommon to find southern pine species r sponding to potassium fertilization (Pritchett 79).

Magnesium contents of the forest floor and soil responded to treatments similarly to calcium and potassium. Burning reduced magnesium 7 to 10 fold in the forest floor but increased it by 1.6 pounds per acre in the A horizon. Higher amounts in the mineral soil may be important in maintaining a balanced nutrient pool for plant growth. Certainly, understory plants respond favorably to prescribed burning (Lewis et al. 1982).

CONCLUSIONS

Apparently any removal of nutrients over a long period by grazing or burning of understory plants on this site has not measurably reduced pine production. The intensity of grazing has been moderate, and it has not changed the nutrient status of the soil. If the cattle had any detrimental effects on the site quality, it would probably be through physical compaction of the soil (Suman and Halls 1955). It is possible on poorly drained sites that soil compaction will restrict organic breakdown and nutrient cycling; however, such an effect is not apparent on our study area.

Based on this long-term study, it appears that the combination of burning and grazing has no detrimental effects on the nutrient budget or on pine height or volume growth. Burning may in fact be beneficial to site quality through more rapid mineralization of nutrients. The responses of herbaceous vegetation and forage quality to prescribed burning have been described in other papers (Lewis et al. 1982).

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

This was a cooperative study by the Georgia Coastal Plain Experiment Station, University of Georgia, College of Agriculture, Tifton, GA and the USDA Forest Service, Southeastern Forest Experiment Station, Asheville, NC.

LITERATURE CITED

Bray, R. H., and L. T. Kurtz.
1945. Determination of total organic and available forms of phosphorus in soils. Soil Sci. 59: 39-45.

Day, P. R.
1965. Particle fractionation and particle-size analysis. In Black, C. A., ed. Methods of soil analysis. Agronomy 9: 545-567.

Halls, L. K., O. M. Hale, and B. L. Southwell.
1956. Grazing capacity of wiregrass-pine ranges of Georgia. Ga. Agri. Exp. Stn. Tech. Bull. N.S. 2, 38 p.

Jackson, M. L.
1958. Soil chemical analysis. Prentice-Hall, Inc., Englewood Cliff, NJ. 498 p.

Lewis, C. E., H. E. Grelen, G. E. Probasco.
1982. Prescribed burning in southern forest and rangeland improves forage and its use. South. J. Appl. For. 6: 19-25.

McKee, W. H., Jr.
1982. Changes in soil fertility following prescribed burning on coastal plain pine sites. USDA For. Serv., Research Paper SE-234, 23 p.

Nelson, D. W., and L. E. Sommers.
1973. Determination of total nitrogen in plant material. Agronomy J. 65: 109-112.

Pritchett, W. L.
1979. Properties and management of forest soils. New York: John Wiley & Sons. 500 p.

Suman, R. F., and R. L. Carter.
1954. Burning and grazing have little eff chemical properties of coastal plain for soils. USDA For. Serv., Southeastern Fo Exp. Stn. Res. Note 56, 2 p.

_____, and L. K. Halls.
1955. Burning and grazing affect physical properties of coastal plain forest soils USDA For. Serv., Southeastern For. Exp. Res. Note 75, 2 p.

U.S. Department of Agriculture, Soil Conserva Service.
1975-1980. Soil interpretation records fo individual soil series. USDA Soil Conser tion Service Reports.

Wells, C. G.
1971. Effects of prescribed burning on soi chemical properties and nutrient availabi In Proc: Prescribed Burning Symp., pp. 86

_____, R. E. Campbell, L. F. DeBano, and othe
1979. Effects of fire on soil. USDA For. Gen. Tech. Rpt. WO-7, 34 p.

REGENERATION OF LOBLOLLY PINE PLANTATIONS IN THE PIEDMONT BY CLEARCUTTING WITH SEED IN PLACE[1]

D. H. Van Lear, J. E. Douglass, S. K. Cox,
M. K. Augspurger, and S. K. Nodine[2]

Abstract.--Near-maturity plantations of loblolly pine in the Piedmont of South Carolina were successfully regenerated by clearcutting with seed in place. Three prescribed fires prepared the seedbed and adequately controlled hardwood competition. Two growing seasons after harvest, average seedling density on four watersheds was 21,160 stems/acre, but only about 3,400 were over 40 inches tall. An economic comparison of natural and artificial regeneration, plus the success of on-the-ground trials using natural regeneration demonstrates that clearcutting with seed in place is a viable low-cost alternative for regeneration of harvested pine plantations.

INTRODUCTION

Artificial regeneration of the Southern ies by clearcutting and planting has been a c mon practice for several decades. Initially, rgy costs associated with mechanical site paration were low, genetically improved seedigs were on the horizon, machinery was being eloped that could overpower a site, and cessful establishment of plantations was ost assured. Foresters became enthralled h the seemingly overwhelming advantages of ificial regeneration.

Artificial regeneration is expensive and not suited for landowners with capital to est. Yet most forest land in the South is ed by small, nonindustrial landowners who ca ill afford large initial investments. Ne ther do they have heavy equipment at their d posal for site preparation and planting, w ch, if improperly used, can physically ha m the soil (May et al. 1973, Foil and Ralston 1 7), especially in the Piedmont.

In recent years, the cost of artificially r enerating cutover stands has escalated to w re only larger private industrial ownerships a willing to pay the required establishment c ts. As a result, many harvested pine plantations are not being regenerated back to pine. For example, over 42 percent of all pine types harvested in South Carolina between 1968-78 have reverted to oak-pine or hardwood types (Sheffield 1979). In some other southern states, the percentage is higher.

In order to maintain the pine type on nonindustrial private lands, low-cost alternatives to artificial regeneration must be used. Natural regeneration is one alternative. Lotti (1961) discussed advantages and potential of natural regeneration for loblolly pine in the Coastal Plain by relying on seed from trees to be harvested. He called it clearcutting with seed in place. However, the technique has received little testing in the Piedmont.

The primary objective of our study was to evaluate the effect of prescribed burning and clearcutting on water quality of ephemeral Piedmont streams. This study afforded the opportunity to test clearcutting with seed in place under Piedmont conditions as a means of naturally regenerating loblolly pine plantations nearing maturity. In this paper, we discuss the techniques and results of the method, and the economic benefits that might ensue to the landowner.

METHODS

Study Area

Four small watersheds ranging from 1.5-3.1 acres and supporting 36 to 37-year-old loblolly pine plantations were studied. These stands are in the Clemson Experimental Forest in the upper Piedmont of South Carolina. Pine seedlings were planted in 1939-40 at 6 x 6 foot spacing. Pine basal area of three previously thinned watersheds ranged from 78 to 100 feet^2/acre, while the basal area of the single unthinned watershed was 143 feet^2/acre (Table 1). There was little understory development in the unthinned stand, whereas the understory of the thinned stands contained black cherry (Prunus serotina ehrh.), blackgum (Nyssa sylvatica Marsh.), eastern redcedar (Juniperus virginiana L.), dogwood (Cornus florida L.), oak (Quercus spp.), and hickory (Carya spp.). Most understory stems were less than 3 inches in diameter at ground line.

---

[1] Paper presented at Second Southern S vicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, G rgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Professor, Department of Forestry, C mson University; Principal Hydrologist, C eeta Hydrologic Laboratory, USDA Forest S vice, Otto, N.C.; Forestry Aides and I tructor, Department of Forestry, Clemson U versity.

Soils on the watersheds are classified as typic Hapludults. Major soil series represented are Cecil, Madison, and Pacolet (Table 1). These soils are highly eroded after decades of row cropping, and the B horizon is now at or near the surface. Average slopes range between 11 and 16 percent and the mid and lower slopes are dissected by ephemeral stream channels.

Annual precipitation averages 51 inches and is generally well distributed throughout the year. In recent years, summer droughts of moderate-to-extended duration have occurred. Winter tends to be the wettest season with about 30 percent of the annual precipitation.

Prescriptions and Sampling Procedures

The four watersheds were burned three times to control the hardwood understory and prepare the seedbed for natural seeding. The first burn (none of the stands had any history of previous burning) was applied to all four watersheds March 11, 1977, three days after passage of a cold front which delivered 0.8 inches of rain. Air temperature was between 50-59°F and relative humidity was about 40 percent. The second burn was accomplished on September 20, 1978. Burning conditions were good with relative humidity between 25 and 50 percent, wind speed between 5-10 mph, and air temperature between 81 and 90°F. About 2 weeks had passed since a significant rain, but high humidity had prevented excessive drying of fuels.

These two burns would have probably bee adequate for controlling understory hardwoo and preparing the seedbed. However, since major objective was to evaluate the effects prescribed fire on water quality, a third bu was applied on September 12, 1979 to provide additional data to satisfy this objective. Relative humidity was between 55-60 percent, winds were about 10 mph, and air temperature about 81°F. The last significant rain was a a week prior to burning and the three days b burning were cool and dry.

Burning technique was similar for all f A fire plow established a fuel break around watershed. Back fires were set at the top o slope against the fire break. After the bac fire had moved downslope for perhaps 15 feet strip head fires were ignited successively a about 30 feet intervals until the entire wat sheds were burned.

Following the third burn, seedfall for regeneration occurred during the months of October to December. The watersheds were harvested between December 17, 1979 and January 10, 1980. Trees were felled with chainsaws and skidded in tree-lengths with a winch-equipped crawler tractor. Logging sla was left as it fell on watersheds 61, 66, an 68. On watershed 64, slash was bladed off the watershed to simulate whole-tree harvesting as part of another study.

Prior to the first burn, the forest flo was collected from ten 1-yard^2 plots on each watershed. Postburn samples were collected f adjacent plots about one month after burning. Samples were ashed so that weights could be expressed on an organic matter basis. Forest floor consumption during the second and third burns were estimated from measured litter weights, assuming 20 percent litter moisture content, using table VI-F-7 of the Southern Forestry Smoke Management Guidebook (U.S. For Service 1976). This data was collected on tw of the four burned watersheds. Understory

Table 1. Site and stand characteristics of four watersheds.

Watershed No.	Size (ac.)	Slope (%)	Soil Series	Stand Age (yr.)	Basal A (ft.^{2}/a
61	1.6	13	Cecil, Madison	37[1]	143
64	2.8	16	Pacolet	36	97
66	3.1	11	Pacolet	36	78
68	1.5	12	Madison	36	100

[1] Age in 1975 when study began

vegetation and regrowth following harvest were sampled on four 1/40 acre plots on each watershed. The first inventory of understory vegetation was just prior to the first burn. Subsequent inventories were at the end of the growing season following the first fire, and at the end of the growing season following the third burn, which was also one growing season following clearcutting. Seedfall was measured in ten 1-yard^2 traps/watershed between September and December, 19[illegible]9. Seedling inventories were taken at the end of both the first and second growing seasons following clearcutting using 150 2.7 square foot quadrants/watershed.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

One objective of the prescribed fires was to prepare the seedbed for natural regeneration. Burning with low intensity fires when the lower portion of the forest floor is moist, but the upper portion is crackling dry, consumes a relatively small proportion of the total forest floor (Richter et al. 1982). In this study, 71[illegible]6 pounds/acre (about 1/3) of forest floor material was consumed in the first burn (Table 2). It was estimated that 3676 pounds/acre was consumed in the second burn, which was approximately equal to the litter fall following the first burn. About 1573 pounds/acre was consumed in the third burn, which was 1/2 of the litter fall following the second burn. About 7 1/2 tons/acre of forest floor material remained after the third burn. However, the loss of the strawbrown, loose and fluffy L layer gave the appearance that most of the forest floor had been consumed.

Table 2. Forest floor consumption by three low intensity prescribed fires on watersheds 64 and 66.

Watershed No.	Litter Consumed First Burn	 Second Burn	 Third Burn
		-lbs./ac.-	
64	7093	4516	1918
66	7218	2839	1228

Transects across watersheds following burning indicated less than 1 percent mineral soil exposure following any burn. Retention of a large component of residual forest floor material is the principal reason why low intensity prescribed burning in these loblolly pine plantations had no adverse effect on erosion (Douglass and Van Lear, in press).

The second objective of the prescribed fires was to control hardwood competition, which may greatly reduce seedling survival and growth (Trousdell and Wenger 1963, Langdon 1981). The first burn dramatically reduced the number of hardwood stems between 0.5-2.5 inches (Table 3); but because of resprouting, the number of stems present in the < 0.5 inch diameter class the first growing season after burning increased sixfold. Stems were not counted after the second fire; but one growing season after the third fire, only 10 percent of the small diameter stems remained. Thus, these repetitive fires significantly reduced both total number and size of the hardwood competition.

The most serious competition for the naturally seeded pines would be expected to come from stems in the 0.5-1.5 inch diameter class. One growing season after harvest, there were 520 stems/acre in this diameter class with an average height of about 3.9 feet. However, this competition is not as severe as these numbers indicate, since many of these sprouts occurred in scattered clumps of multiple stems.

Table 3. Size-class distribution of hardwood competition before and after the first burn and after the third burn in near-maturity loblolly pine plantations.

Diameter Size Class	Pre-Burn Burn	Post-First Burn	Post-Third Burn
- in. -		- #/ac. -	
< .5	3,040	18,640	1,683
0.5 - 1.5	800	0	520
1.5 - 2.5	360	40	2
2.5 - 3.5	0	40*	0
Total	4,200	18,720	2,205

* Ingrowth from the 1.5-2.5 inch class

Timing of the seedbed preparation is critical when regenerating stands using clearcutting with seed in place. If burned too early, regrowth of competing vegetation will dominate the site before seedlings can become established. If burned too late, seed on the ground will be consumed by the fire. The last burn, therefore, should be late summer or early fall. Harvest can proceed after seed is in place but prior to spring germination.

Seedfall during the fall of 1979 ranged between 79,400 to 116,200 seed/acre for the four watersheds. Seedlings began germinating in early April and continued until mid-May as frequent rains favored germination. At the end of the first growing season, stocking averaged 17,195 seedlings/acre. Despite 53 percent mortality during a dry first growing season and subsequent droughty conditions, reseeding from the adjacent uncut stands increased stocking to 21,160 seedlings/acre by the end of the second growing season (Table 4).

Table 4. Average height, diameter, and density of loblolly pine seedlings two growing seasons after regeneration by clearcutting with seed in place.

Watershed No.	Height	Basal Diameter	Density
	- in. -	- in. -	- #/ac. -
61	19.8	.3	13,171
64	20.6	.3	30,337
66	20.7	.3	27,098
68	17.1	.2	14,035
Average	19.6	.3	21,160

Logging exposed mineral soil on 20-25 percent of watersheds 61, 66, and 68 where logging slash was left on site. However, blading off all logging slash on watershed 64 exposed nearly 50 percent bare soil. This probably accounts for the high stocking on this watershed.

A preliminary analysis of seedling height distribution indicates that precommercial thinning may not be needed despite high stocking levels. Seedling heights ranged from 8 to 70 inches after three growing seasons; about 16 percent of the seedlings, or about 3,400/acre, were greater than 40 inches. These taller seedlings should compete successfully with the other vegetation that invaded the site. Distribution of seedlings, as determined by the percentage of plots stocked with at least one seedling was excellent, averaging 78 percent for the four watersheds after the second growing season. The wide variety of microsites on these dissected and terraced watersheds may allow rapid differentiation into crown classes and negate the need for precommercial thinning. Further evaluation will be necessary.

Thus, under the conditions of this study, clearcutting with seed in place is a viable method of naturally regenerating loblolly pi in the Piedmont. But can the landowner affo it, and how do investments in natural regeneration compare with those made in artificial regeneration?

A cash-flow analysis comparing natural regeneration using seed in place with artific regeneration by mechanical site preparation a planting was performed. A number of assumpti were made (Table 5). This analysis (Table 6) showed that a landowner could naturally regenerate five times the acreage as could be artificially regenerated for a given investment, assuming the indicated regeneration costs. H rate of return, after taxes, would be 16.4 pe for his investment in natural regeneration ve 12.2 percent for his investment in artificial regeneration.

In some cases, precommercial thinning ma necessary to reduce the stocking of overly de natural stands. Assuming a cost of $35/acre the precommercial thinning, the economic analy indicated a rate of return on natural regener of 17.8 percent and nearly twice the acreage regenerated as compared to artificial regener The higher rate of return for the precommerci thinning treatment is primarily due to the shortened rotation, i.e. 25 years versus 30 ye for natural regeneration without precommercial thinning. Thus, precommercial thinning would a good investment, although it would restrict number of acres that could be regenerated if a limited amount of capital is available for regeneration and early culture.

From an economic standpoint, natural rege eration by clearcutting with seed in place wou be attractive to small timberland owners, both from the standpoint of return on the investmen and the increased acreage that can be regenera for a given sum of money. However, it must be emphasized that natural regeneration using thi method does not just happen; it must be planne years in advance of harvest. Hardwoods must b controlled by one or more prescribed burns, or other methods, and seedbeds must be prepared a the proper time of year. Harvest must occur after seedfall but before germination and be designed to enhance seedling establishment. Natural regeneration is more dependent on rainfall distribution, especially during the germination period.

To make natural regeneration a viable low-cost alternative to artificial regeneration the forester will have to become more familiar with stands nearing maturity to prescribe treatments for seedbed preparation and hardwood cont and to assess potential seed crops. Natural regeneration methods do work, but foresters wil have to use their knowledge of silvics and silviculture to a greater degree to achieve consistently satisfactory results.

Ta e 5. Assumptions in an economic comparison of artificial and natural regeneration with and without precommercial thinning.

Ar ficial Regeneration	Natural Regeneration	
	No Precommercial Thinning	Precommercial Thinning
Pi mont site - S.I. 70' su porting well-stocked lo olly pine with understory of small hardwoods	same site and stand	same site and stand
ro tion - 25 yrs.	30 years because of slowed growth due to high initial stocking	25 years because precommercial thinning prevented slowing of early growth
vo me produced will be 29 cords/ac. in 25 yrs.*	29 cords/ac. in 30 years	29 cords/ac. in 25 years
pu wood, at today's prices, is 12/cd and will increase at % for the next 25 years to 40.64/cd	pulpwood price - $12/cd, increasing at 5% for the next 30 years to $51.86/cd	pulpwood price - $12/cd, increasing at 5% for the next 25 years to $40.64/cd
si preparation (root rake an windrow) + planting = $1 /ac.	regeneration by clearcutting with seed in place using 2 burns at $10 each for seedbed preparation	regeneration by clearcutting with seed in place with precommercial thinning ($35/ac.) at age 5, plus two burns ($20/ac.) for seedbed preparation

Th following assumptions apply to all three situations: $1000 is available for investment in regeneration an early culture; the landowner is in a 28% tax bracket; 6% alternative investment rate is applied to in ermediate incomes; capital gains treatment of harvest revenues is claimed; and initial investments re eived a 10% investment tax credit and 7 year amortization.

---

* e make the unproven, but suspected, assumption that the growth increase from using genetically improved eedlings will be offset by site degradation from mechanical site preparation. Therefore, yields for rtificial and natural regeneration will be similar.

Table 6. Summary of cash-flow analysis comparing rates of return on artificial regeneration with two ca of natural regeneration, based on the assumptions in Table 5.

Activity	Year	Artificial Regeneration	Natural Regeneration: Without Precommercial Thinning	Natural Regeneration: With Precommerc Thinning
First burn	- 1	NA	-$ 500.00	-$ 182.0
Second burn	0	NA	- 500.00	- 182.0
Site preparation and planting	0	-$ 1,000.00	NA	NA
Investment tax credits (10%)	0-1	+ 100.00	+ 100.00	+ 36.4
Amortization of initial investment	0-8	+ 280.00	+ 280.00	+ 101.9
Precommercial thinning	5	NA	NA	- 636.0
Deduct thinning costs on personal tax return	6	NA	NA	+ 178.0
Interest earned on reinvested incomes**	0-25 26-30	+ 841.16 NA	+ 870.78 + 329.35	+ 1,152.8 NA
Tax on interest earned	1-26 27-31	- 235.53 NA	- 243.79 - 92.23	- 322.8 NA
Harvest income (acres regenerated x projected pulpwood price/cd)	25 30	+ 11,786.00 NA	NA + 75,197.00	+ 21,450.0 NA
Tax on harvest income	26 31	- 1,320.03 NA	NA - 8,422.06	- 2,402.4 NA
Effective compound annual rate of return	--	12.2%	16.4%	17.8%
Acres regenerated = $1000/regeneration + early cultural costs	--	10	50	18

* Only $364 ($182 x 2) would be available for the seedbed preparation burns because $636 would be needed for the precommercial thinning at age 5. Total investment = $1000.

** Reinvested incomes include investment tax credits, tax refunds from amortization of initial investment and deduction of thinning costs, and $636 held for five years until thinning occurred.

LITERATURE CITED

glass, J. E. and D. H. Van Lear.
982. Effects of prescribed fire on water quality of ephemeral Piedmont streams. For. Sci. (in press).

l, R. R. and C. W. Ralston.
967. The establishment and growth of loblolly pine on compacted soil. Soil Sci. Soc. Am. Proc. 31:565-568.

gdon, O. G.
981. Natural regeneration of loblolly pine: a sound strategy for many forest landowners. S. J. Appl. For. 5(4):170-176.

ci, Thomas.
961. The case for natural regeneration. Proc. 19th Annual Forestry Symposium, LSU. p. 16-23.

Ma, J. T., S. Rahman, and R. H. Worst.
973. Effects of site preparation and spacing on planted slash pine. J. For. 71:333-335.

Richter, D. D., C. W. Ralston, and W. H. Harms.
1982. Prescribed fire: effects on water quality and forest nutrient cycling. Sci. 215:661-663.

Sheffield, R. M.
1979. Forest Statistics for South Carolina, 1978. U.S. Dept. Agric. Forest Service Resource Bull. SE-50. 34 p.

Southern Forest Fire Laboratory.
1976. Southern forestry smoke management guidebook. U.S. Dep. Agric., For. Serv. Gen. Rep. SE-10. 140 p.

Trousdell, K. B. and K. F. Wenger.
1963. Some factors of climate and soil affecting establishment of loblolly pine stands. Forest Sci. 9(2):130-136.

REGENERATING LOBLOLLY PINE BY NATURAL SEEDING AND BY PLANTING IN SOUTHEASTERN LOUISIANA[1]

S.C. Hu[2]

Abstract -- A study was conducted to compare the success of clearcutting followed by planting with that of natural regeneration of loblolly pine (Pinus taeda L.) by seed-tree, shelterwood, and selection methods.

Results after 4 years showed that the seed-tree method had the best milacre stocking with 56 percent. The free-to-grow seedlings in clearcut areas were the tallest and had the largest diameters, whereas in selection areas the free-to-grow seedlings were only 1.9 feet in height and less than 0.5 inches in diameter.

It has been estimated that the demand for timber in the U.S. will be greatly increased by the year 2000 and that the South is destined to supply an increasing proportion of the nation's timber needs (U.S. Forest Service 1973). However, the trend among nonindustrial landowners in the South today is toward deforestation. For most of the 15 million acres of nonindustrial forests harvested during the past ten years, no provisions were made for regeneration (Jordan & Balmer 1982). If the increasing demands for timber are to be met, sound management of our forests, including effective regeneration is very important in order to maximize timber production from a steadily decreasing forest acreage in the South.

Although loblolly pine (Pinus taeda L.) is one of the most important and most widely distributed timber species in the South, few studies have been conducted to compare the effectiveness of the various natural regeneration methods with hand planting. Small landowners lack information as to the most suitable regeneration method for their forest. The purpose of this study is to compare the success of clearcutting followed by planting with that of natural regeneration of loblolly pine by seed-tree, shelterwood, and selection methods.

The study areas are located on the Middle Coastal Plain at LSU's Idlewild Experiment Station near Clinton, LA and Lee Memorial Forest miles west of Bogalusa. The predominant speices at the Idlewild study site was loblolly pine mixed with shortleaf pine (P. echinata mill.) and associated hardwoods. The loblolly pine was a mature stand, ranging from 50 to 65 years old. Basal area of loblolly pine on the study site ranged from 49 ft²/acre to 94 ft²/acre. The major soil series are Providence silt loam, Lexington silt loam, and Ruston sandy loam. The site index for loblolly pine is 100 (Base age 50) at Idlewild. At Lee Forest, the loblolly pine, mixed with hardwoods, averaged 50 years old and its basal area ranged from 60 ft²/acre to ft²/acre. Site index for loblolly pine on the study site at Lee Forest is 90; the major soil series is Ruston fine sandy loam. In each location, 160 acres of mature loblolly pine stand were divided into eight 20-acre plots (10 chains x 20 chains). Four regeneration methods, clearcut, seed-tree, shelterwood, and single-tree selection, were randomly assigned among plots; and two replications were established in each location.

During the summer of 1978, harvest cuttings were made on clearcut, seed-tree, shelterwood and selection areas in both locations. Six trees per acre were selected and retained in seed-tree areas, and 20 trees per acre were chosen and left in shelterwood areas. All merchantable trees were harvested in clearcut areas, and only a small portion of loblolly pines was selected and removed from selection areas in 1978. After harvesting, the clearcut areas were chopped, burned and hand-planted at a spacing of 8' x 8' in February 1979. The seed trees left in shelterwood and seed-tree areas were finally removed i

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, Nov. 4 - 5, 1982.

[2] Associate professor, Louisiana State University School of Forestry and Wildlife Management, Baton Rouge, Louisiana 70803.

.9 (two years after harvest). Year-end checks of egeneration were made each year in both locati s. During the latest inventory in 1982, the to l number of seedlings was counted; and the he hts and diameters at ground level of the fr -to-grow seedlings were measured. In order to liminate side effects, only the interior 10 ac s of each 20-acre plot were sampled by use of 20 ilacre plots. The fourth-year results are pr ented in Table 1.

Results show that the shelterwood treatments av the highest number of seedlings, averaging ,70 per acre. However, most of the seedlings n he shelterwood areas are small and overtopped y ardwoods. These overtopped seedlings may not urive without some form of release. A more ccrate picture of the future stand should be asd on at least one free-to-grow seedling per ilcre. The seed-tree method has the best ilcre stocking with 56 % free-to-grow seedirs. Derr and Mann (1971) reported that 55 a commonly accepted minimum criterion for ucessful milacre stocking. The other three retments (clearcut, shelterwood, and selection) re not so well stocked. However, Campbell and an (1973) stated that 40 % stocking after three eas is considered the lower threshold for an ccptable stand. On this basis the clearcutit-planting (48 %) and shelterwood treatment 47%) are stocked in acceptable numbers. The seecion treatment has only 25 % of its milacres toked with free-to-grow seedlings. Since this egeration method is designed to produce an neen aged stand, it is difficult to judge the ucess of this method at the present time.

The average heights and diameters of the free-to-grow seedlings for the seed-tree and shelterwood treatment are almost identical. However, the average heights and diameters of these two treatments differ greatly from clearcut and selection methods. The free-to-grow seedlings in clearcut areas are the tallest (11.8') and have the largest diameters (2.3"), whereas in selection areas the free-to-grow seedlings are only 1.9 feet in height and less than 0.5 inch in diameter at the ground level.

The selection method requires much knowledge and skill to apply efficiently and takes a continuing commitment to carry out the regeneration process. It may not be wise for a small landowners to use the selection method to regenerate loblolly pine stands, except for a special reason, such as wildlife or soil and water protections.

The seed-tree method has more free-to-grow seedlings and is generally less expensive than planting. Because fewer trees are required to be left in the seed-tree method than in shelterwood and selection methods, there is less logging damage to the seedlings when the leave trees are harvested. However, the seed-tree method should not be considered superior to other methods solely on the basis of this study. The choice of a regeneration method should be made after careful consideration of all biotic and economic factors which may affect the results and economics of the method.

ab 1. Fourth-year inventory of loblolly pine seedlings by regeneration method in Louisiana.

at g factor & Unit	Clearcut with hand-planting	Seed-tree	Shelterwood	Selection
ot l seedlings/Ac. (no.)	1750	2250	2700	2212
ve Ht.of free-to-grow seedlings (ft.)	11.8	7.8	7.5	1.9
ve dia. of free-to-grow seedlings (in.)	2.3	1.4	1.3	<0.5
il . stocked w/seedlings (%)	65	74	68	54
il . stocked w/free-to-grow seedlings (%)	48	56	47	25
il . stocked only w/overtopped seedlings (%)	17	18	21	29

LITERATURE CITED

am ell, T.E. and W.F. Mann,Jr. 1973. Regenerating loblolly pine by direct seeding, natural seedling and planting. USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. SO-84.

er H.J. and W.F. Man,Jr. 1971. Ditect-seeding pines in the south. USDA For. Serv. Agric. Handb. 391 p.

Jordan, F. and W.E. Balmer (eds.). 1982. How to help Landowners with forest regeneration. Miss. For. Comm. and USDA For. Serv. Southeast. Area. State and private Forestry. 44 p.

United States Forest Service. 1973. The outlook for timber in the United States. USDA For. Res. Rep. 20. 367 p.

CHOCTAWHATCHEE SAND PINE SURVIVAL, HEIGHT, AND BIOMASS IN SOUTH CAROLINA: THIRD-YEAR RESULTS[1/] [2/]

W. Henry McNab[3/]

and

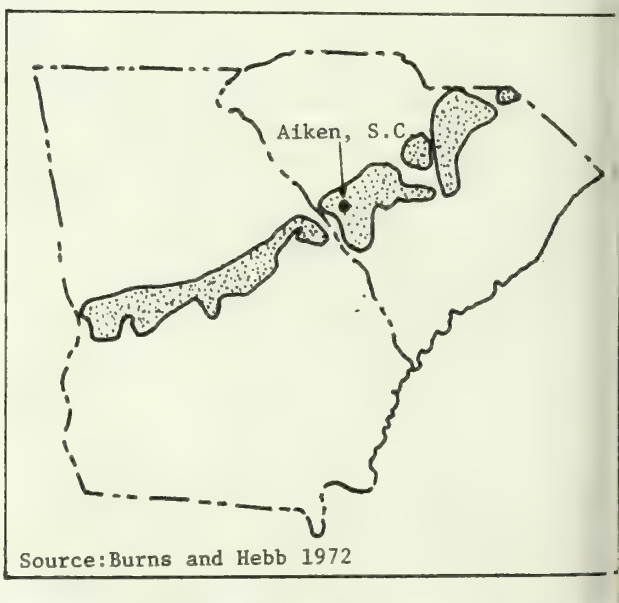
R. H. Brendemuehl[4/]

Abstract.--Choctawhatchee sand pine (*Pinus clausa* var. *immuginata* Ward) seedlings from three Florida nurseries were planted on deep sand, scrub oak sites in South Carolina to study effects of nursery seedling source, soil amendments, planting method, and grade on survival and growth. Three years after planting, survival averaged 68 percent and height 3.2 feet. Neither nursery of origin nor soil amendment treatment significantly affected survival or height. Machine-planted seedlings had significantly greater survival than those planted by dibble-bar. Seedling morphological grade had greater effect on height than on survival. Prediction equations are given for estimating total-tree and component green weight from tree height and diameter at the base of the crown.

INTRODUCTION

Over 6 million acres of commercial forest land in Georgia and South Carolina are in the Sandhills physiographic province (figure 1). Soils there are largely dry, infertile, deep sands. Longleaf pine (*P. palustris* Mill.) was the main commercial species on these sites, but it was cut and did not adequately regenerate, possibly because natural seed sources were insufficient. Many areas are now stocked with low value stands of scrub oaks (Burns and Hebb 1972). Regeneration with longleaf pine often is not attempted because seedling mortality is usually high and site productivity is low.

Although its natural range is largely restricted to Florida, Choctawhatchee sand pine is a promising alternative to longleaf pine for fiber and biomass production in the Georgia and South Carolina sandhills. In small scale tests in Georgia and South Carolina, Choctawhatchee sand pine performed better than loblolly (*P. taeda* L.), slash (*P. elliottii* var. *elliottii* Engelm.), Ocala sand (*P* *clausa* var. *clausa* (Chapm.) Vasey), and longleaf (Hebb 1982). In some larger plantings in Georgi (Preston and Price 1979) and South Carolina (McN and Carter 1981), sand pine has also performed w



Source:Burns and Hebb 1972

Figure 1.--Principal areas of sandhill soils in Georgia and South Carolina.

Choctawhatchee sand pine is comparable with other southern pines for conventional products (Brendemuehl 1981). Interest also has develope in utilizing Choctawhatchee sand pine as a bioma species because of its high fiber production at

---

[1/] Paper presented at Second Biennial Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, GA, November 4-5, 1982.

[2/] Cooperative study with Savannah River Forest Station, USDA, R-8, National Forest System, Aiken, SC.

[3/] Silviculturist, USDA, Forest Service, Southeastern Forest Experiment Station, Forestry Sciences Laboratory, Athens, GA.

[4/] Silviculturist (Retired), USDA, Forest Service, Southeastern Forest Experiment Station, Marianna, FL.

spacing on dry sites (Rockwood et al. 1980), iomass prediction equations are available only lanted trees 6 years of age and older.

This paper reports early survival and height h, and biomass prediction equations for Choc- tchee sand pine in research and commercial plantings on the Savannah River Plant (SRP), Aiken, South Carolina.

METHODS

Choctawhatchee sand pine seedlings were obtain- om three nurseries in northwest Florida. Two e nurseries, one operated by the Florida Divi- of Forestry (FDF) and the other by industry , supplied 1-0 seedlings. The third nursery, e Chipola Experimental Forest (CEF), maintained e Southeastern Forest Experiment Station, sup- 2-0 seedlings. Nursery management and lifting dures were not recorded. Randomly selected es of seedlings from each nursery were measured eighed. Root/shoot ratio was calculated by ing root fresh weight by shoot fresh weight.

Seedlings were stored at 40° F in their orig- packaging container until planting. FDF and eedlings were packed root-to-root, in open- bales. Sawdust was used to keep IND seedling moist. Roots of the FDF seedlings were dipped clay slurry at the nursery. The CEF seedlings packed in sealed poly-kraft bags. Water was periodically to keep the roots moist.

Seedlings were planted during February and 1979 on various sites and by different methods, urvival and height growth were monitored. Two of field plantings were established. Small, stically designed studies were used to evaluate ts of nursery seedling source and soil amend- . Larger, nondesigned areas were planted to ate problems and results of operational hand- and planting of Choctawhatchee sand pine. Sig- ant treatment differences in the statistically ned experimental plantings were determined Duncan's Multiple Range Test at the 95 percent of probability. Results from larger plantings evaluated by comparing average survival and t in randomly selected rows of seedlings.

Research Plantings

Effects of nursery source on survival and t growth were determined on Lakeland (Typic zipsamment) soils prepared by windrowing and raking. Seedlings were planted with dibble- at 10X10 foot spacing, on 0.06 acre plots, cated three times in a complete block design.

Anaerobically digested, dried sewage sludge mated to contain about 3% N and 1% P), from , SC, was evaluated as a soil amendment on a area of Lakeland soil that was site prepared sking the ground cover of grasses, lichens, acti. CEF seedlings were dibble-bar planted single operator at 5X5 foot spacing on 0.01 plots. A complete block design replicated times was used to test six treatments: (A) e sludge broadcast and disked at a rate of tons per acre or about 0.5-inch deep; (B) sewage sludge broadcast and disked at a rate of 9.1 tons per acre; (C) 1 cup of dried sewage sludge placed in the closing hole; (D) 1 cup of sawdust placed in the closing hole; (E) 10-10-10 fertilizer broadcast at a rate of 5.4 tons per acre in a split application: one-half was applied before disking and the balance was applied in July; and (F) control, no treatment. Treatment D simulated the organic matter in treatment C, but without nutrients. The total amount of nitrogen applied in treatment E was about the same as that in treatment A.

Operational Plantings

Two larger areas were operationally planted to evaluate effects of methods of planting and morphological grade on survival and growth. Planting method was evaluated on 5 acres of Lucy (Arenic Paleudult) soil that had been prepared by shearing and windrowing. Lucy is a well-drained soil with sand only about 40 inches deep, and is usually planted in loblolly pine. A single operator planted seedlings from the three nurseries with a Whitfield wildland planter and a dibble-bar at a single spacing. The effect of topsoil displacement during site preparation on this area was evaluated by comparing height of seedlings planted in the first row parallelling windrows, with height of seedlings planted in the second row, about 8 feet away.

FDF seedlings were visually graded as large, medium, or small. They were machine-planted on a 2.5-acre tract of Lakeland soils which had been prepared by prescribed burning 3 years earlier, and twice unsuccessfully planted to longleaf pine.

Prediction equations for estimating the total-tree and major component green weight of individual stems were developed from a sample of 18 trees, ranging from 1.6 to 7.3 feet in height, that were growing on Lakeland soils.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Precipitation on the SRP averages about 47 inches annually, and is usually well distributed throughout the growing season. During the first, second, and third years after planting, annual precipitation averaged 55, 43, and 48 inches. Seedling survival and height were determined on all planted areas during the early spring of 1982, after three growing seasons.

Initial Size Comparisons

Seedlings from the three nurseries differed in size, weight, and appearance (figure 2). Root systems of CEF seedlings were small, and the FDF seedlings were largest, except for average top length (table 1). Seedlings from all sources had at least 8 inches of top growth, which is desirable for outplantings (Sampson 1973). First-year top growth for the 2-0 CEF seedlings in the nursery bed was 6.5 inches.

Nursery Source Comparisons

Source nursery did not significantly affect total height or mean plot survival, even though sizes of seedlings differed by nursery. Average

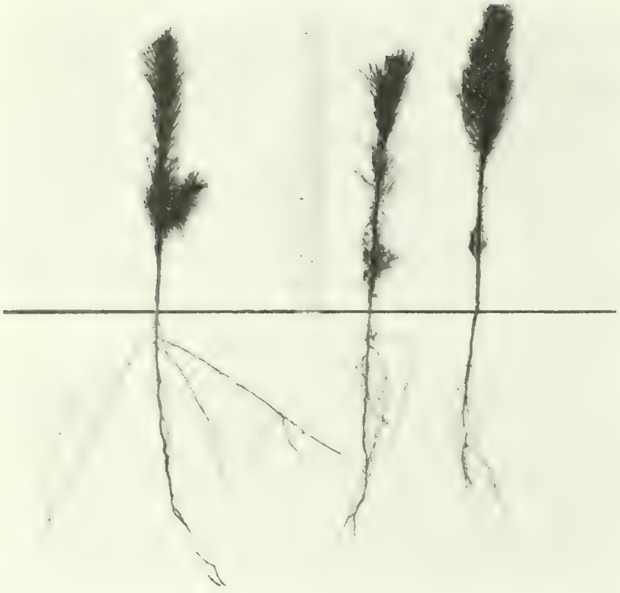


Figure 2.--Typical Choctawhatchee sand pine seedlings from the Florida Division of Forestry, Industrial, and Chipola Experimental Forest nurseries.

Table 1.--Size and weight of Choctawhatchee sand pine seedlings from three source nurseries

Nursery source	Top length	Root collar diameter	Shoot weight	Root weight	Root/ shoot ratio
	- - - *Inch* - - -		- - - - - *Gram* - - - -		
FDF	8.4	0.15	8.19	2.54	0.31
IND	8.7	.10	3.40	.82	.24
CEF	10.7	.12	7.19	.98	.14
Average	9.3	.12	6.26	1.44	.23

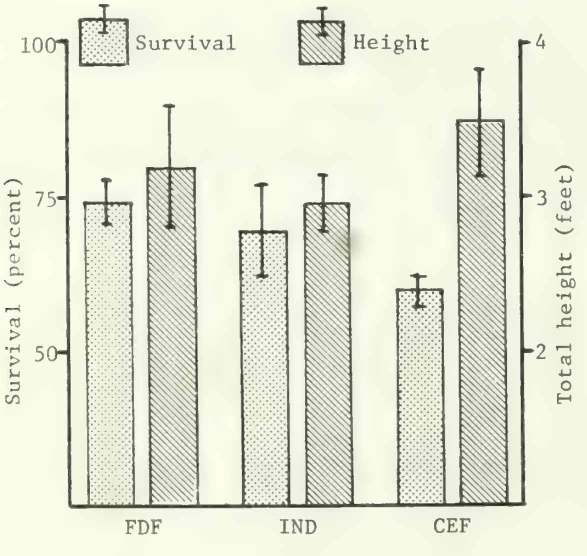


Figure 3.--Third-year survival and height of sand pine seedlings from three sources planted on Lakeland soils, ± standard error of the mean.

third-year survival and height of dibble-bar p seedlings from the three nurseries are shown i ure 3. Considerable variation was present in field data, as shown by the standard errors of mean. The low survival rate for the 2-0 CEF s lings indicates little practical advantage in sand pine seedlings in the nursery bed an addi year, unless they are surplus to current needs can be used the following year (McLemore 1982) Working with the Ocala variety of sand pine, C et al. (1959) reported that lower survival of seedlings was probably due to smaller root-to-ratios. These results indicate that source nu may not be as important to survival and growth sand pine seedlings as it seems to be for long pine (Parker and Haines 1980).

Soil Amendments

Average survival and height of seedlings planted after various soil treatments was:

Treatment	Survival	Height
	Percent	*Feet*
A	81.2	3.9
B	81.2	3.3
C	87.5	3.3
D	81.2	2.9
E	66.7	2.7
F	70.8	2.9

None of the treatments shown are significantly different from the control or each other.

Brendemuehl (1972) reported a height and meter response to N and P fertilization by sa pine seedlings in a greenhouse and by 4-year- saplings in the field. The lack of height res to 10-10-10 fertilization in this study may ha been due to inability of the newly planted see restricted root system to effectively utilize soluble nutrients before leaching occurred in sandy soils. Although sewage sludge did not nificantly benefit seedling height at 3 years slowly released organic forms of N and P in th sewage sludge will be available for seedling over a longer period.

Applying large amounts of readily availa nutrients at the time of planting is not econ and may increase seedling mortality. Other v tion, especially grasses and cacti, quickly r to surface applications of sewage sludge and izer, and competed with the sand pine seedlin soil moisture. The very high concentration o soluble salts in the commercial fertilizer ma increased mortality by reverse osmosis of wat the roots of some newly planted seedlings. M mortality occurred during the first three mon after planting and little thereafter.

Planting Method

Machine and dibble-bar planting were com using all seedling sources on an area prepare shearing and windrowing during the previous s Seedlings planted with the dibble-bar average 0.5 foot taller than those planted by machine this difference was not statistically signifi

(Table 2). In general, CEF seedlings were tallest among the three sources and grew particularly well when planted by dibble-bar.

Table 2.--Effects of dibble-bar and machine planting methods on survival and height of sand pine seedlings from three nurseries

Nursery source	Survival		Height	
	Dibble-bar	Machine	Dibble-bar	Machine
	- - - *Percent* - - -		- - - *Feet* - - - -	
FDF	76	88	3.6	3.5
IND	56	95	4.0	3.5
CEF	76	83	5.1	4.0
Average[1/]	69*	89	4.2ns	3.7

[1/] * indicates difference in mean survival is significant at the 0.95 percent level; ns indicates the difference in mean height is not significant.

Mean survival was 20 percent higher for seedlings planted by machine compared to dibble-bar; this difference was significant at the 5 percent level in a t-test of unpaired plots. Part of this difference may be attributed to excessive drying of the roots during hand planting. Overall, mean survival of dibble-bar planted seedlings was 69 percent, about the same as for the nursery source test, but the individual survival rates of IND and CEF sources were different. Cooper et al. (1959) found no significant difference in survival when planting Ocala sand pine with dibble-bar compared to machine.

Regardless of nursery source or planting method, survival of Choctawhatchee sand pine has remained almost constant since the first field check was made 3 months after establishment. In contrast, annual mortality in stands of other species on sandhill soils is relatively high (Brendemuehl 1981), which makes the final level of stocking uncertain.

Seedlings planted next to the windrows averaged 4.0 feet in height while seedlings in the next row averaged only 3.5 feet. The difference in height was significant based on a paired t-test and indicates that nutrients and organic material in the displaced topsoil can affect seedling growth on a moderately fertile site. On infertile sandhill soils, choice of site preparation methods that conserve available nutrients is even more important.

MORPHOLOGICAL GRADE

The FDF seedlings used in this test varied widely in size and appearance (figure 4). Root collar diameter averaged 0.21, 0.14, and 0.11 inch for samples of large, medium, and small seedlings. Grade had little effect on survival, which averaged about 95 percent overall:

Grade	Survival	Height
	Percent	*Feet*
Small	93.6	3.6
Medium	95.1	5.1
Large	95.7	5.0
Average	94.9	4.6

Grade, however, did influence height at age 3; small seedlings were about 1.5 feet shorter than medium or large seedlings. These results indicate that grade seems to be less important in planting Choctawhatchee sand pine compared to other species, especially longleaf pine (White 1978).

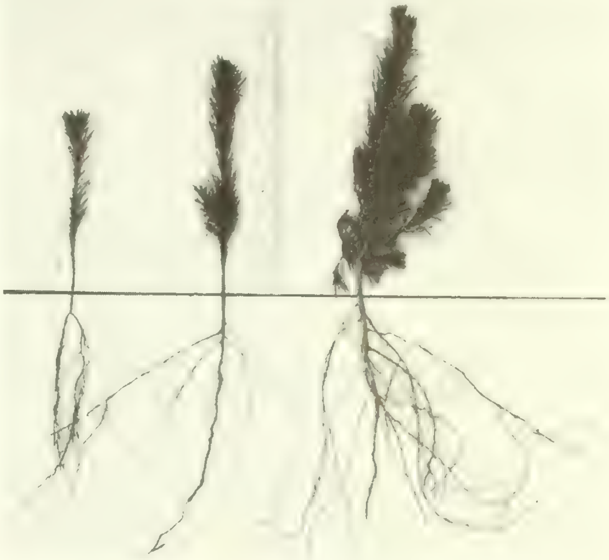


Figure 4.--Small, medium, and large grades of Choctawhatchee sand pine seedlings from Florida Division of Forestry nursery.

Survival of seedlings in this test was excellent, despite an unplanned, long period of refrigerated storage. FDF seedlings were held for 28 days at 40° F and planted in early March, when air temperature ranged from 65-75° F. Under proper conditions, Choctawhatchee sand pine seedlings can be stored for relatively long periods with little loss of vigor. Burns (1975) machine-planted Choctawhatchee sand pine seedlings stored in unrefrigerated bales for 1 to 8 days, and found no difference in first-year survival.

Biomass Prediction

Prediction equations developed for estimating green weight of total tree wood, bark, and foliage (TTWBF), wood and bark (TTWB), and wood (TTW) are:

$$\text{TTWBF (lbs)} = 0.83488 \times \text{DBC2TH}^{0.67030} \quad (1)$$

$$\text{TTWB (lbs)} = 0.42228 \times \text{DBC2TH}^{0.68162} \quad (2)$$

$$\text{TTW (lbs)} = 0.25344 \times \text{DBC2TH}^{0.79348} \quad (3)$$

where:

DBC2 = squared stem diameter at the base of the crown in inches,

TH = total height in feet.

The coefficients of determination (R^2)--0.96, 0.94, and 0.95 for equations 1, 2, and 3--indicate a close relationship between tree component green weights and the independent variable. Because the prediction equations were developed from saplings at only one location, the user should verify the accuracy of estimated weights.

Early survival and growth of Choctawhatchee sand pine seedlings from three nurseries planted in the South Carolina sandhills does not seem to be strongly affected by seedling grade, which may result from variation in nursery management practices, or by soil amendments. Choctawhatchee sand pine seedlings can be reliably planted by machine with high survival. Early survival is a good indication of stocking throughout the rotation.

LITERATURE CITED

Brendemuehl, R. H.
1973. Some responses of sand pine to fertilization. In: Sand Pine Symposium proceedings. 1972 December 5-7; Panama City Beach, FL. Gen. Tech. Rep. SE-2. Asheville, NC: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Southeastern Forest Experiment Station; 164-175.

Brendemuehl, R. H.
1981. Options for management of sandhill forest land. South. J. Appl. For. 5(4): 216-222.

Burns, R. M.
1975. Sand pine: fifth-year survival and height on prepared and unprepared sandhill sites. Res. Note SE-217. Asheville, NC: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Southeastern Forest Experiment Station; 5 p.

Burns, R. M.; Hebb, E. A.
1972. Site preparation and reforestation of droughty, acid sands. Agric. Handb. 426. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Agriculture; 61 p.

Cooper, R. W.; Schopmeyer, C. W.; McGregor, W. H. D.
1959. Sand pine regeneration on the Ocala National Forest. Prod. Res. Rep. 30. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Agriculture; 37 p.

Hebb, E. A.
1982. Sand pine performs well in the Georgia-Carolina sandhills. South. J. Appl. For. 6(3): 144-147.

McLemore, B. F.
1982. Comparison of 1-0 and 2-0 loblolly pine seedlings. Tree Planters' Notes 33(2): 22-23

McNab, W. H.; Carter, A. R.
1981. Sand pine performance on South Carolina sandhills. South. J. Appl. For. 5(2): 84-88.

Parker, J. A.; Haines, L. W.
1981. Longleaf pine seedling survival studies. Barnett, J. P., ed. Proceedings of First Bien
Southern Silvicultural Research Conference; November 6-7; Atlanta, GA. Gen. Tech. Rep.
New Orleans, LA: U.S. Department of Agricult
Southern Forest Experiment Station; 16-19.

Preston, D. N.; Price, T. S.
1979. Sand pine in Georgia, a look at a tri-c
demonstration. Ga. For. Res. Pap. 5. Macon,
Georgia Forestry Commission; 12 p.

Rockwood, D. L.; Conde, L. R.; Brendemuehl, R.
1980. Biomass production of closely spaced Choctawhatchee sand pines. Res. Note SE-293
Asheville, NC: U.S. Department of Agricultu
Forest Service, Southeastern Forest Experim
Station; 6 p.

Sampson, O. R.
1973. Nursery practices used for sand pine. I
Sand Pine Symposium proceedings. 1972 Decem
5-7; Panama City Beach, FL. Gen. Tech. Rep.
Asheville, NC: U.S. Department of Agricultu
Forest Service, Southeastern Forest Experim
Station; 67-72.

White, J. B.
1978. Longleaf pine survival influenced by se
size and length of storage. In: Balmer, W.
ed. Proceedings of longleaf pine workshop;
October 17-19; Mobile, AL. Tech. Pub. SA-T
Atlanta, GA: U.S. Department of Agriculture,
Forest Service, Southeastern Area State an
Private Forestry; 26-29.

FACTORS INFLUENCING SURVIVAL AND EARLY STOCKING TRENDS IN PLANTATION OF LOBLOLLY PINE [1/]

G. Kenneth Xydias [2/]

Abstract.--About 500 plots were established on a variety of planting sites over a two-year period on land owned by Continental Forest Industries. Detailed observations were made for each tree and planting spot shortly after planting and again after one year. Counts of live planted trees were obtained two and three years after planting. Survival was only poorly related to initial conditions of the tree or planting spot. Ninety-five percent or more of the trees that survived the first growing season continued to survive in subsequent years.

INTRODUCTION

Foresters have been establishing pine planta-ions in the South for more than 30 years. There an be little question that much of this planting ffort has been successful. However, many exam- les of poor survival have been noted. Williston 192), in reviewing survival records over a six- ee-year period of planting on the Yazoo-Little lahatchie Flood Prevention Project, found that ll three of those years had survival percentages ceding eighty percent. Likewise, Marler (1963), oted that survival experience for a three-year riod in the Virginia coastal plan never exceeded ghty percent. More recently the American Pulp- ood Association polled its members as to their tation establishment practices and survival perience. The membership generally reported a latively stable survival trend until the mid- 97's when declines were noted (Weaver and others 98).

The reasons for poor survival are always certain. Drought conditions either at planting uring the first growing season afterwards is favorite one (Wakeley, 1954, Malac, 1965). hers include nursery practices including lifting and packing (Weaver and others 1982, Barnard and Hollis 1980), storage under freezing conditions (McClurkin 1966); and improper planting of seedlings. Proper seedling care and handling from the nursery through delivery to an intermediate storage area is discussed by Brissette and others, (1981), while Xydias and others, (1981) follow this through the planting job.

The reasons for poor survival must be identified before they result in a failure so that corrective action may be taken. Too often, reasons are postulated to explain failures but whether that explanation is correct is another matter. Corrective actions based on erroneous assumptions may be worse than taking no action at all.

STUDY DESCRIPTION

This study is part of the survival studies established by Continental Forest Industries and reported previously (Xydias 1980). It is known as the post mortem study and was established for two reasons. One was to provide detailed information about why individual trees died, and how their death could be related either to attributes of the tree or of the planting spot. The other reason was to provide a data base which could be used to test hypothesis about site or management factors associated with survival.

The study consists of two series of plots established in successive years beginning in the 1978-79 planting season. Plots established in the 1978-79 season are referred to as the first

---

[1/] Paper presented at the second biannaul thern Silvicultural Research Symposium, vember 4-5, 1982, Atlanta, Georgia.

[2/] Author is Division Research Forester, nental Forest Industries, Savannah, Georgia.

series while those established the following year are referred to as the second series. Both series were established in newly planted areas throughout company ownership.

In each of the two series, plots were established in planting sites that were selected to cover a range of conditions with respect to methods of site preparation, time of planting, and soil conditions. One or more plots were located at each planting site in an area thought to be representative of a larger landscape unit. Information gathered for each plot include dates for completion of significant management activity such as cutting, site preparation, and planting, a characterization of the site, and for the second series a description of environmental conditions at the time of planting.

Plots were of such a size that about 60-80 planting spaces were observed. Each planting spot was numbered sequentially and the ground conditions within a six-inch radius were classified. Classes recognized included bare ground, fine debris, coarse debris, herbaceous competition, woody competition, root mat, eroded, or deformed bed. If the planting spot contained a tree, its condition was identified as being healthy, unhealthy, or dead. If the tree was unhealthy or dead, an attempt was made to assign a reason for these conditions. Other attributes of each tree were also noted. These included size (small, average, or large), position after planting (horizontal, slanted, or vertical), and planting depths (unplanted, shallow, normal, or deep).

Plots were visited again during the dormant season following the first year's growth and the ground conditions for each planting spot were characterized for a second time. If the planting spot contained a tree, its condition and the reason for its condition were noted. Almost 80 percent of the second series plots in the Hodge district were in areas of such poor stocking that replanting was necessary. Only counts of live planted trees were obtained for these plots.

Plots of both series that had not been replanted or otherwise abandoned were again visited following the second growing season. In this and subsequent visits, counts of both live planted trees and of free-to-grow volunteers were obtained, but detailed observations of each tree or planting spot were not obtained. An attempt was made to avoid unrealistically high counts for volunteers by constraining counts to only two volunteers if the planting spot did not have a tree and only one if the spot had a tree.

The first series of plots were also visited following the third growing season and counts of live planted trees and free-to-grow volunteers were again obtained. Third-year counts are currently being obtained for the second series plots. Fifth-year counts are planned for both series.

The geographical range for plot establish is shown in Figure 1. It extends throughout c ownership from Virginia south to north Florida and also occurs as an island in northwestern Louisiana. This area is organized by Continen into four woodlands districts, with the distri name indicating a town close to the location o a pulp mill. It also refers to a single decen lized administrative unit for accounting and m ment purposes. Analysis has generally been do by districts, although this breakdown may mask some meaningful sources of variation.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

First-Year Survival

Survival percentages associated with a variety of percentiles along with the number c plots visited are given in Table 1. Survival from less than five percent up to one hundred percent. Both the median survival and the di tribution of survival varied from district to district and from year to year. Generally, h survival was much better for the first series plots than for the second series. Survival i the first series was almost acceptable even f survivals as low as the tenth percentile in a districts except for Hopewell. In contrast t survival for this second series was marginal the fiftieth percentile except for the Savann district. The second series survival was esp poor in the Hodge district, with an extreme d during the summer of 1980 resulting in the ne replanting almost 80 percent of the acreage p during the previous year.

Factors Related to Survival

Survival is influenced by so many factor identifying cause and effect relationships ma an impossible task. It varies form year-to-y and from planting job to planting job. For t discussion, only the conditions of the planti spot and the attributes of individual trees w be considered as possible factors.

A SAS[1] program was written to summariz classification data for each planting spot a tree, and convert these summaries to percent This resulted in the definition of 30 differe variables that could be related to survival an individual plot. The summary program als

---

[1] SAS is an acronym for the Statistic Analysis System.

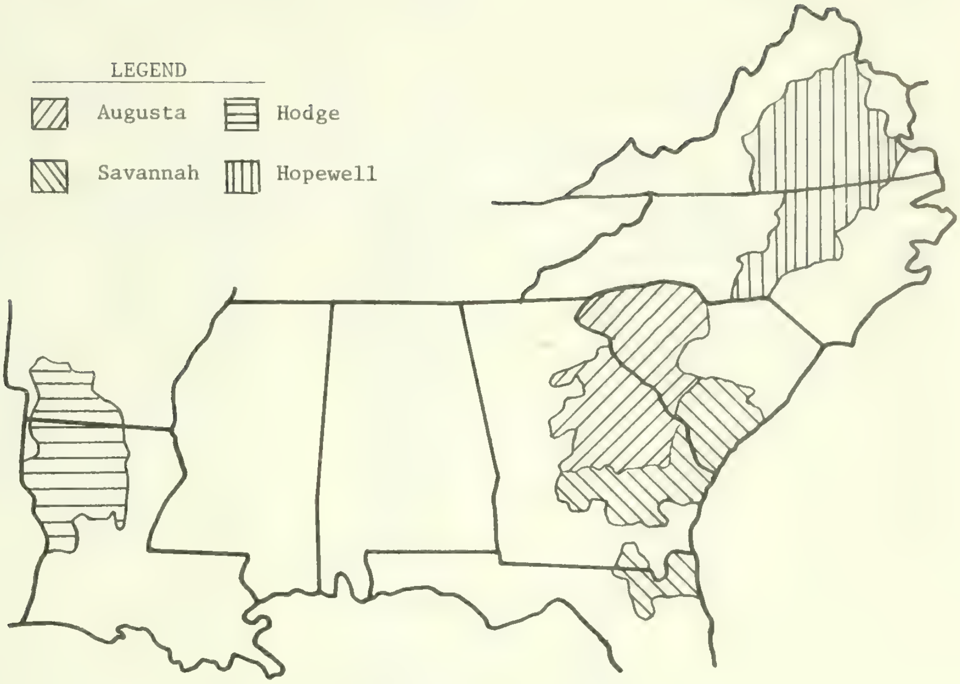


Figure 1. Geographical range for the post mortem plots.

culated survival, took the square root of it, and transformed it to its arcsin equivalent.

Variable names and their meanings are given in Table 2. Note that each variable name identifies the attribute under consideration (planting spot, tree size, planting depth), the level of the attribute and the visit in which it was observed. For example, all variable names beginning with the word "spot" refer to the planting spot. Variable names ending with the number one refer to conditions observed at the first visit, while those ending with a two refer to conditions observed a year later at the second visit.

Graphs of survival against the various independent variables showed no evidence of curvilinearity so only the simple linear correlation coefficients between each of these variables and survival were calculated. Significant values are shown in Table 3 for the first series and in Table 4 for the second series. Since correlation

Table 1.--Survival for a range of percentiles by series and district

Series	District	Plots	Percentile 5	10	50	90	95
			Percent				
First	Augusta	43	54	68	91	98	100
	Hodge	62	57	62	85	95	97
	Savannah	72	60	62	87	98	99
	Hopewell	81	40	47	75	93	96
Second	Augusta	59	32	39	67	93	96
	Hodge	58	5	10	50	82	84
	Savannah	50	30	40	79	91	91
	Hopewell	77	20	28	59	84	86

Table 2.--Variable names used in the correlation analysis.

Variable	Percent With	Variable	Percent With
SPOTB1	Bare ground	DEPTHS1	Shallow planted
SPOTF1	Fine litter	DEPTHN1	Normal planted
SPOTC1	Coarse litter	DEPTHD1	Deep planted
SPOTH1	Herbaceous weed	SPOTB2	Bare ground
SPOTR1	Root mat	SPOTF2	Fine litter
SPOTW1	Woody shrub	SPOTC2	Coarse litter
SPOTD1	Deformed bed	SPOTH2	Herbaceous weeds
SPOTE1	Eroded	SPOTR2	Root mat
SIZES1	Small	SPOTE2	Eroded
SIZEN1	Normal	SPOTW2	Woody shrub
SIZEL1	Large	SHALLOW	DEPTHU1 + DEPTHS1
POSH1	Horizontal	LITE1	SPOTB1 + SPOTF1 + SPOTC1
POSS1	Slanted	LITE2	SPOTB2 + SPOTF2 + SPOTC2
POSV1	Vertical	HEAVY1	SPOTC1 + SPOTR1
DEPTHU1	Unplanted	HEAVY2	SPOTC2 + SPOTR2

Table 3.--Correlation coefficients for variables significantly correlated with survival for the first series of plots.

Variable	District			
	Augusta	Hodge	Savannah	Hopewell
	r-value			
SPOTB1	NS	NS	0.45	0.35**
SPOTF1	-0.38**	NS	NS	-0.22**
SPOTC1	-0.50***	NS	NS	-0.24**
SPOTH1	NS	0.28**	0.29**	NS
SPOTR1	NS	NS	-0.54***	NS
SIZEN1	NS	-0.26**	NS	NS
SIZEL1	NS	0.29**	-0.21*	0.19*
POSH1	-0.79***	NS	-	-0.27**
POSS1	-0.60***	NS	-0.26***	NS
POSV1	0.76***	NS	0.46***	0.23**
DEPTHU1	-0.72***	NS	NS	NS
DEPTHS1	-0.54***	NS	-	-0.32***
DEPTHN1	0.40***	NS	0.26**	NS
DEPTHD1	NS	NS	NS	0.19*
SPOTB2	NS	NS	NS	0.19*
SPOTF2	NS	-0.26**	NS	NS
SPOTC2	NS	NS	NS	-0.23**
SPOTH2	NS	0.33***	0.46***	0.24**
SPOTR2	NS	-0.32**	-0.51***	NS
SPOTE2	-0.41***	NS	NS	NS
SHALLOW	-0.68***	NS	-0.21*	-0.33***
LITE1	0.41***	NS	0.58***	0.28**
HEAVY1	-0.41***	NS	-0.58***	-0.28**
LITE2	0.26*	NS	0.53***	0.26**
HEAVY2	-0.26*	NS	-0.53***	-0.26**

Significance Levels:
± 10.0-14.9, * 5.0-9.9%, ** 1.0-4.9% *** under 1%

Table 4.--Variables significantly correlated with survival in each district for the second series of plots.

Variable	District			
	Augusta	Hodge	Savannah	Hopewell
	r-value			
SPOTB1	NS	0.35*	NS	NS
SPOTF1	NS	NS	NS	0.23**
SPOTC1	+	-0.39**	NS	NS
SPOTH1	0.25*	-0.38**	NS	-0.33***
SPOTR1	NS	NS	0.44***	NS
SPOTD1	NS	NS	-0.24*	NS
SIZES1	NS	NS	NS	-0.22*
POSH1	-0.30**	NS	-0.28**	NS
POSS1	NS	-0.45**	NS	NS
POSV1	NS	0.45**	0.28*	NS
DEPTHN1	NS	+	NS	NS
SPOTB2	NS	0.33*	NS	NS
SPOTF2	NS	NS	0.28**	NS
SPOTC2	NS	-0.38**	NS	NS
SPOTH2	NS	-0.48**	NS	NS
SPOTR2	NS	NS	0.28**	NS
SPOTE2	NS	0.43**	NS	NS
SPOTW1	NS	NS	NS	0.26**
LITE1	NS	0.34	-0.37***	NS
HEAVY1	NS	-0.34	0.37***	NS

Significance levels:
± 10.0-14.9%, * 5.0-9.9%, ** 1.0-4.9% *** under 1%

coefficients were almost identical for both survival and for the arcsin transformation, all subsequent discussion will refer to the untransferred survival percentages.

Several points in Tables 3 and 4 are of interest. First, both the number of variables and their significance levels are greater for the first series than for the second series. Second, few of the factors that are significant in the first series are significant in the second series. In fact, only about ten of these factors are significant in both series and eight of these change sign from one series to the other. This implies that any correlation is spurious at best. Only the position of the tree after it is planted was significantly correlated with survival for both series and maintained the same algebraic sign. Trees that were planted in a horizontal or slanted position did not survive as well as those planted in a vertical position. A third point to note is that the correlations are generally quite low and usually account for less than twenty percent of the variation in survival.

A model was developed to predict survival in each district by using the variables in that district that were correlated with survival and whose algebraic sign seemed to make good biological sense. Only the first series data was used and there was no attempt to find the best fitting model or to eliminate variables initially selected. Predictor variables used for each district are given in Table 5. The model was then applied to other districts and to the second series to determine if it had any predictive ability. Correlations between observed and predicted survival are given in Table 6. Note that use of a combination of variables to predict survival generally resulted in better correlations than use of a single variable. Note also that the model usually predicted poorly when applied to other districts in the same year, or to the same district in different years. When the model did predict another district reasonably well, it was only because some of the variables used in the model were significant in both districts. Models developed from the first series data were almost always unsuccessful when applied to the second series data.

These results suggest that identification of areas with good survival potential based upon appearances of that site or planting job is not as simple as it may first appear. Certainly there is a need for adequate site preparation, but what is meant by adequate site preparation and how to

Table 5.--Variables used in a multiple regression approach to predict survival.

District			
Augusta	Hodge	Savannah	Hopewell
POSV1	SPOTH1	SPOTR1	SHALLOW
POSS1*	SOZEN1*	SPOTB1	SPOTF1
SPOTC1	SIZEL1	SHALLOW	SPOTB1
SPOTF1		POSV1	HVY1
SHALLOW		SPOTH1	POSV1
HVY1		POSS1	SPOTC1

* Last variable to be significant at the ten percent level in the combined model.

measure it is uncertain. The preparation on most of the plots in the second series was characterized by Continental's field people as acceptable, but survival on those areas characterized as marginal preparation did not differ significantly. Likewise an adequate planting job would seem to be a prerequisite to achieving survival. The planting job for all of the plots in the second series was characterized as acceptable, but there was a wide range in survival.

These results put us in the uncomfortable position of assuming that good site preparation and planting techniques are important in achieving survival, but not being able to recognize or measure those attributes that make it good in the first place. Perhaps the analysis on a district level permitted the inclusion of so many different variables that any relationship between plot attributes and survival was masked.

Data from the Augusta and Savannah districts were combined and broken down into three broa site types to determine if this was indeed th case. Site types included piedmont soils, dr sites in the flatwoods and upper coastal plai and wet sites. These two districts were chos because they are contiguous and use similar m of site preparation and planting. The correl analysis was done separately for each of the site types. Results were similar to those sh in Table 4, with the same variables being ide fied as being significant and having a simila r-value as that obtained when the analysis wa done on a district basis.

This would suggest that appearances of t site preparation and planting job play only a minor role in identifying survival potentials. However, the analysis did identify some facto that seemed to be clearly related to survival. The planting of trees in site preparation or logging debris or the planting of sites where most of the planting spots had coarse debris

Table 6.--Correlations between observed and predicted survival using models developed with first series data and applied to other districts to the second series.

Model Developed With Data From:	Correlations when model applied to:							
	Augusta		Hodge		Savannah		Hopewell	
	First	Second	First	Second	First	Second	First	Second
	r-value							
Augusta	0.85**	NS	NS	NS	0.64**	NS	0.64**	NS
Hodge	NS	0.33*	0.36	NS	NS	0.42**	NS	NS
Savannah	NS	NS	NS	NS	0.74**	NS	0.52**	-0.37**
Hopewell	0.41**	NS	0.23*	-0.37**	0.37	NS	0.53**	NS

t generally had an adverse effect upon sur-
vl. Shallow planting, or planting the tree
slanted position had a strong negative influ-
c, particularly under conditions where envir-
mntal factors were favorable to survival. The
lterious effect of shallow planting is well
cgnized, but the apparent importance of tree
stion after planting is less well recognized.
e position itself is probably not important
ts an indicator of other factors. Plots that
d high percentages of vertically planted trees
ned to have an absence of coarse debris on the
t, i.e., better preparation, few shallow-planted
es, and few large trees. Thus tree position
robably a sympton rather than a cause.

Perhaps the important point to note though
hat all of the attributes of the tree or of the
lating spot only accounted for ten to twenty per-
r of the variation in survival. This suggests
a the reasons for planting success or failure
re largely unexplained by visual impressions of
he planting site or of the planting job. A
eonable explanation for this is that planting
ucess is dictated by both primary and secondary
aors. The primary factors are environmental,
aly soil moisture at the time of planting and
ung the spring and summer of the year following
lating. Secondary factors are all of the vari-
bls considered in Table 2, plus other factors
u as seedling care and handling from the time
he tree is lifted until it is planted. The
ary factors must be at an adequate level
ere the secondary factors exert an influence.
h line of reasoning may serve to explain why
o factors were related to survival and at a
er level of significance in the first series
lot than in the second series. It is clear
r the survival distributions shown in Table 1
h environmental conditions were better for
survival in the first series.

Studies investigating the relationship between survival and any other factor, whether management input or conditions of the planting site, must somehow be designed to account for soil moisture levels during planting and for the first growing season after planting if the relationships being studied are not to be masked. One possibility suggested by the late Dr. Dave Moehring, is to determine water availability in the surface foot of soil using the methods of Carlson and others (1956), convert these to soil moisture tension and relate number of days with soil moisture tension below the wilting point to survival. Presumably the factors being studied could be evaluated as deviations from this relationship and may be significant at one level of soil moisture tension and not another. If something like this is not done, then any relationships observed are likely to be valid only for the year and locality in which they were observed.

Survival Trends Following The First Growing Season

There are always questions as to how soon after planting does mortality become so negligible that the plantation can be considered to have been established. A simple linear model with no intercept which predicted the number of live trees in one year based on the number present in the preceeding year was developed for each of the districts and for each series. Differences in slopes were evaluated for significance by comparing the residual sum of squares for all districts against that obtained by summing the residual sum of squares for each district.

Results of this are shown in Table 7. Generally

Table 7.--Ratio of number of live trees at any one year to the number of live trees in the preceeding year

	Year of Comparison		
	Second vs. First		Third vs. Second
District	First Series	Second Series	First Series
	ratio		
Augusta	0.948^{a} [1]	0.950^{a}	0.981^{a}
Hodge	0.856^{b}	0.925^{a}	0.985^{a}
Savannah	0.967^{a}	0.952^{a}	0.983^{a}
Hopewell	0.939^{a}	0.945^{a}	0.983^{a}
Combined	0.954 [2]	0.947	0.983

[1] Ratios followed by the same letter do not differ significantly at the five percent level.

[2] Does not include the Hodge district.

ninety-five percent or more of the trees that have survived through the first growing season continue to survive through the second growing season, while ninety-eight percent of the trees that survived through the second growing season survived through the third growing season.

The second-year survival associated with the first series plots in the Hodge district was about ten percent lower than what had been obtained in the other districts. This was undoubtedly due to the very severe summer drought already noted. It should be clear from this data that if a plantation can survive through the first summer, that it takes an extreme climatic event to result in appreciable mortality in subsequent years.

If data from the Hodge district is not considered, second-year survival averages about 95 percent of that present after the first year, and is almost identical for each of the two series. Separation of the second series plots for the Savannah and Augusta districts into the broad site types mentioned previously suggests that second year survivals do not differ among the site types, and are similar to those of the other districts.

Results in Table 7 provide convincing evidence that most of the mortality suffered by a plantation occurs in the spring and summer following planting and little additional mortality can be expected to occur in subsequent years. This trend may reverse itself as fusiform infection and other natural factors begin to take their toll.

LITERATURE CITED

Barnard, E. L., C. A. Hollis, and W. L. Pritchett 1981. A comparative evaluation of seedling quality in commercial forest nurseries in Florida. IN: Proc. 1980 Sou. Nurs. Conf. USDA For. Ser. SE Area State and Pri. For. Atlanta, Georgia

Brissette, J. C., F. Vandelinde, and J. P. Barn 1981. Producing, storing, and handling qualit slash pine seedlings. IN: Proc. Sym. on Mgt. of slash pine, Univ. of FL., Gainesvil Florida IN PRESS

Carlson, C. A., K. G. Beinhart, and J. S. Hort 1956. Predicting soil moisture in the surfac foot of soil. Soil Sci. Soc. Am. Proc. 20:412-15

Malac, B. 1965. Planting and direct seedling. IN: A guide to loblolly and slash pine plantation management in southeastern USA. GA For. Re Coun. Dept. 14 48-67

Marler, B. L. 1963. A three year tree planting survival st in Virginia. VA Div. For. Oc. Rept. 19

McClurkin, D. C. 1966. Survival of planted loblolly pine seed J. For. 64:11 p 731-4

Wakeley, P. C. 1954. Planting the Southern pines. USDA Ag. Mono. 18 233 p

Weaver, G. H., B. Izlar, K. Xydias, and F. S. B 1982. Southwide pine plantation survival and nursery practices. Am. Pulp. Assoc. Pub. 82-A-10, 42 p. Jackson, MS

Williston, H. L. 1972. The question of adequate survival. Tr Plt. Notes 23:1 p 9-10.

Xydias, G. K. 1980. Plantation survival studies of Contine Forest Industries. IN: Proc. First Bien. Sou. Silvi. Res. Conf. p 8-15. Atlanta, Ge

Xydias, G. K., R. D. Sage, J. D. Hodges, and D. M. Moehring 1981. The establishment, survival, and tendi slash pine. IN: Proc. Sym. on Mgt. of sla pine. Univ. of FL, Gainesville, FL IN PRES

EARLY DEVELOPMENT OF LONGLEAF PINE PLANTED ON PREPARED SITES IN THE EAST GULF[1]

Robert M. Farrar, Jr., and John B. White[2]

Abstract.--Up to about age 10, longleaf pine stands planted with improved techniques on prepared sites in the East Gulf are comparable in development to a successful old-field plantation and are at least 2 or 3 years ahead of well-managed naturally reproduced stands. At plantation age 7, survival was 50 percent or better, and at least 300 trees per acre were 1-inch d.b.h. and larger. The planted dominant stand at age 7 was 14 to 20 feet tall, about 3 to 5 times taller than the natural dominant stand 7 years from seed fall. Suggestions for successful longleaf planting on prepared sites are also included.

INTRODUCTION

Longleaf pine (Pinus palustris) has a rutation of being nearly impossible to plant scessfully. Many foresters think that longleaf pntings are either doomed to less than 50 percent itial survival or, if initial survival is rsonably good, to insufficient numbers of trees erging from the grass stage. This bad rutation is largely due to a lack of attention t the silvicultural requirements for successful lgleaf planting. Longleaf cannot be treated t same as the other southern pines - the fact tt the seedling has no stem should indicate ts. Just as the notion that you can use the sd-tree method to regenerate natural longleaf snds has been invalid for about 20 years, the geral notion that you can't successfully plant i similarly outdated. Just as properly applied slterwood method meets the silvical requirements f natural longleaf regeneration (Croker and Ber 1975), proper application of artificial rgeneration techniques will also ensure scessful longleaf planting. This is not to say tt longleaf planting will be less expensive or mre certain than planting other species or that longleaf will necessarily grow as fast initially as other species. However, if a manager wants to obtain the desirable traits of longleaf, the techniques necessary for good survival and rapid height-growth are now largely known.

The following data are the results from samples of a series of plantations on prepared forest sites established since 1970 by the T. R. Miller Mill Company, Brewton, Alabama. This organization has artificialy regenerated about 7,146 acres of longleaf pine, 4,120 acres of which have been planted since 1969.

METHODS

Site Preparation

Descriptions of soils and site preparation techniques are given in Table 1 for the five planting situations investigated. Generally, the soils are sandy loams to loamy sands underlain by loamy material and characteristic of the pinehills of the East Gulf Middle Coastal Plain. The topography is gently rolling and dissected by many small streams. The site index varies from about 70 to 80 feet at 50 years for natural longleaf pine stands. Sites A through C are located in Escambia County, Alabama, and sites D and E are in Santa Rosa County, Florida.

The site preparation techniques varied somewhat in the number of operations (or completeness), but two key operations appear to be: (1) clearing the site of woody vegetation, followed by (2) disking. All techniques essentially resulted in complete destruction of woody competing vegetation and removal thereby of all sources of brownspot (Scirrhia acicola) infection. No additional cultural treatments have been imposed on the sites.

---

[1] Presented at the Southern Silvicultural Rsearch Conference, Atlanta, GA, Nov. 4-5, 1982.

[2] Respectively, principal mensurationist, Frestry Sciences Laboratory, Monticello, AR, Sthern Forest Experiment Station, USDA Forest Srvice, in cooperation with the Department of Frest Resources and Arkansas Agricultural Eperiment Station, University of Arkansas at nticello and Silviculturist, Mississippi National Frests, USDA Forest Service, Jackson, MS.

Table 1.--Longleaf pine planting site information

Planting Location	Site [1] Preparation	First Growing Season	Soil [2]	Site [3] Index	Plot Number
				ft	
A[4]	C R W D Bd	1971	Troup fine sand	67	118 120
B	C R	1971	Troup fine sand	67	119
	W D		Benndale fine sandy loam	71	121 122
C	C R Pi Br S D	1970	Orangeburg fine sandy loam	71	123 124
D	C R Pi D	1974	Orangeburg sandy loam	75	125 126 127 128
E	C R Pi D	1973	Bonifay sandy loam	65	129 130 131

---

[1] C = site cleared by clear-cutting, followed by shearing with a V-blade, R = soil root-raked, W = debris windrowed, D = soil disked, Bd = soil bedded, Pi = debris piled, Br = debris burned, S = burned debris scattered.

[2] Soil Conservation Service (1975, 1980).

[3] Site index classified by Soil Conservation Service (1975, 1980), index age = 50 years.

[4] Planting location approximately ranked from greatest site preparation intensity, A, to lowest, E.

Planting Stock

Planting stock was 1-0 and of good quality. Seedlings were grown at nurserybed densities of 12 or 15 per square foot and had been properly root-pruned in the nursery, 10 to 12 weeks before lifting, to promote the growth of fibrous lateral roots and prepare the seedlings for lifting. Stock had also been protected from brownspot infection and fusiform rust (*Cronartium quercuum* f. sp. *fusiforme*). Good foliage health and well-developed lateral roots are regarded by some to be more important than root-collar diameter. However, for best survival and growth, the root-collar diameter should be 0.4 inches or larger and roots should be 6 to 8 inches long.

Stock Storage

All stock was properly stored in the shad
Bales were protected against freezing, heating
and drying. They were stored one layer deep a
watered every 5 days. Ideally, the seedlings w
planted as soon as possible after they were li
from the nursery bed.

Planting

All planting was done with a modified pla
machine drawn by rubber-tired industrial-type
tractors. Planting was not started until seve
weeks after site preparation had been complete
The site usually had received several soaking
rains which caused desirable surface soil
settling and provided adequate soil moisture a

plnting time. Seedling roots were not allowed to di out while in the planting tray. The tractor prceeded at a rate slow enough so that the planter cld accurately position the stemless seedlings in tl slit. This operation is a "hands-on" learned sll and is most important. The planter must lrn to judge the tilth of the site and position t seedlings so that about 6 months to a year ler, when the site and the packing-wheel ridge hae finished settling, the seedling root-collars wl be at or slightly below the soil surface and t terminal bud will be exposed.

Planting rates were about 0.5 acre per hour. Aut 700 to 1,300 trees per acre (TPA) were pnted 3 to 6 feet apart in rows about 10 feet aprt.

Inventory Plots

When the plantations were 4 to 5 years old, l semi-permanent 0.1- to 0.2-acre rectangular pts were installed. All trees on these plots we positively identified. Although these plots rresent reasonably successful plantations, they we selected to cover the available range of pnting situations and stand densities, were lited in number, and may not represent average cditions for each situation. The following da were recorded.

(a) plot number and location information.
(b) plot dimensions, size, and planting spacing.
(c) site preparation information.
(d) a tally of all living stems; d.b.h. measured to 0.1-inch.
(e) a systematic sample of one-third of the trees in each 1-inch d.b.h. class for total height. All of the sample trees in the dominant stand (dominants and codominants) were bored at a 4-foot height to obtain a ring count.
(f) stand age from planting, average ring count and average height of dominant stand sample trees, and current number of TPA.

The plots were inventoried on a 3-year cle. The data were summarized after each ventory on a per-acre basis as number of trees, ight, basal area, and cubic-foot volume (Farrar 81) per 1-inch d.b.h. class and per stand. ese data were combined and averaged by planting cation (Table 2).

Natural Stand Plots

For comparison, data were taken from a tural stand spacing study in which three rmanent, circular 0.2 acre plots were established each of five residual densities varying from 0 to 1,500 TPA when the trees were 7 years old rom overstory release (9 years from seed fall) (Farrar 1974). From this study, the data from nine plots representing densities of 1,200, 900, and 600 TPA were summarized at ages 7, 9, and 11 years after release. This group of plots was chosen because its residual total TPA was similar to the planted TPA and the development of its stand 1-inch d.b.h. and larger was relatively uniform. The study site contains soil similar to the plantations and has a site index varying from 70 to 80 feet at 50 years for natural stands. The seedlings came largely from the fairly good seed crop of 1958 (Croker and Boyer 1975) on a seed-tree stand (about 10 TPA). After two growing seasons the parent trees were removed in 1961. In 1967, 7 years after overstory release, the spacing study was installed by precommercial thinning. All hardwoods were killed at the time of study installation and plots have been winter-burned by prescription on a 2-year cycle starting in the winter of 1973-74.

Inventory and summary techniques are essentially the same as those in the plantation plots, except that the sample-tree frequency was 1/6. These plots have been inventoried on a 2-year cycle and their data are summarized on a per-acre basis in Table 3.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Survival

Survival has been 50 percent or better for all planting situations through ages 10 and 11 (Figure 1). There is a general trend for survival to increase with each successive planting and this is attributed to concurrent improvements in site preparation and planting technique. Although all preparation was intensive, site C has a heavier and moister soil relative to the other sites which resulted in a rougher planting surface and more vegetative competition. This condition plus initial lack of planting experience are thought to have contributed to the poorer survival of this site. The other planting sites were relatively smooth.

Survival in the natural stand was essentially 100 percent 7 to 11 years after overstory release (9 to 13 years after seed fall). All of these trees were well-established when the spacing treatments were imposed at age 7 from release.

Trees Per Acre

While the trend in survival of total planted TPA was gradually downward after the initial losses (Figure 1), the trend in percent of TPA 1-inch d.b.h. and larger was sharply upward for the first period (Figure 2), followed by a slower increase. By age 10 or 11, the proportion of the trees 1-inch d.b.h. or larger was at least 95 percent in the three older plantations and a

Table 2.--Longleaf plantation development summary [1/]

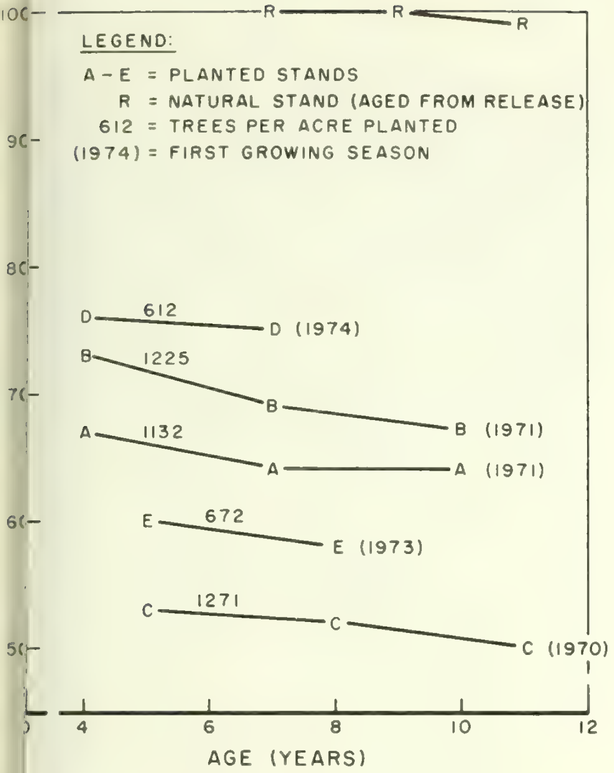
Planting Location	First Growing Season	Age from Planting	TPA Planted	Years in Grass	HD	TSO	TS1	B1	V1	TS4	B4	V43	Number of Plots
		yrs	no	yrs	ft	no	no	ft^2	ft^3	no	ft^2	ft^3	
A	1971	0	1132	3	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	2
		4			8	755	550	6	23	0	0	0	
		7			20	730	720	29	219	30	3	17	
		10			29	725	720	46	541	290	28	285	
B	1971	0	1225	3	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	3
		4			6	890	530	2	9	0	0	0	
		7			17	847	753	24	170	30	3	18	
		10			26	823	780	42	451	243	22	213	
C	1970	0	1271	4	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	2
		5			7	670	320	3	10	0	0	0	
		8			18	655	560	19	127	15	2	8	
		11			27	640	605	39	418	270	26	236	
D	1974	0	612	3	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	4
		4			7	463	198	2	6	0	0	0	
		7			16	457	412	13	83	0	0	0	
E	1973	0	672	3	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	3
		5			8	402	241	3	11	0	0	0	
		8			18	393	343	14	108	35	3	20	

[1/] Term Legend: TPA = trees per acre; Years in grass = age from planting - (avg. ring count @ 4' for D & CD trees); HD = dominant stand height; TSO = TPA surviving, all trees; TS1 = TPA surviving, trees 1" d.b.h. & larger; B1 = basal area for TS1; V1 = total cubic-foot volume, i.b., for TS1; TS4 = TPA surviving, trees 4" d.b.h. & larger; B4 = basal area for TS4; V43 = cubic-foot volume, i.b., to a 3" d.o.b. top for TS4.

Table 3.--Longleaf natural stand development summary [1/]

Age from Release	Years in Grass	HD	TSO	TS1	B1	V1	TS4	B4	V43	Number of 1/5-acre Plots
yrs	yrs	ft	no	no	ft^2	ft^3	no	ft^2	ft^3	
2	7		6000	--	--	--	--	--	--	9
7		9	900	372	4	18	0	0	0	
9		16	897	629	16	97	11	1	6	
11		23	891	797	31	256	125	11	81	

[1/] Term Legend: same as Table 2 except Years in grass = age from seed - (avg. ring count @ 4' for D & CD trees)



Fi re 1.--Survival of longleaf pine in planted and natural stands.

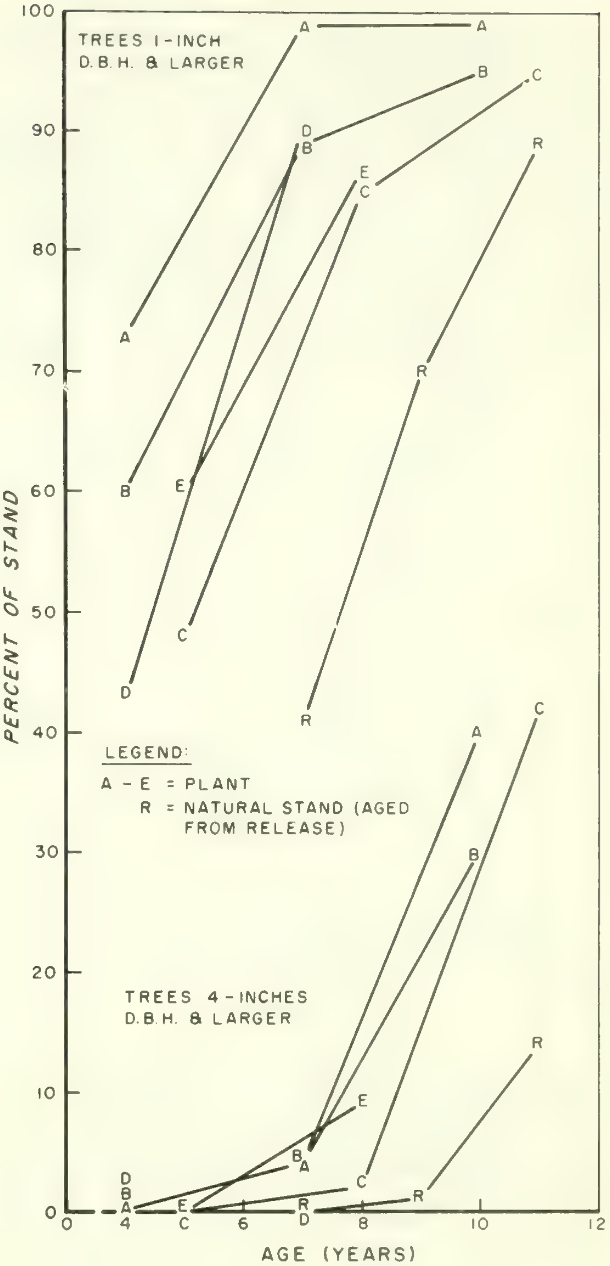


Figure 2.--Proportion of longleaf pine stems equal to and larger than 1- and 4-inches d.b.h. in planted and natural stands.

si lar proportion is suggested for the two yo ger plantations when they reach this age. Th natural stand shows a lag in development; on about 90 percent of the stand was 1-inch i. h. and larger by 11 years after release (1 years after seed fall).

It is interesting that these results in pendently confirm the finding of Croker and Bo r (1965) that natural seedling stands re eased from parent over-stories at age 2 will ha about 41 percent of the seedlings in he ght-growth (over 0.5-foot tall) 7 years after re ease. Here we had at least 41 percent of the na ural stand taller than 4½ feet 7 years after re ease.

Merchantable stand development (trees 4-nches d.b.h. and larger) shows a different patern. In plantations and natural stands, the inrease during the first growth period is grdual followed by a sharp increase in the scond period. Ten or 11 years after planting th plantations had 30 to 40 percent of their tres 4-inches d.b.h. or larger, while in the naural stand only 14 percent were this large 11 yrs after release.

In absolute numbers, all plantations had at least 300 TPA 1-inch d.b.h. and larger, 4 to 7 years after planting (Figure 3). By age 10 or 11 the three older plantations had from about 600 to nearly 800 TPA this large. The natural stand had 350 TPA this large 7 years after release and almost 800 four years later. The three older plantations had from 243 to 290 TPA 4-inches d.b.h. and larger 10 or 11 years after planting while the natural stand had only 125 such TPA 11 years after release. In the merchantable TPA component, the natural stand appears to lag behind the planted stands by at least 2 to 3 years.

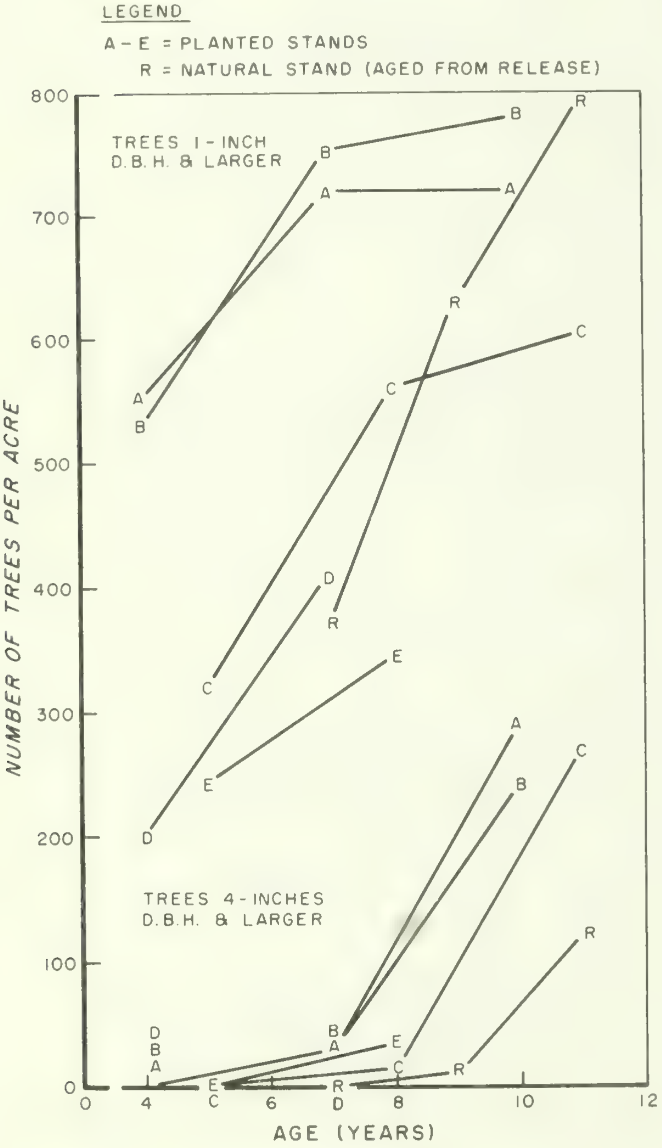


Figure 3.--Number of longleaf pine trees per acre equal to and larger than 1- and 4-inches d.b.h. in planted and natural stands.

Dominant Stand Height

The dominant stand in all plantations ha grown to over 4½ feet 4 to 5 years after plan and by age 7 they were 14 to 20 feet tall (Figure 4). Note that it is standard practi to assume that dominant natural longleaf stan are over 4½ feet tall 8 years after seed fall (Forest Service 1976). In several studies o medium sites, where the age of the natural reproduction from seed-tree and shelterwood stands was known and the reproduction had bee reasonably well managed, we have found this t generally true. In the natural stand spacing study we knew that most of the reproduction c from the 1958 seed crop. In 1967 most of the dominant stand trees showed 2 rings on cores taken at a height of 4 feet, indicating that were somewhat less than 4 feet tall 7 years a seed fall (5 years after release). The plant were at least 3 to 5 times this tall 7 years planting. The natural stand reached heights 14 and 20 feet about 8 and 10 years, respecti after release. Again, the natural stand appe to lag behind the plantations by at least abo 2 to 3 years.

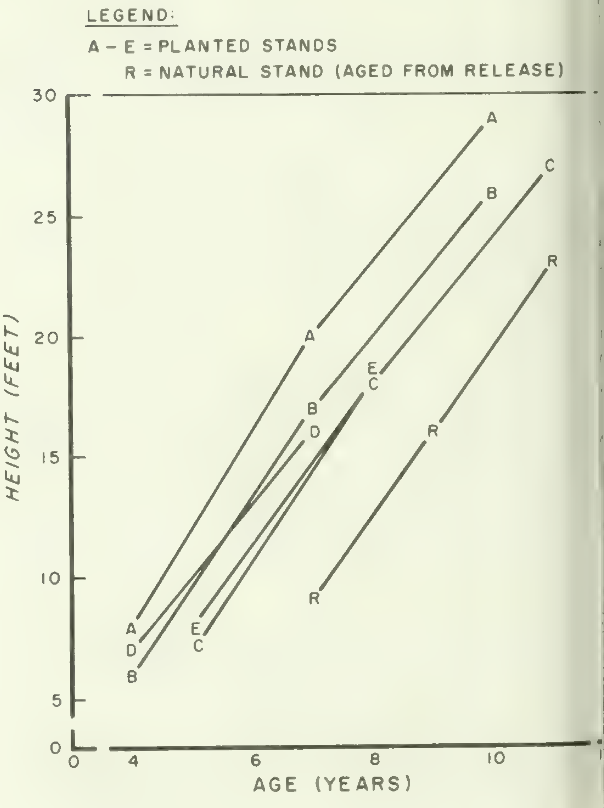
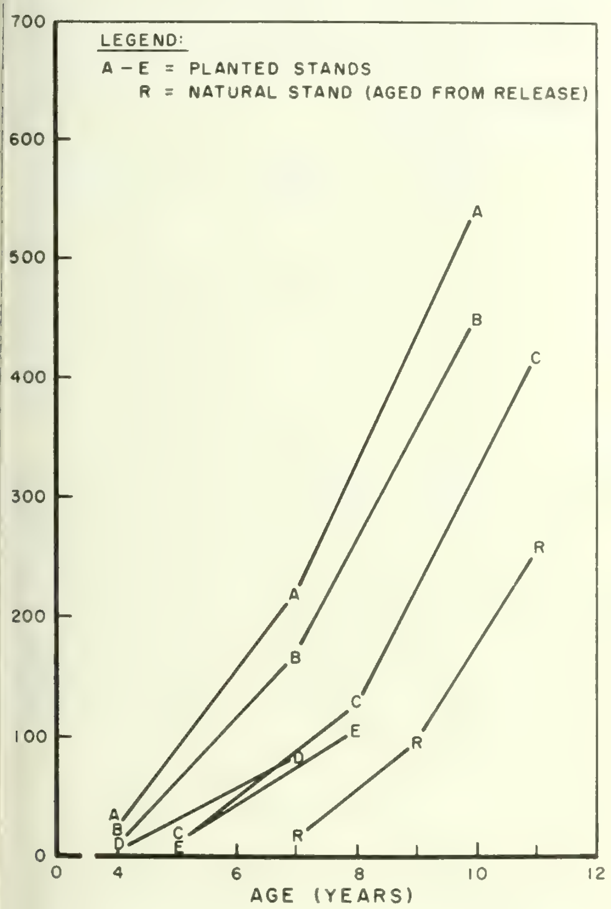


Figure 4.--Longleaf pine dominant stand height development in planted and natural stands.

Volume

Total and merchantable cubic-foot volumes, .b., are presented in Figures 5 and 6. The hree older planted stands had produced between 20 and 540 total cubic feet 10 or 11 years after lanting. The natural stands had produced only bout 250 total cubic feet 11 years after release. he plantation merchantable volumes (d.b.h. >3.5 nches, 3-inches d.o.b., top) varied from 215 to 35 cubic feet 10 or 11 years after planting. ssuming 80 cubic feet, i.b., per rough cord, his amounts to between 2.7 and 3.6 cords. The atural stand produced about 80 cubic feet, or cord, 11 years after release. In volume roduction too, the natural stand appears to ag behind the planted stands by at least 2 to 3 ears.



igure 5.--Early longleaf pine total volume production in planted and natural stands.

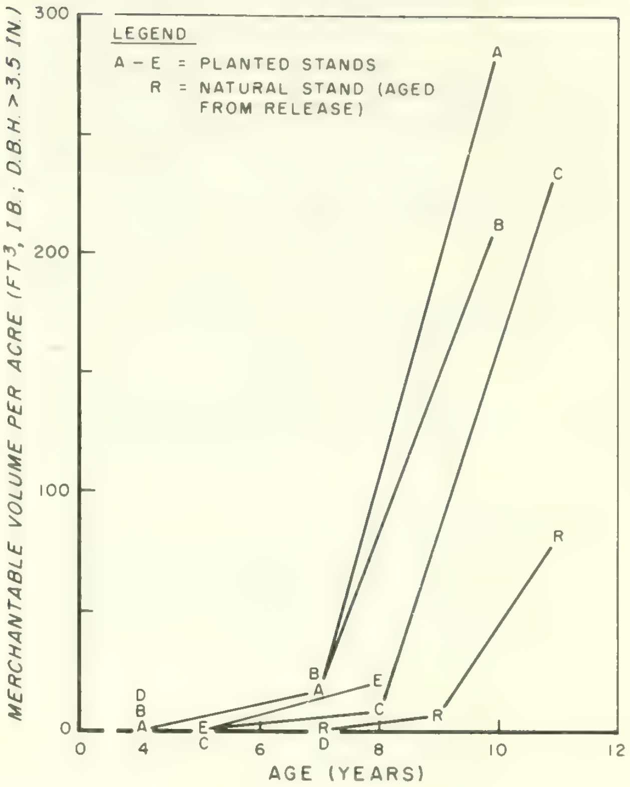


Figure 6.--Early longleaf pine merchantable volume production in planted and natural stands.

In comparison, production to age 10 for a well-tended stand planted on an old-field in South Alabama varied mostly from about 3 to 6 cords for densities of 600 to 800 current total TPA with some denser portions reaching about 11 cords (Farrar 1974). The proposition that these levels of production would be near the maximum expected from plantations on old-field or intensively prepared sites is supported by the plantation yields of this study.

SUGGESTED PRACTICES FOR PLANTING LONGLEAF PINE ON PREPARED SITES

The following brief outline of requirements for successful planting of longleaf pine results from observations of successful plantings, discussions with successful planters, and direct experience in planting longleaf on sandy prepared sites in the Middle Coastal Plain of the East Gulf. It is not intended to cover all the details.

I. Use good planting stock (better stock = better start)
    A. Grow at low nursery bed density - 12 to 15 per square foot.
    B. Stock must be vigorous - at least 0.4-inch at the root collar (White 1979) (0.5-inch is better) - and well protected in the nursery from brownspot and fusiform rust.
    C. Stock should be properly root-pruned 10 to 12 weeks prior to lifting to prepare seedlings for lifting and outplanting and to promote development of fibrous lateral roots which may promote survival (Brown 1964). Roots should be 6 to 8 inches long.

II. Handle stock properly (don't kill 'em before they're planted)
    A. Planting as soon after lifting as possible is best.
    B. Protect seedlings from drying, heating, and freezing when storing or planting. Temporarily store bales in the shade and in layers 1 bale deep.
    C. Use cold storage if seedlings cannot be planted within 1 week. If left in cold storage beyond 2 weeks, discard seedlings with root-collar diameter less than 0.5-inch.

III. Employ good site preparation (the more complete, the better)
    A. Destroy all competing woody and grassy vegetation with as little topsoil loss as possible. Mechanical preparation should be completed before July to reduce sprouting by woody stumps.
    B. Destroy all residual longleaf pines on the planting site, since these are sources of brownspot infection.
    C. Allow soil on the site to settle for several months; a few soaking rains should occur before planting.
    D. The soil surface should be relatively smooth; rough planting sites result in more poorly positioned seedlings.

IV. Use good planting techniques (planter ski must be developed)
    A. Plant only when soil moisture is adequate.
    B. Plant on contour to lessen chance of erosion.
    C. Plant more slowly and carefully than other southern pines.
    D. Position seedlings when planting such that 6 months to a year after plantin when the soil on the site has fully settled, the seedling bud will be exposed. This calls for initially positioning the seedling bud somewhat below the soil surface (and packing-wheel ridge) but the amount depends u planter experience with soil tilth on the planting site and the amount of s settling anticipated after planting. seedling root should never be exposed
    E. If machine planting, a planting machi drawn by an industrial wheeled tracto is recommended. Several machines are available, some perhaps are better th others.
    F. Initially, plant at a 3-foot spacing rows 10 feet apart. As successful experience is gained, the spacing can increased to, say, 6 by 10 feet. Don worry about planting too many seedlin They are the cheapest part of the ent operation. Don't worry about stagnat if they all survive (unlikely) - long breaks early and strongly into crown and has less need for precommercial t than other southern pines.

V. Protect and monitor the plantation
    A. Protect seedlings from cattle. Cattl trample seedlings and can cause unacc able losses. Also, they can aggravat situation where brownspot is a proble closely grazing the site and preventi enough fuel accumulation to carry a brownspot burn.
    B. Make annual checks for brownspot and burning needs for brush control until minimum of 300 trees per acre are in height growth.

CONCLUSION

From the data presented it is obvious tha longleaf pine can be successfully machine-plan on prepared sandy sites in the East Gulf Middl Coastal Plain on an operational basis. All fi planting situations had stands that averaged b than 50 percent survival at age 10 and more th

30 TPA were 1-inch d.b.h. and larger 7 years ter planting. The height of the dominant and 7 years after planting was at least 3 to 5 mes the height of a natural stand 7 years after ed fall. Plantation volume production was much tter at given ages from planting (or release) an a comparably stocked naturally regenerated and under good management and comparable to a cal well-tended old-field plantation. Employ-nt of the suggestions presented for planting ngleaf pine should largely ensure establishment successful plantations on prepared sites.

LITERATURE CITED

own, C. L.
1964. The seedling habit of longleaf pine. Ga. For. Res. Counc. Rpt. No. 10. iv + 68 p.
oker, T. C., Jr. and W. D. Boyer
1975. Regenerating longleaf pine naturally. USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. SO-105, 21 p. Southern For. Exp. Sta. New Orleans, LA.
rrar, R. M., Jr.
1974. Growth and yield of young longleaf pine. Proc., symp. on mgmt. of young pines, Alexandria, LA, Oct. 22-24, 1974 and Charleston, SC, Dec. 3-5, 1974, USDA For. Serv., SE Area, S & PF, Southern and Southeastern For. Exp. Stas., 349 p. (p. 276-287).
Farrar, R. M., Jr.
1981. Cubic-foot volume, surface area, and merchantable height functions for longleaf pine trees. USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. SO-166, 7 p. Southern For. Exp. Sta., New Orleans, LA.
Forest Service.
1976. Volume, yield and stand tables for second-growth southern pines. USDA Misc. Publ. 50 (Rev.), 202 p. USDA, Washington, DC.
Soil Conservation Service.
1975. Soil Survey of Escambia County, Alabama. USDA Soil Cons. Serv., Washington, DC. 98 p. + maps.
Soil Conservation Service.
1980. Soil Survey of Santa Rosa County, Florida. USDA Soil Cons. Serv., Washington, DC, 150 p. + maps.
White, J. B.
1979. Longleaf pine survival influenced by seedling size and length of storage. Proc. longleaf pine workshop, Mobile, AL, Oct. 17-19, 1978, USDA For. Serv. Tech. publ. SA-TP 3, SE Area S & PF (July 1979), 119 p. (P. 26-29).

EFFECTS OF INITIAL SEEDLING DENSITY ON SPOT-SEEDED LOBLOLLY AND SLASH PINES AT AGE 15 YEARS [1]

Thomas E. Campbell [2]

Abstract.--Early thinning of multiple-seedling spots to a single stem provided adequate stocking and increased growth by age 15. Leaving 2, 5, or 9 seedlings per spot caused a significant reduction in height and diameter growth for most of the species-density-site combinations. This suggests a change in currently recommended spot sowing rates to reduce clustering.

INTRODUCTION

Direct seeding is a successful and widely accepted method of regenerating southern pines. Aerial seeding is generally used on large areas, but spot sowing by hand is an excellent alternative for small tracts or where broadcasting is impractical. Spot seeding requires only one-third to one-fourth the seeds used in broadcast sowing, and permits more precise control of stocking and spacing than is possible with broadcasting. It is also cheaper, faster, and less laborious than hand planting nursery seedlings. Spot seeding is especially suitable for the small landowner who must keep out-of-pocket expenses to a minimum.

In spot seeding, multiple seeds are dropped on a spot to insure at least one seedling. Mann and Burns (1965) recommended sowing six seeds per spot on 1,000 spots per acre. Though this often results in several seedlings on the spot, Campbell (1964) reported that slash pine (*Pinus elliottii*) showed no adverse effects from such clustering at age 3.

This study was established in 1962 to determine how many seedlings were needed on a spot to insure adequate stocking, and to determine the effect of multiple trees per spot on growth to merchantability. Loblolly (*P. taeda* L.) and slash pines were establish at a rate of 1,000 spots per acre at densiti of 1, 2, 5, and 9 seedlings per spot. All species-density combinations were installed on each of two sites. Site index was not determined.

Lohrey (1970) reported measurements of the study at age 5. Spot density did not affect height growth of the tallest tree per spot, and the tallest trees were maintaining dominant crown positions on most spots at al densities. Many small trees were expected t drop out of competition rapidly after crown closure. By age 10, Campbell (1981) found that 1 or 2 seedlings per spot produced fully stocked stands of both species on both sites 5 and 9 seedlings per spot showed a slight reduction in height and diameter growth.

This paper reports measurements of the study at age 15.

METHODS

Initially, four seedling densities were established on 0.1-acre square plots and wer replicated four times in a randomized block design for each species on each of two sites Experimental design did not permit statistic comparison of species or sites.

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Silviculturist, Southern Forest Experiment Station, Forest Service, USDA, Pineville, Louisiana.

On site A, initially classified as being edium in quality, topsoil was a brown fine andy loam 8 inches deep that overlaid a red andy clay loam subsoil. Surface and internal rainage were good. Site B was the poorer of he two sites; it had a gray sandy loam topsoil bout 6 inches deep underlain by a slowly meable reddish brown clay. Surface drainage as adequate. Scattered second-growth longleaf ines and numerous scrub hardwoods covered oth sites. The pines were felled and removed nd hardwoods were injected with herbicides efore the study was installed.

Seed spots were prepared at 6.6-foot square pacings (1,000 per acre or 100 per plot) by craping leaves and duff away with a fire rake o expose mineral soil. Spots were hand-sown ith approximately 20 stratified, repellent-reated seeds to insure heavy stocking. After wo complete growing seasons, spots were hinned to their assigned densities, leaving the allest seedlings per spot. Although poor ermination and early survival resulted in verage stocking below assigned densities of 1, 2, 5, and 9 seedlings per spot (tables 1 and 2), the assigned density designations will be sed in this report.

The interior 25 spots on each treatment lot were used for 15-year measurements. Total tree counts were made on each spot, and d.b.h. of each tree was measured to the nearest 0.1-inch with a diameter tape. After all trees on a plot were measured, one sample tree was then selected for every three trees per 1-inch d.b.h. class (0.6 to 1.5, 1.6 to 2.5, etc.). Sample trees were selected as near as possible to the midpoint of each class without regard for tree quality. All sample trees were measured with a relaskop for total height, height to the first live limb, and for successive 2-inch diameter taper steps from a 4-inch top outside bark to a 1-foot stump. Relative crown position was determined for each sample tree. All dominant and codominant sample trees were used to determine site index; where needed, nonsample dominants and codominants were measured to total height only so that a minimum of 10 were available for site index determinations. The height accumulation and plot summary programs, described by Lohrey and Dell (1969), were used to compute volumes and other pertinent data.

All measurement parameters for each species and each site were tested by ANOV (0.05 level) for differences between spot densities. Duncan's Multiple Range Test was used to locate significant differences.

Trees are divided into three arbitrary size classifications in the following presentations: all trees; merchantable trees, those 3.6 inches d.b.h. and larger; and crop trees, those 5.6 inches d.b.h. and larger.

RESULTS

Loblolly Pine

At age 15, the average number of trees per multiple-stocked spot ranged from 1.3 per 2-tree spot on site A to 2.4 per 9-tree spot on site B (table 1). All treatments resulted in excellent stocking; the range was from 640 to 910 stocked spots per acre. Starting with more than one seedling per spot did not significantly increase stocking on either site.

Total trees per acre on multiple-stocked spots ranged up to 1,970 on site A and 2,150 on site B. Single-tree spots had 740 trees per acre on site A and 640 on site B. Site A had 690 merchantable trees on single-tree spots and 960 on 5-tree spots. Merchantable trees on site B were slightly less in number for each density level, but the minimum was 560 trees per acre. There were no statistical differences between density levels for either site. However, the influence of initial spot density was more obvious in crop trees, the number that had grown to more than 5.5 inches d.b.h. Generally, as original spot density increased, the number of crop trees per acre decreased. Exceptions were for 2-tree spots on site A and 5-tree spots on site B.

Total heights of all trees averaged from 36 feet for 9-tree spots to 45 feet for single trees; both extremes were on site B (table 2). The significant differences are probably a reflection of spot density effects. On site A, heights of dominants and codominants were 3 to 7 feet taller than averages for all trees; site B differences were 2 to 7 feet. The only statistical difference in heights of dominants and codominants by spot density level was between 1- and 9-tree spots on site B. The proportions of total heights occupied by live crowns ranged from 32 to 44 percent for all trees, and from 36 to 49 percent for dominants and codominants. There was only one significant difference in live crown ratios for the two groups of trees on the two sites--all trees for the 5-tree treatment on site B had shorter crowns than trees on the 1- and 2-tree spots.

Table 1.--Mean stand and stocking data at age 15 for loblolly pine

Assigned spot density	Mean density at age 2 yrs.	Current mean density	Current trees per stocked spot	Spots/acre stocked with		Trees per acre		
				1 or more trees	2 or more trees	All trees	Merchantable trees	Cro tree
				Site A				
1	0.9	0.7	1.0	740a[1]	--	740c	690a	350
2	1.6	1.0	1.3	720a	260	980bc	840a	360
5	4.4	2.0	2.1	910a	670a	1,970a	960a	180
9	6.9	1.4	1.9	730a	490ab	1,420ab	870a	180
				Site B				
1	0.8	0.6	1.0	640a	--	640b	560a	340
2	1.4	1.0	1.4	730a	320b	1,050b	670a	230
5	3.4	1.7	2.0	840a	580a	1,740a	870a	310
9	6.0	2.1	2.4	870a	660a	2,150a	790a	100

[1] For each site, means in each column followed by the same letter are not significantly different (0.05 level). Sites are not statistically comparable because of statistical design.

Table 2.--Mean total heights and live-crown ratios at age 15 for loblolly pine

Assigned spot density	Total height		Live crown ratio	
	All trees	Dominants and codominants	All trees	Dominants and codominants
	------------Feet------------		------------Percent------------	
		Site A		
1	44a [1]	47a	40a	44a
2	43a	48a	38a	45a
5	38b	45a	32b	36a
9	41ab	47a	34ab	43a
		Site B		
1	45a	47a	44a	44a
2	40b	44ab	42a	49a
5	38bc	45ab	38a	47a
9	36c	42b	36a	44a

[1] For each site, means in each column followed by the same letter are not significantly different (0.05 level). Sites are not statistically comparable.

Mean d.b.h. of all site A trees on 1- and 2-tree spots was statistically greater than trees on spots with higher densities (table 3). For dominants and codominants, however, only the 5-tree spots had smaller trees. On site B, single trees were larger than those on all three other treatments for all trees; dominant and codominant single trees were also larger than those on 5- and 9-tree spots. Merchantable trees showed the same general trend as all trees--size decreased as spot density increased, and differences between density levels were significant for both sites. However, d.b.h. differences between spot densities for crop trees were not significant on either site.

The distributions of trees by 1-inch d.b.h. classes for loblolly pine on both sites are shown in table 4.

Basal area for all trees and for merchantable trees was not affected by spot density on either site (table 3). But for site A trees 5.6 inches d.b.h. and larger, the 1- and 2-tree spots had significantly more basal area than did the denser spots. On site B the only significant difference was between single-tree and 9-tree spots.

Original spot density had no statistical influence on total or merchantable volume yields for either site, though site A had slightly higher volumes than site B for each density level (table 5). But the most interesting figures in volume yields are those of non-merchantable wood by spot density classes. At age 15, about 15 percent of the total volume on single-tree spots was non-merchantable. But that proportion of non-merchantable wood increased as spot density increased to about 44 percent on 9-tree spots.

Volumes in crop trees--5.6 inches and larger--on site A 5-tree spots were significantly less than on 1- and 2-tree spots, but not less than on 9-tree spots. On site B, single-tree spots had more volume than 2- or 9-tree spots, but not more than 5-tree spots. The differences clearly express the influence that multiple-trees on a spot have on volume growth through 15 years.

Table 3.--Mean d.b.h. and basal area at age 15 for loblolly pine

Assigned spot density	D.b.h.				Basal area		
	All trees	Dom. and codoms.	Merchantable trees	Crop trees	All trees	Merchantable trees	Crop trees
	Inches				Square feet		
Site A							
1	5.8a[1/]	6.5a	6.0a	6.8a	135a	133a	91a
2	5.2a	6.8a	5.6ab	6.7a	148a	142a	89a
5	4.0b	5.0b	4.8c	6.1a	159a	122a	38b
9	4.4b	6.0a	5.1bc	7.2a	146a	119a	49b
Site B							
1	6.0a	6.5a	6.3a	7.1a	123a	120a	95a
2	4.6b	6.0ab	5.4ab	6.8a	122a	108a	55ab
5	4.1bc	5.5bc	5.2b	6.3a	160a	128a	67ab
9	3.5c	5.0c	4.8b	6.4a	138a	98a	23b

1/ For each site, means in each column followed by the same letter are not significantly different (0.05 level). Sites are not statistically comparable.

Table 4.--Mean distribution of trees per acre by 1-inch d.b.h. classes at age 15 for loblolly pine

Assigned spot density	D.b.h. classes 1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
	Number									
					Site A					
1	0	0	50	120	220	160	100	70	20	0
2	10	50	80	270	210	220	60	70	0	10
5	70	410	530	490	290	130	40	10	0	0
9	0	130	470	360	280	60	60	50	10	0
					Site B					
1	0	20	60	100	120	120	100	90	30	0
2	60	130	190	190	250	140	60	10	20	0
5	70	340	460	350	210	220	90	0	0	0
9	330	540	490	380	310	70	20	10	0	0

Table 5.--Mean volumes per acre (outside bark) at age 15 for loblolly pine

Assigned spot density	All trees to the terminal bud	Merchantable trees to a 4-inch top	Crop trees to a 4-inch top
		Cords	
		Site A	
1	35.5a [1/]	30.3a	23.0a
2	39.0a	32.1a	23.0a
5	40.7a	24.8a	10.6b
9	39.3a	26.7a	13.2ab
		Site B	
1	28.2a	23.6a	20.0a
2	28.1a	20.0a	9.4bc
5	37.0a	22.8a	14.8ab
9	35.1a	15.6a	4.8c

[1/] For each site, means in each column followed by the same letter are not significantly different (0.05 level). Sites are not statistically comparable.

Slash Pine

The average number of trees per stocked st ranged from 1.0 on single-tree spots to 2.9 o 9-tree spots for both sites (table 6). Scked spots per acre averaged 680 to 950 on se A, and from 560 to 850 on site B. Though sts with multiple trees had significantly more scked spots per acre, the lowest 560 stocked sgle-tree spots were satisfactory.

Total trees per acre for multiple-stocked sts averaged up to 2,840 on site A and 2,600 o site B. This is too many trees at age 15 yars for optimum diameter growth and is rflected in the proportion of trees growing ito merchantable and crop size. On site A, 9 percent of the single trees had grown to mrchantability and 65 percent had reached 56 inches or larger. For the 9-tree spots, te proportions were 33 and 2 percent for mrchantable and crop trees. The same relative prcentages on site B were considerably less ecept that 4 percent of the trees on 9-tree sts had grown to crop size. On both sites, as oiginal density increased the number of crop tees decreased, but the rate of decrease was geater on the better site.

Mean total height of all trees was strongly ifluenced by spot density on site A; single tees averaged 11 feet taller than those on tree spots (table 7). Dominants and codominnts were only 2 feet taller than all trees single-tree spots, but the difference was feet for 5- and 9-tree spots. Density had statistical influence on height growth at ste B. Maximum differences were 3 feet for l trees and 2 feet for dominants and codomints. It is interesting, however, that for all ees and for dominants and codominants, single ees on the better site were 9 feet taller than ose on the poorer site, while trees on 9-tree ots were about equal in height on both sites.

The live crown to total height ratio for l single trees was significantly greater than r all trees on 5- and 9-tree spots on site A able 7). But live crown ratios were not fected by spot density for all trees on site or for dominants and codominants on either te.

Average d.b.h. of all trees and of merantable trees on site A decreased signifintly for each increase in spot density, but op trees were unaffected (table 8). Mean b.h. on site B was influenced by spot density r all trees only. Diameters on site A were nerally greater than those on site B for the three lightest densities, but the reverse was true on 9-tree spots for dominants and codominants, merchantable trees, and crop trees. Diameter distributions by 1-inch classes are shown in table 9 for both sites.

Total basal area on both sites was greater for 5- and 9-tree spots than for single trees. Merchantable basal area on site A 9-tree spots was less than the other three densities, but it was not statistically influenced by spot density on site B. As with mean diameters and numbers of trees, average basal areas on site B were generally less than on the better site.

Total volume on site A was not statistically influenced by spot density, but merchantable and crop tree volumes were; exactly the opposite was true on site B (table 10). On site A, 5-tree spots had the most total volume, 2-tree spots the most merchantable volume, and single trees had the most crop tree volume. On B the 9-tree spots had the most total volume, 5-tree spots the most merchantable volume, and single trees had the most crop tree volume.

DISCUSSION

Thinning 1,000 multiple-stocked spots per acre to a single seedling per spot at age 2 was fully successful in establishing an adequate stand. A fully-stocked stand is considered to be 500 to 750 well spaced trees per acre, and all four single-tree stocking averages exceeded the minimum. As spot density was increased from one to nine seedlings per spot, however, the number of seedlings per acre also increased, and these additional seedlings were in excess of the needs. They were, in fact, detrimental to growth on the clustered spots. Average heights between 1- and 9-tree spots were significantly decreased on two species-site combinations, and average diameters were decreased on all four combinations. Total volumes were increased by the higher density, but volumes on single-tree plots were concentrated in fewer and larger trees. For example, on site A, single slash pines had about 24 trees per cord and 9-tree spots had 177 trees per cord, while on site B, there were 55 and 202 trees per cord, respectively. Starting with two seedlings per spot was also detrimental to growth when compared with single trees, but the differences were not nearly so great as between one and nine seedlings.

Table 6.--Mean stand and stocking data at age 15 for slash pine

Assigned spot density	Mean density at age 2 yrs.	Current mean density	Current trees per stocked spot	Spots/acre stocked with: 1 or more trees	Spots/acre stocked with: 2 or more trees	Trees per acre: All trees	Trees per acre: Merchantable trees	Trees per acre: Crop trees
				Site A				
1	0.9	0.7	1.0	680b 1/	--	680d	640b	440a
2	1.8	1.3	1.4	860a	350c	1,270c	950a	340a
5	4.7	2.1	2.3	920a	710b	2,120b	1,020a	150b
9	7.5	2.8	2.9	950a	840a	2,840a	930a	70b
				Site B				
1	0.9	0.6	1.0	560b	--	560c	380a	160a
2	1.6	0.9	1.4	670b	260b	930bc	520a	130a
5	4.0	1.7	2.0	840a	480a	1,680b	690a	120a
9	5.6	2.6	2.9	850a	640a	2,600a	660a	110a

1/ For each site, means in each column followed by the same letter are not significantly different (0.05 level). Sites are not statistically comparable.

Table 7.--Mean total heights and live-crown ratios at age 15 for slash pine

Assigned spot density	Total height: All trees	Total height: Dominants and codominants	Live-crown ratio: All trees	Live-crown ratio: Dominants and codominants
	Feet	Feet	Percent	Percent
		Site A		
1	43a 1/	45a	42a	44a
2	40b	44ab	36ab	42a
5	36c	43b	33b	42a
9	32d	39c	35b	40a
		Site B		
1	34a	36a	49a	51a
2	35a	38a	42a	47a
5	32a	37a	44a	49a
9	32a	38a	42a	47a

1/ For each site, means in each column followed by the same letter are not significantly different (0.05 level). Sites are not statistically comparable.

Table 8.--Mean d.b.h. and basal area at age 15 for slash pine

Assigned spot density	D.b.h.				Basal area		
	All trees	Dom. and codoms.	Merchantable trees	Crop trees	All trees	Merchantable trees	Crop trees
	Inches				Square feet		
				Site A			
1	6.0a 1/	6.6a	6.1a	6.6a	134b	133a	106a
2	4.7b	5.7b	5.3b	6.2a	157ab	145a	71b
5	3.8c	5.7b	4.8c	6.4a	172a	129a	34c
9	3.3d	4.5c	4.4d	5.8a	165a	101b	13c
				Site B			
1	4.6a	5.2a	5.2a	5.9a	65b	56a	31a
2	4.2ab	5.2a	5.1a	6.2a	89ab	72a	27a
5	3.5bc	4.9a	4.7a	5.9a	115a	84a	23a
9	3.1c	5.0a	4.7a	6.1a	130a	81a	23a

1/ For each site, means in each column followed by the same letter are not significantly different (0.05 level). Sites are not statistically comparable.

Table 9.--Mean distribution of trees per acre by 1-inch d.b.h. classes at age 15 for slash pine

Assigned spot density	D.b.h. classes									
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
					Site A					
1	0	0	30	40	160	250	150	40	0	10
2	50	80	190	280	330	280	50	10	0	0
5	70	390	640	580	290	100	40	10	0	0
9	240	800	870	590	270	70	0	0	0	0
					Site B					
1	0	40	140	120	100	140	20	0	0	0
2	20	150	240	190	200	110	20	0	0	0
5	210	350	430	340	230	110	10	0	0	0
9	730	680	530	350	200	100	10	0	0	0

Table 10.--Mean volumes per acre (outside bark) at age 15 for slash pine

Assigned spot density	All trees to the terminal bud	Merchantable trees to a 4-inch top	Crop trees to a 4-inch top
	Cords		
		Site A	
1	32.9a[1]	28.8a	23.8a
2	40.8a	31.7a	17.9a
5	41.3a	24.0ab	8.5b
9	37.2a	16.0b	2.8b
		Site B	
1	14.3b	10.2a	7.0a
2	18.5ab	12.7a	6.0a
5	24.2ab	13.1a	4.9a
9	27.0a	12.9a	4.8a

[1] For each site, means in each column followed by the same letter are not significantly different (0.05 level). Sites are not statistically comparable.

These data indicate that the initial number of seedlings on a spot is highly critical. Thus the number of seeds sown on a spot is most important. Current recommendations for southern pines are to sow five seeds per spot on 1,000 spots per acre. Long-term experience has shown that one seedling normally results from each three to four seeds sown. Five seeds per spot is good insurance for a high proportion of the spots to be stocked with at least one seedling. They will also produce a substantial number of spots with two or three seedlings, and some spots with up to five seedlings. Reducing the sowing rate to three seeds per spot, even on 1,000 spots per acre, may create some risk of understocking. However, based upon these results of better growth from single trees, and direct seeding success from the use of good seeds, the recommended sowing rate probably should be changed. In an attempt to comprom between an adequate number of stocked spots a reduction in multiple-spot stocking, the following recommendations are made: use seed with a germinative capacity of 80 percent or more, sow five seeds per spot on 600 to 750 spots per acre four seeds on 750 to 900 spo per acre, or three seeds on more than 900 sp per acre. Sowing fewer spots with additiona seeds decreases the labor involved, makes li difference in total seed requirements, but increases the chances for multiple-stocked spots. Manual thinning of multiple-stocked spots at age 2 or 3 years would be beneficial but the economics of thinning must be decide by the land manager.

LITERATURE CITED

Cpbell, T. E.
1964. Development of slash pine on seeded spots. J. For. 62(11): 821-822.

Cpbell, T. E.
1981. Spot seeding is effective and inexpensive for reforesting small acreages. In: Proc. South. Silv. Res. Conf., Atlanta, GA, Nov. 6-7, 1980. p. 50-53.

Lohrey, R. E.
1970. Spot seeding slash and loblolly pines. Forest Farmer 29(12): 12-18.

Lohrey, R. E. and T. R. Dell
1969. Computer programs using height accumulation for tree volumes and plot summaries. J. For. 67(8): 554-555.

Mann, W. F., Jr. and E. B. Burns
1965. Direct seeding for the small landowner. Forest Farmer 25(3): 6-7, 14.

HEIGHT GROWTH OF CONTAINERIZED WHITE PINE ON THE CUMBERLAND PLATEAU, TENNESSEE[1]

Ronald L. Hay and John C. Rennie[2]

Abstract.--Containerized white pine seedlings grown with various photoperiod and carbon dioxide treatments were outplanted on the Cumberland Plateau. Southeast and northerly aspects were mechanically site prepared before outplanting. Survival of all containerized seedlings was better than 2-0 bareroot seedlings after the first year, but the 24-hour photoperiod/enriched CO_2 seedlings joined the 2-0 seedlings with poor survival after the second year. Seedlings grown with the continuous light in the greenhouse were taller after the second year but those grown with CO_2 supplements in the greenhouse had significantly less height after two growing seasons. The better containerized seedlings were growing in height at a more rapid rate than 2-0 seedlings after the second year, although the latter remained significantly taller.

INTRODUCTION

Containerization of forest tree seedlings in the South has gained importance and acceptance recently. Southern tree species and containerized culture techniques were discussed at a recent symposium (Guldin and Barnett 1982). Major commitments to containerized culture of both pine and hardwoods have been made by some states, for example, North Carolina (Goodwin et al. 1982). Guldin (1982) has compared production costs between various containerized systems and bareroot nursery stock.

Containerized seedlings have been outplanted in forestry operations on a variety of sites. Some managers use them as a regular part of their regeneration program (Hahn and Hutchison 1978), while others emphasize containerized seedlings on problem sites such as strip mine reclamation sites (Hay and Woods 1980), borrow pit soils (Ruehle 1980), and extremely wet soils (Abbott 1982). Containerized seedlings have become an integral part of forest regeneration practices in North America.

Containerized culture of white pine (*Pinus strobus* L) seedlings in East Tennessee was justified by the need for production of predictabl quantities of viable seedlings that frequently was unattainable from bareroot nurseries due to production problems associated with this specie in a warm climate. The demand for quality whit pine seedlings in Tennessee has frequently exceeded the supply. Much of our preliminary wor involved greenhouse culture treatments designed to stimulate seedling growth preparation for ou planting. Various container sizes, media formu lations, fertilizer regimes, light and carbon dioxide (CO_2) supplements, and length of green house culture were tried (Hay 1981). Some of the seedlings were outplanted on the Cumberland Plateau following clearcutting and mechanical site preparation on Pickett State Forest, Picke County, Tennessee (Hay and Keegan 1982). It is our purpose to report seedling survival and height growth relationship for the first two growing seasons.

CONTAINERIZED SEEDLING PERFORMANCE

Survival

Cultural treatments and survival of seedlings that were outplanted on Pickett State Forest in 1980 were as follows:

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] The authors are Associate Professors, Department of Forestry, Wildlife, and Fisheries, The University of Tennessee, P. O. Box 1071, Knoxville, TN 37901-1071.

ral ment	Survival Year 1	 Year 2
areroot ry seedlings	79.2 b[1/]	77.3 b
th containerized dlings		
1. natural photoperiod ambient CO_2	89.2 a	85.3 ab
2. natural photoperiod enriched CO_2	88.0 ab	86.3 ab
3. 24-hour photoperiod ambient CO_2	83.6 ab	80.7 ab
4. 24-hour photoperiod enriched CO_2	82.0 ab	77.3 b

[1/] Mean groupings were at the 0.05 proba- liy level as determined by Duncan's multiple ng test.

The 2-0 bareroot seedlings were outplanted in rc as dormant stock; the containerized seedlings re outplanted in May after frost damage was liely. The 2-0 seedlings had the poorest survaof all treatments, perhaps unacceptable low r tand establishment; most of the mortality cured during the first year. The shock of outaning, combined with a severe 1980 drought, gnficantly (α = .05) reduced survival. By the gining of the second growing season most survig bareroot stock was well-established, for er was only a slight reduction in numbers that ar. However, these seedlings still had the orst survival of all the treatments.

All containerized seedlings survived the rs year equally well (α = .05). Seedlings ow under natural photoperiod tended to survive ttr than seedlings grown under continuous light. is trend continued through the second year as ll. Perhaps the extensive drought of 1980 imctd survival of the 24-hour photoperiod seedng more than it did the natural photoperiod edings. During the second year, enough of the -hur photoperiod/enriched CO_2 seedlings had ed to rank with the 2-0 bareroot seedlings. e atural photoperiod seedlings continued to ve the highest survival, although the position te CO_2 treatments was reversed. After two owng seasons most of the containerized treatnt had established successful plantations.

In 1982, two additional plantations were talished using 7 and 10 month old containerized edings. Mortality in these plantations caused ncrn. In the Pickett State Forest plantation, asnable care was taken during planting to main in the integrity of the root/media plug; except for considerable damage randomly inflicted by rabbits, mortality due to outplanting shock or greenhouse treatments appeared to be negligible through the middle of the growing season (final data have not been collected). In the Highland Rim plantation (Franklin County, Tennessee), the seedlings were planted by personnel other than our own. In spite of repeated instruction on techniques and the need to use great care, the rooting medium was frequently separated from the roots as the seedlings were wrecklessly dropped into the dibble hole. Mortality was high and it seemed correlated more with who planted the seedlings rather than greenhouse cultural treatments. White pine root/media plugs at 7 or 10 months of age were not sufficient to withstand rigorous handling during outplanting.

Deer Browse Damage

The deer herd on Pickett State Forest has been sufficiently large to periodically impact stand regeneration. The 1980 plantations experienced some deer browse damage during each of the first two growing seasons. Because site preparation had been effective in minimizing impact from competing vegetation (Keegan 1981), most white pine seedlings were exposed enough to be available for potential deer browse.

The 1980 outplantings were made on two sites in proximity to each other. Site 1, a southeasterly slope, had been sheared before planting. Deer browse was not a problem on Site 1, in spite of the nearly complete exposure of the seedlings due to lack of competing vegetation. Site 2, a northern aspect, had been prepared by removing logging slash with a dozer, but the soil was not scarified appreciably. Stumps were still in place, and hardwood sprouts were common. Deer browse damage to the white pine seedlings on Site 2 was quite heavy, significantly (α = .05) more so than on Site 1.

During the third growing season, deer browse damage to the seedlings had not been renewed through August. The amount of competing vegetation in the stands had increased appreciably providing considerable angiosperm browse and making the pine seedlings less conspicuous.

In spite of the frequent deer browse on Site 2, there was no preference for an individual cultural treatment (α = .05). All seedlings were apparently acceptable food, and the browse damage occurrence was a random selection by the animals. For purposes of height growth comparisons seedlings that had been browse damaged were not considered.

Seedling Growth Relationships

Height Growth

Analysis of variance on the first year

heights showed the 2-0 bareroot seedlings to be significantly taller ($\alpha = .05$) than any of the other treatments; this was not unexpected considering their initial size. There were no significant differences among first year heights of greenhouse culture treatments; Duncan's multiple range test ranked the natural photoperiod/ambient CO_2 treatment in the same group as the 24-hour photoperiod/enriched CO_2 treatment. Based on this information, the additional expenses of electricity for the lights and propane for the CO_2 generator did not produce additional growth benefits.

After the second growing season, the 2-0 bareroot seedlings remained significantly ($\alpha = .01$) taller than all the containerized seedlings. This trend will undoubtedly continue for several years, but the better containerized treatments grew proportionally faster than the 2-0 seedlings, thereby reducing the total difference in height. At some point in time, the containerized seedlings and 2-0 bareroot seedlings will likely approach the same total height, probably before the period of rapid height growth ceases and perhaps as early as the large sapling stage.

Photoperiod effects.--During the second growing season the effects of 24-hour photoperiod and enriched CO_2 atmospheres in the greenhouse culture phase had significant ($\alpha = .05$) impacts on seedling height growth. Those seedlings that had been grown with 24-hour photoperiod were significantly taller than those grown with natural photoperiod while the enriched CO_2 atmosphere depressed height growth.

	Natural Photoperiod cm	24-Hour Photoperiod cm	Mean cm
ambient CO_2	21.8	22.8	22.3[1]
enriched CO_2	18.9	21.8	20.4
mean	20.4[1]	22.3	

After the first growing season in the field, there were no significant differences in seedling height among the containerized seedlings. It was apparent, however, that the 24-hour photoperiod in the presence of supplemental CO_2 benefited seedling height compared to natural photoperiod in the same CO_2 atmosphere. This trend continued through year two. The growth benefits of continuous light were sufficient to balance the growth depression of supplemental CO_2. Maximum increased growth was evident in the 24-hour photoperiod/ambient CO_2 treatment.

In the greenhouse culture phase of this work there was no impact on height growth through age seven months due to different photoperiod treatments (Hay and Keegan 1982). However, there was a significant increase in biomass of both tops and roots due to the 24-hour photoperiod treatments. The impact of the increased biomass durin greenhouse culture upon seedling growth in the field may have been delayed until the second year The first year had a prolonged, severe drought during most of the summer and seedling establishment was difficult. Weather during the second year was more average and seedling growth may hav been a more realistic reflection of greenhouse culture treatments. Subsequent measurements will have to be made to confirm these trends, plus additional outplantings will be established to provide more information.

CO_2 effects.--Seedlings that had been grown in a CO_2 enriched atmosphere during greenhouse culture were significantly ($\alpha = .05$) shorter than seedlings grown in ambient CO_2 concentrations, both at seven months (Hay 1981) and after two years in the field. The same trend was apparent after the first year in the field but the heights were not significantly different. Seedling heig growth in the CO_2 enriched treatment increased slightly when the photoperiod was increased to 2 hours. However, seedling height attained after two years in the field for the expensive continuous light and CO_2 enrichment treatments was the same height attained by seedlings grown in ambie CO_2 concentration with just enough light interruptions of the dark phase to prevent bud-set an dormancy.

These results do not seem consistent with the role of the CO_2 in photosynthesis and carbohydrate accumulation, and the increased growth potential made possible through both processes. However, the effects of CO_2 as used during the greenhouse culture phase have been consistent throughout the period of this experiment. At no time did the seedlings show the symptoms of CO_2 toxicity, but it was possible that excessive CO_2 or impurities in the propane could have had harmful effects on the seedlings. The foliage maintained healthy, blue-green color and had good secondary leaf development. In fact, the seedlings with the best appearance at 7 months of ag were the 24-hour photoperiod/enriched CO_2 treatment seedlings. Those grown without continuous light were not very robust in appearance.

There has been no evidence, based on this work, to warrant the use and expense of a CO_2 generator, at least according to the conditions available to us. Enriching the atmosphere with CO_2 had a negative impact on growth through the second growing season in the field.

---

[1] Means were significantly different at the .05 probability level.

ite effects.--White pine prefers cool, sites and it is most common in drainages ng northern aspects on the Cumberland u. It has been planted successfully in the however, on a variety of sites. Some of der plantations on Pickett State Forest ecently been thinned for small sawlogs. sidual trees are impressive.

ur seedlings were outplanted on two sites kett State Forest. Site 1 was a 20 percent southeast aspect that had been sheared, ng stumps, slash, and some soil, including f the unincorporated organic matter. Site a 30 percent slope on a northern aspect. g slash had been pushed from the site by r, but there was no attempt to remove and the soil was not appreciably scarified. nalyses showed that the mineral soil on ites contained similar levels of the important utrients.

he amount of competing vegetation that ed on both sites through July of the second g season did not impact white pine seedling (Keegan 1981). However, competing vegetation as more abundant on Site 2, principally s and vines. Herbaceous species were well ented on both sites comprising most of the ing vegetation on Site 1 through the second g season.

prouts on Site 2 constituted a vigorous by late summer of the third growing season. gh sampling was not done according to the used previously (Keegan 1981), it was nt that the white pine seedlings were excing considerable crowding from the sprouts. eous vegetation on Site 2 was less prominent uring the first two years being outgrown by s and the pine seedlings. Some of the hardprouts have the potential to grow into the ory with the white pine but most of them ither be understory shrubs or small trees urity. Their effect will become insignifihen the pine canopy closes.

n Site 1, sprouts remained infrequent into ird growing season and herbaceous plants ued to dominate. Numerous Virginia pine virginiana L) wildlings were interspersed hout the plantation and some of them may e with the white pine for a period after nopy closes.

n response to its preference for a northern , white pine grew better on Site 2, at least t because site preparation retained most of incorporated organic matter on the site. soils have always been marginally productive ere has been a long history of abuse through re and high-grading. Enhancing soil fertild moisture availability by maintaining the c matter benefited seedling growth. It was unate that the southerly aspect (Site 1) was sheared to the mineral soil because the undesirable effects of low soil fertility and low available soil water were compounded.

Height Growth Patterns

When these seedlings were taken from the greenhouse to the field at age seven months, many of them had secondary leaves and their terminal buds were actively elongating. During the first growing season some seedlings produced considerable height growth and the new tissue supported primary leaves. This burst of stem elongation was not further growth of the same tissue that was being produced in the greenhouse, rather juvenile characteristics dominated (fig. 1). Initially the sudden change from 24-hour photoperiod

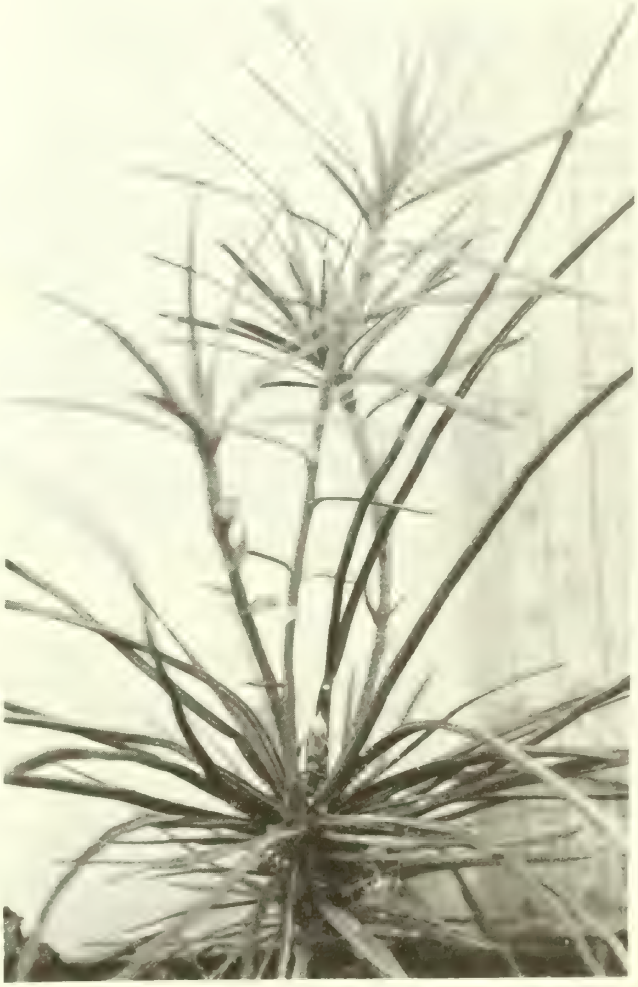


Figure 1.--White pine seedling growth form with buds at the leaf axils providing the new tissue while the terminal bud remained dormant. Note the primary leaves, indicative of juvenile characteristics.

to natural photoperiod when the seedlings were moved to lath shade was thought to have caused partial dormancy of terminal buds, followed by a reversal to juvenile tissue production when growth resumed. Careful examination revealed that it was not the terminal bud that had produced the burst of height growth. A secondary bud that formed at one of the secondary leaf axils produced the stem tissue complete with primary leaves. Occasionally, multiple leaders were produced, individually in each of several leaf axils without any particular one gaining dominance. The terminal bud on the main stem was always present and dormant.

The original terminal bud was usually well-formed and appeared to be ready for growth in 1983. It was not apparent at the time the seedling in figure 1 was photographed whether the terminal bud had elongated normally during the growing season or whether it had gone dormant soon after outplanting.

It is not yet possible to correlate this growth form to any particular greenhouse treatment or age of the containerized seedling at outplanting. The 1982 seedlings were either 10 or 8 months of age having been seeded in August or October, 1981. They were outplanted in May while actively growing without ever having been dormant. Seedlings in an unrelated test were allowed to overwinter outside before being outplanted as dormant stock in April, 1982. These seedlings were approximately 12 months of age at outplanting and the terminal bud maintained strong dominance during the 1982 growing season.

DISCUSSION

Some Silvicultural Considerations

Seedling Growth

Although the containerized seedlings were initially quite small compared to the 2-0 bareroot nursery stock, they have shown good performance since outplanting on the Cumberland Plateau. One greenhouse culture treatment survived significantly better than the 2-0 bareroot seedlings. Much care was exercised in planting all these trees, at least in part due to their experimental purposes. Perhaps the containerized seedlings would not have survived so well if these seedlings had been assigned to commercial planting crews. Destruction of the root/media plug on a containerized seedling would significantly increase mortality.

The height growth rate of the 2-0 bareroot seedlings was less than the height growth rate of the containerized seedlings. The 2-0 seedlings increased in height 117 percent during the second year while the best containerized treatment seedlings increased in height by 165 percent. Although the 2-0 seedlings were still significantly taller, the differences were decreasing yearly because the containerized seedlings wer growing more rapidly. Soon the heights will b come equal; certainly the mature stand will sh no differences.

Site Preparation

Site preparation in these small clearcuts was adequate. However, shearing was not necessary and it was actually harmful because so mu of the organic matter was removed from Site 1. Slash removal on Site 2 was helpful for the pl ing operation but there was little benefit to white pine seedlings since there was no attemp to minimize sprouting. Heavy disking may have been more appropriate for the seedlings becaus the mineral soil would have been scarified and some sprouting would have been discouraged. A the organic matter would have been mixed with mineral soil. Site preparation that incorpora the best part of slash removal with mixing the organic matter and the mineral soil would be b for similar sites on the Cumberland Plateau.

Prescribed burning for site preparation w not a part of this experiment, but fire has ce tainly been no stranger to the Cumberland Plat Past wildfires have been one of the major sour of site and stem degradation. Plateau soils a shallow sands overlying bedrock and they are m ginally productive. Where topography is so st that surface flow during a rain storm would er nutrients released by combustion, prescribed b ing would not be good management. On suitable sites, prescribed burning followed by heavy di ing would adequately prepare the site for outplanting while providing released nutrients fo good seedling growth.

The Root/Media Plug

One of our greatest concerns in this work has been identifying the combination of conta size, rooting medium, and greenhouse culture techniques that will provide seedlings capable surviving outplanting and growing rapidly on a variety of sites. Although we have reported o survival and height growth here, there is stil much to be accomplished in developing a root/media plug strong enough to withstand handlin by more careless workers.

The seedlings used in this experiment wer grown in a peat-sand-pine bark mix and root development was not sufficient to hold the plu together (Hay and Keegan 1982). If extreme ca had not been used in outplanting, survival wou have been quite low. The seedlings were not satisfactory for commercial use.

In subsequent greenhouse work various ot media have been used, ranging from peat-vermic lite (50-50) to pine bark-vermiculite (85-15).

At 8 and 10 months of age, white pine roots had not adequately secured the root/media plug to withstand careless handling, but the peat-vermiculite mix was best. Future work has been planned to help solve this problem and the most promising idea may well be to lengthen the time in greenhouse culture, taking 12 to 15 month old stock to the field.

Seedlings started in the greenhouse during early January would have growing time equivalent to two seasons in the nursery by September, especially if extended photoperiods were used. hese seedlings could then be outplanted if the oot/media plug was acceptable and if frost heaving would not be a problem. Another alternative ould be to place them in a shade house, seated n woodshavings and sawdust, for the winter. They ould be outplanted as dormant stock during late inter or after growth was initiated in the spring, hereby increasing operational flexibility.

LITERATURE CITED

bott, Jerry E.
1982. Operational planting of container grown slash pine seedlings on problem sites, p. 115-116. In Southern Containerized Forest Tree Seedling Conf., Proc. U.S. Forest Service, South. For. Exp. Sta., Gen. Tech. Rep. SO-37.

ldin, Richard W.
1982. Nursery costs and benefits of container-grown southern pine seedlings. S. J. App. For. 6:93-99.

ldin, Richard W., and James P. Barnett, eds.
1982. Southern Containerized Forest Tree Seedling Conference, Proc. U.S. Forest Service, South. For. Exp. Sta., Gen. Tech. Rep. SO-37, 156 p.

Hay, Ronald L. and Frank W. Woods.
1980. Minisite preparation for reforestation of strip-mined lands. USDA/EPA Interagency Energy/Environment R&D Program Report EPA-600/7-80-005. 24 p.

Keegan, Joy Kaye.
1981. Containerized culture of eastern white pine. Master of Science Thesis. Univ. of Tennessee, Knoxville. 59 p.

Ruehle, John L.
1980. Growth of containerized loblolly pine with specific ectomycorrhizae after 2 years on an amended borrow pit. Reclam. Rev. 3:95-101.

Goodwin, O.C., D. L. Brenneman, and W. G. Boyette.
1982. Container seedling survival and growth: pine and hardwood in North Carolina, p. 125-131. In Southern Containerized Forest Tree Seedling Conf. Proc. U.S. Forest Service, South. For. Exp. Sta., Gen. Tech. Rep. SO-37.

Hahn, Philip and Steve Hutchison.
1978. Root form of planted trees and their performance, p. 235-240. In Root Form of Planted Trees Symposium, Proc. British Columbia Ministry of Forests/Canadian Forestry Service, Joint Report No. 8.

Hay, Ronald L.
1981. Growth of eastern white pine seedlings using greenhouse culture techniques, p. 46-49. In First Biennial Southern Silvicultural Research Conf., Proc. U.S. Forest Service, South. For. Exp. Sta., Gen. Tech. Rep. SO-34.

Hay, Ronald L. and Joy K. Keegan.
1982. Containerized white pine cultural methods and outplanting success on the Cumberland Plateau, Tennessee, p. 51-57. In Southern Containerized Forest Tree Seedling Conf. U.S. Forest Service, South. For. Exp. Sta., Gen. Tech. Rep. SO-37.

FIRST YEAR SURVIVAL AND GROWTH OF CONTAINERIZED PINE (PINUS SPP.) SEEDLINGS ON STRIP MINED LANDS AS AFFECTED BY CULTURAL TREATMENTS AND EDAPHIC FACTORS[1]

Stephen H. Schoenholtz and James A. Burger[2]

Abstract.--The effects of cultural treatments including ectomycorrhizal inoculation, chemical weed control, and slow-release fertilization on first year survival and growth of of containerized *P. strobus*, *P. virginiana*, and *P. taeda* seedlings planted on a return-to-contour and a flat bench strip mine site in southwestern Virginia were studied. First year survival was not significantly affected by the cultural treatments or site factors; however, mycorrhizal inoculation, fertilization, and weed control improved growth of all three species. A combination of fertilizer and chemical weed control had an additive effect. These three cultural treatments could be used to improve seedling growth on reclaimed strip mine sites.

INTRODUCTION

Much of the coal producing region of southwestern Virginia has been or will be strip mined for bituminous coal. Once the coal has been extracted from these areas, they are often left in an unproductive state. There is a challange to return these disturbed coal spoils into productive land for agriculture, wildlife, water management, and recreation. On many of these disturbed sites, reforestation is a justifiable alternative for reclamation.

In the past fifty years most research has focused on species' adaptability for revegetation and stabilization of strip mines. In general, pines (*Pinus* spp.) have proven to be suitable because of their ability to survive and grow in harsh soil environments.

Much of the progress in developing cultural practices for tree establishment has been more recent. Some of the first observations and studies of ectomycorrhizae on surface mine spoils were reported by Schramm (1966). He concluded that early ectomycorrhizal development with *Pisoli* *tinctorius* (Pers.). Coker and Couch (P.t.) was vital for seedling establishment of several t species on spoils in Pennsylvania. Since Sch work, numerous other reports supporting these original findings have been published (Berry Ruehle 1980; Walker, *et al*. 1980; Marx and Artman 1979; Berry and Marx 1978; Marx and Barnett 1974; Marx and Bryan 1971; and Marx *al*. 1970).

The primary concern for revegetating str mined lands is to control erosion. Herbaceou plants have been used successfully to accompl this goal. Trees grow too slowly and have lo stocking densities which do not provide adequ cover for erosion control. Mays and Bengston (1978) suggested that tree species could be p several months after an herbaceous ground cov was established to control erosion. Herbaceo vegetation, however, tends to compete with de tree seedlings for soil water, soil nutrients light (Klingsman and Ashton 1975). Herbaceo plants also have been shown to have an allelo effect on tree seedlings.

When herbaceous vegetation competes sign cantly with tree seedlings, the competing veg can be controlled to release limited site res There have been numerous reports describing s ficant responses in pine growth to chemical w control during the first few years of plantat stablishment (Haines 1978; Nelson *et al.* 1981a, 981b). However, very limited information is vailable on the effects of weed control on surface ine reforestation in the South. In addition, the nteractions between herbicides and ectomycorrhizae ave received limited study (Smith and Ferry 1979; nd Kelley and South, 1980).

---

[1] Paper presented at the Southern Silvicultural Conference, November 4-5, 1982, Atlanta, Georgia. Research supported by the Penn Virginia Resources Corporation.

[2] Graduate Research Assistant and Assistant Professor, respectively, Department of Forestry, Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University, Blacksburg, Virginia.

The effectiveness of fertilizer applications n promoting survival and growth of tree species epends, in part, on the extent of herbaceous ompetition on the site. Weed competition can be reatly stimulated by applications of soluble ertilizers and overfertilization may result in vertopping of tree seedlings by excessive developent of herbaceous cover (Mays and Bengtson 1978).

Mays and Bengtson (1978) indicated that strip ine spoils may be highly porous, low in cation xchange capacity, and often lacking much of the ertilizer retention capacity of normal soils. onventional fertilizer sources may leach rapidly hrough these disturbed soils. Slow-release ertilizer tablets, however, offer a potential olution to this problem. Tablets placed adjacent o seedling roots provide maximum benefit for the eedling while minimizing the effect on competing eeds.

The purpose of this study was to evaluate the ffects of ectomycorrhizal inoculation, chemical eed control, and slow-release fertilization on irst year survival and growth of white (*P. trobus* L.), Virginia (*P. virginiana* Mill.) and oblolly (*P. taeda* L.) pines on two strip mined ites in southwestern Virginia.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Study Sites

The two study sites are located in Wise ounty, Virginia. Most surface mined sites in his mountainous region of southwestern Virginia ere left as flat benches after contour mining perations terminated. Federal regulations now equire operators to return mining sites to heir approximate original contour, which results n sites of relatively steep slope. First year eedling survival and growth were evaluated on oth types of site.

On the flat bench site, three replicate locks, each with six 57 x 66 ft (17.5 x 20.0 m) lots, were established on two adjacent areas of imilar reclamation histories and site conditions. he bench site was mined in 1977 and 1978 and ydroseeded with a combination of Kentucky-31 escue (*Festuca arundinacea* Schreb.), red clover *Trifolium pratense* L.), ladino clover (*Trifolium epens ladino* L.), annual rye (*Lolium multiflorum* am.), and red top (*Agrostis alba* L.) in mixture ith 365 lb/acre (409 kg/ha) of 16-27-14 fertilizer nd 833 gal/acre (9354 liters/ha) of Conweb® mulch.

The return-to-contour site was mined in 1979. It was hydroseeded with a combination of Kentucky-31 fescue, red top, ladino clover, annual rye, and annual lespedeza (*Lespedeza cuneata* (Dumont) G. Don) in mixture with 500 lb/acre (560 kg/ha) of 10-20-20 fertilizer and 1500 lb/acre (1681 kg/ha) of wood fiber mulch. Three replicate blocks, each with six 57 x 66 ft (17.5 x 20.0 m) plots were established on this site.

A composite soil sample made up of 15 subsamples was taken from each plot for soil characterization of the sites. Percent slope and standing herbaceous biomass were estimated for each plot.

Plot Design and Treatments

The three pine species (white, Virginia, and loblolly) and two fertilizer treatments (21 gm slow-release Agriform® fertilizer tablets and control) were evaluated in factorial combination. Two mycorrhizal treatments (P.t.-inoculated seedlings and control seedlings) and two weed control treatments (glyphosate applications and control) were imposed on these combinations as split plots.

Plots were planted with 136 trees using a 4 x 8 ft (1.25 x 2.50 m) spacing. Each plot was divided into four subplots to accommodate the mycorrhizal and herbicide treatments.

In January, 1981, white, Virginia, and loblolly pine seeds were planted in Spencer-Lemaire Hillson® root trainers containing a 1:1 v/v peat-vermiculite mixture. One half of the seedlings were inoculated with P.t. mycelia, which had been cultured following techniques of Marx and Bryan (1975). Prior to outplanting in June, 1981, 30 control seedlings and 30 inoculated seedlings of each species were destructively sampled and inspected for the presence of P.t. or other mycorrhizal fungi.

A 21 gm Agriform® starter tablet was placed in the soil within 4-6 in (10-15 cm) of each seedling in 18 of the 36 plots at the time of planting. The tablets are formulated to release nutrients for two growing seasons.

Glyphosate at a rate of 0.5 qt/acre (1.5 l/ha) was applied to a randomly selected half of each plot two weeks prior to planting and again in August to control competing vegetation. Seedlings were protected by paper bags during the second herbicide application.

Data Collection

In November, 1981, survival, height, and root collar diameter were measured. Needle samples from each tree were collected and composited by treatment combination. The needle samples were analyzed for P, K, Ca, and Mg. In addition, twelve seedlings in each plot (three from each subplot) were destructively sampled to determine the presence of ectomycorrhizae.

Soil moisture was measured gravimetrically at intervals from July through November. Weekly precipitation at both study sites was compiled from June through November.

RESULTS

Of the inoculated seedlings, 4 percent of white, 23 percent of Virginia, and 26 percent of loblolly pine seedlings were colonized by P.t. prior to outplanting. No other ectomycorrhizal fungi were detected on the inoculated seedlings, and no ectomycorrhizae of any type were observed on the control seedlings.

The site characterization data show three main differences between the return-to-contour and the flat bench sites (Table 1). The return-to-contour site had greater slope, a soil texture dominated by silt and clay, and consistently higher levels of soil nutrients.

Table 1.--Soil and site characterization of the return-to-contour and flat bench sites used in the study.[1]

Site Parameter	Site Return-to-Contour	Flat Bench
Slope (%)	38	<2
Biomass (tons/acre)	1.70	1.73
Particle Size Distribution (%)		
Coarse Fragments	49	43
Sand	12	29
Silt	21	16
Clay	18	12
Bulk Density (g/cc)	1.3	1.4
Organic Matter (%)	1.2	1.8
pH	5.4	6.1
P (ppm)[2]	7.6	6.3
K (ppm)[3]	100.7	61.7
Ca (ppm)	610.2	576.0
Mg (ppm)	431.0	255.1

[1] Values are the means of measurements from 18 plots at each site.

[2] Sodium bicarbonate extract.

[3] Cation levels are for ammonium acetate extracts.

First-year survival and growth of all three pine species were not significantly different between the two sites(Table 2). Survival and growth of white and Virginia pines were not significantly affected by mycorrhizal inoculation, whereas inoculation with P.t. did significantly increase the average volume of loblolly pine. Inoculated loblolly seedlings averaged 20 percen more volume than control seedlings. Although insignificant, the favorable effect of inoculati is also shown by increased volume means for whit pine and Virginia pine. Inoculation of these tw species increased seedling volume by 15 and 19 percent, respectively.

There was a synergistic fertilizer x herbic interaction which significantly affected the gro of all three pine species but did not significan influence their survival (Table 3). Fertilizer alone increased the average white, Virginia, and loblolly pine seedling volumes by 10, 73, and 99 percent, respectively, over herbicide alone. However, the combination of fertilization and herbicide significantly exceeded these average volumes. White pine volume was increased by 62 and 79 percent, Virginia pine by 149 and 330, an loblolly pine by 109 and 317 percent over fertil zation and herbicide alone, respectively.

The herbicide treatment significantly incre soil moisture levels on the contoured site on fo of six sampling dates, July 17, July 24, August and August 21 (fig. 1). By contrast, the soil moisture contents were significantly different a only one of the measured times on the bench site September 27 (fig. 2).

The percentage of white and loblolly pine lings colonized by P.t. was higher on the flat site, while the reverse was true for Virginia p (Table 4). The number of seedlings colonized by other fungi was significantly higher on the flat site which resulted in significantly higher tot colonization for each species on the bench site

Inoculation significantly increased the percentage of Virginia and loblolly pines colon with P.t. P.t. was also present on some uninoc seedlings of all three species. Although a substantial amount of natural colonization occurre the total number of trees colonized with either P.t. or other ectomycorrhizal fungi was signifi higher for inoculated trees.

Chemical weed control tended to enhance natural colonization resulting in significantly higher total colonization of all three pine spe (Table 4). In contrast, the percentage of Virginia and loblolly seedlings colonized with or with other ectomycorrhizal species was somew inhibited by fertilization. Fertilized white p exhibited an opposite trend (Table 4).

Foliar P and K levels in Virginia, and P l in loblolly pine, were significantly higher on flat bench site (Table 5). Foliar Ca and Mg le tended to be higher on the return-to-contour site; however, the increase was significant onl for Mg levels in loblolly pine. One exception this trend was the significantly higher level c white pine foliar Ca on the flat bench site.

Table 2.--Effects of mining site and mycorrhizal treatment on first-year survival and growth of pine seedlings.[1]

Site and Mycorrhizal Treatments	White pine Survival	White pine Volume[2]	Virginia pine Survival	Virginia pine Volume	Loblolly pine Survival	Loblolly pine Volume
	(%)	(cm^3)	(%)	(cm^3)	(%)	(cm^3)
Mining Site						
Return-to-contour	94a	0.33a	97a	1.18a	98a	1.81a
Flat bench	92a	0.38a	99a	1.13a	97a	2.60a
Mycorrhizal Inoculation						
Control	91a	0.33a	98a	1.05a	97a	2.00a
Inoculated	94a	0.38a	97a	1.25a	98a	2.41b

[1] For each treatment and species, means within columns not followed by the same letter are significantly different at the 0.05 level.

[2] Volume = ht x diam^2

Inoculated loblolly pine seedlings had ignificantly higher foliar P levels than uninocu- ed seedlings, and inoculated white pine seedlings ad significantly increased levels of K. Other oliar nutrient levels for the three species were ot significantly affected by the ectomycorrhizal reatment. Concentrations for all of the nutrients nalyzed were above deficiency thresholds for both ninoculated and inoculated seedlings.

The herbicide treatment did not significantly ffect foliar nutrient levels, whereas fertilized eedlings had significantly lower levels of Ca and lg than unfertilized seedlings. Nutrient concen- rations were above deficiency thresholds for both reatments and controls.

DISCUSSION

None of the cultural treatments on the two sites significantly affected pine seedling survival. In fact, first year seedling survival for all three treatments on both sites was excellent (Tables 2 and 3). This was probably due to ample and well distributed rainfall during the growing season (figs. 1 and 2).

The benefit of P.t. inoculation is evident even though colonization with other native ectomycorrhizal fungi occurred. Loblolly pines, which showed the most substantial increase in seedling volume when inoculated, had the highest percentage of seedlings colonized with P.t. Berry (1982), Ruehle (1980), Walker _et al_. (1980), and Marx and Artman (1979) have reported similar growth improvement of P.t. inoculated seedlings on

Table 3.--Effects of fertilizer x herbicide interactions on seedling survival and growth.[1]

Fertilizer Treatment	Weed Control Treatment	White pine Survival	White pine Volume[2]	Virginia pine Survival	Virginia pine Volume	Loblolly pine Survival	Loblolly pine Volume
		(%)	(cm^3)	(%)	(cm^3)	(%)	(cm^3)
Control	Control	93a	0.29a	97a	0.46a	96a	0.74a
Control	Herbicide	95a	0.29a	99a	0.59a	96a	1.13a
Fertilized	Control	93a	0.32a	98a	1.02b	98a	2.25b
Fertilized	Herbicide	91a	0.52b	97a	2.54c	99a	4.71c

[1] Means within columns not followed by the same letter are significantly different at the 0.05 level.

[2] Volume - ht x diam^2

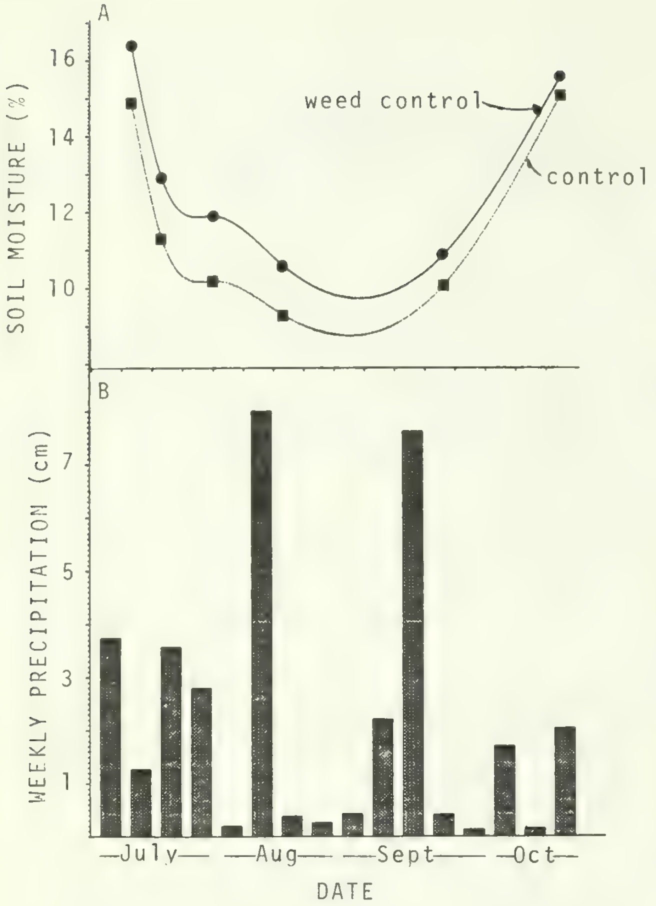


Figure 1.--Soil moisture and weekly precipitation on the return-to-contour site.

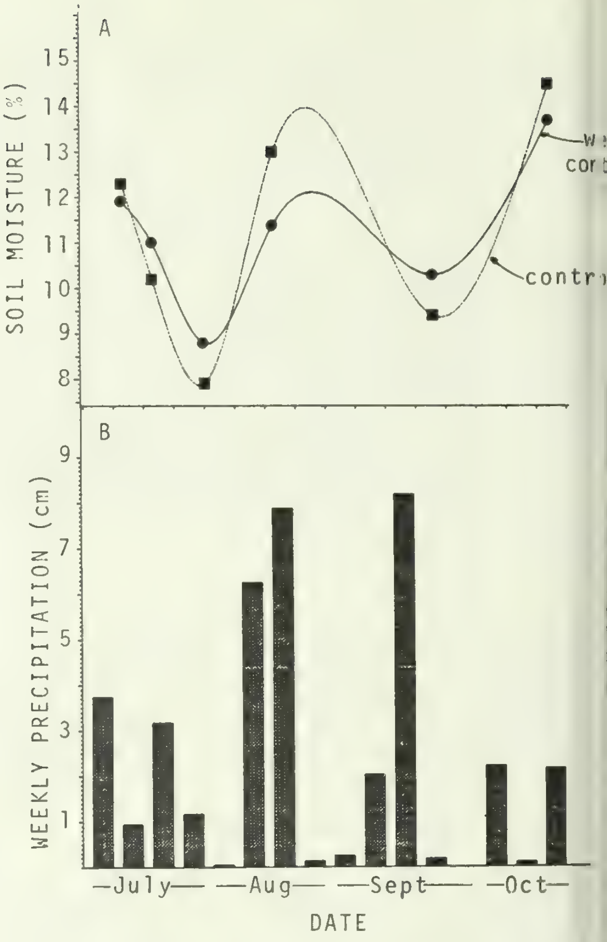


Figure 2.--Soil moisture and weekly precipitati on the flat bench site.

disturbed sites in the South. The relationship between P.t. colonization and increased seedling growth is apparent for all three species (Table 2).

Chemical weed control did not significantly increase seedling growth except when it was used in combination with fertilization. This may be attributed to the regular and abundant precipitation which occurred throughout the growing season on both sites. The amount of available moisture is usually the most important consideration in evaluating the effects of vegetative competition. Greaves et al. (1978) reported that heavy stands of grass may deplete moisture to the point where conifer seedlings must survive for several months each year with minimum available moisture.

Seedling growth of all three pine species was enhanced by fertilization. This agrees with the results of studies by Berry (1979) and Marx and Artman (1979) which showed the beneficial effects of slow-release fertilizer tablets on early loblolly pine growth on disturbed sites. When fertilizer and chemical weed control were combined, the most substantial growth stimulation occurr
The slow-release fertilizer tablets appear to
effective in providing seedlings with adequate
nutrients and at the same time not stimulating
unwanted herbaceous competition during the init
year of pine seedling establishment.

The ectomycorrhizal colonization data ind
that the relatively high natural colonization
seedlings on the bench site may help account fo
the lack of survival and growth differences in
comparison to the contour site which had more
favorable soil nutrient levels. The percentag
uninoculated and inoculated seedlings coloniz
with P.t. increased by the end of the first gr
season indicating that P.t. is probably one of
the native fungi on these two sites. Other
ectomycorrhizal fungi were not evident when se
root systems were examined prior to outplantin

Chemical weed control did not affect the
number of trees colonized with P.t. However,
did stimulate sufficient colonization by other
fungi to result in a significant increase in t

Table 4.--Effects of mining sites and cultural treatments on the percentage of trees colonized with mycorrhizal fungi[1]

Site and Cultural Treatments	Species	Trees Colonized	Trees Colonized with P.t.	Trees Colonized With Other Species
		- - - - - - - - - -	%	- - - - - - - - - -
Mining Site				
Return-to-contour	White pine	14a	1a	12a
Flat bench		58b	10b	49b
Return-to-contour	Virginia pine	56a	22a	36a
Flat bench		79b	17b	69b
Return-to-contour	Loblolly pine	60a	18a	42a
Flat bench		86b	25a	68a
Mycorrhizal Inoculation				
Control	White pine	30a	1a	29a
Inoculated		42b	10a	32a
Control	Virginia pine	60a	8a	58a
Inoculated		75b	31b	47b
Control	Loblolly pine	67a	6a	62a
Inoculated		79b	38b	47a
Weed Control				
Control	White pine	28a	7a	21a
Herbicide		44b	4a	40b
Control	Virginia pine	57a	22a	36a
Herbicide		78b	17a	69b
Control	Loblolly pine	69a	21a	54a
Herbicide		76b	22a	56a
Fertilizer				
Control	White pine	33a	4a	29a
Fertilized		39b	7a	32a
Control	Virginia pine	71a	22a	56a
Fertilized		64a	17a	50a
Control	Loblolly pine	75a	24a	56a
Fertilized		71a	19a	54a

---

[1] For each treatment and species, means within columns not followed by the same letter are significantly different at the 0.05 level.

Table 5.--Effects of mining site on pine needle nutrient levels[1].

Species and Mining Site	P	K	Ca	Mg
	- - - - - - - -	- - - - - - -	%	- - - - - - - -
White pine				
Return-to-contour	0.16a	0.36a	0.47a	0.29a
Flat bench	0.16a	0.34a	0.53b	0.28a
Virginia pine				
Return-to-contour	0.11a	0.42a	0.37a	0.24a
Flat bench	0.16b	0.52b	0.35a	0.21a
Loblolly pine				
Return-to-contour	0.12a	0.50a	0.33a	0.20a
Flat bench	0.18b	0.51a	0.32a	0.17b

---

[1] For each species, means within columns not followed by the same letter are significantly different at the 0.05 level.

ectomycorrhizal colonization. Glyphosate may have stimulated the ectomycorrhizal fungi by changing the soil microbiological balance which resulted in more favorable conditions for colonization.

Fertilization did not have a significant inhibitory effect on ectomycorrhizal colonization for any of the pine species. Contrary to a study by Marx et al. (1977), P.t. did improve growth of seedlings on fertilized plots.

None of the cultural treatments had very striking effects on foliar nutrient levels. Nutrient levels for all three treatments were above deficiency threshold levels indicating that P, K, Ca, and Mg were not limiting to seedling growth. The stimulatory effect of fertilization suggests that N may be limiting.

CONCLUSIONS

Abundant precipitation throughout the initial growing season probably accounted for the excellent first-year survival for all treatments and all species. It may have also accounted for the insignificant effect of chemical weed control on first year seedling growth.

Seedling growth was enhanced by P.t. inoculation, fertilization, and the fertilizer x herbicide interaction. Thus, the three cultural treatments were compatible in providing increased first-year growth for all three pine species.

LITERATURE CITED

Berry, C.R.
1982. Survival and growth of pine hybrid seedlings with Pisolithus on coal spoils in Alabama and Tennessee. J. Environ. Qual. 11:709-715.

Berry, C.R.
1979. Slit application of fertilizer tablets and sewage sludge improve initial growth of loblolly pine seedlings in the Tennessee Copper Basin. Reclam. Rev. 2:33-38.

Berry, C.R., and D.H. Marx.
1978. Effects of Pisolithus tinctorius ectomycorrhizae on growth of loblolly and Virginia pines in Tennessee copper basin. USDA For. Serv. Res. Note SE-264.

Greaves, R.D., R.K. Hermann, and B.D. Cleary.
1978. Site and problem analysis: ecological principals, p. 7-26. In B.D. Cleary, R.D. Greaves, and R.K. Hermann (ed.) Regenerating Oregon's Forests.

Haines, S.G.
1978. Site preparation and cultural treatments affect growth of planted Pinus taeda L. Tech. Rep. No. 60, N. Carolina St. Forest Fertiliz. Coop. Raleigh, NC.

Kelley, W.D., and D.B. South.
1980. Effects of herbicides on in vitro growth of mycorrhizae on pine (Pinus spp.). J. Wee Sci. 28:599-602.

Klingsman, G. and F. Ashton.
1975. Weed Science: Principles and Practices John Wiley and Sons, New York.

Marx, D.H. and J.D. Artman.
1979. Pisolithus tinctorius ectomycorrhizae improve survival and growth of pine seedling on acid coal spoils in Kentucky and Virginia Reclam. Rev. 2:23-31.

Marx, D.H. and J.P. Barnett.
1974. Mycorrhizae and containerized forest tr seedlings, p. 85-92. In R.W. Tinus, W.I. Stein, and W.E. Balmer (ed.) Proc. N. Amer. Containerized For. Tree Seedling Symp. Great Plains Agric. Council Publ. No. 68.

Marx, D.H. and W.C. Bryan.
1971. Influence of ectomycorrhizae on surviva and growth of asceptic seedlings of loblolly pine at hight temperatures. For. Sci. 17:37

Marx, D.H. and W.C. Bryan.
1975. Growth and ectomycorrhizal development loblolly pine seedlings in fumigated soil infested with the fungal symbiont Pisolithus tinctorius. For. Sci. 21:245-254.

Marx, D.H., W.C. Bryan, and C.E. Cordell.
1977. Survival and growth of pine seedlings with Pisolithus ectomycorrhizae after two years on reforestation sites in North Caroli and Florida. For. Sci. 23:363-373.

Marx, D.H., W.C. Bryan, and C.B. Davey.
1970. Influence of temperature on asceptic synthesis of ectomycorrhizae by Thelephora terrestris and Pisolithus tinctorius on loblolly pine. For. Sci. 16:424-431.

Mays, D.A. and G.W. Bengtson.
1978. Lime and fertilizer use in land reclama tion in humid regions, p. 297-328. In F.W. Schaller and P. Sutton (ed.) Proceed. Symp. Reclam. of Drastically Disturbed Lands. Wooster, Ohio.

Nelson, L.R., D. Gjerstad, S. Knowe, and G. Glov
1981a. Auburn University Silvicultural Herbic Coop. Annual Report.

Nelson, L.R., R.C. Peterson, L.L. Autry, S. Dudl and J.D. Watson.
1981b. Impacts of herbaceous weeds in young loblolly pine plantations. S. Journ. Appl. For. 5:153-158.

Ruehle, J.L.
1980. Growth of containerized loblolly pine w specific ectomycorrhizae after two years on amended borrow pit. Reclam. Rev. 3:95-101.

Schramm, J.E.
1966. Plant colonization studies on black was from anthracite mining in Pennsylvania. Ame Phil. Soc. Trans. 56:1-194.

Smith, J.R. and B.W. Ferry.
1979. The effects of simazine, applied for we control on the mycorrhizal development of Pinus seedlings. Ann. Bot. 43:93-99.

Walker, R.F., D.C. West, and S.B. McLaughlin.
1980. Pisolithus tinctorius ectomycorrhizae enhance the survival and growth of Pinus taeda a southern appalachian coal spoil. p. 29-33. J.P. Barnett (ed.) Proc. First Biennial Southe Silvic. Res. Conf.

CONTAINER-GROWN PINE SEEDLINGS ENABLE EXTENDED PLANTING SEASON ON SURFACE MINES IN EAST TENNESSEE [1]

Peter Moditz and Edward Buckner [2]

Abstract.--Eight groups of containerized loblolly and Virginia pine seedlings were grown in a greenhouse using methods developed by the North Carolina Division of Forestry. This enabled outplanting on surface mine sites at 3-4 week intervals from May through September. Survival after the first summer was over 90% for all planting dates. This indicates that containerized seedlings can be used to lengthen the short planting season typical on surface mines. Because of high overall survival, treatments intended to improve survival (mycorrhizal inoculation and disking) had no significant effects.

INTRODUCTION

Poor growing conditions for tree seedlings re characteristic of surface mines even when hey have been reclaimed to conditions that eet reclamation requirements. Unfavorable onditions for seedling survival and growth nclude low pH, acid-induced toxicities, utrient deficiencies, stoniness and poor soil tructure.

Frozen ground and seedling losses to frost eaving generally restrict the planting season n surface mines in East Tennessee to the short eriod from ground thaw in late winter to May 1. et, muddy conditions during this period often ake surface mines inaccessible or planting ifficult, further reducing the length of the lanting season especially at higher elevations. hese limitations commonly result in failure to omplete the tree planting program scheduled or a season.

Reclamation laws require the successful stablishment of trees, therefore planting elays and high seedling mortality can delay bond release for several years. Although pines are preferred on reclaimed sites because their evergreen habit offers better year-around site protection and they yield salable products, high seedling mortality discourages their use. Many operators have resorted to planting almost exclusively black locust (*Robinia pseudoacacia* L.) because compared to pines it is easier to plant and has higher survival. Black locust is, however, a short-lived tree that has little commercial value and offers little protection to surface mine sites during winter months.

Efforts to extend the planting season into late spring and early summer (when surface mines are generally more accessible) have met with only limited success. Woods, Hay and Irwin (1978) demonstrated that modification of the planting microsite and the use of containerized pine seedlings enables successful tree planting as late as mid-June on surface mine sites in this region. The high cost of this operation makes this practice prohibitive.

Other studies have shown that containerized pine seedlings can be successfully planted year-around (Barnett and McGilvray, 1981). In North Carolina a State-sponsored research program on containerized pine seedlings has evolved into a production facility that provides landowners with containerized seedlings for year-around planting. However, these studies have not been on adverse sites such as surface mines. Guldin (1982) claims that small, fast grown (12-16 weeks) containerized pine seedlings of high quality can be produced at a cost comparable to that of bare-root seedlings from nurseries.

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural esearch Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November -5, 1982.

[2] Graduate Research Assistant and Professor f Forestry, respectively, in the Department of orestry, Wildlife and Fisheries, The University f Tennessee, Knoxville, TN.

In a pilot study Buckner and Evans[3/] planted containerized seedlings on surface mines in East Tennessee as late as the first week of July and achieved over 80% survival. They found that where the planting situation is difficult and suitable times for planting are unpredictable, containerized seedlings can be held without damage for several weeks until planting conditions are most favorable to survival.

In addition to harsh site conditions, seedling survival and growth on reclaimed surface mines is further reduced by the required establishment of grasses and legumes shortly after final grading. This herbaceous material competes with planted seedlings commonly causing high mortality and reduced growth (Vogel, 1980). Seedling vigor on surface mines is further reduced by the absence of mycorrhizae-forming fungi. This symbiotic relationship is especially important on poor sites. Seedlings from commercial nurseries are only weakly mycorrhizal due to fumigation and high fertilization. Furthermore, fungal species that may be present are generally not the ones best suited for poor sites. Marx (1980) has shown that *Pisolithus tinctorius*, a mycorrhizae-forming fungus on pines, improves the survival and growth of seedlings planted on poor sites such as surface mines.

The objective of this study was to evaluate the use of small, fast-grown containerized pine seedlings for extending the planting season and improving survival on surface mines over that generally obtained using bare-root seedlings from a nursery. Mycorrhizal inoculation and disking to control herbaceous competition were included as test variables.

METHODS

Since containerized seedlings are not generally available for forest planting for this region, the initial phase of this study was the growing of containerized seedlings on a schedule that would produce "hardened" seedlings ready for out-planting at two-week intervals. Loblolly pine (*Pinus taeda* L.) is more widely planted on surface mines due to its availability and fast growth on most sites, while Virginia pine (*Pinus virginiana* L.) is the native yellow pine most commonly found on poor sites in this region. Both species were included in this study.

Treatments tested for improving the survival and growth of containerized seedlings were: 1) inoculation of the rooting medium with spores and mycelia of *Pisolithus tinctorius*, and 2) disking to reduce herbaceous competition.

Containerized Seedling Production

Methods developed by the North Carolina Division of Forestry for growing containerized pine seedlings were generally followed in the greenhouse phase of this study. Containers were Spencer Lamaire "root-trainers" (also known as book planters) with cavity dimensions of 3/4" x 3/4" x 4" having a volume of 2.25 cubic inches. Terra-lite redi-earth, a commercially available peat-vermiculite mix was used as a rooting mediu It has physical and chemical properties similar to those recommended by the N.C. Division of Forestry.

Pisolithus tinctorius spores were collected from fungal fruiting bodies in a loblolly pine plantation on a surface mine on the Cumberland Plateau of East Tennessee. Mycorrhizal roots we obtained from these trees, chopped in a blender, and mixed with the spores in a water slurry. Th mixture was thoroughly blended with the rooting medium used to germinate half of the seedlings o each species.

Loblolly and Virginia pine seeds from superior-tree orchards were stratified for 30 days prior to seeding. Seedlings were grown for outplantings at 3-4 week intervals from May 21, 1982 through September 26, 1982. Greenhouse germination of seeds for the first outplanting was started November 24, 1981; germination of seed lots for later plantings followed at 2-3 week intervals. Seedlings remained in the greenhouse for 11-16 weeks; the length of this initial grow period decreasing as the length of the day incre While in the greenhouse, seedlings were fertiliz weekly with a 20-20-20 fertilizer solution. Onc they reached "plantable" size (6-8"), they were moved outside for hardening which required from 5 to 9 weeks. During hardening, the seedlings were fertilized only to offset apparent nutrient deficiencies (primarily iron) and watered only when moisture stress became critical to plant survival.

Depending on weather conditions and day length following seed germination, the total growth period required to produce a containerize seedling ready for outplanting was from 17 to 25 weeks. Outplanted loblolly pine seedlings averaged 7.5" in height and Virginia pine averag 6.0".

Outplanting

During the summer of 1981, a reclaimed mine site on Brushy Mountain in Morgan County, Tennesse was selected for outplanting. The area had been commercially mined and reclaimed following Feder regulations. It had been graded, fertilized and seeded with a legume-grass mixture in the spring of 1981. The reclamation schedule called for th planting in the spring of 1982. An agreement was arranged with the landowner and the Tennessee

---

[3/] Personal communication with E. Buckner and R. Evans of the University of Tennessee.

Division of Surface Mine Reclamation to allow this study in lieu of conventional tree planting.

The study site was divided into three blocks, each containing eight treatment plots providing for a factorial arrangement testing the two species, each with and without both disking and mycorrhizal inoculation. The factorial split-plot arrangement enabled the disking of one half of the plots and kept inoculated trees separated from those not inoculated. Each plot was subdivided into eight subplots to which planting dates were randomly assigned. Each subplot contained 20 seedlings planted on the assigned date. Spacing was 3' x 3'.

The survival count on which this analysis is based was made on October 17, 1982, approximately three weeks after the last planting.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Seedling survival for all planting dates and treatment combinations was excellent. Survival was over 90% for all planting dates and treatment conditions (Table 1). Relatively low survival for the July 21 and August 10 plantings (91 and 92 percent, respectively) was largely the result of rabbit damage, without which these values would have been greater than 95 percent.

Although there was a statistically significant (.95 level) survival difference among planting dates, the excellent overall survival makes this of no practical significance. Neither disking nor mycorrhizal inoculation appeared to affect survival. Treatments intended to improve survival cannot provide significant gains when survival without treatment is so high. Unusually well-distributed summer rains appeared to account for this good performance. A more typical season would have greater water stress, possibly resulting in lower overall survival and more significant treatment effects.

Survival will again be recorded at the end of the first winter. After the second summer, both survival and growth measurements will be taken. Treatment effects may be detected at this time, depending on the severity of the winter cold or the summer droughts, or both.

CONCLUSIONS

This study indicates that containerized pine seedlings can be successfully planted throughout the growing season on surface mines in East Tennessee. High survival was obtained even without treatments designed to reduce water stress and improve seedling vigor. Further testing is needed to determine survival in more typical seasons when water stress is more severe.

Table 1.--Seedling survival (percent) according to planting date, species and treatments.

Planting Date	Survival
May 21	97
June 4	98
June 17	96
July 2	95
July 21	91
August 10	92
Sept. 9	98
Sept. 24	97
Species	
Loblolly Pine	97
Virginia Pine	94
Mycorrhizal Inoculation	
Inoculated	95
Control	95
Disking	
Disked	95
Control	96

LITERATURE CITED

Barnett, James P., and John M. McGilvray.
1981. Container planting systems for the south. U.S. Dep. Agric., For. Serv., Research Paper SO-167.

Guldin, Richard W.
1982. What does it cost to grow seedlings in containers? Tree Planters Notes Vol. 33, No.1, p. 34-37.

Harris, Grady.
1981. Bare root vs. containerized seedlings - a comparison of production problems and methods. Proc. Southern Containerized Forest Tree Seedling Conference, Savannah, GA. Aug. 25-27.

Marx, D. H.
1980. Role of mycorrhizae in forestation of surface mines. In Proc. Symposium Trees for Reclamation, Lexington, Kentucky, Oct. 27-29. Pg. 109-116.

Vogel, Willis G.
1980. Revegetating surface-mined lands with herbaceous and woody species together. In Symposium Trees for Relcamation in the Eastern U.S., Lexington, Kentucky, Oct. 27-29, pg. 117-126.

Woods, F. W., R. L. Hay and G. H. Irwin.
1978. Minisite preparation for reforestation of strip-mined lands. p. 306-310. In Surface Mining and Fish/Wildlife Needs in the Eastern U.S. Symp. Proc. USDI, Fish and Wildlife Serv. and W. VA. Univ.

REGENERATING RED OAK ON PRODUCTIVE SITES IN THE SOUTHERN APPALACHIANS: A RESEARCH APPROACH[1]

David L. Loftis[2]

Abstract.--Red oak (Quercus rubra L.) stems in a favorable competitive position are usually absent from recently created even-aged stands, even where red oak was a prominent component of the previous stand. Past research indicates that lack of adequate advance reproduction is the problem on productive sites. A quantitative approach to develop predictive models of regeneration development is outlined. The objectives of this research are to provide: (1) a method of predicting performance of advance reproduction after harvest, and (2) the silvicultural practices which will enhance the development of advance reproduction. Using this information, the manager would be able to maintain red oak as a component in these stands.

Regenerating upland oaks, particularly on good-to-excellent sites, is frequently cited as a management problem in eastern hardwood forests (McLintock 1979, Merritt 1979). In Southern Appalachian mixed hardwood forests, red oak (Quercus rubra) is not being successfully regenerated by even-aged methods (Beck 1970, McGee and Hooper 1975, Loftis 1979). Red oak occurs on good sites in mature stands dominated by red oak and other upland oaks, and on excellent sites where stands are dominated by deciduous species other than oaks. Its rapid diameter growth and high-quality wood make red oak commercially desirable (Fowells 1965). Many wildlife species benefit from its good, though somewhat infrequent, mast production (Beck 1977). We would like to maintain a component of red oak in regenerated stands.

My objectives in this paper are to (1) account for regeneration failures in earlier studies and suggest requirements for success, and (2) outline our approach to red oak regeneration research.

SOURCES OF REGENERATION

On good-to-excellent sites in the Southern Appalachians red oak often fails to compete afte clearcutting, even though it was a prominent component of the overstories of the previous stands and advance reproduction was present prior to clearcutting (McGee and Hooper 1970, 1975; Beck 1970). After clearcutting, stands are dominated by a mixture of desirable species of seedling an sprout origin and less desirable species mostly sprout origin. By age 15 to 20 the desirable species, particularly yellow-poplar (Liriodendro tulipifera L.), emerge as dominants. Red oak is rarely among the dominants.

To understand why these oak regeneration failures occur one must consider the sources of regeneration after clearcutting: (1) new seedlings that develop from seed in place or blown c carried in from adjacent stands, (2) seedlings that develop prior to the harvest cut (advance reproduction), and (3) sprouts from stumps and roots of cut trees (Beck 1980). Most hardwoods produce stump sprouts when cut. But Johnson (1977) has shown that for oaks the probability that a stump sprout will become a codominant or dominant component of the new stand decreases with increasing tree diameter. Figure 1 shows a typical diameter distribution for red oak in mature stands in the Southern Appalachians. This sample includes both mixed oak and mixed cove hardwood stands. There were a total of 76 red oak trees 1.5 inches dbh or larger in the sample, of which 58 were sawtimber trees. Applying Johnson's probability estimates to this

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Research Forester, USDA Forest Service, Southeastern Forest Experiment Station, Asheville, N.C.

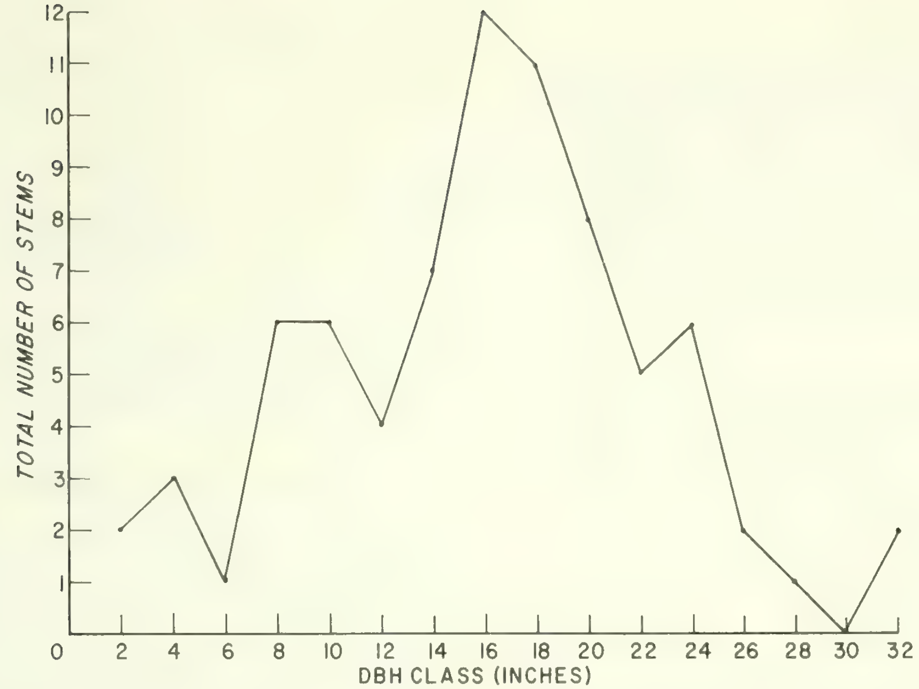


Figure 1.--Diameter distribution of red oak on plots in mature stands in northeast Georgia.

istribution, we find that if these stands were learcut, stump sprouts would contribute only 2 dominant or codominant stems to the new tands. If we want to have a red oak component n the new stands equal to that in the previous tands (i.e., 58 sawtimber trees), it appears hat stump sprouts will contribute far fewer rees than needed.

Several investigators have shown that newly stablished oak seedlings grow much too slowly to ompete successfully following clearcutting (Beck 970, Sander 1972, McQuilken 1975). Since new eedlings will not contribute dominant or codominant stems to the new stand, and stump sprouts ill contribute only a few, advance reproduction ill have to be the source of most dominant or odominant stems in the new stand. This opinion s widely held and has become a tenet of oak ilviculture (Sander 1971, Sander and Clark 1970, arvell and Tryon 1961, Merritt 1979).

PREHARVEST ATTRIBUTES OF ADVANCE REPRODUCTION

The presence of oak advance reproduction oes not automatically insure oak in the succeeding stand. In a Southern Appalachian clearcut, cGee and Hooper (1970, 1975) found an average of ,450 advance red oak stems per acre. However, his advance reproduction did not compete well fter harvest. Dominant and codominant red oaks ccur infrequently in the new stand.

The first major component of the red oak egeneration problem, then, is to determine what ttributes advance reproduction must have if it s to compete successfully after overstory removal. Sander (1971, 1972) showed that growth of oak advance reproduction after clearcutting was related to size of the advance reproduction prior to cutting. He tentatively concluded that advance reproduction must be at least 4.5 feet tall prior to harvest if the succeeding stand is to contain dominant and codominant oaks. Carvell (1967) found that the vigor of the oak advance reproduction (as measured by the degree of apical dominance expressed) was an important determinant of its growth after release.

To address this first problem component I have established a study with two objectives: (1) to examine the relationships between preharvest attributes of advance reproduction and its postharvest performance, and (2) to provide useful silvicultural guidelines based on these relationships. Beginning in 1977 I installed a series of plots in mature hardwood stands growing on sites ranging from 65 to 90 site index for oak at 50 years. The plots contained red oak advance reproduction of varying sizes. The advance red oak stems were individually mapped and tagged. Height, basal diameter, and a subjective assessment of apical dominance were recorded for each stem. All plots received a commercial clearcut, and undesirable and unmerchantable stems were treated in one of two ways. On six plots these stems were felled after the harvest cut. On five plots, they were injected with herbicides prior to harvest. Our studies have shown that the character of the young stand will be different in these two treatments. After postharvest felling, sprouts from undesirable species will dominate the early life of the stand. With preharvest herbicide treatment advance reproduction and new seedlings will dominate (Loftis 1978).

Using standard regression methods, I can relate postharvest growth of individual red oak stems to their preharvest size and apical dominance over a range of site indices. But growth, per se, does not give the manager the information he needs. By using the analytical technique applied by Johnson (1977) in his stump sprouting studies, I can provide estimates of the probability that a stem with given preharvest attributes will be a dominant or codominant stem at some time after the harvest cut.

This technique is described in some recent statistics texts (e.g., Neter and Wasserman 1974), and a computer routine to perform the analysis has been developed by Hamilton (1974). The dependent variable is a binary response with a value of 1 if the tree is dominant or codominant and 0 if not. This dependent variable is regressed, using weighted least squares, against the independent variables in a logistic model (fig. 2). The expected value of Y, E(Y), is equal to a probability (p) that Y=1.

The utility of this approach is that it gives the manager a predictive tool. For example, if size is the only important independent variable, an inventory of advance oak reproduction by size classes allows the manager to predict the number of dominant and codominant oak stems in the new stand from an immediate harvest:

$$N = \sum_{i=1}^{r} n_i p_i$$

where: N = predicted number of dominant and codominant red oak stems;

n_i = number of red oak stems in the i^{th} size class;

p_i = probability that a stem in the i^{th} size class will become dominant or codominant.

We can also examine the differences between the two methods of treating unmerchantable stems by testing for differences in our estimates of the parameters of the logistic model (fig. 3).

PROVIDING ADVANCE REPRODUCTION

If the predicted result is acceptable--i.e the advance reproduction present will provide t desired number of dominant and codominant stems the manager can proceed with the harvest. However, if the predicted result is not acceptable then one is faced with the second major compone of the problem: how to develop the necessary advance reproduction when it is absent.

Our experience in regeneration studies suggests that while small advance reproduction is commonly found in mature stands, large advance reproduction is rarely present. Moreover, the best data available from the Southern Appalachi suggests that large advance reproduction will n develop in the absence of disturbance. Beck's

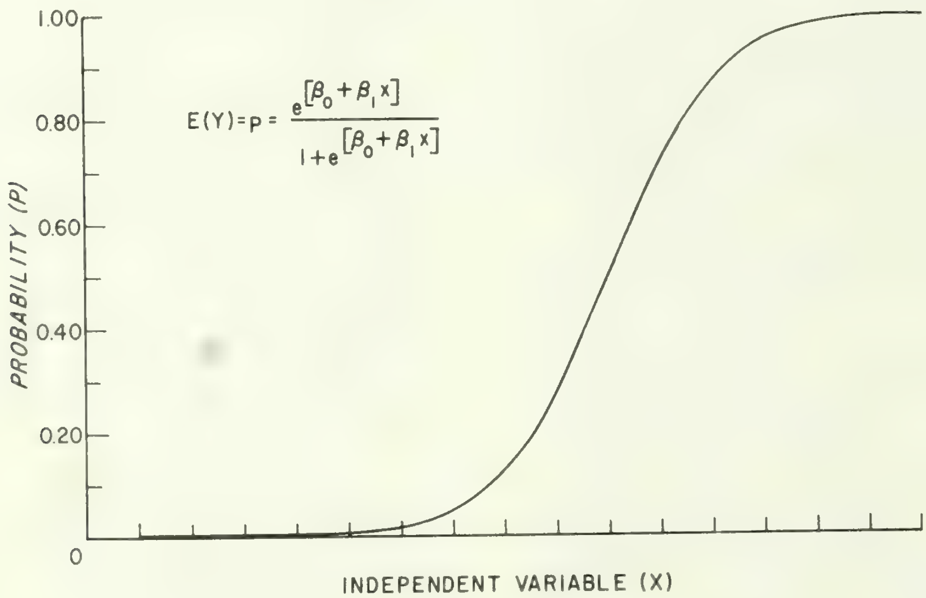


Figure 2.--The logistic function.

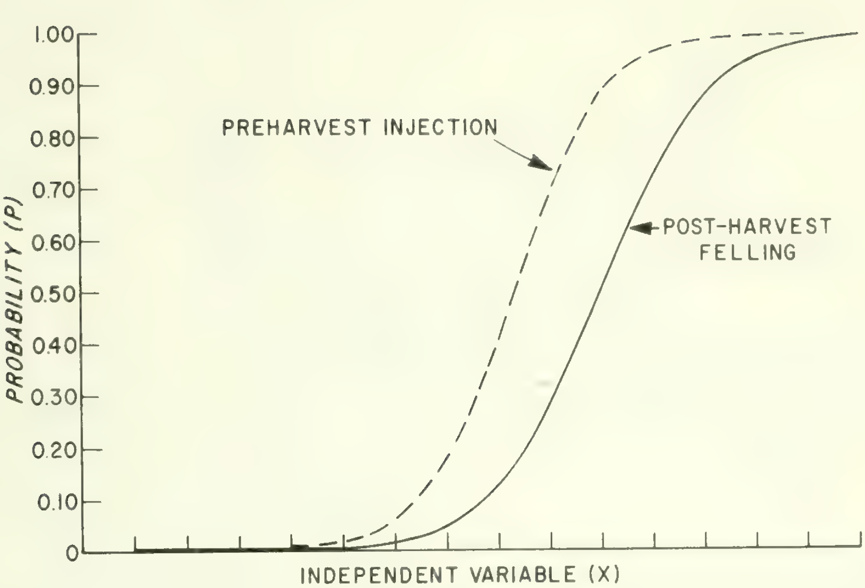


Figure 3.--Hypothesized effect of two methods of treating unmerchantable stems on probability that red oak stems will become dominant or codominant.

udy of red oak seedlings (1970) included a sam-e of seedlings of the same age which were ocated in undisturbed stands. A graph of survi-al over time (fig. 4) shows that mortality was igh, and after 12 years survival was less than) percent. A negative exponential, a common opulation decay function, fits the data quite ell:

$$S_t = S_o e^{-rt}$$

where: S_t = survival of seedlings at t years after establishment

S_o = survival at 0 years, i.e., 100 percent

e = the base of the natural logarithms

r = the rate parameter to be estimated

t = time, in years, after establishment.

Perhaps more important is the graph of height attained over time in these undisturbed stands (fig. 5). The curve might be described by a power function:

$$h_t = \beta_0 t^{\beta_1}$$

where: h_t = mean height of seedlings at t years after establishment

β_0, β_1 = parameters to be estimated

t = time, in years, after establishment.

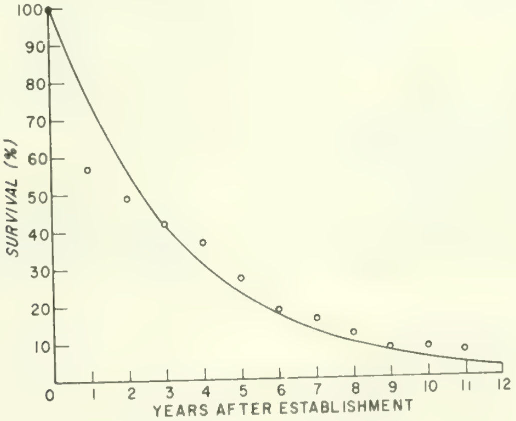


Figure 4.--Survival curve for a cohort of red oak seedlings growing under undisturbed conditions.

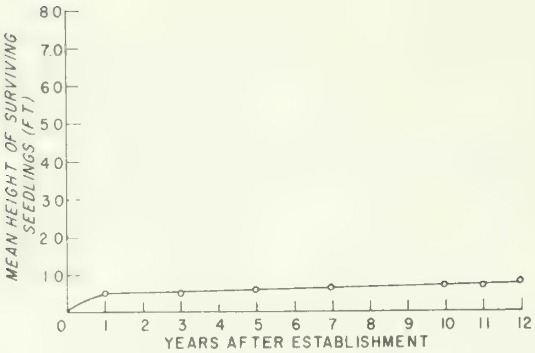


Figure 5.--Mean height attained over time by a cohort of red oak seedlings growing under undisturbed conditions.

It appears that leaving stands undisturbed will not result in large advance reproduction being present.

The idea that some action must be taken prior to the end of the rotation to provide advance reproduction is the central concept of the shelterwood regeneration method (Smith 1962). We have made a number of shelterwood cuts on the Bent Creek Experimental Forest near Asheville, North Carolina, with the objective of regenerating oaks. Representative of these cuts is one made on a good site (oak S.I.=84 feet) which supported a mature stand of mixed oak and yellow-poplar. The initial cut removed an average of 50 square feet of basal area per acre in merchantable stems. In addition, 22 square feet of basal area per acre were removed in nonmerchantable, subcanopy stems. The residual stand contained 50 square feet of basal area per acre. There were 2,400 stems per acre of advance red oak reproduction, and 5 years after the initial cut 423 of them had grown to a height of at least 4.5 feet. However, the degree of disturbance in this cut was sufficient to allow associated species, even the most intolerant, to grow as well:

	Stems/acre > 4.5 ft. after 5 years	
Species	Number/acre	Percent
Yellow-poplar	1,720	30
Red oak	423	7
Black cherry	436	8
Other oaks	251	4
Birch	106	2
Other desirables	211	4
Dogwood	940	16
Red maple	606	11
Locust	510	9
Sourwood	110	2
Other undesirables	417	7

Yellow-poplar seedlings, along with sprouts from the tolerant subcanopy stems, dominated the regeneration after 5 years. Thus, even though red oak advance regeneration responded to basal area reduction, most stems were overtopped by stems of other species.

To favor red oak in regeneration, a shelterwood method should provide for development of large red oak advance reproduction without simultaneously allowing associated species to gain an advantage over the oaks. This goal implies (a) a higher residual overwood basal area to prevent yellow-poplar from becoming established and growing, and (b) eliminating the tolerant subcanopy stems with herbicides to prevent sprouting.

The survival and growth curves from Beck's data could be modified to reflect a basal area reduction (figs. 6 and 7). The rate parameter (r) in the negative exponential curve for survival and the parameters β_0 and β_1 in the curve of growth over time can be estimated as functions of residual basal area:

$$S_t = S_o e^{-r't}$$

where: $r' = f(BA)$

and $h_t = \beta_0' t^{\beta_1'}$

where: $\beta_0', \beta_1' = g(BA)$.

Studies to examine these relationships have been installed in western North Carolina and northeast Georgia. Existing advance oak reproduction on 43 plots has been mapped and tagged. Basal are reductions of 0 to 40 percent of initial basal are (including all stems > 0.5 inches d.b.h.) have bee accomplished by stem injection and, in some cases, cutting. In each case, beginning with the smalles diameter classes, untagged stems in successively larger diameter classes were injected until the basal area target for a plot was met.

By measuring survival and growth of these tagged seedlings over time, the relationships between basal area reduction and survival and growth can be established.

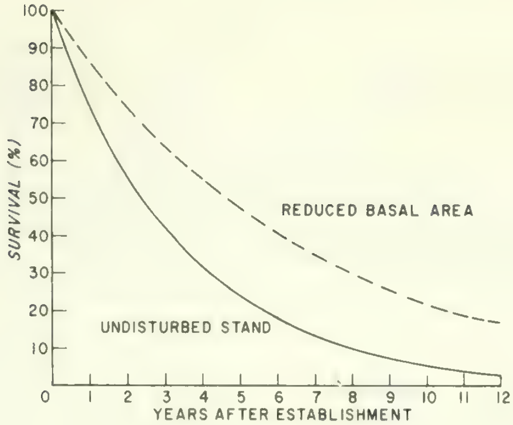


Figure 6.--Hypothesized survival response to a reduction in basal area.

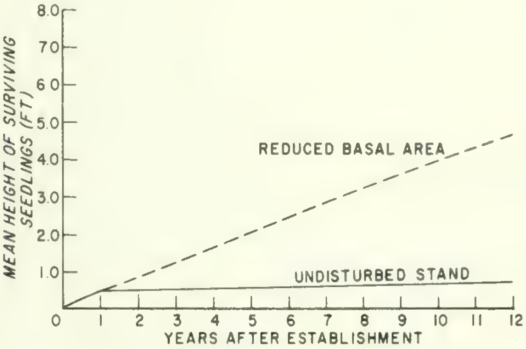


Figure 7.--Hypothesized height response to a reduction in basal area.

SUBCANOPY TREATMENT

We have only recently begun to appreciate how much growing space is occupied by small-diameter stems in mature stands. The majority of these stems, particularly the ones below 7 inches d.b.h., are of tolerant, noncommercial species, and occupy a subcanopy position. Data from my plots in northeast Georgia are typical:

Diameter class	Number of stems	Cumulative BA
-inches-	-per acre-	-% of total-
1-4	446	9.2
5	23	11.4
6	15	13.8
7	13	16.8
8	15	21.2
9	11	25.9
10	11	30.9

The proportion of total stand basal area in these stems is substantial. They contribute to the dense shade under mature stands, preventing growth of advance reproduction of desirable species. If they are cut in the initial cut of a shelterwood or after a commercial clearcut, they sprout vigorously, offering severe competition to desirable species. Eliminating these stems with herbicide injection as part of the initial shelterwood operation seems logical. This treatment removes a source of competition both before and after final overstory removal.

SUMMARY

On good sites in the Southern Appalachians, red oak is not being regenerated by even-aged methods. Stump sprouts and large advance reproduction, the sources for red oak regeneration, are usually absent at the time of clearcutting. Small diameter red oak stems, the best source of stump sprouts, occur infrequently in mature stands. And red oak advance reproduction, when present, is usually too small to compete successfully after harvest.

Studies are now in place to provide predictive models of the performance of red oak advance reproduction after clearcutting, and to develop the silvicultural practices necessary to provide large advance reproduction. The results from these studies should provide managers the guidelines necessary to regenerate red oak on productive sites in the Southern Appalachians.

LITERATURE CITED

Beck, D. E.
1970. Effect of competition on survival and height growth of red oak seedlings. USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. SE-56, 7 p.

Beck, D. E.
1977. Twelve-year acorn yield in Southern Appalachian oaks. USDA For. Serv. Res. Note SE-244, 8 p.

Beck, D. E.
1980. Natural regeneration of southern hardwoods. In Regenerating the southern forest. Proc. 10th For. and Wildl. Forum, p. 132-142. Va. Polytechnic Inst. and State Univ., Blacksburg, Va.

Carvell, K. L.
1967. The response of understory oak seedlings to release after partial cutting. W. Va. Agric. Exp. Stn. Bull. 553, 19 p.

Carvell, K. L., and E. H. Tryon.
1961. The effect of environmental factors on the abundance of oak regeneration beneath mature oak stands. For. Sci. 7:98-105.

Fowells, H. A.
1965. Silvics of forest trees of the United States. USDA For. Serv. Agric. Handb. 271, 762 p.

Hamilton, D. A., Jr.
1974. Event probabilities estimated by regression. USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. INT-152, 18 p.

Johnson, P. S.
1977. Predicting oak stump sprouting and sprout development in the Missouri Ozarks. USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. NC-149, 11 p.

Loftis, D. L.
1978. Preharvest herbicide control of undesirable vegetation in Southern Appalachian hardwoods. South. J. Appl. For. 2(2):51-54.

Loftis, D. L.
1979. Partial cuts to regenerate upland hardwoods in the southeast. In The shelterwood regeneration method. Proc. Natl. Silvic. Workshop, p. 92-100. USDA For. Serv., Washington, D.C. (Charleston, SC, Sept. 1979.)

McGee, C. E., and R. M. Hooper.
1970. Regeneration after clearcutting in the Southern Appalachians. USDA For. Serv. Res Pap. SE-70, 12 p.

McGee, C. E., and R. M. Hooper.
1975. Regeneration trends after clearcutting of an Appalachian hardwood stand. USDA For Serv. Res. Note SE-227, 4 p.

McLintock, T. F.
1979. Research priorities for eastern hardwoods. Hardwood Res. Counc., 70 p.

McQuilken, R. A.
1975. Growth of four types of white oak repro duction after clearcutting in the Missouri Ozarks. USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. NC-116, 5 p.

Merritt, C.
1979. An overview of oak regeneration problem In Regenerating oaks in upland hardwood forests. Proc. 1979 J.S. Wright For. Conf., Purdue Univ. (Feb. 1979).

Meter, J., and W. Wasseman.
1974. Applied linear statistical models. Richard D. Irwon, Inc., Homewood, Il., 842 p

Sander, I. L.
1971. Height growth of new oak sprouts depend on size of advance reproduction. J. For. 69 809-811.

Sander, I. L.
1972. Size of oak advance reproduction: key t growth following harvest cutting. USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. NC-79, 6 p.

Sander, I. L., and F. B. Clark.
1971. Reproduction of upland hardwood forests in the central states. USDA Agric. Handb. 405, 25 p.

Smith, D. M.
1962. The practice of silviculture. John Wil and Sons, Inc., New York, 578 p.

SPECIES AND SITE RELATIONSHIPS AMONG OAK REGENERATION TYPES AFTER CLEARCUTTING IN THE VIRGINIA RIDGE AND VALLEY[1/]

M. S. Ross, T. L. Sharik, and D. Wm. Smith[2/]

Abstract.--The development of oak stems of advance regeneration and stump sprout origin was studied for three years following clearcutting and whole tree removal in southwestern Virginia. Chestnut oak stumps sprouted more frequently and supported taller sprouts than scarlet or black oak stumps. However, shoot growth of advance regeneration did not differ among the three oak species. Taller stump sprouts were associated with more productive sites (as indicated by site index, topographic variables, and vegetation composition). Height growth of oak advance regeneration was also greater on higher quality sites. Both stump size and pre-harvest advance regeneration size had a positive influence on subsequent height growth, although large stumps sprouted more infrequently. Density of well-established oak stems of advance regeneration origin three years after harvest was greatest in stands of site index 55-65, and fell off on sites of higher and lower quality.

INTRODUCTION

In deeply dissected terrain characteristic of steep slopes in the Ridge and Valley Province of southwestern Virginia, site index of upland oaks may change from $SI_{50}40$ to $SI_{50}70$ or more within a few hundred feet. Abrupt shifts in site quality are accompanied by equally dramatic changes in species composition in the overstory and understory of 60- to 80-year-old second-growth hardwood/mixed hardwood-pine forests. If intensive harvesting were to occur across this range of sites, differences in growth potential and initial vegetation should be manifested in some way during the early stages of stand regeneration.

On the midslope positions of the generally northeast-southwest-trending ridges, especially on the drier southeast faces, chestnut oak (Quercus prinus L.), scarlet oak (Q. coccinea Muenchh.), and black oak (Q. velutina Lam.) are found in varying proportions on most sites. Because of the dominance and ubiquity of these species in typical second-growth stands, and because of the recent concern with oak regeneration (Holt and Fisher, eds., 1979), the authors investigated the early response of these three species to whole-tree removal. Oak regeneration was studied against the mosaic of growth potential and species composition typical of the region, and the development of oak species was put in context of stand development as a whole.

STUDY AREA

The study area is located at about 760 m elevation on the southeast face of Potts Mountain in Craig County, Virginia. Parent materials are nutrient-poor sandstones and shales, which form coarse-textured, shallow, strongly leached soils. Slopes are generally 30-40 percent. Annual precipitation averages 965 mm, and is evenly distributed through the year. The frost-free season is about 160 days.

Within the study area, oaks were most prominent in the canopies of stands on the broad side slopes, but were subordinate to pitch pine (Pinus rigida Mill.) on south-facing spur ridges, and less abundant than red maple (Acer rubrum L.) in the shallow coves. This range of sites was

---

1/ Paper presented at Second Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982. Financial support for this research was provided by the Virginia Agricultural Foundation, U.S. Forest Service, and McIntire-Stennis Funds.

2/ Research Assistant, Assistant Professor of Forest Soils and Silviculture, and Research Associate, Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University, Blacksburg, Virginia 24061.

divided into four types on the basis of vegetation composition, as follows: (1) mixed hardwood, with overstory consisting of a variety of relatively mesic species, including red maple, yellow-poplar (*Liridondron tulipifera* L.) and northern red oak (*Quercus rubra* L.), shrub stratum poorly developed, and herb layer well-developed and diverse, but largely devoid of ericads; (2) mixed oak, with overstory predominantly oak, and ericaceous understory discontinuous; (3) mixed oak-pine, characterized by an overstory mostly of oaks, but with scattered pine, and a well developed shrub component dominated by mountain laurel (*Kalmia latifolia* L.), huckleberry (*Gaylussacia baccata* (Wang) K. Koch) and blueberries (*Vaccinium* spp.); and (4) mixed pine, with overstory dominated by pines, oaks in a slightly subordinate position, and a heavy shrub layer predominantly of ericads and bear oak (*Quercus ilicifolia* Wang.) (McEvoy et al. 1980).

The classification of stands according to vegetation composition produced groups which also differed in terms of site productivity. When three separate indices of productivity were applied to the four vegetation types, a gradient of increasing growth potential was evident, in the order mixed pine, mixed oak-pine, mixed oak, and mixed hardwood (Table 1). The productivity gradient was closely associated with soil moisture availability during the 1981 growing season (Meiners 1982).

METHODS

Stump Sprout Development

Eight 1600 m^2 plots and two smaller plots (800 m^2 and 400 m^2) were established in the fall of 1977 and the spring of 1978. The plots we situated within three non-contiguous manageme units totaling 61 ha and extending over 5.3 k distance. One plot was representative of the mixed hardwood vegetation type, while mixed o mixed oak-pine, and mixed pine vegetation typ were each represented by three plots. At the time of plot establishment, all oak stems grea than 5 m in height were identified, tagged at base, and located on a coordinate grid. A tot of 778 oak stems were tagged at this time.

Between August 1978 and March 1979, all s greater than 1.5 m in height were cut back to within 15 cm of ground level, and removed fro plots. Removal was by commercial whole-tree h vesting with a cable logging system. Shortly after each unit was cleared, inside bark diame was determined to the nearest centimeter for e tagged oak.

The schedule of cutting was such that all plots except one were cut during the dormant s Oak stumps in that area (harvested on August 1 resprouted in September and October, but all s were killed by frost before winter.

In March 1982, following the third growin season after harvest, each tagged stump was assessed for the presence of living sprouts. height of the tallest sprout was also recorded a subsample of 305 sprouting stumps. Stump selection was made using a stratified random s pling scheme described below in conjunction wi the development of the stands as a whole.

Table 1.--Productivity indices for the four vegetation types included in the study (Potts Mountain, Craig County, VA) (Ross et al. 1982).

Vegetation Type	Number of Stands Represented	Forest Productivity Index[1]	Site Index[2]	Basal Area Increment/Tree[3]
				(cm^2)
Mixed pine	3	5.3	37	46
Mixed oak-pine	1	8.0	49	44
Mixed oak	3	9.3	59	65
Mixed hardwood	1	14.0	71	67

1/ Based on aspect, slope percent and slope position. High value indicates high potential productivity (Wathen 1977).

2/ Based on total height for upland oaks at age 50 (Olson 1959).

3/ During 1969-1979 period.

Advance Regeneration Development

After the harvesting operation was completed in each of the ten study areas, the plots were divided into 10 x 10 m cells. At the four corners of each cell, each oak advance regeneration stem within one or two 1 m^2 quadrats (depending on the density of oak individuals in the plot) was mapped and tagged, and height was measured to the nearest centimeter. A total of 352 stems were tallied in this manner. Means and ranges presented for size or growth of oak advance regeneration are based on the 352 randomly sampled individuals. Because individuals taller than 30 cm were not well represented in the small quadrats. the two largest advance regeneration stems greater than 30 cm in height in each cell were also sampled. Where the effects of original stem size are considered, the additional large individuals are included, and are thus based on a total sample of 518 oak stems.

In October 1980 and November 1981, after the second and third growing seasons, advance regeneration height was remeasured. Stems were classified into one of three categories: dead, resprout (died back and resprouted from within 10 cm of stem base), and intact (maintained expansion of original leader).

Stand Structure Three Years After Harvest

In March 1982, species and height were recorded for each stem taller than 1 m within one or two 5 x 5 m subplots per 10 x 10 m cell. The number of subplots sampled in each cell was based on the variance in stem density; only one subplot per cell was required in the relatively uniform mixed oak plots, while two subplots per cell were needed to obtain stable estimates of density in the other vegetation types.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Stump Sprout Development

The percent of stumps that produced sprouts was generally higher for chestnut oak than its two oak associates (Figure 1). Over the entire study area, chestnut oak sprouting was 72%, scarlet oak 65%, and black oak 48%. The data illustrated in Figure 1 also indicates that sprouting frequency for all three species was higher in the drier mixed pine and mixed oak-pine vegetation types than on the higher quality sites. However, because a maximum of three replicates of each vegetation type was sampled, and because of the confounding effects of stump size, no statistical certainty could be attached to this apparent trend.

Large chestnut oak stumps were less likely to produce sprouts than stumps 20 cm basal diameter or less (Table 2). However, sprouts produced by stumps 20-30 cm in diameter grew faster in height than sprouts of smaller stumps. If maximization of sprout frequency and vigor were desired, harvest when most stems were in the 10-30 cm range would probably be best.

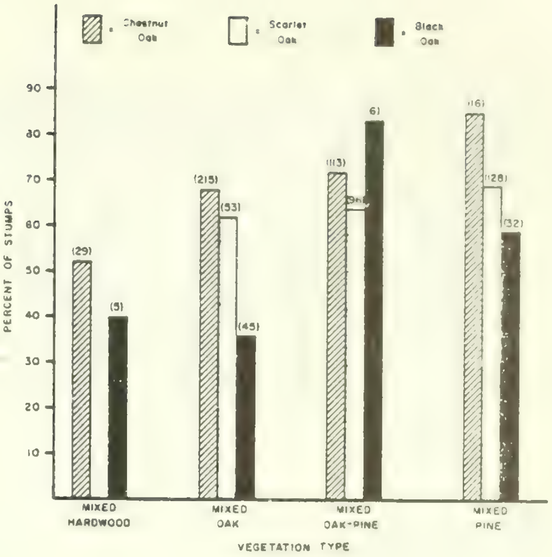


Figure 1.--Percent of stumps which supported at least one sprout three years after harvest on Potts Mountain, Craig County, VA. Numbers in parentheses are number of stumps sampled.

In addition to being the most dependable sprout producer, chestnut oak produced taller sprouts than scarlet or black oak (fig. 2). Averaged over all vegetation types, chestnut oak sprouts were 2.3 m tall, scarlet oak 1.7 m, and black oak 1.7 m in height. The effect of site quality is less consistent than the effect of species, with the mixed oak-pine vegetation type containing significantly shorter sprouts ($\propto = .05$) for all

Table 2.--Frequency of sprouting and height of tallest sprout of four size classes of chestnut oak stumps on Potts Mountain, Craig County, VA.

Stump Diameter	Sprouting Frequency	Sprout Height
(cm)	(%)	(m)
0 - 10	77	2.0a[1/]
11 - 20	79	2.4b
21 - 30	71	2.7c
31 - 40	50	2.6bc

[1/] Heights followed by different letters differ at alpha = .05.

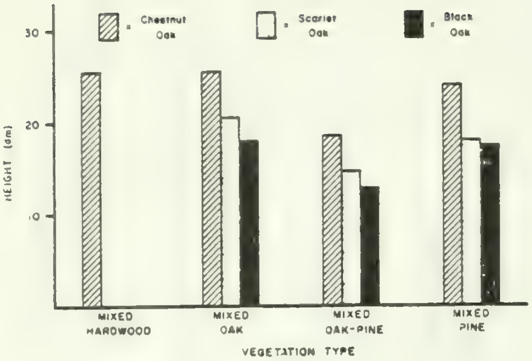


Figure 2.--Mean height for tallest sprout per stump three years after harvest on Potts Mountain, Craig County, VA.

three species than each of the other types, including the lower quality mixed pine type. Once the developing stands reach full site occupancy, available resources are expected to become more limiting, and the effect of site quality to become more firmly established. Continuing long-term study of these areas should help to clarify the point.

Advance Regeneration Development

By the end of the third growing season after harvest, approximately 50 percent of all advance regeneration stems had either died (15 percent) or died back and resprouted (35 percent) (fig. 3). These proportions varied little among species or among vegetation types.

The three oak species also did not differ in height growth, which averaged 20-30 cm over the three-year period (fig. 4). Site quality had a significant effect on chestnut oak height growth, with growth averaging 29 cm and 18 cm on medium and poor quality sites, respectively (fig. 4).

Because of the effect of original stem size on subsequent elongation, average figures for height growth are somewhat misleading. Stems 20 cm or less at the time of harvest grew less than 20 cm over the three-year study period, while larger stems averaged about 60 cm height growth (fig. 5). Stem height three years after harvest was similar for resprout and intact stems, provided they were comparable in height prior to harvest (fig. 5). The idea of a threshold size below which oak advance regeneration will not contribute to the developing forest canopy has been suggested (Sander 1972; Sander et al. 1976). However, the present results indicate that, on poor and medium quality sites typical of the Ridge and Valley, advance regeneration as small as 20-30 cm has considerable potential for height growth.

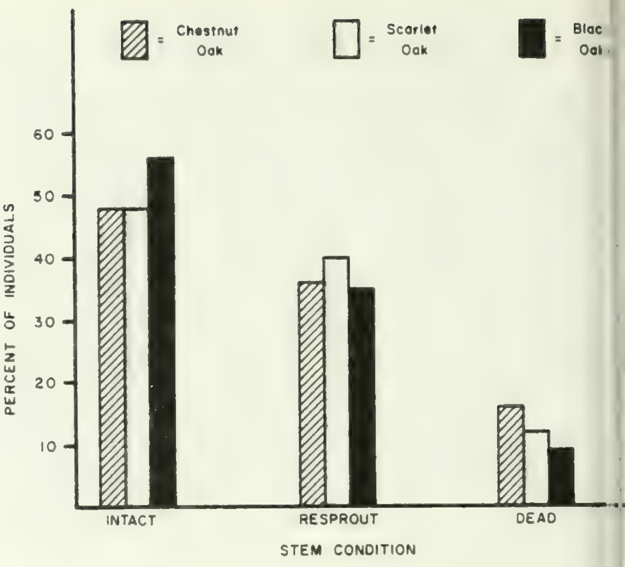


Figure 3.--Condition of oak advance regeneratio three years after overstory removal (Potts Mountain, Craig Co., VA). Tops of "resprout" stems had died back and sprouted from within 10 cm of stem base; "intact" stems maintained expansion of original top (n = 268, 52, and 3 for chestnut, scarlet, and black oak, respectively).

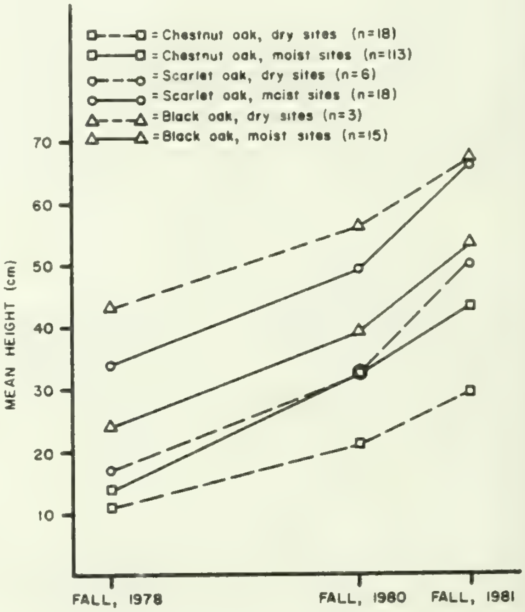


Figure 4.--Height development of intact advance regeneration during first three years after harvest on Potts Mountain, Craig County, VA.

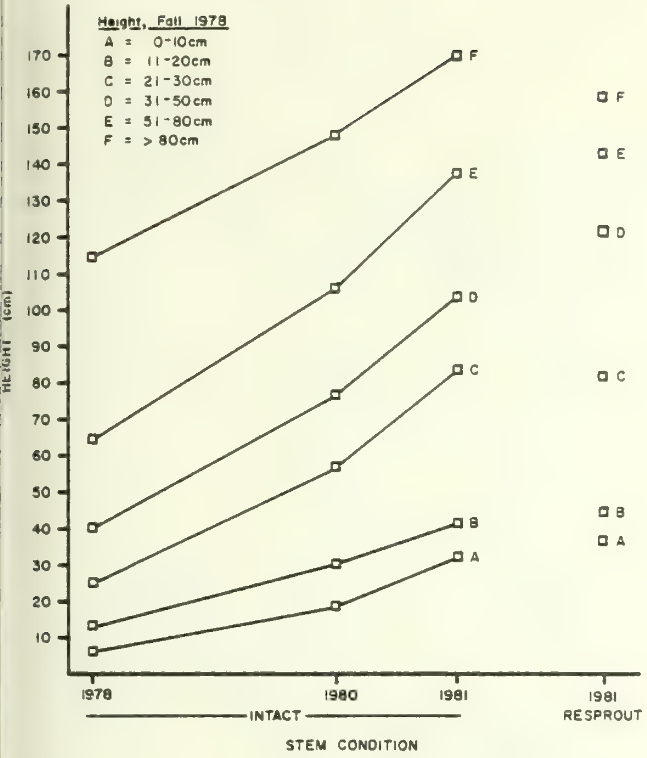


Figure 5.--Height development of six size classes of oak advance regeneration on Potts Mountain, Craig County, VA. Data for chestnut, scarlet and black oak are combined (n = 501).

Stand Structure Three Years After Harvest

The profile diagrams (fig. 6) illustrate the two-tiered nature of the young stands, and the accelerated rate of stand development with increasing site quality. Again, the unexpectedly slow development of the mixed oak-pine areas is evident. The authors anticipate that the fast-developing lower stratum of sassafras, blackgum, and dogwood on medium quality sites will act as "trainers" for the dominant sprouts, and lead to better stem form. In contrast, sprout clumps on poor sites, with little competition from the side, will probably expand to dominate large areas, and eventually give the stand a "wolfy", understocked appearance. Based on annual sampling of the 0-1 m height stratum (not shown in figure 6), it is expected that narrow-crowned pines will continue to seed in from adjacent stands, and occupy some of the interstices among the sprouts. In the mixed oak vegetation type, a considerable number of advance regeneration-origin oaks appear to be vigorous and well-positioned enough to reach the forest canopy. In the mixed hardwood stands, where pre-harvest oak advance regeneration was numerous but extremely small in stature, the emergence of some yellow-poplar and blackgum stems from their current subordinate positions to occupy gaps in the canopy is expected.

CONCLUSIONS

After witnessing oak development and stand development in the Virginia Ridge and Valley over the past four years, we regard the problems and prospects of successful oak regeneration to be three-parted. On exposed slopes and ridges, and steep south and southwest aspects (SI$_{50}$50 and less) oak advance regeneration stems are not plentiful, either because of competition from ericaceous shrubs, poor seedbed conditions, animal predation, or a host of other possibilities. The problem for oak silviculturists on such sites is seedling establishment prior to harvest, with little regard for attaining great seedling size. On backslopes of east and southeast aspect (SI$_{50}$50-65), adequate oak advance regeneration of sufficient stature is generally present to produce full stocking of oak early in stand development. These sites pose few oak regeneration problems. In cove and toe-slope positions, and possibly on north and northeast aspects (SI$_{50}$70 and greater), oak advance regeneration may be numerous if an adequate seed source exists. However, these individuals tend to be very small, and will be at a disadvantage in the extremely competitive post-harvest environment on good sites. The silvicultural challenge on good sites is to nurture seedlings of considerable size prior to harvest. Our results indicate that oak advance regeneration stems a half-meter or so in height have a reasonable chance of survival; however, their long-term competitiveness and ability to eventually emerge as dominants in the stand is yet unknown. In order to integrate the site-specific nature of oak regeneration problems, future studies should include some consideration of variability among sites.

LITERATURE CITED

Holt, H.A. and B.C. Fisher, eds.
1979. Proceedings: regenerating oaks in upland hardwood stands. The 1979 John S. Wright Forestry Conference. Purdue University. 132 p.
McEvoy, T.J., T.L. Sharik, and D. Wm. Smith.
1980. Vegetative structure of an Appalachian oak forest in southwestern Virginia. Am. Mid. Nat. 103(1):96-105.
Meiners, T.M.
1982. Soil and plant water stress in an Appalachian oak forest: its relationship to topography and forest site quality. Unpublished Master's thesis, Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University, Blacksburg, VA. 82 p.
Olson, D.F. Jr.
1959. Site index curves for upland oak in the Southeast. USDA For. Ser. Res. Note SE-125. 2 p.
Ross, M.S., T.L. Sharik and D. Wm. Smith.
1982. Age-structure relationships of tree species in an Appalachian oak forest in southwest Virginia. Bull. Torr. Bot. Club. 109:287-298.
Sander, I.L.
1972. Size of oak advance reproduction: key to growth following harvest cutting. USDA For. Ser. Res. Paper NC-79. 6 p.

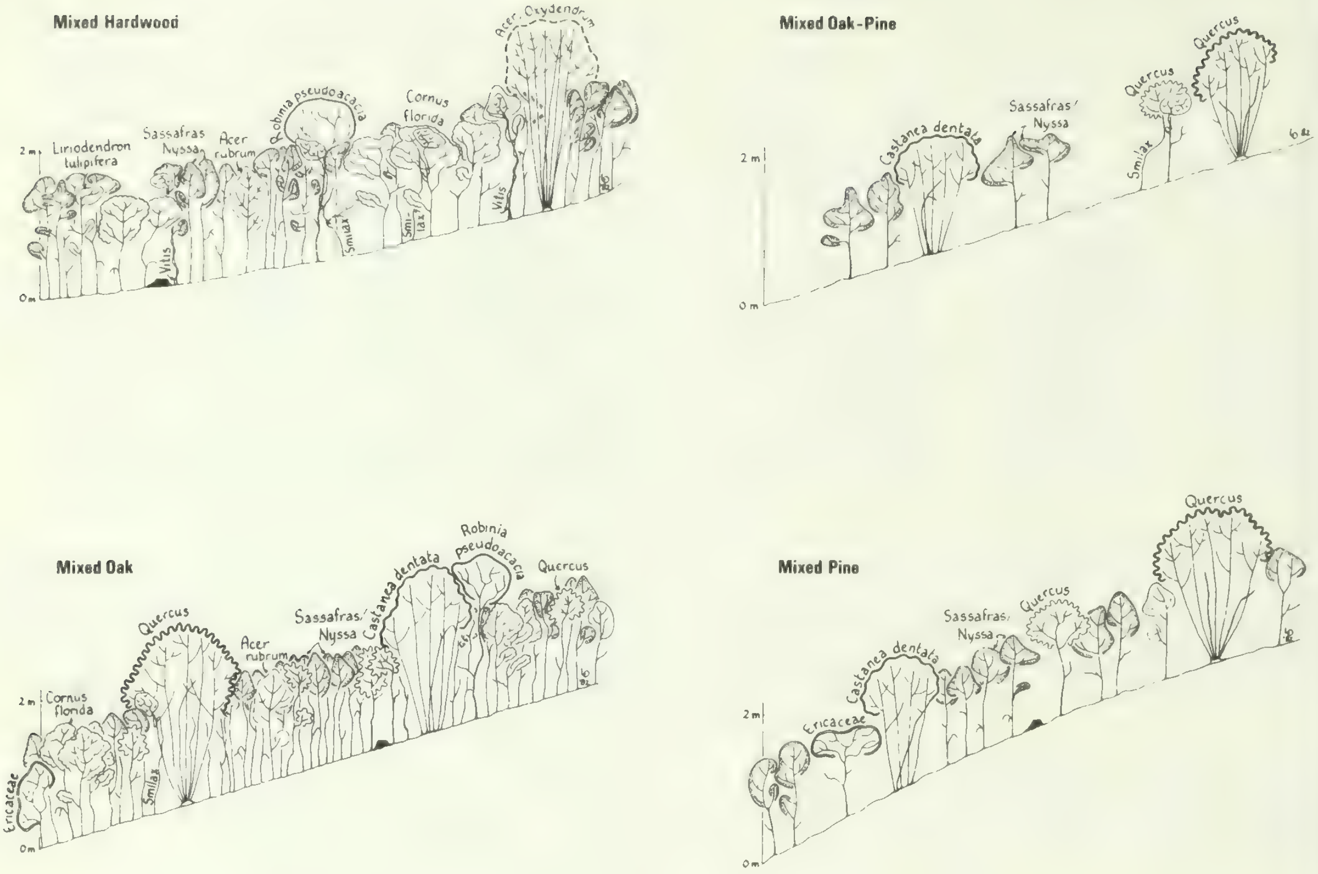


Figure 6.--Profile diagrams of three-year-old stands in four vegetation types on Potts Mountain, Craig County, VA. Height and density for each species group are based on average values in 1-5 m height stratum, March 1982. Density: 1 stem = 700 individuals per hectare.

Sander, I.L., P.S. Johnson, and R.F. Watt.
1976. A guide for evaluating the adequacy of oak advance reproduction. USDA For. Ser. Gen. Tech. Report NC-23. 7 p.

Wathen, S.
1977. Maximum insolation on a surface as an estimator of site quality in the Appalachians. M.S. Thesis, VPI&SU, Blacksburg, VA. 39 p.

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

We are grateful to Lenoor Oosterhuis, who did an exceptional job on the profile diagrams.

SUITABLE TREES FOR THE BOTTOMLANDS
OF WEST TENNESSEE[1]

Thomas A. Waldrop, Edward R. Buckner, and Allan E. Houston[2]

Abstract.--Recent abandonment of agricultural bottomlands in West Tennessee has opened many new areas of productive land for intensive hardwood management. This study examined 3 species; sweetgum, green ash, and sycamore; 2 seed sources for sweetgum and sycamore; and 3 cultural treatments; fertilization, disking, and mowing to determine which combination(s) would be best suited to these sites.

After 3 growing seasons, green ash showed a 98 percent survival rate while sweetgum and sycamore both had 93 percent survival. Survival for all 3 species combined was higher in disked plots (97%) than in mowed (92%) or control plots (94%). Fertilization and seed source had no effect on survival.

Height growth for all 3 species was significantly increased by fertilization and disking. The growth of green ash was increased by 25 percent with fertilization while sycamore and sweetgum growth was increased by 19 and 16 percent, respectively. Gains resulting from disking were 52 percent for sycamore, 50 percent for green ash, and 26 percent for sweetgum. Fertilization and disking combined, did not increase height growth over disking alone. Mowing and seed source had no effect on height growth.

Plantations of either sweetgum, green ash, or sycamore would produce stands of greater value than by natural regeneration. However, significant gains in height growth may be achieved by fertilization and even more by disking.

INTRODUCTION

The high economic return generally realized from soybean production over the past decade, has resulted in the clearing of many stands of bottomland hardwoods along the Mississippi River and its tributaries. While this practice has been economically successful on upper terraces, crops have frequently been lost by flooding on first bottoms. Repeated crop losses on these sites have resulted in the abandonment of significant acreages along tributary streams in West Tennessee (Parsons 1982)[3]. Without management these highly productive sites commonly restock to low value bottomland hardwoods such as boxelder (Acer negundo L.) and river birch (Betula nigra L.).

The availability of these highly productive lands for forestry use provides a unique opportunity to meet the increasing demand for hardwood pulp, fuelwood and logs for veneer and lumber. Their previous use for agriculture makes them readily assessible for cultural treatments to improve survival and growth.

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Graduate Research Assistant, Professor, and Research Associate, respectively, Department of Forestry, Wildlife and Fisheries, University of Tennessee, Knoxville, TN 37901.

[3] Personal interview with David R. Parsons, Fish and Wildlife Biologist, U.S. Department of the Interior, Fish and Wildlife Service.

Although quantitative data on the effects of cultural treatments on the survival and growth of bottomland hardwoods is limited, many forest managers are beginning to intensify their management of these species (Kennedy 1981). Several promising cultural treatments tested to date are fertilization, mowing and disking.

Ammonium nitrate applied at 150 pounds per acre increased the volume growth of a six-year-old cottonwood (Populus deltoides L.) plantation by 200 percent (Blackmon and White 1972). Saucier and Ike (1969) also found that nitrogen fertilization improved the growth of sycamore (Platanus occidentalis L.) and did not have adverse effects on wood properties.

Mowing and disking have been used in intensive hardwood culture primarily to free seedlings from the aggressive herbaceous competition that generally develops on these sites. Kennedy (1981) found that disking increased the height growth of green ash (Fraxinus pennsylvanica Marsh.) by 130 percent while mowing had no significant effect. Survival was also significantly higher in disked plots as compared to either mowed or control plots.

This study was established to evaluate the effectiveness of these three cultural treatments on the survival and growth of selected hardwood species considered to be desirable for plantings on the bottomlands of West Tennessee. As an initial step to this study, sycamore, green ash and sweetgum (Liquidambar styracifula L.) were selected due to their high value on local markets and seedling availability. Other species will be added as seedlings become available.

METHODS

Agricultural lands on the floodplain of a tributary to the Wolf River in Southwest Tennessee were selected for the study. These fields were farmed for soybeans until 1979. Flooding was not an annual problem, however, it occurred often enough that continued cropping was considered risky. Soils were silt loams in which pH ranged from 5.4 to 6.6. Soil tests showed that phosphorus and potassium levels were low for agricultural purposes.

Four replications of a split-plot, randomized complete block design in which five species/seed source combinations (sycamore, green ash, and sweetgum from the Virginia coastal plain and sweetgum and sycamore from the Louisiana Gulf Coast) were tested, with fertilization as the main treatment while disking and mowing were tested at the sub-plot level.

Seedlings were planted in the Spring of 1980. The 5 species/seed sources being tested were represented in each main treatment plot as rand located sub-plots of 150 seedlings planted in f 30-tree rows on a 10 foot by 10 foot spacing. Since previous studies have shown that fertiliz at planting time significantly decreases surviv (Buckner and Maki 1977), fertilizer was random applied at the beginning of the second growing season to one of the two main-treatment plots i each replication. The three sub-plot treatment (mowing, disking, and control) were randomly applied in each main treatment plot at right angles to the species/seed source plantings.

Fertilization was applied at the rate of 1 pounds of elemental nitrogen per acre and 35 pounds of elemental phosphorus per acre. Speci fertilizers used were ammonium nitrate and trip super phosphate. Disking and mowing were done simultaneously at intervals that would generall keep competing vegetation below 2 to 3 feet in height. This required 5 to 6 mowing/disking operations per year which began in April of the first season following planting and was continu throughout each growing season of the study per

Survival and tree heights (to nearest 0.5 foot) were measured at the end of the third grow season following planting. Statistical signifi cance was evaluated at the 95 percent confidenc level.

RESULTS

Survival

After three growing seasons, survival was above 90 percent for all treatment combinations This high survival is of particular significanc because of adverse weather conditions during th Summer of 1980, the growing season following planting. Record high temperatures and drought made this an exceptionally poor growing season, resulting in the widespread failure of recently established forest plantations.

There were no significant survival differe among the 5 species/seed source combinations. Green ash had the best survival (98%), while it the same for sweetgum and sycamore (93 percent) Slightly lower survival in fertilized plots (93 percent) was not statistically different fr that in unfertilized plots (95 percent). Ferti tion at planting time followed by the adverse 1 growing season would likely have resulted in mu greater mortality from this treatment. Surviva was 97 percent in disked plots, 94 percent for the controls, and 92 percent in mowed plots. T statistically significant survival advantage in disked plots was probably related to improved water availability as seedlings became establis during the 1980 drought.

Height Growth

Since seed source did not significantly influence height growth within a species, height measurements for sweetgum and sycamore from the two sources were combined.

Sycamore was the fastest growing of the species tested with a mean height of 9.0 feet after three growing seasons. This was significantly taller than either green ash (6.1 feet) or sweetgum (5.4 feet), between which growth differences were not significant.

The height growth of all three species was significantly increased by fertilization (Table 1). The greatest response was in green ash where fertilized trees were 25 percent taller than those not fertilized. Fertilizers stimulated sycamore and sweetgum growth by 19 percent and 16 percent, respectively. Even with fertilization the mean heights of green ash (6.7 feet) and sweetgum (5.9 feet) were considerably less than that of unfertilized sycamore (8.2 feet).

For all three species disking significantly stimulated growth over the other sub-plot treatments (Table 2). Response was greatest for sycamore (52 percent) followed by green ash (50 percent) and sweetgum (26 percent). Mowing did not significantly influence height growth for any of the three species tested.

Figure 1 provides a comparison of the response of the three species to the six combinations of cultural treatments tested. In general,

Table 1.--Mean heights of 3-year-old sweetgum, green ash, and sycamore for fertilized and control plots.

Species	Fertilized (feet)	Control (feet)	Difference (feet)	(%)
Sycamore	9.7	8.2	1.5	(19)
Green Ash	6.7	5.4	1.3	(25)
Sweetgum	7.0	6.0	1.0	(16)

Table 2.--Mean heights of 3-year-old sweetgum, green ash, and sycamore in mowed, disked, and control plots.

Species	Control (feet)	Mowed (*) (feet)	Disked (*) (feet)
Sweetgum	5.0	4.7 (-6)	6.3 (26)
Green Ash	5.2	5.2 (0)	7.8 (50)
Sycamore	7.7	7.5 (-2)	11.7 (52)

*Percent change in height as compared to control plot means.

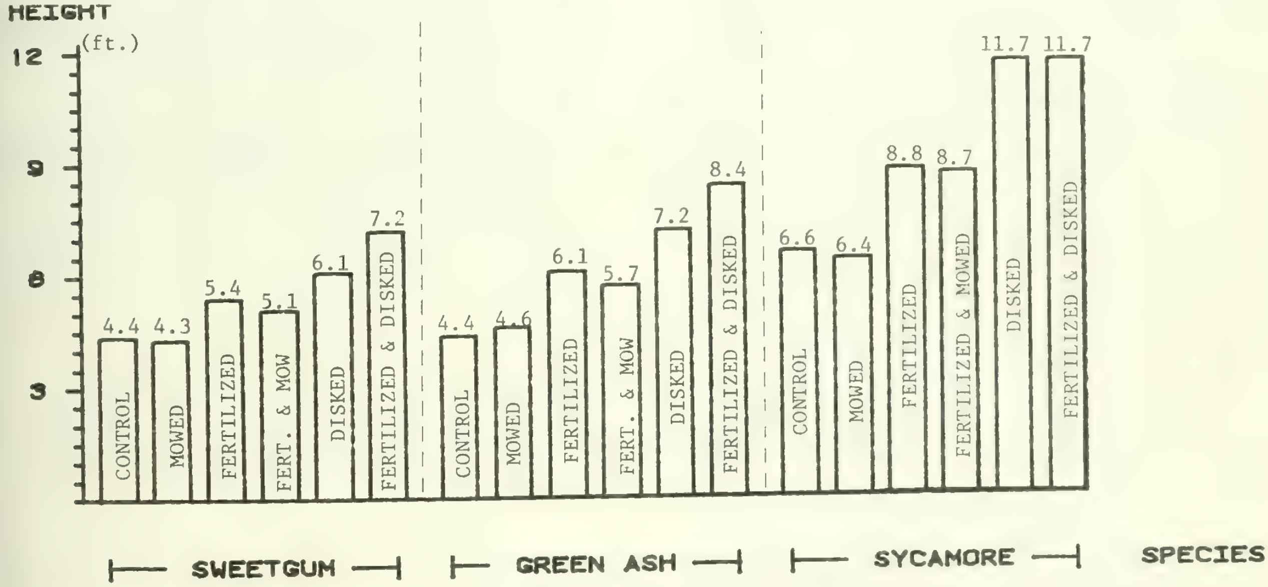


Fig. 1. Mean height of 3-year-old sweetgum, green ash, and sycamore after selected combinations of fertilization, disking, and mowing.

arrangement is according to increasing response, clearly indicating that mowing had little or no effect when applied alone or in combination with fertilization. Applied alone, both fertilization and disking significantly increased height growth for all three species. There was, however, no significant growth advantage from combining disking and fertilization, especially for sycamore.

DISCUSSION

Since after 3 growing seasons, survival rates for green ash, sweetgum, and sycamore were high for all treatments tested, all would provide fully stocked stands for the bottomlands of West Tennessee.

Disking appears to be the most effective cultural treatment for increasing the early growth rate of all species. Although disking is more expensive than either mowing or fertilization, it can essentially double height growth after three seasons for selected species (e.g. sycamore). For fertilized and/or disked sycamore, crown closure will be essentially completed by the end of the fourth growing season. This will eliminate the need for additional treatments to control competing vegetation.

Fertilization also stimulated height growth for all three species. Although disking produced taller trees, the high cost of the repeated on-site activity required for its effective application may make fertilization more economically feasible. There does not appear to be any significant growth advantage from applying both treatments.

Mowing did not significantly increase either survival or height growth for any of the species tested. It did change the composition of competing vegetation from broad leaf weeds to fast growing grasses. This probably increased competition for water and nutrients such that decreased competition for sunlight did not produce the growth gains anticipated. For the conditions tested in this study, mowing is not a recommended practice.

RECOMMENDATIONS

The results of this study suggest that three management intensities can be practically considered for establishing hardwoods on abandoned agricultural lands in West Tennessee. Simply planting to one of the three species tested would establish a stand of desirable hardwoods that should develop into a forest of superior composition and stocking. This would not occur if natural regeneration were relied upon for stand establishment.

A higher level of management would be to fertilize plantations at the beginning of the second growing season. This should result in a significant improvement in height growth for th three species tested, especially for green ash. This combination requires two treatment operati but would likely result in further gains over planting alone in that stand closure would occu earlier. This would reduce the time period ove which there is intensive competition from herbaceous weeds.

A further gain can be realized by disking four or five times during the growing season for the first three seasons following planting. While disking appears to eliminate the need for fertilizer treatment, it does require repeated visits to the plantation for several years, after which stand closure should be sufficient to eliminate the need for further treatment.

LITERATURE CITED

Blackmon, B. G. and E. H. White.
1972. Nitrogen fertilization increases cotto wood growth on old-field soil. U.S.D.A. Fo Serv. Res. Note SO-143, South. For. Exp. St New Orleans, La.

Buckner, E. R. and T. E. Maki.
1977. Seven year growth of fertilized and irrigated yellow poplar, sweetgum, northern red oak, and loblolly pine planted on two sites. For. Sci. 23(4):402-410.

Kennedy, H. E., Jr.
1981. Foliar nutrient concentrations and hard growth influenced by cultrual treatments. Plant and Soil. 63, 307-316.

Saucier, J. R. and A. F. Ike.
1969. Effects of fertilization on selected wood properties of sycamore. Forest Produc Journal. 19:93-96.

UNDERSTORY LIGHT INTENSITY
IN BOTTOMLAND HARDWOOD STANDS[1]

Jim L. Chambers and Michael W. Jenkins[2]

Abstract.--The relationship between understory light levels and several stand characteristics and thinning intensities was studied in five bottomland hardwood species-types. A total of 50 half-acre plots were thinned by removing 0, 12, 24, 36, 48, and 60 percent of the basal area. Light levels were measured in the understory of each plot 6 times during the full leaf portion of the growing season. Percent-thin, percent-crown cover and residual basal area were highly correlated with light levels in the understory. Both percent-thin and percent-crown cover may be useful in making management decisions.

INTRODUCTION

Understory light intensity in hardwood stands has been shown to have a major impact on the growth and survival of planted seedlings, natural seedlings, and herbaceous plants (Logan 1965, Carvell 1966, McGee 1968, Ashby 1976, Duba and Carpenter 1980). Numerous investigators have studied the relationships between various types and levels of thinning and light levels within forest stands. Several of these studies have related understory light levels to size of opening produced from thinning or patch clear-cutting (Jackson 1959, Minckler 1961, and Marquis 1965).

Working in upland hardwood stands having a limited range of basal areas, Minckler (1961) found understory light levels to be closely related to residual basal area in the stand. Ashton (1958) indicated that second-story vegetation density significantly affected the amount and kind of understory light. Ovington and Madgwick (1959) noted a reduction in light levels at the forest floor as canopy depth increased.

Little information is available illustrating the effects of thinning on understory light levels in bottomland hardwood stands, even though information concerning the effects of thinning on understory light levels in bottomland hardwood stands would be a valuable aid in planning for natural regeneration. Such knowledge could also be utilized to favor certain understory tree species, or to modify overstories serving as nurse crops for newly planted seedlings. It could also be used to evaluate the effects of thinning practices on production of wildlife food species.

The objectives of the paper are to: (1) discuss the relationships of understory light levels to several overstory stand characteristics and thinning intensities in five bottomland hardwood species-types and (2) describe the potential uses of these variables in determining the levels of thinning necessary for successful natural and artificial hardwood regeneration.

METHODS AND PROCEDURES

Study Areas

Study plots were chosen from four areas in Louisiana. Areas chosen included the Louisiana State University (LSU) Ben Hur Research Farm and the LSU Burden Research area near Baton Rouge in south central Louisiana, the LSU Idlewild Experiment Station near Clinton in south central Louisiana, and LSU School of Forestry and Wildlife Management Lee Memorial Forest near Sheridan in the east central part of the state.

Plot Selection

Initial reconnaissance of the study areas yielded five potential species-types (based on species dominance) that could be included in the study. Within each species-type, ten half-acre (0.20 ha) plots were selected over a broad range of available basal areas. All vegetation with a dbh (diameter at 4.5 ft, 1.3 m, above the ground) of less than 4.0 inches (10.0 cm) was removed by severing the stem near ground line. Removal of small stems was done to eliminate the second-story vegetation for an underplanting study to take place on these plots. Location of trees greater than 4.0 inches (10 cm) dbh was mapped for each plot. The dbh and basal area of each tree was included on the plot maps to aid in the thinning process.

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] The authors are Associate Professor and Graduate Research Assistant, School of Forestry and Wildlife Management, Louisiana State University, Baton Rouge, LA 70803.

Five levels of thinning were applied to each species-type. Plots were to be thinned by removing 12, 24, 36, 48, and 60 percent of the plot basal area from one plot respectively for each species-type. Using plot maps, thinning was planned to maintain relative species composition on each plot and to evenly distribute the basal area removal across each plot.

Measurements

After plots were thinned, the center one-quarter acre (0.10 ha) of each plot was delineated on the ground for the measurement of light levels within the plot. Light measurements were taken at 25 systematically spaced (25 X 25 ft, 7.6 X 7.6 m) sample locations on each plot. A LI-COR model LI-185 light meter and quantum sensor were used to measure light levels in the photosynthetically active range (0.4 to 0.7 μ E m^{-2} s^{-1}). The light measurement period extended from 10 August 1981 to 5 September 1981 and from 1 June 1982 to 20 July 1982. Light measurements were gathered on each plot once during each two week period for a total of six sampling days on each plot. All light measurements were made between 9:30 am and 2:30 pm C.S.T. to reduce the effects of adjacent unthinned forest areas. On each sample day, full light was determined by taking the average of light readings made in the open before and after light was measured in each forested plot.

Total height, depth of live crown and dbh were measured for each tree left on each plot after thinning. A spherical densiometer (Lemmon 1956) was used to determine the percent crown cover on each plot. Densiometer readings were taken at the 25 light measurement locations on each plot and an average value was then calculated for each plot.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Based on measurements from the 50 experimental plots over 5 species-types a broad range of stand conditions and thinning intensities were included in this study (Table 1). The broad range of data included in this study should make the results applicable over a broad range of conditions.

General thinning guides often specify cutting to certain basal areas for a given stand age and site index based on a percent of the maximum achievable basal area a particular species naturally obtains. Since basal areas for natural stands of previously cutover timber often vary widely, we decided to look at the relationship between understory light levels and basal area on the 25 unthinned plots used in this study. A plot of the understory light levels as a percent of the light in the open (percent

Table 1. Range and mean of several stand characteristics for 50 measurement plots in bottomland hardwood stands included in the study.

Statistic	Percent Light in Understory[a]	Light levels Above Canopy in μ E $m^{-2}s^{-1}$	Thinning Level in Percent[b]	Crown Cover in Percent	Average Stand Height in meters (feet)	Crown Depth in meters (feet)	Pre-thinning Basal Area in m^2 ha^{-1} (ft^2 ac^{-1})	Number of Trees per ha (ac)
Minimum	2.4	202.8	0.0	52.1	14.6 (47.8)	6.4 (21.0)	19.8 (86.2)	325 (131)
Mean	18.8	1662.0	18.1	80.9	17.9 (58.7)	8.6 (28.3)	34.5 (149.6)	474 (191)
Maximum	90.1	2215.0	64.6	93.6	22.1 (72.5)	10.7 (35.1)	46.2 (201.0)	695 (281)

[a] Understory light as a percent of light measured in the open.

[b] Thinning levels as a percent of the basal area removed.

light) against basal area in the unthinned plots indicated little if any relationship between these variables (Figure 1). Correlation analysis between these variables resulted in a correlation (r) of 0.019. A test of the null hypothesis, that correlation coefficient was equal to zero, could not be rejected at the 0.05 alpha level (probability = 0.81).

Next the effects of thinning on percent-light in the understory were examined. A correlation matrix was developed between percent-light and all of the measured stand characteristics (Table 2). The stand variables most highly correlated with percent-light in the understory in the thinned plots were percent-thin (percent of basal area removed) (r=0.789), percent-crown cover (r=-0.786), and residual basal area (r=0.697). Significant differences in correlation coefficients were found by pairwise t-tests of the correlation between percent light in the understory and the three most highly correlated variables. The correlation coefficient between percent-light and percent-thin was significantly higher (α=0.05) than between percent-light and residual basal area. The correlation coefficient between percent-light and percent-crown cover was also significantly higher (α=0.05) than between percent-light and residual basal area. The correlation coefficients between

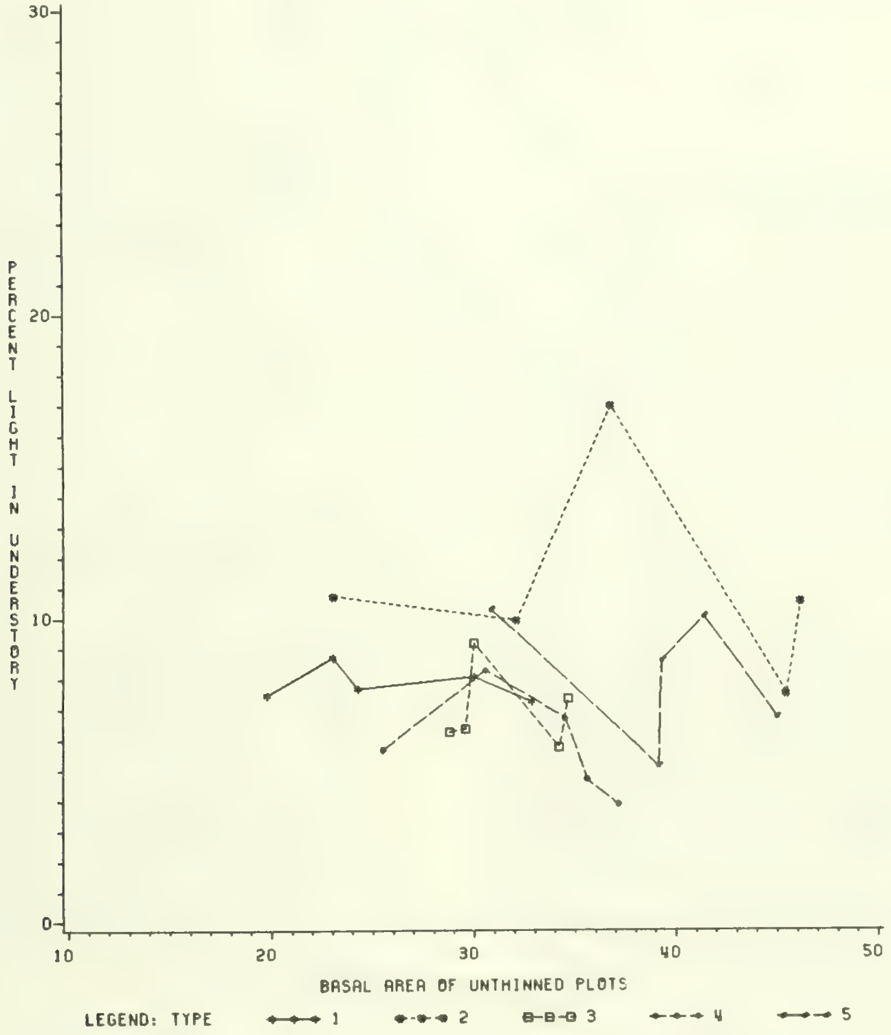


Figure 1.--Plot of percent light in the understory against basal area in the unthinned plots for five species types.

Table 2. Correlation coefficients (top number) and level of significance (bottom number) among measured stand characteristics for all five species-types.

	Percent Light	Percent Thin	Percent Crown	Total Height	Dbh	Crown Height	Crown Depth	Basal Area		Number of Stems	
								Pre-thin	Residual	Pre-thin	Residual
Percent Light	1.000 .0000	0.789 .0001	-0.786 .0001	-0.402 .0001	-0.100 .2257	-0.376 .0001	-0.314 .0001	-0.000 .9996	-0.697 .0001	-0.021 .7977	-0.526 .0001
Percent Thin		1.000 .0000	-0.948 .0001	-0.285 .0004	-0.078 .3451	-0.303 .0002	-0.198 .0150	0.037 .6562	-0.853 .0001	0.077 .3483	-0.621 .0001
Percent Crown			1.000 .0000	0.340 .0001	0.088 .2869	0.332 .0001	0.255 .0017	0.034 .6782	0.844 .0001	0.000 .9975	0.640 .0001
Total Height				1.000 .0000	0.487 .0001	0.758 .0001	0.899 .0001	0.234 .0039	0.391 .0001	0.148 .0704	0.160 .0498
Dbh					1.000 .0000	0.298 .0002	0.486 .0001	0.299 .0002	0.207 .0110	-0.386 .0001	-0.272 .0008
Crown Height						1.000 .0000	0.395 .0001	-0.058 .4840	0.270 .0008	-0.091 .2683	0.024 .7670
Crown Depth							1.000 .0000	0.369 .0001	0.369 .0001	0.270 .0008	0.210 .0099
Pre-thinning Basal Area								1.000 .0000	0.477 .0001	0.681 .0001	0.422 .0001
Residual Basal Area									1.000 .0000	0.298 .0002	0.651 .0001
Number of Stems Before Thinning										1.000 .0000	0.651 .0001
Number of Stems After Thinning											1.000 .0000

percent-light and percent-thin was not significantly different from the correlation between percent-light and percent-crown cover (α=0.05). Therefore, percent-thin and percent-crown cover are potentially better predictors of understory light and are more closely related to it in thinned stands than residual basal area. Correlation coefficients between percent-light and the three most highly correlated independent variables for each species-type are presented in

The high correlation between percent-thin and percent-light in the understory could make this relationship useful in determining appropriate thinning levels necessary to obtain desirable understory light levels for a variety of purposes. Bottomland hardwood stands with widely different basal areas can and often do have relatively complete crown cover. Therefore, the percent of the basal area removed and percent-crown cover remaining are much better indicators of the amount of light able to penetrate through the canopy in thinned stands than the actual basal area remaining.

Since, percent-thin is easier to apply an requires only a calculation of basal area, w believe it would be a better choice tha percent-crown cover as a predictor of understor light levels in thinned stands.

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

Although there was appreciable variation i understory light levels spatially, diurnally an over the growing season, understory light level as a percent of light in the open provided meaningful comparison of light levels unde different stand conditions and thinning regimes. Many factors influence light levels in the fores understory. However, when second-story vegetation was removed from the stands in this study percent-thin and percent-crown cover accounte for more of the variation in understory ligh levels than any other tested stand characteristics.

Table 3. Correlation coefficients for the relationship between percent light in understory, and percent-thin, percent-crown cover, and residual basal area.

Species-Type[a]	Percent Thin[b]	Percent Crown Cover	Residual Basal Area
Sugarberry-Sweetgum-Boxelder (n[c]=30)	0.87	-0.86	0.84
Red Maple-Green Ash-Swamp Tupelo (n=30)	0.77	-0.78	0.66
Sweetgum-Blue-Beech (n=30)	0.73	-0.71	0.69
American Beech-Swamp Tupelo-Spruce Pine (n=30)	0.88	-0.84	0.81
Swamp Tupelo-Sweetbay (n=30)	0.86	-0.86	0.86
All Species-types (n=150)	0.79	-0.79	0.70

[a] Celtis laevigata Willd-Liquidambar styraciflua L.-Acer negundo L.

Acer rubrum L.-Fraxinus pennsylvanica Marsh. -Nyssa sylvatica var. biflora (Walt.) Sarg.

Liquidambar styraciflua L.-Carpinus caroliniana Walt.

Fagus grandifolia Ehrh.-Nyssa sylvatica var. biflora (Walt.) Sarg.-Pinus glabra Walt.

Nyssa sylvatica var. biflora (Walt.) Sarg.-Magnolia virginaina L.

[b] Thinning levels as a percent of the basal area removed.

[c] n = number of observations

If certain levels of light are desirable in the understory, percent-thin required to approach these light levels could be predicted from the relationships between light and thinning intensities. Furthermore, percent-crown cover may have distinct advantages in assessing the need for rethinning, since, percent crown cover will increase as crowns spread to take advantage of the room left by thinning. More research is needed concerning the relationship between rate of canopy closure and understory light levels.

Residual basal area was not as highly correlated to percent-light in the understory because of differences in initial stand basal areas and possibly crown closure. For this reason it is suggested that for stands with considerable variation in basal areas but full crown closure that percent-thin or percent-crown cover would probably be better predictors of understory light levels than residual basal area. Furthermore, the practice of cutting back to a given basal area can have highly variable affects on understory light levels in bottomland hardwood stands.

Literature Cited

Ashby, W. C.
1976. Basswood seedlings outgrow red and bur oak in full light or heavy shade. Tree Planter's Notes 27(4):24-26.

Ashton, P. S.
1958. Light intensity measurements in rain forests near Santarem, Brazil. J. Ecol. 46:65-70.

Carvell, K. L.
1966. Underplanting: A method of replacing unproductive hardwood stands with yellow-poplar. W. Vir. Agr. Exp. Stn. Bull. 523:3-4.

Duba, S. E., and S. B. Carpenter.
1980. Effect of shade on the growth, leaf morphology, and photosynthetic capacity of an American sycamore clone. Castanea 45:219-227.

Jackson, L. W. R.
1959. Relation of pine forest overstory opening diameter to growth of pine reproduction. Ecology 40:478-480.

Lemmon, P. E.
1956. A Spherical densiometer for estimating forest overstory density. For. Sci. 2:314-320.

Logan, K. T
1965. Growth of tree seedlings as affected by light intensity. Can. Dep. For. Publ. 1121, 16 p.

McGee, C. E.
1968. Northern red oak seedling growth varies by light intensity and seed source. USDA For. Serv. Res. Note SE-90, 4 p.

Marquis, D. A.
1965. Controlling light in small clearcuttings USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. NE-39, 16 p.

Minckler, L. S.
1961. Measuring light in an unevened aged hardwood stands. USDA For. Serv. Tech. Pap. CS-184, 9 p.

Ovington, J. D. and H. A. I. Madgwick.
1955. Comparison of light in different woodlands. Forestry 28:141-146.

COMPOSITION AND CHARACTERISTICS OF ADVANCE REPRODUCTION IN THE PURE YELLOW-POPLAR COMPONENT OF COVE HARDWOODS IN THE SOUTHERN APPALACHIANS[1]

Lino Della-Bianca[2]

Abstract.--Thirty-six even-aged stands of pure yellow-poplar (Liriodendron tulipifera L.), which were thinned 15 years before at age 60 years or older, were studied to determine kind, amount, and height of advance reproduction. The reproduction consisted of 24 tree species which were over 4.5 feet tall. Total basal area in saplings ranged from 9.8 to 11.5 ft^2/acre; stem numbers ranged from 778 to 1,516 stems/acre. Timber species accounted for 26, 31, and 53 percent of the sapling basal areas on land of site index (feet at age 50) 90, 100, and 110, respectively. Average d.b.h. for timber species was 0.9, 1.5, and 1.6 inches on site index 90, 100, and 110, respectively. The number of saplings of timber species ranged from 288 to 604 stems/acre, and the advance reproduction would best be typed as cove hardwoods. Flowering dogwood (Cornus florida L.) was the most abundant and frequently occurring species on all sites. On sites 100 and 110 yellow-poplar ranked second to flowering dogwood in basal area; on site 90 sweet birch (Betula lenta L.) was the second most prominent species in both stem numbers and basal area. Height of the 280 tallest saplings per acre averaged 22.4 feet and ranged from 10.7 to 36.8 feet. Site index had only a very slight, almost negligible, effect on height of advance reproduction but overstory density affected sapling height considerably; advance reproduction at the lowest residual basal area was 8 feet taller than at the highest.

Intensive management of yellow-poplar stands causes development of advance reproduction, which will have to be reckoned with at the time of the final harvest. The probable composition and size of such reproduction is not known, but at final harvest, two options may exist. All advance reproduction might be cut to the ground or it might be left to form a new stand of quality timber. Much depends upon the species composition.

Thirty-six even-aged, pure yellow-poplar stands that had been thinned repeatedly were approaching harvestable age and were available for this study. The stands had been thinned 15 years before, when they were 60 years old or more. In this paper I report conclusions drawn from observations in these stands. And from sampling data, estimates are given of the kind, amount, and height of tree species comprising advance reproduction in these stands.

METHOD

One 0.25-acre circular plot corrected for slope was located in each of 36 stands in the Southern Appalachians from Georgia to Virginia. Each plot was surrounded with a 33-foot buffer zone thinned in the same manner as the plot. Advance reproduction of all species was cut to ground level immediately after thinning. Residu basal area ranged from 50 to 130 ft^2/acre for th site index 90 and 100 plots, and 50 to 150 for site index 110 plots.

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Silviculturist, USDA Forest Service, Southeastern Forest Experiment Station, Asheville, N.C.

Two randomly located 0.025-acre circular subplots were used to assess development of understory vegetation in the thinned plots. The subplot centers were randomly located in the major plot within a circular zone which had maximum and minimum radii of 40 and 20 feet, respectively, to ensure that the subplots would be contained entirely within the major plot. Within each subplot, the species and d.b.h. of every sapling (stem over 4.5 feet tall) was recorded. Each stem in sprout clumps and all single stems were tallied; no maximum size was set for these stems hat had developed since thinning. In addition, total height of the 7 tallest saplings per sub- lot (280 saplings per acre) was measured to pproximate the number of future crop trees.

Multiple regression was planned for analysis of the basic field data, but scatter diagrams and low R^2 values for six regression equations showed the futility of such an analysis. Accordingly, the data were stratified into site index classes of 90, 100, and 110 feet at age 50 years and presented in tabular form.

RESULTS

Saplings of 24 tree species occurred on the 36 plots. Tables 1 and 2 present density relationships, composition, and frequency by site for stem numbers/acre and basal area/acre, respectively. Numbers of saplings decreased with increasing site quality because faster stem growth on the better sites increased mortality due to suppression.

Table 1.--Density and frequency relationships by site for advance reproduction in thinned even-age yellow-poplar stands 60 years or older.

	Site 90 (N = 14)			Site 100 (N = 13)			Site 110 (N = 9)		
Species	Density	Relative density	Freq.	Density	Relative density	Freq.	Density	Relative density	Freq.
	No. stems/acre	%	%	No. stems/acre	%	%	No. stems/acre	%	%
Ash spp. (*Fraxinus* L.)	11.4	0.5	29	12.3	0.8	23	4.4	0.4	22
Black cherry (*Prunus serotina* Ehrh.)	1.4	0.1	7	--	--	--	--	--	--
Black locust (*Robinia pseudoacacia* L.)	62.9	3.0	57	43.1	2.8	46	68.9	5.8	44
Black oak (*Quercus velutina* Lam.)	5.7	0.3	7	--	--	--	--	--	--
Eastern hemlock (*Tsuga canadensis* (L.) Carr.)	50.4	2.4	29	3.1	0.2	8	6.7	0.6	11
Flowering dogwood (*Cornus florida* L.)	1,415.7	66.6	86	912.3	58.3	92	720.0	60.0	78
Hickory spp. (*Carya* Nutt.)	50.0	2.4	64	10.8	0.7	31	33.3	2.8	44
Northern red oak (*Quercus rubra* L.)	27.1	1.3	29	4.6	0.3	23	6.7	0.6	22
Red maple (*Acer rubrum* L.)	15.7	0.7	43	27.7	1.8	46	17.8	1.5	22
Sugar maple (*Acer saccharum* Marsh.)	--	--	--	50.8	3.3	15	--	--	--
Sweet birch (*Betula lenta* L.)	342.9	16.1	57	32.3	2.1	46	217.8	18.1	78
White basswood (*Tilia heterophylla* Vent.)	--	--	--	3.1	0.2	8	2.2	0.2	11
White oak (*Quercus alba* L.)	4.3	0.2	21	--	--	--	4.4	0.4	11
Yellow-poplar (*Liriodendron tulipifera* L.)	32.9	1.6	57	100.0	6.4	85	57.8	4.8	67
Other [1]	99.6	4.8	--	360.0	23.1	--	57.7	4.8	--
Total	2,120.0	100.0		1,560.1	100.0		1,197.7	100.0	

[1] Other includes: American chestnut (*Castanea dentata* (Marsh.) Borkh.), American hornbeam (*Carpinus caroliniana* Walt.), blackgum (*Nyssa sylvatica* Marsh.), butternut (*Juglans cinerea* L.), Carolina silverbell (*Halesia carolina* L.), cucumbertree (*Magnolia acuminata* L.), eastern hophornbeam (*Ostrya virginiana* (Mill.) K. Koch), Fraser magnolia (*Magnolia fraseri* Walt.), sassafras (*Sassafras albidum* (Nutt.) Nees), sourwood (*Oxydendrum arboreum* (L.) DC), spice-bush (*Lindera benzoin* (L.) Blume.), wild grape spp. (*Vitis* L.).

Table 2.--Basal area relationships by site for advance reproduction in thinned even-age yellow-poplar stands 60 years or older.

Species	Site 90 (N = 14)		Site 100 (N = 13)		Site 110 (N = 9)	
	Basal area	Relative basal area	Basal area	Relative basal area	Basal area	Relative basal area
	Ft^2/acre	%	Ft^2/acre	%	Ft^2/acre	%
Ash spp. (*Fraxinus* L.)	0.1280	1.31	0.0160	0.14	0.0120	0.11
Black cherry (*Prunus serotina* Ehrh.)	0.0060	0.06	--	--	--	--
Black locust (*Robinia pseudoacacia* L.)	0.4040	4.14	0.7200	6.24	1.4240	13.47
Black oak (*Quercus velutina* Lam.)	0.0080	0.08	--	--	--	--
Eastern hemlock (*Tsuga canadensis* (L.) Carr.)	0.2900	2.97	0.0120	0.10	0.0140	0.13
Flowering dogwood (*Cornus florida* L.)	5.7200	58.67	6.3920	55.40	4.6300	43.80
Hickory spp. (*Carya* Nutt.)	0.1080	1.11	0.0320	0.28	0.2140	2.02
Northern red oak (*Quercus rubra* L.)	0.2200	2.26	0.0240	0.21	0.1360	1.29
Red maple (*Acer rubrum* L.)	0.0600	0.62	0.2500	2.17	0.2860	2.71
Sugar maple (*Acer saccharum* Marsh.)	--	--	0.3020	2.62	--	--
Sweet birch (*Betula lenta* L.)	0.9660	9.91	0.0520	0.45	1.1940	11.30
White basswood (*Tilia heterophylla* Vent.)	--	--	0.0700	0.61	0.0004	0.01
White oak (*Quercus alba* L.)	0.0240	0.25	--	--	0.0080	0.08
Yellow-poplar (*Liriodendron tulipifera* L.)	0.3560	3.65	2.0480	17.76	2.2860	21.63
Other [1/]	1.4600	14.97	1.6148	14.02	0.3640	3.45
Total	9.7500	100.00	11.5328	100.00	10.5684	100.00

[1/] Other includes: American chestnut (*Castanea dentata* (Marsh.) Borkh.), American hornbeam (*Carpinus caroliniana* Walt.), blackgum (*Nyssa sylvatica* Marsh.), butternut (*Juglans cinerea* L.), Carolina silverbell (*Halesia carolina* L.), cucumbertree (*Magnolia acuminata* L.), eastern hophornbeam (*Ostrya virginiana* (Mill.) K. Koch), Fraser magnolia (*Magnolia fraseri* Walt.), sassafras (*Sassafras albidum* (Nutt.) Nees), sourwood (*Oxydendrum arboreum* (L.) DC.), spice-bush (*Lindera benzoin* (L.) Blume.), wild grape spp. (*Vitis* L.).

Basal area of advance reproduction ranged from 9.8 to 11.5 ft^2/acre. It and the proportion of it in timber species increased with site index. Timber species made up 26, 31, and 53 percent of the sapling basal area on sites 90, 100, and 110, respectively. Tree species making up less than 1 percent of the basal area included American chestnut, black cherry, blackgum, black oak, butternut, Carolina basswood, eastern hophornbeam, and white oak. The average d.b.h. for saplings of timber species was 0.9, 1.5, and 1.6 inches on sites 90, 100, and 110, respectively; for other species it was 0.9, 1.1, and 1.1 inches.

Flowering dogwood.--Flowering dogwood was the most abundant and common species in advance reproduction on all sites, it averaged 1,060 stems/acre and occurred on 86 percent of the plots. The basal area in flowering dogwood averaged 5.7 ft^2/acre, and made up 54 percent of sapling basal area.

Yellow-poplar.--Yellow-poplar saplings wer not present on 31 percent of the study plots, even though from 16 to 74 percent of the overstory yellow-poplar trees had been cut in thinning these particular plots. Where yellow-popl reproduction was present, its saplings ranged from 20 to 340 stems/acre in plots from which 6 to 75 percent of the trees were cut.

Abundance of yellow-poplar reproduction increased with site index, and averaged 60 stems/ acre with a frequency of 70 percent. Basal are in yellow-poplar averaged 1.4 ft^2/acre; its relative basal area was 13 percent. On site 10 where yellow-poplar was most abundant, the relative density of timber species was least, amoun ing to only 18 percent of the reproduction. On sites 100 and 110, yellow-poplar ranked second flowering dogwood in basal area.

Sweet birch.--Sweet birch was the second most prominent species on site 90 in both stem numbers and basal area. Its frequency was 58 percent, and an average of 199 stems/acre were present.

Black locust.--Black locust ranked third in basal area to flowering dogwood and after yellow-poplar on sites 100 and 110. Its basal area averaged 0.8 ft^2/acre, which was 7 percent of sapling basal area.

Northern red oak.--Frequency of occurrence of northern red oak was relatively consistent by site, averaging 25 percent. On site 90 its abundance was greatest, averaging 27 stems/acre; but on sites 100 and 110 abundance averaged only 5 and 7 stems/acre, respectively. Survival of advance reproduction on high-quality sites appears limited.

The other species (Tables 1 and 2) showed no consistent pattern of abundance by site. Many of these species, which were never abundant, occurred frequently on sites 90 and 100. They occurred infrequently on site 110. These species included American chestnut, American hornbeam, ash, black cherry, blackgum, black oak, butternut, white basswood, Carolina silverbell, eastern hophornbeam, Fraser magnolia, sourwood, and white oak.

Composition of all advance reproduction of timber species only is shown by site index in Table 3. Although all stands were classified as natural yellow-poplar before thinning and were 100 percent yellow-poplar after thinning, it is apparent that future stands will have a mixture of species that might be classed as cove hardwoods.

Significant effects of site and stand density on height, basal area, and abundance of advance reproduction were sought through correlation analysis. Neither residual basal area nor number of trees, nor ratios of the same using residual/initial values as independent variables, appeared to be even moderately correlated with basal area or stem numbers of advance reproduction. Site index had only a very slight, almost negligible, effect on height of advance reproduction. Residual basal area, however, did affect height of advance reproduction rather strongly; at the lowest residual basal area advance reproduction was some 8 feet taller than at the highest.

The relationship between average height of the tallest 280 saplings/acre and their composition appears in Figure 1; saplings averaged 22.4 feet tall with a range of 10.7 to 36.8 feet. Flowering dogwood was the most abundant species, and excepting black locust and sweet birch on site 90, it was also the shortest. Yellow-poplar was the tallest species on all sites, but only slightly

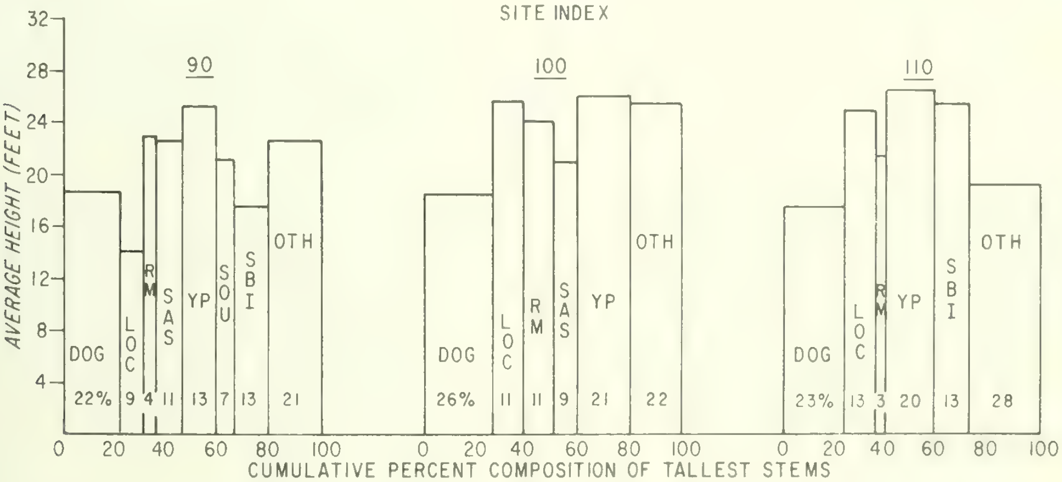


Figure 1.--Average height and composition of the tallest saplings of advance reproduction 15 years after thinning yellow-poplar stands 60 years or older in the Southern Appalachians. Abbreviations are: DOG flowering dogwood, LOC black locust, RM red maple, SAS sassafras, YP yellow-poplar, SOU sourwood, SBI sweet birch, OTH includes: site 90, American chestnut, northern red oak, eastern hophornbeam, ash spp., Carolina silverbell, white oak, eastern hemlock, Fraser magnolia; site 100, sourwood, sweet birch, northern red oak, eastern hophornbeam, ash spp., Carolina silverbell, white basswood, sugar maple, spice-bush; site 110, American chestnut, northern red oak, ash spp., eastern hemlock, hickory spp.

Table 3.--Composition of advance reproduction of timber trees by site in thinned even-age yellow-poplar stands 60 years or older.

Species	Site index					
	90 N=14	100 N=13	110 N=9	90 N=14	100 N=13	110 N=9
	Basal area (percent)			Number of trees (percent)		
Ash spp. (Fraxinus L.)	5.0	0.4	0.2	1.9	4.3	1.0
Black cherry (Prunus serotina Ehrh.)	0.2	0.0	0.0	0.2	0.0	0.0
Black locust (Robinia pseudoacacia L.)	15.7	20.4	25.6	10.4	15.0	16.4
Black oak (Quercus velutina Lam.)	0.3	0.0	0.0	0.8	0.0	0.0
Eastern hemlock (Tsuga canadensis (L.) Carr.)	11.3	0.3	0.2	8.3	1.1	1.6
Hickory spp. (Carya Nutt.)	4.2	0.9	3.8	8.3	3.8	7.9
Northern red oak (Quercus rubra L.)	8.6	0.7	2.4	4.5	1.6	1.6
Red maple (Acer rubrum L.)	2.3	7.1	5.1	2.6	9.6	4.2
Sugar maple (Acer saccharum Marsh.)	0.0	8.6	0.0	0.0	17.6	0.0
Sweet birch (Betula lenta L.)	37.6	1.5	21.4	56.8	11.2	51.9
White basswood (Tilia heterophylla Vent.)	0.0	2.0	0.1	0.0	1.1	0.5
White oak (Quercus alba L.)	0.9	0.0	0.1	0.7	0.0	1.1
Yellow-poplar (Liriodendron tulipifera L.)	13.9	58.1	41.1	5.5	34.7	13.8
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0

so; complete overstory release would result in its rapidly assuming greater crown dominance. Figure 1 also indicates: (1) a trend toward cove hardwoods dominated mainly by yellow-poplar, and (2) flowering dogwood was reverting to an understory species as reproduction approached pole size.

DISCUSSION

Numbers of timber-tree saplings appear to be sufficient to regenerate these plots in most instances, but there are two notable exceptions: (1) areas heavily browsed for several years after thinning, and (2) areas in which grasses and ferns developed strongly after thinning, and which were also heavily browsed. Overall, numbers of timber-tree saplings ranged from 288 to 604 stems/acre. After the harvest cut, some additional sprouts and seedlings will appear; and some mortality will occur through logging, but sprouting should replace such losses. The new reproduction should prosper because of direct insolation and a protected soil surface favorable for moisture retention and availability.

The major unanswered question is: What effect will the 73 percent component of advance reproduction in nontimber species--especially flowering dogwood--have on the timber-tree saplings? Other than for infrequent but notorious fail spots, we know that timber species on full release from the overstory will begin rapid height growth quickly (Smith 1963; Smith 1977; Sander and Clark 1971). Species such as flowering dogwood, sourwood, spice-bush, and rosebay rhodode dron will be relegated to the understory. Afte complete release, yellow-poplar, especially, ca be expected to make rapid height and diameter growth (Williams 1976). Sweet birch is a stron competitor with yellow-poplar in this advance r production, as is black locust (Table 3). In time, however, both species are expected to rev to intermediates, or at best low codominants, i competition with yellow-poplar.

Any decision on treatment of advance repro duction must await the regeneration cut. In ma cases, it would be unwise to eliminate most, if any, of the larger desirable saplings. Special care, however, should be taken by loggers durin felling and skidding to minimize sapling damage After logging, seriously damaged saplings shoul be cut to ground level to encourage resprouting A second age class of reproduction will develop after logging, but it should not be detrimental to the sapling class now present. The younger stems will serve to reinforce development of re production, especially in larger openings, and will serve as trainers to aid in natural prunin of larger saplings.

LITERATURE CITED

Sander, Ivan L., and F. Bryan Clark.
1971. Reproduction of upland hardwood forest in the Central States. U.S. Dep. Agric., Agric. Handb. 405, 25 p.

Smith, H. Clay.
1977. Height of tallest saplings in 10-year-old Appalachian hardwood clearcuts. USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. NE-381, 6 p.

Smith, Henry W.
1963. Establishment of yellow-poplar (Liriodendron tulipifera L.) in canopy openings. Ph.D. diss. Yale Univ. Sch. For., New Haven, Conn., 176 p.

Williams, Robert D.
1976. Release accelerates growth of yellow-poplar: an 18-year look. USDA For. Serv. Res. Note NC-202, 4 p.

THE INFLUENCE OF DIFFERENT SITE PREPARATION METHODS ON NATURAL REGENERATION IN BOTTOMLAND STANDS[1]

Jon T. Morrissey and Andrew W. Ezell[2]

Abstract.--An evaluation of first-year natural regeneration of East Texas bottomland hardwoods was conducted on three ten-following site preparation treatments: shear; shear and broadcast burn; total injection; partial injection; control. Vegetation data was collected from intensive pre-harvest and first-year growing season inventories. Analysis showed a significant difference between treatments on the amount of first-year sweetgum regeneration. Also, first-year species composition differed from both the pre-harvest overstory and advance regeneration compositions. The number of desirable species (sweetgum and oaks) and total species significantly increased from pre-harvest regeneration levels.

INTRODUCTION

High-quality hardwoods are becoming increasingly depleted. Since the early 1950's Grade 2 quality and better logs have decreased by almost fifty percent (McKnight 1966). While the availability of quality logs has decreased, there has been an increase of low value, poor-quality trees. In East Texas, eighty percent of the hardwood sawtimber is of Grade 3 quality and lower (Woessner 1971). To improve this situation, intensive silvicultural methods must be initiated. Proper artificial and natural regeneration offer possibilities for hardwood stand improvement.

Artificial regeneration may result in increased volume yield since the arrangement, composition, and the genetic quality of a stand are closely controlled (Smith 1962). The benefits are reduced due to the possibility of mistakes in choosing species and varieties that are unsuitable to the environment. The role of widespread hardwood plantations offers potential for the future but expensive and continually rising establishment costs currently override substantial resource contributions.

Natural regeneration offers a practical alternative to improve the quality of East Texas hardwoods. Hardwoods regenerate naturally throug use of clearcutting, seed-tree, shelterwood and selection cutting methods. Of these, clearcutti has the greatest application for naturally regene-rating southern hardwoods (Kellison, Frederick ar Gardner 1981). Clearcutting initiates stump spro ing and favors seedling establishment of intolera species. Unfortunately, clearcutting also stimulates growth of undesirable intolerant species. reduce this competition and increase the survival probability of desirables, site preparation metho should follow clearcutting. Successful site preparation methods for natural hardwood regeneratio are chop, shear and chemical injection. Roller-drum chopping, as compared to shearing, reduces slash with less environmental impact but also reduces the stump and root sprouting ability of desirable species. Shearing promotes stump sprouting and reduces residual undesirables such as vin (Kellison, Frederick and Gardner 1981). Injectio reduces undesirable advance reproduction and spro ing through application of herbicides to specific unwanted individuals.

The objectives of this study were to evaluat the effects of clearcutting and different site preparation techniques on bottomland hardwood regeneration in East Texas, and to correlate preharvest stand species composition to post-harvest first-year hardwood regeneration.

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Graduate Research Assistant and Assistant Professor of Forestry, Texas A&M University, College Station, Texas.

METHODS

The Study Area

Three ten-acre study units were established on a first-level terrace of the Neches River bottom in southeastern Tyler County, Texas. The units are located at the Forest Lake Experimental Research Area, owned and operated by Temple-Eastex, Inc.

The area encompassing the three ten-acre units is approximately a seventy year old bottomland stand comprised mostly of oaks and sweetgum on the Bibb soil series. This soil series is typically a nearly level, poorly drained floodplain with acidic surface and subsurface clay soil. The area receives over 50 inches per year in precipitation in which flooding may occur. Periodic flooding is restricted to localized drains. Flooding by the Neches River has been virtually eliminated by dam construction.

Study Establishment Procedure

The study area was determined to be clearcut. Clearcutting has the widest application associated with regenerating species of intolerant nature.

The size of the clearcut units was set at 10-acres. This size probably would show the same results as larger areas and was more economically justifiable than smaller areas.

Pre-Harvest Inventory Procedure

A pre-harvest inventory of each unit was administered from May through July 1981, using fifty evenly spaced sample points on six parallel transect lines. The overstory was evaluated for species composition and basal area. The suppressed (0.01-acre) and herbaceous (0.001-acre) layers were evaluated by using nested circular plots around each plot center. The amount of regeneration was recorded for each species present. After completion of the inventory, all trees of merchantable diameter size were marked, cut and removed by Temple-Eastex, Inc. from August through October 1981.

Site Preparation Procedure

After the completion of harvest operations, each ten-acre unit was divided into ten square (3.2 x 3.2 chains) one-acre site preparation areas. Treatments chosen were shear, shear and broadcast burn, total injection, partial injection and control. Each ten-acre unit consisted of two repetitions of the five treatments. Each treatment was randomly assigned and positioned for each repetition.

Shear vs. Shear and Burn

The designated shear, and shear and burn areas were prepared by use of a K-G blade equipped Caterpillar D-8 tractor in December 1981. Only one pass was necessary over each area. The sheared debris was left in place on both areas. Fire lanes were created around each shear and burn area by the blade equipped tractor. Burning was conducted in March 1982, on days suitable for debris burning.

Total vs. Partial Injection

The live stems remaining on the designated total and partial injection areas were injected by spraying Tordon 101R in frills created by the Sandvik Swedish brush axe. On total injection areas, stems greater than 4.5 feet height were injected, while stems greater than 3.0 inches d.b.h. were injected on partial injection areas. Injection was completed by March 1982.

First-Year Inventory Procedure

The 0.001-acre (mil-acre) circular plots used before harvest were re-established. Data measured and tallied was first-year: species composition; origin (seedling or sprout); heights (to nearest 0.1 foot); percent canopy cover; percent ground cover. Stumps were measured and tallied for sprouting ability. Stump diameter, height, species, and number of sprouts were recorded. The inventory was conducted during the first two weeks of October 1982.

Analysis

Analysis of variance was used to test for significant species composition (total and desired species) changes and differences in amounts of regeneration. Each test was tested at probability levels of 0.05 and 0.01. Individual tests conducted were: 1981 pre-harvest regeneration layer; 1982 post post-harvest first-year regeneration layer; between the 1981 and the 1982 regeneration layers; 1982 site preparation treatments. Post-harvest regeneration was further tested by analysis of variance for significant differences between each site preparation treatment by height of regeneration and origin. All analysis of variance models were considered fixed.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

1981 Pre-Harvest Growing Season

Overstory Layer

The basal area overstory inventory suggests a dominance of commercially desirable species (oaks and sweetgum)(Table 1). Oaks and sweetgum comprised 54 percent and 24 percent, respectively of the mean total 70 ft.^{2} of basal area per acre. Basal area for Blocks 1, 2, and 3 was 65, 77, and 68 ft.^{2}/A., respectively.

Table 1.--Preharvest overstory species composition.

SPECIES	BLOCK 1	BLOCK 2	BLOCK 3
	---% of Total Basal Area----		
Water Oak	20.4	24.9	32.6
Sweetgum	18.9	19.5	33.7
Willow Oak	18.9	11.2	9.7
Cherrybark Oak	9.1	2.6	9.1
Overcup Oak	5.2	5.5	0.9
Swamp Chestnut Oak	2.1	4.9	1.8
Other Oaks	0.9	2.8	0.3
Hornbeam	7.3	4.2	1.2
Blackgum	3.7	4.7	2.6
Other Species	13.5	19.7	8.1

*Average basal area per acre.

Volume figures provided by Temple-Eastex, Inc. indicated that approximately 5500 broad feet per acre of timber was cut during the harvest operation.

Regeneration Layer

Pre-harvest regeneration mil-acre plots revealed oaks and sweetgum to comprise 38 percent of an average 2793 seedlings per acre (Table 2). The majority of the remaining 62 percent consisted of shade tolerant species (hornbeam, American holly, hawthorn, Red maple).

Table 2.--Pre-harvest regeneration estimates for all research blocks.

SPECIES	BLOCK 1	BLOCK 2	BLOCK 3
	--------# trees/A. ----------		
All Species	3740	2280	2360
Sweetgum	400	661	121
Oaks	442	563	1301
Sweetgum + Oaks	842	1224	1422

1982 First-Growing Season

Blocks

The re-established regeneration plots revealed oaks and sweetgum to comprise 34 percent of an average of 6547 seedlings and sprouts per acre (Table 3). As in the pre-harvest inventory, the majority of the remaining 66 percent consisted of shade-tolerant species (hawthorn, hornbeam, slippery elm).

Table 3.--First-year regeneration estimates for al research blocks.

SPECIES	BLOCKS 1	BLOCKS 2	BLOCKS 3
	----------# trees/A.-------		
All Species	6820	6300	6520
Sweetgum	1957	1682	1402
Oaks	539	599	457
Sweetgum Oaks	2496	2281	1859

Site Preparation Treatments

Analysis of variance of the amount of sweetgum regeneration showed a significant difference between site preparation treatments (Table 4). Sweetgum regeneration was 59 percent higher or partial injection areas compared to control areas and over 600 percent higher than total injection areas. Oak regeneration appeared to decrease with an increase of site preparation intensity. Contro areas had over 330 percent more oaks than did shea and burn areas.

Table 4.--First-year regeneration estimates for al site preparation treatments.

SPECIES	TREATMENT PARTIAL INJECT	TOTAL INJECT	SHEAR	SHEAR, BURN	CONTRO
	--------------# trees/A.--------------				
All Species	7855	4910	8510	4585	6875
Sweetgum	2835*	460	2235	1100	1775
Oaks	745	565	345	230	775
Sweetgum + Oaks	3580	1023	2580	1330	2550

*Significant difference at probability level 0.01.

Other analysis of variance tests showed no differences between site preparation treatment of species composition, amounts of total species per acre, and individual species heights. However, species seedling or sprouting origin was analyzed and showed significant differences between site treatments. Further anlysis probably will show sweetgum sprouting is effected by different site preparation treatments (Table 5).

ble 5.--Origin of first-year regeneration stems.

ECIES	SEEDLINGS	SPROUTS
	------# trees/A.---------	
eetgum	561	1120
ks	366	166

1981 Vs. 1982 Regeneration

Test results for possible correlation between 1981 and 1982 regeneration were primarily btained by analysis of variance. Average reprouction per acre was tested and found that 1982 eproduction significantly increased total species, veetgum, and sweetgum plus oaks from 1981 reprouction levels (Table 6). These differences may e attributed to the sprouting ability of certain pecies. Sweetgum is inherently a more prolific prouter than oaks. Sweetgum regeneration averaged sprouts for each seedling, while oaks averaged seedlings for each sprout. Percent change of egeneration for each site preparation treatment as formulated between both seasons (Table 7).

able 6.--Comparison of pre-harvest and first-year stocking levels for all blocks.

PECIES	1981	1982
	------# trees/A.------	
ll Species	2793	6547*
weetgum	394	1681*
aks	813	532
weetgum + Oaks	1207	2213*

Significant difference of probability level 0.01.

able 7.--Percent change in pre-harvest and first-year regeneration stocking levels for all site preparation treatments.

	TREATMENT				
PECIES	PARTIAL INJECT	TOTAL INJECT	SHEAR	SHEAR, BURN	CONTROL
	---------	---------	%	---------	---------
ll Species	290	100	125	75	270
weetgum	750	70	270	265	280
aks	-38	0	-50	-74	10
weetgum +	130	25	90	10	210

The resulting 30 percent decrease in oak reroduction may subsequently result in a mature tand of sweetgum instead of oak. The 1981 preharvest overstory and herbaceous inventories showed oaks to comprise 54 percent and 29 percent of total composition respectively. The 1982 inventory showed oaks to comprise only 8 percent.

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

In 1981, a mature oak-sweetgum stand was harvested after an intensive overstory, suppressed layer, and herbaceous layer inventory was administered. During the following dormant season site preparation activities were conducted. Another inventory followed the 1982 growing season. Site preparation had little significance on amounts of new regeneration, species composition, and species heights. However, sweetgum responded to partial injection areas 159 percent more than control areas and 600 percent more than total injection areas.

Species composition changed from an oak-sweetgum stand in 1981 to a sweetgum regeneration area in 1982. Oak declined by 30 percent from the preharvest herbaceous inventory to the first-year regeneration inventory. Oaks also progressively declined with increased site preparation intensity.

The results of this study suggest that clearcutting followed by light intensity site preparation will sufficiently regenerate a bottomland hardwood site in deep East Texas. It is important that the original stand have a high proportion of mature desirables. Of these desirables, some must have prolific sprouting ability to assure early establishment and subsequent dominance.

LITERATURE CITED

Kellison, R. C., D. J. Frederick, and W. E. Gardner. 1981. A guide for regenerating and managing natural stands of southern hardwoods. North Carolina Agricultural Res. Serv. Bulletin 463, 24 p.

McKnight, J. S. 1966. Application of uneven-aged silviculture to southern hardwood forests. In Proceedings: Symp. on Hardwoods of Piedmont and Coastal Plain. Georgia For. Res. Coun. Macon, GA. p. 61-64.

Smith, D. M. 1962. The Practice of Silviculture. John Wiley and Sons, Inc., New York. 578 p.

Woessner, R. A. 1971. Quality hardwoods for tomorrow--WGFTIP hardwood tree improgram program. South. Lumberman 223:82-93.

APPENDIX

Scientific and Common Name of Wood Species

Scientific Name	Common Name
Acer rubrum L.	Red Maple
Carpinus caroliniana Walt.	American Hornbeam
Crataegus spp.	Hawthorn
Ilex opaca Ait.	American Holly
Liquidambar styraciflua L.	Sweetgum
Nyssa sylvatica Marsh.	Blackgum
Quercus falcata var. pagodaefolia Ell.	Cherrybark Oak
Quercus lyrata Walt.	Overcup Oak
Quercus michauxii Nutt.	Swamp Chestnut Oak
Quercus nigra L.	Water Oak
Quercus phellos L.	Willow Oak

1/ Names bases on Little, Elbert L., 1980, The Audubon Society Field Guide to North America Trees.

WATER OAK REGENERATION IN THE SOUTH'S UPLAND BOTTOMLAND[1]

John C. Adams[2]

Abstract.--Water oak (Quercus nigra L.) is an important component of the small bottoms and hardwood producing stands located in areas classified as pine types. The species is highly variable and in natural stands produces excellent timber. Plantation establishment has not proven as successful as expected primarily because of a problem with dieback and slow growth in the two years following planting. The result of this problem will be a continuation of the use of natural reproduction to reestablish stands, or the use of other oak species which apparently suffer less from the dieback problem.

INTRODUCTION

Water oak (Quercus nigra L.) occupies a very large range across the south from the coastal areas to the foothills of the mountains. The species occurs on a variety of sites but makes its best development on well drained moist soils. Genetically the species is very diverse and a number of hybrids have been recognized (Ingens-Moller 1955, Fowells 1965). Phenotypically the species is quite plastic in response to the environment in which it exists.

Water oak is in the red oak group but is generally not considered one of the select red oaks as is cherrybark (Q. falcata var. pagodaefolia Ell.) and Shumard (Q. shumardii Buck L.) (Kingsley and Powell 1979). However, water oak is an important species and is used for a variety of products across its range. It is a component of several bottomland types and widespread in the smaller stream bottoms and waterways located in the lower south.

It is these smaller waterways, intermittent streams, and flats located throughout the pine hill country of the Gulf coastal plain that this paper references as upland-bottomlands. These are not in the major river bottoms but are hardwood producing areas found in what is generally considered pine land. In this area water oak contributes heavily to the hardwood resource.

Since water oak is a viable component of these forested areas, and in certain of these a major component, the species needs attention if we are to improve the individual stands and make them productive after years of absence of management.

IMPROVEMENT OF THE WATER OAK COMPONENT

In 1976-77 two projects were initiated at Louisiana Tech University. One was genetic improvement of water and willow oak and the other was silviculture improvement of bottomland hardwoods. The genetic project was designed to investigate the diversity within water oak and develop materials that could be used in plantation establishment. The second project was to determine methods of establishing hardwood plantations in the small upland bottoms. The following is a summation of observations made during the past five years of working with water oak.

Seedling Production. Nursery production of water oak is relatively simple and suitable seedlings can be grown in one season. Seedling spacing in the nursery beds has been 8-16 feet per square foot with the higher number producing the best plantable seedlings from a size (handling) and root/shoot ratio standpoint. An additional year in the nursery beds (2-0 seedlings) results in seedlings that are greatly out of root/shoot balance and extremely difficult to handle in plantation establishment.

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta,GA, November 3-5,1982.

[2] Associate Professor of Forestry, School of Forestry, Louisiana Tech University, Ruston, Louisiana.

One problem noted with large scale nursery production is the inability of the collection crews to collect only water oak acorns. In a representative nursery bed water oak, willow oak, laurel oak and hybrids of two of the above can be found. This is a problem because the water oak is a higher quality species than laurel and some of the hybrid material. Poor performance from planting mixtures of these species gives water oak a bad reputation from a quality standpoint. Similar seed morphology of these species causes this problem and probably the best way to avoid these mixtures is correct identification of the parent trees by seed collection crews.

An alternative to the bare rooted seedlings is containerization. Considerable interest in this technique has been expressed and the use of these containerized seedlings may prove advantageous. Elam et al (1982) has shown that water oak can be grown in containers and successfully out planted. Containerized seedlings research at Louisiana Tech has shown that healthy water oaks can be grown in a variety of containers but the size of the seedlings (generally less than 10 inches) severely limits their use without intensive cultivation following planting. Size limitation recommendations for quality hardwood bare-root seedlings of 30-36 inches in height and 1/4 - 3/8 inches root collar diameter (McKnight and Johnson 1980, Weber 1972) may be offset in containers by minimizing the disturbance to the root system.

Plantation Establishment. Several small plantations have been established to obtain a better understanding of problems associated with planting water oak and related species in these small hardwood bottoms. In each plantation the site was well prepared by discing and care was taken to handle the seedlings for maximum survival. Seedlings were either grown in the Louisiana Office of Forestry nursery or the Louisiana Tech University nursery. One planting was with 2-0 seedlings and the others were with 1-0 seedlings. In each planting only healthy seedlings were used and care was given to plant seedling properly.

The first problem encountered was with the 2-0 seedlings. They were too large for efficient handling (average height approximately five feet) and resulted in difficulty in planting. Shortly after planting in February strong winds caused many of the larger seedlings to bend over and they never recovered. The top was too heavy for recovery. Consequently the seedlings either died or sprouted from below. Smaller seedlings (approximately 3 feet in height did not show this problem with wind damage.

The second and most severe problem is the dieback phenomenon associated with newly planted seedlings. In each planting over a three year period using genotypically different seedlings from two nurseries, the pattern of dieback and reflushing of leaves was present.

Three different dieback patterns were noted.

1. Normal leaf flush starts, then all new development dies. Sprouting then comes from the stem or the root collar of the seedling. The seedling above the secondary flush is dead.

2. No leaf flush starts and seedlings appear dead. Leaf flush starts as much as 40 days after water oak in the area has flushed and the flush is from the stem.

3. No leaf flush starts and seedlings appear dead. Leaf flush may be delayed until mid-summer and flushing comes from the root collar or below.

Where dieback occurred and flushing was from the stem, leaves were small and appear to be much less vigorous than those from the root collar are The effect of this dieback is to negate the production of large, strong seedlings in the nurseries.

In one plantation in which water oak, cherrybark, Shumard and Nuttall (Q. nuttallii Palmer) are represented, only the water oak shows this dieback characteristic in significant amounts. This indicates that water oak may be more sensitive to bare-root transplanting than are the other oaks.

There are two possibilities for improvement of this dieback problem. One is to avoid seedlings that are too large (greater than 36 inches). The larger seedlings result in a root/shoot ratio that is apparently out of balance which causes problems for the newly established seedlings. The second possible improvement is to lift the seedlings during the hard winter months. Seedlings lifted toward the end of the planting season show more transplant shock then those lifted earlier. Water oak seedlings in nursery beds retain their leaves throughout the winter. The possibility exist for these seedlings to start metabolic activities related to growth when warm days occur during the winter. If lifted at this time, there may be more transplant problems.

ALTERNATIVES TO PLANTATIONS

Generally plantation establishment in
all bottoms has had low priority for both the
ivate individual and industrial landowner.
ne is the predominant tree crop with high value
d low management cost. Most research indicates
at successful hardwood plantation establishment
quires intensive site preparation (Hunt 1976,
nnedy 1980). This requires considerable in-
stment in preparation before planting and in
ltivation for one to three years after
anting. In the areas where pine is king from
value standpoint, there has been little in-
ntive for the landowner (large or small) to in-
st in their hardwood holdings. Only in the
jor river bottoms where hardwoods predominant
this plantation cost considered cost
fective.

The difficulty of establishing water
k plantations, expense in maintaining plan-
tions, and low stumpage prices leaves the
obability of widespread interest of this
ecies and other hardwoods in these small
ttoms in doubt. However, these bottoms will
ntinue to support hardwood and land managers
n use sound silvicultural techniques to es-
blish and maintain productive natural stands.
tural stands will not be pure water oak, sweet-
m, or cherrybark but a mixture from which the
st trees will eventually reach rotation age.

From a productivity standpoint one
ilvicultural system is most practical. This is
learcutting in small patches (< 80 acres). Most
the hardwood stands have been mismanaged both
private and industrial ownership. This mis-
anagement is the result of low prices and a
ack of knowledge of the hardwood resource by
e foresters on the ground, most of whom have
een trained in and work with pine. The results
re stands that are mix-species and evenage or
lose to evenage with a high percentage of cull
r poor quality stems. The simpliest method to
andle these stands is the clearcut and natural
eproduction (primarily rootsprouts). A mar-
inal low productivity forest is eliminated and
new dynamic evenage, mixed species hardwood
orest will emerge. This forest will be much
implier to handle from a silvicultural stand-
oint and in the long run more productive be-
ause of the simplicity.

Until problems associated with plan-
ation establishment of water oak or other hard-
ood species are solved, most of the small
ottoms will be reproduced naturally. Poterfield
t al (1977) in their economic analysis of hard-
ood plantations and natural stands also in-
icated no foreseeable widespread move in the
irection of plantations in the management of
ardwood stands.

CONCLUSION

Planting of water oak plantations in the small bottoms of the lower mid-South does not look promising. Economic considerations of site preparation, planting, and cultivation for water oak and other hardwood are difficult to justify with today's market prices for stumpage. Also water oak apparently has physiological problems in movement from nursery beds to the field which results in poor initial performance and makes the use of this species in plantations highly unlikely until some of the planting problems can be solved. Until methods and techniques are developed to solve these problems, natural reproduction following a clearcut will probably be the most effective method to regenerate these hardwood stand. Water oak will be a component of these stands but not necessary the predominant species. Sound low cost silvicultural techniques can greatly increase the productivity of stands resulting from poor or no management in the past.

LITERATURE CITED

Elam, W. W., J. D. Hodges, and D. J. Moorhead.
1982. Production of containerized southern red oaks and their performances after outplanting. In Proc. South Cont. Forest Tree Seedl. Conf. (Aug. 1981). U.S.D.A. General Tech. Rep. SO-37: 69-76.

Fowells, H. A., ed.
1965. Silvics of forest trees of the United States. U.S.D.A. Agric. Handb. 271. 762 p.

Hunt, R.
1976. Hardwood management guide. International Paper Co. Tech. Bull. 9. 9 p.

Ingens-Moller, H.
1955. Forest tree genetics research: Quercus L. Econ. Bot. 9(1): 53-71.

Kennedy, H. E., Jr.
1980. Bottomland hardwoods research on site preparation, plantation establishment, and cultural treatments at the southern hardwood laboratory. Proc. Biennial Southern Silviculture. Res. Conf. 1: 75-78.

Kingsley, N. P., and D. S. Powell.
1979. Oak: Where is it? Where has it been? Where's it going? Hdwd. Res. Counc. Annu. Symp. 7: 12-23.

McKnight, J. S., and R. L. Johnson.
1980. Hardwood management in southern bottomlands. Forest Farmer (23 manual ed.) 39(5): 30-39.

Porterfield, R. K. Utz, and W. Bolmer.
1977. Financial evaluation of artificial vs. natural regeneration of bottomland hardwoods. Proc. Symp. on Southeast. Hdwds. 2: 1-16.

Weber, W. P.
1972. What the forest owner is looking for in a hardwood seedling. Proc. Southeast. Area Forest Tree Nurseryman's Conf. (Western Session): 5-8.

FIRST-YEAR GROWTH OF ETIOLATED NORTHERN RED OAK[1/]

G. M. Hopper, D. Wm. Smith, and D. J. Parrish[2/]

Abstract.--Rapid height growth in northern red oak (Quercus rubra L.) seedlings may be an important factor in the early establishment of plantation culture. Red oaks grow very slowly during the formative years and any cultural practice that would stimulate height growth and stem elongation rates would benefit artificial regeneration of oaks, provided such treatments do not impair survival and subsequent seedling growth. Northern red oak and bear oak (Quercus ilicifolia Wangenh.) acorns were germinated and then grown in the dark at 25/15°C (16/8 hr.). The etiolated seedlings were then moved to 60% sunlight in a greenhouse for four weeks so that leaf expansion and stem lignification would stabilize the seedling. Dark-grown seedlings were taller than light-grown plants. Survival data and one season growth data after outplanting was collected on etiolated northern red oak seedlings and compared to typical 1-0 and 2-0 nursery stock.

INTRODUCTION

Interplanting of northern red oak, a valuable timber species, may improve stand composition and increase stocking levels, on sites where natural red oak regeneration is low. However, early seedling growth is slow and seedlings do not compete well with herbaceous and more intolerant woody species (Olson and Hooper, 1972; Russell, 1972; Wendle, 1980). Various treatments have been tried to increase growth of transplanted seedlings: mulching, cultivation, herbicides, top pruning, fertilization and use of older seedlings, all have failed. However, seedling size at planting was found to correlate positively with subsequent seedling growth in northern red oak in plantation culture (Wendle, 1980). Wendle, therefore, recommended larger "super seedlings" be used for outplanting.

Northern red oak seedlings that have been grown for a brief period in the dark respond with enhanced shoot elongation, etiolation, and thus produce taller seedlings. This dark treatment may prove useful for more rapid growth of red oa from seed. Such a conditioning might permit fal collected seeds to be outplanted as seedlings th following spring, thus eliminating at least one year of nursery growth and reducing costs.

Etiolation occurs whenever a plant grows without light. Depletion of the plant's metabol reserves results in a decrease in total plant dr weight. Etiolated stems are notably taller and thinner than light-grown stems. This photomorphogenetic response is due to internal mechanisms within the plant. Etiolation is commonly used in seed testing. Differences in growth during the etiolated elongation of shoots can be used to distinguish various seedlot genotypes or treatment effects. When etiolated growth was used for testing on northern red oak in a previo study, we observed great increases in shoot lengths. Subsequently, it was observed that lea development following such a dark treatment was normal and that stem thickening occurred rapidly near the base of the shoot once light was restor and photosynthesis was begun. Based on these observations, an experiment was designed to 1) evaluate etiolation as a method to increase early height growth in northern red oak and thereby produce larger planting stock for field planting in a short period of time; and 2) compa growth and development parameters of one-year etiolated seedlings with normal nursery stock.

[1/] Paper presented at Second Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982. Financial support provided by Reynolds Homestead Research Center and McIntire-Stennis funds.

[2/] Research Assistant, Associate Professor of Forest Soils and Silviculture, and Assistant Professor of Crop Physiology, Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University, Blacksburg, Virginia 24061

METHODS AND MATERIALS

Seed Collection, Handling and Germination

Acorns were collected from the ground under the canopies of nine northern red oaks (Quercus rubra L.) in Blacksburg, Virginia (elevation 700m) between 22 and 27 October 1981. The acorns were then submerged briefly to float off trash and bad seeds. Moisture content was determined gravimetrically from three samples of five acorns each. The samples were weighed fresh and then oven dried at 105°C for 24 hours. Moisture content at collection was 64% (oven dry weight basis). Seeds were soaked (imbibed) for 52 hours during which the moisture content was increased to 70%. All acorns were placed in trays on moist vermiculite/peat potting medium, covered with wet paper towels and stratified at 5°C. After 16 weeks of stratification, acorns were germinated in place on the trays in a darkened growth chamber at 25/15°C (16/18 hours thermoperiod). Germination after 28 days was more than 90% and germination rates were good (90% in 10 days). A seed was considered germinated once the emerged radicle showed positive geotropism.

Etiolated Growth and Early Conditioning

Germinated acorns (1 to 2 days old) were planted in one liter plastic pots in a vermiculite/peat potting medium. The pots were placed in a growth chamber at 25/15°C, 16/8 hours in total darkness. Seedlings were grown for four weeks. Simultaneously, germinated acorns were planted in pots in potting medium and grown for 4 weeks in a greenhouse (light treatment). Growth measurements were taken from both dark-grown and light-grown northern red oak seedlings after the initial 4 weeks growth period. The etiolated seedlings were transfered to the greenhouse under 60% shade (obtained with fiber glass shade cloth) for 3 weeks. To complete full-light adaptation conditioning, seedlings were then transfered to full sunlight for another 3 weeks.

Bear Oak Study

In a corollary species trial, bear oak (Quercus ilicifolia Wangenh.) seeds from southwest Virginia were stratified for 12 weeks and germinated as previously described for northern red oak. Germinated acorns were planted in root trainers in the greenhouse under 60% shade. One-half the seedlings were totally enclosed in cardboard boxes for 6 weeks (dark treatment). After 6 weeks, the boxes were removed. Growth measurements were then taken on both light-grown and dark-grown bear oak seedlings.

Outplanting of Northern Red Oak

On 5 May 1982, forty light conditioned, etiolated, northern red oak seedlings were planted at 25 x 25 cm spacing in a fertilized (Osmocote 10-16-8, +Fe) nursery bed at Critz, Virginia. Seedlings were hand planted in an effort to keep the root system intact. Also, 50 stratified and pregerminated acorns from the same seedlot were planted at a similar density in the same nursery bed. Etiolated seedlings were staked. Except for irrigation, no further treatments were imposed on the seedlings.

Lifting

All seedlings were lifted by hand on 12 October 1982. The seedlings were brought to the lab, cleaned and measured. Shoot lengths, root lengths, root collar diameters, shoot and root dry weights (oven dried at 60°C, 52 hours), number of leaves, and number of flushes (as indicated by bud scale scars) were measured on each seedling.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

There was some initial concern about the survival and establishment potential of the etiolated seedlings, because of the spindly nature and top heaviness of the etiolated structure. To the contrary, the results showed that better than 90% survival was recorded on the etiolated plants after the first growing season. Although the nursery bed competition was probably not as severe as average field competition, the nursery was not weeded or treated for competition in any way. Oaks in general are very hardy; and, with proper handling, survival in artificial regeneration systems should not pose a problem.

Etiolated seedlings of northern red oak and bear oak were taller than light-grown plants (fig. 1). Both species behaved similarly, although bear oak is a small seeded red oak species, and northern red oak is a large seeded species. Height growth in the dark was more than twofold greater in bear oak and nearly two and a half fold greater in northern red oak. If the taller seedlings stay taller and grow faster, this effect might benefit production of large container stock. Outplanting larger seedlings has been reported to provide some advantage in future seedling growth (Wendle, 1980).

Differences in growth after one season in a nursery bed between etiolated seedlings and seedlings produced from spring sown seeds were compared (Table 1). Etiolated seedlings were larger in almost every growth parameter measured. They were taller, had larger root systems and were thicker at the root collar than normal seedlings.

The production of more vigorous planting stock might be beneficial by increasing the early growth and establishment of red oaks. Farmer

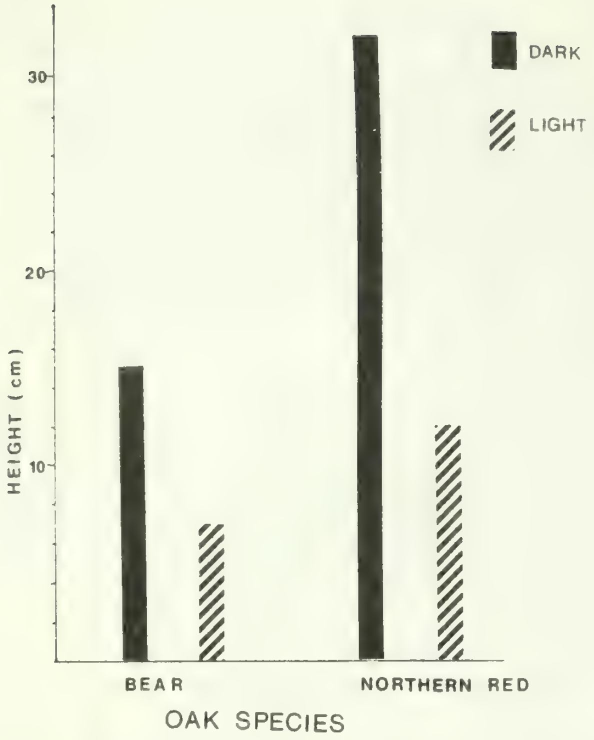


Figure 1.--Growth differences in bear oak and northern red oak seedlings after four (red oak) or six (bear oak) weeks of growth in the dark or light.

(1975) suggested that increasing the juvenile shoot growth in red oaks would increase leaf are and thus produce larger root systems and more vigorous seedlings. Although the number of leav appeared to be greater for normal seedlings, thi was due to increased branching in normal seedlin Etiolated seedlings tended to have one unbranche stem.

The mean growth of etiolated seedlings woul have been greater if all the etiolated seedlings had continued to grow after planting. However, only 46% of the etiolated seedlings continued growth after planting, while the other 54% of th outplanted seedlings appeared to set dormant bud Farmer (1975) reported that the variability in bud set and bud break was hormonally and genetic controlled in northern red oak.

Comparisons of differences within the etiol seedlings are given in Table 2. There were significant growth differences between the seedlings that did not increase in height growth after planting and those plants that had multiple growth flushes. The number of leaves for the growing etiolated plants was 25 versus only 3 for the non-growing seedlings, and may represent a vital statistic in increasing the production of large seedlings. Height growth means for growing plants were nearly twofold larger (61.6 to 34.5 cm) than non-growing seedlings and more than two times greater (61.6 to 27.9) than normal seedlings. Similarly, root collar diameters were larger for growing etiolated seedlings with 10 mm versus onl 7.6 mm in non-growing etiolated plants and 6.3 mm in normal seedlings. Dry weight data show that seedlings that were etiolated were heavier, thus producing more biomass with more than half the

Table 1.--Vital growth parameters at end of one season for etiolated northern red oak seedlings (n = 35) versus normal spring sown seedlings (n = 35) of similar seed origin.

Growth Parameter	Etiolated Seedlings	Normal Seedlings
Heights (cm)	46.5a[1/]	27.9b
Root length (cm)	29.0a	25.7b
Root collar diameter (mm)	8.8a	6.3b
Total dry weight (gms)	14.7a	8.7b
Root dry weight (gms)	9.5a	6.6b
Shoot dry weight (gms)	5.2a	2.0b
Number leaves	13.7a	18.6a
Number flushes	2.6a	2.8a
Root/Shoot ratio (gms/gms)	2.1b	3.4a

[1/] Means in a line not followed by the same letter are significantly different ($p < .05$) as determined by the Duncan's New Multiple Range Test.

Table 2.--Comparison within the etiolated treated northern red oak seedlings between those seedlings that did not grow after planting and those seedlings that grew considerably after planting during the first year.

Growth Variable	All Seedlings	Seedlings With Minimal Growth (n=19)	Seedlings With Growth (n=16)
Height (cm)	46.5b[1]	34.5c	61.6a
Root length (cm)	29.0a	30.0a	28.1a
Root collar diameter (mm)	8.8b	7.6c	10.0a
Total dry weight (gms)	14.7b	7.7c	23.8a
Root dry weight (gms)	9.5b	5.4c	14.8a
Shoot dry weight (gms)	5.2b	2.3c	9.0a
Number leaves	13.7b	3.2c	25.1a
Number flushes	2.6b	1.4c	4.2a
Root/Shoot (gms/gms)	2.1ab	2.3a	1.8b

[1] Means in a line not followed by the same letter are significantly different ($p<.05$) as determined by the Duncan's New Multiple Range Test.

weight invested in root growth. Large root systems have been reported to be a vital requisite for good oak growth in the field (Farmer, 1975; Sander, 1971). These variations within the etiolated seedling population are probably associated with a genetic component, since the seedlings were produced from a mixed seed lot.

Further comparisons were made among northern red oak nursery stock from a Virginia nursery, two West Virginia nurseries, a Pennsylvania nursery and etiolated seedlings in this study (Table 3). The etiolated treatment produced taller stems, and larger root collar diameters than nursery grown seedlings of similar climate. Even seedlings

Table 3.--Comparisons of etiolated seedling root collar diameter, heights, and root lengths with nursery stock from two West Virginia nurseries (two years data), Virginia and Pennsylvania nurseries.

Source	Age	TRT	Root Collar Diameter	Height	Root Length
	(year)		(mm)	(cm)	(cm)
Va. Reynolds, 1982	1-0	etiolated	8.8	46	29
Va. Reynolds, 1982	1-0	spring sown	6.2	27	25
W. Va. Parsons, 1982	1-0	fall sown	5.1	23	21
W. Va. Clements, 1972	1-0	fall sown	5.1	19	21
W. Va. Parsons, 1972	1-0	fall sown	8.0	23	23
W. Va. Clements, 1971	2-0	fall sown	4.3	21	21
W. Va. Parsons, 1971	2-0	fall sown	4.3	21	28
Pennsylvania, 1981	2-0	fall sown	---	27	--

[1] W. Va. nursery data were provided by David McCurdy, Nursery Superintendent, Parsons, WV and represent averages of two to four nursery beds.

with two years of nursery growth (2-0) were not as large as the etiolated plants. Common nursery stock from these systems produce healthy seedlings; however, the proposed etiolation treatment can improve the size and quality of the seedlings. More importantly, the etiolated method will allow for production of a plantable oak seedling in less than one year, thus eliminating the nursery costs and one or two years delay prior to planting.

CONCLUSIONS

Etiolation may be a feasible alternative to costly chemical treatments, herbicide control, large container systems, mulching, and fertilization now being tested for increasing height growth in oaks. The effects from etiolation on seedling growth are substantial and this process appears to be beneficial to the overall quality of the seedling.

The finer details of the technique may still be improved upon and the overall growth potential is probably greater than reported in this paper. A schematic of the proposed etiolation method is given in Figure 2. Etiolation side effects do not appear to impair survival of subsequent growth. The conservative shoot growth normally associated with the juvenile stage of northern red oak must be improved in order to produce large leaf surface areas for root production and faster growth rates once field planted. This low investment treatment may be worthwhile if the "super seedlings" maint vigorous growth and height advantage as previous reported.

Figure 2.--Schematic of proposed method for use of etiolation as early height growth stimulus for northern red oak seedlings.

Proposed Date	Operation
early- to mid-October	collect acorns
↓	↓
15 October to 1 January	stratify acorns
↓	↓
1 January to 1 February	plant germinated acorns in container, in dark
↓	↓
1 February to 1 April	remove etiolated seedlings to partial shade for light adaption period
↓	↓
early April to early May	outplant

Although untested on other genera and speci this method may be a viable solution for increas height growth in many other large seeded tree species with slow early growth such as walnuts, tupeloes, and other oaks.

LITERATURE CITED

Farmer, R. E., Jr.
1975. Growth and assimilation rate of juvenil northern red oak: Effects of light and temperature. For. Sci. 21:373-381.

Olson, D. F. and R. M. Hooper.
1972. Northern red oak plantings survive well in southern Appalachians. Tree Plant. Notes 23:16-18.

Russell, T. E.
1972. Survival and growth of barslit planted northern red oak studied in Tennessee. Tree Plant. Notes 24:6-9.

Sander, I. L.
1971. Height growth of new oak sprouts depend on size of advance reproduction. J. For. 69:809-811.

Wendle, G. W.
1980. Growth and survival of planted northern red oak seedlings in West Virginia. South. J. Appl. For. 4:49-54.

RESPONSE OF UNDERPLANTED SEEDLINGS TO CANOPY REMOVAL IN UPPER PIEDMONT HARDWOOD STANDS

T.J. Tworkoski, D.Wm. Smith, and D.J. Parrish

Abstract.--Three levels of canopy removal (90, 70, and 0% residual canopy cover) were performed to determine the effect of clearcutting and shelterwood harvesting on survival and growth of 3- and 4-year-old underplanted seedlings of white oak (Quercus alba L.), northern red oak (Q. rubra L.), and eastern white pine (Pinus strobus L.). In the second year following harvest, height growth of red oak averaged 21.2 cm in the clearcut and less than 4 cm under 70 or 90% shade. Similarly, second year white oak height growth was 10.3 cm under 0% shade but less than 4 cm under the shelterwood or no-cut treatments. Over a two year period, white pine grew taller than either oak species under all harvest treatments. In the second year following harvest, white pine in the cut stands averaged 19 cm height growth while those in uncut stands averaged 10 cm. These results indicate that these underplanted seedlings can survive and are potentially competitive with other vegetation following canopy removal.

INTRODUCTION

As a result of improper management, the typical southern upland hardwood stand is dominated by low quality trees and inferior species (Kellison et al. 1980). Soem commercially valuable oak (Quercus) species are difficult to reestablish due to insufficient advance regeneration prior to harvest (Carvell and Tryon 1961) and because of slow growth following canopy removal (Trimble 1974). Planting in the understory (underplanting) may help alleviate some of these problems. First, sufficient numbers of oak regenerants can be ensured by underplanting several years prior to harvest. Second, it is possible that several years in the understory may permit oak seedlings to become established and to develop a root/shoot ratio that is conducive to rapid growth upon canopy removal. Third, underplanting may eliminate the need for complete site preparation and reduce the needs for post-harvest cultural practices that are necessary for successful establishment of hardwood plantations (Brenneman 1980).

This study was concerned with growth of underplanted seedlings following various levels of canopy removal. The objective was to examine the effect of canopy removal on shoot growth of underplanted northern red oak (Quercus rubra L.), white oak (Q. alba L.), and eastern white pine (Pinus strobus L.) seedlings during the first two growing seasons after canopy removal. These three species occupy similar ecological niches (Fowells 1965). In addition, underplanting of white pine on poor hardwood stands has been found to be successful (Wendel 1971).

MATERIALS AND METHODS

This study was conducted at the Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University Reynolds Homestead Research Center near Critz, Virginia. Red oak, white oak, and white pine seedlings had been planted in 1977 and 1978 under a mixed hardwood canopy. Twelve plots, randomly scattered across intervening slopes between two major ridges were selected. Stand composition included yellow-poplar (Liriodendron tulipifera L.), maples (Acer spp.), oaks (Quercus spp.), beech (Fagus grandifolia Ehrh.), and Virginia pine (Pinus virginiana L.). The

---

1/Paper presented at Second Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982. Financial support provided by Reynolds Homestead Research Center and McIntire-Stennis funds.

2/Research Assistant, Associate Professor of Forest Soils and Silviculture, and Assistant Professor of Crop Physiology, Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University, Blacksburg, Virginia 24061.

understory was composed of small hardwood reproduction and honeysuckle (Lonicera japonica L.) Madison fine sandy loam (Typic Hapludult) and Louisa loam (Ruptic-Ultic Dystrochrept) were the two major soils on these slopes.

In the winter of 1980-81, each plot received one of three levels of canopy removal: (1) none; (2) moderate; and (3) clearfelling. These levels of canopy removal resulted, respectively, in 90, 70, and 0% canopy cover during the growing season as measured by a spherical densiometer (Lemmon 1956). Treatments consisted of the three levels of canopy removal and the three species in an unbalanced and nested design. Heights of underplanted seedlings were measured on 1 April, 1 July, and 1 October during 1981 and 1982. Diameters (3 cm above the root collar) were measured on 1 October of each year. Differences at the .05 alpha level were considered significant, and means were separated by Harvey's procedure (Harvey 1975).

RESULTS

Height and Diameter Growth Comparisons Within Canopy Treatments

Height growth of white pine was consistently greater than red or white oak across all treatments (Table 1). Red and white oak did not differ significantly in height growth during either season. In the no-cut treatment (90% shade), white pine grew significantly taller over the two year period than red or white oak (18.7 cm for white pine vs. 0.8 and 4.5 cm for red and white oak, respectively). Under full canopy, oaks grew less in 1982 than in 1981 whereas white pine showed no difference between years. Red oak height increment was negative during 1982, reflecting a stem die-back that frequently occurs in oak (Tworkoski 1982).

Height growth of white pine was also greater than oak under 70% shade (Table 1). Height increments of white oak did not differ significantly from those of red oak. However, unlike the no-cut treatment, there were no differences in height growth for oaks across years (approximately 3 cm both years). The 1982 white pine growth two years after partial canopy removal was more than twice the 1981 increment.

Yearly height growth in the clearcut (0% shade) treatment differed from the partial and full shade treatments (Table 1). Oak, as well as white pine height growth was greater in 1982 than 1981. The two year total height growth of white pine was not significantly greater than red oak (24.1 cm vs. 22.4 cm, respectively). Two year height growth of white oak (11.9 cm) was significantly less than red oak and white pine.

Table 1. Mean height growth of underplanted white oak, northern red oak, and white pine seedlings in canopy removal treatment areas in Patrick County, VA.

Measurment Period	Species RO[1]	 WO	 WP
	---Height Increment (cm)---		
	NO CANOPY REMOVAL		
1981	3.0 b[2]	3.3 b	9.5 a
1982	-2.2 b	1.2 ab	9.2 a
Two Year Total	0.8 b	4.5 b	18.7 a
	PARTIAL CANOPY REMOVAL		
1981	2.9 a	3.2 a	6.4 a
1982	4.2 b	2.7 b	16.7 a
Two Year Total	7.1 b	5.9 b	23.1 a
	COMPLETE CANOPY REMOVAL		
1981	1.2 a	0.6 a	3.4 a
1982	21.2 a	10.3 a	20.7 a
Two Year Total	22.4 a	11.9 b	24.1 a

[1] RO=red oak, WO=white oak, WP=white pine.
[2] Within each row, means followed by the same letter are not significantly different at alpha level .05 (Harvey's Procedure).

Species comparisons indicate that diameter growth trends did not parallel height growth trends (Table 2). Diameter growth in 1982 of all species was greater than 1981 growth. Although white pine diameter growth was consistently greater than that of oak, the difference was not statistically detectable as frequently as were height growth differences.

Table 2. Mean diameter growth of underplanted white oak, northern red oak, and white pine seedlings in canopy removal treatment areas in Patrick County, VA.

Measurment Period	Species RO[1]	 WO	 WP
	---Diameter Increment (mm)---		
	NO CANOPY REMOVAL		
1981	-0.2 a[2]	-0.2 a	0.3 a
1982	0.6 b	0.5 b	2.4 a
Two Year Total	0.4 b	0.3 b	2.7 a
	PARTIAL CANOPY REMOVAL		
1981	0.3 a	-0.3 a	0.0 a
1982	2.3 ab	0.8 b	4.0 a
Two Year Total	2.6 a	0.5 b	4.0 a
	COMPLETE CANOPY REMOVAL		
1981	0.8 a	-0.7 b	-0.8 b
1982	5.0 b	3.0 b	9.1 a
Two Year Total	5.8 a	2.3 b	8.3 a

[1] RO=red oak, WO=white oak, WP=white pine.
[2] Within each row, means followed by the same letter are not significantly different at alpha level .05 (Harvey's Procedure)

In the no canopy removal treatment, diameter growth of white pine (2.7 mm) was significantly greater than that of oak (approximately 0.5 mm). In partial shade, diameter growth of white pine (4.0 mm) and red oak (2.6 mm) were significantly greater than white oak (0.5 mm). This difference is attributable to 1982 growth since 1981 growth for all three species was was close to zero. Diameter growth of the three species with complete canopy removal was greater and followed the same trend as seedlings growing under partial canopy removal. Diameter increment of white pine (8.3 mm) and red oak (5.8 mm) were significantly greater than white oak (2.3 mm).

Height and Diameter Growth of Individual Species: Canopy Treatment Effects

Regardless of species, two year height growth was greatest under 0% shade and least under 90% shade (Table 3). This ranking of treatment effects was primarily due to 1982 growth. During 1981 the ranking of treatment effects was reversed for red oak and white pine; i.e. growth under 90% shade was greater than 70% shade growth, while 0% shade growth was least.

able 3. Mean height growth of each species within each canopy removal treatment area in Patrick County, VA.

easurment eriod	NC[1]	PC	CC
	---Height Increment (cm)--		
	WHITE OAK		
1981	3.3 a[2]	3.2 a	3.4 a
1982	1.2 a	2.7 a	10.3 a
Two Year Total	4.5 a	5.9 a	13.7 a
	RED OAK		
1981	3.0 a	2.9 a	1.2 a
1982	-2.2 b	4.2 b	21.2 a
Two Year Total	1.8 b	7.1 b	22.4 a
	WHITE PINE		
1981	9.5 a	6.4 ab	3.4 b
1982	9.2 b	16.7 ab	20.7 a
Two Year Total	18.7 a	23.1 a	24.1 a

[1] NC=no canopy removal; PC=partial canopy removal; CC= complete canopy removal.

[2] Within each row, means followed by the same letter are not significantly different at alpha level .05 (Harvey's Procedure).

White oak height increment was approximately 3 cm during 1981 across all canopy removal treatments. In 1982, height growth of white oak under 0% shade was more than four times that of white oak grown under any shade. However, due to high variability, the two-year total of white oak height growth did not differ significantly among canopy removal treatments.

Height growth of red oak under 0% shade during 1982 was more than five times that of red oak grown under any shade. The increase in white pine height growth due to clearfelling was not as dramatic as in the oaks (Two-year totals: 24.1 cm under 0% shade, 23.1 cm under 70% shade, and 18.7 cm under 90% shade).

Diameter growth during 1982 and the two-year total was greater with increased canopy removal for all species (Table 4). White oak displayed a two year net diameter increase of 2.2 mm in clearfelled and 0.4 mm in partially or no-felled areas. Diameter growth of red oak was low on 90% shaded areas and significantly increased as canopy removal increased (Two-year totals of 0.4, 2.6, and 5.8 mm for no cut, partial cut, and complete cut, respectively). During 1981, white pine displayed a net diameter loss in the clearfelled treatment. However, 1982 diameter growth was so large that two-year total diameter growth was significantly greater in the clearfelled area than in the other treatments (2.7, 4.0, and 8.3 mm for no, partial, and complete canopy removal, respectively).

Table 4. Mean diameter growth of each species within each canopy removal treatment area in Patrick County, VA.

Measurment Period	NC[1]	PC	CC
	---Diameter Increment (mm)--		
	WHITE OAK		
1981	-0.2 a[2]	-0.3 ab	-0.8 b
1982	0.5 b	0.8 ab	3.0 a
Two Year Total	0.3 a	0.5 a	2.2 a
	RED OAK		
1981	-0.2 b	0.3 ab	0.8 a
1982	0.6 b	2.3 a	5.0 a
Two Year Total	0.4 b	2.6 a	5.8 a
	WHITE PINE		
1981	0.3 a	0.0 a	-0.8 a
1982	2.4 b	4.0 ab	9.1 a
Two Year Total	2.7 b	4.0 b	8.3 a

[1] NC=no canopy removal; PC=partial canopy removal, CC= complete canopy removal.

[2] Within each row, means followed by the same letter are not significantly different at alpha level .05 (Harvey's Procedure).

DISCUSSION

Species comparisons under the no canopy removal treatment indicate that white pine competes more effectively for, or more efficiently utilizes, limited available resources than red or white oak. Under full shade the annual rate of white pine height growth remained constant during this study, indicating it is more shade tolerant than the oaks examined. In addition, the two year total of white pine diameter growth was eight times that of either oak species. However, the lower diameter and height growth of the oaks may be accompanied by an increased root system. Assimilated carbon may be shunted to the root system, resulting in a root/shoot ratio suitable for growth, should an environmental change take place (e.g. development of a gap in the canopy due to tree harvest or blowdown). The shoot dieback observed in red oak during 1982 may reflect an "attempt" by a seedling to maintain such a root/shoot ratio.

In the partial and complete canopy removal treatments, white pine growth in 1982 was greater than that in 1981. The low amount of 1981 growth was accompanied by a 20% reduction in survival resulting from attack by white pine weevil (Pissodes strobi Peck.). No further attacks were observed in 1982 when white pine exhibited large amounts of height and diameter growth. Apparently, white pine became physiologically adapted to the new environmental conditions resulting from canopy removal.

Both oak species increased height growth during the 1982 season with increased canopy removal. Because oak shoot growth is strongly dependent on elongation of preformed shoots after a period of rest (fixed growth) (Kozlowski 1964), it is likely that 1981 growth was strongly dependent on environmental conditions at the time it was formed. Thus, in canopy removal treatments, 1981 oak growth probably reflected preformed shoots initiated under a canopy in 1980 while 1982 growth was initiated in 1981 under moderate or no shade conditions. In 1982, growth in clearfelled areas was greater than in partially-felled areas, which in turn was greater than no-felled areas; the reverse of 1981 trends. It appears that oaks underplanted several years prior to canopy removal can grow quickly soon after release. However, it is important to monitor future growth to determine if the rapid growth continues, and to evaluate how they compete with other vegetation.

CONCLUSIONS

The results show that red and white oak seedlings can be planted under a full canopy. In the second year after harvest, oak seedlings grew rapidly, suggesting that underplanted oaks are established and competitive with surrounding vegetation. Regeneration of red and white oak appears viable using a combination of underplanting and shelterwood cutting or clearfelling. Future progress of these seedlings should be monitored to determine the longevity of the rapid growth and the ability of underplanted seedlings to be a significant component of future stands. Additional research is necessary to establish the most suitable timing of canopy removal. If root systems of underplanted oaks continue to enlarge while in the understory, then a delay in canopy removal may be desirable.

As the amount of canopy removal increased, white pine was more severely attacked by white pine weevil during the first year after canopy removal. In addition, white pine grew more slowly in clearcuts than in shade. It seems likely that, at that time, the pine was physiologically adapted to shade conditions and could not fully utilize the increase in available light. During the second year after canopy removal, the effect of white pine weevil was minimal. It is also probable that white pine adapted to full sunlight and grew better in clearcuts than shade. If white pine weevil can be controlled, underplanting followed by clearcutting seems a viable regeneration system for eastern white pine in the Piedmont of Virginia.

LITERATURE CITED

Brenneman, D. L.
1980. Hardwood artificial regeneration. In: Regenerating the Southern Forest, Tenth Proc. For. Wild. Forum (R. L. McElwee and N. H. Bell, Eds.), Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University, Blacksburg, Virginia. 179 p.

Carvell, K. L. and E. H. Tryon.
1961. The effect of environmental factors on the abundance of oak regeneration beneath mature oak stands. For. Sci. 7:98-105.

Fowells, H. A.
1965. Silvics of forest trees of the United States. Agriculture Handbook No. 271. USDA, Washington, D.C. 762 p.

Harvey, W. R.
1975. Least-squares analyses of data with unequal subclass frequencies. USDA Ag. Res. Serv. ARS H-4. Washington, D.C.

Kellison, R. C., D. J. Frederick, and W. E. Gardner.
1980. Harvesting to favor reproduction of southern hardwoods. In: Regenerating the Southern Forest, Tenth Proc. For. Wild. Forum (R. L. McElwee and N. H. Bell, Eds.), Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University, Blacksburg, Virginia. 179

Kozlowski, T. T.
1964. Shoot growth in woody plants. Bot. Rev 30: 335-392.

Lemmon, P. E.
1956. A spherical densiometer for estimating forest overstory density. For. Sci. 2: 314-320.

Tworkoski, T. J.
1982. Growth and dieback of underplanted northern red oak seedlings under various light and moisture conditions. Ph.D. Dissertation, Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University, Blacksburg, Virginia.

Wendel, G. W.
1971. Converting hardwoods on poor sites to white pine by planting and direct seeding. USDA, For. Serv. Res. Pap. NE-188 18 p.

SUCKERING AND ROOT CONNECTIONS OF SWEETGUM ON CLAYEY SOIL[1]

John K. Francis[2]

Abstract.--An exploratory study of sweetgum suckering on clayey soils of the Mississippi Delta was conducted by completely or partially excavating root systems of 44 individuals varying from new suckers to sawlog-size trees. Position along the root did not influence suckering if the root was thick enough (at least 1/2 inch) to support a sucker. No root appeared too large or old (>150 years) to produce suckers. The average distance measured between suckers and the parent stump was 4.7 feet. Suckering from roots above the soil and as deep as 5 inches was observed. The average depth of sprout-bearing roots was 1.35 inches. Suckers produced from cut trees must develop independent root systems or perish. A sucker typically appropriates the parental root from the sucker outward. Within 1 to 5 years after sprouting, new roots appear directly below the stem and develop gradually. Root connections between suckers may be broken if the connections are small. If the root connections are thick, the trees will remain joined for life.

Root sprouts of sweetgum, often called suckers, are a desirable form of reproduction. They grow rapidly and originate through a wide range of harvest conditions. Suckers are thought less susceptible to butt rots than stump sprouts (Johnson 1964). Kormanik and Brown (1967) reported sweetgum suckers originating from previously formed suppressed buds. They also noted a marked enlargement of the lateral root distal to the point of sprout origin. Hook and others (1970) observed that secondary roots were more abundant on small-diameter parent roots. Height growth of sprouts was positively correlated with parent root size and negatively correlated with distance from stump to sprout. Development of secondary root systems varied somewhat between soil types, according to Hook and others (1970).

This exploratory study was undertaken to learn more about sweetgum suckering on the clayey soils of the Mississippi Delta. Sites sampled contained soils from the Sharkey, Alligator, Tunica, Tensas, and Forestdale series. These soils are saturated during winter and spring and may dry and crack during late summer.

METHODS

This investigation was guided by four questions:

1. What are the characteristics of roots from which sweetgum suckers arise?
2. How long does it take new suckers to develop independent root systems?
3. Do root interconnections persist through the life of the stand--or through several generations?
4. Do sweetgum appropriate the connected root systems of individuals that are cut or die?

A total of 44 individual suckers, ranging from new sprouts to pole-size trees in 20 locations, were excavated and described. The following measurements were applied as indicated in the questions: depth from which sprouting occurred; thickness of parent root; distance to parent stump or tree; age of parent root; sprout age and size. The roots of one interconnected clump of small sawlog-size sweetgum were completely excavated and 10 small-to-medium sawlog-size connected groups were excavated deeply enough to expose connecting roots. Also, more than 50 stumps were dug to determine whether live roots sustained by root connections were present. Ranges and means are given, although this study was basically nonquantitative.

---

[1] Paper presented at Second Biennial Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Soil Scientist, Southern Hardwoods Laboratory, maintained at Stoneville, Mississippi, by the Southern Forest Experiment Station, USDA Forest Service, in cooperation with the Mississippi Agricultural and Forestry Experiment Station and the Southern Hardwood Forest Research Group.

OBSERVATIONS AND DISCUSSION

Some observed characteristics of sweetgum roots were associated with sprouting; others were not. The smallest root supporting a sprout was 0.5 inch thick. Roots more than 10 inches thick produced sprouts. Age does not apparently prevent root sprouting in trees. Sweetgums more than 150 years old and greater than 50 inches d.b.h. were observed with new suckers. Minimum age is more difficult to determine. Several small- to moderate-sized roots (0.5 to 2 inches) with sprouts were aged from 5 to 10 years old. Very small (<0.5 inches) and consequently young roots apparently do not sprout. Saplings and small poles, when cut, usually stump-sprout while large trees mostly root-sprout.

While sprouts do not arise at or near the root tips, they may originate anywhere the root is large enough to support them. Distance from sucker to parent tree or stump ranged from 0 to 30 feet. The average distance was 4.7 feet. Root branch order per se does not appear to make any difference to root sprouting ability. While sprouts are probably more common first-order lateral roots because of their size and proximity to the surface, sprouts were frequently observed on second- and third-order laterals.

A root's position relative to the soil surface is important. Although suckers were attached to roots as deep as 5 inches, sprouting was much more frequent near the surface. Average depth of soil covering over sprout-bearing roots was 1.35 inches, not considering suckers arising from roots above the soil surface. Sprouting from exposed roots is common in larger trees. Almost all sprouting occurring under closed canopies is from surface roots or roots covered only by duff. In warm, sunlit situations, sprouts can rise from greater depths. At one site, sprouts were observed coming up through thin asphalt. Common sprouting points along a root are deep roots approaching the surface, shallow roots turning down, and before multiple branching (fig. 1). Severing a root particularly stimulates sprouting of the detached root near the cut. The interaction of heat, light, and disturbance to the parent tree on sprout stimulatio is still unclear.

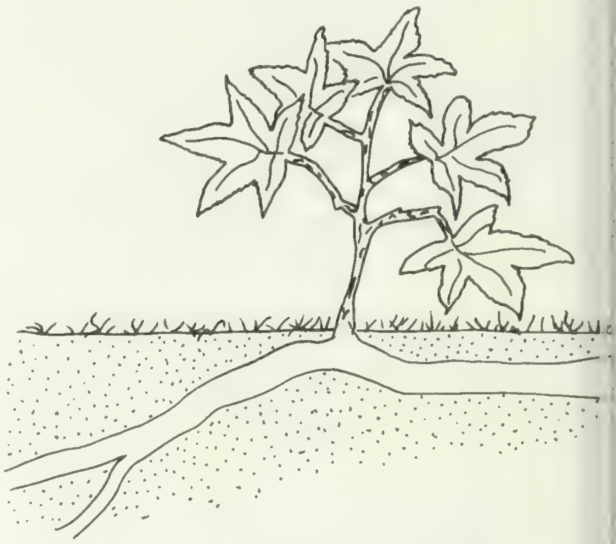


Figure 1.--Typical sweetgum sucker.

The time required for root independence in new suckers cannot be ascertained because the process is gradual. A sprout attached to a living tree root or sharing a root with other sprouts may be able to pinch off the connection. This break occurs when the sprout grows thicker at the point of the sprout on the side away from the parent and the root attachment stops growing. A collar is formed and the attachment dies and rots away. The rate at which the root is pinched off decreases with the thickness of the root. A thick root (precise dimension uncertain) will not be pinched off at all.

A new sucker also begins to develop roots in addition to those appropriated from the parent root system. These secondary roots, appearing below the sucker 1 to 5 years after its emergence, develop slowly. They are not prominent until the sprout is 10 to 20 years old. The swollen distal portion of the parent root may dominate the root system through the life of the tree.

More important than independence from root connections is the sprout's ability to produce enough photosynthate to survive. Often after large sweetgums are cut, the new sprouts, unable to support the massive roots under them or establish independence, perish when the roots die a year or two later.

Root connections between suckers can persist through the life of the stand. In stands of sprout origin, large individuals located within a few feet of each other are often connected (fig. 2). Such individuals can be as many as 20 feet apart, but usually only 3 or 4 feet. The connecting roots are large and may partially prevent the suppression of one individual by the other. Sprouts maintain only the portions of the parent root system to which they are attached. As a result, root networks from large trees do not persist from one generation to another. However, if small trees are repeatedly cut, they may develop and maintain root connections over several coppice generations. A 3-generation root network of young sweetgum was observed in a firewood cutting area.

It might be argued that connections between closely spaced individuals of the same species are a result of root grafts which commonly unite closely spaced conifers and oaks. This is apparently not the case in sweetgum. Although grafting does occasionally occur, sweetgum roots normally intertwine without grafting. Sweetgum interconnections, a single root more or less directly between trees, do not have the characteristic bark streaks often associated with grafting.

Sweetgum trees seldom appropriate the connected root systems of other cut cr dead individuals. Usually, root systems and the connecting root die with their top. The two "appropriated" root systems were small in relation to the root that had taken them over.

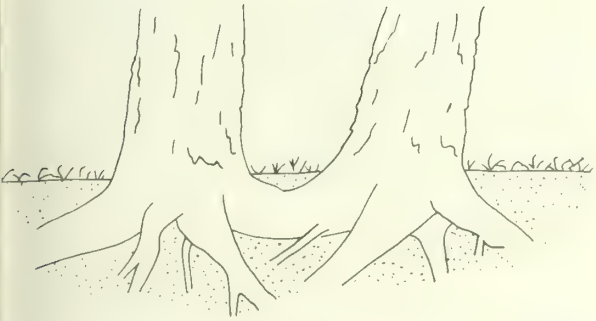


Figure 2.--Root connection between two sweetgums of sucker origin.

SILVICULTURAL IMPLICATIONS

Sweetgum can be easily regenerated vegetatively (Kellison and others 1981). Whether root or stump sprouts are produced depends on stand and harvest conditions. Sprouts from roots or the root collar are more desirable than sprouts high on the stump. Sprouting can be forced to a lower position by cutting the stumps very low (Johnson and Krinard 1976) or by removing them entirely. Young sweetgum readily stump-sprout but, by 50 years, they lose the ability (Martindale 1965). At the same time, the tendency to root-sprout is increasing. However, size over about 25 inches becomes a liability--the suckers produced are unable to sustain the massive roots from which they arise. Chopping, disking, or other disturbance could alleviate this problem by severing many smaller roots. It would not be necessary to disturb the soil deeply since shallow roots are the ones that sprout.

After a thinning of sweetgum, suckering will occur to a limited extent, but the suckers do not generally survive long enough under shade to be of value as advanced reproduction. No effective gain in root surface occurs in sweetgum by removing connected individuals. Root connections could be a liability if chemical thinning is attempted. "Flashback," translocation of chemical from one tree to another, can cause death of some of the remaining trees (Fenton 1965). Sweetgum produce suckers all through the growing season. They should respond to cutting similarly to stump sprouts. Dormant season cutting is best for stump sprouting, but any time of the year will do (Wenger 1953).

Sweetgum from suckers grow more rapidly than seedlings and have greater resistance to butt rot than stump sprouts. Where sweetgum roots are available for sprouting, suckers should be the preferred form of reproduction.

LITERATURE CITED

Fenton, Richard H.
1965. Root grafts and translocation of 2,4,5-T in young sweetgum stands. J. For. 63:16-18.

Hook, Donal D., Paul P. Kormanik, and Claud L. Brown.
1970. Early development of sweetgum root sprouts in Coastal South Carolina. Res. Pap. SE-62. Asheville, NC: U.S. Dep. Agric., For. Serv., Southeast. For. Exp. Stn., 6 p.

Johnson, Robert L.
1964. Coppice regeneration of sweetgum. J. For. 62:34-35.

Johnson, R. L., and R. M. Krinard.
1976. Hardwood regeneration after seed tree cutting. Res. Pap. SO-123. New Orleans, LA: U.S. Dep. Agric., For. Serv., South. For. Exp. Stn., 9 p.

Kellison, R. C., D. J. Frederick, and W. E. Gardner.
1981. A guide for regenerating and managing natural stands of southern hardwoods. North Carolina Agric. Res. Serv. Bull. 463, 24 p.

Kormanik, Paul P., and Claud L. Brown.
1970. Root buds and the development of root suckers in sweetgum. For. Sci. 13:338-345.

Martindale, Donald L.
1965. Sweetgum (Liquidambar styraciflua L.). In: Fowells, H. A., compiler. Silvics of forest trees of the United States. U.S. Dep. Agric., Agric. Handb. 271:248-254.

Wenger, Karl F.
1953. The sprouting of sweetgum in relation to season of cutting and carbohydrate content. Plant Physiol. 28:35-49.

TEN-YEAR RESULTS FROM THINNING AN ELEVEN-YEAR-OLD STAND OF LOBLOLLY PINE ON AN EXCELLENT SITE[1]

G. K. Xydias, A. H. Gregory, and P. T. Sprinz[2]

Abstract.--An eleven-year-old stand containing about 640 trees/acre and 3100 cubic feet (ob) per acre in an area where average site quality at age 25 exceeded 80 feet was thinned to residual densities of 100, 200, or 300 trees per acre or left unthinned. Although 40 percent of the trees originally present in the unthinned control have been lost to mortality, this treatment has produced more volume of pulpwood and sawtimber ten years after treatment. Projection of stand attributes with growth and yield models implies that this situation will remain unchanged twenty years after treatment.

INTRODUCTION

The pulp and paper companies in the South ave always been ambivalent toward the role of hinning. At one point in time, the concept xisted that traditional practices of plantings t close spacing and frequent light thinnings o salvage mortality would be employed. Then as hinning labor became scarce, and numerous studies ointed out that pulpwood production was maximized nder a regime of not thinning, thinning fell into isfavor. The widespread use of Chip-N-Saws for he utilization of small sawtimber and predictions f a continued spread between pulpwood and sawimber prices has again brought thinning concepts nto vogue.

Continental Forest Industries, a wholly wned subsidiary of the Continental Group, Inc., as no different in its outlook. It was felt hat a study could provide some insight. As a relude to study establishment, two of the authors f this paper (Xydias and Gregory) examined ncrement borings from operationally thinned tands of slash pine (Pinus elliottii Engelm.) in a vain attempt to determine when that stand had been thinned based on any change in ring width patterns. The only tree we were able to observe increased ring width after a cutting operation was in a core form about a ten-inch residual in a young plantation.

This lead us to feel that only a severe thinning would stimulate diameter growth. A great deal of growing stock would have to be sacrificed to accomplish that stimulation. We also reasoned that under conventional planting rates of 600-800 trees/acre, crown ratios would have dropped to twenty percent by the time trees were large enough in diameter to generate enough volume for a commercial thinning. This meant that the stand would be well into the rotation before the first thinning could be done, and that it would take several years for the trees to build up enough live crown to show a response to thinning. By that time, stand age would be close to the normal rotation age, and there would be little opportunity for increased growth. We concluded that if thinning could indeed increase volume production over a 30-35 year rotation that the best chance for it to occur would be on the better sites. If it failed on the better sites, then we felt that there was little hope on the average or poor sites.

THE STUDY AREA

The study area is situated on Continental Forest Industries "Frank Heyward" lease in the southeastern part of Bulloch County, Georgia, a few miles north of the Bulloch-Bryan county line. Topography is level throughout the area, and soils are predominantly Stilson (arenic plinthic paleudult). A typical profile will have about 24 inches of fine loamy sand over a sandy clay B2 horizon at depths of about 36 inches. Low chroma mottles begin to appear within 30 inches and more than half of the matrix has low chromas at depths of 35-40 inches. Drainage would be considered as moderate by SCS designations. A portion of the study area is on Fuquay loamy sand. This portion has a fine loamy sandy surface to about 36 inches with a sand clay B2 horizon at about 40 inches. Low chroma mottles begin to appear below 40 inches, but the matrix color remains bright throughout the profile. This portion would be considered as well drained by SCS designations.

---

[1] Paper presented at the Second Biennial outhern Silvicultural Research Conference, ovember 4-5, 1982, Atlanta, Georgia.

[2] Authors are Division Research Forester, ontinental Forest Industries, Box 8969, Savannah, eorgia; Management Forester, Continental Forest ndustries, Box 7038, Garden City, Georgia; and raduate Research Assistant, Virginia Polytechnic nstitute and State University, Blacksburg, irginia.

The study area was a cultivated field before being planted to loblolly pine (Pinus taeda L.) during the 1959-60 planting season. Seed source is unknown, but is presumed to have been a local variety of loblly pine. The understory consisted of a few scattered individuals of wax myrtle (Myrica cerifera L.), but the dominant feature was a layer of pine straw.

TREATMENTS

The study was initiated in the early spring of 1971 when the plantation had completed eleven growing seasons in the field. Four treatments were installed in a randomized complete block design with three replications of each treatment. Two of the blocks were located on the Stilson soils while the third block was situated on the Fuquay soils. Trees in this block did not appear to be as vigorous as those in the former two blocks, although dominant height was similar in all three blocks.

Quarter-acre treatment plots were laid out within each block and the interior tenth-acre served as a measurement plot. Treatments selected for comparison were unthinned control and thinning to residual stockings of 100, 200, or 300 trees/acre. Thinning was from below, except in the more heavily thinned plots, with emphasis placed on leaving well spaced dominant trees rather than in upgrading the stand. Thus many of the leave trees are crooked or forked.

The thinning treatments were imposed during late March 1971, using company personnel. Since there were few shortwood operators in the area at that time all trees were left on site after felling.

MEASUREMENTS

Each tree within the measurement plot was measured at the DBH point prior to thinning an its diameter recorded by row and position with the row. Trees designated as leave trees were tagged with a unique number and identified on the plot tally sheets. Subsequent diameter measurements have been obtained annually excep at three, seven, and eight years after treatmen Heights have been obtained more sporadically. When the study was first established, DBH and total height measurements of 30 trees in each block were obtained from the felled trees. Fo years after treatment, DBH and total heights we obtained from four to six trees in each plot. Eleven years after treatment, both total heigh and height to a six-inch (ob) top and DBH were obtained from six to nine trees in each plot. Height measurements were always obtained over the range of diameter classes.

Heights of all trees were determined by regression of the inverse of both diameter and height. This transformation resulted in a linear relationship between diameter and heigh and had correlation coefficients of about 0.80 to 0.85. Models for inital and four-year heig did not differ significantly by replication or treatment and so all data were combined into a single regression for each of these periods. Models developed from the eleven-year data did differ significantly by treatment.

Cubic foot volumes (ob) to a 4 inch top we calculated for each tree greater than four inch DBH, using an equation developed by Coile and Schumacher (1964). These volumes can be conver to standard cords (92 cubic feet of wood and la by multiplying them by a facor that varies with the diameter of the tree of mean basal area. This factor can be calculated by the following equation:

$$F = 0.0105 + (0.0642/D) - (0.03440/D^2)$$

The inverse of F is the cubic feet of wood and bark in standing trees needed to make a standa cord, and varies from about 86 for six-inch tr to 74 for nine-inch trees.

All volume calculations were based upon measured diameters and heights predicted from t appropriate diameter-height equations. Fifth- year volumes utilized the fourth-year diameter-height equations and tenth-year volumes utiliz the eleventh-year diameter-height equations. Mortality at these two points utilized the appropriate diameter-height equation, applied t the diameter of the tree at the time it died.

Table 1.--Stand attributes before imposition of the thinning treatments by replication and treatment.

Treatment	Attributes by Replication								
	1	2	3	1	2	3	1	2	3
	- - Cubic Feet/Acre - -			Basal Area/Acre			- - Trees/Acre - -		
100	3437	3673	2208	161	174	130	520	616	790
200	3244	3404	2813	154	172	148	550	696	689
300	3387	3592	3160	159	176	162	534	653	687
Control	3517	3437	2865	162	175	151	504	707	683

This probably overstated the volume of mortality trees, since the height of the ith diameter class tended to increase with age, while mortality often occurred earlier than when the diameter height model was derived.

RESULTS

Stand attributes at the time of thinning are given in Table 1 for each of the twelve plots. Dominant height at age 11 was 54 feet, and this is out of the range of most site quality curves. Dominant height at age 22 was in the 80-85 foot range in the first two blocks and about 75 feet in the third block. Initial basal area was reasonably uniform in the first two blocks, but there was more variation than desirable in the third block.

Attributes of trees removed by the thinning and of trees remaining after treatment are given in Table 2. In this and subsequent tables, volumes are for trees that are four inches or larger in diameter, while basal area and number of trees are for all trees. The 100 stem/acre treatment was a severe treatment, removing about 85 percent of the trees and leaving a residual basal area of only 40 square feet.

Table 2.--Stand attributes after thinning by treatment.

Treatment	Removed and Remained		
	Removed by Treatment		
	Cubic Feet	Basal Area	Trees
100	2223	117	544
200	1690	92	430
300	1066	62	336
Control	0	0	0
	Remained after Treatment		
100	931	40	101
200	1690	74	195
300	2207	100	295
Control	3106	155	642

Stand attributes five and ten years after treatment are shown in Table 3. The unthinned controls still have the greatest volume, ten years after treatment. Basal area of the 300 trees/acre treatment is approaching the same level that was present in the unthinned controls when the study was initiated, however, volume is greater due to the increase in height.

Mortality losses over the past ten years have been surprisingly modest as measured by both basal area and cubic feet (Table 4). This is true even in the control plots which have experienced a loss of almost 40 per cent of the trees present at age 11.

Table 3.--Stand attributes five and ten years after imposition of the thinning treatments.

Treatment	Years Since Treatment		
	Five Years		
	Cubic Feet	Basal Area	Trees
100	1799	67	503
200	2776	106	101
300	3336	131	195
Control	4217	176	289
	Ten Years		
100	2755	89	101
200	4048	128	188
300	4752	150	269
Control	5761	186	400

When volumes removed in thinning and lost to mortality are added back in to the initial volume and growth over the period, the controls have still outproduced the thinned plots (Table 5). Total production in 300 tree treatment is approaching that of the controls, but the thinned plots still have produced ten to fifteen percent less volume.

A major argument for thinning is that it enhances the production of sawtimber-size trees. Table 6 shows that the unthinned plots have a greater volume of sawtimber-size trees than the thinned plots. If the sawtimber trees are partitioned into the components of small and large sawtimber, with trees in the diameter range of 8-12 inches being considered as small sawtimber, and trees thirteen inches and larger being considered as large sawtimber, only then do the 100 tree and 200/tree/acre plots have more sawtimber volume than the control plots. Actual sawtimber volume differences are probably less than what is shown in Table 6, because not every sawtimber-size tree in the unthinned plots is of sawtimber quality.

Table 4.--Mortality at five and ten years after treatment.

Treatment	Cubic Feet	Basal Area	Trees
	First Five Years		
100	0	0	0
200	0	0	0
300	56	2	7
Control	100	10	117
	Total for Period		
100	40	2	3
200	44	2	3
300	183	6	17
Control	528	29	237

Table 5.--Cubic foot production over the 21-year-life of the stand

Treatment	Initial	Removals Thinning	 Mortality	Growth	Total
	- - - - - - - - - - Cubic Feet/Acre - - - - - - - - - -				
100	931	2223	40	1824	5018
200	1690	1690	44	2358	5782
300	2207	1066	183	2545	6001
Control	3106	0	528	2655	6289

DISCUSSION

There is little doubt that this study area is on a highly productive site. It rivals the plantation reported by Langdon and others (1970) in an informal challenge to identify highly production stands. Dominant heights in the ra of 80-85 feet at age 22 imply a productivity l that is seldom exceeded. Yet results obtained to date are similar to those of other thinning studies in loblolly pine (Sprinz and others 19 Burton 1980, Burton 1981, Mann 1952, Belanger and Brender 1968) or in slash pine (Enghardt a Mann 1972, Bennett 1969). That is, the unthin plots produce more total volume but have trees smaller average diameter. Other researchers have shown that similar trends have occurred i spacing studies (Harms and Lloyd 1981, Smith 1 and Shepard 1974). Wakeley (1969), however, re that a single commercial thinning in variously spaced slash and loblolly pine at age 15 did n have any effect on yields at age 30 when final yields plus volume removed in thinning was con sidered. However, the thinning levels in that study were not as wide as they were in this study.

Table 6.--Volume in sawtimber-size trees (MBF International) after 21 growing season

Treatment	Sawtimber-Size Small (8-12 in.)	 Large (13 in.+)	 Total (8 in.
	- - MBF International/Acre - -		
100	0.9	2.2	3.2
200	2.6	1.3	4.0
300	3.3	0.9	4.2
Control	4.0	1.0	5.1

Mean diameter of trees at close spacings generally smaller than at wide spacings, due to the inclusion of the smaller intermediate a suppressed trees in the average. Some researc have reported no difference in average diamete between thinned and unthinned stands when that verage is based on the same number of trees Wakely 1969, Enghardt and Mann 1972, Keister 1967, adrulot and Williston 1974). In this study, ifferences in average diameter of the largest 00 trees per acre became apparent very early n the heavily thinned plots and have persisted hroughout the study period (Table 7).

Table 7.--Average diameter of the largest 100 trees/acre.

Treatment	Time Period Establishment	 5 Years	 10 Years	 10-Year Increase
	Diameter in inches			
100	8.5	10.9	12.6	4.1
200	9.1	11.0	12.4	3.3
300	9.2	10.7	11.5	2.3
Control	9.5	10.9	11.9	2.4

There are currently more sawtimber-size trees the control plots and consequently a greater awtimber volume. This is contrary to expectations hat thinning should increase sawtimber volume. t is consistent with the results of Burton (1980), ho showed in the 'Sudden Sawlog Study', that while eavily thinned plots had more sawtimber volume t age 18 than the control plots, all differences ad disappeared by age 33. The thinning treatments ccelerate ingrowth into the sawtimber category, ut any gains narrow as ingrowth occurs in the ontrol plots. This is illustrated by Table 6 ere the unthinned plots have a greater volume of all sawtimber than the thinned plots and less rge sawtimber.

Mann (1952), suggests that unthinned natural ands will usually show more cubic foot production til somewhere around age 35 when heavy mortality educes yields on unthinned plots. In this study en though 40 percent of the trees in the control ots have been lost to mortality, very little lume has been lost. This will undoubtedly change n the future. Other researchers have reported at thinned plots produce more total volume than thinned controls. Wilson (1955), reported that inned plots of red pine (Pinus resinosa Ait) oduced one percent more cubic volume and thirty-o percent more board foot volume at age 41 than thinned plots. Wahlenberg (1955) reported that inned plots of eastern white pine (Pinus strobus L) produced thirty-five percent more cubic volume al fifty percent more board foot volume at age 5 than unthinned plots, however, the 80-year esults from the same study area suggested that bic foot and board foot yields were similar for th the thinned and unthinned plots (Della-Bianca, 32).

What will happen on this study is uncertain but it can be inferred from growth and yield models. Two different approaches were followed. One approach was to derive a basal area projection equation using data from this study. The equation utilized a model adopted from Burkhart and Sprinz (1982), and has the form:

$$L_nBA_2 = L_nBA1 * (A_1/A2) + bo * BA1 * (1-A1/A2)$$

where Ln = natural log
BA1 and BA_2 = basal areas at age A1 and A2 respectively
bo = regression coefficient

Analysis suggested that use of a separate coefficient for each thinning level gave a slightly better fit to the data than use of a common coefficient. The improvement in accuracy by using separate coefficients was not large however.

Solution of this equation using separate coefficients for each treatment showed a very good fit between actual and predicted basal areas throughout the ten-year life of the study. Extrapolation of the equation to age 26 and 31 implies that basal area of the control plots will stabilize at about 200 square feet with basal area of the thinned plots falling below this level (Figure 1). Note that all of the curves are tending toward diminishing basal area growth even within the range of the observed data. Since volumes are largely dictated by basal area when site quality is held constant, this suggests that standing volume will always be greater in the unthinned plot.

Burkhart and Sprinz (1982) present projection equations for estimating both cubic volume and board foot volume in thinned loblolly old field plantations based upon stand attributes at the time of thinning. These equations are derived from a data set consisting of one to three observations of 103 permanent plots throughout the Piedmont and Coastal Plain of Virginia. Solution of these

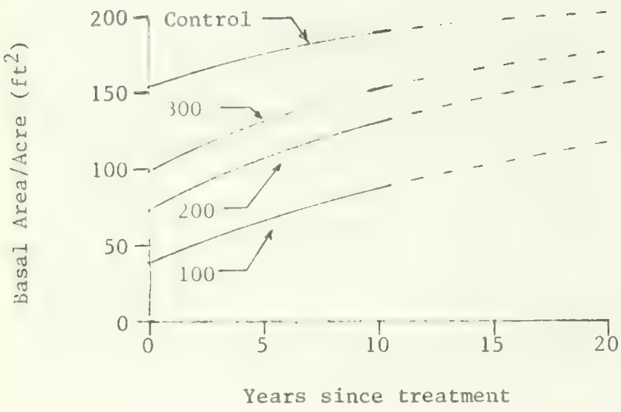


Figure 1. Trends in actual and projected basal area

equations using stand attributes of this study ten years after thinning as a base or at age 21, and projecting the stand forward to age 41 in five-year increments was the basis for the second approach. Results suggest that both total volume and board foot volume will be greater in the control plots at all ages in the projection period. This is contrary to projections of the thinned stand model developed by Clutter and Jones (1981) for a similar data base but for slash pine; however, these differences may be explainable by differences in the growth habits of the two species.

Data from this and other studies, and the results from the projection of growth and yield models suggest that thinning will not enhance sawtimber volume in the long run. Conclusions arrived at from projections of growth and yield models should be viewed with caution since extrapolation beyond the limits of the data base for any model can lead to erroneous results. Even if the extrapolations used here are realistic, such results do not necessarily imply that thinning has no role in plantation management. It can alter wood flows and result in trees of larger average diameter which should in turn lower harvesting costs. This may result in a better unit price for the same commodity than in an unthinned stand. Thinning will stimulate diameter growth particularly for the larger trees and will reduce the time in which more valuable sawtimber-size trees can be produced, however, this early advantage will be lost as trees attain the threshold diameter for sawtimber in the unthinned stands.

In summary, thinning should not be viewed as a means of increasing production by the salvaging of mortality under rotation lengths commonly employed by forest industry. It is a means o meeting mill requirements without the need fo costly site preparation and planting, and to the financial return at harvesting in those a where the same volume of wood is more valuabl sawtimber than as pulpwood.

LITERATURE CITED

Andrulot, S. A., and H. L. Williston
1974. Growth and yield of second-growth lol in central Louisiana. IN: Proc. Sym. on of Young Pines, p 116-20. USDA For. Ser. Area State and Pri. For. Atlanta, Georgi
Belanger, R. P. and E. V. Brender
1968. Influence of site index and thinning the growth of planted loblolly pine; GA F Res. Pap. 57. GA. For. Res. Coun.. Macon Georgia.
Bennett, F. A., C. E. McGee, and J. L. Clutte
1959. Yield of old field slash pine planta US For. Ser. SE For. Expt. Sta., Pap. 107 19 p.
Burkhart, H. E. and P. T. Sprinz
1982. Cubic volume and basal area projecti equations for thinned loblolly pine plant Lob. Pine Growth and Yield Co-op Rept. 18 Sch. of For. and Wildlife Res. VPI and SU Blacksburg, Virginia.
Burton, J. D.
1980. Some short term effects of thinning pruning in young loblolly plantations. I Proc. First Biennial Sou. Sil. Res. Conf. Atlanta, Georgia. p 111-114.
Burton, J. D.
1981. Sawtimber by prescription - the sudd sawlog story through age 33. USDA For. S Res. Pap. SO179. 9 p.
Clutter, J. S. and E. P. Jones
1980. Prediction of growth after thinning old field slash pine plantations. USDA F Ser. SE For. Expt. Sta. Res. Pap. SE217.
Coile, T. S. and F. X. Schumacher
1964. Soil-site relations, stand structure and yields of slash and loblolly pine pla tions in the southern United States. T. Inc. Durham, North Carolina. 296 p.
Della-Bianca, L.
1982. Thinning eastern white pine in the s Appalachians. Sou. J. Appl. For. 5:3. p.
Enghart, H. G. and W. F. Mann, Jr.
1972. Ten-year growth of planted slash pin after early thinnings. USDA For. Ser. So For. Expt. Sta. Res. Pap. SO-82.
Harms, W. R. and T. F. Lloyd
1982. Stand structure and yield relationsh in a 20-year old loblolly pine spacing st Sou. J. Appl. For. 5:3. p 162-165.
Keister, T. D.
1967. Effect of thinning on diameter growt the largest trees in a slash pine plantat LSU For. Note LA Sch. For. No. 71. 3 p.

Langdon, G. O., G. E. Hatchell, and W. P. LeGrande
1970. Loblolly pine growth topped. Sou. Lumberman. December 15. p. 126-7.

Mann, W. F.
1952. Response of loblolly pine to thinning. J. For. 50:443-6.

Shepard, B. K., Jr.
1974. An initial spacing study. IN: Proc. Sym. Mgt. of Young Pines. p. 121-8. USDA For. Ser. SE Area State and Pri. For. Atlanta, Georgia.

Smith, L. F.
1974. Effects of spacing and site on the growth and yield of planted slash pine. USDA For. Ser. Sou. For. Expt. Sta. Res. Note SO-63. 4 p.

Sprinz, P. T., T. R. Clason, and D. Bower
1979. Spacing and thinning effects on the growth and development of a loblolly pine plantation IN: 1979 For. Res. Rept. North LA Hill Farm Expt. Sta. Homer, Louisiana p. 1-42.

Wahlenberg, W. C.
1955. Six thinnings in a 56-year-old pure white pine plantation at Biltmore. J. For. 53:331-9.

Wakeley, P. C.
1969. Single commercial thinnings in variously spaced slash and loblolly plantations. USDA For. Ser. Sou. For. Expt. Sta. Res. Pap. SO-48. 12 p.

Wilson, F. G.
1955. Evaluation of three thinnings at Star Lake. For. Sci. 1:227-31.

PRECOMMERCIAL THINNING FOR THE PRIVATE, NONINDUSTRIAL LANDOWNER:

A METHODOLOGY REPORT[1]

Michael D. Cain [2]

Abstract.--Precommercial thinning in dense stands of loblolly (Pinus taeda L.) and shortleaf (P. echinata Mill.) pine is a proven management technique for increasing diameter growth on residual stems. Four precommercial thinning methods (mechanical strip-thinning, selective hand-thinning, soil-applied herbicide, and prescribed fire) are discussed. These thinning methods provide management alternatives for private, nonindustrial landowners who hold over 70 percent of the commercial forest land in the South.

INTRODUCTION

Considerable research has been done emphasizing the need for precommercial thinning in young loblolly pine stands (Bower 1965, Grano 1969, Jones 1974, Keister and McDermid 1968, Lohrey 1972 and 1977, and Williams 1974). When properly executed, such thinnings can increase the growth and shorten the rotation of crop trees. In addition to promoting growth, precommercial thinning often increases forage for livestock and wildlife and reduces risks from losses by fire, insects, diseases and weather (Mann and Lohrey 1974).

Several alternatives are available for precommercially thinning young pine stands. This paper discusses four techniques (mechanical strip-thinning, selective hand-thinning, soil-applied herbicide, and prescribed fire) currently being tested in a series of studies in south Arkansas, describes their advantages and disadvantages in application and includes some preliminary results. The best alternative for field application may depend on whether the stand is even-aged or uneven-aged.

METHODS

Study Areas

The four precommercial thinning studies ar located on the Crossett Experimental Forest in Ashley County, Arkansas. The soil on the Experimental Forest is principally Bude silt lo (Glossaquic Fragiudalfs), but some Providence loam (Typic Fragiudalfs) is associated with it (USDA 1979). Both soils are loessial deposits with an impervious layer at 18 to 40 inches that impedes internal drainage. Both have high pote tial productivity for loblolly pine with a site index of 90 feet at 50 years. Seasonal wetnes may limit the use of equipment for woodland management.

The studies utilizing mechanical strip-thinning and prescribed fire are located on a 10-acre area, originally occupied by a mixed p hardwood stand, which was cleared in 1971 for research planting area. In 1972, pine seeded from adjacent stands, but that reproduction wa mowed in the fall of 1973 to maintain a site-prepared area for planting. In 1974-75, the area reseeded naturally with loblolly and shor leaf pine and remained undisturbed until 1979. At that time an inventory was conducted and th area was found to contain an average of 16,600 pine seedlings per acre.

Plots for the studies involving selective hand-thinning and soil-applied herbicide are located throughout the Experimental Forest in patches of advanced pine reproduction. The st in which these plots are located are made up o mixture of loblolly and shortleaf pine managed under the selection system since the 1930's. Reproduction density on these plots ranged fro 1,000 to 6,000 pines per acre for stems less t 4 inches dbh at the time of treatment.

---

[1] Paper presented at the Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Associate Silviculturist, Southern Forest Experiment Station, USDA Forest Service, Crossett, Arkansas 71635.

Study Installation

Mechanical Strip-Thinning

Following a pretreatment inventory in the fall of 1979, twelve plots of square or rectangular configuration (0.4-acre each) were established. Two treatments--mechanical strip-thinning and controls--were assigned in a completely randomized design.

Thinning was done in October 1979 using a six-foot-wide, heavy-duty rotary mower (Bush Hog, Model 406) attached to an industrial-size, wheeled tractor (Ford 532, diesel). Cut swaths were 12 feet wide and alternated with 1-foot-wide uncut strips.

Total height was measured to the nearest 0.5 foot and dbh to the nearest 0.1 inch on all living pines within systematically established subplots representing a 3-percent sample of an interior 0.2-acre measurement plot. These measurements were taken in the fall of 1979 after thinning and again in the fall of 1981. Individual tree data were averaged on a plot-by-plot basis. Pine cubic-foot volumes were computed from height and diameter data (Perry and Roberts 1964). The 1981 growth differences between treatments were tested for significance by analysis of variance at the 0.05 level.

Selective Hand-Thinning

In October 1980, 36 circular plots of 0.05 acre each were established in dense patches of advanced pine regeneration within uneven-aged stands. Pine reproduction (1 to 4 inches dbh) averaged over 1,000 stems per acre on 0.02-acre measurement plots within the 0.05-acre gross plots. Some plots also contained pulpwood size (4 to 7 inches dbh) and/or overstory pines (7-inch or larger dbh classes); these stems were used for calculating a pretreatment competition index (Daniels 1976). Plots were stratified according to initial percent stocking of pine (McLemore 1981); then four thinning treatments, with 9 replications each, were assigned at random.

The four treatments included a control, thin to 800 stems per acre, thin to 500 stems per acre, and thin to 200 stems per acre. These selected treatments were based on recommended post-thinning densities for rapid diameter growth in even-aged loblolly pine stands (Mann and Lohrey 1974). Well-formed dominants and codominants were left to provide uniform spacing.

Hand thinning was done in October 1980 by a two-man crew using one small chain saw and one machette. Hardwoods were stem injected with undiluted Tordon 101R inside the boundary of each 0.05-acre plot in the spring of 1980, prior to thinning.

After thinning in the fall of 1980, residual pines on thinned plots plus 800 pretagged dominants and codominants per acre on control plots were measured. Total heights were taken to the nearest foot and dbh to the nearest 0.01 inch. In the fall of 1981, all surviving pines were remeasured and means calculated on a plot-by-plot basis. Cubic-foot volumes were computed from height and diameter data (Perry and Roberts 1964). After five years, growth data will be subjected to covariance analysis with pretreatment competition index and pretreatment percent stocking as concomitant variables.

Soil-Applied Herbicides

In March 1980, 16 circular plots of 0.05 acre each were established in dense patches of advanced pine reproduction within uneven-aged stands. For stems less than 4 inches dbh, over 2,000 pines per acre and up to 3,000 hardwoods per acre were recorded on these plots. Plots were blocked on the basis of initial pine density and four treatments were assigned at random within each block to test the efficacy of Velpar^{R} (hexazinone) for precommercially thinning pine reproduction and for controlling hardwoods.

We used 2cc Gridball^{R} pellets (10 percent active ingredients) for the treatments that included: control; 2 lbs. a.i./acre on a grid of 4.25 feet by 4.25 feet; 4 lbs. a.i./acre on a grid of 3 feet by 3 feet; and 6 lbs. a.i./acre on a grid of 2.45 feet by 2.45 feet. The pellets were hand placed in late April 1980 during clear and warm weather. Over the next four weeks, rainfall accumulation at the Experimental Forest was 8.75 inches. At least 3 to 4 inches of rainfall are needed for soil activation of the chemical (E. I. DuPont 1979).

In March 1980, all living pines and hardwoods within each 0.05-acre plot were measured at dbh to the nearest 1-inch class. Stems ≤ 3.5 inches dbh were categorized as understory regeneration, and those ≥ 3.6 inches dbh as overstory. Pine and hardwood data were summarized separately by understory and overstory components on a plot-by-plot basis. In the fall of 1981, all surviving stems were remeasured to determine the effect of Velpar^{R} on pine and hardwood density by size class.

Prescribed Fire

In February 1982, a 0.35-acre plot and a 0.50-acre plot were established in an 8-year-old natural stand of loblolly/shortleaf pine regeneration. Pine density averaged 12,000 stems per acre with 48 percent of the stems ranging in height from 10 to 28 feet. All other pines were less than 10 feet tall.

Both plots were prescribed burned using backfires set with a 4:1 diesel oil/gasoline mixture from a drip torch. Burning on the 0.35-acre plot began at 11:45 a.m. on February 22. Wind speed was 6 mph from the SE; temperature was 76° F; relative humidity was 26%; and fine fuel moisture was 6%. There was no precipitation recorded 6 days prior to burning, but drying potential was poor until one day preceding the burn.

Burning on the 0.5-acre plot began at 12 noon on March 8. Wind speed was 6 mph from the SW; temperature was 60° F; relative humidity was 30%; and fine fuel moisture was 6%. Precipitation within 7 days preceding the burn was over a 12-hour period, ending 48 hours prior to burning with a 0.75-inch accumulation.

Prior to burning, total height to the nearest 0.5 foot and dbh to the nearest 0.1 inch were measured on all living pines within 21 systematically established milacre subplots representing 2.5 percent of the area to be burned. Data were summarized by three height classes (≤4.5 feet, 5.0 to 9.5 feet, and ≥10 feet).

Before burning, ground fuel samples were taken for weight determination within 3 randomly established 0.02-milacre subplots near the center of the burn area. Samples consisted of all litter down to mineral soil. These samples were air-dried for 48 hours prior to weighing. Three additional samples were taken within 24 hours after the burn.

Shortly after the burn, height of stem bark char was measured to the nearest 0.1 foot on each surviving pine within the 21 preestablished subplots. These data were taken as an estimate of flame height (McNab 1977) and used for calculating fire intensity (Byram 1959).

In early summer 1982, all surviving pines on preestablished subplots were remeasured to the nearest 0.5 foot in height and 0.1 inch dbh to determine change in density by size class following the fire.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Mechanical Strip-Thinning

This thinning technique resulted in an 8 percent reduction in pine density. Of the resi ual 1,920 pines per acre following thinning, 65 were ≤4.5 feet tall, 860 were between 5.0 and 9.5 feet tall, and 410 were ≥10 feet tall. Stem 10 feet and taller at the time of thinning will probably become the crop trees. A time trial, as part of this study, showed that thinning cou be done on a production basis at the rate of 1. acres per hour.

Two years after thinning, mean diameters dominants (≥10 feet in height) on thinned plots were significantly larger than those on control plots (table 1). Mean heights and cubic-foot volume per tree for dominants did not differ significantly between treatments.

Table 1. - -Measurements on pines 10 feet and taller, two years after mechanical strip-thinning

Treatment	Diameter breast height	Total height	Volume per tree
	Inches	Feet	Cubic feet
Control	1.49 a*	14.9 a	0.20 a
Thinned	1.94 b	14.0 a	0.24 a

* Within-column means not followed by the same letter are significantly different (0.05).

From 1979 to 1981, pine density on contr plots declined by more than 2,000 stems per ac leaving approximately 14,500 stems, as a resul of natural mortality. Density on thinned plot remained at about 2,000 stems per acre over th same two-year period.

Selective Hand-Thinning

Even though pine density on control plot averaged over 1,400 stems per acre, the 1981 annual growth of pretagged pines was equal to that of pines on plots thinned to 800 and 500 stems per acre (table 2).

Table 2. - - Growth of surviving pines in 1981 on plots that were selectively hand thinned

Treatment	Mean annual growth per tre		
	DBH	Height	Volume
	Inches	Feet	Cubic fe
Control (800 Dom-Codom/acre)	0.14	1.08	0.07
800 stems/acre	.14	.80	.05
500 stems/acre	.16	.92	.05
200 stems/acre	.27	1.11	.16

At 200 stems per acre, annual pine growth in diameter and volume was nearly twice that of pines in other treatments. Competition from overstory pines in these all-aged stands probably contributes to the slow growth rate of understory regeneration, and it is too early to speculate as to which precommercial thinning regime insures optimum growth under these conditions.

Hand thinning a 15-year-old natural stand of loblolly pine from 5,000 stems to 680 stems per acre resulted in accelerated diameter growth over a three-year period (Bower 1965). On relatively small areas, as tested in the present study, selective hand-thinning may be an alternative to other precommercial thinning techniques, because thinning time averaged only 4 to 7 minutes per 0.05-acre plot.

Soil-Applied Herbicide

Density of pines and hardwoods was monitored for two growing seasons following herbicide application. During that two-year period, density of pines less than 4 inches dbh declined on control plots as much as on chemically treated plots (table 3).

Table 3. - - Percent decrease in pine and hardwood stems <4 inches dbh using soil-applied herbicide

Treatment	Change in stocking after two growing seasons: Pine	Change in stocking after two growing seasons: Hardwood
	Percent	
Control	-20	- 9
lbs a.i./acre	-22	-58
lbs a.i./acre	-16	-56
lbs a.i./acre	-21	-81

Since pine density averaged over 1,000 stems per acre, two years after treatment, Velpar^R Gridballs^R were ineffective for precommercial pine thinning on silt loam soils at the rates tested.

The decline in hardwood density was directly related to the herbicide treatment, with the highest rate of application being the most effective for control of hardwoods less than 4 inches dbh. Overstory hardwoods were more easily controlled than understory stems, probably because more of their root systems were in contact with the herbicide.

On lighter textured soils than those in this study, Velpar^R Gridballs^R may be useful for precommercial thinning of pine regeneration. Southern pine seedlings less than five years of age will most likely be injured or killed by this chemical (E. I. DuPont 1979). However, pine saplings and pine trees appear to be more tolerant to Velpar^R if the trees are not stressed by insects, diseases or climatic factors.

Prescribed Fire

The rate of spread for the burns averaged 2.3 feet per minute with an average flame height of 1.7 feet. Ground fuel, consisting mainly of pine litter and grasses, weighed 3.9 tons per acre (air-dry) before the fire and 1.1 tons after burning.

Burning reduced pine density from 11,917 to 5,876 stems per acre. Most of that reduction was in stems less than 10 feet tall (table 4). Mortality of pines in the larger size class was negligible.

Table 4. - - Pine measurements before and after prescribe burning

Variable	Height class: ≤ 4.5'	Height class: 5.0 to 9.5'	Height class: ≥ 10'	Totals	Weighted means
		Stems/acre			
Density					
Before	3,431	2,722	5,764	11,917	
After	0	570	5,306	5,876	
		Feet			
Total Ht.					
Before	2.4	7.1	16.2		10.7
After	- -	8.0	17.6		16.7
		Inches			
DBH					
Before	- -	0.27	1.64		1.24
After	- -	0.42	1.78		1.66

Fire intensity was calculated as 17 Btu per second per foot, which is comparatively low according to Byram (1959). A low intensity burn is also indicated by the high rate of survival following treatment. Because pine density was extremely high and average dbh of the tallest stems was less than 2 inches, hotter fires could have destroyed the stand. More effective precommercial thinning with fire has been achieved in southern pine stands having a wider range of diameters and lower densities than those found in this study (McNab 1977, and Nickles, et al. 1981).

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

Past research suggests that rapid diameter growth of even-aged loblolly pines can be achieved when density is reduced to less than 1,500 stems per acre by precommercial thinning. But a density between 500 and 800 stems per acre may maximize volume gains. To accomplish that goal, several thinning techniques are available, but each has advantages and disadvantages in practical application. Techniques that are best suited for even-aged stands may be undesirable for use in uneven-aged conditions.

Mechanical strip-thinning is widely practiced in the South because of its precision in application. Rotary mowing is most efficient between ages 2 and 5 years; then stems are easily severed and visibility for the tractor operator is high. Costs will depend on the type of equipment, size and density of stems being thinned, experience of the operators, and physical obstacles on the area being thinned. The main disadvantage of this technique is the cost of heavy mechanical equipment.

The main advantage of selective hand-thinning is that it permits individual trees to be retained on the basis of form and spacing. Although hand-thinning is considered too costly to be practical on large acreage, it may be the only alternative for the private, nonindustrial landowner on small woodlots.

Although ineffective for precommercial thinning of advanced pine reproduction on silt loam soil, at the rates tested, Velpar^{R} Gridballs^{R} are considered to be effective for releasing pines from overstory hardwood competition. The main advantage of this technique is that no expensive equipment is necessary for field application. Users are advised to follow label directions when applying herbicides.

Prescribed fire, as a precommercial thinning technique, is useful for treating large areas at relatively low cost. However, this technique lacks precision in application. When using fire, individuals must be aware of appropriate weather conditions, size and density of the pines being thinned, amount of combustible ground fuel, and must abide by State burning laws.

LITERATURE CITED

Bower, D. R.
1965. Precommercial thinnings accelerate dia
growth of loblolly pine. J. For. 63:210.

Byram, G. M.
1959. Chapter three: combustion of forest fuels. In Forest fire: control and use, K. P. Davis (ed.). p. 61-89. McGraw-Hill Book Co., Inc., New York.

Daniels, R. P.
1976. Simple competition indices and their correlation with annual loblolly pine tree growth. For. Sci. 22:454-456.

E. I. DuPont DeNemours & Co.
1979. "Velpar" Gridball^{TM} brush killer for control of undesirable woody plants in reforestation areas in the state of Mississi
Agric. Bull., EPA SLN No. MS-790002, 3p.

Grano, C. X.
1969. Precommercial thinning of loblolly pin
J. For. 67:825-827.

Jones, E. P., Jr.
1974. Precommercial thinning for slash and loblolly pines. In Proc. Symp. on Manage.
Young Pines. /Alexandria, La., Oct. 22-24
1974 and Charleston, S.C., Dec. 3-5, 1974./
U.S. Dep. Agric. For. Serv., Southeast. Are
State and Priv. For., South. and Southeast.
For. Exp. Stns., p. 229-233.

Keister, T. D., and R. W. McDermid.
1968. Trees of pulpwood size earlier as a re
of precommercial thinning. La. State Univ.
Forestry Notes 80, 4p.

Lohrey, R. E.
1972. Precommercial thinning of direct-seede
loblolly pine. U.S. Dep. Agric. For. Serv
Res. Note SO-139, 4p., South. For. Exp. Stn.
New Orleans, La.

Lohrey, R. E.
1977. Growth responses of loblolly pine to precommercial thinning. South. J. Appl. Fo
1:19-22.

McLemore, B. F.
1981. Minimum stocking levels required for successful management of uneven-aged loblo
shortleaf pine stands. In Proc. First Bien
South. Silvic. Res. Conf. /Atlanta, Ga.,
6-7, 1980./ U.S. Dep. Agric. For. Serv. G
Tech. Rep. SO-34, South. For. Exp. Stn., N
Orleans, La., p. 292-293.

McNab, W. H.
1977. An overcrowded loblolly pine stand thinned with fire. South. J. Appl. For. 1:24-26.

Mann, W. F., Jr., and R. E. Lohrey.
1974. Precommercial thinning of southern pines. J. For. 72:557-560.

Nickles, J. K., C. G. Tauer and J. F. Stritzke.
1981. Use of prescribed fire and hexazinone (Velpar) to thin understory shortleaf pine in an Oklahoma pine-hardwood stand. South. J. Appl. For. 5:124-127.

Perry, T. O., and A. Y. Roberts.
1964. Volume formulas for loblolly pine seedlings in the vicinity of Raleigh, North Carolina. J. For. 62:186-187.

U.S. Department of Agriculture.
1979. Soil survey of Ashley County, Arkansas, S.C.S. and U.S. For. Serv. in cooperation with Ark. Agric. Exp. Stn., 92p. and maps.

Williams, R. A.
1974. Precommercial thinning. In Proc. Symp. on Manage. of Young Pines. /Alexandria, La., Oct. 22-24, 1974 and Charleston, S.C., Dec. 3-5, 1974./ U.S. Dep. Agric. For. Serv., Southeast. Area State and Priv. For., South. and Southeast. For. Exp. Stns., p. 72-76.

RESULTS AFTER 21 YEARS IN PRECOMMERCIALLY THINNED DIRECT-SEEDED SOUTHERN PINE STANDS[1]

Robert M.Farrar, Jr.[2]

Abstract.--Results of a precommercial thinning to a nominal 8x8-ft spacing at age 3 in broadcast direct-seeded stands of the four major southern pines in the East Gulf are reported when stands are 21 years old. In loblolly, shortleaf, and slash pines, thinning resulted in significantly fewer total trees per acre and larger mean diameters than no thinning but total stand volumes were not significantly different. Thinning apparently concentrated the volume into fewer larger trees. The average difference in merchantable volume between thinned and unthinned stands was not significant. However, where survival was good for both treatments, about twice as much merchantable volume was observed in thinned stands. Overall, loblolly was significantly more productive than shortleaf but not significantly more productive than slash. Longleaf and shortleaf appeared similar in volume production and the limited longleaf data did not indicate any effect of thinning.

Broadcast direct-seeding and natural regeneration of southern pines often result in very dense stands of reproduction containing several thousand established seedlings per acre. It is generally accepted that early merchantable volume production can be improved by thinning these stands to leave densities that approximate planting densities, or 600 to 1,000 stems per acre. Such precommercial thinning is most easily done by hand or with light mechanical equipment when stems are neither too small nor too large to be easily cut. This stage will usually occur at about age 3 to 5 years. Recent developments in self-propelled chippers, which harvest presently sub-merchantable stems principally for fuelwood, hold promise that precommercial thinnings will generally become commercial thinnings in the future.

This paper presents the results, at stand 21 years, of a limited precommercial thinning trial imposed at age 3 in broadcast direct-seed stands of the four major southern pines.

METHODS

Study Area

During the winter of 1956-57 a broadcast direct-seeding trial was installed in South Alabama and Northwest Florida to test operation seeding techniques recently developed by the Southern Station at Alexandria, LA. A randomiz complete block containing 4 rectangular 1-acre plots was laid out at each of 3 locations. All study blocks are on sandy uplands in the longle pinehills of the middle coastal plain. The Escambia block is located on the Escambia Exper mental Forest near Brewton in Escambia County, The soils here are mostly a Troup fine sand wit some Orangeburg fine sandy loam (SCS 1975). Th Miller block is nearby on the lands of the T. R Miller Mill Company. Its soil is a Dothan fine sandy loam (SCS 1975). The St. Regis block is located on lands of the St. Regis Paper Company near Pace in Santa Rosa County, FL. The soil here is a Troup loamy sand (SCS 1980).

---

[1] Presented at the Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, GA, Nov. 4-5, 1982.

[2] Principal Mensurationist, Forestry Sciences Laboratory, Monticello, AR, Southern Forest Experiment Station, USDA Forest Service, in cooperation with the Department of Forest Resources and Arkansas Agricultural Experiment Station, University of Arkansas at Monticello.

Site preparation varied among blocks. The iller and St. Regis blocks were on cut-over ongleaf land. The Escambia block was an abandoned gricultural field. The Miller block was clear-cut nd cleared during the summer of 1956, after which he debris was piled with a root-rake and burned n the following November. The St. Regis block as clear-cut in 1954 and burned in October 1956. he Escambia block was plowed in early summer, 956, disked in late summer and grazed by cattle etween disking and seeding.

In each block, a 1-acre plot was randomly ssigned to one of four species: loblolly pine *Pinus taeda* L.), longleaf pine (*P. palustris* Mill.), hortleaf pine (*P. echinata* Mill.), or slash pine *P. elliottii* Engelm. var. *elliottii*). During the inter of 1956-57, each plot was broadcast seeded y hand with approximately 10,000 viable repellent-reated seed. The loblolly and slash pine seed were rom Florida sources, the longleaf came from a ouisiana source and the shortleaf was from an labama source. Inventories at age 1 and 2 years rom seeding are summarized in Table 1. These ata are based on 10 milacres per 1-acre plot. All lots were regarded to be successfully regenerated t age 2 and the seeding study was closed. However, ince average densities varied from about 4,000 to early 6,000 stems per acre, precommercial thinning reatments were imposed on the stands and the plots ere maintained as a demonstration.

Thinning Treatments

Precommercial thinning treatments were made in the loblolly, shortleaf, and slash pine plots in the winter of 1959-60, at age 3, when one-half acre of each 1-acre plot was randomly selected and thinned in each block. Thinning was done by hand with machetes to leave the better-formed and most vigorous stems at an approximate 8x8-ft spacing or about 681 trees per acre. Thinning required about 2 man-hours per ½-acre plot. The longleaf plots were not thinned at age 3 because prescribed burning for brownspot needle disease (*Scirrhia acicola* (Dearn.) Siggers) control was required on the Miller and St. Regis plots at that age. Longleaf thinning was deferred to age 5 to allow any mortality resulting from burning to occur prior to thinning.

The stand data for the thinned and unthinned plots at age 5 is summarized in Table 2. These data are based on 25 four-milacre plots per ½-acre treatment plot inventoried to assess stocking, stand density, and the average d.b.h. and height of the dominant trees. At age 5, only the longleaf ½-acre plot in the Escambia block, with 6,190 stems per acre, was thinned to leave 710 stems. Although the Miller longleaf stand averaged 3,115 stems per acre, it and the St. Regis longleaf stand did not receive a thinning treatment because many of the seedlings were small. For the other three species, thinning left average densities varying from 690 to 713 trees per acre while the averages for unthinned stands varied from 2,538 to 4,993 stems per acre.

Table 1.--Average stocking and density of seeded stand at ages 1 and 2 years and dominant height at age 2.

Species	Location	Stand Age = 1 year		Stand Age = 2 years		
		Stocking[1]	TPAO[1]	Stocking[1]	TPAO[1]	DH[2]
		%	No.	%	No.	ft
Loblolly	Escambia	90	5,600	90	5,400	2.0
	Miller	90	12,500	90	11,100	1.8
	St. Regis	60	1,500	50	800	1.2
	Average	80	6,533	77	5,767	1.7
Longleaf	Escambia	80	2,000	80	2,000	0.2
	Miller	100	7,900	100	7,100	0.1
	St. Regis	50	4,200	50	3,800	0.1
	Average	77	4,700	77	4,300	0.1
Shortleaf	Escambia	100	9,500	100	9,300	1.4
	Miller	80	3,000	70	2,700	1.2
	St. Regis	80	5,900	80	4,700	1.2
	Average	87	6,133	83	5,567	1.3
Slash	Escambia	50	3,500	40	2,800	1.8
	Miller	100	5,900	100	5,000	1.7
	St. Regis	80	4,500	70	4,000	1.2
	Average	77	4,633	70	3,933	1.6

---

[1] Milacre stocking and total stems per acre (TPAO) based on systematic sample of 10 milacre per 1-acre plot per location.

[2] Average height of dominant seedling (DH) nearest center of each milacre.

Table 2.--Average stocking, density and dominant stand data for thinned and unthinned stands at age 5 years.

		Loblolly				Longleaf				Shortleaf				Slash			
Treatment	Location	Stocking 1/	TPAO 1/	DDBH 2/	DH 2/	Stocking 1/	TPAO 1/	DDBH 2/	DH 2/	Stocking 1/	TPAO 1/	DDBH 2/	DH 2/	Stocking 1/	TPAO 1/	DDBH 2/	DH 2/
		%	no.	in.	ft.	%	no.	in.	ft.	%	no.	in.	ft.	%	no.	in.	ft.
thinned	Escambia	96	720	2.3	12.1	100	710	0.1	2.9	84	700	1.8	10.0	100	710	2.3	12.2
	Miller	100	710	1.3	10.0	-	-	-	-	96	690	1.0	8.0	100	720	0.9	6.4
	St. Regis	80	640	0.7	6.9	-	-	-	-	92	720	0.3	4.7	96	710	0.8	6.0
	Average	92	690	1.4	9.7	100	710	0.1	2.9	91	703	1.0	7.6	99	713	1.3	8.2
not thinned	Escambia	92	4,640	2.0	13.1	100	3,230	0.1	2.0	92	5,970	1.5	9.1	100	2,230	1.8	10.8
	Miller	96	4,500	1.3	10.8	3/ 100	3,115	0.1	1.0	96	6,120	0.8	7.6	100	2,790	1.1	8.2
	St. Regis	80	800	0.9	7.7	3/ 94	1,615	0.0	0.7	100	2,890	0.4	5.2	88	1,370	1.1	7.4
	Average	89	3,313	1.4	10.5	98	2,538	0.1	1.1	96	4,993	0.9	7.3	96	2,283	1.3	8.8

1/ Four-milacre stocking and total trees per acre (TPAO) based on systematic sample of 25 4-milacre plots per ½ acre plot per location.

2/ Arithmetic mean d.b.h. (DDBH) and height (DH) of dominant stem nearest center of each 4-milacre plot.

3/ Two unthinned ½-acre longleaf plots at Miller and St. Regis location, no thinned plots.

Management Treatments

The longleaf stands were treated for brownspot ontrol. The Miller and St. Regis stands were pot-sprayed (about 1 seedling per milacre) with ordeaux mixture at age 1½ years and prescription urned at age 3. The Escambia stand, spot-sprayed ith Bordeaux at ages 1½ and 3, was not burned ecause brownspot infection was so severe at age 3 hat destruction of the stand was feared.

A few residual pines were cut from the Miller lock at age 3. Sprout stands of scrub hardwoods n the Miller and St. Regis blocks were controlled y injection at age 4 along with a sparse stand of esidual longleaf "whips" on the St. Regis block. ll plots at the Miller location were prescription urned at age 7 for hazard reduction. No further urning was done at any location until after age 21.

The stands of loblolly, shortleaf and slash ines in all blocks have not been treated for isease or insect control except that which occurred hrough precommercial thinning.

Age 21 Inventory

In the winter of 1977-78, at age 21, all plots ere inventoried. A ¼-acre net plot was established n each ½-acre gross plot and all living stems were allied by 1-inch d.b.h. classes. D.b.h. was easured to 1/10-inch and total heights to the earest foot on a systematic sample of approximately /8 of the stems in each 1-inch class. Published olume regressions were used to estimate the total nd merchantable cubic-foot volume (inside bark) of ach sample tree. Volume/basal area ratios for ach 1-inch class were then calculated from the ample tree volumes and basal areas. The ratios ere used to expand the basal area in each d.b.h. lass to a plot volume per class. The d.b.h. lass volumes were summed and expanded to a per cre basis. The following sources of tree volume unctions were used: (1) for loblolly, all trees- malley and Bower (1968a); (2) for longleaf, all rees - Farrar (1981); (3) for shortleaf, all rees - Smalley and Bower (1968b); (4) for slash rees < 5 inches d.b.h. - Schmitt and Bower (1970); rees ≥ 5 inches d.b.h. - Moehring *et al* (1973).

Analysis

Analysis of variance (SAS 1979), using a andomized block split-plot design with species as ajor plots and thinning as minor plots, was used o determine the significance of differences in esponses measured at age 21. The response variables (per acre) were:

DH = mean height of the dominant stand (ft)
TPA1 = number of trees, 1-inch d.b.h. class and larger
TPA5 = number of trees, 5-inch d.b.h. class and larger
BA1 = basal area for TPA1 (ft^2)
BA5 = basal area for TPA5 (ft^2)
DBH1 = quadratic mean d.b.h. for TPA1 (in.)
DBH5 = quadratic mean d.b.h. for TPA5 (in.)
VOL1 = total cubic-foot volume, inside bark, for TPA1
VOL5 = merchantable cubic-foot volume, i.b., for TPA5 and to a 4-inch d.o.b. top.

Duncan's multiple range test was used to determine the significance of mean differences among species. All tests were made at the 5% probability level.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Responses to Treatment

The overall average responses to thinning are shown in Table 3. Table 3 also shows differences in three species--longleaf was not included because it was thinned at only one location. Thinning resulted in significantly larger mean diameters and fewer total trees per acre. None of the means for other responses were significantly different and no species x thinning interactions were significant. These results are interpreted to mean that precommercial thinning done at age 3 did have an overall effect by age 21, primarily by concentrating the total volume in fewer larger trees. Although merchantable mean diameter was significantly larger in the thinned stands, none of the other merchantable stand responses were significantly different. Thus, the majority of evidence suggests that by age 21, precommercial thinning had no effect on merchantable stand production. Assuming 80 merchantable cubic feet, inside bark, per cord, the average yields at age 21 are about 22.1 cords for thinned stands and 15.5 cords for unthinned, a difference of 6.6 cords.

Loblolly pine generally was the superior performer overall followed by slash pine and then shortleaf pine (Table 3). The dominant height, mean diameters, and volumes for loblolly were significantly larger than those of shortleaf and averaged larger, although usually not significantly, than those of slash pine. The average merchantable yields by species are about 25.9, 12.5 and 18.0 cords at age 21 for loblolly, shortleaf and slash pine, respectively.

Table 3.--Average response to treatments[1/]

Treatment Category[2/]	DH	TPA1	BA1	DBH1	VOL1	TPA5	BA5	DBH5	VOL5
	RESPONSE								
(Minor)	ft	no.	ft^2	in.	ft^3	no.	ft^2	in.	ft^3
Thin	52.4a	790b	115a	5.3a	2,176a	409a	99a	6.6a	1,771a
No thin	49.1a	1,438a	124a	4.2b	2,043a	378a	78a	6.0b	1,239a
(Major)									
Loblolly	57.4a	855b	126a	5.6a	2,535a	433a	107a	6.7a	2,074a
Shortleaf	42.0b	1,464a	113a	3.9b	1,691b	327a	67b	5.9b	999b
Slash	52.8ab	1,023b	119a	4.9ab	2,103ab	420a	90ab	6.2b	1,442ab

[1/] Within each treatment category, means in each column followed by the same letter are not significantly different (5% level).

[2/] Each minor treatment grand mean based on nine ¼-acre plots; each major treatment grand mean based on six ¼-acre plots.

Observations

The lack of a significant difference between thinned and unthinned stands in merchantable volume was unexpected. This was probably caused by the few replications and the existing variation at the time of inventory. There were only 9 pairs of thinned and unthinned plots. For 5 of the pairs the disparity in total number of trees created by precommercial thinning at age 3 was largely maintained through age 21, resulting in 804 trees per acre on thinned plots and 1,790 trees on unthinned plots. Here, due to good survival in both treatments, the thinning was effective. Thinned plots produced about twice as much merchantable volume as unthinned plots but had only about 45% as many total trees (Figure 1). But, for 4 of the 9 pairs there was a convergence in the number of surviving trees such that by age 21 the total number of trees was 773 per acre on thinned plots and 997 on unthinned plots. The convergence in density, due primarily to natural mortality on the unthinned plots, apparently caused the thinning to be noneffective. Here thinned plots had 78% as many total trees as unthinned plots and produced only 86% as much merchantable volume (Figure 1). Perhaps if the stands had been inventoried at an earlier age before any appreciable mortality had occurred, a significant overall difference in merchantable volumes would have been detected.

Shortleaf volumes are much lower than those of loblolly and slash (Table 3). Most of the overall lower volume performance of shortleaf was due to its particularly poor performance at the St. Regis location. Although survival here was about average, dominant heights were only about 50% as tall, total volume was only 23% as large, and merchantable volume was only 7% as large as the average for those responses for shortleaf at the other two locations. The cause for the poor performance is not known, but apparently this poor, dry, sandy site does not meet nutrient or moisture requirements for good height and volume growth for at least this source of shortleaf pine. Loblolly and slash pine height and volumes were also reduced at this location but less severely. In contrast, by the time of the inventory at age 21, several longleaf pine volunteers had become established in the unthinned shortleaf plot and were 5 inches larger in diameter and 22 ft taller than the shortleaf.

Limited information is available on the response of longleaf to precommercial thinning in this investigation because the thinning treatment were imposed on this species at only the Escambia location at age 5. The information for this location is shown in Table 4 which also includes the data for the unthinned longleaf stands at the Miller and St. Regis locations. At the Escambia location natural mortality, apparently from brownspot and suppression, reduced the total density of the unthinned plot to a level compara to that of the thinned plot by age 21. The unthinned plot had about 3,230 seedlings and saplings at age 5 (Table 2) which was reduced to

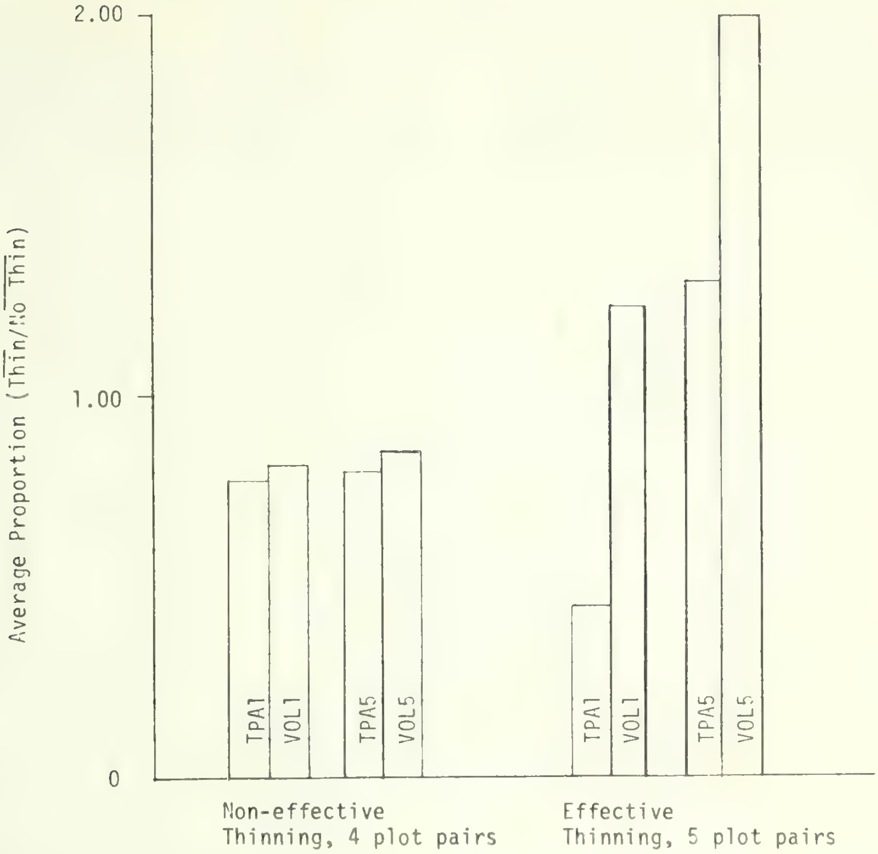


Figure 1.--Effective vs. non-effective precommercial thinning.

Table 4.--Longleaf response to thinning[1]

Treatment	DH	TPA1	BA1	DBH1	VOL1	TPA5	BA5	DBH5	VOL5
	ft	no.	ft^2	in.	ft^3	no.	ft^2	in.	ft^3
			ESCAMBIA						
Thin	56.3	540	104	5.9	2,218	376	95	6.8	1,912
No thin	58.5	712	105	5.2	2,292	328	93	7.2	1,978
			MILLER						
No thin	49.3	326	44	5.0	761	136	35	6.8	576
			ST. REGIS						
No thin	46.9	226	37	5.5	657	132	33	6.8	550

[1] Escambia means based on one ¼-acre plot per treatment, Miller and St. Regis mean based on two ¼-acre plots per location.

712 trees by age 21, while the thinned plot had about 710 trees at age 5 and 540 at age 21. The result was that both the thinned and unthinned plots produced about the same total and merchantable volumes at age 21. The other responses were also roughly the same.

Longleaf mortality was even more severe at the other two locations. The Miller plots were reduced from about 3,115 stems at age 5 to 326 trees at age 21. The reduction at the St. Regis plot was from about 1,615 stems at age 5 to 226 stems at age 21. These reductions coupled with poorer sites, resulted in the volume production at these two locations being only about 1/3 of that at the Escambia location. Overall, longleaf produced about 1,224 ft^3 of average total volume and about 1,024 ft^3 of average merchantable volume (about 12.8 cords). Its volume production appears to be roughly the same as that of shortleaf (Table 3).

These results agree with other observations that longleaf generally has little need for precommercial thinning. However, if young longleaf stands have more than 1,000 stems in active height growth, precommercial thinning should be considered if maximum early merchantable yields are desired (Farrar 1974).

SUMMARY

Precommercial thinning at age 3 in seeded stands of loblolly, shortleaf, and slash pines resulted in significantly fewer total trees and larger mean diameters in the thinned stands at age 21, but no significant difference in total volume occurred. Thinning apparently concentrated the total volume on fewer larger trees. The average difference in merchantable volume between thinned and unthinned stands was not significant but was about 6.6 cords in favor of thinned stands. Also, where thinning was effective (the disparity in total number of trees created by thinning was largely maintained) thinned plots had 45% as many total trees but twice as much merchantable volume as unthinned plots. This suggests that precommercial thinning at age 3 to leave about 700 trees per acre can result in greater merchantable volume production at about age 20 when mortality does not reduce unthinned stand density to a level comparable to thinned stand density.

Overall, loblolly pine was significantly superior in volume production to shortleaf pine. Slash pine volume production was less than loblolly and greater than shortleaf, but the differences were not significant. The average yields were 25.9, 12.5 and 18.0 cords for loblolly, shortleaf and slash pine, respectively.

The limited longleaf data did not indicat any advantage for precommercial thinning in th species. Its overall volume production seemed about the same as that of shortleaf.

LITERATURE CITED

Farrar, R. M., Jr.
1974. Growth and yield of young longleaf pi Proc., symp. on mgmt. of young pines, Alexandria, LA, Oct. 22-24, 1974 and Charleston, SC, Dec. 3-5, 1974, USDA For. Serv., SE Area, S&PF, Southern and Southeastern For. Expt. Sta., 349 p. (p. 276-287.)

Farrar, R. M., Jr.
1981. Cubic-foot volume, surface area, and merchantable height function for longleaf trees. USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. SO-166, 7 p. Southern For. Exp. Sta., New Orlean LA.

Moehring, D. M., M. R. Holmes, and R. G. Merri
1973. Tables for estimating cubic foot volu and fresh weight of planted slash pine. A&M Univ. and Texas Agr. Exp. Sta., MP-10 28 p.

SAS Institute.
1979. SAS user's guide. SAS Institute, Ral NC, 494 p.

Schmitt, D. and D. Bower.
1970. Volume tables for young loblolly, sla and longleaf pines in plantations in South Mississippi. USDA For. Serv. Res. Note SO 6 p.. Southern For. Exp. Sta., New Orleans

Smalley, G. W. and D. R. Bower.
1968a. Volume tables and point-sampling fac for loblolly pines in plantations on aband fields in Tennessee, Alabama, and Georgia highlands. USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. SO-3 13 p. Southern For. Exp. Sta., New Orlean LA.

Smalley, G. W. and D. R. Bower.
1968b. Volume tables and point-sampling fac for shortleaf pines in plantations on aban fields in Tennessee, Alabama, and Georgia highlands. USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. SO-3 13 p. Southern For. Exp. Sta., New Orlean LA.

Soil Conservation Service
1975. Soil survey of Escambia County, Alaba USDA Soil Cons. Serv., Washington, DC, 98 + maps.

Soil Conservation Service
1980. Soil survey of Santa Rosa County, Flo USDA Soil Cons. Serv., Washington, DC, 150 + maps.

AN EXPERIMENT TO EVALUATE ROW, SELECTION, AND COMBINATION THINNING: DESIGN AND INSTALLATION RESULTS[1]

Robert L. Bailey and Leon V. Pienaar[2]

Abstract.--Row thinning is preferred over selective thinning by many foresters due to the ease and lower costs of harvest operations. However, past silvicultural tests indicate that selective thinning is superior in both volume and value production. A partially balanced incomplete block design was used to develop a study to test row, selective, and row-selective combination thinnings at 50%, 40%, and 33% levels of removal and to generate data for subsequent refinements of growth and yield models. Care was taken to keep type of thinning and level of removal unconfounded in the design. Sixteen replications were installed in site prepared loblolly and slash pine plantations.

INTRODUCTION

As the forest industries of the South and Southeast become more and more dependent on plantations for a source of softwoods, the questions about thinning become more important: Should it be done? When? How? How much should be removed? High quality sawlogs and peeler bolts will be hard to find during rotations of reasonable length without thinning. Furthermore, with stumpage values for solid wood products continuing to increase and often exceeding those for fiber by as much as 5:1 for equivalent volume units (Heist, 1980), the economic incentive to try and answer these questions about thinning is quite obvious. It is also obvious that they are not questions to be answered by biological considerations alone. However, without reliable estimates of volume growth and stem quality for alternative choices, the economically best choice will be difficult to make and the questions will continue to be more a matter for speculation and debate than for analysis.

The choices are almost infinite for questions of how to thin, how much to remove, and when to remove it. They can, however, be narrowed to a few of primary interest by considerations of past work and operational feasibility.

REVIEW OF PAST WORK

Concerning the question of how to thin, past work indicates that row thinning is desirable operationally due to the lower thinning cost per cunit removed and the potential for mechanization of the operation. On the other hand, data from past work (Cremer and Meredith, 1976; Belanger and Brender, 1968) also confirm that selective thinning is superior to row thinning in both volume and value production. A combination of selective and row thinning is appealing as a compromise. This alternative, a combination of row and selective thinnings, has not been adequately tested under controlled, experimental conditions for pines in the South and Southeast.

The question of how much to remove is also an issue which pulls one way then the other. Large volume removals tend to increase net revenues from the thinning operations. However, if the removal is too large, growing stock can be reduced below the most effective level for per-acre production. In stands which averaged 18 CCF[3]/acre at age 13, Keister (1972) reported data showing an increase in total production to age 29 of 12% over unthinned stands when a 23% removal at age 13 and a 25% removal at age 24 had been made. In the same study, a 56% removal at age 13 and a 33% removal at age 26 gave 10% less than the unthinned stand and 20% less than the light thinning. Lighter thinnings also tended to magnify the differences in growth between row thinning and selective thinning in *Pinus radiata* (Cremer and Meredith, 1976).

---

[1] Paper presented at the Second Biennial Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] The authors are Associate Professor and Professor at the School of Forest Resources, University of Georgia, Athens, Georgia 30602.

[3] One CCF = 100 cubic feet of wood to a 2-inch top

The question of how much to remove can easily be confounded with the question of how to do it. Obviously a row thinning removing every third row should not be compared to a row-selection combination of every third row as well as selection on adjacent rows. The comparison of methods would be completely confused with the concurrent comparison of thinning intensities; (removal = 33%) vs. (removal > 33%).

When to thin, like how much to remove, is a question that also must be viewed in both an economic and biological context. For optimum wood production thinnings should be made just before current annual increment declines sharply. For slash pine plantations this would be age 13 or 14 (see Bennett, 1971). A light thinning, 20-30% removal (3-5 CCF), at this age would tend to forestall significant mortality. The remaining trees would not have to rebuild crowns depleted by crowding as in late thinnings and could continue growing thriftily. Most objections to early thinnings relate to the economics of the operation. If too little volume is removed, the operation could produce negative net revenue. However, this should be considered a silvicultural investment just as fertilization or weeding. If the subsequent payoff in growth of trees with high quality stems is significant, it may be just as sound an investment.

STUDY OBJECTIVES AND DESIGN

The main objective of our study is to test the effects on cubic foot and board foot volume production of 3 types of thinning strategies at 3 levels of residual densities in combination wi 2 frequencies of rethinning. The thinning strategies are (a) selective, (b) row, and (c) row-selective combination. Each of these will be tested at residual densities (first thinning) of 50%, 60% and 66% with either no or one repeat thinning. Repeat thinnings will be selective an leave the same percentage of trees as was left i the initial thinning. In addition to the main objective, data from this study will be used to refine the University of Georgia PMRC[4] yield models for site-prepared plantations.

Table 1 shows the rows removed and combinations of row and selection thinning imposed in achieving the required residual densities at the first thinning. Treatments will be tested again each other and against an unthinned control (T_o) The RS type thinning was imposed in a way that maintains approximately the same selection press (34% to 39%) at each residual density level. Da from the study will also be used to estimate the shapes and levels of growth curves (Fig. 1) hypothesized from *P. radiata* studies (Cremer and Meredith, 1976). The hypothesis is that light thinnings are more desirable for total growth an that the difference between R and S thinnings is greater for light thinnings.

Table 1.--Rows to remove and percent selectivity[1] for combinations of thinning types and residual densities.

Thinning Type	Thinning Intensity (trees per acre) 50%	40%	33%
1. Selective thinning (S)			
a) Rows removed	none	none	none
b) Percent selectivity[1]	100	100	100
2. Row thinning (R)			
a) Rows removed	2nd	2nd & 5th	3rd
b) Percent selectivity	0	0	0
3. Row-selective thinning (RS)			
a) Rows removed	3rd	4th	5th
b) Percent selectivity	34	37.5	39

[1] Percent selectivity = $100\left[\frac{\text{percent removed by selection}}{\text{total percent removed}}\right]$

---

[4] The Plantation Management Research Cooperative with 13 participating companies was organized in 1976 to develop management information for site-prepared plantations.

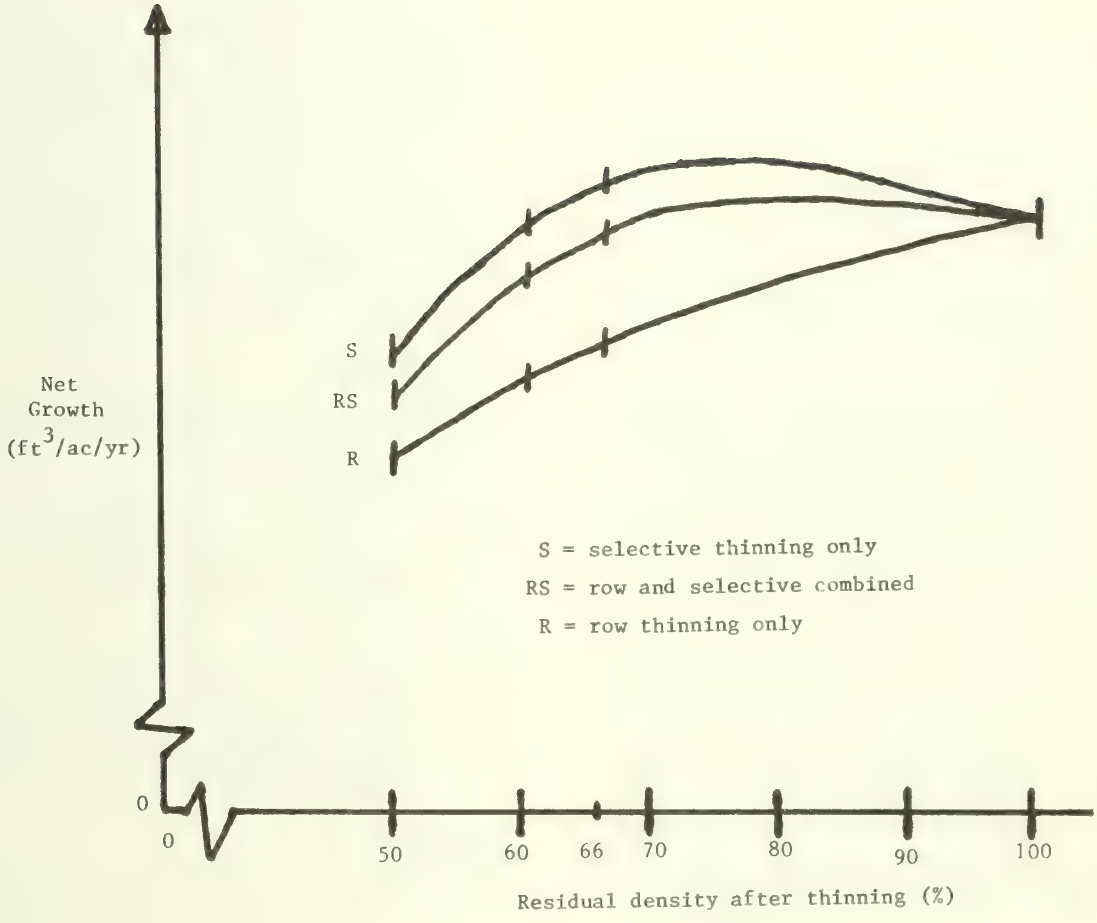


Figure 1.--Hypothesized relative response curves based on Pinus radiata in Australia.

For designing the field plot and treatment layout, the treatments or factors are:

1) Factor A Thinning Repetitions

Level	Description
0	Thin only once (T_1)
1	Thin twice, 8 year delay (T_2)

2) Factor B Thinning Type

Level	Description
0	Selective thinning (S)
1	Row thinning (R)
2	Row-selective combination (RS)

3) Factor C Residual Densities (trees per acre)

Level	Description
0	50%
1	60%
2	66%

The selective thinnings after 8 years will leave the same percentage of trees as the initial thinning. For example, suppose a plantation had 700 trees per acre prior to the first thinning. If the treatment was C_1 (60% residual density), 420 trees would be left. The same stand with 418 trees eight years later, if repeat thinning was performed, would be left with 251 after thinning.

The treatments were arranged in factorial combinations in incomplete blocks of 10 plots each counting one unthinned plot per block. One complete replication of the study requires 2 blocks. This design will give complete, although unbalanced, data on the main factors and all two-factor interactions unconfounded with blocks. The three-factor interaction (4 degrees of freedom) is partially confounded with blocks which means only limited information on this effect will be derived from the study. However, for a 47% reduction in numbers of plots as compared to a complete-block design, we felt this sacrifice of information was justified.

Plans called for the study to be balanced, as nearly as possible, over two age classes for both slash (Pinus elliottii) and loblolly (Pinus taeda) pine plantations on site-prepared areas. Groups for age of first thinning are 13 to 15 and 16 to 18 years. Only plantations with 500 to 700 trees per acre at these ages were selected.

After two summers of field work the basic design has been installed at 16 locations:

	Age Group	
Species	13-15	16-18
	(no. replications)	
Loblolly	6	5
Slash	3	2

All treatment plots are approximately ½ ac with adjustments as necessary to obtain a whole multiple of the appropriate numbers of rows whe row thinning was the treatment. Each measureme plot was centered as nearly as possible in a tre ment plot and are approximately ¼ acre. Diamete of all trees and heights of 25% of the trees we measured at plot installation. Trees to remain after thinning were tagged with numbered, aluminum tags. Each tree was given a code for "pote sawtimber" or "not potential sawtimber" based o a subjective evaluation of stem crook and sweep and the presence or absence of fusiforme canker The reason for "not potential sawtimber" was al recorded when that was the class assigned.

We had hoped for summaries of the before- and after-thinning data at this meeting, but ou data are still being keypunched and checked for errors. Therefore, we look forward to reporting on the thinning results and the analysis of gro following thinning at subsequent meetings.

LITERATURE CITED

Belanger, R. P. and E. V. Brender.
1968. Influence of site index and thinning on the growth of planted loblolly pine. Ga. Forest Res. Pap. 57, 7 p. Ga. For. Res. Council, Macon, Ga.

Bennett, F. A.
1971. The role of thinning and some other problems in management of slash pine plantations. USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. SE-86. 14 p.

Cremer, K. W. and E. M. Meredith.
1976. Growth of radiata pine after row thinning compared with selective thinning. Aust. For. 39(3):193-200.

Heist, L. C.
1980. The place of thinning in Southern forestry -- an overview. IN: Thinning Southern Pine Plantations -- Integrating Economics and Biology, (p. 1-17) 157 page Forestry and Harvesting Training Center, Long Beach, Mississippi.

Keister, T. D.
1972. Thinning slash pine plantation results in little growth or economic gain after 40 years. LSU Forestry Note No. 102, 3 p. Louisiana St. Univ. & A&M College, Sch. of For. and Wildl. Mgt., Baton Rouge, LA.

Knight, H. A. and R. M. Sheffield.
1980. Thinning opportunities in pine plantations in the Southeast during the 1980's. IN: Thinning Southern Pine Plantations -- Integrating Economics and Biology, (p. 19 26) 157 pages. Forestry and Harvesting Training Center, Long Beach, Mississippi.

GUIDES FOR THINNING SHORTLEAF PINE [1]

Robert Rogers [2]

Abstract.--Growing-space requirements of shortleaf pines are defined and used to guide thinning. The growing-space concept is used to develop stocking charts, suitable for both crop tree release and area thinning. An on-the-ground method is developed for crop tree selection. These techniques can be applied to thin shortleaf pine stands in order to increase or maintain diameter growth.

Providing practical information on when and how to thin stands of any species requires knowing the species' growing space requirements. Foresters commonly describe growing space requirements by measuring crowding or density within stands. Two frequently used measures of density are basal area and numbers of trees. These two measures can be further used to calculate mean stand diameter. Together, the three descriptors provide a better index of how fully a site is occupied with trees than any one descriptor can provide.

Stocking charts depict graphically the relation among these stand density measures and average stand diameter so that measured density can easily be compared to standards or norms of stand density. Stocking charts depict density standards in a way that can be used to meet management objectives, such as maximizing growth and regenerating the stand.

Stand density does not remain constant. As trees grow and average stand diameter increases, stand basal area increases and tree numbers decrease. Tree numbers decline with time because trees compete for limited resources. All trees share the site's resources, but not equally. Large trees demand and receive proportionately more resources than small trees do. Individual trees thus remain in continuous and precarious balance with available resources. Consequently, as stands grow, some trees fail to receive the minimum resources needed for survival. Although competition reduces tree numbers, survivors still grow slowly.

If growing trees to large diameters quickly is an important management goal, then we need to thin stands because "natural thinning" is too slow. When cultural thinnings are made, resources are freed and become available to remaining trees. Consequently, growth is concentrated on fewer trees, thereby shortening the time needed to produce large diameter trees.

We can develop guides for thinning shortleaf pine stands based on the concepts that: (1) the resources on a site are fixed, (2) these resources are shared by individual trees, (3) large trees use more resources for growth than small trees do, and (4) there is a maximum amount of resources that trees can use.

Guides developed here are based on the minimum and maximum resources needed for shortleaf pine growth. The term "growing space" is used to express the idea that a tree's resource needs can be expressed as an area of ground.

We can measure growing space by equating it to a tree's crown area projected onto the ground. Moreover, the crown cross-sectional area of an open-grown tree (competition free) can be used to represent maximum growing space. Crown areas can be calculated using crown diameter measurements. But unfortunately, crown diameters are not easily measured in the field. However, knowing the relation between crown diameter and an easily measured, but highly correlated, tree attribute such as d.b.h., would allow us to predict the maximum growing space requirements of trees of any d.b.h.

The growing space concept also conveniently expresses the idea that the space available to a tree largely determines its growth. However, there is an upper limit to the amount of growing space a tree can use. Providing a tree with maximum growing space results in maximum growth.

---

[1] Paper presented at Second Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Research Forester, North Central Forest Experiment Station, Forest Service U.S. Department of Agriculture, Columbia, Missouri.

The value for maximum growing space also establishes the minimum number of trees of a given mean d.b.h. that can fully utilize any given amount of area.

In addition to knowing this maximum spatial requirement, we also should know the minimum space necessary for a tree to survive. This quantity can then be used to define a standard for "minimum growing space." This spatial requirement can be obtained by using the tree area ratio equation (Chisman and Schumacher 1940) and data collected from natural undisturbed stands.

Accordingly, I used the estimated maximum and minimum growing spaces of shortleaf pine to develop a stocking chart by following the techniques used on upland hardwoods by Krajicek et al. (1961) and Gingrich (1967). Similar guides are available for northern hardwoods (Leak et al. 1969), paper birch (Marquis et al. 1969), spruce-fir (Frank and Bjorkbom 1973), white pine (Philbrook et al. 1972), jack pine (Benzie 1977), red pine (Benzie 1977), black walnut (Schlesinger and Funk 1977), and Allegheny hardwoods (Roach 1977).

CROWN DIAMETER STEM DIAMETER RELATIONS

METHODS

Maximum Growing Space Requirements

I measured crown and stem diameters on 141 open-grown shortleaf pines in five southeastern Missouri counties. Sample trees had: (1) lowest branches as long or longer than those above, (2) no evidence of pruning, shearing, browsing, decadence, storm damage, or serious insect damage, and (3) historical evidence obtained from local residents that the tree was of seedling origin and always open-grown. Suitable trees were found in cemeteries, wooded pastures, parks, and road rights-of-way.

Crown diameter of each tree was measured twice, the second measurement at right angles to the first, and the results were averaged. The location of each crown edge was estimated ocularly and a perpendicular line was projected from the crown edge to the ground. Then the distance between the projected crown edges was measured to the nearest one-tenth of a foot with a tape.

I made no attempt to determine either site index or age. The crown-stem relation in other species is apparently independent of these factors (Krajicek, et al. 1961; Gingrich 1967).

Bartlett's three group method for model I regression (Sokal and Rohlf 1969, pp. 481-486) was used to estimate the coefficients in the linear model

$$CD = a + bDBH \qquad ($$

where CD = crown diameter (ft)
DBH = Stem d.b.h. (in)
a, b = coefficients

I used Bartlett's method to estimate coefficients because the independent and the dependent variables were subject to random error that made using the usual least squares method inappropriate.

Crown area (CA) (milacres) of open-grown trees was derived from the relation

$$CA = \frac{\pi CD}{(4)(43.56)} \qquad ($$

where CD is crown diameter (feet)

When equation (1) is substituted for CD in equation (2) and the terms are expanded and th coefficients are redefined, equation (2) becom

$$CA = a + bDBH + cDBH^2 \qquad ($$

Thus, equation (3) defines the crown area and therefore the maximum growing space, G_{max}, of an open-grown tree of any d.b.h.

Minimum Growing Space Requirements

Equation (3) has the same form as the tree-area ratio equation used by Chisman and Schumacher (1940) and later by Gingrich (1967) to develop minimum growing space requirements (G_{min}) of trees. However in this case, data collected from natural undisturbed stands representing a range of ages and sites are normally used to determine coefficents of the tree-area ratio equation. Consequently, the two equations differ only by the values of their coefficients. Natural undisturbed stand are difficult, if not impossible, to find in southeastern Missouri, Arkansas, and surroundi states. As an alternative to field data, I co sidered and then rejected using published data to determine the requirement for minimum growi space. I decided not to use the shortleaf pin data in Table 168 of USDA Publication 50 (1976 because these data indicated that stand basal area quickly reached a plateau at an average stand diameter of 7 inches. Besides seeming unreasonable, stand basal area of other southe pines, red pine, and white pine continues to increase as average stand diameter increases. In addition, neither a Missouri nor a West Gulf Region study of shortleaf pine indicated that stand basal area remains constant as stand diameter increases beyond 7 inches (Sander and Rogers 1979, Murphy and Beltz 1981). However, Smalley and Bailey (1974) showed that stand basal area peaks and then remains constant or even declines in some unthinned shortleaf pine plantations growing on abandoned fields of the Interior Highlands of Tennessee, Alabama, and Georgia.

Because of the difficulty in locating suitable stands to measure and conflicting published information, I decided not to use actual stand data and the tree-area ratio equation to define minimum growing space requirements. Instead, I defined minimum growing space as 60 percent of maximum growing space. This approximation is consistent with Roach's (1977) findings that minimum growing space for full site utilization of most species is between 50 and 70 percent of maximum growing space. Thus $G_{min} = 0.6 * G_{max}$.

RESULTS

The relation between crown diameter and d.b.h. was highly significant ($p < .01$). The prediction equation is

$$CD = 2.852 + 1.529 \ DBH; \ r^2 = 0.92; \quad s_{y.x} = 2.931 \qquad (4)$$

The equation describing maximum growing space is

$$G_{max} = 0.147N + 0.157\Sigma DBH + 0.042\Sigma DBH^2 \qquad (5)$$

And the equation describing minimum growing space is

$$G_{min} = 0.088N + 0.094\Sigma DBH + 0.025\Sigma DBH^2 \qquad (6)$$

where N = number of trees and G is in milacres.

Maximum and minimum tree area requirements of single trees by diameter class are obtained by setting N = 1 in equations 5 and 6 (Table 1). Metric equivalents are presented in Table 2. These two requirements define the limits within which growing space is fully utilized.

Table 1.--Relation between tree d.b.h., basal area, and tree area requirements

D.b.h. (inches)	Basal area (square feet)	Tree area requirements: Maximum 1/ (milacres)	Tree area requirements: Minimum 2/ (milacres)
2	0.022	0.63	0.38
4	0.087	1.45	0.87
6	0.196	2.61	1.56
8	0.349	4.10	2.46
10	0.545	5.94	3.56
12	0.785	8.10	4.86
14	1.069	10.61	6.37
16	1.396	13.46	8.07
18	1.767	16.64	9.98
20	2.182	20.16	12.09

1/ Maximum tree area = $.14663 + .15726DBH + .04216DBH^2$

2/ Minimum tree area = $.08798 + .09435DBH + .02530DBH^2$

STOCKING CHART

To calculate percent relative density we need the following stand data: number of trees per acre, the sum of diameters, and the sum of diameters squared. We can easily obtain number of trees and basal area per acre from field measurements. Because $DBH^2 = BA/.005454$, equation (6) for minimum growing space can be rewritten as

$$G_{min} = 0.088N + 0.094 \Sigma DBH + 4.584BA \qquad (7)$$

Unfortunately, the sum of diameters is not easily obtained from field measurements. The job is less tedious if we use point sampling procedures and measure the d.b.h.'s of sample trees. Then percent relative density can be calculated by summing the percent relative density contributed by each sample tree. The equation we need to find the amount contributed by each tree is derived by combining the minimum growing space equation (7) with an estimate of the number of trees a point sample tree represents, which is $N = BAF/(.005454DBH^2)$. Then

$$\text{Percent contribution} = \left\{0.088\left[\frac{BAF}{.005454DBH^2}\right] + .094\left[\frac{BAF}{.005454DBH^2}\right]DBH + 4.584\left[\frac{BAF}{.005454DBH^2}\right].005454DBH^2\right\} \div 10 = BAF\left[\frac{1.613}{D^2} + \frac{1.723}{D} + 0.458\right] \quad (8)$$

where D is d.b.h. (inches) of sample tree and and BAF is basal area factor (BAF) of the wedge prism.

The metric equation can be derived similarly and results in

$$\text{Percent contribution} = BAF\left[\frac{45.33}{D^2} + \frac{19.14}{D} + 2.02\right] \quad (9)$$

where D is measured in cm and BAF is in meters per hectare. The solution of equation (8) and (9) is shown in Table 3.

Alternatively, we can eliminate the need to measure tree diameters altogether by constructing a stocking chart that has a "buil in" typical d.b.h. distribution, and we can us the stocking chart to approximate percent relative density. Because I had few suitable stan data to estimate average stand structure of shortleaf pine, I borrowed Gingrich's (1967) data on upland hardwoods. Upland hardwood and shortleaf pine stand structures tend to be similar. Like the upland hardwoods, shortleaf stands are even-aged and develop a near normal, but at times wide-spread, diameter frequency distribution. The coefficient of variation of mean d.b.h. in hardwood stands is inversely related to quadratic mean diameter (QSD) and varies from 0.45 to 0.29 as QSD increases from 3 to 15 inches (Gingrich 1967). The stocking charts for shortleaf pine, figures 1 and 2, are based on these hardwood coefficients of variation.

Table 2.--Relation between tree d.b.h., basal area, and tree area requirements

D.b.h. (cms)	Basal area (square dms)	Tree area requirements Maximum [1] (ares)	Tree area requirements Minimum [2] (ares)
6	0.283	0.0305	0.0183
10	0.785	0.0574	0.0345
14	1.539	0.0928	0.0557
18	2.545	0.1367	0.0820
22	3.801	0.1891	0.1134
26	5.309	0.2499	0.1499
30	7.069	0.3191	0.1915
34	9.079	0.3968	0.2381
38	11.341	0.4830	0.2898
42	13.854	0.5777	0.3466
46	16.619	0.6808	0.4085
50	19.635	0.7924	0.4754
54	22.902	0.9124	0.5474
58	26.421	1.0409	0.6245
62	30.191	1.1779	0.7067
66	34.212	1.3233	0.7940
70	38.485	1.4772	0.8863
74	43.008	1.6396	0.9837

[1] Maximum tree area = $(5.93405 + 2.50548DBH + .26447DBH^2)/1000$

[2] Minimum tree area = $(3.56043 + 1.50329DBH + .15868DBH^2)/1000$

Table 3.--Contribution to percent relative density made by point sample trees of different d.b.h.s given BAF of 10 ft^2/acre and 2m^2/hectare

D.b.h.	BAF = 10ft^2/acre relative density contribution	D.b.h.	BAF = 2m^2/hectare relative density contribution
Inches	Percent	Centimeters	Percent
1	38	2	46
2	17	3	27
3	12	4	19
4	10	5	15
5	9	6	13
6	8	7	11
7-9	7	8	10
10-19	6	9-10	9
20+	5	11-13	8
		14-17	7
		18-28	6
		29+	5

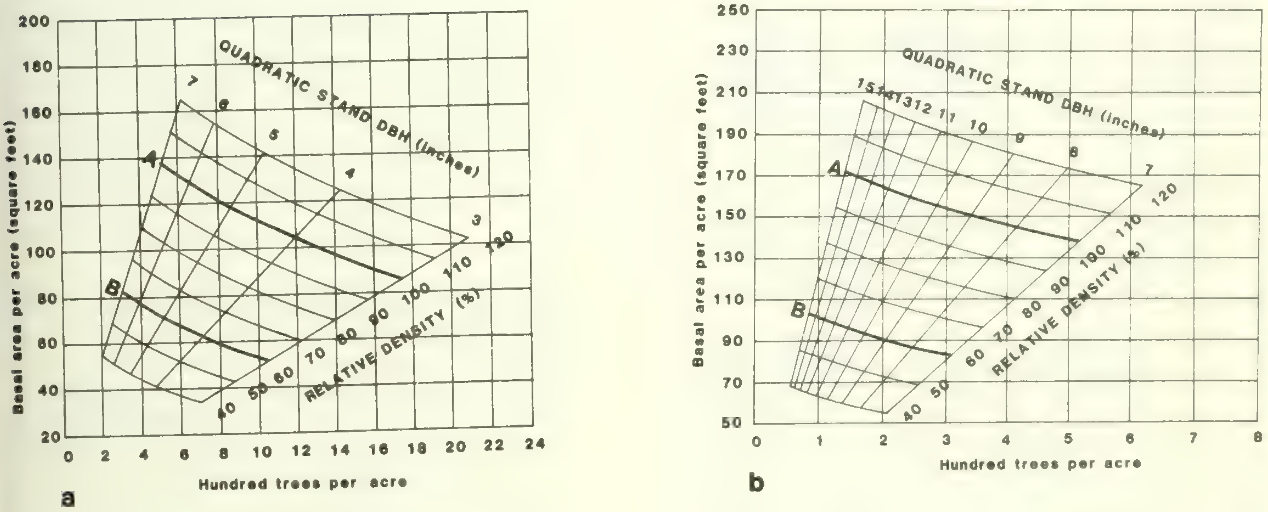


Figure 1.--Relation of basal area, number of trees, and average tree diameter to percent relative density for shortleaf pine (English units). Tree diameters range from 3-7 inches in figure 1a and from 7-15 inches in figure 1b. The area between curves A and B on both charts indicates the range in relative density where trees can fully utilize available growing space. (Average tree diameter is the diameter of the tree of average basal area).

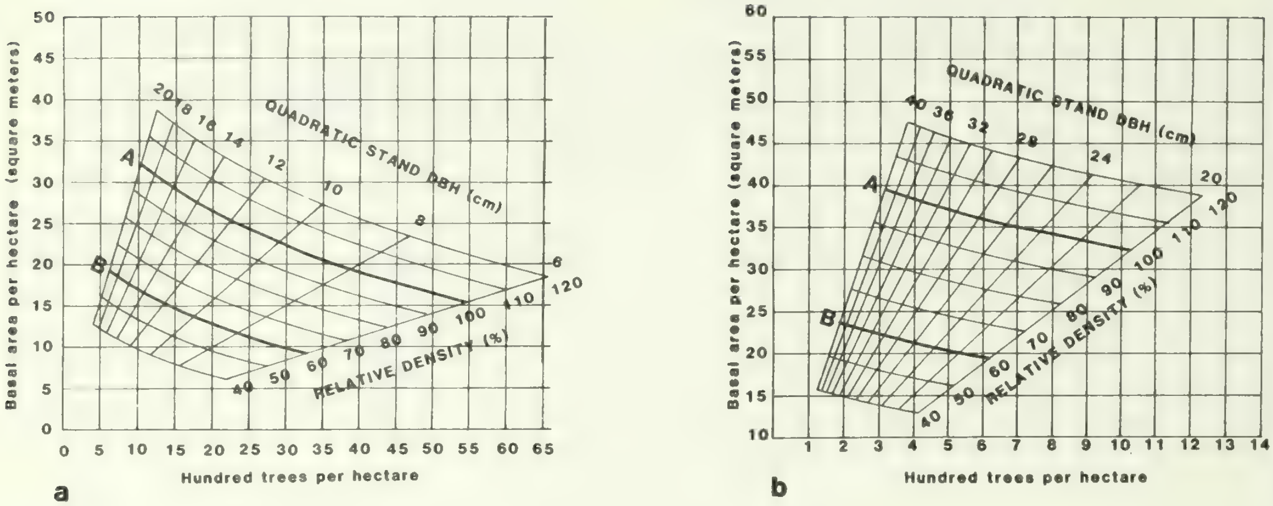


Figure 2.--Relation of basal area, number of trees, and average tree diameter to percent relative density for shortleaf pine (metric units). Tree diameters range from 6-20 cm in figure 2a and from 20-40 cm in figure 2b. The area between curves A and B on both charts indicates the range in relative density where trees can fully utilize available growing space. (Average tree diameter is diameter of the tree of average basal area.)

I constructed the stocking chart using equation (6) to solve for N and BA as I varied quadratic mean stand diameter and percent relative density. My first step was to divide (6) by 10 to put it on a percentage basis:

$$\text{percent relative density (PRD)} = 0.88N + 0.94\sum DBH + 0.25\sum DBH^2 \qquad (10)$$

then factoring N from the right hand side of equation (10) gives:

$$PRD = N\left[0.88 + 0.94\frac{\sum DBH}{N} + 0.25\frac{\sum DBH^2}{N}\right]; \qquad (11)$$

and rearranging equation (11) to solve for N gives:

$$N = \frac{PRD}{0.88 + 0.94\frac{\sum DBH}{N} + 0.25\frac{\sum DBH^2}{N}} \qquad (12)$$

Note that $\frac{\sum DBH}{N}$ equals arithmetic mean stand diameter (ASD) and $\frac{\sum DBH^2}{N}$ equals quadratic mean stand diameter squared (QSD^2). QSD is related to ASD by the coefficient of variation of ASD

$$QSD = ASD\sqrt{1 + CV^2}. \qquad (13)$$

Expressing ASD in terms of QSD gives:

$$ASD = \frac{QSD}{\sqrt{1 + CV^2}}. \qquad (14)$$

Substituting $\frac{QSD}{\sqrt{1 + CV^2}}$ in equation (12) results in

$$N = \frac{PRD}{0.88 + 0.94\frac{QSD}{\sqrt{1 + CV^2}} + 0.25QSD^2}. \qquad (1$$

Because I wanted CV^2 to also be expressed in terms of QSD, I used linear regression and Gingrich's (1967) data to calculate CV from QSD. The resulting equation was:

$$CV = 0.484 - 0.01275QSD;\ r^2 = 0.996,\ s_{y.x} = 0.0033; \qquad (1$$

then (1

$$N = \frac{PRD}{0.88 + 0.94\frac{QSD}{\sqrt{1 + (0.484 - .01275QSD)^2}} + 0.25QSD}$$

and

$$BA = N \cdot QSD. \qquad (1$$

The metric stocking chart was constructed in the same way. These charts can be used to estimate relative density in shortleaf pine stands if two of the following quantities are known: number of trees, basal area, or quadratic mean stand diameter.

The charts overestimate percent relative density in stands whose diameter range is narrow and underestimate those with a wide range. For maximum accuracy in estimating percent relative density, tree diameters should be measured and percent relative density should be calculated by using equation (6) or (7).

Roach and Gingrich (1968) give a good account of estimating basal area measurements, and Rogers (1980) presents the same information for metric measurements. In practice, trees 3 inches d.b.h. or smaller, if present at all, can be ignored in sawtimber stands. But 2-inch trees should be counted in stands composed of pole-sized trees. In all other stands, trees 1-inch d.b.h. or larger should be counted. Understory trees and shrubs should not be counted.

Percent relative density in mixed pine-upland hardwood stands can be estimated by tallying pine and hardwood basal areas and numbers of trees separately. Then the pine stocking chart (fig. 1-2) can be used to estimate the percent relative density of pine, and the upland hardwood stocking chart (Gingrich 1967) can be used to estimate the percent relative density (percent stocking) of the upland hardwoods. Percent relative density of the mixed stand is then the combined percent relative densities of the hardwood and pine.

Application of the Stocking Chart

Now that we have a stocking chart, what can we use it for? I have designated two reference lines on the stocking chart. One line (B) defines the minimum tree density for full site utilization, and the other (A) defines maximum density for full site utilization. When densities fall below the minimum density, trees have more room on the average than they need for maximum growth. If stand densities are above the maximum, the trees are too dense to maintain adequate growth and therefore mortality increases substantially.

To maximize the growth of both trees and stands, we need to have stands at a density that provides the average tree with no more or less than the maximum amount of growing space it can use. Theoretically this condition results in no wasted space. But in reality, the growth of each tree in a stand is not usually at a maximum because growing space is calculated as an average stand condition that does not necessarily pertain to each individual tree. To realize maximum d.b.h. growth per tree, each tree must be allocated its specific growing space based on its diameter. So thinning procedures must not only achieve a relative density goal on an area-wide basis, but must strive to furnish each tree with its maximum growing-space requirements.

To thin shortleaf pine stands, we need to set a stocking goal for each stand or group of stands. If timber production is important to us, we need to know when to expect a yield of merchantable products from our stands. For example, if saw logs bigger than 15 inches d.b.h. are the only products we expect from a stand currently 10 years old, then we should provide maximum growing space for only those crop trees that will be present at the end of the rotation. How many crop trees are necessary is determined by our goals of what future average d.b.h. and percent relative density should be.

On the other hand, if intermediate thinnings are profitable, then we can provide maximum growing space for all trees at the outset of our thinning program. A prudent thinning strategy is one that delays providing maximum growing space for all trees in a stand until thinning becomes profitable. If we know this point in time, then stocking goals can be defined and thinning procedures can be adjusted to agree with our goals. But most importantly, each crop tree must be provided with its specific maximum growing space.

After we have decided on our management goal and determined a future average stand diameter and percent relative density, we can use the stocking chart to find the corresponding number of future crop trees. Assuming that we want each of these future crop trees to have all the growing space they can use (60 percent relative density), we must remove other trees that compete with their growing space.

Distance between crop trees can be calculated by dividing the number of trees needed into 43,560 ft^2 (acre) or 10,000 m^2 (hectare) and taking the square root of the result. The forester should choose crop trees with desirable characteristics nearest the spacing just calculated along straight lines projected within the stand. Neighboring trees should be cut if they are closer than

$$1.322 + 0.709\text{DBH(in)} \quad \text{feet} \qquad (19)$$

$$0.403 + 0.085\ \text{DBH(cm)} \quad \text{meters} \qquad (20)$$

where DBH is the diameter of the larger tree. A simple thinning rule can be used to approximate this distance in feet by multiplying DBH by 7, dividing by 10, and adding 1.3 feet, i.e., distance (feet) = (7*DBH)/10 + 1.3; or in meters, distance (meters) = DBH/10 + 0.4.

I developed these equations from equation (4), which predicts crown diameter given d.b.h. Initially, thinning radii were calculated by dividing equation (4) by 2.

$$\text{thinning radius} = 1.426 + 0.7645\text{DBH} \qquad (21)$$

But computer simulations of thinnings in stands showed that percent relative density was being reduced below the desired 60-percent level by using this thinning radius. By experimenting, I found that reducing the thinning radius given in equation (21) by 7.3 percent was necessary to thin stands to 60 percent relative density. This led to equations (19) and (20). Thinning radii based on these equations for trees of different diameters are given in Table 4.

Table 4.--Thinning radii associated with shortleaf pine of varying d.b.h.s

D.b.h.		Radius	
Inches	Centimeters	Feet	Meters
3	7.6	3	1.1
4	10.2	4	1.3
5	12.7	5	1.5
6	15.2	6	1.7
7	17.8	6	1.9
8	20.3	7	2.1
9	22.9	8	2.3
10	25.4	8	2.6
11	27.9	9	2.8
12	30.5	10	3.0
13	33.0	11	3.2
14	35.6	11	3.4
15	38.1	12	3.6
16	40.6	13	3.9
17	43.2	13	4.1
18	45.7	14	4.3
19	48.3	15	4.5
20	50.8	16	4.7

Using this thinning method for all trees ensures, within the confines of preexisting spatial pattern, that each tree and the stand will be as close to 60 percent density as possible. But if only crop trees are considered, only they can be assured of having sufficient space for maximum growth.

My experience with shortleaf pine stands in Missouri shows that percent relative density increases from 2 to 4 percent per year. The rate is higher in young stands and those on good sites; it is lower for old stands and stands on poor sites. On a conservative basis, a stand thinned to 60 percent relative density will be at 80 percent relative density in 10 years, and at 100 percent relative density in 20 years. As percent relative density increases, growth on individual trees decreases, so a balance must be struck between diameter growth and frequency of thinnings. I thinnings are delayed much beyond a recommende 10-year interval, diameter growth of remaining trees will be reduced substantially. Moreover a 10-year thinning cycle maintains steady, nea maximum growth on residual trees.

In some instances, percent relative densities other than 60 percent will be desirable For example, reducing percent relative density to 50 or 40 percent encourages pine regenerati which thrives under these low overstory densit conditions as long as hardwood competition is controlled.

Guides for thinning shortleaf pine involve setting management goals, using stocking chart to determine future density levels, and using the 7/10 DBH + 1.3 thinning rule. Using these guides will help foresters create favorable growing conditions for all crop trees under their care.

LITERATURE CITED

Benzie, John W.
1977. Managers handbook for jack pine in th North Central States. USDA For. Serv., Gen. Tech. Rep. NC-32, 18 p. North Centra Forest Experiment Station, St. Paul, MN.

Benzie, John W.
1977. Managers handbook for red pine in th North Central States. USDA For. Serv., Gen. Tech. Rep. NC-33, 22 p. North Centr Forest Experiment Station, St. Paul, MN.

Chisman, H. H., and F. X. Schumacher.
1940. On the tree-area ratio and certain o its applications. J. For. 38(4):311-217.

Frank, Robert M., and John C. Bjorkbom.
1973. A silvicultural guide for spruce-fir the Northeast. USDA For. Serv., Gen. Tec Rep. NE-6, 29 p. Northeastern Forest Experiment Station, Broomall, PA.

Gingrich, Samuel F.
1967. Measuring and evaluating stocking an stand density in upland hardwood forests the Central States. For. Sci. 13:38-53.

Krajicek, J. B., K. A. Brinkman, and S. F. Gingrich.
1961. Crown competition--a measure of density. For. Sci. 7:35-42.

Leak, William B., Dale S. Solomon, and Stanle M. A. Filip.
1969. A silvicultural guide for northern hardwoods in the Northeast. USDA For. Se Res. Pap. NE-143, 34 p. Northeastern For Experiment Station, Broomall, PA.

Marquis, David A., Dale S. Solomon, and John C. Bjorkbom.
1969. A silvicultural guide for paper birch in the Northeast. USDA For. Serv., Res. Pap. NE-130. Northeastern Forest Experiment Station, Broomall, PA.

Murphy, Paul A., and Roy C. Beltz.
1981. Growth and yield of shortleaf pine in the West Gulf Region. USDA For. Serv., Res. Pap. SO-169. Southern Forest Experiment Station, New Orleans, LA.

Philbrook, James S., James P. Barrett, and William B. Leak.
1972. A stocking guide for eastern white pine. USDA For. Serv., Res. Note NE-168, 3 p. Northeastern Forest Experiment Station, Broomall, PA.

Roach, Benjamin A.
1977. A stocking guide for Allegheny hardwoods and its use in controlling intermediate cuttings. USDA For. Serv., Res. Pap. NE-373, 30 p. Northeastern Forest Experiment Station, Broomall, PA.

Roach, Benjamin A. and Samuel F. Gingrich.
1968. Even-aged silviculture for upland central hardwoods. USDA For. Serv., Agric. Handbk. 355, 39 p. Washington, D.C.

Rogers, Robert.
1980. Evaluating stocking in upland hardwood forests using metric measurements. USDA For. Serv., Res. Pap. NC-187, 5 p. North Central Forest Experiment station, St. Paul, MN.

Sander, Ivan L., and Robert Rogers.
1979. Growth and yield of shortleaf pine in Missouri. 21-year results from a thinning study. In Proceedings, 1978 Symposium for the Management of Pines in the Interior South. Knoxville, TN (November 7-8, 1978). USDA, Southeastern Area, State & Private Forestry, Tech. Pub. SA-TP2, p. 14-27. Atlanta, GA.

Schlesinger, Richard C., and David T. Funk.
1977. Managers handbook for black walnut. USDA For. Serv., Tech. Rep. NC-38, 22 p. North Central Forest Experiment Station, St. Paul, MN.

Smalley, Glendon W., and Robert L. Bailey.
1974. Yield tables and stand structure for shortleaf pine plantations in Tennessee, Alabama, Georgia Highlands. USDA For. Serv., Res. Pap. SO-97, 57 p. Southern Forest Experiment Station, New Orleans, LA.

Sokal, Robert R., and James F. Rohlf.
1969. Biometry, W. H. Freeman and Company. 775 p.

U. S. Department of Agriculture
1976. Volume, yield, and stand tables for second-growth southern pine. USDA For. Serv., Mis. Pub. 50 (Rev. 1929 ed.), 202 p. Washington, DC.

RECOVERY OF UNDERSTOCKED, UNEVEN-AGED PINE STANDS AND SUPPRESSED TREES[1]

B. F. McLemore [2]

Abstract.--Preliminary data indicates that recovery of understocked loblolly-shortleaf pine stands is rapid. Annual increase in percent stocking averaged 4.6 percent during the first two years, while basal area increased approximately 15 percent annually, following logging and release from hardwood competition. Suppressed trees also made good rates of recovery when released, averaging 0.7 inch increase in d.b.h. over the initial 2-year period. The best predictors of a suppressed tree's ability to recover and grow were: (1) stem diameter at the base of the crown, (2) radial growth for 5 years preceding release, (3) d.b.h., and (4) reciprocal of age.

INTRODUCTION

Research at Crossett, Arkansas, shows that uneven-aged management of loblolly (Pinus taeda) - shortleaf (P. echinata) stands may suit the private nonindustrial landowner's objectives better than intensive even-aged management practiced by most Federal, State, and industrial land managers (Reynolds 1969). A major problem in placing private land under management is the poor condition, or low stocking levels, often found on this land. Marketable stands of sawtimber are often liquidated, leaving the area poorly stocked.

Research on the Crossett Experimental Forest has demonstrated that forest properties having as little as 35 ft^2 basal area, or 2,000 bd. ft/acre (Doyle) sawlog volume can be quickly rehabilitated (Reynolds 1969). But many private ownerships today have stands with stocking levels below 35 ft^2 basal area or 2,000 bd. ft/acre. The question arises then about how poorly stocked a stand may be and subsequently recover after being placed under management. Also, many of the trees left after sawtimber has been cut are intermediate or suppressed, and their ability to recover and ma acceptable crop trees is unknown. A series of studies was installed in southern Arkansas in 1 to provide answers to these questions.

METHODS

Determination of Minimum Stocking Levels

Two uneven-aged loblolly-shortleaf pine-hardwood areas in south Arkansas were selected for study establishment. One study was established in Ashley County, where the site index f loblolly pine is about 95 feet at age 50, herea referred to as the good site. A second study w installed in Nevada and Ouachita counties where the site index for loblolly is about 80 feet, obviously the poor site.

Stocking levels of 10, 20, 30, 40 and 50 percent were established on good and poor sites according to the tree-area ratio (Chisman and Schumacher 1940) as modified by McLemore (1981) Treatment plots were 1-acre square plots with interior one-half acre measurement plots. The d.b.h. of all trees in the measurement plot was measured after two growing seasons; giving a preliminary rate of recovery. Rate of recovery was evaluated only for those trees which existe at the start of the growth period; new regenera was excluded from these analyses. All five tre ments were replicated three times on each area.

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Principal Silviculturist, Forestry Sciences Laboratory, Monticello, AR, Southern Forest Experiment Station, USDA Forest Service in cooperation with the Department of Forest Resources and the Arkansas Agricultural Experiment Station, University of Arkansas at Monticello.

Stocking levels were achieved following a preliminary inventory of the study areas. All trees larger than 12 inches d.b.h. were logged from plots during the winter of 1979-1980. Trees in the smaller d.b.h. classes were subsequently removed until the prescribed stocking levels were attained. Remaining trees ranging from seedlings to 12 inches d.b.h. were selected for uniformity of distribution. An effort was made to select adequate numbers of stems in each 1-inch class to approximate a Q factor of 1.2 to 1.3, where Q is the number of trees in a given diameter class as a proportion of the number of trees in the next higher class. Hardwoods on the study plots were injected with Tordon 101 in the spring of 1980.

Recovery of Suppressed Trees

Eighty-two intermediate and suppressed loblolly pines were selected on the isolation strips of the good site described above. The following 10 variables were measured for each tree to determine most important factors in predicting the ability of a suppressed tree to recover following release: (1) height, (2) d.b.h., (3) age, (4) radial growth last 5 years, (5) crown volume, (6) percent live crown, (7) stem diameter at base of crown, (8) hardwood competition index prior to release (Daniels and Burkhart 1975), (9) pine competition index prior to release, and (10) pine competition index after release. No measurements were made of the hardwood competition index after release since all hardwoods were injected when the study was installed. Trees ranged from 2 to 9 inches d.b.h. and from 12 to 3 years of age.

Response of the trees to release was evaluated y measuring d.b.h. after two growing seasons. tepwise regression analyses were employed to etermine the influence of the ten factors listed bove on d.b.h. growth.

RESULTS

Stocking Levels

The percentage increase in stocking levels n the good site ranged from 7.2 to 12.5, and veraged 9.5 percent after two growing seasons Table 1). Percentage increases on the poor site ere similar to the good site, ranging from 8.3 to 0.2 and averaging 9.1 percent. Analyses of ariance indicated no significant differences in ercentage increase in stocking between treatments t either site. Hence, the annual rate of recovery uring the initial 2-year period may be considered bout 4.6 percent, when new reproduction is ignored. he ingrowth of new regeneration would obviously ncrease this figure.

Assuming an annual recovery rate of 4.6 percent, the following tabulation indicates the approximate number of years for the various initial stocking levels to reach an acceptable level of 60 percent:

Initial percent stocking	Years to attain 60 percent stocking
10	40
20	25
30	16
40	9
50	4

It is emphasized that this assumes a straight line of recovery at 4.6 percent per year, which may not be the case in future years, and ignores the contribution of new reproduction.

All treatments showed a dramatic increase in basal area over the 2-year period (Table 2). Initial basal areas ranged from about 4 ft^2/acre for the 10 percent stocking level to about 16 ft^2/acre for the 50 percent level. The percentage increase over the two-year period was 38 percent on the good site and 31 percent on the poor site. The basal area of these understocked stands would double in 5 years if an annual increase of 15 percent is assumed.

Recovery of Suppressed Trees

Diameter growth of study trees was surprisingly good during the two years immediately following release. Average d.b.h. increased by 0.7 inch for the 82 trees. Since the trees averaged 4.8 inches d.b.h. initially, an increase in basal area of slightly over 30 percent during the 2-year period occurred. This is even more dramatic when it is considered that the trees averaged 26 years of age when the study was installed.

Table 3 lists the order in which the 10 variables appeared when a stepwise regression for d.b.h. growth was applied. The R^2 values are also listed. It is somewhat surprising that diameter at base of live crown appeared first, while percent live crown was last. Little was gained by going beyond the four variables of diameter at base of live crown, radial growth last 5 years, initial d.b.h., and reciprocal of age. The R^2 for these four variables was 0.60. None of the competition indices were of any great importance in determining a tree's ability to recover and grow. Again, these are preliminary results, after only two years of observation.

Table 1.--Change in stocking over a 2-year period.

Stocking Percent[1]			
Initial (1979)	After 2 years (1981)	Change	Percent Increase
		Good Site	
10.07	10.80	0.73	7.2
20.05	21.95	1.90	9.5
30.04	32.67	2.63	8.8
40.11	43.94	3.83	9.5
50.09	56.35	6.26	12.5
		Average	9.5
		Poor Site	
10.33	11.37	1.04	10.1
20.21	22.28	2.07	10.2
30.32	32.84	2.52	8.3
40.48	43.88	3.40	8.4
50.08	54.30	4.22	8.4
		Average	9.1

---

[1] Based on stocking equation.

Table 2.--Change in basal area over a 2-year period

	Basal Area (ft^2)			
Percent Stocking	Initial (1979)	After 2 years (1981)	Change	Percent Increase
			Good Site	
10	4.03	4.98	0.95	23.6 a [1]
20	6.96	9.36	2.40	34.5 b
30	9.88	13.18	3.30	33.4 ab
40	11.03	15.68	4.65	42.2 bc
50	12.85	20.07	7.22	56.2 c
			Average	38.0
			Poor Site	
10	4.42	5.76	1.34	30.3
20	7.46	10.05	2.59	34.7
30	11.99	15.74	3.75	31.3
40	13.96	18.34	4.38	31.4
50	17.91	22.94	5.03	28.1
			Average	31.2

---

[1] Percentages with the same letter do not differ significantly at the 0.05 level.

Table 3.--Regression models for d.b.h. growth after two years.

No. variables in model	R^2	Variables in model[1]
1	0.448	7
2	.533	7, 4
3	.569	7, 4, 2
4	.599	7, 4, 2, 3
5	.607	7, 4, 2, 3, 9
6	.612	7, 4, 2, 3, 9, 8
7	.619	7, 4, 2, 3, 9, 8, 5
8	.622	7, 4, 2, 3, 9, 8, 5, 1
9	.622	7, 4, 2, 3, 9, 8, 5, 1, 10
10	.622	7, 4, 2, 3, 9, 8, 5, 1, 10, 6

---

[1] 1. Height
2. Initial d.b.h.
3. Reciprocal of age
4. Radial growth last 5 yrs.
5. Crown volume
6. Percent live crown
7. Diameter at base of crown
8. Hdwd. competition index before release
9. Pine comp. index before release
10. Pine comp. index after release

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

Results from these studies indicate that nderstocked, uneven-aged loblolly-shortleaf pine tands may be expected to show an initial annual ate of recovery of 4.5 to 5 percent when hard- oods are controlled. If this trend continues, nd new reproduction is ignored, stocking levels ill double in approximately 15 years. Annual asal area increase averaged about 15 percent, ndicating that basal area will double in 5 years.

Suppressed trees showed good ability to ecover and grow following release, averaging .7 inch increase in d.b.h. over the initial -year period. The most accurate predictors of a ree's ability to recover and grow were stem iameter at the base of the crown, radial growth or 5 years preceding release, d.b.h., and eciprocal of age.

LITERATURE CITED

Chisman, H. H. and F. S. Schumacher.
1940. On the tree-area ratio and certain of its application. Jour. For. 38:311-317.

Daniels, R. F. and H. E. Burkhart.
1975. Simulation of individual tree growth and stand development in managed loblolly pine plantations. Va. Poly. Inst., Div. of For. and Wildlife Resources, FWS-5-75. 69 p.

McLemore, B. F.
1981. Minimum stocking levels required for successful management of uneven-aged loblolly-shortleaf pine stands. Proc. First Biennial South. Silv. Res. Conf. USDA Forest Serv. GTR SO-34, p. 292-293.

Reynolds, R. R.
1969. Twenty-nine years of selective timber management on the Crossett Experimental Forest. Forest Serv. South. For. Expt. Sta. Res. Paper SO-40.

THINNING THE UPLAND HARDWOOD FOREST: A MECHANIZED SYSTEM[1/]

H.G. Gibson, P.E. Pope, D.L. Cassens,
B.C. Fischer and G.M. Wright[2/]

Abstract.—In the recent past, many upland hardwood forest stands have been harvested with little thought given to the future stand or it's management. As a result, the growth rate and perhaps quality of future crop trees in such stands could be substantially improved by the selective removal of sub-sawlog size stems. To date, only a limited number of these stands have been thinned, primarily because harvesting costs exceeded the value of the products removed. Markets have been limited mainly to pulp, but increasing costs and demand for wood biomass may increase the value of wood chips and improve the opportunity for thinning. This paper reports on the costs and productivity of various machines combined to produce a low capital cost but highly mechanized system for thinning upland hardwoods for energy biomass or pulp chips. The system was composed of an 18 inch capacity feller-buncher, a two-wheel-drive grapple skidder, and a 12 inch capacity whole tree chipper. The oak-hickory stand selected for thinning was typical of the region. Depending on the block samples, the basal area ranged from 61 to 105 square feet per acre for trees 4 inches and greater in DBH. Various size classes of trees up to 12 inches were removed from the different blocks, thus reducing the basal area to a range of 43 to 70 square feet per acre. Depending on treatment, production rates ranged fom 2.68 to 10.11 tons per hour. The cost to produce chips ranged from a low of $18.06 per green ton to $45.86 per green ton with variation due to stand characteristics, removal rate, and chip use. Following the thinning, damage to the residual trees was classified as acceptable but the amount of damage increased as the basal area removed, increased. Soil erosion was slight to moderate in the main skid trails and non-detectable on the remainder of the area.

INTRODUCTION

Thinning, as a silvicultural tool, is an important aspect of timber management in the hardwood regions of the United States. Crown release or crown thinning usually results in volume growth of the residual stand which greater than the unthinned stand (Beck and De - Bianca, 1975; Graney and Pope, 1978) and be justified both silviculturally and econo cally. In well managed stands thinned perio cally, this increase in volume growth approach 35 percent (Harrington and Karn 1975) but is dependent on a number of fact including pre- and post-thinning stand den ties, average size class, age of the resid stand, and site quality (Roach and Gingri 1968). Intermediate thinnings aimed at upgr ing the existing stand by removing poor qual growing stock, weed trees and understory rar enhance residual stand growth (Dale, 1975; F guson, unpublished; Weitzman and Trimble, 19 and have been all but abandoned in many for

---

[1/] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2/] Assoc. Prof., Agricultural Engineering Dept.; Assoc. Prof., Assoc. Prof., Assoc. Prof., Forestry and Natural Resources Dept.; Extension Forester, SIPAC; Purdue University, West Lafayette, IN 47907.

management programs. Where non-commercial thinnings are practiced, forest managers have used chemical herbicide treatments, girdling or fell-and-leave methods to remove small trees from a stand on a pure-cost, no-return basis.

Rising energy costs and potential disruptions in liquid fuel supplies have caused industries, national planners, and research institutions to look at biomass as an energy source. In particular, forest biomass from thinnings and residues have been identified as a source that could supply, each year, up to 10 Quads (10 x 10^{12} Btus) by the year 2000 to the energy requirements of the United States. Conversion to energy could take the form of gasification, alcohol (methanol or ethanol) production, or direct combustion (industrial and/or private home consumption). The largest supply of forest material exists in timber stands that require thinning for sawlog management. Two forces, then, are coming together to hopefully produce beneficial results here-to-fore not possible: energy needs and timber management needs resulting in biomass for energy from thinnings and well managed timber stands for improved solid wood production.

One critical problem that must be answered, however, is how to remove the forest biomass material economically without excessive damage to the residual forest stand. Successes have been noted in highly capitalized systems, but for many small sized upland (central states) hardwood stands, a small, mobile system may be more practical (Cowdrick et al., 1981). This study was conducted to determine the feasibility of using a small, low-capital-investment, mobile thinning system for the upland hardwoods.

Specific objectives of this research were to determine operational costs by time/production for the shears, grapple skidder and in-woods chipper system, to determine the influence of chip quality, i.e., whole tree vs. bole wood chips, on biomass yield and operational costs, and to determine site and residual stand damage resulting from this thinning system.

METHODS AND EQUIPMENT

Site

The prethinning basal area was 105, 100 and 1 square feet per acre, respectively, for trees inches and greater for blocks 1, 2 and 3. The stand was thinned from below using a diameter limit cut. All stems 4 through 12 inches DBH ere removed from block 1, 4 through 10 inches BH from block 2 and 4 through 8 inches from lock 3. Residual stand basal area (ft^2) were 1, 70 and 43 for block 1, 2, and 3, respectively.

Soils

The predominate soil type on the study site was a Zainesville silt loam (Type Fragiudalfs, fine-silty, mixed, mesic) of 6 to 12 percent slope with major inclusions of Wellston silt loam (Ultic Hapludalfs, fine-silty, mixed, mesic) also of 6 to 12 percent slope. Both soils occur on upland sites and are deep, well drained, gently sloping to strongly sloping and have a moderately fine textured subsoil, the lower part of which is a fragipan for the Zainesville soil.

Harvesting Equipment

The equipment selected for use in this study was based on the results of a previous study which evaluated different capacity and capitalized value thinning systems for uses in upland hardwoods (Cowdrick et al., 1981). The equipment selected was: 1) a Dunham, Model 660 Log Skidder 75.5 HP - equipped with a 40 inch opening grapple; 2) a Melroe Bobcat Feller-Buncher, Model 1080, equipped with a 18 inch opening shear; and, 3) a Morbark Model 12 Whole Tree Chipper with a 12 inch chipper throat opening (Fig. 3). Chips were transported by highway chip vans.

A landing area, 150 x 180 feet, was selected at a convenient location for chip van turn-around and skid trail termination and was sized for 2 chip vans, the chipper, a deck for whole tree storage and a skidder turn around area (Figs. 1 and 2).

Reference markers were located along the main skid trails prior to the harvesting operation and were assessed before, immediately following the termination of harvesting operations, and one year after harvesting to evaluate soil movement resulting from the harvesting operation and subsequent erosion. Immediately following the harvesting operation, the main skid trails were sown with red fesuce.

The trees were felled and bunched by the feller-buncher with the basal end of the stems (butts) facing the landing, or at an angle to the skid trail (Fig. 4). The skidder transported loads of bunched trees to the landing. Felling, bunching, and skidding were timed as was the chipping phase.

Timing of each operation was based on 100% of each phases' operation. Timing data was recorded in the woods for the feller-buncher and delays of the skidder (i.e., the woods observer timed the feller-buncher operation and noted delays for the skidder), while the chipper and skidder were timed at the landing. Total tonnage came from pulpmill weight tickets. Each machine handled the same weight, hence total tons divided by machine time gives the production rate (or tons/unit time). To create a balanced system, skidder tonnage was doubled (using 2 skidders). Some error might be introduced here since 2 skidders could interfere with each other. For this study, this was assumed negligible.

On arrival at the landings, the trees were deposited either at the chipper, or -- if the chipper had a supply of trees -- on the landing but out of reach of the chipper. The skidder operator would move trees from the storage area to the chipper when necessary.

Main trails were marked but no other skid trails were prepared. The feller-buncher did some clearing of trees from the main trails. The landing was cleared of trees and a small segment was leveled by blading for use by the chip van. The truck road was cut through the timber by felling trees and a moderate amount of blading. Steep sections and soft spots were rocked. These preparation times and costs not included in the cost figures at the end this paper.

Residual Stand Damage

All damage to the residual stand recorded and ploted on a stand map at the t of occurrance, except for root damage estima which were assessed after activity in a plot completed. Residual stand damage was divi into three categories: (1) basal stem dama (2) root damage, and (3) limb breakage, evaluated for the skidder and the feller-bunc (F/B). Basal stem damage was defined as alteration in the bark and cambial tissue wh resulted in the exposure of the inner wo Examples include fisures and bark separati and removal of bark and cambium resulting f impacts with the machinery or in tree fell and skidding operations. Root damage defined as the exposure or severing of roo

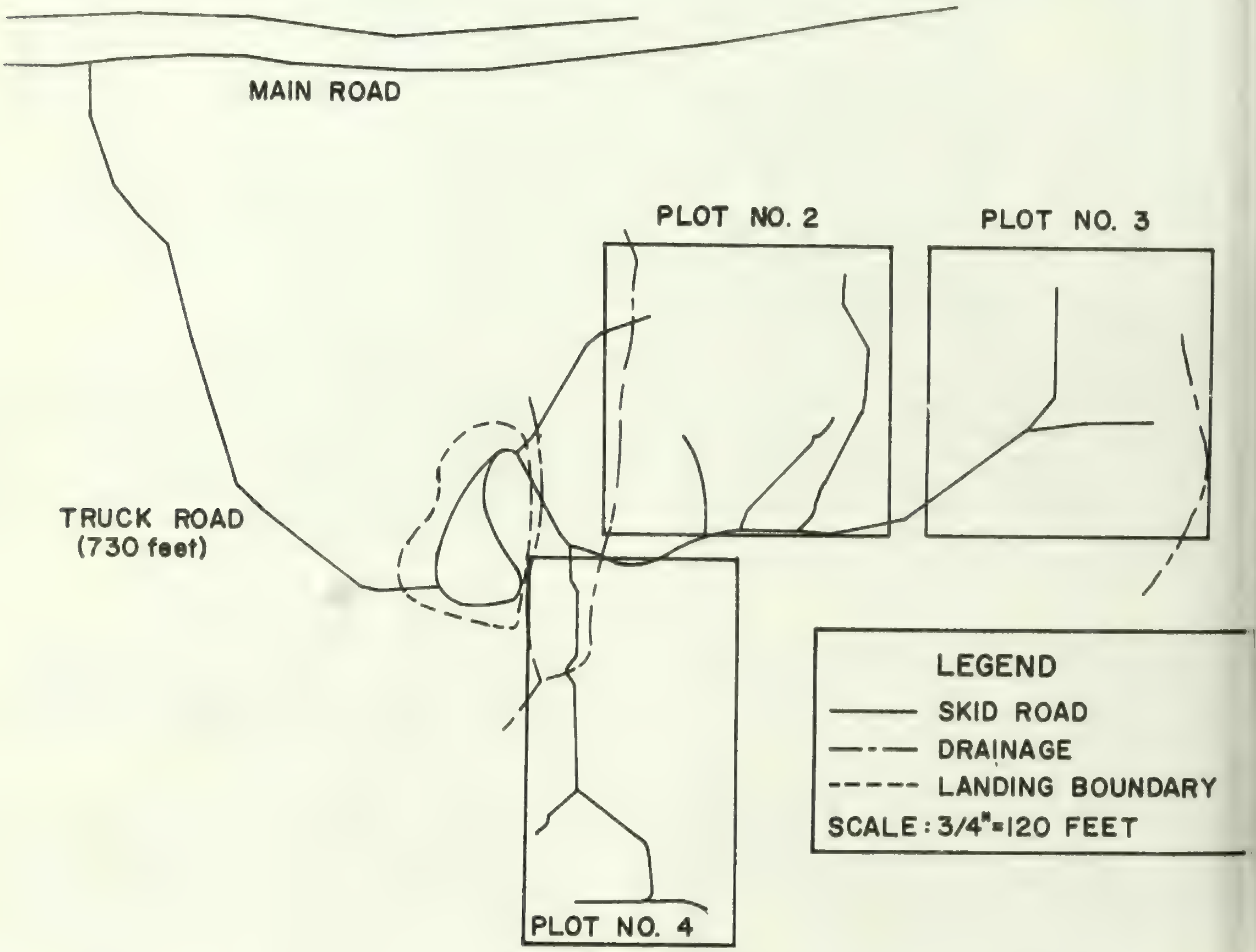


Figure I. Harvest Plot Locations with Truck Road, Landing, and Main Skid Road.

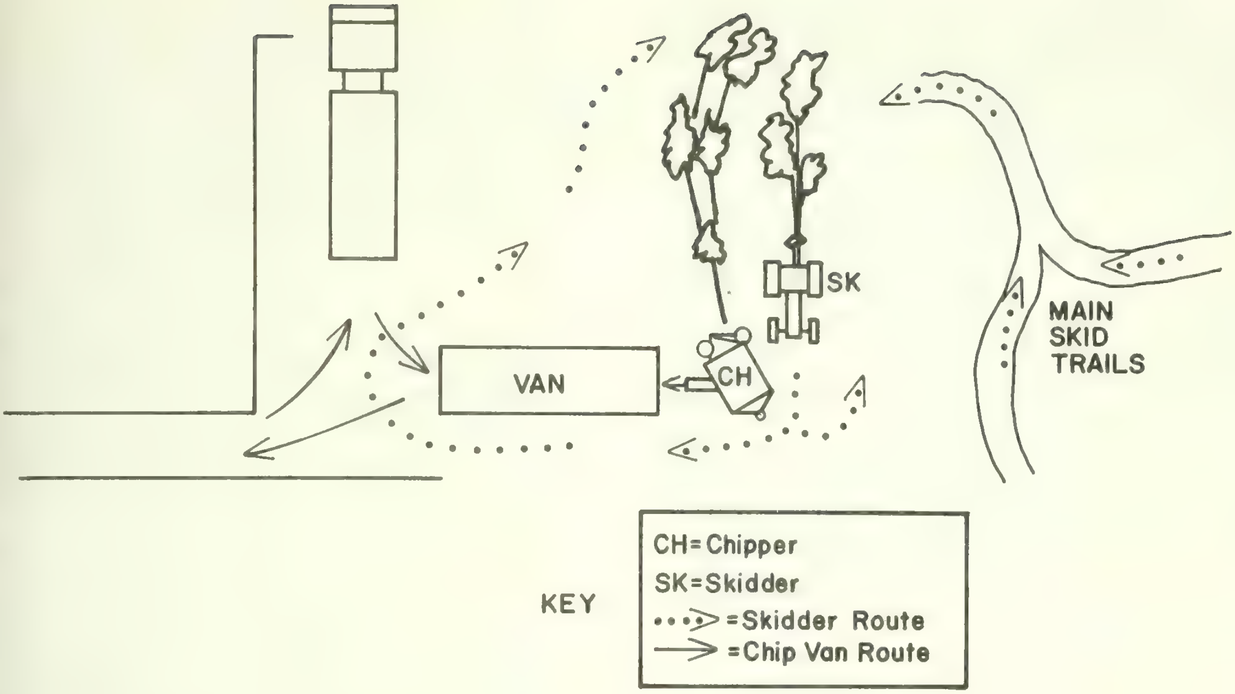


Figure 2. Landing layout and traffic flow.

Figure 3.--Harvesting equipment used in study. Feller-buncher at left and skidder, chipper, and chip van at right.

Figure 4.--One of the cull trees sheared and chipped in study.

Limb breakage was recorded for all limbs two inches and larger on trees of the residual stand.

The damage to each residual crop tree, by the skidding and felling operation, was examined after completion of the thinning. The wound surface area of trees barked by the skidder or feller-buncher was estimated by two measurements at right angles to each other. Total damage in square inches by the skidder and feller-buncher and as a percent of the total crop trees damaged was determined. Limbs broken in the felling operation were recorded by two diameter classes: limbs greater than 4" diameter at the bole, and limbs less than 4" at the bole. Limb diameter up in the crowns had to be estimated. Damage to root systems was recorded if skid trail ruts exposed crop tree roots. Root damage was expressed as the percent of total crop trees damaged.

RESULTS

Harvesting costs were determined us standard methods developed by Miyata (198 The processing rate for each operation was c culated from the number of trees handled and time used in each separate phase (felli bunching, skidding, and chipping). The proce ing rates are given in Table 1.

Delays

Delays occurred primarily in the chipp phase of the system. Because of the limi intake on the chipper, 24 to 36 inches from butt end of 44 trees had to be removed by ch sawing before chipping could be complet Total delay, including skidder caused dela amounted to 36.0 minutes of 47 percent of total chipping time.

Costs

Production costs were established using balanced harvesting system. The lowest produ ing unit was the skidder at 0.059 tons minute. Using simulation, the system balanced by adding a second skidder that resu in a production table as follows for bloc (considered typical for this type of operatio

Feller/Buncher	0.171 tons/min (pulp chips
Skidder	0.118 tons/min (pulp chips
Chipper	0.185 tons/min (pulp chips

A higher production chipper would neces tate the addition of a third skidder to off the over production of the feller-buncher for this system, two skidders are sufficie Equipment and labor costs used to determine sy tem costs are given in Table 2. Table 3 gi the cost for pulp chips where the top chips inch main stem) were chipped but deposited i pile beside the van. Table 3 also reflects

Table 1. Processing Rate (Time) for Each Function

	Block #1		Block #2		Block #3	
	Trees per min.	Tons per min.	Trees per min.	Tons per min.	Trees per min.	Tons per min.
Fell-Bunch	0.73	.273 (.171)	0.89	.265 (.165)	1.25	.121 (.061)
Skid	0.25	.094 (.059)	0.32	.095 (.059)	0.76	.073 (.045)
Chip	0.79	.296 (.185)	0.85	.253 (.158)	1.30	.126 (.079)

NOTE: Values in () are for pulp chips where top weights are not included in processing rates.

Table 2. Equipment and labor costs.

Machine	Labor	Machine Rate $/Prod. Hr.[1]	Labor Rate $/Prod. Hr.	Total Cost/Hour $/Prod. Hr.
1 Bobcat Feller Buncher	1 Oper.	23.14	9.23	32.37
2 Dunham 660 Log Skidder	2 Oper.	30.46	14.92	45.38
1 Mobark 12" Chiparvester	1 Oper.	31.96	8.00	39.96
1 Fuel & Maintenance Truck	--	5.68	--	5.68
2 Chainsaws	--	3.80	--	3.80
1 Landing Worker	1	--	5.00	5.00
			Total	$132.19/hr

[1] Total cost per productive hour includes utilization rates per Miyata and Steinholb, 1981. Does not include trucking.

Table 3. Removals for Pulpwood Use [stem wood to a 10 cm (4 inch) top] and Harvesting Cost for Each Plot.

Block	Removals ton/acre[1]	Prod. Rate ton/hr	Cost/ton[2]
(4" to 12")	27.14	7.08	$25.91
(4" to 10")	18.30	7.08	29.22
(4" to 8")	7.71	3.66	45.86

[1] Available for pulpchips (without tops).

[2] 55 mile transportation distance.

Table 4. Removals for Energy Use (total tree weight including branches) and Harvesting Cost for Each Plot.

Block	Removals ton/acre[1]	Prod. Rate ton/hr	Cost/ton[2]
(4" to 12")	43.63	11.28	$18.06
(4" to 10")	29.42	11.40	20.13
3 (4" to 8")	12.39	7.26	30.47

[1] Includes tops.

[2] 55 mile transportation distance.

cost of hauling 55 miles, one-way to a pulpmill[1]. Costs per ton of fuel and pulp chips are given in Tables 3 and 4. Table 4 shows the costs of producing chips for an (hypothetical) energy plant located 55 miles from the harvesting site. The weight of chips from tops (branches and leaves) was incorporated into the production figures for this table. The separate machine costs per hour as given in Table 2 were used, along with production rates, to determine the cost per ton figures in Tables 3 and 4.

Residual Stand Damage

Damage to the residual stand is given in Table 5. Most of the damage was caused by the skidding phase of the operation where 11 to 18 percent of the residual trees were damaged (bark removed) near the bottom of the tree (Fig. 5). Maximum damage by the feller-buncher was 1 percent. Root damage could not be separated by machine so skidder and feller-buncher damage are combined. Root damage ranged from 1 to 7 percent. Limb breakage on residual trees was caused solely by the feller-buncher and ranged from 2 to 5 percent.

DISCUSSION

The equipment studied does provide a mobile system to thin upland hardwoods (Fig. 6). The costs of producing pulpchips with this system is not competitive with larger equipment when chips from the tree tops cannot be used. However, energy chip costs (which includes tree tops) are close to competitive prices for some nonrenewable sources of energy. In some locations, this system could produce energy chips at a cost

---

[1] Note: Actual distance was 110 miles with proportionally higher transportation costs. The shorter distance was selected as being more realistic.

Table 5. Residual stand damage (as percent of remaining trees).

Block	Basal Stem Damage			Root Damage	Limb Breakage		Residual Trees
	Skidder	F/B[1]	Total	Skidder + F/B	F/B	Removed	per Acre
1 (4"-12")	18%	1%	19%	7%	3%	85	58
2 (4"-10")	11%	1%	12%	5%	5%	31	75
3 (4"-8")	1%	0%	1%	1%	2%	73	59

[1] F/B = Feller-Buncher.

Table 6. Conventional Fuel Costs and Equivalent Wood Costs.

Coal — \$32/ton (13000 Btu/lb) 80% Combustion efficiency	Wood — \$6.25/ton (3500 Btu/lb) 60% Combustion efficiency
Oil — \$1.30/gal (140,000 Btu/gal) 80% Combustion efficiency	Wood — \$43.00/ton
Natural Gas — \$3.30/100 ft^3 85% Combustion efficiency	Wood — \$17.00/ton

Note: Fuel costs used are for 1981.

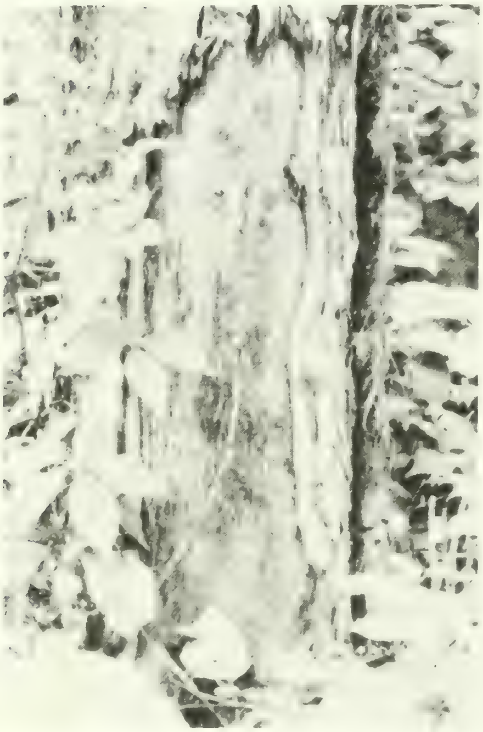


Figure 5.--Residual tree damaged in skidding.

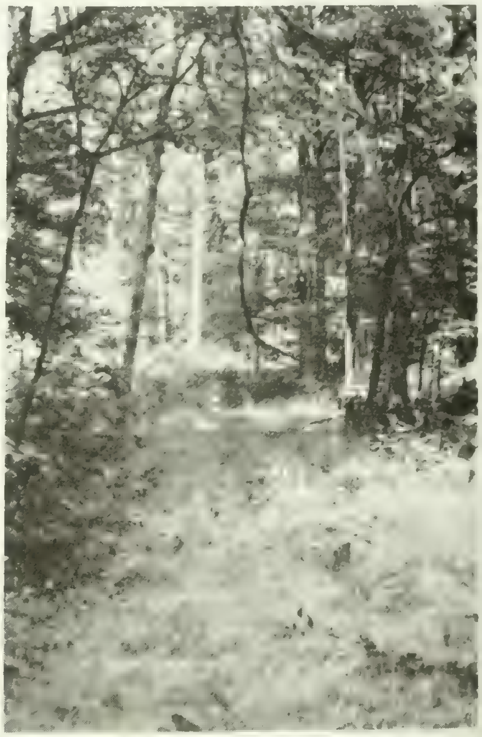


Figure 6.--One of main skid roads after logging.

Table 7. Thinning degree by block.

Block #	No. trees Before	No. trees After	No. trees removed	BA (ft^2/A) Before	BA (ft^2/A) After	BA removed
3	264	118	146	63	42	21
2	213	151	62	103	70	33
1	285	116	169	105	61	44

comparable with alternative conventional energy sources. Using Arola and Myata's (1981) method of determining breakeven costs for wood vs. other fuels equivalent wood prices to equal conventional fuel are given in Table 6.

The lowest cost of producing wood from our study was $18.06/ton which does not include profit or stumpage. Using a 25% profit margin and a $2/ton stumpage value, the lowest cost jumps to $25.08 per ton. Referring to Table 6, this cost is not competitive with coal at $6.25/ton, is more than natural gas, but is less than oil where the equivalent wood cost is $43.00/ton.

The diameter limit cut (intermediate cut) in effect left the stand structured for a shelterwood system. The objective of the thinning, from the silvicultural perspective, was to maintain adequate density in the size class of the main stand - the bulk of the dominant and co-dominant trees - and provide formable conditions for oak regeneration. The reduction in basal area to 42, 70 and 61 ft^2 (Table 7) should open the stand to encourage natural regeneration and efforts are underway to monitor and stimulate reproduction by desirable species. Based on the Roach and Gingrich (1968) stocking guide block 3 was over-thinned and blocks 1 and 2 are just above the B curve but are classified as fully stocked. Block 3 was located in an old field abandoned 60-75 years ago. The stem diameters and species composition of this block certainly reflect its recent old field history.

It should be restated emphatically, at this point, that the objective of the study was to determine the costs of removing small trees from a stand using three different removal size ranges. The methods used are not necessarily good forestry practices and, in one case (the removal of 4 to 8 inch trees, block 3, an advanced old field succession situation) proved to be completely uneconomical, as well. What we have done is harvest small trees from a mixed upland hardwood stand using a thinning-from-below technique and done it with a small, mobile system at a cost that is presently competitive with higher cost fuels. We do not recommend this technique without modification. Some selectivity needs to be made in marking trees in the 4 to 12 inch DBH range to avoid removing trees of good form and species that have higher commercial value (white oak, etc.). Also, we believe that some trees larger than 12 inches should be removed. Those trees of poor form and of low commercial value for solid wood products. Removing these larger trees becomes a handling problem, however, for this small equipment. These trees would probably have to be felled by chainsaw and possibly bucked into pieces for the skidder to handle.

A larger capacity chipper is needed, not only for a modified technique where larger trees are taken, but also for the size of trees removed in this study.

REFERENCES

Cowdrick, R.M., H.G. Gibson and D.L. Cassens. 1981. Systems for Biomass Harvesting from Natural Hardwood Stands. ASAE Paper No. 81-1597. 21 p.

Arola, R.A. and E.S. Myata. 1981. Harvesting Wood for Energy. U.S. Forest Service, Nor. Central Experiment Station Research Paper NC-200.

Harrington, C.A. and J.J. Karnig. 1975. Black Rock Forest Papers: Growth Increases After Moderate Thinning in a 70 Year-old Mixed Oak Stand. Paper No. 31, 8 p. Harvard Black Rock Forest, Cornwall, New York 12518.

Graney, D.L. and P.E. Pope. 1978. Response of Red Oaks and White Oak to Thinning and Fertilization in the Boston Mountains of Arkansas. In (Pope, P.E. ed.) Central Hardwood Forest Conference II 1978, Purdue University. p. 357-369.

Beck, D.E. and L. Della Bianca. 1975. Board-Foot Diameter Growth of Yellow-Popular After Thinning. USDA Forest Service, Research Paper SE-123. 20 p.

Dale, Martin E. 1975. Effect of Removing Understory on Growth of Upland Oak. USDA Forest Service, Research Paper NE-321. 10 p.

Ferguson, E.R. (unpublished). Thinning 60-Year Old White Oak Stands in the Ozarks. Final Progress Report FS-SO-1101-7.5, USDA Forest Service, Fayetteville, Arkansas.

Weitzman, S. and G.R. Trimble, Jr. 1957. Some Natural Factors That Govern the Management of Oaks. USDA Forest Service, Research Paper NE-88. 40 p.

Miyata, E.S. 1980. Determining Fixed and Operating Costs of Logging Equipment. USDA Forest Service Research Paper NC-55, 16 p.

Roach, B.A. and S.F. Gingrich. 1968. Even-Ag Silviculture for Upland Central Hardwood USDA Forest Service, Northeast Forest Exper ment Station, Agri Handbook 355, p. 39.

APPENDIX

Table A1. Trees by Species and Size in Block 3.
(Removal of 4" to 8" Diameter, 264 trees total, 2.06 acres)

Tree	% in Block			
type	4"	6"	8"	Total
Oak	2.65	4.55	3.03	10.23
Maple	8.33	9.47	3.03	20.83
Ash	0.76	1.90	2.27	4.93
Hickory	1.52	3.03	2.27	6.82
Sass	22.73	9.09	0.76	32.58
Other[1/]	10.98	10.98	2.65	24.61
Total	46.97	39.02	14.01	100.00

Table A2. Trees by Species and Size in Block 2.
(Removal of 4" to 10" Diameter, 213 trees total, 2.06 acres)

Tree	% in Block				
Type	4"	6"	8"	10"	Total
Oak	2.35	12.20	16.90	20.66	52.11
Maple	2.35	8.92	3.29	- 0 -	14.56
Ash	1.88	5.63	3.29	2.35	13.15
Hickory	2.82	6.10	5.63	3.76	18.31
Other[1/]	0.47	0.47	0.47	0.47	1.88
Total	9.87	33.32	29.58	27.24	100.01

Table A3. Trees by Species and Size in Block 1.
(Removal of 4" to 12" Diameter, 285 trees total, 2.06 acres)

Tree	% in Plot					
Type	4"	6"	8"	10"	12"	Total
Oak	2.46	7.02	8.77	10.18	9.12	37.55
Maple	4.21	5.26	2.81	1.40	- 0 -	13.68
Ash	0.35	1.05	0.70	1.05	1.05	4.20
Hickory	5.26	8.77	9.82	9.82	9.12	42.79
Other[1/]	- 0 -	1.05	- 0 -	0.70	- 0 -	1.75
Total	12.28	23.15	22.10	23.15	19.29	99.97

[1/] "Other" includes Sassafras, Ironwood, Blue Beech, Beech, Dogwood, and Hawthorn (except in Table 1 where Sassafras is included).

OPERATIONAL CHARACTERISTICS OF A HARVESTER IN INTERMEDIATE CUTTINGS[1]

Bryce J. Stokes and Donald L. Sirois[2]

Abstract.--The felling and processing capabilities of the Makeri 33T, a small Finnish harvester, were evaluated in a thinning operation in a southeast Louisiana loblolly plantation. Cutting patterns tested were select thinning with and without access corridors. The effect of product length on production was also evaluated. Regression analyses were used to establish production rates for the alternatives. Highest production was for tree-length product length at close corridor spacings. Residual stand damage and soil compaction were measured for each operating procedure. There was a slight soil bulk density increase in areas where the machine operated. An average of 32 percent of all residual trees per acre had some type of bole damage.

INTRODUCTION

Technological prerequisites for thinning equipment include low capital cost, high production, and minimal disturbance to the soil and residual trees. Such economical and environmentally sound systems can increase production from small ownerships and can be used on large industrial and Federal forest lands as well. Efficient, low-cost, thinning systems for small tracts are needed and are being developed.

The Makeri (fig. 1) is a small multifunctional machine, capable of felling, limbing, and bucking single stems. Prototype units have been operating in the South since early 1981. The Makeri was evaluated in a 14-year-old seeded loblolly plantation in southeastern Louisiana. Production studies were performed for different operating procedures. Soil compaction and residual stem damage data were also collected.

PROCEDURES

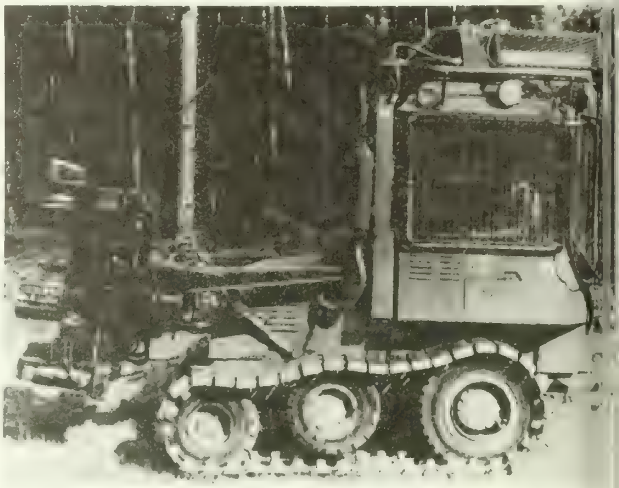


Figure 1--Makeri Harvester

Two thinning procedures, pure-select and corridor-select were studied over a range of removal levels, corridor spacings, and product lengths (See test block description). If the block was to be a corridor test, then a 10 ft wide corridor was flagged at the appropriate sp ing. The access corridor meandered around the best quality trees leaving them in the stand wh possible. The width of the corridor was at lea 10 ft but would vary depending on spacing of removal trees. Every tree within the flagged corridor was cut.

---

[1] Paper presented at the Second Biennial Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Research Engineer and Project Leader, Southern Forest Experiment Station, USDA Forest Service, Auburn University, Alabama 36849.

Test Blocks

Block No.	Removal Percentage	Thinning Method	Corridor Spacing (ft)	Product Length (ft)
1	40	Select	--	5
2	48	"	--	5
3	61	"	--	5
4	45	"	--	10
5	52	Corridor	30	5
6	64	"	30	5
7	68	"	30	5
8	62	"	30	10
9	48	"	30	24
10	46	"	30	Tree Length
11	45	"	50	5
12	51	"	50	5
13	60	"	50	5
14	64	"	50	10
15	56	"	50	24
16	71	"	50	24
17	53	"	50	Tree Length
18	56	"	100	5
19	45	"	100	5
20	55	"	100	24
21	57	"	100	Tree Length

Cycle Elements

Element	Explanation
Move to tree	Time element began when the shear head was returned to upright position after dropping the tree top from the previous cycle. Element ended when frontal plane of shear crossed frontal plane reference point of tree to be sheared.
Position and shear	Element began when tree first entered shear. This element ended with initial movement of the tracks after severing the tree from the stump.
Move to process area	Initial movement of tracks after shearing was the beginning of this element. The end was signified by cessation of tracks at the point of processing.
Limb and buck	Time element began with cessation of the machine track movement at process area. This element included lowering of stem, movement for pile location, limbing and bucking. The element also included releasing the tree top and concluded after the empty shear head was returned to upright position.

After the corridors were flagged, all leave trees in the block were marked. Selection of residual trees was based on a combination of size, quality and spacing factors. A tree tally was made to determine the initial stocking and residual trees for each block. In the pure select test blocks (no corridors), the trees to be cut were tagged with numbers and the X, Y coordinates were measured and recorded along with diameter at breast height (dbh). For the blocks with corridors, the trees in the strip between two corridors and in the corridors were numbered. Distance from the center of the left corridor was measured and recorded for each tree. Elements of the harvesting cycle were timed while harvesting the blocks. Approximately 20-30 cycles were timed per block (See cycle element description).

RESULTS

Levels of tree removals per block were controlled to determine the effect on production and stand impact. Before thinning the plantation had an average of 649 trees per acre (Table 1). For all the tests, an average of 356 trees per acre were removed with a range of 173-672 trees per acre. The harvested trees had an average dbh of 5.3 in, an average total height of 48.7 ft, and an average crown of 14.0 ft. The average merchantable volume per stem was 3.1 cu. ft. Tops were cut at a merchantable limit of "3 inches", outside bark diameter.

Data used in the analysis was the productive time measured during harvesting of test blocks. A summary of the cycle data is shown in Table 2. Regresssion techniques were used to develop prediction equations for each cycle element.

Table 1--Stand and Stem Characteristics.

Type of Blocks (No. of Blocks)			Trees per Acre		Harvested Trees			
		Total	Removed	Residual	dbh in	Merch. Height ft	Crown ft	Merch. Vol. cu. ft.
All	Mean	649	356	294	5.3	32.9	14.0	3.1
(21)	Std dev	184	117	100	1.2	5.6	1.6	1.9
	Min	384	173	190	2.8	21.8	10.8	0.0
	Max	1120	672	548	9.8	52.4	19.7	9.2
Select	Mean	630	329	302	4.8	30.6	13.3	2.4
(4)	Std dev	124	112	75	1.1	5.5	1.4	1.8
	Min	464	223	225	3.0	21.8	11.1	0.0
	Max	800	512	403	9.0	48.8	18.7	9.2
Corridor	Mean	655	364	291	5.4	33.3	14.1	3.2
(17)	Std dev	202	121	108	1.2	5.5	1.6	1.8
	Min	384	173	190	2.8	22.2	10.8	0.0

Table 2--Time Study

Type Block No. (obs)		Time Per Tree (Minutes)					
		Travel to Tree	Shear	Travel to Pile	Delimb & Buck	Total Travel	Total Cycle
All							
21	Mean	.17	.08	.14	.47	.32	.85
(409)	Std dev	.12	.08	.10	.19	.17	.26
	Range	.01-.82	.01-.91	.00-.58	.13-1.71	.06-.90	.32-2.05
Select							
4	Mean	.21	.08	.11	.46	.32	.84
(63)	Std dev	.18	.07	.08	.20	.20	.28
	Range	.03-.82	.01-.44	.00-.58	.17-1.08	.08-.89	.32-1.67
Corridor							
17	Mean	.16	.08	.15	.47	.31	.86
(346)	Std dev	.10	.08	.10	.20	.16	.26
	Range	.01-.65	.01-91	.01-.53	.08-1.71	.06-.90	.37-2.05
Length 5'							
11	Mean	.14	.08	.11	.56	.25	.89
(133)	Std dev	.12	.06	.10	.25	.15	.31
	Range	.01-.82	.01-.45	.00-.58	.08-1.71	.06-.89	.32-2.05
Length 10'							
3	Mean	.17	.05	.10	.43	.28	.76
(80)	Std dev	.14	.03	.05	.15	.15	.20
	Range	.01-.73	.01-.24	.03-.34	.17-.86	.09-.82	.37-1.41
Length 24'							
4	Mean	.19	.08	.18	.42	.39	.89
(125)	Std dev	.11	.10	.10	.17	.16	.26
	Range	.02-.65	.01-.19	.01-.50	.13-1.02	.08-.90	.45-1.82
Tree-Length							
3	Mean	.17	.08	.19	.43	.35	.86
(71)	Std dev	.10	.09	.11	.13	.190	.24
	Range	.01-.50	.01-.75	.01-.51	.17-.80	.10-.76	.40-1.35
30' Spacing							
6	Mean	.14	.07	.13	.46	.27	.80
(96)	Std dev	.08	.04	.08	.23	.11	.27
	Range	.04-.37	.01-.27	.01-.41	.08-1.71	.11-.59	.43-2.05
50' Spacing							
7	Mean	.16	.08	.13	.48	.29	.84
(149)	Std dev	.11	.10	.08	.19	.15	.26
	Range	.01-.65	.01-.91	.01-.42	.13-1.12	.06-.80	.37-1.82
100'Spacing							
4	Mean	.19	.08	.22	.47	.41	.95
(101)	Std dev	.11	.07	.13	.20	.20	.26
	Range	.04-.56	.01-.75	.01-.53	.16-1.25	.08-.90	.45-1.64

Analyses for prediction equations were completed on a per tree basis. The position and shear element of the production cycle was analyzed first because of the limited mechanics involved. The only significant variable found for this element was dbh (Table 3). No trees larger than shear capacity were encountered. Other variables tested did not significantly influence this element. Because this study was completed in one stand that had little variation in brush and slope conditions, these variables were not tested in the analysis.

The second element modeled was delimbing and bucking. Variables that described the tree characteristics and operating procedure were evaluated. The most significant variables were those of merchantable height of the tree and the interaction of height with number of bucks or cuts. The division of merchantable height by product length was used to estimate the number of bucks.

The travel to the tree and travel to the process area were combined for total travel time per tree. There was a significant difference between select and corridor thinning so travel times per tree were analyzed separately. In the prediction equation for total travel time per tree for thinning stands with corridors, the logical factors were spacing between corridors, spacing between trees to be cut, tree size, and product length. Trees removed per acre proved to be the most significant variable for estimating travel time. Other variables in the model were the interaction terms of product length and spacing between corridors (Table 3). The variable product length reflects that longwood and tree-length material was carried out of the stand to the corridor. The shortwood was piled along the edge of the access corridor.

Total cycle time per tree can be estimated by combining the elemental regression equations for the corridor thinning. For select thinning the mean travel time is used. In select thinning (fig. 2) the trees must be processed into shortwood to prevent damage to the residual trees during removal of the wood from the stand. Figure 3 presents the production curves for thinning with access corridors spaced at 30 ft intervals. A representative range of dbh, merchantable height, and removed trees per acre were used to develop the curves. Only two product lengths, 5 ft shortwood and tree-length, were used for these graphs. Figure 4 presents the production curves for 100 ft spacing intervals for the same variables.

Using the prediction equations for elements of the cycle and production tables, alternatives can be compared for production. Table 4 shows the estimated production of wood for trees that average 5 inches in dbh and 30 ft in merchantable height.

On a trees-per-productive-machine-hour (pmh) basis, the highest productivity (84 trees per pmh) was estimated to be for the longwood products (24 ft and tree-length) at the closer corridor spacing. The lowest productivity (70 trees per pmh) was tree-length production on 100 ft corridor spacings. The least productive alternative was the select thinning and 5 ft wood.

The product length determines the merchantable volume per stem, which affects production on a volume basis. For 5 inch dbh trees, the highest production alternative is tree-length at 30 ft spacing. The production was 229.7 cu. ft. per productive machine hour. The 24-ft option had the lowest production (169.1 cu. ft. per pmh) because of the wood waste when only one stick could be cut from a tree. These results are comparable with those published by Arvidsson and Spahr (1980). However, these production estimates for each alternative are only for the Makeri harvester and subsequent operations could possibly be affected by the application of this machine. As an example, the piling of the longwood and tree-length material into the corridor could reduce the yarding or forwarding times.

From the data collected before and after thinning, a comparison was made (Table 5) between average stand diameter changes. The heavier removal levels of 60% or more of the trees produced the highest changes in average dbh. Using narrow access corridors of 10 ft, avoiding the best quality trees, can result in a stand that is comparable with the select thinning method.

Table 3. Prediction equations for cycle elements.

$$\text{Position and Shear Time} = 0.40128 - 0.13273 \times \text{DBH} + 0.01281 \times (\text{DBH} \times \text{DBH}) \qquad \text{R Sqr.} = 0.13$$

$$\text{Delimb and Buck Time} = -0.18659 + 0.017689 \times \text{Height} + 0.00088 \times (\text{Height} \times (\text{Height}/\text{Length})) \qquad \text{R Sqr.} = 0.52$$

$$\text{Travel Time (corridors only)} = 0.41893 - 0.00052 \times \text{Removed Trees} + 0.00546 \times (\text{Length} \times \text{Spacing})/100 \qquad \text{R Sqr.} = 0.24$$

Where: Time = Minutes per tree.
DBH = Diameter at breast height in inches.
Height = Merchantable height in feet.
Removed Trees = Merchantable trees per acre.
Length = Product length in feet. (Equals merchantable height if tree-length)
Spacing = Distance between access corridors centers in feet.

Table 4--Comparison of production for alternatives.

DBH = 5 in, Merchantable Height = 30 ft. Merchantable Trees/Acre removed = 300.

Type of Thin	Corridor Spacing	Product Length	Trees per PMH	Cu. Ft. per
Select	---	5 ft	72	191.5
Select	---	10 ft	79	203.0
Corridor-Select	30 ft	5 ft	74	196.8
" "	30 ft	10 ft	81	208.2
" "	30 ft	24 ft	84	191.2
" "	30 ft	Tree-Length	84	229.7
" "	100 ft	5 ft	72	191.5
" "	100 ft	10 ft	77	197.9
" "	100 ft	24 ft	74	169.1
" "	100 ft	Tree-Length	70	191.4

*Merchantable top bole diameter of 3 inches.

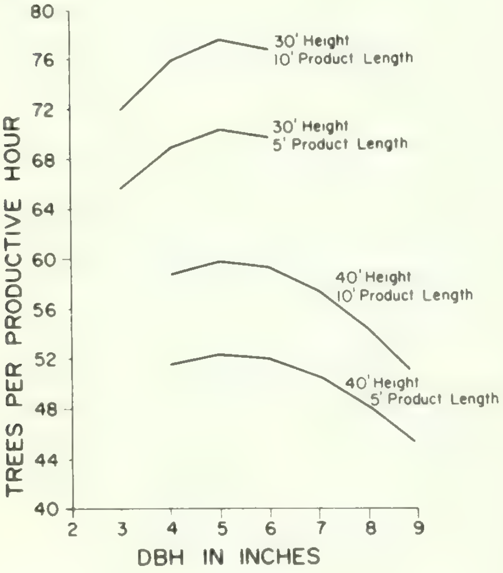


Figure 2--Select Thinning Production

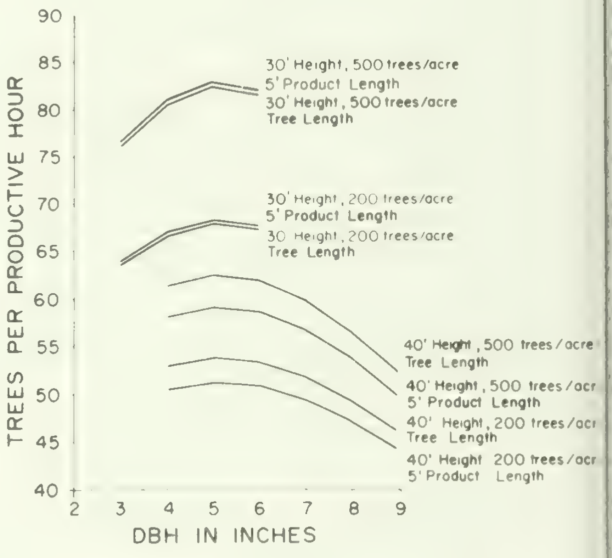


Figure 4--Corridor-Select Thinning Production-
100 Ft. Corridor Spacing

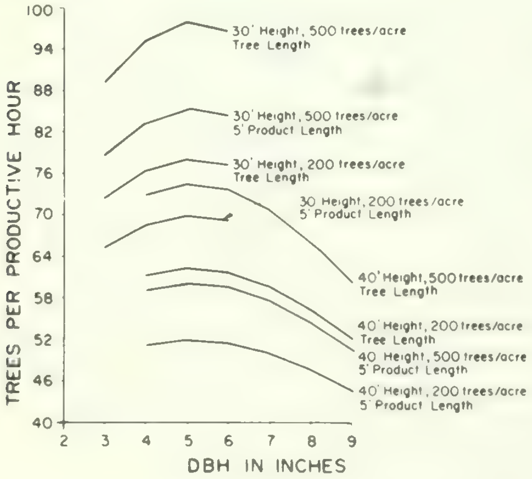


Figure 3--Corridor-Select Thinning Production-
30 Ft. Corridor Spacing

STAND AND SITE IMPACT

Another major objective of the study was t determine the presence and magnitude of stand site impacts on the residual stand. Soil core samples were taken at 2-and 4-inch depths in undisturbed and disturbed areas in the corridor and stand. All bole damage caused by the felling machine was recorded by size and severity.

The moisture content of the soil averaged 20.4 % (dry weight basis). A test of means of the soil bulk density of the disturbed areas an the undisturbed is shown in Table 6. For both depths, there was a significant increase in bulk density in the disturbed sites. At 2 inches deep, the increase was 15 % and 11 % at 4 inches. Soil compaction was less in the stand than in the corridor and seemed to increase with product length and decrease with corridor spacing.

Table 5.--Diameter changes in blocks by method, spacing and removal level.

Blocks	No.	Average DBH per Block (inches) Before	Removed	Residual	Change
All	21	6.0	5.1	7.1	1.1
Select (All)	5	5.7	4.8	6.7	1.0
Method					
<50% Level	3	5.6	4.7	6.3	0.8
>60% Level	2	6.0	5.1	7.2	1.2
Corridor (All)	16	6.1	5.2	7.2	1.1
Method					
<50% Level	4	5.8	5.0	6.5	0.7
>50% < 60%	7	6.3	5.2	7.5	1.2
>60%	5	6.0	5.2	7.5	1.5
30' Spacing	6	5.8	5.1	6.9	1.1
50' Spacing	7	6.1	5.2	7.4	1.3
100' Spacing	3	6.4	5.4	7.4	1.0

All damage, regardless of size, was recorded (Table 7). For all test blocks, the number of damaged trees per acre was 84.4 or 32%. Of these trees, 47% were along the corridor and 76% had only the bark damaged. The average damage area was 40 sq. in. per tree. Incidence of damage appeared to increase with the number of residual trees per acre. Product length was thought to effect the number of residual tree damaged, but the analysis showed no significant difference among the product length groups. A higher occurance of damage occured on the 30 ft. corridor spacing blocks.

CONCLUSIONS

Production, 84 trees per productive machine hour, was highest for the tree-length product length and closer corridor spacing. Product length affected the travel element and merchantable volume per tree.

Removal levels of 60% or more of trees per acre produced the largest change in average dbh. The residual stand of a tract harvested with narrow corridors at wide spacings (greater than 50 feet) is comparable to one that is select thinned without corridors.

REFERENCES

1. Arvidsson, S. and M. Spahr.
1980. The makeri thinning system-an evaluation of the makeri forwarder in thinning. Forestry Institute of Sweden, 34 pp.

Table 6.--Soil Compaction--Density

Bulk Density (gms/cc)

Test	Class	Undisturbed			Disturbed			
		Mean	St. Dev.	No. of Obs.	Mean	St. Dev.	No.	
Depth	2"	1.15	.18	13	1.32	.12	13	*
	4"	1.29	.10	15	1.43	.12	15	*
Location	Corridor	1.22	.12	10	1.44	.14	10	*
	Stand	1.22	.18	18	1.35	.12	18	*
Product	5'Wood	1.23	.14	20	1.36	.14	20	*
	24'Wood	1.30	.24	4	1.44	.10	4	
	Tree-Length	1.11	.14	4	1.43	.13	4	*
Spacing	30'	1.25	.05	6	1.44	.11	6	*
	50'	1.25	.21	12	1.35	.17	12	
	100'	1.12	.11	6	1.28	.12	6	*
Removal Tree/acre	250	1.21	.18	9	1.30	.17	9	
	300	1.29	.18	6	1.41	.10	6	
	400	1.12	.11	6	1.38	.12	6	*
	450	1.28	.10	7	1.45	.08	7	*
Depth & Location	2"Corridor	1.11	.09	4	1.34	.13	4	*
	2"Stand	1.16	.21	9	1.32	.13	9	
	4"Corridor	1.30	.07	6	1.51	.10	6	*
	4"Stand	1.28	.12	9	1.38	.11	9	

*Significant bulk density increase at 95 % level.

Table 7.--Residual Stand Damage

Test	Class	Mean	St. Dev.	No.	
Residual Trees/Acre	100	55.62	31.46	8	
	200	81.43	50.87	7	*
	300	81.43	50.87	8	
Product Length	5'Wood	75.25	65.18	12	
	10'Wood	63.67	95.11	3	
	24'Wood	104.40	47.54	5	
	Tree-Length	108.33	107.95	3	
Corridor Spacing	Select	70.00	70.58	4	
	30'	120.83	76.97	6	
	50'	80.22	25.05	9	
	100'	53.50	27.69	4	

*Significant difference at 95 % level.

ANALYSIS OF THE TAYLOR SKYLINER

IN WESTERN NORTH CAROLINA[1]

Jerry L. Koger and James R. Sherar[2]

Abstract.--Production rates, production costs, and operating characteristics of the Taylor Skyliner were determined for an 18 acre clearcut in western North Carolina. An average of 2.6 stems, containing 73.9 cubic feet, were harvested per cycle. Average cycle time, including cycle delays but excluding road and landing changes, was 10.8 minutes. Estimated yarding cost for the yarder and four-man crew was $48.24 per cunit.

INTRODUCTION

Conventional ground skidding systems in western North Carolina consist of articulated, four wheel drive, rubber tired skidders and crawler tractors. A few loggers use small, truck mounted, single-drum cable yarders. These systems require a dense network of haul or skid roads. Cable systems are needed that will: (1) provide a positive lift to the logs being skidded, (2) have haulback capabilities, (3) have sufficient span to reduce the density of roads, and (4) operate profitably. The Taylor Skyliner[3], a medium-sized cable yarder, was studied during operation on a site in the Pisgah National Forest in western North Carolina. Production rates and costs were calculated for the yarder.

STUDY AREA

The 18-acre harvested tract, located on the Pisgah National Forest, is about 30 miles northwest of Asheville, North Carolina. The steep side slopes, deep hollows, and shallow soils with rock outcrops made harvesting difficult. Interference from small trees left standing increased hooking and road changing time.

The silvicultural prescription for the predominately hardwood stand was to clearcut. Approximately 55 percent of the trees were oak, 33 percent yellow poplar, 3 percent maple, and 2 percent hickory. The remaining 7 percent consisted of 11 other species. There were 807 saw-timber trees having a total volume of about 42,334 cubic feet, including topwood. In addition, there were 1,360 smaller trees with a total volume of 14,824 cubic feet.

OPERATION

The Taylor Skyliner was operated as a running skyline. The boundary of the harvested area is shown on the topographic map section in Figure 1. The two landings and 26 cable road (skyline) locations are shown in Figure 2. The harvested stems were yarded uphill to the lower landing and both uphill and downhill to the upper landing. Equipment specifications for the yarder are given in the Appendix (Table 1).

A four man crew was used with the Taylor Skyliner. The crew consisted of two chokersetters, one landing chaser, and one yarder operator. Although the crew was experienced with conventional ground logging systems, they had worked with the Taylor Skyliner for only one month at the time of the study.

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 6-7, 1982.

[2] Koger is a Research Engineer at the Forestry Sciences Laboratory, maintained by the Southern Forest Experiment Station, USDA Forest Service, at Auburn, Alabama. Sherar is a Logging Engineer with the U.S. Forest Service in Asheville, North Carolina.

[3] The use of trade, firm, or corporate names is for the convenience of the reader. Such use does not constitute an official evaluation, conclusion, recommendation, endorsement, or approval of any product or service to the exclusion of others which may be suitable.

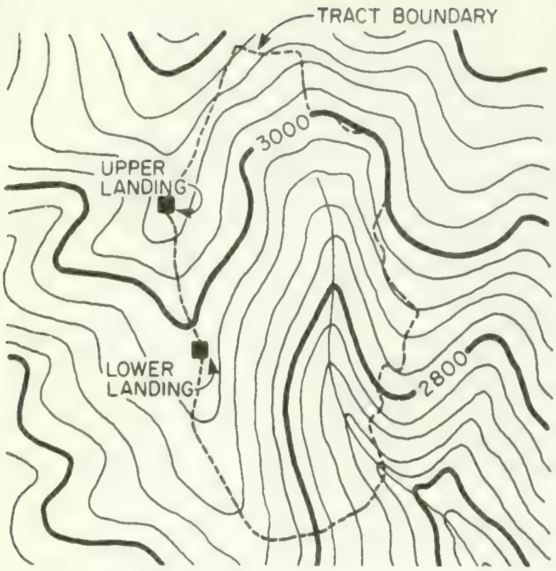


Figure 1.--Harvested area boundary

MEASUREMENT OF VARIABLES

Time

The snapback method of timing was used to measure the elemental phase of each cycle. The following cycle elements were measured: 1) lift carriage, 2) outhaul, 3) lower carriage, 4) lateral outhaul and hook, 5) lateral inhaul, 6) inhaul, 7) lower stems, 8) unhook, and 9) cycle delays.

Stem Measurement

The length and diameter of all stems yarded were measured. Diameter measurements were made at each end and at several intermediate points. Cubic feet (Smalian's formula) and weight were calculated from these measurements.

Distance

The distance from the landing to the tailhold used on each cable road (skyline) corridor during the study was determined using a hand-held compass, 200-foot tape, and clino- such as rock outcrops, tree snags, and hollows were noted. In addition, colored flagging was tied at 100-foot intervals. The terrain features and colored flagging were used for ocular estimates of the horizontal distance from the carriage to the landing (X, fig. 3). Slope yarding distance (SYD) was calculated by: $\sqrt{X^2 + (D + D1)^2}$. The relationship of these variables to the cable and ground geometry are shown in Figure 3.

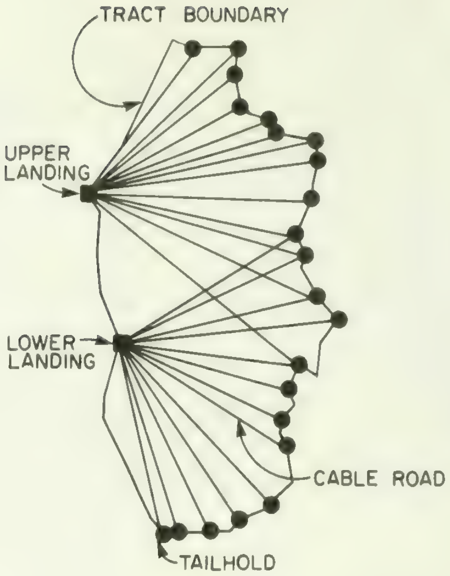


Figure 2.--Landing and cable road locations

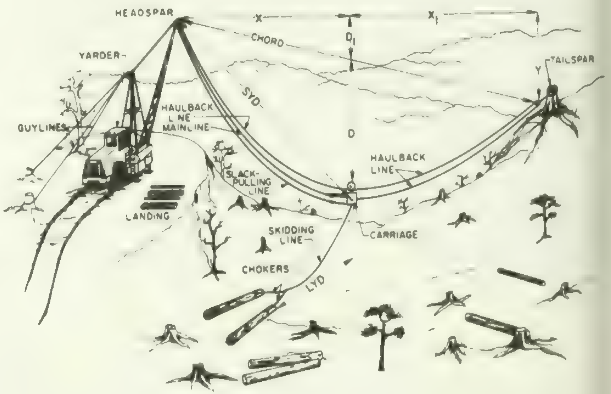


Figure 3.--Running skyline cable configuratio

The lateral yarding distance (LYD) was not measured because direct field measurement would have required two additional research personnel and would have interfered with the yarding operation. Indirect measurements were not feasible due to underbrush and steep side slopes. As a result, the influence that lateral yarding distance had on cycle times could not be determined.

DATA ANALYSIS

Production Rates

The average cycle time for a four man crew as 10.80 minutes (Table I). This does not nclude the time required to change cable roads 53.40 minutes) nor the time to move landings estimated at 300 minutes by the logger). The verage volume yarded per cycle was 73.86 cubic eet (inside bark). The number of stems yarded er cycle ranged from 1 to 5 with an average of .6. Assuming a uniform stand distribution, pproximately 0.7 acre (2,223 cubic feet) was arded per cable road and 9 acres (28,579 cubic eet) were yarded per landing. The mean, tandard deviation, range, and number of obserations are given in Table I. The percent istribution of the cycle elements is shown in igure 4.

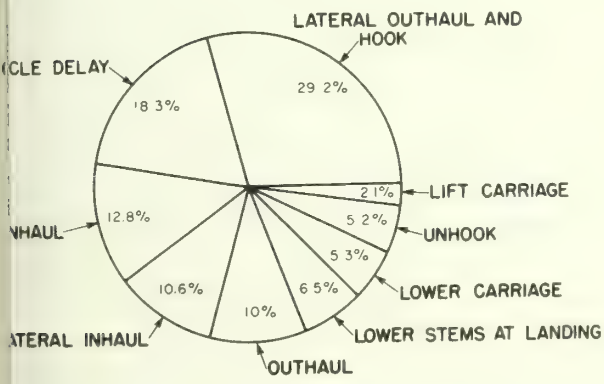


Figure 4.--Percent distribution of cycle elements.

Regression equations developed for uphill rding are shown in Table II. Slope yarding stance and cubic feet per turn were signifiant (alpha = 0.05) in predicting cycle time. e number of stems yarded per cycle, stem ngth, or stem diameters were not significant. e R-squres that were obtained are slightly wer than those reported in other studies such Dykstra (1975). Possible reasons for the planation of the variation in cycle elements this study include: (1) crew inexperience with cable systems (2) a prototype yarder, (3) small standing trees which interfered with outhaul and inhaul, and (4) ocular estimates of yarding distances.

Production Costs

In order to determine production costs, several assumptions were made concerning equipment efficiency, equipment life, and interest rates. As used in this study, equipment efficiency is the product of yarder availability and yarder utilization. Insufficient data were collected in this study to determine equipment efficiency. Wellburn (1976), Hensel and Johnson (1977), and McMorland and Wong (1982) have reported values for equipment efficiency ranging from 0.21 to 0.84. Considering that the yarder observed in this study was a prototype and that the crew was not experienced in cable logging, an equipment efficiency of 0.60 was assumed. Additional assumptions are listed in Table 2 of the Appendix. The method used to compute fixed and variable costs is similar to those described by Mifflin and Lysons (1978) and Miyata (1980).

The estimated cost for the Taylor Skyliner and a four-man crew was $98.80 per scheduled hour. Total estimated yarding cost for the 18 acre tract was $27,573.10, which is about $48.24 per cunit (100 cubic feet). This is an equivalent cost of $14.84 per ton, $111.15 per thousand board feet (Doyle), $83.32 per thousand board feet (1/4" Int.), or $57.22 per cord. The above equivalent costs are based on the assumption that 1 cubic foot (inside bark) is equal to 65 pounds, 4.34 board feet (Doyle), 5.79 board feet (1/4" Int.), or 0.008431 cords. This does not include costs associated with moving-in and setting up at the first landing, the partial use of support equipment, or a margin for profit and risk on the investment. The equation used to calculate tract harvest time is listed in the Appendix.

DISCUSSION

Steep slopes, shallow soils, and rock outcrops made harvesting difficult. Setting chokers was time consuming, and finding firmly anchored tailhold trees (or stumps) was a problem. The labor intensive activities of pulling the skidding line out, hooking, and unhooking accounted for 34.4 percent of the cycle time. Only 20 percent of the variation in cycle times could be explained by yarding distance and volume per cycle. Production might have been increased by coordinating felling with yarding, presetting chokers, and increasing lateral yarding distances.

Table I.--Characteristics of selected variables for uphill yarding

Variable Description	Mean	Standard Deviation	Range	Number of Observations
Cycle Elements (min)				
1. lift carriage at landing	0.23	0.13	0.10 - 0.70	44
2. outhaul (150-650 ft)	1.08	0.36	0.30 - 2.25	62
3. lower carriage in woods	0.57	0.32	0.05 - 1.55	60
4. hook (2 men)	3.15	1.42	1.05 - 6.80	62
5. lateral inhaul (0-100 ft)	1.15	1.01	0.40 - 7.30	64
6. inhaul (150-650 ft)	1.38	0.81	0.45 - 4.45	65
7. lower logs at landing	0.70	0.92	0.10 - 5.10	63
8. unhook (1 man)	0.56	0.47	0.50 - 2.00	54
9. delay	1.98	1.68	0.00 - 7.10	66
10. Total Cycle	10.80	3.32	5.10 20.40	32
Cycle Volumes and Stem Characteristics				
1. cubic ft (inside bark)	73.86	37.27	9.40 - 198.70	32
2. number stems	2.60	1.12	1 - 5	66
3. stem length (ft)	45.99	12,85	26.10 - 88.50	66
4. large end diam. (in)	12.33	4.65	5.00 - 29.40	170
5. small end diam (in)	6.47	2.81	2.00 - 16.80	170
6. d.b.h.(in)	9.98	3.46	4.40 22.08	170
Cycle Yarding Data				
1. slope yarding distance (ft)	520	110	150 - 650	66
2. chord slope (%)*	-49	18	-20 - 100	66
Non-Cycle Delays (min)				
1. change cable roads	53.40	9.67	46.20 - 60.60	2
2. change landings (logger's estimate)	300			

*Chord Slope was calculated by: (-(D + D1)/X)*100 for each yarding cycle (see Figure 3).

Table II. Regression equations developed for uphill yarding

Yarding Phase	Regression Equation	R-SQ	CV	SE
Outhaul *	Y=0.45 + 0.0012 (SYD)	0.14	31.32	0.34
Inhaul +	Y=0.06 0.0015 (SYD) + 0.0078 (FT3)	0.12	56.06	0.77
Total Cycle #	Y=2.10 + 0.0061(SYD) + 0.0537 (FT3)	0.20	33.63	2.19

Y = time, in minutes, for the given cycle phase
SYD = slope yarding distance, in feet
FT3 = cubic feet (inside bark) per cycle
* based on 62 observations
+ based on 64 observations
# based on 32 observations for which complete data was obtained on each element of the cycle (see Table I)

LITERATURE CITED

ykstra, Dennis P.
1975. Production rates and costs for cable, ballon, and helicopter yarding systems in old-growth Douglas-fir. Forest Research Laboratory, School of Forestry, Oregon State University, Corvallis, Oregon. Research Bulletin No. 18. 57 p.

awkes, E. Gerry.
1979. Cable harvesting systems for small timber. Vermont Department of Forests, Parks and Recreation. Woodstock, Vermont. February issue. 69 p.

ensel, William A. and Leonard R. Johnson.
1977. Operating characteristics and production capabilities of the Wyssen skyline system. Paper presented at the Winter Meeting of American Society of Agricultural Engineers. ASAE Paper No. 77-1565. 15 p.

ysons, Hilton H.
1978. Yarding systems capabilities. Paper presented at the Skyline Logging Symposium University of Washington, Seattle, Washington. p. 14-18.

McMorland, Bruce and Anthony Wong.
1982. Evaluation of the Model 9 Mirco Master Yarder. Forest Engineering Research Institute of Canada. Technical Note No. TN-54. 13 p.

Mifflin, Ronald W. and Hilton H. Lysons.
1978. Skyline yarding cost estimating guide. USDA Forest Service. Pacific Northwest Forest Experiment Station. Research Note PNW-325. 19 p.

Miyata, Edwin S.
1980. Determining fixed and operating costs of logging equipment. USDA Forest Service, North Central Forest Experiment Station. General Technical Report NC-55. 16 p.

Wellburn, G. V.
1976. Cable logging is effective but too costly. Paper presented at the 57th Annual Meeting of the Woodlands Section, Canada Pulp and Paper Association. Held in Montreal, Quebec, March 28-31. Paper W.S.I. No. 27-09 (B-5-C) ODC 377.21. 3 p.

APPENDIX

able 1. Equipment description of the Taylor Skyline cable yarder*

tem	Description			
anufacturer	Taylor Machine Works, Inc. P. O. Box 1150 Louisville, Mississippi 39339			
odel Carrier	Taylor Model T-598 articulated, four-wheel drive, front-end loader			
ngine	4-71 Detroit Diesel			
ires	18:00x24-28PR			
ower				
Height	54 feet			
Construction	inclined, heavy lattice steel, A-frame			
Erection	hydraulic			
arder Capabilities	running, standing, slacking, or gravity skyline			
um Characteristics:	Line Speed ft/min	Line Pull lbs	Line Size in	Drum Capacity ft
haulback drum	1,349-1,569	16,000	5/8	2,500
main & front drums	1,220-1,419	31,000	5/8	1,250
straw drum	2,750	10,000	5/16	3,600
guyline drums	135	3,500	3/4	250
eight	65,000 pounds			
sts	$475,000.00 (actual costs depends on options)			

ased on information supplied by manufacturer and from Hawkes (1979).

Table 2. Equipment costs for the Taylor Skyline cable yarder (1982 price estimates)

Item Description	Annual Cost	Hourly Cost
Fixed Costs:		
Depreciation		
Taylor Yarder ($475,000-$97,599.92)/8	$ 47,175.01	$23.59
Carriage ($4,875-$975)/8	487.50	0.24
Taxes, Interest & Insurance (20% of Average Annual Investment)	62,389.19	31.19
	$110,051.70	$55.02
Variable Costs:		
Maintenance & Repair (50% x $47,175.01)	23,831.25	$11.92
Fuel ($1.30/gal. x 5.81 gal./opr. hr.)	9,059.23	4.53
Oil, Grease, Etc. (20% x $9,059.23)	1,811.94	0.91
Tire Replacement (1 set/7 years)	371.43	0.19
Tire Repair (10% x $371.43)	37.14	0.02
Wire Rope:		
Main ($0.96/ft x 1250 ft x 0.50)	600.00	0.30
Haulback ($0.96/ft x 2500 ft x 0.33)	792.00	0.40
Slack-pulling ($0.96/ft 1250 ft x 0.05	600.00	0.30
Strawline ($0.50 x 3600 ft x 0.50)	900.00	0.45
Guylines ($1.90 x 400 ft x 0.33)	250.80	0.13
Chokers ($12.50/choker x 5 chokers x 20)	1,250.00	0.63
	$ 39,502.99	$19.78
Labor costs (4 men x $6.00/hr x 2,000 hr/yr)	$ 48,000.00	$24.00
	$197,554.69	$98.80

Assumptions: Years Life = 8, Salvage Rate = 20%,
Scheduled Hours = 2,000/year, Operating Hours = 1,200/year
Labor Rate = $6.00 per scheduled hour and includes overhead, insurance, and social security.

Equation used to compute tract yarding time:

$$Y=((X1/X2)X3 + (X1/(X4*X5))X6 + ((X1/(X5*X7))-1)X8)/X9$$

where: Y = tract yarding time
$X1$ = tract volume
$X2$ = average volume yarded per cycle
$X3$ = average cycle time
$X4$ = number acres harvested per cable road
$X5$ = volume per acre
$X6$ = average road change time
$X7$ = number acres harvested per landing
$X8$ = average landing change time
$X9$ = operating hours per year/scheduled hours per year or machine availability * machine utilization

In this study the following values were used: $X1 = 57158$ cubic feet, $X2 = 73.86$ cubic feet, $X3 = 10.8$ minutes, $X4 = 0.692$, $X5 = 3175$ cubic feet, $X6 = 53.4$ minutes, $X7 = 9$ acres, $X8 = 300$ minutes, and $X9$ was assumed to be 0.6. Using these values in the above equation, then:

$$Y = ((57{,}158/73.86)10.8 + (57{,}158/(0.692*3{,}175))53.4 + ((57{,}158/(3{,}175*9)) - 1)300)/0.60$$
$$Y = (8{,}357.79 + 1{,}389.21 + 300)/0.60$$
$$Y = 10{,}047/0.60$$
$$Y = 16{,}745 \text{ (or 279.08 scheduled hours)}$$

FINANCIAL ANALYSIS OF EQUIPMENT: A GENERAL APPROACH TO SELECTION, REPLACEMENT, AND MACHINE COST PROBLEMS[1/]

W. L. Mills, Jr., and Robert A. Tufts[2/]

ABSTRACT -- An approach to analyzing equipment selection, replacement and machine cost problems is explained and the use of the results demonstrated. After tax annual equivalent costs are calculated using a six-step procedure. Sample decisions involving the determination of optimal economic life, equipment replacement and selection, and cost per unit output are discussed.

INTRODUCTION

The increasing mechanization of harvesting and forest management activities coupled with the high cost of most forestry equipment means that foresters, in both procurement and land management, must make complicated and expensive equipment decisions. The analysis presented below will help foresters weigh costs and operating efficiencies of alternative pieces of equipment. The methodology will assist managers in collecting and comparing those aspects of an equipment decision which can be quantified. Since managers will have an accurate estimate of the cost differences between alternative machines, they will be better able to judge the importance of factors which cannot be quantified such as safety, operator comfort, and equipment flexibility.

The emphasis of this paper will be on using the financial analysis information in selection and replacement decisions. The first section of the paper will explain the basic methodology of the approach. The second section will present an example calculation and third will be a discussion of the uses of the results of the methodology.

ANNUAL EQUIVALENT COST

There are several methods of evaluating equipment alternatives. Most are either based on machine rates or on discounted cash flow methods. All of the methods generally consider costs such as accounting depreciation, capital or investment, operating, replacement, and obsolescence. The discounted cash flow methods also allow for the inclusion of the time value of money, which is so important in these days of high interest rates, and the effect of income taxes.

The technique that I will present today is a discounted cash flow method which calculates and compares Annual Equivalent Costs (AEC's) (Smith 1973). A more detailed explanation of this technique can be found in an article by Tufts and Mills (1982). It involves the calculation of AEC's for every practical life length of the equipment. For example, if a machine can be expected to last 4 years before it must be retired, then four separate AEC's must be calculated, one for each practical life length. AEC's are calculated for all equipment alternatives and the minimum AEC for each alternative is found. The alternative with the lowest AEC is preferred.

Unlike the machine rate methods, the AEC approach averages the cost of a machine while accounting for the time value of money. It also allows the decision maker to compare investments that have unequal lives (Grant and Ireson, 1970) with the implicit assumption that the investment could be duplicated again and again until the investment lives were equal.

[1/] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, GA.Nov. 6-7, 1982. Alabama Agricultural Experiment Station Journal Series.

[2/] Assistant Professor, Forest Economics and Assistant Professor, Forest Harvesting, Department of Forestry, Alabama Agricultural Experiment Station, Auburn University, Alabama 36849.

Since revenues are usually associated with a production system not a single piece of equipment, the decision criterion for this analysis is to find the alternative with lowest cost. Costs for the alternatives should be based on the required production rate of the system, not the capability of the machine. Therefore, the output of the system and the equipment being examined are assumed fixed.

The basic equation to calculate the AEC's is:

$$AEC_i = \left[\sum_{i=0}^{n} C_i \frac{1}{(1+r)^i} \right] \left[\frac{r(1+r)^n}{(1+r)^n - 1} \right]$$

where AEC_i = Annual Equivalent Cost of equipment for year i, (i=1 to n)

C_i = after tax net cost in year i,
r = alternative rate of return,
n = last year the machine is employed (n=1 to physical life limit).
$\frac{1}{(1+r)^n}$ = single payment present value factor which is simply a discount factor to convert cash flows in year i to a present value at the beginning of year 1 (i=0, and
$\frac{r(1+r)^n}{(1+r)^n-1}$ = capital recovery factor which is a factor that finds the equivalent uniform payment having the same present value as the actual cash flows.

The most difficult part of a replacement analysis is estimating future costs. This requires accurate records and good judgement. For this procedure, these estimates should be in nominal dollars which are the dollar prices that are actually observed in the market place in the year in which they occur. Since taxes are levied on nominal dollars, the use of constant dollars (effect of inflation removed) would complicate the accurate calculation of tax impacts.

The discussion of costs will be divided into three parts - capital investment costs (CIC), operating expenses (OE), and downtime, replacement and obsolescences costs. A more detail explanation of each of these is presented by Tufts and Mills (1982).

The capital investment costs (CIC) are not as obvious as operating expenses, but are usually more significant. The physical depreciation of the machine is measured by the difference between the purchase price (PP) and its salvage value (SV) when removed from service. By netting the present value of the purchase price and the present value of the salvage value adjusted for tax impacts, the opportunity cost of capital is automatically incorporated in the AEC calculation. The actual estimation of CIC after taxes requires a detailed examination of purchase price, salvage values, accounting depreciation (D), book value (BV), investment credits (IC), investment credit recapture (ICR), gain (loss) on the sale of the machine (GOS), and their tax impacts.

Operating expenses include all the ordinary and necessary costs incurred in conducting an operation (insurance, property taxes, fuel and lubrication, maintenance and repair, and labor) and may be deducted from taxable income. After tax operating expenses are equal to the before tax operating expenses times one minus the marginal tax rate.

Downtime costs are indirect costs of machine failure as a result of stopping the entire production system. The direct costs of machine failure are incorporated in operating expenses. The organization and management of the production system determines the extent of downtime costs. If a small stockpile of work is not maintained between operations (hot logging) anytime a piece of equipment is inoperable all subsequent operations are forced to become idle. This would create an artificially high cost of downtime. The effect is less pronounced if there are multiple machines performing the same function. Likewise, since simultaneous equipment failures occur very infrequently, if there is a small stockpile between operations (cold logging), an equipment failure will not cause all subsequent operations to shut down.

Replacement and obsolescence costs are used in the cumulative cost per hour replacement models (Caterpillar 1965, Conway 1976). Replacement costs are used to estimate the increase in the purchase price of a new machine over the present machine. Obsolescence costs are charged to account for the future development of improved, more productive, cost efficient machines. In this analysis, the comparison of the least cost, most productive currently available machines adequately incorporates both the replacement cost and the obsolescence cost.

EXAMPLE CALCULATIONS

The calculation of the AEC's can be completed using the following six steps and by examining Table 1.

Step 1 -- List the Before Tax Cash Flows (BTCFs)

Dividing BTCFs into two categories reduces the necessary calculations. One category includes those costs that occur regardless of whether the machine is retained in service or sold (Total_1). The second category includes costs which occur if the machine is sold at the end of any given year (Total_2).

Step 2 -- Calculate the After Tax Cash Flows (ATCFs)

ATCF = BTCF * TAF
where TAF = Tax Adjustment Factor, given in Table 1.

Step 3 -- Sum the ATCFs by categories.

Step 4 -- Calculate the Present Value (PV) for each of the sumed ATCFs by categories.

$$PV = \sum_{i=0}^{n} \text{Total}_1\ (i) \left[\frac{1}{(1+r)^i}\right]$$

$$PV = \text{Total}_2\ (n) \left[\frac{1}{(1+r)^n}\right]$$

Step 5 -- Sum the appropriate PVs to obtain Net Present Values (NPV) for each year of the machines useful life.

$$PV(n) = \left[\sum_{i=0}^{n} \text{Total}_1(i) \frac{1}{(1+r)^i}\right] + \text{Total}_2(n) \left[\frac{1}{(1+r)^n}\right]$$

tep 6 -- AEC(n) = NPV(n) x CRF

$RF = \dfrac{r(1+r)^n}{(1+r)^n-1}$, the capital recovery factor.

The following example is provided to llustrate the procedure. The analysis is of a year old grapple skidder, operating in a well anaged, balanced system that requires 1,650 roductive machine hours (PMH) of operation per ear. The logging system maintains sufficient tockpiles between operations to eliminate owntime cost. The system is owned by a orporation with a marginal ordinary tax rate f 46 percent and with a cost of capital of 12 ercent.

Step 1 -- list BTCF's

First, it is necessary to estimate before tax cash flows for the variables needed in the analysis. The 3-year old grapple skidder was purchased for $45,000 and expected values for availability, utilization, scheduled machine hours (SMH), productive machine hours, salvage value, accounting depreciation, and book value for its remaining life are shown in Table 2. When purchased it was set up on a double declining balance depreciation schedule for a useful life of 6 years and an investment credit was claimed. As the skidder ages, its total production decreases because of decreased availability, but its productive rate is unaffected. Due to the decrease in availability, the machine must be scheduled to work longer hours.

The estimated annual operating expenses for the skidder are listed in Table 3. These annual expenses were developed by consulting an equipment manager with many years of experience with logging equipment. They are, however, general in nature and do not represent any particular model.

Step 2 -- BTCF * TAF = ATCF

The tax adjustment factors were given in Table 1 and the after tax cash flow is simply the product of the before tax cash flow and the tax adjustment factor.

Step 3 -- Sum ATCF's

Total_1 (i) and Total_2 (n) for each year were determined.

Step 4 -- Discount ATCF's to PV's

Present values were calculated by multiplying the after tax cash flow of Total_1 (i) and Total_2 (n) by the single payment present value factor. The present value of the Total_1 (i) was carried across to each appropriate column.

Step 5 -- Totals = NPV

Then the numbers in each column were summed to produce a net present value.

Step 6 -- NPV * CRF = AEC

The net present value was multiplied by a capital recovery factor to calculate the AEC.

Table 4 shows the cash flows, present values, and annual equivalent costs for keeping the skidder in service. The AEC's for 1, 2, and 3 years are $29,520, $24,451, and $23,990, respectively. Since the minimum is $23,990, the most economical life for the skidder would be 3 years, and the annual cost would be $23,990.

Table 1. Suggested format for calculating annual equivalent costs.

YEAR	ITEM	BEFORE TAX CASH FLOW (BTCF)	TAX ADJUST-MENT FACTOR (TAF)	AFTER TAX CASH FLOW (ATCF)	PRESENT VALUE (PV)	POSSIBLE LIF LENGTHS (1 to n)
0	Purchase Price		1.0			
	Salvage Value					
1 to n	Investment credit		1.0			
	Depreciation		t			
	Operating Expenses		1.0-t			
	Totall (i)			(These values to be filled in by those making the calculations.)		
n	Book Value		1.0			
	Gains on sale		1.0-t			
	Investment tax recapture		1.0			
	Total2 (n)					
	Net present value					
	AEC (n)					

Table 2. Availability, utilization, scheduled machine hours productive machine hours, salvage values, depreciation, and book values for the remaining possible life of the defender.

YEAR	1	2	3
Availability (%)	85	80	75
Utilization (%)	76.5	72.0	67.5
Scheduled machine hours	2,157	2,292	2,444
Productive machine hours	1,650	1,650	1,650
Salvage value ($)	14,100	10,700	9,000
Depreciation ($)	4,335	0	0
Book value ($)	9,000	9,000	9,000

Table 3. Estimated annual operating expenses (before taxes) for a three year old grapple skidder.

Year	Fuel and lubrication	Repair and maintenance (rebuild)	Labor	Insurance	Total Operating expenses
	($)				
1	7,623	14,200	14,531	965	37,319
2	8,662	5,700	16,798	705	31,865
3	10,395	8,100	19,462	535	38,492

Table 4. Cash flows, present values, and annual equivalent costs for a three year old grapple skidder if continued in service for 3 years.

YEAR	ITEM[1]	BTCF ($)	TAF	ATCF ($)	PV ($)	1 YEAR ($)	2 YEARS ($)	3 YEARS ($)
0	SV	-19,300[2]	1.0	-19,300	-19,300	-19,300	-19,300	-19,300
1	D	4,335	0.46	1,994				
	OE	-37,319	1.0-0.46	-20,152				
	Total1(1)			-18,156	-16,213	-16,213	-16,213	-16,213
	If sold:							
	BV	9,000	1.0	9,000				
	GOS	5,100	1.0-0.46	2,754				
	ICR	- 1,500	1.0	-1,500				
	Total2(1)			-10,254	9,155	9,155		
	Net PV					-26,358		
	AEC (1)					-29,520		
2	D	0	0.46	0				
	OE	-31,865	1.0-0.46	-17,207				
	Total1(2)			-17,207	-13,717		-13,717	-13,717
	If sold:							
	BV	9,000	1.0	9,000				
	GOS	1,700	1.0-0.46	918				
	ICR	0	1.0	0				
	Total2(2)			9,918	7,907		7,907	
	Net PV						-41,323	
	AEC (2)						-24,451	
3	D	0	0.46	0				
	OE	-38,492	1.0-0.46	-20,786				
	Total1(3)			-20,786	-14,795			-14,795
	If sold:							
	BV	9,000	1.0	9,000				
	GOS	0	1.0-0.46	0				
	ICR	0	1.0	0				
	Total2(3)			9,000	6,406			6,406
	Net PV							-57,619
	AEC (3)							23,990

---

[1] BV = salvage value, D = depreciation, OE = operating expenses, BV = book value, GOS = gain on sale, ICR = investment credit recapture, and PV = present value.

[2] All figures are rounded to the nearest dollar.

DECISION MAKING

Now that the AEC's have been calculated, how are they used in decision making? They may be used to determine the optimal economic life of a piece of equipment. AEC's may be utilized in replacement decisions and when choosing between new models. They can also be used to determine lowest per unit cost if production requirements are variable.

The year in which the minimum AEC occurs is the optimal economic life of the equipment, in that to hold the machine for a shorter or longer time results in a higher average annual cost. If no other machine with a lower minimum cost can be found at the end of the optimal economic life, the identical machine should be purchased and held for the same period of time. The optimal economic life indicates when a piece of equipment should be replaced. The AEC's can also be used to determine the cost of deviating from the optimal economic life.

The AEC method can also be used to select the best replacement machine when it is time to replace a machine. Table 5 summarizes the AECs for the 3-year old grapple skidders and two new grapple skidders that could be used in the same well managed harvesting system with annual production of 10,000 cords. Ranked by minimum AEC from lowest to high is the old skidder, skidder B, then skidder A. Although the optimal economic lives are different, the minimum AECs can be compared directly assuming, as discussed above, that identical investments can be made again and again until a common life length is found. The selection decision between the three alternatives presented in Table 5 is to keep the old skidder for another three years.

Up to this point, production rates have been assumed fixed. However, if skidder A is 12.5% more productive and skidder production was the limiting factor in the harvesting system, the system's, annual production with skidder A could be increased to 11,250 cords. Comparing the alternatives on a cost per cord of production basis, the old skidder produces at $2.40/cd., skidder A at $2.32/cd. and skidder B at $2.43/cd. With variable production, the selection of skidder A is preferred.

One must be careful when increasing syste production by introducing a more productive machine. Costs associated with other machines in the system may increase due to increased useage resulting in higher total system cost per cord, not lower cost per cord. Also AEC are generally calculated based on a given production rate because repair frequency, labo cost and other variable costs are a function production level. Therefore, it may be best compute a set of AECs for different productio levels and compare AECs directly.

Finally, this discussion has been center around the calculation and use of AEC when making decisions about an individual machine a system. The methodology could, also, be us to study the costs of systems of machines and to assist in determining the least cost combination of machines within a system.

Table 5. AEC's for 3-year old grapple skidder and two new grapple skidders, r = 12% and t = 0.46.

	AEC ($)		
		NEW	
YEARS	3-year old Skidder	Skidder A	Skidder B
1	-29,520.01	-28,305.42	-25,907.04
2	-24,450.94	-26,824.37	-24,586.58
3	-23,989.50*	-26,327.39	-24,256.99*
4		-26,169.59	-25,279.76
5		-26,369.99	-24,779.18
6		-26,075.57*	-24,678.94

* Optimal economic life, minimum AEC.

CONCLUSION

The financial analysis of equipment presented here has several advantages:

(1) Managers must estimate all costs and production requirements of the machine.
(2) Allows the incorporation of tax impacts.
(3) Adjusts costs for the time value of money.
(4) Allows investments of various length to be compared.
(5) Is relative simply to compute.
(6) Has many application and uses for management decision making.

With a little experience, forest managers can learn to quickly compute AECs and use them as decision aids.

LITERATURE CITED

Caterpillar Tractor Company.
1965. Logging equipment replacement. Forest Products Section, Marketing Development Division, Peoria, IL. 11 p.

Conway, S.
1976. Logging Practices. Miller-Freeman Publications, Inc. San Francisco, 416 p.

Grant, E. L. and W. G. Ireson.
1970. Principles of Engineering Economy. The Ronald Press Company, New York. 640 p.

Smith, G. W.
1973. Engineering Economy. The Iowa State University Press, Ames, Iowa. 632 p.

Tufts, R. A. and W. L. Mills, Jr.
1982. Financial analysis of equipment replacement. Forest Products Journal (Forthcoming October 1982).

EFFECT OF LOGGING EQUIPMENT TRAFFIC ON SOIL DENSITY AND GROWTH AND SURVIVAL OF YOUNG LOBLOLLY PINE

by

B. Graeme Lockaby and Clyde G. Vidrine

Abstract.--Soil bulk densities, determined on plots representing a gradient of harvesting traffic, indicated that compaction was an average of 12% greater on former logging decks and primary skid roads as compared to non-trafficked areas. Penetrometer readings supported the bulk density results and, in addition, showed increased compaction on secondary roads and road borders as compared to control areas. This compaction was reflected in height growth reductions of 13% to 59% in five year old loblolly pine (Pinus taeda L.), on decks, primary roads, secondary roads, and road borders. Number of pine per plot was reduced by 31% to 91% on the same four areas. Plot means for root collar diameters also decreased but were not significantly different from those on control plots. The proportion of the harvested area involved in soil property impacts and reduced tree growth, however, appeared to be only about 1%.

(In process of review by Southern Journal of Applied Forestry.)

ECOLOGICAL AND SILVICULTURAL FACTORS ASSOCIATED WITH RAPID GROWTH OF LOBLOLLY PINE STANDS[1]

Paul Y. Burns and S.C. Hu[2]

Abstract.--Data from extremely rapid-growing loblolly pine plantations in the United States and foreign countries indicate that this species grows fastest in geographic regions where it is far removed from its natural range, including South Africa, Brazil, Australia, and Hawaii. Ecological and silvicultural factors associated with this superior growth are analyzed in this paper.

INTRODUCTION

In 1963 Louisiana State University's School c Forestry and Wildlife Management began a search project called "How fast can a loblolly ne plantation grow?" An excellent site was sected near Bogalusa, Louisiana, the site was tensively prepared, seedlings were planted, d intensive cultural measures--weed, grass, ush, and tip-moth control; fertilization; and rigation--were applied to encourage rapid owth. Results were spectacular in height owth; at age 11 the plot had an average height c 50.5 ft. However, the plot's volume growth s less than we had hoped although excellent by S. standards (2.8 cords/acre/year mean annual crement (MAI) at age 19).

Three years ago, we decided to compare our "onder" plot with other fast-growing loblolly pe (Pinus taeda L.) plantations in the South a around the world. Loblolly pine is commerclly grown as an exotic in a number of counties, including Australia, Brazil, Argentina, Uguay, the Republic of South Africa, New Zeald, and China. We felt that if we could deterne which ecological and silvicultural factors we associated with superior growth, loblolly pe growers might be helped in silvicultural deion making. As our study progressed, we larned that at least two U.S.-based forest products corporations with subsidiaries in Brazil were interested in discovering why loblolly pine in Brazil greatly outgrows loblolly pine on their holdings in the southern U.S. We too were intrigued by this question.

DATA COLLECTION

We collected data by examining published reports and by personal communication with foresters familiar with exceptionally fast-growing loblolly pine plots. We listed a number of ecological and silvicultural factors which we thought might be significant and ascertained without great difficulty for each plot. Foresters who responded to our letters and phone calls were asked to provide these data if they could, along with growth measurements. We are grateful to all those who cooperated in providing information.

Five outstanding plots in terms of wood volume production per acre per year were selected for this report, one each in South Africa, Brazil, Australia, Hawaii, and South Carolina.

South Africa plot

Data were supplied by C.J. Schutz, Natal Forestry Research Centre, Department of Environment Affairs, Republic of South Africa, Pietermaritzburg. He furnished data for three temporary plots in the Eastern Transvaal Drakensberg Escarpment area. We selected plot T155, which had the highest MAI at age 20. The nearest weather station is at Witklip.

Brazil plot

McDavid Hughes, Manville Forest Products Corporation, West Monroe, Louisiana, and J.P. McTague, Manville Produtos Florestas Ltda., Igaras, Santa

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvictural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, Nember 4-5, 1982.

[2] Professor and Associate Professor, rpectively, Louisiana State University Sool of Forestry and Wildlife Managet, Baton Rouge, Louisiana 70803.

Table 1. -- Stand characteristics of loblolly pine plantation plots showing outstanding growth

Plot location	Plantation age	Original trees/ac	Living trees/ac 1/	Ave. dbh 2/	Ave. ht	Dom. ht 3/	Basal area	M.A.I. production 4/	Site inde
	yrs.	no.	no.	in.	ft.	ft.	ft.²/ac	ft.³/ac/yr	ft.
South Africa	22	809	121	13.63	---	99	123	523	107
Brazil	8	947	852	7.33	35	40	250	442	89
Australia	16	703	346	8.70	---	56	142	382	76
Hawaii	11	1,210	1,150	6.66	38	42	278	371	78
So. Carolina	11	908	639	7.43	49	54	193	352	95

1/ Brazil, Hawaii, and So. Carolina plots were unthinned; South Africa plot was thinned at ages 9,12,14,17, and 21; Australia plot was thinned at age 15 years, 9 months.

2/ Average dbh is quadratic mean.

3/ Dominant height is the average height of dominants and codominants (for the South Africa and Australia plots, derived from top height and predominant height, respectively).

4/ Mean Annual Increment, production is total i.b. all trees, standing volume plus thinning volumes, divided by plantation age, except for South Africa, where it is based on age 20.

5/ Site index is based on dominant height at age 25; it was computed from equation (2), southwide parameters, in an article on loblolly site index by Golden et al. (1981).

Catarina, Brazil, furnished data for a temporary plot on the Rio do Tigre Farm near Igaras. In addition, we obtained valuable growth information on loblolly pine in Brazil from D.M. Crutchfield, Timberlands Division, Westvaco, Summerville, South Carolina.

Australia plot

For the Australia plot data, we are indebted to D.I. Bevege, Forestry Commission of N.S.W., Beecroft, New South Wales, and Alan Harvey, Queensland Department of Forestry, Brisbane. The plot is located near Crohamhurst, Queensland. Dr. Bevege sent data on seven fast-growing permanent plots; we selected the one with the highest MAI.

Hawaii plot

Data for the Hawaii plot were contained in a publication (Whitesell 1974); Craig Whitesell gave us additional information by personal communication, and the senior author (Burns) visited the plot in 1980. The plot selected was the fastest growing in a spacing trial on Maui Island, near Olinda.

South Carolina plot

To our knowledge the most rapid growth on record for loblolly pine in the South is described by Langdon et al. (1970). We used data their article, supplemented by telephone conver tions with W.P. LeGrande, Santee Experimental F est, and W.R. Harms, U.S. Forest Service, Charl ton, South Carolina. The plantation was establ on Wadmalaw Island, about 10 miles southwest of Charleston.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Several problems were encountered in prese ting stand data on a comparable basis. Within world forestry community and even in the U.S. t is no standard method of stand description. Pl tation age in the U.S. is commonly expressed to nearest year; in Australia and South Africa it often expressed to the nearest month. Average is commonly, but not always, shown as the quadr mean. Stand height as reported for site index termination is usually expressed in the U.S. as minant height, in South Africa as top height, a in Queensland as predominant height. Volumes m be presented inside or under bark, sometimes ou or over bark; merchantable limits vary consider

Although outside the U.S. the metric syste fairly standard, this paper is being presented U.S. foresters, so we used the English system. sent to us from other countries were converted this system. Where a stand characteristic whic wanted to present was not provided in the data vailable to us, we made a reasonable approximati

The volume unit we chose is total entire stem inside bark. Since the plots differed in age, we compared the plots as to rate of dominant height growth by computing site indices, base age 25, with a formula by Golden et al. (1981).

Stand growth characteristics of the five plots are shown in table 1. Growth in comparison with most loblolly pine plantations in the southern U.S. is phenomenal for all five plots, ranging from a MAI of 352 ft^3/acre/year for the South Carolina plot to 523 for the South Africa plot. Site indices are also very high, ranging from 76 for the Australia plot to 107 for the South Africa plot.

By comparison, well-stocked loblolly pine plantations in the U.S. at age 20 normally average about 188 ft^3/acre/year, with a range from 80 to 300; site indices average about 60, ranging from 40 to 80.

The plot with the highest MAI (523) is South Africa's. However, it is older than the other plots, and at age 20 it is probably at or near its maximum MAI. Just how long the Brazil plot will continue its rapid growth is not known; extensive planting of loblolly pine in Brazil began only about 16 years ago (Sedjo 1980). Machado (1978) stated that loblolly pine plantations in the central region of Parana (the state north of Santa Catarina) grow very rapidly for the first 10 to 13 years, but this growth is followed by a fast decline, at least in dense stands. However, J.P. McTague told us this year that loblolly pine at Igaras, some of which is 18 years old, has continued its rapid growth. Production MAI in the Brazil plot, now 8 years old, thus seems likely to reach 500 to 600 ft^3/acre per year by age 20, thus making its growth comparable with the South Africa plot. We estimate that production MAI in the other three plots will reach 400 to 500 ft^3/acre/year by age 20.

It is worthy of note that the site indices of the Australia and Hawaii plots, although high, are below 80, indicating that their remarkable volume growths are perhaps more a result of extremely high basal area production than of good height growth. The basal area of the unthinned Hawaii plot was 278 ft^2/acre at age 11; the Australia plot achieved a basal area production, including thinnings, of 260 ft^2/acre/year at age 5. The conventional site index in forestry is based on height growth; however, it may often be the case that basal area growth does not respond to the same ecological factors as does height growth. Thus a plot's height growth may result in a site-index classification which seriously underestimates or overestimates the plot's volume production.

Topographic and climatic factors

The results (table 2) indicate that loblolly pine can grow quite well at latitudes varying from about 21° to 33° depending to some extent on the elevation above sea level and other factors. Latitude has an effect on the length of daylight during the growing season (days are longer in higher latitudes) and on the intensity of light during the growing season. It is noteworthy that the four fastest growing plots are more than 590 feet above sea level in elevation, indicating that perhaps elevation is a "plus" in stimulating growth.

Topographic positions varied for these plots from moist lowlands to a plateau and including middle slopes. Hawaii's and Australia's plots have aspects that tend to mitigate soil moisture loss.

The climate of all five plots is humid subtropical, characterized by mild winter temperatures, moderately warm summer temperatures, and abundant rainfall, particularly during the six-month warm season.

The average freeze-free period is a crude measure of length of growing season, and we expected a high correlation with growth. Four locations had very long freeze-free periods (more than 290 days). The considerably shorter freeze-free period, 210 days, at the Brazil plot seems to be an anomaly. This freeze-free period length is characteristic of western Tennessee, north of the area of rapid loblolly pine growth in the U.S. It may be the case (data are not available to us) that the actual growing season for loblolly pine is considerably longer than 210 days at the Brazil site, particularly if this area has short, sporadic frosts during the warm season.

Average annual rainfall varies from a low of 52 inches at the South Carolina plot to 74 inches at the Australia plot. Warm-season rainfall exceeds 32 inches at the four plots for which data are available. Loblolly pine grows best where warm-season rainfall is abundant. Shoulders and Tiarks (1980), in their study of southern pine plantation height growth in the Gulf Coastal Plain, found that April-through-September rainfall at loblolly pine sites averaged 31 inches, ranging from 24 to 46.

Fog is a significant growth factor for some forest stands. For example, soil moisture may be added by fog drip from trees. The South Carolina plot has a fairly high incidence of warm-season fog. As best we could determine, the other four plots are not significantly affected by fog.

A loblolly pine stand which is probably favorably influenced by fog or mist is located in the Southern Cape area of South Africa (latitude 34° S). Data supplied by F. Beekman, Saasveld Forestry Research Station, George, showed that this plot had a high MAI (500 ft^3/acre/year at age 20) with warm-season rainfall only 25 inches. However, mist in summer is common at this site.

Table 2.--Topographic and climatic factors, loblolly pine plots showing outstanding growth

Plot location	Latitude	Elev. above sea-lev.	Topog.	Slope % & aspect	Freeze free period[1]	Normal winter temp.[2]	Normal summer temp.[3]	Ave. ann. pptn.	Warm season pptn[4]	Warm season R.H.[5]	Ann. water def.[6]
		ft.			days	deg. F	deg. F	in.	in.	percent	in.
So. Afr.	24°54'S	2,871	Alluvial fl. plain	0	300	55	66	63	52	---	---
Brazil	27°30'S	2,790	Lower slope, plateau	5-10	210	54	73	59	34	79	0.0
Austral.	26°49'S	592	Middle slope	7 SSE	365	55	74	74	51	78	---
Hawaii	20°49'N	3,740	Middle slope	10-15 NW	365	54	60	54	---	---	---
So. Car.	32°43'N	12	First terr. Coast. Pl.	0-1	294	49	80	52	32	71	0.3

[1] Freeze-free period is the average number of days between dates of the last spring minimum and the first fall minimum of 32° F or below.

[2] Normal winter temperature is the normal daily average for January (No. Hemisphere) or July (So. Hemisphere).

[3] Normal summer temperature is the normal daily average for July (No. Hemisphere) or January (So. Hemisphere).

[4] Warm season precipitation is the average total for the 6-month period April-September (No. Hemisphere) or October-March (So. Hemisphere).

[5] Warm season relative humidity (R.H.) is the average for the warm season defined above.

[6] Mean annual water deficit is potential evapotranspiration - actual evapotranspiration. Mean annual potential evapotranspiration was computed by Thornthwaite's method, 12 in. moisture in a rooting zone of 6 ft.

Warm-season relative humidity is high in the three plots for which this climatic statistic was provided.

Mean annual potential evapotranspiration is and expression of tree needs for water; it is calculated empirically from air temperatures without regard to soil differences. When soil moisture is low, actual evapotranspiration is below potential, and a deficit occurs. Unfortunately, water deficit data are available for only two of the plots--Brazil and South Carolina. The fact that the mean annual deficit is close to zero for these two plots is probably significant in causing their rapid growth. In view of the high warm-season rainfall and relatively low summer temperatures at the South Africa and Australia sites it seems likely that the mean annual water deficit of these plots is also near zero.

Geologic and soil factors

A variety of parent materials ranging from s dimentary (several sources) to volcanic ash is re resented in our data (table 3). Soil classifications also vary considerably, and no definite co clusions have been drawn.

Soils of the five plots appear to be excelle for loblolly pine growth. Topsoils are loamy, su soils have favorable texture, and all soils are deep. Soil structure is an important factor in t growth; however, we were unable to get informati on this attribute, except for the South Africa pl which has a porous soil, and the Hawaii plot, wh has moderately rapid permeability and a subangul

Table 3.--Geologic and soil factors, loblolly pine plots showing outstanding growth

Plot location	Parent material	Soil classification[1]	Topsoil			Subsoil		Total soil depth	Water table depth	Surface drainage	Internal drainage
			Texture	Depth	pH	Texture	pH				
				in.				in.	ft.		
So. Afr.	Granite alluvium	Inceptisols	Sandy clay loam	9	---	Sandy clay	---	59+	8	Good	Good
Brazil	Sedimentary on basalt	Passa dois rio do rasto	Silt loam	16-18	5.2	Silt	---	40+	1-6 shallow winter	Fair	Fair
Austral.	Tertiary basalt	Dystric Nitosols, Lateritic Krasnozem	Loam	20	5.7	Loam to clay loam	5.4	36+	Deep	Good	Good
Hawaii	Volcanic ash over andesite or basalt	Inceptisols, Dystrandepts, Entic, Medial Isomesic Olinda	Loam	6	6.2 to 6.4	Silty clay loam	6.2 to 6.4	42	Deep	Good	Good
So. Car.	Sandy marine sediments	Entisols, Udipsamments Aquic, mixed Thermic Seabrook	Loamy fine sand	appr. 12	---	---	---	48+	2-6	Poor	Good

[1] Soil classification for Hawaii and So. Carolina is based on U.S. S.C.S. system (Soil Survey Staff 1975); South Africa series is "Oakleaf Jozini;" Brazil classification is local name; Australia classification is based on FAO-UNESCO (1974) Soil map of the world, 1:5,000,000, Volume I, Legend, p. 19.

blocky subsoil structure. Soil pH where recorded is acid and favorable for loblolly pine, ranging from 5.2 to 6.4.

At the South Africa, Brazil, and South Carolina plots, water tables may be accessible to the roots, thereby stimulating rapid growth. However, rainfall is abundant at these sites, and the water table may not be a growth factor.

Detailed soil information is available for a loblolly pine plot (No. 7-10-3) in Brazil, located on Rigesa Woodlands of Westvaco, in Santa Catarina some distance north of Igaras. Located at the bottom of a 10 percent slope, at age 8 the plot's MAI was 429 ft^3/acre/year. Dominant height was 50 feet, yielding a site index estimate of 104 feet based on Golden et al.'s equation. The soil is very deep--more than 96 inches. The topsoil is a friable clay loam, subsoil friable granular clay. Topsoil bulk density is 0.895 g/cm^3, indicating favorable structure. Soil pH is 4.3 to 4.5, and the C:N ratio is high--8.3 in the A horizon and 10.0 in the B--conducive to good growth. Silt-plus-clay content (fines) is 57 percent in both horizons. Climatic data for this plot are not available, but the soil data are valuable in understanding the excellent growth rates of loblolly pine in Brazil.

Detailed nutrient status information is unavailable for our five plots. Subjective judgments indicate that soil nutrients are adequate for good growth.

In forest stands the presence or absence of soil pathogens (nematodes, viruses, fungi, and bacteria) is not easily detected unless tree mortality is abnormal. It is not surprising that there is limited information on this factor in our data. Low populations are reported for the Brazil and Australia plots; no data on soil pathogens are available for the others. The high wood production of all five plots indicates that soil

Table 4.--Silvicultural factors, loblolly pine plots showing outstanding growth

Plot location	Geogr. source seed	Pheno-type parent	Age of seedl.	Replace-ment planting	Former use of site	Site prepa-ration	Fertilizer applied	Weed & grass control	Brush contro
So. Afr.	Local	---	1-0	---	Grass pasture	1 m^2 plntng spots scalped hoed in center	None	First yr.	Not Neede
Brazil	So. Ga. No. Fla. Cent. Ala.	---	1-0	Yes	Parana pine - hardwds	Bull-dozed K-G blade	None	None	First 3 yrs.
Austral.	Ocala Fla.	Local plus trees	1-0	No	Rain-forest cleared, grazed	Planted directly on pasture	None	None	Not neede
Hawaii	---	---	1-1	Yes	Grass pasture	Grazed heavily, plntng spots scalped	None	None	Not neede
So. Car.	Local	Seed prod. area	1-0	No	Old field farmed yr. bef. plntg.	Bedding	None	First yr.	Not neede

pathogens, if present, are not causing appreciable mortality. However, nematodes probably have significance in tree disease considerably in excess of current scientific knowledge, and these organisms have received scant attention in forest soil studies. It seems quite possible that some of our observed growth differences in these five plots are related to differences in soil pathogen populations.

Silvicultural factors

For the Australia plot, planting spacing (table 1) was perhaps a little too open (703 trees/acre) for maximum total-stem volume production. Original spacing varied from 809 to 1,210 seedlings per acre in the other four plots, close enough for maximum or nearly maximum total-stem volume production.

Several other silvicultural factors that may be associated with the growth of these stands are listed in table 4.

None of the five plots was planted with see lings of proven genetic superiority. Additional loblolly pine growth data from the Eastern Trans vaal, supplied by N.P. Denison, Mondi Timber, Sabie, show that genetic factors are important. MAI (ages varying from 12 to 20 years) from a seed-source study with 15 seed origins varied from 182 to 396 ft^3/acre/year. The genotypes of our five plots are not known. Therefore it is nearly impossible to assess the importance of genetic factors in their growth.

Although the Hawaii plot was planted with 1-1 rather than with 1-0 stock, this seemingly was not significant in causing its excellent growth, although it may have helped in minimizin the need for weed and grass control in the plot' early years.

Replacement planting was used in the Brazil and Hawaii plots, but it is unlikely that this practice caused their rapid growth.

In the U.S., old-field sites on the average produce faster-growing pines that cutover forest sites, perhaps because of more favorable soil onditions. Four of our five plots had been in pasture or farm crops before planting; the Brazil site had been in native forest.

Site preparation was used on all plots exept the Australia plot. None of the plots as fertilized nor irrigated. Water control in the wet-site South Carolina plot was accomplished y bedding.

Weed and grass control was done only on the outh Africa and South Carolina plots. The enerally excellent growth of loblolly pine on ood sites in South Africa may in part be due o the weed-control practices reported by Darow (1979). The Brazil site, cutover forest, probably had few herbs and grasses; it received eeded brush control. The fast growth of the ustralia plot is a little surprising in view of the lack of weed and grass control.

It is unlikely that the thinning (table 1) and the artificial pruning which were applied o the South Africa and Australia stands had a significant effect on stand production, since MAI was expressed in total-stem volume rather than in merchantable volume.

To date, loblolly pines in South Africa, Brazil, Australia, and Hawaii have been remarkably free of disease and insect attacks, although ant control was needed the first year in the Brazil plot. Fusiform rust and tip-moth attacks, common in the southern U.S., do not ccur where loblolly pine is far removed from its natural range. Recently a strange decline of tree crowns in some 40- to 50-year-old loblolly pine stands in the Eastern Transvaal was reported (Schutz and Wingfield 1979); however, this disease did not occur on our South Africa plot. Fusiform rust and tip-moth attacks probably did affect the growth to some extent in the South Carolina plantation, but these factors were apparently of minor significance; they were not mentioned in Langdon et al.'s (1970) rticle. It is difficult to estimate the importance of the apparently complete lack of insect and fungal damage on the growth of the four fastest growing plots in our study.

CONCLUSIONS

Loblolly pine plantations are capable of igh wood production, up to at least 352 ft^3/ acre/year in the southern U.S. and 523 ft^3/ acre/year in areas where it is an exotic. Generally this species grows fastest in geographic regions where it is far removed from its natural range, including South Africa, Brazil, Australia, nd at least one mountain-side site in Hawaii. he best sites in South Africa and Brazil produce aster growth of this species than the best areas in Australia.

Loblolly pine can grow rapidly at latitudes varying from 21° to 34°. At tropical latitudes, an elevation which is several thousand feet above sea level may be required. Plateaus, floodplains, and gentle middle slopes are suitable.

Climatic factors associated with superior loblolly pine growth generally include a long freeze-free period, mild wet winters, and warm to moderately warm wet growing seasons. Fog or mist may provide additional needed moisture to some sites. Soil water deficits averaging near zero appear to be beneficial.

Fast-growing loblolly pine apparently requires a deep, internally well-drained acid soil; loamy topsoil; clay, silt loam, or clay loam subsoil; and a favorable supply of soil nutrients. On some sites a water table within reach of tree roots is an asset. Soil pathogens are a largely unstudied and unknown factor.

Outstanding growth can be achieved on cutover forest sites as well as old fields or pastures. Seedlings need not be of proven genetic superiority, although seed source is important. Fertilization is not necessary for rapid growth if soil nutrients are abundant. Weed, grass, and brush control may be helpful in some stands. Disease and insect control measures, except for ant control in Brazil, are not necessary in the locations which we studied. Loblolly pines are remarkably healthy in these locations.

We are unable to draw definite conclusions as to why loblolly pine generally grows faster in South Africa, Brazil, and Australia than it does in the southern U.S. We surmise that loblolly pine grows faster as an exotic in the subtropics because of (1) abundant and well-distributed rainfall, (2) high humidity, (3) a long growing season, (4) good soils, (5) lack of serious pests, and (6) moderately intensive silvicultural practices.

Because of the large number of ecological and silvicultural factors associated with loblolly pine growth, additional extensive research is needed to provide more definitive answers. Growth factors that can be controlled should be held constant; factors that cannot be controlled should be carefully measured. A series of internationally coordinated experiments should be initiated.

LITERATURE CITED

Darrow, W.K.
1979. Silviculture of the southern pines in South Africa. J. For. 77:682-685.

Golden, M.S., R. Meldahl, S.A. Knowe, and W.D. Boyer.
1981. Predicting site index for old-field loblolly pine plantations. So. J. Appl. For. 5(3):109-114.

Langdon, O.G., G.E. Hatchell, and W.P. LeGrande.
1970. Loblolly pine growth topped! So. Lumberman 221(2752):126-127.

Machado, S.D.A.
1978. Studies in growth and yield estimation for *Pinus taeda* L. plantations in the State of Parana, Brazil. Ph.D. Univ. Wash., 184 p. Diss. Abstr. 40/02B, p. 512.

Schutz, C.J., and M.J. Wingfield
1979. A health problem in mature stands of *Pinus taeda* in the Eastern Transvaal. So. Afr. For. J. 109:47-49.

Sedjo, R.A.
1980. Forest plantations in Brazil and their possible effects on world pulp markets. J. For. 78:702-705.

Shoulders, E., and A.E. Tiarks
1980. Predicting height and relative perfc mance of major southern pines from rainfall slope, and available soil moisture. For. Sci. 26:437-447.

Soil Survey Staff
1975. Soil taxonomy. USDA Agric. Handbook 436, 754 p.

Whitesell, C.D.
1974. Effects of spacing on loblolly pine i Hawaii after 11 years. USDA For. Serv. Res Note PSW-295, 4 p.

EFFECTS OF THINNING AND FERTILIZATION ON GROWTH OF UPLAND OAK STANDS IN THE BOSTON MOUNTAINS OF ARKANSAS: 7-YEAR RESULTS[1]

David L. Graney[2]

Abstract.--A study of thinning and fertilization of 50-year-old northern red oak (Quercus rubra L.), black oak (Q. velutina Lam.), and white oak (Q. alba L.) was initiated in the Boston Mountains of Arkansas in the spring of 1975. Fertilizer applications of a nitrogen and phosphorous combination were broadcast at two levels to individual oaks that had received thinning or nonthinning treatments. Both levels of fertilization increased diameter growth of all oaks in thinned and nonthinned stands, and thinning further increased this response. Maximum response to fertilization occurred during the first and second years after treatment. Response continued through the fourth year for the lower level of nitrogen and through the fifth year for the higher level. A significant diameter growth response to thinning occurred during the third growing season after treatment for red and black oaks and the fifth growing season for white oak.

INTRODUCTION

Several hundred thousand acres of forest land northern Arkansas support overstocked, even-ged, pole-sized stands of oaks and associated ecies. Although many stands are on medium to od sites (site index of 60 to 70 feet at 50 ars), diameter growth averages only about 1 inch 10 years. Since there are very few markets for all diameter hardwoods there has been very little termediate cutting in these stands. But, be-use demands for hardwood sawtimber are in-easing and inventories of large poletimber and mature sawtimber are small, some land managers ve begun noncommercial thinning programs to celerate growth of potential crop trees. rtilization may further stimulate growth of crop ees. Research has shown that northern red uercus rubra L.), black (Q. velutina Lam.), and ite (Q. alba L.) oaks will respond to nitrogen) and phosphorous (P) fertilization. Two-year ameter growth of fertilized red oaks has been own to increase by 45 to 70 percent and white k about 60 percent. Red oaks responded more to higher levels of N, but white oak produced about the same response to medium and higher levels of N (Graney and Pope 1978a, 1978b). This paper summarizes 7-year growth responses of red oaks (northern red and black oaks) and white oak in the Boston Mountains of Arkansas. Objectives were to determine how fertilizer applications affected diameter growth in thinned and nonthinned stands and to determine the effect of thinning on diameter growth response to fertilization.

METHODS

Study Area

The Boston Mountains are the highest and southernmost member of the Ozark Plateaus physiographic province (fig. 1). They form a band 30 to 40 miles wide and 200 miles long from north central Arkansas westward into eastern Oklahoma. Elevations range from about 900 ft in the valley bottoms to 2,500 ft at the highest point. The plateau is sharply dissected, and most ridges and spurs are flat to gently rolling and generally less than one-half mile wide. Mountain slopes consist of an alternating series of steep simple slopes and gently sloping benches.

Rocks in the area are sedimentary and predominantly of Pennsylvania age, consisting of alternating horizontal beds of shale and resistant sandstone. Annual precipitation averages 46 to 48 inches, with March, April, and May the wettest months. Extended summer dry periods are common,

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural search Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 5, 1982.

[2] Principal Silviculturist at the Silvi-lture and Hydrology Laboratory, maintained at yetteville, Arkansas, by the Southern Forest periment Station, Forest Service-USDA, in operation with the University of Arkansas.

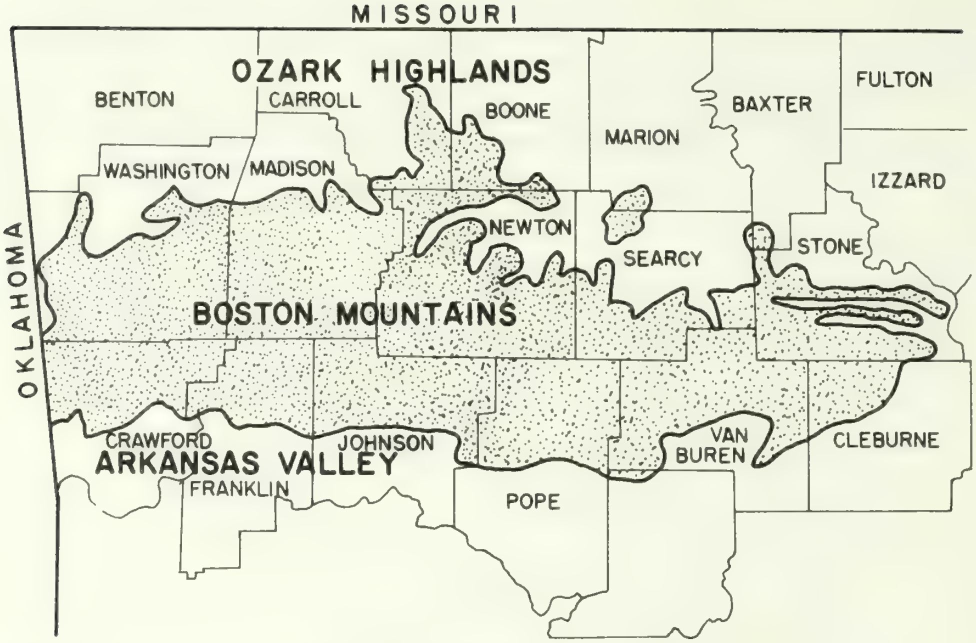


Figure 1.--The Boston Mountains in Arkansas.

and autumn is usually dry. The frost-free period is normally 180 to 200 days long.

Three study areas were selected in overstocked stands on mountain benches that range from 2 to 3 chains wide. Soils are deep, well-drained, medium-textured members of the Nella and Leesburg series (Typic Paleudults); derived from sandstone and shale colluvium; and rated medium to high in productivity.

Sample Trees

In each area, 48 red oak and 48 white oak trees were selected for the thinning and fertilizer treatments. Trees from each species group were arranged into 16 sets of 3 trees each. Members of each 3-tree set were uniform in diameter, crown size, and height and were located on essentially the same site conditions. Thin or nonthin treatments were randomly assigned to each 3-tree set, and three fertilizer treatments were randomly assigned to trees of the thinned and nonthinned sets. In total, there were 144 red and black oaks and 144 white oaks at three locations.

Tree Measurements

Diameter at breast height (d.b.h.) of each sample tree was measured to the nearest 0.01 inch. The diameter measurement point was identified by a painted band on each tree. Increment cores, extracted from the north, east, south, and west sides of each tree, were sealed in plastic soda straws. These were used to determine tree age and to obtain a measure of past growth. Past annual radial growth was measured to the nearest 0.01 inch using a binocular microscope. Total height was also recorded for each tree.

Thinning Treatment

Basal area around each sample tree was determined with a prism. Basal area was reduced to about 70 ft^2 by removing two major competitors and several smaller trees. Thinning was completed in March, 1975. Average tree and stand characteristics at this time are shown in Table 1.

Table 1. Mean stand and tree characteristics for red and white oak thinned and nonthinned treatments at beginning of study.

Treatment	Age	Site Index	Initial Diameter	Basal Area
	years	feet	inches	ft^2/Acre
		RED OAKS		
Thinned	50	62	8.18	68
Nonthinned	50	62	8.48	120
		WHITE OAKS		
Thinned	52	59	8.26	66
Nonthinned	52	59	7.89	123

Fertilizer Treatments

A combination of two fertilizers, ammonium nitrate (34-0-0) and diammonium phosphate (18-46- was used. Fertilizer treatments were: (1) no fertilizer (nonfertilized), (2) 200 lbs N + 45 lb P per acre (200 lb treatment), and (3) 400 lbs N + 45 lbs P per acre (400 lb treatment). Fertilizer were surface broadcast in late April, 1975, on a 01 acre circular plot surrounding each tree.

ta Analysis

The study design was a split-plot with thinnig representing the whole plots and fertilizer teatments the subplots. Data were analyzed by alysis of covariance with mean annual diameter gowth for the 5-year period prior to treatment (970-1974) as the covariate. Differences among ajusted treatment means were tested using Duncan's mltiple range test.

RESULTS

sponse to Thinning

Red and white oak sample trees produced an imediate positive response to thinning and the rte of annual diameter growth generally increased troughout the 7-year period of the study (Table 2. Levels of response were greater and more aparent in the fifth through seventh years when frtilizer response declined and growth rates of nthinned trees slowed to pretreatment levels or ss.

ble 2. Mean annual diameter growth response of red and white oaks to thinning[1].

ar	RED OAKS			WHITE OAK		
	Nonthinned	Thinned		Nonthinned	Thinned	
	Growth	Growth	Response	Growth	Growth	Response
	- - - inches	- - -	%	- - - inches	- - -	%
75	0.155	0.179	16	0.162	0.181	12
76	0.174	0.198	14	0.176	0.198	13*[3]
77	0.135	0.173	28**[3]	0.152	0.169	11
78	0.126	0.152	21**	0.135	0.145	7
79	0.127	0.169	33**	0.142	0.161	13*
81[4]	0.101	0.162	60**	0.125	0.155	24**
an	0.132	0.171	30**	0.145	0.166	15**

[1] Data averaged over all fertilizer rates and adjusted for differences in ameter growth using the 5-year period before thinning.

[2] Percent increase of thinned over nonthinned.

[3] Statistically significant; * =P <.05; ** =P <.01

[4] Mean annual growth for 1980 and 1981.

Diameter growth rates of thinned red oaks were gnificantly greater than rates of nonthinned ees from the third through the seventh year and eraged a 60 percent increase for the sixth and venth years. Over the 7-year period, thinning creased red oak diameter growth by about 30 rcent.

White oak responded positively to thinning, t the level of response was lower than observed r the red oaks (Table 2). Differences in diater growth between thinned and nonthinned white ks were at or near significant levels for 6 of e 7 years, and growth of thinned trees averaged out 24 percent greater than nonthinned trees for e sixth and seventh years. Although initial sponse of white oak to thinning was small, fferences between thinned and nonthinned trees ould increase over the next several years. Annual diameter growth of thinned and nonfertilized white oaks were continuing to increase through 1981 while nonthinned and nonfertilized trees were continuing to grow at pretreatment levels (fig. 2). Growth will probably decline as crowding and competition increase in the overstocked stands. The same general pattern of response is also indicated for the red oaks.

Differences in early levels of response to thinning by red and white oaks are probably due to differences in initial crown size and competitive position in these overstocked stands. On the same site, northern red and black oaks usually average a site index 5 or more feet greater than white oak. The red oaks attain dominant crown positions and develop and maintain relatively large crowns. In overstocked stands, most white oaks occupy lower crown positions and will suffer continuous reduction in crown size due to crowding, but will persist for many years with very low rates of growth. As indicated by the consistent decline in diameter growth prior to thinning (fig. 2), all trees needed release, but the red oaks were generally in better condition to respond than were white oak. Apparently, to maintain reasonably acceptable rates of diameter growth, white oak crop trees require release from crown competition earlier than red oaks and certainly before they suffer apprciable loss in crown size.

Response to Fertilization

Fertilization significantly increased diameter growth of both red and white oaks over the 7-year period of the study, but the response varied between species and was influenced by the thinning treatment (Table 3).

Red oaks.--Thinned red oaks produced the greatest overall response to fertilization and were the most responsive to the higher level. Those fertilized at the 400 lb N level were the only trees to produce a significant response the sixth and seventh years after treatment.

For the 7-year period, mean diameter growth of thinned, fertilized red oaks averaged 26 percent more than growth of nonfertilized trees for the 200 lb treatment and 56 percent more for the 400 lb level. Nonthinned red oaks also responded to fertilization with increases of 32 to 36 percent over the nonfertilized trees. Nonthinned trees produced a greater response to the 400 lb treatment the first 2 years following treatment, but the response was about equal to the 200 lb treatment for the remainder of the study.

Maximum response to fertilization occurred during the first 2 years after treatment. Response declined annually, but remained significantly greater than nonfertilized trees through the fifth year. Only the thinned red oaks 400 lb treatment produced a significant response over the sixth and seventh years.

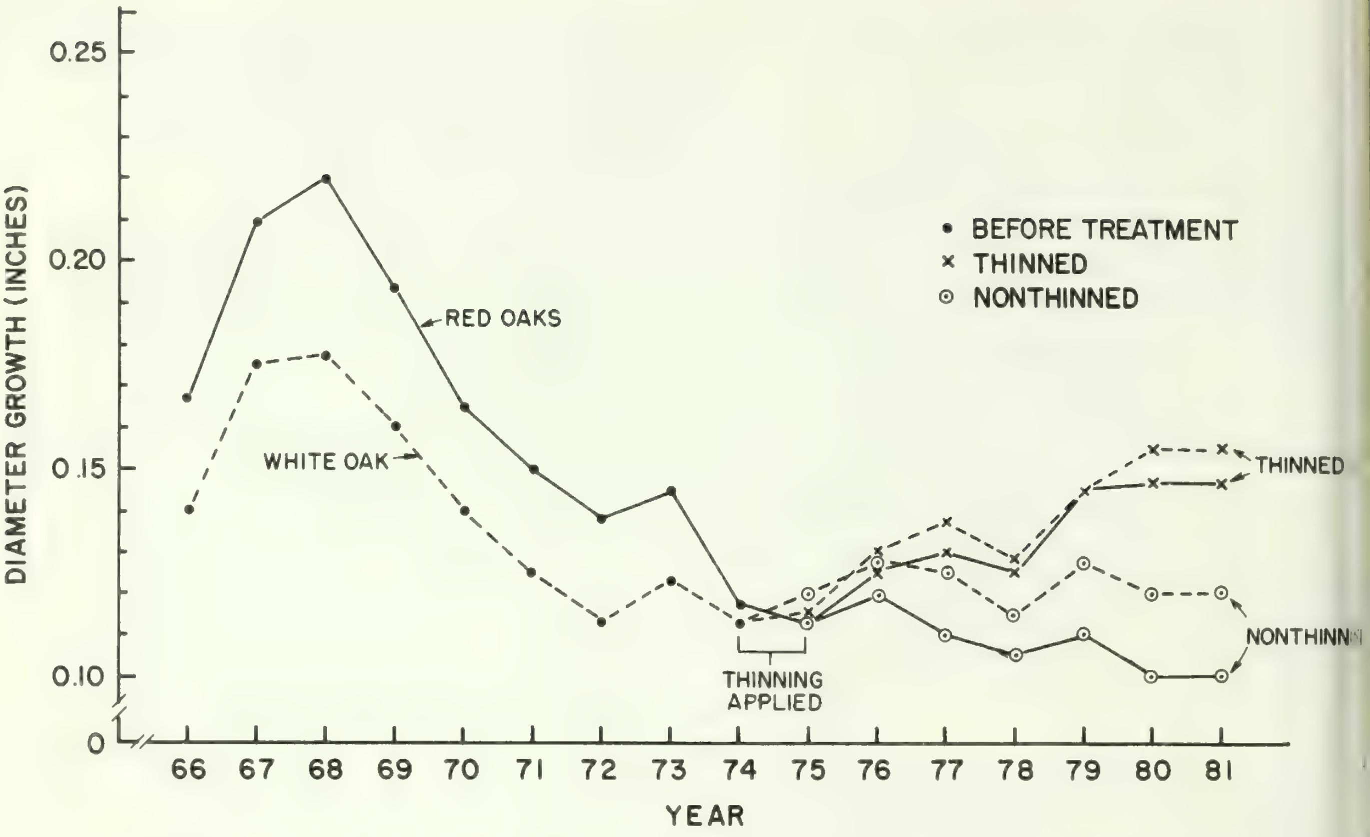


Figure 2.--Mean annual diameter growth of nonfertilized red and white oak crop trees before and after thin

Over the 7-year period, growth response to fertilization for thinned red oaks averaged about 40 percent, slightly lower than the response reported for northern red oak in thinned stands in New York (Karning 1972) and higher than reported for thinned black oaks in the Missouri Ozarks (Watt 1974). Seven-year increases in diameter growth of nonthinned red oaks in the present study averaged 34 percent which was slightly lower than observed for red oaks in the Tennessee Valley (Farmer et al. 1970) and slightly higher than increases for northern red oak in West Virginia (Lamson 1978, 1980) and scarlet oak in Pennsylvania (Ward and Bowersox 1970).

White oak.--In contrast to red oaks, thinned white oak was much less sensitive to the two levels of N fertilization. Both produced about the same increase, 30 percent (Table 3). Thinned white oak at the 400 lb level did not produce a significant response over the 200 lb application rate until the fifth year following treatment. Conversely, nonthinned white oak responded significantly more to the 400 lb treatment than to 200 lb, and averaged a 34 percent increase over growth of nonfertilized trees over the entire 7-year period.

White oak also produced a maximum response to fertilization during the first 2 years following treatment. After the second year, response to fertilizer declined annually, but remained significant through the fifth year with thinned and nonthinned trees fertilized at the 400 lb rate producing the greatest response. Mean diameter growth for years 6 and 7 was about the same for all treatments (Table 3).

Mean 7-year response of the thinned and nonthinned trees to the fertilizer treatments was about 29 percent, nearly the same as 5-year responses reported for fertilized white oak in Pennsylvania (Ward and Bowersox 1970) but only about half of the 5-year responses observed for white oak in the Tennessee Valley (Farmer et al. 1970).

DISCUSSION

Overall response of red and white oaks to fertilization was reduced by the general lack of response during a severe drought in 1980 and the inability to recover during the very wet growing season of 1981. Growth of all study trees was affected to some extent, but nonthinned fertilize trees suffered the greatest reductions in growth.

Fertilized nonthinned white oak had greater diameter growth than nonfertilized trees in 1977 and 1978 but decreased to about the same level as the nonfertilized trees during the 1980-81 growing seasons (Table 3). Thinned white oak fertilized at the 400 lb level maintained the same rat of diameter growth, but were overtaken by the ble 3. Mean annual diameter growth response to fertilization for thinned and nonthinned red and white oaks[1]

	Thinned					Nonthinned				
	Fertilizer Treatment					Fertilizer Treatment				
ar	Nonfertilized	200 lb		400 lb		Nonfertilized	200 lb		400 lb	
	Growth	Growth	Response[2]	Growth	Response	Growth	Growth	Response	Growth	Response
	- - - inches - - - -		%	inches	%	- - - inches - - - -		%	inches	%
					RED OAKS					
75	0.113a[3]	0.186b	65	0.239c	112	0.114a	0.168b	47	0.185b	62
76	0.128a	0.202b	58	0.263c	106	0.120a	0.190b	58	0.211b	76
77	0.131a	0.167b	28	0.220c	53	0.110a	0.142b	29	0.152b	38
78	0.126a	0.148b	18	0.182c	44	0.105a	0.136b	30	0.136b	30
79	0.145a	0.163a	12	0.201b	39	0.109a	0.138b	27	0.137b	26
31[4]	0.148a	0.158a	7	0.177b	20	0.100	0.104	4	0.100	0
an	0.134a	0.169b	26	0.209c	56	0.107a	0.141b	32	0.146b	36
					WHITE OAK					
75	0.115a	0.220b	91	0.205b	78	0.121a	0.169b	40	0.197c	63
76	0.131a	0.234b	79	0.227b	73	0.127a	0.184b	45	0.218c	72
77	0.137a	0.189b	38	0.181b	32	0.125a	0.154b	23	0.179c	43
78	0.127a	0.150b	18	0.160b	26	0.116a	0.135a	16	0.155b	34
79	0.144a	0.159a	10	0.180b	25	0.128a	0.140a	9	0.159b	24
31	0.156	0.156	0	0.154	-1	0.120	0.128	7	0.125	4
an	0.138a	0.181b	31	0.180b	30	0.123a	0.148b	20	0.165b	34

[1] Data adjusted for differences in diameter growth during the 5-year period before treatment.
[2] Percent increase over nonfertilized treatment.
[3] Values in rows followed by the same letter are not significantly different at the 0.05 level.
[4] Mean annual diameter growth for 1980 and 1981.

nfertilized trees which actually increased in te of diameter growth in 1980-81. Diameter growth r nonthinned and nonfertilized white oak trees er the 11-year period 1971-81 indicates the ecies' ability to survive and grow in dense stands r long periods. Though generally in a less comtitive crown position, subjected to intense crowdg and competition, and possessing very small owns, white oak maintained a fairly consistent te of diameter growth over the 11-year period.

Nonthinned red oaks, on the other hand, were ch more sensitive to competition and crowding and clined in diameter growth each year following the tter-than-normal growing seasons of 1967-69. The fferences in response for thinned and nonthinned d oak fertilized trees during 1980-81 suggests at effective crown release of fertilized trees y increase the duration of the growth response fertilization. While diameter growth of noninned red oaks fell below the pretreatment level ring 1980-81, thinned red oaks remained above is level. Thinned red oaks that had been fertized showed a 20 percent greater growth than nfertilized.

The 7-year results of this study indicate that ameter growth of pole-sized red and white oaks can increased by thinning and/or fertilization. In erstocked stands, where crop trees have been subcted to extended periods of severe crowding, inned trees will generally produce a positive sponse within 1 or 2 years after treatment but significant response to thinning may be delayed several years. Annual diameter measurements taken in conjunction with an oak growth and yield study in the Boston Mountain area indicate that free-to-grow red and white oak crop trees in 40- to 70-year-old stands on medium sites should average about 0.20 to 0.25 inch diameter growth per year. To attain these growth rates, thinnings should be initiated before stands become overstocked and crop trees suffer appreciable reductions in crown size. Fertilization with N and P can also increase diameter growth of red and white oak crop trees and the increased growth rate will persist about 5 years. Red oaks will respond to larger applications of N than white oak and their response may continue beyond 7 years when fertilization and thinning treatments are combined.

Although differences in diameter growth between fertilized and nonfertilized treatments were statistically significant it is doubtful that the 7-year cumulative increase in diameter (0.2 to 0.5 inch) would justify the cost of a single commercial fertilizer application in these intermediate-aged stands. In considering silvicultural investments on these sites regulation of stand density in younger stands should have first priority.

LITERATURE CITED

Farmer, R.E., Jr., G.W. Bengtson and J.W. Curlin
1970. Response of pine and mixed hardwood stands in the Tennessee Valley to nitrogen and phosphorous fertilization. For. Sci. 16:130-136.

Graney, D.L., and P.E. Pope
1978a. Response of red oaks and white oak to thinning and fertilization in the Boston Mountains of Arkansas. p.357-369. In. Proc. Cent. Hwd. For. Conf. II. Purdue Univ., West Lafayette, Ind., Nov. 14-16, 1978.

Graney, D.L., and P.E. Pope
1978b. Fertilization increases growth of thinned and nonthinned upland oak stands in the Boston Mountains of Arkansas. U.S. Dep. Agric. For. Serv. Res. Note SO-243, 4 p.

Karning, Jack J.
1972. Nitrogen fertilizer increases diameter growth of northern red oak. J. For. 70:629.

Lamson, N.I.
1978. Fertilization increases growth of sawlog-size yellow-poplar and red oak in West Virginia. U.S. Dep. Agric. For. Serv Res. Pap. NE-403, 6 p.

Lamson, N.I.
1980. Effect of fertilization on four specie in mature Appalachian hardwood stands. p. 449-457. In. Proc. Cen. Hwd. For. Conf. III. Univ. Missouri, Columbia, Mo., Sept. 16-17, 1980.

Ward, W.W., and T.W. Bowersox
1970. Upland oak response to fertilization with nitrogen, phosphorous, and calcium. For. Sci. 16:113-120.

Watt, Richard F.
1974. Response to fertilization of oaks in the Missouri Ozarks. Agron. Abstr., Am. Soc. Agron. p. 179.

A GROWTH AND YIELD MODEL FOR UNTHINNED SLASH PINE PLANTATIONS INFECTED WITH FUSIFORM RUST[1]

Warren L. Nance, Ronald C. Froelich, Tommy R. Dell, and Eugene Shoulders[2]

Abstract.--Yield predictions under different levels of fusiform rust are essential in the development of management strategies for diseased plantations. A modification of an existing yield system is presented which predicts the growth and yield of infected slash pine plantations southwide. The new model was used to evaluate some alternative management schemes designed to reduce the yield loss directly attributable to fusiform rust.

INTRODUCTION

Yield prediction systems are essential to orest managers because they allow them to evaluate he effect of various management practices on the rowth and yield of forest stands. The forest anager arrives at management strategies by onsidering the cost of some management practice eighed against its potential benefits in terms of rowth and yield.

Unfortunately, yield prediction systems have ot been available for plantations of slash (*Pinus lliottii* Engelm. var. *elliottii*) or loblolly pine *P. taeda* L.) infected with fusiform rust *Cronartium quercuum* Berk Miyabe ex Shirai f. sp. *usiforme*). The disease is widespread throughout he planting range of both species and represents a ajor management problem in certain areas of the South. There are several yield prediction systems available for plantations of both species, but they do not consider a rust level parameter.

Without a yield prediction system for infected plantations, the forest manager cannot develop rational and economic disease management strategies to minimize the impact of the disease. For example, how can he estimate the yield loss likely to result in his infected plantations if he takes no action against the disease? Can he justify the cost of some control measure when he cannot predict the yield benefit likely to result from its use?

To approach this problem we modified an existing growth and yield model to incorporate a rust level parameter as one of the controlling variables used by the model to generate predicted yields. A previous paper (Nance *et al.* 1981) detailed the effects of the disease on the growth and yield of 187 unthinned research plots of slash pine in Louisiana and Mississippi. In this paper, we extend that work by analysing a combined data set taken from installations ranging from western Louisiana to South Carolina. The objectives are: (1) modify an existing growth and yield prediction system for unthinned slash pine to provide forecasts under alternate levels of fusiform rust, (2) evaluate the new system by comparing predicted and witnessed yields for plots covering a wide range of circumstances, and (3) demonstrate how the model can be used to answer important management questions for infected slash pine plantations.

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural esearch Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-, 1982.

[2] Warren L. Nance is Principal Plant eneticist, Ronald C. Froelich is Principal Plant athologist, Tommy R. Dell is Mathematical tatistician, and Eugene Shoulders is Principal ilviculturist. All are employed by the outhern Forest Experiment Station, Forest ervice--USDA.

DATA BASE

The slash pine data base for the analysis consists of two sets. Set A involves 100 plots from Mississippi and 87 plots from Louisiana measured periodically for rust infection and growth for 20 years. Detailed descriptions of these data appear in Shoulders (1976), Shoulders and Walker (1979), and Nance et al. (1981). These data were analysed extensively in the latter reference.

Set B consists of 281 slash pine plots from Alabama, Georgia, Florida and South Carolina. These data are part of a comprehensive growth and yield study installed by Union Camp Corporation beginning in 1973. These 281 plots were periodically measured for rust infection and growth for 17 years.

The site indexes (base age 25, estimated from an equation presented by Farrar, 1973) ranged from 25 to 80 feet with a mean of 62 feet in set A and 25 to 78 feet with a mean of 54 feet in set B. Planting density (number of trees planted per acre) was 1,210 for all plots in set A and ranged from 100 to 1,100 for set B. Establishment density (number of living trees per acre at age 5) ranged from 600 to 1,210 for set A with a mean of 996, and in set B ranged from 80 to 1,000 with a mean of 406. There were either 64 (Mississippi) or 49 (Louisiana) measured trees per plot in set A and 25 measured trees per plot in set B.

The percentage of living trees with a fusiform rust stem canker at age 5 ranged from 0 to 32 in set A with a mean of 4, and in set B ranged from 0 to 76 with a mean of 18. The cumulative percentage of established trees that had died with a stem canker by age 20 in set A ranged from 0 to 44 with a mean of 14, and in set B ranged from 0 to 78 with a mean of 21 by age 17.

MODELING BACKGROUND

The plantation yield system we modified is described in its original form in Dell et al (1979) and was implemented in a computer program called USLYCOWG (Unthinned Slash and Loblolly Yields for Cutover sites in the Western Gulf). Although the original model covered both slash and loblolly, this report covers only the modifications required for incorporating fusiform rust into the slash pine model. Data used to construct the USLYCOWG model did not involve significant levels of rust.

The USLYCOWG model.--The USLYCOWG prediction system can be briefly described in functional form as follows. For an unthinned slash pine plantation, it is assumed that the current yield (Y) can be predicted using only three parameters: the age of the plantation in years (Ap), the number of living trees per acre at that age (T_L), and the mean height of the dominant and codominant trees in the plantation at that age (H_D). In functional form this appears as:

$$\hat{Y} = f(H_D, T_L, Ap)$$

This form is not concerned with forecasting yi since both H_D and T_L must be known at the age interest, Ap. However, if predicted values f and T_L at age Ap are substituted in place of k values, the model can be used to forecast yiel

In the case of H_D, predicted values can b generated if one has an estimate of the site index (S_I) of the planting site. The predicte mean dominant and codominant height is simply a function of two parameters:

$$\hat{H}_D = f(S_I, Ap)$$

In the case of survival, predicted values be generated using a survival function that requires one to know site index (S_I), the numb trees per acre initially planted on the site (and the projection age (Ap):

$$\hat{T}_L = f(S_I, Tp, Ap)$$

Hence, in the forecasting mode the USLYCO model simply replaces known values of H_D and T with predicted values generated by the appropr prediction equation, and the functional form f forecasting yield appears as:

$$\hat{Y} = f(S_I, Tp, Ap)$$

Modifications for fusiform rust.--Previous worl Nance et al. (1981) detailed some of the effect fusiform rust associated mortality on the growth and development of plantations using set A. Th primary effect was to lower the number of surviv trees from that expected without disease. The general form of the survival function we develo in that work was:

$$\hat{T}_L = f(T_5, \hat{Ram}, Ap)$$

where: T_5 = number of surviving trees on the s at age 5
Ap = age of the plantation in years
Ram = the cumulative proportion of trees that died with a stem canker by ag

Note that Tp of equation 3 was replaced wit (the establishment density) and S_I was eliminat because it contributed little to the prediction T_L. Also note that this survival function is n useful in forecasting yields since Ram must be known at age Ap.

To make the survival function useful in forecasting yields, one must incorporate a predictor of Ram into the system that can be employed early in the life of the stand. This specified in the following functional form:

$$\widehat{Ram} = f(T_5,\ S_5,\ Ap) \qquad (6)$$

where: S_5 = the proportion of trees living with a stem canker at age 5

Substituting predicted Ram for actual Ram in equation 5 yields the following survival model form which we fit in this paper:

$$\hat{T}_L = f(T_5,\ S_5,\ Ap) \qquad (7)$$

This function allows the forecasting of yields for infected plantations using the following functional form:

$$\hat{Y} = f(S_I,\ T_5,\ S_5,\ Ap) \qquad (8)$$

The above strategy depends upon the assumption that current yield can be predicted by equation 1 regardless of rust history. This is verified in the next section.

MODELING RESULTS

In a previous work, it was found that current volumes at age 20 for all plots (regardless of rust history) in set A could be predicted accurately by the unmodified USLYCOWG system if observed H_D and T_L values at age 20 for each plot were input as arguments to equation 1 (Nance et al 1981). These results are shown in Table 1, along with the corresponding results for set B. From these, it is clear that the fundamental component of the USLYCOWG system need not be modified for fusiform rust. Each of the data sets involves a wide range of rust histories, but volumes and diameters are predicted essentially as well as the data set used to validate the original model.

Table 1.--Comparison of observed and predicted volumes and quadratic mean diameters for two data sets using known H_D and T_L values at age 17 or 20 as input to USLYCOWG.

DATA BASE	AGE	NO. PLOTS	VARIABLE PREDICTED	r [1]	BIAS [2]
	yrs.				%
SET A	20	187	VOLUME [3]	0.91	2.18
	20	187	QMDBH [4]	0.90	1.33
SET B	17	281	VOLUME	0.98	4.12
	17	281	QMDBH	0.91	4.45

[1] r denotes the simple correlation between observed and predicted values of the response variable.

[2] BIAS % = ((predicted - observed)/observed) x 100

[3] Volume = 0.0339 + 0.0026(d.b.h.^{2} x HEIGHT) for all trees (Moehring et al 1973).

[4] QMDBH = quadratic mean d.b.h., or the d.b.h. of the tree with average basal area.

Now consider the case when survival must be predicted. We found in the present study that the following specific equations specify the concepts depicted by equations 5 and 7:

$$\hat{T}_L = [T_5^{\,-B_1[Ap-5]+1}]\ [\ (1-Ram)^{-B_2[Ap-5]}\ ] \qquad (9)$$

and

$$\hat{T}_L = [T_5^{\,-B_1[Ap-5]+1}]\ [\ (1-S_5)^{-B_2[Ap-5]}\ ] \qquad (10)$$

where B_1 and B_2 in both equations are coefficients to be estimated.

The values of B_1 and B_2 for both survival models for these data were estimated by linear regression after logarithmic transformation of the above equations, and they appear in Table 2. Both models generate predicted survivals that match well with the observed values for both data sets. As one would expect, the Ram model fits better than the S_5 model.

We incorporated these new survival functions (equations 9 and 10 using the the overall coefficients) into USLYCOWG along with several programming modifications designed to make the program interactive and easy to use. The new program may be used free of charge via commercial telephone access to the Forest Service computer at Gulfport, Mississippi.

The modified USLYCOWG program was executed several thousand times in the process of generating stand tables for rust infected slash pine plantations, and the yields for a range of densities and S_5 rust levels for three diverse site indexes are given in Table 3.

APPLICATIONS

Table 3 gives a broad perspective of how various combinations of the four input variables (S_I, T_5, S_5, and Ap) interrelate to affect expected numbers of surviving trees and their cubic foot yields. Using values from this table, several concepts are exposed that need to be considered in arriving at disease management schemes for fusiform rust infected plantations of slash pine.

Pre-establishment management alternatives.--When considering the establishment of slash pine plantations in areas where fusiform rust infection

Table 2.--Comparison of observed and predicted survival using Ram and S_5 for all measurement ages.

Model	Data Base	Observations [1]	B_1	B_2	r [2]	Bias [3]	Std. Error [4]
		No.				%	
Ram [5]	A	561	0.0017870	-0.0986730	0.79	0.01	110
	B	1124	0.0007555	-0.0922850	0.99	-1.40	26
	A+B	1685	0.0014976	-0.0884408	0.97	0.90	69
S_5 [6]	A	561	0.0031113	-0.1038100	0.71	-0.10	125
	B	1124	0.0010951	-0.0841180	0.99	-2.60	38
	A+B	1685	0.0025306	-0.0712972	0.96	-0.50	84

---

[1] For set A, based on measurements at ages 10, 15, and 20 for 187 plots, and for set B based on ages 8, 11, 14, and 17 for 281 plots.

[2] r = simple correlation between observed and predicted number of surviving trees per acre.

[3] Bias = $\frac{\text{(predicted survival - observed survival)}}{\text{observed survival}} \times 100$

[4] Std. Error = standard deviation of (observed - predicted) survival in trees per acre (T/A) units.

[5] Ram = the cumulative proportion of trees living at age 5 that subsequently died with a stem canker.

[6] S_5 = the proportion of trees living at age 5 with a stem canker.

Table 3.--A yield table from the modified USLYCOWG system showing the effects of site index, establishment density, and percent of fusiform rust stem infections at age 5 on predicted density and volume at ages 15 and 20.

Established Stand		Projected Plantation Age							
		15				20			
T_5 1/	S_5 2/	$\hat{T}_L$ 3/	Site Index 4/			$\hat{T}_L$	Site Index		
			40	60	80		40	60	80
	%		---ft^3/acre---- 5/				---ft^3/acre----		
	0	344	329	1064	2165	319	570	1639	3119
	20	293	323	994	1986	251	516	1449	2715
400	40	239	311	902	1758	185	462	1217	2210
	60	179	275	777	1436	120	375	908	1670
	80	109	232	585	1076	57	249	569	967
	0	675	323	1380	3056	621	689	2252	4358
	20	576	328	1335	2866	489	651	2000	3870
800	40	469	338	1232	2590	359	589	1732	3339
	60	351	334	1072	2178	233	498	1379	2586
	80	214	279	863	1645	111	358	884	1547
	0	1003	295	1462	3497	917	769	2605	5240
	20	855	310	1438	3339	722	715	2362	4682
1200	40	697	321	1392	3100	531	670	2090	3965
	60	522	335	1297	2740	344	584	1702	3264
	80	318	326	1029	2083	164	431	1102	2054

1/ T_5 = number of living trees at age 5.

2/ S_5 = proportion of living trees at age 5 with a stem canker.

3/ $\hat{T}_L$ = living trees per acre at the indicated age.

4/ base age 25 years.

5/ Cubic feet per acre volume of all trees greater than 4.5 in. d.b.h. to a 3 in. outside bark top, with a 0.5 ft. stump height (Dell *et al* 1979).

is common, the manager can manipulate T_5 and/or S_5 in order to reduce the impact of fusiform rust on future yields. Increasing the number of planted trees per acre, or any other activity that would raise T_5, would tend to compensate for the additional mortality expected in the presence of rust. A second alternative would be to lower S_5 primarily through the use of genetically resistant planting stock, but perhaps also through oak eradication, pruning, or the application of fungicides. The dual approach of increasing T_5 and lowering S_5 at the same time is a third, and perhaps more desirable, alternative. Table 4 details some opportunities for increasing yields in plantations with site indexes of 60 and 80 for all three alternatives.

Table 4 shows that disease management strategies designed around the adjustment of T_5 alone would appear to be most viable in low to medium (less than 40 percent S_5) rust hazard areas. For example, for plantations with site index 80 where S_5 equals 80 percent, the potential yield gain through 20 years from raising T_5 from 400 to 800 trees per acre is only 580 cubic feet per acre. However, the potential yield gain from raising T_5 from 400 to 800 trees per acre with 40 percent S_5 on the same site is 1,129 cubic feet per acre. In high hazard areas, it may be impractical to establish more trees per acre because most of them will become infected and subsequently die.

Disease management strategies for high hazard areas must involve lowering S_5, either alone or in concert with increasing T_5. Whenever S_5 is lowered without increasing T_5, the potential for yield gain is higher on the more hazardous sites. For example, lowering S_5 from 40 to 0 where the site index is 80, with T_5 equal to 400 trees per acre, results in a yield gain of only 909 cubic feet per acre compared to a potential gain of 1,243 cubic feet per acre when S_5 is lowered from 80 to 40 percent on the same site with the same T_5. This differential effect is brought about by the fact that the relative contribution of an individual tree to stand yield increases as density decreases.

The combined strategy of increasing T_5 and lowering S_5 offers the highest possible yield gain, especially on the better sites. For example, in plantations with site index of 40, with T_5 equal to 400 trees per acre and S_5 equal to 80 percent, expected yield per acre at age 20 is 249 cubic feet per acre. Increasing T_5 to 1,200 and lowering S_5 to zero results in an expected yield of 769 cubic feet per acre --a gain of only 520 cubic feet per acre. This is in sharp contrast to the potential gains of 2,036 (2,605-569) and 4,273 (5,240-967) cubic feet per acre for the same adjustments to T_5 and S_5 in plantations with site indexes of 60 and 80 respectively. In terms of absolute gains, site index has an overwhelming effect on potential gain. Expressed in terms of percentage gains, the three examples above result in 209, 358, and 442 percent gains where site indexes are 40, 60, and 80, respectively. These comparisons demonstrate that the greatest gains can be made by concentrating control efforts on the better sites in the hig rust hazard areas. This may be particularly important in cases where resistant planting st is in short supply.

Post-establishment management alternatives--On plantation is established and the realized T_5 S_5 values are known, they can be used, along w the estimated site index of the planting site, forecast yields. Depending on the managers objectives, the projected stand may or may not some minimum expectation. If not, the manager elect to replant the site, possibly with a different choice of planting stock and/or numb planted trees per acre. If the projected stan meets the minimum expectation, the manager may elect to continue managing the stand to some critical age at which other management decisio are made--such as whether or not to clearcut o thin the stand.

Consider the following example. A manager desi to have 344 surviving trees per acre by age 15. Via the prediction system this requires a minim of 400 trees per acre be established on the sit age 5 (i.e., T_5 = 400) in a stand with S_5 = 0 (Table 3). If a plantation has less than 400 t per acre at age 5, then that plantation will be replanted. The rule is simple enough when ther no rust infection, but becomes more complicated the face of different levels of rust.

In fact, with S_5 values of 20, 40, 60, and per cent, minimum establishment densities (T_5 values) of 471, 582, 783, and 1,299 would be required to achieve a target density of 344 tre per acre at age 15 (by equation 10 and coeffici listed in Table 2). The manager's decision to replant a given plantation due to inadequate establishment density would be strongly affecte the level of rust infection.

Moreover, the manager may want to adjust hi minimum target density in the face of different levels of S_5, because stands that arrive at a se survival density at age 15 will differ markedly their future survival rates to age 20, dependin upon their rust history. This intrinsic liabili may require the manager to perform a thinning of rust infected trees or else incur future losses. This potential disease loss may alter the manage decision to continue the stand to the next decis period. For example, instead of the set target density at age 15, the manager may demand target densities for infected stands high enough so tha the residual stand after thinning has the same density as a non-infected stand in which a thinn of rust infected trees is not needed.

The level of thinning at age 15 that may be required in a plantation to harvest anticipated rust related mortality may be estimated by apply equation 10 to generate the expected future mortality for stands that reach a given target density with various levels of rust. For exampl

Table 4.--Opportunities for increasing cubic foot volume yields through age 20 by increasing T5, lowering S5, or both.

Base Stand			Expected Volume Increase By Adjusting T_5 and/or S_5 to:							
			T_5 = 800	1200	NC	NC	800	800	1200	1200
T_5	S_5	Volume	S_5 = NC[1]	NC	40	0	40	0	40	0
Site Index 60										
No.	%		ft^3/acre							
	0	1639	613	966	[2]					
400	40	1217	515	873		422		1035		1388
	80	569	315	533	648	1070	1163	1683	1521	2036
	0	2252		353						
800	40	1732		358		520				873
	80	884		218	848	1368			1206	1721
	0	2605								
1200	40	2090				515				
	80	1102			988	1503				
Site Index 80										
	0	3119	1239	2121						
400	40	2210	1129	1755		909		2148		3030
	80	967	580	1087	1243	2152	2372	3391	2998	4273
	0	4358		882						
800	40	3339		626		1019				1901
	80	1547		507	1792	2811			2418	3693
	0	5240								
1200	40	3965				1275				
	80	2054			1911	3186				

---

[1] NC = no change with respect to base stand

[2] blanks entries imply combinations that do not result in increases.

with $T_5 = 400$, $S_5 = 0$, and $Ap = 15$, equation 10 predicts 344 trees per acre surviving at age 15. Changing Ap to 20 predicts 319 trees surviving at age 20 --a mortality rate of 25 trees per acre (7 percent) between age 15 and 20. If one demands that all stands, regardless of their rust history, arrive at age 20 with the same density as the non-infected stand (319), then different minimum T_5 values would be required for different levels of rust, as detailed in Table 5.

Table 5.--Minimum establishment densities (T_5) required to reach the same target density at age 20 in stands with different levels of rust (S_5).

Minimum T_5 Required	With S_5 of	expected survival age 15	expected survival age 20	expected mortality 15-20
trees/acre	%	trees/acre		%
400	0	344	319	1/ 7
513	20	374	319	15
706	40	415	319	23
1109	60	483	319	34
2397	80	625	319	49

$$1/\ \text{column} = \frac{(\text{column 3} - \text{column 4})}{\text{column 3}} \times 100$$

Table 5 shows that the expected mortality rates in the 15 to 20 year period are directly related to the rust history of each stand, and unless the manager thins the infected stands at age 15, the volume on those trees that die between age 15 and 20 would be lost. Hence, a thinning of rust infected trees at the indicated rates might be advisable. Unfortunately, the prediction system is not refined enough to predict which individual trees should be thinned --only the general level of thinning that is required. Hopefully, those infected trees with a low probability of survival to age 20 could be determined with some degree of confidence by inspection of the stand at age 15.

SUMMARY

Fusiform rust was incorporated into an existing growth and yield model for unthinned slash pine plantations (USLYCOWG) by modifying the survival function to incorporate percentage of living trees with a stem infection at age 5 as a rust level parameter. The new model provides opportunities for assessing the combined effects of site quality, stand density, level of fusiform rust infection, and age on future yields of infected, unthinned slash pine plantations. The model can be used to assess various management alternatives designed to reduce the impact of fusiform rust future yields. The new model is now available the form of an easy to use computer program operating on Forest Service computers accessib via commercial telephone lines.

Our research in the future will focus on corresponding model developments for loblolly plantations. Early indications are that survi in loblolly is less affected by fusiform rust slash pine. Further refinements and extension that consider thinning, degrade, and yield projections to longer rotations are also being considered.

LITERATURE CITED

Dell, T. R., D. P. Feduccia, T. E. Campbell, W. Mann, Jr., and B. H. Polmer.
1979. Yields of unthinned slash pine plantations on cutover sites in the west G region. U.S. Dep. Agric. For. Serv. Res. SO-147, 84 p. South. For. Exp. Stn., New Orleans, La.

Farrar, R. M., Jr.
1973. Southern pine site index equations. J For. 71:696-697.

Moehring, D. M., M. R. Holmes and R. G. Merrifi
1973. Tables for estimating cubic foot volum and fresh weight of planted slash pine. MP-1079. Texas A&M Univ., College Station.

Nance, Warren L., Ronald C. Froelich and Eugene Shoulders.
1981. Effects of fusiform rust on survival a structure of Mississippi and Louisiana slas pine plantations. U.S. Dep. Agric. For. Ser Res. Pap. SO-172, 11 p. South. For. Exp. Stn., New Orleans, La.

Shoulders, E.
1976. Site characteristics influence relativ performance of loblolly and slash pine. U. Dep. Agric. For. Serv. Res. Pap. SO-115, 16 South. For. Exp. Stn., New Orleans, La.

Shoulders, E. and F. V. Walker.
1979. Soil, slope, and rainfall affect heigh and yield in 15-year-old southern pine plantations. U.S. Dep. Agric. For. Serv. R Pap. SO-153, 52 p. South. For. Exp. Stn., Orleans, La.

CROWN SIZE AND STAND DENSITY DETERMINE PERIODIC GROWTH IN LOBLOLLY PINE PLANTATIONS[1]

James D. Burton and Eugene Shoulders[2]

Abstract.--An old-field loblolly pine (*Pinus taeda* L.) plantation was thinned and pruned at ages 11 and 14 to several different basal areas and crown ratios (crown ratio = 100 crown length/ tree total height). Periodic growth at age 15-18, in d.b.h., basal area, and total stemwood volume were predicted by 2-variable regression equations involving expressions of crown size and stand density. Slant height of crown as a right circular cone was the best crown-size variable, and basal area was the best stand-density measure for predicting growth in volume and basal area. Number of trees and an index of crown surface as a cone were the best variables predicting d.b.h. growth. Use of crown surface index or slant height required measurement of both crown length and crown width. Crown ratio was nearly as effective as slant height in predicting volume and basal area growth and, if measurements are made from the ground, is obtained more accurately and cheaply. If crown size is to be measured by remote sensing, crown width may be the most accurate and cheapest measurement. Two-variable equations with (crown width)^2 and basal area predicted growth very effectively. Choice of crown-size variable depends on mensurational technique.

INTRODUCTION

Periodic growth in basal area, total stemwood volume, and quadratic mean d.b.h. in even-aged loblolly pine stands during the linear growth period depends on stand density and site quality, if all other factors remain the same. In thinned stands of uniform soil and site quality, and given different levels of green pruning, periodic growth can be expected to vary with stand density and mean crown size. Stand density is commonly expressed in terms of basal area or number of stems, or both. Crown size may be expressed in terms of length, width, length or width as a fraction of tree height, or their products. In this paper, we report the effects of selected stand-density and crown-size measurements on periodic growth in a loblolly pine plantation from age 15 to 18 years.

METHODS

The study was conducted in an old-field loblolly pine plantation near Monticello, Arkansas.[3] When the stand reached 11 years of age, 36 square 0.4-acre plots were laid out. Four levels of thinning and three levels of pruning were applied in all possible combinations and replicated three times; details are reported elsewhere (Burton 1981a). After three years the plots were thinned and pruned again to basal areas of 90, 70, 50, or 30 ft^2/acre and to crown ratios of 50, 39, or 25 percent. (Live crown ratios of 55, 40, and 25 percent were intended, but internode length and mortality of lower branches precluded their attainment.)

A salvage cutting 1 year later to remove glaze-damaged trees left residual basal areas on individual plots of 20 to 92 ft^2/acre. Crown ratios ranged from 23 to 53 percent. Heights of dominant and codominant trees averaged 46 feet.

---

[1] Paper presented at Second Biennial Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Soil Scientist and Principal Silviculturist, respectively, Southern Forest Experiment Station, Forest Service, USDA, Pineville, LA 71360.

[3] Land and technical assistance were provided by Crossett Division, Georgia-Pacific Corporation.

Inventories were made after the salvage at age 15 and at age 18 of a 0.1-acre square plot at the center of each 0.4-acre treatment plot. Stem diameter at 4.5 feet (D) was measured on every tree. Up to 12 sample trees per plot were selected for additional bole and crown measurements. They were distributed proportionately among diameter classes. On plots containing 12 or fewer trees, all were measured as sample trees (some plots contained as few as 4 trees after the age 15 cut). Upper stem diameter, height, and crown length (CL) were measured with a tripod-mounted, magnifying, optical dendrometer. Crown width (CW) was measured in two directions at right angles using a metallic tape and the optical plumb described by Shepperd (1973). Bole volume and basal area of each sample were obtained by the height accumulation method (Lohrey and Dell 1969). The summary program computed stand volume/acre for each plot as the product of (mean volume/basal area ratio of sample trees) and (plot basal area/acre).

Because basal areas on individual plots were influenced by the amount of glaze damage (Burton 1981b), multiple regression analyses were used to determine the effects of stand density and crown parameters on volume, basal area, and diameter growth for the age 15-18 period. Dependent variables were:

ΔV = growth in total stemwood volume, inside bark, to the base of the apical bud, ft^3/acre

ΔBA = growth in basal area, ft^2/acre

ΔD = growth in quadratic mean d.b.h., inches

Primary independent variables included:

1. Basal area (BA) at beginning of period, ft^2/acre
2. Trees/acre (T) at beginning of period, number
3. Slant height (SH) of crowns of sample trees = $\sqrt{(CL)^2 + (0.5\ CW)^2}$, feet
4. CW x SH = an index of crown surface (CS) area as a right circular cone, feet^2
5. $(CW)^2$ = an index of crown projection area, feet^2
6. $(CW)^2$ x SH = an index of crown volume (CV), feet^3
7. Crown ratio (CR) = (100 CL)/(total height), percent

Equations with 1, 2, or 3 independent variables were computed, together with their coefficients of determination (R^2), standard errors of estimate (SE est), and relative mean squared residuals (RMSQR). Grosenbaugh's (1967) procedure was used with some constraints. Not all possible combinations of independent variables were of concern. In 2-variable regressions, one variable was a stand-density expression, either BA or T, and the second independent variable wa crown-size expression, either SH, CS $(CW)^2$, CV, CR. In 3-variable regressions, the third indep dent variable was the product of the first and second independent variables. Regressions sele as best, on the basis of minimum RMSQR were gen ated only by the foregoing combinatorial rules were required to be biologically plausible.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

In single-variable regressions, basal are was the best independent variable predicting vol growth and basal area growth; number of trees wa next (Table 1). Crown width squared was the bes predictor of d.b.h. growth; crown volume index a crown surface index did almost as well; all the crown-size variables were much more effective th either of the stand-density variables. Standard errors ranged from 80 to 190 ft^3/acre of volume, 3 to 6 ft^2/acre of basal area, and .21 to .36 in of d.b.h.

Table 1.--Goodness of fit statistics for single-variable equations predicting period growth in stand volume, basal area, and quadratic mean d.b.h.

Y	X	R^2	SE est.[1]	RMSQR
ΔV	BA	0.8279	80.35	.1771
	T	.7192	102.63	.2890
	SH	.2023	172.99	.8212
	CS	.0944	184.32	.9322
	$(CW)^2$	.0361	190.16	.9923
	CV	.0375	190.02	.9908
	CR	.3646	154.39	.6541
ΔBA	BA	.7838	2.90	.2226
	T	.6237	3.83	.3873
	SH	.3409	5.06	.6785
	CS	.2063	5.56	.8171
	$(CW)^2$	.1147	5.87	.9111
	CV	.1172	5.86	.9088
	CR	.5273	4.29	.4866
ΔD	BA	.1201	.36	.9058
	T	.2457	.33	.7765
	SH	.5527	.26	.4605
	CS	.6741	.22	.3355
	$(CW)^2$	.7096	.21	.2990
	CV	.6878	.22	.3214
	CR	.2666	.33	.7550

---

[1] $\sqrt{\text{residual mean square}}$

The best 2-variable equation predicting vol growth involved basal area and crown slant heigh its RMSQR was only .1201 (Table 2). Number of trees was nearly as good as basal area in multip regressions. All the 2-variable equations teste accounted for at least 83 percent of the variati

periodic volume growth. The standard errors
d the RMSQRs of the 3-variable regressions
re not much smaller than those of the corres-
nding 2-variable equations; in some instances
ey were larger. Interaction contributed little
the prediction effectiveness.

The best 2-variable equation predicting
sal area growth involved basal area and slant
ight (Table 3); the second best involved basal
ea and crown surface index. No 2-variable
gression had an RMSQR greater than .1661, a standard error greater than 2.51, or accounted for less than 84 percent of the variation in basal area growth. The 3-variable regressions were no real improvement over the 2-variable.

The best 2-variable equation predicting d.b.h. growth involved number of trees and crown surface index (Table 4); the second best involved basal area and crown surface index; they accounted for 87 and 86 percent of the variation, respectively.

Table 2.--Goodness of fit statistics for 2-variable and 3-variable equations predicting periodic volume growth

Independent variables[1]	2-variable equations			3-variable equations		
	R^2	SE est[2]	RMSQR	R^2	SE est[2]	RMSQR
BA and SH	.8867	66.17	.1201	.8885	66.67	.1220
CS	.8769	68.98	.1306	.8850	67.70	.1258
$(CW)^2$	.8652	72.19	.1430	.8749	70.60	.1368
CV	.8660	71.97	.1421	.8813	68.77	.1298
CR	.8712	70.56	.1366	.8728	71.21	.1391
T and SH	.8752	69.46	.1324	.8793	69.37	.1320
CS	.8548	74.91	.1540	.8786	69.56	.1328
$(CW)^2$	.8339	80.13	.1762	.8679	72.56	.1445
CV	.8264	81.92	.1841	.8735	71.00	.1383
CR	.8288	81.35	.1816	.8312	82.03	.1846

---

[1] In 3-variable regressions the 3d variable was the product of the stand-density and the crown-size variables, i.e., an interaction term.

[2] $\sqrt{\text{residual mean square}}$

Table 3.--Goodness of fit statistics for 2-variable and 3-variable equations predicting periodic basal area growth

Independent variables[1]	2-variable equations			3-variable equations		
	R^2	SE est[2]	RMSQR	R^2	SE est[2]	RMSQR
BA and SH	.9331	1.64	.0709	.9332	1.66	.0730
CS	.9215	1.77	.0832	.9287	1.72	.0780
$(CW)^2$	.9005	2.00	.1055	.9125	1.90	.0957
CV	.9019	1.98	.1041	.9207	1.81	.0867
CR	.9124	1.87	.0929	.9177	1.84	.0900
T and SH	.9080	1.90	.0976	.9088	1.94	.0998
CS	.8852	2.15	.1218	.9068	1.96	.1020
$(CW)^2$	.8537	2.42	.1152	.8913	2.12	.1189
CV	.8433	2.51	.1661	.8970	2.06	.1126
CR	.8569	2.40	.1518	.8634	2.38	.1494

---

[1] In 3-variable regressions the 3d variable was the product of the stand-density and the crown-size variables, i.e., an interaction term

[2] $\sqrt{\text{residual mean square}}$

Table 4.--Goodness of fit statistics for 2-variable and 3-variable equations predicting periodic growth in quadratic mean d.b.h.

Independent variables[1]		2-variable equations R^2	SE est[2]	RMSQR	3-variable equations R^2	SE est[2]	RMSQR
BA and	SH	.8405	.1561	.1691	.8735	.1412	.1384
	CS	.8565	.1481	.1522	.8618	.1474	.1511
	$(CW)^2$	.8277	.1622	.1827	.8280	.1646	.1881
	CV	.8071	.1717	.2046	.8079	.1740	.2101
	CR	.7002	.2140	.3180	.7591	.1948	.2635
T and	SH	.8502	.1512	.1586	.8769	.1392	.1346
	CS	.8665	.1428	.1416	.8715	.1423	.1405
	$(CW)^2$	.8378	.1574	.1720	.8388	.1594	.1764
	CV	.8271	.1624	.1834	.8280	.1646	.1881
	CR	.7828	.1822	.2304	.8109	.1726	.2068

[1] In 3-variable regressions the 3d variable was the product of the stand-density and the crown-size variables, i.e., an interaction term.

[2] $\sqrt{\text{residual mean square}}$

Crown surface index was the second best crown-size variable to include with basal area in 2-variable regressions for predicting volume growth and basal area growth. However, slant height is a prerequisite to calculating crown surface (as we did in this study), and unless crown surface or crown volume offers a markedly smaller RMSQR than slant height, there is no advantage in the computation.

If crown size is to be measured by remote sensing, crown width may be the cheapest and most accurate crown-size measurement. Two-variable equations with $(CW)^2$ and basal area resulted in small RMSQRs in this study and accounted for 83 to 90 percent of the variation in periodic volume, basal area, and diameter growth. Equations for predicting growth from these parameters are:

$$\Delta V = 15.48 + .341(CW)^2 + 9.17\ BA$$

$$\Delta BA = -.922 + .0194(CW)^2 + .287\ BA$$

$$\Delta D = 1.187 + .00295(CW)^2 - .00688\ BA$$

NOTE: Goodness of fit statistics are given in tables 2 through 4.

When tree measurements are to be made by people on the ground with existing technology, crown length can be measured more accurately and more cheaply than crown width. Depending on the mensurational technique available, some measurements can be better bargains than others, and this will affect the choice of regressions. In this study, both slant height and crown surface index, in regressions with basal area, resulted in only slightly smaller RMSQRs than did crown ratio; CR was obtained more cheaply.

The best 2-variable equation involving crown ratio and predicting total stemwood volume growth was:

$$\Delta V = -29.04 + 4.56\ CR + 8.07\ BA$$

Solving this equation for crown ratios of 37.5, and 50 percent, for basal areas of 25 through 90 ft^2/acre, and converting periodic to annual growth, we obtain the values in table 5. Consider a thinned and pruned loblolly pine plantation with a mean CR = 37.5 percent and a BA = 50 ft^2/acre, on a site similar to this one. The periodic annual volume growth from age 15 18 should be 182 ft^3/acre.

Table 5.--Predicted periodic annual growth, age 15-18, in total stemwood inside bark in thinn and pruned loblolly pine plantations, given various basal areas and crown ratios

Beginning basal area	Crown ratio 25	37.5	50
		Ft^3/acre	
25	96	115	134
30	109	128	147
40	136	155	174
50	163	182	201
60	190	209	228
70	217	236	255
75	230	249	268
80	244	263	282
90	270	289	308

The best 2-variable equation involving cro ratio and predicting basal area growth was:

$$\Delta BA = 3.28 + .253\ CR + .227\ BA$$

Solving this equation for the same crown ratios and basal areas, Table 6 is obtained. O hypothetical plantation should have a periodic annual BA growth = 5.8 ft^2/acre.

The 2-variable equation for d.b.h. growth involving basal area and crown ratio was:

$$\Delta D = .970 + .033\ CR - .015\ BA$$

Solving this equation for the same crown ratios and basal areas, Table 7 is obtained.

Table 6.--Predicted periodic annual growth, age 15-18, in basal area in thinned and pruned loblolly pine plantations, given various basal areas and crown ratios

Beginning basal area	Crown ratio 25	37.5	50
Ft^2/acre		Ft^2/acre	
25	2.9	4.0	5.0
30	3.3	4.3	5.4
40	4.0	5.1	6.1
50	4.8	5.8	6.9
60	5.6	6.6	7.7
70	6.3	7.4	8.4
75	6.7	7.7	8.8
80	7.1	8.1	9.2
90	7.8	8.9	9.9

Table 7.--Predicted periodic annual growth, age 15-18, in quadratic mean d.b.h. in thinned and pruned loblolly pine plantations, given various basal areas and crown ratios

Beginning basal area	Crown ratio 25	37.5	50
Ft^2/acre		Inches	
25	0.47	0.61	0.75
30	.45	.59	.72
40	.40	.54	.67
50	.35	.49	.62
60	.30	.44	.57
70	.25	.39	.52
75	.18	.36	.50
80	.20	.34	.47
90	.15	.29	.42

For comparable stand densities and crown ratios, both volume and basal area growth were less at 15 to 18 years than at 11 to 14 years (Burton 1981a). This trend reflects the normal decline in growth rate with age and suggests that periodic annual increment had culminated on this site before age 18.

The effects of density and crown parameters on basal area and volume growth were more pronounced at ages 15 to 18 than at ages 11 to 14. Differences in basal areas retained on the plots at ages 11 and 15 and in post-pruning live crown ratios at the two ages undoubtedly contributed to these changes. The heaviest thinning at age 11 left a residual basal area of 40 ft^2/acre, whereas the salvage cutting at age 15 reduced basal area on some plots to 20 ft^2/acre. Heaviest stocked plots contained 100 ft^2/acre of basal area after thinning at age 11 and 92 ft^2/acre after the salvage at age 15. Crown ratio at age 11 ranged from 37 to 52 percent of total height and at age 15 from 23 to 53 percent.

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

These results reconfirm the fact that both stand density and crown size affect growth of young loblolly pine plantations. Moreover, they indicate no significant interaction between density and crown size in their effects on tree and stand growth.

Two-variable regressions containing residual basal area and crown ratio as independent variables were satisfactory for predicting periodic diameter, basal area, and volume growth of a young loblolly pine plantation in south Arkansas that was thinned to basal areas of 20 to 92 ft^2/acre and pruned to create crown ratios of 23 to 53 percent.

LITERATURE CITED

Burton, James D.
1981a. Some short-term effects of thinning and pruning in young loblolly pine plantations. P. 111-114. In: James P. Barnett, ed., Proc. First Biennial South. Silv. Res. Conf., Atlanta, GA, Nov. 6-7, 1980. vii + 375 p.

Burton, James D.
1981b. Thinning and pruning influence glaze damage in a loblolly pine plantation. U.S. Dept. Agric. Forest Service Res. Note SO-264. Southern Forest Experiment Station, New Orleans, LA. 4 p.

Grosenbaugh, L. R.
1967. REX-FORTRAN-4 system for combinatorial screening or conventional analysis of multivariate regressions. U.S. Dept. Agric. Forest Service Research Paper PSW-44. Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Berkeley, CA. 47 p.

Lohrey, R. E. and T. R. Dell.
1969. Computer programs using height accumulation for tree volumes and plot summaries. J. Forestry 67: 554-555.

Shepperd, Wayne D.
1973. An instrument for measuring tree crown width. U.S. Dept. Agric. Forest Service Research Note RM-229. Rocky Mountain Forest and Range Experiment Station, Ft. Collins, CO. 3 p.

GROWTH AND DEVELOPMENT OF A 20-YEAR-OLD UNTHINNED SPRUCE PINE PLANTATION[1]

John R. Toliver and James E. Hotvedt[2]

Abstract.--Spruce pine seedlings were planted on an old-field site in southeastern Louisiana. At age 20 years, survival was 67%, number of trees per acre was 1170, the average diameter of the trees was 5.05 inches, and the average height was 43 feet. In comparison, naturally seeded loblolly pine trees in the stand and of the same age had an average diameter of 6.92 inches and an average height of 48 feet.

INTRODUCTION

Although spruce pine (Pinus glabra Walt.) grows throughout the Coastal Plain from South Carolina to Florida and Louisiana (Dorman 1976), it is found mainly in southern Alabama and Mississippi, and southeastern Louisiana (Sternitzke and Nelson 1970). Spruce pine usually occurs as a single tree or as a small group of trees in association with loblolly pine (P. taeda L.) and hardwoods in the second bottoms and the moist fringes surrounding longleaf pine (P. palustris Mill.)(Walker 1980). These sites often consist of sandy loam soils intermediate between dry sandy soils and alluvial bottomland soils (Koch 1972).

Spruce pine is the most tolerant southern pine species, but only moderately intolerant by hardwood standards (Putnam et al. 1960). It is the most effective of the southern pine species in competing with ground cover and hardwood reproduction.

Growth rates of spruce pine are considered good to excellent (Putnam et al. 1960). Mature trees may grow to diameters of 2 or 3 feet and to heights of 100 feet or more (Koch 1972). Although large trees of spruce pine can have good form and clear boles, young trees are often crooked and limby. These characteristics probably result from the shade tolerance of the species. It is rarely found in pure stands large enough to warrant commercial management and harvesting of the species by itself, and it has been planted very little commercially, to our knowledge, except for Christmas tree production. Harvested trees are usually mixed with other species of southern pines and hardwoods for pulp and paper products. Indeed, pulping characteristics and yields obtained are very similar to those of the more common southern pines (Koch et al. 1958). Specific gravity of the wood is usually lower, however, averaging 0.43 (Koch 1972). Spruce pine may be harvested for sawtimber to a limited extent, although it is not a preferred species for veneer.

Spruce pine has been planted on a small scale in South Carolina (Dorman 1976) and a few scattered plantations possibly exist throughout the South. Nevertheless, very little information exists on the growth and development of the species. The purpose of this paper is to discuss the growth and development of a 20-year-old unthinned plantation of spruce pine located in southeastern Louisiana.

METHODS

Description of the Plantation

The spruce pine plantation is located on a coastal plain site in East Feliciana Parish, near Clinton, Louisiana. Underlying soils include two major types: Lexington silt loam, a well drained moderately permeable soil and Providence silt loam, a moderately well drained slowly permeable soil. Average annual rainfall for the area is 62 inches.

The spruce pine trees were planted on an old-field site, approximately 2 acres in size, in early spring of 1958. According to A.B. Crow (personal communication), the field was burned and 1-0 bareroot seedlings were planted on a 5x5 foot spacing. The plantation was initially established for Christmas tree production. However, no cultural work, thinnings, or harvests were done after the trees were planted and the trees were essentially left to grow as an unmanaged old-field plantation. In the fall of 1977, and before the stand was to be thinned, the opportunity existed to measure the closely spaced spruce pine trees at age 20 and to analyze their growth and development. Also growing within the stand were 221 loblolly pine trees of approximately the same age (based on increment cores). It is assumed their origin was from windblown seed which germinated shortly after the plantation was established.

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Associate and Assistant Professors of Forestry, respectively, School of Forestry and Wildlife Management, Louisiana State University, Baton Rouge, Louisiana 70803.

Measurements

Survival was determined by first choosing a random sample of 15 rows of trees. Then, in each row the number of live spruce pine trees present out of 20 spots that should have been planted was determined and the percent survival calculated.

The diameter (4.5 feet above ground) of all live standing trees was measured to the nearest tenth of an inch with a standard diameter tape. The total height of every tenth tree was measured to the nearest foot with a Suunto clinometer. Additional measurements taken on every twentieth tree included: (a) height in feet to the first live limb, (b) age based on a count of growth rings in an increment core, (c) increment measurement of the last 5 growth rings, and (d) increment measurement of the last 10 growth rings. Similar measurements were taken on the loblolly pine trees for use in comparing the growth of the two species.

All border trees were eliminated from the data sets for statistical purposes.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Survival of the spruce pine trees in the 20-year-old plantation was 67 percent, or approximately 1170 live spruce pine stems per acre. In addition, there were another 110 loblolly pine stems per acre scattered throughout the stand.

The average diameter (dbh) at age 20 of the spruce pine trees was 5.05 inches (ranging from 1.50 to 12.30 inches). Two-thirds of the trees were less than 6 inches in diameter (Figure 1.). While this still left over 400 trees/acre that were 6 inches dbh or greater, only six percent of the total number of trees were greater than 8 inches in diameter. Assuming 67% survival, the basal area was calculated to be 178 square feet/acre.

In comparison, the average diameter of the loblolly pine trees was 6.92 inches (ranging from 2.90 to 14.40 inches). Thirty-six percent of these trees were greater than 8 inches in diameter and only 30 percent were less than 6 inches.

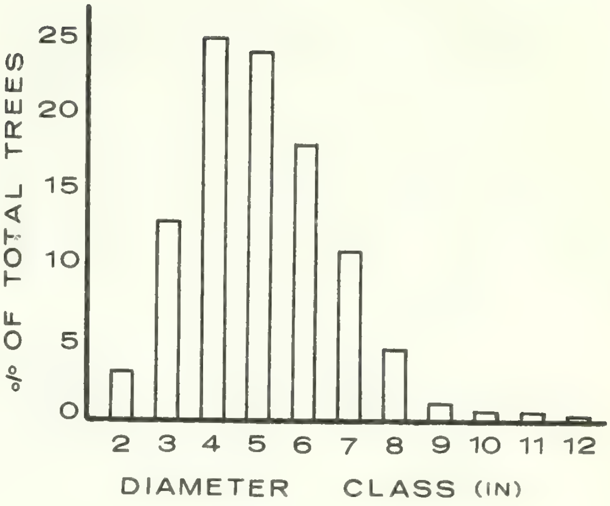


Figure 1. Diameter distribution of 20-year-old plantation-grown spruce pine trees (5x5 ft. spacing)

Average diameter growth of the spruce pine trees over the first 10 years was 4.03 inches, or 0.40 inches per year (calculated from Table 1.) Average diameter growth from ages 10 to 15 years was 0.67, or 0.13 inches per year--an annual growth rate of 32 percent that of the annual growth rate during the first 10 years. During the last 5 years (ages 15-20 years) the growth declined further to an annual rate of 0.07 inches per year or only 18 percent of the annual growth rate during the first 10 years. It is apparent that the stand should have been thinned at age 10, and definitely by age 15 years, if sawtimber was the intended product.

The average annual diameter growth for the last 10 years was greater for the trees in diameter classes above 6 inches. However, the mean percentage growth rates for the last ten years by diameter class were about equal, ranging from 19-25%. It is assumed that thinning would have increased the growth rates of the remaining trees.

The mean height of those spruce pine trees measured for height was 43 feet (ranging from 23 to 53 feet). The majority (60%) of these trees, however, ranged in height from 42 to 52 feet tall (Figure 2). It appears that some spruce pine trees will exert dominance and maintain relatively good growth, as the taller trees were also in the larger diameter classes. This site (loblolly pine SI 90) is not an exceptional site for spruce pine growth. In natural stands in Louisiana it grows better on more moist sites where loblolly pine site index may be 110 or greater.

The loblolly pine trees averaged 48 feet in height (ranging from 32 to 59 feet). Site index based on the taller loblolly trees was calculated to be 90 (50-year site index curve).

Table 1. Stand data by diameter classes for 20-year-old plantation-grown spruce pine trees (5x5 foot spacing, 2.0 acres).

Diameter Class (in.)	No. Trees	GR5[1] (in.)	GR10[2] (in.)	Ht. (ft.)	DLL[3] (ft.)
2	61	.18(4)[4]	.62(4)	34(7)	29(4)
3	268	.22(15)	.77(15)	34(23)	31(13)
4	503	.28(31)	.88(31)	41(47)	32(29)
5	482	.34(24)	.98(24)	44(44)	33(18)
6	354	.43(21)	1.17(21)	45(36)	31(15)
7	222	.49(16)	1.34(16)	47(24)	32(15)
8	88	.70(5)	1.68(5)	47(10)	28(3)
9	22	1.00(1)	2.00(1)	47(1)	----
10	5	.80(1)	2.00(1)	52(1)	35(1)
11	4	--	--	--	--
12	1	--	--	--	--

[1] increment growth from age 15-20 years
[2] increment growth from age 10-20 years
[3] height to first live limb
[4] number of trees sampled

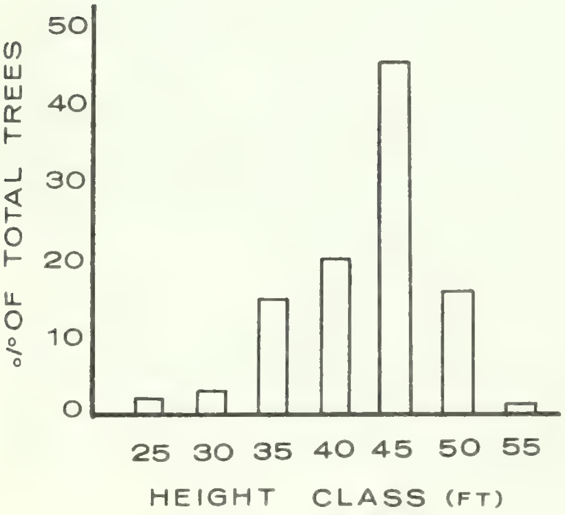


Figure 2. Height-distribution of 20-year-old plantation grown spruce pine trees (5x5 ft. spacing).

Natural pruning of the spruce pine trees was poor relative to the loblolly. Although height to the first live limb averaged 31 feet, many dead limbs persisted on the trees and very few trees had a clear 16-foot log. The high stem density should improve natural pruning so it is assumed that wider spacing than 5x5 feet would decrease stem quality. Poor natural pruning can be attributed to the shade tolerance of spruce pine. Although measurements related to stem form were not taken, many of the smaller trees were crooked and of poor quality. We would estimate that 10-15 percent of the trees were straight a of good form, particularly in the larger diamet classes.

CONCLUSIONS

Spruce pine can be successfully establish by planting seedlings on pine sites in the South Spacing as close as 5x5 feet may be too dens resulting in considerable decreases in grow after the first 10 years. Height growth did n appear to be affected by spacing howeve Although conventional spacings such as 6x8 or 8 feet would probably increase growth, the wid spacing could also contribute to poor natur pruning of spruce pine.

LITERATURE CITED

Dorman, Keith W.
1976. The genetics and breeding of southern pines. USDA For. Serv. Agric. Handb. 471. 407p.

Koch, Peter.
1972. Utilization of the southern pines. US For. Serv. Agric. Handb. 420. Vol. I. 734

Koch, R.O., J.E. Sapp, and R.L. McCray.
1958. Kraft pulping of spruce pine. TAPPI. 41:349-353.

Putnam, J.A., G.M. Furnival, and J.S. McKnight.
1960. Management and inventory of southern hardwoods. USDA For. Serv. Agric. Handb. 181. 102 p.

Sternitzke, H.S. and T.C. Nelson.
1970. The southern pines of the United States Economic Bot. 24(2):142-150.

Walker, L.C.
1980. The southern pine region. Pages 231-276. in J.W. Barrett, ed., Regional silviculture of the United States, 2nd ed. John Wiley and Sons, Inc. N.Y. 551 p.

COMPARING GROWTH AND YIELD BETWEEN 31-YEAR-OLD SLASH AND LOBLOLLY PINE PLANTATIONS[1]

Terry R. Clason and Quang V. Cao[2]

A growth comparison study between slash and loblolly pine was established at Homer, Louisiana in the winter of 1949. Treatment plantings included pure slash, pure loblolly, and alternating rows of slash and loblolly. At age 15 the pure slash and loblolly plantings were thinned to 300 TPA, while the mixed plantings were not thinned due to high slash pine mortality. Growth data has been collected on a periodic basis since 1956. In 1981, the study was harvested and felled tree data collected. After 31 years, slash and loblolly pine stand performance was comparable. Loblolly pine is the preferred species to plant in northwest Louisiana.

INTRODUCTION

Two species of pines have been planted in hwest Louisiana. Loblolly pine (Pinus a L.) is native to the region, while slash (Pinus elliottii Engelm.) is not. Slash 's natural range does not extend west of Mississippi River or more than 100 miles the Gulf of Mexico. Planting slash pine orth Louisiana will subject it to environ- al conditions different from those under h the species evolved. Thus, the suscep- lity of slash pine to damage from disease extreme climatic conditions as its range xtended northward is a major concern.

METHODS AND PROCEDURES

In 1950, a slash and loblolly pine growth arison study was established at Homer, siana. Both species were planted in pure ds and alternating row mixtures at a 6 x 8 ing on 0.5-acre plots with each treatment icated four times. Soil types were fine sandy loams of the Bowie, Luverne and Ruston series with a site index of 65 for loblolly pine at age 25.

After the 1964 growing season, stocking rate of all pure stands was reduced to 300 trees per acre (TPA). Stumps were sprinkled with Borateen for Fomes annossus control. Single-row mixtures were not thinned because slash pine mortality was very high. Except for periodic prescribed burns, no further silvicultural treatments were applied until the stands were harvested in January 1981.

Diameter and height were measured periodically from 1956 to 1980. Merchantable volume to a 3-inch top diameter was calculated using equations from Merrifield and Foil (1967).

Statistical analysis of the study was confounded in 1956 because high seedling mortality and intense brush competition necessitated the removal of two replications from the study. To provide a valid statistical test, three-0.1 acre measurement plots were established in each of the remaining 0.5 acre plots.

RESULTS

Stand Development Prior to Thinning

Mortality

Slash and loblolly mortality in pure and mixed stands had peaked by age 7 (Table 1). Seedling mortality varied considerably between

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern icultural Research Conference, Atlanta, gia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Associate Professor, North Louisiana Farm Experiment Station, Homer, LA 71040 Assistant Professor, School of Forestry Wildlife Management, L.S.U. Baton Rouge, 0803, Louisiana Agricultural Experiment ion.

Table 1. Pine stocking for pure and mixed stands of slash and loblolly pine from initial planting to stand age 15

	Planting	Stand age			
		7	10	13	15
	(Trees/Acre)				
Pure Stands					
Slash	908	616	611	601	504
Loblolly	908	755	750	738	655
Mixed Stands					
Slash	454	231	227	200	145
Loblolly	454	392	388	374	339

species with slash losses being greater. Slash mortality was 40.0 percent in pure stands and 49.1 percent in mixed stands, while loblolly had 16.8 and 13.6 percent. From age 7 to 13 mortality rate averaged 2.3 percent for both species in pure stands and 13.4 percent for slash and 4.6 percent for loblolly in mixed stands. Periodic mortality rate increased between ages 13 and 15. Subsequently, by age 15, slash and loblolly totaled 44.4 and 27.8 percent in pure stands and 66.1 and 25.3 percent in mixed stands.

Diameter Growth

Average diameters during the first 15 years of growth are presented in Table 2. Mean annual incremental diameter increases for ages 7, 10, 13 and 15 in pure slash and loblolly pine stands were similar. Mean annual increment (MAI) for both species peaked at age 10 when slash averaged 0.49 inches/year and loblolly 0.51 inches/year. During the next 5 years annual increment declined to 0.44 and 0.43 inches for slash and loblolly. In mixed stands, slash had a slower rate of increase averaging, at age 15, 0.34 inches/year, while loblolly had a faster rate, averaging 0.51 inches/year.

Height Growth

Slash and loblolly pine in pure stands averaged 45 and 46 feet in height at age 15 (Table 3). Average height growth for each species was the 29 feet from age 7 to 15. In mixed stands slash and loblolly height growth differed greatly. By age 15, slash pine averaged 41 feet in height and loblolly 47 feet. In addition, height growth between ages 7 and 15 averaged 27 and 30 feet for slash an loblolly, respectively.

Basal Area Growth

Pure stand basal area reached a maximum at age 15 for both slash and loblolly pine (Table 4). Mean annual basal area increments varied by species at ages 7, 10, 13, and 15. Although basal area growth of slash during the first 15 years was less than loblolly, the growth pattern of both species was similar. Maximum (MAI), 9.2 ft^2/acre for slash and 11.3 ft^2/acre for loblolly, was achieved by age 13. Mortality in both slash and loblolly stands between ages 13 and 15 resulted in a MAI at age 15 of 8.3 and 10.3 ft^2/acre for slash and loblolly, respectively. Basal area for slash pine in mixed stands totaled 22 ft^2/acre at ag 15 compared to a loblolly total of 114 ft^2.

Merchantable Volume Growth

Volume growth results were similar to basal area (Table 5). By age 15, pure slash had accumulated 1815 ft^3/acre with a MAI of 121 ft^3/acre and loblolly 2235 ft^3/acre with a MAI of 149 ft^3. Both species reached a maximum MAI, 133 ft^3 for slash and 153 ft^3 for loblolly, by age 13. Subsequent mortality attributed to a decline in MAI at age 15. After 15 years, volume growth of slash pine in mixed stands was inferior to loblolly producing only 225 ft^3/acre with a MAI of 15 ft^3/acre. Loblolly yielded 1779 ft^3/acre with a MAI of 118.6 ft^3/acre.

Table 2. Average DBH for pure and mixed stands of slash and loblolly pine from stand age 7 to 15

	Stand age			
	7	10	13	15
	(Inches)			
Pure Stands				
Slash	3.3	4.9	5.7	6.6
Loblolly	3.3	5.1	5.9	6.4
Mixed Stands				
Slash	2.8	3.8	4.2	5.1
Loblolly	3.8	5.8	6.8	7.7

Table 3. Average height for pure and mixed stands of slash and loblolly pine from to stand age 7 to 15

	Stand age			
	7	10	13	15
	(Feet)			
Pure Stands				
Slash	16	27	37	45
Loblolly	17	30	39	46
Mixed Stands				
Slash	14	25	32	41
Loblolly	17	29	39	47

Table 4. Basal area for pure and mixed stands of slash and loblolly pine from to stand age 7 to 15

	Stand age			
	7	10	13	15
	(Feet^2/Acre)			
Pure Stands				
Slash	37	86	120	125
Loblolly	47	109	147	154
Mixed Stands				
Slash	10	20	26	22
Loblolly	32	75	106	114

Table 5. Merchantable volume for pure and mixed stands of slash and loblolly pine from stand age 7 to 15

	Stand age			
	7	10	13	15
	(Feet^3/Acre)			
Pure Stands				
Slash	280	872	1600	1815
Loblolly	360	1160	2000	2235
Mixed Stands				
Slash	80	200	328	225
Loblolly	232	800	1464	1779

Table 6. Stand data for pure stands of slash and loblolly pine thinned at age 15

	Trees per acre	DBH	Height	Basal area per Acre	Volume per Acre
		(Inches)	(Feet)	(Feet^2)	(Feet^3)
Before thinning					
Slash	504	6.6	45	125.0	1815
Loblolly	655	6.4	46	153.7	2235
Removed in thinning					
Slash	203	6.2	44	44.7	621
Loblolly	359	5.9	45	71.7	982
After thinning					
Slash	301	6.9	46	80.3	1193
Loblolly	296	7.1	48	82.0	1253

Stand Development After Thinning

Thinning

Prior to the 1964 thinning pure slash and loblolly stands contained 1815 and 2235 ft^3/acre of merchantable volume (Table 6). Wood volumes removed during the thinning averaged 621 ft^3/acre for slash and 982 ft^3/acre for loblolly. Average stand diameter following thinning increased from 6.6 to 6.9 inches for slash and 6.4 to 7.1 inches for loblolly, and residual stand volumes were 1193 and 1253 ft^3/acre. Since the mixed stands were not thinned in 1964, further growth comparisons were discontinued.

Mortality

At age 31 mortality rate in the thinned slash and loblolly stands was 33.6 and 23.9 percent (Table 7). Following the thinning periodic mortality rate until age 24 was approximately 5 percent for both species. Between ages 24 and 27 slash stand experienced a periodic mortality rate of 17 percent, while loblolly had only 4 percent. Subsequently, both species had a mortality rate of 16 percent for the 27 to 31 year growth period.

Table 7. Pine stocking for pure stands of slash and loblolly pines from thinning at stand age 15 to age 31

	Stand age				
	15	21	24	27	31
	Trees/Acre				
Slash	301	291	286	237	200
Loblolly	296	283	278	267	225

Table 8. Average DBH for pure stands of slash and loblolly pine from thinning at stand age 15 to age 31

	Stand age				
	15	21	24	27	31
	Inches				
Slash	6.9	8.0	8.8	9.4	9.9
Loblolly	7.1	8.1	8.7	9.3	9.8

Diameter Growth

Average diameter increase during the 16 years after thinning favored slash pine (Table 8). The mean annual incremental diameter increase for slash and loblolly pine was 0.186 and 0.169 inches. Through age 24 slash pine diameter increased at an annual rate of 0.211 inches, while loblolly increased by 0.177 inches. Although the slash stands had 62 percent more mortality than loblolly between ages 24 and 31, annual diameter increase for both species was 0.157 inches.

Height Growth

From age 15 to 21 slash pine height growth averaged 2.83 ft/year which was 0.7 feet greater than loblolly (Table 9). An ice storm at age 24 reduced periodic annual growth between ages 21 and 24 to 1 foot for each species. In the succeeding three years (ages 24 to 27) slash and loblolly stands averaged 3 ft/year. Average height in the slash stand declined by 1 foot from age 27 to 31, while loblolly increased by 3 feet. By age 31, height in both stands averaged 74 feet.

Basal Area Growth

By age 31, basal area in the slash and loblolly stands had increased by 30.6 and 39.9 ft^2/acre, respectively (Table 10). Nine years after thinning, through age 24, slash pine basal area growth exceeded loblolly by 6 ft^2/acre, averaging 4.77 ft^2/acre annually. High slash mortality between ages 24 and 27 resulted in a 5 ft^2/acre basal area reduction. During the same period loblolly basal area increased by 11 ft^2/acre. From age 27 to 31, both species experienced an 8 ft^2/acre decline in basal area.

Merchantable Volume Growth

Since the 1964 thinning, slash and loblolly stands have produced 1896 and 2103 ft^3/acre of merchantable volume, respectively (Table 11). Slash pine exhibited an early, rapid response to thinning. From age 15 to 24, slash pine volume growth exceeded loblolly by 176 ft^3/acre. Slash MAI during this period surpassed loblolly by 19.6 ft^3. Slash pine mortality, between ages 24 and 27, reduced volume growth for the period to 60 percent of the previous 3 years. Concurrently, loblolly volume growth was 531 ft^3/acre, nearly doubling slash growth. Over the final 4 years, ages 27 to 31, slash stand growth was 33 percent less than loblolly.

Table 9. Average height for pure stands of slash and loblolly pine from thinning at stand age 15 to age 31

	Stand age				
	15	21	24	27	31
	Feet				
Slash	46	63	66[1]	75	74
Loblolly	48	61	63[1]	71	74

[1] Average height of trees suffering no crown damage. Average height of trees with broken tops was 51 and 52 feet for slash and loblolly pine, respectively.

Table 10. Basal area for pure stands of slash and loblolly pine from thinning at stand age 15 to age 31

	Stand age				
	15	21	24	27	31
	Feet^2/Acre				
Slash	80.3	104.8	123.2	118.3	110.9
Loblolly	82.0	102.6	118.9	129.8	121.2

Table 11. Merchantable volume for pure stands of slash and loblolly pine from thinning at stand age 15 to age 31[1]

	Stand age				
	15	21	24	27	31
	Feet^3/Acre				
Slash	1193	1994	2619	2889	3089
Loblolly	1253	1914	2503	3034	3356

[1] Volume to a 3-inch top using equations from Merrifield and Foil (1967). [1964, 1970:Form Class 67; 1973, 1976: Form Class 72; and 1980: Form Class 77].

DISCUSSION

Slash pine stands in northwest Louisiana ew well yielding 3710 ft^3/acre of total rchantable volume at age 31. By age 15, en though the initial stand stocking rate d been reduced by 44.4 percent, slash pine rformance exceeded predicted growth values r an equivalent site index in central uisiana (Mann, 1971). Foil et al. (1964) ported growth of young slash and loblolly ands at several locations in north Louisiana s comparable with respect to individual tree ze and stand volume. Stand growth trends at e 24 corresponded to those reported for inned slash stands in central Louisiana educcia, 1977). In addition, there was no idence that the growth of slash pine was re susceptible than loblolly to the detri- ntal effects of disease, insects, and severe imatic conditions. Thus, artificially tablished slash pine stands, which were inned at age 15, have adapted to the growth nditions of northwest Louisiana.

A comparison of periodic changes in stand atributes through age 15 (Tables 1-5) idicates that early growth and development ptterns of pure slash and loblolly pine were cmparable. Individual tree attributes, DBH ad height, were larger in the slash stands, wile loblolly stands had greater basal area ad volume as a result of higher stocking. Ater thinning, all stand attributes for the 3 residual slash pines per acre were less tan those for loblolly (Table 6). These rsults, although statistically nsignificant, suggest that individual slash pe growth and development within a stand was iferior to loblolly pine. Also, it should be nted that during the entire 15-year-growth priod slash stocking was nearly 30 percent lss than loblolly.

Varying ability of individual slash and llolly pines to compete for available growi space is illustrated by the growth pattern o stands containing single row mixtures of sish and loblolly (Tables 1-5). Initially, hh seedling mortality placed slash pine in a unfavorable competitive position. Even tugh adequate growing space was available, ssh pine performance declined continually. Fally, by age 15, the mixed stands were cpletely dominated by loblolly and the few raining slash pines were relegated to spressed positions. Thus, loblolly pine aeared to be the more aggressive species.

At age 31, 16 years after thinning, standing and total merchantable volume yields for pure slash and loblolly stands were 3089 and 3356 ft^3/acre (standing) and 3710 and 4338 ft^3/acre (total). Although volume growth during the 16 year period did not vary by species, the pattern of growth did. This variation in stand growth pattern demonstrates the difference between species with respect to individual trees tolerating competition within the stand. From age 15 to 24, when stand competition was minimal, merchantable growth in the slash stands exceeded loblolly by 14 percent. Slash growth during this period produced 75 percent of the stands growth after thinning, while loblolly produced 60 percent. As competition intensified between ages 24 and 31, slash yields were 82 percent less than loblolly. At age 31, the mean individual tree volume for the largest 100 TPA was 20.77 and 23.25 ft^3 for slash and loblolly, respectively.

CONCLUSIONS

1. Slash pine grown in managed plantations produced acceptible wood yields in northwest Louisiana.
2. Wood yields from managed slash and loblolly pine plantations in northwest Louisiana were comparable.
3. Individual tree growth in managed loblolly pine plantations was superior to slash pine.
4. In northwest Louisiana, slash pine should not be planted in preference to loblolly pine.

LITERATURE CITED

Fedduccia, D. P. 1977. Ten-year growth following thinning of slash pine planted on medium to poor cutover sites. USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. SO-137. 6 p.

Foil, R. R., T. Hansbrough and R. G. Merrifield. 1964. Loblolly vs. slash pine in North Louisiana. La. Agric. 8(2):10-11.

Mann, W. F., Jr. 1971. Early yields of slash pine planted on a cutover site at various spacings. USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. SO-69. 16 p.

Merrifield, R. G. and R. R. Foil. 1967. Volume equations for southern pine pulpwood. L.S.U., Agric. Exp. Sta., North La. Hill Farm Exp. Sta. Hill Farm Facts - Forestry 7. 4 p.

VARIABLE DENSITY YIELD TABLES FOR RED OAK-SWEETGUM STANDS[1]

Alfred D. Sullivan, Thomas G. Matney, and John D. Hodges[2]

Abstract.--This paper reports on a study to provide variable density yield tables for red oak-sweetgum stands. Data collection from a total of 150 plots has recently been completed. Preliminary analyses have provided yield equations for cubic-foot and board-foot volumes. Further analysis is planned.

INTRODUCTION

Growth and yield information is vital for making management decisions no matter what the forest type or species. However, such information is extremely scarce for most southern bottomland hardwood types and information based on long-term studies does not exist. The Hardwood Research Council recently listed growth and yield work as a "most urgent" research priority for eastern hardwoods (McLintock 1979).

Normal yield tables have been constructed for individual species such as yellow-poplar (*Liriodendron tulipifera* L.) (McCarthy 1933), ash (Sterrett 1915, cited by Evans, Burkhart, and Parker 1975) and for upland oaks (*Quercus* spp.) (Schnur 1937), but such information is not available for most southern hardwood types. The North Carolina State Hardwood Research Cooperative has published data on yields of natural hardwood stands in the southeastern United States. A first report was issued in 1975 (Smith et al.) and a second report (Gardner et al.) presenting improved estimates published in 1982. The data on which both these reports are based came from fully stock stands.

Perhaps the hardwood species for which t most comprehensive growth and yield informati is available is yellow-poplar. Diamet distributions and yields for vario combinations of site index, age and density f unthinned and largely undisturbed stands yellow-poplar have been presented by McGee a Della-Bianca (1967) and Beck and Della-Bian (1970). A 1972 publication by Beck a Della-Bianca presents growth and yield estimat for thinned yellow-poplar stands.

The purpose of this paper is to report the status of a research project designed develop variable density yield tables for t red oak-sweetgum (*Quercus* spp. and *Liquidamb styraciflua* L.) type. This mixture of tw species occurs widely in both major and min stream bottoms and is of considerable economi importance. Variable density yield tables wil be helpful in the management of these stands In reporting on our project, we will present ou data collection methods, provide an overview o the data that are available, present preliminar yield equations, and describe our future plans

METHODS AND DATA

The effort to develop yield tables for re oak-sweetgum stands represents only one aspec of a larger cooperative research project wit the U. S. Forest Service's Southern Hardwood Laboratory. Under this project, measurements have been taken on 150 sample plots in red oak-sweetgum stands. We were fortunate to have the assistance of an experienced hardwood forester on this project. Sample plot locations were selected by Mr. E. C. Burkhardt, formerly Chief Forester of Anderson-Tully Company. Mr. Burkhardt also participated in and supervised field plot measurement.

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982. Funds for this study were provided by the U. S. Forest Service's Southern Hardwoods Laboratory under Cooperative Agreement 19-81-30 with the Mississippi Agricultural and Forestry Experiment Station.

[2] The authors are professor, assistant professor, and professor, Department of Forestry, Mississippi Agricultural and Forestry Experiment Station, Mississippi State University. Contribution No. 5318 of the Mississippi Agricultural and Forestry Experiment Station.

Selection and Location of Study Plots

Study plot selection was based primarily on stand composition. At least 75 percent of the total basal area of all plots had to be sweetgum or oak species. Further, the sweetgum and oak species group each had to account for at least 20 percent of the total basal area.

For the most part, sample stands were located in minor stream bottoms in central Mississippi. The plots were selected to represent the widest possible range of age, stand density and site quality classes. All plots were located in even-aged stands. Basal area varied from 44 to over 240 square feet per acre, though 98 percent of the basal areas were less than 190 square feet. Age (of the oak species) ranged from 19 to 82 years.

All plots were monumented for relocation with the hope that future remeasurements may be possible. Such data will be extremely valuable and allow development of improved growth prediction systems.

Plot Measurements

Circular measurement plots were used in this study. The plot size in a stand varied so as to capture at least 50 trees but no plot was less than 1 tenth of an acre. On each plot all trees with a DBH of at least 3.5 inches were numbered, tagged, and the following data recorded for each tree:

1. species,
2. DBH,
3. crown class,
4. damage codes (if applicable, e.g., cankered, split, lightning damaged, etc.), and
5. distance and magnetic azimuth from plot center.

On a subsample of ten red oaks, ten sweetgum, and five other species, additional measurements were taken including:

1. total tree height,
2. height to base of the live crown, and
3. crown width.

For each tree containing a number 1, 2, or 3 factory sawlog according to U. S. Forest Service specifications, the length and grade of the first useable sawlog was recorded and height measurements, including total tree height, merchantable height, height to base of the live crown, and heights to 4-, 6-, and 8-inch outside bark diameters, were taken.

YIELD ESTIMATES

Data collection was completed in early October, 1982. Consequently, there has not been much time for data preparation, editing, summarization, and model fitting. Our preliminary analyses appear promising but all results presented at this time should necessarily be considered tentative.

Cubic foot volumes of sweetgum trees were calculated from equations presented by Reams et al. (1982). Cubic foot volumes of red oak trees were calculated by an equation for southern red oak obtained from the Resources Evaluation Project of the Southern Forest Experiment Station based on work done by Dave Lenhart and associates at Stephen F. Austin State University. Cubic foot volumes of other hardwoods were calculated from a composite equation based on unpublished work of Matney. All cubic foot volumes were calculated to a 4-inch, outside bark top diameter. Board foot volumes of red oak, sweetgum, and other hardwoods were obtained using Girard form class tables assuming a form class of 78. Board foot volumes are expressed in terms of the International ¼-inch log rule.

Analysis for yield estimates was accomplished by using a model previously used by Smith et al. (1975). This model allows prediction of yield from functions of age, total height of merchantable trees, and basal area. Specifically, the model was:

$$\text{Log } V = b_0 + b_1(1/A) + b_2(\text{Log } H/A) + b_3\text{Log } B,$$

where Log = logarithm to the base 10,
V = volume,
A = age of oak,
H = average height of merchantable oak trees, and
B = basal area of all species.

Cubic Foot Yield of All Species

All independent variables of the model for cubic foot yield (all species) were highly significant and the logarithm of cubic foot yield per acre was estimated by:

$$\text{Log CFV(all)} = 1.36 - 33.3(1/A) + 13.7(\text{Log } H/A) + 1.14 \text{ Log}(B)$$

This equation accounted for 92.1 percent of the variation in logarithm of volume with a standard error about the regression line of 0.00267. A plot of predicted values against observed values showed good agreement and a regression of these two variables produced an intercept of zero and a slope coefficient of one.

Board Foot Yield of All Species

Data from the 148 plots having board foot volumes greater than 0 were used to fit the model for board foot volume yields. All independent variables of the yield model were highly significant and logarithm of board-foot yield is estimated by:

$$\text{Log BFV(all)} = 2.17 - 124.(1/A) + 51.5(\text{Log } H/A) + .972 \text{ Log } B.$$

This equation accounted for 70.8 percent of the variation in logarithm of yield with a standard error about the regression of 0.0523. Again, a plot of observed versus predicted values showed close agreement and a regression of these two variables produced an intercept of zero and a slope coefficient of one.

Cubic Foot and Board Foot Yields of Oak

In an effort to explore the possibility of projecting yields of individual species in this type, an equation was fitted to predict cubic foot yield of the oak species group. The model fitted was the same as given above with the addition of Log(BAO/B), where BAO is the basal area per acre in the oak species group. Once again all coefficients were highly significant and logarithm of cubic foot yield of oak is estimated by:

$$\text{Log CFV(oak)} = 1.36 - 41.8(1/A) + 19.7(\text{Log } H/A) + 1.15 \text{ Log } B + 1.09 \text{ Log}(BAO/B).$$

This equation accounted for 98.2 percent of the variation in logarithm of cubic foot yield of oak with a standard error about the regression of 0.00121.

The same equation model was fitted for board foot volume. All coefficients were highly siginificant and board foot volume of oak is estimated by:

$$\text{Log BFV(oak)} = 2.38 - 188.(1/A) + 89.0(\text{Log } H/A) + .795 \text{ Log } B + .738 \text{ Log } (BAO/B).$$

This equation accounted for 68.2 percent of the variation in logarithm of oak board foot yield and had a standard error about the regression line of 0.0563.

CONCLUSION

As mentioned earlier, these results based on our preliminary analyses and considered tentative at this time. However, results appear promising and lead us to beli that we can provide useful information for red oak-sweetgum type which is widely disper throughout Southeastern forests. T information should be a valuable management t for foresters and landowners making decisi about stands like those considered in t study.

We plan to make additional analyses of data obtained in this work. In addition consideration of alternative models predictions presented in this paper, we w examine site index prediction, basal area gro and biomass predictions for these stan

LITERATURE CITED

Beck, Donald E. and Lino Della-Bianca.
1970. Yield of Unthinned Yellow-Poplar. U S Dep. Agric. For. Serv. Res. Pap. SE-58, 2

Beck, Donald E. and Lino Della-Bianca.
1972. Growth and Yield of Thinned Yell Poplar. U.S. Dep. Agric. For. Serv. Re Pap. SE-101, 20 p.

Evans, T. F., H. E. Burkhart, and R. C. Parker.
1975. Site and Yield Information Applicab to Virginia's Hardwoods: A Review. Di For. Wildl. Res. VPI and SU Pub. FWS-2-7 143 p.

Gardner, W. E., P. Marsh, R. C. Kellison, and D. J. Frederick.
1982. Yields of Natural Hardwood Stands the Southeastern United States. Hardwo Res. Coop. Ser. No. 1, Sch. For. Res. NCS 64 p.

McCarthy, E. F.
1933. Yellow-poplar Characteristics, Grow and Management. U.S.D.A. Tech. Bull. 35 56 p.

McGee, Charles E. and Lino Della-Bianca.
1967. Diameter Distributions in Natur Yellow-poplar Stands. U.S. Dep. Agric. Fo Serv. Res. Pap. SE-25, 7 p.

McLintock, T. F.
1979. Research Priorities for Eastern Hardwoods. Hardwood Res. Coun., 70 p.

Reams, Gregory A., Alfred D. Sullivan, Thomas G Matney, and Robert R. Stevens.
1982. Estimating Above-ground Biomass o Slash Pine and Sweetgum. Miss. Agric. For Exp. Stn. Tech. Bull. 110, 11 p.

Schnur, G. L.
1937. Yields, Stand, and Volume Tables for Even-aged Upland Oak Forests. USDA Tech. Bull. 560, 37 p.

Smith, H. D., W. L. Hafley, D. L. Holly, and R. C. Kellison.
1975. Yields of Mixed Hardwood Stands Occuring Naturally on a Variety of Sites in the Southern United States. Sch. For. Res., NCSU Tech. Rep. 55, 32 p.

Sterrett, W. D.
1915. The Ashes: Their Characteristics and Management. U.S.D.A. Tech. Bull. 299, 88 p.

RATE OF RETURN FROM FERTILIZATION OF SEMIMATURE SLASH PINE PLANTATIONS[1]

Duane R. Dippon[2]

John T. Shelton[3]

Abstract.--Fertilization trials were established with semimature slash pine plantations on 5 soil groupings. Eight treatments in a 2 by 4 factorial with phosphorous and nitrogen were broadcast on the plots. Individual tree volume and diameter growth equations were estimated for both 5 and 8 years after treatment. Stumpage products production, differentiated by merchantability limits and value per cubic foot, were estimated for each treatment and soil type. The rate of return was estimated for each combination of outputs and length of investment. The results from this series of fertilization trials indicates that the profitability of treatment, as measured by rate of return, varies by soil group, length of investment, and mixture of merchantable products.

INTRODUCTION

Forest fertilization has increasingly been recognized as a silvicultural tool for expanding fiber yields from pine plantations in the southeastern coastal plain. By mid-1978, approximately 900,000 acres in the South had been treated with some type of fertilizer with continuing treatments predicted at a rate of 250,000 acres per decade (Bengtson 1979). Since the early work by Pritchett (1961), most of the scientific analysis of fertilization in the coastal plain region has focused on the treatment at stand establishment and the nutrient requirements of various southern yellow pine species. More recently (Fisher and Garbett 1980) determined that the probability and magnitude of growth response of semimature slash pine (Pinus elliotti var. elliottii Engelm.) varies from site to site. They developed morphological soil groupings which were found to provide a means to better estimate fertilizer response of slash pine. Their soil groupings are presented in Table 1 as part of the Cooperative Research in Forest Fertilization (CRIFF) program at the University of Florida.

Although it is valuable to know that commercial tree species will respond to fertilization at stand initiation or at mid-rotation, of fundamental importance to management is treatment profitability. Moderately high growth rates were found to cause no deterioration of important wood properties (Gentle et al. 1968), thus accelerated volume growth can be used for the same product and thereby command equivalent market prices as normal volume.

Among the numerous studies which have examined the profitability of forest fertilization is a recent regional analysis by Fight and Dutrow (1980). They developed estimates of before-tax real rates of return on fertilization of Douglas fir in the Pacific Northwest and slash pine in the Southeast. Although the real rates of return varied by species, broad soil type, and timing, the top rates were near 30% in both regions. This study is useful in explaining why certain lands should be fertilized, but their analysis ignored the price differentials of resulting larger-dimensioned stock. Such price differences occur because large diameter stemwood can be utilized in relatively higher valued primary or secondary products than smaller diameters.

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 6-7, 1982.

[2] Assistant Professor, School of Forest Resources and Conservation, University of Florida, Gainesville, 32611.

[3] Visiting Assistant Professor, Department of Mathematics, University of North Carolina at Greensboro, 27412.

Given that the volume growth response of slash pine varies by soil group and number of years between treatment and harvest, it was hypothesized that the stumpage product mix varies also because of the resulting different diameter class distributions. This analysis was designed to demonstrate the before-tax rate of return from semimature slash pine fertilization return from semimature slash pine fertilization for various soil groups, fertilizer mixes, and output combinations.

Table 1.
CRIFF Soil Groups

Soil groups	Drainage class	B Horizon	Subgroups equivalents
A (fine-textured savanna soils)	Very poorly to somewhat poorly drained	No spodic horizon; argillic within 50cm	Typic and Plinthic Aquults
B (coarse-textured) savanna soils)	Very poorly to somewhat poorly drained	No spodic horizon; argillic below 50cm	Arenic and Grossarenic Aquults, Aquents and Aquepts
C (ultic flatwoods soils)	Very poorly to somewhat poorly drained	Spodic and argillic present	Ultic Aquods and Humods
D (typic flatwood soils)	Poorly to moderately well drained	Spodic but no agrillic horizon	Typic, Aeric, and Arenic Aquods and Humods
E (fine-textured upland soils)	Moderately well to well drained	No spodic horizon; agrillic below 50cm	Typic and Plenthic Uldulta Typic and Typic and Plinthic Uldulta
F (coarse-textured upland soils)	Moderately well to well drained	No spodic horizon; argillic below 50cm	Arenic and Grossarenic Udults Umbrepts and Ochrepts
G (dry sands)	Somewhat excessively to excessively drained	No spodic horizon; argillic may or may not be present	Psamments

treatments were arranged in a 2 x 4 factorial with phosphorous (P) at 0 and 50 pounds per acre and nitrogen (N) at 0, 50 100 and 200 pounds per acre. The fertilizer was broadcast on the plots, N in the form of urea and P in the form of concentrated super phosphate.

At the time of fertilization, the breast height diameters of all trees in each plot were measured. Additionally, the heights of six randomly slected trees were measured on each plot

METHODS

The fertilization trials were established in semimature (15 to 18 years of age) slash pine. Blocks of 8 treated plots each were divided as plantations in Georgia and Florida. Forty-five blocks of 8 treated plots each were divided as follows among 5 soil groups:

Test Block Distribution

Soil Group	Number of Blocks
A	6
B	10
C	10
D	5
F	14

The total number of blocks was constant over the 5- and 8-year investment periods. The 8

and regression equations were developed to predict the volume from measured DBH for every tree and each plot. Tree DBH and height for all trees on each measurement plot were measured after 5 and after 8 growing seasons. Volume per tree outside bark to a 3-inch top was calculated for all measured trees using the measured DBH and height in the volume formula from Bennett et al. (1959).

A polynominal regression equation with the treatment levels of N and P, and the original tree's volume or DBH (Volo and DBHo, respestively) measurement was developed (via ordinary least squares). Equations were estimated predicting individual tree volume and DBH at 5 and 8 years after fertilization. A different equation was estimated for each of the 5 soil groups.

By using the prediction equations discussed above, volume and DBH for each individual tree at both 5 and 8 years for each of the 8 treatments was predicted by substituting into prediction equations the appropriate values for N, P, Vol_o and DBH_o The predicted values were then assigned to diameter classes within each treatment based on the predicted diameters. Finally, the total predicted volume for each diameter class for each treatment was calculated by summing the individual tree predicted volumes in that diameter class for that treatment.

Three stumpage product types were chosen to emphasize the price differentials which affect forest fiber investment. Although markets in the southeastern coastal plain utilize forest stumpage for more than just pulpwood, chip-n-saw and lumber these products represent a common range for the material being harvested at about age 20 through 26. Stumpage prices vary monthly although their general trend has been steadily upward. Because of this, the 1981 average price for each product was used to reduce the possible bias in the analysis of nonnormal prices.

The semimature stands ranged between 15 and 18 years of age at treatment with five to eight growing seasons thereafter. The estimated cubic root volume was converted into cords based on the assumption that 90 solid cubic feet was equivalent to a stand cord. Cubic foot volume was also converted to Scribner board feet to estimate lumber equivalents. Stumpage values were estimated via quotations from Timber-Mart South, an independent price report. Averaged 1981 stumpage prices for south Georgia and northeast Florida were used. The estimated stumpage values and their merchantability limits are as follows:

Stumpage Values by Merchantability Limit

Product	Stumpage Value	Diameter Breast
Pulpwood	\$27.43/cord	All estimated volume
Chip-n-saw	\$35.18/cord	Volume of trees≥6"DBH
Lumber	\$156.09/MBF	Volume of trees≥8"DBH

The lowest cost fertilizer material and application methodology were utilized for each treatment since previous work (Pritchett and Comerford 1982) has demonstrated that the source of phosphorus is not an important factor in the growth response of slash pine over a 5-to 20-year period after treatment. The fertilizer and application costs were developed from an average based on a range of prices obtained from suppliers in January, 1982. The lowest treatment costs were employed, and are listed below:

Average Lowest Cost Treatments

Treatment Material	Treatment/ac.	Cost/ac.
Rock Phosphate	50 lbs. P	24.12
Urea	50 lbs. N	18.47
Urea	100 lbs. N	36.94
Urea	200 lbs. N	73.88
DAP	50 lbs. N + 50 lbs. P	36.14
Urea and Rock Phos.	100 lbs. N + 50 lbs. P	61.05
Rock Phos.	200 lbs. N + 50 lbs. P	98.00

The average 1981 stumpage prices and the January 1982 fertilization cost quotes were assumed to exist in the same time frame for th purposes of this anlaysis. Since early 1982 stumpage prices were approximately equal those prices recorded in 1981, the average prices were used. The fertilization prices have been highl variable and cyclical in nature. Therefore, th analysis was based on the assumption that treatments could have been made at the prices listed last spring. The before-tax rate of return was calculated utilizing the estimated volume respo its value and the cost of treatments via the formula from Davis (1962):

$$i = \sqrt[n]{\frac{Vn}{Vo}} -1$$

where: i equals the before rate of return on investment
Vn is the value of the growth response treatment
Vo is the cost of the fertilization treatment
and n is the length of time of investment, the number of growing seasons afte treatment.

The equation calculated a real, before-tax rate of return. The rate is a function of treatment cost, estimated response, stumpage prices and the length of investment. The rate of inflation and its impact on costs or prices are ignored as are any other management activities. The analysis compares fertilizer treatment respo in terms of real dollars, (ie, with the inflatio of stumpage prices over time removed). The actu real rate of increase for southern yellow pine a southeasterm softwood pulpwood prices were estimated at only approximately 1 percent annually, based on statistics from USDA, Forest Service (1981). Therefore, the estimated rates are conservative in nature since the annual 1 percent price increases are Southwide and can be highly variable depending on long-term local market conditions.

RESULTS

The signs for the estimated coefficients of the independent variables are shown in Table 2. Soil Group A was characterized by a linear respon to the quantity of P applied. Nitrogen was not a significant independent variable in any of the equations estimated in this soil group. The combination of variables for the estimated equations for Soil Group B demonstrate a greater complexity of interactions. Both N and P demonstrate linear and interactive relationships while the level of N also displayed a nonlinear effect in the equations.

The significant independent variables in the estimated equations for Soil Group C are also a complex array of polynomial permutations. Again, the levels of N and P, their interaction, and the nonlinear significance of N determine the values of the dependent variables. The results for Soil Group D show that the original values are of greater predictive importance than are the levels of N and P. The estimated future equations for Soil Group F demonstrate predicted fertilizer response whereas future volume equations are only affected by the treatment level of P for the longer investment period.

Assuming the individual tree volumes to be normally distributed, 95 percent confidence intervals about the mean predicted total volume per acre were calculated and are presented in Table 3. The data in this table represent the estimated total volume production for slash pine on five soil groups, eight fertilizer treatments and two investment periods. The estimates are based on the biological responses and the statistical analysis used to fit polynomial functional forms to the observations. The estimation equations of individual tree volume and diameter breast height,facilitated the development of the stand diameter and volume distribution for each combination of soil, fertilizer and time.

Tables 4 through 7 list the treatments by soil group which resulted in postive rates of return for product combinations. The before tax rates of return are listed for both investment periods and each combination of stumpage products. The largest rate of return for either five- or eight-year investment periods was determined to occur with 50 pounds of phosphorous per acre on the fine-textured savanna soils (Table 4). The increase in harvest value due to increased yields of lumber and pulpwood resulted in a rate of return of over 36 percent, compounded annually for five years. The rate declined to 27 percent for the longer eight year investment which resulted in expanded lumber and chip-n-saw yields. Although Table 3 indicates that increased volume yields occur over eight growing seasons following treatment as compared to five, Table 4 demon-

Table 2

Signs of Estimated Coefficient for Volume and DBH Equations

Soil Group	Estimates	Volo	DBHo	N	P	NP	N^2	N^2P
A	DBH_5	0	+	0	+	0	0	0
	Vol_5	+	0	0	+	0	0	0
	DBH_8	0	+	0	+	0	0	0
	Vol_8	+	0	0	+	0	0	0
B	DBH_5	0	+	+	0	0	+	0
	Vol_5	+	0	-	+	0	+	0
	DBH_8	0	+	-	+	-	+	+
	Vol_8	+	0	-	+	0	+	0
C	DBH_5	0	+	+	+	0	0	0
	Vol_5	+	0	+	+	+	+	-
	DBH_8	0	+	+	0	0	+	0
	Vol_8	+	0	-	+	+	+	-
D	DBH_5	0	+	0	0	0	0	0
	Vol_5	+	0	+	0	0	0	0
	DBH_8	0	+	0	0	0	0	0
	Vol_8	+	0	0	0	0	0	0
	DBH_5	0	+	+	-	+	0	0
	Vol_5	+	0	0	0	0	0	0
	DBH_8	0	+	+	+	-	0	0
	Vol_8	+	0	0	+	0	0	0

Table 3
Predicted Volume/Acre (ft^3/ac.)

	Treatments (lbs/ac)								
Soil Group	0N	50N	100N	200N	0N	50N	100N	200N	(Nitrogen)
(year)	0P	0P	0P	0P	50P	50P	50P	50P	(Phosphorus)
A_5	2842±66	→	→	→	3065±67	→	→	→	
A_8	3472±92	→	→	→	3799±98	→	→	→	
B_5	2315±66	2300±50	2311±50	2415±68	2425±68	2410±50	2422±58	2525±69	
B_8	2956±117	2888±90	2877±105	3028±121	3104±118	3037±88	3026±103	3177±123	
C_5	1706±55	1722±35	1751±45	1751±45	1851±54	1803±35	1861±44	1923±57	
C_8	2222±98	2229±63	2262±80	2399+98	2253±97	2337±64	2401±80	2473±100	
D_5	1457±69	1525±33	1592±30	1726±55	1457±46	1525±33	1592±30	1725±55	
D_8	2049±69	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	
F_5	1832±34	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	
F_8	2289±64	→	→	→	2370±65	→	→	→	

trates that the before-tax rate of return ctually declines.

Table 4
Soil Group A
Before-Tax Rate of Return
by investment period[1/]
(percent)

ale Basis	Five Years	Eight Years
ulpwood (P.)	23.2	19.4
hip-n-saw (CnS.)	26.3	23.5
umber (L.)	23.6	18.6
nS plus P.	28.6	23.2
. plus P.	36.3	25.8
. Plus CnS.	33.4	27.6
. plus CnS. and P	35.9	27.4

/ Treatment was composed of 50 lb. P per acre.

The coarse-textured savanna soils, Soil Group (Table 5), demonstrate a reduced and more varible response to fertilization than do the fine-extured savanna soils. These soils respond to oth nitrogen and phosphorus fertilization. The olume growth response is greatest for the treatent of 50 pounds of P and 200 pounds of N per cre. The additional growth due to the nitrogen s insufficient to offset the greater costs ncurred so that the preferred treatment under urrent assumptions remains the 50 pounds of hosphorus per acre with a maximum before-tax ate of return of 15 percent. Although the preerred treatment level is the same for these two ypes of savanna soils, a longer investment eriod (eight years) yields a greater rate of eturn for the coarse-textured soil. The preicted rate of volume and value growth for eight rowing seasons exceeds the rate of increase for he carrying cost of the treatment.

The ultic flatwood soils, or Soil Group C Table 6), exhibit an even greater growth response o nitrogen fertilization than do the previous wo soil groups. As the nitrogen component of he treatment is increased, greater volume proluction can be expected (Table 3). The 50 pounds plus 50 pounds N per acre treatment for the ive-year investment is preferred. This reflects he more rapid cost expansion incurred by increasng the amount of N applied in relation to the ncrease in added values. If the goal of management is the production of large trees, then the ight-year investment is desirable and nitrogen pplied at the rate of 200 pounds per acre would esult in the better before tax rate of return. he main effect of the fertilization treatments s not just additional volume growth but the istribution of additional volume in the larger BH classes. Note that if pulpwood production was the sole fiber product desired by management then fertilization would not result in net profits with the given set of base assumptions. For both investment length alternatives, the increases in volume in the 6 to 8 inch DBH classes causes the favorable net profit result.

Phosphorus fertilization alone, or with nitrogen, was found to be inefficient on the typic flatwoods soils, Soil Group D (Table 7). The use of nitrogen fertilizer increased volume growth but at a linear rate. Higher rates of application per acre resulted in expanded harvest volume but also expanded costs. The cost of nitrogen is relatively low, 18.47 dollars per acre for 50 pounds of N per acre, which is less than the value of the resulting increased volume growth. This soil group is not very growth responsive, but is sufficiently responsive to the nitrogen application that a positive before-tax rate of return results from a five-year investment. The coarse-textured upland Soils Group F demonstrated practically no positive rates of return for the costs and revenue variables assumed in this analysis. This is a direct result of the virtual unresponsiveness of this soil group to any of the treatments listed in Table 3.

DISCUSSION

The responses of the two savanna soils differ on the length of investment with the coarse-textured soil growth response greater for the eight-year investment. The fine-textured soil demonstrated the opposite interaction. The results indicate that the fine- and coarse-textured savanna soils can return a profit with fertilization. Only phosphorus is justified on the phosphorus deficient Soil Group A. The soils in Group B do not exhibit as great a P deficiency, but growth was stimulated with both phosphorus and nitrogen. Although nitrogen increases production, the before tax rate of return is greater for phosphorus alone because of its lower cost in relation to the corresponding increase in stumpage value produced.

The ultic flatwoods soils (Group C) responded to both nitrogen and phosphorus. Again, although volume production steadily increases with the rate of nitrogen applied, the cost of investment increased at a more rapid rate. The combination of 50 pounds of N and P each resulted in the largest rate of return on investment for both time periods. The price differentials on stumpage production and the change in the diameter/volume distribution at harvest have an important interaction. In this example, fertilization of this type of stand would not be very efficient since the production of pulpwood or lumber is insufficient to offset cost. It is the movement of more trees from the below six inch DBH classes to the 6 to 8 inch classes which results in a greater per volume unit price (chip-n-saw) and a favorable rate of return.

The typic flatwood soils (Group D) are the only group which demonstrate non-growth respons-

Table 5
Soil Group B
Before-Tax Rate of Return
by
Investment Period and Treatment

pounds/acre

Length of Investment		Sales Basis	0	0	0	50	50	50	50	Phosphorus
			50	100	200	0	50	100	200	Nitrogen
Five Years		Pulpwood (P.)	-	-	-	6.8	-	-	-	
		Chip-n-Saw (CnS.)	-	-	-	1.0	-	-	0.0	
		Lumber (L.)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
		CnS. plus P.	-	-	-	10.5	-	6.8	-	
		L. plus P.	-	-	-	10.3	-	-	0.4	
		L. plus CnS.	-	-	4.3	3.8	-	-	7.8	
		L. plus CnS. and P.	-	-	-	12.5	-	-	5.9	
Eight Years		Pulpwood (P.)	-	-	-	8.1	-	-	-	
		Chip-n-Saw (CnS.)	-	-	-	7.1	-	-	-	
		Lumber (L.)	-	-	-	10.7	-	-	5.0	
		CnS. plus P.	-	-	-	10.7	-	-	-	
		L. plus P.	-	-	-	14.7	0.7	-	5.3	
		L. plus CnS.	-	-	-	12.3	-	-	5.2	
		L.plus Cns. and P.	-	-	-	15.0	1.8		5.4	

- nonpositive rate of return

iveness to phosphorus and positive responsiveness with the application of nitrogen alone. The estimated individual tree volume and DBH equations are both linear so that cubic foot production increases as the amount of nitrogen increases, as do the costs. Essentially, the point of diminishing returns to nitrogen has not been determined for the levels tested. The steady decline in rates are due more to rounding errors in the estimation of stumpage value by product type and volume by diameter class distribution, than to actual revenue/cost interactions.

The estimated tree volume and DBH equations for the coarse-textured upland soils indicated little if any growth response to fertilization. In general, given the economic assumptions made in this study, F-group soils are not favorable sites for treatment.

The eight-year growth responses may actuall be underestimated because of the design and on-ground layout of the test blocks. Cross-feedin appears to have increased the growth on the control plots. Therefore, the before-tax rate o return for the eight-year investments of fertilizer treatments are conservative estimates sinc the growth differential may have been greater than those recorded. New tests are currently in place by CRIFF to test if, and to what extent, the long-term aspects of fertilization investmen differ from previous tests.

This type of analysis is very dependent on t costs, revenues and stumpage product diameter merchantability limits assumed. Based on the formula used in the analysis, a fertilizer price increase will result in a slightly greater decrease in the before-tax rate of return. A decline in stumpage prices has the same effect o

Table 6
Soil Group C
Before-Tax Rate of Return
by
Investment Period and Treatment

pounds/acre

Length of Investment		Sales Basis	0	0	0	50	50	50	50	Phosphorus
			50	100	200	0	50	100	200	Nitrogen
	Five Years	Pulpwood (P.)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
		Chip-n-Saw (CnS.)	12.2	8.2	5.4	7.1	12.0	3.8	6.4	
		Lumber (L.)	-	-	-	5.1	-	-	-	
		CnS. plus P.	-	-	-	-	3.8	0.8	-	
		L. plus P.	-	-	-	-	3.8	2.6	-	
		L. plus CnS.	12.2	11.7	8.6	12.1	15.3	7.9	9.4	
		L. plus CnS. and P.	-	-	1.9	-	8.2	5.4	3.4	
	Eight Years	Pulpwood (P.)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
		Chip-n-Saw (CnS.)	-	-	3.6	-	-	-	2.1	
		Lumber (L.)	-	-	3.8	-	-	-	0.6	
		CnS. plus P.	-	-	0.4	-	1.5	0.5	0.5	
		L. plus P.	-	-	4.4	-	0.4	2.7	3.4	
		L. plus CnS.	-	-	7.7	-	-	-	5.7	
		L. plus CnS. and P.	-	-	5.3	-	2.0	3.1	4.5	

- nonpositive rate of return

he rate except that the impact is slightly more ronounced. The reverse price changes of cost r revenues exhibit the same relationships with he rate of return, but in the opposite direction or both cases. In general then, the longer the nvestment period, the less sensitive the rate of eturn becomes to variations in the revenue/cost atio.

In general then, a mixture of stumpage proucts is more profitable than any single product ecause of the price differentials available to arger dimensioned stumpage. The more efficient se of forest fiber through the division into ultiple products results in a higher average alue per cubic foot of volume.

Before-tax rates of return are estimated ecause of the extreme variability of tax rates nd the criteria used to deduct management costs (capitalizing or expensing) from profits. Forest Industry faces different rates of taxation on profits than do individuals. Each are probably able to elicit capital gains treatment for their stumpage derived revenues. Any tax on the increased growth will reduce the rate of returns on investment. The reduced tax under capital gains lessens the reduction via a smaller tax rate. If the cost of treatment is expensed, this reduces the tax burden in the year of treatment and the net result is a higher after-tax rate of return than the before-tax rate. Time, taxation rates at treatment and at harvest and the assumed investment rate all impact on the expensed rate of return. Since capitalization and expensing cannot both be incorporated by an operating entity, one or the other must be selected. The after-tax cost was ignored by this analysis in order to reduce the complexity of the problem to manageable proportions.

Table 7
Soil Group D
Before-Tax Rate of Return
by
Investment Period and Treatment

pound/acre

	0	0	0	50	50	50	50	Phosphorus
Sale Basis	50	100	200	0	50	100	200	Nitrogen
Pulpwood (P.)	2.2	2.2	2.1	-	-	-	-	
Chip-n-Saw	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Lumber (L.)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
CnS. plus P.	4.8	4.6	4.5	-	-	-	-	
L. plus P.	3.1	2.9	2.8	-	-	-	-	
L. plus CnS.	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
L. plus CnS. and P.	4.7	4.8	4.7	-	-	-	-	
Pulpwood (P.)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Chip-n-Saw (CnS.)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Lumber (L.)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Cns. plus P.	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
L. plus P.	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
L. plus CnS.	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
L. plus CnS. and P.	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	

- nonpositive rate of return

CONCLUSIONS

The data from this series of fertilizer trials demonstrate that the before-tax rate of return varies by soil group, level of fertilization and the product mixture at harvest. The estimated profitability of forest fertilization depends not only on the predicted growth response, but also on the value of products produced, the cost of treatment and the length of investment period. The savanna type soils groups represent the better fertilizer investment alternatives for semimature slash pine stands. Considering that these are real rates of return, over and above the inflation rate, then fertilization on the flatwood soils appears to be profitable at this time.

These results are intended to provide a procedure for assisting individuals in the calculation of the profitability of fertilizing their semimature slash pine stands. Their decision should be based on the stumpage diameter distributions which are desired, the price differentials prevailing, costs of treatment and the expected growth response.

LITERATURE CITED

Bengtson, G.W. 1979. Forest Fertilization in the United States: Progress and Outlook. J. of For. 77:222-229.

Bennett, F.A., C.E. McGee, and J. L. Clutter. 1959. Yield of old-field slash pine plantations. Stn. Paper 107. USDA For. Serv. Exp. Stn.

Davis, K.P. 1962.
Forest Management: Regulation and Valuation McGraw-Hill Book Co. 519p.

Fight, R.D. and G.F. Dutrow. 1981.
Financial Comparison of Forest Fertilization in the Pacific Northwest and the Southeast. J. of For. 79:214-215.

Fisher, R.F. and W.S. Garbett. 1980.
Response of semimature slash and loblolly pine plantations to fertilization with nitrogen and phosphorus. Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 44:850-854.

Gentle, S.W., R.K. Bamber, and F.R. Humphreys. 1968.
Effect of Two Phosphate Fertilizers on Yield, Financial Yield and Wood Quality of Padiata Pine. J. of For. 14:282-286.

Pritchett, W.L. 1961.
Some preliminary results from fertilizing southern pine. P. 41-53 in The Use of Chemicals in Southern Forests. La. State Univ. Press, Baton Rouge.

Pritchett, W.L. and N.B. Comerford. 1982.
Long-term Response to Phosphorus on Selected Southeastern Coastal Plain Soils. Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 46:640-644.

Ulrich, A.H. 1981.
U.S. Timber Production, Trade, Consumption, and Price Statistics 1950-80. Misc. Pub. 1408. For. Res. Staff, U.S. Dept. Agric., Washington, D.C. 81p.

EVALUATING REGENERATION SUCCESS IN PLANTATIONS USING DISTANCE SAMPLING[1]

W. D. Smith[2]

Abstract.--Nearest neighbor and nearest tree sampling have been frequently suggested for regeneration and other density surveys. Its applicability has been limited to conditions of random spatial pattern. If expanded to the 4th rather than first nearest neighbor the expected distance for uniform and randomly distributed populations is approximately equal. Plantations can be described as uniform populations with random variation in density. Under those conditions the distance to the fourth nearest neighbor is an efficient estimator of density.

INTRODUCTION

Approximately 1.2 million acres are planted annually in the southern United States by industrial, private, and public agencies. Regeneration surveys account for a significant contribution to the cost of managing these acres. An alternative that would substantially lower the cost of plot survey techniques would be desirable. This paper presents a generalization of the nearest neighbor method that could be applicable to plantations.

Nearest neighbor and nearest tree sampling are frequently suggested for regeneration and other density surveys. The procedure, to measure the distance from a subject tree to its nearest neighbor or from a point to the nearest tree, is simple, rapid,[3] and relatively free of measurement error. Unfortunately its applicability has been limited to populations with a random spatial pattern. A pattern which occurs infrequently in nature (Schreuder 1978) and not at all in plantations.

DISTRIBUTION OF NEAREST NEIGHBORS

Clark and Evans (1954) developed a procedur for testing for randomness of spatial pattern us the ratio of the mean distance to the nearest ne bor to the expected distance given a randomly di tributed population. Morisita (1954) derived th same formula and pointed out the increased accuracy of density determination if second, third, etc. nearest neighbors are included. Thompson (1956) extended the Clark and Evans derivation t obtain the expected distance to the n^{th} as well a first nearest neighbors for randomly distirbuted populations

The expected distance to the n^{th} nearest neighbor given a randomly distributed population is (from Thompson 1956).

$$E(r_n) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{m}} \frac{(2n)!n}{(2^n n!)^2}$$

where m is the density per unit area.[4] From the above the density per unit area, m, can be found by

$$m = \left[\frac{1}{\bar{r}_n} \frac{(2n)!n}{(2^n n!)^2}\right]^2,$$

where $\bar{r}_n$ is the average distance to the nth nearest neighbor. Trees per acre is obtained by multiplying m by 43560. Values for n equal to 1 through 6 are presènted in Table 1.

---

[1] Paper presented at Second Biennial Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, Nov. 4-5, 1982.

[2] Lecturer of Forestry, N.C. State University, Raleigh, NC.

[3] Personal communication with one forest products firm indicated a threefold decrease in sampling time.

[4] Unit area = square of unit of measurement for $\bar{r}_n$, e.g. a square foot or square meter.

able 1.--Expected density given average distance to the 1st through 6th nearest neighbor for a a random population.

	1	2	3	4	5	6
m	$\frac{.5000}{\bar{r}_1}$	$\frac{.7500}{\bar{r}_2}$	$\frac{.9375}{\bar{r}_3}$	$\frac{1.0937}{\bar{r}_4}$	$\frac{1.2616}{\bar{r}_5}$	$\frac{1.3820}{\bar{r}_6}$

e above relationships are for randomly distri- uted populations. Both Morisita and Thompson xpress doubt about the applicability of such tech- iques for non-random populations. However con- ider the opposite extreme. For uniformly dis- ributed populations (i.e. hexagonally arranged) ll individuals are equidistant from their six earest neighbors. In this case the expected dis- ance between individuals is

$$E(r_n) = \frac{1.0746}{m} \text{ for } n = 1 \text{ through } 6$$

d density per unit area, given the mean distance, s

$$m = \left(\frac{1.0746}{n}\right)^2 \text{ for } n = 1 \text{ through } 6$$

APPLICATION TO PLANTATIONS

Plantations can be spatially described as uni- rm populations with random variation in density mith, 1977). The expected value of the average stance scaled by the square root of density for e six nearest neighbors in uniform and in random pulations is presented in figure 1. At n = 4, e scaled distance is approximately equal for both ndom and uniform populations. Figures 2 and 3 esent the observed scaled mean distances and eir standard deviations for four mapped planta- ons. In general the actual distances are great- than expected, if random, for n<4 and less than pected, if random, for n>4. In general, the andard deviation is at its minimum for n = 4.

From the above observations it is inferred that e expected scaled distance to the 4th nearest ighbor is approximately equal for spatial patterns at vary from uniform to random. Based on that ference the density for plantations can then be timated using the relationship

$$m = \left(\frac{1.0937}{\bar{r}_4}\right)^2$$

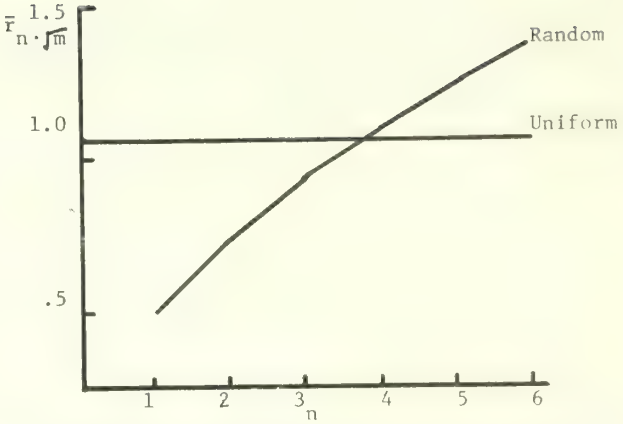


Figure 1.--Relationship between the expected distance to the six nearest neighbors for random and uniform populations.

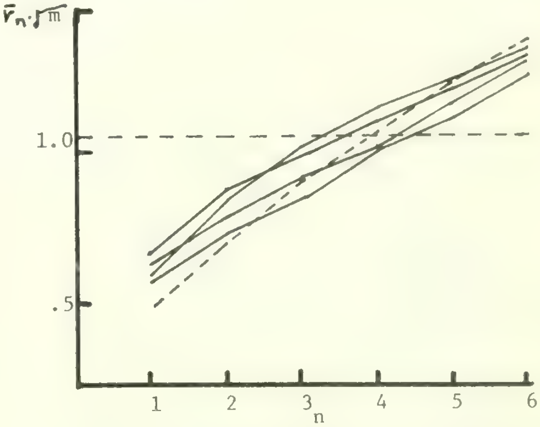


Figure 2.--Observed mean distance to six nearest neighbors for 4 mapped plantations.

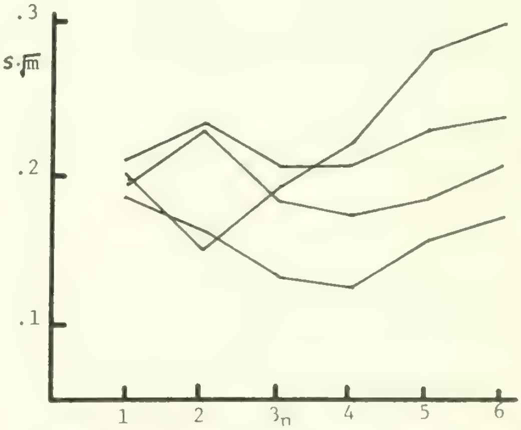


Figure 3.--Observed standard deviation of distance to six nearest neighbors for 4 mapped plantations.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

The procedure was evaluated by simulating both 1/50 acre fixed plots and the distance to the 4th nearest neighbor using the four mapped plantations. The results of 10 samples of 15 observations are presented in Table 2. The method has had limited field testing with comparable results (Table 3).

A concern during field sampling was the problem of identifying the fourth nearest neighbor. Without excessive measurement time. However by the time the crews had measured a minimal number of trees they became quite proficient identifying the fourth nearest neighbor with only occasional checking. The problem is somewhat alleviated by the characteristic that when survival is poor identification is easy and that when survival is high error caused by mis-identification is small. The major limitation in its application is under extreme rectangular spacing (greater than 2 to 1). The spacial pattern in that case is clumpy under that condition and does not fall between random and uniform.

Table 2.--Results of simulated plot and distance sampling using 4 mapped plantations

Stand #	Actual Trees/ Acre	Estimate Using Trees/ Acre	1/50 acre plots s.d.	Estimate Using Trees/ Acre	$\bar{r}_4$ s.d.	n
1	568	563	129	544	202	15
2	181	184	81	214	82	15
3	190	176	72	225	110	15
4	508	503	144	477	124	15

Table 3.--Results of field evaluation of plot d
distance sampling

Sample #	Estimate Using Trees/ Acre	1/50 acre plots s.d.	Estimate Using Trees/ Acre	$\bar{r}_4$ s.d.	n
1	531	53	515	52	17
2	402	46	320	36	12
3	338	51	299	41	18

LITERATURE CITED

Clark, P. J. and F. C. Evans.
1954. Distance to nearest neighbor as a me
sure of spatial relationships in populati
Ecology 35:445-453.

Morisita, M. 1959.
1959. Measurement of dispersion of individ
and analysis of the distributional patter
Mem. Fac. Sci. Kyushu. Univ. E(Biol) 2:21
235.

Schreuder, H. T.
1978. Count sampling in forestry. For. Sci.
24:267-272

Smith, W. D.
1977. Spatial distribution of natural stan
of southern pine. Unpublished thesis N. C
State University. 37p.p.

Thompson, H. R.
1956. Distribution of distance to the n^{th}
nearest neighbor in a population of random
distributed individuals. Ecology 37:391-3

APPROXIMATING THINNED STAND DIAMETER DISTRIBUTIONS WITH STATISTICAL PROBABILITY FUNCTIONS[1]

T. G. Matney and A. D. Sullivan[2]

Abstract.--A method of applying the three parameter Weibull probability distribution and truncations of the distribution to estimate thinned stand diameter distributions is explored. The three parameter Weibull distribution is used to obtain stand diameter distributions prior to first thinning. Estimates of residual stand diameter distribution following thinning are determined using either an untruncated or a truncated three parameter Weibull distribution; the distribution used depending on the characteristics of the thinning process. Diameter distributions are grown through the application of a transformation that regenerates untruncated and truncated Weibull distributions. Diameter distributions for additional thinnings are calculated in the same fashion as for the first thinning. Parameter estimates of the required distribution and transformation are obtained using a combination of regression equations, parameter recovery procedures, and knowledge about the thinning process.

INTRODUCTION

Probability distribution functions have een applied successfully in describing size lass distributions of unthinned pine lantations through time (Clutter and Bennett 965; Smalley and Bailey 1974a and b; Lohrey and ailey 1977; Dell et al. 1979; and Feduccia et l. 1979). These models were developed in esponse to the early 1960's and 1970's hilosophy that plantations would provide rimarily short rotation pulpwood. Thinnings in uch a system are rarely practical, since there s no clear gain in fiber yield. In recent ears, however, the abundant supply of high uality veneer and sawlogs from natural stands as steadily declined. With this decline, anagers are looking toward plantations for production of high quality sawlogs as early as possible. Thinnings are an integral part of any silvicultural system where emphasis is on sawlog products. Hence, there is now a greater need for models to predict size class distributions of repeatedly thinned stands.

The purpose of this paper is to describe a flexible modeling framework developed for approximating diameter distributions of repeatedly thinned stands. While specific results given apply only to thinned old field plantation loblolly (Pinus taeda L.) stands, the method presented could be used to model other species and stand conditions.

DATA

The data for this study were the combined data from two permanent plot studies of old-field plantation grown loblolly pine: a United States Forest Service (USFS) thinning study and a Mississippi State University (MSU) spacing study. The USFS data were derived from a number of studies conducted to determine the effect of site quality, stand density and thinning on the growth and yield of loblolly

---

/Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

/The authors are assistant professor and professor, respectively, in the Department of Forestry, Mississippi Agricultural and Forestry Experiment Station at Mississippi State University, Mississippi State, MS 39762. Contribution No. 5316 of the Mississippi Agricultural and Forestry Experiment Station.

pine plantations located in Ashley County, Arkansas; Lafayette and Yalobusha Counties, Mississippi; and Henderson and Madison Counties, Tennessee. The Madison County plots were established in 1929 to demonstrate that loblolly pine could grow and do well in that area. The other plots were established prior to World War II in stands planted to control the erosion of old fields. All stands were planted at initial stand densities greater than 1000 stems per acre.

Except for some control plots, the plots were repeatedly thinned, mostly on a 3- to 5-year cycle. Treatments tested were precommercial thinning at age 9; thinning by removing every third and fourth row; D + six thinning; and thinning to residual basal areas of 70 to 120 square feet of basal area per acre. Excluding the row thinnings, all thinnings were from below.

Data recorded were the frequency and height by 1-inch DBH classes, before and after thinning, for all trees 1.5 inches DBH or larger. The USFS data were from 74 permanent plots, providing sufficient observations of stand conditions to calculate 623 yield values and 299 growth values. Base age 25 site index ranged from 55 to 78 feet for the plots -- calculated from the average height of trees in the largest DBH class at the age closest to base age using the site index equation presented by Lenhart (1971). Plot ages ranged from 9 to 34 years. Basal areas on the 12 uncut plots varied from 118 square feet per acre at age 14 to 204 square feet per acre at age 30. Square feet of basal area per acre before thinning ranged from 53 to 173.

The MSU spacing study[3/], established on the MSU School Forest[4/] in the winter of 1959, was designed to investigate the effects of spacing on stand development. A randomized complete block experimental design was used with four replicates of each of the six spacings (ft. x ft.): 5 x 5, 5 x 6, 6 x 6, 6 x 7, 7 x 8, and 9 x 10. The spacing treatments were planted in one acre rectangular plots with a designated central half acre measurement plot. The seedlings were of grade two or larger and were produced from a local seed source.

The data recorded relevant to this study are the DBH of surviving trees and the DBH and height pairs of 15 trees uniformly distributed across diameter classes at ages 8, 10, 12, 14, 15, 17, 19, and 20. Across all ages, replicates and spacings the observations provided for the calculation of 192 yield values and 168 growth values.

The site index (base age 25) for the 4 study plots averaged 80 feet and ranged from 5 to 83 feet. Site index values for each plot were obtained from the average height of dominant and codominant trees at age 20 using the same site index equation used for the USFS study. Square foot basal areas per acre at age 8 varied from a minimum of 46 on the widest spacing to a maximum of 122 on the narrowest. At age 20, square foot basal areas per acre ranged from a minimum of 174 on the widest spacing to a maximum of 210 on the narrowest spacing.

Combined, the USFS study and the MSU study produced a total of 815 yield and 467 growth observations. Total tree inside bark cubic foot volume yields per acre were determined by first deriving an equation to estimate total tree height from DBH, stand age, average height of dominants and codominants, basal area per acre, and number of trees per acre. Plot volumes were then calculated by using predicted heights and observed DBH in the total tree volume equation:

$$V = .0059 + 0.0019543(DBH)^2H \qquad (1)$$

where, V is total tree cubic foot volume inside bark (ib), H is the total tree height in feet and DBH is in inches. The total tree volume equation was derived from 298 sample trees from another study of the yield of old-field loblolly pine plantations[5/].

The total tree height prediction equation developed from the data is:

$$\ln(H) = \ln(C_0) + C_1/DBH \qquad (2)$$

where

$C_0 = \bar{H}[1 + a_1EXP[a_2(Q/\bar{H})^{a_3}]]$,

$C_1 = [\ln(\bar{\bar{H}}) - \ln(C_0)]Q$,

$\bar{\bar{H}} = \bar{H}EXP[b_1\bar{H}^{b_2}/(b_3 + Q)^{b_4}]$,

H = total tree height in feet,

$\bar{H}$ = average height of dominant and codominant trees in feet,

Q = quadratic mean DBH of stand in inches,

ln = natural logarithm,

[3/] The study was installed in 1959 and has been subsequently maintained by Dr. George L. Switzer. The authors deeply appreciate Dr. Switzer permitting the use of these data for the study.

[4/] Now the John W. Starr Memorial Forest.

[5/] Franklin, R. D. 1978. Predicted stand structure and yield of unthinned loblolly pine plantation in the central Gulf coastal Plain. Unpublished thesis. Mississippi State University, Department of Forestry.

EXP = base of natural logarithm, and

$_i$'s, b_i's = parameters to be estimated from the data.

Equation 2 was derived by fitting the ogarithm of height reciprocal of DBH regression odel, $\ln(H) = \ln(C_0) + C_1/DBH$, to the (DBH, H) airs of each plot. Nonlinear regression quations were then found to predict C_0 and $\bar{\bar{H}}$ = $_0$EXP(C_1/Q) from the predictor variables Q and .

$$C_0 = \bar{H}[1 + a_1 EXP[a_2(Q/\bar{H})^{a_3}]], \qquad (3)$$

$$\bar{\bar{H}} = \bar{H}EXP[b_1\bar{H}^{b_2}/(b_3 + Q)^{b_4}] \qquad (4)$$

n equation for predicting C_1 was obtained by quating equation 4 to C_0EXP(C_1/Q) and solving or C_1.

$$C_1 = [\ln(\bar{\bar{H}}) - \ln(C_0)]Q. \qquad (5)$$

t should be noted that $\bar{\bar{H}}$ is the predicted eight of a tree having a diameter equal to the adratic mean diameter, Q. It should also be oted that $\bar{H}$ is defined here as the average eight of the trees of maximum DBH. Conversion om the usual definition of dominant height $_d$) can be made using:

$$\bar{H} = 1.11238H_d e^{-.000902H_d} \qquad (6)$$

e estimated coefficients for the height efining function were: a_1 = 0.30145, a_2 = .7.24529, a_3 = 2.20476; b_1 = -0.099223, b_2 = 28403, b_3 = 1.62, and b_4 = 2.36952. The gressions were based on 623 pairs and the andard errors of prediction for C_0 and $\bar{\bar{H}}$ were 8, and 1.09 feet, respectively.

The site index guide curve prepared from e 623 stand age (A), $\bar{H}$ pairs is

$$A\ln(\bar{H}) = -10.290 + 4.750A \qquad (7)$$

e standard error of prediction was 3.60. The pendent variable of the equation is written as e times the logarithm of dominant height to dicate the equation was weighted by age.

METHODS

The method employed in the past for deling unthinned stand diameter distributions s been to (1) obtain sufficient temporary plot ta balanced by age, site and density classes,) assume a family of statistical probability stributions, (3) estimate the parameters of e assumed probability model for each plot ing maximum likelihood, moment, or least square procedures, and (4) apply regression analysis to calculate prediction equations for the parameters using age, site index (dominant height), and number of surviving trees, along with an equation to predict surviving trees. A simple system results, in which expected frequencies, volumes, and multiple products by diameter class are readily obtainable.

Conceptually, a similar procedure could be employed for estimating diameter distributions of thinned stands from permanent plot data. Exclusive use of the modeling method would most likely require separate parameter estimating equations for differing types of thinnings at differing levels, as well as a complex of equations to grow stands following thinning. Further, maintenance of logic between before, after, and future stand tables would at best be difficult, if not impossible.

Another approach recently proposed by Matney and Sullivan (1982) and Hynick and Moser (1982), leads to a highly flexible framework to model the distribution of thinned and unthinned stands. In the method, part of the distribution parameters are estimated by regression procedures and others are recovered so the resulting distribution integrates to stand level estimates such as basal area, volume, and arithmetic mean diameter. The procedure thus, primarily requires equations for estimating stand level variables for thinned and unthinned stands, plus procedures for recovering distribution parameters. Because of this, it is possible, through a unified set of procedures, to simulate a wide variety of different types and levels of thinning.

The system described herein for thinned and unthinned loblolly pine plantations is based on recovering the parameters of the three parameter Weibull distributions (equation 12) and truncated three parameter Weibull distributions to intergrate to estimated basal area per acre and total cubic foot volume (ib) per acre. The location parameter (a) and truncation parameters of the Weibull distributions are determined by regression procedures and characteristics of a given thinning method. The scale (b) and shape (c) parameter are obtained by the recovery constraints. Although the Weibull distribution is assumed here, the method extends readily to other distribution forms. The Weibull distribution was chosen because of its demonstrated flexibility for describing unthinned stand diameter distributions (Bailey and Dell 1973; and Schreuder et. al. 1979) and its potential use as a framework for modeling thinned stands.

We will first describe the stand level equations prepared from the data for estimating per acre values of surviving trees, total tree cubic foot volume (ib), and basal area. An overview of procedures for applying the recovery method to simulate diameter distributions of thinned stands will then be given. The exact solution methods used to recover the parameters cannot be explained with any details here because of space limitations. These details are to be in an unpublished report that should be available for distribution in January, 1983. The conversational FORTRAN program from these results also contains descriptions of solution techniques. Machine readable copies of the program can be obtained from the authors on request.

Stand Level Equations

Mortality

The equation that provided the most logical projection of number of trees dying per acre is:

$$Y = 0.0005923(A_1 - A_0)^{1.1973}(N_0/B_0)^{1.884}\bar{H}_0^{1.1185}$$
$$EXP(0.01588B_0 + 0.058861B_0/A_0$$
$$- 4.4390/A_0) \qquad (8)$$
$$N = 467,\ R^2 = NA,\ Sy.x = 23.49.$$

where

$Y = N_0 - N_1$ = number of trees dying per acre in time interval $A_1 - A_0$,

N_0 = initial number of trees per acre,

N_1 = projected numbers of trees per acre = $N_0 - Y$,

B_0 = initial basal area per acre in square feet,

A_0 = initial age,

A_1 = projection age, and

$\bar{H}_0$ = average height of dominant and codominant trees in feet at A_0.

The N, R^2, and Sy.x under the above equation denote the number of observations, coefficient of determination when applicable, and the standard error of prediction, respectively. This convention will be followed throughout the remainder of the paper.

Other equations fitted to the data accounted for more of the variation in N_1, but were more complex and did not behave as well as equation 8 within and outside the range of the data.

Basal Area

On the high density unthinned plots, stand basal areas peaked between the ages of 15 and 20 and thereafter declined. Attempts to find a single equation that would adequately approximate this observed trend did not produce an equation that was considered sufficie precise. An alternative approach was sought. The method that proved to yield best projection of basal area was to deter an equation for projecting the mean basal per tree and multiply by projected numbe trees per acre to calculate projected b area. The regression equation calculated this purpose is:

$$\bar{B}_1 = \bar{B}_0 + (A_1 - A_0)W$$
$$W = 6.5534\bar{B}_0^{1.1851}\bar{H}^{0.8868}A_0^{-1.4198}EXP(-0.373$$
$$B_0^{0.37649} - 2.1124\bar{B}_0^{0.33009})$$
$$N = 467,\ R^2 = NA,\ Sy.x = 0.005.$$

An estimate of initial mean basal area tree for stands not having been previou thinned can be obtained using the equati

$$\bar{B} = 0.46098\bar{N}^{0.34442}EXP(-43.9103\bar{H}^{-1.25501})$$
$$N = 252,\ R^2 = 0.92,\ Sy.x = 0.010.$$

The bar is used to denote the means of respective quantities.

Observed mean tree basal area should used for stands that have been previou thinned, since the relationship between $\bar{B}$ an and $\bar{H}$ are considerably altered from t expected for an unthinned stand.

Volume

The following equation was selected as best among the numerous equations evaluated estimating total tree inside bark cubic f volume per acre.

$$V = N[0.0059 + 0.001977Q^{1.99381}C_0^{1.00006}EXP$$
$$(0.95616C_1/Q - 0.00178C_0/A)]$$
$$N = 815,\ R^2 = NA,\ Sy.x = 1.01.$$

where

V = total tree cubic foot volume (ib) p acre,

N = number of trees per acre,

C_0 = the intercept coefficient of height - DBH curve (equation 2),

C_1 = The slope coefficient of the height DBH curve (equation 2), and

A = stand age.

The term .0059 in the above equation is intercept term from the true volume equatio (equation 1) and was hence not estimated the equation was fitted to the data.

Diameter Distributions

nitial Evaluation

Evaluation of the change in diameter istribution due to time or method of thinning equires the determination of an initial iameter distribution. This section describes a echnique for calculating three parameter eibull distributions so that the generated istribution integrates to predicted or known alues of cubic foot volume and square feet of asal area per acre. In subsequent sections rocedures are given for projecting diameter stributions and simulating row and selection hinnings.

The three Weibull distributions as applied diameter distribution data is:

$$f(x) = cb^{-1}[(x - a)/b]^{c-1} e^{-[(x - a)/b]^{c}}, \qquad a \le x < \infty$$

$$= 0, \qquad \text{elsewhere}, \qquad (12)$$

ere, a, b, and c > 0 are parameters, e is the se of the natural logarithm, and X is a random riable representing DBH.

When the distribution parameters (a, b, and are known for a stand having N* trees per re, the stand's basal area (B*) per acre can calculated as:

$$= E[KN^*(X^2)] = KN^*cb^{-1}\int_a^{\infty}[x]^2[(x - a)/b]^{c-1} e^{-[(x - a)/b]^{c}}dx = (K)N^*[a^2 + 2ab\Gamma(1 + 1/c) + b^2\Gamma(1 + 2/c)]. \qquad (13)$$

EX) denotes the statistical expectation of the random variable X, and Γ denotes the gamma function. The value of K is $\pi/576$ if B* is epressed in square feet per acre. Further, if the functional relation between individual tree volume and DBH is known, total volume (ib) per are can be estimated as:

$$V = E[N^*V^*(X)] = N^*cb^{-1}\int_a^{\infty}V^*(x)[(x - a)/b]^{c-1} e^{-[(x - a)/b]^{c}}dx \qquad (14)$$

where V*(X) is a function for computing individual tree volume for a given DBH of X.

Now, if for a particular stand, V*, B*, N*, and V*(x) are replaced by their observed or predicted values, equations 13 and 14 are readily solved for the b and c parameters of the generating Weibull distribution given the "a" parameter. The estimates of V*, B*, and N* for the stands in this study can be obtained by substituting the height prediction equation derived (equation 2) for H in the assumed volume equation. That is:

$$V^*(x) = \alpha + \beta x^2 C_0 EXP(C_1/x) \qquad (15)$$

where C_0 and C_1 are estimated by equations 2 and 5 respectively, and α and β are the intercept and slope coefficients of the assumed volume equation respectively.

To determine a suitable means of fixing the "a" parameter, the values of "a" that maximized the likelihood function under the basal area and volume constraints were found for each stand condition. Regression analysis of these "best" estimates of "a" indicated that a good procedure for fixing the "a" parameter is to set it equal to one-half the minimum stand diameter.

In stands that have not been thinned the minimum stand diameter can be predicted using the equations:

$$DMAX = Q(2.1285 - 0.35555Q - 3.154Q/\bar{H}) \qquad (16)$$

$N = 623$, $R^2 = 0.95$, $Sy.x = 0.64$

$$DMIN = DMAX - Q(1.3512 - 0.8121Q - 0.9340Q/\bar{H} + 0.0988\bar{H}/A) \qquad (17)$$

$N = 623$, $R^2 = 0.90$, $Sy.x = 0.75$.

where

DMIN = minimum stand DBH in inches, and

DMAX = maximum stand DBH in inches.

The observed minimum stand diameter should be used for stands that have been previously thinned. Thinning a stand disturbs the natural development of the stand and hence makes the prediction of minimum stand diameter for a given stand condition very suspect.

The degree of correspondence between the actual and predicted diameter distributions for a stand that has a Weibull distribution will depend on the closeness of the estimates of V*, N*, B*, and V*(X) to their true values. To assess the maximum potential of the approach for describing the diameter distributions in this study, X^2 goodness of fit tests were performed using stand tables calculated from observed V, N, B, and V(X)[6/]. These tests resulted in rejection of the hypothesis that diameter distribution is from a Weibull distribution in 10 of the 815 cases at the 0.01 level. Since the 10 rejections were close to the theoretical number of six expected rejections, it was concluded that the Weibull probability distribution would provide adequate approximations of the diameter distributions observed in this study.

Thinned

A knowledge of the effect of thinning method on the distribution of diameter, at the time of thinning and at subsequent points in time is necessary. The distribution following thinning is determined by the type and level of thinning. Distribution parameters of the thinned stand that are specified by the nature of the thinning are first ascertained. Diameter distribution recovery is then applied, if necessary, to obtain any remaining parameters from calculated residual stand basal area, number of trees, and/or volume.

Once the parameters of the thinned stands distribution have been determined, along with the stand's basal area and number of trees, the method given in the next section for obtaining a projected stand can be applied to estimate the diameter distribution of the stand at future points in time. Comparison of these estimates with those for the unthinned stand at the same point in time, allows for the evaluation of the benefit of the level and type of thinning.

The details for simulating several types of thinnings are given in the remainder of this section. Without loss of generality it will be assumed that the distribution prior to thinning is a three parameter Weibull. Distributions that have been truncated or partioned by previous thinning can be handled by minor modification (change of integration limits).

In determining the parameters of the distribution of the residual stand, it is necessary to restrict the solution space so that the recovered distribution for the residual stand does not have diameter classes with more trees than the unthinned stand. requirement reduces to the mathema constraint:

$$N_0 f_0(x) \geq N_1 f_1(x) \qquad 18$$

for all x having positive probability in unthinned stand, where N_0 and N_1 are the n of trees per unit area before and af thinning, respectively; and f_0 and f_1 are stand's diameter distributions before and thinning, respectively.

Row thinnings are the easiest to simu The expected percentage of basal area, numb trees, and volume removed is equal to percentage of rows removed. Hence, the We parameters of the thinned stand are equa Weibull parameters of the unthinned s Constraint 18 is consequently satisfied wi checking.

Classical thinnings from below are cha terized by a progressive reduction in proportion of trees removed in succes diameter classes. In effect the results of are an increase in basal area and volume tree. The corresponding effect on the resi stand diameter distribution is to shift modal DBH class to the right and compress distribution in relation to the initial distribution.

Many solutions for the Weibull parame of the residual stand (a_1, b_1, c_1) under recovery constraint defined by equations 13 14 and the logical constraint defined equation 18 exist. Unique solutions for b_1 c_1, however, exist for each given a_1 in range of solutions of a_1 satisfying the reco and logical constraints. Maximum likeli estimates for a_1 under the defined constra for stand's thinning from below resulted in following equation for estimating a_1:

$$a_1 = a' + .0025(a'' - a')P_q$$

where a' is the lower solution bound for a" is the upper solution bound for a_1, and is the percentage increase in the root quadra mean diameter produced by the thinning. parameters b_1 and c_1 are the values that sati the recovery constraints given a_1.

In order to characterize the select thinnings of this type, a regression equat was developed to predict the number of resid trees from initial basal area and number trees, and residual basal area.

[6/] The χ^2 test is not valid unless maximum likelihood estimates of distributions are used. However, comparison of maximum likelihood estimates and the moment estimators calculated from equation 10 and 11 showed they were nearly the same. Here the χ^2 should be indicative of the results that would have been realized had the maximum likelihood estimates been used. The mean difference between the maximum likelihood and the moment estimates for b and c were 0.001 and 0.05, respectively. The means of the absolute differences for b and c were 0.002 and 0.01, respectively.

$$_1 = N_0[1 - (1 - B_1/B_0)^{0.95958}]^{0.819344} \qquad (20)$$

$N = 200$, $R^2 = 0.95$, Sy.x = 10.2.

here

B_0 = basal area in the initial stand,

N_0 = number of trees in the initial stand,

N_1 = number of trees in the residual stand, and,

B_1 = basal area in the residual stand.

he equation is useful for solving for the verage number of trees to leave to obtain a pecified residual basal area or the average mount of basal area to leave (B_1) for thinning o a specified number of residual trees. For he case of thinning to a specified residual asal area (B_1), the number of trees to leave is iven directly by equation 19. The etermination of the basal area to leave in the esidual stand when it is thinned to a specified umber of trees (N_1) is obtained by solving quation 20 for B_1.

$$ = B_0[1 - (1 - N_1/N_0)^{1.2205}]^{1.0421} \qquad (21)$$

Severe thinning from below results in the emoval of all trees below some diameter with ecreasing removals by class above the diameter. imulating this effect requires the use of a runcated Weibull distribution with truncation rameter equal to the threshold diameter. pecifically, the initial stand's basal area, umber of trees, and volume are reduced by the asal area (B_R), number of trees (N_R), and olume (V_R) removed below the truncation rameter (a_t). The truncated distribution is en formed, and the procedures described eviously for the classical selection are then plied to approximate the thinning above the uncation parameter.

N_R, B_R, and V_R are defined by the lations:

$$N_R = N_0 \int_0^{a_t} f_0(x)\,dx = N_0 F_0(a_t) \qquad (22)$$

$$B_R = \pi N_0 [\int_0^{a_t} x^2 f_0(x)\,dx]/576 \qquad (23)$$

$$V_R = N_0[\alpha + \beta \int_0^{a_t} x^2 H(x) f_0(x)\,dx] \qquad (24)$$

e numbers of trees, basal area, and volume maining above the a_t are thus $N = N_0 - N_R$, $B = B_0 - B_R$ and $V = V_0 - V_R$, respectively. The distribution of N, B, and V is then the truncated Weibull distribution.

$$f(x) = f_0(x)/[1 - F_0(a_t)] \qquad ,a_t \leq x < \infty$$

$$= 0 \qquad ,\text{elsewhere} \qquad (25)$$

with cumulative distribution function.

$$F(x) = 0 \qquad ,a \leq x < a_t$$

$$F(x) = F_0(X)/[1 - F_0(a_t)] \qquad ,a_t \leq x < \infty \qquad (26)$$

Denoting the number of trees, basal area and volume by N_1, B_1, and V_1, respectively, remaining after thinning above the truncation diameter, the recovery contraints become:

$$B_1 = \pi N_1 [\int_{a_t}^{\infty} x^2 f_1(x)\,dx]/576 \qquad (27)$$

$$V_1 = N_1[\alpha + \beta \int_{a_t}^{\infty} x^2 H(x) f_1(x)\,dx] \qquad (28)$$

$$Nf(x) \geq N_1 f_1(x) \qquad ,a_t \leq x < \infty \qquad (29)$$

where $f_1(x)$ denotes the final residual stand diameter distribution.

While the number of cases of thinning resulting in truncated residual stands, were insufficient to develop a projection equation for the a, experience with simulating the case indicates reasonable results can be obtained using equation 19. The truncation parameter is assumed to be known.

Operational thinnings from below often do not remove any trees below some minimum merchantability diameter. In this case, the initial distribution can be considered to be the weighted sum of two distributions. The distribution $f_b(x)$ of trees below the minimum diameter (a_t) and the distribution $f_a(x)$ of trees above the minimum diameter.

$$f_0(x) = [N_b f_b(x) + N_a f_a(x)]/N_0 \qquad (30)$$

where

$N_a = N_0 F_0(a_t)$ is the number of trees below the minimum merchantable DBH.

$N_b = N_0[1 - F_0(a_t)]$ = the number of trees above the minimum merchantable DBH, and

$f_b(x) = f_0(x)/F_0(a_t)$

$f_a(x) = f_0(x)/[1 - F_0(a_t)]$, and

$N_0 = N_a + N_b$

The distribution $f_b(x)$ is a right truncated Weibull, and $f_a(x)$ is a left truncated Weibull. Hence, by convention $f_b(x) = 0$ for $x \geq a_t$ and $f_a(x) = 0$ for $x \leq a_t$.

Treating $f_a(x)$ as a separate distribution, the distribution of the resdual stand above the diameter a_t can be obtained from the constraint.

$$B_1^a = \pi N_1^a [\int_{a_t}^{\infty} x^2 f_a^1(x)dx]/576 \qquad (31)$$

$$V_1^a = N_1^a [\alpha + \beta \int_{a_t}^{\infty} x^2 H(x) f_a^1(x)dx] \qquad (32)$$

$$N_a f_a(x) \geq N_a^1 f_a^1(x) \qquad ,a_t \leq x < \infty \qquad (33)$$

The distribution following thinning is thus:

$$f_1(x) = [N_b f_b(x) + N_a^1 f_a^1(x)]/N_1 \qquad (34)$$

where $N_1 = N_b + N_a^1$. The residual stand has a basal area of $B_0^b + B_a^1$ and volume of $V_0^b + V_1^a$ where

$$B_0^b = \pi N_b [\int_{a_t}^{\infty} x^2 f_b(x)dx]/576 \qquad (35)$$

$$V_0^b = N_b [\alpha + \beta \int_{a_t}^{\infty} x^2 H(x) f_b(x)dx] \qquad (36)$$

Operational thinnings from below which do not remove trees below some diameter but either cut to some threshold diameter above the diameter or are severe enough to remove all trees to some DBH results in a residual stand with a hole in its diameter distribution. Before thinning the stand's distribution can be partioned into three pieces: (1) the distribution $f_b(x)$ by N_b trees below the minimum merchantable diameter $[(DBH(a_t^b)]$, (2) the distribution $f_m(x)$ of trees between a_t^b and another $[DBH(a_t^a)]$, $a_t^b \leq a_t^a$ that will be totally removed in the thinning, and (3) the distribution $f_a(x)$ of N_a trees above a_t^b. That is,

$$f_0(x) = [N_b f_b(x) + N_m f_m(x) + N_a f_a(x)]/N_C \qquad (37)$$

The function $f_b(x)$ is a right truncated Weibull defined by

$$f_b(x) = f_0(x)/F_0(a_t^b) \qquad ,a \leq x \leq a_t^b$$

$$= 0 \qquad ,\text{elsewhere} \qquad (38)$$

$f_m(x)$ is a left and right truncated We defined by

$$f_m(x) = f_0(x)/[F_0(a_t^a) - F_0(a_t^b)], \quad a_t^b < x \leq$$

$$= 0 \qquad ,\text{elsewhere}$$

and $f_a(x)$ is a left truncated Weibull defin

$$f_a(x) = f_0(x)/[1 - F_0(a_t^a)] \qquad ,a_t^a < x < \infty$$

$$= 0 \qquad ,\text{elsewhere}$$

Denoting the number of trees, basal and volume remaining after thinning of distribution $f_a(x)$ by N_a^1, B_a^1, and respectively, and the residual distributio $f_a^1(x)$, the distribution of the residual star

$$f_1(x) = [N_b f_b(x) + N_a^1 f_a^1(x)]/N_1$$

where $N_1 = N_b + N_a^1$. The basal area and vc of the residual stand is $B_1 = B_0^b + B_1^a$ $V_1 = V_0^b + V_1^a$.

Combination row and selective thinnings readily simulated by first applying the thinning and then the selective thinn

Projected

After calculating an initial diam distribution, future distributions are neede specified points in time. Equations 6, 7, a provide a means of estimating surviving t per acre, square feet of basal area, and t cubic foot volume per acre, respectiv Equation 2 defines the height--DBH curve projected stands. Projection intervals of less years should be used since remeasurements were mostly made on inter less than 5 years.

In determining future diame distributions that are compatible with projec volume and basal area, it is desirable to the DBH projection equation.

$$X_1 = a_0 + b_0[W_0 + W_1[(X_0 - a_0)/b_0]^{W_2}]$$

where

X_1 = DBH at time A_1 of a tree of X_0 at time A_0,

X_0 = initial DBH,

a_0, b_0, c_0 = parameters of the Weib distribution at time A_0, and

W_0, W_1, W_2 = coefficients to be determined so that the distribution of the projected stand is compatible in basal area and volume.

The DBH projection equation can be interpreted as giving the amount that a tree of given diameter will shift in time. This shift can be due to either tree growth or tree death. Bailey (1980) discusses the diameter growth equation along with others and discusses their interpretation. Matney, Dell, and Switzer in an unpublished report, provide a method which under certain assumptions yields unbiased estimates of average diameter growth.

To explain further, suppose W_0, W_1, and W_2 ave been determined for a projection interval s outlined above. The distribution of the rojected stand can be shown to be Weibully istributed with "a" parameter, of $a_1 = a_0 +$ $_0W_0$, "b" parameter, of $b_1 = W_1b_0$, and "c" arameter, of $c_1 = c_0/W_2$ (Bailey 1980). That is he distribution of X_1 is Weibully distributed. eft and right truncated Weibulls are also egenerated by the transformation. A left runcated Weibull has "a", "b", and "c" arameters as given above and a left truncation arameter of

$$^1_L = a_0 + b_0[W_0 + W_1[(a^0_L - a_0)/b_0]^{W_2}]. \qquad (43)$$

imilarly a right truncated distribution has a ight truncation parameter of

$$^1_R = a_0 + b_0[W_0 + W_1[(a^0_R - a_0)/b_0]^{W_2}]. \qquad (44)$$

Determinations of W_0 for each of the 467 rowth periods that maximized the likelihood unctions of the projected stand under the arameter recovery constraints were made to find means of predicting W_0. That is, the values W_0 were found so that when W_1 and W_2 were alculated to satisfy the recovery constraints e constrained likelihood function was aximized. Regression analysis of W_0 on initial tand condition and changes in initial stand onditions resulted in the equation,

$$W_0 = 0.25(Q_1 - Q_0)/b_0 \qquad (45)$$

ere

Q_0 = initial stand root quadratic mean diameter, and

Q_1 = projected stand root quadratic mean diameter.

The prediction equation for W_0 above applies only to the case where the distribution following thinning is a three parameter Weibull. Application of the result to the more complex simulation cases produce reasonable results.

CONCLUSION

Diameter distribution recovery techniques are a highly flexible tool for simulating distributions of thinned stands in time. The power of the method permits simulation of observable conditions outside the range of available data. In the development of our computer model for thinned loblolly pine plantations, the user is permitted to simulate types of thinnings that are far outside the data range. Continuous experimentation with the model has however always indicated that the results obtained are reasonable for these cases. Verification against real data however is badly needed for cases simulated which are outside the data base.

Extensive comparison back against the conditions represented in the data base demonstrate close agreement between observed and predicted. As might be expected agreement is not as close as when observed values of N*, V*, B*, and V*(X) are used to calculate stand tables. Even so, for practical purposes the predicted stand tables were in correspondence with the observed.

LITERATURE CITED

Bailey, R. L.
1980. Individual tree growth derived from diameter distribution methods. For. Sci. 26:626-632.

Bailey, R. L. and T. R. Dell.
1973. Quantifying diameter distributions with the Weibull function. For. Sci. 19:97-104.

Clutter, J. L. and F. A. Bennett.
1965. Diameter distributions in old-field slash pine plantations. Georgia For. Res. Counc. Rep. 13, 9 p.

Dell, T. R., D. P. Feducia, T. E. Campbell, W. F. Mann, Jr., and B. H. Polmer.
1979. Yields of unthinned slash pine plantations on cutover sites in the West Gulf Region. USDA For. Serv. Res. Paper SO-147, 84 p.

Feduccia, D. P., T. R. Dell, W. F. Mann, Jr., T. E. Campbell, and B. H. Polmer.
1979. Yields of unthinned loblolly pine plantations on cutover sites in the West Gulf Region. USDA For. Serv. Res. Paper SO-148, 88 p.

Lenhart, J. D.
1971. Site index curves for old-field loblolly pine plantations in the interior West Gulf Coastal Plain. Texas For. Paper 8. 4 p.

Lohrey, R. E. and R. L. Bailey.
1977. Yield tables and stand structure for unthinned longleaf pine plantations in Louisiana and Texas. USDA For. Serv. Res. Paper SO-133, 53 p.

Hyink, D. M. and J. W. Moser, Jr.
1981. A generalized framework for projecting forest yield and stand structure using diameter distribution. Accepted for publication in Forest Science, Reference #2844.

Matney, T. G. and A. D. Sullivan.
1982. Compatible stand and stock tables for thinned and unthinned loblolly pine stands. For. Sci. 28:161-171.

Matney, T. G., T. R. Dell, and G. L. Swi r.
Obtaining tree diameter growth and sur al probability from diameter distribu n. Submitted for publication in Forest Sci e.

Schreuder, H. T., W. L. Hafley, and F A. Bennett.
1979. Yield prediction for unthinned nat al slash pine plantations. For. Sci. 25:2 0.

Smalley, G. W. and R. L. Bai y.
1974a. Yield tables and stand structure or loblolly pine plantations in Tennes e, Alabama, and Georgia highlands. USDA Fo st Serv. Res. Paper SO-96, 81 p.

Smalley, G. W. and R. L. Bai y.
1974b. Yield tables and stand structure or shortleaf pine plantations in Tennes e, Alabama, and Georgia highlands. USDA Fo st Serv. Res. Paper SO-97. 57 p.

A SEGMENTED DIAMETER DISTRIBUTION METHOD FOR MODELING THINNED STANDS[1/]

Quang V. Cao[2/]

Abstract.--A flexible method to approximate diameter distributions in forest stands was developed. Functions in the form of a modified Weibull cumulative distribution function (cdf) were joined together to form a segmented cdf, which was defined by five percentile points (the minimum, median, and maximum diameters, and the 25th and 75th percentiles). Further, a method for modeling growth and yield of thinned plantations was developed. The segmented cdf, employed to characterize stand diameter distributions, was searched for to insure that the resulting total basal area and average dbh estimates were identical to those predicted from stand variables using regression techniques. Stand and stock tables can be generated for present and/or future stands.

INTRODUCTION

Yield models based on diameter distributions have been used on unthinned plantations. The probability density functions (pdf's) employed in these models vary from the beta pdf ennett and Clutter 1968) to the Weibull function (Smalley and Bailey 1974). Growth and yield models on thinned plantations have been recently developed using the Weibull pdf (ailey *et al*. 1981, Matney and Sullivan 1982, (o *et al*. 1982).

In some cases in thinned stands, the empirical diameter distributions can be irregular, and unimodal distributions (e.g. beta or Weibull pdf) may not be adequate to describe these data. In this study a more flexible approach was developed in which functions in the form of a modified Weibull cumulative distribution function (cdf) were joined together to form a segmented cdf. A method for modeling growth and yield of thinned plantations using the segmented cdf will be presented.

SEGMENTED CUMULATIVE DISTRIBUTION FUNCTION

Suppose X is a diameter random variable. A total of five percentile points were used to determine the cdf:

$$x_1 = \text{Dmin},\ x_2 = \text{D.25},\ x_3 = \text{Dmed},$$

$$x_4 = \text{D.75},\ x_5 = \text{Dmax}.$$

where Dmin = minimum dbh,
Dmed = median dbh,
Dmax = maximum dbh,
D.25 = the 25th percentile for dbh where $\Pr(\text{dbh} \leq \text{D.25}) = .25$,
D.75 = the 75th percentile for dbh.

The x_j's are referred to as join points or percentile points in this paper. The cumulative probability p_j's corresponding to the x_j's are given by:

$$p_j = \Pr(X \leq x_j);\ j = 1,2,\ldots,5.$$

It follows that $p_1=0$ and $p_5=1$. A segmented cdf F(x) is defined here as

$$F(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & x \leq x_1, \\ F_1(x), & x_1 \leq x \leq x_2, \\ F_2(x), & x_2 \leq x \leq x_3, \\ F_3(x), & x_3 \leq x \leq x_4, \\ F_4(x), & x_4 \leq x \leq x_5, \\ 1, & x_5 \leq x. \end{cases}$$

[1/] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2/] The author is Assistant Professor, School of Forestry and Wildlife Management, Louisiana State University, Baton Rouge, L 70803.

In this study, a modified form of the Weibull cdf was used for each segment:

$$F_j(x) = e_j\left\{1 - d_j \exp[-((x-a_j)/b_j)^{c_j}]\right\}$$

$$\text{for } x_j \leqslant x \leqslant x_{j+1};\ j = 1,2,3,4.$$

$F_j(x)$ has to satisfy the following conditions:

1. F(x) must be continuous at the join points (x_j's), or:

$$F_j(x_{j+1}) = F_{j+1}(x_{j+1}) = p_{j+1};\ j=1,2,3,4.$$

2. f(x), which is the derivative of F(x) with respect to x, must be continuous at the join points:

$$f_j(x_{j+1}) = f_{j+1}(x_{j+1});\quad j=1,2,3,4.$$

Condition (2) ensures that F(x) is smooth and the corresponding pdf, f(x), continuous at the join points. Details of the procedure for computing the coefficients for each segment were described by Cao (1981).

When $d_j = e_j = 1$, F_j is a segment of a Weibull cdf. The parameters of the segmented cdf are actually the five percentile points since a_j, b_j, c_j, d_j, and e_j can be computed from the x_j's and p_j's.

A MODEL FOR THINNED STANDS

A growth and yield model based on the segmented cdf was developed using data from the loblolly pine (Pinus taeda L.) mutual competition study in the Hill Farm Experiment Station, H er, Louisiana.3/ Plots of the segmented dist u- tions that approximate observed diameter di i- butions are shown in figure 1.

Prediction of the Present Stand

The minimum, median, maximum, and av ge dbh's can be predicted from stand variables e, site quality, basal area and number of trees er acre). The remaining two percentiles (D.25 nd D.75) were computed using an iterative proc re to insure that the resulting segmented cdf ld produce the current stand basal area an an arithmetic mean dbh estimate identical to at predicted from the regression equation. us D.25 and D.75 were solutions of the foll ng system of two equations:

$$B = 0.005454\ N \int_{Dmin}^{Dmax} x^2\ f(x)\ dx \qquad ()$$

$$\bar{D} = \int_{Dmin}^{Dmax} x\ f(x)\ dx \qquad ()$$

where B = stand basal area in sq.ft./acre,

$\bar{D}$ = arithmetic mean dbh in inches f regression equation,

N = number of surviving trees per a ,

f(x) = dF(x)/dx = diameter pdf.

F(x) is the segmented cdf defined by D , D.25, Dmed, D.75, and Dmax.

3/ Data from this study were describe y Sprinz et al. (1979).

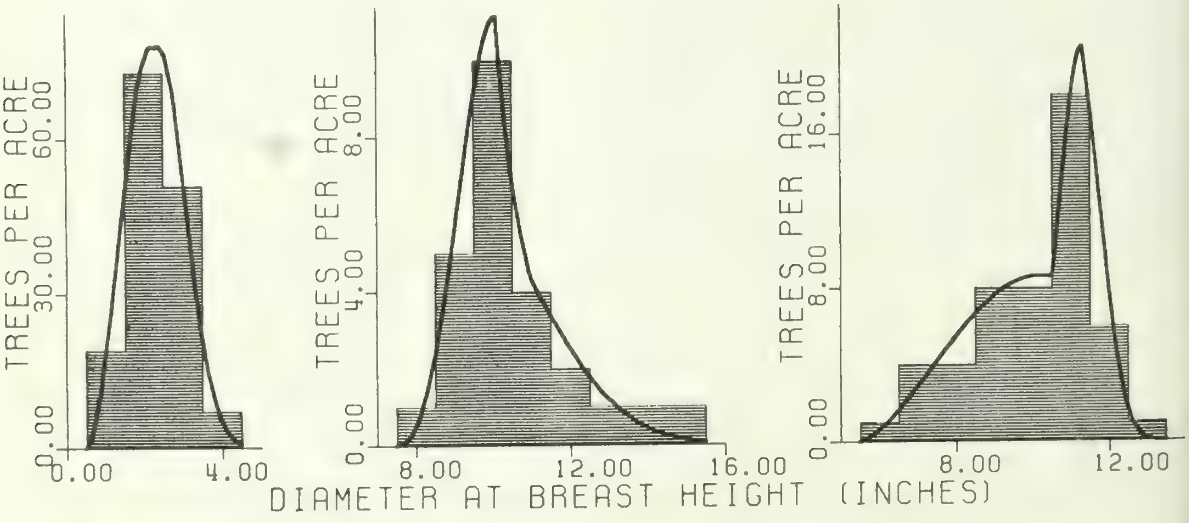


Figure 1.--Plots of the segmented distributions that approximate observed diameter distributions.

In most diameter distribution models, the sum of per-class volume and basal area over all diameter classes produces total stand volume and basal area. In a similar manner, equations (1) and (2) can be approximated by replacing the integral sign with a summation sign:

$$B = 0.005454\ N \sum_{x_i=\mathrm{Dmin}}^{\mathrm{Dmax}} x_i^2\ f_i \qquad (3)$$

$$D = \sum_{x_i=\mathrm{Dmin}}^{\mathrm{Dmax}} x_i\ f_i \qquad (4)$$

where x_i = midpoint of the ith dbh class,
f_i = proportion of trees in the ith dbh class.

Equations (3, 4) are used in place of quations (1, 2) to form a system of two non-inear equations and two unknowns, namely, D.25 nd D.75.

The five diameter percentiles determine a egmented cdf, and thus the number of trees per cre in each diameter class can be computed. ean total heights for trees of a given diameter re predicted from stand variables. Volumes for ach diameter class are computed using volume quations, and per acre yields are obtained by umming over diameter classes of interest.

Thinning

Since the stand table immediately before hinning is available, a variety of thinning ptions can be added to the model.

In row thinning, the diameter distribution s assumed to remain unchanged. Trees in all iameter classes are reduced by the same factor, hich is the specified proportion of trees emoved in thinning.

All trees having dbh below a certain diamter are removed in low thinning. This diameter imit can be either specified or computed from a pecified residual density (basal area or number f trees per acre). The diameter distribution of stand immediately after low thinning is runcated at the diameter limit.

Selection thinning can be simulated by ssuming that the proportion of trees removed in ach diameter class has a reverse J-shape when lotted against dbh, i.e., removal percent is igher for smaller trees.

In order to obtain a realistic operational emoval pattern, a combination of these thinning ptions may be appropriate. The procedure nvolves application of one thinning method after nother in a sequential manner.

Prediction of the Stand in the Future

Basal area and number of trees per acre of the stand at some age in the future can be projected from initial density. Given age, site quality, and density, stand and stock tables for the future stand can be provided using procedures similar to those in predicting the present stand.

Figure 2 presents the logics used in predicting the stand and stock table of the current and future stands.

SUMMARY

A method for modeling thinned stands was developed using the segmented diameter distribution approach. Stand and stock tables of the current stand and also of the stand in the future after thinning can be generated. This system will allow forest managers to evaluate different thinning regimes.

LITERATURE CITED

Bailey, R.L., N.C. Abernethy, and E.P. Jones, Jr. 1981. Diameter distribution models for repeatedly thinned slash pine plantations. p.115-126. In: Barnett, J.P. (Ed), Proc. of the First Biennial South. Silvic. Res. Conf.; Gen. Tech. Rep. SO-34.

Bennett, F.A. and J.L. Clutter. 1968. Multiple-product yield estimates for unthinned slash pine plantations -- pulpwood, sawtimber, gum. U.S. For. Serv. Res. Pap. SE-35, 21p.

Cao, Q.V. 1981. Empirical diameter distributions and predicted yields of thinned loblolly pine plantations. Ph. D. Dissertation, Va. Polytech. Inst. and State Univ., 100p.

Cao, Q.V., H.E. Burkhart, and R.C. Lemin, Jr. 1982. Diameter distributions and yields of thinned loblolly pine plantations. School of For. and Wildl. Res., Va. Polytech. Inst. and State Univ., FWS-1-82, 62p.

Matney, T.G. and A.D. Sullivan. 1982. Compatible stand and stock tables for thinned and unthinned loblolly pine stands. For. Sci. 28:161-171.

Smalley, G.W. and R.L. Bailey. 1974. Yield tables and stand structure for loblolly pine plantations in Tennessee, Alabama, and Georgia highlands. U.S. For. Serv. Pap. SO-96, 81p.

Sprinz, P., T. Clason, and D. Bower. 1979. Spacing and thinning effects on the growth and development of a loblolly pine plantation. p.1-42. In: Clason, T.R. (Ed.) For. Res. Rep. 1979. N. La. Hill Farm Expt. Sta., LSU.

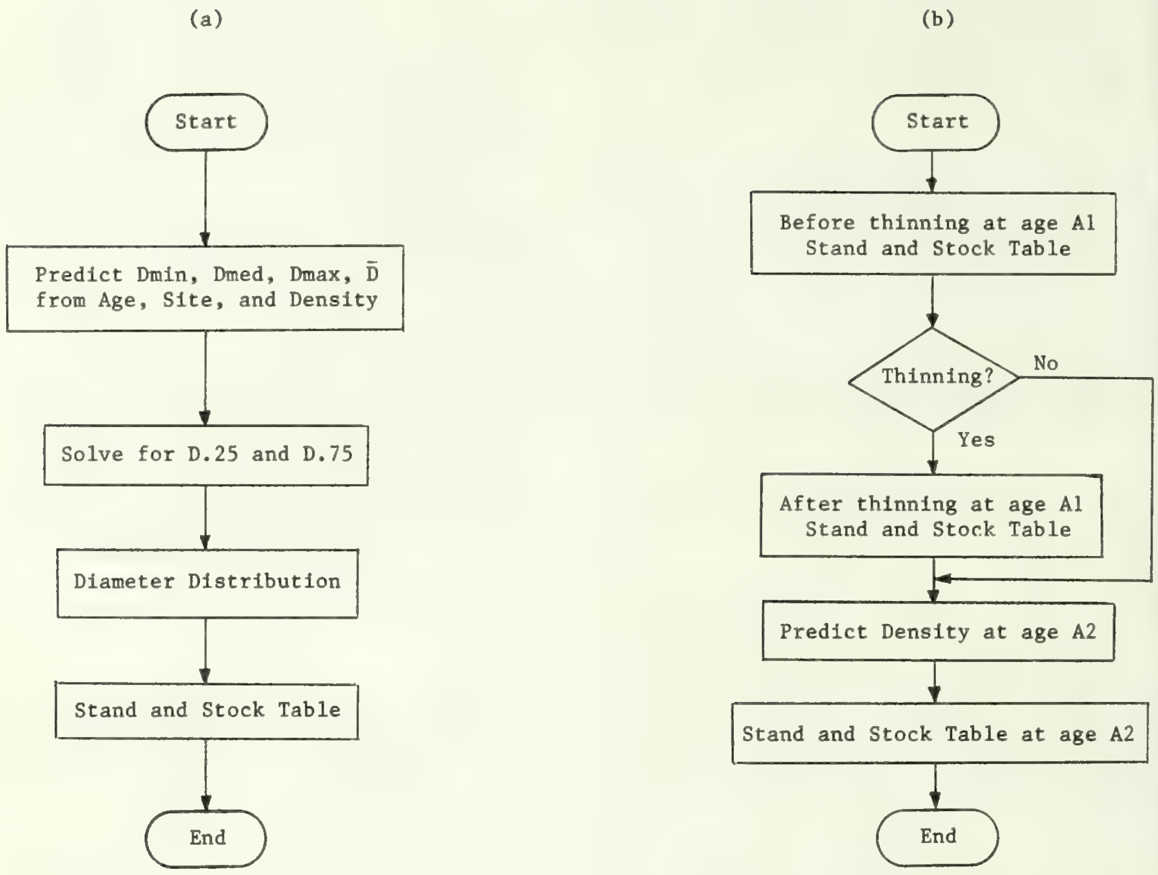

(a)
Start
Predict Dmin, Dmed, Dmax, $\bar{D}$ from Age, Site, and Density
Solve for D.25 and D.75
Diameter Distribution
Stand and Stock Table
End
(b)
Start
Before thinning at age A1 Stand and Stock Table
Thinning?
No
Yes
After thinning at age A1 Stand and Stock Table
Predict Density at age A2
Stand and Stock Table at age A2
End

Figure 2.--Logics used in predicting the current stand (a) and the future stand (b).

DENSITY EFFECTS ON HEIGHT GROWTH AND ITS IMPLICATIONS FOR SITE INDEX PREDICTION AND GROWTH PROJECTION[1]

F. Thomas Lloyd and Earle P. Jones, Jr.[2]

Abstract.--Four studies (two with loblolly and two with slash pine) show an effect of number of stems per acre on mean dominant and codominant height. One slash pine study averaged a 1-foot decrease in mean height at age 30 for each 100-tree increase in planting density over the range of 200 to 1200 seedlings per acre. Ignoring this density-height effect in a growth projection model developed from the same slash pine data resulted in over-estimating growth by as much as 46 percent.

INTRODUCTION

A long held tenet of our profession is that eight growth is not affected by stand densities nside the range encountered in properly managed tands. This doctrine provides the foundation for he site index (SI) model, which ignores effects f density on height and assumes that productivity an be estimated from height growth alone. The onsequence is an inability to separate effects of ite productivity and density on height growth.

The only way to break this circular entrapment f assumption is to make a rigorous test by applyng density treatments to plots so similar in opography, soil, and past use that they can be ssumed to have equal productive potential. Ranomized complete block (RCB) experiments that have lanting spacings as treatments would offer data o search for a density-height effect. The degree o which site productivity differences are sepaated from the effects of density on height growth s directly proportional to the uniformity of plots ithin blocks. Unfortunately, blocks in spacing tudies must be quite large and so plots are not ecessarily as uniform as we would like. Neverheless, lacking better data, we examined density-eight trends in four studies, two loblolly pine pacing studies, a slash pine precommercial thinning study, and a slash pine spacing study. The objective here is twofold; first, to verify or reaffirm (depending on your persuasion) the existence of a density-height effect using several independent studies, and second, to use the slash pine spacing data to measure the effect of the density-height relation on prediction accuracy for periodic volume increments from yield models that use SI as a predictor (or driving) variable.

EXAMPLES OF DENSITY-HEIGHT EFFECTS

Eighteenth-year measurements are available from an unpublished loblolly pine spacing study located on the Santee Experimental Forest, in Berkeley County, South Carolina. The study contains eight spacings consisting of 15x15, 11x11, 9x9, 7x7, 6x6, 5x5, 4x4, and 3x3 feet, replicated four times in 7-acre blocks. Mean total heights of the five tallest sample trees on each treatment plot are 56, 52, 58, 54, 53, 52, 49, and 45 feet, respectively. Although a trend of decreasing mean height with increasing planting density is apparent, we believe it is partly obscured by variation resulting from differences in soil type and drainage within blocks.

A second loblolly spacing study is on the Calhoun Experimental Forest on Piedmont soils near Union, South Carolina. It consists of four blocks, each with four spacings of 12x12, 10x10, 8x8, and 6x6 feet. Means of the five tallest sample trees from the 20-year measurements reported by Harms and Lloyd (1981) are 65, 63, 60, and 59 feet, respectively. A relationship of decreasing mean height with increasing planting density is also present in these data, and this effect is occurring over a more narrow density range than the first study.

---

[1] Paper presented at the Second Biennial outhern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, eorgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Authors are Research Foresters, USDA Forest ervice, Forestry Sciences Laboratory, Charleston, 29407, and Southern Forest Fire Laboratory, con, GA 31208, respectively.

From an RCB-designed, slash pine precommercial thinning study, Jones (1977) reported a linear relationship (R^2=0.903) of mean dominant and codominant height (H) over present number of trees at age 23. It might be argued that such an effect is expected from the wide density range in his experiment (279 to 5802 trees per acre at age 23), but a subset of these data with numbers of trees in the range of 279 to 2126 per acre produced a slope of -0.69 feet for each 100-tree increase on density and an R^2 of 0.858. This regression predicts a 4.2 foot decrease in mean H when density at age 23 is increased from 300 to 900 trees per acre.

The fourth study is with slash pine on the Holt Walton Experimental Forest, near Cordele, Georgia, in the middle Coastal Plain. It consists of two blocks planted at spacings of 15x15, 7.5x15, 10x10, 6x12, 8x8, 5x10, 6x8, and 6x6 feet. Table 1 presents the intercepts and slopes from linear regressions of mean H over number of planted seedlings (hundreds per acre) for ages 10, 15, 20, 25, and 30. The decrease in mean H is small at age 10, but by age 30 increases to 1-foot per 100-tree increase in planting density in the range of 200 to 1200 seedlings per acre.

A summary of part of the mean H data from the slash pine spacing study is given in Table 2. We assume that the observed trends in Table 2 represent effects of density on height growth and not differences in SI. This assumption of uniform site potential of plots within blocks is supported both by the closeness of the mean H values at age 10 (except for the 6x6 spacing where competition was fairly advanced by age 10) and the smoot of the linear relations of mean H over plant density. These mean H and stand age (t) dat used with Bennett, McGee, and Clutter's (195 old-field, plantation SI model to produce t SI-over-time data in Table 3. Stability of over time means the associated spacing has a height-over-time curve similar to that of th curve.

Table 1.--Estimates of linear regression coe cients for predicting mean dominant and co nant height from number of planted seedlin per acre.

Age (yrs)	Intercept	Slope
	Ft	Ft/100 seedlings
10	33.21	-0.2479
15	49.59	-0.5370
20	61.01	-0.8348
25	69.12	-0.9637
30	73.35	-1.0226

Table 2.--Mean dominant and codominant heights over time from slash pine spacing study.1/

Age (yrs)	15x15	7.5x15	10x10	6x12	8x8	5x10	6x8	6x6
	Planting spacing (ft x ft)							
	Height (ft)							
10	31.8	32.6	32.8	32.2	31.4	30.6	31.6	29.8
15	47.5	48.6	47.6	45.8	46.5	44.6	44.8	42.9
20	58.8	58.6	58.5	54.6	55.2	53.2	54.0	51.2
25	67.2	65.8	65.8	62.0	61.8	60.0	62.3	57.2
30	70.6	70.2	69.6	66.5	65.8	64.2	65.4	60.4

1/Values shown are averages for two blocks.

Table 3.--Base-age-25 site index estimates made over time on plots with different planting densities.1/

Site index prediction age (yrs)	Planting spacing (ft x ft)							
	15x15	7.5x15	10x10	6x12	8x8	5x10	6x8	6x6
	Site index (ft)							
10	67.1	68.8	69.2	68.0	66.3	64.6	66.7	62.9
15	66.2	67.7	66.3	63.8	64.8	62.2	62.4	59.8
20	66.6	66.4	66.3	61.8	62.5	60.3	61.2	58.0
25	67.2	65.8	65.8	62.0	61.8	60.0	62.3	57.2
30	65.0	64.6	64.1	61.2	60.6	59.1	60.2	55.6

1/Values shown are averages for two blocks.

GROWTH PREDICTION BIAS

Occurrence of effects like those illustrated bove invalidates the foundation on which the SI odel rests. This means that as a classification ool SI will be either over-estimated or under-stimated, depending on whether observed density s less than or greater than that density whose orresponding height-over-time curve equals that f the SI model. On the other hand, the effect f density on SI is not a problem in fitting yield odels because SI is essentially a measure of ominant stand height, and as such will always be a highly significant variable in any yield model. he resulting model will always predict well for he SI, age, and density combinations at given oints in time. The problem comes when the model s used to make predictions over time.

We evaluated the time related problem by itting a yield model to our slash pine spacing ata, and then comparing actual growth with redictions from the model. The 16 (8 spacings x 2 blocks) plots were measured 16 times, at ages through 22, and at 25, 28, and 30. This roduced 256 observations of total cubic foot olume per acre (V), stand age (t), SI (S) and erchantable basal area per acre (B_m). They ere fit using the model

$$\ln(V) = \beta_0 + \beta_1 S + \beta_2 t^{-1} + \beta_3 \ln(B_m) \qquad (1)$$

nd yielded $\hat{\beta}_0 = 3.1508844$, $\hat{\beta}_1 = 0.02566564$, $\hat{\beta}_2 = -19.403421$, $\hat{\beta}_3 = 0.82870861$, and an $R^2 =$ 0.993. As you would expect from such a high R^2, ield predictions checked back very closely with bserved volumes; so we concluded that the model s good.

The fitted yield model was next used to redict total cubic foot growth by incrementing tand age (t) and basal area (B_m). Basal area ncrement comes from observed density-over-time ata presented in Table 4. The above prediction rocess assumes SI is constant for any growth eriod. For this research we used the mean SI at ge 10 as this constant SI value (66.7 feet at age 25). Of course, Table 3 contradicts this assumption so the above defined predicted growth was compared with actual growth obtained by using stand age and basal area, plus the observed SI values from Table 3.

Differences in these two volume increments (Predicted-Actual) are presented in Table 5. They result from assuming SI does not change over the projection period. The bias increases with decreasing spacing from the widest spacing (15x15) because height growth associated with this spacing most nearly matches that of Bennett, McGee, and Clutter's SI model. The trend of increasing bias with increasing length of the projection period is due to the cumulating effect over time of density on height growth. Table 6 presents these volume growth differences as percentages of actual volume growth defined in the previous paragraph.

CONCLUSIONS

Four independent studies show height growth of both loblolly and slash pine to be reduced as stand density increases inside a range considered proper forest management. Existence of this effect repudiates a foundation principle of SI, which in turn invalidates it as a determinant in studying growth and yield relations over time. Specifically, we showed that substantial bias can result in periodic growth predictions from a yield model built on data containing an effect of density on height, even when the model otherwise fits the data closely. The direction of the bias will depend on where in the density range height growth matches the SI curve. In this example it occurred at the widest spacing, but it could occur at any stocking level, depending on the properties of the two data sets used to fit the yield and SI models.

Any attempt to modify SI to handle density would be self defeating in that the purpose and primary defense of SI has been its independence from effects of density. Such an effort would also validate the arguments of those who would use volume to measure productivity of forested sites.

This along with the poor precision of the SI predictor (Lloyd and Hafley 1977, Lloyd 1981, Lloyd, Muse and Hafley 1982) suggests that we should be investigating alternative methods of using measurements of trees to establish forest site productivity.

LITERATURE CITED

Bennett, F. A., C. E. McGee, and J. L. Clutter.
1959. Yield of old-field slash pine plantations. USDA For. Serv., Southeast. For. Exp. Stn., Station Paper No. 107, 19 p.

Harms, W. R., and F. T. Lloyd.
1981. Stand structure and yield relationships in a 20-year-old loblolly pine spacing study. South. J. Appl. For. 5(3): 162-166.

Jones, E. P., Jr.
1977. Precommercial thinning of naturall slash pine increases volume and monetar returns. USDA For. Serv., Res. Paper S 12 p.

Lloyd, F. T.
1981. How many tree heights should you m for natural, Atlantic Coastal Plain lob site index? South. J. Appl. For. 5(4):

_____, and W. L. Hafley.
1977. Precision and the probability of m fication in site index estimation. For 23(4): 493-499.

_____, H. D. Muse, and W. L. Hafley.
1982. A regression application for compa growth potential of environments at dif points in the growth cycle. Biometrics 479-484.

Table 4. Mean merchantable basal area per acre.[1/]

Age (yrs)	Planting spacing (ft x ft)							
	15x15	7.5x15	10x10	6x12	8x8	5x10	6x8	6x6
	Basal area (sq ft)							
10	44	70	74	82	84	82	95	61
15	71	102	108	114	128	125	137	122
20	96	121	132	131	147	143	154	147
25	111	135	140	138	150	145	153	154
30	114	137	135	132	140	133	134	144

[1/] Values shown are averages for two blocks.

Table 5.--The amount merchantable cubic foot volume (o.b.) is overestimated when the density-height effect is ignored.

Growth period (yrs)	Planting spacing (ft x ft)							
	15x15	7.5x15	10x10	6x12	8x8	5x10	6x8	6x6
	Volume (cu ft)							
10-15	21	-58	24	173	127	284	294	413
10-20	7	27	39	442	421	608	562	819
10-25	-51	107	110	539	600	778	552	1116
10-30	197	282	343	684	790	923	807	1373

Table 6.--Percentage by which growth is over-estimated when the density-height effect is ignored.

Growth period (yrs)	Planting spacing (ft x ft)							
	15x15	7.5x15	10x10	6x12	8x8	5x10	6x8	6x6
	- - - - - - - - - - - - - - Percent - - - - - - - - - - - - - -							
10-15	2	-4	2	15	9	24	23	34
10-20	0	1	2	21	17	28	24	37
10-25	-2	3	3	19	19	28	18	38
10-30	6	7	9	22	24	31	27	46

AN EMPIRICAL FUNCTION FOR PREDICTING SURVIVAL OVER A WIDE RANGE OF DENSITIES[1]

William R. Harms[2]

Abstract.--A flexible sigmoid function of the form $S = 1/[1 + (H/H_c)^{\theta}]$, where S is survival expressed as the ratio of number of living trees (N) to the number of trees at stand establishment (N_i), H is mean stand height, H_c is mean height at S = 0.5, and θ is an exponent defining the shape of the curve, was fit to a set of loblolly pine survival data covering a range of densities from 1000 to 16,000 trees per acre. The equation provided an adequate fit to the data with r^2 values from 0.76 to 0.98. The estimated parameters H_c and θ were found to be correlated to initial density. Both can be predicted satisfactorily with regressions of the form $H_c = b_o N_i^{b_1}$, and $\theta = b_o + b_1/N_i$.

INTRODUCTION

Reliable prediction of survival is essential to accurate prediction of growth and yield. A number of mathematical models have been used with varying degrees of success to describe the relationship between survival or mortality and selected characteristics of the stand, but a completely adequate model has yet to be developed (Burkhart et al. 1981, Somers et al. 1980). The difficulty in obtaining a satisfactory model stems from the fact that mortality is extremely variable, depending as it does on competitive ability and inherent growth rate of the species, and such external factors of site as soil moisture and nutrients. Further difficulties in modelling are encountered when attempts are made to include catastrophic mortality caused by such isolated occurrences as insects, disease, fire, and wind and ice storms.

Survival curves have a characteristic sigmoid shape over the course of stand development. The form of survival curve for a particular stand depends primarily on the number of trees established, inherent growth rate, and the site quality. Logically, the curve should be describable in terms of one or more of these variables, and in fact the published models show that initia number of trees and stand height as well a ge are predictors of survival.

An empirical model is presented in th paper that closely fits survival data obta d from experimental plots of loblolly pine (*us taeda* L.) grown over a wide range of densit s. Preliminary results suggest that the model y be useful as a general survival function f cases where mortality is more or less regul .

THE MODEL

Sigmoid response curves are common in lo- gical systems, and many different forms of a- tions have been suggested to describe vario growth and development phenomena. The part ular form chosen to model survival was

$$S = 1/[1 + (H/H_c)^{\theta}] \quad 1)$$

where S is survival expressed as the ratio number of surviving trees (N) to number of es at stand establishment (N_i), H is mean stan height, H_c is mean stand height at S = 0.5, d θ is an exponent defining the shape of the ve. Expressions of this form are described by T nle (1976) as threshold response curves of the tc off type. The function varies between 1 an , approaches 1 for $H \ll H_c$ and falls monotoni ely, tending to zero for $H \gg H_c$, and passing th gh the value 0.5 for $H = H_c$. The higher the v e of θ, the higher the value of S for $H < H_c$, t e steeper the fall of the curve in the region H_c, and the smaller the value of S for H > c. There is a point of inflection at

---

[1] Paper presented at the Second Biennial Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Research Forester, Southeastern Forest Experiment Station, Charleston, South Carolina 29407.

$$\frac{H}{H_c} = \left[\frac{\theta-1}{\theta+1}\right]^{1/\theta} \qquad (2)$$

s θ increases, the point of inflection moves loser to $H/H_c = 1$.

This equation was selected because of its imple algebraic form and because its properties ppeared to fit a wide range of survival curves.

Mean stand height was selected as the pre-ictor variable because it is an indicator of oth the stage of biological development of the rees making up the stand, and the quality of the ite. Height is also a measure of the age of the rees, and is somewhat sensitive to stand density.

A TEST CASE

The model was tested by fitting equation (1) o a set of survival data taken from a study of tand development in young even-aged loblolly ine (Harms and Langdon 1976). The data consisted f annual measurements of d.b.h., height, and urvival from age 3 through 24 of a series of 0.1 cre density plots. Five density levels of 4 eplications each were established at age 3 in a niform stand of naturally regenerated seedlings y thinning plots back to 1000, 2000, 4000, 8000, r 16,000 trees per acre. These density levels ill be referred to by number of trees present at ge 3; thus 1M is an initial density of 1000 rees per acre. One plot of the 1M density was eleted from the data set because of unexplained, nnaturally high mortality in the 15th year. ortality over all densities was quite high for he first 2 years following thinning after which t leveled off to a more expected pattern. This ortality was thought to be caused by the sudden elease required to establish the treatment densi-ies. To avoid inconsistencies in the data from his source, the number of trees present at age , when the plots appeared to have stabilized, as taken as the initial number (N_i) rather than he number at age 3.

Equation (1) was fitted to the data by esti-ating H_c and θ with a nonlinear least squares rocedure. Initial values for H_c, the mean stand eight at a survival of 50 percent, were estimated or each plot from scatter diagrams of the data. he starting value for θ was arbitrarily set at . The equation was fit separately to each plot, nd then to each density with the plots pooled.

Scatter diagrams of the estimated parameters or the individual plot data show that both H_c nd θ are correlated with initial density. The elation of H_c to density is very good (fig. 1). regression of the form

$$\log_e H_c = b_0 + b_1 \log_e N_i \qquad (3)$$

where H_c and N_i are defined as above, was fit to the data. Figure 1 shows the curve and its equation in exponential form. There is very little variation in H_c about the curve throughout the range of densities.

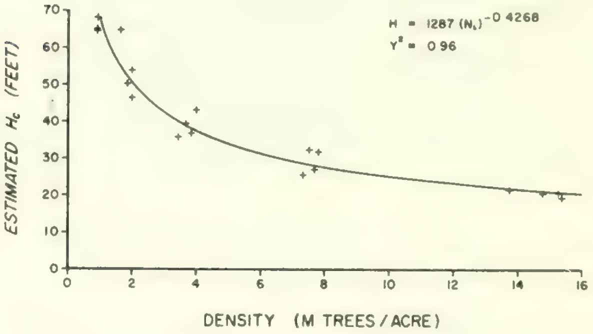


Figure 1.--Scatter diagram of estimated "H_c" in relation to initial density.

The relation between θ and initial density is much more variable, the greatest variation being at the 1M and 2M density levels (fig. 2). The variation is due to differences among these plots in the onset of mortality. High values of θ are associated with plots that were older and taller than average when mortality began. The values of θ for the denser plots in which mortality began at younger ages were much more closely grouped. A regression of the form

$$\theta = b_0 + b_1 \left[\frac{1}{N_i}\right] \qquad (4)$$

was fit to the data, with θ and N_i as defined above. Figure 2 shows the curve and its equation. The regression is significant, but fit is rather poor because of the wide variation in the 1M and 2M plots. Additional data at lower densities will be needed to establish the best form of the regression.

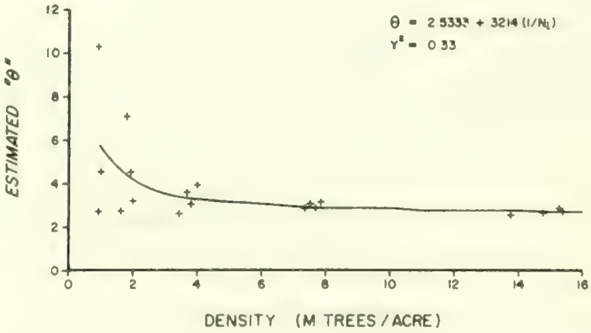


Figure 2.--Scatter diagram of estimated "θ" in relation to initial density.

Parameter estimates from the individual plots when pooled for each density are given in Table 1 together with the variation accounted for (r^2). The fit of the model was good, the r^2 increasing from 0.76 for the 1M density to 0.98 for the 16M density. The parameter values from the pooled analyses were used in the model to calculate estimated survival for each density level. The results are plotted in Figure 3 together with the actual mean survivals. The curves show that the model provides an adequate fit to the data over all densities with the possible exception of the 16M density for which early survival is underestimated. An explanation is being sought in further analyses of the data.

Table 1.--Parameter estimates for the survival function with the plots in each density pooled.

Density	H_c	θ	r^2
1M	65.81	4.7611	0.7618
2M	54.56	3.6826	0.8594
4M	39.46	3.2766	0.9580
8M	29.58	2.9687	0.9690
16M	20.62	2.7151	0.9851

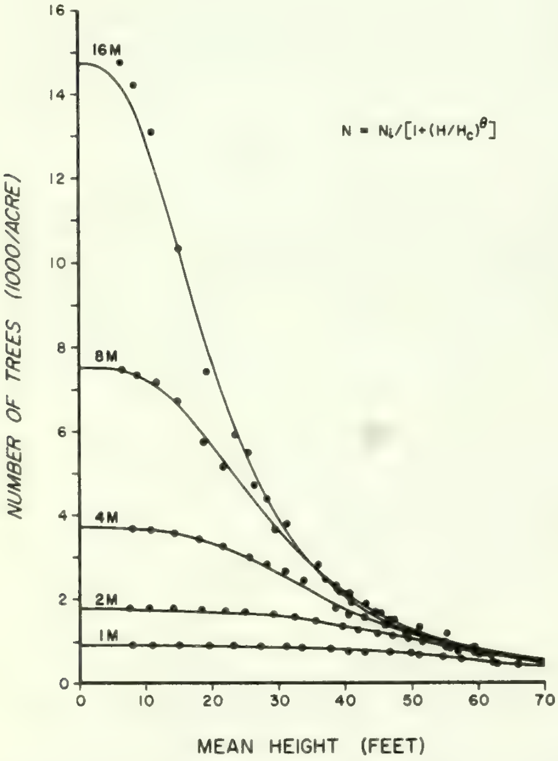


Figure 3.--Survival trends in relation to stand height for loblolly pine at five densities.

The entire data set with all 5 densiti pooled also was fit, putting H_c values for ch density equal to those given in Table 1. T value estimated for θ was 3.3319, the r^2 eq led 0.97. In spite of the high r^2, predicted s iva was greatly underestimated at the H/H_c valu above about 1.4. This result shows, as do values of θ in Table 1, and the regression figure 2, that a constant value for θ probab cannot be used over the range of densities spanned by these data. However, a constant may be satisfactory over a more restricted ge of densities.

DISCUSSION

The results presented here are prelimin but they show that the model has considerabl promise. It gives an excellent fit to survi data of the kind used in the test. Work is progress to test the model on data from diff nt sites, from plantations, and from natural st s of lower initial densities extending to olde ages.

The question of how well stand height a e can account for age and differences in site quality remains to be seen. It can be assume that H_c for a constant N_i will vary with site quality. For example, a given H_c will occur a younger age on high sites than on low sites. What effect, if any, site has on the value o must be determined from actual data. If neec , a measure of site, or age, or other variable be incorporated into the model indirectly as variable in the regression predictors of H_c a θ, or directly by modifying the model term H/ so that

$$(x/x_c)^\theta = (x_1/x_{1c})^{\theta_1}(x_2/x_{2c})^{\theta_2}\ldots(x_n/x_{nc})^{\theta n} \quad)$$

where $x_1 \ldots x_n$ are variables such as height an site index, and $\theta_1 \ldots \theta_n$ are the corresponding exponents.

If mortality instead of survival must be predicted, equation (1) can be rewritten so th

$$M = \frac{(H/H_c)^\theta}{1+(H/H_c)^\theta}$$

where M is mortality, the ratio of number of t s died (N_d) to initial number (N_i), and H, H_c, a θ are defined above.

LITERATURE CITED

rkhart, H. E., Q. V. Cao, and K. D. Ware.
1981. A comparison of growth and yield prediction models for loblolly pine. Div. of Forestry and Wildlife Resources, Va. Polytech. Inst. and State Univ. FWS-2-81, 59 p.

rms, W. R., and O. G. Langdon.
1976. Development of loblolly pine in dense stands. For. Sci. 22: 331-337.

Somers, G. L., R. G. Oderwald, W. R. Harms, and O. G. Langdon.
1980. Predicting mortality with a Weibull distribution. For. Sci. 26(2): 291-300.

Thornley, J. H. M.
1976. Mathematical models in plant physiology. Academic Press, London and New York. 318 p.

STEM VOLUME PREDICTION AND CROWN CHARACTERISTICS OF THINNED LONGLEAF PINE PLANTATIONS[1]

Richard E. Lohrey[2]

Abstract.--Tree stem volume was estimated from the combined variable, D^2H, and crown dimensions in 35- to 45-year old longleaf pine plantations that had been thinned for 15 to 25 years. The combined variable accounted for 99 percent of the variation in stem volume. Crown dimensions could not clarify the variation related to thinning treatments.

INTRODUCTION

Tree stem volume is usually estimated from tree diameter outside bark and either total or merchantable height. Several attempts were made recently to improve the accuracy of volume predictions by fitting separate functions to data for trees in different live crown ratio classes (Dell and others 1979, Feduccia and others 1979, Baldwin and Polmer 1981). This procedure should improve volume estimates because stem form is correlated with crown size and its distribution on the stem (Larson 1963). So it is important to determine how live crown ratio and other crown characteristics are related to stem or bole volume in thinned stands. This paper reports such relationships in three thinning studies in longleaf pine plantations. Stem volume in this paper is total volume outside bark of the main stem from a 6-inch stump to the terminal bud.

METHODS

The first study, in central Louisiana, was conducted on cutover longleaf pine land typical of many areas in the West Gulf coastal plain. Native grasses dominated the site at planting because frequent wildfires controlled most hardwoods after the virgin stand was felled. Site index averaged 78 feet and ranged from 70 to 87 at base age 50.

Pines were planted at initial spacings of 4.3- by 4.3-ft., 5.2- by, 5.2-ft., 6.2- by, 6.2 ft. and 13.1- by 13.1-ft. These are equivalent t planting densities of 2,500, 1,600, 1,150 and 50 trees per acre. Three of the rates are high than present standards. Heavy early mortali reduced the number of survivors at age 20 to that of stands with wider initial spacing and lowe early mortality. At age 20, density ranged from 78 trees per acre in the widest spacing to 5 trees per acre in the narrowest one. Each spacing was repeated in four plots within each of fo completely randomized blocks. This permitted future establishment of four thinning treatments at each spacing.

Thinning treatments were initiated at age 20 and repeated every 5 years to age 45. In the three close spacings, plots were thinned to residual densities of 60, 80 and 100 sq. ft. of basal area per acre. The fourth thinning left a maximum of 100 merchantable crop trees per acre at age 20 with no subsequent partial cuttings. A few nonmerchantable trees left at age 20 later grew to merchantable size and still survive.

Plots planted at 13.1- by 13.1-ft. spacing were not thinned because their average density was low. Stands here were similar to the crop tree thinnings in narrow initial spacings. Therefore, unthinned plots in the widest spacing and one thinned plots in the three narrow spacings were considered as the same treatment.

The second thinning study was installed in 24- and 25-year-old longleaf pine plantations in East Texas. Both stands had been planted at 6- by, 6-ft. spacing on cutover longleaf pine land. Sample plots averaged 582 trees and 112 square feet of basal area per acre. Site index range from 75 to 90. Residual densities ranged from 40 to 140 square feet of basal area per acre increments of 20 sq. ft., plus unthinned chec Plots were inventoried and thinned at 5-year intervals to ages 39 and 40.

---

[1] Paper presented at the Second Biennial Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Silviculturist, USDA Forest Service, Southern Forest Experiment Station, Pineville, LA 71360.

The third study was in a longleaf pine stand at had been planted at 6- by 6-ft. spacing on an andoned field in Mississippi. Sample plots re established at stand age 20. Stand density that age averaged 537 trees and 87 square feet basal area per acre. Residual densities signed to the plots again ranged from 40 to 0 sq.ft. per acre plus an unthinned check eatment. Plots were inventoried and thinned 5-year intervals to age 35.

Thinning in all three studies was from low with some, but not all, submerchantable ees being cut. Plots that had not reached their signed density were not cut until the next heduled thinning five years later.

The same measurement methods and procedures re used in the studies. Diameters at 4.5 feet all trees 0.6 inch or larger were measured 0.1 inch. Height to each 2-inch taper step s measured on sample trees and their stem volume tside bark was determined by height accumulation rosenbaugh 1954). Total height, height to the se of the live crown, and crown class were re-rded for each sample tree. At the most recent ventories, crown diameter in two perpendicular rections was measured on sample trees from 1 diameter classes on each plot. Most data ed in the analysis came from stands that had en thinned 3 to 5 times over a period of 15 to years. The exceptions were data from unthinned ecks or plots that had not reached their assigned sal area.

Data were tested by weighted multiple linear gression techniques (weight $=1/D^2H$). Separate t similar analyses were made for each of the ree studies. The dependent variable was sample ee volume outside bark as determined by height cumulation. The first independent variable was ways the combined variable (D^2H). Other riables tested were live crown ratio (CR), crown ass (CC), average crown width (ACW), and thinning eatment (TMT). Crown ratio and average width re continuous variables; crown class and thinning eatment were discrete variables.

RESULTS

rst Study

There was a strong relationship between the mbined variable (D^2H) and stem total volume. is one variable alone accounted for 99 percent the variation in stem volume ($R^2 = 0.9888$) d had an error mean square of 0.000406896. When inning treatment and its product with D^2H were cluded in the model, the main effect of treat-nt was significant but the product term was not. e results indicated that the slope of the volume-H regression was similar in all treatments t the intercepts were different. The interaction or product term was deleted from the model and the analysis repeated with only D^2H and treatment as independent variables. The new equation had an R^2 of 0.9901, an error mean square of 0.00036424, and the effect of treatment was significant (Table 1).

When the three independent variables of crown size or distribution were added to the previous model, all were significant. They did not explain the differences in stem volume among thinning methods, however, because the variable for thinning treatment remained significant in the presence of all three crown variables (Table 2).

Second Study

In the second study the combined variable explained 99 percent of the variation in stem volume ($R^2 = 0.9929$) and the 1-variable equation had an error mean square of 0.0002388. The effect of treatment was significant.

Live crown ratio was not significant in the equation including D^2H and three crown variables so it was deleted from the analysis in the second study. In the reduced model, one containing D^2H, crown class, and average crown width, all three independent variables were highly significant. The prediction equation had an R^2 of 0.9937 and an error mean square of 0.00021456, not much different from those of the equation that used D^2H alone. The effect of thinning treatment was significant when tested in an equation that included crown class and average crown width as independent variables (Table 3).

Third Study

The combined variable alone accounted for 99 percent of the variation in tree stem volume in the third study. Error mean square was 0.00024619. The interaction between D^2H and treatment was not significant, indicating the slope of the regression of stem volume on D^2H was similar in all treatments. The effect of treatment was small but highly significant so the regression had different intercepts among the treatments.

When all three crown variables were tested with D^2H, live crown ratio was not significant. The equation for the reduced model had an R^2 of 0.9937, an error mean square of 0.00021549, and all remaining independent variables were significant (Table 4). When thinning treatment was added to the reduced model, treatment was significant in the presence of the two remaining crown variables, but crown width was not significant after thinning treatment was included (Table 5).

Table 1.--Analysis of variance of stem volume in study number one

SOURCE	DF	SUM OF SQUARES	MEAN SQUARE	F VALUE
MODEL	4	17.43313196	4.35828299	11965.26
ERROR	477	0.17374477	0.00036424	PR > F
CORRECTED TOTAL	481	17.60687674		0.0001
R-SQUARE	C.V.	STD DEV	VOL MEAN	
0.990132	0.0574	0.01908520	33.22921162	
SOURCE	DF	TYPE I SS	F VALUE	PR > F
D^2H	1	17.41057824	47799.11	0.0001
TMT	3	0.02255373	20.64	0.0001
SOURCE	DF	TYPE IV SS	F VALUE	PR > F
D^2H	1	13.29087946	36488.86	0.0001
TMT	3	0.02255373	20.64	0.0001

Table 2.--Analysis of variance of stem volume with crown characteristics in study number one

SOURCE	DF	SUM OF SQUARES	MEAN SQUARE	F VALUE
MODEL	9	17.45149797	1.93905533	5890.34
ERROR	472	0.15537877	0.00032919	PR > F
CORRECTED TOTAL	481	17.60687674		0.0001
SOURCE	DF	TYPE IV SS	F VALUE	PR > F
D^2H	1	1.46403957	4447.37	0.0001
LCR	1	0.00302832	9.20	0.0026
CC	3	0.01233984	12.50	0.0001
ACW	1	0.00203466	6.18	0.0133
TMT	3	0.01162126	11.77	0.0001

Table 3.--Analysis of variance of stem volume in study number two

SOURCE	DF	SUM OF SQUARES	MEAN SQUARE	F VALUE
MODEL	11	12.19290336	1.10844576	5313.77
ERROR	353	0.07363532	0.00020860	PR > F
CORRECTED TOTAL	364	12.26653868		0.0001

SOURCE	DF	TYPE IV SS	F VALUE	PR > F
D^2H	1	0.92285861	4424.09	0.0001
CC	3	0.00374501	5.98	0.0006
ACW	1	0.00134683	6.46	0.0115
TMT	6	0.00339285	2.71	0.0138

Table 4.--Analysis of variance of stem volume in study number three

SOURCE	DF	SUM OF SQUARES	MEAN SQUARE	F VALUE
MODEL	5	7.56733736	1.51346747	7023.29
ERROR	223	0.04805486	0.00021549	PR > F
CORRECTED TOTAL	228	7.61539222		0.0001

SOURCE	DF	TYPE IV SS	F VALUE	PR > F
D^2H	1	0.81296246	3772.58	0.0001
CC	3	0.00274772	4.25	0.0062
ACW	1	0.00386865	17.95	0.0001

Table 5.--Analysis of variance of stem volume with crown characteristics and treatment in study number three

SOURCE	DF	SUM OF SQUARES	MEAN SQUARE	F VALUE
MODEL	11	7.57111275	0.68828298	3373.06
ERROR	217	0.04427947	0.00020405	PR > F
CORRECTED TOTAL	228	7.61539222		0.0001

SOURCE	DF	TYPE IV SS	F VALUE	PR > F
D^2H	1	0.77652035	3805.49	0.0001
CC	3	0.00233565	3.82	0.0109
ACW	1	0.00044289	2.17	0.1421
TMT	6	0.00377539	3.08	0.0064

DISCUSSION

Equations using D^2H as the only independent
iable have and will serve adequately in some
estry applications. A simple function that
be easily solved on a hand-held calculator or
ressed in a 1-page table is preferred. The
bined variable serves admirably in those situa-
ns. It accounted for about 99 percent of the
iation in tree stem volume in each of the three
dies and has been equally effective elsewhere
urr 1952). But for some purposes, such as
wth and yield studies, using a simple volume
ation in all treatments may mask or hide
ferences in volume the studies were intended
detect and measure.

The three crown characteristics tested here
e inadequate or, at least, inconsistent results.
nificant differences in stem volume among treat-
ts remained after all other significant in-
endent variables were included in the volume
ction. The same variables were not significant
any of the studies.

Stem form is influenced by the same factors
conditions that determine the size and distri-
ion of the crown. In unthinned stands, density,
, and crown class are important. As a stand
ses the lower brances die, live crown ratio
creases, and there is usually a decrease in
er of the main stem. Thus, there may be a
d correlation between live crown ratio and
m taper in unthinned stands established at
form spacing and density.

The relationship between crown dimensions
stem form is more complicated in frequently
nned stands than unthinned stands. Heavy
nning has an almost immediate effect on the
unt and distribution of new wood formed on a
e stem (Larson 1963). The result is more
er brought about by increased diameter growth
the basal portion of the tree. Crown expan-
n begins after thinning and proceeds until
petition restricts further development. The
ponse of stem form to increased crown size
s behind the immediate effect of thinning.
eries of thinnings may result in a periodic
le in crown expansion and changes in stem taper.
is not surprising that the relationships
tween crown dimensions and stem volume varied
ng the three stands with different initial
sities, site indices, ages, and number of
nnings. In long-term thinning studies,
termining tree form and volume directly from
asurements of the stem will be better than
timating them from crown dimensions.

CONCLUSIONS

The combined variable alone accounted for
st of the variation in tree stem volume and it
is the only independent variable required for many applications. Crown dimensions accounted for some of the remaining variation. In longterm thinning studies, measuring stem form and volume directly will be better than estimating them from crown dimensions.

SUMMARY

Relationships of stem volume to the combined variable D^2H, and crown dimensions were determined in each of three studies. The stands in Louisiana, Texas, and Mississippi, ranged from 35 to 45 years old and had been thinned for 15 to 25 years.

The combined variable alone explained about 99 percent of the variation in stem volume. Some, but not all, of the variation that was related to thinning treatments could be accounted for by including crown dimensions as independent variables. The same crown variables were not significant in any of the studies. It was concluded that in long-term experiments stem form and volume should be measured directly rather than estimated from crown dimensions.

LITERATURE CITED

Baldwin, V.C., Jr. and B.H. Polmer.
1981. Taper functions for unthinned longleaf pine plantations on cutover West Gulf sites. pp. 156-163. In: Proceedings, First Biennial Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, GA., November 6-7, 1980. Edited by James P. Barnett, Southern Forest Experiment Station, General Technical Report SO-34.

Dell, T.R., D.P. Feduccia, T.E. Campbell, W.F. Mann, Jr., and B.H. Polmer.
1979. Yields of unthinned slash pine plantations on cutover sites in the West Gulf Region. USDA Forest Service Research Paper SO-147, 84 p.

Feduccia, D.P., T.R. Dell, W.F. Mann, Jr., T.E. Campbell, and B.H. Polmer.
1979.Yields of unthinned loblolly pine plantations on cutover sites in the West Gulf Region. USDA Forest Service Research Paper SO-148, 88 p.

Grosenbaugh, L.R.
1954. New tree-measurement concepts: height accumulation giant tree, taper and shape. USDA Forest Service, Southern Forest Experiment Station, Occas. Pap. 134, 32 p.

Larson, P.R.
1963. Stem form development of forest trees. Forest Science Monog. 5, 42 p.

Spurr. S.H.
1952. Forest inventory. New York: The Ronald Press Co., 476 p.

A REGRESSSION-ADJUSTED APPROACH CAN ESTIMATE COMPETING BIOMASS[1/]

James H. Miller[2/]

Abstract.--A method is presented for estimating above-ground herbaceous and woody biomass on competition research plots. On a set of destructively-sampled plots, an ocular estimate of biomass by vegetative component is first made, after which vegetation is clipped, dried, and weighed. Linear regressions are then calculated for each component between estimated and actual weights and are used to adjust ocular estimates of biomass on permanent or temporary plots. In trials, R^2's ranged from 0.57 to 1.00. Training hints and calculation procedures are outlined.

INTRODUCTION

How is competition between a southern pine seedling and surrounding woody or herbaceous vegetation measured? This is a relatively new question. Forest Research has not yet explored fully relations between competition quantifiers and growth responses or other physiological state variables. To be effective, a competition index must indicate the degree of competition for sunlight, growing space, soil moisture or nutrients. This paper examines a regression approach devised to facilitate quantifying above-ground woody and herbaceous biomass in competition research. This method can be used without destructive sampling to estimate biomass on permanent small-plots, where pines are being established.

Both woody and herbaceous competitors reduce growth of southern pines. Stewart (1981) summarized competition control studies for forestry in the United States and has calculated an average increase of 65 percent in conifer volume following hardwood and shrub control. However, most past studies have not related the observed growth responses to measured changes in competing vegetation. Thus, very few relationships between levels of woody competitors and growth of crop trees are documented. Although demonstrated for other forest type herbaceous competition has only recently be shown to decrease growth in newly-establish loblolly pine (*Pinus taeda* L.) plantations (Nelson *et al* 1981; Knowe *et al* 1982; Haywo and Melder 1982). Knowe *et al* (1982) repor a 9-fold increase in 2-year-old tree volume w complete vegetation control. Nelson *et al* (1981) stated that a definable relationship exists between pine height growth and herba us biomass. Carter *et al* (1982) found that, o he quantifiers tested, oven-dry weight of comp ng biomass around 5-year-old loblolly pines ha he greatest linear correlation (r = 0.70) with ant moisture stress during drought periods.

Competition indices successfully used other regions include plant cover (Oliver 1), weed tree basal area (Benzie 1977), and shru crown volume (Bentley *et al* 1971). Unfortunately the indices chosen to date seem to useful only for specific types of vegetatior. A unifying measure is needed for all plant gro forms to permit development of more general response relationships. I suggest that biom is one quantifying element that may have bot general, as well as, local applications. Biomass estimates are currently being employ to assess herbaceous competition on a small scale in the South (Neil *et al* 1982).

The factors limiting widespread use or testing of biomass as a competition index ap r to relate to the clip-and-weigh method. Th foremost problems are the large man-power resource required in clipping numerous plots d

---

[1/] Paper presented at the Second Biennial Southern Silvicultural Research Conference.

[2/] Research Forester, Southern Forest Experiment Station, Forest Service -- USDA, Devall St., Auburn University, AL 36849.

e need for destructive sampling when permanent ots are required. Thus, a method is required at minimizes plot clipping and provides omass estimates on undisturbed plots. Develop- nt of this approach drew upon procedures for antifying forage biomass presented by Pechanec d Pickford (1937) and Wilm *et al* (1944). ocedure modifications specified by Blair (1958) re evaluated and will be discussed. sentially, biomass is visually estimated on a t of plots and then measured by clipping and ighing. A linear regression is then calcu- ted between estimated and actual weights and used to adjust ocular estimates made on per- nent plots. This approach was developed in tempts to gain a standing-crop estimate of mpetition on a Piedmont cutting-unit, half of ich had been sheared-windrowed and half ngle-roller chopped (Miller 1980).

THE BIOMASS ESTIMATION METHOD

First-Stage Sampling

The double sampling method was developed d tested on a 124 ha management unit of the ion Camp Corporation on the rolling topography ical of the extreme southern Piedmont. The erational unit, divided in half, was prepared th two different site preparation methods ior to planting with loblolly pine seedlings. ference points were established every 20 m ong baselines located along ridge tops within ch treatment. Five points in each area were en randomly selected for locating sampling nes. Each year 20 temporary plots (2 x 2 m) re randomly located along sampling lines, 10 r treatment area. On these plots the biomass s both estimated and clipped. Forty permanent ots were also established in each treatment. getation sampling was performed in August 78, 1979, and 1981, the first, second, and urth growing seasons after treatments.

Above-ground biomass is estimated by mponents. The components were modified from air and Brunett (1976) and are: (1) grasses d grass-likes, (2) composites, (3) legumes,) other forbs, (5) vines (non-preferred by ldlife) and (6) woody flora by species. This paration permits estimating competition ounts by groups with differing control and sponse characteristics, as well as wildlife rage amounts. However, contrary to forage rveys, the total standing-crop of woody vege- tion is estimated, rather than the current ar's growth.

To minimize the biomass estimation riance, estimates should be made by one per- sn. The training steps outlined by Pechanec d Pickford (1937) are helpful and should be llowed. The first training involves the libration of ocular estimates. They suggest at field trials be undertaken prior to actual sampling using a weighing balance. An appropriate balance weighs accurately to 2 grams and is suitably rugged for field use. Individual stems of composites and woody seedlings/sprouts are estimated, clipped and weighed for practice. Also, clumps or small mats of grass can be taken as units by which an average-size clump or mat is estimated and weighed and the process repeated until a close estimate is achieved. A reminder-card can be constructed showing approximate weights for heights of composites and woody stems, diameters of grass clumps, lengths of vines, and single rosettes of small plants. This ocular calibration procedure, based on vegetation units, can be re-employed each morning during the early field season to lend consistency to estimates.

In the next phase of training, sample plots should be examined and a small pocket calculator used to sum the estimates of the individual units counted and sized on the plot. A key to ocular estimates of standing-crop is that all individual units or plants must be seen. Seeing each part of a trailing vine and each small forb rosette requires a thorough examination. This becomes more difficult as the amount and complexity of the vegetation increases yearly on permanent plots and influences the choice of plot size.

Biomass can be estimated as green or oven dry-weights. Difficulties with changing moisture contents during a sampling season have been reported by Hilmon (1958) and resulted in costly procedures specifying continual sampling of plant moisture and adjustments of green-weight estimates. In the current study, green-weight or oven-dry weight equations could be fitted equally well, as indicated by the R^2's in Table 1. Thus oven-dry weights were estimated directly, concuring with a similar modification by Blair (1958). Obviously, dry-matter is the main substance visualized in these ocular estimates while the day-to-day variation in moisture content is not readily perceived. This recognition suggests another training aid. Specifically, during the early field season, the estimator should check daily plot estimates on clipped-plots by weighing the clipped samples in the evening and checking his estimates on a green-weight basis, making adjustments as indicated the following day. The close correlation between green and oven-dry weights permits these green-weight checks even though oven-dry based regressions will be calculated.

Training of the clipping crew must include accurate differentiation of species into component groupings. Inconspicuous plants or new species should be tagged or communicated in some manner to the crew when the estimator is not present at clipping. Stubble heights of 2.5 cm are usually specified and all clipped material must be placed in appropriately marked paper bags for oven drying.

These steps were performed in this study. Bags with plant material were oven-dried at 75°C until no further weight-loss occurred, a procedure requiring up to a week of drying for woody stems greater than 3 cm in diameter and a minimum of 24 hr for moist herbage.

Developing the Regressions

The ocular estimates of biomass from the first sampling stage are related to the measured biomass using standard linear regression techniques. The X-values are "estimated weights" and the Y values, "actual weights." These regression equations are then used to correct all data from the "estimated-only" plots. Linear regressions through the origin as specified by Wilm et al (1944) can be used. The intercept at the origin is a logical assumption, discounting mistakes such as miscommunications between estimator and clipping crew.

The various aspects of fitting a straight line through the origin are covered most completely, but still briefly, by Snedecor and Cochran (1967) on pages 166 to 171. A test of the null hypothesis that the regression lines do, in fact, go through the origin can be performed. This test was perfomed on first-year's data from the Piedmont study. T-values are presented in Table 1. The non-significant (n.s.) t-values at the 5 percent level of probability show the null hypothesis should not be rejected, and the regression lines generally go through the origin, both the estimated vs green weight regressions and the estimated vs oven-dry weights.

The linear regressions through zero in his study were calculated using the common leas squares method of calculating an unbiased regression coefficient by $b = \Sigma XY/\Sigma X^2$. Th assumes that the variance of Y is constant X increases, which has been impossible to tes o far. This is especially difficult since th X's are estimated and have the most varianc not the Y's, reversing the general case giv in most statistic textbooks. Figure 1 shows t point-scatter for the fourth-year sampling these data give little indication that the variance in Y increases greatly with an inc sing X. Blair (1958) reported that the variance Y does increase with an increasing X when s ling browse and used $b = \bar{Y}/\bar{X}$ to estimate the regr sion coefficient. A scatter plot of data points should be constructed to determine which met d is best suited for a study. If the variance of Y increases as X increases, then $b = \bar{Y}/\bar{X}$ oul should provide the best unbiased estimate of .

Second-stage Sampling

In the second stage of sampling, biomas is ocularly estimated on the permanent plots in manner identical to that used on the 'clippe plots. An aid to estimating exceptionally l e woody plants is to clip a nearby equal-sized plant away from the plot and weigh it. Dist bance during examinations must be minimized permanent plots. Plot dimensions must allow e estimator to stand on the outside and partin vegetation with a stick, see all individual plants. Thus, the 2 m square used in the

Table 1. Comparison between first-year regressions using estimated weight vs actual green weight or oven-dry weight showing the coefficients of determination and the t-statistics testing the H_0 that the regression goes through the origin.

Component	Estimated Weight vs Actual Green Wt R^2	t	Estimated Weight vs Actual O.D. Wt R^2	t
Grasses & Grass-likes	.81	1.63 n.s.	.80	1.98 n.s.
Composites	.87	.22 n.s.	.82	.38 n.s.
Legumes	.99	.97 n.s.	.97	.41 n.s.
Other forbs	.97	1.23 n.s.	.94	1.30 n.s.
Vines	.97	.10 n.s.	.96	.47 n.s.
Trees & shrubs:				
Quercus marilandica	.99	.30 n.s.	.99	.31 n.s.
Liquidambar styraciflua	.92	.91 n.s.	.80	1.02 n.s.
Rubus spp.	1.00	1.11 n.s.	1.00	1.00 n.s.

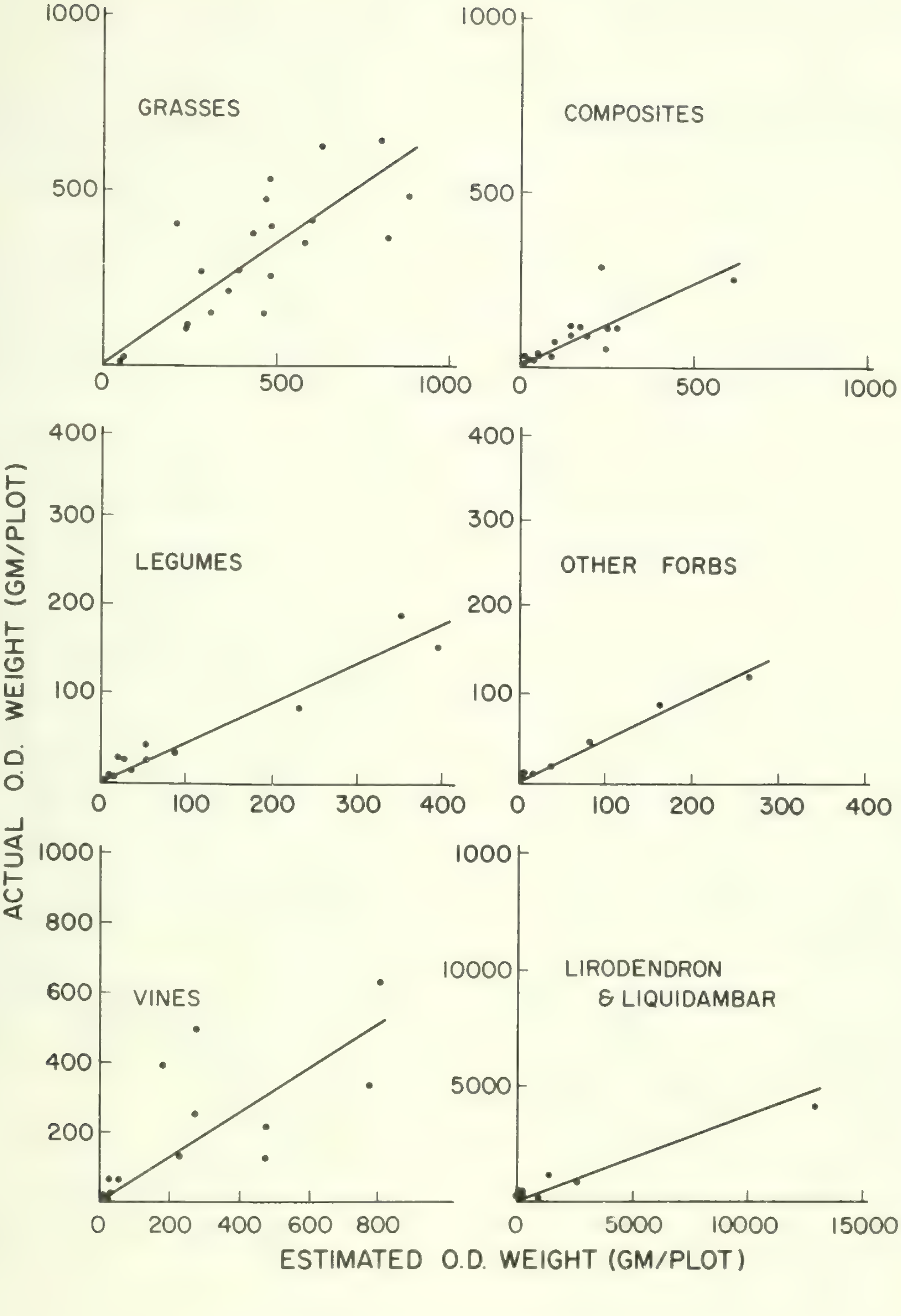


Figure 1. Data points and calculated regressions through the origins.

Piedmont example approximates the maximum dimension and larger plots would need to be rectangular. Plots of equal size must be used in the first- and second-stage sampling.

The ocular estimates of biomass on permanent plots are adjusted by multipling by the appropriate regression equations for each vegetation component and then summed.

PIEDMONT EXAMPLE

Regression coefficients calculated in the Piedmont study using $b = \Sigma XY/\Sigma X^2$ are presented in Table 2. The R^2's presented in Table 2 were computed in the normal manner using the least-squares regression calculated before forcing through the origin. Most values are close to 1.00, indicating that a linear regression explains most of the variation in Y. Woody species were grouped by similar life-form (growth habit) with 13 different regressions calculated. This many groups may not be necessary unless the differences in regression coefficients suggest that actual estimation peculiarities exist with each group. For example, Blair (1958) found it beneficial to group browse species by similar moisture contents.

An inspection of the R^2's also indicates groups that were difficult to estimate and those which became more difficult as the vegetation developed. The lower R^2's of the grasses and grass-likes certainly reflect the difficulty with estimating this group which has numerous species and various life-forms, e.g., carpets, clumps, and presence or absence of seed stocks. Estimation of composites in the fourth year was hindered by extensive woody vegetation on plots. Vines became increasingly difficult to estimate due to masking as vegetation developed and to the increasing woody and more dense nature of *Vitis* spp., the main genus.

Predicted biomass estimates and actual biomass values are shown plotted in Figure 2 for the three sampling years. This indicates the estimating capabilities for this method. The dashed lines indicating ± 20 percent of the actual biomass, shows 28, 20, and 20 percent of the first, second, and fourth year estimates, respectively, exceed these limits. Thus, the limitations of this method are apparent from this example. More of an index of competition amounts is gained, not the precise quantities. But still, the time required for estimating a plot compared to clipping a plot is 5 to 15 percent. Six to ten plots can be estimated while one is being clipped. Figure 2 shows that even though the biomass was increasing, the ability to estimate apparently improved from the first to the fourth year.

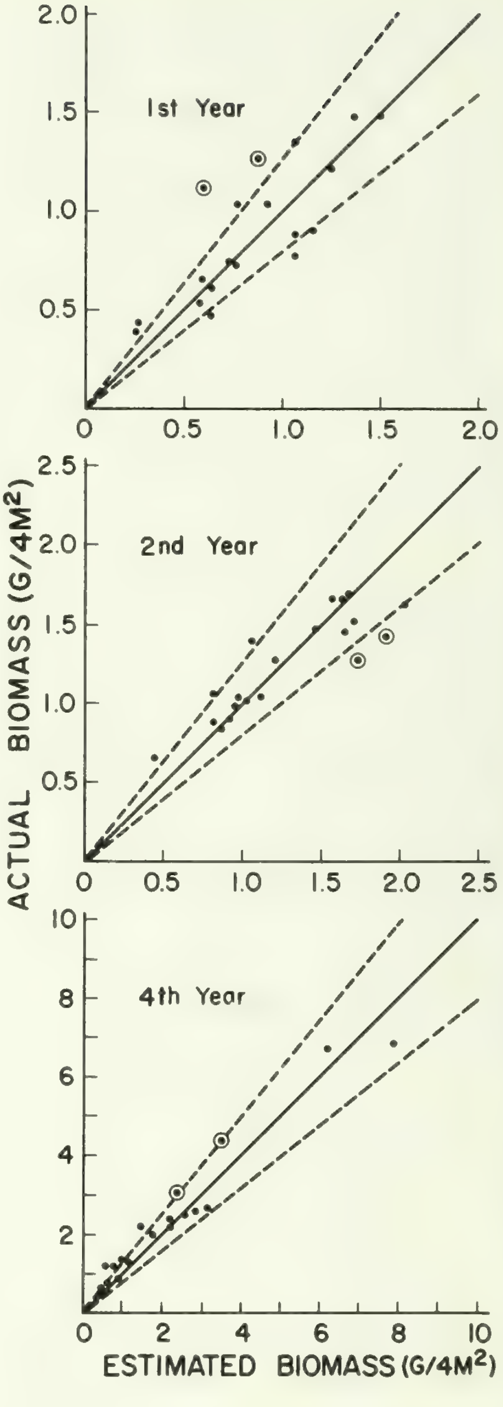


Figure 2. Estimated biomass plotted with the actual biomass. Dashed lines show ± 20 percent. Circled points indicate the first two plots estimated each field season.

le 2. Regression coefficients and coefficients of determination by component group and year.

	Component	1st Year		2nd Year		4th Year	
		b	R^2	b	R^2	b	R^2
1	Grasses and grass-likes	.49	.64	.71	.81	.69	.57
2	Composites	.45	.82	.45	.84	.47	.64
3	Legumes	.36	.94	.52	.94	.44	.94
4	Other forbs	.48	.88	.45	.89	.48	.98
5	Vines	.61	.96	.77	.87	.63	.59
6	*Rhus radicans*, *Smilax spp.*	.56	.84	.41	.92	.57	.91
7	*Rubus spp.*, *Rosa spp.* *Pteridium aquilinum*	.61	1.00	1.12	.98	.41	.59
8	*Vaccinium spp.*, *Viburnum spp.*	.63	.90	.51	.99	.84	.91
9	*Calycanthus florida* *Callicarpa americana*, *Ceanothus americanus* *Hypericum spp.*	.52	1.00	.53	.96	.69	.99
0	*Rhus galbra*, *R. copallina* *Aralia spinosa*, *Hydrangea spp.* *Sambucus canadensis*	.73	1.00	.41	.92	.58	.95
1	*Quercus spp.*	.64	.99	.65	1.00	.33	.85
2	*Carya spp.*	.55	.98	.91	.99	.48	.94
3	*Liquidambar styraciflua* *Liriodendron tulipifera*	.48	.90	.49	.98	.41	.98
4	*Nyssa sylvatica*, *Ostrya virginiana* *Diospyros virginiana*	.57	.95	.60	.96	.92	.98
5	*Prunus serotina*, *Morus alba* *Sassafras albidum*, *Celtis occidentalis* *Oxydendron arboreum* *Crataegus uniflora*, *Tilia americana*	.70	.92	.61	.96	.56	.84
6	*Cornus florida*	.54	1.00	.98	.97	.71	1.00
7	*Acer rubrum*	.76	.86	.63	.98	.68	.89
8	*Pinus taeda*, *Juniperus virginiana*	.57	.95	.77	.99	.54	.91

Table 3. The percent of the predicted observations that were within plus-or-minus 10, 20, and 50 percent of the actual biomass for the 1978 and 1981 plots.

Component	1st Year			4th Year		
	10%	20%	50%	10%	20%	50%
	percent					
Grasses	20	37	73	5	20	70
Composites	21	39	71	16	47	74
Legumes	32	52	79	6	33	72
Other forbs	29	53	82	38	56	87
Vines	4	17	57	12	24	59
Rubus spp.	73	73	91	16	44	69
Liquidambar Styraciflua	21	57	93	6	25	50

An indication of the ability to estimate the different vegetation components is given in Table 3. Components can be estimated most consistently only to plus-or-minus 50 percent of the actual biomass. However, most of the values exceeding plus-or-minus 50 percent are for smaller biomass quantities. The larger quantities are closer to the actual. The summing process to obtain plot totals appears to average the over and under estimates of components to yield estimates closer to the actual (Fig. 2).

An alternate approach was examined using the fourth-year data. Instead of adjusting individually the components on plots, the adjusted plot estimates were regressed against the actual biomass values. Then the plot estimates were adjusted using this regression. This was performed to see whether a simplified method using only one biomass estimate (a sum of unadjusted components) per plot would have estimating value. Thus, a confidence interval was calculated (Neter and Wasserman 1974) for a new observation (an estimated-only plot) using both the component-adjusted and the total-adjusted approaches. For a new plot with 1000 g biomass, the component-adjusted method gave a 20 percent confidence interval of ± 674 g and the total-adjusted gave ± 912 g. For this data set, the component-adjusted method, as outlined in this paper, gave an estimate with a smaller confidence interval. Adjusting the estimates by component added to the estimating process.

With this method an estimate of the woody and herbaceous biomass surrounding a pine seedling on a permanent plot can be obtained. Most of the estimator's bias is controlled by the regression process; however, both care and consistency are required in making the ocular estimates. And often these estimates must be made in difficult and trying field situations. Experience with this approach can enhance consistency and yield estimates that are reliable within definable bounds.

LITERATURE CITED

Bentley, J. R., S. B. Carpenter, and D. A. Blakeman.
1971. Early brush control promotes growth o ponderosa pine on bulldozed sites. USDA Serv. Res. Note PSW-238, 5 p. Pac Southwest For. and Range Exp. Stn., Berkeley, CA.

Benzie, John W.
1977. Manager's handbook for red pine in th north central states. USDA For. Serv. Gen. Tech. Rep. NC-33, 22 p. North Cent. For. Exp. Sta., St. Paul, MW.

Blair, Robert M.
1958. Weight techniques for sampling browse on deer ranges. *In*: Proc. Techniques and Methods of measuring Understory Vegetation Tifton, GA. p. 26-31.

Blair, Robert M., and Louis R. Brunett
1976. Phytosociological changes after timbe harvest in a southern pine ecosystem. Ecology 57: 18-32.

Carter, Gregory A., James H. Miller, Donald E. Davis, and Richard M. Patterson.
1982. Effect of vegetative competition on t moisture and nutrient statue of loblolly pine (*Pinus taeda* L.) (abs.). Bulletin Ecological Soc. of Am. 63: 103.

Haywood, James D., and Thomas W. Melder
1982. How site treatments affect pine and competing plant cover. *In*: Proc. So. Weed Sci. Soc. 35: 224-230.

Hilmon, J. B.
1958. Determination of herbage weight by doubling-sampling: weight estimate and actual weight. *In*: Proc. Techniques and Methods of measuring Understory Vegetation, Tifton, GA. p. 20-25.

Krwe, Steven A., Larry R. Nelson, and Dean H. Grstad.
982. Third year growth response of loblolly pine to herbaceous weed control (abs.) In: Proc. So. Weed Sci. Soc. 35:159.

Miler, James H.
980. Competition after windrowing or single-roller chopping for site preparation in the southern Piedmont. In: Proc. So. Weed Sci. Soc. 33: 139-145.

Nel, Richard H., Glenn R. Glover and Thomas E. Capbell.
982. Standardization of forestry herbicide research techniques in the South. In: Proc. So. Weed Sci. Soc. 35:143-155.

Neson, Larry R., Richard C. Pedersen, Lanny L. Aury, Stuart Dudley, and John D. Walstad.
981. Impacts of herbaceous weeds in young loblolly pine plantations. South. Jour. of Appl. For. 5: 153-158.

Neter, John and William Wasserman.
1974. Applied linear statistical models. Richard W. Irwin, Inc. Homewood, IL. 842 p.

Oliver, W. W.
1980. Early response of ponderosa pine to spacing and brush: observations in a 12-year-old plantation. USDA For. Serv. Res. Note PSW-341, 7 p. Pac. Southwest For. and Range Exp. Stn., Berkeley, CA.

Pechanec, Joseph F. and G. D. Pickford
1937. A weight estimate method for the determination of range of pasture production. J. Am. Soc. Agron. 29: 894-904.

Snedecor, George W. and William G. Cochran.
1967. Statistical methods. Iowa State Univ. Press, Ames, Iowa. 593 p.

Wilm, H. G., David F. Costello, and G. E. Klipple.
1944. Estimating forage yield by the double-sampling method. J. Am. So. Agron. 36: 194-203.

A CONTINUOUS FUNCTION DESIGN FOR
FERTILIZER RATE TRIALS IN YOUNG PINE PLANTATIONS[1]

Eugene Shoulders and Allan E. Tiarks[2]

Abstract.--A continuous variable design is described whereby nitrogen is applied in increasing amounts to 2 m square cells in one direction and phosphorus is applied in like manner at right angles. This design made possible the testing of 121 combinations of nitrogen and phophorus rates on a 30 x 30 m area. The experimental design has potential for obtaining first approximations of fertilizer requirements cheaply and quickly. Four months after fertilization, maximum height growth occurred on loblolly pine seedlings receiving 21 kg/ha of nitrogen and 211 kg/ha of phosphorus.

INTRODUCTION

Large areas of uniform soil are required for conventional field plot experiments to establish the best rates of fertilization for pine plantations. Treatment plots must be isolated by buffer zones that are wide enough to prevent roots of measurement trees in one treatment from drawing nutrients from another treatment or from untreated areas adjacent to the plot. Inadequate isolation may lead to erroneous or inconclusive results. It is common in these experiments for buffer areas to occupy three or more times the area as the measurement plots. Another problem is that areas of uniform soil of sufficient size to establish such trials are difficult to find.

An alternative to conventional field-plot procedures to develop response curves or surfaces is the continuous variable design (Fox 1973) in which individual plants in a row receive increasing amounts of the nutrient under study. Levels and combinations of two nutrients may be tested by increasing rates of application of the second nutrient at right angles to levels of the first. Thus, nitrogen application might increase incrementally from east to west and phosphorus from north to south. All combinations of many levels of each nutrient could be applied to a relatively small area of uniform soil. This is economical way of screening fertilizer rates for an array of soils. No isolation between treatme is provided in the continuous variable design, since it is assumed that a plant in the middle of the treatment cell will extend its roots equally into adjacent cells and respond as thoug the entire root system had received one rate of fertilizer.

In 1981, the Timber Management Research Wor Unit at Alexandria, LA, initiated a study to test this technique on two sites in central Louisiana. This paper describes the design of these trials and reports preliminary results for one of the sites.

DESIGN OF EXPERIMENT

Since pines are a perennial crop and respon of pine plantations to fertilizer extends beyond the first year, the basic technique was modifie to achieve the following objectives: (1) to occupy the site with trees as early as possible in the experiment; (2) to measure aboveground biomass response to fertilizer levels during the course of the study; and (3) to provide final crop trees with ample growing space to reach a db of about 13 cm (5 inches) without undue competition from their neighbors. Another important consideration in modifying the technique was that response to small additional increments of fertilizer is apt to be greater at low than at hi rates of application.

In our experiment we are testing 11 levels each of N and P. Nitrogen rates range from 10 to 1000 kg/ha and phosphorus rates from 5 to 500 kg/

---

[1] Paper presented at Second Biennial Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Principal Silviculturist and Soil Scientist, respectively, Southern Forest Experiment Station, USDA-Forest Service, Pineville, LA.

tes increase linearly on a logarithmic scale i each succeeding level being approximetely . times the next lower one (fig. 1).

Each N-P combination was applied to a 2.0 by . meter area (4.0 m^2). The trees comprising h final crop are planted in the center of these cells. Nitrogen was supplied as urea (46-0-0) and hosphorus as triple superphosphate (0-46-0).

Amounts of each nutrient to be applied to ndividual treatment cells were carefully weighed n a laboratory balance and placed in packets. ontents of the packets were broadcast by hand venly over the treatment cells. To facilitate ocation of individual cells, these boundaries ere outlined with twine and their corners marked ith wire pin flags.

The 22 by 22 m measurement plot is surrounded y a 2-cell (4 m) wide buffer, which increases the ize of an installation to 30 by 30 m. Cells n the buffer area were fertilized at the same ates as adjacent cells in the measurement plots.

Obviously, seedlings at 2.0 m spacings will ot occupy the site immediately. Nor are 121 rees an adequate number to allow individuals to e harvested periodically to measure intermediate esponses to fertilizers. To overcome these eficiencies we planted additional trees 1.0 m part on the boundaries between cells and at the enter of each of the four 1.0 x 1.0 m quadrants omprising the 2.0 x 2.0 m cell. This reduced nitial spacing between individuals to 0.71 x . m.

Harvest after 1 year will remove all trees n the centers of the meter square quadrants and ncrease spacing between residual trees to 1.0 x . m. Two options are available for spacing of esiduals after the second harvest: removal of lternate rows of trees parallel to the x or y xis of the plantation would produce a 1.0 x 2.0 m ectangular spacing, whereas removal of alternate ows oriented diagonally to one axis or the other ould result in a uniform spacing of 1.41 m between esiduals. We specified the retangular spacing n the study plan but now favor the square arrangement. The third harvest will remove all remaining oncrop trees and increase spacing between ndividuals to 2.0 x 2.0 m.

Measurement plots contained 1,013 trees nitially. The number will be reduced to 529 rees by the first harvest, to 253 by the second arvest, and to 121 by the third harvest.

Trees scheduled for intermediate harvest ill be retained in the stand if they are needed o replace designated leave trees that have ied. These replacements will be chosen at random from surviving trees in planting spots mmediately adjacent to the missing trees.

The opportunity also exists to replace slow growing individuals with one of their more vigorous neighbors. Reducing variation in this way would alter the population to which results apply. Evaluating positive and negative consequences of this procedure must precede any decision to replace living trees with individuals scheduled for harvest.

Fertilizer rates in this experiment directly apply only to the middle trees of each 2.0 x 2.0 m cell. But, the nutrient environment of any individual in the plantation at any time can be uniquely described by the x and y coordinate of its location. Moreover, use of coordinates rather than actual N and P rates will eliminate bias introduced by selecting individuals other than the center tree as crop trees.

Coordinates have the added advantage that they are proportional to the logarithms of fertilizer rates and need not be transformed for regression analyses.

Total height and groundline diameter of each tree on the measurement plot will be measured at the end of each growing season. Diameter at breast height may be substituted for groundline diameter after all trees attain a total height greater than 1.37 m (4.5 feet). Dry mass of foliage and woody material (bole and limbs, including bark) will be determined for each harvested tree. From these measurements we can derive volumes and total aboveground biomass of every tree, if such are desired. Foliage and woody material will be analyzed in the laboratory for N and P and perhaps for other nutrients.

Multiple regressions will be fitted to the response surfaces produced by the measurements listed above. Because rates of response to N and P are expected to decline and may become negative as application rates increase, and because interactions between N and P fertilization may be important, an equation having the form:

$$Y = b_o + b_1N + b_2P + b_3N^2 + b_4P^2 + b_5NP$$

was selected as the response model. Terms are added sequentially in the order listed so long as they improve the fit of the equation to the response surface. In the equation, Y is a growth parameter (height, diameter, biomass, or nutrient content) and N and P are fertilizer rates expressed as actual amounts per unit area or their logarithms. Derivatives of the equations will be solved for amounts of N and P required for maximum response.

INTERIM RESULTS

Now let us look at preliminary results from an installation that was planted in June 1981 and fertilized in April 1982. Seedling heights and groundline diameters were measured in late August 1982, four months after fertilizers were applied.

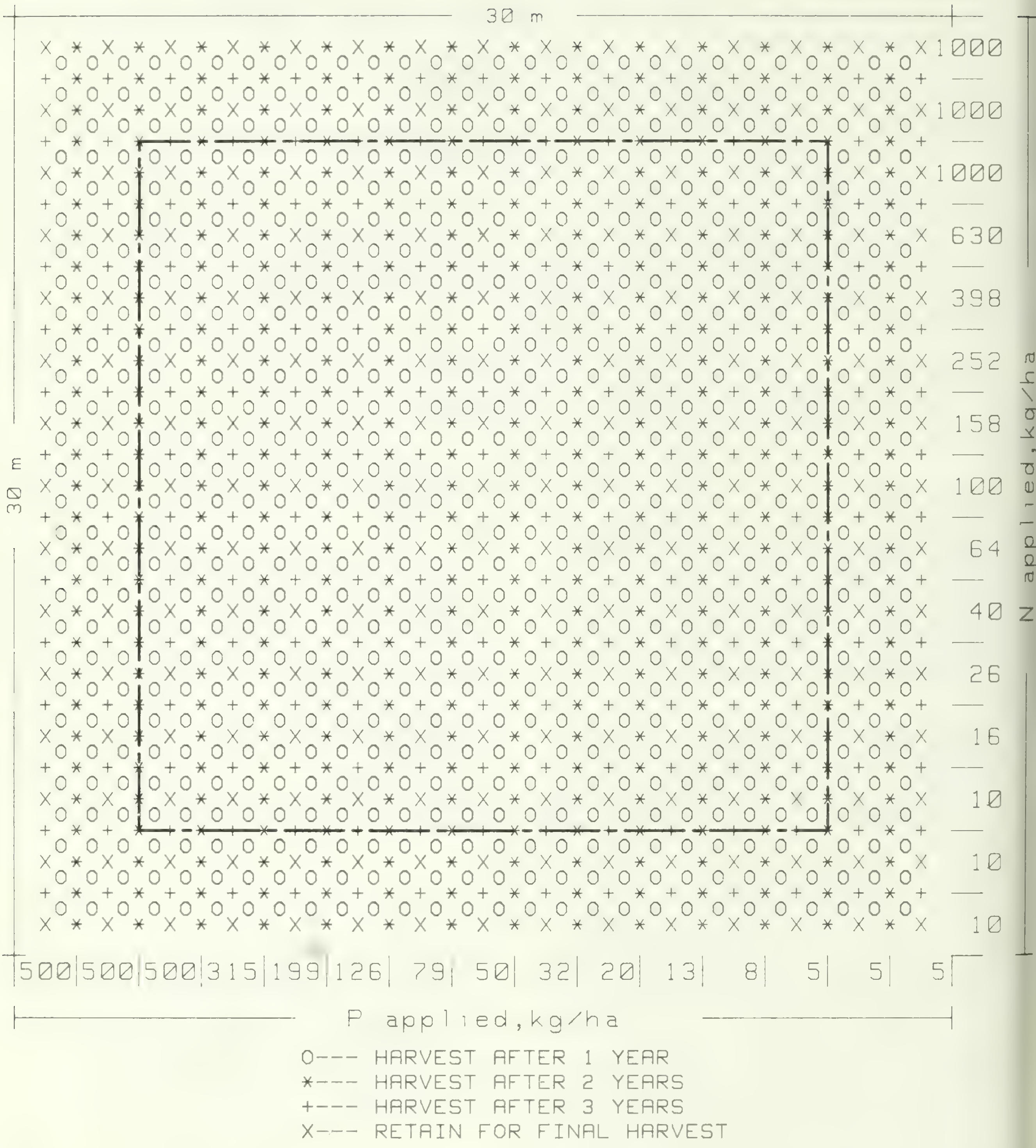


Figure 1.--Layout of test plantations. The "x" trees are centered in individual fertilizer-level cells. Fertilizer rates are shown at the bottom and on the right margin.

The site of this installation had never been tlled or fertilized. Soil is Beauregard silt lam (Plinthaquic Paleudult, fine-silty, siliceous, termic). The test species is loblolly pine (inus *taeda* L.).

Laboratory analyses of soil samples from the 1l crop tree positions in the installation showed nrmal variation among samples but no important gadients in percent organic matter, nitrogen, or posphorus.

Planting stock for the installation was grown i containers from wind pollinated seed from a sgle loblolly pine parent whose progeny had reponded well to fertilization in greenhouse tials. Seedlings were 14 weeks old from seed whn planted.

Plantation culture (in addition to fertilization) includes complete control of competing veetation with herbicides supplemented by hoeing, ar protection of seedlings from fusiform rust irection (*Cronartium quercuum* (Berk.) Miyabe e Shirai F. sp. *fusiforme*) and Nantucket pine tip mch (*Rhyacionia frustrana* Comst.) damage with fugicides and insecticides.

Both heights and groundline diameters showed pcitive responses to N and P which culminated wihin the range of rates of application of the tw nutrients (figures 2 and 3). There were no sinificant interactions between nutrients in thir effects on growth. Even though only 4 moths had elapsed since fertilizer was applied, th second-order polynomial regression accounted fo 39 percent of the variation in tree heights an 30 percent of the variation in groundline dimeters.

Only 21 kg/ha of nitrogen were required for mximum height growth and only 30 kg/ha for maximh groundline diameter growth. Corresponding qntities of P for maximum response were 211 and 1 kg/ha. While these values will undoubtedly cnge as trees have more time to respond to tir nutrient status, they are excellent examps of the advantage of the continuous variable aroach over conventional fertilizer trials for itial screening of fertilizer rates. A 3^2 ftorial experiment that tested 10,64, and 158 kgha of N and 5, 32 and 79 kg/ha of P would hse produced similar results for N but would nc have determined the amount of P required for maimum response.

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

The continuous variable design allows the apication of many levels of two treatments on relatively small land area. The treatments mus be continuous rather than discrete, so the meod adapts well to fertilization trials but not

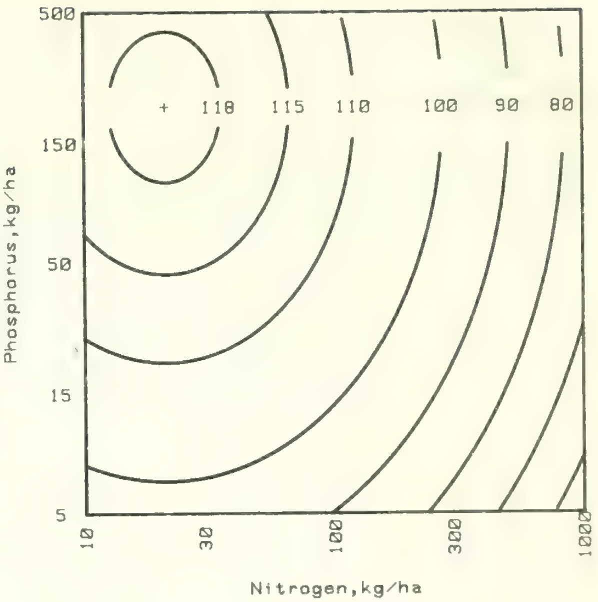


Figure 2.--Effect of nitrogen and phosphorus on isoquants of tree heights (in centimeters) at 14 months, four months after fertilization. Equation is:

$$Ht = 47 + 39 \text{ Log } P - 8.4 (\text{Log } P)^2 + 40 \text{ Log } N - 15.1 (\text{Log } N)^2 \text{ with } R^2 = 0.39$$

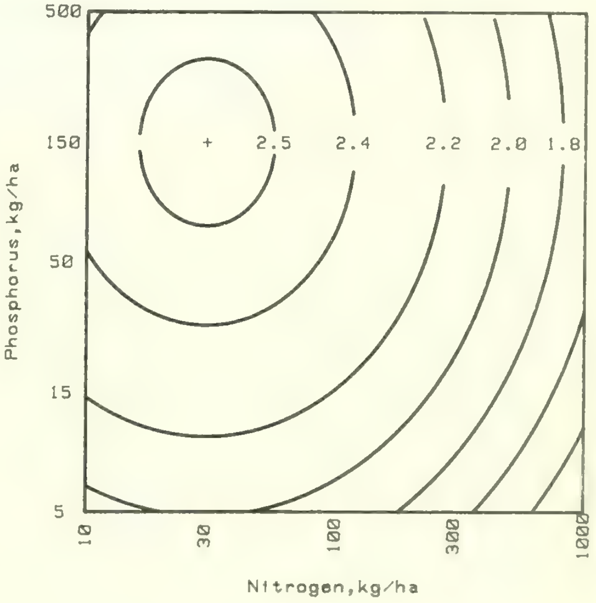


Figure 3.--Effect of nitrogen and phosphorus on isoquants of root collar diameters (in centimeters) at age 14 months, four months after fertilization. The equation is:

$$Rcd = 0.63 + 1.03 \text{ Log } P - 0.24 (\text{Log } P)^2 + 1.05 \text{ Log } N - 0.36 (\text{Log } N)^2 \text{ with } R^2 = 0.30$$

to tests of genetic materials. The advantages of the method are:

1. A large number of levels can be used in one experiment so that extreme levels can be applied. While the extreme levels may not be of practical significance, they are useful in describing the response curve.

2. The application of two treatments in an orthogonal design allows the study of potential interactions to a degree that is not possible with conventional field experiments which have a limited resource restriction on plot numbers.

3. By restricting the land area required, the task of finding uniform sites is easier.

4. The small size of the experiment reduces the labor and other resource requirements, so multiple sites can be installed. The design can be feasibly replicated in time and space, enhancing the reliability of the data.

As the study has been installed for a short time, all unforeseen problems have not shown up yet. Potential disadvantages are:

1. The inherent assumption is that roots will grow without bias in all directions. If a treatment affected root growth, the results may not reflect the true situation. For example, if phosphorus were to enhance root growth towards the side receiving the higher levels of phosphorus, the requirement for phosphorus would be unde estimated.

2. Because each tree is in a sense a pl tree to tree variability caused by genetics microsite differences could mask the results. (Vander Zaag et al 1980).

3. The absolute requirement for a unifo site restricts the method to newly planted tr Older plantations with their larger spacings would require too much land to meet the unifo site requirement.

While the results so far are encouraging the study will have to grow through several m seasons before the application of the continu variable design can be recommended for forest fertilization studies.

LITERATURE CITED

Fox, R.L.
1973. Agronomic investigations using conti function experimental designs--nitrogen fertilization of sweet corn. Agron. J. 454-456.

Vander Zaag, P., Fox, R.L., Kwakye, P.K. and Obigbesen, G.O.
1980. The phosphorus requirements of yams (*Dioscorea* Spp.) Trop. Agric. (Trinidad) 57: 97-106.

THE COMPETITION-RELEASE ENIGMA: ADDING APPLES AND ORANGES AND COMING UP WITH LEMONS[1]

Shepard M. Zedaker[2]

Abstract.--Much of the success in reforestation as a silvicultural operation depends on our ability to identify, evaluate, and manage competition from non-crop species. Unfortunately, our knowledge of the competition-release - growth response relationships in Southern forests is limited. Present methods to evaluate interspecific competition are only semiquantitative and make use of competition for space, size-density interaction, techniques developed for monocultures. But because plant competition is for the elements that space contains, i.e. light, water, nutrients, and not the space itself, differential resource use by various plant species limit such methods. Significant gains in our ability to evaluate competitive stress and predict growth response due to interspecific competition could be made if expressions of size and density of competing species were more indicative of their site resource use. An approach to evaluating competition and response to release in loblolly pine plantations employing leaf area of competing plants is discussed. Since it controls light extinction in plant canopies, is directly related to water uptake and transpiration, and influences nutrient use, leaf area used as a bioassy of competitive stress should improve growth predictions in mixed species stands.

INTRODUCTION

The mere presence of an organism alters the erironment of its neighbors and may result in cnges in their growth and form (Harper, 1977). Th process through which plants interact in this maner has been defined as competition. Competitin is of interest to silviculturists because of it influence on growth and yield. Intraspecific ccpetition has a profound effect on diameter ditributions and product yield once the crop is esablished and dominant on a site. Prior to stnd closure, the crop can be subject to interspecific competition that inhibits growth and in some instances can result in crop failure. Release, the selective control of forest weeds in a stand of crop trees, is used to relieve stress from interspecific competition. Ostensibly, the amount of crop growth improvement is related to the amount or quality of release. But, since the cost of weed control is directly proportional to the amount of vegetation killed, it may not be desirable, or even feasible, to control all non-crop vegetation.

The first step in optimizing release operations is understanding competition control-growth response relationships. Solution of the enigma imposed by interspecific competition in regenerating forest stands is exceeded in difficulty only by the proverbial problem of adding apples and oranges and coming up with lemons. Variation in site conditions, vegetative communities, site preparation, and timing of plant establishment results in a complex matrix of species interactions. This paper presents an untested yet tractable solution to the competition-release question. Because of its causal link to the functional environment, leaf area is proposed as the common denominator for species comparisons. Both theoretical and practical implications of the use of leaf area are discussed. The review which follows is intended to provide the reader with the background and basis for this approach.

---

[1] Paper presented at Second Silvicultural Reearch Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-, 1982. Partial financial support provided by Mcntire-Stennis, Reynolds Homestead Research Ceter, and Mr. Robert J. Kennedy.

[2] Assistant Professor of Forest Ecology and Siviculture, Department of Forestry, Virginia Potechnic Institute and State University, Blksburg, Virginia.

COMPETITION AND THE FUNCTIONAL ENVIRONMENT

Definitions of plant competition have been numerous. Donald (1963) combined many of these into a concise statement:

> Competition occurs when each of two or more organisms seeks the measure it wants of any particular factor or thing and when the immediate supply of the factor or thing is below the combined demand of the organisms.

For plants, these factors are light, water, and nutrients. Although references to "competition for space" occur in the plant literature, the phrase really implies that competition is for the elements that space contains (Zimdahl, 1972). This space-element concept sets plant competition apart from animal interactions. Exclusive of perhaps allelopathy, plant competition is purely an indirect process. Competition arises from the changes in the functional environment of one plant as influenced by the presence and growth of its competitors. Because forest communities rarely expand to the point where all potential crown or rooting volume is occupied by plant tissue, an actual struggle between competing plants for space or "territory" seldom occurs (Curtis, 1970). Thus, competition is a result of plant density and size relative to the available pool of resources rather than geometric space alone.

Differential consumption of site resources makes plant competition a difficult process to quantify directly. Proof of the causal link between the growth of some individuals, resource depletion, and the reduction in the relative growth rate of others has rarely been observed (Ford, 1975). Further confounding competition-release relationships is interaction between above and below ground subsystems. Clearly, competition for light occurs only when plant populations are sufficiently dense for their crowns to shade one another. Yet, because of the continuous nature of the soil matrix, competition for moisture and nutrients undoubtedly occurs even when roots do not overlap. Experiments with mixed stands of pasture plants have indicated that significant interactions between above and below ground competition occur (Donald, 1958; Aspinall, 1960; Snaydon, 1971).

Interactions also exist between competition for different factors within the resource pool. A reduction in the supply of one element due to competition may result in a decrease in the ability to exploit the supply of other elements (Table 1).

The pool of available resources can be thought of as the functional or operational envi ment of a particular plant. This concept was introduced by Mason and Langenheim (1957). They defined operational environment in the statement

> It must be continually emphasized that the operational environment is always the environment of a particular organism. There is no aspect of environment, in the sense of actively operating phenomena, that is not related to individual organisms . . . There are no phenomena significant to such aggregates of floras except as logical products or summations of phenomena operationally significant to the included or associated individuals.

In the context of competition, resources are operationally significant only if changes in the level of availability elicit a response in terms of plant growth. An example will clarify the meaning of operational significance.

Suppose that the mean soil moisture potenti in a loblolly pine (Pinus taeda L.) plantation o August 20, 1982 was -1 MPa at 10 cm below the soil surface. What does this mean in terms of a loblolly pine's operational environment. Really very little. An individual pine responds or senses the highest soil moisture potential (leas moisture stress) to which its root system has access, which might be quite different than the mean potential at 10 cm. Furthermore, the soil moisture potential on August 20 may elicit very little response in terms of tree growth. Plants have mechanisms, such as stomatal control, solute concentration, and stem water storage, that alter the effects of a particular day's water regime. Loblolly pine exhibits both elastic and plastic responses to moisture stress. Because we are interested in the plastic or growth response, integration of the sensible moisture regime over an entire growing season is the only operationall significant environmental factor in terms of the available pool of water.

Significant gains in our understanding of th competitive interactions of forest trees could be made if competitor growth were treated as an indirect factor working through the functional environment to influence subject tree growth. Connections between plantation site/climatic effe competitor species growth effects, alterations to the functional environment of the crop, and subsequent effects on crop growth would require identification. These connections could be viewe as a path analysis model to illustrate crop behavior (fig. 1). The construction of the model followed the procedures for analysis of causal paths outlined in Turner and Stevens (1959) and described for observational data on natural syste

Table 1.--Effects of competition for light and water by an aggressor species (A) on a suppressed species (S)[1/]

Effects	Competition for		
	Light	Water	Light and Water
Primary	(1) A reduces light availability to S	(3) A reduces water availability to S	(1+3) A reduces light and water availability to S
Secondary	(2) Lower light supply reduces the ability of S to exploit its water supply	(4) Lower water supply reduces the ability of S to exploit its light supply	(2+4) S suffers reduced capacity to exploit light and water supply
Interactions	(1) x (2)	(3) x (4)	(1) x (2), (1) x (3), (1) x (4), (2) x (3), (2) x (4), (3) x (4), (1+3) x (2+4), ...

[1/] After Donald, 1958.

Overton and Florschutz (1962). Climatic site riables are introduced as primary factors, nctional environmental variables and competing getation are described as intermediate resultant fects, and crop growth is the ultimate resultant fect. Variable sums are the integration of vironmental attributes over a growth cycle. edback vectors are included since the functional environment both affects and is affected by competing plants.

The path analysis model provides the physical and biological framework for explaining how the process of interspecific competition takes place, but cannot be used directly to solve the enigma. The crux of the functional environment solution

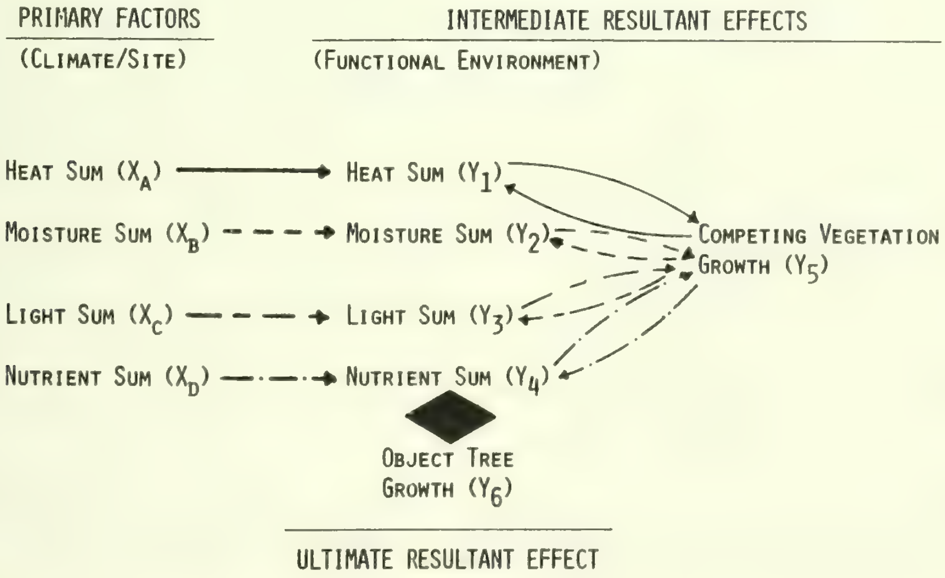


Figure 1.--Path analysis model of relationships between climate/site factors, an object tree's functional environment and competing vegetation.

is our inability, at least with current technology, to measure the operationally significant variables. The complexity of the functional environment matrix, the physical difficulty of measurement without influence, and the drastically different above and below ground subsystems provide formidable barriers.

BIOASSAYS IN COMPETITION STUDIES

When presented with measurement problems, such as is the case with a plant's functional environment, researchers often resort to a biological assay technique. A bioassay is used when the measurement of a causal agent is difficult but the effect it has on a biological system is uniform and predictable. Silviculturists have been using bioassay techniques, although somewhat unknowingly, for some time in their attempts to develop competition-density indices for forest growth.

Competition-density indices, such as Opie's Competing Basal Area, Bella's Competition Influence Zone Overlap, and Arney's Competition Stress Index, are derived from relationships between size of the crop tree, competitor size, and proximity of competing stems (Table 2). The variables which comprise these indices, i.e. number of competitors, crown area overlap, basal area of subject tree and competitors, number of trees per acre, etc., describe in a round-about manner the functional environment of the crop trees. Unfortunately, competition-density indices are often treated a magic numbers that, when entered into growth equations, "explain" what goes on in the nebulo competition black box. Little attention is giv to the underlying principal that makes such ind relatively successful for describing the effect of competition in the even-aged monocultures fo which they were developed. In single-species stands, access to and control over the pool of site resources is directly proportional to plan size (Newton, 1973). Within species variation the efficiency of resource use is minor in comparison to differential consumption relative to individual tree's basal area, height, or crown volume. This principal makes competition-densi indices good bioassays for the causal agent, th subject tree's functional environment in monocu

The same cannot be said for the mixed-spec stands creating the competition-release enigma. In these stands, differences in species growth rates, canopy and root system structure, and production efficiency results in a complex matr of differential consumption of site resources. Research in agronomic crops has indicated that water use efficiency in dry matter or volume production varies considerably between species, but

Table 2.--Competition-Density indices used for even-aged monoculture forest growth modeling.

Author (date)	Index	Independent Variables[1]	Percent of Variation in Dependent Variables Explained
Arney (1973)	Competition Stress Index	n, ak, A	*[2]
Bella (1971)	Competition Influence Zone Overlap	n, ak, BAF	57
Drew and Flewelling (1977)	Relative Density Index	n, $\overline{V}$	*
Honer (1972)	Point Density Measure	HT, CD	*
Krajicek *et al* (1961)	Crown Competition Factor	AR, Di, Ni	*
Moore *et al* (1973)	Area Potentially Available	n, ak, A, DBH, di	76-66
Opie (1968)	Competing Basal Area Count	n, ak, A, BAF	55
Tennent (1975)	Competition Quotient	n, ak, A	81

---

[1] n=number of competitors, ak=crown area overlap with kth competitor, A=subject tree crown area, BAF=basal area factor, di=DBH of ith competitor, DBH=DBH of subject tree, CD= subject tree diameter, $\overline{V}$=mean tree volume, AR=area in acres, Ni=number of trees in DBH class, Di=DBH class.

[2] *Not given in report.

is relatively constant within species (Hillel, 1971). Miller and Poole (1979) reported similar results in their study of the pattern of water use by woody shrubs. Two- to four-fold differences in transpiration rates per unit of leaf area among ten tree species infer that forest associates also differ in their efficiency of water use (Kramer and Kolowski, 1970). Species differences in photosynthetic efficiency are well documented (Bannister, 1976; Kramer and Kozlowski, 1979). Consistant variation among forest species in their nutrient content, on a dry weight basis, infers that differential consumption of nutrients occurs but does not provide conclusive evidence of differential productive efficiency (Rennie, 1955; Tamm, 964; Marrison, 1974).

A pragmatic view of a hypothetical competitive ituation results in similar conclusions. Suppose hat a subject loblolly pine were growing one meter way on one side from a red maple (*Acer rubrum* L.) nd one meter away on the other sdie from another oblolly. Both competitors with the subject lobolly have 10 cm^2 of basal area and are 3 meters all. One competitor, the maple, is deliquescent hile the other exhibits an excurrent crown form. he maple is deciduous and casts significant shade or only a portion of the year. One competitor is istinctly taprooted, the pine, while the other as a more fiberous spreading root system. It is bvious that the effect of the maple on the subject oblolly's functional environment is quite different rom that of its specific twin. In this case, an ttempt to use conventional competition indices ased on plant size and proximity to predict growth esponse from release would be much like trying to dd apples and oranges. The result would probably e a lemon of a prediction.

LEAF AREA - THE COMMON DENOMINATOR

Solving the competition-release enigma depends n finding a common denominator for adding the pples and oranges of our mixed species stands. o be effective, the denominator must meet three riteria. It should adequately reflect the effect f plant size and species on the functional environent of our crop trees. It must be easy to deterine in the field so that silviculturists can ssess the competitive status of their plantations d make recommendations for release prescriptions. e denominator must also be amenable to improvement a bioassay when research provides better links tween it and the functional environment causal gents. I hypothesize that leaf area is the common nominator which can be used to solve our enigma.

Leaf area is primarily responsible for the ght environment of crop trees. We can determine e amount of light intercepted by plant canopies ing:

$$S_b(L) = S_b(0)e^{-K_s L}$$

where: $S_b(L)$ = the direct solar radiation measured on a horizontal plane below a leaf index of L

$S_b(0)$ = the direct solar radiation above the plant canopy

and K_s = shadow cast by a unit area of leaf

This is simply a special case of Beer's Law (Monteith, 1973). Since the vast majority of water used by plants is transpired through leaf tissue, leaf area should be indicative of the status of the moisture resource in the functional environment. Water use per unit leaf area has been determined for agricultural crops and forest trees. Although there is considerable variation in transpiration rates due to environmental influences, forest species exhibit different yet consistant water use patterns on a seasonal basis (Conard and Radosevich, 1981; Miller and Poole, 1979). The relationship between leaf area and nutrient use is less well defined. However, it is not unreasonable to expect that leaf area, through its direct relationship to the amount of photosynthate available for plant growth and to water uptake, would strongly influence nutrient use. Leaf area is probably better than any other single physical attribute at reflecting the influence competing plants may have on the crop's functional environment.

To meet the second criterion, leaf area must be easily measured in the field. Although direct measurement of the leaf area of individual plants would be an onerous task, indirect methods are available which provide accurate results. Carbon and others (1979) presented a method for visual estimation of leaf area in forest stands. By correlating visual estimation with measured standards, experienced estimators were able to determine leaf area index in Eucalyptus stands in Australia within four percent.

A more rigorous method, not dependent on estimator expertise, is based on the hypothesis that a physiological balance exists between plant conducting tissue and water requirements as determined by leaf area. Stem diameter has been used to estimate foliar weight or area since the mid-sixties (Whittaker and Woodwell, 1967). For conifers, linear correlations of tree stem dimensions with leaf area/weight are generally better if sapwood area is used rather than dbh (Table 3). This is because heartwood, which could make up a large portion of total basal area, contributes little to water transport through the stem. Further restriction to current sapwood area, defined as the present spring wood and last year's growth ring, improved estimations for oaks (Rogers and Hinkley, 1979). This is because water flow in oak is restricted to the most recent one or two growth rings. Similar relationships between foliar area/weight and stem conducting area may be expected for other species.

Table 3.--Linear regression attributes for estimating leaf area/weight for selected forest tree species.

Species	Dependent Variable Y[1]	Independent Variable X[2]	Number of Samples n	Coefficient of Determination r^2	Reference
				(%)	
Abies lasiocarpa	FW	spa	8	93	Kaufman & Troendle, 1981
Acer macrophyllum	FW	dbh	18	87	Grier & Logan, 1978
Pinus contorta	FW	dbh	19	84	Reid et al., 1974
	FW	spa	9	95	Kaufman & Troendle, 1981
Pinus monticola	FW	dbh	11	93	Snell & Brown, 1978
	FW	spa	11	98	Snell & Brown, 1978
Populus tremuloides	FW	spa	11	97	Kaufman & Troendle, 1978
Pseudotsuga menziesii	FW	dbh	123	86	Grier & Logan, 1978
	FW	spa	18	96	Snell & Brown, 1978
Quercus alba	FW	spa	12	70	Rogers & Hinckley, 1979
	FW	csa	12	98	Rogers & Hinckley, 1979
	FA	spa	12	75	Rogers & Hinckley, 1979
	FA	csa	12	94	Rogers & Hinckley, 1979
Thuja plicata	FW	dbh	6	91	Waring et al., 1978

[1] FW = Total tree foliage weight, FA = Total tree foliage area.

[2] dbh = Diameter breast height, spa = sapwood basal area, csa = current sapwood basal area, i.e. last two growth rings.

Once conducting area - foliar area regressions are derived, the use of leaf area as a common denominator in studies of interspecific competition is easy. Silviculturists could substitute leaf area for basal area or dbh, or use a weighting factor that reflected leaf area, in their computation of competition indices. Measurement of leaf area in regenerating stands would consist of measuring basal diameter/area of competing stems. Since, for the first few years after establishment all stemwood is sapwood/conducting tissue, no separate heartwood-sapwood estimation would be needed. Thus, leaf area could be easily estimated in the field, satisfying criterion two for a good common denominator.

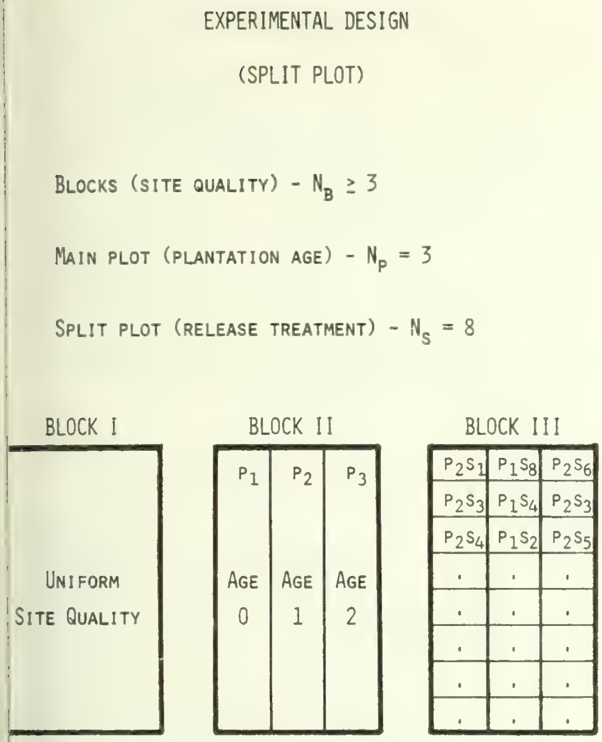
Although leaf area is a better estimate of environmental influence than dbh or basal area, it still is not perfect. Species differ in the amount of water transpired per unit of leaf area. Variation in leaf orientation and shape between species cause differences in light extinction under their crowns. As physiologists improve our knowledge of specific resource use per unit of leaf area, competition indices using leaf area can be enhanced. Weighting factors for light, water and nutrient use could be applied to leaf area to better model its influence on the crop tree functional environment and meet criteria three.

A COMPETITION-RELEASE STUDY

To test leaf area as a common denominator and shed some light on the competition-release enigma, I have designed a study which will be installed in the summer of 1983 in loblolly pin plantations in Virginia. The objectives of thi work are:

1. To develop objective measures of competition in pine plantations based on: size, proximity, numbers, species and control of site resources through leaf area by competing vegetation.
2. To quantify the competitive status of plantations created by site preparation and various levels of release for loblolly pine establishmen
3. To use the measures developed in objectives 1 and 2 above to predict early growth and response to release of loblolly pine in plantation environments.

Competition and response to release will b evaluated at the stand level as well as on a si tree basis. For stand level evaluations and to


EXPERIMENTAL DESIGN
(SPLIT PLOT)
Blocks (site quality) - $N_B \geq 3$
Main plot (plantation age) - $N_P = 3$
Split plot (release treatment) - $N_S = 8$
BLOCK I
BLOCK II
BLOCK III
Uniform
Site Quality
P_1
P_2
P_3
Age 0
Age 1
Age 2
P_2S_1 P_1S_8 P_2S_6
P_2S_3 P_1S_4 P_2S_3
P_2S_4 P_1S_2 P_2S_5

igure 2.--Experimental design and plot layout for competition-release study in loblolly pine plantations.

reate variation in competitive status for ndividual tree growth prediction models, a split lot experimental design will be used (fig. 2). minimum of three replications of the whole xperiment are planned. Blocking will be done on he basis of site quality or geographic location. ithin each block, plantations of three ages, 0, , and 2 years after planting will be subject to elease treatments. These release treatments are:

1. No competition control
2. Herbaceous weed control
3. Woody stem control
4. Herbaceous weed and woody stem control
5. Control of 1/3 of the woody stems
6. Control of 2/3 of the woody stems
7. Control of herbaceous weeds and 1/3 of the woody stems
8. Control of herbaceous weeds and 2/3 of the woody stems

ll competition control will be provided by herbiides. Repeat treatment will be applied as necesary to insure single season control. Mechanical isturbances of the vegetation will be avoided ecause of the confounding effects of resprouting d immediate shade removal.

Stand level response will be determined by easuring average height, diameter and volume growth for pines and hardwoods in each split plot. The development of predictive equations of seedling growth will require the establishment of single tree plots in each treatment split plot. Competitive status of individual loblolly pine will be evaluated on the basis of size, proximity, numbers of individuals, species, and leaf area for competitors within polygons of influence around each tree. These attributes, along with pine height and basal diameter, will be measured before treatment and yearly following release until pine crown closure. Regression analysis will be used to evaluate the relationships between measures of competition and loblolly volume growth. The growth models developed will be evaluated for variable sensitivity with emphasis placed on the development of an easy-to-use field technique to evaluate the need for, and response of trees to, release.

This study should improve our ability to identify, evaluate, and manage competition from non-crop species in loblolly pine plantations. Although it may not provide the ultimate solution to the competition-release enigma, it should make adding the apples and oranges of our mixed species stands less difficult.

LITERATURE CITED

Arney, J.D.
1973. Tables for quantifying competitive stress on individual trees. Com. For. Serv. Pac. For. Res. Cent. Info. Rep. BCX78.

Aspinall, D.
1960. An analysis of competition between barley and white persicaria. II. Factors determining the course of competition. Ann. Appl. Biol. 48:636-654.

Bannister, P.
1976. An Introduction to Physiological Plant Ecology. John Wiley and Sons, New York, 273 p.

Bella, I.E.
1971. A new competition model for individual trees. For. Sci. 23:364-372.

Carbon, B.A., G.A. Bartle, and A.M. Murray.
1979. A method for visual estimation of leaf area. For. Sci. 25:53-58.

Conard, S.G. and S.R. Radosevich.
1981. Photosynthesis, xylem pressure potential, and leaf conductance of three montane chaparral species in California. For. Sci. 27:627-639.

Curtis, R.O.
1970. Forty-year development of Douglas-fir stands planted at various spacings. U.S.D.A. For. Serv. Res. Pap. PNW-100, 21 p.

Donald, C.M.
1963. Competition among crop and pasture plants. Adv. Agron. 15:1-118.

Donald, C.M.
1958. The interaction of competition for light and for nutrients. Aust. J. Agric. Res. 9:421-435.

Drew, J.T. and J.W. Flewelling.
1977. Some recent Japanese theories of yield-density relationships and their application to monterey pine plantations. For. Sci. 23:517-534.

Ford, E.D.
1975. Competition and stand structure in even-aged monocultures. J. Ecol. 63:311-333.

Grier, C.C. and R.S. Logan.
1978. Old growth Douglas-fir communities of a western Oregon watershed: biomass distribution and production budgets. Ecol. Monogr. 47:373-400.

Harper, J.L.
1977. Population Biology of Plants. Academic Press, New York, 892 p.

Hillel, D.
1971. Soil and Water: Physical Principles and Processes. Academic Press, New York, 228 p.

Honor, T.G.
1972. A height-density concept and measure. Can. J. For. Res. 2:441-447.

Kaufman, M.R. and C.A. Troendle.
1981. The relationship of leaf area and foliage biomass to sapwood conducting area in four subalpine forest tree species. For. Sci. 27:477-482.

Krajicek, J.E., K.A. Brinkman, and S.F. Gringrich.
1961. Crown competition - a measure of density. For. Sci. 7:35-42.

Kramer, P.J. and T.T. Kozlowski.
1979. Physiology of Woody Plants. Academic Press, New York, 811 p.

Kramer, P.J. and T.T. Kozlowski.
1969. Physiology of Trees. McGraw-Hill, New York, 642 p.

Mason, H.L. and J.H. Langeheim.
1957. Language analysis and the concept of environment. J. Ecol. 38:325-340.

Miller, P.C. and D.K. Poole.
1979. Patterns of water use by shrubs in Southern California. For. Sci. 25:84-98.

Monteith, J.L.
1973. Principles of Environmental Physics. American Elsevier, New York, 241 p.

Moore, J.A., C.A. Budelsby, and R.C. Schlesinger.
1973. A new index representing individual tree competitive status. Can. J. For. Res. 3: 495-500.

Morrison, I.K.
1974. Mineral nutrition of conifers with special reference to nutrient status interpretation: a review of literature. Dept. Env. Can. For. Serv. Publ. 1343. 74 p.

Newton, M.
1973. Forest rehabilitation in North America: some simplifications. J. For. 71:169-172.

Opie, J.E.
1968. Predictability of individual tree growth using various definitions of competing basal area. For. Sci. 14:314-323.

Overton, W.S. and O. Florschutz.
1962. A note on the use of path analysis in analyzing and interpreting observational data, with reference to the goose kill around lake Mattamuskeet, North Carolina, 1960-1961. *In* Proc. 16th Conf. Southeastern Assoc. Game and Fish Comm. Oct. 14-17, Charleston, SC, p. 76-85.

Reid, C.P.P., J. Odegard, J.C. Hokenstrom, W.J McConnel, and W.E. Frajer.
1974. Effects of clearcutting on nutrient cycling in lodgepole pine forests. Res. R Colo. State Univ. Fort Collins. 321 p.

Rennie, P.J.
1955. The uptake of nutrients by mature for growth. Plant & Soil 7:49-95.

Rogers, R. and T.M. Hinkley.
1979. Foliar weight and area related to cur sapwood area in oak. For. Sci. 25:298-303

Snaydon, R.W.
1971. An analysis of competition between pl of *Trifolium ripens* L. populations collect from contrasting soils. J. Appl. Ecol. 8: 692.

Tamm, C.O.
1964. Determination of nutrient requirement forest stands. Int. Rev. For. Res. 1:115-

Tennent, R.B.
1975. Competition quotient in the young *Pin* *radiata*. New Zealand J. For. Sci. 5:230-2

Turner, M.E. and C.D. Stevens.
1959. The regression analysis of causal pat Biomet. 15:236-258.

Waring, R.H., W.H. Emmingham, H.L. Gholz, and Grier.
1978. Variation in maximum leaf area of con forests in Oregon and its ecological signi For. Sci. 24:131-140.

Whittaker, R.H. and G.M. Woodwell.
1967. Surface area relations of woody plants and forest communities. Am. J. Bot. 54:93

Zimdahl, R.L.
1980. Weed-Crop Competition. Oregon State Plant Protection Center, Corvallis, 196 p.

SOUTHERN PINE BEETLE HAZARD RATINGS: USES, IMPLEMENTATION, AND EVALUATION[1]

G. N. Mason, G. D. Hertel, and R. C. Thatcher[2]

Abstract.--Stand hazard rating systems are being applied to direct and indirect approaches of southern pine beetle management. Uses, application approaches, and interpretation of rating results are discussed.

INTRODUCTION

Numerous southern pine beetle (SPB), *Dendroctonus frontalis* Zimmermann, outbreaks have occurred in the 13 Southern States since the beetle was first described in 1868 (Price and Doggett 1978). At times, they have occurred simultaneously in several States, causing widespread, often spectacular timber volume losses. This has disrupted normal operations, reduced potential yields from managed forests, and sometimes caused serious damage on small ownerships. Such losses can be reduced by properly managing pine and pine/hardwood forests and by using available technology for dealing with the SPB (Belanger and Malac 1980, Billings and Pace 1979, Swain and Remion 1981).

Historically, most efforts to control SPB have only provided short term relief (Thatcher et al. 1982). However, in the last 10 years, interest and support for developing approaches to prevent and/or reduce losses to SPB has increased. One approach involves the development and use of stand hazard ratings. Such ratings are needed in ong range planning to maximize stand growth and yield and to minimize pest losses. They may also be used to better direct suppression efforts to stands with the greatest potential for loss.

This paper presents a general overview of how stand hazard rating systems are used to reduce SPB-caused losses, summarizes approaches that have been taken in developing and implementing hazard rating systems across the South, and points out things that should be considered in evaluating the usefulness or meaning of hazard ratings.

HOW HAZARD RATINGS CAN BE USED

Just as the quantity of forest fuel affects fire hazard, dense slow-growing stands have an increased potential for SPB attack and spot development. Basically, if beetles are present in an area, stands that have been identified as high hazard are more likely to be successfully attacked than are those classed as low hazard. If attacks occur in older densely-stocked stands, the chances are that timber losses and beetle numbers will be much greater than would be the case in a similar infestation in low-hazard areas. Since large, overmature, or sawlog-size trees are more often affected, the financial losses, should a spot occur, are also likely to be much more severe. An understanding of these relationships can be very useful in management planning and operations aimed at reducing beetle-caused losses. The following are some uses for hazard rating:

Hazard reduction. Prescribed burning has been used to reduce fire hazard for years. Knowledge of the distribution and abundance of high hazard stands provides a similar opportunity for reducing beetle hazard through silvicultural treatment. The timely thinning of stands before they become high hazard or even after they are high hazard can reduce their susceptibility to a lower level. Although few stands may be thinned for the sole purpose of preventing or reducing SPB losses, a knowledge of how stand conditions affect potential beetle risk provides additional criteria that can be used in establishing cutting budgets, reentry times, and harvest schedules.

Scheduling control operations. As forest managers become more familiar with pine bark beetles and their relationship to forest conditions, management practices and forest economics, they have come to recognize that some spots should receive immediate attention, while others can be left uncontrolled. Techniques have been developed for setting control priorities based on level of beetle activity and size and number of spots (Billings and Pase 1979). Knowledge of the nature and condition of the surrounding forest increases our ability to make control decisions that are biologically and economically sound.

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural esearch Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November -7, 1982.

[2] Research Coordinator, Applications Coordinator, and Program Manager, USDA Forest ervice, Southern Forest Experiment Station, ntegrated Pest Management RD&A Program, 2500 hreveport Highway, Pineville, LA 71360.

Inventory/pest assessment. In east Texas, during the period 1974-1980, an average of 0.5 percent of the land on a 240,000-acre area was classified as very high hazard, 9.5 percent as high, 27 percent as moderate, 26 percent as low, 6 percent as very low hazard, and the remaining 31 percent as nonhost hardwood, clearcuts, and nonforested areas. Many ownerships in other areas of the South would probably have similar conditions. Further, holdings with more intensive management would probably have a greater proportion of low-hazard stands, while those with little or no management, or with management objectives other than timber, would have a larger proportion of high-hazard stands. If this holds true, other things being equal, ownerships with a predominance of low-hazard type should have, on the average, less severe beetle problems over time. Hazard rating gives the landowner the opportunity to make these judgments and to determine the need for direct control and/or stand management actions.

Beetle population removal. Removal of infested trees from high-hazard areas can provide more immediate benefits than the long term gains from intensified stand management. Survival of the SPB during endemic periods appears to be strongly dependent upon the availability of suitable host material. When activity is low, most spots occur and spread in very high-hazard (optimal habitat) stands. As beetle activity intensifies, spots spread into less favored (low to moderate susceptibility) stand types. However, when activity again declines, and survival becomes a critical factor, populations once again concentrate in high-hazard areas having older, denser, slow-growing stands as well as diseased trees, trees attacked by other beetle species (Ips, etc.), and stands under stress from man-caused or natural events (e.g., drought, lightning). It is believed that these "reservoir" stands serve as epicenters for future outbreaks when environmental conditions are again favorable for beetle population development. Timely harvesting of these stands during low beetle activity (endemic) periods could prevent or slow the development of future outbreaks by removing sources of beetles which provide potential for population buildups.

SPB survey. Even during endemic periods, surveys are necessary to detect or evaluate infestation incidence, location, and severity. Detection flights commonly cover large areas and may reveal little or no apparent activity. Such surveys can be made more efficient by concentra
on "reservoir" or high-hazard areas during ende
periods. If no activity is found there, it is
to assume that there would be no activity in lo
or medium-hazard stands. As beetle activity increases in these "indicator" areas, the surve
can be expanded to include less susceptible pin
and pine/hardwood stands.

IMPLEMENTATION APPROACHES

We recognize that if new pest management t
nology (in this case, hazard ratings for SPB) i
be accepted and used, it must be packaged in readily understood form, be cost effective, requ
little extra labor, and complement existing fore
management efforts. During the Expanded Southe
Pine Beetle R&D Program, researchers across the South collected the necessary site-stand data needed to develop stand hazard rating techniques for a variety of site and stand conditions (Cost
and Searcy 1981). These and other studies resul
in a number of hazard rating approaches (Belange
et al. 1981, Hicks et al. 1981, Mason et al. 19
Ku et al. 1981, Lorio 1978, and Sader and Mille
1976). Several of these systems have been imple
mented by State, Federal, and industrial forestr
organizations (Table 1).

The following approaches have been taken i
implementing hazard rating systems:

Application based on existing stand data. Most managed forest ownerships maintain tract su
vey, management unit, and stand type maps for wh
inventory information is available. These recor
generally include data necessary to rate stands,
information from which these data can be derived
Computer storage and retrieval offers acquisitio
convenience and continuous update capability, an
represents the ideal data base situation for SPB hazard rating. Stands may be classed manually f
computer printouts, directly from stand maps, or automatically after entering the appropriate rat
equation. To date, this approach has been appli
largely to National Forest lands (Lorio and Somm
1981). Continuous Inventory of Stand Conditions (CISC) is an automatic data-processing system employed by the National Forests in the South to document timber stand conditions. By using f
data fields in CISC (forest type, stand conditio
class, method of cut, operability, and site inde
a rating of high, medium, or low hazard can be developed for SPB attack. Six hundred thousand acres have been hazard rated on the Kisatchie National Forest and the information is currently being used, along with traditional criteria, to select stands for regeneration and intermediate cuts.

The same hazard rating system, along with a
annosus root rot hazard rating system, is being implemented on 128,000 acres of the Holly Springs National Forest in Mississippi. This cooperativ

able 1.--Implementation of hazard ratings for SPB in the South

tate	System Developed by	Technology Directed To	Organizations Involved in Implementation
rkansas	Ku	Small, private, nonindustrial	U. Arkansas-Monticello Arkansas Forestry Comm.
labama	Mason/Hicks (Coastal Plain) Sader/Miller (Piedmont)	Small, private, nonindustrial	Alabama Forestry Comm.
eorgia	Belanger	Small, private, nonindustrial	Southeast. For. Exp. Stn. Georgia Forestry Comm.
	Hedden	Ga. State Parks	Georgia Forestry Comm Georgia Dept. Nat. Resources Clemson U.
ouisiana	Lorio	National Forests	Kisatchie NF Southern For. Exp. Stn.
ississippi	Lorio	National Forest	Holly Springs NF Region 8-S&PF
exas	Mason/Hicks	Small private, nonindustrial Industry	Texas Forestry Serv. Stephen F. Austin U.
	Mason/Hicks	Temple EasTex	Temple EasTex Stephen F. Austin U.

ffort between Region 8-State and Private orestry, Southern Station, and Ranger District ersonnel will evaluate the different ways that azard ratings and other technologies can be used n the Holly Springs District's ongoing prevenion and suppression activities.

Application using aerial photographs. pplications of stand hazard ratings to large and bases, in the absence of existing stand nventory data, can be accomplished with aerial otographs (Mason et al. 1981, Sader and Miller 976). Gross level stand identification suitable or SPB hazard rating can be acquired easily from all scale (≅ 1:60,000) color infrared phoography. Detailed site and tree conditions ithin stands may be added using larger scale 1:12,000 to 1:5,000) sampling or ground examintion.

A two-county demonstration area (approximate- 1.5 million acres) in east Texas has been azard rated as a part of a larger integrated pest anagement demonstration project. Color infrared :60,000 scale photographs have been used to deineate stand boundaries. Supplemental 1:12,000 olor infrared and black and white resource phoographs have been used to acquire necessary tree information. Landform/drainage conditions were extracted from 7 1/2 minute topographic maps. The resulting 40+ hazard maps were provided to industrial landowners and cooperating State foresters in the two-county area for verification of stand and hazard conditions. More recently, the resource information on the maps has been digitized and stored for computer retrieval and updating as changes are reported from the various ownerships. State and industrial foresters are already using this new information to aid in stand selection for harvesting operations and, as a result of harvesting or thinning, to lessen stand susceptibility to SPB.

Application based on ground cruise results. For individual tracts of particular concern or small ownerships, ground observers can make onsite determinations of SPB hazard. A land managers model provides a simple qualitative system that uses stand, tree and site characteristics to rank stand susceptibility to SPB attack (Belanger et al. 1981). The system is compatible with procedures used to develop forest management plans and is curently being used by Georgia Forestry Commission foresters in the upper Piedmont of Georgia.

In Arkansas, a hazard rating system for shortleaf/loblolly pine types was developed for natural stands on upland flats (Ku et al. 1981). The key variables are total basal area, hardwood basal area, stand age, and radial growth during the last 10 years. The Arkansas Forestry Commission assisted with the data collection for model development and has sponsored training sessions for management assistance foresters on the application and utilization of the rating system. The foresters will consider SPB hazard rating in the development or revision of forest management plans.

Temple EasTex, Inc., a subsidiary of Time, Inc. and owners of 1.1 million acres of forest land in east Texas, has initiated SPB hazard rating as a part of their stand evaluation activities. The company reinventories 20 percent of its stands each year and is currently in the second year of a 5-year reevaluation effort. Stand rating is being incorporated into these activities. Only slight modifications of operational inventory procedures were required to obtain pine basal area, total tree height, and landform information required to rate individual stands. The ratings will allow company foresters to consider the potential for SPB losses in developing silvicultural prescriptions and in setting cutting priorities on company lands.

Besides using the continuous inventory data which is already on line for rating stands, the Kisatchie National Forest foresters are using field data collected during the stand prescription to update their SPB hazard ratings. Forest stands on the Kisatchie NF are reinventoried once every 10 years. Foresters will use those data in the same ways described under "Application based on existing stand data" above.

Application using combinations of techniques. Data requirements of some rating systems, availability of funds, training requirements for responsible persons, or size of land area to be rated may force resource managers to use field cruises as the only practical approach to hazard rating. However, this approach can be simplified by stratifying stands from aerial photographs, resource inventory data, or existing stand maps.

During 1980-1981, three Georgia State Parks (with a total area exceeding 8,000 acres) were hazard rated as part of an effort to develop more effective management plans for the park system. Stands were delineated from aerial photographs (scale 1:12,000) to define host type and boundaries and to determine plot numbers and location. Four field plots were installed in each stand. Those stands exceeding 50 acres had one additional plot added for each 12.5 acres. Field data acquired included species composition, d.b.h., tree height, radial growth, bark thickness, and surface soil depth. Plot averages were then determined and the stand rating class assigned using Belanger's Piedmont system. Based on these ratings, modified timber management plans were developed for each park.

A similar approach has been applied by the Alabama Forestry Commission. Twenty-two demonstration forests have been selected for use in promoting preventive management of SPB. Foresters use existing forest-type maps to determine number of plots required per forest and to plan their most efficient hazard rating approach. The system developed by Sader and Miller (1976) has been used on the Alabama Piedmont (higher elevations) and that of Mason et al. (1981) for the Coastal Plain (lower elevations). Both systems are being used by Service Foresters and are required in all management plans developed for private nonindustrial lands. Hazard ratings will soon be incorporated into the Forestry Commission's WOODPLAN computerized management analysis program. The ratings will provide additional criteria on stand selection for preventive silvicultural treatments, as well as a means of demonstrating the utility of rating systems as a means of identifying high-hazard stands or setting priorities for surveillance or control throughout the State.

EVALUATION AND INTERPRETATION

Although there is a broad array of management objectives and forest conditions across the South, it has been demonstrated that, on a per-acre basis, most spots occur in high-hazard stands. A larger proportion of trees are killed in these stands (Lorio and Sommers 1981, Mason et al. 1981, Hicks and Mason 1982). Thus, the major objective in assembling a SPB stand hazard rating system for any geographic area or ownership should be to develop an optimal balance between the maximizing stand growth and yield and minimizing pest-caused losses.

One should not judge the adequacy of a rating system based on examination and rating of a few infestations without considering the overall situation in an area and possible overriding factors. Evaluation must include the ranking of a relatively large number of stands and consideration of total hazard class size and distribution, infestation distribution, and infestation size. Judgment should be based on a comparison of spot occurrence and tree mortality, resource value, and potential SPB reproduction in similar sized areas with and without infestations. If this approach is not taken, one should expect to find a large proportion of infestations in low- to moderate-hazard stands. This high proportion of infestations in non-high risk stands can result from factors known to override site/stand conditions (lightning strikes, ice damage, logging or storm damage, areawide drought flooding, etc.). One must also be aware of igh-hazard pockets in low-hazard stands. Also, e number, distribution, and proportion of festations which occur in high-, moderate-, and w-hazard areas will vary as SPB population nsities increase and decline (Mason et al. 981). When beetle activity is low, most festations will occur in high-hazard areas. en beetle activity and population pressures on tands increase, an increasing number of spots ill occur in low and moderate-hazard stands.

The most common approach to dealing with a oradic but serious pest like the SPB is to espond to the crisis directly on an ad hoc sis--often recognizing that long-term preven- ve management would be ultimately more effec- ve. Stand hazard rating lends itself well to th long- and short-term needs. Stand condition y be considered in direct control by aiding in etting control priorities and assessing outbreak d loss potential. Indirectly it allows the nager to identify and evaluate areas in need of eatment and to more effectively monitor pest tivity during endemic periods. Both approaches e necessary for effective pest management erations. Stand rating systems are available, neficial, and are being applied in progressive rest management programs.

LITERATURE CITED

langer, R. P., and B. F. Malac.
1980. Silviculture can reduce losses from the southern pine beetle. U.S. Dep. Agric. Comb. For. Pest R&D Prog., Agric. Handbk. No. 576. 17 p.

langer, R. P., R. L. Porterfield, and C. E. well.
1981. Development and validation of systems for rating the susceptibility of natural stands in the Piedmont of Georgia to attack by the southern pine beetle. In Hazard Rating Systems in Forest Insect Pest Management: Symposium Proceedings. [Athens, Ga., July 1980]. R. L. Hedden, S. J. Barras, and J. E. Coster, coords. U.S. Dep. Agric. For. Serv., Gen. Tech. Rep. WO-27. p. 79-86.

llings, R. F., and H. A. Pase III.
1979. A field guide for ground checking southern pine beetle spots. U.S. Dep. Agric. Comb. For. Pest R&D Prog., Agric. Handbk. No. 558. 19 p.

ster, J. E., and J. L. Searcy, eds.
1981. Site, stand and host characteristics of southern pine beetle infestations. U.S. Dep. Agric. Tech. Bull. No. 1612. 115 p.

Hicks, R. R., Jr., J. E. Howard, K. G. Watterston, and J. E. Coster.
1981. Rating east Texas stands for southern pine beetle susceptibility. South. J. Appl. For. 5:7-10.

Hicks, R. R., Jr., and G. N. Mason.
1982. Southern pine beetle hazard rating works in east Texas. Southwest. Entomol. 7(3): 174-180.

Ku, T. T., J. M. Sweeney, and V. B. Shelburne.
1981. Hazard rating of stands for southern pine beetle attack in Arkansas. In Hazard Rating Systems in Forest Insect Pest Management: Symposium Proceedings. [Athens, Ga. July 1980]. R. L. Hedden, S. J. Barras, and J. E. Coster, coords. U.S. Dep. Agric. For. Serv., Gen. Tech. Rep. WO-27. p. 145-148.

Lorio, P. L.
1978. Developing stand risk classes for the southern pine beetle. USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. SO-144. 9 p.

Lorio, P. L., Jr., and R. A. Sommers.
1981. Use of available rescurce data to rate stands for southern pine beetle risk. In Hazard Rating Systems in Forest Insect Pest Management: Symposium Proceedings. [Athens, Ga. July 1980]. R. L. Hedden, S. J. Barras, and J. E. Coster, coords. U.S. Dep. Agric. For. Serv., Gen. Tech. Rep. WO-27. p. 75-78.

Mason, G. N., R. R. Hicks, Jr., C. M. Bryant V, M. L. Mathews, D. L. Kulhavy, and J. E. Howard.
1981. Rating southern pine beetle hazard by aerial photography. In Hazard Rating Systems in Forest Insect Pest Management: Symposium Proceedings. [Athens, Ga. July 1980]. R. L. Hedden, S. J. Barras, and J. E. Coster, coords. U.S. Dep. Agric. For. Serv., Gen. Tech. Rep. WO-27. p. 109-114.

Price, T. S., and C. Doggett.
1978. A history of southern pine beetle outbreaks in the Southeastern United States. Ga. For. Comm. 31 p.

Sader, S. A., and W. F. Miller.
1976. Development of a risk rating system for southern pine beetle infestation in Copiah County, Mississippi. In Remote Sensing of Earth Resources. NASA [Tullahoma, Tenn., 1976.] 5: 277-294.

Swain, K. M., and M. C. Remion.
1981. Direct control methods for the southern pine beetle. U.S. Dep. Agric. Comb. For. Pest R&D Prog., Agric. Handbk. No. 575. 15 p.

Thatcher, R. C., G. N. Mason, G. D. Hertel, and J. L. Searcy.
1982. Detecting and controlling the southern pine beetle. South. J. Appl. For. 6: 153:159.

EVALUATION OF LOBLOLLY PINE THINNING REGIMES FOR REDUCTION OF LOSSES FROM SOUTHERN PINE BEETLE ATTACK[1/]

Roy L. Hedden[2/]

Abstract.--A computer simulation program was used to project expected losses from southern pine beetle attack. The effects of thinning and rotation length on the reduction of expected loss were evaluated. Thinning of stands will result in the reduction but not elimination of losses due to attack. Shortening of the rotation length will always result in reduced losses from infestation.

INTRODUCTION

The southern pine beetle (SPB-Dendroctonus frontalis Zimmerman) is a chronic pest of southern pines. Periodic outbreaks lasting up to three years have been recorded since 1882 (Thatcher 1960). Recent outbreaks seem to be occurring more often and they seem to be of longer duration. A key factor appears to be the availability of susceptible hosts (Hedden 1978). In all regions of the South, the SPB prefers well to densely stocked, slow growing, pure pine stands (Belanger 1981). There are now more of these types of stands than ever before (Hedden 1978, Knight and McClure 1979, Murphy 1976).

The dynamics of SPB infestation are composed of two distinct events; spot initiation or occurrence and spot growth or spread. In all areas, trees or stands weakened by disturbance such as lightning or logging are very susceptible to initial infestation. Other factors which predispose stands to attack are also related to low tree vigor, including disease, overstocking, overmaturity, etc. The amount of spot spread which occurs after an infestation becomes established appears to be related to the SPB level within the spot, physiological condition of the beetle population and density of pines in the stand (Hedden and Billings 1979; Schowalter et al. 1981). More trees are killed in overstocked pine stands in years when the SPB population is high than at any other time.

Strategies for minimizing or preventing losses in pine stands must consider both initial spot occurrence and subsequent spot growth. If no or few spots occur within a stand, little loss will result. This situation will occur in the absence of stand disturbance and in the presence of vigorously growing pines. Moreover, if stand density is low, subsequent loss due to spot growth will be minimum even if an infestation does become established.

Thinning of pine stands is one strategy suggested for minimizing or preventing loss due to SPB attack (Belanger 1981). Thinning should reduce stand susceptibility to attack by increasing tree vigor. The presence of rapidly growing trees will inhibit the build up of within spot SPB populations even if one or a few trees are attacked. Thinning will also increase inter-tree distances which reduce the amount of infestation spread following initial attack (Gara and Coster, 1968).

Unfortunately, there are few studies specifically designed to evaluate thinning for preventing or reducing losses from SPB attack. There are several reasons for this lack of experimental evidence. The probability of an infestation occurring in a stand is low, even in years of high SPB population level. For instance, during 1976 in east Texas when the highest SPB population ever, was recorded, a 100-acre pine stand had only a 2 out of 10 chance of having a single infestation. Thus, in order to directly evaluate thinning as a strategy, many paired thinned and unthinned stands would have been required. Moreover, SPB populations rarely remain at such high levels for long, and as population level declines so does the

---

[1/] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982. The work reported herein was funded in part by a USDA Forest Service sponsored project entitled "Integrated Pest Management of Bark Beetles of Southern Pines."

[2/] Associate Professor, Department of Forestry, Clemson University, Clemson, SC 29631.

probability of infestation (Reed et al. 1982). Any direct test of thinning must, therefore, be of long duration. Unfortunately, few researchers have either the patience, support, or opportunity to implement and carry out such long-term experiments.

An alternative, but less direct approach, is to use a computer simulation to evaluate thinning as a strategy to prevent damage from SPB attack. While this approach is less desirable than a direct experimental test, it does not depend on the vagaries of beetle populations, nor is a large land area or high level of funding prerequisites for success. The results presented in this paper are based upon this approach. SPB damage simulation was used to evaluate the effects of thinning to reduce losses from beetle attack. In addition, the effect of different rotation lengths in both thinned and unthinned stands on expected loss were also examined.

EXPECTED LOSS

SPB infestation dynamics consist of two events, spot occurrence and spot spread. For purposes of this study, spot occurrence is defined as the probability of an infestation occurring in a stand. Spot spread is the number of trees killed after an infestation becomes established. Therefore, expected loss is the product of spot occurrence and spot spread. Expected loss can be expressed in terms of volume, dollar value, etc., but for the purpose of this paper, it is defined as the expected number of trees killed.

DAMAGE SIMULATION

The damage simulator used in this study is a computer program consisting of several submodels. It is used to stochastically generate expected losses for forest stands in the Piedmont. The most important components of the program are a spot growth model and a function to predict the probability of an infestation occurring. The spot growth model is a regression equation for predicting the number of trees killed per day (Hedden and Billings 1979). The probability model is a logistic function which generates the probability of an infestation occurring per acre (Hedden, unpublished).

In this study, the program is used to simulate expected losses in planted loblolly pine stands in the Piedmont. Originally, the program was developed and validated for natural pine stands in the Gulf Coastal Plain. For more detailed information about the program, please contact the author.

Input necessary to run the program for Piedmont plantations is:

-- forest type (shortleaf or other),
-- clay content of the surface soil (less greater than 28 percent),
-- landform (steep side slope or other),
-- radial growth in the last five years,
-- basal area per acre (pine + hardwood).

The simulation is run 100 times for each year which data has been input.

Output for each stand simulated is:

-- average probability of an infestation occurring per acre per year,
-- mean number of trees killed in a spot an infestation does occur, and
-- average expected number of trees kille per acre per year.

The absolute values of expected loss gene ated for planted stands in the Piedmont may be biased. However, when comparisons are made be either thinning regimes or different rotation lengths, percentage differences are used. The magnitude of differences in expected loss are probably representative of changes which would actually occur.

SOURCE OF DATA

The data used in this study are from three series of .25 or .10 acre permanent plots established in young loblolly pine plantations on the Clemson Experimental Forest (Goebel et al. 1974 Trees in series I plots were planted in 1937 at spacings of 6 x 8 feet. Series II plots were planted in 1938 at a spacing of 6 x 7 feet, whi series III plots were planted at 6 x 6 feet in 1940. Series I plots were thinned at ages 12, 21, 26, and 34 years. Series II plots were thinned at 13, 18, 20, 24, 33, and 41 years of age. Series III plots were thinned five times ages 16, 20, 24, 30, and 39.

For purposes of this study, an unthinned con trol and a paired thinned plot were chosen from each series. The thinned plot from series I ha been cut to a residual basal area per acre of 81 square feet at each thinning, while plots fro series II and III were thinned to average basal areas of 84 and 104 square feet per acre, respectively. The average site index (25 year base) series I and II plots was 51 feet. Average site index for the series III plots was 55 feet. Al of the plots are located on clay surface soils with little or no slope.

SIMULATION RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Results relating to the effect of rotation length on expected loss will be presented first, followed by the results of the effect of thinnin on the reduction in the number of expected trees killed. All of the simulations began at age 10 and continued until the specified rotation age. Simulations were started at age 10 because stands younger than this are rarely attacked by the SPB.

Rotation Length Effects

In the unthinned plots, the expected number of trees killed was always lower for short rotations as compared to longer periods (Table 1). Expected loss increased while the percentage reduction in loss decreased linearly with length of the rotation.

Table 1. Expected number of trees killed per acre (ELOSS) and reduction in loss as a percentage of ELOSS for the longest rotation (PLOSS) in the unthinned plots.

Plot series	Rotation age	ELOSS (trees/acre)	PLOSS (%)
I	45	19.03	--
	40	16.21	15
	35	14.17	26
	30	10.20	46
	25	7.47	61
II	45	22.91	--
	40	18.39	20
	35	15.58	32
	30	11.39	50
	25	7.95	65
III	43	24.53	--
	40	21.17	14
	35	18.34	25
	30	13.61	44
	25	9.88	60

In all series, shortening the rotation lengths dramatically reduced expected losses. For each year that the rotation was shortened, there was approximately a three percent reduction in expected loss. In addition to the decline in expected loss, the average probability of spot occurrence also dropped.

For similar rotation lengths, expected loss was generally lowest in plot series I and highest in plot series III. Values for the series II plot were intermediate. Interestingly, these trends follow the initial planting densities closely; series I plots were planted at a density of 908 trees per acre while series II and III plots were planted at densities of 1037 and 1210 trees per acre.

Results for the thinned plots were very similar to those obtained for the unthinned plots (Table 2).

Table 2. Expected number of trees killed per acre (ELOSS) and the reduction in loss as a percentage of ELOSS for the longest rotation (PLOSS) in the thinned plots.

Plot series	Rotation age	ELOSS (trees/acre)	PLOSS (%)
I	45	13.96	--
	40	10.96	21
	34	8.80	37
	26	6.19	56
	21	4.54	67
II	46	13.79	--
	41	10.25	26
	33	7.16	48
	24	4.28	69
III	43	16.19	--
	39	13.89	14
	30	9.74	40
	24	7.32	55
	20	4.82	70

In all cases, thinned or unthinned, shortening the rotation length reduces losses from SPB attack. This reduction is due to the stand being subjected to potential infestation for fewer years, and due to a younger stand being generally more vigorous (greater radial growth) than an old stand. Very young stands also tend to have lower stand densities than comparable older unthinned stands. All of these factors together result in younger stands suffering lower levels of damage from SPB attack than older stands.

Thinning Effects

Projected expected losses on a per acre basis were always lower for the thinned plots than for the paired unthinned plots at similar ages. The probability of infestation and the number of trees killed if a spot did occur were also lower for the thinned plots. Table 3 shows the percent reduction for each of these variables at various rotation ages.

There was a greater reduction in expected loss due to thinning in plot series II than for either series I or III plots. This result is due to the greater frequency of thinning in the series II plot. This plots was thinned six times at an average interval of six years beginning at age 13. Neither of the plots in series I or III was thinned with the same intensity as series plot II.

Table 3. Percent reduction in expected loss (ELOSS), probability of infestation (PINF), and number of trees killed per infestation (TKILL) in the thinned plots when compared to the paired unthinned plots at similar ages.

Plot series	Plot age (yrs.)	Percent difference ELOSS (%)	PINF (%)	TKILL (%)
I	45	27	21	10
	40	32	23	15
	34	33	23	19
	26	22	17	8
II	46	40	25	22
	41	46	24	28
	33	48	19	35
	24	42	12	36
III	43	34	18	22
	39	32	17	21
	30	28	13	22
	24	27	9	16

In the Piedmont, management objectives associated with thinned and unthinned stands are usually different. Thinned stands are generally managed for sawtimber (large diameter stems) while unthinned stands are usually managed for pulpwood (total fiber yield). This difference usually results in a stand managed for sawtimber having a longer rotation length than an unthinned stand managed for pulpwood, assuming that both stands are planted at the same initial density and on similar sites. Therefore, comparison of thinned and unthinned stands at the same age may not be appropriate. Table 4 contrasts expected losses for the thinned and unthinned plots at various ages. When the rotation length for the thinned plots is ten years longer than for the unthinned plots, projected expected loss is almost always greater for the thinned plots. However, when the rotation age for the thinned plots is extended only five years then losses in the thinned plots are usually less than expected loss in the unthinned plots.

The figures for expected loss presented in Table 4 are expressed in number of trees killed and, therefore, do not accurately represent potential value loss. Usually the average value of a tree in a thinned stand at the end of the rotation will be greater than the value of a tree in an unthinned stand at harvest. This difference is due to trees of large diameter having greater value than small trees. Therefore, even though the expected number of trees killed may be greater in unthinned stands, the actual value loss in thinned stands may equal or exceed that in unthinned stands.

Table 4. Expected number of trees killed per acre (ELOSS) for contrasting rotation ages for thinned and unthinned plots.

Plot series	Unthinned age (yrs.)	ELOSS (trees/acre)	Thinned age (yrs.)	ELOSS (trees/acre)
I	25	7.47	30	7.48
	30	10.20	35	9.50
	35	14.17	40	11.50
II	25	7.95	30	6.20
	30	11.39	35	8.30
	35	15.58	40	10.50
III	25	9.88	30	9.74
	30	13.61	35	10.25
	35	18.34	40	15.00

This increase in value loss must be viewed against the total cash flow associated with a particular forest management regime. Even though the value loss may be greater in the thinned stand managed for sawtimber, the total discounted cash flow for this regime may be up to 50 percent great than for the same initial stand if it had been managed for pulpwood. Thus, any increase in value loss due to SPB attack may be more than offset by the increase in the net present value from manag for sawtimber. However, the financial advantages of sawtimber management are primarily due to the difference in sawtimber and pulpwood stumpage prices. If the value of pulpwood stumpage increases relative to sawtimber, losses from SPB attack may make a sawtimber regime less attractive than a pulpwood regime.

Decisions on thinning should be based upon th landowner's objectives. As previously mentioned, thinning in the Piedmont is usually associated wit management of sawtimber stands. The net result of thinning is normally a reduction of the rotation length over that of unthinned stands managed for the same product. Thinned loblolly pine stands will reach sawtimber size in under 35 years where unthinned stands require 40 to 50 years to attain the same size. Other benefits of thinning include increased growth of residual trees, improvement in product quality and early return on investment. these benefits, shortening the rotation length and increasing tree growth (vigor) will result in a reduction of loss due to SPB attack. Thinned stands will be exposed to attack for shorter periods of time, and they will be more vigorously growing (less susceptible to attack) during this period.

CONCLUSIONS

In order to minimize losses from SPB attack, te goal should be to maintain healthy, vigorously gowing pine stands. Thinning, when properly eecuted, is a potential tool to accomplish this cjective. Thinning, however, is not a panacea. lsses from SPB attack will occur in thinned sands. These losses will probably be concentated in the years near the end of the rotation priod; however, the magnitude of these losses wll be less than for an unthinned stand being mnaged for the same product. Regardless of the poduct being managed for, shortening of the itation length will always result in reduced sses from SPB infestation.

LITERATURE CITED

langer, Roger P.
1981. Silvicultural considerations in developing integrated southern pine beetle management procedures. P. 279-286. In James P. Barnett (ed.). Proc. First Biennial So. Silvic. Res. Conf. USDA For. Serv. Gen. Tech. Rept. SO-34.

ara, R. I.
1968. Studies on the attack behavior of the southern pine beetle. III. Sequence of tree infestation within stands. Contrib. Boyce Thompson Inst. 24:77-85.

ebel, N. B., J. R. Warner and D. H. Van Lear.
1974. Period thinnings in loblolly pine stands: growth, yield and economic analyses. Clemson Univ. Dept. of For. Res. Series No. 28, 11 p.

Hedden, R. L.
1978. The need for intensive forest management to reduce southern pine beetle activity in east Texas. South. J. Appl. For. 2:19-22.

Hedden, R. L. and R. F. Billings.
1979. Southern pine beetle: Factors influencing the growth and decline of summer infestations. For. Sci. 25:547-556.

Knight, H. A. and J. P. McClure.
1979. South Carolina's Forests. USDA For. Serv. Resour. Bull. SE-51, 66 p.

Murphy, P. A.
1976. East Texas Forests: Status and Trends. USDA For. Serv. Resour. Bull. SO-61, 25 p.

Reed, D. D., R. L. Hedden and R. F. Daniels.
1982. Estimating the annual probability of southern pine beetle attack. For. Sci. 28:202-206.

Schowalter, T. D., D. N. Pope, R. N. Coulson and W. S. Fargo. 1981. Patterns of southern pine beetle (Dendoctonus frontalis Zimm.) infestation enlargement. For. Sci. 27:837-849.

Thatcher, R. C.
1960. Bark beetles affecting southern pines: a review of current knowledge. USDA For. Serv. Occl. Pap. 180, 25 p.

IMPACT OF THINNING ON HOST SUSCEPTIBILITY [1]

BY

T. Evan Nebeker[2], David M. Moehring[3], John D. Hodges[3],
Mark W. Brown[2] and Catalino A. Blanche[2]

Abstract.--Changes in host condition (vigor) are due in part to thinning related disturbances. Using growth as an indicator of vigor we observed a decrease in growth which was related to the intensity of the disturbance. Thinning influences, dramatically, the environment in a positive manner for the residual stems and some pest species but in a negative manner for other pest species. Utilizing total resin flow and relative viscosity it was observed that trees basally scarred expressed a relative decrease in susceptibility to bark beetle attack. Thinning,however,provides resources for other pest and potential pest organisms in the southern forest ecosystem.

INTRODUCTION

In general, southern pine beetle (*Dendroctonus frontalis* Zimm.) infestations occur in slow growing, overstocked pine stands where individual tree vigor and resistance to attack are low (Hicks et al., 1980, Ku et al., 1980). Thinning is being recommended to reduce stand susceptibility to southern pine beetle attack. The rationale being that thinning will decrease competition and stress within the stand, thus increasing vigor and resistance of the individual tree. Treatments that are not cautiously applied may create conditions conducive to other pests or alter environmental factors that may offset any benefits of thinning (Belanger, 1979). Some of the post-thinning concerns in southern pine stands include *Ips* spp. (engraver beetles), *D. terebrans* (Oliv.) (black turpentine beetle), *Heterobasidium annosum* (Fr.) Bref. (=*Fomes annosus* (Fr.)Cke.), other root and stem diseases, root breakage, soil compaction, and windthrow to mention a few. In addition, conditions might influence the populati build-up of such species as the pales weevil (*Hylobius pales* (Herbst)) a problem in regenerati areas along with insect species capable of transm ting the pine wood nematode (*Bursaphelenchus xylophilus* (Steiner & Buhrer)Nickle), the causal organism of the pine wilt disease. Growth losses or production losses resulting from these factors have not been quantified for the South, but in other forest regions losses exceeding 10 percent have been attributed to thinning-caused stand and site damages (Froehlich, 1976).

In order to understand and estimate what impacts thinnings have on the stand and individua trees it will be the intent of this paper to explore: (1) hypotheses concerning host vigor/ insect/thinning interactions jointly and seperate (2) the changes in host condition (vigor) as related to thinning operations or simulated thinning disturbances, and (3) findings and a resulting conceptual view of thinning operations on pest populations.

HOST VIGOR - GROWTH

Host vigor, as measured by growth, may declin immediately following thinning. From studies on the John W. Starr Memorial Forest, Mississippi State University, Nebeker (1980 unpublished) found growth differences in relation to intensity of thinning. Hughes' (1981 unpublished) studies on hese same plots described the amount of growth oss as a function of distance from a rut and epth of rut. Figure 1 illustrates the volume oss for 3 different rut depths. Hence, it can e concluded that the rate and duration of decreased rowth is a function of may factors. The principal actors being related to the amount and intensity f site - and stand - disturbances caused by the hinning operation. Some of the main factors are he amount of soil compaction, root breakage, bole scarring and damage to the residual stems that takes place at a given point in time. This concept is presented in figure 2. Here we see hat if thinning takes place early in the period after a decreased growth rate is observed, say after crown closure, two different intensities of damage can cause different response times but trees will evenutally return to near the maximum growth rate observed prior to the decrease resulting from stand competiton. However, if thinning is delayed and similar amounts (intensity) of site and stand disturbances occur the growth responses are much slower (reduced even more and for a greater duration). Also, the growth rate does not return to or approach rates observed for earlier thinnings.

---

[1] Paper presented at Second Biennial Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982. Partial support for this project was provided through the Integrated Pest Management Research, Development and Applications Program.

[2] Associate Professor and Research Associates, respectively, Department of Entomology, Mississippi State University, Mississippi State, MS 39762

[3] Professor (deceased) and Professor, respectively, Department of Forestry, Mississippi State University, Mississippi State, MS 39762

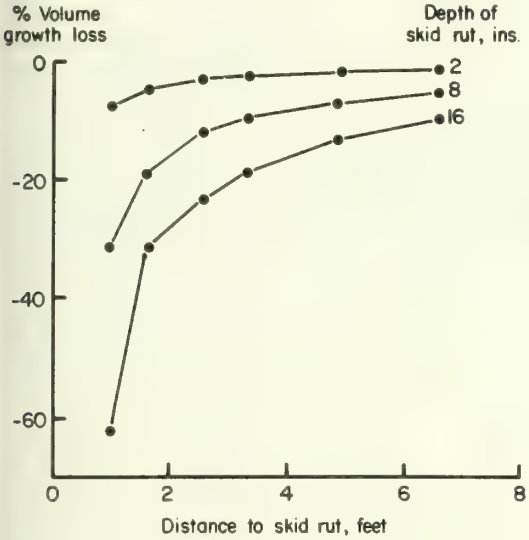
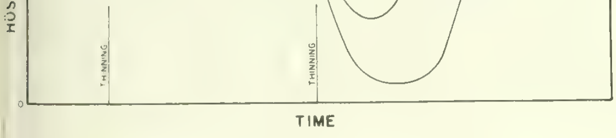


Figure 1. Growth loss in relation to skidding - caused soil damage (rutting) on the John W. Starr Memorial Forest after Hughes (1981 unpublished).



igure 2. Conceptual view of decreasing growth as a function of time and amount of disturbance associated with thinning.

Conceptually, even though growth rates may decrease, the alteration in host- and environmental-conditions following thinning ultimately increases resistance to pest attack, primarily bark beetles. This concept is presented in figure 3. Here environmental conditions are considered in terms of what is favorable for bark beetle populations not from the individual tree's point of view. That is to say that after thinning the enviroment within the setting is less favorable for bark beetles, but more favorable for the residual stems because of the decrease in competition. Bark beetles, in particular the southern pine beetle, are more frequently associated with dense stands. Consequently, it takes a higher population in the area to successfully attack trees in thinned stands, where the hosts are in good condition, than in an unthinned high basal area stand where host condition is poor. Host condition, as used here, may be assessed by such characteristics as amount of resin flow for a specified time period, rate of flow and viscosity as identified by Hodges et al. (1979).

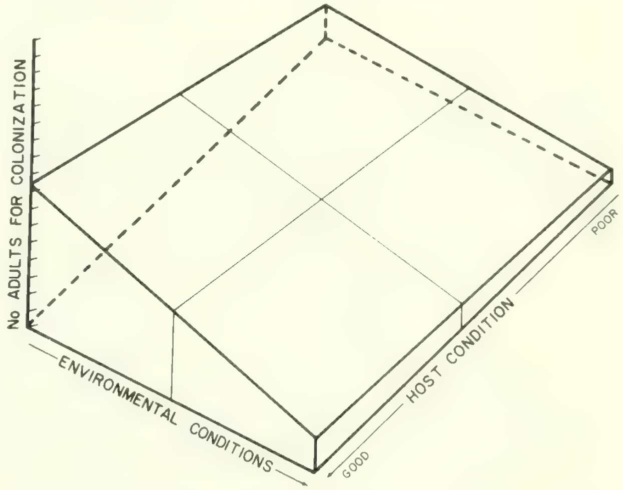


Figure 3. Conceptual view of the relationship between host- and environmental-condition and the resulting relative population required to successfully colonize a tree.

CHANGES IN HOST CONDITION AS RELATED TO THINNING DAMAGE

During 1981 we initiated several studies looking at the influence of thinning related damages to the tree, with the goal of determining if the residual stems were placed in a position of increased vulnerability and, if so, how. Hence the discussion here will be related to observations from these on-going studies and general observations from visits to numerous thinning operations throughout the south.

Let us first describe an experiment where we attempted to simulate various intensities of thinning damage in 2 loblolly pine stands on the John W. Starr Memorial Forest. The stands were thinned to basal areas of approximately 90 ft^2. Within the stands the residual stems received one of six treatments as outlined in Table 1. Trees were 11 or 14 yrs and residual stems ranged from 5 to 10 inches DBH. Basal scarring was accomplished utilizing hand knives. Root pruning was done with the aid of a Ditch Witch.

Table 1. Simulated thinning damage treatments on the John W. Starr Memorial Forest - 1982.

Treatment	Description	Number Receiving Treatment (n)
1 (Control)	Control	75
2 (R1)	Roots pruned on 1 side	25
3 (R2)	Roots pruned on 2 sides	25
4 (S)	Basal Scar	25
5 (SR1)	2 + 4	25
6 (SR2)	3 + 4	25

Root Prune = width of canopy on treatment side x 1 ft deep.
- Trench dug with a Ditch Witch 1 ft from the trees base.

Basal Scar = 1/4 bole circumference x 1.5 ft in height.

The following information was recorded for each residual stem prior to treatment and/or after: total height, height to first live limb, diameter, growth (last year, last 5 years, and last 10 years), electrical resistance, total resin flow for 8 hours, initial rate of flow, rate of ball fall (relative viscosity), oleoresin exudation pressure, and monoterpene levels. In addition stem maps were prepared to indicate the location of the various treatments and other information deemed necessary. Heights were measured with a Suunto. Growth was determined from cores, extracted with an increment borer and measured in the laboratory under a dissecting microscope. Electrical resistance was measured with a Shigometer. Total resin flow was determined by inserting a piece of glass tubing ca. 0.5 inches (1.27 cm) into the tree, penetrating the xylem. The tubing was 9 mm outside diameter with a 2 mm inside diameter opening. Resin was allowed to flow through this tube and accummulate in a pipette for 8 hrs. Relative viscosity was determined by dropping a perfectly spherical aluminum ball, 0.0625 mm, in diameter into the resin contained in the collecting pipette. Since the measurements being compared were made within a few days of each other and under similar enviro- mental conditions, corrections for temperature were not made for these relative measures. Oleoresin exudation pressure was determined by inserting manometers into the tree through at least two annual rings. The manometers were mad from glass tubing 2.5 mm outside diameter, 1 mm inside diameter and 150 mm in lenght. The tubi was sealed on one end.

In a previous study (Hodges et al., 1979) i was concluded that trees more resistant to bark beetle attack had: (1) greater total flow for a given time period, (2) greater viscosity, and (3) a higher rate of crystallization. Due to changes in methodology in this experiment the ra of crystallization was not determined. However, other two were, including chemical analysis of t total monoterpene (mg/100 mg) in the oleoresin. Results of this work are presented in Tables 2-5

Table 2. Mean monoterpene content (mg/100mg oleoresin) with respect to treatment during 1982.

Treatment	April	May	July
Control	32.33	30.57	30.32
R1	31.32	29.45	31.22
R2	31.32	30.78	32.88
S	30.04	29.67	35.20
SR1	32.71	33.84	31.92
SR2	33.43	30.55	33.55

April = Pretreatment
May-July = Posttreatment

Table 3. Results of analysis of variance consid ing variables potentially useful in identifyi host condition-vigor as a function of month a treatment 1982.

Variable	Factor	Significanc
Oleoresin Exudation Pressure	Month	**
	Treatment	N. S.
Electrical Resistance	Month	**
	Treatment	N. S.
Resin Flow Rate (Max.)	Month	*
	Treatment	N. S.
Total Flow	Month	**
	Treatment	**
Relative Viscosity	Month	**
	Treatment	*

** = 0.01 level
* = 0.05 level
N. S. = non significant

The total monoterpene content did not change with respect to time nor treatment (Table 2). The greatest increase, however, being noted in trees receiving only the basal scarring. Of the other potential vigor indicators we see in Table 3 that only total flow and relative viscosity are influenced by treatment. This was not totally unexpected because of previous experience. The next step was to determine in what direction, i.e. greater flow or less, greater relative viscosity or less, the change occurred in relation to the controls. Hence multiple range tests were conducted. The results are presented in Tables 4 and 5. With respect to total flow there were no differences prior to treatment (April) among the trees assigned to the various treatments. Immediately following treatment (May) the only significant difference was between the controls and those scarred and root pruned on one side. During July significant differences were observed between the control and those which were basally scarred (Table 4). This could be a direct response to the wounding resulting in increased resin production.

Table 4. Mean total resin flow (ml/8 hrs.) per treatment - 1982.

Treatment	April	May	July
Control	1.92	1.00	2.51
R1	1.86	1.38	3.13
R2	1.96	1.12	2.60
S	2.47	1.54	5.10 **
SR1	2.78	2.42 **	5.09 **
SR2	1.96	1.40	4.78 *

April = Pretreatment
May-July = Posttreatment

Relative viscosity was not significantly different between treatments during April (pretreatment) and May (immediately following treatment). However significant differences between the scarring treatment, scarring plus root pruning on two sides and the controls were evident during July (Table 5). At present no explanation is offered because the monoterpene analysis is incomplete. As noted in Table 2 no differences in total oleoresin monoterpenes were evident.

Table 5. Mean relative viscosity (seconds/mm) of loblolly pine resin - 1982.

Treatment	April	May	July
Control	1.142	1.282	1.847
R1	1.155	1.421	2.021
R2	1.287	1.047	2.352
S	1.286	1.730	3.281 **
SR1	1.254	2.158	2.641
SR2	1.600	2.047	3.182 **

April = Pretreatment
May-July = Posttreatment

The increases in total flow and relative viscosity are opposite what was expected, based on Hodges et al. (1979) results for moisture stressed trees. In the latter case decreases were observed. Traditionally it has been assumed that stressing a tree will decrease its resistance (vigor) and ultimately result in greater susceptibility to pest attack. From the above what might we suggest concerning host vigor as it relates to thinning related disturbances? It appears from this study that host vigor, using the measure of total flow and relative viscosity, is increased as a result of thinning related damage. This concept is presented in figure 4. The increased resistance may be short lived and dependent on the intensity of the response to the level of disturbance. The level of response, changes in total flow and relative viscosity appear inversely related to the relative growth response as presented in figures 1 and 2 and opposite in response to those resulting from water stress. It suggests that the residual damaged stems are more vigorous and more resistant to attack than undamaged residual stems. However, these damaged trees may be more susceptible to stressful environmental conditions, which were not encountered in the study, and under such conditions may not fare as well as the undamaged trees.

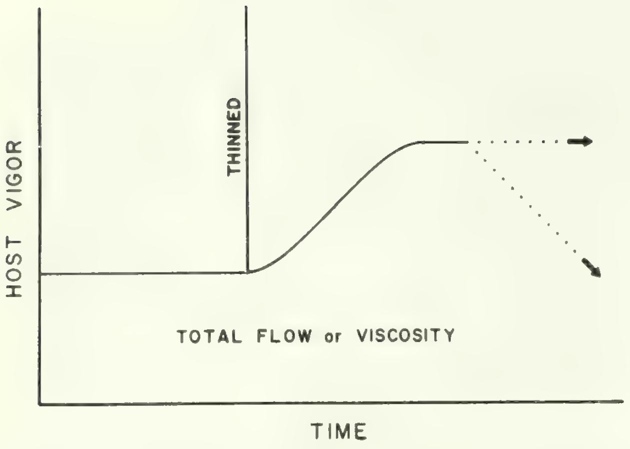


Figure 4. Relative changes in host vigor, using total resin flow and relative viscosity, following thinning related disturbances. The direction and duration of this response is not known and indicated by the dotted lines and arrows.

RESOURCE AVAILABILITY AND PEST RELATED MORTALITY

Conceptually the relationship between resources and mortality due to Ips spp. and pine wilt disease is presented in figure 5. This is a result of some 13 months of observation following precommercially-, commercially- and experimental plot-thinnings. Prior to thinning, the resource frequently utilized by bark beetles, in particular Ips spp. is somewhat constant but as the stand begins to age the resource begins to increase through various types of natural damage, i.e. the stand begins to break up. As this happens additional reproductive habitat is provided for Ips spp. and those species of insects carrying the pine wood nematode. Once the decision to thin is made and thinning takes place the resource for these species begins to increase exponentially, leveling once the maximum production of the thinning crew is reached. Assuming the same level of production is maintained, the amount of resource for the various mortality agents will remain somewhat constant. Since the slash material is suitable for Ips spp. reproduction as well as for the species carrying the pinewood nematode, the mortality due to Ips decreases, however,the mortality due to pine wilt disease increases as shown in figure 5. The primary reason for this trend is that the Ips population is being absorbed by the slash. But the adults of insects carrying the pine wood nematode feed on the tissues of the residual stems and subsequently the pine wood nematode is introduced into the residual stems. The nematode reproduces rapidly, taking only approximately 4 days to complete a generation. From our observations 72% of the dead trees with no bark beetle attacks were infected and cause death was attributed to the pine wilt disease. Prior to thinning no trees were observed with t pine wilt disease. Hence the relative level of mortality due to this disease in the thinned se is higher than was observed prior to thinning.

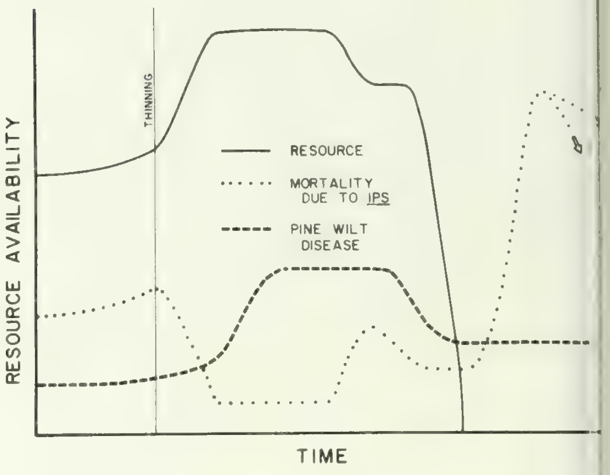


Figure 5. Conceptual relationship between reso availability and susequent mortality to the residual stand following thinning.

As thinning levels decrease and resource availability decreases the mortality due to Ips spp., begins to increase. Given a situation whe thinning ceases abruptly in an area as depicted figure 5 mortality to the residual stems would increase dramatically. This is true for a numb of bark beetle species where windthrow and tree parts, i.e. slash, serve as the preferred habit to reproduce in. When the preferred resource i no longer sufficiently available to absorb the population then the residual standing stems bec focal points of colonization. The distribution of the slash also has an important bearing on t amount of mortality to the residual stems. We observed that when the tops are piled near a residual stem, verses being scattered, there is higher probability that those stems will be att by the emerging Ips population. An interesting in our observations is that those trees that we basally scarred were not attacked by Ips. Mort due to Ips occurred only in non-scarred stems. black turpentine beetle and the coneworm (Dioryctria spp.) were observed attacking the scarred trees but no mortality has been recorde to date.

LITERATURE CITED

Belanger, R. P., E. A. Osgood, and G. E. Hatchell.
1979. Stand, soil and site characteristics associated with southern pine beetle infestations in the southern Appalachians. USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. SE-198. 7 p.

Froehlich, H. A.
1976. The influence of different thinning systems on damage to soil and trees. Proc. XVI IUFRO World Congress, Div. IV, Oslo, Norway.

Hicks, R. R., J. E. Howard, K. G. Watterston and J. E. Coster.
1980. Rating stand susceptibility to southern pine beetle in east Texas. For. Ecol. and Mgmt. 2: 269-83.

Hodges, J. D., W. W. Elam, W. F. Watson, and T. E. Nebeker.
1979. Oleoresin characteristics and susceptibility of four southern pines to southern pine beetle attack. Can. Entomol. 111: 889-96.

Hughes, J. H.
1981. Thinning damage-south. February Progress Report - Weyerhaeuser. Personal Communication.

Ku, T. T., J. M. Sweeney, and V. B. Shelburne.
1980. Site and stand conditions associated with southern pine beetle outbreaks in Arkansas -- a hazard rating system. So. J. Appl. For. 4: 103-06.

Nebeker, T. E.
1980. Manipulation of stand density for prevention of southern pine beetle infestations in loblolly pine plantations. Final Tech. Rep. - Expand South Pine Beetle Research and Applications Program. 86 p.

SALVAGE CUTTING IN SOUTHERN PINE FORESTS[1]

R. P. Belanger, J. F. Godbee, T. Miller, and R. S. Webb[2]

Abstract.--Fusiform rust and the southern pine beetle are the most widespread and destructive forest pests in the southern pine forests. Salvage cutting is a means of reducing losses to this insect and disease in merchantable stands. Establishing treatment priorities, scheduling, marking guidelines, and harvesting systems for salvage operations are discussed in relation to stand characteristics and the extent of damage. Stand disturbance and related pest problems are the risks associated with salvage cutting.

A recent survey of forest industries in the South ranked fusiform rust (*Cronartium quercuum* (Berk.) Miyabe ex Shirai f. sp. *fusiforme*) and the southern pine beetle (*Dendroctonus frontalis* Zimm. - SPB) as the two greatest pest problems in their operations. Annual losses to these agents total more than $200 million. Pest management strategies are available to reduce losses from this insect and disease throughout the life of the stand. Control options decrease, however, as stands mature, competition increases, and growth declines.

Salvage cutting is a means of reducing losses from insects and diseases in merchantable stands. Yet, many forest managers are not familiar with the concept or implementation of this silvicultural practice. This paper (1) describes the development of guidelines for salvage of trees severely infected with fusiform rust in pine plantations, (2) summarizes established guidelines for the salvage removal of SPB-infested material in pulpwood and sawtimber stands, and (3) defines the role of salvage cutting in the management of southern forests.

SALVAGE IN RUST-INFECTED PLANTATIONS

Salvage cutting has often been proposed fo reducing losses to fusiform rust in pine planta- tions (Powers *et al.* 1974: Belcher *et al.* 1977; Schmidt and Klapproth 1982). A large-scale stu is being conducted in South Carolina, Georgia, a Alabama to develop guidelines for the proper se- tion, marking, and harvesting of damaged loblol (*Pinus taeda* L.) and slash (*Pinus elliottii* Eng var. *elliottii*) pines in plantations being mana on 22-25 year rotations.[3] The primary managem objective is high yields of wood fiber.

In 1981, eight slash pine plantations were selected for treatment. Infected trees were re from portions of the plantations; the remaining portions have been left as controls. Four 1/4- fixed plots were established in the treated and treated areas of each plantation to assess the fect of salvage cutting on total production. A wide range of stand, site, and pest conditions being examined.

Stand considerations.--Several factors mus considered in selecting stands for salvage cutt The most obvious and important is the incidence rust. The cooperators in this study are salvag cutting in plantations where the incidence of s galls ranges from 30 to 60 percent. Less than percent infection would be too few stems for pr itable harvest; stands with more than 60 percen would be clearcut and regenerated.

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982. This research was funded in part by a U.S. Department of Agriculture-sponsored program entitled, "The Integrated Pest Management RD&A Program for Bark Beetles of Southern Pines."

[2] The authors are respectively, Silviculturist, Southeastern Forest Experiment Station, Athens, Georgia; Pest Management Specialist, Union Camp Corporation, Rincon, Georgia; Plant Pathologist, Southeastern Forest Experiment Station, Gainesville, Florida; and Forest Pathologist, University of Florida, Gainesville, Florida.

[3] Belanger, R. P., T. Miller, R. S. Webb, J. F. Godbee. Forest management strategies for ducing beetle- and pathogen-caused losses in pl stands: The salvage cutting of trees infected fusiform rust. Research funded by the Integrat Pest Management RD&A Program for Bark Beetles o Southern Pines.

Age of the study plantations at the time of salvage ranged from 14 to 20 years old. Individual trees and total volume in plantations younger than 14 years are usually too small for commercial cutting. There is little biological or economic advantage in salvage cutting rust-infected trees close to rotation age.

Volumes ranged from 10 to 40 cords/acre prior to treatment; number of live trees from 400 to 550 stems/acre. Pretreatment assessments indicated that at least 4 cords/acre had to be removed to satisfy the cost/benefit requirements of harvesting.

Tree considerations.--The success of salvage cutting in rust-infected plantations is based on anticipating mortality. Three risk classes, based on number, location and condition (extent and severity of gall cankering) of rust galls on the main stem, are being evaluated.

Low risk. Trees likely to survive through rotation; either rust-free or with galls of a size and condition that will not affect survival.

Moderate risk. Trees with one or more galls whose location, size (generally $<$ 50 percent of stem circumference) and condition makes survival to rotation age questionable.

High risk. Trees likely to die before rotation; one or more galls generally encircling $\leq$ 50 percent of the circumference of the main stem; severe stem cankers are common.

These risk classes are the primary basis for marking and removal. Tree size and spacing are not major considerations in the selection process. All high risk trees are marked; low risk trees are not marked. Moderate risk trees may or may not be removed depending on management objectives and restrictions specific to individual plantations. Several field foresters have been trained in this system. They are able to identify the three classes quickly and accurately.

Harvesting systems.--Another objective of the study is to determine the kinds of harvesting systems best suited for salvage cutting. We are comparing costs and benefits of tree-length and shortwood removal. Tree-length logging is being done by company harvesting crews in heavily mechanized operations. Shortwood removals are being done by contract loggers with labor-intensive systems.

Cutting operations are being conducted in different geographic regions and stand conditions. Initial spacing, soil characteristics, topography, and processing requirements all have a bearing on the costs, production, and suitability of the different harvesting systems.

Scheduling.--Salvage cutting was conducted during the spring, summer and fall of 1981. Scheduling was strongly dependent on the availability of logging crews and local markets.

Associated pest problems.--Forest managers are cautious about intermediate cuttings without knowing the impact on bark beetles, root diseases and other pest problems. A major objective of this study is to identify and quantify these risks. Logging damage and associated insect activity were assessed during the winter of 1981-1982.

Preliminary results.--Eight slash pine plantations have been salvage cut to date. Harvesting operations removed an average of 10.9 cords/acre (Table 1). Basal area was reduced from an average of 96 ft.^{2}/acre to 61 ft.^{2}/acre (Table 2). Residual stocking averaged 276 stems/acre (Table 3). Most of the trees removed were from the high and moderate risk classes.

Table 1.--Salvage cutting affected the average volume distribution of fusiform-rust risk classes in eight slash pine plantations

Fusiform-rust risk class	Volume Pretreatment	Salvaged	Residual
	Cords/acre 1/		
Low	20.0	2.7	17.3
Moderate	5.5	4.0	1.5
High	4.9	4.2	0.7
Total	30.4	10.9	19.5

1/ Cords = ft.^{3}/78

Table 2.--Salvage cutting affected the average basal area distribution of fusiform-rust risk classes in eight slash pine plantations

Fusiform-rust risk class	Basal area Pretreatment	Salvaged	Residual
	Ft.^{2}/acre		
Low	61.6	8.6	53.0
Moderate	17.8	12.5	5.3
High	16.6	13.8	2.8
Total	96.0	34.9	61.1

Table 3.--Salvage cutting affected the average number of trees/acre in each fusiform-rust risk class in eight slash pine plantations

Fusiform-rust risk class	Live trees/acre		
	Pretreatment	Salvaged	Residual
	------------Number------------		
Low	256	37	219
Moderate	86	55	31
High	100	74	26
Total	442	166	276

Salvage cutting removed 74 percent of the stems with severe rust infections. These high-risk trees represented 33 percent of the total volume harvested. Residual high-risk trees--only 3 percent of the total stand--were too small to remove efficiently (Tables 4 and 5).

Table 4.--Salvage cutting affected the average diameters of trees in fusiform-rust risk classes in eight slash pine plantations

Fusiform-rust risk class	D.b.h.		
	Pretreatment	Salvaged	Residual
	------------Inches------------		
Low	6.4	6.3	6.4
Moderate	5.8	6.2	5.2
High	5.2	5.6	4.0

Table 5.--Salvage cutting affected the average heights of trees in fusiform-rust risk classes in eight slash pine plantations

Fusiform-rust risk class	Total height		
	Pretreatment	Salvaged	Residual
	------------Feet------------		
Low	50.3	50.9	50.2
Moderate	46.8	48.2	43.9
High	41.5	43.8	35.5

Salvage cutting increased the proportion of healthy and low-risk trees in the study plantations from 58 to 79 percent. Quality and general vigor of the residual stand were significantly improved. Approximately 37 low-risk trees/acre were removed to provide access through the stand by harvesting equipment. These trees represented 25 percent of the total volume removed. Salvage cutting did not affect the average diameter or total height of the residual low-risk trees since they were selected by chance rather than by choice.

Moderate-risk trees were left at the discretion of the markers. Many large trees with small infections were left because of their potential value as sawtimber; small trees in the low to moderate risk classes were removed to reduce the n
ber of slow-growing trees that would be sucepti
to insect attack. Removal of these moderate-ri
trees can also improve spacing in the residual
stand. Moderate-risk trees represented 33 perc
of the stems removed and 37 percent of the tota
volume salvaged from the study plantations.

An average of 18 trees/acre--6.6 percent
the residual stand--were damaged during salvage
removal. Tree-length logging accounted for 55
cent of the total damage while the remaining 45
percent resulted from shortwood operations. Mo
of the damage (65 percent) occurred as wounding
scarring on the main stem. The remaining injur
were broken live branches or severe bending of
small trees caused by felling.

Only 12 percent of the damaged trees were
attacked by *Ips* and black turpentine (*Dendroct*
terebrans Oliv.-BTB) beetles. Attacks seemed t
related to the number and size of stem wounds
(Table 6). Damaged trees with insect activity
more wounds per tree, more surface area per wou
and more wound area per tree than did damaged t
without insect activity. *Ips* and BTB activity
greater in the treated portions of the plantati
than in the control areas (Table 7). No mortal
has occurred in the study plantations to date a
result of insect activity following logging.

Dioryctria amatella (Hulst), the southern
coneworm, is associated with active rust galls
where the larvae feed and grow over winter (Cou
and Franklin 1970). This insect is not a probl
pest in plantations, but can cause serious loss
of cones and seeds in seed orchards. Removal o
the rust-infested trees significantly reduced t
incidence of *D. amatella*.

Prior to treatment, the root systems of 74
trees were excavated and inspected for resinosu
decay associated with diseases such as annosus
rot (*Heterobasidion annosum* [Fr.] Bref. A tota
31 trees had some roots with symptoms of diseas
Samples of these roots were cultured to determi
specific pathogens. Only *H. annosum* and *Inonot*
circinatus were recovered from the symptomatic
tissue. The frequency of root disease fungi we

Heterobasidion annosum	1 tree
Inonotus circinatus	3 trees

Mushroom root rot (caused by *Clitocybe tabescen*
[Scop] Bres.) was also noted (visual inspection
culture) on three trees. The occurrence and re
ery of all root decay fungi from these excavate
trees were low, but this was expected since the
plantations had not been previously thinned.

Continuing research.--In 1982, a similar e
fort went into the selection and treatment of r
infected loblolly pine plantations. The slash
data will continue to be strengthened. Detailed rust profiles are being developed for planta
tions of both species. We will continue to mon
the plantations for insect and disease activity

Table 6.--Relationships between logging damage and associated insect activity following the salvage cutting of fusiform-rust-infested trees in eight slash pine plantations

	Trees with stem wounds	Stem wounds per tree	Surface area per wound	Surface area per tree
	---------Number---------		------------Ft.^{2}------------	
Damaged trees with insects	18	1.7	0.25	0.42
Damaged trees without insects	77	1.2	0.13	0.15

Table 7.--Number of trees attacked by different insects in treated and untreated portions of eight slash pine plantations

	Portion of study plantations	
Insect	Salvaged	Control
	---------Number of infested trees-------	
Black turpentine beetle	27	7
Ips spp.	1	-
Dioryctria amatella	37	128
Unknown	3	-

GUIDELINES FOR SALVAGE OF SPB-INFESTED TREES

The southern pine beetle occurs across all geographic regions of the South. Frequency and severity of SPB attacks are most serious in mature, densely stocked, slow-growing pine stands. Insect activity is increased even more when these stands are disturbed (e.g. lightning, logging damage). Rapid salvage of infestations is a means of recovering losses and reducing beetle populations (Morris and Copony 1974, Billings and Pase 1979).

SPB infestations are normally located from aerial observations (Billings and Doggett 1980) and ground checked to determine the need and priority for treatment (Billings and Pase 1980). High-priority spots--those with the greatest number of actively-infested trees--should be marked for treatment first (Swain and Remion 1981).

Field crews should be instructed to mark and remove a buffer strip of uninfested trees around the active head of each infestation. This practice stops spot growth and is a precaution against leaving undetected infested trees. Buffer strips can range from 10 to 100 feet, depending on the stage of brood development, stand density, and the number of newly attacked and brood-producing trees (Billings and Pase 1980). Wide buffer strips are recommended for high-priority spots whereas smaller buffer strips are adequate for medium- and low-priority spots. Harvesting should start as soon as possible after marking. The order in which trees are removed depends on the season (Swain and Remion 1981). During May to October, buffer zone trees should be removed first, then freshly attacked trees, and finally the trees with living brood. This sequence reduces spot spread. Between November and April, trees with older brood should be removed first, then newly attacked trees, and finally the trees in the buffer zone. This sequence reduces spot proliferation.

Salvage cutting is an effective and economical method of treating large SPB infestations. More than 2.8 million cords and 1 billion board feet of SPB-killed and infested timber were harvested in the South during beetle outbreaks between 1970 and 1976 (Price and Doggett 1978). This material was used profitably for a wide range of products (Levi 1981).

THE ROLE OF SALVAGE CUTTING IN SOUTHERN FORESTS

Damage from insects and diseases occurs almost continuously in southern forests. Environmental conditions favor several major pests: SPB, fusiform rust, littleleaf disease (*Phytophthora cinnamoni* Rands), and annosus root rot. Some stands damaged by these pests are suitable for salvage cutting while others are not. Choice of action depends on the extent of damage, management objectives, and benefits that result from treatment.

Excellent guidelines have been developed for salvage of trees damaged by the SPB. Harvesting can range from light partial cutting to clearcutting depending on the size and number of infestations. Guidelines are not yet available for applying salvage cutting in stands infected by fusiform rust. A major problem is the inability to predict losses based on the severity of rust in merchantable pine plantations. The primary purpose of our current research is to anticipate and prevent these losses.

Salvage of mortality caused by root diseases depends on the rate at which damage occurs. Losses from littleleaf disease and *H. annosum* usually occur slowly over time and are widely scattered throughout the stand. Immediate losses are likely to be minimal; frequent salvage cutting is generally impractical. Stands with severe infections of littleleaf disease or annosus root rot should be clearcut.

The need, practically, and application of salvage cutting depends on:

* Forest management objectives
* Extent of the pest problem
* Severity of the pest problem
* Type of damage
* Value of the timber
* Volume of the timber
* Accessibility of the stand
* Market conditions
* Availability of harvesting crews
* Pest management considerations

Salvage cutting should be considered as a means of reducing losses from insects and diseases only when it is biologically and economically feasible to do so.

LITERATURE CITED

Belcher, H. J., W. J. Crafts, Jr., W. D. Erickse
and R. H. Ward.
1977. Plantation management. *In* R. J. Dinus a
R. A. Schmidt, eds. Management of fusiform rust in southern pines. p. 158-163. Symp. Proc. Univ. Fla., Gainesville, FL.

Billings, R. F., and C. Doggett.
1980. An aerial observer's guide for recogniz
and reporting southern pine beetle spots. 1
U.S. Dep. Agric. For. Serv., Agric. Handb. 5
Comb. For. Pest Res. Develop. Prog., Pinevil
LA.

Billings, R. F., and H. A. Pase III.
1979. Spot proliferation patterns as a measur
of the area-wide effectiveness of southern p
beetle control tactics. *In* Evaluating contr
tactics for the southern pine beetle: sympos
proceedings. [Many, La., Jan. 1979] p. 86-9
J. E. Coster and J. L. Searcy, eds. U.S. De
Agric. Tech. Bull. 1613. Comb. For. Pest Re
Develop. Prog., Pineville, LA.

Billings, R. F., and H. A. Pase III.
1980. A field guide for ground checking south
pine beetle spots. 19 p. U.S. Dep. Agric.
Serv., Agric. Handb. 558. Comb. For. Pest R
Develop. Prog., Pineville, LA.

Coulson, R. N., and R. T. Franklin.
1970. The biology of *Dioryctria amatella* (Lep
doptera: Phycitidae). Can. Entomol. 102:679-
684.

Levi, M. P.
1981. A guide for using beetle-killed souther
pine based on tree appearance. 14 p. U.S.
Agric. For. Serv., Agric. Handb. 572. Comb.
Pest Res. Develop. Prog., Pineville, LA.

Morris, C. L., and J. A. Copony.
1974. Effectiveness of intensive salvage in r
ducing southern pine beetle in Virginia. J.
For. 72:572.

Powers, H. R. Jr., F. R. Matthews, and R. B. Haw
1974. Volume loss resulting from fusiform rus
in young plantations of slash pine. USDA Fo
Serv. Res. Note SE-200, SE For. Exp. Stn., Asheville, N. C. 8 p.

Price, T. S., and C. Doggett, eds.
1978. A history of southern pine beetle outbreaks in the Southeastern United States. 3
Georgia Forestry Commission, Macon, GA.

Schmidt, R. A., and M. C. Klapproth.
1982. Delineation of fusiform rust hazard bas
on estimated volume loss as a guide to rust
management decisions in slash pine plantatio
South. J. Appl. For. 6:59-63.

Swain, K. M., and M. C. Remion.
1981. Direct control methods for the southern
pine beetle. 15 p. U.S. Dep. Agric. For. S
Agric. Handb. 575. Comb. For. Pest Res. Dev
Prog., Pineville, LA.

FREEZE- AND KILN-DRYING OF SLASH PINE CONES AND SEEDS[1]

James P. Barnett[2]

Abstract.--Seed yields were greater from freeze-dried than kiln-dried cones, possibly due to a more complete drying. Whether seeds were further dried by kiln- or freeze-drying methods had no effect on the number of germinating seeds but did influence the speed of germination. After storage for 20 months at 72°F, seeds from freeze-dried cones had lower viability than those from kilned cones, regardless of the method of seed drying. Seeds from freeze-dried cones that were further dried by freeze drying had the lowest viability. Apparently the very rapid desiccation damages the seeds. The moisture contents of the kiln- and freeze-dried seeds averaged 5.4 and 2.2 percent, respectively, regardless of cone drying method. Probably because moisture levels were so low, viability of the seeds from kilned cones remained constant over the 20-month period at room temperature. Freeze-drying to reduce seed moisture for long-term storage is feasible, but only if the seeds are partially dried by some other technique; otherwise seed damage can occur.

INTRODUCTION

One of the major factors influencing seed ongevity is seed moisture content. At normal torage temperatures (20° to 35°F) seed moisture ontents greater than about 10 percent cause more apid decreases in viability. The general ecommendations for storing southern pine seeds re to dry them to a moisture content of 10 perent or less (Barnett and McLemore 1970). Harringon (1973) has noted that with many agronomic eeds stored within the range of 5 to 14 percent oisture content, each 1 percent increase halved he life of seeds.

Pine seeds are not usually dried below a oisture content of 6 to 8 percent. Theoretically, rying to 1 or 2 percent moisture should maximize he length of seed storage, but it is difficult o lower moisture to these levels by conventional rying techniques without damaging the seed. erhaps for this reason, Roberts (1972) suggests hat decreasing moisture contents below 5 or 6 ercent may not increase seed storability.

Vacuum drying is especially well adapted to drying seeds to a very low moisture content. Vacuum drying is similar to drying with dehumidified air. In recent years, refrigeration has been combined with vacuum drying in what is termed freeze-drying. Refrigeration is used to condense moisture from the air and lower its vapor pressure. Although the material being dried is normally frozen, freezing is not necessary if the seeds are kept outside of the condensing chamber. The moisture removed is continuously frozen in the condensing chamber, maintaining a steep moisture gradient.

Early results indicated that freeze-drying could improve the storage of vegetable seeds. Moisture contents can be lowered to levels that heretofore could not be reached with heat drying without seed injury (Woodstock 1975, Woodstock, et al 1976). Freeze-drying has also been tried successfully with spruce seeds (Suber et al 1973), and preliminary tests with southern pine seeds have shown that moisture levels can be reduced to 2 percent or less without apparent injury to the seed (Barnett 1979). However, the effects of these low seed moisture contents on storability have not been evaluated.

In this study, freeze-drying was compared with conventional kilning techniques as a means of cone processing and as a method of lowering seed moisture so that seed longevity can be increased.

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural esearch Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November -5, 1982.

[2] Principal Silviculturist, Southern Forest xperiment Station, Forest Service--USDA, Pineille, LA 71360.

METHODS

Freeze-drying and kiln-drying techniques were used to extract seeds from cone collections from three individual slash pine trees. The collections were made on September 24, 1979. Seven cones for each of three replications per individual tree were processed in a small gas-fired kiln at temperatures of about 105°F and in a laboratory freeze dryer where the cones were kept at slightly below ambient temperatures. Seed yields per cone was determined upon the completion of cone opening. After extraction was completed, seeds were again dried by either kiln- or freeze-drying methods to further reduce seed moisture contents. Seed moisture levels were determined prior to initial germination tests and storage. Germination tests, conducted for 30 days, were run with unstratified seeds before and after storage. Czabator's (1962) germination values, which reflect both speed and completeness of germination, and percent of germination were computed. The 0.05 level was used as the significance level in the ANOV analyses of the data.

Seeds from each treatment replication w sealed in separate polyethylene bags to mai the initial moisture levels during the 20 m of storage at 72°F. Seeds were stored at r temperature (72°F) to hasten seed deteriora and accentuate treatment differences. Norm seeds would be stored at subfreezing temper

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Cone Drying

Whether slash pine cones were extracted conventional kilning or by freeze-drying te niques had no effect on initial germination (table 1). However, significantly greater yields were obtained from freeze-dried than kilned cones, amounting to an 8 percent inc in yield. The better yields probably refle the faster drying and lower moisture conten cones that were freeze dried.

Although initial germination was not af ed by cone drying technique, germination va which in this case reflect differences in s of germination, were reduced by freeze dryi (table 1). There were significant differen in all measured parameters due to variation among the individual-tree sources.

Table 1.--Slash pine seed yield, moisture content, and germination summary by drying method, initiall and after storage for 20 months at 72°F

Drying method		Tree	Seed	Initial characteristics[1]			20-month characteristics	
Cones	Seed	number	yield	Moisture content	Germination	GV[2]	Germination	GV
			#/cone	-Percent-	--Percent--		--Percent--	
Kiln	Kiln	1	117[3]	5.2	99.7	55.17	99.3	45.11
		2	122	5.4	99.8	50.69	98.7	41.48
		3	141	5.6	97.5	39.87	96.0	24.56
		Mean	127 b[4]	5.4 a	99.0 a	48.58 a	98.0 a	37.05 a
Kiln	Freeze-dry	1	119	2.2	99.7	49.91	99.2	36.88
		2	118	1.8	99.0	48.82	96.0	24.95
		3	147	2.7	95.0	37.67	94.0	24.57
		Mean	128 b	2.2 b	97.9 a	45.47 a	96.4 a	28.80 a
Freeze-dry	Kiln	1	129	5.4	98.2	36.37	91.0	24.50
		2	138	5.5	98.8	21.12	87.2	17.54
		3	150	5.6	96.7	26.17	85.2	18.37
		Mean	139 a	5.5 a	97.9 a	31.22 b	87.8 b	20.14 b
Freeze-dry	Freeze-dry	1	122	2.3	96.5	32.36	75.7	15.14
		2	140	1.2	99.2	26.91	21.2	1.16
		3	144	3.0	89.5	14.20	39.3	2.76
		Mean	135 a	2.2 b	95.1 a	24.49 b	45.4 c	6.35 c

---

[1] After drying cones and further drying of seeds with treatments.

[2] GV's are germination values which reflect both seed and completeness of germination (Czabator 1962)

[3] Average from 7 cones per tree.

[4] Means within columns, followed by the same letter are not significantly different at the 0.05 level

After 20 months of 72°F temperatures, germination of kilned seeds from kilned cones had dropped only an average of 1 percentage point, whereas kilned seeds from freeze-dried cones dropped 10 percentage points (table 1)

Seed Drying

After the seeds were extracted from the cones, the seeds were further dried for storage by either kiln- or freeze-drying methods. The final seed moisture contents obtained by kilning averaged 5.4 percent compared to 2.2 percent for freeze drying (table 1). Kilning normally results in about a 10 percent moisture level. The low moisture level for kiln-drying is probably why the viability of these seeds stayed essentially the same over the 20-month period at room temperature.

Seeds from freeze-dried cones were adversely affected by both drying methods (table 1). Seeds that were freeze-dried following cone opening by freeze-drying were almost unsuitable for use following 20 months at room temperature. Why was germination so adversely affected by this treatment? No conclusive answers are available, but rapid desiccation from high to low moisture contents is known to reduce seed quality (Copeland 1976). Such excessive drying rates may cause stress cracks in the seed because of unequal drying throughout the seed.

CONCLUSIONS

Results of these tests indicate that alternative drying methods, such as freeze-drying, can be used to extract seeds from pine cones as effectively as conventional kilning. Freeze-drying should not be used to quickly reduce seed moisture contents from high levels to extremely low levels, as damage can occur that will reduce seed quality after storage. It still may be feasible to lower seed moisture contents to unusually low levels by freeze-drying and thus increase seed longevity. Freeze-drying techniques will also reduce time of drying 75 percent or more. The kiln extracted and dried seeds in this study had a moisture content of 5.4 percent, which is considerably below the levels usually obtained, and viability was retained exceptionally well following nearly 2 years at room temperatures. Thus low moisture contents can increase the time seeds can be stored and freeze-drying is one means of drying seeds to unusually low levels. However, seeds should be partially dried by some other method so that injury can be reduced.

LITERATURE CITED

Barnett, J. P.
1979. Alternative methods for extracting southern pine seeds, p. 119-125. In Southeastern Area Nurserymen's Conf. 1978, USDA Forest Service Tech. Bull. SA-TP 7, 170 p., Southeastern Area State and Private Forestry, Atlanta, GA.

Barnett, J. P. and B. F. McLemore.
1970. Storing southern pine seeds. J. For. 68: 24-27.

Copeland, L. O.
1976. Principles of seed science and technology. Burgess Pub. Co., Minneapolis, MN, 369 p.

Czabator, F. J.
1962. Germination value: an index combining both speed and completeness of pine seed germination. For. Sci. 8: 386-396.

Harrington, J. F.
1973. Problems in seed storage, p. 251-263. In Seed ecology, edited by W. Heydecker, The Penn. State Univ. Press, University Park, Penn., 578 p.

Roberts, E. H.
1972. Storage environment and the control of viability. In Viability of seeds, p. 14-58. Chapman and Hall, London.

Suber, E., I. Simonett, and E. Frehner.
1973. Freeze-drying of forest tree seeds, especially of spruce (*Picea abies* [L.] Karst) for long storage. In International Symp. on Seed Processing, IUFRO S2.01.06 1:24-38.

Woodstock, L. W.
1975. Freeze-drying as an alternative method for lowering seed moisture. Proc. Assoc. Official Seed Anal. 65: 159-163.

Woodstock, L. W., J. Simkin, and E. Schroeder.
1976. Freeze-drying to improve seed storability. Seed Sci. and Technol. 4(2): 301-311.

SWEETGUM SEEDLING ROOT STARCH CONTENT AS AN INDICATOR OF DORMANCY[1/]

Robert W. Rose, Jr., and M. Monica McGregor[2/]

Abstract.--Sweetgum seedlings grown in Westvaco's coastal South Carolina nursery accumulated varying levels of root starch as they went dormant in the fall. Seedlings which tended to retain their leaves longer accumulated the least amount of starch prior to leaf fall in late November. All of the seedlings exhibited a dramatic increase in root starch between September and October. However, each plot of seedlings tended to reach a peak in starch content in different months. A sharp rise in starch content late in the growing season (October) may indicate that the dormancy mechanisms have been set in motion. The magnitude of the starch increase may not be as important as the beginning starch level and the month in which the starch content peaks. Knowing the level of the starch peak and when it occurs may give some indication of when to lift for optimum storage and future growth.

INTRODUCTION

The accumulation of nutrients, carbohydrates, proteins, and other compounds has interested those studying dormancy and seedling quality for a number of years (Leaf et al. 1978). Several researchers have linked dormancy and food reserves to seedling outplanting survival and growth (Farmer 1975, Gilmore 1961, Hellmers 1979, Kreuger 1967). Nelson and Dickson (1981) found that carbohydrate was stored as starch in the initial stages of dormancy induction in cottonwood stems; it was later converted to soluble sugars under cold conditions.

Dormancy induction occurs primarily as a function of temperature, day-length, soil fertility, plant moisture stress and/or plant injury such as top pruning or undercutting. Temperature and day-length are beyond the control of the nurseryman. Plant moisture stress can be controlled if extremes in seasonal rainfall are not a problem. Soil fertility ca controlled to a point, but depends on soil rainfall and irrigation requirements. Onl pruning and undercutting can be directly trolled, but these techniques must be care timed to ensure an adequate recovery from injury.

Timing is critical if the nurseryman condition the seedlings to survive and grow after outplanting. In a previous study do sweetgum seedlings tested for starch prio lifting in January were found to have a n range of root percent starch. The que arose as to how much starch sweetgum coul expected to accumulate prior to dormanc coastal South Carolina. When does the pr begin? How great is the variation? How this information be used to time nursery cu al practices such as nitrogen fertilizatio time of lifting?

The experiment reported here was designe obtain baseline data on starch accumulatio sweetgum roots as it might relate to dorm A plot containing typical production seed was added for comparison purposes.

The purpose of this study was to test for odic changes during the fall months in starch content in nursery-grown sweetgum lings.

[1/] Paper presented at Second Biennial Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2/] The authors are Forest Regeneration Scientist and Laboratory Technician, Forest Science Laboratory/Productivity Group, Westvaco Corporation, Summerville, S.C.

PROCEDURE

The study was located at Westvaco's Jericho Nursery in Ravenel, South Carolina. Figure 1 shows the layout of the experiment. Each of the seven plots was sown by hand in April 1981 at a fixed density of twelve seedlings per square foot. The seed was a southern Illinois source. Five of the plots were selected at random for use in this study. Each plot was four feet wide by eight feet long. Soil fertility at the beginning of the experiment was good with a pH of 5.45. The pounds per acre in the soil of P, Ca, Mg and K were 116, 954, 187, and 154, respectively. Soil organic matter was approximately 1% prior to the addition of three inches of composted sawdust mixed into the top six to eight inches of soil. This raised the organic matter content to 8.6% in plots 1-5. The seedlings were fertilized with Folian™[1/] at a rate of 25 lbs. of nitrogen per acre on June 26, July 17, August 10, and August 21. Seedling growth was not proceeding well in early August due to high soil moisture and possible nutrient leaching, so potassium nitrate, ammonium nitrate, and triple superphosphate were added to each plot on August 12, 1981. The amount of N, P, and K added to each plot was equivalent to 50, 20 and 75 lbs. per acre, respectively.

Within each main plot a smaller subplot containing nine rows of seedlings was established in early August. The nine rows of seedlings were comprised of four sample rows and five buffer rows. A buffer of two seedlings was left on the edge of the beds. Each row contained eight seedlings. In early August a 4- x 20-foot area was marked off in a nearby production seedbed of the same seed source for use in this study. The production seedlings received no special organic or fertilizer treatments. Thirty-two seedlings within the production plot were randomly selected and tagged for harvesting at a later date.

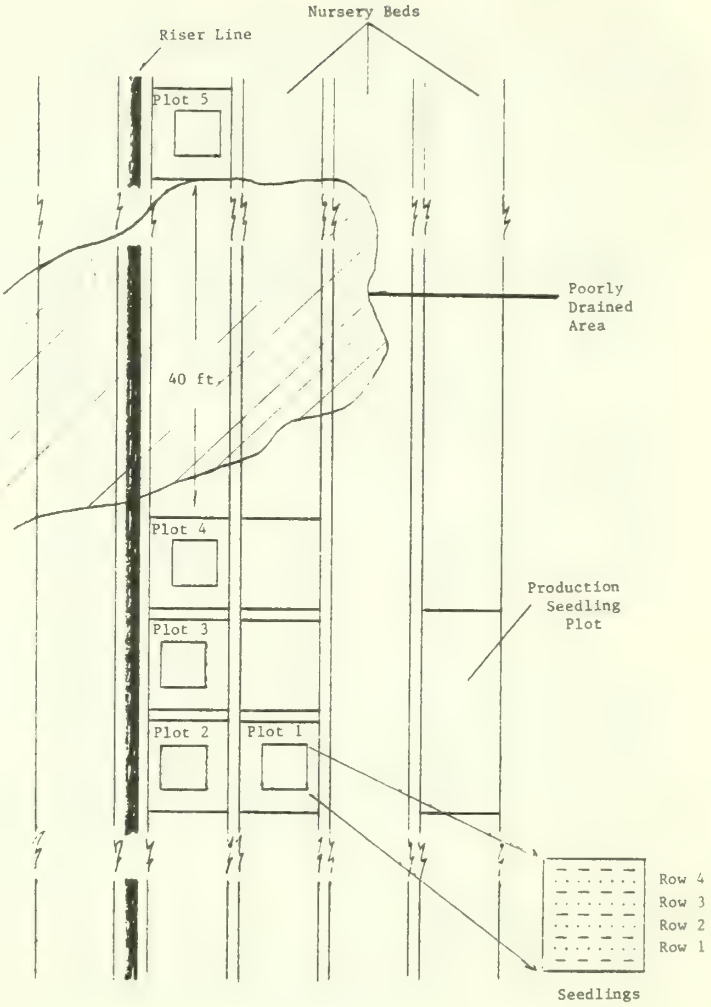


Figure 1.--Nursery layout of experiment and diagram of plot with locations of harvested rows. (Row 1 contained seedlings 1-8; Row 2 9-16; Row 3 17-24; Row 4 25-32)

Harvest Method.--One entire row of seedlings was harvested at random from each plot on September 24, October 27, November 19, and December 21, 1981. Eight seedlings were randomly selected from the production plot on the same dates. Four additional seedlings were harvested near each plot on March 18, 1982. Height and caliper measurements were taken each month on the seedlings to be harvested and those which remained from August through December.

The leaves from each seedling to be harvested were removed and placed in a paper bag. The seedlings were lifted and their roots were carefully washed with water. After cleaning the sampled seedlings were bundled together and their root systems placed in a two-quart plastic bag. The bundle was then frozen solid in a cooler containing dry ice. After freezing, the seedlings were taken immediately to the lab where they were defrosted. Each seedling was divided into stem, tap root, and lateral roots. Fresh weight of leaves, stem, and roots were taken. Each component was then dried for 48 hours at 60-70°C in an incubating oven to determine dry weight. The leaves were analyzed for N, P, K, Ca and Mg by Westvaco's Soils/Analytical Group. The individual tap and lateral roots of each seedling were tightly sealed in plastic freezer storage bags for future starch analysis. Tap and lateral roots from seedlings harvested in September, October, and November were combined prior to analysis.

1/ Folian™ is an N, P, K, S, Fe liquid fertilizer.

Starch Analysis.--Preparation for analysis involved chopping and grinding the roots to pass through a 40u sieve. The ground sample was placed in a tightly capped specimen vial and refrozen. At the time of testing, 100mg of ground sample were placed into a preweighed test tube, dried for one hour at 100°C, and weighed to determine its dry weight. Percent starch was based on root dry weight. The starch determination technique was that described by Haissig and Dickson (1979). Briefly, samples were extracted with a methanol:chloroform:water mixture to remove soluble sugars, heated in an oven to boil off the chloroform, gelantinized for 30 minutes in a boiling water bath, and incubated at 40°C for 48 hours in the presence of two starch degrading enzymes. Aliquots were mixed with toluidine reagent and read on a spectrophotometer at 635nm. Each run included five standards. Two samples from each vial were prepared for extraction and analyzed separately for comparison purposes. If the standards were not linear (R^2=0.99) the entire set of samples was rerun.

The data were analyzed as a standard two-way analysis of variance design for the overall combined data. Plots and months were both fixed effects. The analysis of variance, covariance, and correlation programs used were developed at the University of California's Biomedical Department (Dickson 1975). The March data was not included in the analysis.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

The initial height measurements of the seedlings were taken in August 1981. The results of a one-way analysis of variance (Table 1) were statistically significant. The production seedlings were the tallest at the start of the experiment.

Descriptive statistics for the variables measured in this study are shown in Table 2. The means for each variable are the average of all observations taken between September and December, except the leaf data which does not include December. The leaves had been shed by the December harvest date. Height and caliper growth ceased by the October measurement date.

The two-way analysis of variance results (Table 3) show there was a significant nursery plot by month interaction for total root percent starch between September and December 1981. Figure 2 illustrates the magnitude of the variation among plots for total root percent starch over the four month sampling period. Starch content rose from a mean of 18% to 28% for all plots from September to October. The mean starch percent levels for November and December were 30% and 29%, respectively. From October to December starch content tended to remain fairly stable for a given plot with th exception of plot 1. Root percent starch ros steadily in plot 1. This suggests that Octobe was the critical period in which starch conten either reached or closely approached the pea level in a given plot - except plot 1. The dro in starch content between December and March indicated that the seedlings were entering anothe physiological state.

Table 1.--Results of the one-way analysis of variance and Duncan's Multiple Range Test for August height means of all of the seedlings per plot at the start of the experiment.

ANALYSIS OF VARIANCE TABLE

Source of Variation	df	ms	F value
Aug. Ht.	5	1029.71	42.17**[1]
error	173	24.42	

DUNCAN'S MULTIPLE RANGE TEST[2]

Plot	4	2	3	5	1	P[3]
Aug. Ht. (cm) $\bar{x}$	25.3	26.0	28.9	30.4	31.5	41.2

1/ ** = significant at 99% confidence level.
2/ Means with a line in common are not significantly different at 95% confidence level
3/ P = Production.

The relationship between changes in lea dry weight and root starch by plot revealed som interesting observations. Between September an October starch content rose dramatically whethe leaf dry weight increased or decreased (Tabl 4). Between October and November leaf dr weight decreased in every case, but the chang in percent root starch was not as great as before. The trend in foliar nitrogen was decidedly downward for all three months. The trend fo starch content was the opposite; thus, the negative correlation of -0.61 (Table 5) between lea nitrogen and root starch.

The foliar potassium and magnesium level in the production seedlings were significantl less than the foliar levels from the other fiv plots (Table 6). The difference is attributed to the lack of supplemental fertilization in the production area.

The two most common measures of growth nurseryman use are height and caliper. Both were significantly different for plots and months (Table 3). The simple correlations in Table 7 between total root percent starch and height or caliper were 0.06 and 0.21, respectively. Con-

Table 2.--Mean, standard deviation, coefficient of variation, and range in values of the thirteen variables measured between September and December.

	Mean	Standard Deviation	Coeff. of Var.	Range
Height	42 cm	10.36	0.24	19.0 - 71.0
Caliper	6 mm	1.71	0.26	2.0 - 11.0
Leaf Dry Wt.[1]	1.79 g	1.07	0.60	0.2 - 6.1
Stem Dry Wt.	2.92 g	1.96	0.67	0.3 - 11.1
Tap Root Dry Wt.	2.33 g	1.64	0.70	0.11 - 10.36
Lateral Root Dry Wt.	0.89 g	0.92	1.03	0.09 - 7.30
Total Root Dry Wt.	3.37 g	2.84	0.84	0.14 - 19.43
Total Root % Starch[2]	25.94%	7.75	0.30	8.0 - 44.0
Leaf Nutrients[1] (Percent)				
Nitrogen	1.75%[3]	0.45	0.26	0.73 - 2.85
Phosphorus	0.16%	0.05	0.29	0.08 - 0.45
Potassium	0.89	0.24	0.27	0.33 - 1.49
Calcium	0.68	0.16	0.24	0.29 - 1.00
Magnesium	0.27	0.05	0.18	0.13 - 0.39

[1] Mean of values from September to November. No leaves were present in December.

[2] Percent of total root dry weight.

[3] Percent of total leaf dry weight.

Table 3.--The F Values from the Two-Way Analysis of Variance Results of Plots and Months between September and December

	Plot	Month	Plot x Month
Height	6.73**[1]	3.22*	NS
Caliper	5.04**	6.49**	NS
Leaf Dry Weight[2]	4.57**	1.94NS	NS
Stem Dry Weight	8.89**	8.45**	NS
Tap Root Dry Weight	6.41**	21.84**	NS
Lateral Root Dry Wt.	5.82**	15.42**	NS
Total Root Dry Weight	6.00**	18.43**	NS
Total Root % Starch	98.94	29.77	3.80**[3]
Leaf Nutrients[2]			
Nitrogen	72.97	58.15	2.48*
Phosphorus	7.27	7.08	2.24*
Potassium	19.92**	9.67**	NS
Calcium	31.50	64.46	3.08**
Magnesium	12.90**	2.54	NS

1/ * = significant at 95% confidence level.
** = significant at 99% confidence level.
NS = Non-Significant.

2/ Includes only the months of September, October, and November. No leaves on seedlings by late December.

3/ For tests with significant interactions, the main treatment levels were ignored due to confounding between treatments. The F values presented here are for the reader's information.

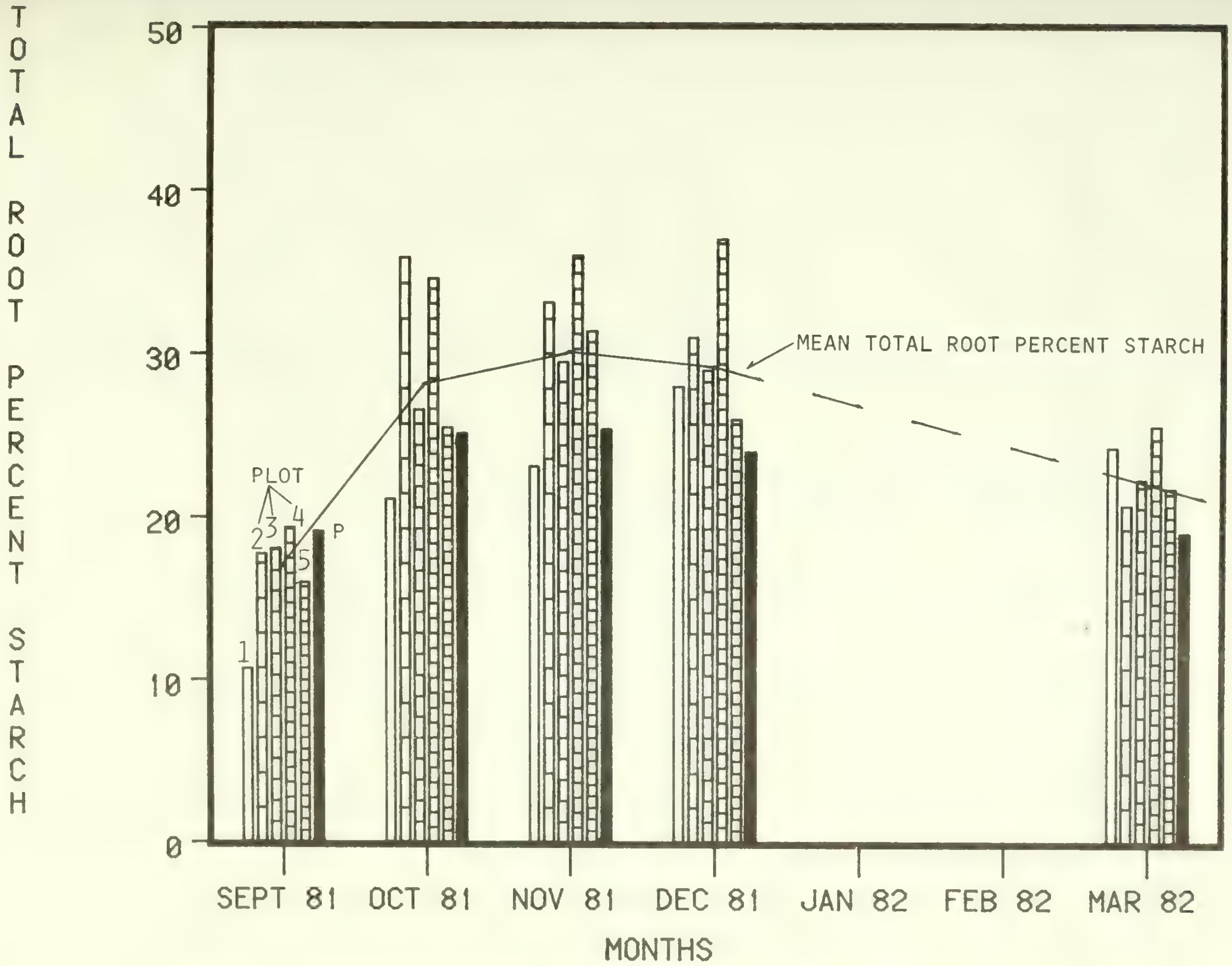


FIGURE 2. CHANGES IN TOTAL ROOT PERCENT STARCH FROM SEPTEMBER TO DECEMBER 1981.

Table 4.--Absolute changes in leaf dry weight (g), total root percent starch, and leaf nitrogen content (% dry wt.) from September through November 1981.

Plot	September			October			November		
	Leaf (g)	Starch (%)	N (%)	Leaf (g)	Starch (%)	N (%)	Leaf (g)	Starch (%)	N (%)
1	1.54	10.9	2.57	3.02	21.0	2.24	2.34	23.1	1.73
2	1.82	17.8	1.68	1.44	35.9	1.30	1.32	33.1	0.94
3	1.51	18.0	1.85	1.54	26.6	1.63	1.39	29.5	1.39
4	1.72	19.4	1.66	1.80	34.6	1.69	0.99	36.0	1.35
5	1.64	16.1	1.97	1.67	25.5	1.66	1.24	31.4	1.34
P*	3.02	19.3	2.24	2.11	25.1	2.29	2.01	25.4	1.94

Percent changes in leaf dry weight, total root percent starch, and leaf percent nitrogen.

Plot	September -> October			October -> November		
	Leaf	Starch	N	Leaf	Starch	N
1	+96%	+93%	-13%	-23%	+10%	-23%
2	-21	+102	-23	-8	-8	-28
3	+2	+42	-12	-10	+11	-15
4	+5	+78	+2	-45	+4	-20
5	+2	+58	-16	-26	+23	-19
P*	-30	+31	+2	-5	+9	-15
	(Percent change from September level)			(Percent change from October level)		

* Production seedlings

Table 5.--Matrix of simple correlations (r) relating sweetgum seedling leaf nutrient levels with each other, total root percent starch, height (ht.), caliper (cal.), and dry weight of the leaves, stems, and roots for the months of September, October, and November 1981.

Leaf Nutrients (Percent)*	N	P	K	Ca	Mg	Total Root % Starch	Ht.	Cal.	Leaf Dry Wt.	Stem Dry Wt.	Tap Root Dry Wt.	Lateral Root Dry Wt.	Total Root Dry Wt.
Nitrogen (N)	1.00	-0.09	-0.29	-0.68	-0.26	-0.61	0.20	-0.05	0.31	0.13	-0.15	-0.11	-0.17
Phosphorus (P)		1.00	0.38	0.24	0.28	-0.01	-0.23	-0.27	-0.16	-0.32	-0.32	-0.24	-0.28
Potassium (K)			1.00	0.55	0.28	0.19	-0.17	-0.31	-0.34	-0.33	-0.27	-0.28	-0.21
Calcium (Ca)				1.00	0.56	-0.49	-0.11	-0.03	-0.24	-0.21	-0.02	-0.07	-0.05
Magnesium (Mg)					1.00	-0.01	-0.33	-0.25	-0.30	-0.40	-0.33	-0.31	-0.35

* Percent based on leaf dry weight.

Table 6.--Results of the Duncan's Multiple Range Tests for months and plots. (Each number is the mean of 32 observations. Significance was determined at the 95% confidence level. Numbers with the same line in common are not significantly different.)

Caliper (mm)

Mon		Plot	
Sep	5.6	5	5.9
Oct	6.6	4	6.1
Nov	6.9	2	6.3
Dec	6.9	3	6.4
		1	6.5
		P[1]	7.7

Height (cm)

Mon		Plot	
Sep	38.6	3	35.4
Oct	42.3	2	37.8
Nov	43.6	4	41.6
Dec	44.5	5	43.6
		P	44.2
		1	49.4

Stem Dry Wt. (g)

Mon		Plot	
Sep	1.80	2	2.20
Oct	3.13	4	2.21
Nov	3.27	3	2.37
Dec	3.48	5	2.51
		1	3.53
		P	4.47

Total Root Dry Wt. (g)

Mon		Plot	
Sep	1.32	4	2.49
Oct	3.01	5	2.80
Nov	4.45	1	3.02
Dec	4.64	3	3.06
		2	3.22
		P	5.35

Lateral Root Dry Weight (g)

Mon		Plot	
Sep	0.32	4	0.57
Oct	0.74	5	0.66
Nov	1.10	2	0.71
Dec	1.46	1	0.88
		3	0.99
		P	1.50

Tap Root Dry Wt (g)

Mon		Plot	
Sep	1.01	3	1.10
Oct	2.27	4	1.78
Nov	2.83	1	2.13
Dec	3.21	5	2.14
		2	2.17
		P	3.51

Leaf Dry Wt[2] (g)

Plot	
3	1.48
4	1.51
5	1.52
2	1.53
1	2.30
P	2.38

Leaf % K

Mon		Plot	
Sep	0.80	P	0.57
Oct	0.96	3	0.92
Nov	0.90	2	0.93
		5	0.95
		1	0.96
		4	1.00

Leaf % Mg

Plot	
P	0.23
1	0.25
2	0.26
3	0.29
4	0.29
5	0.31

1/ P = Production Seedlings

2/ No leaves in December

Table 7.--Matrix of simple correlations (r) relating sweetgum seedling variables with each other for the months of September, October, November, and December 1981.

	Total Root % Starch	Ht.	Cal.	Stem	TAP	LAT	TRDW
Tot. Root % Starch	1.00	.06	.21	.15	.35	.15	.31
Height (Ht)		1.00	.59	.77	.56	.39	.47
Caliper (Cal)			1.00	.81	.83	.73	.75
Stem Dry Wt.				1.00	.84	.74	.77
Tap Root Dry Wt. (TAP)					1.00	.83	.92
Lateral Root Dry Wt. (LAT)						1.00	.82
Total Root Dry Wt. (TRDW)							1.00

Table 8.--Percent increases in plot height between initial plot height means and the means of the harvest height measurements of the same 32 seedlings sampled between September and December.

Plot	Initial Ht. Means (Aug)	Harvest Ht. Means (Sept to Dec)	% Change between initial Ht. & Harvest Ht
1	31.5 cm	49.4 cm	+57% (17.9 cm)
2	26.0	37.8	+45% (11.8 cm)
3	28.9	35.4	+22% (6.5 cm)
4	25.3	41.6	+64% (16.3 cm)
5	30.4	43.6	+43% (13.2 cm)
P*	41.2	44.2	+ 7% (3.0 cm)

* P = Production Seedlings

sider, that in a predictive sense only 0.4 and 4 percent of the variation in total percent root starch could be explained by caliper or average total height alone, respectively.

The low correlation between height growth and starch content can be seen by subtracting the initial plot height means in August from the mean of the harvest height measurements of the same 32 seedlings sampled between September and December. The percent increase in height gives an indication of how much the seedlings in each plot grew (Table 8). The production seedlings changed the least in height. The percent changes in mean height for plots 1 and 4 were the largest.

The fact that root starch content is not strongly correlated with any of the other factors such as height, caliper, or dry weight brings into question the possible use of starch as one measure of dormancy. However, the rather consistent and individual way in which the seedlings in each plot appeared to store starch would indicate that the plot locations were under different environmental conditions such as might be caused by a soil moisture gradient between seedling beds. High soil moisture is a soil management problem in this part of the nursery.

Based on observation of decreasing leaf dry weight over time per plot, the seedlings approached the seasonal dormancy period split roughly into two groups on the basis of leaf fall. Plot 1 and the production seedlings retained their leaves longer and had the lowest root percent starch contents between September and November. Those seedlings that retained their leaves tended to store less starch. This result certainly fits the concept of starch accumulation in hardwoods as outlined by Levitt (1972) - carbohydrate accumulation that takes place long before the hardening period, mostly in the form of starch, with a starch to sugar conversion after hardening off.

These results certainly support the idea that seedlings of similar appearance as measured by height and caliper are not the same internally. The production seedlings barely grew at all in height during the September to December period and maintained a relatively low constant total root percent starch (Figure 2). The seedlings in plot 1 continued to grow, retained their leaves longer (Table 8), and failed to accumulate a high amount of starch early in the fall. A sharp rise in starch content late in the growing season (October) may indicate that the dormancy mechanisms have been set in motion. However, the magnitude of the change may not be as important as the beginning starch level in early fall and the month in which the starch content peaks. The starch to sugar conversion is also important since it represents a shift in physiological condition. Knowing the level of the starch peak and when it occurs may give some indication of how well the seedling will tolerate cold storage and grow after outplanting. Unfortunately, no judgement can be made at this point as to what such diverse physiological differences among dormant seedlings may mean.

CONCLUSIONS

Sweetgum seedlings are capable of storing widely differing amounts of starch at any time during the fall or early winter under what could be considered similar growing conditions. In general, the greatest single increases in root starch content in each plot occurred between September and October. After that early increase the month to month shifts in starch content were less dramatic. These data suggest how critical that short time period in the fall may be to producing seedlings of a desired physiological quality in coastal South Carolina.

LITERATURE CITED

Dickson, W. J.
(ed). 1975. Biomedical Computer Programs, Univ. of California Press. Berkeley, Ca.

Farmer, R. E., Jr.
1975. Dormancy and root regeneration of northern red oak. Can. Jour. Forest Res. 5:176-185.

Gilmore, A. R.
1961. The carbohydrate reserves of loblolly pine (Pinus taeda L.) roots in relation to early survival of outplanted seedlings. D. F. Thesis, Duke University, Durham, N. C.

Haissig, B. E. and R. E. Dickson.
1979. Starch measurement in plant tissue using enzymatic hydrolysis. Physiol. Plant. 47:151-157.

Hellmers, H.
1962. Physiological changes in stored pine seedlings. Tree Planters Notes 53:9-10.

Kreuger, K. W. and J. M. Trappe.
1967. Food reserves and seasonal growth of Douglas Fir seedlings. For. Sci. 13:192-20

Leaf, A. L., P. Rathakette, and F. M. Solan.
1978. Nursery seedling quality in relation plantation performance. Symposium on root form of planted trees, Victoria, B. C. Cana May 16-19, 1978.

Levitt, J.
1972. Responses of plants to environmental stresses. Academic Press, Inc., N. Y. 697

Nelson, E. A. and R. E. Dickson.
1981. Accumulation of food reserves in cottonwood stems during dormancy induction. Can. J. For. Res. 11:145-154.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The authors would like to express thanks Mr. Henry Barbour, Dr. Eric Nelson, Mr. J Martin, Mr. Tom Blush for helping to review t paper. Special thanks are given to Mr. P Dunham for his review of the statistics and Ms. Colleen Knight and Mrs. Patricia LaBran for all of their typing and patience.

THE EFFECT OF PHOTOPERIOD DURING COLD STORAGE ON THE SURVIVAL AND GROWTH OF LOBLOLLY PINE SEEDLINGS[1]

Jon D. Johnson[2]

Abstract.--Operational cold storage of pine seedlings is widely used throughout the South. The cold storage environment is extremely artificial and is known to reduce the survival and growth of seedlings when compared to the survival and growth of freshly lifted seedlings. The objective of this study was to assess the effect of photoperiod during cold storage of loblolly pine seedlings. Seedlings packaged in either Virginia Division of Forestry seedling bales or modified Kraft-polyethylene bags were exposed to a photoperiod of 0 hour, 8 hour or 16 hours during cold storage at 2°C. After two months of storage, the bulk of the seedlings were outplanted on a converted pine-hardwood site in the Piedmont of southern Virginia. Excess seedlings from each treatment were potted and grown in a greenhouse for intensive measurements. The seedlings were sampled for survival and bud activity during the first two months after planting, and for survival and total height after the growing season. Survival in the field and greenhouse studies appeared to be controlled by seedling hydration during storage. The photoperiod treatments accelerated bud activity with the longer photoperiods causing faster bud break. This accelerated bud activity was manifested in taller seedlings at the end of the growing season. The data suggest that the seedling response was not due to additional photosynthesis during storage, but due to a photoperiodic effect on changes in endogenous growth regulators.

INTRODUCTION

The planting of southern pines customarily began in late November and progressed to the first of March. Early research indicated that seedlings lifted and planted during this period had the highest survival (Dierauf, 1973; Wakeley, 1954). As the area of annually reforested lands in the South increased, the planting season had to be extended. This extension was accomplished by the introduction of low temperature storage for the lifted seedlings (Miller, 1980; Willston, 1974). Nearly all of the southern pines planted today pass through cold storage, at least temporarily.

Vigor of stored seedlings varies with date of lifting, i.e. degree of dormancy, storage temperature and duration in storage. Dormancy, depending on the definition used, may or may not truly occur in southern pines (Perry, 1971a). Regardless of this problem, research substantiates that seedlings lifted too early in the fall or too late in the winter exhibit poor storage life and low survival when planted immediately. Ideal storage temperature for southern pines is slightly above freezing at 2°C (Williston, 1974). Temperature deviation of several degrees in either direction will decrease storage life and survival (Miller, 1980). The duration of cold storage should be minimized. The best survival and performance usually occur in seedlings which are immediately planted after lifting (Dierauf and Marler, 1979). Dierauf (1973) reported that loblolly seedlings could be stored for up to three and a half months without a reduction in survival providing that the seedlings were dormant when placed into storage. Some northern species remain in storage for six months prior to planting (Miller, 1980).

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Assistant Professor of Tree Physiology, Department of Forestry, Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University, Blacksburg, Virginia.

Cold storage as practiced today represents an artificial environment in comparison to the natural, field environment. Light is totally excluded and temperature is fairly constant around both the shoot and roots. Under field conditions, seedlings are exposed to light and there is usually a temperature difference between the roots and shoots. Most importantly, the roots are warmer than the shoots and the shoots are exposed to sunlight.

Measurement of dry weight accumulation and photosynthesis during the winter months suggests that these months are important to the physiological well-being of seedlings. Bradbury and Malcolm (1978) found that dry weight of Sitka spruce (Picea sitchensis) seedlings doubled between late September and mid-April in southern Scotland. They further reported that the dry weight increase was similar in the roots and shoots until mid-January after which proportionally more dry weight accumulated in the needles. Perry (1971b) observed similar dry weight increases in loblolly pine (Pinus taeda) and sweetgum (Liquidambar styraciflua). Between December 20 and April 1, sweetgum increased dry weight by 42 percent and loblolly pine increased by 62 percent even though night temperatures were frequently below -5°C. It is known that trees will photosynthesize during the winter which is probably responsible for the observed dry weight increases. Strain et al. (1976) observed photosynthetic rates in loblolly pine seedlings of between 8 and 11 mg CO_2 g^{-1} h^{-1} at 5°C under controlled environment. Correlative field measurements in this same study indicated net photosynthetic rates of 1.5 mg CO_2 dm^{-2} h^{-1} at 600 μE m^{-2} s^{-1} and 3.0 mg CO_2 dm^{-2} h^{-1} at 2200 μE m^{-2} s^{-1} while the air temperature ranged from 5° to -10°C. The artificial environment of cold storage may have an adverse effect on seedling physiology during storage and this may carry over after outplanting.

Stored seedlings exhibit dry weight losses proportional to duration in storage. Wilner and Vaartaja (1958) observed weight losses of four deciduous species to range from 3.3 percent to 7.2 percent during cellar storage. In a review by Aldhous (1964), weight loss during cold storage was reported to be between one and two percent and very seldomly three percent after several months' storage. He concluded that survival was best when weight loss was minimized. In more recent research, Buckley and Lovell (1974) reported a 41 percent decrease in dry weight of Sitka spruce seedlings stored for 20 weeks. Analyzing weight changes in roots and shoots, they found that root dry weight decreased only 17 percent in 20 weeks of storage whereas shoot dry weight decreased 48 percent. They concluded that main and lateral shoot needles were most adversely affected by storage. Red pine and white spruce showed about a 4 percent dry weight decrease during 100 days of cold storage (van den Driessche, 1979). Furthermore, dry weight reduction rate was found to be related to respiration rate during storage. Three-year-old Scots pine lost only 3 percent dry weight after six months of storage when sealed in plastic bags, but seedlings in unsealed containers had higher rates of loss (Langstrom, 1971 cited in van den Driessch 1979).

The effect of photoperiod on seedlings during cold storage has received very little attention in the literature. Deffenbacher and Wright (1954) noted that there was evidence that light retards molds which grow on seedlings stored in the dark. Lavender and Wareing (1972) concluded that the deleterious effects of dark storage, i.e. poor root regeneration, could be greatly reduced by a daily exposure to several hours of low light intensity illumination. Additionally, they felt that this light effect was not attributable to photosynthesis, but to a more favorable hormone balance, specifically gibberellins. A continuatio of this research was reported by Lavender (1978). Bud activity of Douglas-fir seedlings was monitore after cold storage under 0, 8 and 16 hour photoperiod. Plants maintained at low temperatures were found to resume active growth more rapidly when exposed to a long daily photoperiod. Unfortunately, he did not sample dry weights or any other physiological parameter which could have provided an understanding of the response.

The purpose of this study was to assess the effect of photoperiod during cold storage of loblolly pine on seedling survival and growth.

METHODS AND MATERIALS

Seedlings of Pinus taeda were machine lifted in mid-December, 1981 from the Virginia Division of Forestry (VDF), New Kent Forestry Center Nursery packaged, and placed into 2°C cold storage. On January 4, 1982, three light treatments were imposed during cold storage: 1) Control, no light; 2) 8 hour photoperiod under four-40 Watt Gro-lux fluorescent lamps, photosynthetic photon flux density of 150 μE m^{-2} s^{-1} ; and 3) 16 hour photoperiod under same light as in 2). Two VDF seedling bales (1000 seedlings per bale) per treatment were used to account for variation among bales (Tom Dierauf, personal communication). Additionally, at the time the photoperiod treatments were imposed 800 seedlings per light treatment were packaged in a modified Kraft-polyethylene bag to test packaging effects; the bags were cut in half and the bags were placed upright to expose the shoots. Storage lasted for two months.

The seedlings were sampled before and after storage for root, stem and needle biomass (dry ight), and root collar diameter. Height was t measured initially because all seedlings re fairly uniform in size due to top clipping ractices in the nursery.

After storage, the bulk of the seedlings re outplanted at the Reynolds Homestead Research nter, Critz, Virginia. The study employed a andomized split-block design. Four blocks of /4 acre each were planted at a 4' x 4' spacing. ne hundred seedlings per treatment of six treat-nts were planted on each block. To account for riability among VDF bales, seedlings from ifferent bales were planted separately.

Mortality and bud activity (see description low) were measured monthly for the first two nths in the field. First year mortality was asured in late September.

To further quantify differences in growth mong treatments, 10 seedlings per treatment and seedlings lifted from the seedbed when the her seedlings came out of storage (fresh lifted) re potted and grown in a greenhouse. Intensive asurements were made of the bud activity during e first two months after planting. The bud tivity of the seedlings was assessed weekly fter planting using the following numerical ating system: 0 - no bud activity; 1 - bud swelling; 2 - stem elongation beginning; and 3 - continued stem elongation and elongation of needle primordia. After the seedlings had set a winter bud (October 1), they were measured for dry weight, root collar diameter and total height.

RESULTS

Cold Storage

The dry weight changes in the roots, stems and needles during cold storage are presented in Figure 1. There were no consistent trends in the dry weight changes with photoperiod treatment. However, the dry weights of seedlings in the VDF bales in the 8 and 16 hour photoperiod exhibited increases during storage. The fresh-lifted seedlings showed dry weight increases in root and stem tissue, and a decrease in the needles. Total dry weight increase of the fresh-lifted seedlings was four percent.

During planting of both studies, two seedling packages were observed to have dried during storage. One VDF bale in the 8 hour photoperiod treatment and the 16 hour bag treatment had dried to the point where the kaolin clay-dip on the roots had become powdery. This low water content during storage was manifested in lower survival and bud activity.

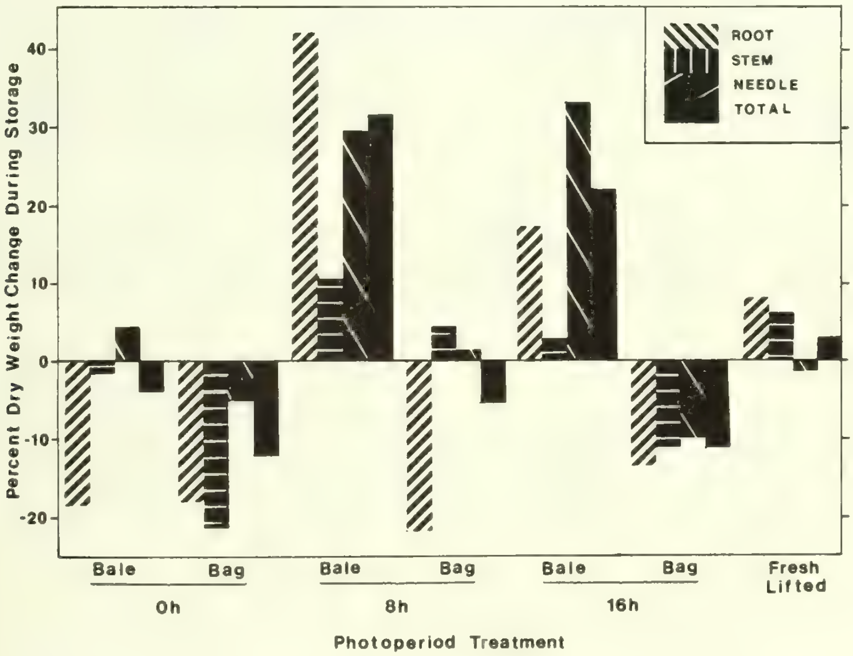


Figure 1. The percent dry weight changes in the root, stem, needle and total of loblolly pine seedlings stored for two months at 2°C. The seedlings were treated to different photoperiods and packaging in cold storage.

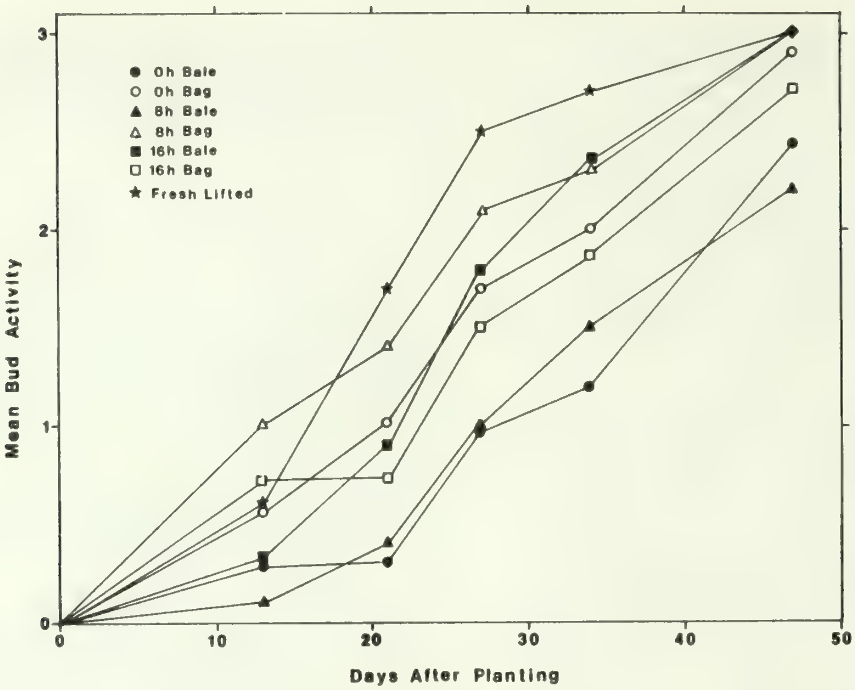


Figure 2. The mean bud activity of loblolly pine seedlings grown in a greenhouse. The bud activity stages are: 0-no activity; 1-bud swelling; 2-stem elongation; 3-continued stem elongation and elongation of needles.

Greenhouse Study

Seedling survival in this study was high, as expected. Four of the seven treatments exhibited 100 percent survival. Bale 0 hour and 8 hour had 90 percent survival, and bag 16 hour had 70 percent survival. This mortality is reflective of the observation made above; however, the bale 0 hour seedlings appeared adequately hydrated when they came out of storage.

Bud activity was strongly influenced by th photoperiod treatments (fig. 2). Two weeks aft planting, the 8 hour and 16 hour bag treatment seedlings showed the most activity. A week lat the 16 hour bag seedlings stagnated and lagged behind most of the other treatments. Although fresh lifted seedlings lagged initially, they

Table 1.--The number of days to reach a mean bud activity of 1 and 2 in loblolly pine seedlings growing in a greenhouse. The seedlings were treated to different photoperiods and packaging during two months of cold storage at 2°C.

		Mean Bud Activity	
Package	Photoperiod	1.0	2.0
	(h)	Time (days)	
Bale	0	27	43
	8	27	42
	16	22	29
Bag	0	21	34
	8	13	26
	16	24	36
Fresh Lifted	-	16	23

ultimately exhibited the highest bud activity. The slowest seedlings to break bud were in the 0 hour and 8 hour bale treatments. The other treatments were intermediate in their response.

From figure 2, the number of days to achieve a mean bud activity of 1.0 and 2.0 was determined (Table 1). Whereas it took seedlings from the 8 hour bag treatment only 13 days to reach a mean bud activity of 1.0, i.e. bud swelling , both the 0 hour and 8 hour bale treatment seedlings required twice as long, 27 days, to reach the same activity. Fresh-lifted seedlings began stem elongation (bud activity of 2.0) only 23 days after planting and it took the 8 hour bag treatment seedlings an additional three days, 26 days total, to achieve the same activity. The 0 hour bale seedlings were the slowest to break bud, requiring 43 days to achieve a mean bud activity of 2.0.

The mean bud activity correlated well with mean seedling height measured six months later (fig. 3). The mean bud activity measured on April 16 and April 23 gave coefficients of determination of 0.99 and 0.88, respectively when regressed with total height. The 8 hour bale treatment, however, was an outlier and was not included in the regression. The validity of these regression equations is supported by the nearly equal intercept values, 22.12 and 22.32. The intercept values represent the mean seedling height in centimeters at the time of planting.

Field Study

Field survival of the seedlings by treatment again showed the influence of water content during storage (fig. 4). Both 8 hour bale and 16 hour bag seedlings had low survival, 67 and 64 percent respectively, after the first year in the field. All of the other treatments had comparable survival, on the order of 85 percent.

Seedling bud activity in the field was much lower than in the greenhouse study (Table 2). One month after planting, seedlings in all of the treatments had a mean bud activity of only 0.45. This indicates that roughly half of the seedlings had swollen buds. Treatment effects became evident two months after planting. As in the greenhouse study, the 8 hour bag treatment seedlings had the highest activity with a mean of 2.28. Both 0 hour and 8 hour bale treatment seedlings were low, similar to the greenhouse study. However, the 16 hour treatment seedlings had the lowest bud activity in the field with a mean of 1.72. The 16 hour bale and 0 hour bag treatment seedlings were similar in bud activity, paralleling the greenhouse study results.

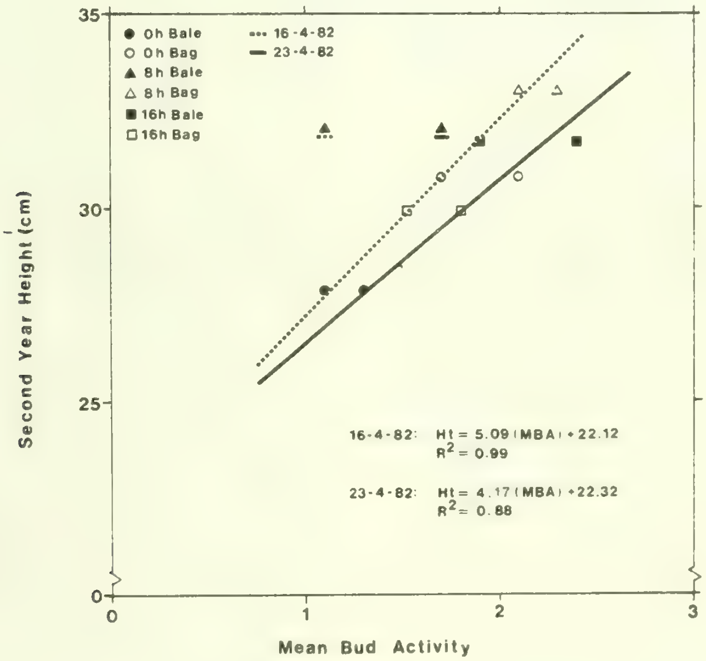


Figure 3. Second year height after growing for six months in a greenhouse as it relates to the mean bud activity measured at two times in the spring.

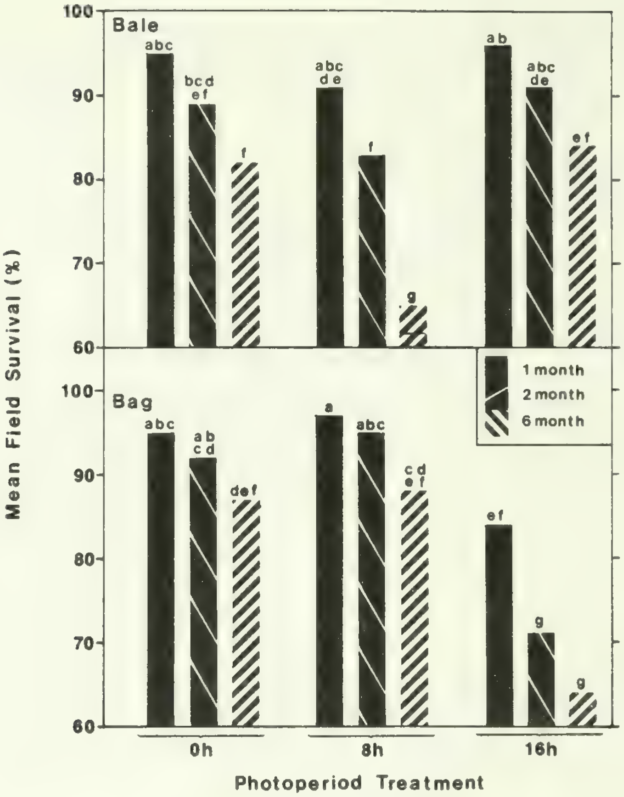


Figure 4. The mean field survival of loblolly pine seedlings after 1, 2, and 6 months by photoperiod and packaging treatment. Each mean is based on a sample of 400 seedlings. Means with the same letter are not significantly different at 95% probability level.

Table 2.--The mean bud activity of loblolly pine seedlings after one and two months in the field as affected by photoperiod and packaging during two months cold storage at 2°C. Values reported are the means ± standard error of 400 seedlings. The bud activity stages are: 0 - no activity; 1 - bud swelling; 2 - stem elongation; 3 - continued stem elongation and elongation of needles.

Package	Photoperiod	Time After Planting 1 month	2 month
	(h)		
Bale	0	0.48 ±0.02	1.82 ±0.07
	8	0.41 ±0.04	1.86 ±0.13
	16	0.43 ±0.04	2.02 ±0.09
Bag	0	0.45 ±0.04	2.03 ±0.11
	8	0.46 ±0.06	2.28 ±0.10
	16	0.43 ±0.05	1.72 ±0.12

DISCUSSION

The dry weight losses during cold storage (Table 1) were similar to those reported for red pine and white spruce (van den Driessche, 1979), Scots pine (Langstrom, 1971 cited in van den Driessche, 1979) and other forest tree seedlings (Aldhous, 1964). Buckley and Lovell (1974) reported losses of 17 percent in root dry weight and 48 percent in shoot dry weight of Sitka spruce stored for 20 weeks. In the present study with only 8 weeks of storage, root dry weight losses were consistently greater than losses in shoot dry weight.

The dry weight increase recorded for all of the tissue of the 8 hour and 16 hour bale treatment seedlings conflicts with all previous reports. The possibility exists that larger than average seedlings were sampled out of these treatments, thus biasing the mean dry weight.

The fresh-lifted seedlings exhibited only a slight increase in dry weight during two months in the seedbed. This conflicts with the paper of Bradbury and Malcolm (1978) which reported a doubling in dry weight in Sitka spruce during the winter. Likewise, Perry (1971b) reported a 62 percent increase in the dry weight of loblolly pine seedlings between December and April. It is very probable that significant dry weight increases occur primarily in early winter (December) and late Spring (March) when the environmental conditions are more suitable for photosynthesis.

Photosynthesis as a contributing factor for the observed treatment response can be safely eliminated. First, the photosynthetic photon flux density of the lights in the photoperiod treatments was less than 10 percent of full sunlight. There is a good possibility that the light compensation point for photosynthesis was not surpassed. Secondly, there were no consistent dry weight increases in the seedlings exposed to the two photoperiods which would have suggested that net photosynthesis was occurring.

With other factors being equal, it was hypothesized that the response in bud activity to photoperiod should have been: 16 hour > 8 hour > 0 hour. Likewise, it was hypothesized that the bud activity response to package treatment should have been: bag > bale, due primarily to the self-shading effect of the bale lying in the horizontal position. As indicated in figure 2 and Table 1, the order of bud activity was fresh-lifted (as expected from previous work; Dierauf and Marler, 1969) > 8 hour bag > 16 hour bale > 0 hour bag > 16 hour bag > 8 hour bale > 0 hour bale. Both the 16 hour bag and 8 hour bale were lower than expected, but this can be attributed to their excessive drying during storage. In all cases, however, bud activity was accelerated over the control, 0 hour bale, even when seedlings had dried out during storage. The large disparity between 0 hour bag and 0 hour bale seedlings may be attributed to the orientation of the seedling axes during cold storage. In the bale treatments, the seedlings were stored in a horizontal fashion, whereas the seedlings in the K-P bags were in a vertical orientation. It is well-known that orientation influences the distribution and transport of plant growth regulators (Zimmerman and Brown, 1975). For this same reason, bud activity in the field was equal for 0 hour bag and 16 hour bale (Table 2). Seedling bud activity in the field was 8 hour bag > 0 hour bag = 16 hour bale > 8 hour bale > 0 hour bale > 16 hour bag.

The results of the bud activity in the present study are supported by the work reported by Lavender (1978) with Douglas-fir. He found that the longer the photoperiod during storage, the more accelerated was bud activity. As discussed above, the accelerated bud activity was not attributed to a photosynthetic response. Lavender and Wareing (1972) concluded that the accelerated bud activity due to a photoperiod treatment was a result of changes in gibberellin (a plant growth stimulator) concentration in the buds of Douglas-fir rather than being due to photosynthesis. More recently, abscisic acid (a plant growth inhibitor) concentration in buds has been found to change seasonally in a number of species (Harrison and Saunders, 1975; Webber, et al. 1979). Growth inhibitor concentration consistently decreased prior to bud break. Additionally, abscisic acid has been demonstrated to be photosensitive, photoisomerizing to a biologically inactive isomer and even photo-oxidizing into inactive metabolites (Johnson, 1981). It may be, therefore, that the photoperiod treatments accelerate the concentration decrease of abscisic acid in the buds, allowing them to become metabolically active sooner after planting.

The use of photoperiod treatments during cold storage to accelerate bud activity can be justified only if the treatment response continues through the growing season. Under greenhouse conditions, the correlation between bud activity in the spring and final height was quite good (fig. 3). The true test, however, will come with the analysis of the field study data.

Data have been presented showing that the presence of low intensity light during cold storage of pine seedlings accelerates bud activity after planting. This accelerated bud activity is carried over the growing season resulting in taller seedlings at the end of the season. The maintenance of a favorable water status during storage is paramount to minimizing seedling mortality.

LITERATURE CITED

Aldhous, J. R.
1964. Cold-storage of forest nursery plants: An account of experiments and trials; 1954-63. For. 37:47-63.

Bradbury, I. K. and D. C. Malcolm.
1978. Dry matter accumulation by *Picea sitchensis* seedlings during winter. C. J. For. Res. 8:207-213.

Buckley, G. P. and P. H. Lovell.
1974. The effect of cold storage on subsequent growth of one-year-old seedlings of *Picea sitchensis*. Ann. Bot. 38:657-660.

Dierauf, T. A.
1973. Effect of time in cold storage on loblolly pine seedlings survival. VDF Occasional Report 43. 4 p.

Dierauf, T. A. and R. L. Marler.
1969. Loblolly pine cold-storage planting study. VDF Occasional Report 31. 10 p.

Harrison, M. A. and P. F. Saunders
1975. The abscisic acid content of dormant birch buds. Planta 123:291-298.

Johnson, J. D.
1981. Environmental and physiological control of stomates in Douglas-fir and other species. Ph.D. dissertation, Oregon State University, Corvallis, Oregon.

Lavender, D. P.
1978. Bud activity of Douglas-fir seedlings receiving different photoperiods in cold storage. *In* Proc. 5th N. Am. For. Biol. Workshop, C. A. Hollis and S. A. Squillace, eds. 245-248.

Lavender, D. P. and P. F. Wareing.
1972. Effects of daylength and chilling on the responses of Douglas-fir (*Pseudotsuga menziesii* (Mirb.) Franco) seedlings to root damage and storage. New Phytol. 71:1055-1067.

Miller, A. E.
1980. Seedling storage, handling and planting procedures. *In* Proc. N. Am. For. Tree Nurse Soils Workshop, Syracuse, N.Y. 85-110.

Perry, T. O.
1971a. Dormancy of trees in winter. Science 171:29-36.

Perry, T. O.
1971b. Winter season photosynthesis and respiration by twigs and seedlings of deciduous and evergreen trees. For. Sci. 17:41-43.

Strain, B. R., K. O. Higginbotham and J. C. Mulr
1976. Temperature preconditioning and photosynthetic capacity of *Pinus taeda* L. Photosynthetica 10:47-53.

van den Driessche, R.
1979. Respiration rate of cold-stored nursery stock. C. J. For. Res. 9:15-18.

Wakely, P. C.
1954. Planting the southern pines. USDA Agri Monogr. 18.

Webber, J. E., M. L. Laver, J. B. Zarr and D. P. Lavender.
1979. Seasonal variation of abscisic acid in the dormant shoots of Douglas-fir. Can. J. Bot. 57:534-538.

Williston, H. L.
1974. Storage of southern pine seedlings: A review. Tree planter's Notes 25:1-3.

Wilner, S. and O. Vaartaja.
1958. Prevention of injury to tree seedlings during cellar storage. For. Chron. 34:132-1

Zimmerman, M. H. and C. L. Brown.
1975. Tree Structure and Function. Springerverlog, New York, 336 p.

THE DEVELOPMENT OF ECTOMYCORRHIZAE ON CONTAINERIZED SWEET BIRCH AND EUROPEAN ALDER SEEDLINGS FOR PLANTING ON LOW-QUALITY SITES[1]

R. F. Walker, D. C. West, and S. B. McLaughlin[2]

Abstract.--A study was initiated to assess the potential of Pisolithus tinctorius as an ectomycorrhizal associate of containerized sweet birch (Betula lenta) and European alder (Alnus glutinosa) seedlings and to determine the effect of this fungal symbiont on seedling growth. In a test of sweet birch and European alder grown in Leach tubes, P. tinctorius formed abundant ectomycorrhizae on sweet birch when introduced via a vegetative mycelial inoculum. Cenococcum geophilum, originating from sclerotia present in the potting medium, and Thelephora terrestris, introduced via wind-borne propagules, formed ectomycorrhizae on the sweet birch seedlings inoculated with P. tinctorius and on the sweet birch control seedlings. C. geophilum also formed ectomycorrhizae on the inoculated and control European alder seedlings, but an inoculation with P. tinctorius did not result in the formation of P. tinctorius ectomycorrhizae on this host. Sweet birch seedlings infected with P. tinctorius had a greater dry weight, height, root collar diameter, and volume and a lower shoot/root ratio than the sweet birch control seedlings, and European alder seedlings with abundant C. geophilum ectomycorrhizae exhibited a similar improvement in growth in comparison with European alder with lesser C. geophilum infections. The inoculation of containerized sweet birch and European alder seedlings in the nursery with the appropriate ectomycorrhizal symbiont may facilitate the establishment of these species on harsh sites such as surface mine spoils.

INTRODUCTION

Formal and informal studies involving performance comparisons among tree species of potential value for the revegetation of surface-mined lands were carried out extensively in the earlier years of reclamation research (Ashby et al. 1980, Boyce and Merz 1959, Boyce and Neebe 1959, Brown 1962, Chapman 1944, Clark 1954, Czapowskyj 1970, Czapowskyj and McQuilkin 1966, DenUyl 1962, Finn 1958, Geyer 1971, Geyer 1973, Hart and Byrnes 1960, Horn and Ward 1969, Limstrom 1952, Limstrom 1960, Limstrom and Deitschman 1951, Medvick 1973, Miles et al. 1973, Plass 1975). Portions of the data generated in these studies have been used in the development of planting guides to facilitate species selection (Boyce and Neebe 1959, Limstrom 1960, Vogel 1981). Nevertheless, the revegetation of surface mine sites with forest tree species has often been discouraged in recent years due to social, political, legal, economic, or technical reasons (Smith 1980, Vogel 1979, White 1980). Many of the species with apparent potential for the revegetation of these sites have not been deployed due to deficiencies in establishment techniques which result in a poor overall performance. Two recent developments in the practice of forestry have potential for alleviating this problem: (1) the inoculation of seedlings in the nursery with a mycorrhizal fungus and (2) the use of containerized planting stock. Survival and growth on adverse sites may be greatly enhanced by the planting of selected species of containerized seedlings with well-developed mycorrhizal root systems.

---

[1] Paper presented at the Southern ilvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, eorgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] The authors are Postdoctoral Research ellow and Research Staff Members, respectively, nvironmental Sciences Division, Oak Ridge ational Laboratory, Oak Ridge, Tennessee 7830. This research was sponsored by the iomass Energy Technology Division of the U.S. epartment of Energy under contract -7405-eng-26 with Union Carbide Corporation. ublication No. 2070, Environmental Sciences ivision, ORNL. The authors are indebted to bbott Laboratories and to the Institute for ycorrhizal Research and Development of the SDA Forest Service for their assistance. The se of trade names in this publication does not onstitute an endorsement by the Oak Ridge ational Laboratory.

There is ample evidence which suggests that some mycorrhizal fungi have a superior ability to provide benefits to their hosts under the adverse conditions prevalent on surface mine spoils. These sites are often characterized by a low pH, low nutrient status, high concentrations of toxic substances, elevated surface temperatures, and droughtiness. Many workers (Hile and Hennen 1969, Lampky and Peterson 1963, Marx 1975, Marx 1977, Medve et al. 1977, Schramm 1966) have reported the occurrence of basidiocarps of Pisolithus tinctorius (Pers.) Coker and Couch associated with several forest tree species on various mine spoils, and pine seedlings with an induced infection by P. tinctorius have been shown to exhibit survival and growth superior to that of noninoculated seedlings infected with naturally occurring fungal symbionts on many adverse sites (Berry and Marx 1978, Marx 1976, Marx 1980, Marx and Artman 1979, Walker et al. 1981). The general techniques developed for the inoculation of bare-root seedlings in the nursery with P. tinctorius (Marx 1969, Marx and Bryan 1975) have been shown to be applicable to containerized seedlings as well (Dixon et al. 1981, Goodwin 1980, Marx and Barnett 1974, Marx et al. 1982, Molina 1979, Ruehle 1980, Ruehle and Marx 1977, Ruehle et al. 1981).

Limited research has been conducted concerning the application of containerization to the reforestation of harsh sites (Davidson and Sowa 1974a, Davidson and Sowa 1974b, Goodman et al. 1977), but the results of these studies have been inconclusive. It is generally accepted that the biological advantages of planting containerized seedlings on routine sites, i.e., the planting of intact root systems with little or no loss of fine roots and the availability of a short-term external supply of nutrients and water in the rooting medium, would prove to be of even greater importance on adverse sites.

The study reported here was designed to examine the feasibility of infecting containerized sweet birch (Betula lenta L.) and European alder (Alnus glutinosa [L.] Gaertn.) seedlings with P. tinctorius for use in the revegetation of adverse sites. Sweet birch occurs naturally on a wide variety of less favorable sites with rocky, coarse-textured, o shallow soils (Brooks 1920, Frothingham 1915, Frothingham 1931, Harlow and Harrar 1969, Illick 1915, Leak 1958, Tryon 1943) and has been considered a species of potential value for purposes of soil protection and stabilization (Illick 1915). Tryon and Markus (1953) found sweet birch growing on iron ore spoil banks in West Virginia, and it has also been identified as a volunteer species on coal spoils in West Virginia (Brown and Tryon 1960) and Pennsylvania (Schramm 1966). Plass (1975) evaluated the reclamation potential of this commercially important species on a coal spoil in Kentucky and found it to exhibit excellent survival and growth after four years. Preliminary examinations of the mycorrhizal associations of sweet birch have indicated P. tinctorius to be one of its most prevalent fungal symbionts on harsh sites (Marx 1975, Schramm 1966) and this host species has proven to be extremely receptive to induced infections by P. tinctorius using a vegetative mycelial inoculum (Walker et al. 1982). European alder has long been advocated as a reclamation species in Europe (Kohnke 1941) and has gained considerable recognition in the United States for this potential (Bennett et al. 1978, Dale 1963, Funk 1973, Funk and Dale 1961, Limstrom 1960, Lowry et al. 1962, Miles et al. 1973). This species offers substantial ameliorative qualities when planted on adverse sites due to its ability to fix atmospheric nitrogen via nonleguminous root nodulation (Stewart 1967). European alder is a known host of ectomycorrhizal fungi (Trappe 1962), and D. H. Marx[3] (personal communication) has observed P. tinctorius basidiocarps associated with European alder on harsh sites in the Tennessee Copper Basin.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

The vegetative inoculum of Pisolithus tinctorius used in this study was produced by Abbott Laboratories by the method described by Marx et al. (1982).[4] It consisted of fungal mycelia grown on a vermiculite-peat moss-nutrient medium substrate such that the hyphae permeated the vermiculite particles. A sterile mixture of vermiculite and 5% peat moss by volume replaced the P. tinctorius inoculum for the production of control seedlings.

---

[3] USDA Forest Service, Institute for Mycorrhizal Research and Development, Southeastern Forest Experiment Station, Forestry Sciences Laboratory, Carlton Street, Athens, Georgia 30602.

[4] Chemical and Agricultural Research Division, Agricultural Research Center, Box 6131 RFD, Long Grove, Illinois 60047.

Sweet birch and European alder seeds from an east Tennessee source were stratified under moist conditions at 3°C for eight weeks. Germination tests revealed the germination success of the seed lots of both species to be approximately 25%. The water rinse sterilization method of R. P. Karrfalt[5] (personal communication) was used to sterilize the seeds of both species.

A 1:1 volume ratio of peat moss and horticultural grade vermiculite steam sterilized at 128°C for 40 minutes was used as the potting medium. The P. tinctorius inoculum was incorporated into the potting medium at the volume ratio of 1:15 such that an even distribution of the inoculum was assured. Single-celled Leach tube containers, 165 ml capacity, were filled with the inoculated potting medium and sown with five sweet birch or European alder seeds. Control containers were prepared in an identical manner except that a sterile mixture of vermiculite and peat moss was used in the place of the P. tinctorius inoculum. One hundred fifty containers of each host species-ectomycorrhizal treatment combination were distributed in six replicate blocks of 25 containers each. The seeds were misted for 10 minutes twice daily until germination; all containers were then thinned to one seedling each.

The seedlings were grown under greenhouse conditions from September 1979 through March 1980. The temperature in the greenhouse ranged from a maximum of 32°C during the day to a minimum of 26°C at night. The photoperiod was maintained at 16 hours using Gro & Sho® fluorescent lamps. A soluble 20-20-20 NPK fertilizer dissolved in distilled water was applied to all seedlings at the rate of approximately 45 mg/seedling at each fertilization. The fertilizer was applied every three weeks from October through March. Sequestrene® 330 Fe iron chelate was applied with the second fertilization at the rate of approximately 3.0 mg/seedling. All seedlings were watered twice weekly. The position of the seedlings within each replicate block and the position of each replicate block was changed weekly to insure that all seedlings were subjected to similar overall growth conditions.

Three months after seeding, and again after six months at the completion of the study, measurements of height and root collar diameter were made on all seedlings and an estimate of seedling volume was determined by multiplying the height of each seedling by the square of its root collar diameter (Marx et al. 1977a). Two seedlings from each of the six replicate blocks of each host species-ectomycorrhizal treatment combination were randomly selected at the termination of the study to assess their ectomycorrhizal development. The roots of these seedlings were washed free of potting medium and the percent ectomycorrhizal formation by symbiont was determined by ascertaining the total number of short roots of each root system, determining the number of short roots infected by each specific fungal symbiont, and expressing the level of infection of each symbiont as a percentage. Each symbiont was identified by the characteristic appearance of its ectomycorrhizae. These seedlings were then oven-dried at 100°C for 24 hours, the shoot and root dry weights were measured, and the shoot/root ratio was determined. The differences between the treatment means of each host species were evaluated with the t test.

RESULTS

Pisolithus tinctorius formed abundant ectomycorrhizae on the roots of the sweet birch seedlings in response to the inoculum incorporated into the potting medium prior to seeding (Table 1). None of the sweet birch control seedlings examined were infected with P. tinctorius. Naturally occurring ectomycorrhizae resulting from an infection by Cenococcum geophilum Fr. and Thelephora terrestris (Ehrh.) Fr. were found to have formed to a minor extent on the inoculated sweet birch seedlings and comprised the total ectomycorrhizal development on the sweet birch control seedlings. The isolate of P. tinctorius used in this study did not form ectomycorrhizae on the roots of the European alder seedlings. C. geophilum ectomycorrhizae formed on both the European alder inoculated with P. tinctorius and on the control seedlings, but were considerably more abundant on the inoculated seedlings.

The growth of the sweet birch seedlings was significantly increased by the infection with P. tinctorius. The total dry weight was increased 41%, and the relatively greater root weight of the seedlings with P. tinctorius resulted in a 30% reduction in the shoot/root ratio, indicating that these seedlings had a superior balance commonly desired for successful establishment in the field (Table 2). Significant differences also occurred in the growth in height and root collar diameter (Table 3). The seedlings with P. tinctorius were 13% greater in height and 30% greater in root collar diameter than the control seedlings after three months, and 21% and 19% greater in height and root collar diameter, respectively, after six months. These growth differences became even more apparent when the estimate of seedling volume was calculated. Reflecting the increased growth in both height and root collar diameter, the volume of the seedlings with P. tinctorius was 83% greater after three months and 64% greater after six months than that of the control seedlings.

---

[5] USDA Forest Service, National Tree Seed Laboratory, Route 1, Box 182B, Dry Branch, Georgia 31020.

Table 1.--The ectomycorrhizal development of containerized sweet birch and European alder seedlings inoculated with Pisolithus tinctorius and control seedlings after six months growth.

	Ectomycorrhizal Infection (%)[1]				
Treatment	Pisolithus tinctorius	Cenococcum geophilum	Thelephora terrestris	Total	Seedlings with Pisolithus tinctorius (%)
Sweet Birch					
Inoculated	27	2	3	32	100
Control	0	5	4	9	0
Level of Significance[2]	NA	**	NS	**	NA
European Alder					
Inoculated	0	22	0	22	0
Control	0	7	0	7	0
Level of Significance[2]	NA	**	NA	**	NA

[1] Each value is the mean percentage of the short roots infected by each fungal symbiont of two seedlings from each of six replications per treatment.

[2] The difference between the treatment means of each combination of host and fungal symbiont was evaluated with the t test; ** denotes that the means differ at a level of significance of $P < 0.01$; NS denotes that the means do not differ significantly ($P > 0.05$); and NA denotes that the t test is not applicable.

Similar differences in growth were exhibited by the European alder seedlings, but the superiority of the seedlings inoculated with P. tinctorius reflected the greater development of C. geophilum ectomycorrhizae rather than a benefit derived from P. tinctorius. The total dry weight of the inoculated European alder seedlings was 88% greater than that of the control seedlings while the shoot/root ratio was 17% lower (Table 2). The benefit derived by the inoculated seedlings from the higher level of infection by C. geophilum was also reflected by the enhanced growth in height and root collar diameter (Table 3). The inoculated seedlings were 50% greater in height and 30% greater in root collar diameter than the control seedlings after three months, and 27% and 19% greater in height and root collar diameter, respectively, after six months. Subsequently, the volume of these seedlings was 120% greater than that of the control seedlings after three months and 81% greater after six months.

DISCUSSION

It is apparent that the inoculation of containerized sweet birch seedlings with a vegetative mycelial inoculum of Pisolithus tinctorius will promote sufficient ectomycorrhizal development to provide these seedlings significant advantage over those grown by conventional methods. In this study, seedling weight, height, root collar diameter, and volume were significantly increased and the shoot/root ratio improved by the infection with this fungal symbiont in comparison with seedlings infected by naturally occurring ectomycorrhizal species. The adaptability of sweet birch and P. tinctorius to poor substrates, and the ability of P. tinctorius to form abundant ectomycorrhizae on this host which substantially increase its growth, suggest that this combination of host and symbiont has considerable potential for use in the reforestation of poor sites. This potential may be considerably enhanced by the additional advantages provided by containerization. It is probable that the only significant modification of standard nursery practices required for the successful infection of sweet birch by P. tinctorius other than the incorporation of the inoculum into a sterile potting medium is a reduction in the rate of fertilization, as high fertility has been demonstrated to retard the development of P. tinctorius ectomycorrhizae (Marx et al. 1977b, Ruehle 1980, Walker et al. 1982). It may be possible to achieve a higher level of infection of sweet birch with this symbiont by

Table 2.--The dry weights of containerized sweet birch and European alder seedlings inoculated with Pisolithus tinctorius and control seedlings after six months growth.[1]

Treatment	Dry Weight (g) Shoot	Dry Weight (g) Root	Dry Weight (g) Total	Shoot/Root Ratio
Sweet Birch				
Inoculated	2.6	1.9	4.5	1.4
Control	2.1	1.1	3.2	2.0
Level of Significance[2]	*	**	**	**
European Alder				
Inoculated	1.6	1.6	3.2	1.0
Control	0.9	0.8	1.7	1.2
Level of Significance[2]	**	**	**	*

[1] Each value is the mean of two seedlings from each of six replications per treatment.

[2] The differences between the treatment means of each host were evaluated with the t test; * and ** denote that the means differ at a level of significance of $0.01 < P < 0.05$ and $P < 0.01$, respectively.

further reducing the rate of fertilization used in this study. Seedlings produced in this manner would not require the greenhouse growth period of six months used here to attain a size suitable for outplanting; four to five months would allow adequate growth to insure a favorable performance in the field.

It is probable that the development of Cenococcum geophilum ectomycorrhizae on the roots of the inoculated and control sweet birch seedlings in this study resulted from the presence of sclerotia in the peat moss portion of the potting medium, as this fungal symbiont ordinarily lacks the capacity to colonize new substrates via wind-borne propagules. The failure of the steam sterilization treatment to destroy the viability of these sclerotia can probably be attributed to a failure to adequately moisten the potting medium prior to sterilization, a factor compounded by an attempt to sterilize the potting medium in bulk quantities. The presence of Thelephora terrestris ectomycorrhizae on the roots of these seedlings resulted from the deposition of wind-borne propagules in the potting medium which originated in the pine stands that surround the greenhouse in which this study was conducted. Because P. tinctorius introduced in an inoculum has a demonstrated competitive advantage over T. terrestris occurring naturally when substrate nutrient levels are sufficiently low (Walker et al. 1982), the manipulation of this growth factor renders the possibility of competition resulting in a substantial reduction in the development of P. tinctorius ectomycorrhizae remote,

Table 3.--The growth of containerized sweet birch and European alder seedlings inoculated with Pisolithus tinctorius and control seedlings after three and six months.[1]

Treatment	Three Months Height (cm)	Three Months Root Collar Dia (mm)	Three Months Volume (cm^3)	Six Months Height (cm)	Six Months Root Collar Dia (mm)	Six Months Volume (cm^3)
Sweet Birch						
Inoculated	29.4	2.6	2.2	51.3	5.1	13.3
Control	26.0	2.0	1.2	42.5	4.3	8.1
Level of Significance[2]	**	**	**	**	**	**
European Alder						
Inoculated	15.7	2.6	1.1	24.0	5.1	6.7
Control	10.5	2.0	0.5	18.9	4.3	3.7
Level of Significance[2]	**	**	**	**	**	**

[1] Each value is the mean of six replications of 25 seedlings each per treatment.

[2] The differences between the treatment means of each host were evaluated with the t test; ** denotes that the means differ at a level of significance of $P < 0.01$.

particularly when the potting medium is adequately sterilized prior to the incorporation of the *P. tinctorius* inoculum.

The superior performance of the European alder seedlings inoculated with *P. tinctorius* in comparison with the control seedlings can not be attributed to this fungal symbiont, as the isolate of *P. tinctorius* used in this study did not form ectomycorrhizae on any of the European alder seedlings examined. It is probable that *P. tinctorius* is physiologically incompatible with European alder, given past failures at inducing a symbiotic association involving this fungus and host (Molina 1981, Walker et al. 1982), and any attempt to effect such a relationship using routine methods of inoculation will prove unsuccessful. It can be concluded that the higher level of infection by *C. geophilum* is the factor accountable for the improved growth of the inoculated seedlings. *C. geophilum* is a known ectomycorrhizal symbiont of European alder (Trappe 1962) and offers the additional advantage of being adaptable to a broad range of adverse growing conditions, including drought and high substrate temperatures (Trappe 1977). As the potential of European alder as a reclamation species on adverse sites is partially compromised by its intolerance of drought (Vogel 1981, Walker et al. 1982), the inoculation of this host with *C. geophilum* prior to outplanting may prove to be a valuable technique to insure an acceptable seedling performance during extended dry periods, given the ability of an ectomycorrhizal association to facilitate the absorption of water by the host (Bowen 1973, Dixon et al. 1980, Duddridge et al. 1980, Goss 1960, Theodorou and Bowen 1970, Walker et al. 1982). The significantly greater development of *C. geophilum* ectomycorrhizae on the roots of the European alder seedlings inoculated with *P. tinctorius* in comparison with the control seedlings can probably be attributed to residual nutrients in the *P. tinctorius* inoculum which stimulated the growth of *C. geophilum* in excess of that which occurred in the absence of these nutrients. For both the inoculated and the control seedlings, the origin of the *C. geophilum* infection was the sclerotia present in the peat moss portion of the potting medium, as discussed above.

The final and most important consideration in evaluating the potential benefits of an induced mycorrhizal association is the performance in the field of inoculated seedlings in comparison with noninoculated controls. As the benefits provided the host by an ectomycorrhizal infection are often most pronounced under poor growing conditions, outplantings on adverse sites are most pertinent for making these comparisons. The feasibility of implementing procedures to inoculate containerized sweet birch and European alder seedlings with an appropriate ectomycorrhizal symbiont will be dependent upon the conclusions drawn from such studies. The results of this study indicate that the inoculation of containerized sweet birch with *P. tinctorius* offers a viable meth of producing superior seedlings for outplanti on harsh substrates. This potential is augmented by the availability of commercial *P. tinctorius* inoculums (Marx and Kenney 1982, Marx et al. 1982). There is also some indication that the inoculation of containerized European alder with *C. geophilum* may provide this species with substantial advantages upon outplanting, but the enthusiasm for this combination of host and symbiont is tempered the lack of a readily available source of inoculum, and *C. geophilum* is known for its slow growth in pure culture (Marx and Kenney 1982). Also, a recent attempt by Molina (198 to induce an ectomycorrhizal association between *C. geophilum* and European alder using pure culture techniques proved unsuccessful, indicating a need for further investigation into the ectomycorrhizal specificity of this host before large scale inoculations become feasible. Continuing efforts to improve upon the methods of producing these seedlings and evaluate their performance on adverse sites a currently in progress.

LITERATURE CITED

Ashby, W. C., C. A. Kolar, and N. F. Rogers.
1980. Results of 30-year-old plantations o surface mines in the central states. IN Trees for Reclamation Symposium Proceedings, Lexington, KY, October 27-29 p. 99-107. USDA Forest Serv., Northeast. Forest Exp. Stn. Gen. Tech. Rep. NE-61. 135 p.

Bennett, O. L., E. L. Mathias, W. H. Armiger, and J. N. Jones, Jr.
1978. Plant materials and their requirement for growth in humid regions. IN Schaller F. W., and P. Sutton (eds.), Reclamation Drastically Disturbed Lands, p. 285-306. American Society of Agronomy, Madison, WI. 742 p.

Berry, C. R., and D. H. Marx.
1978. Effects of *Pisolithus tinctorius* ectomycorrhizae on growth of loblolly and Virginia pines in the Tennessee Copper Basin. USDA Forest Serv., Southeast. Forest Exp. Stn. Res. Note SE-264. 6 p.

Bowen, G. D.
1973. Mineral nutrition of ectomycorrhizae. IN Marks, G. C., and T. T. Kozlowski (eds. Ectomycorrhizae: Their Ecology and Physiology, p. 151-205. Academic Press, New York, NY. 444 p.

Boyce, S. G., and R. W. Merz.
1959. Tree species recommended for strip-mine plantations in western Kentucky. USD Forest Serv., Cent. States Forest Exp. Stn Tech. Pap. 160. 12 p.

Boyce, S. G., and D. J. Neebe.
1959. Trees for planting on strip-mined lan in Illinois. USDA Forest Serv., Cent. Sta Forest Exp. Stn. Tech. Pap. 164. 33 p.

Brooks, A. B.
1920. West Virginia trees. West Virginia Univ. Agric. Exp. Stn. Bull. 175. 242 p.

Brown, J. H.
1962. Success of tree planting on strip-mined areas in West Virginia. West Virginia Univ. Agric. Exp. Stn. Bull. 473. 35 p.

Brown, J. H., and E. H. Tryon.
1960. Establishment of seeded black locust on spoil banks. West Virginia Univ. Agric. Exp. Stn. Bull. 440. 34 p.

Chapman, A. G.
1944. Forest planting on strip-mined coal lands with special reference to Ohio. USDA Forest Serv., Cent. States Forest Exp. Stn. Tech. Pap. 104. 25 p.

Clark, F. B.
1954. Forest planting on strip-mined land in Kansas, Missouri, and Oklahoma. USDA Forest Serv., Cent. States Forest Exp. Stn. Tech. Pap. 141. 33 p.

Czapowskyj, M. M.
1970. Experimental planting of 14 tree species on Pennsylvania's anthracite strip-mine spoils. USDA Forest Serv., Northeast. Forest Exp. Stn. Res. Pap. NE-155. 18 p.

Czapowskyj, M. M., and W. E. McQuilkin.
1966. Survival and early growth of planted forest trees on strip-mine spoils in the anthracite region. USDA Forest Serv., Northeast. Forest Exp. Stn. Res. Pap. NE-46. 29 p.

Dale, M. E.
1963. Interplant alder to increase growth in strip-mine plantations. USDA Forest Serv., Cent. States Forest Exp. Stn. Res. Note CS-14. 4 p.

Davidson, W. H., and E. A. Sowa.
1974a. Container-grown seedlings show potential for afforestation of Pennsylvania coal-mine spoils. Tree Planters' Notes 25:6-9.

Davidson, W. H., and E. A. Sowa.
1974b. Early attempts to vegetate coal-mine spoils with container-grown seedlings. IN Tinus, R. W., W. I. Stein, and W. E. Balmer (eds.), Proceedings of the North American Containerized Forest Tree Seedling Symposium, Denver, CO, August 26-29, p. 372-376. Great Plains Agric. Counc. Publ. 68. 458 p.

DenUyl, D.
1962. Survival and growth of hardwood plantations on strip mine spoil banks of Indiana. J. For. 60:603-606.

Dixon, R. K., G. M. Wright, G. T. Behrns, R. O. Teskey, and T. M. Hinckley.
1980. Water deficits and root growth of ectomycorrhizal white oak seedlings. Can. J. Forest Res. 10:545-548.

Dixon, R. K., G. M. Wright, H. E. Garrett, G. S. Cox, P. S. Johnson, and I. L. Sander.
1981. Container- and nursery-grown black oak seedlings inoculated with *Pisolithus tinctorius*: growth and ectomycorrhizal development during seedling production period. Can. J. Forest Res. 11:487-491.

Duddridge, J. A., A. Malibari, and D. J. Read.
1980. Structure and function of mycorrhizal rhizomorphs with special reference to their role in water transport. Nature 287:834-836.

Finn, R. F.
1958. Ten years of strip-mine forestation research in Ohio. USDA Forest Serv., Cent. States Forest Exp. Stn. Tech. Pap. 153. 38 p.

Frothingham, E. H.
1915. The northern hardwood forest: its composition, growth, and management. USDA Bull. 285. 80 p.

Frothingham, E. H.
1931. Timber growing and logging practice in the southern Appalachian region. USDA Tech. Bull. 250. 93 p.

Funk, D. T.
1973. Growth and development of alder plantings on Ohio strip-mine banks. IN Hutnik, R. J., and G. Davis (eds.), Ecology and Reclamation of Devastated Land, Vol. 1, p. 483-491. Gordon and Breach, New York, NY. 538 p.

Funk, D. T., and M. E. Dale.
1961. European alder: a promising tree for strip-mine planting. USDA Forest Serv., Cent. States Forest Exp. Stn. Note 151. 2 p.

Geyer, W. A.
1971. Reforesting Kansas coal spoils. Kansas State Univ. Agric. Exp. Stn. Circ. 399. 9 p.

Geyer, W. A.
1973. Tree species performance on Kansas coal spoils. IN Hutnik, R. J., and G. Davis (eds.), Ecology and Reclamation of Devastated Land, Vol. 2, p. 81-90. Gordon and Breach, New York, NY. 504 p.

Goodman, S. D., T. F. Koppe, and R. J. Hutnik.
1977. Revegetation of strip-mine spoils with containerized tree seedlings. IN Fifth Symposium on Surface Mining and Reclamation, Louisville, KY, October 18-20, p. 16-19. National Coal Association, Washington, D.C. 319 p.

Goodwin, O. C.
1980. Survival and growth of containerized loblolly and Virginia pine seedlings colonized with *Pisolithus tinctorius* on a borrow site in North Carolina. North Carolina Div. Forest Resour. For. Note 44. 5 p.

Goss, R. W.
1960. Mycorrhizae of ponderosa pine in Nebraska grassland soils. Univ. Nebraska Agric. Exp. Stn. Res. Bull. 192. 47 p.

Harlow, W. M., and E. S. Harrar.
1969. Textbook of dendrology. 5th ed. McGraw-Hill, New York, NY. 512 p.

Hart, G., and W. R. Byrnes.
1960. Trees for strip-mined lands. USDA Forest Serv., Northeast. Forest Exp. Stn. Pap. 136. 36 p.

Hile, N., and J. F. Hennen.
1969. In vitro culture of *Pisolithus tinctorius* mycelium. Mycologia 61:195-198.

Horn, M. L., and W. W. Ward.
1969. The revegetation of highly acid spoil banks in the bituminous coal region of Pennsylvania. Pennsylvania State Univ. Spec. Res. Rep. SR-71. 65 p.

Illick, J. S.
1915. Pennsylvania trees. Pennsylvania Dep. For. Bull. 11. 232 p.

Kohnke, H.
1941. The black alder as a pioneer tree on sand dunes and eroded land. J. For. 39:333-334.

Lampky, J. R., and J. E. Peterson.
1963. *Pisolithus tinctorius* associated with pines in Missouri. Mycologia 55:675-678.

Leak, W. B.
1958. Silvical characteristics of sweet birch. USDA Forest Serv., Northeast. Forest Exp. Stn. Pap. 113. 14 p.

Limstrom, G. A.
1952. Effects of grading strip-mined lands on the early survival and growth of planted trees. USDA Forest Serv., Cent. States Forest Exp. Stn. Tech. Pap. 130. 35 p.

Limstrom, G. A.
1960. Forestation of strip-mined land in the central states. USDA Handb. 166. 74 p.

Limstrom, G. A., and G. H. Deitschman.
1951. Reclaiming Illinois strip coal lands by forest planting. Univ. Illinois Agric. Exp. Stn. Bull. 547. 55 p.

Lowry, G. L., F. C. Brokaw, and C. H. J. Breeding.
1962. Alder for reforesting coal spoils in Ohio. J. For. 60:196-199.

Marx, D. H.
1969. The influence of ectotrophic mycorrhizal fungi on the resistance of pine roots to pathogenic infections. I. Antagonism of mycorrhizal fungi to root pathogenic fungi and soil bacteria. Phytopathology 59:153-163.

Marx, D. H.
1975. Mycorrhizae and establishment of trees on strip-mined land. Ohio J. Sci. 75:288-297.

Marx, D. H.
1976. Use of specific mycorrhizal fungi on tree roots for forestation of disturbed lands. IN Utz, K. A. (ed.), Proceedings of the Conference on Forestation of Disturbed Surface Areas, Birmingham, AL, April 14-15, p. 47-65. USDA Forest Serv., Southeast. Area State Priv. For. 76 p.

Marx, D. H.
1977. Tree host range and world distribution of the ectomycorrhizal fungus *Pisolithus tinctorius*. Can. J. Microbiol. 23:217-223.

Marx, D. H.
1980. Role of mycorrhizae in forestation of surface mines. IN Trees for Reclamation Symposium Proceedings, Lexington, KY, October 27-29, p. 109-116. USDA Forest Serv., Northeast. Forest Exp. Stn. Gen. Tech. Rep. NE-61. 135 p.

Marx, D. H., and J. D. Artman.
1979. *Pisolithus tinctorius* ectomycorrhizae improve survival and growth of pine seedlings on acid coal spoils in Kentucky and Virginia. Reclam. Rev. 2:23-31.

Marx, D. H., and J. P. Barnett.
1974. Mycorrhizae and containerized forest tree seedlings. IN Tinus, R. W., W. I. Stein, and W. E. Balmer (eds.), Proceedings of the North American Containerized Forest Tree Seedling Symposium, Denver, CO, August 26-29, p. 85-92. Great Plains Agric. Counc. Publ. 68. 458 p.

Marx, D. H., and W. C. Bryan.
1975. Growth and ectomycorrhizal developmen of loblolly pine seedlings in fumigated soil infested with the fungal symbiont *Pisolithus tinctorius*. Forest Sci. 21:245-254.

Marx, D. H., W. C. Bryan, and C. E. Cordell.
1977a. Survival and growth of pine seedling with *Pisolithus* ectomycorrhizae after two years on reforestation sites in North Carolina and Florida. Forest Sci. 23:363-373.

Marx, D. H., A. B. Hatch, and J. F. Mendicino.
1977b. High soil fertility decreases sucros content and susceptibility of loblolly pin roots to ectomycorrhizal infection by *Pisolithus tinctorius*. Can. J. Bot. 55:1569-1574.

Marx, D. H., and D. S. Kenney.
1982. Production of ectomycorrhizal fungus inoculum. IN Schenck, N. C. (ed.), Method and Principles of Mycorrhizal Research, p. 131-146. American Phytopathological Society, St. Paul, MN. 244 p.

Marx, D. H., J. L. Ruehle, D. S. Kenney, C. E. Cordell, J. W. Riffle, R. J. Molina, W. H. Pawuk, S. Navratil, R. W. Tinus, and O. C. Goodwin.
1982. Commercial vegetative inoculum of *Pisolithus tinctorius* and inoculation techniques for development of ectomycorrhizae on container-grown tree seedlings. Forest Sci. 28:373-400.

Medve, R. J., F. M. Hoffman, and T. W. Gaither.
1977. The effects of mycorrhizal-forming amendments on the revegetation of bituminou strip-mine spoils. Bull. Torrey Bot. Club 104:218-225.

Medvick, C.
1973. Selecting plant species for revegetating surface coal mined lands in Indiana - a forty year record. IN Hutnik, R. J., and G. Davis (eds.), Ecology and Reclamation of Devastated Land, Vol. 2, p. 65-80. Gordon and Breach, New York, NY. 504 p.

Miles, V. C., R. W. Ruble, and R. L. Bond.
1973. Performance of plants in relation to spoil classification in Pennsylvania. IN Hutnik, R. J., and G. Davis (eds.), Ecology and Reclamation of Devastated Land, Vol. 2, p. 13-31. Gordon and Breach, New York, NY. 504 p.

Molina, R.
1979. Ectomycorrhizal inoculation of containerized Douglas-fir and lodgepole pine seedlings with six isolates of Pisolithus tinctorius. Forest Sci. 25:585-590.

Molina, R.
1981. Ectomycorrhizal specificity in the genus Alnus. Can. J. Bot. 59:325-334.

Plass, W. T.
1975. An evaluation of trees and shrubs for planting surface-mine spoils. USDA Forest Serv., Northeast. Forest Exp. Stn. Res. Pap. NE-317. 8 p.

Ruehle, J. L.
1980. Ectomycorrhizal colonization of container-grown northern red oak as affected by fertility. USDA Forest Serv., Southeast. Forest Exp. Stn. Res. Note SE-297. 5 p.

Ruehle, J. L., and D. H. Marx.
1977. Developing ectomycorrhizae on containerized pine seedlings. USDA Forest Serv., Southeast. Forest Exp. Stn. Res. Note SE-242. 8 p.

Ruehle, J. L., D. H. Marx, J. P. Barnett, and W. H. Pawuk.
1981. Survival and growth of container-grown and bare-root shortleaf pine seedlings with Pisolithus and Thelephora ectomycorrhizae. South. J. Appl. For. 5:20-23.

Schramm, J. R.
1966. Plant colonization studies on black wastes from anthracite mining in Pennsylvania. Trans. Am. Philos. Soc. 56:1-194.

Smith, W. D.
1980. Has anyone noticed that trees are not being planted any longer? IN Trees for Reclamation Symposium Proceedings, Lexington, KY, October 27-29, p. 53-55. USDA Forest Serv., Northeast. Forest Exp. Stn. Gen. Tech. Rep. NE-61. 135 p.

Stewart, W. D. P.
1967. Nitrogen-fixing plants. Science 158:1426-1432.

Theodorou, C., and G. D. Bowen.
1970. Mycorrhizal responses of radiata pine in experiments with different fungi. Aust. For. 34:183-191.

Trappe, J. M.
1962. Fungus associates of ectotrophic mycorrhizae. Bot. Rev. 28:538-606.

Trappe, J. M.
1977. Selection of fungi for ectomycorrhizal inoculation in nurseries. Annu. Rev. Phytopathol. 15:203-222.

Tryon, H. H.
1943. Practical forestry in the Hudson highlands. Black Rock Forest Bull. 12. 50 p.

Tryon, E. H., and R. Markus.
1953. Development of vegetation on century-old iron-ore spoil banks. West Virginia Univ. Agric. Exp. Stn. Bull. 360. 63 p.

Vogel, W. G.
1979. Are trees neglected plants for reclaiming surface mines? Proc. West Virginia Acad. Sci. 51:127-138.

Vogel, W. G.
1981. A guide for revegetating coal minesoils in the eastern United States. USDA Forest Serv., Northeast. Forest Exp. Stn. Gen. Tech. Rep. NE-68. 190 p.

Walker, R. F., D. C. West, and S. B. McLaughlin.
1981. Pisolithus tinctorius ectomycorrhizae enhance the survival and growth of Pinus taeda on a southern Appalachian coal spoil. IN Barnett, J. P. (ed.), Proceedings of the First Biennial Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, GA, November 6-7, 1980, p. 29-33. USDA Forest Serv., South. Forest Exp. Stn. Gen. Tech. Rep. SO-34. 375 p.

Walker, R. F., D. C. West, and S. B. McLaughlin.
1982. The growth, nutrient absorption, and moisture status of selected woody species in coal mine spoil in response to an induced infection by the ectomycorrhizal fungus Pisolithus tinctorius. Oak Ridge Natl. Lab. TM-8359. U.S. Department of Commerce, National Technical Information Service, Springfield, VA. 101 p.

White, J. R.
1980. Trees for reclamation in the eastern United States: the changing perspective. IN Trees for Reclamation Symposium Proceedings, Lexington, KY, October 27-29, p. 65-68. USDA Forest Serv., Northeast. Forest Exp. Stn. Gen. Tech. Rep. NE-61. 135 p.

EFFECT OF BIFENOX AND OXYFLUORFEN ON EMERGENCE AND MORTALITY OF LOBLOLLY SEEDLINGS UNDER GROWTH CHAMBER CONDITIONS[1]

David B. South and John G. Mexal[2]

Abstract.--The relative phytotoxicity of three formulations of bifenox and oxyfluorfen on emergence and subsequent mortality of loblolly pine (Pinus taeda L.) seedlings was investigated in growth chamber studies. Emergence was not inhibited by either 120 mg/kg of bifenox or 20 mg/kg of oxyfluorfen regardless of formulation tested. No significant interaction with herbicide treatment was observed for 1) stratification; 2) seed size; 3) sowing depth; or 4) temperature. All herbicide treatments increased seedling mortality. Mortality was greater with 20 mg/kg of oxyfluorfen than with 120 mg/kg of bifenox. Mortality in controls was 32% while in herbicide treatments mortality ranged from 46 to 63%. The greatest mortality occurred with the oxyfluorfen emulsifiable concentrate which also produced "white lesions" on seedling hypocotyls.

INTRODUCTION

Bifenox and oxyfluorfen have been tested in southern pine nurseries for several years with promising results. Bifenox was first tested on loblolly pine in 1974 and has been effective in controlling a number of broadleaf weeds. Handweeding times were significantly reduced with no significant reduction in the number of plantable seedlings (South et al. 1978). Oxyfluorfen was first tested on loblolly in 1976, and was effective in controlling both grasses and broadleaf weeds (South and Gjerstad 1980). For that reason, weed control obtained with oxyfluorfen was often better than with bifenox at pine nurseries with high populations of grasses. Oxyfluorfen showed no significant reduction in plantable seedlings when compared with hand-weeded controls. Using data supplied by the Auburn University Southern Forest Nursery Management Cooperative (AUSFNMC), the Environmental Protection Agency registered bifenox in 1977 and oxyfluorfen in 1978 for use in southern pine nurseries. Since 1978, southern nurserymen have used these herbicides extensively in pine seedbeds both as preemergence and postemergence treatments.

Nurserymen reported no problems with preemergence applications of these herbicides from 1977 to 1980. In 1981, however, nurserymen at five locations reported "white lesion" occurrence on newly-emerged loblolly seedlings and some seedling death. Several nurseries were visited to ascertain the cause of the lesions. Possible causes considered included herbicides, sun scald, wind burn, sand burn, and pathogens, but no consensus as to the cause was reached. Oxyfluorfen had been used as a preemergence herbicide at all the affected nurseries. However, lesions were also observed on areas where bifenox had been used as well as on plots where herbicides were not directly applied.

Two growth chamber studies were conducted to determine the effects of oxyfluorfen and bifenox on establishment of loblolly pine. The objectives of the studies were to determine: 1) the effects of different formulations of oxyfluorfen and bifenox on emergence, mortality and lesion formation of loblolly pine; 2) whether rate of germination affected herbicide injury; and 3) whether temperture or depth of sowing could affect herbicide injury.

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Director, Auburn University Southern Forest Nursery Management Cooperative, Auburn University, AL 36849, and Research Station Manager, Weyerhaeuser Co., Dierks, AR 71833

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Experiment 1

Loblolly seeds were obtained from the Hammermill Paper Company seed orchard in Selma, Alabama. The seeds were sized and two groups (small and jumbo) were selected for study. Half of the seeds from each size group were soaked in cold water for 24 h before sowing. Sixty milk cartons (7 by 7 by 10 cm) were each filled with 350 g of loamy sand. Twenty-five seeds were sown in each container and covered with an additional 50 g of either herbicide-treated or nontreated soil. All treatments were replicated five times. Treated soil was prepared from stock solutions of herbicides. The stock solutions were:

a. bifenox emulsifiable concentrate - 1 ml commercial grade (21% active ingredient) in 60 ml distilled water.
b. oxyfluorfen emulsifiable concentrate - 1 ml commercial grade (23.5% active ingredient) in 60 ml distilled water.

A herbicide concentration of 20 mg/kg was prepared by adding 6.0 ml of herbicide solution to 1.2 kg of a loamy sand soil which had been screened and air dried. On August 18, 1981, the cartons were placed in a growth chamber set for a 12 h day cycle with a 27 C day temperature and a 16 C night temperature. Relative humidity of the chamber was approximately 70%. A combination of fluorescent and incandescent lights provided an intensity of 274 uE $sec^{-1}m^{-2}$. Cartons were watered as needed with 50 ml of water. Seedling emergence was recorded on September 3 and again on September 16. Hypocotyl height, seedling mortality, and the number of lesions were also recorded on September 16. Analysis of variance was conducted using a 3 by 2 by 2 factorial design. Data for surviving seedlings, mortality, and lesions were expressed as a percentage of germinated seedlings.

Experiment 2

Loblolly seeds were obtained from the Weyerhaeuser Company seed orchard near Magnolia, Arkansas. One-hundred sixty-eight plastic germination trays (10 by 10 by 4 cm) were each filled with 350 g of soil. Each container was sown with 50 seed. Half of the containers were sown before the addition of 50 g of treated (or nontreated) soil while the remaining half were surface sown after the 50 g of soil had been added. All treatments were replicated four times. Treated soil was prepared with stock solutions of herbicides. The stock solutions were:

a. bifenox technical - 0.8246 g (97% active ingredient in 10 ml of acetone added to 190 ml of distilled water.
b. bifenox emulsifiable concentrate - 2 ml commercial grade (21% active ingredient) in 120 ml of distilled water.
c. bifenox wettable powder - 1 g commercial grade 80% active ingredient) in 200 ml of distilled water.
d. oxyfluorfen technical - 0.563 g (71% active ingredient in 10 ml of acetone added to 90 ml of distilled water.
e. oxyfluorfen emulsifiable concentrate - 1 ml commercial grade (23.5% active ingredient) in 60 ml of distilled water.
f. oxyfluorfen wettable powder - 1.6 g commercial grade (21% active ingredient) in 100 ml of distilled water.

Concentrations of oxyfluorfen at 20 mg/kg were prepared by adding 4.5 ml of the stock solutions to 900 g of a loamy sand soil which had been dried and screened. Bifenox concentrations of 120 mg/kg were prepared by adding 27 ml of the stock solutions to 900 g of soil. Water was added to bring the soil to field capacity. The containers were placed in three growth chambers on December 17, 1981. The temperature settings of the chambers were (1) 24 h at 17 C,(2) 24 h at 21 C, (3) 12 h at 21 C and 12 h at 17 C. Fluorescent light provided an intensity of 8 to 16 uE $sec^{-1}m^{-2}$. Emergence and mortality of seedlings were recorded at 2 to 3 day intervals from December 22 to January 25. Analysis was conducted using a 7 by 3 by 2 factorial design. Data for lesions and mortality were expressed as a percentage of emerged seedlings. Data for germination and surviving seedlings were expressed as a percentage of seeds planted. Analysis of variance was performed using an arcsine transformation of the percentage data.

RESULTS

Experiment 1

The pregermination cold-water treatment, seed size, and herbicide treatment significantly affected seedling emergence 16 days after sowing (Table 1). The pregermination treatment had the greatest effect on the rate of emergence. Seeds receiving the 24 h cold soak averaged 32% emergence while nontreated seeds averaged only 12% emergence. Seed size was the next most influential factor. Emergence of small seed was greater than that for jumbo seed. However, an interaction occurred between seed size and pregermination treatment. The cold soak had a greater effect on small seed than on jumbo seed. Herbicide treatment accounted for only seven percent of the modeled variation. Emergence of seedlings in herbicide treated soil was greater than the control (Table 2).

Table 1.—Analysis of variance of variables in Experiment 1.

		16th Day		29th Day									
		Germination		Germination		Standing		Mortality		Lesions		Height	
Source	d.f.	Sum of sq.	Prob. of>F	Sum of sq.	Prob. of>F	Sum of sq.	Prob. of>F	Sum of sq.	Prob. of>F	Sum of sq.	Prob. of>F	Sum of sq.	Prob. of>F
Replication	4	0.035	0.2519	0.048	0.4450	0.030	0.7618	0.019	0.9133	0.025	0.1525	0.98	0.1807
Herbicide	2	0.049	0.0269	0.039	0.2275	0.465	0.0001	0.869	0.0001	1.371	0.0001	33.12	0.0001
Seed size	1	0.150	0.0001	0.240	0.0001	0.150	0.0037	0.011	0.4522	0.017	0.0303	4.21	0.0001
cold soak	1	0.400	0.0001	0.417	0.0001	0.365	0.0001	0.009	0.5110	0.001	0.5722	0.79	0.0262
Herbicide x seed size	2	0.002	0.8241	0.039	0.2275	0.109	0.0413	0.067	0.1951	0.048	0.0027	0.31	0.3608
Herbicide x cold soak	2	0.039	0.0527	0.039	0.2301	0.031	0.3823	0.003	0.9342	0.002	0.7632	0.82	0.0762
Seed size x cold soak	1	0.034	0.0249	0.049	0.0557	0.006	0.5428	0.034	0.1989	0.044	0.0010	0.23	0.2240
Herbicide x seed size x cold soak	2	0.013	0.3654	0.013	0.6004	0.006	0.8354	0.053	0.2770	0.091	0.0001	1.59	0.0086
Error	44	0.275	—	0.561	—	0.702	—	0.875	—	0.156	—	6.60	—
Corrected Total	59	0.999	—	1.447	—	1.086	—	1.940	—	1.757	—	48.67	—

Table 2.--Effect of bifenox and oxyfluorfen on emerging loblolly pine seedlings in a growth chamber.

				16th Day	29th Day				
Treatment	Rate	Seed size	Cold soak	Germination	Germination	Standing	Mortality	Lesions	Height
	(mg/kg)			-----(%)-----					-(cm)-
Control	0	Small	Yes	36.8	72.0	65.6	10.5	0	3.72
Control	0	Large	Yes	12.0	55.2	50.4	8.4	0	4.04
Control	0	Small	No	11.2	57.6	52.0	10.9	0	3.74
Control	0	Large	No	8.8	36.7	32.8	11.7	0	4.16
Oxyfluorfen	20	Small	Yes	40.0	56.0	36.8	33.3	33.6	1.88
Oxyflourfen	20	Large	Yes	29.0	58.4	38.4	34.3	28.6	2.69
Oxyfluorfen	20	Small	No	19.2	53.6	26.4	50.4	18.6	1.96
Oxyfluorfen	20	Large	No	8.0	39.2	28.8	25.8	47.5	1.88
Bifenox	20	Small	Yes	48.0	72.8	68.0	6.3	1.0	3.34
Bifenox	20	Large	Yes	33.6	66.4	57.6	13.5	0	3.90
Bifenox	20	Small	No	14.4	56.8	51.2	10.4	1.2	2.92
Bifenox	20	Large	No	8.0	36.0	32.0	11.7	0	3.80

Seedling emergence was near completion 29 days after sowing (Table 2). The pregermination treatment and seed size effect were still significant. The greatest emergence was still observed for small seed that received the pregermination cold-water treatment while the non-treated jumbo seed were still the lowest in emergence. Herbicide treatments at this stage of development were no longer significantly affecting seedling emergence.

Herbicide treatment had a signific effect on seedling mortality. Seedlings in s with 20 mg/kg of oxyfluorfen had emerged b weakened stems resulted in seedlings falli over. Mortality of seedlings treated wi oxyfluorfen was over three-times greater th that of the control or the bifenox treatment There was no significant difference in mortalit between the bifenox treatment and the contr Neither seed size nor the pregerminati treatment affected seedling mortality.

Height of the hypocotyl was affected by herbicide treatment. The bifenox treatment did not significantly reduce height growth but the oxyfluorfen reduced hypocotyl height by 45%. Seed size and the pregermination treatment also affected hypocotyl height. On the average, hypocotyls of seedlings from jumbo seed were about 0.5 cm taller than small seed but hypocotyls from seed treated with the cold soak were only slightly taller than those from non-treated seed. A significant interaction was observed between herbicide treatment, seed size, and pregermination treatment. The pregermination treatment had no effect on hypocotyl height except for jumbo seed in oxyfluorfen soil. Seedlings from this treatment had hypocotyls that were approximately 1 cm taller than those from non-treated jumbo seed in oxyfluorfen soil.

The oxyfluorfen treatment produced "white esions" at the base of the hypocotyl on 30% of he emerged seedlings. No lesions were bserved on the controls and only two of 290 eedlings in the bifenox treatment had lesions.

Experiment 2

Depth of sowing was by far the factor most affecting emergence. Sowing depth was significant at the 0.0001 level for all dates (analyses for three dates are presented in Table 3). Covering the seed with soil reduced emergence by approximately 25% (Fig. 1).

An interaction between temperature and depth existed during the first 11 days after sowing. During this early germination phase, the 21 C temperature increased emergence of surface sown seed more so than covered seed. Rate of emergence was significantly different for the three temperature regimes over the first 16 days. Emergence was faster with constant 21 C and slowest with constant 17 C.

From 22 days after sowing until the end of the experiment, a depth by temperature interaction occurred. For the surface-sown treatments, emergence had neared completion. With covered seed, however, temperature still had an effect but now the higher temperature decreased emergence. Herbicide treatment did not significantly affect seedling emergence (Fig. 2).

Table 3.—Analysis of variance of variables in Experiment 2.

		14th Day				22nd Day				32nd Day			
		Germination		Mortality		Germination		Mortality		Germination		Mortality	
Source	d.f.	Sum of sq.	Prob. of>F	Sum of sq.	Prob. of>F	Sum of sq.	Prob. of>F	Sum of sq.	Prob. of>F	Sum of sq.	Prob. of>F	Sum of sq.	Prob. of>F
Replication	3	0.057	0.5822	0.012	0.6181	0.099	0.0162	0.131	0.0046	0.055	0.1473	1.295	0.0001
check vs bifenox	1	0.053	0.1777	0.009	0.2318	0.004	0.4976	0.179	0.0001	0.000	0.9896	0.486	0.0032
check vs oxyfluorfen	1	0.003	0.7317	0.000	0.9563	0.005	0.4567	0.073	0.0064	0.020	0.1635	1.065	0.0001
bifenox vs oxyfluorfen	1	0.059	0.1549	0.017	0.1074	0.038	0.0458	0.047	0.0285	0.040	0.0476	0.225	0.0430
W P vs E C	1	0.101	0.0632	0.000	0.8896	0.010	0.2966	0.022	0.1280	0.022	0.1422	0.098	0.1793
tech vs E C	1	0.023	0.3745	0.021	0.0711	0.000	0.8780	0.005	0.4769	0.001	0.7644	0.005	0.7586
tech vs W P	1	0.028	0.3274	0.025	0.0523	0.013	0.2317	0.048	0.0265	0.014	0.2416	0.058	0.2992
Temperature	2	1.245	0.0001	0.031	0.0920	0.040	0.1164	0.248	0.0001	0.129	0.0023	3.903	0.0001
Depth of sowing	1	14.989	0.0001	0.333	0.0001	4.859	0.0001	0.712	0.0001	3.268	0.0001	1.969	0.0001
Herbicide x temperature	12	0.380	0.3681	0.016	0.9977	0.116	0.4111	0.158	0.1811	0.111	0.5395	0.343	0.8907
erbicide x depth	6	0.069	0.8790	0.022	0.7574	0.457	0.5527	0.071	0.2883	0.020	0.9195	0.245	0.6044
Temperature x depth	2	0.074	0.2834	0.021	0.2032	0.058	0.0459	0.040	0.1296	0.254	0.0008	0.292	0.0704
erbicide x depth x temperature	12	0.225	0.7955	0.093	0.2910	0.047	0.9500	0.169	0.1405	0.066	0.8853	0.421	0.7932
Error	123	3.549	—	0.794	—	1.137	—	1.170	—	1.249	—	6.614	—
orrected Total	167	20.793	—	1.380	—	6.464	—	2.938	—	5.138	—	16.332	—

Depth of planting not only influenced emergence but also mortality (Fig. 3). Covering seed with soil reduced mortality by approximately 16%. An interaction between temperature and depth occurred between the 16th and 27th day after sowing. The 21 C temperature increased seedling mortality of surface sown seed more so than covered seed.

After the first 3 weeks, both bifenox and oxyfluorfen increased seedling mortality (Fig. 4). Ranking of herbicide treatments varied from day to day but after the 29th day, the emulsifiable concentrate and technical grade of oxyfluorfen caused the greatest mortality. During the 20th to 25th day, mortality was less with wettable powder formulations than with technical formulations.

The percentage of seedlings that remained standing was a function of percent emergence and seedling mortality. Since there was little mortality over the first 13 days, the analyses for percent emergence and percent standing seedlings were very similar. During the first 22 days, depth of sowing was the most influential factor affecting standing seedlings (Fig. 5). However, with time, depth of planting became less important. At the end of the experiment (from the 34th to 39th day) sowing depth was the least important factor. Temperature had become more influential. Over the first 18 days of the experiment, the warmer temperatures had more standing trees but after the 29th day, more seedlings were standing in the cooler temperatures.

Both herbicides reduced the number of standing seedlings during the latter stages of the experiment (Fig. 6). From the 22nd to the 25th day, the percentage of standing seedlings was lowest for the emulsifiable concentrate and technical grades of bifenox. On the 34th day, all but the wettable powder formulations were significantly different from the control. By the final day, the emulsifiable concentrate and technical grades of oxyfluorfen were the only treatments significantly lower than the controls.

Herbicide treatment was the only factor to affect the formation of lesions. The emulsifiable concentrate of oxyfluorfen was the only treatment that was significantly different (pr>F = 0.02) from the controls. At the end of the study, this treatment produced lesions on 5.6% of the emerged seedlings.

DISCUSSION

The rates of bifenox used in the two studies differed. The first study indicated that at equal concentrations (20 mg/kg) oxyfluorfen was more injurious than bifenox to loblolly pine. In the nursery, however, the preemergence rate of bifenox is normally six times that of oxyfluorfen. Therefore, th rate of bifenox was increased to 120 mg/kg i the second study for a more realisti comparison of the two herbicides. concentration of 20 mg/kg in the top 0.6 cm o soil is equivalent to 1.56 kg/ha (assuming soil bulk density of 1.3 g/cc). This would b approximately equal to a 3X rate o oxyfluorfen. Likewise, 120 mg/kg would b approximately equal to a 3X rate of bifenox. soil depth of 0.6 cm was used because bifeno and oxyfluorfen remain near the soil surfac and are not readily leached (Fadayomi an Warren 1976, Weed Science Society of Americ 1979). Results from the second study indicate that oxyfluorfen at 20 mg/kg resulted in mor seedling mortality than bifenox at 120 mg/kg.

While these herbicides caused mortality i these tests, they did not impact seedlin emergence. Other factors such as depth o sowing, temperature, seed size, an pregermination treatment did dramaticall affect emergence. There was no consisten interaction between herbicide treatment an other factors which affected rate of emergence

In the spring of 1981, germination o loblolly seed was delayed at several nurserie due to cool, wet, and cloudy conditions. It i possible that slow emergence in the presence o these herbicides resulted in the injur observed in 1981. Injury had not previousl been observed (1978 to 1980) when weathe conditions were more favorable for germination If germination was slowed, the period of tim in which the emerging seedling would be i contact with the herbicide-treated soil woul be extended and this could result in mor injury. Although results from these growt chamber studies should not be considere conclusive, they did indicate that herbicida injury from oxyfluorfen or bifenox was no greater as a result of slow germination.

Herbicide treatment had a negligibl effect on seedling performance during the firs 3 week period. Herbicide effects became mor apparent during the fourth and fifth weeks This stage of seedling development has bee referred to by Baker (1950) as the "succulen stage". Our observations indicate that bifeno and oxyfluorfen cause damage to seedling during this succulent stage.

At the end of the period of succulence the cortex collapses and a hard "bark" i formed. This collapse occures 3 to 4 week after the seedling appears aboveground an about the time the first true leaf reache one-half the length of the cotyledons (Bake 1950). Injury from preemergence application of oxyfluorfen or bifenox apparently does no occur after the cortex collapses.

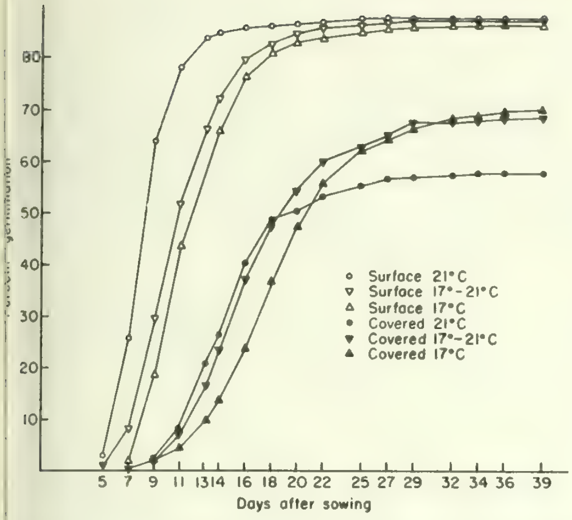


Figure 1.--Effect of sowing depth and temperature on emergence of loblolly pine seedlings.

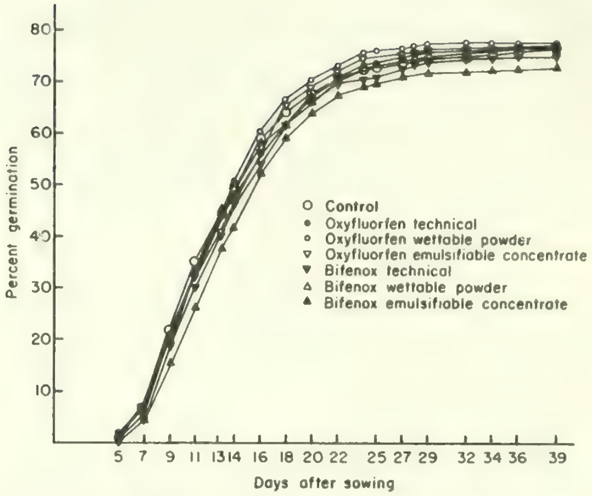


Figure 2. Effect of formulation on emergence of loblolly pine seedlings.

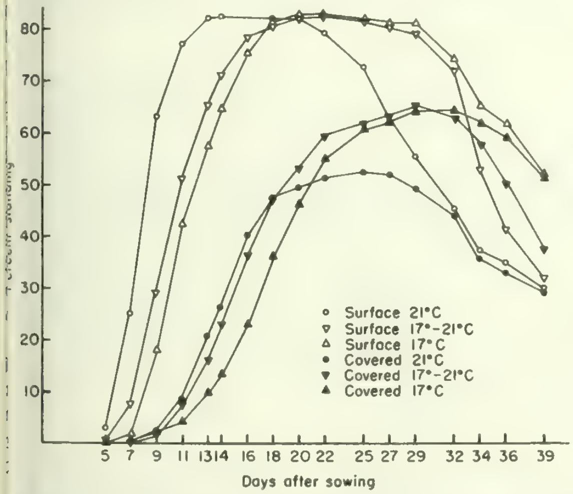


Figure 3.--Effect of sowing depth and temperature on mortality of loblolly pine seedlings.

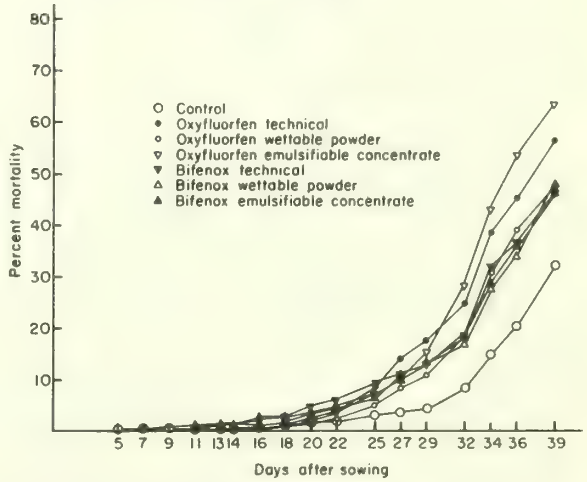


Figure 4.--Effect of formulation on mortality on loblolly pine seedlings.

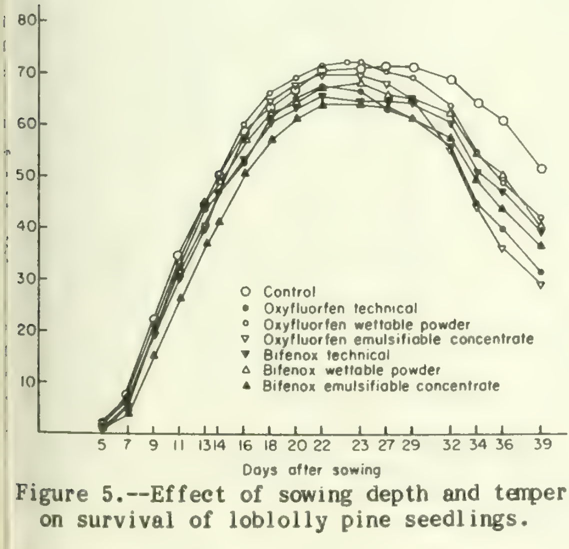


Figure 5.--Effect of sowing depth and temperature on survival of loblolly pine seedlings.

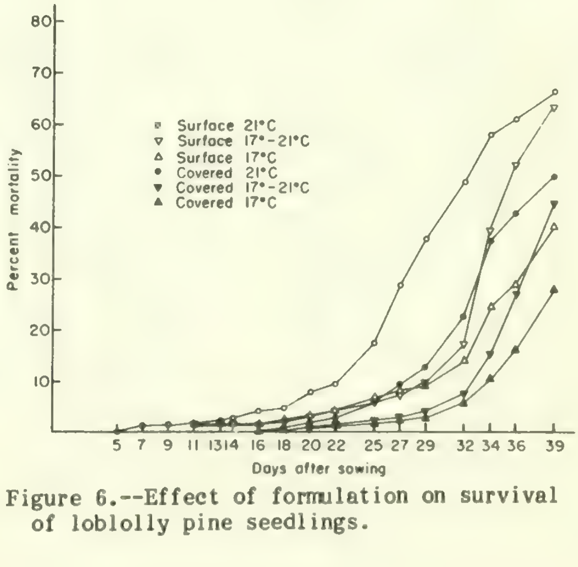


Figure 6.--Effect of formulation on survival of loblolly pine seedlings.

Nurserymen have described injury symptoms as being very similar to "heat lesions." Wakeley (1954) described fresh heat lesions as "characteristically pale and sharply defined, and are at or just above the soil surface and do not extend below it." Hartley (1918) described in detail the formation and occurrence of "white spot" lesions on ponderosa (Pinus ponderosa Laws.) seedlings. He concluded that formation of lesions was a result of excessive heat.

Recent results from growth chamber studies indicate that bifenox can also produce lesions on loblolly pine seedlings[3/]. Lesions caused by bifenox or oxyfluorfen can occur on any side and at any point on the hypocotyl but do not extend to the cotyledons. Most lesions occur on one side of the hypocotyl and are often near the soil line. In some cases, the lesions encircle the hypocotyl. Lesions disappear when the "bark" is formed 3 to 4 weeks after emergence. Seedlings with lesions often survive and grow normally. Seedlings that die are usually those that have fallen over (due to constriction of the hypocotyl) or are those that are weakened and lack the strength to lift the testa and cotyledons out of the soil.

The original premise that herbicidal injury was exacerbated by factors which delayed emergence could not be demonstrated in these tests. However, it is possible that sensitivity to these herbicides is a function of light intensity rather than cool temperatures. Low light intensities reduce the production of epicuticular wax (Martin and Juniper 1970), and wax thickness is negatively correlated with oxyfluorfen damage in sweetgum (South 1982). It is possible that cloudy weather during the seedling emergence phase could result in thin epicuticular wax layers which could result in increased sensitivity to certain diphenylether herbicides.

Evidence from field crops indicate that a herbicide similar to oxyfluorfen can cause injury when these conditions occur (Gates 1972, Pollak and Crabtree 1 976). Light intensity during emergence apparently plays a significant role in the action of fluorodifen (p-nitrophenyl a,a,a-trifluoro-2-nitro-p-tolyl ether) which causes lesions to form on hypocotyls of soybeans [Glycine max (L.) Merr. var. "Bragg"] and green beans (Phaseolus vulgaris L. 'Tendercrop'). Results from these studies indicated that low light intensities after a preemergence application of fluorodifen, followed by higher light intensities at the time of crop emergence, or shortly thereafter, increased the probability of crop injury. Similar studies should be conducted with loblolly to determine whether light intensity during emergence can affect the formation of lesions caused by diphenylether herbicides.

Experiment 1 demonstrated that 3X rates of oxyfluorfen can decrease hypocotyl height of loblolly. Field results have indicated that both oxyfluorfen and bifenox can reduce early height growth. Significant reductions in hypocotyl height occurred with 1X rates of bifenox and 2X rates of oxyfluorfen (Table 4).

Experiment 2 demonstrated that 3X rates of bifenox and oxyfluorfen can increase mortality of loblolly during the succulent stage. Observations at several nurseries and field tests indicated that 1X rates of these herbicides can increase mortality 5 to 10% during this stage of development. This seems at first to conflict with earlier field data that reported no significant reduction in plantable seedlings (South et al. 1978, South and Gjerstad 1980). In addition to differences in environmental conditions, several factors can explain why injury was not detected earlier.

Weed control tests were often established in areas with high weed populations. Competition and handweeding injury would often cause hand-weeded control plots to produce fewer seedlings than herbicide treated plots. Seedling reductions during the succulent stage of five to eight percent could have occurred in the herbicide plots but would not be noticed if 10 to 25% reductions occurred in the control plots. For this reason, increases in plantable seedlings on plots treated with bifenox or oxyfluorfen were always observed at nurseries where total weeding times for controls exceeded 4 min/m^2 (Table 5).

Variation within seedbeds at most nurseries is too great to detect differences in density of 10% or less with 4 replications of 200 to 300 seedlings. The percent reduction needed to be significant (using L.S.D. at the five percent level) ranged from 13 to 63% (at nurseries where controls required less than 4 min/m^2 of hand-weeding)(Table 5). Reducing the significance level to the 10% level would be of little benifit since detectable differences would still be greater than a 10% reduction. An increase in sample size or an increase in replications would be needed in order to guard against accepting the null hypothesis when in fact the alternative hypothesis is true (making a Type II error) (Steel and Torrie 1960). At some nurseries however, 200 or more samples are needed in order to determine the seedling production for some seed lots within an accuracy of plus or minus five percent. For this reason, herbicide tests should be installed at nurseries where variation in seedling density is kept to a minimum. Nurseries having both precision sowing and low weed populations would be the most likely candidates.

[3/] Personal communication, Bill Carlson, Weyerhaeuser Co., Hot Springs, AR 71901.

Herbicide-induced injury of the magnitude reported by nurseries is an excellent example of a factor that may not be statistically significant but may well be economically significant. For a nursery producing 50 million seedlings, a five percent reduction in plantable seedlings can mean a loss of $50,000. Therefore, the decision to use a herbicide which is potentially injurious has to be carefully considered. The decision should be based on the risks versus the benefits. At nurseries with high weed populations, use of bifenox or oxyfluorfen will offer more benefits which will more than offset the risks. However, at nurseries with low weed populations, use of these herbicides could result in more injury than would other alternatives. Herbicide regimes that combine safer but perhaps less effective preemergence herbicides with effective postemergence herbicides need to be tested.

Table 4.--Effect of preemergence applications of bifenox and oxyfluorfen on emerging loblolly pine seedlings at the Ft. Towson Nursery in 1981.

Treatment	Application rate	25th Day after sowing[1]			
		Expt. 1		Expt. 2	
		Seedling density	Seedling height	Seedling density	Seedling height
	(kg/ha)	(No./m^2)	-(cm)-	(No./m^2)	-(cm)-
Control	0	412 a	4.9 a	382 a	5.1 a
Bifenox	3.4	374 a	4.3 b	390 a	4.6 bc
Oxyfluorfen	0.56	390 a	4.8 a	390 a	4.8 ab
Oxyfluorfen	1.12	379 a	4.2 b	374 a	4.2 c

[1] Means within each column followed by the same letter are not significantly different at the 5% level as judged by Duncan's Multiple Range test.

Table 5.--Effect of field applications of bifenox and oxyfluorfen on seedling production of loblolly pine[1].

Nursery	State	year	Handweeding time for controls	Plantable seedlings in controls	Difference from controls		Change Required for L.S.D. at	
					bifenox 3.4 kg/ha	oxyfluorfen 0.6 kg/ha	5% level	10% level
			(min/m^2)	(No./m^2)	--------(%)----------		---------(%)----------	
Weyerhaeuser	AR	78	0.2	173	-12	+11	34	28
Weyerhaeuser	NC	78	0.5	191	+25	+ 4	27	22
Baucum	AR	74	0.6	301	-19	--	16	13
Columbia	LA	75	0.6	170	+76	--	57	47
Baucum	AR	77	1.1	61	-33	- 7	63	52
Baucum	AR	75	1.7	245	-14	--	27	22
Miller	AL	76	3.2	136	+18	--	25	21
Claridge	NC	74	3.3	266	+ 3	--	22	18
Columbia	LA	74	3.4	178	-23	--	19	16
Tilghman	SC	74	3.4	286	-14	--	22	18
Baucum	AR	79	3.6	145	+11	+27	27	22
Waynesboro	MS	74	8.5	205	+16	--	13	11
Kentucky Dam	KY	76	10.2	110	+134	+180	70	58
Coastal	SC	75	11.4	222	+ 6	--	17	14
Claridge	NC	75	11.5	364	+ 5	--	13	11
Kentucky Dam	Ky	77	12.9	3	+1660	+2874	1510	1258
Baucum	AR	78	14.7	29	+72	+72	124	103
Great Southern	GA	77	22.0	88	+130	+106	55	46
Coastal	SC	76	27.9	164	+16	+16	22	18
Westvaco	SC	77	38.1	174	+10	+30	28	23

[1] Data from six Auburn University Southern Forest Nursery Management Cooperative Annual Reports.

LITERATURE

Baker, F.S.
1950. Principles of Silviculture. McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., New York, 414 p.

Fadayomi, O. and G.F. Warren.
1976. The light requirement for herbicidal activity of diphenyl ethers. Weed Sci. 24:589-600.

Fadayomi, O. and G.F. Warren.
1977. Adsorption, desorption, and leaching of nitrofen and oxyfluorfen. Weed Sci. 25:97-100.

Gates, D.W.
1972. Some effects of light on the tolerance of soybeans to fluorodifen. Proc. South. Weed Sci. Soc. 25:111.

Hartley, C.
1918. Stem lesions caused by excessive heat. J. Agric. Res. 14:595-604.

Martin, J.T. and B.E. Juniper.
1970. The Cuticles of Plants. R. and R. Clark, Ltd., Edinburgh, 347 p.

Pollak, T. and G. Crabtree.
1976. Effect of light intensity and quality on toxicity of fluorodifen to green bean and soybean seedlings. Weed Sc 24:571-573.

South, D.B.
1982. Relationship between amount epicuticular wax and activity oxyfluorfen on sweetgum leaves. Pro South. Weed Sci. Soc. 35:245.

South, D.B., D.H. Gjerstad, and R.H. Crowley.
1978. Bifenox: a promising new herbicide f southern pine nurseries. South. J. App For. 2(1):11-14.

South, D.B. and D.H. Gjerstad.
1980. Oxyfluorfen: an effective herbicide f southern pine nurseries. South. J. App For. 4:36-39.

Steel, G.D. and J.H. Torrie.
1960. Principles and Procedures Statistics. McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc New York, 481 p.

Wakeley, P.C.
1954. Planting the Southern pine U.S.Dep.Agric. Agric. Monogr. No. 18. 2 p.

Weed Science Society of America.
1979. Herbicide Handbook, 4th ed. Champaig IL, 479 p.

FIELD RESISTANCE OF SLASH PINE FAMILIES AFFECTED BY INTERACTIONS WITH LOCAL RUST POPULATIONS

Harry R. Powers, Jr.[1] and Marvin Zoerb[2]

Abstract.--Progeny of a rust-resistant slash pine selection maintained their resistance when planted at several locations in Georgia, including the high rust hazard area of Houston County. However, one planting in Baldwin County suffered heavy losses from rust. Artificial inoculation tests confirmed that the general rust population in that county was highly virulent on this one family. Additional inoculations, using rust collections from the progeny of another resistant selection, demonstrated sharply increased virulence when reinoculated on seedlings of the same family. This increased virulence was also evident on seedlings of the parent from which this selection derived its resistance. This information indicates that consideration must be given to sources of resistance and the possibility of geographic variation in rust pathogenicity when deploying rust resistant pines.

INTRODUCTION

Fusiform rust, caused by Cronartium quercuum (Berk.) Miyabe ex Shirai f. sp. fusiforme, is by far the most serious disease of loblolly (Pinus taeda L.) and slash (Pinus elliottii Englem. var. elliottii) pines, with losses due to product degrade alone estimated at $75 million annually (Powers et al. 1981). Southern foresters generally agree that disease resistant pines offer the best ope for reducing the tremendous losses inflicted y fusiform rust (Schmidt et al. 1981). With ther rust diseases on agronomic crops, resistance n host plants is not static, but must be con-inually adjusted in relation to constantly shift-ng populations of the pathogen. Studies dealing ith pathogenic variability of the fusiform rust athogen on both slash and loblolly pines have emonstrated extensive variation (Snow et al. 975, Powers et al. 1977). Also, rust spores collected from infected members of resistant families (family-specific isolates) are more virulent than the general rust population when used to reinoculate seedlings of the same family. While such isolates have shown higher levels of virulence on certain families of both slash (Snow et al. 1976) and loblolly pine (Powers et al. 1978), increases in virulence on specific slash pine families have been more dramatic. Most studies on variation within the overall population of this organism have been done by collecting samples of aeciospores from individual rust galls, and then inoculating seedlings of open-pollinated families of pines with these isolates. Thus, evidence of variability in pathogenicity has been based primarily on artificial inoculations rather than on results from field tests.

The study described here was started when a resistant family of slash pine (10-226) became heavily infected in Baldwin County, Georgia. In 10 other field plantings at locations in eastern Georgia, this family averaged less than half the infection of the test means. The primary objective of the study was to determine if the rust population in the Baldwin County area was more virulent on family 10-226 than rust collections from another area where this family had maintained its resistance. Secondary objectives were (1) to determine if family-specific isolates from families 10-226 and 2903-1 would prove to be more virulent on those families than the general rust population, and (2) to compare the response of family 2903-1 with that of the parental selection (Jones 14) from which it derived its resistance when inoculated with a family-specific isolate from 2903-1.

---

[1] Project Leader, Diseases of Southern Pine lantations and Seed Orchards, Southeastern Forest xperiment Station, Carlton Street, Athens, Ga., 0602

[2] Project Leader, Tree Improvement, Union amp Corporation, Rincon, Ga., 31326

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Seeds of 12 open-pollinated slash pine families were used in this study. Seeds of family 10-226 were collected in the seed orchard of the Union Camp Corporation, Rincon, Georgia. Those for all other numbered families were collected from the U.S. Forest Service rust-resistant clone bank in Houston County, Georgia. The slash pine check seeds were from a bulk lot collected from several rust-infected slash pine trees in the same county. Two rust collections representing the general populations of the pathogen in Houston and Baldwin Counties were made by sampling 8 individual galls at random from each location in plantings of nursery-run slash pine seedlings. Two family-specific collections were made, each comprised of aeciospores collected from 8 rust galls on trees of that specific family. Spores from trees of 2903-1 were collected in Houston County, and those from 10-226 in Baldwin County. Aeciospores from the 8 galls of each source were mixed on an equal volume basis to provide the four composite isolates.

Seedlings of northern red oak (*Quercus ruba* L.) were inoculated with aeciospores from each collection. Basidiospores were harvested after 3 weeks and used for pine inoculations (Matthews and Rowan 1972). Seeds from each of the 12 families were germinated and seedlings transplanted into eight flats containing 20 seedlings each. After 6 weeks the seedlings were inoculated by spraying with a suspension containing 50×10^3 spores per milliliter. *In vitro* basidiospore germination was at least 88 percent.

The experimental design was a 12 x 4 x 2 x 4 factorial. Four flats of each family were inoculated on each of two consecutive days with each of the four spore sources. In four families where seed germination was low, only three flats were inoculated with each of the four spore sources on two consecutive days. A balanced design for analysis of variance was obtained by estimating the missing observations with a covariance analysis. In all, 7040 seedlings were inoculated in the study, with each flat constituting an experimental unit. After inoculation the seedlings were grown in a greenhouse for 9 months before the percentage of seedlings with actively growing galls was recorded. Means were separated according to Duncan's multiple range test (Hick 1964).

RESULTS

Seedlings of family 10-226 had significantly higher percentages of infection from Baldwin County than from Houston County rust isolates (fig. 1), which verified the field observation. Family-specific isolates from families 10-226 and 2903-1 were significantly more virulent when re-inoculated onto seedlings of their respective families than were the general rust population from the areas where each collection originated. Seedlings from Jones 14 were also highly susceptible to the family-specific isolate from 2903-1, but relatively resistant to the other three rust sources. Families 2790-9, 3365-8 3302-21 and 2790-0 all shared this pattern of infection (fig. 1). Family 2936-5 was moderately resistant to the Houston County and 2903-1 isolates, but moderately susceptible to the Baldwin County and 10-226 isolates. Family 3750-7 was the only family showing resistance to all four sources of the rust. The slash pine check and families 2907-4 and 4410-5 were highly susceptible to all rust sources.

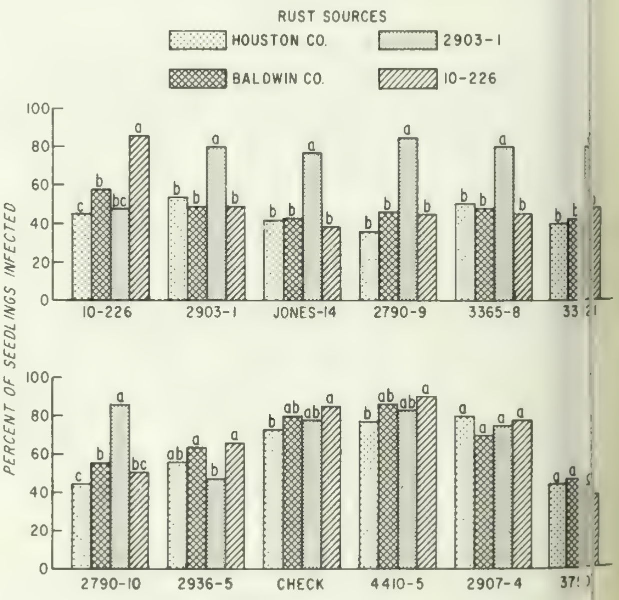


Figure 1.--Average percentages of infection produced by 4 rust sources on 12 slash pine families. Within families, means with the same letter do not differ significantly at the 0.05 level.

There were also highly significant differences between average percentages of infection produced by the four different sources of the rust. The family-specific collection from 2903-1 caused an average of 72% infection, significantly more than any other isolate. The family-specific collection from family 10-226 produced 60% infection, while isolates from Baldwin and Houston counties caused 57% and 54%, respectively.

Interactions among host families and rust collections were highly significant. Infection ranged from 36% on family 2790-9 inoculated with the Houston County isolate to 91% on family 4410-5 inoculated with the family-specific isolate from 10-226. Some striking interactions were produced when the family-specific isolates were utilized to inoculate the seedlings of the families from which the spores were originally collected. For example, family-specific isolate 2903-1 produced 80% infection when used to inoculate seedlings of that family, but it infected only 48% of the seedlings of family 10-226. Conversely, family-specific isolate 10-226 infected 86% of that family, while only infecting 49% of the seedlings from family 2903-1.

DISCUSSION

Family 10-226 has been one of the most rust-resistant slash pine selections in southern tree improvement work. Its resistance has held up in many field test plantings in eastern Georgia, but at one location in central Georgia (Baldwin County) it appeared to be susceptible. The results from the artificial inoculations in our study confirm the field observations. The rust collected from Baldwin County was significantly more virulent on family 10-226 than that from Houston County, one of the highest disease hazard areas in Georgia according to the Fusiform Rust Incidence Survey (Phelps 1973). These results indicate the need for extreme caution in the selection and deployment of sources of resistance in large scale plantings, and particularly emphasizes the potential danger of single-family plantings and the need for information on the relative virulence of the pathogen in a specific area.

Family-specific collections from families 2903-1 and 10-226 again confirm that aeciospores collected from susceptible members of a generally resistant progeny show an increase in virulence when they are used to reinoculate seedlings of the family from which they are collected. The percentage increase in infection was quite sizeable in both cases (48%). However, these results were from artificial inoculations which are probably more severe than natural infection in the field, and do not indicate that increases of this magnitude would occur in nature. They do indicate, as have other studies, that increased virulence of the rust population in a given area could be expected if specific sources of resistance were utilized for more than one generation (Powers et al. 1978, Snow et al. 1976). Therefore, in the deployment of resistant seedlings, it is very important to know the source of the resistance. For example, slash pine selection 2903-1 was a seedling from the cross Jones 14 x Jones 11, with Jones 14 providing the resistance. Our inoculation results show that the family-specific rust isolate from 2903-1 is highly virulent on both the selection from which it was derived, and its parental source of resistance. These results also demonstrate that family-specific rust collections can be useful in tracing sources of resistance back to parental material, and in detecting similarities in sources of resistance. They also indicate that family-specific rust collections do not necessarily increase in virulence on only one specific family, but may be more virulent on all families sharing a common type of resistance.

The possibility of using inoculation tests to identify different types of genetic resistance was suggested by Dinus et al. (1975). This type of approach was recently used by Griggs and Walkinshaw (1982) to demonstrate at least two types of resistance. At least four other families included in this study (2790-9, 2797-10, 3302-21 and 3365-8) seem to have the same type of resistance as 2903-1 and Jones-14, since the infection patterns are almost identical (fig. 1). None of these families, however, were derived from Jones 14.

It is very important to consider interactions between family and rust sources when evaluating the inoculation results from this study, since most families were either resistant or intermediate in resistance to most isolates while susceptible to at least one isolate. Only one of the families was resistant to all isolates (3750-7), and only one was susceptible to all isolates (4410-5). These results indicate at least three, and possibly four, types of resistance among these families: 1) Jones-14, 2) 10-226, 3) 3750-7, and 4) possibly 2936-5. The 3750-7 selection may contain a combination of the Jones 14 and the 10-226 type resistance rather than a different type.

Our results indicate that we need to know much more about the sources of resistance of various selections of slash pine available for tree improvement work in the Southeast. While many individual selections in orchards across the South provide resistance, several of these may derive their resistance from a common base. Those with common resistance should not be used in successive generations of reforestation in the same area because of the probability of an increase in virulence in the rust population of that area. Information on sources of resistance is therefore essential in making decisions regarding deployment of resistant pines.

LITERATURE CITED

Dinus, R. J., G. A. Snow, A. G. Kais, and C. H. Walkinshaw.
1975. Variability of *Cronartium fusiforme* affects resistance breeding strategies. Proceedings of the 13th Southern Forest Tree Improvement Conference. p. 193-196.

Griggs, Margene M., and Charles H. Walkinshaw.
1982. Diallel analysis of genetic resistance to *Cronartium quercuum* f. sp. *fusiforme* in slash pine. Phytopathology 72:816-818.

Hicks, C. R.
1964. Fundamental concepts in the design of experiments, Holt, Rinehart, and Winston, New York. 263 p.

Matthews, F. R. and S. J. Rowan.
1972. An improved method for large-scale inoculations of pine and oak with *Cronartium fusiforme*. Plant Dis. Rep. 56: 931-934.

Phelps, W. R.
1973. Fusiform rust incidence survey for 1971-1973. U.S. Dep. Agric., For. Serv., Southeast. Area State and Priv. For. 69 p.

Powers, H.R. Jr., F. R. Matthews, and L. D. Dwi
1977. Evaluation of pathogenic variability o *Cronartium fusiforme* on loblolly pine in th southern USA. Phytopathology 67:1403-1407.

Powers, H. R. Jr., F. R. Matthews, and L. D. Dwinell.
1978. The potential for increased virulence of *Cronartium fusiforme* on resistant loblol pine. Phytopathology 68:808-810.

Powers, H. R. Jr., R. A. Schmidt, and G. A. Sno
1981. Current status and management of fusif rust on southern pines. Ann. Rev. Phytopat 19:353-371.

Schmidt, Robert A., Harry R. Powers, Jr., and Glenn A. Snow.
1981. Application of genetic disease resistance for the control of fusiform rust in intensively managed southern pine. Phytopathology 71(9):993-997.

Snow, G. A., R. J. Dinus, and A. G. Kais.
1975. Variation in pathogenicity of diverse sources of *Cronartium fusiforme* on selected slash pine families. Phytopathology 65: 170-175.

Snow, G. A., R. J. Dinus, and C. H. Walkinshaw.
1976. Increase in virulence of *Cronartium fusiforme* on resistant slash pine. Phytopathology 66:511-513.

PERFORMANCE AND G-E INTERACTIONS OF SYCAMORE ESTABLISHED FROM CUTTINGS AND SEEDLINGS[1]

Samuel B. Land, Jr.[2]

Abstract.--Both unrooted cuttings and bare-root 1-0 seedlings from eight open-pollinated sycamore families were planted together at one site in Mississippi. After seven years seedlings provided 16% better survival, 59% greater stem volume per acre, and 5% fewer multiple-stem trees than cuttings. Performance of both seedlings and cuttings increased as diameter of the propagule increased, indicating that only seedlings greater than 5/16-inch root collar diameter or cuttings greater than ½-inch basal diameter should be used in field plantings. Family differences at age seven for the combined performance of seedlings and cuttings were significant for survival, percent multiple-stem trees, height, and stem volume per acre. However, family ranks differed greatly between types of planting stock and resulted in significant G-E interactions. These interactions should be considered in sycamore tree improvement programs.

INTRODUCTION

Artificial regeneration with vegetative propagules of genetically superior clones can result in greater genetic gains than regeneration with open-pollinated seedlings from the same clones. However, poor survival and growth of unrooted cuttings and the high cost per propagule for rooted cuttings have offset this genetic-gain advantage for most forest tree species. In the southeastern United States only eastern cottonwood (Populus deltoides Bartr.) is being successfully established in commercial plantations with unrooted cuttings.

American sycamore (Platanus occidentalis L.) can be established with unrooted cuttings (Farmer 1974, McAlpine et al. 1972, Steinbeck and McAlpine 1973), but conflicting reports have arisen concerning the field performance of cuttings as compared with seedlings. Garrett (1975) reported no difference in growth between seedlings and cuttings, while others (Briscoe 1973, McAlpine 1965, Saucier 1977) have observed poorer survival and slower growth of cuttings than seedlings. [illegible] of these studies used cuttings from a cutting production nursery, as is done for cottonwood, but rather utilized cuttings taken directly from seedlings. The purposes of the present study are (i) to quantify the long-term effects on field performance of using seedlings versus unrooted cuttings from a cutting production nursery for plantation establishment, (ii) to determine the effect of seedling or cutting diameter on that performance, (iii) to learn if the size and part of the original seedling ortet used for cuttings to plant the cutting production nursery will have any effect on field performance of cuttings harvested from the nursery, and (iv) to determine if genotype-by-environmental (G-E) interactions exist with type of planting stock. The presence of such interactions would be an important consideration in any sycamore genetic improvement program where artificial regeneration with unrooted cuttings might be used.

---

[1] Paper presented at Second Biennial Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Associate Professor, Department of Forestry, Mississippi State University, P. O. Drawer FR, Mississippi State, MS 39762. Contribution No. 5315 of the Mississippi Agricultural and Forestry Experiment Station.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Open-pollinated seed from eight trees scattered throughout the Gulf South were used (Table 1). Cuttings for establishment of a cutting production nursery were obtained as follows. First, seedlings were grown for one year in a nursery in 1973, lifted in the winter of 1973-74, and graded into three size classes: (i) "small" was less than 5/16-inch root collar diameter, (ii) "medium" was 5/16 to ½-inch diameter, and (iii) "large" was greater than ½-inch diameter. Each seedling was then cut off at the root collar, and the above-ground portion was divided into halves to give a basal cutting and a top cutting. These cuttings were planted as six treatments per family (three seedling sizes times two parts per seedling) in the cutting production nursery during March, 1974. Actual cuttings for the field study were taken one year later from the above-stump portions, or "wands", of the resulting rootstock plants in that nursery. The wands were cut in February, 1975, and the basal and terminal 12 inches on each wand were used. During 1974 a new crop of 1-0 seedlings was raised in the nursery, lifted, and graded into the three size classes already described. These seedlings were used for the same field planting as the cuttings.

Table 1.--Mother-tree locations of eight open-pollinated families used in the study.

Family I.D.	State	County or Parish	Latitude	Long.
A-1-2	Alabama	Marengo	32°16'N	87°55'W
B-2-1	Louisiana	Washington	30°45'N	89°50'W
G-2-7	Mississippi	Bolivar	33°34'N	91°09'W
H-1-1	Arkansas	Phillips	34°36'N	90°36'W
N-2-1	Mississippi	Jefferson	31°47'N	91°15'W
O-2-2	Louisiana	Catahoula	31°49'N	91°52'W
S-2-4	Arkansas	Grant	34°14'N	92°33'W
T-1-4	Mississippi	Marshall	34°35'N	89°28'W

The field study was planted in a split-plot design with the whole units (families) arranged in randomized complete blocks. There were four blocks, or replications. Subunits consisted of 15 types of planting stock, with each type represented by a single-tree plot within the family whole-unit plot. The 15 planting-stock types included three seedlings (small, medium, and large) and 12 unrooted cuttings (six treatments from the cutting production nursery times two parts of the wand). All propagules were planted at a ten-foot by ten-foot spacing in April, 1975, on an old-field site having a Stough fine sandy loam in Oktibbeha County, Mississippi (33°18' North latitude, 88°45' West longitude).

The diameter at the large end of each cutting and the root collar diameter of each seedling were measured before planting. Survival, number of stems per tree, and height were measured one, three, five, and seven years after planting. Diameter at breast height (DBH) was taken at years three, five, and seven. The stem volume per tree was calculated from the following equation[3/]:

$$\text{Stem volume} = -5.0525 + 0.86139 \times \ln(\text{DBH}^2 \times \text{Ht.})$$

where: stem volume is in cubic feet,
DBH is in inches, and
Ht. is in feet.

Stem volume yield per acre was then determined from the volume per tree, number of trees per acre at ten-foot by ten-foot spacing, and percent survival.

Effects of the 15 types of planting stock on seventh-year survival, percent multiple stems, DBH, height, and stem volumes were tested by orthogonal comparisons in an analysis of variance on plot means, where plots represented eight trees (one from each family). Percent survival and percent multiple-stem living trees were transformed by the arcsin-square-root transformation before analysis. Family and G-E interaction effects were tested on plot means for five planting-stock types: (i) seedlings and (ii-v) four types of cuttings (two positions on the wand times two positions on the original seedling used for the nursery rootstock).

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Effects of Type and Size of Planting Stock

Unrooted Cuttings

Cuttings taken from the basal 12 inches of the wand produced seven-year-old trees having significantly greater survival, DBH, height, stem volume per tree, and stem volume per acre than cuttings obtained from the top 12 inches of the wand (Table 2). Only the percentage of living trees having multiple stems was unaffected by cutting position within the wand. Basal wand cuttings produced 83 percent more yield in stem volume per acre at age seven than did top cuttings.

[3/] Equation developed by the author from destructive sampling at the planting site for a Department of Energy subcontract with Oak Ridge National Laboratory.

Seventh-year survival, growth, and yield from all types of cuttings were directly related to the diameter of the cutting at the time of planting, with larger diameters giving higher performance (Figure 1). Cuttings from the base of the wand were significantly larger in diameter than those from the top, and when adjusted for differences in size (Table 2) the significant differences for many of the seven-year traits were removed. If unrooted cuttings are to be used for establishment of sycamore plantations, basal diameters of the cuttings should be one-half to three-quarters inch in size.

The nature of the original cuttings used to establish the rootstock in the cutting-production nursery had little effect on the field performance of wand cuttings (Tables 3 and 4). However, there was some evidence that the average diameter of the wand cuttings would be less for rootstocks derived from the tops of seedlings and from small seedlings than for rootstocks coming from the base of the seedling's stem or from large seedlings. Therefore, basal cuttings from seedlings with greater than 5/16-inch root collar diameter should be used to establish nursery rootstocks, in order that subsequent cutting production can be maximized.

Seedlings

Differences between small seedlings (less than 5/16-inch root-collar diameter), medium seedlings (5/16 to ½ inch), and large seedlings (greater than ½-inch diameter) were not significant at the 0.05 significance level for seventh-year traits (Table 5). However, the difference between small seedlings and the two large sizes fell close to significance for DBH, stem volume per tree, and stem volume yield per acre. Large seedlings produced 30-percent more stem volume per acre than the small seedlings.

Significant positive relationships were obtained when seventh-year DBH and stem volume per acre were regressed on seedling root-collar diameter (Figure 1). Similar regressions for stem volume per tree and for survival were close to being significant (probability level between 0.05 and 0.08). Therefore, only seedlings with root collar diameters greater than 5/16 inch should be used for seedling planting programs. This conclusion agrees with earlier recommendations of Nugent (1971).

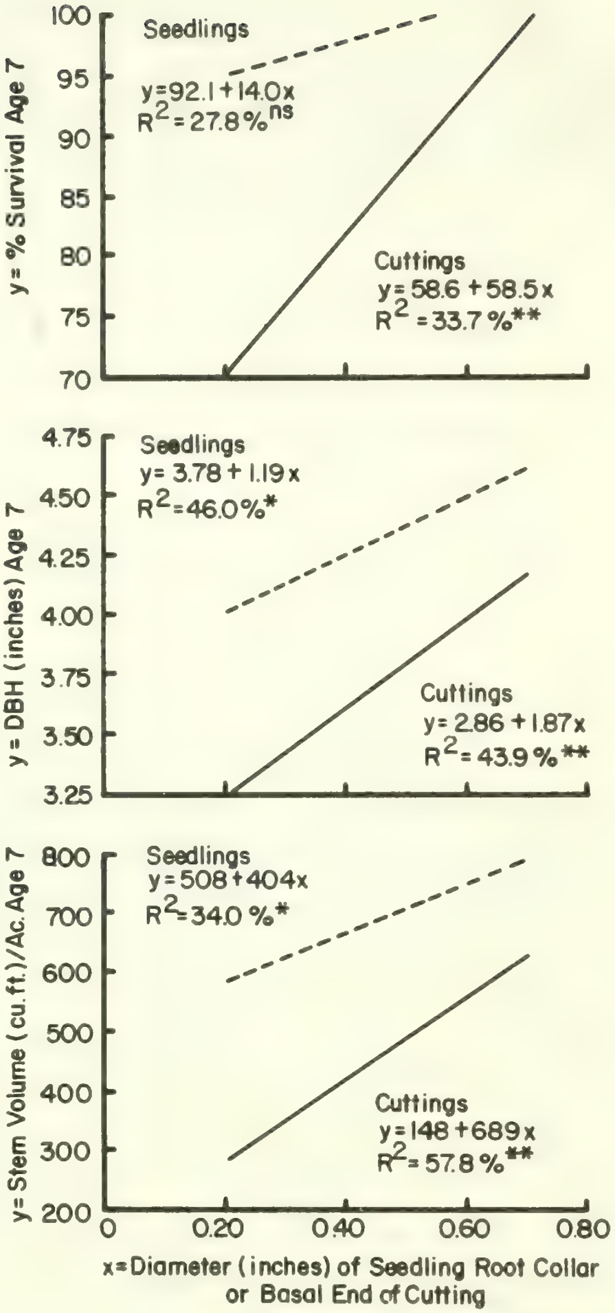


Figure 1.--Linear regression relationships between the diameter of the seedling or unrooted cutting and seventh-year survival, DBH, and stem volume per acre.

Table 2.--Means and significance of differences for performance of cuttings from the base and top of a wand.

Type of Propagule Planted	At Planting Time	7 Years After Planting					
	Diameter (inches)	Survival (%)	Mult.-Stem Trees (%)	DBH (inches)	Height (feet)	Stem Vol. (cu.ft.) Per Tree	Stem Vol. (cu.ft.) Per Acre
Cuttings from:							
Base of Wand	0.58	94	9	3.9	30.8	1.35	553
Top of Wand	0.24	71	5	3.3	28.8	0.98	303
F-test significance levels[1] for wand basal cuttings vs. wand top cuttings:							
(1) Unadjusted	(.000)**	(.014)*	(.102)	(.015)*	(.033)*	(.016)*	(.012)*
(2) Adjusted[2]	--	(.433)	(.507)	(.033)*	(.095)	(.012)*	(.142)

Table 3.--Means and significance of differences for performance of cuttings from rootstocks originally derived from three size classes of seedlings.

Type of Propagule Planted	At Planting Time	7 Years After Planting					
	Diameter (inches)	Survival (%)	Mult.-Stem Trees (%)	DBH (inches)	Height (feet)	Stem Vol. (cu.ft.) Per Tree	Stem Vol. (cu.ft.) Per Acre
Original cuttings for nursery rootstock from:							
Small Seedlings	0.38	84	5	3.5	29.7	1.14	424
Medium Seedlings	0.40	82	11	3.6	29.3	1.10	410
Large Seedlings	0.44	81	5	3.8	30.4	1.25	449
F-test significance levels[1] for cuttings from small seedlings vs. cuttings from (medium+large) seedlings							
(1) Unadjusted	(.105)	(.496)	(.309)	(.364)	(.834)	(.693)	(.843)
(2) Adjusted[2]	--	(.839)	(.334)	(.996)	(.825)	(.770)	(.840)
F-test significance levels for cuttings from medium seedlings vs. cuttings from large seedlings:							
(1) Unadjusted	(.081)	(.339)	(.066)	(.566)	(.360)	(.458)	(.613)
(2) Adjusted[2]	--	(.559)	(.200)	(.861)	(.586)	(.839)	(.883)

---

[1] Actual probability level for F-test is shown in parentheses. Significance at the 0.05 probability level is designated by '*', and significance at the 0.01 level is indicated by '**'.

[2] Adjusted by covariance analysis for the diameter at time of planting.

Table 4.--Means and significance of differences in performance of cuttings from rootstocks originally derived from the base of seedlings versus those from the top of seedlings.

Type of Propagule Planted	At Planting Time	7 Years After Planting					
	Diameter (inches)	Survival (%)	Mult.-Stem Trees (%)	DBH (inches)	Height (feet)	Stem Vol. (cu.ft.) Per Tree	Stem Vol. (cu.ft.) Per Acre
Original cuttings for nursery rootstock from:							
Base of seedling	0.43	82	6	3.7	29.8	1.18	429
Top of seedling	0.39	82	8	3.6	29.8	1.15	426
F-test significance levels[1] for seedling basal cuttings vs. seedling top cuttings:							
(1) Unadjusted	(.028)*	(.959)	(.754)	(.434)	(.920)	(.484)	(.888)
(2) Adjusted[2]	--	(.970)	(.866)	(.530)	(.247)	(.731)	(.718)

Table 5.--Means and significance of differences for performance of seedlings from three size classes.

Type of Propagule Planted	At Planting Time	7 Years After Planting					
	Diameter (inches)	Survival (%)	Mult.-Stem Trees (%)	DBH (inches)	Height (feet)	Stem Vol. (cu.ft.) Per Tree	Stem Vol. (cu.ft.) Per Acre
Small Seedlings	0.22	94	3	4.0	30.5	1.41	581
Medium Seedlings	0.42	100	3	4.4	31.6	1.62	703
Large Seedlings	0.64	100	0	4.5	32.3	1.73	753
F-test significance levels[1] for small seedlings vs. (medium + large seedlings):							
(1) Unadjusted	(.000)**	(.182)	(.718)	(.064)	(.090)	(.075)	(.069)
(2) Adjusted[2]	--	(.896)	(.455)	(.568)	(.494)	(.618)	(.656)
F-test significance levels for medium seedlings vs. large seedlings:							
(1) Unadjusted	(.000)**	(1.000)	(.391)	(.103)	(.298)	(.291)	(.291)
(2) Adjusted[2]	--	(1.000)	(.555)	(.308)	(.243)	(.371)	(.371)

[1] Actual probability level for F-test is shown in parentheses. Significance at the 0.05 probability level is designated by '*', and signficance at the 0.01 level is indicated by '**'.

[2] Adjusted by covariance analysis for the diameter at time of planting.

Seedlings versus Unrooted Cuttings

Seven-year-old trees established from seedlings (three sizes combined) had a significantly lower percentage of multiple stems and greater survival, DBH, height, stem volume per tree, and stem volume per acre than trees planted as unrooted cuttings (12 cutting treatments combined) (Table 6). These differences can be attributed, in part, to the poor performance of the top cuttings (Figures 2 and 3). Some of the superiority of seedlings over unrooted cuttings can be removed by using only large diameter cuttings, but for equivalent root-collar diameters the seedlings are always better than the cuttings (Figure 1).

Almost all of the mortality occurred in the first year (Figure 2). Weed competition probably contributed to the lower survival of cuttings than of seedlings. The initial height advantage of the seedlings over the cuttings helped to keep leaves above the weeds during intervals between cultivations. This height advantage also allowed the seedlings to be more easily seen by tractor operators, thereby reducing the risk of mechanical damage during cultivation.

Multiple-stem trees usually contained two stems. The percent multiple-stem trees decreased with age for both seedlings and cuttings, as one stem gained dominance. However, trees still having multiple stems by age seven will probably remain that way throughout longer rotations. The greater percentage of multiple-stem trees from cuttings than from seedlings may result in poorer stem quality and greater harvesting problems at the end of the rotation.

Stem volume yields per acre at age seve were 59 percent greater (679 versus 428 cu. ft. per acre) for a plantation established wit seedlings (three sizes combined) at a 10-foot b 10-foot spacing than for a similar plantatio established with unrooted cuttings (12 type combined). When only basal cuttings from th wands were used in the comparison, the yiel differential between seedling and cuttin propagation methods was 23 percent (679 versu 553 cu. ft. per acre). Such differences i yield indicate that use of unrooted cuttings i sycamore planting programs will only b justified for genetically improved stock, wher the genetic gain would be at least 23 percen better than what would be obtained with improve seedlings. These additional gains would have t come from use of (i) non-additive geneti variation, for which we presently have n information, and/or (ii) G-E interactions wit type of planting stock.

Family Effects and G-E Interactions

The mother-tree families differed significantly for seventh-year survival, percent multiple-stem trees, height, and stem volume yield per acre, but not for DBH or stem volume per tree (Table 7). However, the significant yield differences among families cannot be attributed wholly to survival differences. Family means in Table 7 indicate that DBH and stem volume per tree, even though not significantly different among families, contributed to the family differences in yield. Significance of these yield differences was primarily due to families S-2-4 and O-2-2, which had both poorer than average survival and low stem volume per tree. The best family for yield per acre, H-1-1, produced 12 percent more volume than the average for all eight families.

Table 6.--Means and significance of differences in performance for seedlings versus unrooted cuttings.

Type of Propagule Planted	At Planting Time Diameter (inches)	7 Years After Planting Survival (%)	Mult.-Stem Trees (%)	DBH (inches)	Height (feet)	Stem Vol. (cu.ft.) Per Tree	Stem Vol. (cu.ft.) Per Acre
Seedlings	0.42	98	2	4.3	31.4	1.59	679
Cuttings	0.41	82	7	3.6	29.8	1.17	428
F-test significance levels[1] for seedlings vs cuttings:							
(1) Unadjusted	(.206)	(.003)**	(.024)*	(.004)**	(.024)*	(.011)**	(.008)**
(2) Adjusted[2]	--	(.038)*	(.033)*	(.032)*	(.113)	(.052)*	(.048)*

[1] Actual probability level for F-test is shown in parentheses. Significance at the 0.05 probability level is designated by '*', and signficance at the 0.01 level is indicated by '**'.

[2] Adjusted by covariance analysis for the diameter at time of planting.

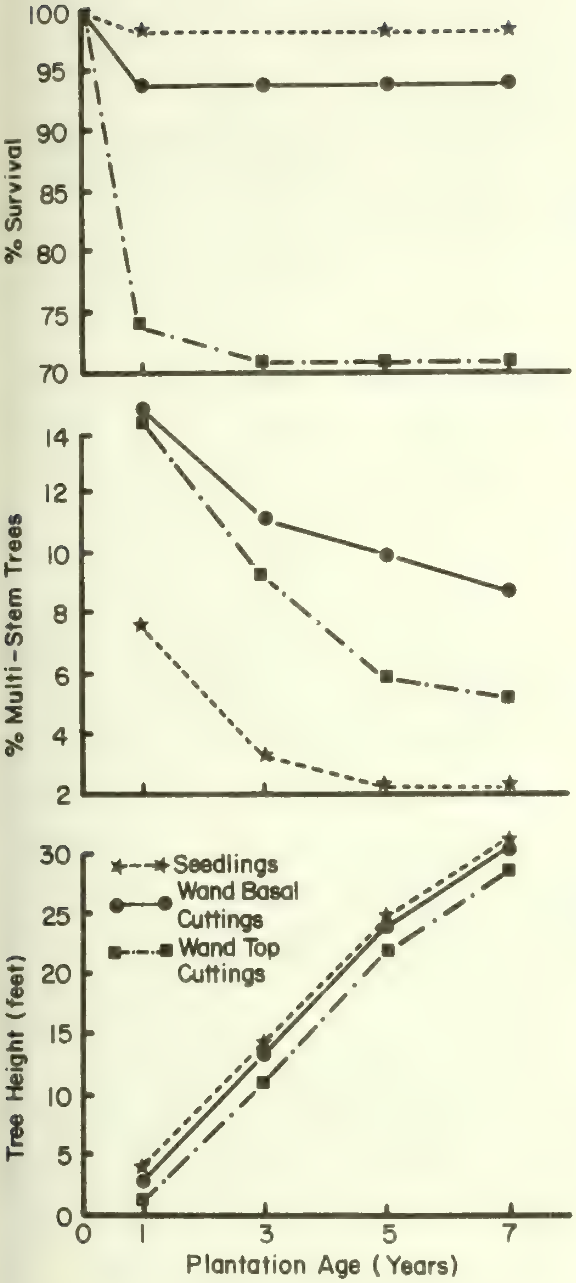


Figure 2.--Survival, percent multiple-stem trees, and mean height of trees during the first seven years following establishment with either seedlings or cuttings.

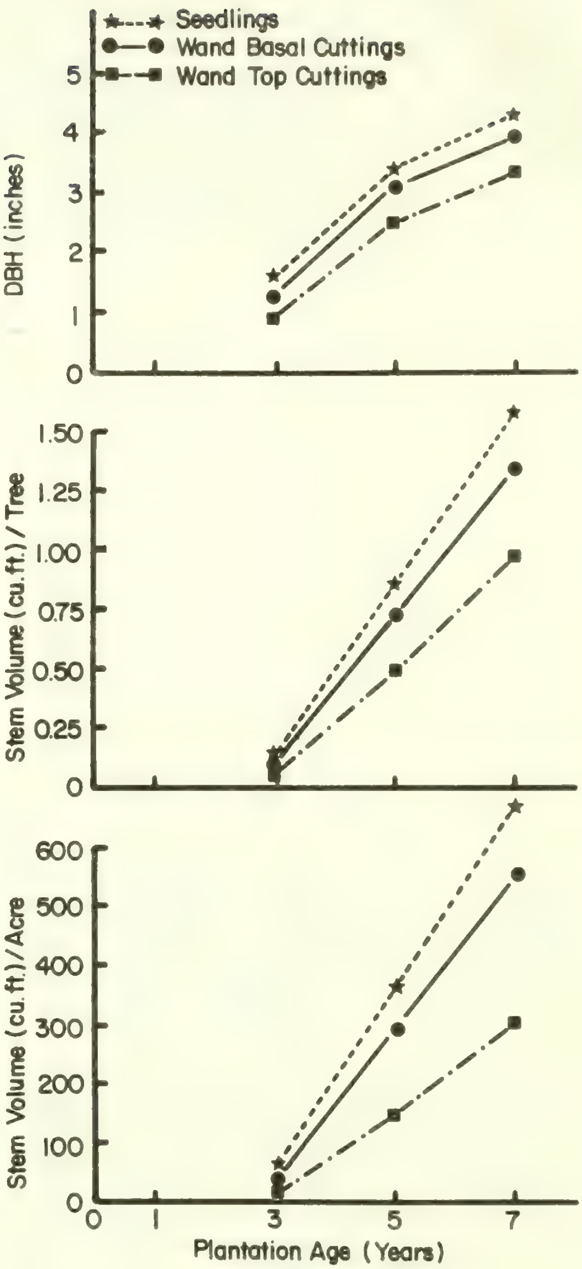


Figure 3.--DBH and stem volume of trees during the first seven years following establishment with either seedlings or cuttings.

Table 7.--Family means and significance of family variation for seventh-year field performance of seedlings and cuttings combined.

	Measurements after 7 Growing Seasons					
					Stem Volume (cu.ft.)	
Family	Survival (%)	Multiple Stems (% of live trees)	DBH (in.)	Height (ft.)	Per Tree	Per Acre
A-1-2	90	12	3.8	31.3	1.28	503
B-2-1	91	4	3.7	30.9	1.25	505
G-2-7	92	11	3.8	30.7	1.26	501
H-1-1	85	2	4.0	30.4	1.39	540
N-2-1	87	2	3.9	30.4	1.29	503
O-2-2	85	3	3.6	28.5	1.17	451
S-2-4	73	3	3.4	27.1	1.01	344
T-1-4	83	10	3.9	30.8	1.34	502
Mean	86	6	3.8	30.0	1.25	481
F-test significance levels[1/] for family variation:						
	(.049)*	(.038)*	(.305)	(.043)*	(.214)	(.021)*

[1/] Tests conducted on arcsin of the square root of percent survival or percent multiple stems. Actual probability level for F-test is shown in parentheses. Significance at the 0.05 probability level is designated by '*'.

The lack of significant family differences for DBH and stem volume per tree was a result of large G-E interactions with seedlings versus cuttings, where high family values for one type of planting stock were offset by low values for the other type (Table 8). Significance levels for the interaction were 0.036 for stem volume per tree and 0.072 for DBH.

Family G-E interactions with cuttings taken from the base of the wand versus cuttings taken from the top were observed for survival (Table 9) and stem volume per acre (Table 10). Family A-1-2 was the primary contributor to this interaction, since it was the only family whose top cuttings had better survival than the basal cuttings.

Even though unrooted cuttings usually did not perform as well as seedlings, there were some families where wand basal cuttings were equal to seedlings in performance. Family B-2 produced just as much stem volume per tree a per acre from basal cuttings as from seedlin (Tables 8 and 10). Survival of basal cuttin for family S-2-4 was superior to survival of t seedlings from that family (Table 9).

These examples of G-E interactions provi hope that unrooted cuttings will be a viab alternative to bare-root seedlings in planti programs of some sycamore genotypes. The caus of the interactions are beyond the scope of t present study, but may be related to geneti differences in internal composition, amount and distribution of photosynthates and nutrient at the time of seedling lifting or cuttin harvest. Lee and Oh (1978) have reported tha rooting and growth of transplanted sycamor trees is best when the soluble sugar content i high and moisture content is low.

Table 8.--Family means and significance of G-E interactions for stem volume per tree.

	Type of Propagule Planted			
			Cuttings taken from:	
Family	Seedlings (A)	Cuttings (B)	Wand Base (C)	Wand Top (D)
	------Stem Volume (cu.ft./tree) and (Family Rank)-----			
A-1-2	1.54	1.22	1.34	1.10 (2)
B-2-1	1.39 (8)	1.22	1.47	0.96
G-2-7	1.44 (7)	1.22	1.29	1.14 (1)
H-1-1	1.78 (2)	1.29 (1)	1.56 (1)	1.03
N-2-1	1.59	1.22	1.39	1.05
O-2-2	1.88 (1)	0.99 (7)	1.23 (7)	0.75 (7)
S-2-4	1.55	0.88 (8)	1.08 (8)	0.68 (8)
T-1-4	1.57	1.28 (2)	1.53 (2)	1.03
F-Test Significance	Family x (A vs B) = * (.036 prob. level)		Family x (C vs D) = ns (.447 prob. level)	

Table 9.--Family means and significance of G-E interactions for percent survival.

	Type of Propagule Planted			
			Cuttings taken from:	
Family	Seedlings (A)	Cuttings (B)	Wand Base (C)	Wand Top (D)
	---------Percent Survival and (Family Rank)-----------			
A-1-2	100	88	79 (8)	96 (1)
B-2-1	100	89	96	81 (2)
G-2-7	100	90 (1)	100 (1)	79
H-1-1	100	81	92 (7)	71
N-2-1	100	83	96	71
O-2-2	100	81	96	67
S-2-4	84 (8)	71 (8)	96	46 (8)
T-1-4	100	79	96	63 (7)
F-Test[1/] Significance	Family x (A vs B) = ns (.997 prob. level)		Family x (C vs D) = ** (.003 prob. level)	

[1/] Tests conducted on arcsin of the square root of percent survival.

Table 10.--Family means and significance of G-E interactions for stem volume per acre.

	Type of Propagule Planted			
			Cuttings taken from:	
Family	Seedlings (A)	Cuttings (B)	Wand Base (C)	Wand Top (D)
	------Stem Volume (cu.ft./ac.) and (Family Rank)------			
A-1-2	671	461	456 (7&8)	466 (1)
B-2-1	605 (7)	480 (2)	613	348
G-2-7	629	469	560	378 (2)
H-1-1	775 (2)	482 (1)	619 (2)	344
N-2-1	694	455	583	327
O-2-2	818 (1)	359 (7)	516	202 (7)
S-2-4	557 (8)	291 (8)	456 (7&8)	125 (8)
T-1-4	685	456	640 (1)	273
F-Test Significance	Family x (A vs B) = ns (.142 prob. level)		Family x (C vs D) = * (.012 prob. level)	

CONCLUSIONS

The type of planting stock used to establish a sycamore plantation will affect survival, frequency of multiple stems, growth, and stem volume yield for at least seven years following establishment. Bare-root seedlings will outperform unrooted cuttings. Diameter of seedling or cutting is important, with large seedlings outgrowing small seedlings and large-diameter cuttings from the base of the wand outperforming small cuttings from the top. The size and part (base versus top) of seedling ortets used to establish rootstock in a cutting-production nursery can affect amounts of cuttings eventually harvested, but will have no carry-over effect on field performance of those cuttings.

Family differences and G-E interactions with types of planting stock do exist. In some cases the top ranking families for one type of planting stock are the poorest for another type stock. Even though seedlings usually outperformed unrooted cuttings in the present study, there were families whose large diameter basal cuttings performed just as well as the seedlings. Genotypes with this character must be identified in existing sycamore tree improvement programs, if unrooted cuttings are to provide a viable alternative to seedlings for establishment of sycamore plantations. Such an alternative would be desirable, since it would allow the utilization of non-additive genetic variation for increased genetic gains.

LITERATURE CITED

Briscoe, C. B.
1973. Extended planting seasons for sycam
and cottonwood. So. For. Exp. Stn., US
For. Serv. Res. Note SO-160, 3 p.
Farmer, R. E., Jr.
1974. Vegetative propagation and the genet
improvement of North American hardwood
New Zealand J. For. Sci. 4(2):211-22
Garrett, H. E.
1975. Root initiation and development in syc
more seedlings and cuttings. USDA For. Ser
Tree Plant. Notes 26(3):19-20,29.
Lee, J. S. and K. I. Oh.
1978. On the transplanting time of Platan
occidentalis L. Korean Abstracts 11:2
McAlpine, R. G.
1965. Vegetative propagation methods for har
woods. Proc. Eight So. Conf. For. Tree Imp
Ga. For. Res. Council, Macon, GA. p. 14-2
McAlpine, R. G., D. D. Hook, and P. P. Kormani
1972. Horizontal planting of sycamore cuttin
USDA For. Serv. Tree Plant. Notes 23(2):5-
Nugent, John.
1971. Artificial regeneration research. Pro
Symp. SE Hardwoods, SE Area State and Priv
For., USDA For. Serv. p. 50-55.
Saucier, J. R.
1977. Growth and survival of European bla
alder and sycamore on upland and bottomla
sites. SE For. Exp. Stn., USDA For. Ser
Res. Note SE-248. 6 p.
Steinbeck, Klaus and Robert G. McAlpine.
1973. Furrow planting American sycamore cu
tings. USDA For. Serv. Tree Plant. Not
24(4):22-24.

POLLEN STORAGE METHODS INFLUENCE FILLED SEED YIELDS IN CONTROLLED POLLINATIONS OF LOBLOLLY PINE[1]

Frederick R. Matthews[2] and David L. Bramlett[3]

Abstract.--Four clones of loblolly pine were control-pollinated with fresh pollen and with 3-year-old vacuum-stored and desiccator-stored pollen. Storage treatments did not significantly affect the total number of developed seeds produced per cone. The number of filled seeds per cone and the percent filled seeds per cone were higher after vacuum than after desiccator storage. Rehydration of pollen did not significantly affect total, filled, or percent filled seed yields from controlled pollinations. Vacuum drying of loblolly pine pollen is recommended for long-term storage.

INTRODUCTION

Controlled pollination is an integral part of tree improvement programs; it is used to test progeny of parental selections and to provide future selections for advanced generation breeding. This paper reports total seed and filled seed yields obtained from loblolly pine (Pinus taeda L.) cones produced from controlled pollinations with pollen stored by two methods currently in use at the Southeastern Forest Experiment Station. Most tree breeders are producing enough seeds for their needs, but it is important to pollinate as efficiently and effectively as possible because the operation requires expensive hydraulic lifts and considerable labor. There appears to be considerable room for improvement in the number of seeds produced. For example, the potential number of seeds per loblolly pine cone is about 155 (Bramlett 1974). However, filled seed yields per cone are averaging only 30-35 in many breeding programs.[4] If high yields of filled seeds, e.g., 100 per cone, could be produced consistently, breeding costs would be reduced.

Seed yields from controlled pollination can be influenced by the vigor and viability of pollen, which often must be stored for several years before use. In general, fresh pollen is preferred to stored pollen, but individual pines release pollen at the same time or later than female strobilus receptivity. Thus, unless anthesis of the desired male parent is fortuitously earlier than the selected female parent or the male parent is growing in a more southerly latitude where it would flower earlier (Dorman and Barber 1956), it is usually difficult to use fresh pollen to complete a large number of controlled pollinations. Thus, tree breeders have considerable interest in pollen storage methods. The collection, processing, and storage of pollen has recently been discussed by Sprague and Snyder (1981) and Matthews and Kraus (1981).

METHODS AND MATERIALS

Pollen Collections and Storage

Dehiscing catkins were collected from three clones (538, 573, 579) at the Georgia Forestry Commission's Arrowhead Seed Orchard in Pulaski County, Georgia, in March 1977. The catkins were dried at 32°C and the pollen was extracted and sieved through a 100 mesh screen. The freshly extracted pollen was placed by clone in 4-ounce glass bottles and then loosely capped and temporarily stored over calcium chloride in a desiccator at 2°C. After 4 weeks, the pollen was divided into two storage treatments: (1) Five cc of pollen were placed in each of several ampules and vacuum-dried until moisture content was 2-3 percent (2 hours at 0.05 mm Hg). The ampules were then heat-sealed and stored at 2°C for 3 years: (2) The remainder of the pollen was left in the desiccator at 2°C in the loosely capped 4-ounce glass bottles with each bottle approximately 40 percent filled. Moisture content after 3 years was 6-9 percent. Fresh pollen was collected from the same three clones in 1980.

---

[1] Paper presented at Second Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982

[2] Plant Pathologist, Southeastern Forest Experiment Station, Athens, Georgia

[3] Plant Physiologist, Southeastern Forest Experiment Station, Macon, Georgia

[4] J. R. Sprague, N. C. State University-Industry Cooperative Tree Improvement Program, Raleigh, N. C., personal communication.

Controlled Pollinations

Four Georgia Forestry Commission clones in the Arrowhead Seed Orchard (539, 584, 608, and 632) were selected for female parents. On a single ramet of each clone, 30 branches bearing female strobili were tagged, and one of six controlled pollination treatments was randomly assigned to four branches for each treatment. The branches were enclosed in sausage casing isolation bags on March 18-19, 1980. For a control, six randomly selected branches per tree were not bagged and thus were wind pollinated. For each storage method, pollen was either rehydrated or not rehydrated. Stored pollen has a greater in vitro germination if rehydrated at 100 percent relative humidity for 16 hours before testing (Goddard and Matthews 1981). Treatments were:

TREATMENT NO.	STORAGE METHOD	REHYDRATION
1	Vacuum	Yes
2	Vacuum	No
3	Desiccator	Yes
4	Desiccator	No
5	Fresh	Yes
6	Fresh	No
7	Wind	--

Just prior to pollination, a polymix of each of the three pollen types was made by mixing equal volumes of pollen from each of the three clones. Agar plate testing of rehydrated pollens (Goddard and Matthews 1981) at the time of pollination showed in vitro germination of fresh pollen to be 98 percent, vacuum-stored pollen 94 percent, and desiccator-stored pollen 91 percent.

A cyclone pollinator (Matthews and Bramlett 1981) was used in a single application of 0.50 cc of pollen per bag. Pollinations were made on March 29 and 31, 1980, when the majority of the bagged strobili were at maximum receptivity. Isolation bags were removed 2 weeks after pollination.

Cone Collections and Analysis

All healthy cones were collected in early October 1981 and 10 cones were randomly selecte per treatment for detailed measurements and con analysis. In the cone analysis (Bramlett, et a 1977), all fertile scales were removed and the total number of seeds recorded for each cone. Radiographs were used to determine the number o filled seeds per cone. A total of 274 cones we analyzed. Treatment and clonal mean values wer compared by analysis of variance.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Total Seeds Per Cone

The total number of seeds per cone is a measure of seed setting ability of the cone and indicates the number of ovules pollinated with a least one viable pollen grain. If ovules are unpollinated or if the pollen fails to germinate o the nucellus tissue, the ovule aborts during the first year of development and does not form a seedcoat (Bramlett et al. 1977).

Storage method did not significantly affect the total yield of seeds per cone when the six treatment means were compared (Table 1). Also, the rehydration did not significantly increase the total seed yield within each storage method. Thus, although the rehydration is necessary for in vitro germination tests, it does not appear t be important for controlled pollinations.

Filled Seeds Per Cone

As the total number of seeds per cone is a measure of the number of ovules pollinated with viable pollen grains, the number of filled seeds per cone is a measure of the number of seeds containing an embryo and gametophyte tissue (occasi ally seeds may have gametophyte tissue without a embryo). Since only filled seeds are capable of germinating to produce seedlings, this is the most important measure of successful pollination procedures. If fertilization fails to occur, or if the embryo aborts soon after fertilization, then the gametophyte tissue does not develop. Th seedcoat, however, is full size at the time of fertilization and abortion of the embryo and gametophyte leaves an empty seed or "pop". In this study, filled seed yields were significantl reduced when desiccator-stored pollen was used (Table 2). Both the vacuum-stored and fresh pollen produced very high filled seed yields per cone. The desiccator-stored pollen, however, only produced about one half the number of filled seeds per cone, averaging 45 to 52 seeds per cone compared to 97 to 99 filled seeds per cone with vacuum-stored pollen and 100 to 103 filled seeds per cone with fresh pollen.

Table 1.--Total seed yields per cone from loblolly pine cones control-pollinated with rehydrated and nonrehydrated vacuum-stored, desiccator-stored, or fresh pollen

GFC CLONE NO.	POLLEN STORAGE METHOD						WIND
	VACUUM		DESICCATOR		FRESH		
	REHYD.	NONREHYD.	REHYD.	NONREHYD.	REHYD.	NONREHYD.	
	Total Seed/Cone						
539	114	117	109	104	98	109	121
584	120	122	109	114	135	116	124
632	131	99	141	92	120	132	155
608	117	113	124	99	114	122	128
MEAN[1]	121 a	113 a	120 a	103 a	117 a	120 a	132

[1] Means not designated with the same letter are significantly different at the 0.05 level of probability by Duncan's New Multiple Range Test. Wind-pollinated cones were not included in the analysis.

Table 2.--Number and percent filled seeds per cone from loblolly pine cones control pollinated with rehydrated and nonrehydrated vacuum-stored, desiccator-stored, or fresh pollen

GFC CLONE NO.	POLLEN STORAGE METHOD												WIND	
	VACUUM				DESICCATOR				FRESH					
	REHYD.		NONREHYD.		REHYD.		NONREHYD.		REHYD.		NONREHYD.			
	Filled Seed/Cone													
	No.	%	No.	%	No.	%	No.	%	No.	%	No.	%	No.	%
539	109	95	112	95	55	50	55	53	92	93	102	93	114	94
584	103	84	110	90	45	38	46	40	122	90	104	89	110	88
632	83	64	78	79	56	40	27	30	90	75	99	75	106	69
608	101	86	85	75	51	41	45	45	98	86	108	88	105	81
Mean[1/]	99a	82a	97a	85a	52b	43b	45b	43b	100a	86a	103a	86a	109	83

[1/] Means not designated with the same letter are significantly different at the 0.05 level of probability by Duncan's New Multiple Range Test. Wind-pollinated cones were not included in the analysis.

Percent Filled Seed

The actual number of filled seeds per cone is of the greatest importance to tree breeders, but the ratio of filled seed to total seed or the percentage of filled seeds is frequently used to evaluate overall seed production performance. The percentage of filled seeds rarely approaches 100 percent, even with wind-pollinated cones, because many factors including insect damage, genetic embryo incompatibility, fungi, and physiological stress may cause embryo abortion and empty seeds.

In this study, the pollen storage method significantly affected the percentage of filled seeds (Table 2). The value for 3-year-old desiccator-stored pollen averaged only 43 percent compared to 82-85 percent for vacuum-stored pollen, 86 percent for fresh pollen, and 83 percent for wind pollen. Pollen that was vacuum-stored, desiccator-stored, or freshly collected all had over 90 percent germination in vitro before pollination. Also, the high total seed yields support the view that the pollen was also viable in vivo as no difference was observed in total seed yields per cone. From these observations, we conclude that viable pollen was present in the strobili pollinated with desiccator-stored pollen; yet, healthy embryos were produced in only 43 percent of the ovules.

Two possible explanations for the low percentage of filled seeds depend on the probabilit that the desiccator-stored pollen was viable but had only marginal vigor. Germination of this pollen in the ovule stimulated ovule and seedcoa development but the pollen may not have continue growth the second year to complete fertilization Without fertilization the embryo and gametophyte would abort. Alternatively, fertilization may have occurred with the desiccator-stored pollen, but the embryo may have been too weak to continue development and may have aborted soon after fertilization. Either event would lead to an empty seed.

CONCLUSIONS

This study demonstrates that vacuum storage of loblolly pine pollen is highly effective for at least 3 years. Both the total and filled seed yields per cone following controlled pollination with vacuum-stored pollen were comparable to the seed yields from pollinations with freshly collected pollen. With desiccator-stored pollen, the total seed yield was equal to those with vacuum or fresh pollen sources, but the filled se yield per cone was considerably reduced. The relatively high moisture content of the desiccator-stored pollen could decrease viability by allowin continued pollen metabolism and by promoting detrimental activities of fungal and bacterial contaminants during the storage period. Vacuum drying and storage produce an atmosphere of low moisture and gaseous content, thus decreasing these destructive processes and reducing pollen deterioration (Matthews and Kraus 1981).

There are numerous advantages of a reliable and consistent long-term storage procedure for pine pollen. With properly stored pollen of high viability, only a few isolation bags are needed per cross. As was demonstrated in this study, when vacuum-stored pollen is used, only five or six pollination bags and about 20-25 female strobili should produce more than 1,000 filled seeds per cross. Furthermore, once pollen has been placed in vacuum storage at low moisture content it remains highly viable for at least 5 years so that additional collections are unnecessary.[5] Also, efficient and effective storage and pollination procedures reduce the quantity of pollen to be collected, processed, and stored. A single ampule containing 5 cc of vacuum-stored pollen is adequate for each cross. These procedures can substantially reduce breeding costs by reducing the number of isolation bags and strobili required per cross. In addition, more individual crosses can be completed in a given breeding season, and breeding may begin on younger trees when the number of female strobili is small, thereby accelerating the improvement of southern pines.

LITERATURE CITED

Bramlett, D. L.
1974. Seed potential and seed efficiency. In: J. Kraus (ed.) Seed yield from southern pine seed orchards colloquium proc. Ga. For. Res. Counc. Macon, GA. p. 1-7.

Bramlett, D. L., E. W. Belcher, Jr., G. L. DeBarr, and others
1977. Cone analysis of southern pines. Gen. Tech. Rep. SE-13. U.S.D.A., For. Service. Southeast. For. Exp. Stn., Asheville, NC. 28 p.

Dorman, K. W., and J. C. Barber
1956. Time of flowering and seed ripening in southern pines. U.S.D.A., For. Service, Southeast. For. Exp. Stn., Pap. 72, 15 p.

Goddard, R. E., and F. R. Matthews
1981. Pollen testing. In: E. C. Franklin (ed.) Pollen Management Handbook. U.S.D.A., For. Service, Agric. Handb. No. 587, p. 40-43.

Matthews, F. R., and D. L. Bramlett
1981. Cyclone pollinator improves loblolly pine seed yields in controlled pollinations. Sou. J. Appl. For. 5(1): 42-46.

Matthews, F. R., and J. F. Kraus
1981. Pollen storage. In: E. C. Franklin (ed.) Pollen Management Handbook. U.S.D.A., For. Service, Agric. Handb. No. 587. p. 37-39.

Sprague, J. R., and E. B. Snyder
1981. Extracting and drying pine pollen. In: E. C. Franklin (ed.) Pollen Management Handbook. U.S.D.A., For. Service, Agric. Handb. No. 587. p. 33-36.

---

[5] Data on file U.S. Forest Service, Athens, A.

SIMULATED GROWTH AND YIELD OF SINGLE-FAMILY VERSUS MULTI-FAMILY LOBLOLLY PINE PLANTATIONS[1]

Warren L. Nance[2]

Abstract.--A simulator (PTAEDA) was modified to simulate the growth and yield of loblolly pine plantations established with single families and mixtures of families with different genetic growth potential. The simulations indicate that the yield of mixed plantations may be predictable using the yields of single family plantations combined in an additive model. However, the relative contribution of a family to the total volume in a mixed plantation is less predictable and depends on which families are mixed and in what proportions. Based on these results, mixed plantations probably would not yield more than a single family plantation of the best component family planted on the same site. However, mixed plantations may offer other advantages that could be utilized by forest managers.

INTRODUCTION

The primary goal of loblolly pine (Pinus taeda L.) tree improvement programs is the production of planting stock that is superior to woodsrun stock in growth, form, and resistance to diseases and insects. Forest geneticists have selected and tested many individual trees that exhibited phenotypic superiority in one or more of these traits. The most promising selections have been placed in production seed orchards which currently produce most of the seed used to plant industry and government land as well as a large percentage of that used for private land.

Fundamental questions arise when seed is collected in the orchard. Should seed from each family be collected and maintained separately, or should the seed be bulked without regard to family identity? Should the seed orchard manager, the forest geneticist or the forest manager make the decision? If the decision is to mix families, which ones should be mixed and in what proportion?

In practice, most seed orchard managers bu the seed, producing a complex mixture in which all families are mixed in proportion to the number of seeds they produce. The only factor determining the proportion of each family in th mix is that family's relative seed production i that year. There are many valid arguments against this practice (Gladstone 1980). One o the strongest is that all future options regarding mixing are eliminated in the seed orchard by the mixing. If seed from each famil were collected and kept separate in the orchar then forest managers and geneticists could evaluate different mixing alternatives and choo the most desirable alternative. That strategy could then be executed by mixing (or not mixin) seed or seedlings from different families in planned proportions.

Some managers are collecting and maintaini seed separately for each family in the orchard, and it seems likely that more orchards will ad this approach. Forest managers and geneticists, then, must be able to evaluate various mixing alternatives. However, not enough is known ab the effects of mixing on the growth and yield o loblolly pine plantations to develop optimum mixing strategies. Mixing experiments using loblolly pine seedlings one or two years old ha been reported (Adams et al. 1973, Snyder and All 1971), but results based on seedling growth cannot be extended with confidence to plantatio growth and yield.

A review of the agricultural crop science literature reveals a vast amount of activity in

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Warren L. Nance is Principal Plant Geneticist, Southern Forest Experiment Station, Forest Service--USDA, Gulfport, Mississippi.

regard to mixing different varieties of the same crop, and yet the results are not conclusive enough in most crops to allow crop scientists to choose between mixes or monotypes as a general strategy. There are, however, specific situations that favor mixing. For example, there is a tendency in some crops for mixes to produce more stable yields than monotypes when planted over a range of differing environments (Frey and Maldonado 1967, Allard 1961, Allard and Bradshaw 1964, Jensen 1965, Qualset and Granger 1970, and Simmonds 1962). Also, there is some evidence that the risk to disease loss may be less for mixes than for monotypes (Browning and Frey 1969). Whether or not mixing could provide similar benefits in loblolly pine is unknown.

Perhaps the only way to resolve the mixing controvery is to establish mixing experiments in forest trees similar to those common in crops. Such experiments are being initiated now, but even if they are installed in the field next year, it will take at least 5 to 10 years for meaningful esults to accumulate. Even then, only a small umber of the possible mixing combinations can be ncluded in any field experiment of reasonable ize.

In the interim, the decision to plant single or ulti-family plantations could have far reaching conomic and biological effects, and any insight nto the mixing phenomenon provided by computer imulation could be valuable to forest scientists nd others faced with such decisions. For example, omputer simulations of the growth and yield of ingle family and multi-family plantations of oblolly pine could complement the experimental pproach to the mixing problem by helping cientists evaluate the various field designs that ave been used in crops for applicability to oblolly pine. This could be very helpful in view f the large investment of resources required for mplex, long term experiments in forest trees. mulations could also help managers evaluate the dvantages and disadvantages of mixing during the xt few years before experimental data become ailable.

In this paper, a modified loblolly pine dividual-tree growth and yield model is presented at allows mixing of loblolly pine families with fferent growth potentials in various proportions. classic crop mixing experiment, the DeWit (1960) placement series, is simulated, and from the sults some general insights into the mixing oblem in even-age loblolly pine plantation nagement are developed.

METHODS

The loblolly pine individual tree growth and eld simulator named PTAEDA (Daniels and Burkhart 75) was chosen as a starting point in developing mixing simulator. This simulator was originally veloped for woodsrun plantations, and compares vorably with other growth and yield models in predicting the growth and yield of woodsrun loblolly pine plantations (Daniels et al. 1979). The original, unmodified FORTRAN version was named PTAEDA.

The Original Model.--PTAEDA is described fully in Daniels and Burkhart (1975), including a complete FORTRAN listing. Briefly, the simulator assigns coordinate locations in a stand and "grows" each tree annually. The growth of an individual tree is predicted as a function of the tree's current size, the site quality, and competition from neighbors. Predicted growth increments are then adjusted by adding a stochastic element representing individual-tree genetic and microsite variability. Individual tree mortality is also simulated by the program using the tree's competitive status and size to generate an expected probability of death which is then applied stochastically to the tree. Subroutines to simulate thinning, site preparation, and fertilization operate on the stand by removing trees from the stand, adjusting the response to competition from neighboring trees, or adjusting the site quality respectively.

The growth predictor in PTAEDA is based on certain assumptions regarding the way individual trees within a stand grow in the presence of competition. Basically, it is assumed that growth in height and diameter follows some theoretical growth potential that can only be attained by trees occupying dominant and codominant positions within the stand. An adjustment factor is applied to this expected main canopy growth increment based on a tree's competitive status and vigor -- intermediate and suppressed trees receive large reductions while dominant and codominant trees receive little or no adjustment from the theoretical maximum potential growth.

The expected main canopy annual height growth potential in the stand is given by the following formula:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{PHIN}(A1, A2) &= \mathrm{HD}(A2) - \mathrm{HD}(A1) \qquad (1) \\ &= [(SI)10^{-B(1/A1 - 1/25)}] \\ &\quad -[(SI)10^{-B(1/A2 - 1/25)}] \end{aligned}$$

where:

PHIN(A1, A2) = potential height increment from age A1 to age A2

HD(A1) = predicted mean height of the dominant and codominant trees in the stand at age A1

HD(A2) = predicted mean height of the dominant and codominant trees in the stand at age A2

SI = site index of the stand at index age 25.

B = Form coefficent for the site index curve, equal to -5.86537. The site index curve is assumed to have the form: $\log_{10}(HD) = a + B(1/A)$

This formula can be recognized as simply the first difference with respect to age of the site index curve for the stand. The predicted height growth of an individual tree in the period A1 to A2 is then given by:

$$\mathrm{HIN}(A1,\ A2) = [B_1 + B_2(CR)^{B_3}\ e^{(B_4(CI)+B_5(LC)}] \times \mathrm{PHIN}(A1,\ A2) \qquad (2)$$

where:

HIN(A1, A2) = actual height increment of subject tree from age A1 to age A2.
LC = live crown ratio of subject tree.
CI = competition index of subject tree.
PHIN(A1, A2) = potential height increment from age A1 to age A2.
e = 2.71814
B_1 = 0.54631
B_2 = 124.8635
B_3 = 1.66254
B_4 = -1.15083
B_5 = -6.66226

The competition index (CI) used in the above equation, and elsewhere throughout the program, quantifies competitive stress for individual trees and represents the total effect of competition for scarce resources. The index is a modified form of Hegyi's index (Hegyi 1974) which has the following form:

$$CI_i = \sum_{j=1}^{n} (D_j/D_i)/DIST_{ij} \qquad (3)$$

where:

CI_i = competition index of the ith tree.
D_i = d.b.h. of the subject tree.
D_j = d.b.h. of the jth competing tree.
$DIST_{ij}$ = distance between subject tree and and jth competitor.
n = the number of neighbors falling within a Basal Area Factor 10 angle gauge.

Essentially this index simulates a point sampling (the subject tree being the center point) of all neighboring trees that fall within a BAF 10 prism sweep, weighting the sampled tree's influence as a function of its distance and size relative to the subject tree. The use of a BAF 10 angle gauge is a modification of the original Hegyi index, which used a fixed 10-ft. search radius for competitors.

The maximum diameter attainable for any tree in the stand is assumed to be equal to that attainable for open-grown trees of the same age and height as the subject tree. The following formula, based on a sample of open-grown trees, is used to predict this maximum d.b.h.:

$$\mathrm{DMAX}(A,\ H) = B_1 + B_2H + B_3A \qquad (4)$$

where:

DMAX(A, H) = maximum d.b.h. of open-grown at age A with total height H
H = total height in feet
A = total age in years
B_1 = -2.422297
B_2 = 0.286583
B_3 = 0.209472

The first difference with respect to age o above equation yields the maximum attainable diameter increment for any tree in the stand o height H for any yearly increment A1 to A2 (i. A2-A1=1):

$$\mathrm{PDIN}(A1,A2) = B_1 + B_2(\mathrm{HIN}(A1,A2))$$

where:

PDIN(A1,A2) = predicted maximum potential diameter increment in the pe A1 to A2.
HIN(A1,A2) = predicted actual height incr in the period A1 to A2.
B_1 = 0.209472
B_2 = 0.286583

This potential diameter increment is then adjusted in the following formula to yield the predicted diameter increment for any given tre the stand:

$$\mathrm{DIN}(A1,A2) = [B_1 + B_2(CL)^{B_3} e^{B_4(CI)}] \times \mathrm{PDIN}(A1,A2)$$

where:

DIN(A1, A2) = actual diameter increment of subject tree for period A1 t
PDIN(A1, A2) = maximum potential diameter increment of subject tree fo period A1 to A2.
LC = live crown ratio of subject
CI = competition index of subject tree.
B_1 = 0.08652
B_2 = 0.20178
B_3 = 1.79998
B_4 = -1.32061

Finally, a random or stochastic element is added to both HIN and DIN to simulate individual-tree departures from predicted grow due to microsite and genetic variation.

The modified model.--Of the six growth equations in PTAEDA, the fundamental growth regulator is the "maximum height growth potent of any tree defined by equation 1. This poten for height growth is assumed to be the same fo trees in the woodsrun plantation and is derive from the expected height growth over time for dominant and codominant woodsrun trees on the The controlling parameters of the height growt potential are SI and B of equation 1, which together quantify the site index curve and all the prediction of dominant-codominant height g

Genetic improvement of growth should be reflected in an increase in height growth potential compared to woodsrun. For a given planting site, the expected increase in height growth potential of improved stock should be reflected in either an increase in site index (SI) with respect to woodsrun, or a change in the form of the site index curve (B) compared to that of woodsrun, or both. For example, a given planting site on which woodsrun trees have an expected site index (age 25) of 60 feet might be expected to produce a site index of, for example, 65 feet when planted with an improved family. Likewise, the form coefficient (B) might also be expected to change from -5.86537 (the standard for woodsrun in PTAEDA) to, for example, -4.65, reflecting an accelerated early height growth rate of improved stock compared to woodsrun. revious work (Nance and Wells 1980) has shown that t least for certain types of genetic improvement, oth the site index and the form of the site index urve may be affected.

Of course, other growth components could also e affected by genetic selection. However, the ominant role of equation 1 in PTAEDA suggests that odifications to other components beyond equation 1 ould produce relatively minor additional effects ompared to those brought about by modifying quation 1. In any event, essentially no xperimental data is available to suggest what hanges, if any, would be required in the remaining rowth components.

The situation is more complex when odifications required for the simulation of mixed lantations are considered. First, each family in e mix could have a different height growth otential -- requiring a different SI and B for quation 1 for each family in the plantation. This easily accomplished by the following modification equation 1:

$$PHIN_i(A1,\ A2) = HD_i(A2) - HD_i(A1) \qquad (7)$$

$$= [(SI_i)10^{-B_i(1/\sqrt{A1} - 1/\sqrt{25})}]^{1/}$$

$$-[(SI_i)10^{-B_i(1/\sqrt{A2} - 1/\sqrt{25})}]$$

ere:

$PHIN_i(A1,\ A2)$ = potential height increment from age A1 to age A2 for the ith family.

$HD_i(A1)$ = predicted mean height of dominant and codominant trees of the ith family growing in a pure stand at age A1.

$HD_i(A2)$ = predicted mean height of dominant and codominant trees of the ith family growing in a pure stand at age A2.

SI_i = site index of the ith family in a pure stand on this planting site at index age 25.

B_i = form coefficient for the site index curve of the ith family grown in a pure stand on this planting site. The form of the site index curve is assumed to be: $\log_{10}(HD) = a + B_i(1/\sqrt{A})$

In this equation, trees from different families are given different height growth potentials, and these potentials are determined by the performance of individual families in pure stands on the same site.

A second consideration is the interaction between trees from different families when competing in the same stand. The competition index, as defined in equation 3, dictates an inherent interaction between trees of different sizes but does not specifically allow genotype by genotype interactions beyond that implied by size differences. However, since equation 7 allows the expression of genetic potential in terms of size differences, then the existing competition index equation will automatically produce interactions between families in the stand. In this sense, genetic interaction is accomplished without modifying the competition model. Whether or not families could be expected to interact in more specific ways over and above that brought about by size differences is unknown.

Likewise, it is assumed that the other growth equations in the system do not require direct modification due to their heavy dependence on equation 7. Under the above assumptions, then, the only fundamental modification required in PTAEDA's growth relationships to allow for the simulation of mixed plantings is the substitution of equation 7 for equation 1.

The other modifications to PTAEDA were mainly restricted to subroutine PLANT, and simply involved modifications to vary the number of families to be planted, the number of trees per acre to be planted from each family, and the spatial arrangement one to another within the planting. Of course, numerous modifications were made to other subroutines in PTAEDA to keep up with identity and growth characteristics of each family (i.e., estimates of SI and B in equation 7 for each family) as well as the location and family identity of each tree in the stand. This modified form of PTAEDA was named LOBMIX.

THE SIMULATION EXPERIMENT

The classic approach to mixing experiments in crops is the DeWit (1960) replacement series experiment. In this experimental approach, genetic entities (families, varieties, etc.) are grown in pure stands and in binary mixes where the

---

[1] The addition of the square root operator in this equation is an alternative form of the site index model preferred by the author.

proportion of each entity in the mix is varied systematically -- usually in the three proportions 1:3, 1:1, and 3:1. The results of such experiments allow quantification of the effect of mixing on yields and the prediction of the performance of untested mixes knowing only the monotype performance of the desired components.

The LOBMIX program is capable of simulating a DeWit replacement series experiment in loblolly pine. Basically, it is necessary to estimate the expected performance (i.e., expected SI_i and B_i of equation Ia) of each family grown in pure stands on the prospective planting site. Once these are provided, the program allows mixing of one to ten families in any proportion. The program will then simulate the growth and development of such mixes and provide detailed outputs comparing the relative contribution of each component to the total stand yield.

A hypothetical set of five "families" was chosen as the basic set to be mixed. These families differ in both site index potential and in the form of their site index curves (i.e. $\log_{10}(HD) = a + B(1/\sqrt{A})$) as detailed below:

Family	SI	B
1	68	-2.90
2	70	-2.66
3	67	-2.83
4	66	-2.60
5	58	-2.39

The values for SI and B for each family were suggested by seed source data presented in Nance and Wells (1980).

The ten binary combinations of these five families were simulated in three mixing proportions, 1:3, 1:1, and 3:1. The spacing was 6 x 10 ft. (726 trees per acre), and the trees from each family were randomly assigned to each planting space (i.e., a blend). The growth of the five families in pure stands was also simulated. Hence, there were 35 different simulated stands. The stands were "grown" to age 25 with no thinning, fertilization or site preparation options chosen.

Due to the stochastic components in LOBMIX, each time a particular stand is simulated, different results are obtained. This inherent variation was built into PTAEDA (and hence in LOBMIX) by its developers to simulate natural biological variation in stand development. For this experiment, each simulation of a particular stand was simply labeled a "replicate". Each of the 35 stands was replicated 5 times.

The entire simulation experiment was executed on a small minicomputer and took slightly more than 100 hours of central processor time.

ANALYSES

The volume of each tree in each stand at a
was computed using the following equation (Dan
and Burkhart 1975):

$$V = B_1 + B_2 D^2H$$

where:

V = total stem cubic-foot volume outside b
D = d.b.h. in inches.
H = total height in feet.
B_1 = 0.34864
B_2 = 0.00232

For each of the 35 types of stands, individual
volumes were totaled and subsequently averaged
the five replicates. In addition, total volum
for each family in each stand were also accumu
and averaged over replications.

One question that always arises when deali
with results from mixing experiments is whethe
not the mixed stand yields can be predicted us
only the single family yields of the families
the mix. One approach to this question is to
assume a simple additive model like the follow

$$\hat{V}_{i+j} = (Z_{ij} \times V_{ii}) + (Z_{ji} \times V_{jj})$$

$$= \hat{V}_{ij} + \hat{V}_{ji}$$

where:

$\hat{V}_{i+j}$ = expected volume per acre of a mix
stand of family i with family j.
Z_{ij} = proportion of the mixed stand originally planted with family i.
Z_{ji} = proportion of the mixed stand originally planted with family j.
V_{ii} = volume per acre of a pure stand o
family i.
V_{jj} = volume per acre of a pure stand o
family j.
$\hat{V}_{ij}$ = expected volume per acre of family
mixed with family j expressed over
the entire area occupied by the mixed stand.
$\hat{V}_{ij}$ = expected volume per acre of family
mixed with family i expressed over
the entire area occupied by the mixed stand.

If the model fits, then the yield for any
plantation can be predicted if the pure family
yields of the component families on the same
is known. This idea has considerable practic
utility because in most seed orchards there a
too many families (upwards of 50) to allow tes
of all the binary combinations at just three
proportions (there are 3,825 such mixing combinations with 50 families).

Another central issue is whether or not each family in the mix contributes in the expected proportion toward the total volume. If two families are mixed in the planting ratio of 1:1, then each will contribute equally to the final volume of the mixed stand unless one family has some sort of competitive advantage over the other. Willey and Rao (1981) developed a quantitative measure of the relative "competiveness" of one family towards another in binary mixes, which they called the competition ratio. It is defined as:

$$CR_{ij} = \frac{(V_{ij} \;/\; V_{ii})}{(V_{ji} \;/\; V_{jj})} \; X \; \frac{Z_{ji}}{Z_{ij}} \qquad (10)$$

Where:

CR_{ij} = competitive ratio of family i with respect to family j when family i is planted in proportion Z_{ij} and family j in proportion Z_{ji}.

and all other terms are previously defined.

Values of CR_{ij} above 1 indicate that family i has a competitive advantage over family j. Values of CR_{ij} equal to 1 indicate no competitive dvantage and Cr_{ij} less than 1 indicate a ompetitive disadvantage. Note also that the eciprocal of CR_{ij} is CR_{ji}.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

The average volumes for the 5 pure stands and heir 30 mixing combinations are given in Table 1.

able 1.--Average volumes per acre for pure family and mixed stands after 25 years.

		NON-RECURRENT FAMILY				
RECURRENT FAMILY	RATIO	1	2	3	4	5
	1:3		5967	5676	5619	4978
1	1:1	5863	5924	5693	5737	5033
	3:1		5955	5705	5670	5468
	1:3			5669	5571	5062
2	1:1		5790	5764	5879	5286
	3:1			5874	5712	5489
	1:3				5466	4887
3	1:1			5653	5651	5165
	3:1				5534	5360
	1:3					4898
4	1:1				5428	5088
	3:1					5257
	1:3					
5	1:1					4680
	3:1					

The first question that arises when inspecting these results is whether or not the off diagonal entries (mixed stands) can be predicted using the diagonal entries (pure family stands). Formula 9 of the preceeding section is designed for this purpose.

Although the model looks formidable, it is very simple to apply. For example, the volume of the 1:3 mix of Family 2 with Family 5 in Table 1 is 5,062 cubic feet per acre, and the expected volume per acre for this mix under the assumption of additivity is:

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{V}_{2+5} &= 0.25(5{,}790) + 0.75(4{,}680) \\ &= 1{,}447.5 + 3{,}510 \\ &= 4{,}957.5 \ \text{ cubic feet} \end{aligned}$$

The deviation from additivity (i.e. $V_{i+j} - \hat{V}_{i+j}$) for this case is -104.5 cubic feet. The average deviation for the 30 combinations in Table 1 is -18.63 cubic feet with a standard deviation of 96.52 cubic feet and a maximum deviation of 270 cubic feet. The Family 1 by Family 2 mixes consistently produced more volume than expected, whereas the Family 1 by Family 5 mix produced less than expected. Overall, though, the additive model fits quite well, with an R^2 for prediction of 0.91.

At least for these results, then, all the mixed stand yields could be predicted within the indicated error rate using only the single family yields. Moreover, the yield of any binary mix in any proportion could be predicted with this model under the assumption that additivity holds. Finally, the yield of mixes involving more than 2 families in any proportion could also be predicted under the same assumption. Such extensions of the additive model would necessarily require large amounts of empirical evidence.

Another interesting question is whether or not each family contributed as expected to the total volume of the mixed stand. Using equation 9 and the above example, the expected contribution of Family 2 and Family 5 to the total volume of the mixed stand (i.e., V_{25} and V_{52}) is 1,447.5 and 3,510 cubic feet, respectively. The actual contribution was 2,038 and 3,024 respectively, indicating that in this particular mix, Family 2 fared much better than expected and Family 5 much worse than expected. This outcome might be expected, considering the very large difference in site index potential between these two families.

Applying equation 10 to assess the competitive advantage of Family 2 versus Family 5 yields:

$$CR_{25} = \frac{(2{,}038/5{,}790)}{(3{,}024/4{,}680)} \; X \; \frac{0.75}{0.25}$$

$$= 1.63$$

which indicates that Family 2 is indeed expressing a high degree of competitive advantage over Family 5.

The competitive ratios for all the simulated stands is given in Table 2. Family 5 is clearly at a competitive disadvantage when mixed with any other family in the set, especially Family 2. The competitive advantage of Family 2 over Family 5 is expressed most strongly in the mixes where Family 5 is contributing less than 50 percent of the trees -- the CR_{25} values are 1.63, 1.43, and 1.27 for 1:3, 1:1, and 3:1 mixtures of Family 2 with Family 5. This is apparently due to the trees from the more competitive Family 2 competing against one another more often as the mixing proportion is increased. This trend in competition ratios, however, is not consistent for mixtures involving families other than Family 5.

Table 2.--Competition ratios for components of mixed stands after 25 years.

RECURRENT FAMILY	RATIO	NON-RECURRENT FAMILY 1	2	3	4	5
	1:3		0.83	1.04	1.11	1.23
1	1:1	1.00	0.93	0.99	0.98	1.31
	3:1		0.74	1.01	0.84	1.15
	1:3			1.31	1.11	1.63
2	1:1		1.00	1.12	1.28	1.43
	3:1			1.27	1.33	1.27
	1:3				1.05	1.39
3	1:1			1.00	0.77	1.32
	3:1				0.73	1.14
	1:3					1.51
4	1:1				1.00	1.42
	3:1					1.29
	1:3					
5	1:1					1.00
	3:1					

Those stands representing a mixture wherein one family has a strong competitive advantage over another might be expected to exhibit large size differences between trees from the two families. One way to quantify such a comparison is to compute a ratio of the average volumes per tree for each family in the mix, as shown in Table 3. These ratios illustrate the marked size differential brought about by the differences in growth potential within a mixed stand. In the 1:3 mix of Family 2 with Family 5 for example, the surviving trees of Family 2 were almost twice as large in terms of individual tree volumes as those from Family 5.

Table 3.--Relative size of trees from each fam in mixed stands after 25 years.

RECURRENT FAMILY	RATIO	NON-RECURRENT FAMILY 1	2[1]	3	4	5
	1:3		0.89	1.01	1.11	1.4
1	1:1	1.00	1.00	1.06	1.08	1.5
	3:1		0.89	1.12	0.97	1.5
	1:3			1.23	1.12	1.8
2	1:1		1.00	1.07	1.32	1.6
	3:1			1.29	1.30	1.4
	1:3				1.04	1.6
3	1:1			1.00	0.95	1.6
	3:1				0.83	1.
	1:3					1.
4	1:1				1.00	1.
	3:1					1.
	1:3					
5	1:1					1.
	3:1					

[1] relative size is expressed as a ratio of th average volume per tree of the recurrent f divided by the average volume per tree of non-recurrent family in the indicated mix.

CONCLUSIONS

There can be several implications of thes results if they are eventually verified by fi experiments and more simulations. First, mix would seem to offer little benefit in terms o increasing total volume production on a site and above that of the best component family. result is intuitively appealing and matches t most crop mixing experiments where the additi model seems to be widely applicable.

Second, there could be beneficial effects mixing when the control of individual tree si within the stand is important, such as in the production of merchantable sawlogs or poles. example, mixtures such as Family 2 with Famil this simulation appear to result in a stand i which trees from the faster growing family (2 benefit from a low level of competition from slower growing family (5), much as they would planted at lower densities. However, unlike l density stands, the total volume is quite hig because the inferior family still contributes significant proportion to the total volume pr on the site. Hence trees from the inferior f serve both as "trainers" for the fast growing family and also contribute toward the final v

Third, the marked effect of mixing on individual tree size suggests that row plot progeny tests, which are simply multi-family mixes with spatial restrictions, may produce biased estimates of the true yield potential of a given family when planted either by itself or in different combinations in a mix. For example, in the 1:3 mix of Family 2 with Family 5, the trees from Family 2 n the mixed stand produced 87 percent more volume er tree on an average than those from Family 5. owever, in pure family stands the total volume per cre of Family 2 and Family 5 averaged 5,790 and ,680 cubic feet respectively -- a difference of nly 24 percent.

Future work in this area is needed in order to ncorporate other important family attributes such s response to competition and disease resistance nto the simulator. Competitive interactions etween families could have dramatic effects on the erformance of mixed stands and should be onsidered in more detail.

Likewise, the risk from diseases and pests is ften a major factor in forest management and the ffect of mixing both on the risk to diseases and ests and the subsequent yield losses after nfection or infestation should be considered.

LITERATURE CITED

Adams, W. T., J. H. Roberds and B. J. Zobel.
1973. Intergenotypic interactions among families of loblolly pine (Pinus taeda L.). Theoretical and Applied Genetics 43:319-322.

Allard, R. W.
1961. Relationship between genetic diversity and consistency of performance in different environments. Crop Sci. 1:127-133.

Allard, R. W. and A. D. Bradshaw.
1964. Implications of genotype-environment interactions in applied plant breeding. Crop Sci. 4:503-508.

rowning, J. Artie and K. J. Frey.
1969. Multiline cultivars as a means of disease control. Ann. Rev. Phytopath. 7:355-382.

aniels, Richard F. and Harold E. Burkhart.
1975. Simulation of individual tree growth and stand development in managed loblolly pine plantations. Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University Pub. FWS-5-75.

aniels, Richard F., Harold E. Burkhart and ike R. Strub.
1979. Yield estimates for loblolly pine plantations. J. For. 77: 581-583.

Frey, K. J. and Uriel Maldonado.
1967. Relative productivity of homogeneous and heterogeneous oat cultivars in optimum and suboptimum environments. Crop Sci. 7:532-535.

Gladstone, William T.
1981. Customize or compromise (an alternative for loblolly). Proc. Sixteenth South. For. Tree Improv. Conf., Blacksburgh, Va. p. 200-204.

Hegyi, F.
1974. A simulation model for managing jack-pine stands. In: Growth Models for Tree and Stand Simulation. Royal College of Forestry; Stockholm, Sweden, p. 74-90.

Jensen, N. F.
1965. Multiline superiority in cereals. Crop Sci. 5:566-568.

Nance, Warren L. and Osborne O. Wells.
1981. Site index models for height growth of planted loblolly pine (Pinus taeda L.) seed sources. Proc. Sixteenth South. For. Tree Impr. Conf., Blacksburgh, Va. p. 86-96.

Qualset, C. O. and R. M. Granger.
1970. Frequency dependent stability of performance in oats. Crop Sci. 10:386-389.

Simmonds, N.W.
1962. Variability in crop plants, its use and conservation. Biological Reviews 37:422-465.

Snyder, E. B. and R. M. Allen.
1971. Competitive ability of slash pine analyzed by genotype X environment stability method. Proc. Eleventh South. For. Tree Improv. Conf., Atlanta, Ga. p. 142-147.

Willey, R. W. and M. R. Rao.
1980. A competitive ratio for quantifying competition between intercrops. Expl. Agric. 16:117-125.

deWit, C.T.
1960. On Competition. Versl. Landbouwk. Onderzoek. 66(8):1-82.

STORMFLOW CHANGES AFTER PRESCRIBED BURNING AND CLEARCUTTING PINE STANDS IN THE SOUTH CAROLINA PIEDMONT[1]

James E. Douglass, David H. Van Lear, and Carmen Valverde[2]

Abstract.--Four small pine-covered watersheds in the South Carolina Piedmont were prescribe-burned in September 1979 and clearcut 3 months later. During the next 20 months, highly significant increases in peak discharge and stormflow volume occurred on three of the watersheds. Relative increases as determined by the paired watershed approach were greater than those reported for larger watersheds. The changes were smaller than those to be expected from mechanical site preparation after clearcutting, however. Time to peaking and duration of stormflow were not significantly affected by burning and clearcutting.

INTRODUCTION

Heavy equipment is often used to prepare harvested sites for regeneration of pine in the South. Such treatment often compacts soil and greatly increases soil erosion (Douglass and Goodwin 1980, Ursic and Douglass 1978). Prescribed burning to prepare seedbeds for natural seeding is an alternative that may be less damaging than mechanical methods. In 1976, a study was begun in the South Carolina Piedmont to evaluate the silvicultural potential and hydrological impacts of low-intensity prescribed burning followed by natural regeneration of loblolly pine (Pinus taeda L.) as an alternative to mechanical site preparation and artificial regeneration. Neither runoff, sediment concentration, nor sediment export was significantly affected by the first two prescribed burns (Douglass and Van Lear In Press). After the third burn, the stand was regenerated by clearcutting with seed in place. Van Lear et al. (this conference) have discussed the silvicultural effects of these treatments. In this paper, we review the stormflow effect of the third prescribed burn followed closely by clearcutting.

METHODS AND SITE DESCRIPTION

Control and treatment watersheds were replicated at four locations on the Clemson Forest in a randomized complete block design. This arrangement also allows responses at eac location to be examined by the paired watersh approach.

The watersheds are on uplands and range from 1 to about 5.3 acres in size (Table 1). All were in row crops prior to establishment loblolly pine plantations nearly 40 years ag Soils are Typic Hapludults. They are well drained and highly weathered soils derived fr granite and gneiss. Much of the original sur layer was washed away during decades of row cropping. Typically, the surface soil of upp slopes is a sandy loam plow layer of variable depth overlaying a slowly permeable, clay B horizon. Because of differences in the conse vation practices applied and erosion during t agricultural period, the physical conditions the watersheds are quite variable. Some stil have recognizable terraces with little visibl sign of erosion and short channels. Others h extensive ephemeral channel systems formed by inactive gullies remaining after farming. Up slopes showed least signs of past erosion, wh as middle and lower slopes were more severely eroded.

Air temperature of the sites ranges from mean of 38° F in January to 80° F in July. Annual rainfall in the Clemson area averages 51 inches and is well distributed throughout year. Thirty percent of the rainfall occurs winter, and runoff is normally greatest in th

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Principal Hydrologist, USDA Forest Service, Southeastern Forest Experiment Station, Coweeta Hydrologic Laboratory, Route 1, Box 216, Otto, N.C. 28763; Professor, Department of Forestry, Clemson University, Clemson, S.C. 29631; Forester, Ministry of Agriculture, Forest Division, San Jose, Costa Rica.

Table 1.--Characteristics of study watersheds[1]

Watershed	Size	Slope	Length of uninterrupted channel above flume	Soil series	Basal area of loblolly pine
	ac	%	ft		ft²/ac
61-Treated	1.6	13	75	Cecil, Madison	143
62-Control	3.8	19	39	Pacolet, Madison	191
63-Control	5.4	13	46	Pacolet	65
64-Treated	2.8	16	16	Pacolet	97
65-Control	1.0	10	324	Pacolet	82
66-Treated	3.1	11	676	Pacolet	78
67-Control	1.2	12	384	Cecil, Madison	104
68-Treated	1.5	12	571	Madison	100

[1] All plantations were 36 years old at the beginning of the study except Watersheds 61 and 62 hich were 37 years old. Watersheds 63 and 68 had previously been thinned one or more times.

eason. Because the study watersheds are small pland drainages, all flow occurs only during nd for a short time after substantial rain torms.

Runoff from each watershed was measured ith a 1-foot H-flume attached to a plywood cut-ff wall embedded in the gully channel. Flow as recorded by an analog-to-digital punch tape ecorder. Flow volumes in cubic feet/second/ quare mile (csm) were calculated by the proce-ures described by Hibbert and Cunningham (1967).

Watershed calibration began in June 1976. e first prescribed burn was on March 11, 1977, days after a cold front delivered about 0.8 ch of rain. Air temperature was about 50° F, lative humidity varied from 35 to 50 percent, d windspeed ranged from 5 to 10 miles per hour. e burning technique was to backfire along the per ridge and then ignite strip headfires at out 30-foot intervals. Burning intensity ried considerably among watersheds, but each tershed was burned entirely. Flame heights eraged about 1 foot on Watershed 68 and about feet on Watersheds 64 and 65, the last two rned. The second burn was on September 20, 78, about 2 weeks after a rain. The same rning technique was used but fires were less tense because less fuel was available. Air mperature ranged from 78° to 90° F, relative midity varied from 38 to 50 percent, and wind-eed was about 10 miles per hour. The third rn was on September 12, 1979, to prepare a edbed prior to harvest of timber. Relative midity ranged between 55 and 60 percent, temperature was in the 80's, and a 10 mile per hour breeze fanned flames to an average height of 1 foot. Overall, it was the coolest of the three burns.

Prior to burning, litter weight on the watersheds was about 11 tons per acre. The first burn consumed the most litter and the third burn the least. After the third burn, 7½ tons per acre of protective litter remained.

Timber harvest began in December 1979 and ended in mid-January 1980. During logging, care was exercised to prevent unnecessary damage to the soil and litter. Logs were skidded uphill to a landing and loaded on trucks. Logging slash was left in place on Watersheds 61, 66, and 68. On Watershed 64, slash was bladed off the watershed with a bulldozer to simulate whole-tree harvesting. This treatment approximately doubled the exposure of mineral soil on the watershed.

Previous analyses indicated no significant effect of the first two prescribed burns on water yield or stormflow (Douglass and Van Lear In Press). Therefore, flow data for the calibration period and the first three burns (June 1976 until December 1979) were combined for Watershed pairs 61-62, 63-64, and 65-66. However, Watershed 68 experienced an outbreak of the southern pine beetle (Dendroctonus frontalis Zimm.) after the first burn and by October 1978, 20 percent of the pine basal area was dead. Most of the mortality occurred along the ephemeral channel in the lower portion of the watershed. The calibration period for this watershed pair was from June 1976 until October 1978. The treatment period was the 21 months from February 1980 through October 1981.

The earlier analysis revealed large differences in runoff volumes between locations. Because the paired watershed method provides greater precision in comparing treatment effects, it was used to determine effects of treatment (Hewlett et al. 1969). Treatment is defined as the combined effect of the third burn and clearcutting. With the paired watershed method, the characteristic of interest for the calibration period on the watershed to be treated is regressed against the same characteristic on the control watershed. After calibration, the difference between the observed value and the value predicted for the treatment watershed using the calibration regression is taken as the treatment effect.

The technique of Hibbert and Cunningham (1967) was used to divide the storm hydrograph into parameters for testing (Figure 1). Total runoff is separated into several hydrograph parameters and total flow is divided into baseflow and stormflow volume. The flow parameters examined in this study were:

Qp	peak rate of runoff
qi	flow rate of the beginning of the runoff event
v_1	volume of storm runoff before the peak
v_2	volume of storm runoff after the peak
$v_1 + v_2$	total volume of storm runoff
Tp	time to peak, the time in hours from the beginning of storm runoff to peak runoff
R	recession time, the time in hours from the peak runoff rate to the intersection of the separation line and the hydrograph recession line
D	time in hours from the beginning of runoff until the time of intersection of the recession hydrograph and the separation line.

Storm events were selected for analysis if both watersheds had minimum flows of 10 csm and single peak hydrographs.

Statistical significance was determined by the procedure described by Gjarati (1970) and Swindel (1970) of testing the equality of sets of linear regression coefficients. The treatment period is handled as a dummy variable, and the differences between pretreatment and posttreatment slopes and intercepts are tested using the F statistic.

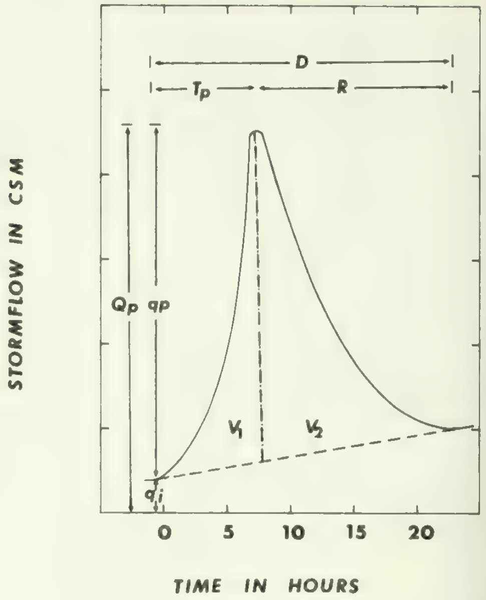
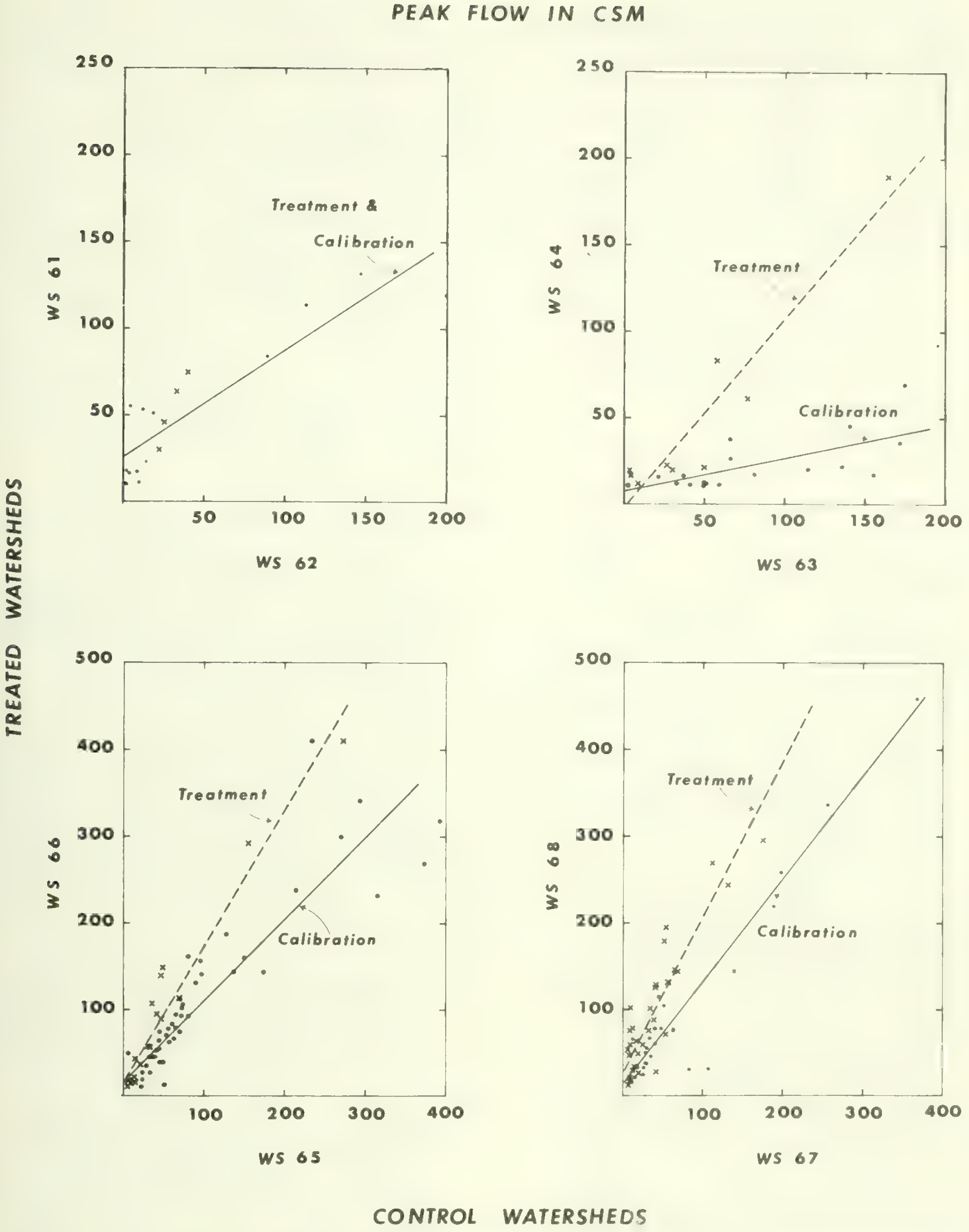


Figure 1.--Schematic representation of the computer separation of the storm hydrograph into parameters susceptible to statistical analyses.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Earlier findings on these watersheds ind cated that, although the first two prescribed burns did not significantly affect storm runo large variation in runoff did occur between s watershed pairs and between some locations (Douglass and Van Lear In Press). Greatest variation was between the Watersheds 61-62 pa Treated Watershed 61 had a large stone terrac or check dam about 75 feet upstream from the flume. Several cubic yards of sandy loam colluvial material were deposited behind this erosion control structure and provided appreciably more storage than was available on Watershed 62. Frequently, small storms would produce runoff from Watershed 62 but none fro Watershed 61. During large storms, flow from Watershed 61, because of the enlarged storage capacity, would continue for a longer period would flow from Watershed 62. These factors caused poor correlation between storm hydrogr parameters for Watersheds 61 and 62, and only four events were available for inclusion in t treatment period (Figure 2). Therefore, this watershed pair was excluded from the complete analysis.

Length of the ephemeral channel network differed within watershed pairs and between locations. The average fraction of rainfall became streamflow increased with length of uni terrupted channel on the eight watersheds dur the calibration period and varied from about 17 percent. A regression of the fraction of that became streamflow against the length of terrupted channel had an r of 0.86.



igure 2.--Peak discharge in csm during the calibration (.) and treatment (x) periods for the four pairs of watersheds.

Results from the stormflow analysis for reated Watersheds 64, 66, and 68 were consisent except for the initial flow rate, which is he flow at the beginning of the storm. This rameter has little meaning for watersheds of this size because there is no flow at the beginning of most storms. There was no increase in initial flow rate due to treatment on Watersheds 64 and 66 and the increase on Watershed 68 was barely significant at the 0.05 level.

Time to peak and flow duration were unaffected by treatment. Burning and clearcutting significantly increased peak flow, stormflow volume before the peak, stormflow volume after the peak, and total stormflow volume at the 0.01 level (Table 2).

Table 2.--Effects of prescribed burning followed by harvesting timber by clearcutting on increasing stormflow[1/]

Stormflow parameter	Watershed number		
	64	66	68
Initial flow rate	NS	NS	*
Peak flow rate	**	**	**
Time to peak	NS	NS	NS
Storm duration	NS	NS	NS
Stormflow volume before peak	**	**	**
Stormflow volume after peak	**	**	**
Total stormflow volume	**	**	**

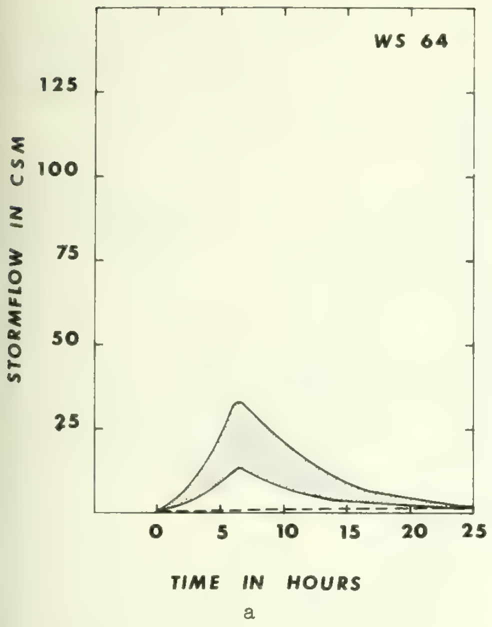
1/ NS = nonsignificant;
* = is a significant increase at the 0.05 level; and
** = is a significant increase at the 0.01 level.

The calibration and treatment regression lines for peak flow for the four pairs of watersheds are shown in Figure 2. As previously noted, only four observations were available for Watersheds 61 and 62 during the treatment period and these were judged insufficient for valid statistical tests on this watershed pair. The increase in peak flow due to treatment as a percentage of pretreatment peaks was greatest on Watershed 64. Note, however, that absolute discharges were greater before and after treatment on Watersheds 66 and 68.

The effects of the third prescribed burn and clearcutting on the mean storm hydrograph are illustrated for the three watersheds in Figure 3. Because the scale is the same, relative differences in storm hydrographs between the pairs of watersheds can be judged visually. Watershed 64 obviously responds to precipitation differently from Watersheds 66 and 68, both before and after treatment. Peaks are smaller, time to peak is greater, and the duration of stormflow is 75 percent longer than on Watersheds 66 and 68. The average storm hydrograph for Watershed 64 (Figure 3a) is indicative of a stable watershed where most precipitation infiltrates and slowly drains from the watershed. Surface soil of Watershed 64 is deeper and more porous than th of Watersheds 66 and 68. Therefore moisture storage is greater, leading to smaller peaks more prolonged flow. Treatment increased the average peak discharge over 150 percent and approximately doubled stormflow volumes on Wa- shed 64, about three times the percentage increase on Watersheds 66 and 68. This large increase may have been caused by the greater s disturbance when the logging slash was bulldo off this watershed to simulate whole-tree harvesting. Mineral soil was exposed on abou 50 percent of Watershed 64 compared to only 2 to 25 percent on Watersheds 66 and 68. Exposi mineral soil on 50 percent of the area during mechanical site preparation has been shown to greatly increase storm runoff in the Piedmont (Douglass and Goodwin 1980) and Coastal Plain (Beasley 1979).

Peaks for the mean storm on Watersheds 6 and 68 were increased by 55 to 60 percent (Figure 3b and c). The percentage increase in peaks after treatment was less for these watersheds than for Watershed 64, but the pretreatm peaks were about 7 times greater; thus, initia they were much more responsive to rainfall. T greater responsiveness is attributed to the general hydrologic characteristics of eroded Piedmont soils and the greater dissection of Watersheds 66 and 68. Typically, former agricultural soils have a permeable sandy loam to loam residual plow layer that is limited in moisture storage capacity. A dense, slowly permeable B horizon lies beneath the plow laye and severely restricts vertical drainage (Hoov 1950). Because rates of rainfall often exceed the percolation rate of the B horizon, the plo layer becomes partly or completely saturated. On sloping land, the predominate flow path of water is downslope at the top of the B horizon Where past erosion has exposed the B horizon a interrupts subsurface flow, free water enters the ephemeral drainage. The denser the channe or gully network, the shorter the subsurface f path and the more rapid the storm runoff.

Because earlier analyses indicated no sig nificant direct effect of prescribed burning o water yield, we suggest that it is unlikely th the third burning significantly affected storm flow characteristics. More likely, treatment effects resulted from the harvest and removal timber from the site. A modest increase in bo peak flow rates and volumes of stormflow is normal in the Appalachians when the forest is clearcut and felled trees are left in place (Hewlett and Helvey 1970). When felled trees skidded, the increases are usually larger (Douglass and Swank 1976, Swank et al. In Pres Lynch 1969, Reinhart et al. 1963). The size o the effect depends on the care exercised durin road construction and skidding operations.

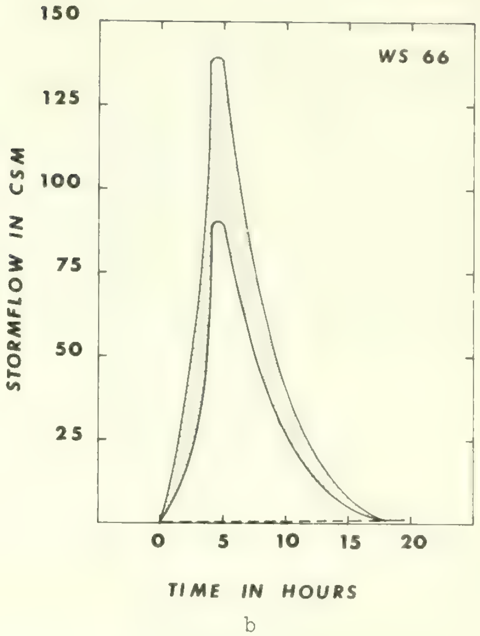


a

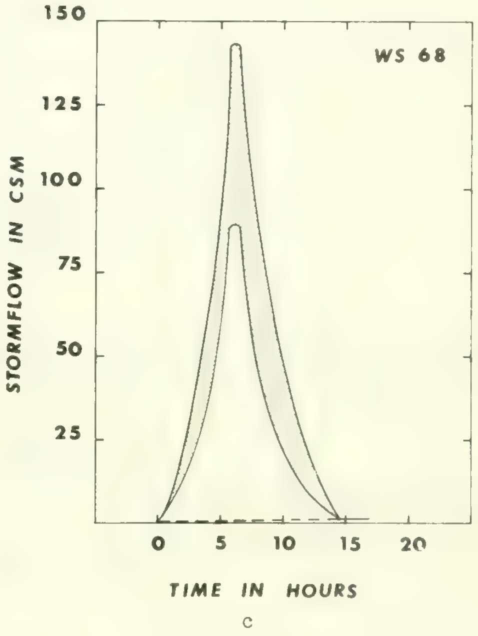
igure 3.--Graphic representation of the average storm hydrographs for the calibration and treatment periods for Watersheds 64, 66, and 68. The shaded area indicates the change associated with the prescribed burn-clearcut treatment.

In general responses to the burning and learcutting treatment are much less than re- ponses to mechanical site preparation practices n the Piedmont (Douglass and Goodwin 1980) and teep Coastal Plain watersheds (Beasley 1979). echanical treatments have increased stormflow olumes 3- to 18-fold, depending on the partic- lar practice involved.

Interpretation of our data in relation to he larger bulk of the literature on timber arvest is difficult because of the uncer- anties associated with watershed size. agnitude of increases in both peak rates and tormflow volumes on our small Piedmont water- heds exceeded by a factor of 2 or more the esponses observed on larger Appalachian water- heds and on a larger Piedmont watershed which as roaded, clearcut, roller chopped, and lanted (Hewlett 1979). Our watersheds are 1 to acres in size, as are most watersheds on which ite preparation responses have been measured. ost past studies of harvesting effects, how- ver, have been on watersheds covering from 30 over 300 acres. Differences in basin drology and possibly watershed size influence e response. Most studies on larger watersheds asure, or are assumed to measure, total flow, ereas only quick return subsurface and over- nd flow were measured in our study. The eater storage potential of large watersheds y explain, at least in part, the difference hydrology of small versus large basins.



b



c

Although there may be uncertainties as to whether results from very small and larger watersheds are directly comparable, clearly stormflow was significantly increased by the treatment applied. From past experience, we would expect higher peaks and greater stormflow volumes from clearcutting the watershed, and we would expect the magnitude of the response to be proportional to the degree of site disturbance. Thus, findings from our watersheds are consistent with findings from other cutting experiments.

We conclude that the effects on peak flow and stormflow volume of prescribed burning for seedbed preparation followed by clearcutting with seed in place were much less severe than effects reported for mechanical methods of site preparation. A review of agricultural history of the Piedmont clearly indicates the sensitivity of these soils. It appears only prudent to recognize this sensitivity and to carefully weigh the impact of operations on the hydrologic functioning of these lands. Hydrologically, silviculturally, and economically, the method proved to be a viable and desirable regeneration technique in this study.

LITERATURE CITED

Beasley, R. S.
1979. Intensive site preparation and sediment losses on steep watersheds in the Gulf Coastal Plain. J. Soil Sci. Soc. Am. 43: 412-417.

Douglass, J. E., and O. C. Goodwin.
1980. Runoff and soil erosion from forest site preparation practices. In U.S. Forestry and Water Quality: What Course in the 80's? An Analysis of Environmental and Economic Issues Proc.:50-74. Water Pollution Control Federation. Washington, D.C.

Douglass, J. E., and W. T. Swank.
1976. Multiple use in Southern Appalachian hardwoods--a 10-year case history. XVI IUFRO World Congress Div. 1 Proc. 1976:425-436.

Douglass, J. E., and D. H. Van Lear.
In Press. Prescribed burning and water quality of ephemeral streams in the Piedmont of South Carolina. For. Sci.

Gjarati, D.
1970. Use of dummy variables in testing for equality between sets of coefficients in linear regression: a generalization. Am. Stat. 24:18-24.

Hewlett, J. D.
1979. Forest water quality, an experiment in harvesting and regenerating Piedmont forest. Georgia Forest Res. Pap., 22 p.

Hewlett, J. D., and J. D. Helvey.
1970. Effects of forest clear-felling on the storm hydrograph. Water Resour. Res. 6: 768-782.

Hewlett, J. D., H. W. Lull, and K. G. Reinhart.
1969. In defense of experimental watersheds. Water Resour. Res. 5:306-316.

Hibbert, A. R., and G. B. Cunningham.
1967. Streamflow data processing opportunities and application. In Sopper, W. E. and H. W. Lull (eds.) International Symposium on Forest Hydrology, p. 725-736. Pergamon Press, N.Y.

Hoover, M. D.
1950. Hydrologic characteristics of South Carolina Piedmont forest soils. Soil Sci. Soc. Am. Proc. 14:353-358.

Lynch, J. A.
1969. Changes in streamflow following parti clearcutting on a forested watershed. M. Thesis, School of Forest Resources, Pennsylvania State University, 84 p.

Reinhart, K. G., A. R. Eschner, and G. R. Trimble, Jr.
1963. Effect on streamflow of four forest practices in the mountains of West Virgin USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. NE-1, 79 p. NE For. Exp. Stn.

Swank, W. T., J. E. Douglass, and G. B. Cunni ham.
In Press. Changes in water yield and storm hydrographs following commercial clearcut on a Southern Appalachian catchment. In Intern. Symp. on Hydrological Research Basins and Their Use in Water Resources Planning. Sept. 21-23, 1982, Bern, Switz land.

Swindel, B. F.
1970. Some applications of the principles conditional error. USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. SE-59, SE For. Exp. Stn.

Ursic, S. J., and J. E. Douglass.
1978. The effects of forestry practices on water resources. W. Kelly Mosley Environmental Forum Proc. 1978:33-49. Auburn Un Press.

Van Lear, D. H., J. E. Douglass, S. K. Cox, M Augspurger, and S. K. Nodine.
In Press. Regeneration of loblolly pine plantations in the Piedmont by clearcutti with seed in place. Second Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Nov. 4 5, 1982, Atlanta, Ga.

SEDIMENT LOSSES FROM FOREST PRACTICES IN THE GULF COASTAL PLAIN OF ARKANSAS[1]

R. Scott Beasley and Alfredo B. Granillo[2]

ABSTRACT. -- During the first year after clearcutting and intensive mechanical site preparation, mean annual stormflows and sediment losses were significantly higher than levels measured on watersheds which were selectively harvested or left undisturbed. Results are compared with data reported for other locations in the South, and water quality implications are discussed.

INTRODUCTION

Much of the southern pine range on the Gulf Coastal Plain consists of relatively flat terrain (slope gradients of 0-3 percent). These sites generally have high site indices for pine especially if drainage is not excessively poor (Coile 1952, Zahner 1957, Barrett 1962). Because of its high productivity, the region has excellent potential for supplying a large share of the nation's growing demand for wood products. The forest acreage owned by private companies in the South is already under intensive management. As the profitability of growing trees increases many non-industrial private landowners may also be encouraged to opt for more intensive management on their forests which collectively account for about 72% of forest acreage in the South (U.S.D.A. 1978).

As the level of management intensifies the potential for erosion and stream sedimentation increases. Historically priority has been given to evaluating the water quality effect of silvicultural treatments on sloping terrain where the velocity and sediment carrying power of storm runoff are greater. Little attention has been given to the water quality impacts of intensive management on gentle slopes. Now, more than ever, forest managers need accurate information for a wide range of site conditions to maintain site productivity and protect water quality. This study contrasts soil losses from a series of forested watersheds on relatively flat terrain that were either: (1) clearcut, site prepared, and replanted to pine, (2) selectively harvested to achieve an uneven-aged pine stand, or (3) left undisturbed to serve as controls. Data are presented for the first full water-year (WY 1982: July 1, 1981-June 30, 1982) after the silvicultural treatments were begun.

METHODS

The watersheds are located on the Gulf Coastal Plain of southeastern Arkansas near Monticello, Drew County. Six watersheds (Ten Mile Creek site) are on property owned by the Georgia-Pacific Corporation and three watersheds (Hungerrun Creek site) are located on land owned by the International Paper Company. All watersheds in each group are within a 1/4 mile radius. The two groups of watersheds are approximately six miles apart.

Prior to treatment the overstory vegetation at the Ten Mile Creek area had a higher proportion of hardwoods than the Hungerrun site. White oaks (Quercus alba L. and Q. stellata Wangenh.), southern red oak (Quercus falcata Michx.), sweetgun (Liquidambar styraciflua L.), and hickories (Carya sp.) were the predominant hardwood species. Loblolly pine (P. taeda L.) and shortleaf pine (P. echinata Mill.) were found in roughly equal proportions on the Ten Mile Creek site, but loblolly pine clearly dominated at the other site. Slope gradients range from 1 to 3%, with an average of about 1%. The dominant soil series on the watersheds is

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Associate Professor and Research Specialist, Department of Forest Resources, Arkansas Agricultural Experiment Station, University of Arkansas at Monticello, Monticello, Arkansas 71655. Published with the approval Director, Arkansas Agricultural Experiment Station.

Tippah silt loam, a fine-silty, mixed, thermic Aquic Paleudalf (Larance, et al. 1976).

Measurements

Vegetation

Before treatment the sawtimber and pulpwood volumes of each watershed were inventoried. All trees with an average dbh ≥ 3.5 in. were measured. Local volume tables were used to compute board feet of sawtimber (dbh ≥ 9.5 in.) and cubic feet of pulpwood (3.5 in. $\leq$ dbh < 9.5).

Twenty one-chain transects were randomly located on each of the clearcut watersheds to characterize ground cover after treatment. Ground cover under each link was recorded as either bare soil, rock, litter, woody debris, or type of vegetation.

Precipitation

Precipitation amounts were measured in a network of standard rain gauges at each site. Intensities and durations were obtained from Belfort weighing bucket recording gauges.

Stormflow

The volume of runoff from each watershed was measured with a 3 ft. H-type flume equipped with an automatic water level recorder. A drop-box was constructed at the upper end of the approach section to collect non-suspended or bed-load materials. Because of the flat terrain, concrete wing walls were constructed at the lower section of each watershed to prevent surface runoff from bypassing the flumes. Stormflow was expressed as depth of water over the watershed area to conform to precipitation measurements.

Sediment

Water samples were collected by Coshocton sediment samplers placed below the flumes. Water collected by the samplers was further divided by slotted splitters. Samples were vacuum filtered to measure the concentration of sediment (ppm). Total suspended sediment for each storm event was determined by multiplying concentrations by stormflow (discharge) volumes. Oven-dry weight of deposited sediment from the traps was added to suspended sediment to give total sediment loss per storm (lbs). These values were divided by watershed size and expressed as lbs/ac. Total sediment losses (deposited plus suspended) were then divided by total stormflow volume (discharge-weighted) and expressed as concentrations (ppm).

Design and Treatments

Precipitation, stormflow, and water quality were measured on all nine watersheds for one full year before treatments were imposed (Beasley 1982). The watersheds ranged in size from 5.61 to 10.00 ac. To facilitate statistical analysis the watersheds were grouped into blocks of three, based on location and local variations in soils, slope, and/or vegetation. Each watershed in each block received a different silvicultural treatment. The treatments were: 1) clearcutting followed by shearing, windrowing, burning and replanting with loblolly pine seedlings, 2) selective harvesting including the removal of all commercial hardwoods and the deadening by injection of all remaining hardwoods, 3) and th undisturbed controls. The sawtimber volume to be removed from the selectively harvested watersheds was determined by a regulation metho designed to achieve a balanced uneven-aged stan (Farrar 1980).

Harvesting began in July 1981 and was completed by mid-August. Site preparation on the clearcut watersheds was completed in September. Seedlings were hand planted in earl 1982.

A randomized complete block analysis of variance was used to evaluate differences in stormflows, sediment losses and concentrations for the three treatments. Duncan's New Multipl Range tests were used to compare individual treatment means.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Vegetation

Sawtimber (pine and hardwood) board foot volumes on the experimental watersheds before treatment ranged from 5,589 to 11,251 bdft/ac; pine and hardwood pulpwood volumes ranged from 7.6 to 19.5 cords/ac (Table 1). Basal area on the selection watersheds was reduced to an average of 48 ft.^{2}/ac.

Clearcutting and site preparation exposed bare soil on 66.4%, 36.4% and 39.6% of watersheds 1,5 and 9, respectively. Bare soil exposure was highest on watershed 1 because the site was wettest during site preparation. This reduced shearing efficiency requiring several passes to sever many of the larger stumps. This caused deep rutting in some areas.

Precipitation and Stormflow

Precipitation for the post-treatment water-year averaged 47.93 in. (Table 2). The long term mean precipitation for the study area is 51.80 in. Thirty-three rainfall events produced measurable stormflow ($\geq$.01 in.) on at

Table 1. Sawtimber and pulpwood volumes (pine and hardwood combined) on experimental watersheds before and after harvest.

Watershed by Treatment	Before Harvest		After Harvest		Volume Harvested	
	Sawtimber	Pulpwood	Sawtimber	Pulpwood	Sawtimber	Pulpwood
	bf/ac	cds/ac	bf/ac	cds/ac	bf/ac	cds/ac
Clearcut						
1	9,013	9.0	-	-	9,013	9.0
5	9,218	12.4	-	-	9,218	12.4
9	6,167	19.5	-	-	6,167	19.5
Selection						
2	9,284	7.9	3,628	4.6	5,656	3.3
4	11,251	10.8	3,408	5.2	7,843	5.6
8	6,849	18.8	3,863	8.5	2,986	10.3
Control						
3	8,285	7.6	8,285	7.6	-	-
6	8,304	11.7	8,304	11.7	-	-
7	5,589	13.1	5,589	13.1	-	-

Table 2. Monthly rainfall (in) and stormflow (in) by watershed and treatment for WY 1982. Rainfall values are averages of all standard gauges.

Month	Rainfall	Clearcut			Selection			Control		
		1	5	9	2	4	8	3	6	7
July	3.82	T	0	T	0	T	T	T	0	0
Aug	3.00	T	T	T	0	0	0.01	T	T	T
Sept	5.21	0.03	T	0.01	0	0	0.01	T	T	0.01
Oct	7.15	1.95	0.94	1.15	0.05	0.18	0.49	0.01	0.01	0
Nov	1.85	0.37	0.11	0.11	0	0	0.13	0	0	0
Dec	0.60	T	0	0	0.02	0	0	0	0	T
Jan	4.35	0.73	0.37	0.48	0.21	0.24	0.29	0.02	0	0.11
Feb	3.94	1.85	0.93	0.88	0.64	0.71	0.61	0.11	0.02	0.70
Mar	1.76	0.18	0.10	0.09	0.04	0.09	0.02	0.01	T	0.11
Apr	4.46	0.52	0.20	1.44	0.14	0.26	1.00	0.03	T	0.75
May	4.11	0.55	0.42	0.23	0.04	0.17	T	T	T	T
June	7.66	0.91	0.61	1.46	0.20	0.28	0.87	0.01	T	0.04
TOTALS	47.93	7.10	3.68	5.85	1.34	1.94	3.43	0.20	0.03	1.71
ANNUAL AVG. by TREATMENT			5.54 a[1]			2.24 b			0.64 b	

[1] Treatment means with same letter designations are not significantly different (p=.05)

least one of the clearcut watersheds; twenty-four produced flow on the selectively harvested watersheds; sixteen produced flow on the control watersheds. Precipitation, almost entirely in the form of rain, was fairly well distributed throughout the twelve month period except for November and December 1981 and March 1982 which were low. Stormflows were low to negligible on all watersheds during the first half of WY 1982 (except October) and March.

Mean annual stormflow on the clearcut watersheds was significantly higher than either the selection or control watersheds (Table 2). However, the difference in mean annual stormflow between the selection and control watersheds was not statistically significant. Stormflow as a percentage of total annual precipitation was 12% for the clearcut watersheds, 5% for the selection watersheds and 1% for the control watersheds. Reduced evapotranspiration leads to higher soil moisture: hence, less storage capacity and greater runoff (Hornbeck 1975, Douglass and Swank 1972).

Sediment

First-year mean sediment losses on the clearcut watersheds were significantly higher than those on the selection and control watersheds (Table 3). However, there was no significant difference between annual losses o the selection and control watersheds. Althoug clearcutting and mechanical site preparation significantly increased sediment losses from t experimental watersheds the increase was not a large as those reported in other sections of t Gulf Coastal Plain. Beasley (1979) reported first-year sediment losses of 11,188, 11,420 a 12,714 lb/ac from three clearcut watersheds wit steep slopes and erodible soils in north Mississippi which had been mechanically site prepared. DeHaven et al. (1982) measured an average of 2203 lb/ac of sediment in only eight months on three clearcut watersheds in east Te which were site-prepared by shearing, windrowi and burning. Slope gradients ranged from 4% o the hilltops to 25% on the side slopes. Dougl and Goodwin (1980) reported first-year mean

Table 3. Monthly sediment losses (lbs/ac) by watershed and treatment for WY 1982.

	Clearcut			Selection			Control		
Month	1	5	9	2	4	8	3	6	7
July	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Aug	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Sept	0	0	0.1	0	0	0.3	0	0	0
Oct	140.9	62.6	2.9	0	0	0.8	0	0	0
Nov	4.8	1.4	0.9	0	0	0.9	0	0	0
Dec	0	0	0	0.5	0	0	0	0	0
Jan	37.9	52.3	24.6	6.8	4.3	1.1	0.2	0	0
Feb	70.1	69.8	70.2	1.9	2.6	3.1	0.4	0	7.8
Mar	2.5	0.6	0.1	0.1	0.6	0	0	0	0
Apr	19.5	6.7	90.1	1.0	1.4	2.9	0.2	0	2.6
May	6.8	9.6	0.9	0.1	0.4	0	0	0	0
Jun	16.6	10.6	6.6	1.4	1.7	3.5	0.1	0	0.1
TOTALS	299.1	213.7	196.5	11.9	11.0	12.6	1.0	0	10.5
ANNUAL AVERAGES BY TREATMENT		236.4 a			11.8 b			3.8 b	

sediment losses of 4,480 lbs/ac from four clearcut, sheared, windrowed, and burned watersheds in the North Carolina Piedmont.

Sediment losses accumulated by months closely paralleled accumulated stormflows for all treatments (Figure 1). Stormflows and sediment losses began to rise on the clearcut watersheds in October 1981; on the selection watersheds in January 1982; and one month later on the control watersheds. The time lags from initiation of stormflow and sediment production between treatments is further evidence of reduced water storage capacity and faster moisture recharge on the clearcut areas.

Three storms accounted for most of the annual sediment losses from all watersheds; 74% to 87% for the clearcut watersheds; 55% to 81% for the selection watersheds; 76% to 93% for the control watersheds. Other studies (Greer 1971, Beasley 1979) have shown similar results, indicating that large storm events have a disproportionate effect on erosion and sedimentation.

Annual discharge-weighted sediment concentrations generally provide an acceptable basis for contrasting sediment losses among watersheds and treatments with differing annual stormflow regimes (Ursic 1979). Mean annual sediment concentrations were significantly higher on the clearcut watersheds than on the selection and control watersheds (Table 4). The difference between the selection and control watersheds was not statistically significant.

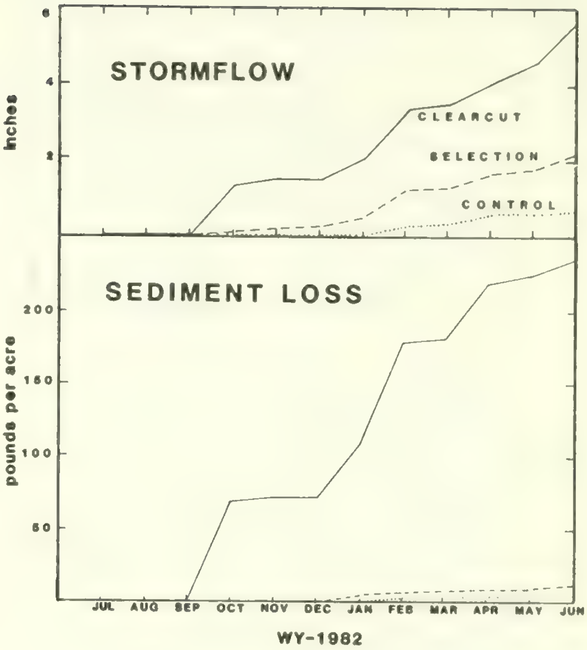


Figure 1. Accumulated monthly stormflows and sediment losses for the post-treatment water-year.

Table 4. Monthly discharge weighted sediment concentrations (ppm) by watershed and treatment for WY 1982.

	Clearcut			Selection			Control		
Month	1	5	9	2	4	8	3	6	7
July	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Aug	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Sept	0	0	101	0	0	181	0	0	31
Oct	320	296	11	0	7	8	0	0	0
Nov	58	58	35	0	0	32	0	0	0
Dec	0	0	0	22	0	0	0	0	0
Jan	234	624	235	143	79	17	44	0	2
Feb	177	338	375	14	16	22	18	0	77
Mar	60	26	16	6	27	0	0	0	0
Apr	184	149	301	33	27	16	39	0	19
May	72	120	50	12	11	0	0	0	0
Jun	83	81	22	32	28	18	33	0	12
ANNUAL WEIGHTED AVERAGE	196	265	163	39	28	18	26	0	41
WEIGHTED AVG. BY TREATMENT		204 a			26 b			39 b	

During the pre-treatment year (WY-1981) the discharge-weighted mean sediment concentrations for the three control watersheds was 79 ppm (Beasley 1982), about twice that of the post-treatment water year. This indicates that, even using discharge-weighted concentrations as a basis for comparing sediment losses, the results of watershed studies are weather dependent. Several large intense storms occurred when soils were saturated during the pre-treatment year but such storms were lacking during the post-treatment year.

The discharge-weighted concentrations for the clearcut watersheds were much lower than those reported elsewhere. Sediment concentration from a steep, erodible watershed receiving a similar silvicultural treatment in north Mississippi, was 2837 ppm (Beasley 1979). Moderately sloping clearcut and site prepared watersheds in east Texas yielded 2714 ppm (DeHaven et al. 1982). Discharge-weighted sediment concentrations from four clearcut, sheared, and windrowed watersheds in the Piedmont of North Carolina averaged 2824 ppm (Douglass and Goodwin 1980). A significant factor that may account for the large differences in sediment losses per unit of stormflow between the clearcut watersheds reported here and those described above is slope gradient. Slope increases the velocity of surface runoff which increases the sediment carrying power of the water (Hewlett and Nutter 1969).

Sediment concentrations for the clearcut watersheds reported here are less than those reported for uncut forests in other areas. Average annual sediment concentration for an 88 acre watershed with loblolly pine cover in north Mississippi was 780 ppm, most of which was attributed to channel degradation (Ursic 1975). Discharge-weighted sediment concentrations of major river basins in the South range from less than 300 ppm to more than 2,000 ppm, (Rainwater 1962). Maximum concentrations are generally associated with high flows.

Fish production in warm southern streams suffers when suspended sediment concentrations exceed 100 ppm for a sustained period (Buck 1956), but many species will tolerate very high levels for short periods (Oschwald 1972).

CONCLUSIONS

Clearcutting followed by intensive mechanical site preparation caused a statistically significant increase in storm discharge and sediment losses during the first post-treatment year. However, evaluating the biological significance of these measured losses in downstream waters is much more difficult. In the Gulf Coastal Plain most stream channels and banks are comprised of highly erodible material which are readily detached and transported by streamflow. In many cases stream channel scouring alone accounts for higher concentrations of sediment than those measured in this study.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

This study is part of the South Central Region Water Quality Project. Funding and assistance were provided by the Arkansas Agricultural Experiment Station, U.S. Forest Service-Southern Forest Experiment Station, Arkansas Forestry Commission, Arkansas Department of Pollution Control and Ecology, Arkansas Water Resources Research Center, Ross Foundation, International Paper Company, Weyerhaeuser Company, Arkansas Kraft Corporation, Deltic Farm and Timber Company, Potlatch Corporation and Bearden Lumber Company.

LITERATURE CITED

Barrett, J. W. (ed.)
1962. Regional Silviculture of the United States. The Ronald Press Company, New York. 610 p.

Beasley, R. S.
1979. Intensive site preparation and sediment losses on steep watersheds in the Gulf Coastal Plain. Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 43:412-4416.

__________.
1982. Water quality in south Arkansas forests. In Proc. Environmentally Sound Water and Soi Management. Am. Soc. Civil Eng. Orlando, Fla. 49-56.

Buck, D. H.
1956. Effects of turbidity on fish and fishing. In Trans. 21st N. Amer. Wildlife Conf. 249-261.

Coile, T. S.
1952. Soil and the growth of forests. Adv. in Agron. 4:329-398.

DeHaven, M. G., W. H. Blackburn, R. W. Knight and A. T. Weichert.
1982. Assessment of stormflow and water quality from undisturbed and site prepared forest land in east Texas. Interim Report. Texas Water Resources Institute. Texas A & M Univ. TR-117. 151 p.

Douglas, J. E. and O. C. Goodwin.
1980. Runoff and soil erosion from forest site preparation practices. In Proc. U.S. Forestry and water Quality: What course in the 80's? The Water Poll. Control Fed. and Virg. Water Poll. Con. Assoc. Richmond, VA. 260 p.

Douglass, J. E. and W. T. Swank.
1972. Streamflow modification through management of eastern forests. USDA For. Serv. Res. Pap. SE-94. 15 p.

Farrar, R. M.
1980. Regulation of uneven-aged loblolly-shortleaf pine forests. In Southern Silivicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Ga. 294-304.

Greer, J. O.
1971. Effect of excessive-rate rainstorms on erosion. J. Soil and Water Conser. 5:196-197.

Hewlett, J. D. and W. L. Nutter.
1969. An outline of Forest Hydrology. Univ. Georgia Press Athens. 137 p.

Hornbeck, J. W.
1975. Streamflow response to forest cutting and revegetation. Water Res. Bull. 11(6):1257-1260.

Larance, F. C., H. V. Gill, and C. L. Fultz.
1976. Soil Survey of Drew County, Arkansas. U.S.D.A. Soil Cons. Ser. U.S. Gov. Print. Off. Washington, D.C. 86 p.

Oschwald, W. R.
1972. Sediment-water interactions. J. Environ. Quality. 1:360-366.

Rainwater, F. H.
1962. Stream composition of the conterminous United States. U.S.G.S. Atlas HA. 61 p.

Ursic, S. J.
1975. Harvesting southern forests: A threat to water quality? In Non-point Sources of water Pollution: Proc. Southeast. Reg. Conf., Va. Water Resour. Cent., VPI & SU, Blacksburg, Va. 145-151.

__________.
1979. Forestry practices and the water resource of the upper Coastal Plain. In Proc. Florida's water resources--Implications for Forest Management. Society of American Foresters, Fla. Section and Univ. Fla. U.S.D.A. 1978. Forest statistics of the U.S. 1977. U.S.D.A. Forest Gainesville. Service. Washington D.C. 133 p.

Zahner, R.
1957. Field procedures for soil-site classification of pine land in south Arkansas and north Louisiana. U.S.D.A. Forest Service. SFES Occasional Paper 155. 17 p.

AN OVERVIEW OF WATERSHED AND NUTRIENT CYCLING RESEARCH AT THE REYNOLDS HOMESTEAD RESEARCH CENTER[1]

T. R. Fox, J. A. Burger, R. E. Kreh, and J. E. Douglass[2]

Abstract.--A project designed to quantify the changes brought about by clearcut harvesting and site preparation has been established on the Virginia Piedmont. Four forested watersheds were selected for study in 1980. Three of the watersheds were commercially clearcut during the summer of 1981. The fourth watershed remained undisturbed and serves as a control. The clearcut watersheds were site prepared in July 1982. Three separate treatments: chop and burn; shear-disk (1-pass); and shear, rake-pile, disk (3-pass), representing three levels of site preparation intensity were applied. The site prepared watersheds will be planted to loblolly pine in March 1983. H-flumes and ceramic cup lysimeters were installed to monitor changes in streamflow and soil solution. Preliminary results indicate that prior to site preparation, nutrient levels in both soil solution and stream water were higher in the clearcut watersheds. Suspended sediment levels in stormflow from the clearcut watersheds were also higher. Post site preparation nutrient levels in soil solution were higher than levels in the control. Levels of NO_3-N in soil solution and stream water from both the clearcut and the site prepared watersheds were higher than NH_4-N. This indicates that nitrification may be an important process in disturbed ecosystems on the Piedmont.

INTRODUCTION

The importance of the southeastern United States as a timber producing region is expected to increase substantially in the next 20 years. It has been estimated that by the end of this century the southeast will produce roughly 50% of the total roundwood harvest of the U.S. (USDA Forest Service, 1973). However, the current stand quality and age of much of the commercial forest land in the region may not be adequate to meet future demands (Southern Forest Resource Analysis Committee, 1969). In addition, over 100,000 acres of pote tial pine forest land are lost each year becaus of inadequate regeneration following harvest o direct conversion of forest land to other uses (Knight, 1977).

In order to meet the increasing demands on the forest resources of the southeast, intensiv forest management practices will have to be app to a larger acreage. On the Piedmont, this wil probably include the conversion of mixed pine-hardwood stands to short rotation pine plantati (Switzer and Nelson, 1973).

Reported declines in productivity of inten sively managed second rotation plantations in other parts of the world (Whyte, 1973; Will and Ballard, 1976) have generated concern about similar declines in productivity in the southea Agricultural experiences in the past have demonstrated that Piedmont sites are particularly susceptable to productivity declines under inte sive management.

---

[1] Paper presented at the Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, November 4-5, 1982, Atlanta, Georgia. Financial support provided by Champion International Corporation, U.S. Forest Service, McIntire-Stennis and the Reynolds Homestead Research Center.

[2] Graduate Research Assistant, Assistant Professor of Forest Soils and Research Associate, respectively, Department of Forestry, Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University, Blacksburg, Virginia, and Principal Hydrologist, U.S. Forest Service, Coweeta Hydrologic Laboratory, Franklin, North Carolina.

A number of recent symposia have been held on he effects of intensive management on productivity Tippin, 1978; Leaf, 1979 and Mann, 1980). Most f the deleterious effects of intensive forest anagement are associated with reductions in soil utrient reserves or with the ability of the ystem to effectively cycle nutrients (Pritchett nd Wells, 1978; Wells and Jorgensen, 1979; ritchett, 1980) and with harm to the physical roperties of the soil (Campbell, 1973; Haines *et* l., 1975; Nutter and Douglass, 1978; Greacen and ands, 1980; Pritchett, 1980).

Mechanical site preparation is used extensively n the southeast to eliminate logging slash, reduce ompeting vegetation and manipulate the site in n attempt to optimize survival and early height rowth of planted seedlings (Duzan, 1980). There s no one site preparation prescription that is pplicable to all areas. To improve their effectveness and cost efficiency, site preparation rescriptions must be site specific. Social and nvironmental factors must also be considered Balmer *et al.*, 1976).

Excessive soil disturbance during site preparaion is a major factor influencing productivity eclines (Pritchett, 1981). These same disturbances ay also substantially increase sediment concentraions in stream water thus degrading water quality Stone *et al.*, 1978). The Federal Water Pollution ontrol Act (PL 92-500) has classified harvesting nd site preparation activities as non-point sources f pollution. As such, it is required by law to ontrol discharges from forest land using "best anagement practices" (Rey, 1980).

In light of these two factors, several research fforts in the southeast are actively investigating e effects of harvesting and site preparation. e small watershed technique has been used at oweeta Hydrologic Laboratory since the early irties to evaluate the effects of management actices on the timing, quantity and quality of treamflow from forested catchments (Douglass and ift, 1977). Streamflow changes due to cutting d vegetation changes have been quantified and redictive equations developed for forested catchnts subject to disturbance (Douglass and Swift, 77). The current research effort at Coweeta phasizes the effects of forest practices on ream water quality and nutrient cycling (Douglass d Swift, 1977).

The U.S. Forest Service also maintains a drologic lab on the Coastal Plain at Oxford, ssissippi. The effects of intensive forest nagement practices on the upper Coastal Plain e being evaluated. It has been found that actices such as chopping, shearing, windrowing d bedding increase sediment losses. However, ese losses tend to diminish after the first year easley, 1979). Sediments were also shown to be important factor in the export of nitrogen from rested watersheds. Sediment-phase losses were found to equal aqueous-phase (dissolved) losses (Schrieber *et al.*, 1980).

A cooperative project between the University of Florida, the U.S. Forest Service and forest industry was installed to evaluate the effects of intensive management on the slash pine (*Pinus elliotti*) ecosystem of the lower Coastal Plain (Swindel *et al.*, 1981). The Intensive Management Practices Assessment Center (IMPAC) has used paired watersheds to demonstrate increased water yield following harvesting and site preparation. Water quality changes, although variable, tend to increase with the level of site disturbance (Swindel *et al.*, 1981).

The effects of clearcutting and regenerating a southern Piedmont forest have been studied recently by Hewlett (1979). Results from this study indicate an increase in water yield following clearcutting and site preparation. However, large increases in nutrient export and sediment load in stream water were not reported.

A site preparation study has recently been established by the Southern Regional Forest Center. This is a study designed to evaluate the effects of intensive management practices on loblolly pine (*Pinus taeda*) growth.[3] Sites have been selected on both the Piedmont and the Coastal Plain in an effort to provide basic information on the effects of intensive management on soil properties and nutrient cycling throughout the range of loblolly pine.

Watershed research at the Reynolds Homestead Research Center is a cooperative project between the Department of Forestry at Virginia Tech, Champion International Corporation and the U.S. Forest Service. The objective of the project is to quantify the changes associated with clearcut harvesting and site preparation on the Virginia Piedmont. Specific emphasis is placed on 1) seedling survival and growth, 2) nutrient dynamics, 3) soil erosion and compaction, 4) stream water quality and 5) organic matter transformations. This report presents an overview of the study site, treatments, methods, and preliminary results on the effects of harvesting and site preparation on stormflow and soil solution nutrient concentrations.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

The Reynolds Homestead Research Center is located on the Piedmont in Patrick County, Virginia (fig. 1). The land use history of the Reynolds Homestead is typical of much of the southern Piedmont. Abusive agricultural practices associated with the production of tobacco caused severe erosion that was accompanied by substantial declines in productivity. Much of the eroded agricultural

---

[3] Larry Morris, Personal communication.

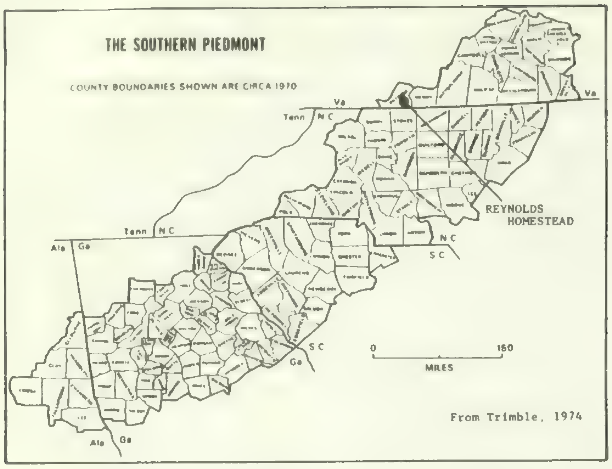


Figure 1.--Location of the Reynolds Homestead in relation to the Southern Piedmont.

land was eventually abandoned and has since grown into low quality mixed stands of pine and hardwoods.

In the summer of 1980, four small forested watersheds drained by ephemeral streams were selected for study. Watersheds 1 and 2 are approximately 4 acres each, watershed 3 is approximately 8 acres and watershed 4 is approximately 9 acres.

Both the overstory and understory vegetation in each watershed were characterized. Overstory trees were measured using variable radius plots with a sampling intensity of one point per acre. The understory vegetation was sampled using the line transect method.

The four watersheds were equipped with 1-foot H flumes to measure runoff (Douglass and Swift, 1977). A plywood trough 8 feet long, 27 inches wide and 19 inches deep served as a sediment trap and approach section to the flume. Stage height was measured by a strip chart recorder at a stilling well connected to the flume by rubber tubing. The volume of flow was calculated for each runoff event. A 2-foot diameter Coshocton wheel mounted below each flume collected approximately 0.5% of the flow. The Coshocton wheel was connected to a plastic barrel where the runoff was stored prior to sampling. When a large volume of flow was anticipated, a 10:1 sample splitter was placed between the Coshocton wheel and the plastic barrels which reduced the stored sample to about 0.05% of the total flow.

After each event, the stormflow diverted to the plastic barrel was sampled. Sediment was determined gravimetrically after filtration through 0.42 micron fiberglass filter paper. The samples were analyzed for K, Ca, Mg, conductivity, and pH using the standard methods employed in the Forest Soils/Tree Nutrition lab at Virginia Tech. NH$_4$-N, NO$_3$-N and PO$_4$-P were determined at the Virginia Tech Water Quality Lab using the meth described by Smolen et al. (1978). Total N wa determined by Kjeldahl digestion.

Following a one year calibration period, of the four watersheds were commercially clear Conventional chainsaw felling and yarding with rubber tired skidders was used to harvest the timber. The harvesting operation was complete in October 1981.

In late fall, 1981, soil solution lysimet were installed at two depths, 6 and 12 inches, at ten random locations in each watershed. So solution samples were collected biweekly. NH$_4$- NO$_3$-N, PO$_4$-P, K, Ca, Mg, pH and conductivity w determined on the soil solution samples using t same analytic techniques as employed with the stream water samples. Soil moisture and temper were also determined at biweekly intervals.

Three separate site preparation prescripti representing three levels of intensity, were applied to the clearcut watersheds in July, 198 The intensity of each prescription was classifi on the basis of the amount of disturbance to th forest floor and residual biomass.

Watershed 1, the uncut control, was not si prepared. It remains an undisturbed control.

Watershed 2 was subjected to the least int sive treatment, chop and burn. A Marden double drum chopper weighing approximately 42,000 lbs was pulled over the area by a Caterpillar D-7G tractor. The residual standing trees were knoc down and the smaller diameter material cut into pieces. Two months after chopping, in Septembe 1982, the area was broadcast burned. The end result of this treatment was that the forest floor remained essentially intact and, except f elements volatized by the fire (primarily N), t nutrients present in the slash remained on the site distributed over the area in the ash. The nutrients were readily available and could rapi move in the nutrient cycle.

An intermediate level of site preparation intensity was applied to Watershed 3. The site preparation prescription consisted of the shear-disk, 1-pass operation. In a single pass over the site, the residual material was sheared and the forest floor was turned into the mineral so The results of this treatment differ from those of the chop and burn in that 1) the forest floo is disturbed and 2) although all the nutrients i the slash remain on the site, they are tied up i the residual material and are released to the active nutrient cycle at a much slower rate.

The most intensive treatment was applied t watershed 4. This area was sheared, piled and disked in three separate passes with a Caterpill D-7G. Windrows were located either on the cont or in erosion ditches and were burned two months after site preparation. In this treatment, the utrients contained in the slash were localized at he sites of the burned windrows. They are, for he most part, not available to the majority of rees in the next rotation.

Following site preparation, sediment traps ere constructed in each of the prepared watersheds o measure downslope soil movement. The sediment raps will be used to validate soil erosion losses rom each site as predicted by the Universal Soil oss Equation (Dissmeyer and Foster, 1980).

Each of the site prepared watersheds will be lanted with loblolly pine in the spring of 1983. urvival and growth will be measured periodically. rowth data will be correlated with results from ne nutrient dynamics portion of the study to valuate the impact of the three levels of site reparation on both short- and long-term site prouctivity.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Site Characterization

The principal soil mapping units in the study atersheds were:

Watershed 1	Cecil Fine Sandy Loam, Cecil Clay Loam, Appling Fine Sandy Loam
Watershed 2	Hayesville Cobbly Loam, Hayesville Fine Sandy Loam, Cecil Fine Sandy Loam
Watershed 3	Cecil Fine Sandy Loam
Watershed 4	Cecil Clay Loam, Cecil Fine Sandy Loam, Appling Fine Sandy Loam

Selected soil physical and chemical properties are presented in Table 1.

A summary stand table of the overstory vegetation is presented in Table 2. Site index data is presented in Table 3, and the understory vegetation characterization data is presented in Table 4.

The soils of the four watersheds are derived from similar parent material and are quite similar. The major differences are in the depth of the A horizon, which is due to differential erosion. The vegetation on the watersheds was quite different. Pine dominated the overstory in watershed 2. The species composition in watersheds 1 and 4 was more evenly distributed between pine and hardwoods. Watershed 3 was dominated by hardwoods. Differences in vegetation and topsoil depth can be traced to the past land use pattern of the individual watersheds and contributes to the inherent watershed differences.

Clearcutting Effects

The drought that occurred during 1980 and 1981 severely affected runoff from the gauged watersheds. The relative scarcity of streamflow data for the first half of 1981 (Table 5) can be attributed to the drought.

Overall sediment concentrations in stormflow from the clearcut watersheds are greater than concentrations in the undisturbed watersheds. Most of the sediment in streamwater from the clearcut watersheds is associated with the construction of roads and landings in the upper parts of the drainage basin. Very little soil disturbance was observed in other areas of the clearcut.

Nutrient concentrations, although variable, were generally greater in stormflow originating on

Table 1.--Selected soil properties for research watersheds at the Reynolds Homestead Research Center, Patrick County, Virginia.

Watershed	Site Preparation Prescription To Be Applied	Soil Horizon	Depth	BD	OM	pH	K	Ca	Mg
			(cm)	(g/cc)	(%)		- - -	(ppm)[1/]	- - -
1	Control	A	21.8	1.10	2.6	4.3	11.2	8.2	8.2
		B	100	1.46	0.2	4.9	10.7	12.3	3.3
2	Chop and Burn	A	13.9	1.04	2.2	4.3	5.6	3.0	0.9
		B	100	1.46	0.6	4.9	7.2	4.6	7.0
3	Shear-disk (1 pass)	A	13.9	0.97	3.7	4.5	10.0	6.8	3.4
		B	100	1.36	0.9	5.0	6.9	9.2	6.6
4	Shear, rake-pile, disk (3 pass)	A	12.9	1.01	2.6	4.8	6.8	4.4	2.0
		B	100	1.39	0.7	5.2	9.9	19.0	11.5

[1/] Double acid (0.05N HCl + 0.025 N $H_2 SO_4$) extraction.

Table 2.--Summary stand table of research watersheds at the Reynolds Homestead Research Center, Patrick County, Virginia.

Watershed	Site Preparation Prescription to be Applied	Va. Pine	Other[1] S.W.	Oak[2]	Tulip Poplar	Other[3] H.W.	Total S.W.	Total H.W.	Total
		(trees/acre)							
1	Control	661	1	18	86	368	662	472	1,134
2	Chop and burn	400	34	5	16	479	435	500	935
3	Shear-disk (1 pass)	88	6	95	19	767	94	881	975
4	Shear, rake-pile, disk (3 pass)	320	4	4	87	455	324	546	870

[1] Species include white pine, Table-Mountain pine, Pitch pine and Eastern red cedar.

[2] Species include white oak, northern red oak, chestnut oak and scarlet oak

[3] Species include black gum, sourwood, red maple, beech, green ash, black cherry, dogwood and black locust.

the clearcut watersheds (Table 5). Both NH_4-N and NO_3-N concentrations are greater in stream water from the clearcut watersheds. It is interesting to note that NO_3-N levels in streamwater from both the clearcut and control watersheds are greater than NH_4-N levels.

The relationship between streamflow PO_4-P concentrations in the clearcut and control watersheds varies from month to month, although, on the average, higher concentrations do occur in streamflow from the clearcut watersheds. However, levels from both areas are quite low.

K concentrations are higher in streamflow from the clearcut watersheds. Similar results were observed for Ca and Mg concentrations.

The effect of clearcut harvesting on soil solution nutrient concentrations can be seen i Table 6. NH_4-N and NO_3-N concentrations in samples from the clearcut watersheds were sign ficantly greater than the control. In additio NO_3-N levels tend to be higher than NH_4-N in t clearcut watersheds. The reverse occurs in th control watershed. This indicates that nitrif-tion is a significant factor in the disturbed watersheds, but not in the control. Similar results have been observed by Likens, _et_ _al_. (0

PO_4-P concentrations in soil solution fro the clearcut watersheds were significantly gre r than the PO_4-P concentrations in soil solution from the control watershed. However, as with streamwater samples, PO_4-P concentrations from th

Table 3.--Site indices for selected species on research watersheds at the Reynolds Homestead Research Center, Patrick County, Virginia.

Watershed	Site Preparation Prescription to be Applied	Site Index[1]		
		Virginia Pine	White Pine	Tulip Poplar
		(ft)		
1	Control	70	82	94
2	Chop and burn	66	--	--
3	Shear-disk (1 pass)	67	65	93
4	Shear, rake-pile, disk (3 pass)	69	70	91

[1] Site index base age 50 years.

Table 4.--Understory vegetation characterization of research watersheds at the Reynolds Homestead Research Center, Patrick County, Virginia.

Watershed	Site Preparation Prescription to be Applied	Species						
		Soil	Grass	Forb	Vine	Shrub	H.W.	Pine
		(% dominance)[1/]						
1	Control	0.0	0.3	2.2	20.2	16.4	0.9	24.9
2	Chop and burn	1.5	0.6	11.0	4.4	17.8	36.9	1.8
3	Shear-disk (1 pass)	2.2	0.0	2.7	7.8	17.8	34.3	0.6
4	Shear, rake-pile, disk (3 pass)	0.0	0.1	2.9	9.2	10.6	0.8	17.3

[1/] Dominance is calculated as:

$$\text{dominance} = \frac{\text{total intercept length of species A}}{\text{total transect length}} \times 100$$

Table 5.--Monthly and cummulative averages of selected stream water properties from research watersheds prior to site preparation.

	Date	Sediment		NH_4-N		NO_3-N		PO_4-P		K	
		Control	C.C.[1/]	Control	C.C.	Control	C.C.	Control	C.C.	Control	C.C.
		(g/ml)		(ppm)							
1981	Feb	0.031	2.334	5.60	1.21	1.44	0.04	0.010	0.011	2.42	--
	Mar	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
	Apr	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
	May	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
	June	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
	July	0.038	*	0.40	*	0.00	*	0.000	*	2.56	*
	Aug	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
	Sept	0.030	1.473	4.34	1.47	6.38	2.73	0.019	0.013	0.51	3.69
	Oct	0.035	0.148	0.63	1.15	0.39	2.48	0.014	0.009	2.40	3.74
	Nov	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
	Dec	0.006	0.177	0.61	0.63	0.75	4.45	0.010	0.034	2.95	13.20
1982	Jan	0.016	0.146	0.55	0.62	0.41	0.86	0.001	0.015	1.39	1.88
	Feb	0.012	0.070	0.11	0.24	0.30	0.81	0.009	0.006	1.09	1.49
	Mar	0.011	0.086	0.11	0.00	0.17	0.00	0.000	0.000	0.35	5.28
	Apr	0.010	0.065	0.14	0.03	0.31	4.29	0.000	0.002	1.42	3.01
	May	0.020	0.670	2.76	0.33	3.12	1.94	0.006	0.021	2.88	4.95
	June	0.047	0.327	0.55	9.66	0.68	0.85	0.043	0.299	5.10	4.82
	July			0.04	1.01	1.20	1.02	0.003	0.021	4.20	7.67
Cumulative Average		0.023	0.351	0.92	1.63	1.25	1.95	0.01	0.04	2.26	5.05

[1/] Clear cut.

* No run off event occurred during this month.

Table 6.--Mean soil solution values for research watersheds at the Reynolds Homestead Research Center, Patric County, Virginia, as affected by clearcut harvesting.

Treatment	NH_4-N	NO_3-N	PO_4-P	K	Ca	Mg	Conductivity	pH
	(ppm)						(mmhos)	
Control	0.08a[1]	0.01a	0.008a	1.96a	2.09a	0.92a	25.9a	5.3a
Clearcut	0.22b	0.60b	0.016a	2.64b	3.19b	1.30b	37.5b	5.3a

[1] Values in a column with the same letter are not significantly different (∝ = 0.05).

the clearcut and the control watersheds are quite low. This is probably due to the low level of water soluble P found in most Piedmont soils.

Conductivity and cation concentrations in soil solution were also significantly higher in the clearcut watersheds (Table 6). These higher levels were probably responsible for the increased levels of nutrients in the stream water.

Effects of Site Preparation

Unfortunately, no runoff events have occurred since site preparation. Thus, it was not possible to determine the effects of site preparation on any stream water parameters. Soil solution data for the first three months since site preparation is presented in Table 7. Although there was a trend towards higher levels of NH_4-N in the site prepared watersheds, there were no significant differences. A similar trend with NO_3-N values did indicate a significantly higher concentration of NO_3-N in the soil solution of the most intensive treatment. In the two more intensive treatments, the shear, pile, disk and the shear-disk, NO_3-N levels were greater than NH_4-N levels. In the chop and burn and control watersheds the reverse occurred. This seems to indicate that nitrification was an important process in the more intensive treatments, but not in the undisturbed and minim disturbed areas.

PO_4-P values were not significantly differe among any of the site preparation treatments or the control. The low level of readily available P in Piedmont soils was again demonstrated by th low concentrations of P in soil solution.

Conductivity and cation values in soil solut tended to increase with increasing intensity of site preparation. K levels in each of the site prepared watersheds were greater than the control Ca, Mg and conductivity values paralleled those of K, but only the most intensive treatment was actually significantly greater.

CONCLUSIONS

Preliminary results from this study showed that clearcutting and site preparation increased levels of nutrients in soil solution. This may be due to a combination of increased organic matt mineralization and a decrease in nutrient uptake by vegetation.

Clearcutting was also found to increase the nutrient concentration and sediment load of stormflow. The increased level of nutrients in

Table 7.--Mean soil solution values for research watersheds at the Reynolds Homestead Research Center, Patrick County, Virginia, as affected by site preparation.

Site Preparation Prescription	NH_4-N	NO_3-N	PO_4-P	K	Ca	Mg	Conductivity	pH
	(ppm)						(mmhos)	
Control	0.57a[1]	0.18a	0.010a	2.59a	1.31a	1.36a	27.5a	5.26ab
Chop and burn	0.66a	0.32a	0.005a	5.00b	2.33a	1.37a	58.5a	5.25a
Shear-disk (1 pass)	0.95a	1.78a	0.012a	5.34b	3.14a	1.77a	67.9a	5.57ba
Shear, rake-pile disk (3 pass)	0.86a	4.75b	0.012a	5.56b	7.92b	2.84b	104.8b	5.66c

[1] Values in a column with the same letter are not significantly different (∝ = 0.05).

tream water draining from the clearcut watersheds s probably related to the higher levels of utrients in soil solution in the clearcut areas. ncreased sediment loads in streamflow from the learcut watersheds were probably associated with he construction of roads and landings during the arvesting operation. The higher levels of both ediments and nutrients in streamflow originating n the clearcut watersheds may detrimentally ffect downstream water quality.

NO_3-N levels were greater than NH_4-N levels n the disturbed watersheds. Nitrification ppeared to be an improtant process in the disurbed areas. This can have important consequences ecause of the great mobility of the nitrate anion. O_3-N leached from the active rooting zone is no onger available to the tree crop. There are also otential health hazards associated with high itrate levels in drinking water.

Since forestry operations are classified as on-point sources of pollution, these potential mpacts of intensive management should be of oncern to forest managers, particularly since hey may also be related to potential declines in ong term site productivity.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The authors are grateful for the assistance rovided by Champion International's site preparaion and equipment personnel in the installation this study. The assistance of Jackson R. Bird, tephen Schoenholtz, Douglas Lantagne, and John rbert is also appreciated.

LITERATURE CITED

lmer, W.E., H.L. Williston, G.E. Dissmeyer and Pierce.
1976. Site preparation - why and how? For. Mgt. Bull. SE Area State and Private Forestry USDA For. Ser., 8 p.
asley, R.S.
1979. Intensive site preparation and sediment losses on steep watersheds in the Gulf Coastal Plain. Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 43:412-417.
mpbell, R.G.
1973. The impact of timber harvesting and site preparation on selected soil conditions and plant growth. Ph.D. dissertation, University of Georgia, 65 p.
ssmeyer, G.E. and G.R. Foster.
1980. A guide for predicting sheet and rill erosion on forest land. USDA For. Ser. State and Private Forestry. SE Area Tech. Public. SA-TP11, 40 p.
glass, J.E. and W.T. Swank.
1972. Streamflow modification through management of eastern forests. USDA For. Ser. Res. Paper SE 94, 15 p.
Douglass, J.E. and L.W. Swift.
1977. Forest service studies of soil and nutrient losses caused by roads, logging, mechanical site preparation and prescribed burning in the southeast, p. 489-502. In Correll, D.L. (ed.) Watershed Research in Eastern North America. A Workshop to Compare Results. Smithsonian Institution, Edgewater, Md.
Duzan, H.W.
1980. Site preparation techniques for artificial regeneration, p. 54-63. In Mann, J.W. (ed.) Proceedings of a Seminar on Site Preparation and Regeneration Management. Forestry Harvesting and Training Center. Clemson, SC.
Greacen, E.L. and R. Sands.
1980. Compaction of forest soils. A review. Aust. J. Soil Res. 18:163-189.
Haines, L.W., T.E. Maki and S.G. Sanderford.
1975. The effect of mechanical site preparation treatments on soil productivity and tree (Pinus taeda L. and Pinus elliotti var. elliottii) growth, p. 379-395. In Bernier, B. and C.H. Winget (eds.) Forest Soils and Land Management. Les Presses de l'Universiti' Laval, Quebec.
Hewlett, J.D.
1979. Forest water quality: An experiment in harvesting and regenerating Piedmont forest School of Forest Resources, Univ. of Georgia. Athens, Georgia. 22 p.
Knight, H.A.
1977. The southern pine is losing ground. Ala. For. Prod. 20(9):4-6.
Leaf, A.L. (ed.).
1979. Proceedings - impact of intensive harvesting on forest nutrient cycling. College of Environmental Science and Forestry, State University of New York, Syracuse, NY.
Likens, G.E., F.H. Bormann, N.M. Johnson, D.W. Fisher and R.S. Pierce.
1970. Effects of forest cutting and herbicide treatment on nutrient budgets in the Hubbard Brook watershed-ecosystem. Ecol. Monogr. 40:23-47.
Mann, J.W. (ed.)
1980. Proceedings of a seminar on site preparation and regeneration management. Forestry Harvesting and Training Center. Clemson, SC.
Nutter, W.L. and J.E. Douglass.
1978. Consequences of harvesting and site preparation in the Piedmont, p. 67-72. In Tippin T. (ed.) Proceedings: A Symposium on Principles of Maintaining Productivity on Prepared Sites. Atlanta, Georgia.
Pritchett, W.L.
1980. Soil amelioration: physical and chemical properties, p. 42-53. In Mann, J.W. (ed.) Proceedings of a Seminar on Site Preparation and Regeneration Management. Forestry Harvesting and Training Center. Clemson, SC.
Pritchett, W.L.
1981. Site preparation in the coastal flatwoods. IMPAC Report 6(7). University of Florida. 21 p.

Pritchett, W.L. and C.G. Wells.
1978. Harvesting and site preparation increase nutrient mobilization, p. 98-110. In Tippin, T. (ed.) Proceedings: A Symposium on Principles of Maintaining Productivity on Prepared Sites. Atlanta, Georgia.

Rey, M.
1980. The effect of the clean water act on forestry practices in U.S. forestry and water quality: what course for the 80's? Water Pollution Control Federation. Richmond, VA.

Schreiber, J.D., P.D. Duffy and D.C. McClurkin.
1980. Aqueous- and sediment-phase nitrogen yields from five southern pine watersheds. Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 44:401-407.

Smolen, M.D., J.G. Bruce, Jr. and V.L. Church.
1978. A labor efficient water analysis system with computerized data handling, p. 159-167. In National Conference on Quality Assurance of Environmental Measurements. Information Transfer, Inc., Silver Springs, MD.

Southern Forest Resource Analysis Committee.
1969. The South's third forest. How can it meet future demands? Southern For. Resour. Anal. Comm. 11 p.

Stone, E.L., W.T. Swank and J.W. Hornbeck.
1978. Impacts of timber harvest and regeneration systems on stream flow and soils in the eastern deciduous region, p. 516-535. In Proc. Fifth North Am. Forest Soils Conf. Colorado State University.

Swindel, B.F., E.T. Sullivan, W.R. Marion, L.D. Harris, L.A. Morris, W.L. Pritchett, L.F. Conde
H. Riekerk.
1981. Multi-resource effects of harvest, sit
Preparation and planting in pine flatwoods. IMPAC Report 6(6). Univ. of Florida, Gainesville, FL.

Switzer, G.L. and L.E. Nelson.
1973. Maintenance of productivity under short rotations, p. 365-390. In Int. Symp. on For
Fertilization. OFAO/IUFRO, Paris.

Tippin, T. (ed.).
1978. Proceedings: a symposium on principles of maintaining productivity on prepared site
Southeastern Area State and Private Forestry
Atlanta, Georgia, 171 p.

USDA Forest Service.
1973. The outlook for timber in the United States. Forest Resources Report No. 20, 367

Wells, C.G. and J.R. Jorgensen.
1979. Effects of intensive harvesting on nutr
supply and sustained productivity, p. 212-23
In Leaf, A.L. (ed.) Impact of Intensive Harvesting on Forest Nutrient Cycling. Syracus
NY.

Whyte, A.G.D.
1973. Productivity of first and second crops
Pinus radiata on the Moutere gravel soils of
Nelson. New Zealand J. Forestry 18:87-103.

Will, G.M. and R. Ballard.
1976. Radiata pine - soil degrader or improve
New Zealand J. For. 21:248-252.

NUTRIENT DISTRIBUTIONS IN RUNOFF FROM
OUACHITA MOUNTAIN WATERSHEDS [1]

Edwin R. Lawson and Leslie H. Hileman [2]

Abstract.--Nutrients in runoff from four watersheds in the Ouachita Mountains of Arkansas were monitored. One watershed received a final shelterwood harvest and another was burned and planted with shortleaf pine. Nutrients included: P, K, Ca, Fe, Na, NH_3-N, Mg, Mn, NO_3, and HCO_3. Turbidity, pH, and specific conductance were also evaluated. Treatments did not generally alter nutrient levels in runoff.

INTRODUCTION

Forested watersheds are generally recognized
the primary source of high quality water in the
ited States (Corbett et al. 1978; Douglass 1974;
one 1977) and that altering the forest cover
fluences the amount and quality of water pro-
ded from these areas. Forest cover is usually
anged through a variety of silvicultural
actices applied to achieve certain forest manage-
nt objectives. A considerable amount of liter-
ure is available on the effects of such practices
water quality, but research results vary greatly
pending on such factors as soil characteristics,
getation, climate and degree of disturbance
rozka et al. 1981; Douglass 1974).

There is currently very little similar in-
rmation available for the upland areas of the
ark-Ouachita Highlands. Losses of sediment
d nutrients from the rather shallow soils
aracteristic of the region may be critical. In
dition, excessive downstream loading of sediment
d nutrients may be detrimental to aquatic
bitat.

STUDY AREAS

The four watersheds are on the Alum Creek
erimental Forest in central Arkansas. Three
the watersheds (WS-1, WS-2, and WS-3) are 1.63, 1.28, 1.44 acres in size, respectively. They are adjacently located at the headwaters of Watershed 4 (WS-4), which is 32.5 acres in size. Hydrologic characteristics of the three smaller watersheds in an undisturbed condition were reported by Rogerson (1971). Elevations within WS-4 range from 1120 feet at the gaging site to about 1400 feet at the headwaters. Average slopes are about 15 percent for the smaller watersheds and 20 percent for WS-4.

Watershed soils are in the Carnasaw-Townley-Pirum association (Haley 1979). These soils are well drained, undulating to steep, shallow to moderately deep stony loam soils on hills, mountains, ridges, and colluvial areas. The Carnasaw and Townley series are characterized by a thin layer of loam material and underlying-clayey material weathered from shale. These series are classed as clayey, mixed, thermic typic Hapludults (U.S. Department of Agriculture 1975). Pirum soils are classed as fine-loamy, siliceous, thermic typic Hapludults. All of these soil series are underlain by tilted and fractured shale, sandstone, or quartzite.

Annual precipitation in the study area averaged 52.5 inches between 1961 and 1969 (Rogerson 1971). Precipitation at the Alum Fork climatological station 10 miles east of the catchments averaged 53.26 inches over a 30-year period (U.S. Department of Commerce 1981). Average long-term monthly precipitation ranges from about 3.30 inches in October to 5.83 inches in May. Almost all precipitation is in the form of rain, but light snow falls a few times each winter with an occasional heavy snowstorm. Annual temperature averages 62.1°F, and the January and July means are 42.3°F and 81.6°F, respectively. The average growing season is 214 days and extends from March 30 to October 31.

---

[1] Paper presented at Second Biennial
thern Silviculture Research Conference,
anta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] The authors are, respectively, Project
der, Southern Forest Experiment Station, 830
rview Street, Fayetteville, Arkansas, and
istant Professor, University of Arkansas,
artment of Agronomy, Fayetteville.

Vegetation on WS-1 and the untreated part of WS-4 consists primarily of an overstory 70- to 80-year-old shortleaf pine (Pinus echinata Mill.) with an occasional dominant hardwood. Pine basal area averages about 100 square feet per acre. In 1970, the understory on the smaller basins contained about 34 square feet of basal area of hardwoods, consisting primarily of a mixture of white oak (Quercus alba L.), northern red oak (Q. rubra L.), black oak (Q. velutina Lam.), blackjack oak (Q. marilandica Muenchh.), dogwood (Cornus florida L.), red maple (Acer rubrum L.), hickories (Carya spp.), and black gum (Nyssa sylvatica Marsh.). A few other tree, shrub, and herbaceous species occur less frequently. Most of the hardwoods are less than 30 feet in height, and some are less than 15 feet.

Vegetation on WS-2 and WS-3 was altered during silvicultural treatments in 1970 and again in 1977. A shelterwood cut was made in the pine overstory on WS-2 in 1970, leaving about 60 square feet of pine basal area. All hardwoods an inch and larger at the root collar were injected with herbicides. These deadened hardwoods were severed in 1971. The watershed was sprayed three times during the next 7 years to control competing vegetation and measure herbicide concentrations in runoff (Lawson 1976). Natural shortleaf pine regeneration developed rapidly under the shelterwood overstory averaging about 1500 seedlings and small saplings per acre by 1977. The remaining pine overstory was then harvested. Herbaceous cover consisted primarily of native grasses and a few shrubs of varying density, depending on pine stocking. The pine saplings were precommercially thinned in 1981 to about an 8-by-10 foot spacing.

In 1970 all merchantable timber on WS-3 was harvested and the hardwoods deadened in the same manner as on WS-2. The clearcut watershed was also sprayed with herbicide three times. Grass vegetation developed within two growing seasons on the area and formed a dense cover which was maintained to observe its effects on soil moisture levels and water yield. In December 1976, the watershed was burned to remove the rough grass and planted with 1-0 shortleaf pine seedlings at 8-by-10 foot spacing or about 544 trees per acre. Spots where first year survival was low were replanted the next dormant season. Grass cover developed during the first growing season following the burn. No other treatments were imposed on WS-3.

STUDY METHODS

Field Measurements

Runoff from watersheds 1, 2, and 3 was measured with 3-foot H-type flumes, and WS-4 with a 4.5-foot H-flume, all equipped with FW-1 water level recorders. One-liter water samples were automatically collected as streamflow reached stage heights of 0.05, 0.10, 0.20, 0.30, 0.50 0.75 and 1.00 foot in the 3-foot flumes and a additional heights of 1.50, 2.00 and 3.00 fee in the 4.5-foot flume. The technique develop by Sartz and Curtis (1967) allows sampling during the rising stages only and prevents purging after collection. Samples were picked up as soon as possible after each runoff-producing storm and placed in cold storage until examination

Laboratory Analyses

All laboratory analyses and measurements were performed by the University of Arkansas S Testing Laboratory, using standard methods (U. Environmental Protection Agency 1976; American Public Health Association 1971). Analyses of individual elements were not made throughout t entire study period due to lack of available analytical equipment, or insufficient samples. Analyses were made on unfiltered samples.

The following determinations were made fo each sample, except where sample quantities we insufficient: hydrogen ion concentration (pH), iron (Fe), manganese (Mn), total phosphorus (P potassium (K), calcium (Ca), magnesium (Mg), sodium (Na), ammonia nitrogen (NH_3-N), nitrate (NO_3), carbonate (CO_3), bicarbonate (HCO_3), specific conductance, and turbidity. All data are given in milligrams per liter (mg/l) excep pH, specific conductance and turbidity, which are pH units, µmhos/cm at 25°C, and nephelomet turbidity units (NTU), respectively.

Statistical Analyses

The water sample data was summarized in t groups relating to time periods: the first per extending from 1973 to early 1977, and the sec period from 1977 into 1981. These groups were analyzed separately because they represented t break point between the 1970 post-treatment da and that following the 1977 treatments being evaluated in this study. Also, there were laboratory analyses in the second group that c not be performed earlier due to lack of equipm

In the 1973-1977 period, the number of samples for most nutrients ranged from 127 on WS- to 246 on WS-4, except for Ca and NH_3-N. The number on WS-1 and WS-4 for Ca ranged from 73 184 and for NH_3-N, 14 to 57. The number per watershed in the 1977-1981 period generally ranged from 63 on WS-1 to 193 on WS-4, with slightly lower ranges for HCO_3 and NO_3.

The experimental design called for a split-plot analysis, but an alternative analysis was used because of unbalanced data. Thus, statist tests should be regarded as approximate. The alternative statistical analyses were performed using the General Linear Models Procedure provided by Statistical Analysis System Institute, Inc. (1979). Each of the measured parameters were considered to be the dependent variable in the analyses. The model included watershed, month that samples were collected and the interaction of watershed and month. The analysis of variance test (TYPE IV) provided "F" values and significance probability for the model and its sources; watershed, month, and watershed x month interaction. Only probabilities of 0.01 or less were considered significant in all tests. Differences between means were tested using a least significant difference procedure for unequal replication (Steel and Torrie 1960).

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Several factors affecting interpretation of results should be kept in mind. First, due to precipitation patterns there may be little or no runoff from these ephemeral streams in a given month compared with the same month in another year. A similar variation among seasons and years is characteristic of runoff patterns. Second, there are some inherent differences in runoff response among watersheds that affect sampling frequency. Watershed 4 has the greatest volume of runoff and has the highest runoff-precipitation ratio. Data from WS-4 are more representative of larger basins in the Ouachita Mountains than data from the other watersheds. On WS-2 and WS-3, previous treatments have also influenced runoff responses. Third, antecedent soil moisture affects the amount of runoff and therefore the amount of leaching that takes place in response to a storm. Thus, previous leaching may cause changes in nutrient concentrations or other chemical, and physical properties of storm runoff. Nutrient release is known to be affected by soil moisture and soil temperatures (Pritchett and Wells 1978).

Most concentrations of nutrients found in unoff were relatively low, especially Fe, Mn, and during the 1973-1977 period (Table 1) and these utrients plus Mg in the 1977-1981 period (Table). The concentrations of P, Mn and Mg were not significantly different among the watersheds or months. However, Mn levels from WS-2 and WS-3 more than doubled those from WS-1 and WS-4 during 1977 the first year after treatment. Only small differences among all watersheds occurred in other years. Phosphorus movement was not expected to be influenced by the treatments since vegetative changes usually increase solution P only slightly (Pritchett and Wells 1978). The levels of Fe in the early period ranged from 0.17 to 0.23 mg/l and there were no significant differences among the four watersheds. In the 1977-1981 period, the level of Fe from the burned watershed (WS-3) was significantly higher than the concentrations from the other watersheds. Concentrations of Fe from WS-3 were highest in 1977 and 1978, reaching about 0.4 mg/l (fig. 1). The causes of the increased levels of Fe are not known. Fe concentrations are strongly associated with month or season of the year (fig. 2). The highest levels occurred in April with a small peak in early fall.

able 1.--Nutrient concentrations in runoff from the Alum Creek watersheds during the 1973-1977 period.

trient	WS-1	WS-2	WS-3	WS-4
	---------------mg/l	------------------		
Fe	0.23a	0.19a	0.20a	0.17a *
Mn	0.04a	0.03a	0.04a	0.04a
P	0.19a	0.17a	0.18a	0.16a
K	0.81b	1.75d	1.29c	0.55a
Ca	1.72a	1.92a	1.64a	1.14a
Na	0.53a	1.17c	0.90b	0.82b
NH_3-N	2.02c	1.20b	1.32b	0.61a

Means followed by the same letter in a line are t significantly different at the .01 level.

Table 2.--Nutrient concentrations in runoff from the Alum Creek watersheds during the 1977-1981 period.

Nutrient	WS-1	WS-2	WS-3	WS-4
	---------------mg/l	------------------		
Fe	0.09b	0.12b	0.21a	0.11b *
Mn	0.06a	0.07a	0.08a	0.06a
P	0.09a	0.14a	0.12a	0.07a
K	1.08b	1.49c	0.96b	0.54a
Ca	1.54c	1.75c	1.01b	0.56a
Mg	0.04a	0.05a	0.05a	0.05a
Na	0.58a	0.89a	0.79a	0.77a
HCO_3	12.03a	13.71a	10.96a	9.56a
NH_3-N	1.02c	0.74b	0.62b	0.42a
NO_3	2.31a	2.89a	2.82a	2.44a

* Means followed by the same letter in a line are not significantly different at the .01 level.

Concentrations of Ca in runoff varied significantly among the four watersheds in the 1977-1981 period, and K followed the same trend in both periods. Levels of both nutrients were highest in WS-2 and lowest in WS-4 runoff. Lower concentrations of these and several other nutrients in runoff from WS-4 may be due to its much higher flow volume relative to precipitation. Ca and K showed significant seasonal trends during both periods, with K also showing an interaction between watershed and month. The interaction is evidenced by inconsistent ranking of watersheds over time in Figure 3. The three smaller watersheds had higher concentrations than WS-4. Data from the 1973-1977 period showed similar trends. Calcium showed the same trend in the 1977-1981 period, but was generally more variable. Burning on WS-3 did not result in increased concentrations of either nutrient, although some increase is normally expected (Pritchett and Wells 1978). There was no runoff from WS-3 for nearly two months after the burn, which would allow these cations to be leached into the soil and absorbed before interflow occurred.

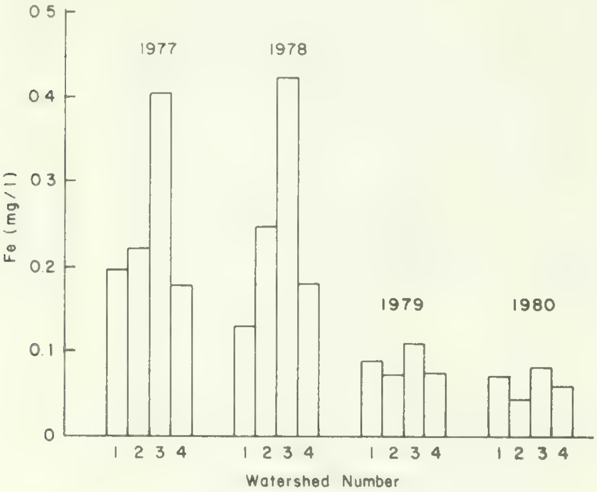


Figure 1.--Average concentrations of Fe in runoff by watershed and year.

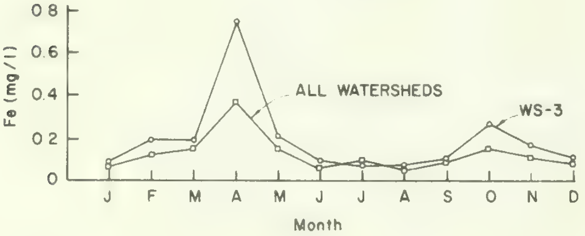


Figure 2.--Average monthly concentrations in Fe in runoff on WS-3 and all watersheds during the 1977-1981 period.

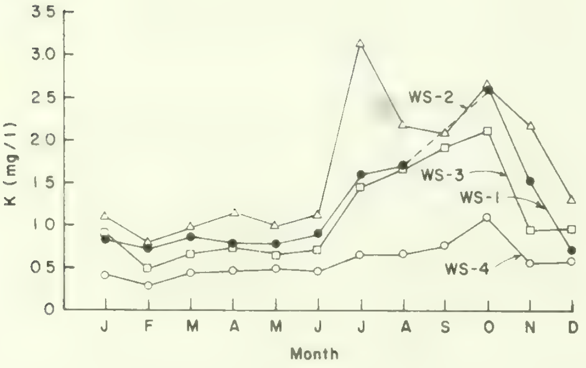


Figure 3.--Average concentrations of K in runoff by watershed during the 1977-1981 period.

Ammonia nitrogen (NH_3-N) in runoff varied significantly among the watersheds in both periods (Tables 1 and 2), with WS-1 having the highest and WS-4 the lowest levels. Higher levels of NH_3-N from WS-1 were very consistent throughout the study period. Differences in levels of NH_3-N betwee the two periods may be due to more accurate analytical techniques and a much greater numbe samples in the 1977-1981 period. A significa difference in NH_3-N levels occurred among mont in the 1977-1981 period, with WS-1 showing the highest levels (fig. 4). Causes of the peaks March and November on WS-1 and November on WS- cannot be explained, but they are based on 7 10 samples collected in 3 years. General tre indicate higher NH_3-N levels from late spring early fall.

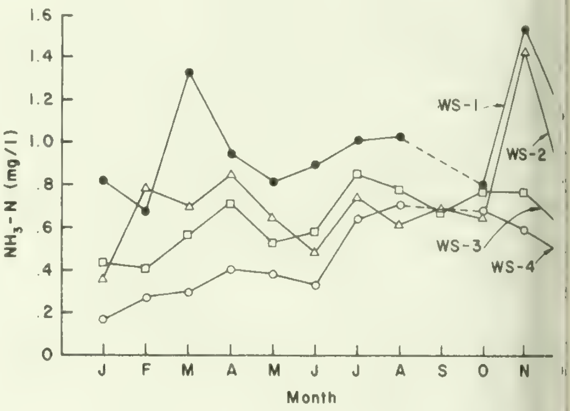


Figure 4.--Average concentrations of NH_3-N in runoff by watershed during the 1977-1981 period.

Nitrate (NO_3) levels ranged from 2.3 to 2.9 mg/l and there were no significant differe among the watersheds (Table 2), although runof from the two treated watersheds had the highes concentrations.

Concentrations of Na in runoff were high from WS-2 and lowest from WS-1 in both periods but only significantly different in the early period. The generally low levels of Na found runoff are expected since soils in the area ar low in this nutrient. Reasons for the differe in Na levels among watersheds are not known, b the higher levels on WS-2 and WS-3 may be reflecting responses from vegetative changes mad in the first cutting treatments. In the early period, Na concentrations were significantly r lated to months, but did not reflect seasonal changes.

Bicarbonate (HCO_3) concentrations ranged from 9.6 to 13.7 mg/l, with no significant differences among the watersheds (Table 2). L of HCO_3 were significantly associated with mon but the data showed no seasonal trends. The H levels found in this study are very close to t reported from streamflow in Colorado (Lewis an Grant 1979). A large number of water samples also analyzed for carbonate (CO_3), but it was ly detected.

A specific conductance of 20.0 µmhos/cm runoff samples from WS-4 was significantly low than the other watersheds (Table 3). Samples from the clearcut watershed (WS-3) also had significantly lower conductance than WS-1 and WS-2. A seasonal trend is apparent from the significantly different monthly averages, with the highest levels occurring in late summer and fall (fig. 5). The average for July was the lowest for any month on all watersheds except WS-3. Data for July was only collected for 1978 and 1979 due to lack of runoff in other years, and may not represent normal trends. Average conductance levels found in runoff from these watersheds are relatively low, indicating small amounts of dissolved minerals.

Table 3.--Levels of pH, specific conductance and turbidity in runoff during the 1977-1981 period.

Parameter	WS-1	WS-2	WS-3	WS-4
pH	4.87a	5.42c	5.13b	5.08b *
Cond.(µmhos/cm)	27.5c	28.9c	23.4b	20.0a
Turbidity (NTU)	10.8a	18.1a	32.4a	10.0a

Means followed by the same letter in a line are not significantly different at the .01 level.

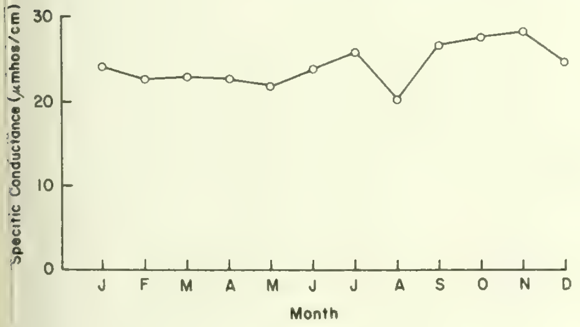


Figure 5.--Average monthly specific conductance of runoff from all watersheds combined for the 1977-1981 period.

Average turbidities ranged from about 10 to NTU, but differences among the four watersheds were not significant. The two undisturbed areas had the lowest turbidities in runoff water, followed in order by the shelterwood removal and clearcut-burn areas. This sequence follows the expected pattern based on relative surface disturbance in the watersheds. However, most sediment from the two disturbed watersheds probably came from the stream channels, since the ground surface generally had some litter or vegetative cover except the clearcut area immediately after the burn. The fact that turbidities also are affected by other impurities, such as organic compounds, should be borne in mind in assessing results.

H+ concentrations (pH) in runoff during the 1977-1981 period were significantly lower on WS-1 than all other watersheds (Table 3). Average pH of runoff water from WS-2 was also significantly higher than WS-3 and WS-4. In the 1973-1977 period, differences among the watersheds were not significant, but monthly averages were. Average annual pH values show the differences among watersheds, with WS-1 and WS-2 reflecting the extremes (fig. 6). The plotted data also indicate a general decline in pH levels from 1976 to 1978. The cause of this change is not known, although atmospheric deposition is suggested. Watersheds 3 and 4 seem to be recovering from the 1978 low. The slight decline in 1981 on WS-1 and WS-2 may be showing seasonal effects since the data represent only the first 6 months of the year. A similar decline in pH of surface water, but of lesser magnitude, was found in Illinois during the same time period (Brozka, Rolfe and Arnold 1981). Monthly differences in pH during the early period suggest that seasonal trends exist (fig. 7). Average pH tended to increase in the spring and early summer months when precipitation is greatest, then decline in the drier months until soil water recharge begins and temperatures decline in the fall.

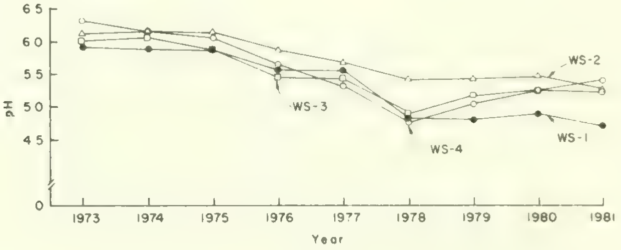


Figure 6.--Average pH of runoff by watershed and year.

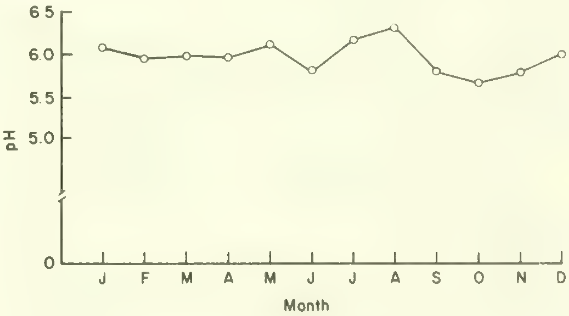


Figure 7.--Average monthly pH of runoff from all watersheds combined for the 1973-1977 period.

SUMMARY

Overall nutrient levels and other properties of runoff from the four watersheds were generally within the range of those previously reported in other areas (Bond 1979; Brozka, Rolfe and Arnold 1981; Douglass and Swank 1975; Hewlett 1979; Lewis and Grant 1979; Peterson and Rolfe 1982).

Final harvest cutting of a shortleaf pine shelterwood stand and burning plus planting did not significantly increase outflow of most nutrients. The initial thinning plus hardwood deadening in the original stand and clearcut plus hardwood deadening may have strongly influenced results.

Turbidities reflected the treatment effects, but levels in runoff were not significantly different. Specific conductance levels were relatively low, but followed the concentration trends of several nutrients.

The pH levels in runoff varied significantly among the watersheds, but was not related to the treatments. Average pH values showed a general decline in several consecutive years during the study period.

LITERATURE CITED

American Public Health Association
1971. Standard methods for the examination of water and waste water. 13th edition. Amer. Public Health Assoc., Amer. Water Works Assoc. and Water Pollution Control Fed. 874 p.

Bond, Hedley W.
1979. Nutrient concentration patterns in a stream draining a montane ecosystem in Utah. Ecol. 60(6): 1184-1196.

Brozka, R.J., G.L. Rolfe, and L.E. Arnold
1981. The quantity and quality of runoff from a shortleaf pine plantation in southern Illinois. For. Res. Rep. No. 81-3. Dep. of For., Agric. Exp. Sta., University of Illinois, Urbana-Champaign. 5 p.

Corbett, E.S., J.A. Lynch, and W.E. Sopper
1978. Timber harvesting practices and water quality in the eastern United States. J. For. 76(8):484-488.

Douglass, James E.
1974. Watershed values important in land use planning on southern forests. J. For. 72(10):617-621.

Douglass, James E. and Wayne T. Swank
1975. Effects of management practices on water quality and quantity: Coweeta Hydrologic Laboratory, North Carolina. U.S. Dep. Agric., For. Serv., Gen. Tech. Rep. NE-13. p.1-13.

Haley, George J.
1979. Soil survey of Saline County, Arkansas. U.S. Dep. Agric., Soil Conserv. Serv. in cooperation with Arkansas Agric. Exp. Sta. 102 p. + maps.

Hewlett, John D.
1979. Forest water quality: an experiment in harvesting and regenerating piedmont forest. A Georgia For. Res. Pap., School of Forest Resources, University Georgia, Athens, Georgia. 22 p.

Lawson, Edwin R.
1976. 2,4,5-T residues in storm runoff from small watersheds. J. Soil and Water Conserv. 31(5):217-219.

Lewis, William M., Jr. and Michael C. Grant
1979. Changes in the output of ions from a watershed as a result of the acidificatio of precipitation. Ecol. 60(6):1093-1097.

Peterson, David L. and Gary L. Rolfe
1982. Precipitation components as nutrient pathways in floodplain and upland forests of central Illinois. For. Sci. 28(2): 321-332.

Pritchett, W.L. and C.G. Wells
1978. Harvesting and site preparation incr nutrient mobilization. In: Proceedings: Symposium on Principles of Maintaining Pr ductivity on Prepared Sites. Tom Tippin (ed.). Mississippi State University, Mar 21-22, 1978. U.S. For. Serv. and the Southern Region of the Association of Sta College and Univ. For. Res. Organ. p. 98-

Rogerson, T.L.
1971. Hydrologic characteristics of small headwater catchments in the Ouachita Mountains. U.S. Dep. Agric. For. Serv. R Note SO-117. 5 p.

Sartz, R.S. and W.R. Curtis
1967. Simple sediment sampler for flumes. Agric. Eng. 48:224.

Statistical Analysis Systems Institute, Inc.
1979. SAS user's guide 1979 edition. SAS Institute, Inc., Cary, NC. 494 p.

Steel, Robert G.D. and James H. Torrie
1960. Principles and procedures of statisti McGraw-Hill Book Co., Inc. 481 p.

Stone, Earl
1977. The impact of timber harvest on soils water. Appendix M. Report of the Preside Advisory on Timber and the Environment. April 1973. p. 427-467.

United States Department of Agriculture
1975. Soil taxonomy - a basic system of soi classification for making and interpretin soil surveys. U.S. Dep. Agric., Soil Conserv. Serv. Agric. Handb. 436. 754 p.

United States Department of Commerce
1981. Climatological data - annual summary Arkansas. National Oceanic and Atmospheri Administration. 86(13): 1-16.

United States Environmental Protection Agency
1976. Manual of methods for chemical analys of water and wastes. U.S. Environ. Protec Agency. Document No. EPA-625/6-74-003a. 298 p.

BIOLOGICAL RELATIONSHIPS BETWEEN WILDLIFE AND SOUTHERN FORESTS: STATE OF THE ART[1/] [2/]

Ernest A. Gluesing and Donna M. Field[3/]

Abstract--The literature was reviewed to determine the state of current knowledge about the functional relationships between wildlife and southern forest ecosystems. Food habit studies were examined for knowledge on nutrition, digestion, energetics, and diet preference. Home range studies were examined for energetics. The reviewed suggest that even though a substantial number of food habits and home range studies have been conducted on a variety of species, little is known about how the nutritional value of foods and changes in diet composition affect growth, survival or reproduction. Similarly, little is known about the bioenergetics of home range, the minimum amount of habitat a species requires, or how changes in vegetative structure and species density affect the dynamics of animal communities.

[1/] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 82.

[2/] Mississippi Agricultural and Forestry Experiment Station Project MIS-0608.

[3/] Assistant Professor and Research Assistant, respectively, Department of Wildlife and Fisheries, ssissippi Agricultural and Forestry Experiment Station, Mississippi State, MS 39762.

IMPACTS OF SILVICULTURAL
PRACTICES IN LOBLOLLY PINE PLANTATIONS
ON WHITE-TAILED DEER HABITAT[1]

George A. Hurst[2] and Randy C. Warren[3]

Abstract.--Silvicultural practices such as burning, thinning, spraying, and fertilizing within pine plantations impact on white-tailed deer food (forage, mast) quantity, quality, digestibility, palatability, and availability. Other aspects of deer food, namely diversity, stability, and distribution (spatial, seasonal), and cover, are affected by practices within and between plantations, such as setting (stand) site preparation, size, shape and situation (interspersion).

INTRODUCTION

To meet the Nation's future demand for wood products about 30 million acres of idle or poorly stocked pine sites will have to be planted to high yield pine plantations (Mann 1975). During an average year 1.53 million acres of private and public land across the South are planted to pine (Sou. For. Institute 1979), and at the end of 1978 there were about 12 million acres of pine plantations in the Southeast (Knight and Sheffield 1980). Rotation length might be 35 years and management will be intensive (Koch 1980).

White-tailed deer (Odocoileus virginianus) populations across the South have greatly increased in the past several decades and are a very important game species (Steffen 1981). The purpose of this paper is to summarize the impacts of silvicultural practices in pine plantations and deer habitat conditions.

METHODS

Loblolly pine (Pinus taeda) plantations in east central Mississippi and west central Alabama were studied from 1971-82. Plantations were located in the interior flatwoods (avg. SI 68 ft) and hills (avg. SI 64 ft) on a 25-year base and most plantations were on sites formerly occupied by pine-hardwood forests. The forests were clearcut, site prepared (tree crush and burn; mist-blow and tree-inject; or shear, rake, disk, and bed), and were hand-planted on an average spacing of 7 x 8 ft. Plantation size varied from 80 to 640 acres.

Deer forage (grass, forb, vine, woody) abundance on treated (burned, thinned, etc.) and untreated pine plantations was determined by the ranked-set sampling method (Halls and Dell 1966). Samples were taken in the peak of biomass period, August, and during the period of minimum forage abundance, February. Only new-growth, green, palatable parts of plant species usually eaten by deer in this area (Warren and Hurst 1981) wer hand-picked or clipped to a height of 5 ft, placed in paper bags, oven-dried for 72 hours at 176° F, and weighed.

RESULTS

Forage in Untreated Plantations

Deer forage in August was least abundant on 1-year-old plantations that had received the mos intensive site preparation, bed or bed and apply an herbicide. No differences in forage related type of site preparation were detected after age

Forage increased on plantations from age 2-4 and peaked at age 5 at about 500 lbs/ac. Forage declined during the next 5 years to 100 lbs/ac (age 10) and 50 lbs/ac at age 12 (Hurst and Warren 1980). In February forage averaged

---

[1] Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Professor, Dept. Wildlife & Fish., Miss. State Univ., Miss State, MS 39762.

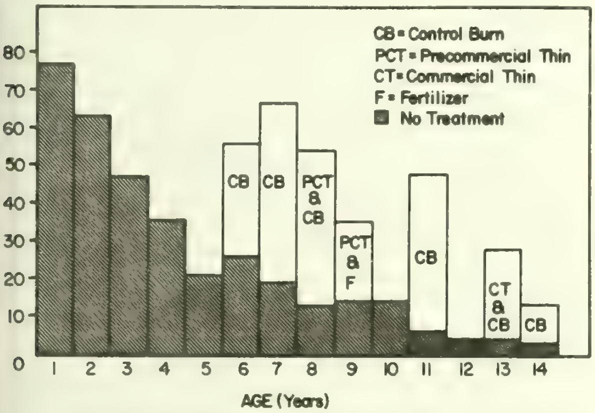
[3] Research Assoc., Dept. Wildlife and Fish., Miss. State Univ. Miss. State, MS 39762.

77 lbs/ac at age 1, 21 lbs/ac at age 5, and 4 lbs/ac at age 12 (Hurst and Warren 1980). Deer forage on any given area would be affected by soil/site conditions, spacing and seedling survival rate.

Mature pine-hardwood forests, the type being converted to pine plantations, had 64 lbs/ac (Aug.) and 7 lbs/ac (Feb.) of deer forage. The forests also produced an average of 36 lbs/ac of acorns (dry wt.) and about 8 lbs/ac of other hard and soft mast (Hurst and Warren 1980).

Forage in Treated Plantations

Burning, thinning (precommercial and ommercial), fertilizing, and combinations of these practices increased deer forage abundance in February (fig. 1). The use of herbicides or pine release would decrease deer forage n February.



gure 1.--Deer forage in February on untreated and treated Loblolly Pine Plantations.

Herbicides used for pine release in 4- and 5-year-old plantations reduced deer forage August by 46%. Some recovery of forage was noted in the second growing season after spraying (Easley 1977).

Controlled burning of plantations in late winter at ages 5, 7, 10 and 13 increased deer forage in August to 544, 579, 244, and 235 lbs/ac respectively. The increases amounted to 2, 63, 68, and 94% above forage amounts in unburned plantations. Forage declined 52% (age 9) and 33% (age 12) in the second year after burning. Burning brought the forage into the deer's feeding level (up to 5 ft), and promoted new-growth on all vegetation (Hurst and Warren 1980, Hurst et al. 1980).

Precommercial thinning to 450 trees/ac at age 7 increased deer forage in August from an average of 300 lbs/ac on unthinned plots to 578 lbs/ac on thinned plots in the first and second years after treatment. In August of the third year after thinning there were 291 lbs/ac on thinned plots and 181 lbs/ac on unthinned plots (Hurst and Warren 1980).

Precommercial thinning and control burning of a 7-year-old plantation resulted in 544 lbs/ac of forage on thinned-burned plots compared to 114 lbs/ac on untreated plots the first August after treatment, and 555 lbs/ac (treated) compared to 137 lbs/ac (control) in the second August (Hurst et al. 1980).

Precommercial thinning and fertilizing (urea) produced more (648 lbs/ac) forage than just thinning (576 lbs/ac) the first August after treatment. The second year after treatment there was no difference between thinned-fertilized (544 lbs/ac) and thinned (579 lbs/ac) (Hurst and Warren 1980).

A 7-year-old plantation that had 235 lbs/ac of forage (August 1977) was fertilized (urea) in March 1978 and forage increased to 430 lbs/ac in August 1978. Forage declined to 185 lbs/ac the next August (age 9) (Hurst et al. 1982).

Precommercial thinning and pruning up to 9 ft (avg. tree height of 18 ft) was conducted on 8-year-old plantations, and it appeared that pruning would prolong the increase in deer forage caused by thinning.

Commercial thinning and control burning of 13-year-old plantations increased deer forage to 291 lbs/ac (age 13) and 383 lbs/ac (age 14). These same plantations had an average of 23 lbs/ac at age 12 (Hurst and Warren 1982).

Other Deer Foods

In addition to forage, deer eat hard and soft mast and fleshy fungi (mushrooms). Clearcutting and intensive site preparation removed most of the hard mast potential from plantations, and use of herbicides and fire in short rotations will not permit much hard mast production.

The amount and variety of soft mast produced by trees, vines and shrubs in mature pine-hardwood forests was decreased by conversion to plantations. Some forest species, e.g. dogwood (*Cornus florida*) and black gum (*Nyssa sylvatica*), produced fruit in young plantations (Campo and Hurst 1980). Soft mast production peaked at 83 lbs/ac on 5-year-old plantations, but the fruit produced was mostly blackberry (*Rubus argutus*), which fruits in the summer. Burned windrows had the highest fruit production (Campo and Hurst 1980). Soft mast production appeared to increase after commercial thinning of plantations. Length of burning rotations will affect soft mast production in plantations.

Mushrooms were very abundant in the winter months on burned windrows of bedded plantations at age 1 and 2 then declined rapidly at age 3. Pine-hardwood forests had more mushroom biomass than pine plantations in non-winter months and plantations over 4-years-old (Hurst and Johnson 1980). Mushroom abundance seemed to increase in commercially thinned-burned plantations.

Other Deer Habitat Conditions

Deer cover requirements in the southeast are not well documented, but it is generally believed there are no special cover types. Qualitative characteristics of deer cover have not been described. Vegetative density and structure of pine plantations is usually dense, "jungle-like," and provides adequate cover. Cover is lacking on intensively site prepared tracts well into the first growing season. Deer do use the very open, bedded-sprayed tracts for foraging even in the first growing season.

Water is not thought to be a limiting factor for deer in the South. Major plant species eaten by deer in plantations contained an average of 65% water (Mawk 1976). Establishment of streamside management zones, hardwood leave strips, fire suppression ponds, and water holes for wildlife maintain or increase water sources for deer.

Other Forest Management Practices

Streamside management zones on major streams and creeks and Hardwood Leave Strips on narrow (inaccessible) drainage-ways provided cover, some mast, travel lanes, and forage (Hurst and Warren 1980).

Access roads within plantations were planted to grass/clover which provided cool season forage. Company and county roads were day-lighted which increased deer forage production on roadsides.

DISCUSSION

Important components of deer habitat are food, cover, water, and space. Apparently southern deer do not have any special reproductive or survival requirements with regard to cover. Space and water are seldom limiting factors. Food is the critical factor but habitat capacity can not be evaluated solely on available, preferred forage dry matter (Blair et al. 1977). Some attributes of food are quantity, quality (nutritional content), distribution (spatial, temporal/seasonal), palatability (plant characteristics such as chemical content, succulence), digestibility, availability (within deer's feeding range, up to 5 ft), and diversity (vegetative types). Silvicultural practices directly or indirectly affect all aspects relating to deer food.

Burning, thinning, pruning, and fertilizin increased deer forage abundance in pine plantations. The increases in forage must be conside temporary, lasting only 1 year if just burning or fertilizing occurred, and perhaps 2 to 3 years for combinations of burn-thin, thin-fertilize. Browse plants growing in openings (thinned plantations) not only yield more twig growth (browse) but also produce more fruit (Halls and Alcaniz 1968).

Herbicides reduced deer forage abundance, but by top-killing the competing hardwood brush layer some sprouts and more desirable vegetatio (vines, forbs) might result (Blair and Feduccia 1977).

Silvicultural practices also affect forage quality. Burning improved forage palatability, availability, and nutritional (protei Ca, P) content (Lay 1957, Stransky and Halls 1976). Fire maintained forage productivity and increased digestibility (Lewis et al. 1982). Rapidly growing, succulent plant tissues were more nutritious and more digestible (Blair et al. 1977). Fertilizing plantations resulted in significant increases in deer forage (Kinard 1977, Hurst et al. 1982); however, nutrient content of forage from fertilized sites was not significantly greater than that from unfertiliz sites (Kinard 1977). Plants (forage) from fertilized areas could be of increased value to deer in that they are more succulent (new-growt rapid growth) thus more palatable and more digestible, yielding more metabolic energy (Heady 1964).

Deer have food preferences, which are a function of palatability. Palatability is determined by plant characteristics (chemical content, succulence, etc.). Silvicultural practices affect plant growth and contents--dee forage quality. Deer ate plant species usually rated as undesirable for deer on recently burne plantations (Warren and Hurst 1981). The same relationship probably exists with plants on fertilized plantations.

Deer feed upon a variety of plant types or parts and it has been documented that nutrient yield and digestibility of deer forage varies b season in pine plantations (Blair et al. 1977). The importance of having a diversity of vegetation to insure adequate nutrient levels has bee demonstrated (Varner et al. 1977). Plant diversity can be accomplished through silvicultural practices and planning, to provide various successional stages or habitat types (age classes). Food diversity can be planned, manipulated through setting (stand) size, shape, and situation (surrounding age classes, habitat types). The silviculturist/forest manager manipulates deer habitat and he can increase interspersion (juxtaposition, edge, diversity) by planning pine plantation establishment and practices.

LITERATURE CITED

lair, R.M., H.L. Short, and E.A. Epps, Jr.
1977. Seasonal nutrient yield and digestibility of deer forage from a young pine plantation. J. Wildl. Manage. 41:667-676.

___, and D.P. Feduccia.
1977. Midstory hardwoods inhibit deer forage in loblolly pine plantations. J. Wildl. Manage. 41:677-684.

ampo, J.J., and G.A. Hurst
1980. Soft mast production in young loblolly plantations. Proc. Ann. Conf. S.E. Assoc. Fish & Wildl. Agencies 34:470-475.

asley, J.M.
1977. Effects of chemical brush control on vegetation in pine plantations, Kemper County, MS. M.S. Thesis, Miss. State Univ. 45 p.

alls, L.K. and T.R. Dell.
1966. Trial of ranked-set sampling for forage yields. For. Sci. 12:22-26.

___, and R. Alcaniz.
1968. Browse plants yield best in forest openings. J. Wildl. Manage. 32:185-186.

ady, H.F.
1964. Palatability of herbage and animal preference. J. Range Manage. 17:76-83.

rst, G.A., and J.C. Johnson.
1980. Mushroom biomass on burned windrows and mixed pine-hardwood forests. Third Southeast Deer Study Group Meeting, Nacogdoches, TX. 1p.

___, and R.C. Warren.
1980. Intensive pine plantation management and white-tailed deer habitat. Pages 90-102 in Integrating timber and wildlife management in southern forests. R.H. Chabreck and R.H. Mills, eds. 29th Ann. For. Symp., LSU, Baton Rouge. 119 p.

___, J.J. Campo, and M.B. Brooks.
1980. Deer forage in a burned and burned-thinned pine plantation. Proc. Ann. Conf. S.E. Assoc. Fish & Wildl. Agencies 34:476-481.

___, _____, and _____.
1982. Effects of precommercial thinning and fertilizing on deer forage in loblolly pine plantations. S.J. Applied. For. 6:140-144.

___, and R.C. Warren.
1982. Deer forage in 13-year-old commercially thinned and burned loblolly pine plantations. Proc. Ann. Conf. S.E. Assoc. Fish & Wildl. Agencies 36: (in press).

nard, F.W.
1977. Phosphorus fertilization and nutrient composition of forage. Proc. Ann. Conf. S.E. Assoc. Fish & Wildl. Agencies 31:24-28.

ight, H., and R.M. Sheffield.
1980. Thinning opportunities in pine plantations in the Southeast during the 1980's. Pages 18-26 in Thinning southern pine plantations: integrating economics and biology. Proc. South. For. Econ. Workshop. For. and Harvesting Training Center. Long Beach, MS. 157 p.

Koch, P.
1980. Concept for southern pine plantation operation in the year 2020. J. For. 78: 78-82.

Lay, D.W.
1957. Browse quality and the effects of prescribed burning in southern forests. J. For. 55:342-347.

Lewis, C.E., H.E. Grelen, and G.E. Probasco.
1982. Prescribed burning in southern forest and rangeland improves forage and its use. South. J. Appl. For. 6:19-25.

Mann, W.R.
1975. Progress and trends in artificial regeneration. For. Farmer Manual 48-50.

Mawk, J.D.
1976. Food habits of white-tailed deer and proximate analyses of some important deer food plants in east central Mississippi. M.S. Thesis, Miss. State Univ. 36 p.

Southern Forest Institute.
1979. South's forest industry plants 629 million new trees: is that enough? Sou. Pulp and Paper Manufacturer 42:15.

Steffen, D.E.
1981. Mississippi mail survey of game harvest and hunter effort for 1980-81. Fed. Aid Proj. No. W-48-28 (Job VI-1). Miss. Dept. Wildl. Conser., Jackson. 87 p.

Stransky, J.J., and L.K. Halls.
1976. Browse quality affected by pine site preparation in east Texas. Proc. Annu. Conf. S.E. Assoc. Fish & Wildl. Agencies 30:507-512.

Varner, L.W., L.H. Blankenship, and G.W. Lynch.
1977. Seasonal changes in nutritive value of deer food plants in south Texas. Proc. Ann. Conf. S.E. Assoc. Fish & Wildl. Agencies 31: 99-106.

Warren, R.C., and G.A. Hurst.
1981. Ratings of plants in pine plantations as white-tailed deer food. Information Bull. 18, Miss. Agricul. and Forestry Exper. Stn., Miss. State. 14 p.

SQUIRREL DEN TREE MANAGEMENT: REDUCING INCOMPATIBILITY WITH TIMBER PRODUCTION IN UPLAND HARDWOODS[1]

Jimmy C. Huntley[2]

Abstract.--Characteristics and densities of eastern gray squirrel den trees in five upland hardwood habitats on the Cumberland Plateau were determined. The relationships between species, size, age, and vigor of trees useful for selecting the best current and potential den trees are discussed. Squirrel densities were estimated with time-area counts. Mast production not lack of dens limited squirrel populations. Management recommendations that would increase timber production and increase or have little impact on squirrel production are given.

INTRODUCTION

The impact of silvicultural practices on wildlife habitat is a major concern of forest managers. Although most wildlife biologists recognize habitat manipulation by silvicultural practices as the most efficient and lasting means of improving habitat (Halls and Holbrook 1980, Trimble et al. 1974), some incompatibilities between intensive timber management and wildlife dependent on tree cavities are apparent. Trees with cavities are removed and cavity formation is arrested during intensive timber management. Thus, a loss of cavity dependent wildlife would occur.

To ensure that cavities are available, recommendations to leave cavity-trees unharvested have been made (Uhlig 1955, U.S. Forest Service 1971, Sanderson 1975, Evans 1978, Conner 1978, Evans and Conner 1979, McComb and Noble 1981). However, multiple-use recommendations to provide proper density and temporal and spatial distribution of cavity-trees for wildlife should consider adverse impacts on timber production. Timber production may be needlessly reduced if future stand development and expected life span of the cavity-trees are not considered. Existing stand conditions should be considered. Recommendations made for intensively managed forests have little applicability to high-graded hardwood stands. In these unmanaged stands, numerous cavities are present but not fully utilized for nesting (Gysel 1961, Sanderson et al. 1975, Carey and Healy 1981, McComb and Noble 1981). Low utilization of cavities indicates unsuitability or oversupply.

A major problem in managing hardwood stands is determination of the level of cull tree removal that optimizes timber and wildlife benefits. Which and how many cavity-trees should be left? How should they be distributed in the stand? How can a future supply of cavity-trees be provided under various harvesting methods? This study was established to address those questions for unmanaged oak-hickory and mixed upland hardwood stands typical of the Cumberland Plateau region. Objectives of the study were: 1) to determine density of cavity-trees and other culls in various forest stands, 2) to describe cavity-trees, 3) to determine characteristics which are useful in predicting occurrence of future cavities, 4) to observe use of cavity-trees by squirrels, and 5) to estimate squirrel population levels.

STUDY AREAS

Study areas were located on the University of the South's school forest at Sewanee, Tennessee, on the western edge of the Cumberland Plateau. Topography varies from the undulating plateau top to steep escarpment slopes or coves. Site productivity varies greatly with aspect and slope position. The upper and mid-cove slopes are good to excellent hardwood sites. Smalley (1982) describes the climate, geology, topography, and soils of the Mid-Cumberland Plateau Region.

Composition and quality of the school forest are the result of site differences and past management, called individual tree selection but was in actuality, logger's choice. The resulting high-graded forest contains many culls and regeneration developed in clumps or patches without additional stand treatments.

---

[1] Paper presented at the Second Biennial Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

[2] Research Wildlife Biologist, Southern Forest Experiment Station, SPO Box 1290, Sewanee, Tennessee 37375.

Five general forest habitats or conditions which typify most of the school forest were selected for study. On top of the plateau, undulating uplands and the intermittent drainages that submaturely dissect the plateau surface were sampled. In the coves, north aspect, south aspect, and old growth were sampled. On the undulating uplands, scarlet oak (scientific names in Appendix) and white oak predominate with lesser amounts of black oak, chestnut oak, pignut hickory, and mockernut hickory. In the more moist and productive upland drainages, red maple, blackgum, and yellow-poplar are abundant. The coves contain mixed hardwood forests with a large number of overstory species. The most abundant species are northern red oak, white oak, pignut hickory, shagbark hickory, chestnut oak, and yellow-poplar. The mesic species of Braun's (1950) mixed mesophytic forest are common. Although present in ther mixed mesophytic forests, American beech, lack cherry, and eastern hemlock are rare or bsent. The mesic species are more abundant on he cooler northern aspects. The old growth habiat is on a north aspect and over-mature with many arge oaks and hickories now dying.

For discussion , the five habitat types will e called undulating upland, upland drainage, south cove, north cove, and over-mature cove.

METHODS

Each habitat type was sampled with six 1.24 cre rectangular transects, 70 feet by 769 feet. wo transects were randomly located at three diferent locations, allowing 7.4 acres in each habiat type and totaling 37 acres in the study. Tranects were located in stands undisturbed for the ast 20 years. Each transect was thoroughly earched for all cavities before leaf development n March, 1979. Searching with binoculars, three bservers recorded (but did not verify by climbing) ll cavities which appeared to penetrate the inteiors of the trees. Cavities were classified as quirrel dens, squirrel escape cavities, or bird est cavities. Most cavities classified as squirrel ens, and possibly some classified otherwise, were uitable for rearing young.

Descriptive data were collected from den trees o determine whether certain characteristics can redict potential cavity-producing trees. Stand bles and tree quality class for all trees five ches d.b.h. and larger were estimated by sampling our 0.05 acre quadrats in each transect. Potenial overstory species were classified as desirable, cceptable, or cull. Den tree composition and size istribution were compared to general conditions using chi-square tests. Top condition, basal ondition, and number of blind knots or limb stubs arger than two inches in diameter were determined for selected trees seven inches d.b.h. or larger. Frequency distributions of various categories of each attribute were determined for both cavity and non-cavity trees. Chi-square tests were used to determine whether the distribution of cavity-trees was different from the distribution of non-cavity trees.

Cavity usage and squirrel density were determined by visual monitoring 24 transects. A minimum of three permanent observation points was established in each transect. All den trees were visible from at least one point. Time-area counts to estimate squirrel density were conducted. Each transect was monitored once weekly for five weeks in both the spring and fall in 1980 and 1981. In 1979 the spring observation period was six weeks, and the fall four weeks. Monitoring periods corresponded to when young squirrels were becoming active outside the dens. Den trees were observed for 253 hours per year, and time-area counts were conducted during 240 hours. Each den tree was observed for a minimum of 3.3 hours yearly. Transects were monitored for three years because of expected fluctuations in both squirrel density and use of den trees. Mast production by species in each habitat type was estimated in late August of 1979 and 1980.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Density of Cavity-Trees and Other Culls

A total of 82 den trees and 255 trees with escape cavities were located. Undulating uplands had the greatest density of den trees and upland drainages had the greatest density of escape cavities (Table 1). The number of den trees per transect ranged from 0 to 7, and the number of escape cavity-trees ranged from 2 to 26. The highest combined density per acre of cavity-trees was 13.8 in upland drainages.

Table 1.--Density of squirrel dens and escape cavities in upland hardwoods on the Cumberland Plateau

Cavity	Habitat Type[1]				
Type	U.D.	OM.C.	S.C.	N.C.	U.U.
	- - - - - - Density/acre[2] - - - - - -				
Den	2.3a	2.7a	1.6a	1.2a	3.2a
Escape	11.5a	6.6ab	6.2b	6.1b	3.9b

1/ U.D. - upland drainage, OM.C. - over-mature cove, S.C. - cove with south aspect, N.C. - cove with north aspect, U.U. - undulating uplands.

2/ Means within rows not followed by a common letter differ ($P \leq 0.05$) as determined by Duncan's new multiple-range test.

The number of culls per acre ranged from 25 in the over-mature cove to 79 in upland drainages. Cull percent ranged from 25.6 in undulating upland to 47.3 in upland drainages. Cull percent was high in upland drainages because of abundant red maple and blackgum. Fifty-three percent of scarlet oaks larger than 10 inches d.b.h. was cull.

Characteristics of Escape Cavity-Trees

The location of escape cavities within the tree often determines their usefulness to squirrels. Cavities at the base of tree often contained sufficient decay to preclude use by squirrels. Most escape cavities in the upper bole could possibly serve as dens if more suitable cavities were lacking. In the upland habitats, limbs with cavities were usually too small to serve as dens, but in the cove habitats limbs were large enough to contain dens. Density per acre of trees with escape cavities in different parts of the tree is recorded below:

	Basal	Upper Bole	Limb
Upland Drainage	7.6	4.9	0.9
Undulating Upland	2.7	1.8	0.0
Overmature Cove	4.9	1.9	0.5
South Cove	4.9	0.4	1.1
North Cove	4.3	2.0	0.1

Some trees had cavities in more than one location. The percent of escape cavity-trees with basal cavities ranged from 65.1 percent in upland drainages to 78.3 percent in south coves.

In undulating uplands, 48.3 percent of the cavity-trees was scarlet oak. Other scarlet oaks had signs of internal decay, enlarged bases and fire scars without external cavity openings. Sourwood comprised 17.2 percent of the cavity-trees and six other species contained fewer cavities. In upland drainages, red maple was the most abundant cavity-tree and comprised 62.8 percent of the total. Of eight other species with cavities, the most abundant was white oak with 11.6 percent. In north coves, 16 species contained cavities and hickories comprised 26.7 percent of the total. Yellow-poplar with 11.1 percent was the only other species that comprised more than 10 percent of the cavity-trees. In south coves, hickories comprised a much larger percent, 56.5, of the cavity-trees. Most cavities were basal and probably a result of fire scarring. Nine other species contained cavities, northern red oak with 10.9 percent being most abundant. In the over-mature cove, 13 species contained cavities. Sugar maple, hickories, northern red oak, and blackgum comprised, respectively, 28.6, 20.4, 16.3, and 10.2 percent of the cavity-trees.

The size class distribution of the cavity-trees reflected general stand conditions. In habitat with more large trees, a higher percent of cavity-trees was in the larger size classes. The percent of cavity-trees in the less than seven inch d.b.h. size class was much smaller than the percent of total trees in that size calss. The percentages of cavity-trees and of total trees were about equal in the 7-10 inch size class, but in the larger size classes the percent of cavity-trees were much higher than the percent of total trees. It follows that larger trees were more likely to contain escape cavities.

Characteristics of Squirrel Den Trees

The characteristics most useful for predicting den occurrence were species, size, presence of entry points for decay organisms, and tree vigo which is affected by interactions among the previous factors.

Species and Size Class Distrbutions

Differences among the habitat types were apparent (Table 2). Certain species and diameter size classes produced more den trees. The most productive species and sizes varied among habitat types because of differences in species composition and size class distribution. In both the undulating uplands and upland drainages, scarlet oak is the preferred species to manage for dens because numerous relatively small scarlet oaks contained dens. Seventy-six percent of the den trees were scarlet oak and 73 percent of these were in the 11-15 inch size class. Red maple should be retained in upland drainages, but red maple dens are usually less suitable than scarlet oak dens. In white oa and hickories, dens were usually found only in large trees or in low vigor trees. Yellow-poplar a rapid growing species, contained cavities only in trees over 20 inches in diameter.

In both north and south coves, northern red oak, hickories, and blackgum were the most abundant den trees. When data for the two types were combinded, northern red oak, blackgum, and sassafras had significantly more den trees than expected. All blackgum greater than 16 inches d.b.h. contained either escape cavities or dens. Of the l species that contained no dens, yellow-poplar and chestnut oak predominated.

In over-mature coves, nine species contained dens with northern red oak and hickories predominating. White ash was the only species with significantly more dens than expected and no spe had significantly less than expected. Chestnut and white oak were the most abundant species having no dens.

The proportion of trees with dens increased diameter size class increased and a positive deviation from the expected number of den trees existed in the 16-20 inch and larger size classes in all habitat types. Thus the 16-20 inch size class seems to be the threshold size where trees become more likely to contain dens. In scarlet oak, the threshold size is 11-15 inches.

Vigor and availability of larger trees affect the size class distribution of den trees. In undulating uplands, den trees in the 11-15 inch size class were numerous; low vigor scarlet oak in this size class was abundant and larger trees were scarce. In upland drainages and cove habitat types where more large trees were available, the percent of trees in the 11-15 inch class with dens was mu

Table 2.--Density distribution of squirrel den trees compared to the distribution of all trees >7 inches d.b.h. in upland hardwoods on the Cumberland Plateau

Species	D.B.H. Size Class in Inches					Species Total(%)	All Trees(%)	Percent With Dens
	7-10	11-15	16-20	21-25	>25			
Undulating Upland								
	No./7.4 a							-- % --
Scarlet Oak	1	16	4	0	0	21(88)	402(47)	5.2
White Oak	0	1	1	0	0	2 (8)	204(24)	1.0
Hickories	0	0	0	0	1	1 (4)	38 (4)	2.7
Others	0	0	0	0	0	0	209(25)	0.0
Size Class Total (%)	1 (4)	17(71)	5(21)	0	1 (4)	24(100)		
All Trees (%)	538(63)	247(29)	68 (8)	0	0		853(100)	2.8
% With Dens	0.2	6.9	7.4	0	-		2.8	
Upland Drainages								
Red Maple	0	0	3	2	3	8(47)	241(26)	3.3
Scarlet Oak	0	3	2	0	0	5(29)	56 (6)	8.9
White Oak	0	0	0	1	0	1 (6)	290(32)	0.3
Yellow-Poplar	0	0	0	1	0	1 (6)	56 (6)	1.8
Post Oak	0	1	0	0	0	1 (6)	43 (5)	2.3
Chestnut Oak	0	1	0	0	0	1 (6)	62 (7)	1.6
Others	0	0	0	0	0	0	161(18)	0.0
Size Class Total (%)	0	5(29)	5(29)	4(24)	3(18)	17(100)		
All Trees (%)	470(52)	297(33)	99(11)	25 (3)	18 (2)		909(100)	1.9
% With Dens	0	1.7	5.0	16.2	16.1		1.9	
Overmature Cove								
N. Red Oak	0	0	1	1	4	6(30)	105(20)	5.7
Hickories	0	0	1	1	3	5(25)	167(31)	3.0
White Ash	0	0	1	1	0	2(10)	12 (2)	16.7
Yellow-Poplar	0	0	0	1	1	2(10)	19 (4)	10.5
Buckeye	0	0	0	0	1	1 (5)	19 (4)	5.3
Black Locust	0	0	1	0	0	1 (5)	0	-
Cucumber Tree	0	0	1	0	0	1 (5)	0	-
Black Cherry	0	0	1	0	0	1 (5)	6 (1)	16.7
Sugar Maple	0	1	0	0	0	1 (5)	74(14)	1.4
Others	0	0	0	0	0	0	136(25)	0.0
Size Class Total (%)	0	1 (5)	6(30)	4(20)	9(45)	20(100)		
All Trees (%)	142(26)	161(30)	130(24)	56(10)	49 (9)		538(100)	3.7
% With Dens	0.0	0.6	4.6	7.2	18.2		3.7	
South and North Coves Combined								
	No./14.8 a							-- % --
N. Red Oak	0	3	3	1	0	7(33)	166(11)	4.2
Hickories	0	3	1	2	0	6(29)	488(33)	1.2
Blackgum	0	0	3	1	0	4(19)	24 (2)	16.7
Black Walnut	1	0	0	0	0	1 (5)	43 (3)	2.3
Black Locust	0	0	1	0	0	1 (5)	31 (2)	3.2
White Oak	0	0	0	1	0	1 (5)	303(20)	0.3
Sassafras	0	0	0	1	0	1 (5)	6(<1)	16.7
Others	0	0	0	0	0	0	429(29)	0.0
Size Class Total (%)	1 (5)	6(29)	8(38)	6(29)	0	21(100)		
All Trees (%)	705(47)	507(34)	204(14)	74 (5)	0		1490(100)	1.4
% With Dens	0.1	1.2	3.7	8.1	0		1.4	

lower. In north and south coves, most den trees in this size class were suppressed and had greatly reduced crowns. In the overmature cove, dens were concentrated in low vigor trees larger than 25 inches in diameter. Vigorously growing trees with well developed crowns, regardless of size, contained few cavities.

Age and Tree Growth

In upland habitat types, the age of 16 scarlet oak dens were determined. Age ranged from 72 to 125 years, averaging 94 years. Thus 80-year rotations would produce few den trees even in stands were scarlet oak is abundant. If 90-year-old scarlet oak dens were left in a clearcut, few dens would be present in 30 years. However, if large patches of trees from 30 to 50 years of age were retained, dens and food would be available simultaneously. Regardless of tree vigor, retained scarlet oaks 7-10 inches d.b.h. should produce numerous den trees in 40 years. Basal cavities and deterioration prevented gathering data on red maple. Five white oak den trees ranged from 19 to 22 inches d.b.h. and diameters 40 years ago ranged from 15 to 17 inches. The ages of three trees were 152, 170, and 224 years. Because species in the white oak group grow and develop decay slower than red oak species, white oak species will produce cavities only when larger and older trees become available. But once dens are formed in the durable white oaks, they remain usable much longer than dens in species with softer wood.

In the coves, northern red oak was the only species in which more than one den tree could be aged. Age from six trees ranged from 81 to 157 years. Tree vigor varied greatly and will influence what size of trees should be retained to produce dens in the future. If trees are vigorous, larger trees should be retained. Hickories were growing much slower than red oaks. The only hickory aged was 228 years old. The d.b.h. 40 years ago of seven hickories ranged from 11.5 to 23.6 inches. Hickory den trees were numerous probably because many low vigor, cull hickories were not cut during prior harvests. As with white oaks, dens in hickories should persist for many years.

Availability of Entry Points for Decay Causing Organisms

Because decay organisms are vital to the cavity formation process, the presence and number of injured points should be useful in predicting cavity occurrence. Injuries to basal, top, and bole portions of den trees were described. Damage to tree tops seemed most conducive to den formation. Tops of den trees were damaged more than expected in four of five habitat types. Damaged tops had either been broken off or more than two lateral branches became dominant vertical stems. Extensively damaged tops which failed to heal offered excellent entry points for decay causing organisms. Minor damage to tops that resulted in major forks did not promote den formation. Although more den trees than expected had basal cavities, reduction of tree vigor caused by basal rot probably had a greater effect on den formatio than the movement of decay up the tree. Even though the number of large blind knots on den tre was not greater than expected, limb die-back may still promote decay. Trees with or without dens simply had similar amounts of dead limbs or blind knots.

Squirrel Abundance

Eastern gray squirrel density varied between habitat types and time periods (Table 3). Variat was greater among time periods than among habitat types. Relationships between density of den trees and squirrel density on each transect were low. Den tree density had little impact on the large fluctuations in squirrel density over time. Next to the highest squirrel density, 74 per 100 acres was recorded for north coves, which had the lowes density of den trees. The low density of squirre in over-mature coves was of particular interest because old-growth forests with large trees and numerous dens are often considered prime squirrel habitat. On all habitat types, squirrel populations increased or decreased rapidly regardless o den tree density. During the three years of this study, some factor other than den tree density controlled squirrel abundance.

General trends in squirrel abundance were closely related to mast production. Hard mast production was better in 1979 than 1978. Squirre responded to the increase in food supply and popu lations increased in 1980. After poor mast production in 1980, squirrel populations decreased drastically in 1981 in all habitat types.

The relationships between squirrel abundance den tree density, and hard mast production indica that mast production and not den tree density limits squirrel abundance in unmanaged, low-quali forests on the Cumberland Plateau. At this time, management actions that increase mast production should be a top priority of squirrel management.

Use of Den Trees

The use of den trees was visually confirmed only rarely. Either few of the available dens were used to rear young or the monitoring techniq did not efficiently detect usage. Although 88 den trees were monitored, usage of dens was detected in only 2 trees in 1979, 6 trees in 1980, and 3 trees in 1981. Thus, observed usage was low even in 1980 when squirrel populations were highest.

Recent gnawing around cavity entrances also indicates den usage by squirrels. Thirty-nine percent of the den trees had signs of recent gnawing in April, 1979; 22 percent in August, 1979; and 27 percent in April, 1980. Although signs of fresh gnawing indicated squirrel usage greater tha that confirmed by visual monitoring, both methods indicated that many available den trees were not

Table 3.--Density of squirrels per 100 acres determined from time-area counts at different times in upland hardwood habitats on the Cumberland Plateau

Habitat Type	Den Trees/ 100 a	1979		1980		1981	
		Spring	Fall	Spring	Fall	Spring	Fall
		Squirrels/100 a					
Undulating Uplands	320	11	9	44	54	0	29
Upland Drainages	230	14	21	79	67	12	17
South Coves	160	10	49	7	32	6	0
North Coves	120	10	74	26	54	0	4
Over-Mature Coves	270	1	34	4	89	1	0

ed. The relationship between recent gnawing and uirrel abundance was low.

DEN TREE MANAGEMENT

Recommendations are for squirrel management ly and do not consider the needs of other cavity-pendent wildlife.

Density and Distribution of Den Trees

The number of den trees provided should pro-de cover for the number of squirrels that can be pported by hard mast production. If the forest not old enough to produce hard mast, no den ees are needed. In uneven-aged forests, many ees are too small for mast production and one gh quality den tree per two or three acres should ffice. In even-aged forests greater than 60 ars old, one den tree per two acres will support gh squirrel populations. Low vigor den trees, ich have little effect on growth of surrounding ees, can provide supplemental dens. At recom-nded den tree densities, low mast production uld be the limiting factor on squirrel abundance most years.

Because squirrels have small home ranges, den ees should be distributed within each 20 acres the forest. Within each 20 acres, den trees n be scattered or clumped. In the unmanaged ands inspected during this study, den trees were ten closely clumped.

Selecting Trees to Leave

Prehaps the most complex phase of den tree nagement is deciding what trees to leave. Suit-ale den trees should be provided when they are eded, either at present or sometime in the future. den trees are needed at present, it is important select trees with cavities suitable for rearing ng. Some cavities, such as those associated h extensive basal rot, are not suitable nesting es. Evans and Conner (1979) identified the best ality nest sites for nongame birds as live trees ing decayed heartwood in the upper trunk or n limbs surrounded by living sapwood. Cavities in such trees also produce the most suitable squirrel dens because solid wood is above, below, and around the cavity. These cavities provide the maximun protection from adverse weather conditions and predators. The need to select suitable cavity-trees has been discussed by Uhig (1955); Sanderson (1975); Scott, Whelan, and Alexander (1978) and numerous other authors.

In most upland hardwood stands, many cull and cavity-trees are present, but few are suitable den trees. On the upland drainages of the present study, 79 cull trees per acre were present but only 3 were suitable den trees. Preservation of den trees cannot be used as an excuse for failure to improve the quality of upland hardwood stands.

Other considerations for selection of trees to leave are: (1) planned future management of the stand, (2) impact on growth of surrounding trees, (3) length of den tree usability, and (4) food production by the den tree. Under uneven-aged or even-aged management systems, den trees will be needed at certain times in the future. To improve the chances that a tree selected today will actually provide a future den, the relationships between species, age, size, vigor, and availability of entry points for decay-causing organisms are important. Four general relationships were applicable to all stands.

The first was that most dens were found in the oldest or largest trees in the stand. If dens are to be provided especially with even-aged management, some trees older and/or larger than the majority of trees will have to be present. The second relationship was that some species were more prolific producers of dens than others, and the tree size at which dens become common varied with species. Longevity, durability of its wood, and susceptibility to defect and decay are species characteristics useful in determinging the correct size of tree to leave. The third relationship was that regardless of species or size, trees low in vigor were more likely to contain dens. Thus, trees selected to produce future dens should be retained in large clumps with density high enough to insure inter-tree competition. Side competition also promotes limb dieback, which supplies entry points for decay-causing organisms. This leads into the last general relationship. As the number and types of decay entry points increase, the likelihood of den formation increased. Top damage promoted den formation better than limb dieback or basal damage.

Providing Den Trees After Clearcutting

Because silvicultural clearcutting removes all existing den trees and because few new dens would have time to develop before rotation age, some modification of clearcutting practices must be implemented to provide den trees in the new stands. The modification of leaving existing den trees, either singularly or accompanied by two or three additional trees, provides little positive benefits to squirrels because many of the trees are dead or gone before den trees are needed in the new stand. A better modification would be to leave at least one acre patches of poletimber and small sawtimber trees covering around 15 percent of each 20 acres within the clearcut. This practice would provide older and larger trees essential for den formation and also greatly increase within-stand diversity. These patches of older growth could be used to leave travel lanes through the clearcut, to reduce visual impacts, to provide an old-growth component throughout the forest, and to increase edge effect. The species, size, age and vigor relationships discussed in preceding sections would determine the size of trees to retain so that den trees would be available when needed.

The retained patches should be managed as inclusions within the stands and not as separate stands. Therefore, at the end of each rotation period, the retained patches should be harvested and other areas of the stand should be retained. The new areas to be retained should be selected early in the rotation period and thinning should not be conducted in these areas after trees reach seven to eight inches in diameter. After becoming fully regulated, a forest on an 80-year rotation would have about three acres of 160-year-old trees on each 20-acre block. Stream-side management zones and areas where timber management is uneconomical could be substituted for some of the retained area. Although some timber production would be lost because of slower growth and defect of some trees, many of the retained trees on good sites would be high quality veneer-sized trees. The higher value of large trees would partially offset the loss in growth.

Although maximum production of neither resource will be attained, the management suggestions made in this paper should maintain both timber and squirrel production at acceptable levels.

LITERATURE CITED

Braun, E. Lucy.
1950. Deciduous forest of eastern North Amer 596 p. The Blakiston Co., Philadelphia, Pa

Carey, Andrew B. and William M. Healy.
1981. Cavities in trees around spring seeps the maple-beech-birch forest type. U. S. D Agric. For. Serv., Res. Pap. NE-480, 7 p. S. Dep. Agric. For. Serv., Northeast. For. Stn., Broomall, Pa.

Conner, Richard N.
1978. Snag management for cavity nesting bir *In* Proc. of the workshop, Management of southern forests for nongame birds. U. S. Agric. For. Serv., Gen. Tech. Rep. SE-14, p. 120-128. U. S. Dep. Agric. For. Serv., Southeast. For. Exp. Stn., Asheville, N.C.

Evans, Keith E.
1978. Oak-pine and oak-hickory forest bird communities and management options. *In* Proc of the workshop, Management of southern fore for nongame birds. U. S. Dep. Agric. For. Serv., Gen. Tech. Rep. SE-14, p. 76-89. U. Dep. Agric. For. Serv., Southeast. For. Exp. Stn., Asheville, N.C.

Evans, Keith E. and Richard N. Conner.
1979. Snag management. *In* Proc. of the workshop, Management of north central and northeastern forests for nongame birds. U. S. De Agric. For. Serv., Gen. Tech. Rep. NC-51, p. 214-225. U. S. Dep. Agric. For. Serv., Nort Central For. Exp. Stn., St. Paul, Minn.

Gysel, L. N.
1961. An ecological study of tree cavities an ground burrows in forest stands. J. Wildl. Manage. 25(1): 12-20.

Halls, Lowell K. and Herman L. Holbrook.
1980. Wildlife management programs on southern National Forests. *In* Chabreck, Robert H. and Robert H. Mills, ed. Proc. of 29th Annual For. Symp. Integrating timber and wildlife management in southern forests, p. 33-40. Division of Continuing Education, Louisiana State Univ., Baton Rouge, La.

McComb, William C. and Robert E. Noble.
1981. Nest-box and natural-cavity use in three mid-south forest habitats. J. Wildl. Manage. 45(1): 93-101.

Sanderson, H. Reed.
1975. Den-tree management for gray squirrels. Wildl. Soc. Bull. 3(3): 125-131.

Sanderson, H. Reed, William M. Healy, James C. Pack, John D. Gill, and Jack Ward Thomas.
1975. Gray squirrel habitat and nest-tree preference. Proc. Annul. Conf. Southeast. Assoc. Game and Fish Comm. 29: 609-620.

ott, Virgil E., Jill A. Whelan, and Robert R. lexander.
1978. Dead tree used by cavity-nesting birds on the Fraser Experimental Forest: A case history. U. S. Dep. Agric. For. Serv., Res. Note RM-360, 4 p. U. S. Dep. Agric. For. Serv., Rocky Mtn. For. and Range Exp. Stn., Fort Collins, Co.

alley, Glendon W.
1982. Classification and evaluation of forest sites on the Mid-Cumberland Plateau. U. S. Dep. Agric. For. Serv., Gen. Tech. Rep. SO-38, 58 p. U. S. Dep. Agric. For. Serv., South. For. Exp. Stn., New Orleans, La.

imble, George R., Jr., James H. Patric, John D. ll, George H. Moeller, and James N. Kochenderfer.
1974. Some options for managing forest land in the central Appalachians. U. S. Dep. Agric. For. Serv., Gen. Tech. Rep. NE-12, 42 p. U. S. Dep. Agric. For. Serv., Northeast. For. Exp. Stn., Broomall, Pa.

lig, Hans G.
1955. The gray squirrel: its life history, ecology, and population characteristics in West Virginia. Pittman-Robertson Project 31-R, 175 p. Conservation Commission of West Virginia.

S. Forest Service.
1971. Wildlife habitat management handbook. FSH 2609.23R. U. S. Dep. Agric. For. Serv., Southern Region, Atlanta, Ga.

APPENDIX

Common Name	Scientific Name
Black cherry	*Prunus serotina* Ehrh.
Blackgum	*Nyssa sylvatica* Marsh.
Black locust	*Robinia pseudoacacia* L.
Black walnut	*Juglans nigra* L.
Buckeye	*Aesculus octandra* Marsh.
Cucumber tree	*Magnolia acuminata* L.
Hickories	*Carya* spp.
Mockernut	*C. tomentosa* (Poir.) Nutt.
Pignut	*C. glabra* (Mill.) Sweet
Shagbrak	*C. ovata* (Mill.) K. Koch
Maples	*Acer* spp.
Red	*A. rubrum* L.
Sugar	*A. saccharum* Marsh.
Oaks	*Quercus* spp.
Black	*Q. velutina* L.
Chestnut	*Q. prinus* L.
Northern red	*Q. rubra* L.
Post	*Q. stellata* Wangenh.
Scarlet	*Q. coccinea* Muenchh.
White	*Q. alba* L.
Sassafras	*Sassafras albidum* (Nutt.) Nees
Sourwood	*Oxydendron arboreum* (L.) DC.
White ash	*Fraxinus americana* L.
Yellow-poplar	*Liriodendron tulipifera* L.

PINE UTILIZATION BY DEER IN YOUNG LOBLOLLY PINE PLANTATIONS IN EAST TEXAS[1]

Patti L. Furrh and Andrew W. Ezell[2]

Abstract.--A study of white-tailed deer food habits was conducted on young loblolly pine plantations in East Texas and 24 rumen samples collected seasonally over a one-year period were analyzed. The percent volume of pine was determined to evaluate the extent to which deer select pine as a forage item, and ranged from 0.0% to 31.4%, depending on season and study site. The study generally indicated that young pines are a non-preferred forage item, but may occur in the diet when preferred species are scarce. Heavy deer browsing on young pines could lead to damage, especially in times of food shortage and when pine seedlings are most susceptible to browsing damage, such as immediately after planting.

INTRODUCTION

With the increased popularity of clearcutting in the South, information pertaining to forage production and deer browse in clearcuts could serve to enhance our ability to create favorable deer habitat in East Texas, as well as assess the importance of pine as a potential deer food. White-tailed deer (*Odocoileus virginianus* Boddaert) are adaptable to many environmental conditions and may do well in areas intensively managed for pine pulpwood and sawtimber. However, the availability of food items in pure pine stands of certain ages and at certain times of the year may be critical (Sheldon and Causey 1974). During these critical periods, depredation on young loblolly pines (*Pinus taeda* L.) by white-tailed deer may occur.

The extent to which deer select young pines as a forage item may best be evaluated by an assessment of the seasonal food habits of deer feeding in young plantations. The objectives of this study were to determine the species and specific plant parts eaten seasonally by deer feeding in young loblolly pine plantations, and to evaluate the extent to which deer select young loblolly pines as a forage item in young East Texas pine plantations.

METHODS

Study Areas

The study was conducted on two 2-year-old loblolly pine plantations located in Angelina County near Diboll, Texas on land owned by Temple-Eastex, Incorporated. Study Site I was 253-acre plantation in the Renfro Hunting Club. Study Site II was a 214-acre plantation in the Tower Hunting Club. Both areas were clearcut, windrowed and burned, and planted in loblolly pine in 1980. Both sites were replanted in 1981.

Deer Collection

Rumen samples were obtained from 24 deer. Three deer older than 6 months were collected seasonally from each study site, with no regard to the sex of the animals. For the purposes of this study, winter was defined as the period fro December 1 to February 29; spring from March 1 t May 31; summer from June 1 to August 31; and fal from September 1 to November 30. Deer collectio was completed the middle month of each season.

Deer collecting was done at times when the deer were feeding, as the rumen was more likely to contain larger, more easily identifiable piec of vegetation. The deer were killed within or along the edges of the clearcuts. Live weight, sex, age, antler description and general physica condition of each animal was recorded. The lowe jaw was removed from each deer for age determina which followed Severinghaus' (1949) method of to development and wear as criteria of age. Each d

---

1/ Paper presented at Southern Silvicultural Research Conference, Atlanta, Georgia, November 4-5, 1982.

2/ Graduate Research Assistant and Assistant Professor of Forestry, Texas A&M University, College Station, Texas.

as gutted and the rumen was laid out on a plastic ag. After the rumen was cut open, the contents ere mixed by hand so a uniform sample could be btained. Rumen samples were frozen in heavy lastic bags until laboratory analysis could be erformed.

Rumen Analysis

Rumen analysis generally followed the tech-ique described by Harlow and Hooper (1971). Any eviation from their technique is described in the ollowing description of laboratory procedures. fter thawing a bag of rumen contents, a one-quart ample was separated out by filling a one-quart ar. The quart of rumen material was washed hrough a series of three sieves: 3.51, 5.66, and .51 mm mesh sizes. The portion of rumen material eld in the two larger sieve mesh sizes was ident-fied to species when possible. The volume of each pecies was measured by the water displacement ethod, and each food item was tabulated into one f the following major food categories: green eaves, dry leaves, stems and buds, grasses and rass-like plants, fungi, and fruit. Any foods nidentifiable to species were also placed into ne of these categories.

Material washed through into the smallest ieve mesh size was recorded as unidentifiable, inely ground material, and its volume was also easured.

Identification of plant parts to species was ccomplished by intensive microscopic study and omparison. Most identifications were based on ey vegetative characteristics including leaf and tem shapes, leaf margins, leaf apices and bases, eaf texture, veination patterns, glandular tructures and surface characteristics such as ubescence.

Data analysis

One of the basic methods for volumetric valuation of data, as discussed by Martin *et al.* .946) is the aggregate volume method. The ggregate volume was determined for each plant pecies by summing the volumes for each series of umen samples. In this study, a series was repre-ented by three rumen samples collected from each udy site in each season. Next, the volume ummation was divided by the total identifiable ood volume for three deer. This aggregate volume epresents a percentage based upon the total dentifiable food volume. Any volume measuring ess than 0.1% of the identifiable volume was ecorded as trace.

The frequency of occurrence of food items und in each rumen sample was derived from the mber of samples in which a particular food item curred. The rumen samples were grouped by season d the frequency of occurrence of major species ten each season was calculated along with the equency of occurrence of food items in a series.

Analysis of variance was used to test for significant ($P<0.05$) differences in the deer diet between seasons and between study sites. Separate analyses of variance were performed to test for significant differences in the volume of pine in the diet, as well as for significant differences between major food categories.

Vegetation Sampling

The net primary production of current leaves and stems of vegetation up to 5 ft (1.5 m) above ground was determined by the double-sampling method as described by Wilm *et al.* (1944). Two-hundred milacre quadrats were established in a grid pattern on each pine plantation.

The green weight of current growth was visually estimated on all quadrats. In addition, the growth was clipped up to 5 ft above ground level and weighed from 100 milacre quadrats located at every fourth sampling point (50 from each study site). Current growth was estimated and clipped by 3 classes: browse, grasses and grass-like plants, and forbs.

Two sets of data were obtained: one large estimated sample and a small sample of both estimated and actual fresh weights. A correction ratio was determined from the relationship of actual fresh tissue weights to estimated weights, and used to correct the estimates of fresh weights obtained from the large sample.

The fresh plant material collected from clipped quadrats was dried to constant weight in a forced draft oven at 65°C. Dry matter percentages were computed and biomass production data were converted to a dry-matter basis.

To help in the identification of rumen contents, plant specimens from both study sites were collected and preserved for reference purposes. Many of the same plants were collected seasonally since fresh growing parts often appear different from the older, mature plants. Each collected plant was preserved by pressing and drying (herbarium specimens) or by storing in 5% formalin. Plant nomenclature followed the *Manual of the Vascular Plants of Texas* (Correll and Johnston 1979).

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Rumen Analysis

During one year, January through December 1982, twenty-four rumen samples were collected, 22 of which have been analyzed at this point. These specimens were obtained from 8 male and 16 female deer and the major foods eaten seasonally by study area are listed in Tables 1 and 2.

Table 1. Percent by volume and percentage occurrence of principal plant species and plant parts consumed seasonally by deer from Site I.

Plant species and plant parts[1]	Winter Vol.	Winter Occ.	Spring Vol.	Spring Occ.	Summer Vol.	Summer Occ.	Fall[2] Vol.	Fall[2] Occ.
	percent							
Solanum spp. (f)	58.0	67	-	-	-	-	31.1	50
Gelsemium sempervirens (l,s)	11.2	100	-	-	-	-	1.1	100
Plantago spp. (l)	8.7	67	-	-	-	-	-	-
Pinus taeda (l)	5.8	100	1.9	67	-	-	-	-
Ilex vomitoria (l,s)	3.5	100	2.3	67	0.5	33	0.4	50
Myrica cerifera (l,s)	3.4	100	-	-	-	-	-	-
Lonicera japonica (l,s)	2.8	100	-	-	0.9	33	-	-
Quercus nigra (l,f)	2.3	100	8.1	100	0.9	33	31.6	100
Smilax bona-nox (l)	0.7	33	9.1	100	-	-	0.9	50
Ilex decidua (l)	0.7	100	-	-	-	-	-	-
Rhamnus caroliniana (l,s)	0.6	67	1.3	33	-	-	-	-
Smilax rotundifolia (l,f)	0.5	67	3.5	33	12.1	67	1.1	100
Nyssa sylvatica (l)	0.5	33	-	-	-	-	-	-
Rubus spp. (l,s)	0.5	67	-	-	14.8	100	1.7	50
Ilex opaca (l,s)	0.3	33	-	-	-	-	0.6	50
Callicarpa americana (l,s,f)	-	-	22.2	100	6.7	67	3.4	100
Vitis spp. (l,f)	-	-	13.1	67	16.6	100	3.6	100
Oxalis spp. (l,s)	t[3]	33	8.6	100	-	-	0.4	50
Vaccinium spp. (l)	-	-	5.8	100	0.9	33	-	-
Liquidambar styraciflua (l)	-	-	4.0	33	-	-	0.4	50
Berchemia scandens (l)	-	-	1.5	33	-	-	0.4	50
Hypericum spp. (l,s)	-	-	-	-	1.1	33	-	-
Sassafras albidum (l)	-	-	-	-	0.9	33	-	-

[1] l-leaves; s-stems and buds; f-fruit.
[2] Fall values based on analyses of 2 rumen samples.
[3] Amounts of less than 0.1% recorded as trace (t).

Table 2. Percent by volume and percentage occurrence of principal plant species and plant parts consumed seasonally by deer from Site II.

Plant species and plant parts[1]	Winter Vol.	Winter Occ.	Spring Vol.	Spring Occ.	Summer Vol.	Summer Occ.	Fall[2] Vol.	Fall[2] Occ.
	percent							
Pinus taeda (l)	31.4	100	1.2	67	0.9	67	0.6	50
Ilex vomitoria (l,s)	27.1	100	1.9	67	0.3	33	1.9	100
Gelsemium sempervirens (l,s)	12.1	100	4.8	100	7.2	67	1.2	100
Myrica cerifera (l,s)	8.0	100	-	-	-	-	-	-
Plantago spp. (l)	4.1	33	-	-	-	-	-	-
Ilex decidua (l)	3.0	67	0.4	33	-	-	-	-
Nyssa sylvatica (l)	3.0	67	3.3	33	2.6	67	-	-
Rhamnus caroliniana (l,s)	2.0	33	6.2	33	-	-	-	-
Quercus nigra (l,f)	2.0	67	4.8	67	-	-	8.7	100
Smilax bona-nox (l)	1.0	33	1.7	67	1.4	33	1.6	50
Vitis spp. (l,f)	1.0	33	18.6	100	1.1	67	2.8	50
Ilex opaca (l)	0.4	33	-	-	-	-	-	-
Callicarpa americana (l,s,f)	-	-	22.4	100	2.6	67	39.8	100
Liquidambar styraciflua (l)	-	-	11.2	67	1.7	67	0.9	50
Smilax rotundifolia (l,s,f)	-	-	7.3	33	20.5	100	-	-
Vaccinium spp. (l)	-	-	2.1	33	-	-	0.3	50
Oxalis spp. (l,s)	-	-	1.9	67	-	-	-	-
Rubus spp. (l,s)	-	-	1.2	33	1.1	67	1.6	50
Lonicera japonica (l,s)	-	-	-	-	2.0	67	1.2	50
Berchemia scandens (l)	-	-	-	-	1.7	33	-	-
Sassafras albidum (l)	-	-	-	-	0.9	33	-	-
Cornus florida (l;f)	-	-	-	-	-	-	27.0	50
Helenium flexuosum (f)	-	-	-	-	-	-	0.6	50

[1] l-leaves; s-stems and buds; f-fruit.
[2] Fall values based on analyses of 2 rumen samples.

inter Season

The greatest volume of pine was consumed uring the winter season. On Site I, pine ranked ourth in aggregate volume consumed with 5.8%, and as the number one food item on Site II with an ggregate volume of 31.4% (Fig. 1). On Site I even items exceeded 1.0% aggregate volume and ccounted for 95% of foods eaten. On Site II, 1 items exceeded 1.0% aggregate volume and ccounted for 97% of foods eaten.

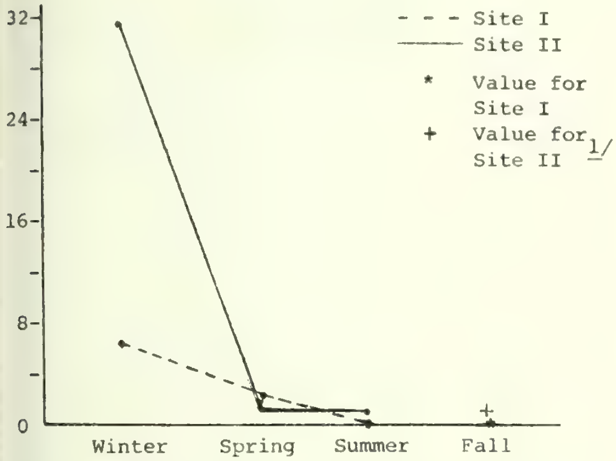


Figure 1. Percent by volume of pine consumed by twenty-two white-tailed deer, by season and study site.

[1] Values for Site I and Site II in the fall were based on analyses of 2 rumen samples from each site.

Foods selected in greatest amounts by deer 1 both sites were the leaves of yellow jassamine scientific names are listed in Appendix),yaupon, outhern waxmyrtle, plantain and pine. The fruit f nightshade was eaten heavily on Site I as were ne leaves of Japanese honeysuckle (Table 1). On ite II, the leaves of Carolina buckthorn, decidous holly, and blackgum were consumed in excess f 1.0% aggregate volume (Table 2). The high ntake of pine coincided with a relatively high ntake of Southern waxmyrtle, both of which are onsidered non-preferred species (Lay 1967).

Grasses and sedges made up at least 17% of ne winter rumen samples. Fungi, fruit, and dry eaves were also well represented on both sites. ll 4 of these major food categories made up the ighest percent by volume in the winter season Table 3). The small amounts of green leaves resent in the winter rumen samples indicated the ow availability of this forage class during the inter season.

Table 3. Average percent volume of major food categories in rumens of 24 deer, by season and study sites.

Major food categories	Winter	Spring	Summer	Fall[1]
	percent			
Site I				
Green leaves	41.2	62.1	62.2	48.8
Dead leaves	6.1	0.2	-	0.7
Stems and buds	8.8	30.5	33.5	17.4
Grasses and sedges	22.2	4.5	1.2	0.9
Fruit	18.2	0.3	3.2	29.4
Mushrooms	3.5	2.5	-	2.8
Site II				
Green leaves	48.9	69.4	67.2	48.5
Dead leaves	3.6	0.3	1.1	0.5
Stems and buds	15.2	26.6	24.8	22.6
Grasses and sedges	17.7	3.7	2.1	9.2
Fruit	0.6	-	0.4	5.7
Mushrooms	14.1	0.2	4.4	13.5

[1] Fall values based on analyses of 2 of the Fall rumen samples collected for each study site.

Spring Season

Rumen analysis of spring rumen samples showed a marked difference between winter and spring diets. The amount of pine needles in rumen samples decreased considerably (Fig. 1). Pine was found in 4 of the 6 rumen sampled during the spring season. On Site I, 2 of the 3 deer consumed pine for an aggregate volume of 1.9%, ranking pine eleventh of the sixteen food items identified in the rumen samples. All 16 food items exceeded an aggregate volume of 1.0%. Two of the 3 deer from Site II consumed pine for an aggregate volume of 1.2%. Twenty-three items were identified from the 3 rumen samples from Site II, 20 of which exceeded 1.0% aggregate volume and accounted for 98% of identifiable food items.

The decrease of pine in spring rumen samples coincided with a definite increase in green leaves such as American beautyberry and greenbriar. Southern waxmyrtle was absent from spring rumen samples, while species that are leafless in the winter and become available to deer in the spring occurred in the rumen samples in relatively large amounts. Foods selected in greatest amounts by deer on both sites were the leaves of American beautyberry, grape and water oak. Deer from Site I also consumed an excess of 3.0% aggregate volume of the leaves of saw greenbriar, Oxalis spp., blueberry, common greenbriar, and sweetgum (Table 1).

On Site II, over 3.0% aggregate volume of the leaves of sweetgum, common greenbriar, Carolina buckthorn, Japanese honeysuckle and blackgum were consumed (Table 2).

Less than 1.0% by volume of dead leaves and fruit occurred in the spring rumen samples. Grasses and sedges were also very low this season, as were mushrooms. Green leaves comprised at least 62%, and stems and buds made up at least 25% in the spring rumen samples (Table 3). Overall, the amount of grasses and sedges, dead leaves, fruit, and mushrooms in rumen samples decreased considerably in the spring while the amount of green leaves and stems and buds showed a marked increase.

Summer Season

Very little pine was consumed during the summer. Pine was absent from the Site I rumen samples, and occurred in 2 of the 3 rumen samples from Site II for an aggregate volume of only 1.0% (Fig. 1).

Twelve items were identified from Site I rumen samples, seven of which exceeded a 1.0% aggregate volume. These accounted for 96% of identifiable food items. On Site II, 18 items were identifiable from the 3 rumen samples, 12 of which exceeded 1.0% and made up 96% of the identifiable food items.

Overall, summer rumen samples indicated a trend in the deer diet similar to that shown in spring samples. Very little pine was consumed by the deer (Fig. 1). However, a relatively large amount of green leaves of preferred species such as Japanese honeysuckle, greenbriar and American beautyberry was present in the rumen samples. Food selected in greatest amounts on both sites were the leaves of common greenbriar. Deer from Site I selected over 3.0% aggregate volume of the leaves of blackberry, grape, American beautyberry and the fruit of Malus spp. (Table 1). On Site II, deer selected over 3.0% of the leaves of yellow jessamine (Table 2).

Green leaves comprised at least 62% by volume of major food categories, while stems and buds made up at least 24%. Over 1.0% dead leaves were consumed by deer from Site II in the summer, while no dead leaves were found in Site I rumen samples. Very little fruit was found in Site I rumen samples. The opposite was true for mushrooms. Grasses and sedges made up less than 3.0% on both sites in the summer (Table 3).

In general, the percentages of green leaves and stems and buds in summer samples were comparable to spring rumen samples, while dead leaves, mushrooms and grasses and sedges occurred in very small amounts. The amount of fruit in the diet did increase in the summer over spring samples, but did not reach the high percentage of fruit occurring in the diet in winter samples.

Fall Season

Analysis of four of the six rumen samples collected for the fall season was completed. Very little pine was consumed during the fall. Pine was absent from Site I rumen samples and occurred in trace amount in one of the rumen samples from Site II (Fig 1).

Sixteen plant species occurred in rumen samples from Site I, 8 of which exceeded 1.0% aggregate volume. Those 8 items made up 94% of the identifiable food items. On Site II, 15 food items were identified from rumen samples, 11 of which exceed 1.0% and made up 97% of foods eaten.

The trend established by spring and summer rumen samples continued in the fall samples. Th small amount of pine in rumen samples and the lage number of species identified in the samples indicated there is still enough green forage availabl to sustain the deer population. Foods selected greatest amounts on both sites were the leaves o American beautyberry and oak mast. Species consumed in excess of 1.0% aggregate volume on both sites were the leaves of grape, blackberry, and yellow jessamine. Two-thirds of the deer diet f Site I was made up of acorns and nightshade frui Another species consumed in excess of 1.0% on Si I was common greenbriar (Table 1). The fruit an leaves of flowering dogwood and oak mast made up over one-third of the diet of deer from Site II. Other species eaten in excess of 1.0% by volume Site II were saw greenbriar, Japanese honeysuckl and yaupon (Table 2).

Green leaves comprised at least 48% by volume of major food categories, while stems and buds comprised at least 17% on both sites. Dead leaves made up less than 1.0% by volume on both sites. Grass was less than 1.0% on Site I, but made up 9.2% of the diet on Site II. Fruit ranked highest this season with 29.4% by volume on Site I and 5. on Site II. Mushrooms ranked high also with 2.8% on Site I and 13.5% on Site II, but did not make as high a percentage of the diet as mushrooms did in the winter (Table 3).

Forage Production

The growth of grasses, forbs, and browse was appreciably greater on the windrows in comparison with the areas between windrows. This was expect due to the rich topsoil pushed into the windrows and the concentration of nutrients from burning o debris in the windrows.

Herbage

A comparison of dominance, expressed as net dry-matter production, among major plant classes is given in Table 4. Grasses dominated the herbaceous community on both sites, with the net primary production of grasses being much higher on Site II with 181.4 lbs/ac, than on Site I with 92.0 lbs/ac. Forb production was higher on Site I, with 73.1 lbs/ac being produced, than on Site I where 50.4 lbs/ac were produced.

Browse

Browse, which consists of the current leaves and stems of tree, shrubs and woody vines comprise 20.2 lbs/ac or 11% of the total forage on Site I and 20.4 lbs/ac or 8% of total forage on Site II. Woody species preferred by deer comprised a much higher percent of the total dry-matter yield of browse on Site I than on Site II (Table 5). Site I produced 62% preferred browse, while Site II produced only 37%. Dominant species of browse on Site I and Site II are listed in Table 6. Loblolly pine made up at least 17% of the total browse on Site I and 14% on Site II (Table 6).

Table 4. Net primary production of vegetation during 1982 in pounds dry-matter/acre.

Vegetation class	Net Primary Production Site I	Net Primary Production Site II
	----lbs/ac----	
Herbaceous vegetation		
Grasses and grass-like plants	92.0	181.4
Forbs	73.1	50.4
Total herbaceous	165.1	231.8
Woody vegetation		
Vines	5.2	1.6
Shrubs and tree reproduction	15.0	18.8
Total woody	20.2	20.4
Total production	185.3	252.2

Table 5. Leaf and stem dry-matter produced[a] in 1982 by preferred and non-preferred species of deer browse (pounds/acre).

	Primary Production Site I	Primary Production Site II
	-----------lbs/ac-------	
Preferred species		
Leaves	7.1	3.9
Stems	3.0	1.7
Total	10.1	5.6
Non-preferred species		
Leaves	4.3	6.3
Stems	1.9	2.8
Total	6.2	9.3

[a] Dry-matter production of individual plant parts were estimated (70% leaves: 30% stems) using results of forage studies by Blair and Feduccia 1977 and Blair and Brunett 1977.

Table 6. Average percent composition per acre of major browse species on Site I and Site II.

Browse species	Average percent composition per acre Site I	Average percent composition per acre Site II
Callicarpa americana	29.0	18.5
Liquidambar styraciflua	5.0	12.0
Pinus taeda	20.0	16.0
Rubus spp.	18.0	6.0
Quercus falcata	5.0	1.0
Quercus nigra	3.0	1.0
Smilax bona-nox	4.0	2.0
Smilax rotundifolia	4.0	0.5
Smilax glauca	2.0	-
Vaccinium spp.	1.5	6.0
Myrica cerifera	1.0	4.0
Ampelopsis arborea	0.5	10.0
Passiflora lutea	4.0	-
Sassafras albidum	1.5	-
Rhus copallina	1.0	0.2
Vitis spp.	1.0	0.1
Nyssa sylvatica	0.5	0.3
Ilex vomitoria	0.3	1.5
Quercus stellata	0.2	1.0
Quercus phellos	0.5	0.1
Gelsemium sempervirens	0.5	0.1
Crataegus spp.	0.5	0.5
Ilex opaca	0.5	0.1
Parthenocissus quinquefolia	0.1	0.1
Ulmus spp.	0.5	0.5
Carya tomentosa	-	0.5
Acer rubrum	0.1	-
Platanus occidentalis	0.5	-
Baccharis halimifolia	1.0	-

Analysis of variance of the volume of pine in rumen samples showed highly significant ($P< 0.01$) differences between seasons and between study sites. The volume of pine was considerably higher in winter rumen samples, while spring and summer rumen samples contained very small amounts of pine. This seasonal difference was further illustrated by the aggregate volume values calculated for loblolly pine (Tables 1, 2).

A significant block x treatment interaction term indicated that rumen samples collected from one study site during a particular season differed between sites in the volume of pine in rumen samples. Site I generally showed a lower volume of pine in the rumen samples, which indicated that more highly preferred species were present or more abundant on Site I, or that the competition by deer on Site II was more intense than on Site I.

Statistical analysis results may be changed slightly when analysis of variance is performed after results from fall rumen analysis is included. However, the drastic seasonal differences in aggregate volume values for pine indicate differences between seasons and between study sites will remain significant.

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

Utilization of individual plant species by deer varied between seasons. Foods ranking high in winter were the leaves of loblolly pine, southern waxmyrtle, yellow jessamine and Japanese honeysuckle, and the fruit of night shade, while the leaves of American beautyberry, grape, water oak and greenbriar were favored in spring. In summer, the leaves of blackberry, grape and American beautyberry ranked highest, while oak mast, nightshade fruit and the fruit and leaves of flowering dogwood ranked highest in fall. Differences in deer use of major plant categories followed these trends: green leaves ranked higher than other categories in spring and summer, while fruit and mushrooms made up a substantial part of the deer diet in fall and winter.

Changes in plant species and plant part intake were attributed partly to increasing availability of other more preferred species, or plants may have developed certain physical or chemical properties making them unpalatable to deer during certain times of the year. Longhurst et al. (1968) suggested that biogenesis of inhibitory compounds in maturing vegetation can affect palatability.

Forage production results indicated a difference between study sites in production of grasses and forbs. Total production for Site II was higher due to almost twice as many pounds per acre of grasses produced on Site II, though forb production was less on Site II than on Site I (Table 4). Leaf and stem dry-matter produced by preferred species was much higher on Site I than on Site II, while production of non-preferred species was higher on Site II than on Site 1 (Table 5). These results indicated browse conditions for deer were better on Site I than on Site II, which could partly account for the much higher consumption of pine during the winter on Site II.

Forage production results also determined plant species occurring in rumen samples but not found in the plantations included flowering dogwood, oak mast, and Alabama supplejack.

Winter rumen samples indicated a lower availability of preferred browse with an increased consumption of undesirables such as pine and southern waxmyrtle. Southern waxmyrtle is a widely distributed, evergreen third choice species which is an excellent indicator of the status of deer herds. More than 5 to 10% use in winter indicates heavy pressure on the available food supply by deer (Lay 1967). Lay found when half of the current growth of waxmyrtle is used, pine browsing by deer will follow.

There is little reported evidence of damage to loblolly pine seedlings due to deer browsing. The digestibility of pine is believed to be governed to some extent by the adverse impact of resins and and volatile oils on the microbial population inhabiting the deer rumen (Nagy 1970).

Southern pines demonstrate a tremendous ability to survive and recover rapidly with resilience from extreme forms and intensities of injury (Lewis 1980). However, if seedlings are in a low state of vigor, under extreme stress, or subjected to extreme temperatures they could be much more vulnerable to injury. This study indicated times food shortage and low availability of preferred deer browse occurred in January and February. Heavy deer densities could lead to pine damage this time of the year especially if the seedlin had just been planted.

There is a wildlife management implication this study which may apply to areas intensively managed for pine pulpwood and sawtimber in the South. As shown by the results of this study, availability of food resources in pure pine sta of certain ages and at certain times of the yea may be seriously limited. Keeping the deer her at a level in compliance with the amount of foo available should be an important consideration those interested in maintaining a healthy deer herd. When deer are forced to browse loblolly pine, deer suffer as well as the pines.

LITERATURE CITED

Blair, R. M. and L. E. Brunett.
1977. Deer habitat potential of pine-hardwood forests in Louisiana. U.S.D.A. For. Serv. Res. Pap. SO-136. 11 p.

Blair, R. M. and D. P. Feduccia.
1977. Midstory hardwoods inhibit deer forage in loblolly pine plantations. J. Wild. Manage. 41(4):677-684.

Correl, D. S. and M. C. Johnston.
1979. Manual of the vascular plants of Texas. Vol. 6. Univ. of TX at Dallas, Richardson, 1881 p.

Harlow, R. F. and R. G. Hooper.
1971. Forages eaten by deer in the Southeast Proc. of 25th Ann. Conf. of Southeast Assoc. Game and Fish Comm. p. 18-46.

Lay, D. W.
1967. Deer range appraisal in East Texas. J. Wildl. Manage. 31: 426-432.

Lewis, C. E.
1980. Simulated cattle injury to slash pine: combination of defoliation, browsing and trampling. J. Range Manage. 33(5):340-345.

Longhurst, W. M., H. K. Oh, M. B. Jones and R. E. Kepner.
1968. A basis for palatability of deer forage plants. Trans. North. Amer. Wildl. and Nat. R Conf. 33:181-192.

Martin, A. C., R. H. Gensch and G. P. Brown.
1946. Alternative methods in upland gamebird fo analysis. J. Wildl. Manage. 10:8-12.

Nagy, J. G.
1970. Biological relations of rumen flora and fauna. pp. 159-163 In Range and Wildlife Habitat Evaluation - A Research Symposium. U.S.D.A. For. Serv. Misc. Publ. 1147.

Severinghaus, C. W.
1949. Tooth development and wear as criteria of age in white-tailed deer. J. Wildl. Manage. 13(2):195-216.

Sheldon, J. J. and K. Causey.
1974. Use of Japanese honeysuckle by white-tailed deer. J. Forestry. 72(5):286-287.

Wilm, H. G., D. F. Costello and G. E. Klipple.
1944. Estimating forage yield by the double-sampling method. J. Am. Soc. Agron. 36: 194-203.

APPENDIX

Table 1: The common and scientific names of plants mentioned in the text.

Common names	
Alabama supplejack	*Berchemia scandens* (Hill) K.Koch
American beautyberry	*Callicarpa americana* L.
American holly	*Ilex opaca* Ait.
Blackberry	*Rubus* spp.
Blackgum	*Nyssa sylvatica* Marsh
Blueberry	*Vaccinium* spp.
Common greenbriar	*Smilax rotundifolia* L.
Carolina buckthorn	*Rhamnus caroliniana* Walt.
Deciduous holly	*Ilex decidua* Walt.
Flowering dogwood	*Cornus florida* L.
Grape	*Vitis* spp.
Greenbriar	*Smilax* spp.
Loblolly pine	*Pinus taeda* L.
Nightshade	*Solanum* spp.
Nits-and-lice	*Hypericum* spp.
Plantain	*Plantago* spp.
Sassafras	*Sassafras albidum* (Nutt.) Nees
Saw greenbriar	*Smilax bona-nox* L.
Southern waxmyrtle	*Myrica cerifera* L.
Sweetgum	*Liquidambar styraciflua* L.
Water oak	*Quercus nigra* L.
Yaupon	*Ilex vomitoria* Ait.
Yellow jessamine	*Gelsemium sempervirens* [L.] Ait. f.
Sneezeweed	*Helenium flexuosum* Raf.

APPENDIXES

APPENDIX I--REGISTRATION LIST

ohn C. Adams
ouisiana Tech University
chool of Forestry
uston, LA 71270

ernon Ammon
ississippi State University
.O. Drawer PG
ississippi State, MS 39762

ark Augspurger
lemson University
epartment of Forestry
lemson, SC 29631

obert L. Bailey
niversity of Georgia
chool of Forest Resources
thens, GA 30602

ames B. Baker
outhern Forest Experiment
Station
.O. Box 3516
onticello, AR 71655

ecky Banker
uburn University
labama Coop Wildlife
Research Unit
uburn University, AL 36849

ames Barnett
outhern Forest Experiment
Station
500 Shreveport Hwy.
ineville, LA 71360

anley Barras
outhern Forest Experiment
Station
. T-10210, PSB
01 Loyola Avenue
w Orleans, LA 70013

ck Battillo
ickeye Cellulose Corp.
O. Box 238
lethorpe, GA 31068

M. Beach
ampion International Corp.
O. Box 191
intsville, TX 77340

nald E. Beck
utheastern Forest
xperiment Station
0 Weaver Blvd.
heville, NC 28804

Roger P. Belanger
Southeastern Forest
Experiment Station
Forestry Sciences Lab.
Carlton St.
Athens, GA 30602

Ronald H. Blackwelder
Champion International
Corporation
37 Villa Rd., Suite 319
Greenville, SC 29615

Franklin T. Bonner
Southern Forest Experiment
Station
Box 906
Starkville, MS 39759

Bruce Bongarten
University of Georgia
School of Forest Resources
Athens, GA 30602

Doug Bowling
International Paper
Southlands Experimental
Forest
Bainbridge, GA 31717

William D. Boyer
Southern Forest Experiment
Station
C. W. Andrews Forestry
Sciences Lab.
Auburn University
DeVall St.
Auburn University, AL 36849

David L. Bramlett
Southeastern Forest
Experiment Station
Georgia Forestry Center
Rt. 1, Box 182A
Dry Branch, GA 31020

George Burchfield
Sabine & Waters, Inc.
P.O. Box 1072
Summerville, SC 29483

Mike Burchfield
Sabine & Waters, Inc.
P.O. Box 1072
Summerville, SC 29483

Edward Buckner
University of Tennessee
Dept. of Forestry
Knoxville, TN 37916

James A. Burger
Virginia Polytechnic Institute
and State University
228 Cheatham Hall
Blacksburg, VA 24061

Paul Y. Burns
Louisiana State University
School of Forestry
Baton Rouge, LA 70808

Russell M. Burns
USDA, Forest Service
P.O. Box 2417
Room 811-RPA
Washington, DC 20013

James D. Burton
Southern Forest Experiment
Station
2500 Shreveport Hwy.
Pineville, LA 71360

Michael D. Cain
Southern Forest Experiment
Station
Rt. 1, Box 174T
Crossett, AR 71635

Thomas E. Campbell
Southern Forest Experiment
Station
2500 Shreveport Hwy.
Pineville, LA 71360

Quang V. Cao
Louisiana State University
School of Forestry & Wildlife
Baton Rouge, LA 70803

Jim Chambers
Louisiana State University
School of Forestry
Baton Rouge, LA 70803

Terry R. Clason
Louisiana Agriculture
Experiment Station
Rt. 1, Box 10
Homer, LA 71040

Wayne K. Clatterbuck
Mississippi State University
P.O. Drawer FR
Mississippi State, MS 39762

Gordon R. Condit
Boise Southern Co.
2004 Blankenship Dr.
DeRidder, LA 70634

Rick Cooper
Buckeye Cellulose Corp.
P.O. Box 238
Oglethorpe, GA 31068

Knight Cox
Clemson University
Department of Forestry
Clemson, SC 29631

Douglas M. Crutchfield
Westvaco Corporation
P.O. Box WV
Summerville, SC 29483

Charlie Davis
Savannah River Ecology Lab
Drawer E
Aiken, SC 29801

William C. Davis
Duke University
School of Forestry
Durham, NC 27706

T. R. Dell
Southern Forest Experiment
Station
Rm. T-10210, PSB
701 Loyola Avenue
New Orleans, LA 70113

Lino Della-Bianca
Southeastern Forest
Experiment Station
200 Weaver Blvd.
Asheville, NC 28804

Roger W. Dennington
Coop. Forestry R-8
Jackson Mall
Suite 3260
Jackson, MS 39213

Jim DeWit
Mississippi State University
Department of Forestry
P.O. Drawer FD
Mississippi State, MS 39762

Jim Devan
International Paper
Rt. 1, Box 571
Bainbridge, GA 31717

Duane R. Dippon
University of Florida
School of Forest Resources
& Conservation
Newin-Zeigles Hall
Gainesville, FL 32611

George Dissmeyer
USDA, Forest Service
1720 Peachtree Rd., NW
Atlanta, GA 30367

James E. Douglass
Southeastern Forest
Experiment Station
Coweeta Hydrologic Lab
Rt. 1, Box 216
Otto, NC 28763

S. E. Drinkard
Hammermill Paper Company
1215 Race St.
Selma, AL 36701

Doug Duncan
International Paper Company
Southlands Experiment Forest
Bainbridge, GA 31717

M. Boyd Edwards
Southeastern Forest
Experiment Station
Georgia Forestry Center
Rt. 1, Box 182A
Dry Branch, GA 31020

William Elam
Mississippi State University
Drawer FR
Mississippi State, MS 39762

Andrew W. Ezell
Texas A&M University
Department of Forest Sciences
College Station, TX 77843

Robert M. Farrar, Jr.
Southern Forest Experiment
Station
P.O. Box 3516 UAM
Monticello, AR 71655

Richard O. Fitzgerald
Timber Management
USDA, Forest Service
P.O. Box 2417, Rm. 3214A
Washington, DC 20013

Thomas R. Fox
Virginia Polytechnic
Institute and State University
228 Cheatham Hall
Blacksburg, VA 24061

John K. Francis
Southern Forest Experiment
Station
P.O. Box 227
Stoneville, MS 38776

Ron Froelich
Southern Forest Experiment
Station
P. O. Box 2008 GMF
Gulfport, MS 39503

Patti L. Furrh
Texas A&M University
Forest Sciences Lab
College Station, TX 77843

Jim Garner
International Paper Company
Southlands Experimental
Forest
Bainbridge, GA 31717

Harry G. Gibson
Purdue University
Department of Forestry
W. Lafayette, IN 47907

Samuel F. Gingrich
Southeastern Forest
Experiment Station
Forestry Sciences Lab.
2730 Savannah Hwy.
Charleston, SC 29407

Glenn R. Glover
Auburn University
Department of Forestry
Auburn University, AL 36849

Ernest A. Gluesing
Mississippi State University
P.O. Drawer LW
Mississippi State, MS 39762

J. F. Godbee
Union Camp Corporation
Woodlands Research
P.O. Box 216
Rincon, GA 31326

Mike Golden
Auburn University
Department of Forestry
Auburn University, AL 36830

David Graney
Southern Forest Experiment
Station
830 Fairview St.
Fayetteville, AR 72701

Alfredo B. Granillo
University of Arkansas at
Monticello
Box 3468 UAM
Monticello, AR 71655

Harold E. Grelen
Southern Forest Experiment
Station
2500 Shreveport Hwy.
Pineville, LA 71360

Jim Guldin
University of Arkansas at
Monticello
P.O. Box 3468
Monticello, AR 71655

Richard W. Guldin
Southern Forest Experiment
 Station
T-10210 Postal Service Bldg.
701 Loyola Ave.
New Orleans, LA 70113

L. Wayne Haines
International Paper Company
Southlands Experimental
 Forest
Rt. 1, Box 571
Bainbridge, GA 31717

Fred Harmon
Hammermill Paper Company
417 Medical Center Parkway
Selma, AL 36701

William R. Harms
Southeastern Forest
 Experiment Station
2730 Savannah Hwy.
Charleston, SC 29407

Steve Harp
Georgia Kraft Company
P.O. Box 108
Coosa, GA 30129

Donald L. Hay
University of Tennessee
P.O. Box 1071
Knoxville, TN 37901

ames Haywood
outhern Forest Experiment
 Station
500 Shreveport Hwy.
ineville, LA 71360

oy Hedden
lemson University
ept. of Forestry
lemson, SC 29631

ohn Hendee
outheastern Forest
Experiment Station
00 Weaver Blvd.
sheville, NC 28802

ohn W. Henley
outhern Forest Experiment
Station
-10210 Postal Service Bldg.
01 Loyola Ave.
ew Orleans, LA 70113

erard D. Hertel
outhern Forest Experiment
Station
500 Shreveport Hwy.
neville, LA 71360

Harold J. Hill
Hammermill Paper Company
417 Medical Center Parkway
Selma, AL 36701

John D. Hodges
Mississippi State University
P.O. Drawer FR
Mississippi State, MS 39762

Charles A. Hollis
International Paper Co.
Rt. 1, Box 571
Bainbridge, GA 31717

Eric Holsten
Clemson University
Dept. of Forestry
Clemson, SC 29631

George Hopper
Virginia Tech - Forestry
Rt. 1, Box 151B
Newport, VA 24128

Allan Houston
University of Tennessee
Ames Plantation
P.O. Box 389
Grand Junction, TN 38039

Tony S.C. Hu
Louisiana State University
School of Forestry
Baton Rouge, LA 70803

Jimmy C. Huntley
Southern Forest Experiment
 Station
SPO Box 1290
Sewanee, TN 37375

George Hurst
Mississippi State University
P.O. Drawer LW
Mississippi State, MS 39762

M. J. Immel
Union Camp Corporation
Woodlands Research
P.O. Box 216
Rincon, GA 31326

John G. Irwin
USDA, Forest Service
1242 Woodbine Rd.
Aiken, SC 29801

Greg Janzen
Mississippi State University
P.O. Drawer FR
Mississippi State, MS 39762

Rhett Johnson
Auburn University
Dixon Forestry Center
Auburn University, AL 36849

Earle P. Jones
Southeastern Forest
 Experiment Station
Georgia Forestry Center
Rt. 1, Box 182A
Dry Branch, GA 31020

Steven M. Jones
Clemson University
Department of Forestry
Clemson, SC 29631

Jacques R. Jorgensen
Southeastern Forest
 Experiment Station
P.O. Box 12254
Research Triangle Park, NC
22709

Chester Karpinski
Clemson University
Department of Forestry
Clemson, SC 29631

Bob L. Karr
Mississippi State University
P. O. Box FR
Mississippi State, MS 39762

Steve Knowe
Crown Zellerbach
P.O. Box 400
Bogalusa, LA 70427

Richard E. Kreh
Virginia Tech
Box 21
Critz, VA 24082

Erich H. Krumm, Jr.
Champion International
P.O. Box 191
Huntsville, TX 77340

Timothy LaFarge
USDA, Forest Service
1720 Peachtree Rd., NW
Atlanta, GA 30367

Samuel B. Land, Jr.
Mississippi State University
P.O. Drawer FR
Mississippi State, MS 39762

Douglas O. Lantagne
Virginia Tech
228 Cheatham Hall
Blacksburg, VA 24061

Dwight K. Lauer
ITT Rayonier, Inc.
P.O. Box 437
Yulee, FL 32097

Dennis Law
USDA, Forest Service
P.O. Box 2227
Columbia, SC 29703

Edwin R. Lawson
Southern Forest Experiment
Station
830 Fairview
Fayetteville, AR 72701

Russell Lea
North Carolina State
University
Department of Forestry
Box 5488
Raleigh, NC 27650

Clifford E. Lewis
Southeastern Forest
Experiment Station
2836 NW 68th Ave.
Gainesville, FL 32606

Gordon D. Lewis
Southeastern Forest
Experiment Station
200 Weaver Blvd.
Asheville, NC 28804

Norman Little
Georgia Kraft Co.
P.O. Box 108
Coosa, GA 30129

F. Thomas Lloyd
Southeastern Forest
Experiment Station
2730 Savannah Hwy.
Charleston, SC 29407

B. G. Lockaby
Louisiana Tech
Department of Forestry
Ruston, LA 71272

David L. Loftis
Southeastern Forest
Experiment Station
200 Weaver Blvd.
Asheville, NC 28804

Richard E. Lohrey
Southern Forest Experiment
Station
120 Ivy Lane
Pineville, LA 71360

Alan A. Lucier
International Paper Company
905 Morningside Dr.
Bainbridge, GA 31717

T. G. Matney
Mississippi State University
P.O. Drawer FR
Mississippi State, MS 39759

Fred R. Matthews
Southeastern Forest
Experiment Station
Forestry Sciences Lab
Carlton St.
Athens, GA 30602

Charles E. McGee
Southern Forest Experiment
Station
SPO Box 1290
Sewanee, TN 37375

William H. McKee, Jr.
Southeastern Forest
Experiment Station
Forestry Sciences Lab
2730 Savannah Hwy.
Charleston, SC 29407

Sid McKnight
Sid McKnight Consulting
Forester, Inc.
656 Tahoe Circle
Stone Mountain, GA 30083

Ken McLeod
Savannah River Ecology Lab.
Drawer E
Aiken, SC 29801

B. F. McLemore
Southern Forest Experiment
Station
P.O. Box 3516
Monticello, AR 71655

James W. McMinn
Southeastern Forest
Experiment Station
Carlton St.
Athens, GA 30602

W. Henry McNab
Southeastern Forest
Experiment Station
Forestry Sciences Lab
Carlton St.
Athens, GA 30602

H. L. Merck
Cooperative Extension Service
P.O. Box 1898
Statesboro, GA 30458-1898

Michael G. Messina
North Carolina State
University
Department of Forestry
Box 5488
Raleigh, NC 27650

James H. Miller
Southern Forest Experiment
Station
G. W. Andrews Forestry
Sciences Lab
DeVall St.
Auburn University, AL 36849

Thomas Miller
Southeastern Forest
Experiment Station
P.O. Box 70
Olustee, FL 32072

W. L. Mills, Jr.
Auburn University
Department of Forestry
Auburn, AL 36849

Peter Moditz
University of Tennessee
Department of Forestry
Knoxville, TN 37916

A. V. Mollitor
University of Florida
School of Forest Resources
& Conservation
Gainesville, FL 32611

Francis J. Morris
Georgia Kraft Company
P.O. Box 108
Coosa, GA 30129

Jon Morrissey
Texas A&M University
Forest Sciences Lab
College Station, TX 77843

Kenneth R. Munson
University of Florida
353 Newins-Ziegler Hall
Gainesville, FL 32611

Paul A. Murphy
Southern Forest Experiment
Station
P.O. Box 3516
Monticello, AR 71655

Warren Nance
Southern Forest Experiment
Station
P. O. Box 2008, GMF
Gulfport, MS 39503

T. Evan Nebeker
Mississippi State University
Drawer EM
Mississippi State, MS 39762

Mary Beth Nicholich
103 Lumas Dr. - Apt. B-2
Starkville, MS 39759

Larry E. Nix
Clemson University
Department of Forestry
Clemson, SC 29631

Wade L. Nutter
University of Georgia
School of Forest Resources
Athens, GA 30606

Kenneth Outcalt
Southeastern Forest
Experiment Station
P.O. Box 70
Olustee, FL 32072

Andrew Parker
Burke Forestry
Rt. 2, Box 709-C
Morganton, NC 28655

Donald W. Peterson
USDA, Forest Service
P.O. Box 2227
Columbia, SC 29202

Doug Phillips
Clemson University
Department of Forestry
(Forest Service)
Clemson, SC 29631

eon V. Pienaar
niversity of Georgia
chool of Forest Resources
thens, GA 30602

oger W. Pitts
935 Huntsmon Dr.
iken, SC 29801

hil Pope
urdue University
epartment of Forestry
est Lafayette, IN 47907

arry R. Powers
outheastern Forest
Experiment Station
orestry Sciences Lab
arlton St.
thens, GA 30602

L. Rakestraw
ion Camp Corporation
odlands Research
O. Box 216
ncon, GA 31326

m Ralston
1, Box 571
inbridge, GA 31717

bert Rogers
08 Crawford St.
lumbia, MO 65201

Robin Rose
Westvaco Corporation
Box WV
Summerville, SC 29483

Michael Ross
Virginia Polytechnic
Institute & State University
228 Cheatham Hall
Blacksburg, VA 24061

Bob Sage
St. Regis Paper Co.
P.O. Box 18020
Jacksonville, FL 32229

Charles Salzman
Sabine & Waters, Inc.
P.O. Box 1072
Summerville, SC 29483

Mike Saxon
Sabine & Waters, Inc.
P.O. Box 1072
Summerville, SC 29483

Stephen H. Schoenholtz
Virginia Polytechnic
Institute & State University
228 Cheatham Hall
Department of Forestry
Blacksburg, VA 24060

Gerry Simmons
Texas A&M University
Forestry Sciences Lab
College Station, TX 77843

Donald L. Sirois
Southern Forest Experiment
Station
Devall St.
Auburn University, AL 36849

Davis Wm. Smith
Virginia Polytechnic
Institute & State University
228 Cheatham Hall
Blacksburg, VA 24061

Thomas O. Smith
USDA, Forest Service
P.O. Box A
Aiken, SC 29801

Greg Somers
Rt. 3, Box 935
Bainbridge, GA 31717

David South
Auburn University
Department of Forestry
Auburn University, AL 36849

Michael L. Sparks
P.O. Box 2227
Columbia, SC 29202

John J. Stransky
Southern Forest Experiment
Station
P.O. Box 7600 SFA
Nacogdoches, TX 75962

Alfred D. Sullivan
Mississippi State University
P.O. Drawer FR
Mississippi State, MS 39762

Allan Tiarks
Southern Forest Experiment
Station
2500 Shreveport Hwy.
Pineville, LA 71360

John Toliver
Louisiana State University
School of Forest & Wildlife
Management
Baton Rouge, LA 70803

Charles Tuttle
Auburn University
Department of Forestry
Auburn University, AL 36849

Thomas Tworkoski
Virginia Polytechnic
Institute & State University
228 Cheatham Hall
Blacksburg, VA 24061

David H. Van Lear
Clemson University
Department of Forestry
Clemson, SC 29631

John Vann
USDA, Forest Service
1720 Peachtree Rd. NW
Atlanta, GA 30367

Thomas I. Vermillion
Crown Zellerbach
Southern Timber & Wood
Products Division
Box 400
Bogalusa, LA 70427

Dale D. Wade
Southeastern Forest
Experiment Station
Southern Forest Fire Lab
Rt. 1, Box 182A
Dry Branch, GA 31020

Thomas A. Waldrop
2110 Chillicothe St.
Knoxville, TN 37921

Roger F. Walker
Oak Ridge National Lab
P. O. Box X, Bldg. 1505
Oak Ridge, TN 37919

Randy M. Waters
Sabine & Waters, Inc.
P.O. Box 276
Statesboro, GA 30458

Gordon White
Champion Interational
Box 250
Courtland, AL 35618

John B. White
100 W. Capitol - Suite 1141
Jackson, MS 39201

Lawrence P. Wilhite
USDA, Forest Service
2730 Savannah Hwy.
Charleston, SC 29407

Carlton Windsor
ITT Rayonier
P.O. Box 437
Yulee, FL 32097

James N. Woodman
Champion International Corp.
Timberlands Div.
One Champion Plaza
Stamford, CT 06921

G. Kenneth Xydias
Continental Forest Industries
Box 8969
Savannah, GA 31412

Mike York
University of Tennessee
Department of Forestry
Knoxville, TN 37916

Shepard M. Zedaker
Virginia Polytechnic
Institute & State University
Department of Forestry
228 Cheatham Hall
Blacksburg, VA 24061

Bruce Zutter
Auburn University
Department of Forestry
Auburn University, AL 36849

APPENDIX II--ALPHABETICAL LIST OF AUTHORS

Page

Adams, J. C. 177
Augspurger, M. K. 87

Bailey, R. L. 213
Banker, R. E. 23
Barnett, J. P. 387
Beasley, R. S. 461
Belanger, R. P. 382
Blanche, C. A. 376
Boyer, W. D. 62
Bramlett, D. L. 441
Brendemuehl, R. H. 96
Brown, M. W. 376
Buckner, E. R. 74, 141, 157
Burger, J. A. 5, 134, 468
Burns, P. Y. 261
Burton, J. D. 283

Cain, M. D. 200
Campbell, T. E. 118
Cao, Q. V. 291, 325
Cassens, D. L. 230
Chambers, J. L. 161
Clason, T. R. 291
Comerford, N. B. 66
Cox, S. K. 87

Davis, C. E. 48
Davis, D. E. 23
Dell, T. R. 275
Della-Bianca, L. 166
DeWit, J. N. 40
Dippon, D. R. 302
Douglass, J. E. 87, 454, 468

Edwards, M. B. 1
Ezell, A. W. 26, 172, 496

Farrar, R. M., Jr. 109, 206
Field, D. M. 483
Fischer, B. C. 230
Fisher, R. F. 66
Fox, T. R. 468
Francis, J. K. 189
Froelich, R. C. 275
Furrh, P. L. 496

Page

Gibson, H. G. 230
Gluesing, E. A. 483
Godbee, J. F. 382
Golden, M. S. 18
Graney, D. L. 269
Granillo, A. B. 461
Gregory, A. H. 193
Grelen, H. E. 70
Guldin, R. W. 30

Halls, L. K. 54
Harms, W. R. 334
Hay, R. L. 128
Haywood, J. D. 14
Hedden, R. L. 371
Hertel, G. D. 365
Hileman, L. H. 477
Hodges. J. D. 298, 376
Hooper, G. M. 180
Hotvedt, J. E. 288
Houston, A. E. 157
Hu, S. C. 94, 261
Huntley, J. C. 488
Hurst, G. A. 484

Jenkins, M. W. 161
Johnson, J. D. 401
Jones, E. P., Jr. 329
Jorgensen, J. R. 48

Koger, J. L. 247
Kreh, R. E. 468

Land, S. B., Jr. 431
Latagne, D. O. 5
Lawson, E. R. 477
Lewis, C. E. 79
Lloyd, F. T. 329
Lockaby, B. G. 260
Loftis, D. L. 144
Lohrey, R. E. 338

Page

Mason, G. N. 365
Matney, T. G. 298, 315
Matthews, F. R. 441
McGregor, M. M. 390
McKee, W. H., Jr. 79
McLaughlin, S. B. 409
McLemore, B. F. 226
McMinn, J. W. 59
McNab, W. H. 96
Meldahl, R. S. 18
Mexal, J. G. 418
Miller, J. H. 23, 344
Miller, T. 382
Mills, W. L., Jr. 253
Moditz, P. 141
Moehring, D. M. 376
Mollitor, A. V. 66
Morrissey, J. T. 172

Nance, W. L. 275, 446
Nebeker, T. E. 376
Nodine, S. K. 87

Outcalt, K. W. 11

Parrish, D. J. 180, 185
Pienaar, L. V. 213
Pope, P. E. 230
Powers, H. R., Jr. 427

Rennie, J. C. 128
Rogers, R. 217
Rose, R. W., Jr. 390
Ross, M. S. 151

Schoenholtz, S. H. 134
Sharik, T. L. 151
Shelton, J. T. 302
Sherar, J. R. 247
Shoulders, E. 275, 283, 352
Simmons, G. L. 26
Sirois, D. L. 240
Smith, D. W. 151, 180, 185
Smith, W. D. 312
South, D. B. 418
Sprinz, P. T. 193
Stokes, B. J. 240
Stransky, J. J. 54
Sullivan, A. D. 298, 315

Page

Terry, T. A. 40
Thatcher, R. C. 365
Tiarks, A. E. 34, 352
Toliver, J. R. 288
Tufts, R. A. 253
Tuttle, C. L. 18
Tworkoski, T. J. 185

Valverde, C. 454
Van Lear, D. H. 87, 454
Vidrine, C. G. 260

Waldrop, T. A. 157
Walker, R. F. 409
Warren, R. C. 484
Watterston, K. G. 54
Webb, R. S. 382
West, D. C. 409
White, J. B. 109
Wright, G. M. 230

Xydias, G. K. 101, 193

York, M. 74

Zedaker, S. M. 357
Zoerb, M. 427

✿ U.S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE: 1983-648-939

Clemson University

3 1604 003 971 613

DATE DUE

APR 12 1991

Ret'd APR 15 1991

JUN 13 1994 JUL 22 1994

JUL 22 1994

JAN 30 1996

RET'D NOV 28 199

BRODART, INC

Cat. No. 23-221